1489. e. 23.

THE Practice of Physick,

IN

TWO VOLUMS.

Very much Enlarged.

Wherein is plainly set forth,

The Nature, Cause, Differences, *and Several Sorts of* Signs: *Together with the* Cure *of all Diseases in the Body of Man.* In Twenty and Four Books.

VIZ.

1. *Of the Diseases of the Head.*
2. *Of the Diseases of the Eyes.*
3. *Of the Diseases of the Ears.*
4. *Of the Diseases of the Nostrills.*
5. *Of the Diseases of the Tongue.*
6. *Of the Diseases of the Teeth, Gums, &c.*
7. *Of the Diseases of the Breast.*
8. *Of the Diseases of the Heart.*
9. *Of the Diseases of the Stomach.*
10. *Of the Diseases of the Intestines or Guts.*
11. *Of the Diseases of the Liver.*
12. *Of the Diseases of the Spleen.*
13. *Of the Diseases of the Mesentery, &c.*
14. *Of the Diseases of the Reins, &c.*
15. *Of Womens Diseases.*
16. *Of the Diseases of the Joynts, &c.*
17. *Of Feavers, simple, putrid, and pestilential.*
18. *One hundred Observations or Histories, of Famous and Rare Cures.*
19. *One hundred more.*
20. *One hundred more.*
21. *One hundred and thirteen more.*
22. *Select Medicinal Counsels of* John Fernelius, *Chief Physitian to the King.*
23. *An excellent Treatise of the French Pox*
24. *A Physical Dictionary.*

Written in Latin, and in English,

By { *Lazarus Riverius,* Counsellor *and* Physitian *to the* King, &c.
Nicholas Culpeper, Physitian *and* Astrologer.
Abdiah Cole, Doctor of Physick. And *W. R.*

Above seventeen thousand of the said Books in Latin and English, have been sold in a very few Yeers, having been ten times printed, though seven of the former Impressions wanted the *Nature, Causes, Signs,* and *Differences* of the Diseases, and had only the Medicines for the *Cure* of them; as plainly appears by the Authors Epistle.

LONDON:

Printed by *Peter Cole,* Printer and Book-seller, and are to be sold at his Shop, at the Sign of the Printing-press in Cornhil, neer the Royal Exchange. 1658.

D 2



Hospitum.

15.to 6br No.r 1658

F. 2. 16.

1489. e . 23.



N. Culpeper, Phyſitian *and* Aſtrologer,
Abdiah Cole, Doctor of Phyſick,
And *William Rowland*, Phyſitian,

Their **Practice of Phyſick.**





LAZARUS RIVERIUS
Physitian to the now King of France



NG CH. CULPEPER
Physitian & Astrologer



ABDIAH COLE
Dr. of Physick



1489. e. 23.

THE Practice of Physick,

IN

TWO VOLUMS.

Very much Enlarged.

Wherein is plainly set forth,

The Nature, Cause, Differences, *and Several Sorts of* Signs: *Together with the* Cure *of all Diseases in the Body of Man.* In Twenty and Four Books.

VIZ.

1. *Of the Diseases of the Head.*
2. *Of the Diseases of the Eyes.*
3. *Of the Diseases of the Ears.*
4. *Of the Diseases of the Nostrills.*
5. *Of the Diseases of the Tongue.*
6. *Of the Diseases of the Teeth, Gums, &c.*
7. *Of the Diseases of the Breast.*
8. *Of the Diseases of the Heart.*
9. *Of the Diseases of the Stomach.*
10. *Of the Diseases of the Intestines or Guts.*
11. *Of the Diseases of the Liver.*
12. *Of the Diseases of the Spleen.*
13. *Of the Diseases of the Mesentery, &c.*
14. *Of the Diseases of the Reins, &c.*
15. *Of Womens Diseases.*
16. *Of the Diseases of the Joynts, &c.*
17. *Of Feavers, simple, putrid, and pestilential.*
18. *One hundred Observations or Histories, of Famous and Rare Cures.*
19. *One hundred more.*
20. *One hundred more.*
21. *One hundred and thirteen more.*
22. *Select Medicinal Counsels of* John Fernelius, *Chief Physitian to the King.*
23. *An excellent Treatise of the French Pox*
24. *A Physical Dictionary.*

Written in Latin, and in English,

By { *Lazarus Riverius,* Counsellor *and* Physitian *to the* King, &c.
Nicholas Culpeper, Physitian *and* Astrologer.
Abdiah Cole, Doctor of Physick. And *W. R.*

Above seventeen thousand of the said Books in Latin and English, have been sold in a very few Yeers, having been ten times printed, though seven of the former Impressions wanted the *Nature, Causes, Signs,* and *Differences* of the Diseases, and had only the Medicines for the *Cure* of them; as plainly appears by the Authors Epistle.

LONDON:

Printed by *Peter Cole,* Printer and Book-seller, and are to be sold at his Shop, at the Sign of the Printing-press in Cornhil, neer the Royal Exchange. 1658.



THE

THE PRINTER TO THE READER.

READER,

THY cheerful Acceptance of my former Endeavors in this kind for the Good of my Native Country, hath encouraged me, though with great Care, Labor, and Coſt, to preſent thee with the Learned, Judicious, and Worthily renowned *Riverius* his *Practice of Phyſick*. He is an Author now living, and ſufficiently known: And his Work will ſpeak for it ſelf, and praiſe him in the Gates.

And if thou ſhalt ſhew a Friendly Countenance to this worthy Stranger, who now ſpeaks Engliſh, I ſhall be thereby encouraged by all other means to ſtudy to promote thy Good by bringing thee more acquainted with this, and other excellent Authors.

And whereas ſome, either out of envy, or miſ-underſtanding, do condemn Works of this Nature, publiſhed in our Mother Tongue, alleadging chiefly, That ſuch Books encreaſe the number of Empericks; are a hinderance to learned and able Phyſitians; alſo occaſion ſome to hurt themſelves by raſhly practiſing on their own Bodies. I ſhall Anſwer to theſe Objections in order.

Firſt, as for Empericks: Theſe Books, and ſuch as theſe publiſhed in Engliſh, are ſo far from making more Empericks, that they will ſpoil thoſe that are, and make that we ſhall have fewer of them. For an Emperick being one that gives Phyſick (Hab Nab, as wee uſe to ſay) relying only on Experience, and what he hath ſeen done before him, not being able to give any reaſon touching the Diſeaſe, its Cauſe, or Cure: Theſe Books will teach ſuch perſons how to go upon good grounds, and to be able to give a ſolid Reaſon for what they do, and of Empericks, make them Rational Phyſitians, if they be men of good Natural Parts, though they be ignorant of all Tongues but their Mothers.

As for the hurt which is hereby pretended to be done to learned Phyſitians, it is a meer Imagination, and no learned Phyſitian that bethinks himſelf well, will ſo judg. For the uſe of theſe Books reſpects chiefly the Poor of this Nation, together with Sea-farers, and Soldiers. But for the Rich that have Money to ſpare, and bide at home, no otherwiſe (in point of practice) than for an honeſt Curioſity, and delightful Speculation. What rich man is there ſo mad, who reading a Chapter in theſe Books, and ſeeing what a world of Conſiderations and Cautions do belong to the knowledg and orderly Cure of every Diſeaſe, but will be more fearful than ever he was before to commit himſelf to the Cure of any but a learned Phyſitian. Now it is not by the Poor, but by the Rich, that the learned Phyſitian maintains himſelf; the poor are but a trouble to him, only before ſuch Books as theſe were extant in the Engliſh Tongue, Conſcience (ſomtime) forced the learned Phyſitian to take care of the poor, becauſe the unlearned were wholly unable: Whereas now there may be found Induſtrious men that know no more Languages than their Native one, who may in a rational way contribute to the Neceſſities of the Poor. Nay, theſe kind of Books are profitable to the learned Phyſitians; for many of the Gentry, eſpecially of the Ladies and Gentlewomen, viewing the ſtate of their own Bodies in ſuch Books as theſe (as in Looking-Glaſſes) will perceive certain Diſeaſes in themſelves, either now in being, or likely ere long to ſeize upon them, which otherwiſe they would never have ſo much as dream'd of; and thereupon crave the Advice and Aſſiſtance of the learned Phyſitian.

Alſo the Ladies and Gentlewomen being well read in ſuch Books as theſe, will better know how to demean themſelves towards their Huſbands, Children, or other Relations and Friends in their reſpective Sickneſs in point of ordering them, and will be more apprehenſive of the Phyſitians Directions, and ſo better able to practice them; alſo more capable of his Reaſons, and Prognoſticks, and ſo more confident and cheerfully obedient. All which wil very much advance the Cure, and conſequently the Honor and Gain of the learned Phyſitian: for as *Hippocrates* notes in his firſt Aphoriſm, *It is not enough towards the Cure that the Phyſitian do what is fitting; but the by-ſtanders and friends of the Sick muſt play their part, or all will not be well.*

And in the third place, Whereas it is objected, That people reading theſe Books, will practice upon themſelves and hurt themſelves.

I Anſwer, If they do, they have none to blame but their own folly; for it is not the intent of the Publiſhers of theſe Books, that every one that can read Engliſh, ſhould dare to take, of their own Heads, ſuch Medicines as are deſcribed in the ſaid Books. But our intent is, That where

in

in the Country there is no learned Physitian at hand; at Sea, in the States and Merchants Ship, where the Chyrurgion is compelled to act both his own, and the Physitians part; In Armies and Legners, &c. an ingenious and diligent Chyrurgion, Apothecary, or any other that hath from his youth been exercised in these kind of studies, and conversant about the sick, may attain such a competent knowledg in the Causes and Methodical Cure of Diseases, as they may with honor to themselves, and profit to the sick (by Gods Blessing) supply the place of a more learned Physitian. For the use of such persons, these Books are intended, and for diligent Midwives; and not that every Fool should turn Physitian, or that every Reader should tamper with him or her self.

Also divers Honorable Ladies and Gentlewomen, that out of a truly Christian and Charitable Disposition have not disdained, but counted it a great Honor to be helpful to the poor in the time of their sickness, may by perusal of these Books, and the like, confirm and encrease their knowledg, and become honorable Instruments in the Hand of God, of much relief and comfort to many poor distressed Creatures in their respective Countries and places of Habitation. For the worthy sakes of which honorable Ladies and Gentlewomen in the first and chiefest place, and for the ease of all others unacquainted with the Greek and Latin Tongues, and consequently unable to understand divers terms of Art, and other words drawn from the said Tongues (which it was necessary to retain for brevity sake, and to avoid tedious Circumlocutions) I have caused a *Physical Dictionary* to be added at the end of these Books, explaining all such terms of Art aforesaid, as are used therein.

When the Reader meets in these Books, with the names of Simple or Compound Medicaments, and desires a more full knowledg of them, let him have recourse to the *London Dispensatory* in English, where he may be satisfied; for it had been an endless and vain work, to repeat what hath there been said. If there occur accidentally the name of any Disease which the Reader would better understand, let him look into the Table of the Contents of the Chapters of these seventeen Books, and he shall find the Chapter intituled from that Disease; in the beginning of which Chapter he shall find the said Disease described and explained.

Also the Reader may please to take notice, That many hard phrases in these Seventeen Books are explained in the Context, by more easie words following, which signifie the same with the foregoing hard word. As for example, MASTICATORIES, or *Chewing Medicines*, giving the Reader to understand, that *Masticatories*, is as much as to say,

Medicines

Medicines that are only chewed in the mouth to bring away Rhewm by ſpetting.

So GARGARISMS, that is, *Medicines to Gargle in the Throat*: A PLETHORICK, or *full Body*: EMPYEMA, or *Corrupt matter gathered between the Cheſt and Lungs*: HYPOCHONDRIA, or *Parts under the ſhort Ribs*: A VESICATORY, or *Plaiſter to draw Bliſters*. Many ſuch paſſages there are throughout theſe Books, where the latter Clauſe is an expoſition of the former.

And that thou maiſt know to whoſe great Induſtry and pains thou art obliged for the Engliſhing this moſt excellent piece of Art, know that (by reaſon of eight ſeveral Editions in Latin, of which there hath been fifteen thouſand Books ſold) it hath been three times tranſlated at my charge, By *Nicholas Culpeper*, Phyſitian and Aſtrologer; *Abdiah Cole*, Doctor in Phyſick, who hath practiſed Phyſick twenty nine Yeers in the Service of three of the greateſt Princes in Europe: and *William Rowland*, a Knowing Phyſitian: and alſo by an eminently learned and pious Phyſitian, who deſires not to be named, being (as he ſaies) content with the applauſe of his own Conſcience, which tels him that while he was imployed about this Work, he was doing that which would weigh down in profit to his Country, all the good that all the Phyſitians in *London* did or could do in the ſame time; a work that tends to profit many millions, not only of this Generation, but of all that ſhall follow, till the world become one great Bone-fire; or this Nation and Language periſh together. And it hath been (he ſaies) a long time his Opinion, That it is more rational, manly, generous, and Chriſtian, whilſt God ſhall pleaſe to afford him Food and Rayment, to imploy his time and pains in Actions largely conducing to the good of Man-kind, though little advancing his own Fortunes, than in matters of petty and poor Concernment, that bring great gain with them: In which generous Reſolution, God (the Author of it) will, he hopes preſerve him to his dying day; at which time the fruit and profit of his Labors will comfort him, but all the gain in the world will do him no good at all.

Uſe our Labors with Diligence, Care, Ingenuity, Compaſſion towards the ſick, and in the fear of God. Attribute the Succeſs and Honor of all thy Endeavors to him: Bleſs him for the *Light* he diſcovers to this Generation, denied to ſo many Millions of our Anceſtors: Bleſs him for the Piety and Noble Generoſity of our Governors, that give us leave to *Be* as *Good* as we *Will*, and to *Do* all the *Good* we *Can* (though ſeeming to croſs private Intereſt) Oh! what would we have given for this ſingle Priviledg a few Yeers ſince? Or what would the poor Proteſtants in *France* and *Germany* give for the like Favor? How many of them

them have been lately Maſſacred, or made fly from all that was neer and deer to them for want of ſuch a Mercy as this?

Finally, Pray for thoſe that have taken pains in the Work, and among the reſt, for

Thy hearty Wel-wiſher

From my Printing-houſe in
Leaden-Hall, June, 2. 1655.

PETER COLE.

The Names of ſeveral Books Printed by Peter Cole *in Leaden-Hall*, London, *and are to be ſold at his Shop at the ſign of the Printing-preſs in Cornhil, neer the Exchange.*

Eight ſeveral Books, by Nich. Culpeper, *Gent. Student in* Phyſick *and* Aſtrology.

1 A Tranſlation of the *New Diſpenſatory*, made by the Colledg of Phyſitians of *London*. Whereunto is added, The *Key to* Galen's *Method of Phyſick*.

2 A *Directory for Midwives*, or a *Guide for Women*. Newly enlarged by the Author in every ſheet, and Illuſtrated with divers new Plates.

3 *Galen's* Art of *Phyſick*, with a large Comment.

4 The *Engliſh Phyſitian Enlarged*; being an *Aſtrologo-Phyſical* Diſcourſe of the vulgar Herbs of this Nation; wherein is ſhewed how to cure a mans ſelf of moſt Diſeaſes incident to Mans Body, with ſuch things as grow in *England*, and for three pence charge. Alſo in the ſame Book is ſhewed, 1 The time of gathering all Herbs, both Vulgarly and Aſtrologically. 2 The way of drying, and keeping them and their Juyces. 3 The way of making and keeping all manner of uſeful Compounds, made of thoſe Herbs. The way of mixing the Medicines according to the Cauſe, and Mixture of the Diſeaſe, and the part of the Body afflicted.

5 The *Anatomy of the Body of Man*, Wherein is exactly deſcribed, the ſeveral parts of the Body of Man, illuſtrated with very many larger Braſs Plates than ever was in Engliſh before.

6 A *New Method* both of ſtudying and practiſing Phyſick.

7 A Treatiſe of the *Rickets*, being a Diſeaſe common to Children; wherein is ſhewed, 1 The Eſſence, 2 The Cauſes, 3 The Signs, 4 The Remedies of the Diſeaſe; Publiſhed in Latin by Dr. *Gliſſon*, Dr. *Bate*, and Dr. *Regemorter*, tranſlated into Engliſh. And corrected by *N. Culpeper*.

8 The *Practice of Phyſick*, containing ſeventeen Books.

A Godly and Fruitful *Expoſition* on the firſt Epiſtle of *Peter*. By Mr. *John Rogers*, Miniſter of the Word of God at *Dedham* in *Eſſex*.

The Wonders of the *Load-ſtone*. By *Samuel Ward* of *Ipſwitch*.

An *Expoſition* on the Goſpel of the Evangeliſt St. *Matthew*. By Mr. *Ward*.

Clows Chyrurgery.

Marks of Salvation.

Chriſtians Engagement for the Goſpel, by *John Goodwin*.

Great Church Ordinance of Baptiſm.

Mr. *Love's* Cale, containing his Petitions, Narrative, and Speech.

Vox Pacifica, or a perſwaſive to peace.

Dr. *Preſtons* Saints ſubmiſſion, and Satans Overthrow.

Pious Mans Practice in Parliament Time.

Mr. *Symſons* Sermon at Weſtminſter.

Mr. *Feaks* Sermon before the Lord Major.

Mr. *Phillips* Treatiſe of Hell.

——— of Chriſts Geneology.

Eaton on the Oath of Allegiance and Covenant, ſhewing that they oblige not.

Eleven Books of Mr. Jeremiah Burroughs *lately publiſhed*; *As alſo the Texts of Scripture upon which they are grounded.*

1 The Rare Jewel of *Chriſtian Contentment*, on *Phil.* 4. 11. Wherein is ſhewed, 1 What *Contentment* is, 2 It is an Holy Art and Myſtery, 3 The Excellencies of it, 4 The Evil of the contrary ſin of Murmuring, and the Aggravations of it.

2 *Goſpel Worſhip*, on *Levit.* 10. 3. Wherein is ſhewed, 1 The right manner of the Worſhip of God in general; and particularly, In Hearing the Word, Receiving the Lords Supper, and Prayer.

3 *Goſpel Converſation*, on *Phil.* 1. 17. Wherein is ſhewed, 1 That the Converſations of Beleevers muſt be above what could be by the Light of Nature, 2 Beyond thoſe that lived under the Law, 3 And ſutable to what Truths the Goſpel holds forth. To which is added, *The Miſery of thoſe men that have their Portion in this Life only*, on *Pſal.* 17. 14.

4 A Treatiſe of *Earthly-Mindedneſs*, Wherein is ſhewed, 1 What Earthly-mindedneſs is, 2 The great Evil thereof, on *Phil.* 3. part of the 19. Verſe. Alſo to the ſame Book is joyned, A Treatiſe of *Heavenly-Mindedneſs, and Walking with God*, on *Gen.* 5. 24. and on *Phil.* 3. 20.

5 An *Expoſition*, on the fourth, fifth, ſixth, and ſeventh Chapters of the Propheſie of *Hoſea*.

6 An *Expoſition* on the eighth, ninth, and tenth Chapters of *Hoſea*.

7 An *Expoſition* on the eleventh, twelfth, and thirteenth Chapters of *Hoſea*, being now compleat.

8 The *Evil of Evils*, or the exceeding Sinfulneſs of *Sin*, on *Job*, 36. 21.

9 Precious Faith, on 2 *Pet.* 1. 1.

10 Of Hope, on 1 *John.* 3. 3.
11 Of Walking by Faith, on 2 *Cor.* 5. 7.

Twelve ſeveral Books of Mr. William Bridge, *Collected into one Volumn.* Viz.

1 The Great Goſpel Myſtery of the Saints Comfort and Holineſs, opened and applied from Chriſts Prieſtly Office.
2 Satans Power to Tempt; and Chriſts Love to, and Care of His People under Temptation.
3 Thankfulneſs required in every Condition.
4 Grace for Grace; or, the Over-flowing of Chriſts Fulneſs received by all Saints.
5 The Spiritual Actings of Faith through Natural Impoſſibilities.
6 Evangelical Repentance.
7 The Spiritual Life, and In-being of Chriſt in all Beleevers.
8 The Woman of Canaan.
9 The Saints Hiding-place in time of Gods Anger.
10 Chriſts Coming is at our Midnight.
11 A Vindication of Goſpel Ordinances.
12 Grace and Love beyond Gifts.

A Congregational Church is a Catholick Viſible Church. By *Samuel Stone* in *New England.*

A Treatiſe of Politick Powers, wherein ſeven Queſtions are Anſwered, 1 Whereof Power is made, and for what ordained. 2 Whether Kings and Governors have an Abſolute Power over the People. 3 Whether Kings and Governors be ſubject to the Laws of God, or the Laws of their Countrie. 4 How far the People are to obey their Governors. 5 Whether all the people have, be their Governors. 6 Whether it be Lawful to depoſe an evil Governor 7 What Confidence is to be given to Princes.

The Compaſſionate Samaritan.

Dr. *Sibbs* on the Philippians.

The Beſt and Worſt Magiſtrate. By *Obadiah Sedgwick.*

The Craft and Cruelty of the Churches Adverſaries. By *Matthew Newcomen.*

A Sacred Panegerick. By *Stephen Martial.*

Barriffs Military Diſcipline.

The Immortality of Mans Soul.

The Anatomiſt Anatomized.

King *Charls* his Caſe, or an Appeal to all Rational Men concerning his Tryal.

Mr. *Owens* ſtedfaſtneſs of the Promiſes.

A Vindication of Free Grace; Endeavoring to prove, 1 That we are not elected as holy, but that we ſhould be holy; and that Election is not of kinds, but perſons. 2 That Chriſt did not by his Death intend to ſave all men, and touching thoſe whom he intended to ſave, that he did not die for them only if they would beleeve, but that they might beleeve. 3 That we are not juſtified properly by our beleeving in Chriſt, but by our Chriſt, beleeving in. 4 That, that which differenceth one man from another, is not the improvement of a common ability reſtored through Chriſt to all men in general, but a principle of Grace wrought by the Spirit of God in the Elect. By *John Pawſon.*

Six Sermons preached by Doctor *Hill.* Viz.

1 The Beauty and Sweetneſs of an Olive Branch of Peace, and Brotherly Accommodation budding.
2 Truth and Love happily married in the Church of Chriſt.
3 The Spring of ſtrengthening Grace in the Rock of Ages Chriſt Jeſus.
4 The ſtrength of the Saints to make Jeſus Chriſt their ſtrength.
5 The Beſt and Worſt of *Paul.*
6 Gods eternal preparation for his Dying Saints.

The Biſhop of *Canterbury*'s Speech on the Scaffold.

The King's Speech on the Scaffold.

The Magiſtrates Support and Burden. By Mr. *John Cordel.*

The Diſcipline of the Church in *New England*, by the Churches and Synod there.

A Relation of *Barbadoes.*

A Relation of the Repentance and Converſion of the *Indians* in *New-England*; By Mr. *Eliot*, and Mr. *Mayhew.*

The Hiſtory of *Montroſs*: and his Actions for Charles the Firſt. His paſſions for Charles the Second King of *Scots.*

The Inſtitutes of the Laws of *England* by *John Cowel*, Octavo.

A deſcription of the Grand Signors *Seraglio*; or Turkiſh Emperors Court. By *John Greaves.* Octavo.

The reigning error Arraigned at the Bar of ſcripture, and Reaſon. By *Francis Fulwood.* Octavo.

The ſtate of Future Life. By *Thomas White.* Twelves.

The Royal and delightful Game of *Picquet*, written in French, and now rendered into Engliſh. Octavo.

De copore Politico: or, The Elements of Law, moral, and politick. By *Thomas Hobs of Malmſbury.*

The Hiſtory of the Rites, Cuſtoms, and manner of life, of the preſent *Jews* throughout the World. Octavo.

The *London* Diſpenſatory in Latin in Folio.

The *London* Diſpenſatory in Latin in Twelves.

A Poem upon the late Fight at ſea, between the two great Fleets of *England* and *Holland.*

Theſe ſeveral Books of Phyſick and Chyrurgerie will ſhortly be printed in Engliſh.

Riverius Obſervations, with fifteen hundred and ſeventie other Hiſtories and Obſervations of other men.

Riolanus Anatomy.

Bartholinus Anatomy.

All the Works of *Daniel Sennertus*, except ſome few, not proper for Tranſlation.

The *Idea of Practical Phyſick*, being a compleat Body of Phyſick.

And *Fernelius* his Works.

Theſe Books of Divinity will ſpeedily be printed.

Mr. *Burroughs*, on 1 *Cor.* 5. 7. and 18, 19. 29. And fifty nine Sermons on *Matthew*, 11. 28, 29, 30.

Seventeen Books of Mr. *Thomas Hooker*, being the ſubſtance of many Sermons preached in *New-England.*

Several pieces of Mr. *Bridge* of *Yarmouth. Viz.*

1 *Scripture Light the moſt ſure Light:* compared with, 1. Revelations and Viſions. 2. Natural and ſupernatural Dreams. 3. Impreſſions with and without Word. 4. Light and Law within. 5. Divine Providence. 6. Chriſtian Experience. 7. Humane Reaſon. 8. Judicial Aſtrology. Delivered in three Sermons on 2 *Pet.* 1. 19.

2 *Chriſt in Travel:* Wherein, The 1. Travel of his ſoul. 2. The firſt and after effects of his Death. 3. His Aſſurance of Iſſue. 4. And His ſatisfaction therein. Are opened and cleered in three Sermons, on *Eſay*, 53. 11.

3 *A Lifting up for the Caſt-down*, in caſe of 1. Great ſin. 2. Weakneſs of Grace. 3. Miſcarriage of Duties. 4. Want of Aſſurance. 5. Affliction. 6. Temptation. 7. Diſſertion. 8. Unſerviceableneſs. 9. Diſcouragements from the Condition it ſelf. Delivered in thirteen Sermons on *Pſalm*, 42. 11.

His Four Sermons concerning
1 Sin againſt the Holy-Ghoſt.
2 Sins of Infirmities.
3 The fifth Monarchy.
4 The Good and means of Eſtabliſhment.

Franciſci Tayleri, Capitula Patrum: Hebraicè & Latinè edita. Una cum Annotationibus ſenſum locorum difficilium Experimentibus.

Franciſci Tayleri, Lamentationes Jeremiæ variis, Denuo è fontibus Hebraicis tranſlatæ, cum Paraphraſi Chaldaica, Maſora magna & parva, & Commentariis Rabbi Shelomoh, Jarchi & Aben Ezræ, è Buxtorfii Bibliis magnis excerptis.

The

The Author to the Reader.

FIfteen Yeers ago (Friendly Reader) to Satisfie the Desires of my Auditors, I undertook to explain unto them the Methodicall Cure of all inward Diseases of the Body; which that I might accomplish the sooner, I medled not at all in a manner with the Theory, knowing ful well that any Student might with ease enough fetch the same from divers Authors: which notwithstanding they could not so easily do in point of Practice, because of the almost infinite Company & variety of Medicaments, wherewith the Books of those that have delivered the Practical part of Physick do swarm; with which Young Beginners are so confounded, that they remain amazed, not knowing which to choose. I conceived it would be most profitable for them, if out of such a multitude of Medicaments, I should select the most choice, and which were most frequently used, and dispose them into the same order which we are wont to observe in our Practice, when we attend the Cure of our sick Patients.

This Method of teaching, gave such content to our Students of Physick, that as many as came flocking to this University to study, after that I had finished the same, did all earnestly desire to have written Coppies thereof; and many of them did frequently exhort me, and earnestly Beg, that I would suffer it to be printed; and so for the future free all Men from the tedious Labor of writing it out. But I, who never had the thought (being very free from Self-Love) that my Writings were of so much worth, as to be published in Print, especially this Method of Practice, which was slipt from me as a thing only begun with rude Notes, hastily huddled up to perform my daily task of Reading, and half maimed for want of the Theoretick part: I thought it better to beleeve my own Conscience than their too favourable Opinion. I pondered likewise in my Mind, that it was a very hazardous thing, to subject my Reputation to the Judgment of the whol World, and (as it commonly falls out) to the biting Teeth of envious detractors; especially in this polished Age, abounding with neat and passing fine Witts, who are hardly pleased with such workes as have been wrought with the greatest Industry possible, and who are wont to peep curiously to spy spots in the shining Sun. Nevertheless this unperfect Birth of mine; which I desired to keep close and hidden, was sent into the wide World by one of my Schollers, who without my knowledg, and against my will, gave that imperfect, homely and unpolished work to a Printer of Paris to print. And this Child of mine which I did count Abortive, was more pleasing and found greater Favour in the Eyes of Strangers, than in its Fathers; for all the Books of this first Edition, were suddainly sold off. A second Edition, and a little after a Third was procured by the same Printer, by which all Europe was filled with Copies. Nevertheless, some yeers after, there came out three other Editions within two yeers time, one at Lions, and two other in Holland viz. at

Tergow

Tergow *and the* Hague. *In the mean while, I received very many Letters, out of the Chief Cities of* FRANCE, GERMANY, HOLLAND, *and* ITALY, *from Doctors of Phyſick, whom I was acquainted with, when they ſtudied Phyſick in this Univerſity; ſeriouſly expoſtulating, that this Work was Lame becauſe it wanted the Theory of the Diſeaſes, and withall adviſing me that it would be worth my pains, to ſpend ſome part of my ſtudies that way. Conceiving at length that it was fitting to conſent unto their juſt requeſts, I laboured with all my might as far as my Employments and Health would give me leave, to finiſh and publiſh this Theoretick part; inſomuch that at laſt (Bleſſed and Praiſed be God) I brought the ſame to a concluſion. Accept it (freindly Reader) with a cheerfull mind, being Joyned to the foreſaid Practick part, ſo that in one continued Diſcourſe thou maieſt Behold the* Nature, Differences, Cauſes, Diagnoſtick, *and* Prognoſtick Signs, *together with* the Cure of all Diſeaſes. *I Suppoſe this Child of mine will merit highly thy Favour, being now adorned in all its parts, and advanced to a far greater Degree of Perfection; and ſeeing that thou wert pleaſed with it in its Cradle and Swadling-Clouts; now that it is greater and hath attained its perfect Stature of Body, it will not, I hope, Diſpleaſe thee. Enjoy it with Gods Bleſſing, and whatever thou ſhalt learn therefrom, let Chriſtian Charity cauſe the to employ it for thee Good of thy Neighbour. Alſo I deſire thee to take notice, that many faults were crept into the former Editions through the negligence of Printers, all which I have carefully corrected in this Edition. And furthermore, I have added many and thoſe very Choice Medicaments, to the Cures formerly printed, which will not a little conduce to the happy cure of difficult Diſeaſes. Farewel.*

From my Study at *Monpelier*,
the firſt of *July*, 1653.

Lazarus Riverius.

An EPIGRAM, ſhewing who are Doctors of Phyſick, and who not.

Doctors or *Teachers* they of *Phyſick* are
(Whether by Pen they do it, or in Chair
With lively Voyce) that teach the way to know
Mans Nature, *Health*, and *Sickneſs*, and do ſhow
Diſeaſes, *Cauſe*, and *Cure*. But they who ſpend
Their Life in *Viſits*, and whoſe *Labors* end
In taking *Fees*, and giving *Paper-ſcrowls*
FACTORS of *Phyſick* are; and none but *Owls*
Do count ſuch *Doctors*, that *no Latin* know,
From whence that *Name* did to our Language flow.

W. B. *Doctor and Factor Of Phyſick.*

The Contents of all the Seventeen Books.

The First Book of the Practice of Physick.

Of the Diseases of the Head.

The PREFACE.

Chap. 1. *Of the Cold Distemper of the Brain.* 8
Chap. 2. *Of Drouzie Diseases, called,* Coma, Lethargy, Carus, *and* Apoplexy. 9
Chap. 3. *Of Waking Coma.* 16
Chap. 4. *Of the Sleeping Diseases called,* Caroche, *and* Catalepsis, *or* Congelation. 16
Chap. 5. *Of the Palsey, or* Paralysis. 18
Chap. 6. *Of a Convulsion.* 24
Chap. 7. *Of the Epilepsie, or Falling-sickness.* 28
Chap. 8. *Of the Falling-sickness in Children.* 33
Chap. 9. *Of Giddiness, called* Vertigo. 35
Chap. 10. *Of* Tremor, *or Trembling.* 37
Chap. 11. *Of* Phrenitis, *or Phrensie.* 38
Chap. 12. *Of the Imposthume, and* Spacelus, *or Mortification of the Brain.* 44
Chap. 13. *Of* Mania, *or Madness.* 45
Chap. 14. *Of Melancholly:* 48
Chap. 15. *Of a Catarrh, or Defluxion.* 50
Chap. 16. *Of the Head-ach.* 56

The Second Book of the Practice of Physick.

Of the Diseases of the Eyes.

The PREFACE.

Chap. 1. *Of* Gutta Serena, *or* Amaurosis. 62
Chap. 2. *Of the Disease of the Vitrous, or Glassy Humor.* 66
Chap. 3. *Of the Diseases in the Crystalline Humor.* 66
Chap. 4. *Of the Diseases of the Watery Humor, and especially of a Suffusion.* 68
Chap. 5. *Of the Enlarging, or Dilatation of the Pupilla.* 74
Chap. 6. *Of the straitness, or Contraction of the Pupilla.* 75
Chap. 7. *Of* Albugo, *or the white Spot called Pin and Web, and of other Colours of the Cornea changed.* 76
Chap. 8. *Of* Ophthalmia, *or Inflamation of the Eyes.* 78
Chap. 9. *Of* Hypopyon, *or Matter under the* Cornea. 85
Chap. 10. *Of* Phlyctænæ, *or Blisters in the Eyes.* 86
Chap. 11. *Of the Ulcers in the* Cornea *and* Adnata. 86
Chap. 12. *Of a Cancer in the* Cornea. 87
Chap. 13. *Of the Rupture of the Cornea.* 88
Chap. 14. *Of the Coming forth of the* Uvea. 89
Chap. 15. *Of* Ægylops, *and Fistula Lacrymalis,* 89
Chap. 16. *Of Rhyas and Encanthis.* 90
Chap. 17. *Of Epiphora.* 91
Chap. 18. *Of* Pterygium, *or Haw in the Eyes, called* Unguis. 93

The Third Book of the Practice of Physick.

Of the Diseases of the Ears.

The PREFACE.

Chap. 1. *Of Deafness, and thick or dull Hearing.* 95
Chap. 2. *Of Noise in the Ears.* 99
Chap. 3. *Of Pain in the Ears.* 101
Chap. 4. *Of those things which come forth of the Cavities of the Ears preternaturally.* 106

The Fourth Book of the Practice of Physick.

Of the Diseases of the Nostrils.

The PREFACE.

Chap. 1. *Of the Ulcer of the Noſtrils, and* Ozæna. 108
Chap. 2. *Of Sarcoma, and Polypus.* 110
Chap. 3. *Of the loſs of Smelling.* 111
Chap. 4. *Of the Stink of the Noſtrils.* 112
Chap. 5. *Of Coryza, or Poſe.* 112
Chap. 6. *Of Sternutation, or Neezing.* 113
Chap. 7. *Of Bleeding at the Noſe, called* Hæmorrhagia. 114

The Fifth Book of the Practice of Phyſick.

Of the Diſeaſes of the Tongue.

The PREFACE.

Chap. 1. *Of the Inflamation of the Tongue, and other Tumors of the ſame.* 123
Chap. 2. *Of the Tumor called* Ranula *under the Tongue.* 125
Chap. 3. *Of the Taſte being Hurt.* 126
Chap. 4. *Of the Palzey of the Tongue, and the Hurt Motion thereof.* 127

The Sixth Book of the Practice of Phyſick.

Of the Diſeaſes of the Teeth, Gums, Jaws, Pallat, and Wind-pipe, or Larynx.

The PREFACE.

Chap. 1. *Of the Tooth-Ach.* 129
Chap. 2. *Of the blackneſs and rottenneſs of the Teeth.* 134
Chap. 3. *Of the Eroſion or eating away, and of the Exulceration of the Gums.* 134
Chap. 4. *Of bleeding at the Gums.* 135
Chap. 5. *Of the Ulcers of the Mouth, and Jaws.* 136
Chap. 6. *Of the Relaxation of the Uvula, or Falling Down of the Pallat.* 137
Chap. 7. *Of* Angina, *or Quinzie, or Squinvie.* 138

The Seventh Book of the Practice of Phyſick.

Of the Diſeaſes of the Breaſt.

The PREFACE.

Chap. 1. *Of* Aſthma, *or difficulty of Breathing.* 146
Chap. 2. *Of* Pleuritis, *or a Pleuriſie.* 152
Chap. 3. *Of* Peripneumonia, *or Inflamation of the Lungs.* 158
Chap. 4. *Of* Empyema, *or matter in the hollow of the Thorax.* 160
Chap. 5. *Of the Dropſie in the Breaſt.* 163
Chap. 6. *Of* Hæmoptysis, *or Spetting of Blood.* 164
Chap. 7. *Of* Phthiſis, *or Conſumption.* 169

The Eighth Book of the Practice of Phyſick.

Of the Diſeaſes of the Heart.

The PREFACE.

Chap. 1. *Of* Syncope, *or Swooning.* 178
Chap. 2. *Of the Palpitation, or Breathing of the Heart.* 182
Chap. 3. *Of Weakneſſe.* 245

The Ninth Book of the Practice of Phyſick.

Of the Diſeaſes of the Stomach.

The PREFACE.

Chap. 1. *Of Want of Appetite, or Loathing of Meat,* 249
Chap. 2. *Of Dogs Appetite, called* Fames canina. 254
Chap. 3. *Of* Pica *and* Malacia. 256
Chap. 4. *Of the Thirſty Diſeaſe, called* Sitis Morboſa. 258
Chap. 5. *Of the Hurt Concoction of the Stomach.* 259
Chap. 6. *Of* Singultus, *or Hiccough.* 262
Chap. 7. *Of* Nauſea, *and Vomiting.* 295
Chap. 8. *Of Vomiting Blood.* 269
Chap. 9. *Of the Diſeaſe called Cholera.* 272
Chap. 10. *Of Pain in the Stomach, called* Dolor Ventriculi. 274
Chap. 11. *Of the Inflamation. Ulcer, and Impoſthume in the Stomach.* 277

The Tenth Book of the Practice of Phyſick.

Of the Diſeaſes of the Inteſtines, or Guts,

The PREFACE.

Chap. 1. *Of the Chollick.* 230
Chap. 2. *Of the Iliack Paſſion.* 285

Chap.

Chap. 3. *Of Astriction, or binding of the Belly.* 288
Chap. 4. *Of Lientery, and Cœliack Passion.* 289
Chap. 5. *Of Diarrhœa.* 291
Chap. 6. *Of* Dysenteria. *or Dysentery.* 295
Chap. 7. *Of Tenesmus.* 303
Chap. 8. *Of* Fluxus Hepaticus, *or Flux of the Liver.* 305
Chap. 9. *Of the Worms.* 307
Chap. 10. *Of the Immoderate Flux of the Hæmorrhoids.* 313
Chap. 11. *Of the Pain of the Hæmorrhoids.* 316

The Eleventh Book of the Practice of Physick.

Of the Diseases of the Liver.

The PREFACE.

Chap. 1. *Of the Hot Distemper of the Liver.* 320
Chap. 2. *Of the Inflamation, Imposthume and Ulcer of the Liver.* 323
Chap. 3. *Of the Stoppage, or Obstruction of the Liver.* 327
Chap. 4. *Of the Jaundice.* 333
Chap. 5. *Of the Scirrhus of the Liver.* 335
Chap. 6. *Of the Dropsie.* 336

The Twelfth Book of the Practice of Physick.

Of the Diseases of the Spleen.

The PREFACE.

Chap. 1. *Of the Inflamation of the Spleen.* 347
Chap. 2. *Of the Pain of the Spleen.* 348
Chap. 3. *Of Obstruction, Tumor, or Puffing up of the Spleen.* 348
Chap. 4. *Of the Scirrhus, or Hard Swelling of the Spleen.* 349
Chap. 5. *Of Hypochondriack Melancholly.* 350
Chap. 6. *Of the Scurvy.* 357

The Thirteenth Book of the Practice of Physick.

Of the Diseases of the Mesentery, Sweet-bread, and Caul.

The PREFACE.

Chap. 1. *Of the Obstruction of the Mesentery* 362
Chap. 2. *Of the Inflamation of the Mesentery.* 363
Chap. 3. *Of the Imposthume, Ulcer, and Scirrhus of the Mesentery.* 364
Chap. 4. *Of the Diseases of the* Pancreas, *or Sweet-bread.* 365
Chap. 5. *Of the Diseases of the Caul, or* Omentum. 366

The Fourteenth Book of the Practice of Physick

Of the Diseases of the Reins and Bladder.

The PREFACE.

Chap. 1. *Of the Stone in the Kidneyes, and Pain in the Reins, called* Dolor Nephriticus. 367
Chap. 2. *Of the Stone in the Bladder.* 378
Chap. 3. *Of the Inflamation of the Reins and Bladder.* 382
Chap. 4. *Of Pissing of Blood.* 385
Chap. 5. *Of the Ulcer of the Reins and Bladder.* 387
Chap. 6. *Of* Diabetes, *or extraordinary Pissing.* 390
Chap. 7. *Of Pissing the Bed, of Involuntary Pissing, or not containing of Urine.* 392
Chap. 8. *Of stoppage of the Urine, and Strangury.* 394
Chap. 9. *Of* Dysuria, *or Scalding of the Urine.* 397

The Fifteenth Book of the Practice of Physick.

Of Womens Diseases.

The PREFACE.

Chap. 1. *Of the Green-sickness, called* Chlorosis. 400
Chap. 2. *Of the stoppage of the Terms.* 403
Chap. 3. *Of the Immoderate Flux of the Courses.* 409
Chap. 4. *Of the Whites.* 413
Chap. 5. *Madness from the Womb.* 417
Chap. 6. *Of the Mother-Fits, or Womb-sickness.* 420
Chap. 7. *Of Inflamation of the Womb.* 431
Chap. 8. *Of an Ulcer of the Womb,* 434
Chap. 9. *Of a* Scirrhus, *or a Painless hard Swelling of the Womb* 490
Chap. 10. *Of a Cancer of the Womb.* 492
Chap. 11. *Of Mortification, or Gangrenation, and*

and Sphacelation, or Blasting of the Womb. 493
Chap. 12. *Of the Womb's Wind-and-Water Swelling, or Dropsie.* 494
Chap. 13. *Of the falling down of the Womb* 498
Chap. 14. *Of the Womb shut up, or Imperforated* 501
Chap. 15. *Of Barrenness* 502
Chap. 16. *Of Acute and Chronical Diseases of Women with Child* 509
Chap. 17. *Of Abortion or Miscarriage* 512
Chap. 18. *Of Hard Child-birth* 517
Chap. 19. *Of a dead Child.* 520
Chap. 20. *Of the After-birth retained* 521
Chap. 21. *Of Immoderate flux of the* Loches, *or Child-bed Purgations.* 523
Chap. 22. *Of Suppression of Child-bed Purgations.* 524
Chap. 23. *Of Gripings after Child-bearing* 525
Chap. 24. *Of Acute Diseases of Women in Child-bed* 527

The Sixteenth Book of the Practice of Physick.

Of Diseases of the Joynts, and Rheumatick Pain of the whol Body.

The PREFACE.

Chap. 1. *Of Pain in the Joynts, called* Arthritis, *or the Gout.* 531
Chap. 2. *Of the Hip-Gout, or Sciatica* 544
Chap. 3. *Of Rheumatick Pains of the whol Body* 547

The Seventeenth Book of the Practice of Physick.

Of FEAVERS.

The PREFACE.

SECT. I.
Of Simple Feavers.

The Preface.

Chap. 1. *Of the Feaver* Ephemera. 553
Chap. 2. *Of the Feaver* Synochus Simplex 554
Chap. 3. *Of an Hectick Feaver.* 555

SECT. II.
Of Putrid Feavers.

The Preface.

Chap. 1. *Of Continual Putrid Feavers* 560
Chap. 2. *Of the Symptomes which accompany Putrid Feavers.* 575
Chap. 3 *Of a Tertian Ague* 580
Chap. 4 *Of a Quotidian Feaver* 585
Chap. 5 *Of a Quartan Ague* 586
Chap. 6 *Of Compounded or Complicated Feavers, and particularly of a Semi-Tertian* 593

SECT. III.
Of Pestilential Feavers.

The Preface.

Chap. 1. *Of a Pestilential Feaver.* 611
Chap. 2. *Of the Measles, and small Pox* 637

THE FIRST BOOK OF THE PRACTICE OF PHYSICK.

Of the Diſeaſes of the Head.

The PREFACE.

IN *this our Treatiſe of Head-Diſeaſes, we ſpeak firſt only of thoſe which are in the ſubſtance of the Brain, and the Films which contain it: For although the Eyes, Ears, Tongue, Teeth, Gums, Jaws, and Pallat, go to the making up of the Head; yet we think it fit to ſpeak of their Diſeaſes in ſeveral Books for better Method ſake; And to call the Diſeaſes of the Brain and its* Meninges, *or Films, by the name of* Head-diſeaſes, *moſt properly ſo from the excellency of the parts wherein they are. Theſe come from the* hinderance *of the* Action *of the Brain, either in reſpect of* Sence, Motion, *or* Nutrition. *The Sence is divided into Internal, and External: The Internal hath the chief actions, as Imagination, Reaſoning, Memory; as alſo Sleep and Waking: the Diſeaſes of which are, Frenzie, Madneſs, Melancholly,* Catoche, Coma *waking ſleep, and* Coma *long ſleep, Lethargie,* Carus, *Apoplexy. The External Sences are five, namely, Sight, Hearing, Smelling, Taſt, and Feeling: But becauſe the firſt four have their peculiar Organs or parts, which have divers Diſeaſes, which we ſhall treat of in ſeveral Books: We will in this Book lay down and declare thoſe which belong to the*

sence of Feeling, because they come immediately from the Brain *and its Membranes or Films disturbed, and are either termed Palsies, which come from Sence destroyed or diminished; or Headaches, which comes from Sence depraved. When the actions of the* Brain *are hindred in respect of motion, there ariseth Convulsion, Falling-sickness, Palsey, Apoplexy, Giddiness, or swimming of the Head, called* Vertigo, *and Trembling: Finally, When the acting or working of the* Brain *is hurt or hindred in its* Nutrition, *or* Nourishment, *the Disease is either in distemperature, or disorder of the excrement of the* Brain, *of which cometh a Catarrh, defluxion or distillation. We shall bring all these Diseases under their proper Heads and Chapters, in that order which is most usual for the way of Cure: Therefore we shall first declare the Cold Distemperature of the Brain, and then all Diseases that come from thence, because the ground of their Cure is in the Cure of that. Afterwards we shall lay down the Diseases that come from a Hot Distemper, and Hot Humors; which will all more clearly appear in their several Chapters.*

CHAP. I.

Of the Cold Distemper of the Brain.

ALL Distempers are usually divided into Simple, and Compound; Material, and Immaterial. Simple or single Distempers are seldom seen; as also immaterial distempers, for they come from Primary Causes, and either vanish of their own accord, or with very smal Remedies or Medicines: But Material Distempers produce all the Diseases of the Head; therefore we will fall close to discourse of them; which few Authors have done, in handling them severally, because in the laying down of the Diseases which are produced of those Distempers, they are sufficiently explained. We therefore will transfer the handling of the Hot distemper of the Brain, and also the Moist and dry Distempers to the Chapters which contain those Diseases which are produced from them. But because the greatest number of Diseases of the Head come from a Cold and Moist Distemper of the Brain, we thought fit to discourse of that by it self in the beginning of this Treatise; that the Cure of that may be as the Foundation of the Cure of all Diseases coming from thence, and that the Medicines may be found in this Chapter which appertain to the Cure of their Cause: Therefore we will avoid the vain repetition of those Diseases, which is the Custom of almost all Writers of Practical Physick, who by that means enlarge their Volumns, and make the Art more difficult and tedious to yong beginners.

The Cold Distemper of the Brain which is Compound and Material, or joyned with Matter, is for the most part waterish and moist; because the Brain is that Mother of Moisture or Flegm, and Coldness long abiding draws moisture to it self. For albeit sometimes it is joyned with a Melancholly Humor, yet that Humor is seldom begot in the Brain as Flegm is, but it is for the most part lodged in the *Hypochondria*, or Parts beneath the Ribs, and sent from thence to the Brain, whereby most grievous Symptomes are produced.

The Causes of a Cold and Flegmatick Distemper of the Brain, are these:

1 Cold and moist Meats which eatily turn into Flegm; and also in the time of their Concoction, by cooling the Stomach and the Liver too much, produce abundance of Flegm, which after is sent up to the Brain.

2 Too great a quantity, not only of Meats which are too cold, but also of good and wholsom, which destroyeth the Natural heat, and begetteth Crudities.

3 Eating presently after or before meat, and before the former meat is concocted; whence come many Crudities, which send Flegm to the Head.

4 The

4 The ceaſing of a Natural cuſtom of vomiting, or purging flegm; or the omitting the Cuſtom of taking Purges, Sweats, Diuretricks, or provokers of Urine, or omitting of accuſtomed Exerciſe.

5 To be born of Parents troubled with a cold diſtemper of Brain.

6 Old Age, which by reaſon of the decay of Natural heat, produceth much Flegm: as alſo Youth by reaſon of Gluttony and diſorderly Diet.

7 A Cold and Moiſt dwelling, neer ſtanding Pools, Marſhes, Fens and great Rivers, open to the North winds, Snow and Rain.

8 Long and deep ſleep, eſpecially preſently after Meat.

9 A ſedentary idle life, without, or with too much Care, Study, or Sorrow, becauſe by diſperſing the Natural heat, eſpecially in the Brain, they make it cold.

10 To theſe may be added a hot and moiſt Liver, which ſends many Vapors to the Brain, which there condenſe or grow thick, and ſo turn into Flegm.

The Signs of a cold diſtemper of the Brain, are taken either from the Cauſes above mentioned, by the preſence of which we may eaſily conjecture of the condition of the diſtemper; or they are taken from the effects of the diſtemper; which that they may be particularly examined and tried, we ſhall fetch from their Originals, namely, from Actions, Paſſions, Excrements, and Habit of the Body.

1 The Animal Actions, which declare a cold Diſtemper of the Brain, are theſe; A heavy and dull Mind, a ſlow blockiſh Wit, an unfortunate Memory, a great inclination to ſleep, and long and deep continuance therein, except a Catarth, or Defluxion, Pain of the Head, or Paſſions of the Mind do hinder it: Dreams of Coldneſs, of Waters, as Rain, Snow, Floods, Pools, Seas, and of white things: A ſlowneſs and dulneſs of all the Sences: Slowneſs of Motion, yet continuance therein; becauſe groſs Spirits are more difficult to be diffuſed or diſſolved.

2 The Paſſions which declare a Cold Diſtemper of the Brain, are Cold Diſeaſes, as Palſies, Lethargy, Catarth, or Defluxion, and many others, with which if the ſick party have been formerly troubled, we may well conjecture that he is ſubject to this diſtemper of a cold Brain. This will further appear if the ſick man be better in clear, hot, and dry weather, than in cold, moiſt, winter, and rainy weather. Moreover, an often and plentiful ſending forth of ſnot and flegm from the Mouth and Noſtrils, is a clear demonſtration of abundance of cold Flegm and moiſture in the Brain.

3 From the Habit of the Body, we may have ſigns both general and particular of this Diſtemper: The general Signs are taken from the whol Habit or Conſtitution; for if the whol Conſtitution be cold and moiſt, then without queſtion the Brain, which is moſt cold and moiſt of all other parts, is the ſame: Therefore a Skin which is cold, ſoft, ſmooth, and white; a Body ſoft and ſlow, not fleſhy, with ſmal veins, declare a cold conſtitution or temper. The particular Signs of a cold Brain are in the Head; as paleneſs of Face, no Veins to be ſeen in the Eyes, ſoft hair, ſmooth, and thin, growing ſlowly, red, and not curling, continuing the whol life without baldneſs; and when the Head is quickly offended with outward Cold, and refreſhed with Heat.

As to the Prognoſis, or Prognoſtical part concerning this Diſtemper; It is hard to be cured, and often produceth grievous Diſeaſes: that which hath been long breeding is moſt hard to be cured; that which is Natural, Hereditary, and from the Birth, is never to be cured; as alſo that which is in old folks, if it hath been of long continuance. Winter is not a fit time for the Cure of this Diſtemper but Summer.

The Cure is wrought from two Indications or Intentions; namely by evacuating or diſcharging the flegm abounding, and correcting or qualifying the diſtemper of the Humor by its contraries, which muſt be done by Diet, Chyrurgery, and Phyſick.

The Diet muſt be hot and dry; and firſt make choyce of a pure Air, ſomwhat hot and dry, but not too hot, for that would diſſolve and powr forth the humors in the Head too ſoon, and ſo produce a diſtillation, and other diſeaſes which happen to thoſe who ſtay long in the Sun, or inflame their heads with too neer approach to the fire: The Air cannot be too dry, ſo it be temperate in its active qualities, but it had better be too hot than too cold.

Let not the Chamber of the ſick party be too little, too low, nor too moiſt or filthy, but open to dry winds which may paſs through: In moiſt, cloudy, cold times, the Chamber air may be altered with hot and ſweet Herbs ſtrewed upon floor; as Sage, Marjoram, Lavender, Roſemary, Tyme; or by burning the ſame, or other dry Woods, and eſpecially Juniper: let the fire be cleer, and ſuch as will dry the Air in the Chamber: Fumigations if they be not too ſtrong, do well to conſume moiſture; but they muſt be carefully uſed, they muſt be very gentle and moderate, otherwiſe they do hurt by melting and powring forth the cold humors too ſpeedily, which cauſe defluxions: and alſo you muſt conſider the Patients Conſtitution in the uſe of them, for ſome men are preſently brought to the Head-ach by any ſtrong ſcent, having their heads preſently filled with the vapor: A temperate and proper Fumigation is made of the pureſt Amber, putting little pieces thereof upon the Coals; it's

no way offenſive, dries well, and ſtrengthens the Brain, eſpecially the Indian Amber, called *Gum-Animi*; or you may preſcribe this following, which is thus compounded.

Take Wood Aloes and Benjamin, of each two drams; of Storax, called *Styrax Calamita*, one dram and an half; Frankinſence and Sandarach, of each two ſcruples; Gum-Animi and Cloves, of each half a dram: Make a groſs Pouder of them to be thrown upon the Embers.

Southernly winds, and thoſe that cauſe Rain are to be avoided, night-air, and eſpecially Moon-ſhine, which much offend the Brain: Very cold and North Winds are to bewared of, eſpecially when they ſuddenly are changed from the South; for ſuch a wind doth ſqueeze a Brain full of moiſt excrements, and ſends them down into the Body, even as a mans hand ſqueezeth a wet ſponge.

Secondly, A ſpecial care is to be had of Diet, for as *Hippocrates* ſaith in his Book of *Humane Nature*, Diſeaſes are partly from Diet, and partly from the Air wherein we breath: Therefore let the Diet be of good Juyce, eaſie concoction, neither cold, nor over nouriſhing: Therefore Mutton, Kid, Veal, are to be uſed, and which are better, yong Pidgeons, Chickens, Capons, Hens, Partridges, Black-birds, Thruſhes, and all kind of Mountain Fowl, and Yolks of new laid Egs: roaſt Meats are better than boyled. Take heed of hard fleſh, and of hard concoction, as Beef, Pork, Veniſon, Hares, Geeſe, Ducks, and Sea Fowl: as alſo of the Heads, Entrals, and Appurtinances of Beaſts. Eat Fiſh but ſeldom, and make choyce of thoſe which have ſolid Fleſh, coming out of ſwift Rivers, and ſtony places; boyl them in Wine, adding Vinegar, Butter, and Spice, which Sawce is to be allowed with other meat, unleſs the Liver be over hot; of which principally uſe, Nutmeg, Cloves, Cinnamon: never or ſeldom eat cold and moiſt Herbs, as Lettice, Purſlain, Spinage: but in Summer time we can allow a moderate uſe of Herbs which are gently cooling and drying, for the ſtrengthening of the Body, and fixing the Blood that it may not evaporate, as Endive, Succory, Sorrel, but they muſt be taken boyled, not raw. Roots of Parſly, Carrots, Parſnips, Mints, Hyſop, Water-creſſes, are very good. But you muſt avoid all things that eaſily diſturb the Head, and fill it with vapors; and they are of two ſorts: Either they are ſuch as diſcuſs and melt the Humors with their ſharpneſs, as Onions, Garlick, Muſtard, Rocker, Rhadiſhes: or ſuch as fill the Head with groſs vapors, as Milk, and all Milk meats: All manner of Pulſe, as Beans, Peaſe, &c. of which the red Peaſe are the leaſt hurtful, by reaſon of their opening and abſterſive nature; therefore the broth of them is allowed. You muſt avoid all green raw Fruit, which are not laſting eſpecially, and thoſe which are very moiſt: dryed Fruits may be uſed at ſecond or laſt courſes, as Raiſons, Almonds, Pine-nuts, Dates, and the like; but you muſt uſe them ſparingly, for they are for the moſt part hard of concoction. Pears boyled and Sugared, Citron Rinds Candied, Lemmon and Orange Pills Candied, may be eaten at the laſt courſe: but it is much better to take one ſpoonful of digeſtive Pouder after meat, whoſe Aromatical ſweet vapor aſcending with the vapor of what is eaten doth ſtrengthen and dry the Brain: It is made of Coriander Fruit, Annis ſeeds, Cinnamon, Nutmeg, with a double quantity of Sugar of Roſes. Let your Bread be of the beſt Wheat, wel baked and leavened, and made with Salt and Annis ſeeds: in a great diſtemper Bisket is beſt. Let your drink be thin wine of ſmal ſtrength, which wil not fill the Head with many vapors, wel mixed with Water; and alſo it is profitable one hour before meat to mix wine and water that the vapors may be allayed, and to boyl a little Coriander ſeed in the water that it may better ſtrengthen both Stomach and Brain: in ſtronger Diſeaſes uſe Hydromel, or Water and Honey. This is a good Rule in all Diet, To eat moderately, and to let the Supper be leſs and lighter than the Dinner. Sobriety, as in all Diſeaſes, ſo eſpecially in Head-Diſeaſes is of great concernment; for the Head by much food is filled with Humors and Vapors: and contrarily, by little and ſlender Diet it is emptied of them.

Thirdly, You muſt uſe moderate Exerciſe, and every day continue it, for too much reſt weakens the Natural heat, and makes it ſo dull that it cannot well concoct, and fills the Body full of Excrements: On the other ſide, Motion and Exerciſe ſtir up the Natural heat, help Concoction, expel Excrements, and cheereth the Spirits, and purifieth them, but you muſt exerciſe before meat, and after meat reſt for an hour or two, or at leaſt move very eaſily.

Fourthly, Uſe a mean in ſleep and waking, for as with moderate ſleep the ſtrength is repaired, ſo with too long the Body is made cold, burdened with excrements, eſpecially the Brain: but too much watching, makes the Body thin, ſpends the Spirits, and feeds upon the ſound parts of the Body. Let not therefore ſleep be too long, but according to cuſtom commonly ſeven hours are allowed, but more or leſs may be taken according as age and cuſtom ſhall require; if you offend in either extream, it is better to offend in too much waking than in too much ſleep. You muſt not ſleep ſtraight after meat, but two hours after at leaſt, having taken a gentle walk. You muſt ſleep with your head high, and upon one ſide; lying on the back is not allowed.

Fifthly, Al the Excrements of the Body are to be evacuated in their ſeaſon, of the Brain eſpecially; therefore every morning hawk from the Pallat, blow the Note, comb, and rub the Head with a courſe cloth, or ſponge, which will fetch the ſuperfluities of the Brain through the futures or ſeams of the Skull

Skull. The Belly muſt be kept open; and if it will not otherwiſe, uſe a Suppoſitory, or a Clyſter, or ſome gentle Lenitive at the Mouth. For the Excrements are not only taken away by ſo doing, but alſo by degrees ſomthing is fetcht from the Brain, or at leaſt ſomthing is retained and derived thereby from the Head, which was, or would have been ſent thither as to the weakeſt part.

Laſtly, You muſt have ſpecial care of the Paſſions of the Mind, from which our bodies are many times wonderfully altered and diſturbed; eſpecially of Anger and Sorrow: Sorrow diminiſheth the Natural heat, wounds the Spirits, whence comes ſmal concoction, and many Excrements: Anger makes a great boyling of the Blood, and motion of the Spirits, by which the Humors are diffuſed and diſſolved, and then if there be any Excrements in the Brain, preſently they are ſent to the weak and infirm parts, from whence ariſe many dangerous Diſeaſes.

The other two Means for Cure, namely, Chyrurgery and Phyſick, may be uſed as followeth:

In almoſt all Diſeaſes which come of the Humors, we uſe to make a general Evacuation by Blood-letting and Purging.

Blood-letting is not agreeable with Flegmatick Diſeaſes; but if in other parts of the Body Blood do abound, the Liver be inflamed, and the age of the Patient be flouriſhing, and conſiſtent with it, we may then let blood: for ſo will the aſcention of vapors into the head be hindred, and ſuperfluous Nouriſhment taken away, that Nature afterwards may more eaſily concoct what is raw and wateriſh in the blood; and then purging Medicines may be given more ſafe.

But if *Plethora*, or two great repletion do not Conſtrain, it is better before blood-letting to give a purge for Flegm by way of Potion, Bolus, Pills, or Pouder. The Forms whereof are as followeth.

Take of Senna half an ounce; Annis ſeeds, and Cloves, of each half a dram; Leaves of Mints and Bettony, of each half a handful; of the tops of Time, half a pugil: Boyl them to a quarter of a pint in Spring Water; ſtrain it, and infuſe in it two ſcruples of the beſt Agarick Trochiſcated; of Cinnamon half a ſcruple; ſtrain it again, and diſſolve in it three drams of *Diaphœnicon*, and one ounce of Syrup of Roſes. Let this be the Potion to be given with ſafe Government. Or;

Take *Diacatholicon*, and *Diaphœnicon*, of each half an ounce; make it into a Bolus with a little Sugar. You may ad two drams of *Diacarthamum*, and take away as much of the *Diaphœnicon*: or you may make it of equal parts of *Diacarthamum* and *Diaphœnicon*, without the *Diacatholicon*.

Or,

Take Pill. Cochie the leſs, two ſcruples; with the Water of Bettony make them into five or ſix Pills gilded; which let him take early in the morning, having eaten but a light ſupper over night.

The Pills of Agarick, and of Cochie the greater, are very fit for this purpoſe. For a Pouder.

Take Senna, Turbith, Hermodacts, of each a ſcruple; Diagridium half a ſcruple; one Clove: Give this pouder in Broth faſting.

After Blood-letting, if it be neceſſary, we come to the preparation and purging of the Humors, which may be done with the following Apozeme, or opening Drink.

Take the Roots of Cyprus, Flower-de-luce, Angelica, Zedoary, and of Elicampane, of each one ounce; the Leaves of Bettony, Marjoram, Balm, Penyroyal, Organ, Calaminth, of each a handful; of the tops of Time and Sage, of each half a handful; Annis ſeeds, Seſelis, or broad Cummin, Fennel ſeeds, of each three drams; Liquoris ſcraped, and Raiſons ſtoned, of each one ounce; the Leaves of Senna ſprinkled with *Aqua vitæ*, two ounces; Carthamus ſeeds bruiſed, and freſh Polipody of the Oak, of each one ounce; Agarick trochiſcated, Turbith, Hermodacts, of each three drams; Ginger and Cloves, of Each one dram; Stœchas, Roſemary, Sage, and Lavender Flowers, of each one Pugil, or ſmal handful: Boyl them in fair Water to two pints; ſtrain it and ad four ounces of white Sugar: clarifie it, and aromatize it, that is, make it ſweet with two drams of Cinnamon; let this be for four morning draughts.

In the firſt and laſt draught diſſolve of *Diacarthamum*, or *Diaphœnicon* three drams; and let him drink it with Phyſical Regiment.

Or if you ad no Electuary to the laſt doſe the day following, you may give the purging Pills above mentioned.

After Purging, that the Brain may be altered and ſtrengthened, and the Medicines purging, not leave any offence, the Patient may take this Bolus following:

Take of old Treacle one dram; Conſerve of Roſemary and Roſes, of each two ſcruples: with Sugar make a Bolus, which let him take in the morning two hours before meat, and drink after a ſmal draught of ſmal Wine.

But becauſe this is a ſtubborn Diſeaſe, and will not alwaies yield to gentle Medicines, we muſt fly to ſtronger. And then after Purging, we muſt uſe a ſweating Diet, which dries and warms the Brain and the whol Body; concocts crude and raw humors, & makes the thick humors thin, cuts thoſe which are ſlimy and clammy, clenſeth thoſe that are foul and dul, and ſends forth whatſoever is over

moiſt

moist by Urine, Sweat, or insensible transpiration. For the effect of all which it is very good to use a slender Diet at the time of taking it.

This Diet drink may be made either of a Decoction of Guajacum, or Lignum vitæ only, or by putting to it some Sassaphras, or Roots of Sarsaparilla, or those things which are most proper for the Head, as the Prudent Physitian shall think fit that wil consider the divers tempers and constitutions of Bodies; in respect of which he will prescribe a longer or shorter continuance of this Diet to fifteen, twenty, or thirty daies.

Now the Sweating drink is made as followeth:

Take of Chips of Guajacum, and Roots of Sarsaparilla, of each two ounces: infuse them twenty four hours in four pints of Water upon warm embers: then boyl them gently without smoak to the consumption of half; strain it through a Hippocras bag, and keep it in a glass bottle, and give half a pint warm in the morning, covering him warm, and provoking sweat.

Take of Sarsaparilla two ounces; infuse them twelve hours in twelve pints of Spring Water; then boyl them as before to the consumption of the fourth part; strain as before, adding Coriander seeds, Liquoris, Sugar or Cinnamon, as much as will make it pleasant. Use this for ordinary Table Drink at the time of the Diet; eating Bisket made with Annis seeds, roast Meat, not boyled, Almonds roasted, Raisons, Pinenuts, Prunes boyled with Sugar, and the like.

This is alwaies to be observed in the use of Sudorosick or Sweating Medicines: You must give a Purge once a week, and that day omit sweating, by reason that sweating expels only the thinner matter, leaving the thick which must be sent forth by stool. Moreover, because by the use of sweating Medicines the Body is often bound, you must give a Clyster every third or fourth day.

If the Disease be not yet cured, you may use these bags for the Head, in the time of sweat.

Take of Annis seeds, Fennel seeds, Bay-berries poudered, of each three ounces; of *Milium*, or Millet seed, or Hyrse, one pound; of common Salt half a pound: Fry them in a Pan, powring by degrees a little strong Wine upon them. With these fill two bags, apply them hot one after another to the mold of the head being shaven; do this presently after he hath taken the sweating Potion. Then wipe off the swear, and clap this strengthening Plaister to the Head.

Take of cleer Amber, Frankinsence, Mastick, of each one dram and an half; Galbanum, Opopanax, of each one scruple; of Misseltoe of the Oak two drams; male Peony seeds half a dram; Oyl of Nutmegs as much as is sufficient: Make a Plaister of them in an oval form. Or you may use the head strengthening Plaister in the Apothecaries Shops at *Mountpelior*, not in the *Dispensatory*, whose description followeth:

Take of Storax, Benjamin, Laudanum, of each four ounces; Peony roots, Flower-de-luce roots, Misseltoe of the Oak, Mastich, of each one ounce; liquid Styrax as much as is sufficient to make a Plaister: of which one ounce upon Leather in an oval form may be applied to the Coronal Suture.

If you desire a more drawing dissolving Plaister which is commonly called *Epispastick*, thus you must make it.

Take of *Emplaster de Mucilaginibus* two ounces; Flower-de-luce roots, Hermodacts, Pellitory of Spain, Staphisagre, Cubebs, Pidgeons dung, Mustard seed, of each one ounce; Nutmeg, Cloves, Cinnamon, long Pepper, and black Pepper, of each half a scruple; Liquid Styrax as much as is sufficient: Make a Body of Plaister, and spread a little upon Leather in an oval form for the mold of the head.

After General Evacuations, you may come to Particulars; which are made by Errhins or Juyces, for the Nostrils, sneezing pouders, Apoplegmatisms, or Medicines chewed in the Mouth.

Take Leaves of Marjoram, Sage and Bettony, of each one handful; beat them in a Marble stone Mortar, sprinkling by degrees Bettony Water, and white Wine, of each two ounces: Press out the Juyce and make an Errhine, which you may make sharper if you add half an ounce of Flower-de-luce roots.

It is a custom now adaies to rub the dry Leaves of Tobacco between the fingers, and to snuff up the Pouder: this fetcheth much humour from the Brain, and is at hand.

But the best Sternutatories are made thus:

Take the Leaves of Marjoram, Sage, Rosemary, all dried, of each half a dram; Pellitory of Spain and white Hellebore, of each one scruple; Musk three grains; which with a Quil may be blown into the Nostrils. Or,

Take Ginger, and Flower-de-luce Roots, or Orrace, of each one scruple; Castor half a scruple; Euphorbium six grains: Make them into Pouder. But the chiefest smelling Pouder is made of black Hellebore, with an equal weight of Sugar Candy finely poudered. Which also is excellent for curing a defluxion.

Apoplegmatismi, or Medicines drawing Flegm out of the Head, are either called *Masticatories*, that is, chewing Medicines; or *Gargarismi*, that is, Medicines to gargle in the Throat. A Masticatory is thus prepared,

Take of Pellitory of Spain two drams; Mustard seed and Staphisagre, of each one dram: Make them

them up with white Wax into little Balls; of which let one be chewed every morning, holding down the head.

A Flower-deluce root is uſual for the ſame purpoſe, which wil do good in ſmal infirmities. Maſtich alone chewed is the mildeſt Maſticatory, and it attracts, and draws humors to the mouth without heat and inflamation, which others do not.

A Gargariſm is thus made:

Take of Staviſagre half an ounce; Muſtard ſeed three drams; Pellitory of Spain one dram: Boyl them in Water and Honey to three ounces, in which diſſolve Vinegar of Squils two ounces.

In the uſe of theſe Medicines we muſt obſerve, That the Evacuation which is made by the Pallat, is more beneficial than that which is made from other parts, becauſe it is ordained by Nature for the only way by which the Head is to be purged and cleanſed. But the Noſe is made for ſmelling and breathing through, and Nature doth oppreſs and abuſe it, when ſhe ſends forth her ſuperfluous Excrements by it. Moreover the way of Evacuation by the Pallat is more ſafe, neither is the Brain ſo much ſhaked by it as by ſneezing. But Errhines, or Medicines that purge the head by the Noſe, do draw forth the matter more violently, becauſe not only the quality or vapor of the Medicine ſtir up the Brain as in Gargariſms, but alſo the very ſubſtance it ſelf.

We muſt alſo obſerve, That the uſe of Errhines or neezings is dangerous when the eyes are ſore, or the Noſtrils are ulcerated or ſore, and when the patient is inclined to bleeding at the Noſe, or to a giddineſs of the Head, which neezings wil ſuddenly bring by ſhaking the Brain too violently.

Liquid and moiſt Errhines are ſnuft into the Noſe from the palm of the hand, or by lying down are powred in; but the mouth muſt firſt be filled with Water or Wine, leſt that Medicine come by the Pallat into the mouth, although that which paſſeth through brings the humors more forcibly out of the mouth.

They muſt take heed of Gargariſms that are ſubject to Defluxions or Conſumptions.

Moreover, For particular Evacuations we may uſe *Veſicatories*, or Plaiſters that draw bliſters, to the Nape of the Neck. In the Diſpenſatory of *Mountpelior* is this Receipt, though it be not in any other.

Take of Galbanum and Ammoniacum, of each five ounces; of the Pouder of Cantharides, or Spaniſh Flyes, one pound and an half; Muſtard, Pepper, of each half a pound; Virdegreece and Pellitory of Spain, of each two ounces and an half; Euphorbium one ounce and an half; Wax one pound and an half; Pitch, Rozin, and Turpentine, of each one pound; Oyl a ſmal quantity. One ounce or two of this Plaiſter ſpread upon Leather, may be applied to the Nape of the Neck.

The Brain is alſo ſtrengthened by outward application of Pouders. Rhewm-Caps, by which it is comforted and made warm, and the remainder of the Humor diſperſed.

Take Pouder of Orrace half a pound; Storax and Benjamin, of each two ounces: pouder the Head with them every night, and comb it off in the morning.

This Pouder is very refreſhing by its ſcent, ſtrengtheneth the Head, dryeth the Hair: If you wil make it ſtronger, put Cloves, Nutmegs, and Cinnamon thereto.

Take *of Stœchas, Roſemary Flowers, and red Roſe Leaves, of each half a ſmal handful; dried Bettony two ſcruples; Coriander ſeed,* Lignum Rhodii, *Frankinſence, Orrace, Nutmeg, Maſtich, of each one ſcruple; Benjamin, Vernix, Mace, and Cloves, of each half a ſcruple. Pouder them, and wrap them in the thrids of Scarlet or ſweet Cotton, and with a piece of red Taffety make a Rhewm-Cap for the Head, to be ſewed in another Cap, or to be worn by it ſelf.*

The following Fumigation doth dry the Head.

Take *of* Lignum Aloes, *Frankinſence, Maſtick, cleer Amber, yellow Sanders, red Roſe Leaves, Bettony dried, of each one dram; Cinnamon, Mace, Cloves, Styrax Calamita, of each one ſcruple: make them all into groſs Pouder, which you muſt ſprinkle upon coals of fire, and let the Patient take the fume or ſmoak of it faſting, covering his head with a large linnen cloth to preſerve the fume, and opening his mouth: Let him do this twice or thrice in a week.*

But if by Fumes he find pain in his head, you may only perfume his night-caps every evening: For which uſe this following is eaſily prepared.

Take *of Frankinſence, Maſtich, Styrax Calamita, Benjoin, and Sandarach, of each half an ounce; Mace and Cloves, of each two drams: Make groſs Pouder of them.*

But becauſe this is a ſtubborn diſeaſe, and uſeth to produce new Flegm after both general and particular Evacuations, we ſhal preſcribe thoſe uſual Medicines by which the humor may ſometimes be drawn away, and the Brain preſerved longer in that ſtate, into which by Phyſick it is reſtored. To this end you may make a Magiſtral Syrup of thoſe Drugs which are in the Apozeme, or opening drink above written, taking three times as much of the purging things as before, which he may uſe twice or thrice in a Month, the quantity of two or three ounces in a Decoction of Bettony and Marjoram.

Or inſtead of Syrups he may uſe to take theſe Pills.

Take

Take *of the best Aloes half an ounce; Turbith that is Gummy, Hermodactls, and Agarick new made up, of each two drams; Diagridium one dram; Ginger and Cloves, of each half a scruple; Saffron and Salgem, of each seven grains. Pouder them all, and sprinkle them with the Water of Marjoram: then dry them in the shade, and make them into a Mass or Body with Oxymel of Squils; of which let him take half a dram or two scruples once in a week, two hours before Dinner.*

The day after his Syrup or Pills, as also twice or thrice in a week, let him take a quantity of this Opiate, or Electuary.

Take *of Conserve of Acorus Roots, or of Ginger, and Citron Barks candied, of each one ounce; the Conserve of Sage and Rosemary flowers, of each six drams; Nutmeg candied half an ounce; one candied Myrobalan, old Treacle, and confection of Alkermes, of each three drams; of the Pouder Diambra, and Diamoschi dulcis, of each one dram: with the Syrup of Citron Barks make it up: And let him take every morning two hours before meat, the quantity of a Chesnut; drink after it a little wine and water.*

This following Balsom doth more strongly corroborate the brain, of which he may take now and then three or four drops in wine or broth.

Take *of the Chymical Oyl of Nutmegs three drams; Oyl of Marjoram, Rosemary, and Amber, of each half a dram; Musk and Amber-greese, of each one scruple: with a little Oyl of a Mans Skull mix them together. You may make the Oyl of a mans Skull thus: Take the shavings or raspings of a Skull that was never buried, put them in a Retort, or Still so called, in as much white Wine as will suffice: Let them stand in* Balneo Mariæ, *that is, a kettle of warm water for some time; then distill it in Sand till it is dry; and you shall find the Oyl swimming upon the Water which is drawn off.*

Anoint your Nostrils within with this Balsom every night, and it wil strengthen the Brain wonderfully.

There is another cheaper for to anoint the Nostrils with: which is,

Take *the Oyl of Orange Flowers two drams; white Wax one dram; melt them gently, and put thereto Oyl of Amber half a dram; of the Chymical Oyls of Sage and Rosemary, of each fifteen drops; Oyl of Spike five drops; mix them together.*

It is also very good for the drawing away of the mattet which breeds continually in the Brain, by an issue in the hinder part of the neck.

Lastly, The baths which come out of Brimstone, Niter, Bitumen, as those called *Bellilucanæ*, are very good for the drying and strengthening of the Brain if it be washed therewith for some daies, after general evacuations are made. Daily experience teacheth us that most grievous Head-Diseases coming of cold Distempers are thereby cured. It is profitable also to drink those Waters for the strengthening of the stomach which alwaies doth sympathize with the head. Therefore I set down this digestive Pouder.

Take *of Coriander seed prepared one ounce; Annis seeds, and sweet Fennel Seeds, of each three drams; Cinnamon and Nutmeg, of each two drams; Coral, Ivory, and Pearl prepared, of each one scruple; Sugar of Roses as much as all the rest, or for rich folk twice as much, of which let him take a spoonful after every meal, not drinking or eating for three hours after.*

CHAP.

CHAP. II.

Of Drouzie Diſeaſes, called, Coma, Lethargy, Carus, *and* Apoplexy.

THere are four kinds of Preternatural ſleep, namely, *Coma*, *Apoplexy*, *Carus*, and *Lethargie*. We wil ſpeak of them together in this Chapter, becauſe they proceed from the ſame Cauſes, and are cured all the ſame way.

Theſe four Diſeaſes differ one from another after this manner:

In the Diſeaſe called *Coma*, *Cataphora*, or *Subeth*, according to *Avicen*, is a deep ſleep; but ſuch an one as from which the Patient is raiſed, openeth his eyes, and anſwereth, but preſently he is again in a deep ſleep.

In a *Lethargie*, the ſleep is like that of *Coma*, but it is joyned with a Feaver and Frenzy, or Dotage.

In *Carus* there is no Feaver as in Lethargy, but in *Carus* the ſleep is more deep and profound, ſo that when the ſick party is rowſed up, he ſcarce opens his Eyes, and anſwers not, as in the former, but yet being pinched he is ſenſible, and his breath comes freely.

In *Apoplexy* the ſleep is moſt deep, and a total privation of ſence and motion, except breathing: and ſo therefore the ſick doth neither open his eyes, anſwer, nor feel when he is hurt; as alſo he breatheth very difficultly.

There are many *Cauſes* of theſe Diſeaſes.

The firſt and chief cauſe is Flegm and wateriſh humor contained in the brain; of which (when there is but a final quantity, that moiſteneth and cooleth the ſubſtance of the brain, ſtopping up its pores and paſſages) cometh *Coma*.

But if the ſame quantity of Humor ſo gathered together, become putrified and corrupt, or grow into a tumor or ſwelling, or be diſperſed throughout the brain, it procureth a *Lethargie*.

When it is gathered in a greater quantity without corruption, and that the humor is ſucked up into the ſubſtance of the brain, it cauſeth a *Carus*.

And laſtly, When the humor is in ſo great a quantity that it doth not only fill the brain, but alſo the ventricles thereof, ſtopping and ſtraitening them, and alſo when it doth offend the Original of the Nerves which comes from the brain, and is placed in the baſis or bottom of the Skull, and when it hindereth the paſſage of the Animal Spirit, it begets an *Apoplexy*.

Secondly, Sleepy Diſeaſes ſpring alſo from abundance of blood in the brain; for if the ſtore of blood contained, be more raw, wateriſh, and cold, it thickens the Animal Spirits, and makes them unfit to move; as alſo the abundance of humor charging the brain, hindereth the free paſſage of the Spirits, and according as the humor is more or leſs in quantity, more or leſs in coldneſs, it produceth a greater or a leſſer Diſeaſe: So that both *Coma*, *Carus*, and *Apoplexy* may be cauſed thereby.

But drowſie Diſeaſes, eſpecially the *Apoplexy*, are uſually cauſed by blood out of its Veſſels, ſtopping and compreſſing the Ventricles of the brain, and that falleth out either from a vein broken in the brain, or from an over fulneſs of the Veſſels, or from ſome great bruiſe or contuſion of the head, or from ſome cut or punctured wound, by which the veins of the brain are divided, and ſo ſend forth much blood. And the Fracture only of the Skul, compreſſing of the brain may produce a dulneſs, drowſineſs or ſleeping Diſeaſe.

Thirdly, It is without doubt that a Tumor in the brain, burdening it with its weight, may produce a ſleepy diſeaſe. This is reported by *Platerus* to be found in a certain Barron, who for a long time was ſottiſh and ſleepy, did nothing rationally, nor deſired meat, neither did eat any thing but what was forced into him; went not to bed but by compulſion, but would ſit al day at the Table leaning on his arm, with his eyes ſhut, neither did he anſwer at any time without much asking and importunity, and then very little to the purpoſe. After his death his Skul was opened, and there was found in his brain, a great Kernel, hard, and of a callous body; the cauſe whereof might be ſome ſtroak upon the head, which he had received long before the beginning of his Diſeaſe.

Fourthly, Many Vapors flying into the Brain may be the cause of a sleepy disease: for if the vapors be many and gross, that they burden the animal Spirits, and darken them as with a mist, even as the clouds in the greater world darken and obscure the beams of the Sun. But if they be overmoist they do so wet the Brain that it becomes weak and faint in its functions and performances: Therfore Drunkards sleep profoundly from the vapor of the Wine, and the abundance of crudities sent up into the Brain. So Children that are troubled with the worms are often taken with sleepy diseases from the abundance of gross and thick vapors which arise from crude and watery humors. So in intermitting Feavers or Agues, sometimes in the beginning of the Disease there is irresistable sleep, by reason of the crude and stinking humors which are contained in the veins, especially in the Meseraick veins, which humors being made thin by the heat of the fit of the Ague, send many vapors to the head, and produce such a sleep as ends with his cold fit sometimes, and at other times continues to the end of the fit, according as the vapors are more gross or thin; or as they are more or less in quantity, and so are longer and sooner discussed and dispersed.

Fiftly, Many times so great a sleeping Disease is begot by the too frequent use of Medicines called *Narcoticks*, that do produce sleep; that many unawares by the unskilful use of Opium have slept their last. There is also the same stupifying force in some living Creatures: as in the *Torpedo*, or Cramp-fish. So *Plutarch* reports in the death of *Cleopatra*, That the sting of a Viper causeth deadly sleep. But in mans Body this stupid sleeping condition comes from the putrefaction of humors, which is seen in malignant and pestilential Feavers; hence it is that in those diseases they are very sleepy oftentimes, which is a certain sign of venenosity and malignity, and sometimes of death.

The Diagnosticks or Signs which shew the differences of these sleeping Diseases were set down in the beginning of this Chapter. But the Signs of the Causes that produce these Diseases are these:

When sleepy Diseases come from watery humors putrifying in the Brain, these are the signs: A Flegmatick Constitution, Old Age, Infancy, a cold and moist dwelling and season, a stopping of an accustomed spitting and blowing of the Nose, and when the sick man before the coming of the disease was troubled with heavines of the Head, dimnes of sight, and dulnes of the whol Body; and when in the Disease there is a defluxion of Rhewm from the Nose or Mouth; or when the sick party feeleth it trickle down his Throat.

That sleeping Diseases are bred of blood, appears by a plethorick or full Body, red Face, pain of the Head going before the Disease.

A Tumor or swelling in the Brain is scarce by any signs to be known, but is only manifest after death by opening of the Skull as was before mentioned.

That the Disease comes from vapors flying into the Brain, appears from those signs which shew the particular Diseases of those parts, from whence the vapors are sent up to the Brain. A surfet going before, with crude and sharp belchings, and other signs of crude humors in the Stomach, and other parts of the lower Belly, shew that the Disease comes from vapors which are sent from the Stomach. But if the Vapors come from Worms, you shal know that in the Chapter of them.

As for the Prognosis or foreknowledg of things in these Diseases, Every sleeping Disease is dangerous, but by how much the deeper the sleep is, and the sick man harder to be awaked, by so much greater is the danger; and therefore a *Carus* is more dangerous than a *Coma*, or a *Lethargie*; but an *Apoplexy* is worse than a *Carus*, for if it be violent, it is altogether incurable, as *Hippocrates* observeth in his 42. Aporism of the Second Section; which is thus: It is impossible to cure a strong Apoplexy, and not very easie to cure a weak one; a strong Apoplexy is when the breathing is uneven and disorderly, and sometimes intermitting, and if such a breathing is very violent the disease is stronger, if the breath be stopt it is most strong; but when there is some order in the breathing, the Disease is weaker, which is declared by *Galen* in his Comment upon the said Aphorisms.

A sleeping Disease is very dangerous which comes upon an acute Disease, for it either signifies the extinction of the Natural heat, or a poysonous malignant quality which hath seized on the Brain.

That Disease which comes by consent of the lower parts, and from vapors which arise from them, is less dangerous.

Men sick of a Lethargy, die within seven daies; if they live longer, they recover. *Hippocrates* in his Book of Diseases.

Sleeping Diseases in old men, are for the most part deadly; for in regard of their want of Natural heat, they having a weak concoction, and weak expulsion, it comes to pass that they cannot overcome and expel that humor which causeth the Disease, much less can they expel that humor which aboundeth in the Brain, for since the Brain is the coldest part of the Body, it must needs in old people have its heat diminished and extinguished sooner than any other parts.

In a Lethargy, if a Tumor happen under the Ears, or if matter or filth come forth of the Ears, and the symptomes abate, it is a sign of health, for it sheweth the strength Nature hath got over the cause of the Disease, which it expels before perfect concoction out of the Emunctuaries under the Ears,

or

or purgeth it out being turned into matter by the Natural paſſages.

They who are preſerved and cured of the Lethargy do uſe after to ſpit matter and blood, *Hippocrates* in *Coac.* and Third Book of Diſeaſes. This Opinion, ſay ſome, agrees not with Experience, for few have ſeen a true *Empyema*, or corrupt matter between the Breaſt and the Lungs, follow a Lethargy: But the Interpretation of *Mercurialis* upon the Aphoriſm is very right, for he ſaith, That *Hippocrates* meaneth by *Empyema* and *Empyicus*, not the diſeaſe of the Breaſt, but when filth is diſcharged by the Ears and Noſtrils. And *Galen* hath taught us in his Commentary upon Aphoriſm 8. Sect. 5. and Aphoriſm 44. Sect. 7. That *Hippocrates* by *Empyema* underſtands there, not only that ſuppuration and breeding of matter, which is in the Breaſt, but alſo that which is in al other parts.

It is a good ſign when a Phrenſie followeth a ſleepy Diſeaſe coming of a cold cauſe, becauſe by that violent heat which cauſeth a Phrenſie, the watery matter which begets a ſleepy Diſeaſe is concocted.

Men in Apoplexies die in ſeven daies, except a Feaver take them, *Hippocrates* 2. of Diſeaſes, and Aphor. 51. Sect. 6. but that Feaver muſt be a violent one, and eſſentially ſpringing from the inflamation of the Humors and Spirits, otherwiſe it will not diſcuſs the matter which cauſeth the Apoplexy: for if it be gentle, and only ſymptomatical, or happening to the Diſeaſe as an accident, as in an Apoplexy, coming from the burning diſpoſition of the head through too much blood contained in the veins thereof, then the Feaver doth not diminiſh the Diſeaſe, but rather cauſe ſome ſymptomes of madneſs, which weaken the Animal Faculties: and in this caſe a Frenzy coming upon a ſleepy Diſeaſe is not good; as we ſaid in the Prognoſtick before mentioned. Moreover, a Feaver that muſt diſſolve a ſleeping Diſeaſe, muſt have another condition, namely, That it come in the beginning of the Diſeaſe, whiles Nature is in ſome ſtrength to put forth ſtrong endeavors. For that Feaver which comes after the Diſeaſe hath long continued is not healthful, as *Hippocrates* in *Coacis*, ſaith, Apoplexies being like to be diſſolved, if a Feaver come upon them after they have long continued, are deadly.

A faint Sweat in an Apoplexy is evil, for it ſhews great oppreſſion of Nature.

For the Cure of theſe Diſeaſes, as of al other, three neceſſary means are required.

First, Order of Diet.

Secondly, Manual Operations, or Chyrurgery.

Thirdly, Medicines, or Phyſick.

The Diet in the beginning of theſe Diſeaſes muſt be very ſlender; becauſe they are very acute, or violent and ſharp; therefore the Patient muſt be fed only with thin broaths now and then: But in the time of the declination of theſe diſeaſes we may uſe the ſame Diet which is preſcribed in the Chapter before going, treating of the cold Diſtemper of the Brain.

The other two means are to be uſed by this following Method.

And becauſe ſleeping Diſeaſes are ſudden, and ful of danger, they require the Phyſitians chief diligence, and quick application of Medicines.

First therefore, when the Phyſitian is called to one taken with a ſleeping diſeaſe, he ſhall endeavor to raiſe the Patient from his deep ſleep, by offering violence to al his Senſes? and laying his eyes towards the Sun-beams, and cleareſt light; he muſt make a great noiſe in his Ears, and he muſt be called aloud by his own Name. He muſt put ſharp things to his Noſtrils, as Rue, Caſtor, Vinegar, and ſharp things into his Mouth alſo.

He muſt ſtir up his feeling with pinching, pulling of hair, by ligature or binding, bending of the fingers, and the like.

Make firſt a Clyſter of the common Decoction which is moſt ready, after this manner.

Take *of common Decoction for Clyſters, one pint and an half*: Hiera picra, *and* Diaphonicon, *of each one ounce*: *Oyl of Rue, and of Lillies, of each one ounce and an half*: *Houey of Roſes two ounces*: *Salt one dram*: *Make a Clyſter, give it preſently.*

While theſe things are doing, the Phyſitian ought ſeriouſly to conſider whether Blood-letting be fit or not; for in theſe Diſeaſes, as *Celſus* ſaid, Blood-letting either kils, or cures; and blood-letting is good, if blood be the principal cauſe, or the aſſiſting cauſe, or if it be *ſine qua non*, that is, a cauſe without which the diſeaſe would not be, if ſtrength permit. But his ſtrength is not to be looked upon as he is in his fit, when his Animal Actions are hindred, but as it was before the Diſeaſe came. For if the Patient was formerly ſtrong, he will endure blood-letting, except the Apoplexy be very ſtrong: and if his ſtrength be not taken away by reſolution of the parts, but by oppreſſion of them, then is blood-letting good. But if Blood offend no way, or if the ſtrength be quite gone, or the Patient very old, you may omit blood-letting, but otherwiſe preſently.

The firſt thing to be done either by night or day to one in any of theſe Diſeaſes, is blood-letting, nay, before the Clyſter, if it be not already adminiſtred: But his Arm muſt firſt be well rubbed and chafed.

And this is to be observed, That it is more profitable and safe, not to let out so much blood at once as you require, but by degrees in some hours distance; for by the repeating of blood-letting, the matter is more easily moved, and the strength more preserved. Look in the sick mans face after his first loss of blood, and feel his pulse; for if his face be better colored, and more lively, and his breath more free, and his pulse good, there is much hope, and you may let blood the second time with more confidence. Make the Orifice large, otherwise he will not bleed, his blood is so thick. The more plenty of blood he hath, the more he may lose: But if flegm abound you must bleed sparingly, lest the vital heat be lost, which is so absolute necessary for discussing and dissolving of this Disease.

A singular Example of large and often bleeding in an Apoplexy, is laid down by *Zacutus Lusitanus*, in his First Book of *the Chief Physitians*, and his 33. History, in these words: *A certain Noble yong Maid, fell first into a general forgetfulness of all things, and then into a true Apoplexy, with the flowing of her Courses: Unto whom when they had applyed many Medicines both above and beneath, as Ligatures, sharp Clysters, Cupping with Scarrification: the Indication which comes from the flowing of the Terms being neglected, and danger coming on through continuance: I perceiving her strength to be sufficient for it, havin, first rubbed her Thighs very well, and placed Cupping Glasses thereon; in the space of eight hours, opened the head Vein four times, and then she began to speak, and so recovered.*

Some of our late Practitioners, are so bold as to open the Jugular Veins in Apoplexies, and say they cure also: and in so doing they take this course: First they bind the Neck gently with a linnen cloth, after the Vein is opened, they presently loose it, and the blood flows well without a Ligature, which might attract it to the head: after they heal up the wound with a sticking Plaister, without binding, and so they affirm the blood will easily stop: which *Zacutus Lucitanus* confirmeth (though he useth Ligatures) in his 79. Observation in his first Book of the Admirable Practice of Physick, where he relates a Story of a most sharp Squinancy; in which, by the advice of most skilful Physitians, the Jugular Veins were opened; from whence followed (as he saies) a most dangerous flux of blood not to be stopt, which brought the Patient very weak. *Zacutus* being sent for, applies *Galens* Plaister, which he in his 5. Book of Method, and 4. Chapter, useth with good success for stopping blood in Arteries and Jugulars, and bending the Patients Neck gently, he comes to his strength, and is cured. This Plaister is made of Frankinsence, Aloes, the hairs of a Hare mixt with the white of an Eg, having twice as much Frankinsence as Aloes, as *Galen* teacheth in the place mentioned sometimes an equal part of each, when the Bodies are harder. And *Galen* commends the operation before written, when he saith, This Plaister stops the flux of the Jugular Veins without a Ligature or binding. But this I would take notice of, That the blood doth not flow forth so violently in one that hath an Apoplexy, as in one that hath a Squinzy, because the blood is congealed; as *Hippocrates* shews in his Second Book of Diseases, in the former, from whence the Veins and Arteries called *Caiodites* or Jugulars, are stopped: but in the latter the blood is hot and thin, because they who have the Quinzy have always an acute Feaver withal.

A few hours after bleeding you must purge without respect of time. Neither let the Physitian be too curious or fearful in purging, since the Disease doth much require it, and the time of the disease is not usually long. And that purge ought to be very strong because the humor is stubborn, and the Sences so drowned that they cannot be rouzed or stirred up without strong Medicines. And that Medicine is usually one ounce of the Electuary *Diacarthamum*, dissolved in Bettony Water with half a scruple of Castor. Or,

Take *Turbith four scruples: Agarick two drams: Ginger two scruples: Fennel seeds one scruple: Castor six grains. Infuse them in a sufficient quantity of Bettony Water: and in three ounces of it strained, dissolve the Electuary Diacarthamum three drams; Syrup of Roses one ounce. Let him drink it.*

Take *of Cochie Pills the less, one dram; Castor three grains: With Bettony Water make seven Pills, and if the party cannot swallow them, dissolve them in Sage, Lavender, or Bettony Water.* Or,

Take *of Cochie Pills the greater, and Pills of Agarick, of each half a dram: The Troches of Alhandal, Diagridium, and Castor, of each three grains: With Honey of Rosemary, make Pills, or dissolve it in Sage Water.* Or this Potion

Take *of Senna half an ounce: of white Agarick one dram and an half; of Turbith one dram: of Ginger and Galanga half a dram: Boyl them in Sage and Rosemary Water. In two ounces and an half of the strained Liquor put two drams of Diacarthamum the Electuary; and of Castor half a scruple; of simple Oxymel half an ounce.*

In a Lethargy, the purging Medicines must be milder from the beginning by reason of its continual Feaver accompanying; made of Agarick, with Rhubarb or Scammony; or of Pills of Hiera with Agarick; because Choller is that which carrieth the humors to the Head: Yet in the progress of the Disease, when the matter is flown to the Head, and sticks there, we may use the Purges above written.

Tralli-

Trallianus gives one ſcruple of Scammony with two ſcruples of Caſtor in Oxymel, by which he hath cured many deſperate Lethargies. And *Oribaſius* ſaith, That there is no better Medicine for a Lethargy to purge away that flegm which Choller brought to the Head, than Scammony and Caſtor.

It often happens that the Faculties are ſo oppreſſed that Phyſick wil not work, which is an evil ſign, and ſuch ſeldom recover. But becauſe *Celſus* ſaith, when things ſo fall out, we muſt uſe ſuch Medicines as are at hand, if they be proper for the Diſeaſe; which is ſo deſperate that we may uſe deſperate Medicines. For as *Severus* ſaith, The Phyſitians think ſuch Medicines better in deſperate caſes, than for the Patient without tryal to die an eaſie death. And as *Celſus* ſaith, Many things may be done in time of danger and neceſſity, which may wel be omitted at another time. Therefore when we have uſed thoſe Medicines without any ſucceſs, we may wel rife higher, namely, To thoſe Medicines which are made of Antimony; eſpecially to thoſe which are leſs vehement and furious, as *Aqua Benedicta*, of Dr. *Ruland*, made of the Infuſion of *Crocus Metallorum*; which purging both upwards and downwards, bringeth ſuch a quantity of Flegm, not only from the ſtomach, but the brain alſo, as ſometimes the Patient is cured only with this Evacuation. And I can witneſs upon my own Experience, That I ſaw a Noble man thrice in two years cured from the Apoplexy with this only Medicine. Although ſome learned men do forbid the uſe of Vomit in theſe Diſeaſes, yet we muſt yield to Experience, which dayly teacheth us, that Children affected with ſleeping Diſeaſes are more readily and ſafely cured by the vomiting Salt of Vitriol, than by any other Medicine.

The Tincture of Tobacco drawn with *Aqua vitæ*, and taken in the quantity of two drams, with Honey powred down the Throat doth excellently.

After you have given a purging Medicine, before it begins to work, and alſo while it worketh, you muſt think of all thoſe things which cauſe revulſion of humors, and bring them into practice, not only frictions or rubbings, and ligatures or bindings, mentioned before, but alſo Cupping glaſſes to the back, ſhoulders, arms, and thighs, without ſcarrification if he was formerly blooded, and with ſcarrification if blood-letting was omitted.

In an Apoplexy you muſt not apply Cupping glaſſes to the Breaſt or Hypochondria, or parts under the Ribs, leſt the Muſcles of the Breaſt and Belly being contracted, the Breath be hindred.

The chief and only Remedy in an Apoplexy eſpecially, is to apply Cupping glaſſes to the head: Which kind of Cure the famous Phyſitian *Fracaſtorius* being taken with an Apoplexy, did direct for himſelf by his Neck and ſigns; but for want of their underſtanding of them, he died.

Zacutus Luſitanus in his 33. Hiſtory, and the firſt Book of the Principal Phyſitians, reports that he cured a deſperate Apoplexy by ſetting a Cupping glaſs twice upon the hinder part of the Head with deep Scarrification.

A Veſicatory, or Plaiſter to draw Bliſters to the Neck behind, and to the Shoulders.

Let two or three ſharp Clyſters be given every day.

Take of Pellitory of the Wall, Hyſop, Calamints, Organ, Sage, Rue, and the leſſer Centaury, of each one handful; of Carthamus ſeeds half an ounce; of Fennel and Cummin ſeeds, of each three drams; of white Agarick tied in a linnen clout two drams; of Coloquintida tied with it, one dram and an half. Boyl them to one pint, ſtrain them, and ad to the Liquor of *Hiera Picra* half an ounce; of *Diaphœnicon* one ounce; of Oyl of Rue two ounces: Make a Clyſter.

The Chymical Phyſitians do uſually ad two ounces of *Aqua Benedicta* of Dr. *Ruland*, made of the Infuſion of *Crocus Metallorum*, and then it wil work ſtrongly.

You may give four or ſix ounces of the ſame infuſion at a time, and alſo you may take it out of the glaſs wherein the Infuſion was made, ſhaking it before, that it may have ſome of the feces or reſidents of the Powder in the bottom to make it more ſtrong. Therefore for the moſt part we do preſcribe Clyſters of *Aqua Benedicta*, or *Vino Emetico*, that is, the Infuſion of *Crocus Metallorum*, becauſe in many Diſeaſes, eſpecially Chollicks, it doth wonders.

Take of Emollient Decoction for Clyſters one pint; of *Diaphœnicon* one ounce; of Infuſion of *Crocus Metallorum* ſhaked together, four ounces, make a Clyſter.

If the Clyſter come not away in due time, give this Suppoſitory:

Take of the powder of *Hiera Picra* of *Galens* preſcription, two drams; of Coloquintida and Agarick the beſt, of each half a dram; of Diagridium one ſcruple; Salgem two drams; Honey boyled to a ſufficient conſiſtence or thickneſs, as much is ſufficient; make Suppoſitories.

It often falls out that the Muſcle of the Arſe called *Sphincter*, is ſo weak, that a Clyſter is given in vain becauſe it cannot be contained, which is a deſperate condition.

Apply Caſtor and Vinegar to the Noſe, which are ſaid to have a ſpecial quality againſt ſleep.

It is alſo very good to ſprinkle ſharp Vinegar upon a red hot Iron, that the Patient may receive the vapor in his Noſtrils. And it wil be better to put Nigella or Pepper-wort ſeeds, Rue ſeeds, or Caſtoreum to the Vinegar. But Vinegar it ſelf warmed and applied to the Noſe, if it be ſharp, ſtirs up the Patient powerfully; and more powerfully if you put to it Pepper and Caſtoreum. The Fume of Brimſtone doth alſo raiſe from ſleep.

The

The Hairs of a Goat burnt, or the horn of a Deer or Goat burnt, held to the Noſe, are moſt ſtrong for the raiſing up of him that is in a deep ſleep.

The fume or ſmoak of white Amber, is excellent for the awaking of men in ſleepy Diſeaſes; as alſo the Oyl of it often applied to the Temples and Noſtrils.

Rub alſo the ſoals of the Feet with Salt and Vinegar, anoint the hands with Oyl of Rue, and of Caſtorium; touch the tongue and pallat with old Treacle diſſolved in *Aqua Cæleſtis*, or *Apoplectica*. But take heed that your Treacle be not new, for then Opium will cauſe more ſleep. The Medicine called *Aura Alexandrina*, or *Confectio Anacardina*. You may alſo boyl Muſtard ſeed in Vinegar or ſtrong Wine, and waſh the Pallat therewith. Roots of Pellitory of Spain boyled in Oxymel, that is, Honey and Vinegar do the ſame thing. But with all theſe Medicines you may ſafely uſe Caſtoreum.

When you have purged the Body generally in all parts, you muſt then purge the Head either ſenſibly or inſenſibly.

Senſibly, by the Noſtrils and Pallat, by Errhines or Neeſings, which are preſcribed in the Cure of a cold Diſtemper of the Brain, and by the touching of the Pallat as before. To all theſe you may ad Rue, Caſtoreum, and Vinegar.

Concerning Neeſing, It is to be obſerved, That if the Diſeaſe remain and encreaſe; and if the Patient be hard to be raiſed, it is very profitable: but we muſt not uſe them too long, leſt they clog the Brain, and move the humors too much. But in the beginning of the Diſeaſe we muſt abſtain from unſeaſonable neeſing, becauſe it diſperſeth the humor which wil fix in other parts; from whence come ſtubborn Diſeaſes, or a ſmal ſleeping Diſeaſe turns into a ſtrong Apoplexy.

Laſt of all you muſt uſe thoſe things which reſolve the humor inſenſibly, which are compounded in this manner:

Take Bay-berries and Juniper Berries, of each one ounce and an half: Roots of Angelica, Zedoary, and Maſter-wort, call'd *Impatoria*, or Pellitory of Spain, of each one ounce: Leaves of Bettony, Sage, Roſemary, of each one handful: Rue, Savory, Marjoram, Lavender flowers, of each half a handful: Boyl them in Vinegar. Dip a Spunge or linnen cloth in this Liquor, and apply it warm to the Head. It is a wonderful thing to ſee what good this doth in ſleeping Diſeaſes: But you muſt rub the Arms and Hands, and the Legs and Feet with the ſame.

Take of Caſtor half an ounce: of Mans Hair burnt, three drams: of the Juyce of Rue, of Vinegar and common Oyl, of each two ounces. Boyl them to an Oyntment, and then anoint the Head therewith, after the Fomentation.

Take of Oyl of Pepper-wort called *Oleum Coſtinum*, of the Oyl of Caſtor, and of Euphorbium, of each one ounce: of the Pouder Muſtard ſeed, and Euphorbium, of each one dram: of Vinegar one ſpoonful: of Wax as much as wil ſerve to make an Oyntment.

If the Diſeaſe doth not decreaſe after al theſe are uſed, then you muſt apply a great Cupping glaſs to the crown of the Head, and to the hinder part of the Head.

But a Veſicatory is beſt if Euphorbium be in it, for that wil draw the humor outwardly which lyeth deep.

Some are ſo bold in the height of the Diſeaſe to burn the hinder part of the Head, between the firſt and ſecond Vertebra, or Back-bone with an actual Cautery.

Zacutus Luſitanus applied many in his time with good ſucceſs, as he witneſſeth in his firſt Book of Wonderful Practice, and the fourteenth Obſervation, in theſe words: *I being called to viſit a ſick man, who was for the ſpace of thirty daies taken with drouzineß and irreſiſtible ſleep, with a ſmal feaver, not able to hold open his eyes: He had uſed many evacuating, and diverting or repelling Medicines, but they perfected nothing; therefore I applied the Cautery with much benefit; for with a red hot Iron I ſcorched the crown of his head till it was hard and cruſty, as alſo the hinder part, and almoſt every where about his head, by which means he awaked, and the places burned beginning to matter, he aroſe and came to himſelf. By this means I remember I cured two ſleepers contrary to expectation, after all other means had been uſed in vain: and theſe were cured by the heat of the fire, melting, diſſolving the humor which came forth at their mouths and noſtrils many daies after.*

Others have an Ancient Cuſtom, to hold a red hot Frying-pan ſo neer the Head that it may burn the Hair, and not the Skin.

It is good in theſe Diſeaſes to give the Patient a little *Aqua Cæleſtis*, or Apoplectick Water; or other ſtrong Water, which by its piercing quality do very much good, and have freed many from Apoplexies preſent and approaching, if Blood be not predominant or chief in the Body, which wil be hurt by the uſe of ſtrong Waters.

Now there are many ſorts of Apoplectick Waters, in *Langius*, *Wickerus*, *Quercitanus*, *Crollius*, and others. But we ſhal here only lay down one Water invented by my ſelf, and made of the moſt proper Ingredients.

Take

Take of Peony Roots, and Miſleto of the Oak, of each two ounces: Calamus Aromaticus, Galangal, and Cyprus, of each one ounce: Bettony, Sage, Marjoram, of each one handful: Peony, Annis, Fennel, and Caraway ſeed, of each three drams: Lavender, Stoechas, and Roſemary flowers, of each a pugil: Nutmeg, Mace, Cloves, Cubebs, Grains of Paradice, cardamom, of each half an ounce: Cinnamon two ounces: Saffron, one dram and an half: the Species of *Diambra*, and *Diamoſchu*, of each two drams: Cut and beat them according to art, put them in a glaſs ſtill, and then powr in as much of the beſt Spirit of Wine as is ſufficient. Let it ſtand in *Balneo Mariæ*, or a kettle of warm Water with Hay in it for the ſpace of eight daies; afterwards draw it off, and keep the Water in a cloſe ſtopt glaſs bottle.

Now if the Diſeaſe decline, and his deep ſleep begin to ceaſe, you muſt omit al other Medicines and follow thoſe things only which ſtrengthen the Brain: which may be very wel done by the uſe of that Opiate or Electuary which I preſcribed in the Treatiſe of the cold diſtemper of the Brain. But if you wil uſe ſtronger than that, take the *Aqua Apoplectica* above mentioned.

Continue the uſe of Caſtor above all things, if the Diſeaſe continue, giving every morning three or four grains of it in the Oxymel of Squils, or ſimple Oxymel. *Trallianus* affirmeth that many overcome with this Diſeaſe, have been recovered only with this Remedy.

Outwardly you may uſe ſome Chymical Balſoms againſt Apoplexies, of which there are divers. We wil only diſcover one of the beſt unto you.

Take of *the Oyl of Nutmegs by Expreſſion, half an ounce*: *Ambergreece, Musk, and Civit, of each one ſcruple*: *the diſtilled Oyls of Spike, Amber, Cinnamon, Roſemary, Cloves, of each half a ſcruple. With this Balſom touch the pallat every morning, and drop ſome into the ears, and ſnuff ſome into the noſtrils. For this purpoſe the diſtilled Oyl of Nutmegs uſed in the ſame manner is much commended.*

Laſtly, We muſt obſerve, That in the Cure of theſe Diſeaſes, we muſt uſe leſs hot things, and loſe more blood, when the Diſeaſe is cauſed of blood; and alſo we muſt mix Medicines that purge Choller with thoſe that purge Flegm.

They which have been troubled with any of theſe Diſeaſes, and are cured, do uſe many times to relapſe and fal into the ſame again; which that you may prevent you muſt correct the cold Diſtemper of the Brain, as before is taught; by which Method you may prevent either Apoplexy, Carus, Lethargy, or Coma. And if the Brain be very cold after general Evacuations, you may often uſe *Aqua Apoplectica*; or theſe Tablets or Lozenges following:

Take of *Amber-greece half a ſcruple*; *the diſtilled Oyl of Annis ſeeds, Cinnamon, and Nutmegs, of each three drops*; *Oyl of Cloves one drop*; *Sugar diſſolved in Orange-flower-water, four ounces. Make theſe into Lozenges, and let him take a dram or two of it every morning.*

Pills to ſtrengthen the Head, are thus made:

Take of *Cubebs, Maſtich, Nutmeg, Cloves, of each one dram*; *Amber-greeſe half a dram*; *of Musk ſix grains. With Juyce of Marjoram make Pills, and let him take one ſcruple at a time twice in a week at his going to bed.*

This Pouder is much in uſe, and is much commended:

Take of *White Amber half an ounce*; *of the Pouder of the Electuary called* Diarrhodon Abbatis, *two drams*; *of Peony Roots, one dram and an half. Make a Pouder of them, and take a dram at a time in any Water for that purpoſe before every New Moon.*

It is good to hold Nutmeg in the Mouth, and to chew it very often.

Sweet Perfumes are to be uſed to the Noſe, eſpecially the Apoplectick Balſom.

Uſe Spices with Meat, after Meat a digeſtive Pouder, mentioned in the Cure of the cold Diſtemper of the Head.

If you fear a ſleepy Diſeaſe wil come from too much blood, you muſt firſt take ſome away by the Arm, and uſe al means to make the Piles or Hemorrhoid Veins to bleed, which is very good; for which you muſt purge with Senna and Rhubarb, and with cooling things.

If you fear an Apoplexy from Melancholly you muſt purge Melancholly, and provoke the Hemorrhoids, and give the Medicines preſcribed for the ſtrengthening of the Brain, eſpecially that pouder which is made of white Amber, Diarrhodon, and Peony Roots.

CHAP.

CHAP. III.
Of Waking Coma.

THE Disease called *Waking Coma*, or *Coma vigil*, is put among sleeping Diseases; yet because it is of another Condition different from the rest, we will treat of it in this Chapter by it self.

This *Coma vigil*, is a Disease in which the Patient lieth with his eyes shut as if he were asleep, when he is awake and distracted; and if you touch him, he presently openeth his eyes, and looks strangely, and falls asleep again, which is hindered by divers strange imaginations and fancies. This Disease *Galen* placeth as a mean, between a Frenzy and a Lethargy, and calleth it *Typhomania*.

The usual Cause of this Disease, is Choller mixed with Flegm, by which humors the Brain is made too moist, or it is swelled or inflamed; from whence, either the Tumor called *Erisypelas ædematosum*, or *ædema Erisypelatosum*. But because those humors are diversly mixed, sometimes a greater proportion of the one than of another, it comes to pass that the Diseases from them are divers: for if Choller be chief, then it is a *Delirium*, or Dotage, and the sick man sleepeth but little though his eyes be shut; but if Flegm prevail, the Patient doth sleep more, and is less doting, and being raised makes less noise, and is not so foolish.

This *Coma vigil* comes by sympathy from Chollerick vapors mixed with Flegmatick that fly into the Head; which happens in Feavers that come from mixed Humors, especially in half Tertians, which are made of a Tertian and a Quotidian. We may safely affirm that this Disease cometh from Vapors, simply hot and moist in strong Feavers, because sleep comes from moisture, and waking comes from heat.

The Diagnosis, or knowledg of this Disease, is plain enough by what hath been said, That they which have it, lie with their eyes shut, and seem to sleep, yet they cannot sleep, but toss and tumble, lift themselves up suddenly, strive to get out of the bed, and then fall again asleep. The divers Causes are easily known from what hath been said.

This Disease is accounted dangerous if the Brain have a Swelling or Inflamation, or if it be overcome with the humors above mentioned, namely, Choller and Flegm; or if it come of vapors which arise from the malignant Humors of a Pestilent Feaver.

If the Dotage, or Delirium be strong, it produceth a Convulsion, for it comes of a Humor or vapor which is very sharp, which falling upon Nervous parts causeth a Convulsion.

A true *Coma vigil* is cured as a Frenzy and Lethargy; and if it incline most to a Frenzy, then the Medicines proper for that are most to be used; if to a Lethargy, then the Medicines proper for that. But a Coma that cometh by Sympathy, is cured by curing the Malignant Feaver from whence it cometh; but the more peculiar Remedies must also be used which draw and keep humors from the Brain in the beginning of the Disease, as bleeding in the Arm and Foot, Vinegar of Roses applied to the Forehead, Clysters, Cupping glasses to the Shoulders, Back, Buttocks, Thighs, opening the Head Vein, applying Leeches to the Temples, and behind the Ears, and laying living Creatures to the Head to dissolve the Humor.

CHAP. IV.
Of the Sleeping Diseases called, Catoche, *and* Catalepsis, *or* Congelation.

THere is some Confusion among Authors about this *Catoche*; for some take it for *Coma vigil*, Waking Coma; others for *Catalepsis*: *Paulus* gave them the cause of their difference; in his Third Book, and the Eighth Chapter, he treats of a two-fold *Catoche*; and first under that name, he speaks of a *Coma vigil*; in the end, under the same name, he speaks of *Catalepsis*. Custom hath brought it to pass, that *Catoche*, and *Catalepsis*, are taken for one and the same Disease in all Authors; the Latins call it commonly *Congelation*, or stiffness of the Body.

It is a Disease seldom seen, and to be admired, and those Authors which have seen the Disease do think it so much worth the observation, as to describe the whol passage and History of it. First of all

all. *Galen* in his firſt Comment. Prorrhet. Sect. 2. Part 56. mentioneth a ſtory of a School-fellow of his, who when he had wearied himſelf with long Study, fell into a Catalepſis, or Congelation; *He lay* (ſaith he) *like a log all along, not to be bent, ſtiff, and ſtretched out, and ſeemed to behold us with his eyes, but ſpake not a word: and he ſaid that he heard us what we ſaid at that time, although not evidently and plainly, and told us ſome things that he remembred, and ſaid all that ſtood by him were ſeen of him, and could remember and declare ſome of their geſtures at that time but could not then ſpeak or move one part of his body.* But *Fernelius* in his third Book of the Parts of Diſeaſes, Chap. 2. relates two Stories, which are theſe; *One while he being very ſtudious and writing, was ſo ſuddenly ſtruck with this diſeaſe, that ſitting and holding his pen with his eyes open, and looking upon his Book, you would have thought he had been hard at ſtudy, til he was by calling and jogging found to want al ſence and motion. Another I ſaw like a dead man, lying along, with neither ſeeing, hearing, nor feeling when he was pinched: but he breathed freely, and whatſoever was put into his mouth, he preſently ſwallowed; if he were taken out of his bed he did ſtand alone, but being thruſt he would fall down, and which way ſoever his Arm, Hand, or Leg was ſet, there it ſtood fixed and firm: you would have taken him for a Ghoſt, or ſome rare Statue.*

You may read the like Stories in *Schenkius*, *Marcellus*, *Donatus*, *Rondeletius*, *Jacopine*, and others: From whom you may gather, That in this diſeaſe there is found a deſtruction, or hinderance of the internal and external Sences with a ſtiffneſs of all the Members; and ſomtimes the Senses are not ſo much hindered but the ſick party heareth thoſe that ſpeak unto him; ſomtimes the Members are not ſo ſtiff, but they may be bent and bowed by them that ſtand by, and put into divers Poſtures.

The Cauſes of this Diſeaſe are divers: *Galen* in his Comments, Aphor. 3. Sect. 2. ſaies that a Catalepſis comes from a cold diſtemper of the Brain, which diſtemper chiefly ſeizeth upon the hinder part of the Head, makes it ſtiff and thick, from whence the Nerves proceeding are alſo made ſtiff, and ſuch a diſtemper may ſeize upon al the Nerves, whether it come of an external or an internal cauſe: but ſome queſtion this cauſe, ſuppoſing that no living body can be ſo cold as to have ſuch a Congelation: But *Galen* anſwereth this in his 5. Chap. of his Book of the Difference of Diſeaſes, by a Reaſon taken from Experience, in theſe words; "For thoſe who in a journey are taken with cold, "which is unto death, are thus ſtiff, whom the Greeks call *Emproſtotonos*, or Bowers forward; "*Opiſtotonos*, or Bowers backward; *Tetanos* extended ſtraight: and others that are killed with "cold are taken with this Catoche or Congelation. Therefore *Galen* teacheth us, that a Catalepſis may be got by external cold, and Reaſon may eaſily perſwade us to it; for they which are killed upon the way with great cold, do firſt grow ſtiff, they have a ſtiffneſs or Congelation before they die, therefore cold may bring a leſs ſtifneſs than that which bringeth Death. So we ſee that Congelation of the Nerves, or Catalepſis, may come of a cold Diſtemper, and the ſooner if it be mixt with a dry diſtemper.

But this Diſeaſe is moſt often gotten by a cold and dry diſtemper joyned with matter, that is an Humor or Melancholly Vapor, from which cometh a Conſtipation or Congealing of the hinder part of the Brain, an extention of the Nerves, and alſo a ſtiffneſs of the ſame; from this humor it cometh (I ſay) not only in reſpect of its quality, which is cold and dry; but alſo in reſpect of its quantity, which by repletion makes a diſtention, or ſtretching forth of the Nerves.

Aetius in his ſixt Book, and fourth Chap. ſaith, that a Congelation may be cauſed of blood: Unto which thing *Rondeletius* conſents, ſaying, that it comes to paſs when the Veins and Arteries of the Brain are ſo full, that the Body groweth ſtiff, and diſtended or ſtretched out like thoſe bodies that are congealed with cold weather: he confirms his Opinion by a Hiſtory of a Noble woman taken with a continual Feaver, called *Synochus*, who had in the nineteenth day a Congelation, which was cured by a large flux of Blood from her Noſe.

Sennertus hath found out a new cauſe, which he ſaith is a congealing Spirit, by which the Animal Spirits are fixed, and made immovable: he denies that the force of congealing and fixing depends upon a cold and dry diſtemper, but riſeth from ſome hidden quality. Such Congealing Spirits are found in the greater World, as in Thunder, when men are thereby made ſtiff, and as it were congealed: As *Cardanus* reports of eight Mowers, which ſupping under an Oak, were ſtruck with Thunder ſo as they kept the ſame ſhape of Body, the one ſeeming to eat the other, or lay hold of the pot, another to drink, when they were all dead. It is uſually reported that Wine will be congealed in the Veſſel by the ſpirit of Thunder: In Earth-quakes, many times ſuch Spirits break forth ſuddenly out of the Earth, as make men and other living Creatures to be ſtiff and ſtark. Moreover, *Sennertus* addeth, that there is great congealing force in Nitre and other Minerals; he brings no Examples: We ſhal only bring one Inſtance taken from Lead, whoſe Vapor doth ſo fix and congeal Mercury, or Quick-ſilver, that it becomes thereby malleable, or to be beaten with the hammer.

This Opinion of *Sennertus* were not wholly to be rejected, if he had not made this the only cauſe of the diſeaſe, and caſt off all the reſt; which when they are allowed and confirmed by *Galen*, and

the best of Authors are not easily to be cast off and denyed. Nor is it needful that we fal to hidden Causes when there are enough visible and manifest, able to produce such effects as is before declared. And when *Sennertus* saies that this his congealing spirit is caused of a melancholly humor, he seemeth to differ from the common Opinion, which is, That a Congelation cometh of a cold and dry or Melancholly vapor.

The Knowledg of this Disease, or Diagnosis, is manifest from the Stories of *Galen* and *Fernelius* already mentioned; for the evil befals a man quickly, and leaves him in that posture in which it found him; and keeps him unmoved as if he were congealed: The diversity of Symptoms which we propounded before, is seen plainly. We forerel this Disease by the same signs as we do other sleeping Diseases, as the Symptoms are greater or less, so is the Disease more or less dangerous.

The way of Cure is Two-fold either in the time of the fit, or out of the fit: In the fit you may use those Medicines which are set down for sleeping Diseases: Out of the fit you must labor to cure Melancholly, the disease so called, if the Congelation come from a Melancholly humor or vapor, which is the most common cause of it; but if a cold distemper either inward or outward give this Disease a beginning, the Remedies which cure it are to be taken out of the first Chapter of this Book. And lastly, if plenty of blood have begot this Disease, or doth maintain and nourish it, it is very proper to diminish it by opening a vein.

You must advise the Patient to a hot and moist Diet, as in al Diseases that come from a Melancholly humor.

CHAP. V.

Of the Palsey, or Paralysis.

A Palsey, is the loss of Sence and Motion in some parts of the Body, by reason of the stopping of the Passages of the Animal Spirits.

There are many kinds of Palseys; for either it is in all the parts of the Body below the Head, and then it is called *παραπληγία*; or else it possesseth only one side of the Body, and then it is called *Hemiplegia*; or it possesseth but one part of the Body, and then it is called a *Particular Palsey*; although some Authors use all these terms, as *Paralysis*, *Hemiplegia*, *Paraplegia*, *Paresis*, and *Resolutio*, promiscuously for one and the same disease, which is a loss to Sence and Motion in any part of the Body.

There is therefore a double Palsey; one called *Perfect*, in which Sence and Motion is quite gone; another *Imperfect*, in which Sence and Motion are decayed and diminished, and if it be a smal diminution, it is not a Palsey, but a Numbness or Dulness, called *Torpor*, or *Stupor*, which is the way to a true and perfect Palsey, and the forerunner thereof.

There is another kind of Palsey, which is, When the Motion is hurt, and the Sence not; or when the Sence is hindered, and the Motion not.

The Causes of a Palsey are generally al those which hinder the passage of the Animal Spirits into the Nerves and Muscles.

The chief of al is a waterish Humor, which by stopping, compressing, condensing or making thick, refrigerating or making cold, hinders the passage of the Animal Spirits.

This watery Humor comes from the Brain, and fals upon the Nerves and Marrow of the Back: So a light Apoplexy turns into a Palsey, when the Humor that caused it falls from the Head upon the Marrow and beginning of the Nerves, and so gets into the substance of them, and shuts up those insensible Passages through which the Spirits come to the Parts; or descending by the hollow of the Back-bone, and by the Marrow of the Back and running upon the Nerves, it compresseth and streightneth them, whereby the Animal Spirits are hindered in their Motion.

Moreover, The same Humor may so thicken the substance of a Nerve by its coldness, that it cannot be passed through by the Animal Spirits.

And lastly, The Passage of the Animal Spirits to the parts of the Body may be so hindered by a simple distemper in cold and moistnes, that the Native temper of a Nerve, and the heat in it may be destroyed, and the Animal Spirit not perform his office; for the heat of the Animal Spirits must be joyned with the Natural heat of the part, for the performance of its Office.

There is a Controversie whether other Humors may be the cause of a Palsey which we will not omit though they are very seldom mentioned by others.

Trallianus in his first Book, Chap. 6. reports of a certain man that fell into a Palsey through sadness and grief, and after taking of *Hiera* he became immovable without motion, and had died if he had not used al moistening things for his meat and drink, and other things to bring him to a temperate condition,

condition, eſpecially many Baths and Oyntments of *Hydrætrum*, that is, of Water and Oyl beaten together.

Paulus in his Third Book, Chap. 28. and 43. talks of a Palſey which came of a Chollerick Chollick, which is cured by cooling means: and in our time the Chollick of the People of *Poitteurs* in *France* is very remarkable, for it turns for the moſt part into a Palſey; and all men of underſtanding acknowledg it to proceed of a Chollerick matter, of which I ſhal ſpeak more at large in my Treatiſe of the Chollick. An example is given by *Foreſtus* in his 97. Obſervation, and his tenth Book, of a yong man who had an extenuation for want of nouriſhment in his Limbs; and when he grew worſe by hot and dry Medicines, which Phyſitians preſcribed for him, was at laſt reſtored only by the taking and applying of moiſtening Medicines.

And Reaſon doth cleerly ſhew this: for Choller, Melancholly, or any other Humor falling upon the Nerves; if they fall upon them inwardly, they may ſtop the inſenſible paſſages of the Nerves, or if they fall upon them outwardly, they may ſo preſs upon them that they may bring a Palſey. Nor do the Reaſons which *Rondeletius* gives to the contrary any way convince; when he ſaith, That Choller and Melancholly do rather dry, than ſoften and mollifie the Nerves; and Choller is more likely to produce a Convulſion by his ſharpneſs and griping, than a Palſey: For although commonly a Palſey be called a Reſolution and ſoftening of the Nerves, which is alwaies in a Palſey that cometh of flegm, yet it is not requiſite that a Reſolution of the Nerves ſhould be in every Palſey, becauſe it comes more properly and eſſentially from a ſtopping and hindering of the paſſage of the Animal Spirits; which when it may be cauſed by a compreſſion or ſtraitening of the Nerves, and the like; it doth not alwaies proceed of ſoftening and mollifying. But the opinion of a Palſey coming from a relaxing and ſoftening of the Nerves came from hence; namely. Becauſe the parts which have the Palſey being not able to be ſtretched forth, ſeem as it were to be relaxed and ſoftened; for the motion of parts is by the extenſion or ſtretching forth of the Muſcles, and by the contraction or drawing together of the ſame to their Original; which extenſion when the parts do want, they are ſaid to be relaxed although they have neither been extraordinarily moiſtened nor ſoftened.

Moreover, Since there are divers ſorts and degrees of Choller, it is not neceſſary that every ſort ſhould have ſuch acrimony and ſharpneſs as is able to beget a Convulſion.

Furthermore, There is a various mixture of Humors, and flegm, or water may be mixed with that choller which produceth the Palſey, and ſo contemperate or mitigate his ſharpneſs. Such a mixture doth often happen in Baſtard Tertian Feavers, which are probable to be thoſe which *Fernelius* ſaith turn into Palſeys.

Finally, This is very manifeſt from the Scorbutick Palſey, or that which is joyned with the Scurvy, which hath often a Convulſion accompanying it (as *Galen* in many places, and *Sennertus* in his Book of the Scurvey, the fifth Chapter) and albeit a true *Scorbut* or Scurvy is ſeldom ſeen in our Country, yet we often ſee certain Scorbutick infirmities, in which ſome ſymptoms of the true Scorbut do evidently appear. And therefore in our 74. Obſervation, and the firſt Centaury; and in our 98. Obſervation, and the ſecond Centaury, were given two examples of Scorbutick Palſeys accompanied with Convulſions.

There may be divers other Cauſes of a Palſey which are little obſerved.

As firſt, A cold and moiſt Diſtemper ſimple and without matter, may by congealing of the Spirits, not only hinder their paſſages and influence upon the parts, but alſo by deſtroying the temper of the Nerves, make them uncapable of receiving the animal Spirits whereby they have Sence and Motion: and this cold and moiſt diſtemper from overcoldneſs of the air, or from the touching of a cold thing; as *Galen* teacheth 4. *de Loc. Aff.* Chap. 4. of a certain man who (when in a cold ſeaſon, and a great ſtorm, he had wrapt his wet Cloak a long time about his Neck) fel into a Palſey in his hand, the Nerves which come from the Neck and Marrow of the Back-bone, being thereby made too cold and moiſt.

Some of our late Writers have reported, That a Palſey may be procured by a ſtupifying or numbing quality, which is inherent in ſome Medicines and Poyſons and ſomtimes in the humors themſelves. And hence they ſay comes that Palſey which is caught by touching of the Torpedo or Cramp-fiſh: but it is not ſo much to be termed a Palſey which cometh by that way, as a Stupor or Stupifaction and numbneſs: ſuch like as that which Goldſmiths and Gilders have often by the touching and much uſing of Quick-ſilver; and Looking-glaſs makers alſo which is often ſeen in *Venice*. And *Platerus* ſuppoſeth that Wine by narcotick or ſtupifying quality begets Palſeys and Numbneſs: although others differ from his Judgment, yet *Fernelius* ſeems to favor his Opinion, affirming in the place above cited that he once ſaw a man whoſe skin by gluttony and drunkenneſs was all over ſtupified and inſenſible. And *Petrus Fabius* in his Notes upon *Altimar*, Chap. 14. relates a ſtory of a certain Barbar, who after he had been ſtrongly tipling of Wine, awaked at mid-night, and fell ſuddenly into an univerſal Palſey of all the parts of his Body beneath his face, ſo deprived of Sence and Motion that he felt not when he was cut and ſcarrified with a knife, not when he was pricked deeply

with needles: But his surfet and drunkenness being past, he was cured in the space of three daies, only by revulsions, and resolving Oyntments applied to the back: Notwithstanding this Author doth not impute this Palsey to the Narcotick or stupifying quality of the Wine; but to those gross vapors which arose from his surfet, and stopped the Nerves, and this cause may be accounted among others that produce this Disease.

We have shewed in our Treatise of sleeping Diseases, That there is a stupifying quality in corrupt and malignant Humors, which being carried to the Nerves, may hinder their Actions: and since the Humors which produce the Scorbut have a venemous and malignant quality, they may also have a stupifying force which may cause also a Palsey with the Scorbut, or a Scorbutick Palsey, although (as we said before) an obstruction or stopping or pressing of the Nerves may be sufficient to cause a Palsey alone.

Moreover, Tumers growing by the Back-bone, and its Nerves, may without doubt cause a Palsey by pressing upon the Nerves.

So the cutting and pricking of a Nerve may produce the same effect.

The dislocation, luxation, or making loose of any of the Back bones, or other Joynts, may cause the same by pressing upon the Nerves.

And lastly, The Condensation or thickning of the Nerves may hinder the influence and passage of the Spirits which comes either by too much exsiccation, or drying, or of a grosse Earthy Humor which is taken into the substance of them.

So in those that have the Leprosie called *Elephantiasis*, the sence and feeling of many parts is lost by reason of their growing too thick and hard by an Earthy and grosse Nourishment which they receive.

The Causes of different Palseys are these: In a perfect Palsey, which supposeth a perfect privation of both Sence and Motion, there is more plenty of the matter, which causeth it by a general obstruction, or stopping and binding of the Nerves. But in an imperfect Palsey there is less matter to stop and bind the Nerves, whereby it comes to pass that the passage of the Animal Spirits is not altogether so closed up, but it wil suffer some portion of them to have their recourse.

Sometimes the Motion is hindered, and the Sence not; because there it more vertue to cause Motion than to cause sence or feeling, in regard feeling is a kind of passion; but Motion consists altogether in action. Sometimes the Sence is hindered, and not the Motion, for in some parts of the body those nerves and their branches which serve for sence, do not serve for motion: as those nerves which are in the skin, if they only be hurt, the Sence only is hurt, which is seen in a particular Palsey, which is in one part only of the Body: But if the chief nerves which are carried to the Muscles be hurt, the sence cannot only be hindred, but the motion also.

The Diagnosis or Knowledg of this Disease is directed to three things; namely, The kind or sort of the Disease, the part affected, and to the cause that produceth it.

We may easily know what kind of Palsey it is, because the want of motion, and the privation of sence, are to be discovered by the eye.

It is harder to know the part affected; but it is found out by the knowledg of Anatomy, which declareth the original and joyning of the nerves.

For if the right side of the face or left hath the Palsey, and no other part be hurt, the Brain is only hurt in that part from whence the nerves are brought that come to those sides of the face: But if the parts under the head be hurt, together with the Face, then it is a sign that the Back bone is hurt as wel as the Brain: And if the parts beneath the Head are hurt, and not the face, the fault is only in the Back bone: If half the Body have the Palsey, only one half of the Back bone is affected; but if the whol body suffer, then is the original of the Back bone hurt. When the Palsey is in the Legs, the part affected is about the bottom of the marrow of the Back, and the *Vertebræ*, or turning Bones of the *Os Sacrum*, and so we must search out for the place whence the nerves spring, which are brought to that part which is troubled with the Palsey.

Sometimes also the searching into the outward Cause doth much avail for the knowledg of the part affected: Two examples whereof are brought by *Galen*; one whereof we mentioned before out of his fourth Book, *de loc. affect.* chap. 4. concerning a man in a cold stormy time wrapt his wet cloak so long about his neck til he fel into a Palsey in his hand. Another is in his first Book, *de loc. affect.* chap. 5. of *Pausinias Syrus*, who lost the sence of three fingers; and when *Galen* understood that he fel from his Chariot upon his back, he concluded that some part was hurt in the original of that nerve which comes from the seventh *Vertebræ*, or Spondil; therefore (after he had in vain applied Medicines to the fingers) he used means to the back, and so wrought a brave Cure.

The Diagnosis, or knowledg of the Causes of this Disease, if fetcht from the primary Causes, the Diseases afore going, and the temperament and constitution of the sick party: And therefore when external cold Causes and moist were before, when the patient is old, when he is flegmatick of Constitution, the weather cold, diet cold and moist, and an Apoplexy hath formerly been, it signifies that:

a dis-

a diſeaſe is approaching from a Cold Diſtemper, and Flegmatick Humor.

But when a Palſey is cauſed of a Chollerick Humor, or Melancholly, theſe ſigns declare: Feavers did go before, or are preſent, a Chollerick temper and Conſtitution, or elſe a Melancholly one; the coming of the diſeaſe in hot weather, Summer or Autumn; the uſe of Spices, Salt, and other hot Meats; heavy and long paſſions of Mind, avoiding of chollerick or melancholick humors, ſharp and ſowr; many ſharp defluxions falling upon divers parts, and putting them to pain; and laſtly, when pain and a convulſion accompany the diminiſhing of Sence and Motion, and the patient is the worſe when he takes hot and dry things, but the better by the uſe of cold and moiſt.

When Tumors, Luxations, or Diſlocations, or Wounds, cauſe a Palſey, they are evident of themſelves.

As for the Prognoſtick part in the Treaty of this Diſeaſe, you may foretel events as followeth:

1 A Palſey coming of flegm fixed to the ſubſtance of the nerves, is hardly cured becauſe it wil not be eaſie to diſcuſs or divide the Flegm from the nerves, by reaſon of their coldneſs, and their weakneſs in expulſion or ſending forth of that which offendeth, which muſt co-operate, or work together with the Medicine, and in regard of the deep ſcituation of the Spina and Nerves, ſo as the whol force of the Medicine cannot reach them, and becauſe the Patient muſt of neceſſity continue long in the uſe of Medicines, which for the moſt part people cannot endure, and therefore wil not be cured.

2 A Palſey coming after an Apoplexy is ſeldom cured, and often returns into an Apoplexy, by a new flowing of the ſame matter into the Brain, which is made weak by the former diſeaſe.

3 A trembling coming upon or after a Palſey is healthful, for it ſignifieth that the paſſages of the nerves are ſomwhat open, by which ſome of the Animal Spirit beginneth to paſs, for to move the Muſcles.

4 If the part affected hath an actual heat in it, there is hope of health; but if it be alwaies actually cold, it is difficult to be cured.

5 An Atrophy, or want of Nouriſhment in the Paralytick part, with great paleneſs, takes away al hope of cure; for it doth not only ſignifie a decay of the animal Spirit, but a neer extinction of the ſhews natural heat.

6 If the Eye on that ſide which the Palſey happeneth be hurt thereby, there is little hope; for it a great want of Spirits in that part.

7 A Palſey in the Legs and Feet is eaſier cured than in the upper parts, becauſe thoſe Nerves are harder and ſtronger.

8 In old men the Palſey is incurable, by reaſon of their want of natural heat.

9 In Winter a Palſey cannot be cured, but in the Spring and Summer it may, if other things agree.

10 A ſtrong Feaver coming upon a Palſey is good; for it may conſume the matter which cauſeth it.

11 A *Diarrhœa*, or loöſneſs coming upon a new and weak Palſey is good, for *Rhaſis* ſaith 1. *Cont.* that he hath ſeen many Paralyticks cured by a *Diarrhœa*.

The Cure of this Diſeaſe is to be altered according to the variety of the Cauſes: And ſince for the moſt part it cometh of flegm and a cold diſtemper, we muſt labor chiefly to take away that cauſe; which we muſt begin to do by a general cleanſing and emptying of the whol Body.

As for bleeding it can ſcarce do any good, becauſe the fault is not in the Blood, but Flegm; and this diſeaſe comes for the moſt part to old men, ſuch as are flegmatick and cold by nature. But if plenty of crude blood unconcocted ſeems to produce flegm, and to feed it, we may open a vein in his Arm on the ſound ſide of his Body, but take but little blood leaſt his weak natural heat ſhould be extinguiſhed.

After we have omitted blood-letting, or taken a very little away, we muſt go on to take away the antecedent Cauſe, which is a cold diſtemper of the Brain; which muſt be done as before was ſhewed by Apozemes, or opening drinks, by Pills, ſweating Diet, Bags for the head, Emplaiſters, Errhines for the noſe, neezings, Maſticatories, Gargariſms that draw flegm, Veſicatories or Bliſters, or Cupping head pouders, Caps, Fumes, Magiſtral Syrups, ordinary Pills, a ſtrengthening Opiate or Electuary, by Cauſtick or burning, by digeſtive Pouder and Baths.

A Diet Drink in this diſeaſe ought to be made of Guajacum alone, and his Bark; and after he hath taken a draught, he muſt have hot bricks applied to the diſeaſed parts, but firſt they muſt be quenched in a Decoction of this, good for the head made with white Wine and Vinegar, and be wrapped in a linnen cloth, for the ſtirring up of the weak heat which is in the parts; and every fourth or fifth day you muſt purge; but it is better to give a purging drink fifteen daies before you give the ſweating, that al the load of crude humors may be better caſt out, and afterwards the reliques and remainder may be diſcuſſed by the habit of the Body. Which may be thus made:

Take of *the chips of Guajacum, three ounces; of the bark of the ſame, one ounce; of ſpring Water four pints: Infuſe them twenty four hours: then let them boyl to the conſumption of half, adding*

ding in the concluſion one ounce of Senna: Turbith and Hermodactʃ, of each two drams. Let him take half a pint of this ſtrained every morning for fifteen daies, not ſweating.

Apply a Cauſtick to the hinder part of the Head, or to the ſound Arm if the other be affected. If the Legs be affected, apply a Cauſtick to them both.

After his Diet, let him uſe for his ordinary Drink, a Decoction of Guajacum, or Water and Honey, wherein hath a little Roſemary been boyled. Let him abſtain from Wine, which is very hurtful in this Diſeaſe; but if he deſire to drink Wine, let Bettony and Sage be boyled therein. And it is far better if in the Vintage time thoſe Herbs are put into a full Veſſel of new Wine.

If the Diſeaſe be perverſe and ſtubborn, omitting the uſual Pills and Magiſtral Syrup; after his Diet, uſe ſtronger Medicines, made thus:

Take *of Pill. Fœtida the greateſt, and Pill Cochie the leſs, each half a dram; of Troches of Alhandal four grains: Let him take them once every week.*

But becauſe the humor muſt be prepared before every purge, therefore for two or three daies before he takes the Pills, let him take three or four ounces of this following Water every morning two hours before meat.

Take *of the chips of Guajacum, four ounces: of the bark of the ſame, one ounce: of Sarſaparilla one ounce and an half: of China Root one ounce: of Saſſaphras ſix drams: of Lignum Aloes, Galangal, of each one dram and an half: of the Roots of Angelica, Peony, and Fennel, of each three drams and an half: of Peony ſeeds two drams: Infuſe them for twenty four hours in ſix pints of Water, and four pints of white Wine: After ad the Leaves of Bettony, and Ivy, and Sage, of each one handful: of the Flowers of Tile Tree, Primroſes, Stœchas, or French Lavender, and Roſemary, of each two pugils: of Lavender one pugil: of old Treacle half an ounce: of Citron ſeeds and bark, of each two drams and an half: of Polipody half an ounce: of Cinnamon ſix drams: Diſtil them in* Balneo Mariæ *according to art: and to every two pints and an half of the Liquor, put of* Manus Chriſti *prepared with the Oyl of Cinnamon, four ounces: Or inſtead of this Water you may uſe the Opiate preſcribed in the Chapter of the cold diſtemper of the Brain for the ſtrengthening of the Head: but you had better uſe the Opiate of* Montagnanus *deſcribed in the Cure of the Epilepſis.*

When other Purges do little good, it wil not be amiſs to come to the uſe of Chymical Vomits, if the Patient be ſtrong: and they are mentioned in the Chapter of ſleepy Diſeaſes: For they draw the ſtubborn Humors from the Root, and cure Diſeaſes which cannot be rooted out with ordinary Medicines.

In the daies wherein he takes no other Medicine, let him take the Cephalick Opiate mentioned in Chap. 1. or the Apoplectick Water, or Tabellets, or Lozenges, for ſleepy Diſeaſes formerly mentioned.

After Univerſal Medicines we muſt proceed to Topical or particular Medicines, for the part, for the ſtirring up of heat, and recalling the Spirits, and for drying and diſcuſſing in the Spinal Marrow where for the moſt part the Cauſe of the Diſeaſe lyeth.

Therefore let the part affected be dayly rubbed with warm cloaths, but gently, leſt that the Natural heat and ſpirits drawn thither ſhould be again diſperſed.

Alſo let Cupping glaſſes be applied to the heads of the Muſcles of the part affected; and let them be narrow mouthed, and applied very hot; but let them not ſtand on very long leſt they diſperſe too much. After apply a Plaiſter of Pitch, and the Rozin of the Pine tree, that what is drawn thither may be preſerved. Or rub gently the part benummed with green Nettles, or lay on Sinapiſms, or Medicines of Muſtard, while the part begins to grow red; but you muſt not let them lie while they make Bliſters, for ſo the Spirits and Blood would be diſperſed, but only til the part made red will not grow white by the impreſſion of the finger, but remain red ſtill.

Afterward anoint the part, and the Spinal Marrow with Oyls, Oyntments, and Balſoms, of which there are many forms in Authors. The Balſom of *Guido* which is prepared by the Apothecaries, is excellent for this purpoſe. This we uſe alone, or mixed with other Medicines.

It is made after this manner:

Take *of Oyl of Foxes, Earth-worms, and Caſtor, of each one ounce: of* Guido's *Balſom, three ounces: of* Aqua vitæ *half an ounce: of Oyl of Roſemary diſtilled, one dram and an half: Mix them for a Liniment. With which anoint all the Spinal Marrow very hot, and the parts alſo reſolved covering them with warm cloaths.*

This following Oyntment of *Valeriola* in his Obſervations, is much commended.

Take *of Sage Marjoram, Bettony, Bayes, Roſemary, and Primroſe leaves, of each one handful: of the Roots of Time, Acorus, or great Galangal, and Flowerdelice newly gathered, of each three ounces: of the Oyl of Foxes, of Indian Nuts, and Rue, of each one pound: of Oyl of Terepintine, half a pound: of the ſtrongeſt Wine one pound: of* Aqua vitæ *half a pound: Boyl them till the Wine be conſumed, then ſtrain them, and ad of Serapinum, or Sagapenum, Opopanax, and*

Bdellium,

Bdellium, of each two drams: Caſtor half an ounce: Mace, Nutmegs, Styrax Calamita, Benjamin, of each three drams: long Pepper and Pellitory, of each one dram: the greaſe of an old Cat, of a Serpent, and a Gooſe, of each one ounce: the Marrow of an Ox Bone, two ounces: the Juyce of Dwarf-Elder, Sage, and Balm, of each four ounces: of the beſt Wax, or Bee-glew which the Bees make at their entring into the Hive to keep out the cold, two ounces: Mix them, and with a ſufficient quantity of Wax melted into the foreſaid Oyls, make them into the conſiſtence of a thin Ointment; with which anoint all the back bone warm, laying ſoft wool or linnen cloth warm thereon.

But an Ointment of greater effect, and leſs trouble, is made in this manner:

Take of the Juyce of Squils or Sea Onions, four ounces: the Juyce of Cowcumber and Rue, of each one ounce: Euphorbium, Caſtor, Sagapenum, Ammoniacum, and Bdellium diſſolved in Vinegar, of each one dram and an half: Mirrh, Frankinſence, Pellitory, and Niter, of each one dram: the Oyls of Elder, Turpentine, and Euphorbium, of each half an ounce: Wax as much as is ſufficient: Make an Ointment.

You muſt chiefly uſe the Ointments in the time of his Diet, after the ſweating is wiped off, and after the time of bathing; for then the pores and paſſages of the Skin being open do more eaſily receive the Ointment.

Let the Linnen cloaths that are uſed after anointing be warmed with this Fumigation.

Take of Amber, Maſtich, and Mirrh, of each one dram: Frankinſence two ſcruples: Cloves, Nutmegs, Cinnamon, and Mace, of each half a dram: Wood of Aloes half a ſcruple: Pouder them, and ſprinkle them with the ſpirit of Wine, dry them, and do ſo five times, and then make a pouder to be thrown upon Embers.

If the Diſeaſe do not yeild to theſe, Cerats and Emplaſters muſt be laid to the Back.

Take of the Emplaſter of Bettony, Melilot, and Bay-berries, of each one ounce: Frankinſence half an ounce: Caſtor and Euphorbium, of each one dram: the ſeeds of Nigella or Gith, the ſeeds of Water-creſſes and Muſtard, the Roots of Pellitory, and of Sal Niter, of each half an ounce: with the Oyl of Bricks make them into the form of an Emplaſter, which apply upon Leather.

But this following is better.

Take of Pitch, Galbanum, Sagapenum, and Ammoniacum, of each one ounce: Pellitory, and Muſtard ſeed, of each half an ounce: Euphorbium two drams: yellow Wax three drams: With as much Oyl of Turpentine as is ſufficient make a Plaiſter.

You may alſo provoke ſweat in the part by the fume of the Decoction of Herbs and Roots proper for the Head boyled in white Wine, which you muſt do by putting it into ſuch a Veſſel as the Patient being faſting, may ſit ſo covered over it, that the Water may not touch him, but the vapor only. Or you may ſweat him with a dry Bath, called commonly *Stupha*. Let the vapor of the former Decoction be received from red hot ſtints, upon which it hath been ſprinkled.

A Decoction of Burdock and other Dock Roots, is much commended for provoking ſweat: But our women uſe the Decoction of Danewort, called *Ebulus*, for this, and diſeaſes of the joynts, by which they provoke ſweat violently.

When the Patient hath ſweat enough, get him to bed, and give one dram of Treacle with any proper Water diſtilled: He muſt bath thus twice or thrice in a week. In Autumn he muſt hold his Limbs in the hot Grapes, or Wine-preſs an hour or two; and afterwards anoint them with a proper Ointment before mentioned: this is to be done all the time of the Vintage.

Laſtly, Sulphur or Brimſtone, baths of Niter and Bitumen before mentioned, are very agreeable, and many times go beyond all other Medicines; if the Patient uſe them ſome daies for drink, bathing and waſhing the head; after that anoint it with one of the Liniments preſcribed.

The Chymicks have many Remedies for the Cure of this Diſeaſe: Among which, the beſt are, *Elixir Proprietatis*, Spirit of Tartar, and Balſom of Galbanum.

All the time of the Diſeaſe, let the parts affected be wrapt in the skins of Foxes, Hairs, or Lambs.

A Palſey which comes from Choller or Melancholly requires the ſame Cure which is preſcribed in the Cure of Hypochondriack Melancholly: but when the Diſeaſe is more Chollerick, you muſt make choyce of thoſe Medicines which are more cold.

CHAP.

CHAP. VI.

Of a Convulsion.

Spasmus, Cramp, or Convulsion, is an involuntary and continued retraction of the Nerves and Muscles to their Original.

Convulsion is two-fold: The one Proper, to which the Definition mentioned agreeth: The other Improper, which is called a Convulsive Motion: and they are thus distinguished: In a true Convulsion, the retraction of the Muscles is always; but in a Convulsive Motion, the retraction is every time new. Moreover, in a true Convulsion the Limb is immovable, in a Convulsive Motion it is moved divers waies, as in the Falling-sickness, which is the chief of Convulsive Motions.

They differ also in respect of their Causes; for a true Convulsion, is either from Fulness or Emptiness; but a Convulsive Motion is from Irritation or provocation. Lastly, they are distinguished, in that the true Convulsion comes from the Disease only; the Convulsive Motion from the faculty alone. Which, that Novices may rightly understand, they must know that *Galen* in his Second Book, *de symptom. caus.* chap. 1. hath thus distinguished the Symptoms of a depraved Motion: Some (saith he) are only the work of Nature, which is constrained to move so from some violent cause: Others accompany diseases, Nature not assisting their production: Others are by the agreement and concurrence of Nature and the Disease. Now *Galen* by the name of Nature, understands a Faculty: the Operations of the Faculty are, Neesing, Coughing, Yawning, Reaching, and Hiccoughs: But the operations of the Disease only, is Palpitation and Convulsion: But the operation of both the Disease and Faculty, is Trembling, and imperfect Palsey, or Resolution.

From *Galens* words above mentioned, there ariseth a great difficulty, when he mentions the Hiccoughs in the operations of the Faculty; for it continueth by Irritation, or provocation, and is a Convulsive Motion: But *Galen* recites a Convulsion among those operations which come only from the Disease. Yea *Hippocrates* in his 3. Aphorism, and Sect. 6. affirmeth that the Hiccough and Convulsion come of fulness and emptiness, and repletion and inanition, or fulness and emptiness make only a true Convulsion. For the resolving of which difficulty, we say that the word Repletion or fulness, in its large sence comprehends Provocation, according to many Authors, because the provoking causes are material, and therefore do in some sort fill the parts in which they are contained; but thus Repletion is not the immediate cause of Hiccoughs, but the mediate, because it doth provoke the part in which it is to expulsion, by its quantity or quality.

Lastly, We must know, and observe, *Hippocrates* and *Galen* do declare a Convulsive Motion by the general name of a Convulsion; so that they cannot be distinguished, but by the differences mentioned.

Again, A true Convulsion is divided into a total one, by which almost the whol body is contracted; and a partial one, which is only in some one Member.

An Universal or total Convulsion, is caused either from the Brain, when the Muscles of the Face are plickt together as well as the whol Body: Or from the Spinal Marrow, when the Muscles that move the Head, and Spina or Back, either before or behind, or both, are plickt and drawn together. Whence arise three kinds of Convulsions. The first called *Emprostotonos*, when the Body with the Neck and Head, is violently contracted and drawn forward, so that the Chin is joyned to the Breast, and the Body looks like the keel of a Ship; nay, it is sometimes like a Bow, and sometimes round, and the Head of the Patient is joyned to his Knees, and then the two Muscles which bend the Head forward are chiefly affected. The Second is called *Opistotonos*, when the Body is drawn backward, and in that, either the twelve Muscles which extend the head, or some of them are drawn together. The third is called *Tetanos*, when the Muscles both before and behind, are equally contracted, and the parts drawn by the opposite Muscles being ballanced remain stiff and straight, and that is called *Motus Tonicus*, which is a most violent springing from the contention of al the Muscles.

A Particular Convulsion is made from the contraction of the Muscle of some part coming from the hurt of that Nerve which is ordained for his motion, and sometimes it hath a peculiar name from the effect or symptome. So the Convulsion of those Muscles which move the Eyes, is called *Strabismus*: of the Jaws and Temples is called τρισμὸς. The Convulsion of the Mouth by Contraction of the broad Muscle on the one side, is called *Spasmus Cynicus*, a dog Convulsion, and a wresting of the mouth; but if the contraction be on both sides, it is called *Risus Sardonicus*, or a grinning. But the wryness of the mouth may be without a Convulsion, namely, from the Resolution of one Muscle, which being resolved, the muscle on the other side draws it to the sound part, and there is a distorti-

on

on or wryneſs which is improperly called a Convulſion: The Convulſion of the muſcles of the Yard is called *Satyriaſis*, or *Priapiſmus*. Other Convulſions want proper names.

But the immediate cauſes of a Convulſion according to the Opinion of *Hippocrates* and *Galen*, are Repletion and Inanition, or fulneſs and emptineſs as above mentioned. And this Opinion is confirmed by the Example of a Lute or Harp ſtrings, which uſe to be ſtretched; which Inſtance *Galen* doth bring moſt elegantly in his Book of Palpitation, of trembling and ſhaking, chap. 8. and his third Book of Parts affected, chap. 6. and his ſecond Book of the Cauſes of Symptomes, chap. 2. and his Comment upon Aphor. 39. Sect. 6. For ſaith he, while the ſtrings are moiſt and filled with humor, as it falls out when the wind is Southernly, they are ſtretched, and ſo broken; and when they are over dry, as it happens in Northern weather, they are contracted, and alſo broken. So the Reins of a Bridle drying too neer the fire, are contracted when they were before extended with too much moiſture: the ſame befals the Nerves, which being either too full of moiſture, or too dry, are ſtretched and contracted; and the Muſcles into which they are united, are ſo drawn back to their principal or original, from whence all the Body hath a Convulſion.

The Mediate Cauſes of a Convulſion, which make Repletion and Emptineſs, are divers. And firſt the Cauſes of Repletion are recited by *Galen* in his Book of Trembling, chap. laſt, to the increaſe of flegm, and inflamation, a wateriſh Humor flowing to the Nerves, is ſuppoſed to ſtretch them in their breadth, which muſt needs make them ſhorter.

But here is a very great difficulty which is propounded by divers Authors, but is reſolved perfectly and plainly by none: namely, what difference there is between the cauſe of a Palſey, and of a Convulſion, when both come from a water flowing upon the Nerves: why that matter which makes a Palſey (which ſo fills the Nerves that it ſtops all their paſſages or pores, whereby the Animal Spirits are hindred in their motion) doth not alſo ſtretch the Nerves in breadth, and cauſe alſo a Convulſion; and why the matter cauſing a Convulſion, filling the Nerves, doth not alſo ſtop the paſſages, and cauſe a Palſey, when contrarily in a Convulſion the feeling remaineth, and the part affected for the moſt part is very much pained? For the reſolving of this doubt, Authors are much divided; and the moſt ingenious of them all, confeſs that is beyond their capacity. Moſt witty *Averroes* conſidering of this Point, breaks forth in this expreſſion: *I would I knew the reaſon* (ſaith he) *why the Nerves are extended in their breadth, and not in their length.* And preſently after he ſaith: *Know ye that the words of all Phyſitians that write of this Symptome, are more proper to Fidlers and Singers than to Demonſtrators, or ſuch as ſhould make things plain.* And Ingenuous *Argenterius* in his Comment upon the 26. Aphor. Sect. 2. ſpeaks thus: *It is not eaſie to render a reaſon of all things, and eſpecially why Water which is ſaid to be the cauſe of the Palſey, or reſolution of Nerves, and of the Convulſion, ſhould ſomtimes bring one, and ſomtimes another, when it is the ſame matter, and the ſame parts are affected, namely, the Nerves; why ſhould not the ſame Diſeaſe be alwaies produced?* Thus *Argenterius*. The great difficulty of this matter hath diſtracted all Writers into divers Opinions, ſo that ſome have left the Doctrine of *Hippocrates* and *Galen*, among whom are *Averroes*, *Eraſtus*, *Platerus*, *Ceſalpinus*, *Sennertus*, and others, whoſe divers Opinions, and long Diſputations we cannot attend to repeat, for we deſire to be very ſhort, and lay aſide all Controverſies, only adhæring to thoſe things which are moſt neceſſary for Cure. The Opinion of the ſoundeſt Writers, which are unwilling to diſſent from *Galen*, comes to this: That a Convulſion is cauſed of a thick matter, which extendeth the Nerves in their breadth, and contracteth them in their length: and that a Palſey comes of a thin humor which runs through the ſubſtance of the nerve, and ſofteneth it, but doth not open the pores and paſſages. But this doth not ſatisfie a ſoul that is greedy of Truth: For if a thick humor by filling the Nerve, doth ſtretch it broader, why doth it not alſo fill its pores and ſtop the inſenſible paſſages, and hinder the coming in of the Animal Spirit? and ſo bring a Palſey? and why doth not a Convulſion follow a Palſey in proceſs of time, when a thin humor long ſticking upon a part, muſt needs grow thick, even as the ſerous matter which makes the *Arthritis*, or Joynt-gout by long continuance upon the part, cauſeth the matter which makes the ſtone. Others ſay that in a Convulſion, only the external part of the Nerve which is Membranous and tender, is poſſeſſed with the humor; but in a Palſey, the Internal: but this giveth leſs ſatisfaction: For when the Nerves are for the moſt part ſlender, it is not eaſie to conceive how the humor ſhould only poſſeſs the external part, and not the internal; or the internal, and not the external: Or leaſtwiſe (if this could be ſo) a Convulſion would follow a Palſey, and a Palſey a Convulſion, by the increaſe of the matter; and that which at firſt did only poſſeſs the outward or the inward part, in proceſs of time would ſeize upon the whol Nerve.

Therefore we, although we cannot ſatisfie our ſelves in this great Difficulty while better Arguments are propounded, ſuppoſe that thoſe Objections may be taken off thus: A Convulſion and a Palſey differ in this; A Palſey is made of a pure watery humor without mixture, which doth not extend the parts, but ſofteneth them, as we may ſee in the tumor called *œdema*; but a Convulſion is cauſed of the ſame humor, but not pure and ſimple, but mixed with much wind, by which wind the

Nerves are ſtretched, and the Muſcles alſo which are contracted to their Original: For no cauſe can be thought upon more fit to make ſo great a contraction, than wind, which *Galen* acknowledgeth in his ſecond Book, *de ſympt. cauſ.* chap. 2. and Experience teacheth us, that the greateſt diſtentions are made eſpecially by wind, as we may ſee in the dropſie called *Tympanites*, and the Chollick. And in Convulſions, thoſe are the greateſt which are cauſed of wind, which ſtretcheth and diſtendeth the parts. By this Argument, all the aforeſaid Objections are anſwered: For if it be demanded, Why that flegm or water which maketh a Convulſion doth not bring a Palſey by hindering the paſſage of the Spirits? we may anſwer, That it is in ſo ſmal a quantity, that it cannot ſtop the inſenſible paſſages of the Nerves, and that it is ſo extenuated and made thin by much wind, that it cannot produce a ſtoppage or obſtruction. Or we may ſay that wind is the chief cauſe of Convulſions, which *Galen* acknowledgeth in the place mentioned: And in his 6. Book, *de loc. affect. cap. ult.* he makes the only cauſe of a Priapiſm (which is the Convulſion of the Yard) to be wind.

The other Cauſe of a Convulſion coming from Repletion, which *Galen* mentions in the place cited, is the Inflamation of the Nervous parts, eſpecially in the Original of the Nerves, or neer to its original, by which they are ſtretched; and that Inflamation is either from a cauſe only internal, namely, from a flux of blood upon the part; or of an outward cauſe, as of a wound, contuſion, or bruiſe, or a puncture of a Nerve.

The Cauſes of a Convulſion by Emptineſs or Inanition, are all extraordinary or immoderate Evacuations, by bleeding at the Noſe, or any outward part, by vomit, flux of the belly, or ſweat, as alſo all great conſumptions of the Radical moiſture which happen in ſtrong Feavers, immoderate exerciſe, watchings, cares, immoderate Lechery, hunger and thirſt, and the dayly uſe of Food and Medicines which heat and dry.

This kind of Convulſion from Emptineſs is rejected by many; who ſuppoſe that ſo great a drought cannot be brought into a living Body, as may contract the Nerves; but that is uſual in a Hectick Feaver, or a Maraſmus: theſe men are thus anſwered: Every emptineſs or drineſs cannot make a Convulſion, but that which is made ſuddenly and unequally; by which means there is a ſudden Evacuation or emptying of the Radical moiſture, which makes the parts cling and cloſe together for the avoiding of a *Vacuum* or emptineſs which Nature abhorreth: but if the moiſture be equally drawn from al parts, and by degrees, there is no contraction becauſe the parts made empty are filled with Air.

A Convulſive Motion, is of a ſharp pricking matter which provokes the Nerves; and it is for the moſt part, a humor or vapor ful of acrimony or malignancy, this comes often in malignant Feavers: Theſe Convulſive Motions are cauſed for the moſt part from the Brain and Nerves, ſuffering by ſympathy or conſent, and then it is called *Convulſio Sympathica*: And this Sympathy is either by their plain ſuffering together in reſpect of their likeneſs in ſubſtance and office, and their vicinity or neerneſs; or from an evil quality, or poyſonous air ſent to the original of the Nerves. And it is often cauſed by conſent from the mouth of the ſtomach through an æruginous or ruſt like Choller, through worms, poyſon; or other ſharp matter which gripeth: and alſo from conſent with the womb, as it happeneth in Hyſterical paſſions, or the Mother.

The Diagnoſis or knowledg of a Convulsion is eaſily learned from thoſe things which we propounded in the beginning of this Chapter: For in a true Convulsion, the part is contracted, ſtiff, and immovable, that it cannot be bent at the pleaſure of the Patient; but in a Convulsive Motion the part is ſhaken and roſſed hither and thither.

As to the Prognoſtick; A Convulsion which is in many parts, eſpecially thoſe neer the Brain, is dangerous; as alſo that which is in the Muſcles of the Breaſt, which giveth us to fear a ſuffocation, by reaſon of the ſhortneſs of the Patients breathing.

A Convulsion coming of too much bleeding or purging, is deadly, as *Hippocrates* ſaith in his Aphoriſms: for as *Galen* ſheweth in his Comment, that a Convulsion comes of emptineſs; but it may ſo fall out as it may come of irritation or provoking by the motion of ſharp and chollerick humors to the Nervous parts, or of the malign quality of a venemous Medicine, as it happens after the taking of Hellebore.

A Convulsion from a Frenzy is deadly. *Aetius* affirmeth, that he never heard of, or ſaw any ſo taken, that recovered.

It is better that a Feaver follow a Convulsion, than a Convulsion a Feaver, Aphor. 37. Sect. 2. for a Feaver coming upon a Convulsion, takes away its cauſe: but a Convulsion coming upon a Feaver, ſhews a malignant matter which threatneth death.

Whoſoever are taken with the *Tetanus*, or Cramp ſo called, die within four daies; but if they continue longer, they are cured, Aph. 6. Sect. 5. for the great ſtretching of all the Muſcles hinders breathing, ſo that they are ſuffocared. And we muſt obſerve, that a Convulsion is not the cauſe of death in reſpect of what is done to the Nerves: for a Palſey coming of the like cauſe continues many yeers: but in reſpect of the ſuffocation it brings by the Convulsion of the Muſcles ordained for breathing.

The

The Cure of this Diſeaſe is divers, as the Cauſe is divers.

That which comes of Emptineſs is ſeldom and incurable, therefore we ſhall not inſiſt upon the Cure of it. Authors do preſcribe al kind of moiſtening Medicines, and opening Oyntments. That which comes of provoking or irritation, is from other Diſeaſes, and is comprehended under the Cure of them. It remains therefore that we treat of the Cure of a Convulſion by Repletion, which when it comes of flegm and wind, muſt be cured by removing of them. This is done firſt by blood-letting if it abound, and the party be ſtrong; but it is better to take too little than too much; for blond is an Enemy to that principal Cauſe, which is flegm.

After Blood-letting, or it being omitted if need do not require, you muſt purge with pills which are ſtrong (but have an eye to the Patients ſtrength) according to thoſe forms in the firſt Chapter, you muſt ad to them three grains of Caſtor.

If the Patient will not take pills, he may take Potions, Pouders, and other Medicines preſcribed in the firſt Chapter.

After Purging, if you have not let blood before, apply Cupping glaſſes with Scarrification; otherwiſe without: firſt to the remote parts, then to the parts neer the part affected. But if the Thighs, or Legs have a Convulſion, apply them to the Buttocks and Loyns: if the Arms, to the Neck and Shoulders; laboring alwaies to bring the humor back to its original.

You may alſo with profit apply a Veſicatory to the parts oppoſite to that which is affected.

After the firſt purging, the matter is to be prepared with an Apozeme, preſcribed in the Cure of the cold diſtemper. Make it purging, if ſtrength and other things wil permit; otherwiſe leave out the Purgatives.

The Apozeme done, give him Pills again, putting Caſtorium to them, and to all his Purges.

If you uſe only an altering Apozeme, which changeth the Humors, you muſt in that time give ſeveral ſharp Clyſters, ſuch as are preſcribed in the Chapter of ſleeping Diſeaſes.

Alſo anoint the part with this Liniment,

Take *of Oyntment of Marſh-mallows, ſix ounces; Oyl of Turpentine and Chamomel, of each one ounce; Oyl of Spike three drams; and of Foxes half an ounce; Liquid Storax two ounces: Anoint the part and back-bone often therewith.*

Take *of Oyl of Dill, and Chamomel, of each one ounce*; Unguentum Martiatum *half an ounce*; Oleum Petroleum, *and Spike, of each one dram; Spirit of Wine three drams*

Ducks or Gooſe Greaſe prepared as followeth is much commended.

Take *a Gooſe or Duck that is fat, pluck it, and draw it; then fill it with theſe things following:* Take *of Sage, Marjoram, and French Lavender, of each one handful; Gum Ammoniacum and Bdellium, of each one ounce; Calamus Aromaticus, Nutmeg, Mace, and Cloves, of each half an ounce: Beat them in a Mortar, and moiſten them with the Oyl of Earthworms; after, put them into the belly of the Gooſe ſowed well together, and roaſt it upon a Spit. Receive the Dripping into a Veſſel half full of Vinegar, and anoint with it.*

But it is ſtronger thus:

Take *of the dripping aforeſaid ſix ounces; the Chymical Oyls of Wax, Nutmeg, and Sage, of each two drams.*

After you have anointed, you muſt cover the part affected with a hot Sheeps skin; and when it is cold, if you have not a freſh one, make it warm again with the Oyl of Dill, or the like hot Oyl.

We apply ſucceſsfully to the part affected, the hot Lungs of a Sheep, as alſo yong Pidgeons, Whelps, and Chickens ſlit in the middle.

Put the part affected into an Ox or Sheeps Belly, or other great Creatures newly killed, and let it remain there while it is warm.

Baths of Head herbs are good, putting to them a third part of Oyl, or anointing afterwards.

Some commend this Emplaſter:

Take *of Colophony two ounces; Rozin and Pitch, of each one ounce; Frankinſence, Maſtich, Ceruß, of each half an ounce*; Sanguis Draconis, *common Salt, Ammoniacum, and Terepintine, of each two drams; new Wax, two ounces; white Vitriol, two drams; Mother of Pearl, two ounces; Load-ſtone half an ounce; yellow Amber one dram and an half; Oyl of Egs and Roſes, of each two drams: Make a Plaiſter upon Leather.*

Baths coming of Brimſtone are excellent, eſpecially in conſtant Convulſions. Alſo dry Baths of the fume of the Decoction of Sage, Roſemary, Stoechas, Chamepitys, or Ground-pine, Origan, and the like, in white Wine ſprinkled upon ſtones fire hot, or Iron.

It is very good to foment the hinder part of the Head and the Neck with hot *Aqua vitæ.*

Penotus doth wonderfully extol the following Medicine for quite Curing of a Convulſion.

Take *Oyl of Turpentine, half an ounce; Oyl of Cloves ſix drops; of the Mucilage or ſlime of Briony, ſo much as is ſufficient to make a Liniment: Anoint the part affected, and the root of the Nerve which comes unto it.*

Others say they quickly cure a Member with the Oyl of Turpentine, of Wax, Chamomel, and the like, mingled with Spirit of Salt.

The following Liniment is very powerful.

Take *old Butter, and Bacon, of each a quarter of a pound; Bdellium, and Ammoniacum, of each one ounce; Mirrh, and Castor, of each two drams; Stechas and Rosemary flowers, of each one pugil; Nutmeg and Cloves, of each one dram; a Kitten or young Cat, flead, bowelled, and cut in pieces: Stuff a Goose with these, and roast her; cast away the first dripping which is watery, the next which is fatty receive in a Vessel half full of Vinegar: Anoint the parts affected, and the back bone therewith.*

Sometimes the pain is so intollerable that it must first be cured: For which this is good.

Take *of Oyl of Violets, Lillies, and Chamomel, of each an ounce and an half; Oyl of sweet Almonds, Mastich, and Roses, of each one ounce.*

If you wil have stronger, make this Bath:

Take *of Marsh-mallow Roots, and Lillies, of each one pound and an half; of the Leaves of Origan, Violets, Mallows, Sage, and Wormwood, of each two handfuls; Linseeds and Fenugreek, of each one pound: Boyl them for a Bath; in which let the party sit, not long, but come out as soon as he finds ease: It is sufficient if the parts affected be only bathed therewith.*

Others make Baths only of Oyl, and if the Patient be rich, they boyl a Fox or two in it.

While these are doing, purge the Head with neesing, and chewing, described in the first Chapter.

As also you must strengthen with the Cephalick or Capital Opiate, Apoplectick Water, Treacle, and the like.

Rondoletius speaks thus of his Water of Swallows: A Water made of Swallows and Castor, presently cureth a Convulsion coming of Repletion: You may find the description of it in his Chapter of the Epilepsie.

CHAP. VII.

Of the Epilepsie, or Falling-sickness.

THe *Epilepsie*, is a Convulsion of the whol Body, not continually, but by fits, with a hinderance both of the Mind and Sences.

The Word Convulsion, is not here taken properly and strictly for a true Convulsion; but improperly, for a Convulsive Motion: For an Epilepsy is a Convulsive Motion, not a true Convulsion. But we keep the name of Convulsion in imitation of *Galen*, who calls an Epilepsy alwaies a Convulsion.

This Definition is taken out of *Galen*, 3. *de loc. aff. cap.* 7. and *lib. de diff. sympt. cap.* 3. and defines a perfect Epilepsie, in which all the Body is contracted, and all the Sences both internal and external are abolished. Yet there are imperfect Epilepsies, in which only the Head, or Arm, Leg, and Thigh, or half the Body is only contracted. There is also an Epilepsy in which the mind remains sound, and the external sences, and also the voluntary motion of some parts. I saw a Nun, which in her Epileptick fits had divers contractions, sometimes of the Arms, then of the Legs, sometimes of the Head, afterwards of the whol Body; yet she saw those that stood by and spake; nay, she also endeavored a voluntary motion against the Convulsive, so as she did in a manner diminish the involuntary motion: sometimes she was in a smal fit only, and walked about her Chamber, but with a disorderly motion, leaping and using strange antick postures, by which she caused the rest of the Nuns to be very merry, and she at that time laughed with them, and spake when she pleased.

Every convulsive motion (as I said in the former chapter) cometh of provocation, which proceedeth from the quantity or quality of the matter. The quantity of matter which causeth the disease, burdening Nature, stirs her up to expel that which is troublesom to her. Whence the Opinion of *Galen* is confirmed, which is so disputed by late Physitians, That an Epilepsy comes of an imperfect obstruction of the Ventricles of the Brain; for if the humor obstructing or stopping is burdensom to Nature, the Brain will labor to expel it. In the quality there is no difference, for all agree in this, That the expulsive faculty is stirred up by sharpness and acrimony, and by any quality which is offensive to Nature.

The Causes stirring up or provoking, are either contained in the Brain, and make a proper Epilepsy, or come from other parts, and so make an Epilepsy by consent or sympathy.

And that provoking or irritation makes an Epilepsy, when the Brain laboring to expel that which is offensive shakes its self, and by consequence all the Nerves which are adjoyned to it.

There

There is in *Galen*, and almoſt all Authors, a threefold Epilepſy. The firſt is that which hurts the Brain, in which the Diſeaſe is: The ſecond is that which hurts the Brain by conſent from the Stomach: The third is when the diſeaſe is ſent from other parts of the Body to the head: And theſe have their proper names; The firſt, as being chief, is called *Epilepſia*; the ſecond *Analepſia*; the third, *Catalepſia*: But (by *Galens* leave) that diviſion is ſuperfluous, and in vain is that Epilepſy which comes from the Stomach ſeparated from thoſe which comes by ſympathy from other parts; when all ought to be called *Sympathicæ*, or Epilepſies by conſent. Neither is it ſufficient to ſay that an Epilepſy from the Stomach is diſtinct from others, becauſe it is moſt frequent ſince that which comes from the Stomach and Spleen, is as uſual and as frequent, if not more.

Therefore we divide an Epilepſy into a Proper one, and one by Conſent. Again, we ſubdivide that which is by conſent according to the divers parts from whence theſe ſharp and malignant vapors are ſent to the Brain, for there is almoſt no part in the Body from which a malignant vapor cannot be ſent. Two Stories are related by *Galen* in the place quoted; the one of a Boy of thirteen yeers old, who at the firſt had the Epilepſy in his Leg, after that it aſcended into his Thigh and Bowels, and by the ſides into the neck til it came to the head, which at firſt touch made him not able to ſtand. Another is of a Youth who in the beginning of his fit perceived as it were a cold air to aſcend. But it is remarkable and well known, that an Epilepſy comes for the moſt part from the Guts, the matter that breeds worms, from the Matrix and other parts, and it is confirmed by many Authors.

Therefore it is manifeſt from what hath been ſaid, how *Galens* Opinion may be defended, who affirms, That a proper Epilepſy comes of an imperfect obſtruction of the ventricle of the Brain; which we cannot defend to be the conſtant cauſe, as *Galen* ſeems to grant who laies down no other: but we are rather forced to confeſs, that it is leſs uſual than the reſt.

Nor do the Arguments brought againſt *Galen* any way convince, the chief whereof are theſe:

Firſt, As *Fernelius* ſaith, if an Epilepſy comes from plenty of Humors, it would come moſt in the ſleep, at which time there is plenty of Humor. I anſwer, That the humor of which ſleep is begot, is in the ſubſtance, not the Ventricles of the Brain, and therefore doth not ſtir up the expulſive faculty which reſideth moſt in the Ventricles.

Secondly, *Fernelius* ſaith, That becauſe an Epilepſy is quickly diſſolved, it ſhould turn into a Palſey, as an Apoplexy doth when the humor is caſt into the nerves. I anſwer, That in an Apoplexy, by reaſon of the weakneſs of the expulſive faculty which is oppreſſed by many humors, they are caſt into the parts adjoyning; but expulſion being ſtronger, and more free in an Epilepſy, they are ſent to thoſe parts which are ordained by Nature for their diſcharge. And it is falſe which *Fernelius* ſaith, That an Epilepſy never ends in a Palſey; for we have ſeen a Palſey come after it. And ſometimes Apoplexies at their firſt coming are turned into Convulſions before there be a perfect obſtruction of the Ventricles of the Brain; and alſo many Epileptick men die by an Apoplexy when a little obſtruction turns into a total ſtopping.

Thirdly, Againſt *Galen* ſome argue thus: As a compleat Obſtruction of the Ventricles totally takes away the functions of the Brain in an Apoplexy: So an incompleat Obſtruction would only diminiſh, not deprave the Functions, nor produce ſuch convulſive motions as are ſometimes more violent than ſound motions. I anſwer, That Nature being wholly oppreſſed by a total obſtruction doth not labor for expulſion; but ſhe hath ſtrength enough in a half obſtruction to move and ſtir up the Brain to expulſion. This is confirmed by the Example of a defluxion falling upon the Lungs, which if it fill the whol Lungs, it makes great difficulty of breathing without a Cough, as cometh to paſs in an Aſthma, or ſhortneſs of breathing: but if a ſmal quantity only of humor do fall, the Lungs are ſtirred up to expulſion, whence cometh a Cough.

The Signs of an Epilepſy are of three ſorts: Either they are ſuch as ſignifie an approaching Epilepſy, or one that is preſent, or ſuch as ſhew the difference of Epilepſyes.

The Signs of an Epilepſy approaching, are two-fold: Either they ſignifie the firſt coming of the Diſeaſe; or ſome Fit to be at hand. The ſame ſigns ſerve for both, but moſt ſurely in thoſe who are actually poſſeſſed therewith, do they ſhew the condition of it in its return; for in thoſe who never had this diſeaſe formerly, theſe ſigns are doubtful for the moſt part, and may declare many head diſeaſes; but all of them together may give ſome certainty.

Therefore al ſigns of an eminent Epilepſy are to be propounded with this admonition, That al ſigns do not meet in al; but ſome in one, ſome in another, as the cauſes and conſtitutions do differ. But that they may orderly be laid down, we muſt ſearch the originals of theſe ſigns, which flow from Animal, Vital, and Natural actions, from excrements, qualities changed, and proper accidents.

In reſpect of the Animal Functions, and unaccuſtomed diſturbance of the mind and Body, threatneth an Epilepſy, heavineſs of head, head-ach, vertigo or giddineſs, or much ſleep, from whence the Body hath no refreſhment; troubleſom dreams, dulneſs of mind, or perplexity, forgetfulneſs, ſorrow, fear, dread, ſloth, graveneſs of actions, ſnatching and trembling of the parts, dulneſs of the ſences, a down look, clouds and other things flying before the eyes, noiſe in the ears, a ſtink in the noſtrils,

ſtrils, a ſtiff tongue, and its inordinate Motion, yawning, and neezing.

In reſpect of the Vital Function, theſe with others are the ſigns: Anger, Beating or palpitation of the heart, ſtraitneſs of Breaſt, and alteration in Breathing.

In reſpect of Natural Functions, theſe are forerunners of an Epilepſy; diſdain of meat, or immoderate Appetite, Squeamiſhneſs, heart-burning.

In reſpect of Excrements, theſe are ſigns: Much ſpittle, thin and crude Urine, often Nocturnal Pollutions.

In regard of qualities and proper accidents changed; Paleneſs of Face, and ſwelling of the heart.

A preſent Epilepſy is eaſily known, if it be perfect; but it hath many differences which cauſe difficulty, as we ſhall ſhew.

In a compleat fit all the Sences both internal and external are hindred. The party ſuddenly falls, and the whol Body, or at leaſt ſome parts are diverſly moved: Moreover, there is a ſtaring and thruſting forth of the eyes, gnaſhing of Teeth, a difficult breathing, as in thoſe that are hanged; the ſeed, dung, and urine are ſent forth involuntarily, and about the end of the fit, he foameth at the Mouth and Noſe, which happen only in a vehement Epilepſy, and the fit being ended, he forgets all things he then acted.

Some of the Ancients make three kinds of Epilepſies: One which is like a deep ſleep; another which doth ſhake the body after divers motions; a third which is made of both the former. The late Phyſitians deny the firſt kind, ſaying, That it is more like a Coma, or a Carus than an Epilepſy; and theſe two Diſeaſes cannot be otherwiſe diſtinguiſhed, but that in a Coma is a deep ſleep without a Convulſion, and a Convulſion is a certain ſign of an Epilepſie. But *Avicen* ſaith otherwiſe, namely, That an Epilepſy comes many times without an apparant Convulſion. And experience teacheth us, That many men in Epilepſies have fits like Coma: and it's known to be an Epilepſie, not a Coma, or a Carus by this; The ſleep in an Epilepſie cometh and goeth by fits, when in a Coma it comes all at once.

A true Epilepſy is diſtinguiſhed from an Epilepſy by conſent thus: In the true there appears many ſigns of the Brain affected; as heavineſs of mind, and ſlowneſs, decay of memory, troubleſom ſleep with dreams, dulneſs of ſences, ſlowneſs and idleneſs of Body, pain of the head, and other things. Moreover, the ſick man doth not perceive the fit coming, but is ſuddenly taken therewith unawares, at the new Moon for the moſt part. The due proportion of the inferior parts being without blemiſh do confirm this ſign.

But we may know whether it come from the right or left ſide of the head moſt: By this, either the ſight of one eye is more obſcured, or the hearing more thick with the noiſe of the head on that ſide; or if the right or left ſide be more dull.

But we may know from what humor, eſpecially an Epilepſy cometh by thoſe ſigns which declare when flegm, choller, or melancholly abound.

An Epilepſy by conſent, is thus known: There appear no ſigns of a diſtempered Brain; the Patient perceives his Diſeaſe Coming, and a wind riſing from the parts below: or ſome lower part is weakened, or elſe affected ſtrongly in the time of the fit.

Theſe things following do ſhew that the Cauſe of an Epilepſy is in the ſtomach: Diſdain of meat, an inability to faſt, loathing, vomiting, pain of the ſtomach, gnawing, pricking, and diſtention; ſomtimes beating of the heart, which ariſeth from the Stomach.

That the diſeaſe comes from the Liver or Spleen, appears by often belching and breaking of wind, a ſwelling of the belly with rumbling and noiſe, ſowr belchings, ſtraitneſs of the Midrif, and pain ſomtimes reaching to the back, beſides ſome diſtemper in inferior parts.

An Hyſterick fit, or the Mother, mixt with Convulſions, if a retaining of the Courſes or Seed went before, ſhews that it comes from the Womb.

If the Epilepſy comes from an external part, ſome wind is perceived to riſe from that part, and the matter cauſing the Diſeaſe, ſomtimes tickleth and beateth in the part, which is a ſign there is a fit at hand; and if that part be tied hard, the fit is hindred.

Laſtly, The Signs of worms, ſhew that the diſeaſe come from them, as ſtinking ſowr Breath, itching of the Noſe, pain of the Belly, earthy Excrements, grating of the teeth, ſleepineſs, and the like, eſpecially if ſomtimes worms are voided.

But the extraordinary Cauſes, as Impoſthumation, foulneſs of a Bone, ſtopping of urine, and the like, may be taken from their proper ſigns.

As to the Prognoſtick, An Epilepſy is a Diſeaſe of long continuance, and very ſtubborn and deadly in Infants.

An Epilepſy coming hæreditary is incurable; but that which comes from external cauſes, and evil diet, is curable.

An Epilepſy coming before fourteen yeers of age in Boyes, and twelve in Girls, is curable: after twenty five yeers of age it is incurable; out of *Hippocrates*, Aph. 7. Sect. 5. For in the time of ripe-

neſs

neſs of Age, there is great ſtore of Natural heat, which is powerful to diſcuſs Diſeaſes. Moreover at that time women begin to have their terms, by which the uncleanneſs of the Body is purged. Yet although *Hippocrates* ſuppoſed an Epilepſy to be incurable after twenty five yeers of age; yet this is not alwaies true, for we find by experience that many have been cured after, although but ſeldom ſeen; therefore we may ſay that the Aphoriſm is true for the moſt part, A ſtrong Epilepſy often killeth the Patient in the fit, or it turns into an Apoplexy, or by reaſon of the ſtrength of the ſymptomes, and the violent ſhaking of the Brain, the Fabrick of the Body it is overthrown, and ſome parts thereof are broken, and it happens ſomtimes that pieces of the bones called Proceſſus Mammillares, come out of the Noſe.

An Epilepſy coming of Melancholly turns ſomtimes into madneſs, when the humor is ſent from the Ventricles of the Brain into the ſubſtance thereof.

The ſame humor when it is only in the Ventricles of the Brain, ſtopping them and paining them, cauſeth an Epilepſy: But when it offends the ſubſtance of the Brain which is the ſeat of the chief Functions, by defiling its Natural temper, and corrupting the Animal Spirits, and darkening them, it makes a Melancholly doting. Hence *Hippocrates*, 6. *epid.* ſect. 8. *text* 40. ſaith, that Melancholly men turn for the moſt part Epileptick, and Epileptick to Melancholly. But theſe Diſeaſes thus change in a two-fold reſpect; either by the change of the matter cauſing the Diſeaſe from its proper ſeat: and ſo when one comes, another goes, or by the propagation of the matter, and then both remain.

An Epilepſy coming of flegm turns either into an Apoplexy, or a Palſey.

A Quartain Ague coming upon an Epilepſy, and continuing long, cureth it, by reaſon the matter of the Diſeaſe is by degrees conſumed by the heat of the Feaver if it be of flegm; but if it come of Melancholly, it is ſent from the part affected, to the place where the ground of the diſeaſe lieth, that it may ſupply matter to the new fits.

The Cure of the Epilepſy is two-fold; the one in the fit, the other out of it.

Phyſitians are ſeldom called to the Cure of the fit, except it continue over long: in which caſe thoſe Remedies which we laid down in the Cure of ſleepy Diſeaſes, eſpecially the Apopleſtick Water, the Cinnamon Water, *Aqua vitæ*, and other Spirits which are very proper to diſcuſs the fit.

Out of your fit you muſt vary your Cure as the Cauſe requires.

And firſt we ſhal lay down the Cure of a proper Epilepſy, which conſiſts in Evacuation of humors throughout the Body, in the diſcuſſing of the matter of the Diſeaſe, and rectifying its evil qualities; as alſo in ſtrengthning of the Brain. And ſince the matter offending in a true Epilepſy is for the moſt part Flegm, we will direct our general Cure in oppoſition to that; admoniſhing yong beginners that if Choller or Melancholly abound, they would prepare and purge them. But the ſpecifical Remedies are alwaies the ſame, of what cauſe ſoever the Diſeaſe doth come.

For a perfect Cure we muſt thus proceed:

Firſt, Give him a Potion to purge Flegm, or ſome other Medicine to that purpoſe, which the Patient can beſt take, mentioned in the firſt Chapter. Firſt giving a Clyſter, if his body be bound.

After, if there be ſigns of Repletion, or if the party be Sanguine he muſt be let blood; otherwiſe not.

Afterwards the Univerſal Cure, of the cold diſtemper of the Brain is to be followed, with this Caution, That to the Decoctions, Apozemes, Diets, Sweats, Syrups, Chewings, and head Pouders, you ad the Root and Seed of Peony, and Miſſeto of the Oak, which all ancient Authors hold to be moſt proper for the Cure of this diſeaſe.

For his Diet, Guajacum is the beſt Sweater: By the uſe of which *Fachinus* reports that he cured many, but let it be continued thirty or fourty daies.

To every Doſe of the Sudorifick Decoction, put ſome drops of the Spirit of Vitriol, which is thought very proper for the Epilepſy.

You muſt often uſe the common purges, namely, the Pills, or Magiſtral Syrup once or twice a week if the Patients ſtrength will ſuffer them, and continue purging for divers Months: and ſomtimes uſe ſtronger purges, as *Maſſaria* ordains, who ſaith it comes from hence that Epilepſies are not, or ſeldom cured, becauſe the Phyſitians alwaies give weak Medicines.

For this cauſe, the Chymicks uſe Minerals, which draw the Humors from remoteſt parts, but not without much danger, eſpecially if they be not well prepared. But if good ſucceſs may be expected from theſe Chymical Medicines, it is to be found in Mercury or Quick-ſilver, either by its ſelf, or with Gold calcined in a Furnace of Sand, with a long continuance of fire, watching narrowly leſt any crude portion of him remain, which would make the Medicine very violent; otherwiſe it will work gently, if given in the quantity of four or five grains in Cochie Pills, or any Extract that purgeth flegm, or all humors.

A new Epilepſy is ſomtimes cured with Salt of Vitriol; as *Angelus Sala* ſaith, that he hath cured at thrice taking of it, an Epilepſy, giving it every fourth day. And after in his 77. *Curat. Cent.* 2. he

boaſts

boaſts that he cured a Girl of eleven yeers of age, of an hæreditary Epilepſy, with Stibium calcined, given only thrice.

Quercitan's Syrup of Tobacco, is very good for the Cure of the Epilepſy: But it is not to be uſed but by a wiſe Phyſitian, it is ſo vehement.

Inſtead of the Opiate before mentioned, this may be uſed, which is more Specifical.

Take *of the conſerve of Roſemary flowers, Peony, and Bugloſs, of each half an ounce: Citron barks candied, two drams: of the pouder of Miſleto of the Oak, Peony ſeeds, and Elks Claw, of each half a dram: Mans skull that was not buried calcined white one dram and an half: Coral, Pearl, and Harts-horn prepared, of each four ſcruples: right Bezoar ſtone, one ſcruple*: Diamoſcu dulce, Diatrion ſantalon, *of each two ſcruples: old Treacle, and* Confectio de hyacintho, *of each one dram: Spirit of Vitriol fifteen drops: With the Syrup of candied Citron barks, make an Opiate; of which take the quantity of an Acorn, or Filbert, drinking a little Cinnamon water after it.*

But this following is moſt powerful for the rooting out of the Diſeaſe after the Body is well purged.

Take *of Conſerve of Bettony Flowers and Roſemary Flowers, of each two ounces and an half: Eringus Roots candied, and Mithridate, of each one ounce: the pouder of Saſſaphras ſix drams: Caſtoreum three drams: Mans Skull not buried, and Elks hoof, of each two drams: of the roots and ſeeds of Peony, and Gith ſeeds, wild Rue, and Pellitory, of each one dram: Oxymel as much as is ſufficient, make an Opiate, of which take two or three drams.*

The Opiate of *Montagnus* goes beyond all, by which many have been cured: It is made thus:

Take *of the Roots of male Peony, Stœchas, and Pepper-wort, of each ten drams: Agarick five drams: Pellitory, Carua ſeeds, Dill, Aſſafœtida, and Ariſtolochia or round Birthwort two drams and an half: of the juyce of Squils, and Honey, of each one pound and two ounces: Boyl the Squils and Honey gently to a good conſiſtence; then ad the Pouders, and make an Electuary: of which, take two, three, or four drams, as age requires, continuing it twenty or thirty daies.*

After the uſe of the Epiſpaſtick Plaiſter, you muſt apply a Veſicatory to the fore part of the head, and a Cautery to the neck.

But a Seton or Skein of Silk drawn through the neck, draws the Humors more ſtrongly out of the Brain. And *Fabricius Hildanus* reports that he cured a Youth that had the Falling-ſickneſs every day, and had uſed all means he could get, in vain; and a Girl of eighteen yeers of age, born ſo, only by the continuance of a Seton.

If you conjecture that the vapors riſing from the parts below, and flying into the Brain, produce this diſeaſe, and nouriſh it; it is good to apply a Cauſtick to the fore part of the head, avoiding the Sutures: for *Carolus Piſo* reports that he cured two by ſo doing. Alſo if the Diſeaſe come from the inferior parts, the Waters of Germany called *Aquæ Acidulæ* do work wonders, and ſometimes root out the Diſeaſe, if firſt evacuations have been ſufficiently made, and the veins inferior have been opened.

But an Epilepſy coming from the Matrix requires a ſpecial Cure.

The Pouder of Elder Berries deſcribed by *Quercetanus*, given three daies together, the quantity of a dram with ſome Hyſterical Water, is good.

If al means fail, the laſt remedy is, to open the fore part of the Skul with a Trepan, at diſtance from the Sutures, that the evil air may breath out. By this means many times deſperate Epilepſies have been cured, and it may be ſafely done if the Chyrurgeon be skilful.

Let the Patient drink ordinarily Hydromel, or a ſmal Decoction of Guajacum with Peony Roots.

Let him carry a Bag about his Neck made thus:

Take *of Peony Roots and Miſleto of the Oak, of each one ounce: Elks hoof two drams: Nutmegs, Cloves, and Mace, of each two drams: Rue and Hyſop, of each one dram and an half: Pouder them and put them in red Sarſnet to be hung about his neck that he may often ſmel to it.*

After Univerſal Evacuations, among other Medicines you muſt uſe Specifical Medicines, which you may find in many Authors. We ſhal ſet down ſome of the beſt (beſides thoſe Opiates preſcribed) which are of no ſmal Conſideration in the Cure of this Diſeaſe.

Rondeletius commendeth much the Water of Swallows, which *Quercetanus* borrowed of him in his Diſpentatory. Treacle Water is of no leſs value, and *Aqua Cephalica*, and *Syrupus Antepilepticus*, mentioned by *Quercetanus*.

The Root of wild Valerian is much commended by *Fabius Columna*, that (once or twice taken) it cures the Epilepſy. And he reports he gave it to many of his friends, who affirmed that (under God) they were cured by it. The Doſe is half a ſpoonful in Wine, Water, Milk, or any other proper

proper Liquor; but it is given to Children in a leſs quantity in Milk.

The Chymiſts commend the Spiritual mixture, than which no better Medicine can be required (as they ſay.) The Compoſition whereof is as followeth:

Take *of the ſpirit of Vitriol, one part; ſpirit of Tartar, three parts; Treacle Water with Camphire, four parts; Mix them, and let them ſtand in a glaſs well ſtopped three or four weeks.*

The Doſe is one dram in any proper Liquor, or Vehiculum to ſwallow it down with.

Rulandus uſed much the *Oleum ligni Heraclei* (which the Chymiſts affirm to be of Coryline, or the Oyl of the Hazel-nut, or Filbert tree) And in his Centuries he relates ſome paſſages of them, which by the uſe of the Medicine were cured. The Doſe is three or four drops in any proper Liquor for five daies together.

The Oyl of white Amber is inferior to none, if not the beſt, being drawn by a good Artificer, and ſmelling of no fire, but ſending forth a moſt fragrant ſcent. The Doſe is from half a ſcruple, to one ſcruple.

The Oyl of Box-tree taken by four drops at a time, in four ounces of the Water of the Tile-tree flowers with four drops of the Spirit of Sulphur for ſome certain daies together, is very powerful, and is thought by many to be the true Oyl of *Lignum Heraclei.*

Crato calls the Natural Cinnaber the Load-ſtone of the Epilepſy, and makes this Pouder of it.

Take *of Natural Cinnaber, or Vermilion, which is cleer, and finely poudred half an ounce: red Coral, and Pearls prepared, of each two ſcruples: Saffron one ſcruple: the Leaves of Gold five: Grind them all very finely upon a ſtone.* The Doſe is from ſix grains to a ſcruple in the time of the fit, in ſome proper Liquor.

The Cinnaber or Vermilion or Antimony, which is taken after the extraction of *Mercurius vitæ*, is thought by Chymiſts to be of no leſs vertue than the former: for if it be mixed with an equal weight of the Magiſtery of Pearl, Coral, and pouder of a dead Mans Skull, it is a ſpecifical Medicine in an Epilepſy; though it be old, the Doſe is from ten grains to fifteen in a proper Liquor.

The Cure of an Epilepſy by conſent is firſt to begin with the part affected, and that part is to be cleanſed and ſtrengthened by convenient Medicines taken out of thoſe proper Chapters wherein they are mentioned: not omitting Specifical and Antepileptical Medicines, which are alwaies to be uſed in every Medicine. But if the Epilepſy come from any external part, beſides the Univerſal Cure, we muſt have a ſpecial eye to that, and the malignant matter therein contained, is to be evacuated by Cupping-glaſſes with ſcarrification, Veſicatories, and Cauteries. And if the Diſeaſe continue after the Ephar or Scab is fallen off, you muſt apply the Cupping glaſſes again; and at laſt, when neceſſity urgeth, you muſt apply an actual Cautery. If the diſeaſe come from a foulneſs of the Skul, that is to be taken away with the Trepan and burning.

CHAP. VIII.

Of the Falling-ſickneſs in Children.

BEcauſe this Diſeaſe is common among Children, and uſeth to be very dangerous unto them, therefore we ſhal add a peculiar way for their Cure by it ſelf, becauſe it is very much differing from that in elder People.

Firſt therefore make the Belly ſoluble with a Suppoſitory or Clyſter.

After, or about the ſame time, give a purging Medicine proportionable to the ſtrength of the child: We need not fear to give of the Electuary of Diacarthamum two drams to a child of one yeer old, if the Diſeaſe come of corrupt Milk.

Take of *Hiera Picra half a ſcruple, or one ſcruple*: Pulvis de gutteta *half a ſcruple: Give it with a proper Liquor, or with Honey of Roſes.*

Apply Cupping glaſſes to the Shoulders and Loyns, and with Scarrification, if the Child be one or two yeers old.

Apply a Veſicatory to the hinder part of the Neck.

If the Purgation have not done well, or little profited, you muſt vomit with white Vitriol prepared, or with Salt of Vitriol, which may be given twice, thrice, or four times, if the Diſeaſe encreaſe. The Epileptick Pouder commonly called *de gutteta*, may be given often with Milk or Broth, from half a ſcruple to a ſcruple.

That Epileptick Pouder is not found written in our Diſpenſatory; but in the Shops at *Montpelier*. It is uſually compounded thus:

Take of *Peony Roots and Seeds, white Dittamnus, Miſleto of the Oak, of each half an ounce;*

the ſeed of Atriplex or Orage, two drams: the Pouder of Mans Skull three drams: red Coral prepared, Hyacinths prepared, of each one dram and an half: Elks hoof prepared, half an ounce; Musk one ſcruple: Leaf Gold one dram: Mix them into Pouder.

Take it in a ſmal ſpoonful of Water againſt the Epilepſy: or inſtead thereof in Cinnamon Water, or Imperial Water, or with ſome drops of the ſpirital mixture with a proper Liquor.

Apply to the hinder part of the head, a Plaiſter of Ammoniacum, the hair being ſhaven; for it hinders a flux of humors that fals from the Head upon the back bone outwardly.

Uſe this Pouder to the fore part of the head.

Take of *Nutmeg half a dram: Peony ſeeds, one dram and an half: Lavender flowers, one pugil: Amber two ſcruples: Make a Pouder.*

Or apply the ſtrengthening Plaiſter preſcribed in the Cure of the cold diſtemper of the Brain.

Two or three drops of Oyl of Amber with an equal quantity of Spirit of Vitriol given in Bettony Water, do preſently free a child from a fit of the Falling-ſickneſs. The ſame Oyl is good to anoint the Noſtrils. Inſtead of Oyl of Amber, give the Oyl of Box; as alſo the Water of Tile-tree flowers, and Bettony Water.

The ſmoak of Tobacco doth free children from the Epilepſy, if you put in the ſmal end of the Pipe into the childs Mouth, and blow in the ſmoak, or if you blow it from your mouth.

Let the Back bone and the Members contracted be anointed with this Liniment:

Take of *the Oyl of Rue, and of Earth-worms, of each two ounces: Oyl of Caſtor one dram: a little* Aqua vitæ, *make a Liniment.*

Take of *old Treacle, one dram; Confection of Alkermes, and Hyacinths, of each one ſcruple; Bettony, Sage, Marjoram, and Cinnamon Water, of each half an ounce: Mix them, and bath therewith the Noſtrils, Temples, and Ears. You may alſo give a ſpoonful to be drunk.*

But it is better to anoint the Noſtrils, Temples, and Crown of the Head with the Apoplectick Balſom deſcribed for ſleepy Diſeaſes; as alſo the Mouth and Pallat.

Skenkius in his 5. Century of Exotick Experiments, num. 85. hath this Receipt out of *George Kufner*: *This is an approved Medicine in Childrens Epilepſies: Give a little fine Musk in thin Wine, twice or thrice in a day, and it will cure perfectly.*

While theſe things are performing, you muſt give once or twice in a day, a Clyſter, thus made:

Take *of the Roots of round Birthwort, of Polipody of the Oak, of Carthamus ſeeds, of each half an ounce: Peony and Cummin ſeeds, of each three drams: the flowers of Chamomel and and Roſemary, of each one pugil: Boyl them to one pint; take half a pint of it ſtrained; Hiera picra three drams; Honey of Roſemary one ounce; Oyl of Rue and Lillies, of each three drams.*

Two ſpecial things are to be practiced:

The one is the Root of wild Valerian before commended by *Columna*; which he ſaith he hath given poudered in Milk, and thereby cured very many.

Another is the Gall of a ſucking Puppy, which is mentioned in *Untzerus*, thus: *Take a little black ſucking Puppy (but for a Girl take a bitch Whelp) choak it, open it, and take out the Gall, which hath not above three or four drops of pure choller; give it all to the child in the time of the fit with a little Tile-tree-flower Water, and thou ſhalt ſee him cured as it were by a miracle preſently.*

If the Child ſuck, look that the Nurſes Milk be good, let her have meat of good juyce, and light of digeſtion: Let her drink no Wine, but Water, or Water and Honey, and a ſmal drink made of Sarſaparilla.

Some Children are ſo ſubject to this Diſeaſe, that it will return again after it is once cured. Nay, in ſome Families al the Children uſe to die of this Diſeaſe. Therefore you muſt uſe preventing Medicines, not only to thoſe which are newly born, but to thoſe alſo which have recovered.

Firſt therefore give to Children newly born, before they ſuck, give one ſcruple of the Pouder *de gutteta*, mentioned before, in a little milk, and give the ſame quantity thrice in two daies.

It is good both for them which have been cured, and children when they are a few daies old to apply a Cauſtick to their Necks. But an actual Cautery is much better, which our Phyſitians wil not uſe, becauſe they abhor violent and terrible Medicines. *Rondeletius* affirms, that the Actual Cautery is ſo uſed in *Florence*, that the women do uſe to apply it themſelves. And this doth *Aquapendens* witneſs in his Chyrurgery Operations, and teacheth the way of applying them in his proper Chapter of the burning of the hinder part of the head in children.

Let the Child be purged twice in a month, with Manna, Syrup of Roſes, or of Cichory with Rhubarb.

Every new Moon give it a doſe of the Epileptick Pouder *de gutteta* above mentioned.

Make a Bag to ſtrengthen the head, and a Fume for the Head-cloaths, as in the cure of cold Diſeaſes of the head; and alſo pouder its hair with the pouder before mentioned.

For

For the Cure of this Diſeaſe, this is a good Preſervative:
Take of Spirit of Wine, four ounces: Spirit of Caſtor, one ounce: Peony Roots, three ounces: Let them be infuſed and ſtrained. Waſh the whol body of the child with it warmed.

CHAP. IX.

Of Giddineſs, called Vertigo.

A *Vertigo* is a falſe Imagination, in which all objects, and the head it ſelf ſeem to turn round, ſo as the Patient often falls to the ground, unleſs he lay hold on ſome ſtay at hand.

It may be objected, That in a Vertigo, the Imagination is not hurt; for if it were ſo, the Patients would think the objects truly turned round; as men in Madneſs and Phrenzy do think what they imagine to be truly ſo. We anſwer, That in a Vertigo, the Reaſon is not hurt, which perceiveth the error of the Imagination; but in a Phrenzy, or Melancholly, the Reaſon is hurt as wel as the Imagination.

There are two ſorts of Vertigoes; the one ſimple, called in Greek σκότωμα, or σκοτοδινία, a dark Vertigo, in which the Eyes are both darkned as it were with ſmoak, or a cloud.

In both kinds the Sight is ſomwhat hurt, becauſe the Spirits which uſe to go directly to the Eyes, are moved out of order by the vitive Nerve, by reaſon whereof the Eye doth not ſo fitly enjoy them. But in a dark Vertigo there is a more violent Motion of the Spirits, ſo that they come leſs to the Eyes, from whence the ſight is darkned or hindred.

The immediate Cauſe of a Vertigo, is the circumvolution of the Spirits coming of a vaporous matter or wind, which coming into the Ventricles of the Brain, and *Plexus Choroides*, diſturbs the Spirits, and makes them run round; whence the ſpecies of the Objects brought by thoſe ſpirits are moved in like manner; and ſo the objects themſelves ſeem to be moved alſo the ſame way. But here we may doubt, ſince a Vertigo is a ſymptom of a hurt action, and every action hurt depends immediatly upon a Diſeaſe, how the Circumvolution of the Spirits can be the immediate cauſe of a Vertigo, when it can be referred to no kind of Diſeaſe. To which we thus anſwer, A Circumvolution of the Spirits, is a Diſeaſe in reſpect of Scituation; for at that time the Spirits do not keep that place or poſition which they Naturally ought, but move preternaturally, and amiſs. And this Anſwer hath a weighty inſtance: For a Diſeaſe is an affection of a true part, but ſpirits are not true parts. We anſwer, That Axiome is not alwaies, but ſomtimes true; according to *Galen* that which is principal and hinders the action of its ſelf, is the true Diſeaſe: We ſay that the word *Part* ought to be taken in a larger ſenſe, comprehending all thoſe things which go to the making up of the Body, and whatſoever hinders the action of any part, is called a Diſeaſe. So a yellow color in the Eye, hurts the ſight immediately, and therefore it is called a Diſeaſe in number; ſo a bitter ſavor in the tongue, and noiſe in the Ears, are Diſeaſes in number, in regard there is ſomthing in thoſe parts beſides, which offendeth the actions. After the ſame manner is the Circumvolution of the Spirits, a Diſeaſe in Scituation or Poſition, for the Reaſon above mentioned.

But thoſe Vapors are ſent up from evil humors, not continually without intermiſſion, but by compaſs and going about, and at a diſtance, namely, as often as they are raiſed up by an external cauſe; and the humors are ſuch as uſe to produce vapors, namely, Blood, Choller, Flegm, and Melancholly, and the watery Humor; becauſe both a cold as well as a hot vapor, may cauſe a Vertigo; as *Galen*, 3. *de loc. affect.* chap. 8. and Comment. Aphor. 23. Sect. 3.

Theſe evil humors are either contained in the Brain, or in the inferior parts. Hence a two-fold Vertigo ariſeth, one Proper, the other by Conſent.

Wateriſh and flegmy humors heaped up in the Brain, ſend wind and vapors to its ventricles, which ſtirring about there, do cauſe a Vertigo. And ſo a proper Vertigo comes to be a forerunner of an Epilepſy, or Apoplexy.

But Humors contained in the inferior parts, eſpecially the ſtomach and the ſpleen, do eaſily ſend up Vapors to the head, which if they touch the Ventricles, and the Arteries, cauſe a Vertigo.

The external Cauſes are all ſuch things as will quickly diſſolve the Humors, and turn them to Vapors, or make an inordinate motion in thoſe Vapors. Among which are reckoned by *Hippocrates*, Aphor. 17. Sect. 3. a South wind, and ſudden change of Air. To theſe ad the heat of the Sun, windy Meats, Garlick, Muſtard, Radiſh, Peaſe and Beans, Drunkenneſs, Gluttony, immoderate Exerciſe, and unſeaſonable, the ſuppreſſion of a wonted evacuation, Anger, Baths, Hunger, eſpecially in thoſe which are ful of bitter Choller, often turning of the Body round, long looking upon Wheels and

things that run round, and of Waters that run swift, looking down from a high place, a Fall, a stroak upon the Head, a Fracture, or depression of the Skull, compressing and lying upon the Brain.

We shall lay down no Diagnosis, or general signs to know this Disease by, because it is of it self manifest. Yet in particular we shal declare those signs which shew the part affected that containeth the mine or matter of the Disease; as also those which shew the humor offending.

Pain of the Head shews that a Vertigo cometh from a Disease of the Brain, which is a true or proper Vertigo. Also Heavineſs, and the loſs of some Sence; as Dimneſs of sight, noise in the Ears, thickneſs of hearing, decay of smelling and tasting; the beating of the Arteries of the Head when other parts are free.

The signs that shew what the matter is that offendeth, are these: That abundance of flegm offendeth, is signified by a dulneſs of the internal and external Sences, heavineſs of Head, slowneſs of motion, drouzineſs, much spitting, want of Appetite, want of Thirst, white Urine, and crude, with the other signs of abundance of flegm.

But watchings, wrath, nimbleneſs in actions, thirst, bitterneſs of mouth, quickneſs of pulse, a thin and yellow Urine, and the like, shew that the Chollerick matter offendeth.

The signs of a Melancholly matter are, Fear, sorrow, troubleſom thoughts, much watching, fearful dreams, sowr belchings, and the like.

The signs of Blood abounding, are, Stretching of the Veins with fulneſs, redneſs of face, and hear, beating of the Temples, heavineſs and distention in the head, long sleep, dreams of red things, wearineſs, reaching, thick and red Urine, sometimes thin and transparant by the ascention of the blood into the head.

A Vertigo by Consent is known by the want of those Symptomes, which come from the Head, when no disorder is found in the Brain, but rather some part beneath is sensibly hurt.

These things shew that a Vertigo comes from the stomach, want of appetite, loathing, sowr belchings, pain of the stomach, or swelling with wind.

That a Vertigo comes from the Liver, Spleen, or Matrix by Consent, the same signs declare which were laid down in an Epilepsy by Consent coming from the same parts in the Chapter aforegoing.

The Prognostick, or foreknowledg of this Disease, is thus:

A new Vertigo that comes but seldom, and which comes only from external Causes, is more light and easier cured: On the contrary, that which is old, and comes often, turneth for the most part into an Epilepsy, or Apoplexy.

A Vertigo in an old man is most dangerous, because his Brain is colder and weaker, and flegm doth more abound.

A Vertigo in which not only external things, but also the Head and whol Body seem to be turned about, and which happens with hurt to the sight, is more dangerous, for it signifies greater force in the cause of it; and if the sick man falls to the ground, it foretels an Epilepsy, or Apoplexy.

A Vertigo coming of hot Humors, is sooner dissolved than that which comes of cold, because hot Humors are sooner dispersed.

The Cure of the Vertigo is much like that of the Epilepsy, because both Diseases come almost of the same Causes: whence it comes that a Vertigo often turns into an Epilepsy. But because a Vertigo is a lighter Disease, it doth not need so many Medicines as an Epilepsy: but they will serve, which we will here lay down; and also we shal demonstrate in short what is that which this Disease most properly requireth for its Cure.

In the first place, Therefore if blood abound in the whol body, or in the head, you must open a Vein, and let the blood out by degrees, giving before a Clyster that is somwhat sharp.

After that, give the ordinary Purge which is prescribed in the Cure of the cold Distemper of the Brain.

Afterwards we must come to the particular Evacuations of the Brain, by Errhines, Sternutatories, and Gargarisms, or Apophlegmatisms, mentioned in the first Chapter.

Cupping glasses dry, and with Scarrification; Frictions of the extream parts, and opening of the Hemorrhoids are to be used for to cause revulsion.

Apply Vesicatories and Cauteries for derivation, and at last use those things which strengthen the Brain, and disperse Vapors and Humors as well externally as internally, as Opiates, Pouders, and Bags that are described in the first Chapter.

And you must not omit the digestive Pouder, because the weakneſs of the Stomach often causeth this Disease.

And lastly, You must use those Medicines which are esteemed by special quality to cure the Vertigo; such as are those which were prescribed for the Cure of the Epilepsy; namely, Antepileptick Waters, a Balsom to anoint the Nostrils, Temples, and Crown of the head, Oyl of Amber, Pouder of Cinnaber, and many other.

Moreover, *Quercetanus* in the twentieth Chapter of his Dispensatory, commends a Medicine made

made of Peacocks dung, whose Preparation and manner of use, may be seen in the Author.

If the Disease do obstinately resist the propounded Remedies, you must fall to a Diet of the Decoction of Guajacum.

A Cautery in the fore part of the Head, is much commended by *Zacutus Lusitanus* in his first Book of Admirable Practice, Obs. 38. in these words: *A certain man was so troubled with a dark Vertigo, that his Brain did almost continually seem to run round: and when he had tried many Medicines, and there was fear of an Apoplexy to follow; with no other means (besides general and particular Evacuations, and Fontanels or Issues in divers parts, and a Seton in the nape of the Neck) could be be cured, but with a Cautery in the fore part of the head; by which only (beyond the expectation of Physitians) I have cured many of the Falling-sickness, letting them run a long time.*

CHAP. X.

Of Tremor, *or Trembling.*

TRemor is called τρόμος in Greek; it is a voluntary Motion depraved, by which the Member is somtimes elevated, somtimes depressed, through the mutual contention between the faculty, and the part affected.

It is called a depraved motion from *Galen*, 2. *de sympt. caus.* chap. 1. and he saies the same in his Book of the Difference of Symptomes, chap. 3. but he seems to contradict himself, when in his Book of Trembling, chap. 4. he reckons Trembling among the Motions which are diminished. But that contradiction may be reconciled, by saying, that Motion may be considered two waies, Either in respect of it self, or in respect of the faculty: If it be considered in respect of it self, it is depraved, because it is not in that manner it ought to be; if it be considered in respect of the faculty, it is a diminished motion, because it comes from a faculty so weak that it cannot produce motion strong enough. But one may instance, That the action is alwaies diminished when comes from a weak faculty, but never depraved. I answer, That it is true if al the actions depend upon the faculty; but Trembling comes partly from the Faculty, partly from the heavinesse of the part; therefore it is a depraved Motion.

The moving faculty desireth to lift up the Member, and to keep it in that Position; but the weight of the Member presseth it downwards, whence comes a trembling Motion.

The Mediate Cause of Trembling, is weakness of the Motive Faculty, or rather of its neareſt Instrument, that is, the Animal Spirit, which is not able to exercise a voluntary Motion perfectly.

The Spirits are made weak, either by a fault in themselves, or by a defect in the Nerves, which are the Conduit Pipes by which they are carried, and do act.

The fault is in the Spirits, either when they are but few at the first; or when they are afterwards dissipated.

They are few at the first, either by reason of the cold distemper of the Brain, as in old men, or through the want of vital Spirits, which are the matter of which the animal are made.

The Spirits are dissipated from many external Causes, as immoderate Evacuations, much use of Venery and unseasonable, great pain, and constant fasting, sorrow, and long violent Diseases.

The Spirits are hurt by defect in the Nerves, and are weakned either when the Nerves are too cold, or are infected with a malignant quality, or obstructed or compressed.

They grow too cold, either from a cold Air, from use of cold meats, or much drinking of Water, swimming often in cold water, and the like.

They are infected by the use of Opium, Henbane, Poppy, and the vapor of Quick-silver, as it is seen in Gold-smiths, and them which have the French Pox, and have been cured with the fume of Cinnaber. So in malignant Feavers tremblings come also (which are rather to be accounted Convulsive Motions) and also they come from the provocation or irritation of the Nervous parts.

They are stopped not wholly, as in a Palsey, but much less, but by the same cause, namely a watery humor gently sprinkled upon the Nerves, which is produced of gluttony, drunkenness, and other Causes.

Lastly, Trembling may come from compression of the Nerves, when excrementitious humors abounding in the whol Body do compress the Nerves, and hinder the free passage of the Animal Spirits.

Hercules Saxonia, besides the causes mentioned borrowed from *Galen*, acknowledgeth another *Tremor* coming of wind; and *Cardanus* another from pain in nervous parts: But they are deceived, because the Motion produced from those Causes, are to be referred to Palpitation, or Convulsive Motion.

There

There is no need of signs in this disease, because trembling appears of it self: But the Causes that produce it, are to be known by their proper signs; as also we must search for those external Causes which went before.

As for the Prognostick. Trembling of it self is not dangerous, but if it be in old people it continueth with them til they die. But it may be deadly by accident, in as much as it usually goes before a Palsey, or an Apoplexy.

You must Cure Trembling as you cure the Palsey, and therefore we shall not make vain repetitions of Medicines.

CHAP. XI.

Of Phrenitis, *or Phrenzie.*

A Phrenzy is an Inflamation of the Brain, and its Membranes with a continual dotage, and a a sharp constant Feaver.

By the word *Inflamation*, we understand a true Tumor, which is commonly called a contracted Inflamation, coming of Blood out of the Vessels falling upon the substance of the part; for the Blood being hot and Chollerick, and in the Membranes or substance of the Brain, causeth a true *Erysipelas*, or an *Erysipelas Phlegmonodes*, or *Phlegmon Erysipelatodes*.

By *Delirium*, or Doting, we understand the erring of Reason, for we suppose that fault cannot be in the Imagination alone, without a fault be in the Reason, in a Phrenzy; whatsoever others think, we are led by the Authority of *Galen*, who in his Book of the Difference of Symptomes, chap. 3. gives an Example of one *Theophilus* a Physitian, who thought Fidlers sate continually in a corner of his house playing, and beleeved that he saw them sometimes standing, sometimes sitting, and cried continually that they should be cast out of doors. And *Galen* saith, that in him the Imagination was hurt without the Reason. First therefore we may say that *Theophilus* had not a Phenzy; for *Galen* doth not say that he had, but speaking of a Delirium (which *Theophilus* had) therefore it was rather Melancholly, because they sometimes err in one object, and discourse wel concerning other: so saith *Galen* of *Theophilus*, that he had wisdom in other things, both to discourse, and to know his friends. But we say further of *Theophilus*, that not only his Imagination, but also his Reason was hurt, because he really thought the Fidlers were there, and desired they should be put forth: For when the Imagination alone is hurt, the Reason being not hurt, acknowledgeth the error of Imagination, as in a Vertigo, in which the Patient thinks al things run round, but Reason knoweth that it is not so indeed, but that Imagination doth err.

Nor is the Opinion of *Eustachius Rudius* to be received in this case, who saith, That it never comes to pass that the Imagination should be hurt, the Reason being sound, because Reason worketh upon Phantasms received from the Imagination, and therefore if fooliſh Phantasms are offered to the Reason, he thinks it necessary that the Understanding beholding those fooliſh fansies, should also be fooliſh: And hence *Eustachius* gathers, that the Imagination is not depraved, but there is a meer and simple deceit of the sight. We say that the understanding doth run from one thing to another, and is busied about those Species which are retained in the Memory; and though the Fansie presents absurdities to the Mind, yet the Species before received, are still retained in the Memory, and are presented to the Reason, it can know and correct that mistake of the Fansie; namely, if it judg that those absurd fansies which are brought to it by a depraved Imagination do neither agree with time, place, or other circumstances which still remain in the Memory, and are known to be true. So in a Vertigo, Reason being in order judgeth that it is impossible that Roofs, Walls, and Pavements, should turn round, and therefore they are falsly represented to the Imagination. So the Phylosopher that was bit with a mad dog, and his Imagination began to decay, going into a Bath, perceived the false Image of a Dog therein; but Reason being found reproved the error of his Imagination, and made him speak thus; What hath a Dog to do in a Bath? and presently he cast himself into the Bath, by which means he was delivered from the danger of a Disease called *Hydrophobia*, or fear of Water.

There are two kinds of Phrenzie; namely, a true Phrenzy, which is laid down in the Definition above mentioned: Another which is called *Paraphrenitis*, or Bastard Phrenzy.

A true Phrenzy is sometimes in the Dispositon, which is most usual, sometimes in the Habit, which is called Hectical Phrenzy, in which, the Chollerick Humors are strongly fixed in the Brain, and possess many parts thereof, sticking thereto like a tincture or dye.

A *Paraphrenitis*, or bastard Phrenzy is, when a hot distemper is communicated to the Brain, either from the whol Body (as in burning Feavers) or from some part inflamed, as the Stomach, Liver,

Liver, Lungs, and eſpecially the *Diaphragma* or Midriff, which by inflamation doth produce a Diſeaſe very like a Phrenzy; namely, a continual Dotage called *Delirium*; which cometh to paſs by the great conſent which is between the Brain and the *Diaphragma* through the Nerves that come thither, and by the perpetual motion of the *Diaphragma* or Midriff, by reaſon whereof continual vapors are ſent to the Brain.

The Cauſe of a true Phrenzy is Chollerick blood, to which there is joyned alſo Excrementitious Choller, and this produceth a greater or leſs Phrenzy according to its divers degrees; namely in heat and aduſtion. So a Pale Choller produceth the mildeſt Phrenzy, and an Aduſt or burnt Choller ſtirs up a beſtial Phrenzy.

But when the Brain is inflamed, and the Membranes thereof; the Chollerick blood is out of its Veſſels, and ſhed abroad into the ſubſtance of thoſe parts: which is done Two wayes, either when the Brain is principally affected; or when it is affected by Sympathy.

The Brain is primarily affected when it doth immediately grow hot from an external Cauſe, as from the Sun-beams, drinking of Wine, Wrath, and the like; ſo that the blood which is contained in the veins of the Brain is moved and carried out of its Veſſels: and this may come from a wound, or ſtroak, or contuſion of the head: And a Phrenzy ſo coming may be called a primary, or principal Phrenzy.

But a ſecondary Phrenzy is that which follows burning and malignant Feavers, when a part of that humor which cauſeth the Diſeaſe, is carried to the head.

It followeth many times in theſe Feavers, That Nature being diſturbed by the malignity of the Cauſe which maketh the Diſeaſe, ſends ſome portion thereof to ſome fleſh between the skin and the bone; whence we ſee Pluriſies, ſhortneſs of Breathings, Squinſeys, Hipatitides, or Inflamations from the *Vena porta*, and other parts, to follow theſe Feavers: So if theſe humors are ſent to the Brain they make a true Phrenzy, and then the Feaver goes before the *Delirium*, or doting: But in primary Phrenzies a *Delirium* appears with the Feaver from the beginning.

The Signs which declare a Phrenzy to come are theſe, watchings, troubleſome ſleep, much talk, an urin that is firſt thick, and after thin, and perſpicuous; heat of the head: for theſe declare that hot matter is carried to the head: the eyes are altered becauſe (the brain being hurt) they want the animal ſpirit. There is a pain about the hinder part of the head, becauſe the jugular veins are carried to that part and ſend forth the Chollerick blood.

Theſe are the ſigns of a Phrenzy preſent: a continual doting, becauſe the Brain is alwayes affected: troubleſome watchings coming from the hot diſtemper of the Brain; ſeldom and great violent breathing, becauſe men in Phrenzies forget to breath: for when by forgetfulneſs, or great trouble of the mind by many fancies which are preſented to a doting imagination, and with-draw the animal ſpirits: Reſpiration, or breathing is very ſeldom, it is made up with the greatneſs of the blaſt.

Moreover, in a Phrenzy there is no thirſt, or very little; albeit there are ſtrong cauſes of thirſt preſent, becauſe the mind is ſick, and the animal ſpirits (by reaſon the Brain is hurt) do not ſend their beams to the mouth of the ſtomack whereunto thirſt belongeth. The Pulſe is weak becauſe the heart ſuffers with the brain: hard; becauſe the *Membrana* is inflamed: quick and often; by reaſon of the great urging; and ſomthing moiſt; becauſe the brain is affected. Moreover, there is a continual Feaver becauſe the inflamation of the brain muſt of neceſſity cauſe a Feaver. The tongue is rough, black, and yellow, by reaſon of the Chollerick vapors which dry up its moiſture.

An Hectical, or Habitual Phrenzy is known from *Hippocrat.* 1. Prorrhet. text. 33. by ſmal doting, and little perceived; when the ſick do not ſpeak, but lie ſtill and ſeem to ſleep.

But a Phrenzy, or Phrenitis is diſtinguiſhed from a Paraphrenitis in this; The Diſeaſe which produceth that, is ſooner known than a *Delirium* or Doting; and by the encreaſe or diminution of that the *Delirium* is encreaſed or diminiſhed; and ſomtimes it intermits and is not conſtant. But a *Paraphrenitis* ſpringing from the Inflamation of the Midriff, in which there is a conſtant doting, is diſtinguiſhed by other ſigns. Namely, Becauſe in a true Phrenzy there is great and ſeldom breathing: but in the other, little and often. Little; becauſe the *Diaphragma*, or Midriff being inflamed, cannot eaſily be extended and dilated. Often; for neceſſity, that the ſmalneſs might be made good by the frequency. Moreover, in a true Phrenzy the voyce is high, and the Patient cryes out loud; in the other the voice is low, becauſe the inſtrument of Breathing is hindered. And laſtly, In the inflamation of the Midriff, the *Hypocondria* are drawn up (according to *Hippocrates* in *Coacis*) and the reaſon is, becauſe the Midriff is covered beneath with a *Membrana* coming from the *Peritoneum*; and therefore when it is inflamed, it contracts the *Peritoneum*, and with it the *Hypochondria*.

Laſtly, The Signs of the Cauſes may be known from the predominancy of the Humor in the whol Body, and from the manner of the *Delirium*: For a pale Choller makes a more gentle Phrenzy; a yellow Choller make a more violent; an aduſt Choller makes the moſt violent: But Chollerick blood cauſeth the moſt mild of al.

The

The Prognostick of this Disease is for the most part deadly; for few escape in regard a noble part of the body is affected with a great Disease.

The greatest hope of recovery is when there is Dotage with laughter, and a decrease of Symptoms, continuance of strength; as also when after the height of the Disease there happeneth some beneficial evacuation, as sweat, blood, or looseness.

But these shew the Disease to be deadly. The Tongue quavering, and Hand trembling, gnashing of Teeth, Convulsion, a great Chilness or Cold in the beginning of the Disease; as also when the Patient picketh the Wooll or Straws about his bed. You may farther Collect Death to be at hand by a drop of black blood flowing from the Nostrils, by white stools, white and thin urine; For all these signifie a great oppression of the Brain, or a flowing of Choller from the whole body to the part affected.

For the Cure of this Disease, the blood that flows to the Head must be let forth, and revelled, derived, repelled, and intercepted; and that which was there before must be evacuated and discussed. The distemper of that part must be corrected; the strength of it, and of the whole body is to be preserved.

All these things may be done with the following Medicines.

In the beginning of the Disease, at any time of the day you must let blood out of the Head vein, because the Disease is very violent, giving a Clyster before: or if blood do much abound, out of the Liver vein: or first, out of the middle vein; and a little after out of the Head vein.

If the Disease come from stoppage of the Terms or Hemorrhoids upon the vein called *Saphena* in the foot. In the next place you must open the *Chephalick* or Head vein, that you may draw forth what is received into the brain, or what is nigh unto it.

For the most part once bleeding wil not be sufficient in this Disease, but twice or thrice, or oftener in the beginning or encrease of the Disease; you may adventure upon it, according to the condition or plenty of the Humor; the age, temper, and strength of the patient.

If a Phrenzy taketh one that hath a constant Feaver, (as it is often in the encrease of Feavers, or in the state of them, when nature is out of order and disturbed by the malignity of that matter which causeth the Disease, sendeth Chollerick humors to the head) you must again let blood, though you have done it before in respect of the Feaver; but you must do it sparingly, because the strength is abated by the Feaver and former bleeding. Therefore at that time open the Head vein, or if strength wil not bear that, open the *Saphena* in one foot, or both; which is approved in such Diseases: neither is it less beneficial to open the Hemorrhoid veins by Leeches.

But in all Bleedings which are made in time of a *Delirium*, you must observe this that the Orifice be not large, for then it wil quickly heal, and you must bind it up carefully lest the Patient being unruly cause it to bleed again; as also 'tis very good for the sudden Cure of it, to lay a plaister of Alces, white of an Eg, and the hair of a Hare.

After Bleeding provoke sleep. For if after bleeding there comes watchfulness, the Humors wil be again inflamed, and the patient grow worse.

Sleep is caused by repelling Medicines laid to the forehead which are cooling and narcotick, or causing sleep, which we shal mention hereafter.

When you cannot conveniently let blood, apply Cupping Glasses with deep Scarrifications; first, to the lower; than, to the upper parts: and also to the Thighs, and other parts, without Scarrification.

Use Frictions in the same parts; and use Ligatures to the Legs for revulsion.

Apply Vesicatories to the Shoulders and Arms.

Give every day a Clyster, made of cold and moist things: For by these the *Acrimony* of the Humors is qualified, and they are put downwards.

And they are thus made,

Take of *Marsh-mallow Roots one ounce*: *the Leaves of Mallows, Violets, Lettice, Pellitory, Beets, of each one handful*: *the flowers of Water-lillies, and tops of Dill, of each one pugil*: *Prunes six*: *boyl them in Barly water*; *to one pint of the straining ad of Cassia newly drawn, and Diaprunes simple, of each six drams*: *red Sugar one ounce*: *make a Clyster.*

Use no Oyls in these kind of Clysters, because they wil then inflame.

You must not Purge in a primary Phrenzy, such a one as comes not from another Disease, but it is good sometimes to Purge when the Phrenzy comes upon a continual Feaver. For if there be an evil digestion or ill juyce in the Body, and the Phrenzy begun: then the matter is wandering, and is taken for that which is called *Turgent*, or abounding: And therefore by the Counsel of *Hippocrates*, Aphor. 22. Sect. 1. it is to be presently evacuated.

But the Purge must be made of cold things, with gentle, as Senna, Rhubarb, Cassia, Tamarinds, Catholicon, and Syrup of Roses.

Presently

Preſently after blood letting you muſt uſe repelling Medicines, which hinder the aſſent of humors and cool the head, as Vinegar of Roſes made of Oyl of Roſes and Vinegar, in time paſt; but now we uſe diſtilled Waters and Juyces of Herbs with it, and we repel and cool more or leſs, as there is a greater or leſs flux of humors, and inflamation, which we muſt diligently obſerve. Therefore we will lay down many forms that in particular cales we may chuſe thoſe which are moſt fit.

Take of *Oyl of Roſes three ounces*; *Vinegar of Roſes one ounce*; *Roſe and Plantane Water, of each two ounces: lay them on the forehead ſhaven, and with four-folded cloaths.* Or,

Take of *Roſe water four ounces*; *Oyl of Roſes two ounces*; *Vinegar of Roſes half an ounce*; *two whites of Egs*; *mix them together.* Or,

Take of *Oyl of Violets and Water-lillies, of each half an ounce*; *Roſe, Lettice, and Houſleek Water, of each two ounces*; *Vinegar half an ounce.* Or,

Take of *the Juyce of Lettice, Purſlain, Night-ſhade, Penny-graſs, or Venus-navil, of each two ounces*; *Oyl of Roſes three ounces*; *Vinegar of Roſes one ounce.* Or,

Take of *Oyl Olive in which Roſes are infuſed, one ounce and an half*; *new Poplar Oyntment (for the old inflameth) one ounce*; *Vinegar of Roſes half an ounce*; *one white of an Eg: Beat them together, and apply them with Flax.*

The Milk of a Woman which hath brought forth a Girl, with the Juyce of Lettice, and Oyl of Roſes, is very excellent.

Concerning theſe cooling Medicines, you muſt obſerve that they be adminiſtred warily, and with judgment, becauſe the Brain is of its own Nature cold, and a principal Member, therefore it is to be feared leſt the Patient by too much uſe thereof ſhould fall into a contrary Diſeaſe, as a Coma, or the like, eſpecially if he be weak or old; and although they are uſed ſometimes more, ſometimes leſs, yet the extent of the time of their uſage ought not to be above three daies.

Moreover, Thoſe Medicines do ſtick to the face and eyes, therefore you muſt lay about them a cloth, or a little wool: in the fore part of the head you muſt apply them to the middle of the forehead; in the ſides of the head, above the ears; in the hinder part, about the nape of the neck and towards the crown of the head: and theſe are in Winter, to be applied hot; in Summer, cold, as *Galen* ſaith, 2. *de comp. med. cap.* 2. But it is beſt in old and weak people never to apply them actually cold.

If the Inflamation cometh to the Skin, as it ſometimes doth; then we muſt avoid repelling Medicines, eſpecially thoſe that are ſtrong, leſt the matter driven to the Brain ſhould augment the Diſeaſe.

You muſt apply cloths wet in Roſe-water and Vinegar to the neck, to hinder the humors from flying into the head.

Cauſticks applied to the Legs do very well for revulſion or drawing down of the humor to the inferior parts.

While theſe things are doing, you muſt uſe al thoſe things which do cool the whol Body, eſpecially the principal parts both internally and externally.

Inwardly you muſt uſe Juleps, Emulſions, and Electuaries.

Take of *the diſtilled Waters of Lettice, Purſlain, Roſes, and wild Poppies, of each three ounces: Syrup of Violets, and Pomegranates, of each one ounce and an half: Sal Prunellæ three drams: Make a Julep for three Doſes to be taken twice or thrice in a day.* Or,

Take of *Lettice, Purſlain, and Plantane, of each two handfuls: Water Lillies, and Violet flowers, of each a pugil: Boyl them in Barley Water to one pint*; *and being ſtrained, diſſolve in it Syrup of Violets three ounces*; *Sal Prunellæ three drams: Make a Julep for three doſes or draughts.*

It is very good to put to your Juleps, beſides the Sal prunellæ, the ſpirit of Sulphur, or Vitriol, for thoſe do much allay the heat of Choller.

Take of *the four great cold Seeds, ſix drams: white Poppy ſeeds two drams: Barley Water, half a pint: Lettice and Water-lilly Water, of each two ounces*; *Roſe water, one ounce: Make an Emulſion according to art, to two Doſes, putting thereto Syrup of Violets two ounces.*

Take of *Conſerve of Violets and Roſes, of each one ounce: Conſerve of Water-lillies and candied Lettice ſtalks, of each half an ounce: the pouder of Diamargariton frigid. half a dram: With the Syrup of Violets make an Electuary.*

You may alſo make an Electuary of white Poppy Seed, beaten in a ſtone Mortar, and mixt with Sugar; this may be called *Diacodium album*: this temperates ſharp and hot humors, and brings reſt; it is made of one ounce of Poppy ſeeds beaten with ſo much Roſe water; after put two ounces of Sugar to it: Or make it of equal parts of each.

Outwardly you muſt apply cold Epithems to the Heart and Liver.

Take of *Roſe water three ounces: Borrage, Bugloſs, and Sorrel Water, of each two ounces: white Wine Vinegar, half an ounce: the pouder of three Sanders one dram and an half: of burnt*

Ivory half a dram: Wood of Aloes one ſcruple: Saffron eight grains: Camphire ſix grains: Make an Epitheme for the Heart.

Take of *Lettice and Roſe Water, of each three ounces: Endive and Purſlain Water, of each two ounces: Vinegar of Roſes one ounce: white and red Sanders, and burnt Ivory, of each one ſcruple: Camphire and Spicknard, of each ſix grains: the powder of Diarrhodon one dram: Make an Epitheme for the Liver.*

Let the Liver and the Loyns be anointed with this Oyntment.

Take of *the Unguent of Roſes one ounce and an half: the cerate of Sanders one ounce: the Juyce of Lettice and Oyl of Roſes, of each half an ounce: Make a Liniment.*

Let the Breaſt be anointed with ſupling Oyls, as Oyl of Violets, and the like.

Apply cloaths wet in Water and Vinegar to the Stones or Cods, or which is better, let them be wet with Roſe water and Vinegar.

It is good to waſh the feet with an actually hot decoction, made of cold things; for it will ſoften thoſe parts by its hot moiſture, and make the humors deſcend, and its potential coldneſs will be communicated to al the Body, and to the Brain eſpecially by the Nerves, whereby ſleep will be provoked. It is made thus:

Take of *Violets, Mallows, Willow Leaves, Vine Leaves, Water-lillies, of each two handfuls: the flowers of Roſes, and Water-lillies, of each one handful: Poppy heads, ten: Make a Decoction for the uſe aforeſaid.*

Fair Water may ſuffice to waſh the Feet, and if the feet of the ſick man be put therein when it is a little warmed, for three or four hours, it frees him from his Delirium, and makes him ſleep.

The ſame effect is wrought by Houſleek beaten into a Cataplaſm, and laid to the ſoals of the feet: and alſo by Pompions or Guords beaten and ſo applied.

Sweet Scents often applied to the Noſe, cool the Brain: they are prepared after this manner following:

Take of *Violet flowers, and Water-lillies, of each one pugil; of Roſes two pugils: yellow Sanders one ſcruple: Tie them in a clout, and dip it into Roſe water, and let the Patient ſmel to it often.* Or,

Take of *yellow Sanders, Roſes, and Water-lillies, of each one dram: Camphire half a ſcruple: pitt them with Roſe water into a narrow mouth'd Veſſel: Let them boyl over the fire, and after let the Patient receive the vapor at his Noſe.*

But becauſe watchings do chiefly trouble in this Diſeaſe, you muſt uſe all your skill from the beginning of the Diſeaſe to provoke ſleep. For which, the repelling Medicines before mentioned are very good; eſpecially if you anoint the head with Oyl of Violets cold, before you apply Roſe Vinegar, which is good againſt watchings and Convulſions which come in this diſeaſe. But the Medicines following, will do it more powerfully.

Take of *the heads of white Poppies with their ſeeds, in number ſix: the flowers of Water-lillies two pugils: beat them together, and with Roſe and Lettice water make them like a pultiſs, which apply to the forehead between two cloaths.*

Note that in Medicines to provoke ſleep, you muſt uſe but little Vinegar, becauſe it cauſeth watching.

Take of *Lettice flowers one handful and an half: Roſes half a handful: white poppy ſeeds half an ounce: boyl them in water till they grow ſoft; ſtamp them in Barley Meal, and womans Milk, of each half an ounce, and a little Oyl of Violets: Make a Frontal thereof.*

Take of *Oyl of Violets, water-lillies, and new Oyntment of Poplar, of each three drams: Opium and Oyl of Nutmegs, of each three grains: Mix them into a Liniment to anoint the Forehead and Temples.*

Great Houſleek bruiſed with Womans Milk, and laid to the Forehead, appeaſeth a Phrenzy, and provokes ſleep. But as ſoon as the Patient begins to ſleep, you muſt take it away, leſt he fall into a Coma, or ſleeping Diſeaſe.

Guords or Pompions do the ſame thing with leſs danger.

Penotus doth extol this Epitheme:

Take of *Muſk twelve grains; Camphire twenty grains; red Roſe water in which Sanders hath been infuſed, twenty ounces; mix them: Shave the head, and wet double cloaths therein, and apply them warm to all the Sutures of the head. When they are dry wet them again, and continue the application twenty four hours, and ſo doing you ſhall provoke ſleep, ſtrengthen the brain, and wonderfully recover the Patient, except the very ſubſtance of the brain be corrupted.*

Inwardly you may give one ounce of Syrup of Poppies ſometimes in his Juleps and Emulſions.

Or you may give four or five grains of Landanum, which alſo given in a Clyſter, doth provoke ſufficiently to ſleep, and with more ſafety.

The Phyſitian muſt be wary in the uſe of Narcoticks, or Medicines that provoke ſleep; for they muſt

muſt not be given if the Patient be very weak, leſt the Spirits and Natural heat, be thereby extinguiſhed.

Having ſufficiently uſed Evacuations, Revulſions, Derivations, and Interceptions: we muſt come to the bringing forth of the matter. And firſt we muſt open the forehead vein if it appear, and may be taken, not tying a Ligature about the Neck as uſually they do, for ſo the blood will be forced upwards.

But you may with moſt profit open the veins in the noſtrils, and if the Diſeaſe be any waies curable, it will be cured thus: You muſt bleed plentifully, and betimes, in the beginning of the Diſeaſe, after you have made general Evacuations. And they are opened with Briſtles put up into the Noſe, and pricking often therewith.

Or you may draw blood from behind the Ears, from the Noſtrils, Forehead, Hemorrhoids, with Horſ-leeches.

Apply to the Head, things that reſolve, with things that repel, in that proportion, that firſt you uſe a little of the reſolvers, and as the diſeaſe declineth, encreaſe the quantity, ſo that at length you uſe only reſolvers to diſcuſs the reliques of the Diſeaſe. For this end we uſe Oyl of Chamomel, and of Dill mixed with Oyl of Roſes.

But among Reſolving Medicines, the chiefeſt are Creatures newly killed and applied to the head, or pieces of them; as yong Pidgeons, Chickens, Puppies cut along the Back, and Sheeps Lights; for they fortifie the part with their Natural heat, diſcuſs the humor, and qualifie the ſharpneſs thereof.

Which things, if you have tried one or two daies, and have found no benefit, *Mercatus* teacheth to apply a Cupping glaſs to the crown of the head, that the humors may breath through the Sutures into the Skin: and if it appear red, and be ſwelled under the Cupping glaſs to ſcarifie. This Counſel he ſaith (if followed) wil do good when al things beſides fail; eſpecially if you bath preſently after with ſweet Water in which you have boyled ſome diſcuſſing Medicines: But he adviſeth that this be not uſed in Phrenzies that come from other Feavers, but only in that which beginneth of its ſelf.

This Remedy is confirmed by *Zacutus Lucitanus*, who ſaies that he cured a moſt deſperate Phrenzy by applying a Cupping Glaſs to the fore part of the Head with Scarrification.

Some are ſo bold as to apply Veſicatories, or Medicines to raiſe Bliſters to the fore part of the Head, which they ſay hath ſomtimes had ſucceſs: But this requires extraordinary premeditation before it be uſed.

For his Drink, let the Patient uſe Barley Water, or Water made of Sorrel Roots, with Syrup of Pomegranates, Barberries, or Lemmons; or let him drink this following Infuſion.

Take of *Spring Water two pints*; *the Leaves of Sorrel, and wild Poppies, of each half a handful*; *the Flowers of Borrage, Water-lillies, and Violets, of each half a pugil*; *the ſpirit of Vitriol one dram*: *red Sanders raſped two ſcruples*: *Let them be infuſed for ſome hours cold*; *then ſtrain them with a Cap paper, and ad as much Sugar as is ſufficient to make it pleaſant.*

There is in this Diſeaſe for the moſt part a ſtoppage of Urine, becauſe the Patient neglecteth to make it; from whence thoſe parts that contain it are diſtended, and bring ſo great an Inflamation, that it alone is able to bring death to the Patient. Therefore you muſt often call upon the Patient to make water, and you muſt foment the place where the Bladder lieth with warm Water, and drive the Urine forth by the compreſſion of the hand. But if the Symptomes do not yeild to theſe light Medicines, you muſt proceed to ſtronger.

Take of *the Leaves of Pellitory of the wall two handfuls*; *Parſley with its roots, one handful*: *Boyl them, and after they are ſtrained ad three ounces of the Oyl of Scorpions, and foment the hairy place of the Privities therewith.*

Let the remainder of this Decoction after the ſtraining, be fryed in a pan with the Oyl of Scorpions, and applied to the ſame part after the Fomentation.

If you deſire a ſtronger Decoction, ad the Seeds of Smallage, Parſley, Gromwel, Seſelis, or large and broad Cummin, of each two drams.

You may alſo profitably apply this following Oyntment after the Fomentation:

Take of *the Fat of a Rabbit, and of Oyl of Scorpions, of each two ounces*: *Smallage Seeds, Parſley ſeeds, Aſarabacca, and Cummin ſeeds finely pondered, of each half a dram*: *Make an Oyntment.*

Chap. XII. *Of the Imposthume, and* Spacelus, *or Mortification of the Brain.*

THe Imposthume and Mortification of the Brain is described by few Authors, although it was observed by *Hippocrates* in his 3. Book of Diseases, and happeneth sometimes in Practice, and deluding those Physitians who are not well grounded, making them conceive it to be another Disease.

Now a Spacelus, or Mortification of the Brain, is a suppuration, or corruption, or matter of the substance of the Brain, which is called a Gangrene, Syderation, or blasting of the Brain.

The Immediate cause whereof, is an Inflamation of the substance of the Brain, which is distinguished from a Phrenzy, in this: In a Phrenzy the Membranes are chiefly inflamed, and they do communicate an Inflamation to the external part adjoyning; but in this Disease, the inward parts of the Brain are inflamed, and the whol substance thereof is putrified; for so great an inflamation in a most tender part and moist, will quickly produce a Spacelus, or Mortification.

The Cause of this Inflamation is Blood over-heated, or over chollerick, running into the Body and internal parts of the Brain.

The Primary Causes, are, all such things as produce hot and much Blood in the whol Body which is sent to the Brain; as violent Exercise, the heat of the Sun, heat of the head by Fire, Wrath, and the like: But great Wounds do more usually produce this Disease, as also Contusions. But a Spacelus or Imposthume coming from a Wound or Contusion, is different from the former in this: An Imposthume made by a Fall or Contusion, doth no possess so many parts of the Brain, but for the most part adhæreth to one. Hence the Symptomes are higher, especially in the beginning, and the Disease continueth longer.

The Signs of an Imposthume or Spacelus, which cometh without a Wound, or Contusion, are these:

In the beginning there is a great Head-ach, which is communicated by the hinder part of the head to the neck and all the back; after which comes a general decay of all the Sences both internal and external, as in an Apoplexy, from which it is distinguished by the Signs hereafter mentioned.

The Patient is tossed to and fro, and cannot remain in the same place; he layeth hold with his hands upon his head, and desires to tear and scratch his face, plucking his hair: but as the Disease encreaseth, his Body groweth faint, and cannot use such violence.

A most sharp and strong Feaver alwaies accompanyeth this Disease, which comes from the great Inflamation of the Brain.

Lastly, In this Disease, the Patient never takes meat or drink, neither can you take any course to give them any thing, and therefore their strength soon faileth.

An Imposthume by a Wound or Contusion, is known by these signs following:

After the Wound or Contusion is received, there is a kind of numbness and sadness in the Body, the Animal Spirits beginning to be weakened by the matter which is got out of its Vessel. When the Disease encreaseth, there ariseth a kind of Feaver, when the matter begins to putrifie, thence comes head-ach and drouzinesse: after, when putrefaction is encreased, al the symptomes grow stronger, the Feaver sharper; the Patient rising from sleep suddenly roareth out, and then presently lyeth down again; he often brings his hand to his head: Hence it is, that many before they die do send forth filthy green matter out of their mouth and nose.

As to the Prognostick part thus:

This Disease is most dangerous, and commonly deadly, even in three daies space, as *Hippocrates* sheweth in his 51. Aphorism, Sect. 7. saying, *That they who have a mortified and putrified brain, die in three daies; but if they live longer, they recover.* *Galen* in his Comments teacheth that we are not to understand here by a Spacelus, a compleat corruption of the Brain because that is uncurable, but such as is at hand by reason of the great Inflamation.

In those which recover, who are very few, there is no remembrance of things past: they can neither remember their Disease, nor any thing concerning it.

We must make great hast for the Cure of this Disease, for if we do not apply Remedies in the beginning, there is no time for Cure.

Therefore in the first beginning of this Disease we must let blood in great plenty, and very often twice, or thrice, or four times in the same day, as strength will permit: for al the hope of the Cure lyeth in this only Remedy; for when a great quantity of blood possesseth the substance of the Brain, which is large, soft, and moist, we cannot make so great a revulsion from thence, except we draw

draw almoſt all the blood in the veins: and here that common ſaying of *Celſus* is to be obſerved; Many things are done well in time of ſudden danger, which at other times may be omitted.

You muſt alſo give ſharp Clyſters every day, that the humors which tend upwards may be brought down.

At the ſame time apply thoſe Medicines of Roſe Vinegar preſcribed in the Chapter of Phrenzy.

For the greater revulſion and derivation, apply Cupping-glaſſes to the Shoulders and Back, with deep ſcarification; uſe Frictions and Ligatures to the extream parts: firſt open the Ankle Veins, then the Forehead, and the Arteries in the Temples; apply Hori-leeches behind the Ears, and to the Hemorrhoids; Veſicatories to the Neck and Arms, and other Medicines which we preſcribed in the cure of the Phrenzy.

At laſt, if the Diſeaſe decline, you muſt apply to the head things that gently reſolve; among which, the beſt is, the hot Lungs of a Sheep newly ſlain.

CHAP. XIII.

Of Mania, *or* *Madneſs.*

Mania is *Delirium* without a Feaver, with raging and fury.

It is diſtinguiſhed from a Phrenzy, in that there is in a Phrenzy an acute Feaver, coming from the inflamation of the Brain and its Membranes. But a Mania hath no Feaver in reſpect of its Being; but a Feaver may be joyned with a Mania, coming from ſome other cauſe, but not from that which produceth a Mania. And therefore in a Phrenzy a Feaver is ſymptomatical; but in a Mania it is eſſential, and original, coming from ſome other cauſe: And ſo is *Galen* to be underſtood, Book 3. *de loc. affect.* chap. 7. where he ſaith, *The Melancholly Juyce which is made of Choller burnt, begets beaſtial madneſs, ſomtimes without, ſomtimes with a Feaver.*

It is diſtinguiſhed from Melancholly by the ſymptomes which declare the diſeaſe; for Mania is with fury and boldneſs, but Melancholly is with fear and ſorrow.

The immediate cauſes of a Mania according to *Galen*, is a cold and dry diſtemper, coming of black Choller, which is urged with many difficulties.

For if there were ſuch a diſtemper in the Brain that it would diſturb the Mind, it ſhould produce a Feaver, when a leſs heat than will produce a Delirium, can produce a Feaver, as appears in thoſe that are inflamed by the Sun.

To this Doubt, divers Authors anſwer diverſly: the Anſwer of the moſt ſolid is, That the heat which produceth a Feaver muſt be smoaky, that the vapors ſent to the heart may cauſe it, and this vaporing heat ought to be in a moiſt matter, ſuch as is in putrid Feavers: but in a Madneſs the Humors are aduſt and burnt, ſo that no Vapors can ariſe from them. In one word they ſay, That the heat in a Madneſs or Mania, is as heat in a live coal, but heat in a Feaver is as heat in the flame. And this anſwer is urged with a ſtrong inſtance; namely, in a Hectick Feaver, there is more conſumption of moiſture than in a Mania: yet the Feaver continueth to the abſolute conſumption of all moiſture, even Radical alſo, and the death of the Patient.

Platerus being perſwaded by this and other Reaſons, ſuppoſeth that beſides the hot and dry diſtemper, there is a malignant and venemous quality, which is the chief cauſe of a Delirium. A great probability for this Opinion is, That a raging from the Mother, comes from Seed corrupted and poyſoned in that part. Becauſe Hydrophobia or fear of water, which is a kind of Mania coming from the biting of a mad dog, is cauſed in any conſtitution, without the mixture of Melancholly: And the diſeaſe which comes from the bite of a Tarantula, is called a kind of Madneſs: And laſtly, certain poyſons do cauſe madneſs, as is reported of the Brain of a Weeſil, and Nightſhade: Therefore it is probable that ſome certain poyſon bred in the Body may be the chief cauſe of madneſs; ſince malignant Feavers which are very mild, and ſo ſomtimes that the pulſe and Urine is like to thoſe that are in health, uſe to produce Deliriums more than burning Feavers without malignity. And Experience teacheth us that Madneſs happens often, not only in Melancholly men, but alſo in all Natures and Ages, eſpecially if it be hæreditary, or come from Parents: and it is often cured by hot Medicines which have ſpecial vertue againſt it. But we muſt confeſs that this diſeaſe is oftenеſt in Melancholly people, becauſe that humor is more fit to receive ſuch poyſon. And *Galen* ſeems to acknowledg that malignity to come upon Melancholly in his Comment upon Aphor. 56. Sect. 6. where he ſaith, That the cauſe of a Mania is a Melancholly humor, not alwaies, but when it is burnt above meaſure, or when it is putrified, and hath received a malignant ſharpneſs. There remains yet one difficulty, That mad men can endure the coldeſt weather naked without hurt, and to be hot externally, which ſhews an extraordinary heat. But we anſwer, That this is not proper to all mad folks, for ſome cannot

not endure cold, but go as warm as they can. And the other are not disturbed with the external air by reason of Custom, because from custom there is no passion; so we see tender women in Winter go with naked Breasts, which are hot to the touch, albeit according to *Hippocrates* cold is a great enemy to the Breast.

The matter producing this Disease, is contained in the veins and arteries, either of the whol body, or those neerest to the Brain, or in the vessels of the Brain, and in respect of the difference of the place containing, greater or lighter symptomes do arise. Somtimes the matter causing this disease is in the Vessels of the Matrix, as Blood, and Seed corrupted: hence cometh the raging called *Furor Uterinus*.

If the matter offending be in all the Veins, or those neer the Brain, there is a continual madness: but if it be shut up only in one part, the disease hath intermission, and comes by fits.

The signs by which it is known, sometimes shews the disease to be present, sometimes that it is growing.

For the knowledg of Madness to come, first consider the Natural disposition of the Patient, which is chollerick, or melancholly. So in *Hippocrates*, 2. *epid.* 5. *He who hath a Vein beating in his Arm, is like to be mad, and is subject to wrath; but he that hath it moving by degrees, is slow and stupid.* Here *Hippocrates* calleth Arteries by the name of Veins. For he doth not mean a simple, but a violent Pulsation, unto which he opposeth that which is by degrees: So that the meaning of his saying is this; They who have naturally a high strong Pulse, great and swift, are inclinable to anger and fury; but they who have a slow pulse, are dull and blockish.

Secondly, You must regard the Sex, for Men are more often mad than Women: Which is to be understood of the Original Disease of Madness; for Women are often mad by content from the Matrix.

Thirdly, The Age is to be considered; for Madness comes oftener to yong men than to boyes and old men.

Fourthly, Mark the time of the year; It comes often in Spring, oftener in Summer, most often at the fall of the Leaf, according to *Hippocrates* and *Galen*, Aphor. 20, 21, and 22. Sect. 3. In the Spring, the humors bred at other times, and kept al Winter quiet, are moved and stirred, and produce proportionable diseases: In the Summer, much choller, not only yellow, but black is encreased in them that are inclined to it, which causeth madness at that time; or else encreasing till Autumn, the disease comes then.

These Signs are more remote, and shew only in general a disposition to this disease; but these following shew it to be at hand: Constant pain in the head, watchings, short and little sleep, troublesom dreams, cares, and thoughtfulness, frights from smal causes, a rash and often fury from none, or the smallest occasion, eyes not enduring light, noise in the ears, an unaccustomed desire of Venery, Nocturnal pollutions often, laughter unaccustomed and without Reason, much talk not formerly used, and somtimes much silence. These shew that a Mania is begun.

But that the Mania is present you may know by the signs mentioned in the Definition; namely, a Delirium without a Feaver, with fury and boldness; divers are the kinds of Dotage or Delirium in divers sick men, and at divers times they come according as the cause is more or less vehement; for some have a rash madness, and seize upon every man they meet, tear their own cloathes, somtimes lay violent hands to destroy themselves. Others are milder and tamer, and hurt no body, but speak distractedly and ridiculously, somtimes they sing, somtimes they laugh, and have divers whimseys, and symptomes much like those in Melancholly men and fools.

And from the variety of those symptomes you may gather the variety of the cause: For immoderate laughter, mirth, and singing, signifie that the matter offending is dashed with much blood: but wrath, restlesness, howling, striking, pale and yellow color in the face, shew that choller is in fault: but a furious madness that laies hold on all it meets, and somtimes stayeth them, comes from choller burnt, which is called black choller; but if this black choller comes not of yellow choller, but melancholly adust, the Patient looks furiously, somtimes is long silent, and then breaks forth into earnest discourse; they are unruly and untoward, and somtimes cry and lament grievously.

The Prognostick of this Disease is,

A Mania is a strong Disease, and continueth not only months, but years, even to death, especially if it be hæreditary. All Diseases of black choller are hard to be cured, and this especially, because the Patient will not be ruled, and take their Medicines prescribed.

A Mania which comes with laughter, and those light symptoms is easier cured than that which comes with sadness and fury.

That the Disease will shortly be cured, appears by Natural Evacuations, by swear, stool, bleeding at nose, or hemorrhoids or varices, or crooked swelled veins appears: whence *Hippocrates*, Aphor. 21. Sect. 6. if varices or hemorrhoids come to mad men, the disease is cured.

Bloody-flux, Dropsie, Tertian Ague, or Quartan happening to a mad man, takes away his disease,

for

for there is a remove of the humors unto the lower parts from the Head, in which they produce a new Diſeaſe.

For the Cure of this Diſeaſe, the matter offending is to be evacuated, revelled, and repelled, the hot Diſtemper is to be corrected, the Brain and other principal parts are to be ſtrengthened, which may be done by the means following.

Firſt, Let blood, out of the vein of the Arm which appears moſt; but give a Clyſter before: the day after bleed again in the other Arm; and do thus often. For *Platerus* affirms that innumerable mad folks have been cured by Chyrurgions, and others who have ſtudied the Cure, and have let them blood twenty, or twenty ſix times; not only in the Arms, but Feet, Forehead, Noſtrils, Hemorrhoides, if the veins appear there; and alſo in the Hand, or *Salvatella*: This is to be done by degrees, intermitting Clyſters, and purging Medicines here preſcribed. Cupping Glaſſes to the Shoulders and Back with Scarification, are to be applyed after the other veins are opened: as alſo Horſleeches to the Temples, and behind the Ears.

And you muſt intermix Preparations and Purges proper for the matter offending when you let blood ſo often; and they muſt be continued long: for which uſe are all thoſe which we have mentioned for preparing and purging of Choller, to which we may ad theſe following, as being more excellent and choice.

Take of *Lapis Lazuli, one dram and an half: Diagridium half a dram: the beſt Turbith one dram: Senna half an ounce: Epithymum, and Cream of Tartar, of each two drams: Cinnamon, and Citron peeles, of each one ſcruple: Saffron half a ſcruple: make a pouder: the Doſe to be given at once, is one dram, or four ſcruples, with any proper liquor or broth.*

Take of *black Hellebore one ounce: infuſe it for three dayes ſpace in four ounces of rain water: boyl them with a gentle fire to three parts: ad to the ſtraining of the beſt clarified Honey two ounces: and take one ſpoonful in fair broth.* Or,

Take of *the Extract of black Hellebore half a ſcruple: Syrup of Violets one ounce: mix them for one Doſe.*

All Medicines made of Hellebore; as the Wine, Syrup, and Oxmel of it are very good againſt this Diſeaſe.

Hence it is reported that *Melampus* the Son of *Amythaon* the Phyſitian, Cured the Daughters of *Praxus* King of Greece with Hellebor'd wine, when by Madneſs they ſuppoſed themſelves to be Cowes.

Antimony in this Diſeaſe is not only Commended by Chymiſts, but alſo by al *Galeniſts*: both in regard it doth diſcharge Melancholly from the whole Body; and alſo becauſe the Patients will be eaſily perſwaded to take it. The Doſe is divers according to the diverſity of the preparation of it.

Baths of hot Water are to be often uſed, and after every Purge.

The Order of Purging Medicines for this Diſeaſe is as followeth: Firſt give altering Apozems that Purgeth for three or four dayes together after you have let blood in both Arms. After give twice in a week gentler Potions, or Pouders, or a Magiſtral ſyrup: but give ſtrong Purges, only twice in a month; letting blood conſtantly before as is before mentioned.

In the time of Intermiſſion, uſe Baths, preparing Juleps, or altering Broths; as alſo ſtrengthning Opiates.

Beſides the vulgar Juleps, this following made of Juyces is very profitable.

Take of *the juyce of Borage, Bugloſs, and Pairmains, of each three ounces: Fumitory, and Succory water, of each four ounces: white Sugar ſix drams: boyl, clariſie, and aromatize them with yellow Saunders: and take ſix ounces thereof morning and evening.*

You may make Opiats as followeth.

Take of *Conſerve of Roſes, Violets, and Bugloſs, of each one ounce: Conſerve of Tamariſk-flowers, Clove-gilli-flowers, Candied Lettice-ſtalks, and Citron-peels candied, of each half an ounce: one Emblick Myrobalon candied, Confection of Alkermes and Hyacynths, of each three drams: the Pouder of the Electuary called Diamargariton Frigidum, and Lætificans Galeni, of each one dram: Coral and Pearl prepared, of each half a dram: with the ſyrup of ſweet-ſmelling Apples, make an Opiate, of which let him take the quantity of a Cheſnut, drinking after it a little of his Julep, or of ſome other proper liquor.*

Tablets alſo may be made in this manner:

Take of *Conſectio Alkermes two drams: Species de Gemmis, and Diamargariton Frigidum of each half a dram: Sugar diſſolved in the juyce of Apples, four ounces: make Tablets of the weight of two drams, and give one for a Doſe.*

Sometimes we may try Specifical Medicines, and Amulets, or things to be hanged about the Neck; of which ſort *Sennertus* hath many: but we wil mention only one which is in a Noble Family of *Montpelior*, is accounted as an Hereditary Secret: which is this,

Take of *Balm-flowers one handful: chop them ſmall, and infuſe them in four ounces of the ſpirit*

of

of Wine: then ad of prepared Pearl half a dram: mix them, and give two ſpoonfuls at a time: while you uſe theſe things, you muſt with all poſſible art procure ſleep by Medicines both internal and external; ſuch as you have for the Cure of the Phrenzie.

And beſides external ſleeping Medicines, you muſt apply ſuch Remedies outwardly to the head, which may temper and allay the vehement heat and fury thereof. And theſe muſt not only be cooling, but alſo more moiſtning and (in the beginning of the Diſeaſe) repelling.

Therefore in the beginning, Oyl of Roſes, Violets, Dill, and Chamomil are very good: After you muſt leave out the Oyl of Roſes: but when you wil Cool more, you muſt ad the Oyl of the Cold Seeds and Poppyes. And laſtly, that they may be brought into the form of a Liniment, you may ad Butter, or the Mucilage of Linſeed, or Fenugreek.

An Epithem thus made, is very good.

Take of *the water of Water-Lillies, one pint: Sal. Prunella one ounce: Camphire one ſcruple, mix them, and apply double cloaths dipped therein, to the fore-part of the Head.*

And Epithem of Sal. Saturni, or Sak of Lead with Roſe-water, is very profitable.

As alſo that which is formerly mentioned, made of Roſe-water, red Saunders being infuſed therein, with Musk and Camphire.

The Chymiſts preſer the Balſom of Lead, and anoint the Head therewith, as with a Liniment.

But in the height of the Diſeaſe, it is very neceſſary to apply ſome Creature newly killed, or ſome part of it; and eſpecially a ſheeps Lungs; which muſt be warmed again in hot water after it is grown cold.

Some uſe ſtronger Diſcuſſients in the declination of the Diſeaſe, and alſo in the vigor of it after ſufficient evacuation; this following Fomentation is of wonderful Vertue.

Take of *the Head Herbs with their flowers, as many as you think fit, boyl them in Spring water: then take of Bay-berries, and the Roots of black Hellebore, of each as much as will ſuffice: beat them groſly, and ſew them into a long Bag, and then let it boyl in the Decoction before mentioned.*

Afterwards for Nine dayes together, *Take* Two Pints of the Decoction, and Foment the Head being ſhaved, with double Cloaths for the ſpace of an hour: after apply the Bag to the *Coronal Suture*, binding it about with linnen Cloaths. Let the Patient lie down, and reſt if he can: then wil he Purge by al the Emunctuaries of the Brain, and alſo ſomwhat by ſtool; ſo wil the filth ſticking to his Skul and Brain be wonderfully diſſolved, which few other Medicines can perform.

Laſtly, Apply a Cautery to the *Coronal Suture*, which is much approved by *Gordonius*, who confirms the benefit of it by the Hiſtory of a certain Mad-man; who had a wound in his Head, with a Fracture of the Scull; and was very wel as long as it was Open, but ſtill when it was Healed, grew mad again.

Although the Brain be principally affected in this Diſeaſe, yet other parts are to be altered, eſpecially the Heart and Liver, with Epithems and Liniments preſcribed in the Cure of the Phrenzy.

CHAP. XIV.

Of Melancholly:

Melancholly is a Doting or *Delirium* without a Feaver with fear and ſadneſs.

It is diſtinguiſhed from a Phrenzy by want of Feaver; and from Madneſs, by Fear and Sadneſs, becauſe that comes with Fury and Boldneſs.

We ſay this Diſeaſe hath no Feaver: namely, of its own nature of it ſelf: but a Feaver may Accidentally be joyned with it: For nothing hindereth, but a continual or intermitting Feaver may happen to one in this Diſeaſe; but this Feaver wil not be eſſentially in it, as in a Phrenzy, where a Feaver is eſſential to the Diſeaſe.

But we may doubt how Fear and Sadneſs may be ſaid to be of the eſſence of Melancholly: when we perceive that in many Melancholick people there is much laughter and appearance of joy. For ſome laugh, ſome ſing, ſome think themſelves to be very rich Kings and Monarchs. We Anſwer, That there are divers degrees of Melancholly, and divers mixtures of Melancholick humors with others; from whence come varieties of Paſſions, ſo that they who have much blood or flegm mixed with Melancholly, may have joy and Cheerfulneſs: but that Diſeaſe is not at that time a true Melancholly, but is more like fooliſhneſs.

Alſo great variety of Doting ariſeth from the various diſpoſition of the Melancholick humor: Hence it is that ſome think themſelves to be Kings, Princes, Prophets: Others, that they are made of Glaſs, or Potters-Clay; or that they are barely Corns ready to be devoured by the Hens: Some think they are melting Wax, and dare not approach the Fire: Others, That they are Dogs,

Cats,

Cats, Wolves, Cuckows, Nightingales, or Cocks, whose voyces they imitate. Others fancy themselves dead, and will neither eat nor drink. Others dare not piss least they should drown the World by a second Deluge. Some think they have loft their heads, or some other Member, or that they carry the world upon their fingers end, or that they have Sparrows in their heads, or Serpents, Frogs, Mice, and other Creatures in their Bellies.

The immediate Cause of Melancholly (that I may use the words of *Galen*) is a dark spirit or vapor very black; for when the Animal Spirits ought in their own Nature to be pure, thin, and transparant for the cheerful performing of the actions of the Brain, and to cause cheerfulness, if they change their constitution, and become dark and obscure, they produce sorrow and fear. *Galen* in his 2. *de sympt. caus.* chap. 6. by an Example borrowed from external darkness, doth explain the matter: *Of those things* (saith he) *which are without the Body, we see nothing that doth more terrifie us than darkness; therefore when darkneß doth encompaß the rational part of man, it is necessary that that man should exceedingly fear who doth alwaies carry about with him, another cause of fear, besides that which is external.*

The cause of this evil disposition of the Spirits, is a Melancholick humor, which being possessed with thickness, darkness, and blackness, doth infect the Spirits, and makes them cloudy and dark.

And this Melancholick humor is cold and dry, and therefore proper for fixing and condensing of the Spirits, which fixing and condensing or thickening of the Spirits must needs cause sorrow and heaviness. For if the humor be thin and hot, as is black choller (from which comes madness) it doth rather produce fury and boldness than fear and sorrow. Therfore the immediate cause of Melancholly is thickness and darkness of the Spirits Animal; but the necessary condition, and without which it cannot be, is a cold and dry distemper. But if any shal instance of an Hypochondriack Melancholly from *Galens* third Book *de locis affectis*, chap. 7. that it is an inflamation in the Hypochondria, and therefore the hot distemper doth prevail. We answer, That that Inflamation or burning of the Hypochondria, comes from the heat of blood long retained in the spleen and Meseraick Veins by reason of obstructions, from whence many vapors are sent up into the Brain, which though they be hot, yet are overcome by the coldness of the Brain, and are easily brought to a cold and dry temper which is proper to Melancholly. But if the heat of those vapors be such, that they spoil the temper of the Brain, and make it hot and dry, then comes Madness and not Melancholly. So that in Madness or Mania, and Melancholly, there is this difference; That in the first, namely, Mania, there is a hot and dry distemper; In the other, called Melancholly, a cold and dry distemper.

The former mentioned darkness of the Spirits confirmed by *Galen*, is rejected of *Averroes*, in this respect, Because darkness brought upon the Animal Spirits, and the black color of a Melancholick humor cannot infect the internal Sences; according to that vulgar Axiom, There is nothing in the Understanding which was not first in the Sence; therefore since that black color, or internal darkness was not first represented to the eyes, it cannot be perceived by the internal Sences. We answer, That the blackness of a Melancholick humor, or the darknes of the spirits doth not affect the internal Sences under the notion of color; but as they are somwhat besides Nature in the brain hindering its actions. For the Animal Spirits for the perfect performance of the Actions of the brain, ought to be pure thin, and clear: But if (on the other side) they be impure, thick, and dark, they hinder the actions of the brain by infecting the species which are sent thither, even as a colored glass doth represent the species of the object to the eye with its own Tincture.

A cold and dry distemper, which is propounded for a necessary condition to this disease of Melancholly, may be opposed by this Argument taken from *Avicen* in *Fen.* 1. *Lib.* 3. *Tract.* 4. Chap. 18. he saith, *That Stammerers are for the most part Melancholick.* But these Stutterers are very moist in temper according to *Galen*, Comment. Aphor. 32. Sect. 6. where *Hippocrates* saith, That Stammerers are most subject to loosness: And *Galen* thereupon saith, That Stammerers have the moistest temper, as appears in children who are most subject to looseness. We answer, That *Avicens* Text is not to be understood of those which are true Stammerers, which cannot pronounce the letter R. of which *Hippocrates* and *Galen* spake in the Aphorism aforesaid, who are of a moister temper: But of those which are called Trauly and Stutterers, which repeat the same syllable very often before they can pronounce a whol word: Which comes from their headlong phancy, when they strive to speak very quickly, for then the tongue foldeth its self, and is constrained to stop and stay in the production of Words. And these Stutterers are of a melancholick temper.

Lastly, It may be doubted, how darkness of the Spirits should be an immediate cause of a melancholly Delirium, when every hurt action depends immediately upon some disease; but this tenebrosity or darkness can be referred to no kind of Disease. We answer, That tenebrosity or darkness, is a Disease in number, by reason that the coming thereof doth encrease the number of those things which are necessary in the Brain for the performance of animal Functions. And the instance which may be brought against this Argument, namely, That a disease is an affect of a true part, is answered in the Treatise of *Vertigo*.

The Proper ſigns of Melancholly, are propounded in the definition, namely, Fear, and Sorrow, without any manifeſt Cauſe, which are found in every kind of melancholly. But the ſeveral ſorts of melancholly are known by their proper ſigns. So theſe following ſigns do ſhew that melancholly doth only reſide in the head, namely, an evil habit of the Brain, or hot Diſeaſes going before, by which the blood contained in its Veins, is torrefied and burned, and at laſt brought into a melancholick humor. Short and interrupted ſleep, troubleſom dreams, giddineſs, noiſe in the Ears, and no ſymptomes from other parts, and eſpecially from the belly.

That this Diſeaſe cometh from the whol Body, appears by a melancholly habit of the whol body; either Natural, known by a black color, roughneſs, and leanneſs; or acquiſite, coming by cares, labors, watchings, courſe diet, and the like.

That it comes from the Hypochondria, theſe ſigns declare; Heart-burning with no thirſt, often ſpitting, ſowr belchings, and windy, eruptions upwards and downwards, rumbling of the guts, pain and heavineſs of the midriff, perplexity, nauſeouſneſs, ſomtimes inſatiable appetite, heart-beating, ſomtimes a ſwelling in the Hypochondria: And other ſigns which ſhall be ſhewn more at large in the Diſcourſe of Hypochondriack Melancholly.

That this Diſeaſe comes from the womb, may be known by thoſe which are ſet down in their order for the declaring of Hyſterical Diſeaſes.

The Prognoſtick of this Diſeaſe is thus:

The Diſeaſe is dangerous, if Chronical, of long continuance, and very fixed: For a melancholick humor, eſpecially that which comes by aduſtion, and inclineth to black choller, contemns the force of Medicines, if weak, and oppoſeth the ſtrongeſt: whence a melancholick humor is ſaid to be the ſcourge and diſgrace of Phyſitians.

But a new ſprung melancholly coming of immediate Cauſes, is eaſily cured: For *Galen* reports in his third Book, *de loc. affect.* chap. 7. That he hath often cured a melancholly in the beginning with only Baths of ſweet Waters.

The Hemorrhoids, or Piles coming upon melancholly men, ſomtimes bring cure, if the humors be caſt down thither critically by Nature: For ſomtimes they come ſymptomatically, and multiply the matter of the Diſeaſe in many parts.

Somtimes it is cured by flux of the Hemorrhoids, by Scabs, Itch, or other diſeaſes breaking forth of the Skin.

As to the Cure of it, from whenceſoever the Diſeaſe took its original, we muſt obſerve alwaies two things:

Firſt, That the whol Body be freed from a melancholick humor, and the filth of other humors; for it ſeldom happens that one part alone is troubled with it.

Secondly, That the main Cure be directed to the Hypochondria, becauſe that in the ſpleen and liver there is the firſt generation of Melancholly, and the gathering of it is in the parts thereabout; therefore the Cure of Hypochondriack Melancholly ſet down by us, will ſerve for the Cure of other diſeaſes of Melancholly: for you can ſcarce cure the Hypochondria from the abundance of any humor, and the generation of any new, but by conſequence the whol body muſt be cured of the ſame. Therefore for all diſeaſes of Melancholly thoſe Remedies will ſuffice which are propounded in the Cure of Hypochondriack Melancholly.

CHAP. XV.

Of a Catarrh, or Defluxion.

A Catarrh is a preternatural Defluxion of an Excrementitious humor, from the head into the inferior parts. It is therefore a Symptome of the third kind, namely, a fault in the Excrements.

The ſubſtance of the Brain being large, needs much nouriſhment; of whence comes neceſſarily abundance of Excrements, eſpecially by reaſon of the cold and moiſt diſtemper of the part: which excrements if they have only their moderate and natural quantity are received into the fore Ventricles of the Brain, and are ſent by the *Choana*, as by a funnel to the moiſt Glandels, and ſo are ſpit forth every day from the pallat; but if they grow more plentiful, and yet conſiſt in their Natural condition, they are diſperſed about the Brain and the *Meninges*, and ſo are ſent forth, not only by the pallat, but alſo by the noſtrils.

But when the Brain is affected with diſtemper and weakneſs, or is conſtrained to receive too much and diſproportionable nouriſhment, which it cannot ſufficiently concoct, there is a great encreaſe of excrements. Add further (as *Hippocrates* ſaith) that the Brain like Cupping-glaſſes applied to the Body, never ceaſe to attract humors and vapors from the inferior parts; hence the excrements are encreaſed,

creaſed, which by their quantity and quality provoking the expulſive, and overcoming the retentive faculty, run immoderately by unuſual and improper waies which they find out, to the great diſturbance of the Body.

Since then a fluxion is the motion of matter from one part to another, we muſt conſider in that as in all motions, five things. The Terminus, or place from whence; the place to which it moves; the Mover; the Moved; and the waies by which it is moved. The place from whence, is the Brain; the place to which, is ſome part beneath the Brain; the Mover, is the expulſive faculty ſtirred up, or the retentive weakned; the thing moved, is an excrementitious humor; the way by which is the Pallat, Noſtrils, Eyes, Ears, and inſenſible Paſſages, as alſo the Veins, Arteries, and Nerves.

In the place from which, or the part which ſendeth forth, we may obſerve two kinds of Cauſes: One is that which begetteth much moiſture in the Body; the other is that which make the humors flow: That is called the generating; this the expelling Cauſe.

The generating Cauſes conſiſt in the hindering of Concoction, which comes either from the fault in the nouriſhment, or in the faculty.

The Concoction of the Brain is hindered chiefly from diſtemper, either cold or hot.

A cold diſtemper cauſeth that the Nouriſhment brought to the Brain, is ill concocted and turned into flegm; as alſo that the vapors brought from the inferior parts, are not ſufficiently diſcuſſed, but are turned and condenſed into Water.

But a hot diſtemper doth attract more plentiful nouriſhment and vapors, ſo that Nature cannot ſufficiently diſcuſs them.

The Concoction of the brain is hindred through the Nouriſhment, either when there is too much; or when it hath evil qualities; ſo cold, groſs, and ſlimy meats and drinks immoderately taken, cannot be perfectly concocted, and make the Brain crude and moiſt. So ſharp and windy nouriſhment ſend many vapors to the head.

To theſe you may ad external Cauſes, which uſe to fill the head with ſuperfluous humidity; as Southernly Air, long ſleep, eſpecially at noon, an idle life, and the like.

Although the Brain be called the chief ſending part, yet it is not alwaies the chief cauſe of defluxion; but for the moſt part, the matter is ſent from other parts to the Brain: for after evil humors are collected, either in the Veins, or any peculiar part, as the Liver, Spleen, Meſentery, Womb, not only many Vapors are ſent from them to the head, but alſo the humors themſelves are carried to the head, and deſcend again to the inferior parts; and the fault lieth moſt in the inferior parts in the breeding of a defluxion, whoſe diſtemper is divers, and the Obſtruction alſo divers.

For a hot diſtemper of the Bowels, makes abundance of vapors, from which comes defluxions, as in a Stil or Alembick: But a cold diſtemper by weak concoction begets crude humors, which upon the leaſt occaſion fly to the brain.

But the Obſtructions of the parts of the lower belly, hinder the voiding of Excrements, whence it comes, that they being encreaſed by degrees, when they cannot find their free and ordinary courſe fly up to the brain. And to this doth alſo concur the weakneſs of the brain, fit to receive theſe Excrements, for (as we ſaid) the ſtronger parts to diſburden themſelves upon the weaker, and it often happens that the brain by reaſon of its ſoft and looſe ſubſtance is weakeſt, and can leſs reſiſt than ſolid and compact ſubſtances.

The impulſive cauſes are, too much heat of the brain, or coolneſs, or ſome concoction of humors: Too much heat doth extenuate and diffuſe the humors contained in the brain, and opens the pores by which they uſe to flow: ſuch is the heat of the head with the Sun or fire, or too much covering; ſmelling of hot Spices, and other paſſions.

Coldneſs doth compreſs the brain, and ſtrains forth the humors therein contained, as a Spunge is ſqueezed in the hand: Such change is often in Winter, and eſpecially in ſudden alteration of Air; as when a Southern wind hot and moiſt, is turned into a North wind cold and dry; or when one going out of a hot place, comes ſpeedily into a cold. To theſe Cauſes you may ad coldneſs of the feet, which by ſympathy is communicated to the Brain.

Many there are who deny the aforeſaid compreſſion of the brain by cold, becauſe cold doth incraſſat and condenſe the humors, and makes them leſs apt to flow; neither doth the example of a Spunge prove any thing, which will not empty its ſelf in the Air. But this Opinion delivered by *Hippocrates* in *lib. de loc. in homine*, ſeems to be true; *Fluxions* (ſaith he) *come of cold, when the fleſh and veins of the head, are extended: for thoſe when the head is cold and contracted, bound together, and excluding, do ſtrain forth moiſture. And alſo the fleſh doth aſſiſt them, and the hairs are on end, as being every where ſtrongly preſſed, and therefore whatſoever is ſtrained from thence, falls where it is occaſioned.* From whence is manifeſt, That a Coarctation and compreſſion of the Parts may be made by cold, and from thence a humor may be expreſſed. Neither doth it hinder that denſation or thickening of humors which is made by cold, as was ſaid; for it may be ſo when the whol body is equally cold. But when the external parts are offended by ſudden cold, they are preſently

ſently ſtraitened, and ſtrain the humor contained. Of leſs force is that Argument againſt the Spunge, that it is not expreſſed by the cold Air; for there is another Reaſon to be given of living parts, whoſe heat and ſpirits fly from the ſence of cold, and cauſe the parts wherin they are to be contracted; which cannot be in a Spunge ful of Water. Yet we muſt confeſs, that this is not the only way by which a Defluxion comes through cold; for cold of the feet will produce a Catarrh by communicating a cold diſtemper to the brain by the chiefeſt Nerves that come through the marrow of the back bone; and this coolneſs goes into the innermoſt parts of the brain, not the external, as cold air, which affects the head immediately: therefore we may rather think in this caſe, that the retentive faculty of the brain is weakened by cold of the head, ſo that it cannot contain the ſuperfluous humors which are many, but lets them flow forth.

There is alſo another way very uſual, by which a Catarrh of a cold cauſe cometh, namely, The ſtoppage of the external pores, eſpecially in the time wherein the body requireth moſt ſweat: Hence it comes that men very much inflamed, running ſuddenly into the cold air, are troubled with Catarrhs. So Catarrhs comes to be moſt frequent in Autumn, becauſe the Body being made thin, and the pores opened in the Summer, caſting forth many excrements by inſenſible tranſpiration, if they be preſently ſtopped by contraction of the body with cold, do cauſe humors and vapors to fly into the head, and center of the brain, So about the beginning of Autumn there are not only Catarrhs, but alſo abundance of watery humors are ſent forth by moſt men in their urine, and by ſtool, which cauſe fluxes of the Belly at that time. But if any ask why defluxions do not laſt al Winter when by reaſon of cold the pores are alwaies ſtopped? We anſwer, That Nature doth in Winter diſcharge her ſelf by other waies rather than by ſweat, namely, by ſtool, urine, and ſpittle. How great that Evacuation is which is uſually by inſenſible tranſpiration or ſweat, is pleaſantly taught by *Sanctorius* in his Book *de Statica Medicina*, where he ſaith, That it is larger than all the ſenſible Evacuations put together: ſo that if the meat and drink of one day be eight pound in weight, the inſenſible tranſpiration will be five pound: he is very curious in this matter. What light he hath left to the finding out of Cauſes, and Curing Diſeaſes, I leave to be judged by the Learned.

In the part receiving, you muſt conſider the imbecillity, or other diſpoſition to receive and attract defluxion. In regard of weakneſs, it is an uſual ſaying among Phyſitians, That the ſtronger parts do alwaies lay their ſuperfluous burden upon the weaker; as in Common-wealths, the Great Ones lay the chiefeſt burden upon the poor Commons.

Now the weakneſs of the parts is either Natural, or Adventitious. A Natural weakneſs comes from the ſoftneſs and looſneſs of the parts from the Glandles and Lungs, do eaſily entertain defluxions: But an Adventitious weakneſs, is from a diſtemper, or from ſolution of continuity. A cold diſtemper by weakening the Native heat cauſeth the part to have leſs power to reſiſt the humor flowing unto it. And alſo a Solution of continuity or wound, makes the part more fit to receive defluxions by its weakneſs; hence aroſe the uſe of Cauteries or Iſſues, becauſe the part being thereby weakened, the humors do flow from other parts unto it. And ſo the Lungs being ulcerated receive the humors from the head, and from al other parts.

Among other diſpoſitions for the attracting of a defluxion, heat is chiefly to be reckoned; for we may obſerve, that parts inflamed do plentifully attract humors. So in a Conſumption, many humors are drawn from the head to the lungs, not only by reaſon of the ulcer, but alſo by reaſon of the inflamation. Whence *Hippocrates* ſpeaking of a Phthiſis or Conſumption in his firſt Book of Diſeaſes, ſaith thus: *The Lungs being inflamed draw humors from the whol Body, and eſpecially from the Head; and the Head being made hot from the Body, ſpits forth that thick matter.*

There are two waies by which the humors are carried from the head into the inferior parts, either internal or external: The internal way is when the humor flows from the parts under the Skull, chiefly from the Ventricles of the Brain, and makes divers diſeaſes and ſymptomes according to the diverſity of the parts receiving, of which ſome have peculiar names, according to thoſe vulgar Verſes in *Schola Salerni*:

That Rheum is call'd Catarrhus *which doth fall*
Upon the Breaſt; upon the Jaws we call
It Branchus; Coryza *through the Noſe doth fall.*

When the Humor flows upon the Breaſt, the Diſeaſe keeps the general name of a *Catarrh*, or Defluxion; when it falls upon the Jaws, and *Aſpera Arteria*, or rough Arteries, it is called *Branchus*, *Raucedo*, or Hoarſneſs; when it flows into the Noſtrils, it cauſeth not only a *Coryza* or Murth, but *Ozæna* and *Polypus*. But in other parts it produceth various effects; if it fall upon the Nerves it produceth a Torpor or Numbneſs, a Palſey, Convulſion, Trembling: if in the Ears, Deafneſs, Swelling; if in the Eyes, Ophalmy, or Inflamation, Tears, Blindneſs; if upon the Uvula or Pallat, Swelling, Looſneſs or Laxity, or Ulcer; if in the Throat, the Squinzy; if on the Lungs, the Pleuriſie, Inflamation or Impoſthumation, Cough, ſhortneſs of Breath, ſpitting of Blood, Conſumption; if into the Stomach, Vomiting, want of Appetite; if into the Bowels, it cauſeth Diarrhœa, and Dyſentery:

ſentery: therefore it is rightly conceived that the greateſt part of Diſeaſes that trouble mans Body, have their original from the Head.

Moreover, Somtimes the humor flows from the Brain with the blood into the veins, whence comes the Diſeaſe called *Febris Catarrhalis*, when Nature is ſtrongly moved to expel the ſuperfluous humor, and the Spirits being thereby much diſturbed, are inflamed, and cauſe a Quotidian Feaver: hence it is that a defluxion is reckoned among the cauſes of a Quotidian Feaver. And alwaies before the coming of the Joynt-gout or Inflamation called Eryſipelas, ſuch a Feaver doth proceed.

The external waies by which the humor flows from the head, are thoſe which are without the skul under the skin; and *Fernelius* ſuppoſed that the humors which chiefly carried between the fleſh and the skin, although by the continuity of the Muſcles, Membranes, and Nerves, as alſo the Veins and Arteries, the humors uſe to flow into the Eyes, Teeth, Jaws, Neck, Shoulders, Joynts, and other external parts.

Some Authors make difference of Catarrhs, which are theſe: Some are called Ferini, or wild; ſome Suffocating; ſome Epidemical, or common.

A wild violent Catarrh is that which by its ſharpneſs ulcerateth the Lungs, and brings a Conſumption, and it comes of a ſharp and ſalt humor riſing from a hot Liver, and ſent into the brain, and from thence into the Lungs.

A Suffocating Catarrh, is when the humor flows violently into the hollow of the Lungs, and is ſtill renewed to the danger of ſtrangling.

Laſtly, An Epidemical Catarrh hath a malign quality, and is common among the people, and comes from the corruption of the Air.

The Knowledg of this Diſeaſe, is from three ſigns: of the Subject, of the Diſeaſe, and of the Cauſe.

The Subject, or Body apt to fall into a Catarrh, is known by the ſlender Fabrick of it, eaſily pierced with either hot or cold air; as alſo by the too compact Fabrick of it, which hindereth a free tranſpiration: as alſo a weak and cold brain, which cannot diſcuſs the vapors which are ſent unto it, or ſufficiently concoct its own nouriſhment: alſo a hot brain that attracts too many vapors: alſo the contrary actions of the Stomach and Liver, when one is hot and the other cold.

The Signs which ſhew the Diſeaſe, either declare it to be coming, or preſent.

The aforeſaid Cauſes ſhew it to be coming; but eſpecially, heavineſs in the head, dulneſs and numbneſs of the Senſes, long ſleep, much ſnorting, a ſnotty noſe, and more ſpitting than uſual, coſtiveneſs of Body, and abundance of wind.

The ſigns of a Catarrh preſent are manifeſt, for either the humor flowing from the brain, is plainly ſeen, or the ſwellings and pains which it produceth in divers parts.

The ſigns of the Cauſes are alſo evident; for if a Catarrh come of a cold humor, there will be ſence of cold, paleneſs of face, ſweet ſpittle, ſowr belchings, ſlimy matter, or watery, and a general flegmatick habit of Body.

But that the humor diſtilling is hot, appears by redneſs of the face, thirſt, ſaltneſs and ſharpneſs in the mouth, inflamation, pain, and ulcers in the parts affected, and a chollerick habit of the whol Body.

An external Defluxion is known from an internal, in regard the pain is more external in the former, eſpecially under the skin of the crown of the head, where ſomtimes you may perceive a ſoft tumor; often a painful combing back of the hair: and many times the humor is felt to fall down upon the outward parts with great pain, heat or cold.

The Prognoſtick of this Diſeaſe is elegantly laid down by *Cornelius Celſus*, in theſe words: *If the humor flow from the head into the noſe, it is ſmal; if into the jaws, it is worſe; but if upon the Lungs it is worſt of all.* But *Hippocrates* ſaith, That a Catarrh is very hard to be concocted in thoſe that are very old.

Where there is a great plenty of humors, either from repletion, or from evil Concoction: there is a dangerous Catarrh, for it is to be feared leſt the humor flow ſuddenly, and cauſe Suffocation, or ſome other grievous accident.

The Cure of this Diſeaſe is two-fold; The one is of the Cold, the other of the Hot Catarrh.

The whol Cure of a cold Catarrh conſiſts in the preparing and evacuating of the humor offending, and in the revelling of it if it flow to the breaſt, or other part, and the ſtopping of its motion; and after let the diſtemper of the brain be amended.

Firſt then, If the matter be much, and flow very violently, and we fear leaſt it flow alſo from other parts, eſpecially if the Liver be hot (for it is often ſeen, that men ſubject to Catarrhs, have a hot Liver, and a cold brain) we muſt breath a Vein; but if the matter be but little, and move gently, and the party be aged, and the temper of the Liver not hot, ſo that there is no ſuſpicion for humors to be ſent to the brain from any other parts, you may omit Phleboromy.

The

The matter offending is first to be diminished with a Potion or Pills, or other Purging Medicine, mentioned in the chapter of the cold distemper of the Brain.

Afterwards the remainder of the humor is to be prepared with an Apozeme, there also mentioned; or if you fear not to disturb the humor too much, you may give a purging Apozeme, and at last make a compleat Evacuation with stronger Pills, or other Purges.

If the Catarrh be very strong, you may give that which will powerfully root out the Matter.

Coloquintida is very excellent for to purge the Brain strongly; but it worketh very violently, and is offensive with its bitterness: both which faults are corrected by steeping it in Urine; for so it laies aside its bitterness, and becomes almost without taste, and also is so gentle that it may be given to the quantity of a dram safely, and it is a most gallant Remedy for all cold Diseases in the head.

It sometimes happens that Excrementitious Humors sent from the parts beneath into the brain, produce a Catarrh: and they find a preternatural course that way, by reason the natural course by which those humors use to be evacuated is stopped; and then the Catarrh is best cured by opening those waies with gentle, mild, and constant purging, that the humors flowing upwards, are so sent downwards, and by degrees brought to their proper motion. And these gentle Purges may be made of Decoctions or broths long continued; but in the mean while you must not neglect strengthening Medicines.

For Revulsion, apply Cupping-glasses and Vesicatories, or things to cause blisters, to the neck and shoulders, and make issues in the hinder part of the head and arms. *Zacutus Lusitanus* in *lib.* 2. *Praxis admirande, observat.* 160. commends Issues behind the Ears for the best remedy against all distillations from the head: And we have seen good success by them, especially in defluxion upon the Eyes. You may use Errhines, Neesings, Gargarisms, and Masticatories; but with this Caution, That you use Errhines and Neesings only when the Catarrh falls upon the Jaws, Lungs, and Stomach; but when it falls into the Eyes or Nose, use Masticatories and Gargarisms.

The forms of all these Medicines were set down in the Chapter aforegoing. But observe in the use of them, that when the matter is somwhat thin, you use not strong discussients and dissolvers, for by these you shall cause the humors to flow more violently upon the Breast, Lungs, or other parts; but you must mix some thickning things that may constrain the humor, as red Roses, Mastich, Coriander, Nutmeg, and other things which we shall declare more at large in the hot Catarrh. You may make an Errhine for this purpose as followeth:

Take of *Marjoram Water four ounces*: *the Juyce of Bettony one ounce*: *Nigella or Gith seeds poudered, half a dram*: *Nutmeg one scruple. For rich people you may ad two grains of Musk and Amber-greece.* Or,

Take of *Lignum vitæ one ounce*: *Spring Water one pint*: *Infuse it all night upon warm embers; then boyl it to the consumption of half, adding in the conclusion, sweet Marjoram, and red Rose leaves, of each two pugils.*

So when the matter is but thin, you may make a Masticatory, either of Mastich alone, or after this manner:

Take of *Nutmeg one dram*: *Mastich, and Gum Arabick, of each half a dram*: *Pouder them, with Rose water make Troches to chew.*

The best Neesing is made of black Hellebore, and Sugar, equal parts.

The Extract of Tobacco made in *Aqua vitæ*, and held under the tongue in the bigness of a Pease, brings forth abundance of Water; but if you take too much, or swallow it down, it will cause violent vomiting. We have shewed that Cauteries to the Arms, hinder part of the Head, and behind the Ears, are very good, as also to the nape of the Neck, and Shoulders, which are now adaies in great request. But there is a new place found out by some, namely, in the Neck, neer the Jugular veins, between the Muscles: And by this means two men have been cured of old Catarrhs which caused hoarsness.

Finally, After convenient Evacuations, things that strengthen the Brain and dry it, are to be used both internally and externally, as Opiates, Pouders, Bags, Fumes, described in the Cure of the cold distemper of the Head. But you must remember to put unto them some Conserve of Roses, Nutmeg, or white Frankinsence, when you cure a Catarrh.

The Decoction of Mastich Wood used as a Sudorifick, dries the Brain, and stops Defluxions. For which, the following things are good.

Take of *Coriander seed prepared half an ounce*; *Nutmeg and Frankinsence, of each three drams*; *Liquoris and Mastich, of each two drams*; *Cubebs one dram*; *Conserve of red Roses one ounce*; *white Sugar dissolved in Rose water ten ounces*: *Make a Confection in little rolls, weighing three drams. Let him take one morning and evening.*

These following Troches are much commended by *Solenander*, Cons. 10. Sect. 4. which he borrowed

which he borrowed from both the Ancient Greeks and Arabians.

Take of *the beſt Frankinſence and Juyce of Liquoris, of each one dram: Opium, Saffron, and Mirrh, of each one ſcruple: With Syrup of Poppies make Troches, or Pills to be taken now and then, two ſcruples, or half a dram at a time.*

Theſe Tablets following are very good:

Take of *Diambra, and Diamoſchi dulcis, of each one dram: white Amber one ſcruple: Oyl of Annis ſeeds, three drops: Sugar diſſolved in Lavender Water, four ounces: Make Tablets of two drams in weight; take one morning and evening.*

The Baſſom for the Head preſcribed in the Chapter for the cold diſtemper, after the Opiate is excellent taken inwardly, and into the noſtrils.

Lac Sulphuris, and the flower of Brimſtone are commended by Chymiſts for the Cure of a Catarrh: and the Galeniſts uſe it much in Tablets.

In a new Catarrh, Water of Nuts, with Hydromel, given three nights together doth much hinder it.

Shave the fore part of the head, and apply a Cataplaſm, of two ounces of Leaven, and two drams of Amber: But if the Patient will not permit his head to be ſhaved, let it be cut, and lay a bag of Chamepits or Groundpine, mixt with Amber.

Beſides the afore mentioned Fumes, one made of Tacamahaca is excellent; for it dries a Catarrh, and hinders his Motion; neither is the ſcent too ſtrong, but the Patient may ſhut it into his chamber without offence.

It is profitable to dry the Head with bags of Bran, Gromwel, and Salt, Leaves of Sage, Bettony, French Lavender, Annis ſeeds, Fennel ſeeds, and the like.

Laſtly, If the Diſeaſe be ſtubborn, all thoſe Medicines which are mentioned in the cold diſtemper of the head, are to be uſed.

A hot Catarrh is Cured by Medicines which diſcharge the matter offending, and which do thicken it, and revel it; as alſo by correcting the diſtemper of the parts, ſending and receiving it.

For this end, firſt let blood, if nothing hinder, by which the humor flowing is revelled, and the ſharpneſs abated.

Then carry away part of the humor by a gentle Purge, which may no waies ſtir violently the humors, as followeth:

Take of *the beſt Rhubarb, four ſcruples: Citrine Myrobalans rubbed with the Oyl of ſweet Almonds, half a dram: yellow Sanders half a ſcruple: Infuſe them in Lettice and Purſlain Water, and ſtrain it, adding of Manna and Syrup of Roſes Solutive, of each one ounce: Make a Potion.*

Or inſtead of the Waters afore mentioned, you may make a Decoction of cold Herbs, and Tamarinds; to which you may put your Purgatives.

Then you muſt alter and thicken the humor with convenient Juleps.

Take of *Lettuce, Purſlain, and Plantane, of each one handful: the four great cold Seeds, white Poppy ſeeds, of each two drams: Violets, Water-lillies, and red Poppies, of each one pugil; boyl them to a pint: Diſſolve in the ſtraining, the Syrup of Violets and dried Roſes, of each one ounce and an half. Make a Julep for three draughts, to be taken twice in a day.*

Or inſtead of this Decoction, uſe the diſtilled Waters of thoſe Herbs, or Emulſions of the four great cold Seeds.

After uſe a little ſtronger Purge, putting to the former, Senna, or Catholicon, or Diaprunes, or the like.

A light ſweet Medicine, thickening and ſweetening the humor, is made of the Yolks of two new laid Egs, diſſolved in five or ſix ounces of ſpring Water with one ounce of Sugar; heat them well, and ſtir them upon the fire, and take it as hot as you can morning and evening for three daies together.

And at laſt you muſt labor for a ſtronger reſtraning of the flux, and thickning of the humor with this Syrup.

Take of *Syrup of Violets and dried Roſes, of each one ounce: Syrup of Poppies half an ounce: Give an ounce at a time in a ſpoon at Bed time.*

The following Opiate is good for the ſame purpoſe.

Take of *old Conſerve of Roſes ſix drams: the ſpecies of Diatragaganth frigid. two drams: Bole-armenick waſht in Roſe water, two ſcruples: With the Syrup of dried Roſes make an Opiate. Take the quantity of a ſmal nut at night.*

This Barley Cream is very profitable.

Take of *cleanſed Barley as much as is ſufficient, ſteep it ſix hours, and then boyl it well, and ſtrain it; then take three ounces of blanched ſweet Almonds; Pompion ſeeds husked, one ounce and an half; Melone ſeeds one ounce; white Poppy and Lettice, of each half an ounce: Beat them together,*

gether, and with Barley Water take out the Milk, which with two pound of the Pulp of Barley boyl a little and mix it with Sugar: Let him drink ten ounces at a time, some mornings in his bed, and sleep after it, and sometimes in the evening. Hold the Troches in the mouth.

Take of *Gum Traganth, and Arabick, of each two drams: Bole-armenick, and Terra Sigillata* washed in Rose water, of each one dram: white Poppy seeds, and juyce of Liquoris, of each half a dram: Sugar Penids one ounce: With the Mucilage of Quince seeds, extracted with Rose water, make little Cakes to be held in the mouth day and night.

The Spirit of Sulphur and Vitriol, three or four drops given morning and evening in convenient Liquor, hath great force against all Catarrhs, especially against those which come from Inflamation of the Bowels: It may be given in drink in a smaller quantity, for it goes with the drink through all the veins, and hinders the motion of the humors.

The Crystal Mineral is for the same use given with Juleps and other Medicines.

When these do not avail, we must be constrained to use Narcoticks or Stupefactives: Among which Laudanum is the best, given to four or five grains at bed time; or one ounce or half an ounce of Syrup of Poppies: These do wonders being used in the beginning of the Disease. New Treacle given at night from a scruple to half a dram, hath the same force.

Benedictus Faventius useth the following Pills in a Salt Catarrh with good success.

Take of *the Juyce of Liquoris two drams: washt Aloes one dram*: Pilulæ de Cynoglosso, *half a dram: With Syrup of Violets make a Mass, of which take a scruple at bed time.*

The Troches of *Solenander* before mentioned, are excellent.

Diacodium album prescribed in the Cure of the Phrenzy is good for this.

In the mean while the matter flowing must be revelled by Clysters, Cupping Glasses, Frictions, and binding of the external parts, and chiefly by Vesicatories in the Neck, and finally with Issues in the hinder part of the Head and Arms, if the Catarrh be old.

But for the strengthening of the Head, and stopping of the fluxion, and consuming the remainder; Pouders, Bags, and Emplasters, are good.

Take of *white Amber, Sandarach, Mastich, Benjamin, Nutmeg, of each one ounce: Frankinsence, Grains of Kermes, and red Roses, of each half an ounce: all the Sanders, Mirtles, and Pomegranate flowers, of each two drams; make a Pouder. Use it to the Head at night, and comb it off in the morning.*

Take of *the Gum of Juniper two scruples: red Roses two pugils: Mirtles one dram: Mace and Nutmeg, of each one scruple: Frankinsence, and Peony seeds, and Poppy heads, of each two scruples: Cyprus nuts half a scruple: Pouder them, and take them up with red wool; and with a red cloth make a lining for a Cap to wear constantly.*

Take of *Mastick and Frankinsence, of each half a dram: Sandrach, red Coral, red Roses, Mirtles, Pomegranate flowers and Peels, of each one dram: Labdanum two drams: Wax and Oyl of Roses, as much as is sufficient. Make an Emplaster for the Coronal Suture.*

But because this Catarrh for the most part comes from a hot distemper of the Liver, therefore you must use Medicines to that.

Finally, This is most remarkable, which is also mentioned in the Cure of a cold Catarrh; That Excrements use to cause Catarrhs by flowing to the Head when their usual natural passages are stopped: And then a Catarrh is best cured by opening those passages with a gentle and constant purging in Broths, or the like.

CHAP. XVI.
Of the Head-ach.

THe word *Cephalalgia* is used generally for every pain of the Head: but more especially it signifieth a new Head-ach: But the word *Cephalæa* signifieth an old Head-ach; and *Hemicranea* signifieth that pain which only is in one side of the Head.

There are other differences of Head-aches: they are divided into Internal, and External; Pains by content, and by propriety: and of these, one is called a pricking pain; another a stretching, or extending pain; another a heavy; another a beating or shooting pain.

The internal pain of the head is in the Meninges or Membranes, that is very deep, and reacheth to the roots of the Eyes: But an external pain is in the Pericranium or Membrane without the Skull, and will not endure the roots of the hairs to be combed back, and is made greater by the least compression of the Head. This is the Doctrine of *Galen*, which he teacheth 3. *de loc. aff. cap.* 1. and *lib.* 2. *de comp. med. secundum loc. cap.* 3. saying very solidly, That the internal Head-ach is distinguished from the external by this peculiar sign, That in the internal the pain comes to the roots of the

the eyes, not in an external, and he gives this Reaſon, Becauſe the coats of the Eyes come from the *Meninges* of the Brain, whence it comes that the grief is conveighed to the Eyes. But *Fernelius* contradicts this Doctrine, *lib.* 5. *Pathologiæ cap.* 1. and affirmeth, that external pains do reach to the roots of the Eyes, becauſe the *Pericranium* or Skin of the Skul wherein thoſe pains are, doth reach to the cavity of the Eyes: to whom *Rondoletius* anſwers, *lib.* 1. *meth. med. cap.* 5. that the Cavity of the Eye doth not ſuffer with the Pericranium, although it reach to it, by reaſon that the pain of the Pericranium comes for the moſt part of external cold; for a cold part will eaſily ſuffer from the like quality. But that cold cannot reach to the hollow of the Eye, becauſe it is preſerved by the heat, blood, and ſpirits of the Eyes; but if at any time a headach cometh of external heat, or the like, the Skin of the head is only affected, not the Pericranium which lieth deep. But this Doctrine of *Rondeletius* doth not altogether take away all difficulty; for although all things which he alledgeth ſhould be granted, yet if a pain ariſe from a tumor gathered upon the Pericranium, or of ſome other cauſe that diſſolveth continuity, and divideth, there is no reaſon why the grief ſhould not reach to the hollow of the Eye. We can ſay this in defence of *Galen*, that this ſign was given by him for two Reaſons: Firſt, Becauſe the Membrane which reacheth to the hollow of the Eye from the Pericranium, is not ſo ſenſible, and therefore cannot ſuffer but obtuſely: but the coats of the Eyes which come from the *Meninges* are very ſenſible, and therefore have great pain: Moreover, that Membrane which cometh from the Pericranium doth not touch the Eye ſo inwardly and deeply towards the optick Nerves, as the coats which come from the *Meninges*, whence it is that the external pain cannot extend it ſelf to the roots of the Eyes as *Galen* ſaith.

A pain by propriety is conſtant and permanent, nor doth it follow the diſeaſe of other parts: But a pain by conſent or ſympathy, depends upon the infirmity of another part, ſo that as that encreaſeth or diminiſheth, the Headach encreaſeth or diminiſheth. Now this pain by ſympathy, is either by conſent from the whol Body, as in Feavers; or from ſome peculiar part as the Stomach, Liver, Spleen, or Mother.

But we may know what part is affected when a pain is communicated to the head by its proper ſigns.

A pricking pain comes from a ſharp chollerick humor or vapor which toucheth the Membranes of the Brain. A heavy pain comes from much thick, and cold matter, namely, flegm or melancholly compreſſing the ſenſible parts. An extending pain comes from wind or mild humors which work themſelves into the Membranes and diſtend them. A beating or pulſative pain, comes of thin chollerick blood or ſpirits abounding, by which the Arteries being ſtretched and ſwoln, do beat more vehemently, and ſhake the Membranes, and ſo ſtriking the adjoyning parts, cauſe in them a ſence of Pulſation, as *Galen* teacheth more at large, 2. *de loc. aff. c.* 3.

From what is ſaid, the chief cauſes of a Headach are ſufficiently declared, which in general are referred to the ſolution of continuity, as to the immediate cauſe: For whatſoever doth bring a manifeſt or hidden ſolution of continuity, is like to bring a headach.

The ſigns of the kinds of Head-ach, and of the cauſes that produce them, may be learned from what is ſaid, and therefore we come to the Prognoſticks.

An external headach is alwaies leſs dangerous and eaſier cured than an internal.

A Headach in a ſharp Feaver with thin and white urine is dangerous, for it ſignifies the chollerick matter is ſent into the Brain, whence there is fear of a Phrenzy.

A ſtrong pain of the Head ſuddenly ſeizing without evacuation following, or mitigation of the diſeaſe, is deadly: for it ſignifies the deſtruction of the animal faculty, which no more feeleth that object which cauſed the grief.

In a great Headach it is evil to have the outward parts cold; for by the vehemency of the pain there is a ſtrong attraction of heat to the part affected, which wil cauſe inflamation.

They that recover of a diſeaſe in the inferior parts, and have after a vehement Headach, if a manifeſt evacuation went not before, will have an impoſthume in their Brain, for it ſignifies a tranſlation of the matter which cauſed the diſeaſe into the Brain.

They who vomit green in a headach, and are deaf being awake, are ſuddenly very mad, 1. *Porrh.* for it ſignifieth a collection of choller into the Brain, which maketh the Stomach conſent therewith and ſuffer.

Headach and noiſe in the Ears without a Feaver, or a giddineſs, or deafneſs, or numbneſs of the hands, ſignifieth an Apoplexy or Epilepſie to be at hand, *Hipp.* in *Coacis*: For thoſe ſymptomes come from abundance of thick flegm in the Brain.

To women with child ſleepy and heavy headaches are evil, 1. *Porrh.* for they ſignifie the flux of humors to the head, which when they are many in women with child by reaſon they have not their courſes, do threaten danger.

A Headach which was not from the beginning of the Diſeaſe, but roſe from the diſturbance of the body, ſhews that there will be a criſis by bleeding at the noſe, or by vomit.

Since then the pain of the head cometh either of a cold or hot cauſe, we muſt direct the Cure for the taking away of both.

For the Cure of a cold Head-ach the flegmy matter is firſt to be evacuated being prepared, as is ſhewed in the Chapter afore going. Then we muſt correct the cold diſtemper of the Brain, and the reliques of the humor are to be diſcuſſed with Bags, mentioned in the former Chapter, or in the Chapter of the cold diſtemper of the Brain: With which being warmed, let the head, being ſhaven, be rubbed for an hour and an half every morning till the cauſe of the pain be ſpent and exhauſted.

After the head is well rubbed, ſprinkle upon it this following Pouder, having upon it Cotton or Wool.

Take of *Nutmegs, Cloves, Pepper, Pellitory, of each half an ounce: the Leaves of Sage, Bayberries, of each two drams: Muſtard ſeed, and Water-creſs ſeeds bruiſed, of each ſix drams: Make a pouder of theſe, ſprinkle it upon the Head as aforeſaid; and comb it in the morning before the uſe of the little Bags, that the pouder laid on the day before may be taken off.*

Errhines are alſo profitable, Neeſings, and Apophlegmatiſms or things to chew, which were deſcribed formerly.

A Magiſtral Syrup alſo made as followeth is very profitable.

Take of *Guajacum wood, and Roots of* China *ſliced, of each one ounce and an half: Infuſe them twelve hours in four pints of ſpring Water: Boyl them till half be conſumed, adding in the end, the Leaves of Vervain one handful; the flowers of French Lavender and Marjoram, of each a ſmal handful: diſſolve in it being ſtrained half a pound of white Sugar. Boyl it up to a Syrup; but before it be perfectly boyled caſt in two ounces of Senna tyed in a clout; the beſt Agrick two ounces; Rhubarb three ounces: let him take two or three ounces, once a week.*

Theſe Pills alſo following are very good which in times paſt were of great eſteem in *Italy* in the daies of *Euſtachius Rudius* chief Profeſſor in the Univerſity of *Padua*, who was reported to be the Inventor of them, and accounted them a great Secret; and therefore gave them to one Apothecary only to be made by him, leſt others ſhould know the Receipt which indeed he borrowed out of *Wickerus*, who propoundeth it from *Andernacus*: and it is thus:

Take of *Coloquintida ſix drams: Agarick trochiſcated, Diagridium, black Hellebore, and Turbith, of each half an ounce: Aloes one ounce*: Diarrhodon Abbatis *half an ounce: Let the purging things be bruiſed and beaten together, and put in a glaſs with the ſpirit of Wine, ſo much as is ſufficient, and let them be digeſted for eight daies in a warm place, and then ad the pouder of Diarrhodon, and infuſe them four daies longer, then ſtrain them and preſs them, and let the Liquor ſo preſſed forth be diſtilled in* Balneo, *ſo long till the extract in the bottom of the Alembick grow ſo thick that it may make Pills, the doſe whereof is one ſcruple.*

But the following Pills are aſcribed to *Fernelius*, of which he affirmed he found by experience ſuch excellency, that he never met with a *Cephalalgia*, or *Hemicrania*, that is, half Headach, but he cured it.

Take of *the beſt Aloes half an ounce: the Pouder of the Electuary of Pearls, the three Sanders, and red Roſes, of each three grains: With Syrup of Wormwood, and Violets, make a Maſs. Give a dram thereof twice in a week one hour or two before Supper.*

And finally, in a ſtubborn pain that is old, all thoſe Medicines are convenient, which were before mentioned in the Cure of the cold diſtemper of the Brain; among which, Epiſpaſticks, or bliſter-drawing Plaiſters are not the meaneſt. Which alſo not prevailing ſome are ſo bold as to apply *Vigo*'s Emplaiſter with Mercury, which they ſay hath cured old headaches ſometimes, by cauſing them to ſpit much.

Baths of Brimſtone and Bitumen are very efficacious in this caſe, uſed both to the Head, and the whol Body.

Alſo in an old Headach, ſweating Decoctions are very good, and famous Authors declare that many have been cured thereby,

Which not prevailing, *Mercatus* is bold to fly to the uſe of Stibium, and commends it highly in his firſt Book of the Cure of internal Diſeaſes, and the eighth Chapter. But in an old grief, it is better to ſtrengthen the head often, than to uſe too many Evacuations: Therefore Pouders and Caps, and other topick or external Medicines are very neceſſary before mentioned in the Cure of the cold Diſtemper of the Brain.

But Pouders are more commendible, becauſe the vertue of a Cap is not ſo much communicated to the Brain, and the pain may be encreaſed by the filth which is contracted by the long wearing of them.

Moreover, An Oyntment may be applied of the Oyl of Almonds, in which wild Bettony, Bay leaves, Maſtich, Lavender, Mints, Marjoram, Thyme, Penyroyal, Nutmeg, Cloves, and Cinnamon, or ſome of theſe have been boyled, adding in the time of the boyling a little red Wine.

Or this following Chymical Oyl.

Take

Take of *Turpentine one pound*: *Maſtich, Nutmeg, Cinnamon, of each one dram*: *Cloves, Zedoary, Galangal, Ladanum, of each one ounce and an half*: *the juyce of Ebulus or Dwarf-Elder, and of the wild Cocucumber, of each one dram*: *the Oyl of Chamomel and Lillies, of each half a pint*: *red Wine one pint and an half*: *wild Marjoram green one handful*: *Pouder thoſe that are to be poudered, and put them into a Glaſs Retort, and extract an Oyl*; *with which anoint the head after it is ſhaved.*

Oyl of Amber is very good, and it will be ſufficient only to anoint the Head therewith.

While you uſe the afore mentioned Remedies, you may alſo uſe from the beginning of the Cure ſpecifical Medicines, ſuch as this Epitheme.

Take of *the pouder of Zedoary one dram*: *the Water of Bettony, Vervain, and Elder, of each one ounce*: *Mix them and apply them hot to the part grieved with Scarlet cloth.*

Among the proper Medicines for the Head-ach, from what cauſe ſoever it ariſeth, Vervain is the chief; whoſe Water diſtilled, you may both apply externally, and give of it internally to the quantity of ounces, with three drops of the ſpirit of Salt. Green Vervain alone only hung about the Neck, hath cured two Patients when many other Medicines failed, as *Foreſtus* reports.

Zacutus Lucitanus in *Lib.* 1. *Praxis Med. mirab. obſervat.* 7. 8. 9. & 10. propounds four Remedies, confirmed by Experience; namely, An Iſſue in the back of the hand, Horſ-leeches to the Temples, opening of the Vein in the Forehead and the corner of the Eye, which you may read in the place cited.

Theſe things are to be noted concerning thoſe Obſervations:

Firſt, That the Iſſue between the Thumb and fore Finger is approved by other Experiments, and hath cured great Headaches.

Secondly, In the Cure by Horſ-leeches, *Zacutus* is not content to apply two or three as ordinarily is done, but ten or twelve round about the Temples; whence comes a great attraction of Blood, which may draw forth the whol matter of the Diſeaſe.

Thirdly, In the Curing by opening the Veins in the Forehead, we muſt obſerve, That that Vein was twice opened, whence it appears that the firſt was not ſufficient; when ordinarily our Practitioners do ſeldom open it the ſecond time, if the firſt hath been to little benefit.

The hot Cauſe of a Primary and Eſſential Headach, is Blood or Choller. And the like Remedies are proper for both, though they muſt be made ſtronger or weaker according to the ſtrength of the Diſeaſe.

Firſt then (after a Clyſter is adminiſtred) begin with Blood-letting, drawing forth more when the grief proceeds of blood, than when it proceeds of choller.

Then give a Medicine to purge Choller, not only when Choller is the Principal Cauſe, but when blood aboundeth whoſe thinner part is eaſily turned into Choller.

If the matter offending is not ſufficiently taken away by one purge, you muſt purge again at a due diſtance.

After apply Repelling Medicines to the Head, and Vinegar of Roſes, ſuch as were propounded in the Cure of the Phrenzy, making choice of the mildeſt.

And after it will be very profitable to apply Creatures newly killed, or parts of them, to diſcuſs the reliques of the Diſeaſe, and to aſſwage the pain.

In an Headach which goeth with a continual Feaver, a Sheeps Lungs applied hot do much aſſwage the pain.

Alſo a Cataplaſm of bruiſed Guords, and Houſleek to the feet.

The opening of the Saphena after ſufficient bleeding in the Arm, cures often times a Headach with a Feaver very ſuddenly.

You muſt uſe Cupping-glaſſes with, and without Scarification and Frictions of the extream Parts.

And in the whol time of the Diſeaſe, if the Belly be not looſe, you muſt every day give an Emollient and cooling Clyſter, and which do gently purge.

After general Evacuations and Revulſions, you may rightly, and with profit derive the matter by opening the Head Vein, or with Horſ-Leeches to the Forehead, or with Veſicatories to the Neck.

In the mean while let the whol maſs of Humors be qualified with Juleps, Emulſions, and Broths, as was mentioned in the Cure of the Phrenzy.

Laſtly, If the pain be very violent you muſt apply Narcoticks both externally and internally, as they are ſet down in the ſaid Cure of the Phrenzy.

Here alſo may avail the opening of the Forehead Veins, and Leeches to the Temples, commended from *Zacutus Luſitanus*.

Paræus lib. 16. *cap.* 4. reports that a deſperate half Headach was cured by opening the Arteries

in the Temples, and saies there is no danger in doing it. The Artery is opened as a Vein, and six ounces of blood forcibly leaping forth are to be taken: After apply a convenient Ligature, and open it not in four daies.

Botallus also saies, That it doth miraculously cure old Head-aches; and we also have cured desperate ones the same way, and never found any danger in the opening of the Artery.

You must apply a Plaister to the Orifice, of Frankinsence, Mastich, Bole armenick, and Hares Hair, with the white of an Eg, and then make your Ligature as you use to do in Wounds of the Head.

In all pains of the Head, of what cause soever, if other means fail, and the greatness of the pain, make thee run to extremities; a Vesicatory applied over all the Head, after it is shaven, will cure it.

A Cautery upon the Coronal Suture somtimes hath perfectly cured a violent Head-ach.

But it is more powerful if it be applied to the Temples, of which see *Poterius, observat. centur. 3. cap. 8.* and our Observations thereon.

The End of the first Book.

THE

THE SECOND BOOK OF THE PRACTICE OF PHYSICK.

Of the Diſeaſes of the Eyes.

The PREFACE.

THE *Diſeaſes of the Eyes are ſo divers, that it is very hard to lay them down cleerly and plainly, and ſo diſtinguiſh one from the other: which that we may endeavor as much as may be, and cleer up our Treatiſe for Practice, we will ſo divide them, the Diſeaſes by which the ſight is immediately hurt, may firſt be expounded, and afterwards the reſt which happen to the Parts of which the Eyes are Compounded, or which are neer unto them, without any, or very little hurt to the ſight. The ſight is hurt when it is diminiſhed, aboliſhed, or depraved. Sight aboliſhed is called* τυφλότης *in Greek: in Latine* Cæcitas. *But ſight dimiſhed hath divers Names according to the degree and manner of the diminution: of which the chief are* Amblyopia, Myopia, Nyctalopia, *and* Acies Veſpertina.

Cæcitas *blindneß, comes either from an abſotute Obſtruction of the Optick Nerves (and then it is called* Amaurosis*) or from a total Suffuſion, or from ſome great fauls in the Tunicles and Humors.*

Amblyopia, *in Latin* Obſcuritas, Hebetudo, *or* Caligo, *dark or dim ſight, when the Object is not cleerly ſeen at what diſtance ſoever placed; comes from the ſame Cauſes, but more light and imperfect, as an imperfect Obſtruction of the Optick Nerves, a light ſuffuſion, want of ſpirits or groſſneß of the ſame, and the like.*

Myopia, *in Latin* Luſcioſitas, *or Pur-blindneß in which the Objects are not perceived, except they be very nigh, and cloſe to the Eyes, but not at all a far off, or very little; and imperfectly: ſo that they perceive not their known Friends paſſing by: And according to the Opinion of* Galen, *and all Modern Phyſitians, from the thinneß and ſmalneß of the viſour ſpirits which ſtand not in need of a* medium, *much enlightned to make a perfect ſight, but is thereby diſſipated. On the contrary, they which have groß and thick ſpirits, ſee things beſt at a diſtance, becauſe that groß ſpirits needs more enlightning which is brought by the larger illumination of the* medium: *But this Doctrine is demonſtrated to be falſe, and to ſpring from ignorance in Opticks whoſe Principles declare, that theſe diverſities of ſight proceed from the diverſity of the ſcituation of the Cryſtalline humor. For when the ſpecies of the Objects are received into the Cryſtalline humor by a Pyramis or ſharp Point thereof called* Conus; *if the Cryſtalline humor be too much inward towards the pupil*

of

of the Eye, the remote Objects are better seen, because it is necessary that the Objects should be at a farther distance, that the Conus, *or point of the Pyramis may come to the Crystalline humor, and there be terminated: But if the Objects come neerer the Eye, the* Conus *goeth by the Crystalline, and they are seen more obscurely: Again, If the Crystalline lie too low and too far from the Tunicle called* Uuea, *the Objects must be neerer to the Eyes, that the* Conus *or point of the Pyramid may come to it: whence it appears that* Myopia *comes no other wayes then from the Crystalline lying too low; and so this Disease becometh connatural, and not to be cured. But the affect of* Myopia *is contrary in which the Object is better seen at a distance; and this happens for the most part in Old Men, in whom some of the portion of the watery Humor is spent, so that the Crystalline goes to the Pupil of the Eye: Farther, By long holding down of the Head either with Reading, Writing, or otherwise, the Crystalline Humor comes by degrees forward: This is demonstrated by the use of Spectacles; because that they who have* Myopia, *or are Pur-blind, see best with hollow or concave spectacles, by which the rayes or beams of the visible species are dispersed, whereby it comes to pass, that the* Conus *of the Pyramis is more long, and so that thing which by reason of the great distance could not be seen, is now plainly perceived; because the* Conus *of the Pyramis is extended as far as the Crystalline, which before ended in the Pupilla, or in the watery Humor, or in the white Humor: On the contrary, Old Men are helped with Convex Spectacles, by which the beams are united, and the* Conus *of the Pyramis is made shorter, and so things are better perceived whose* Conus *before passed by the Crystalline, which was too neer to the Pupilla.*

Nyctalopia, *or* Nocturna Cæcitas, *is when men see well enough at day time; at Sun-set worse; and at Night not at all: and it comes from the over thickness of the Spirits, or Humors, or Tunicles; or the straightness of the Pupilla. For in these Cases a greater light is necessary for true sight, which being wanting, at Sun-setting, or at Night by a Candle, they see little, or not at all.*

Vespertina Acies, *is when men see worse by day, and better by night; and this sometimes is called* Nyctalopia, *as we see in* Hippocrates, 2. Prorrhet. *but the Modern Greeks have from long Custom used the word* Nyctalopia *only for Night blindness: it comes from the thinness of the Spirits which are spread abroad by too much light: or from the enlarging of the* Pupilla, *by which too much light goes into the Eye, and hurts the sight, for a little light at night doth more illustrate and shine to them, than to those who have the* Pupilla *enlarged.*

After what manner the sight is hurt by diminishing, abolishing, and depraving, we shall lay down more plain when we explain the Diseases of all parts of the Eyes by themselves. For when all the parts of the Eye do conduce to the action of it, namely Sight, when any part is distempered, the sight must also suffer.

The Eye is compounded of Tunicles, Humors, and the Optick Nerve, for the action of which parts, the Animal Spirit doth concur as a principal and universal Agent.

And therefore that we may run through the Diseases of those parts, we will begin from the distemper of the constitution of the optick Nerve; next we will proceed to the Disease of the Humors and Tunicles. But the faults of the Spirits either depend upon the distemper of the Brain, and then other Sences are also hurt; or from the distemper of the Eye it self, which being cured the spirits receive their ancient and due constitution, so that we need not make a particular tractate of them. But in curing Diseases of the Eyes, when sight is hurt, we must alwaies mingle those things which comfort the visive spirits with other Medicines.

CHAP. I.

Of Gutta Serena, *or* Amaurosis,

When the sight is gone, and no fault appears in the Eyes, it is called *Gutta serena*, or *Amaurosis*. And it comes to pass, when the Animal Spirits cannot pass from the Brain to the Eyes; for when the Animal Spirits come into the Eyes from the Brain by the Optick Nerves, we must find out the stoppage of their influx in the Optick Nerves. The Optick Nerves are many waies affected, but chiefly by obstruction or stoppage, attriction or binding, and by solution of continuity.

Obstruction is the most common and most ordinary cause of *Gutta serena*, which comes of a watery humor flowing down from the Brain upon the Nerves, even as other Nerves are obstructed in a Palsey by the same humor; so that the Diseases may be said to be alike by reason of that Obstruction.

But

But it is moſt certain that this Diſeaſe is alſo begot by adſtriction and compreſſion of the Optick Nerves; which compreſſion may come both of a moiſt humor gathered about the optick Nerves, and preſſing upon them: as alſo of blood, filch, or matter: Whence ſomtimes certain tumors riſing in thoſe parts, produce the like Diſeaſe. For Experience teacheth, That ſomtimes blindneſs in one Eye, ſomtimes in both, comes upon inflamation of the Brain, and from Phrenzy in malignant Feavers. And *Platerus* reports *lib.* 1. Obſervation, That he ſaw a blindneſs which came from a round tumor growing in the Brain, and compreſſing the optick Nerves, which appeared by opening of the Head after the Patient was deceaſed.

Finally, Wounds in the Head, in which the Optick Nerves are divided, without controverſie do cauſe that the Animal Spirits can no more come to the Eyes.

This Diſeaſe is known, in that the Eyes ſeem to be in their natural condition, and there is no fault apparent in them, only the *Pupilla* ſeems blacker and larger. But in diſtinguiſhing the differences of Cauſes, there is great difficulty; for although the Diſeaſe coming of blood or matter is known by inflamation, apoſthume, or wound going before, yet no certain ſign can be given by which we can diſtinguiſh a compreſſion made with flegm from an obſtruction: but we may in ſome part conjecture, for in the obſtruction only of the optick Nerve, the Eye is only affected; but if a compreſſion be made of the ſame Nerve by flegm gathered about the roots of the Eyes and Mamillar Paſſages, that matter poſſeſſeth other parts of the Brain, and then all or ſome of the other Senſes are hurt; but if it ſeize only upon the Optick Nerves, there is more plenty of humor ſent forth at the Noſtrils, and the Patient perceives a heavineſs in the fore part of the Head, eſpecially about the Eye-brows.

As to the Prognoſtick part; If this Diſeaſe be abſolute, that is, if there be a total loſs of ſight, eſpecially if it come from obſtruction of the optick Nerves, it is for the moſt part incurable; as we ſee in Palſeys alſo, that they are ſcarce or never cured which come from the obſtruction of the Nerves, eſpecially if the Patient be old. But if the obſtruction be imperfect, which only cauſeth a diminution of ſight, but not blindneſs, there is more hope of recovery, although it cannot be brought about without much pains, and long uſe of Medicines.

But if this Diſeaſe come of humors gathered in the fore part of the head, which compreſs the Nerves, it may be more eaſily cured. So ſaith *Fabricius Hildanus*, *obſerv.* 19. *cent.* 5. That a certain man after a ſtrong vomit loſt his ſight, and that he cured him with giving him the ſame Medicine again; for as the humors being too much ſtirred by a violent vomit, and caſt upon the Optick Nerves, compreſſing them, did hinder the paſſage of the Spirits to the Eyes: ſo the ſame humors being carried away by the ſame Medicine, the diſeaſe became cured. Almoſt the like ſtory is mentioned by *Sennertus* of a certain Student, who taking too ſtrong a Purge became ſuddenly blind. He alſo affirmeth, That certain women after they had conceived with child, became blind through the ſtraightneſs of the optick Nerves, and that this Diſeaſe went away after four or five months, or in the time of their Delivery.

We alſo have ſeen ſome which fell ſuddenly into extream diminution of ſight, who within fifteen daies, were cured by univerſal Evacuations, and ſome revulſions, and by the eaſineſs of the Cure we ſuppoſed that the humor was not faſtened within the ſubſtance of the nerve, but only gathered together in the Brain about the original of thoſe Nerves.

For the Cure of this Diſeaſe, The matter faſtened upon the Nerves, or cleaving thereto, and maketh the obſtruction or adſtriction, is to be evacuated; which cannot be done, except firſt the whol body be cleanſed, as *Galen* ſaith 4. *meth.* The Eye is not to be cured before the whol Head, nor the Head before the whol Body.

And that Remedies may be ſet down in a convenient Method, we will firſt ſet down a Courſe of Diet, which muſt be attenuating and moderately drying.

And firſt, The Air muſt incline to hot and dry, and a thick, cold, cloudy, and moiſt Air, muſt be altogether avoided. Let him eat meats of good and laudable Juyce, avoiding them which beget groſs Juyce, as Pork, and all Swines fleſh, Geeſe, Fiſh, Pulſe, Cheeſe, and the like; as thoſe which are windy, and fill the head, as Milk-meats, and hot Spices, *viz.* Pepper and Ginger, &c. Let his Bread be made with Fennel Water, or with the Seeds thereof; being careful that the Wheat of which it is made, be not mixt with Darnel, which all the Ancients beleeved to be very naught for the Sight: hence in the Comedy, he that derideth another for defect in his ſight; I think (ſaith he) thou haſt fed upon Darnel. In the ſawce to his Meat, and in his Broths, let him uſe things extenuating, as Hyſop, Fennel, Marjoram, Bettony, Sage, Eye-bright, and eſpecially Nutmeg, which ſtrengtheneth the Brain, and clears the Sight. He muſt eat Turneps often, which are thought to quicken the Sight: So do Sparrows, Pidgeons, often eaten. Cold Herbs muſt be forborn, and eſpecially Lettice, which hurts the Eyes.

Let him take but a ſmal quantity of Meat at a time, and let the ſick man never fill himſelf immoderately: Let his Supper be leſs than his Dinner: and to abſtain from a Supper twice or thrice in a week is very good. At his Meat, inſtead of Salt let him uſe this Pouder following:

Take

Take of *common Salt two ounces*: *Eyebright dried two drams*: *Nutmeg one dram*: *Cinnamon two ſcruples*: *Mix them into a Pouder.*

After every Meal, let him take one ſpoonful of the Pouder following:

Take of *Coriander ſeed prepared half an ounce*: *Annis ſeeds, and Fennel ſeeds, of each two drams*: *Cinnamon and Nutmeg, of each one dram*: *Eyebright dried three drams*: *Sugar of Roſes, a double weight to all the reſt. Make a Pouder.*

Wine in this Diſeaſe is not good, becauſe it is too full of vapors, and fills the Head, and is apt to cauſe deſluxions: therefore a Deoction of Sarſaparilla, ſweetened with Liquoris, and aromatized with Coriander, will be very profitable. But becauſe the Diſeaſe is of a long continuance, and all cannot abſtain ſo long from Wine; if we muſt permit Wine, let that be choſen that is weakeſt, and leſs vaporing; and it would be more beneficial if Eye-bright dried were firſt ſteeped therein: and that he may make Eyebright Wine for a long time, in the Vintage let him put Eyebright into a veſſel filled with new Wine, and let the Patient uſe that for his ordinary Drink.

Let his ſleep be leſs and ſhorter than uſual, and let him lie upon his back with his face upwards as much as may be: Let him avoid ſleeping at noon, becauſe it is very hurtful. Let his Exercite be moderate, and inſtead of exercite let him uſe frictions or rubbing of the inferior parts. Let his Belly be alwaies kept looſe, and let him avoid diſturbance of mind.

The courſe of Diet being thus ordered, you muſt begin your Cure from Univerſal Evacuation And firſt you muſt purge with the following Medicine:

Take of *clean Senna half an ounce*: *Fennel ſeeds one dram*: *the Leaves of Bettony, Eyebright and Vervain, of each half a handful*: *Liquoris three drams*: *Boyl them to three ounces. Diſſolve in the ſtraining three drams of Diaphanicon*; *Syrup of Roſes one ounce. Make a Potion and give it in the morning with orderly Government.*

After this firſt Purge, let the Phyſitian conſider ſeriouſly with himſelf, whether he may bleed or not. For it is diſallowed in this cate by almoſt all Practitioners, becauſe it is a Chronical Diſeaſe of long continuance, coming of a cold diſtemper and of a flegmy humor. Hence they fear leaſt by blood-letting, the Brain ſhould be made more cold, and ſo beget more flegm, and leaſt the conjunct cauſe of the Diſeaſe ſhould be more increſſated or thickened, and ſo become more difficult to be diſcuſſed and diſſipated. But although their Opinion may take place as to old men, and ſuch as are of a Phlegmatick Conſtitution, yet it is not to be admitted to them that are yong, or of a hot Conſtitution, eſpecially if there be manifeſt ſigns that blood doth predominate; for then there is no doubt but ſeaſonable blood-letting may much profit. Nay, where the aforeſaid ſigns of blood do appear, it is profitable in the judgment of *Paulus* and *Ætius* after the Vein in the Arm is opened, to open the particular Veins of the Head, and thoſe which are neereſt the Eyes, namely, the Frontal and Temple Veins, and thoſe which are in the corners of the Eyes neer the root of the Noſe. But you may better apply Horſ-leeches to the Forehead, as alſo behind the Ears. Some Practitioners do relate, that ſome by a wound in the Forehead have been cured of blindneſs. In which it is moſt probable that the cauſe of their blindneſs was the compreſſion of the optick Nerves by the Veins and Arteries adjoyning, and ſwelling with too much blood, which the Wounds aforeſaid emptied forth. Whence *Spigelius* (as *Plempius* reports in his Book of the Eyes) was wont in *Gutta ſerena* with good ſucceſs to open the middle Vein in the Forehead, and let it bleed while it ſtop of it ſelf.

But if the ſuppreſſion of the terms went before this Diſeaſe, you muſt draw blood from the lower veins, or apply Leeches to the Hemorrhoids: if the Patient had formerly a flux thereof, which then is ſtopped, or if he have a very hot Liver, or be of a melancholly temper.

Afterwards the whole body is to be more exactly purged by this following Apozeme.

Take of *Fennel Roots, and Sarſaparilla, and Flower-de-luce-roots, and Elicampane roots, of each one ounce*: *the Leaves of Bettony, Marjoram, Balm, Eyebright, Fennel, Vervain and Celendine the great, of each one handful*: *Liquoris ſliced, and Raiſons of the Sun ſtoned, of each one ounce*: *Annis-ſeed, and Fennel-ſeed of each three drams*: *clenſed Senna two ounces*: *Gummy Turbith and Agerick newly made into Troches, of each two drams*: *Ginger and Cloves of each one ſcruple*: *flowers of Stœchas, Roſemary, and Lavender, of each one ſmall handful*: *Boyl them in five quarters*; *that is a pint and a quarter of water*; *diſſolve in the ſtraigning four ounces of white ſugar*: *make an Apozeme, clarifie it and perfume it with two drams of the beſt cinnamon, for four mornings draughts*: *After the Apozeme is done, let him take theſe Pills.*

Take of *the maſs of Pill, Lucis major, and Cochia the leſs, of each half a dram*: *malax them with Bettony water, make ſix guilded Pills thereof, which let him take early in the morning.*

After this general Evacuation the antecedent Cauſe is to be revelled; and the conjunct Cauſe is to be derived and diſcuſſed. For this Frictions of the extream parts, eſpecially beneath, are to be uſed every morning.

Cupping-Glaſſes muſt be applied to the ſhoulders and back without ſcarification; eſpecially to the

the hinder part of the Head with ſcarification; for they do ſo powerfully draw the humors from the fore-parts and the principle of the Nerves, that ſome preſently after the application thereof have recovered their ſight: At the ſame time apply a Veſicatory to the hinder part of the neck, and let the Blyſters that are raiſed be kept long open, with Beet or Colewort Leaves often applied.

When the Veſicatory is dried up, apply a Cauſtick to the hinder part of the head or neck between the ſecond or third Vertebra; or (as it is now moſt uſual) apply two Cauſticks to the Neck behind upon the fourth and fifth Vertebra; ſo that the back bone may lie untouched between them, and both may be Cured with one Playſter.

Inſtead of Cauteries a Seton applied to the ſame part is moſt efficacious; but the tenderneſs of our Country men hath almoſt aboliſhed the uſe thereof.

If the aforeſaid Cauteries avail not, you may lay a potential Cautery to the Coronal Suture, which ſometimes hath done the work when other Remedies have failed.

When theſe things are doing, preſently after univerſal Evacuation by ſeege, you muſt order a ſweating Diet of the Decoction of Guajacum Saſſaphras, and the Roots of Sarſa, according to the method preſcribed by us in the Cure of the Cold diſtemper of the Brain. Obſerving this; That towards the end of the Sudorifick Decoction, you ad thoſe things which peculiarly reſpect the Eyes; as Vervain, Fennel, Eyebright, and Celondine the greater.

And for the better drying of the Brain; let the Bags preſcribed in the Chapter above mentioned be applied to the Temples if you fear not an inflamation.

Alſo after the Sudorifick Diet it is very convenient to uſe Sulpherous and Bituminous Baths and waſhings of the head; becauſe they are very proper for the correcting of a Cold and Moiſt Diſtemper, for the conſuming of Flegm, and ſtrengthening the brain.

Beſides the univerſal Evacuation of the Body and Head, particular may be ordered; as Medicines that cauſe ſpitting; called Apophlegmatiſm; by which the Rhewm is brought out of the Brain by the Pallate; which may be made either in the form of a Gargariſm or Maſticatory; according to the forms preſcribed in the Cure of the cold diſtemper of the brain.

Errhins and Sternutatories or Neeſings are condemned by almoſt al Practitioners in this Diſeaſe; becauſe they draw humors to the eyes: but yet if ſome of the milder and gentler ſort be uſed (after an exact purging of the whole body and head) for ſome few dayes they may be profitable in regard they may by degrees draw forth and derive the humor which cauſeth the Diſeaſe, and is faſtned in the Optick Nerves; nor can they fetch any thing from the profound part of the brain to the fore-parts: Otherwiſe in every derivation which is an evacuation by the part affected, or that which is neer unto it; we ſhould alwayes fear leſt there ſhould be an attraction to the part affected, which is eaſily hindered by univerſal Evacuations which ought to precede; and thoſe Errhins may be made of the juyce of Beets and Marjoram with white Wine in which Manna hath been diſſolved.

But a ſtronger and yet ſafe Errhine may be made of the powder of Tobacco corrected with Cephalicks, and Oxydorcicks; or Medicines that help the ſight; for by that the Rhewm is drawn forth rather by the Palate than the Noſtrils; and the brain is ſo fortified, that it wil not ſo eaſily receive the defluxion of humors from other parts. The Compoſition whereof is as followeth.

Take of *dryed Tobacco one ounce: the leaves of Sage, Marjoram, Bettony, Eyebright, the Flowers of Clove-gilli-flowers, and Red Roſes, of each one dram: make a pouder to be ſnuffed into the Noſtrils for ſome few dayes.*

Neither is it ſufficient once to cleanſe the Body of Excrementitious Humors with univerſal Purging; but you muſt keep it in that condition all the time of the Cure; therefore with Purges intermixed, the Excrements which daily encreaſe muſt be brought forth; which may be done with uſual Pills made after this manner;

Take of *the beſt Aloes half an ounce: clean Senna, Turbith, Hermodactls, and Agarick newly trochiſcated, of each two drams: Diagridium, one dram: Mace, Cloves, and Eaſtern-Saffron, of each ſeven grains: ſprinkle them with the juyces of Marjoram and the greater Celondine: then dry them again in the ſhade. And with the Oxymel of Squills make a maſs of Pills of which let him take half a dram or two ſcruples twice or thrice in a month.*

While theſe things are uſed, you muſt continually labor to ſtrengthen the brain and the eyes: and the Patient muſt take diverſity of Medicines, leſt by taking the ſame a long time, it prove Nauſeous unto him; and leſt Nature be too much enured to a Medicine, and ſo it looſe its Operation. Old Phyſitians ſay, Treacle is reputed to be of excellent vertue to this purpoſe, which may be taken by a dram every night with Fennel, Eyebright, or Celondine water twice or thrice in a week. Nutmeg eaten every morning faſting, is much commended if it be long chewed that the vapor may be carried to the Eyes; if you fear that the ſwallowing down thereof ſhould offend by reaſon of the heat: it may be ſpit forth after it is chewed. Candid Myrabolans taken in the morning are thought to cleer the ſight exceedingly.

The uſual Opiate is thus made:

Take of *Conserve of Bettony, and Rosemary flowers, of each two ounces: Candied Myrobalans two: old Treacle two drams: the Leaves of Eyebright poudered, three drams: Fennel seed two drams: Nutmeg, Cinnamon, and Cloves, of each one scruple: With the Syrup of the Juyce of Fennel, Rue, and Celondine made up with Honey, make an Opiate.*

Let him take thereof the bigness of a Chesnut, drinking after it a little Wine mixed with Fennel Water.

Nor must you omit external Medicines which strengthen, warm, and dry the Head; of which sort is the Cephalick Pouder for the Hair, a Cap and Fumigation, mentioned by us in the Cure of the cold distemper of the Brain.

Finally, You may apply Topical Medicines to the Eyes to strengthen them: these are usual in Authors; but they are of little force which cannot reach to the optick Nerves; but if any desire to try some of them, they may find enough of them in my Treatise of the Cure of a Suffusion.

In a desperate case when all other Medicines have been used in vain, a Vesicatory applied over the whol Head (being shaven) in form of a Cap, hath many times been very successful: if it be twice or thrice used after the drying up of the former Blisters, it is more advantagious.

CHAP. II.

Of the Disease of the Vitrous, or Glassy Humor.

The Vitrous Humor is next under the Crystalline, and therefore it is made by Nature transparent, that the Species carried to the optick Nerve may be pure and clean. If therefore the cleerness of that humor be hindered by the mixture of another, and so made dusky; according to the degree of that duskiness or foulness, the sight is either diminished or abolished.

Moreover, This humor may be out of order in respect of its scituation; namely, when any part of it by a blow or contusion shall be brought before the Crystalline; for then the sight will be darkened, in regard the vitrous Humor is more thick than the watery, and therefore the species of the objects cannot be carried pure and cleer unto the Crystalline.

The first affect, namely the Mixion of a Humor with it, cannot be perceived by any signs, but only it is judged probable by reason, for the vitrous Humor cannot be seen, or its condition known; and therefore Practitioners are constrained to confound it, and to make it one with *Gutta serena*, because no fault appears in the Eye, and this they do without offence to the Patient, in regard any humors that are mixed with the vitrous, are to be discussed with the same Remedies that a *Gutta serena* is cured.

But you may know that this vitrous humor is disordered in respect of its Scituation, when it appeareth white under the *Pupilla*, yet it is not easily distinguished from Suffusion, except the antecedent and first cause be diligently observed. For a Suffusion is caused by a simple defluxion of an humor; but this transposition or displacing of the vitrous humor useth to come of a Wound or Contusion.

This last Disease is incurable, for the vitrous humor being displaced can by no art be reduced to its former condition. But this by Nature hath sometimes been done, and therefore the whol business is to be committed unto her.

CHAP. III.

Of the Diseases in the Crystalline Humor.

The Crystalline Humor is the chief instrument of Sight, and therefore ought to be kept more pure and perspicuous than the rest, that that Sence may more freely be exercised. And if it be soiled in the least measure, the sence of Seeing is much hindered.

The chief Disease whereby the purity thereof is infected, is called *Glaucoma* (or the changing of the Crystalline Humor into a fiery redness) and this happens when the Crystalline Humor is made thick by dryness, as in old people, from some drying and condensing cause it is often seen.

This Disease is known, by a plain appearance of a thick white about the *Pupilla*, and when all objects are apprehended by the Patient as through a cloud or smoak. But it is hard to distinguish this Disease from a Suffusion which representeth such a whiteness about the *Pupilla*: hence it is that many Authors do not distinguish between a *Glaucoma* and a Suffusion. But they which diligently observe may distinguish them thus: In a Suffusion there is a white in the very Pupilla, and very neer the Membrane called *Cornea*; but in a *Glaucoma* it lieth deeper.

This

This Diſeaſe is incurable; eſpecially in old folk in whom the drineſs of the part cannot be amended; but if it be not manifeſt that the fault is in the Cryſtalline, and there is a ſuſpition of a ſuffuſion; you may uſe the remedies preſcribed for it.

Moreover, the Cryſtalline may be out of place, namely when the broader part of it which is flat like a Fetch or Lentil is not directly againſt the hole of the *Pupilla*, but either is too high or too low, and then objects appear double when one Eye only ſuffereth; becauſe the parralel or ſtreight line is loſt which ought to be one and the ſame in both Eyes, that whatſoever thing is ſeen by both Eyes may appear but one and the ſame. And if they be not in that order, things are ſeen double; which you may prove by depreſſing or lifting up one of your Eyes with your finger: for then the parallel is loſt, and things appear double: But this Depravation of ſight by which Objects appear double, comes not only of the Cauſe now mentioned, but alſo from vapors, or water which hurt the Cryſtalline; by which the viſive Spirits are divided, whence it comes to paſs that the ſpecies of the ſame thing is received into two places, which Drunkards uſually perceive when they ſee double.

Secondly, The ſcituation of the Cryſtalline is altered, when it declineth backward or cometh forward, if it comes forward to the Pupilla, then things neer at hand are not ſo rightly perceived as thoſe which are more remote, as in old men often. But if it decline backward towards the Optick Nerve, things neer are truly ſeen, but not afar off, and then is the Diſeaſe called *Myopia*, which was mentioned in the Preface; where we ſhewed, That theſe Diſeaſes are only Cured by Spectacles.

Thirdly, The Cryſtalline is out of its place when it tendeth either to the right or left ſide, which is called *Strabiſmus*, or Squinting; when the *Pupilla* is not directly but oblique upon the Object, and appeareth not in the middle of the Eye, but in one ſide: ſo that there appeareth more white in one part of the Eye, than in the other.

This Diſeaſe comes not only from the diſplacing of the Cryſtalline, but alſo from the Evil Diſpoſition of the Muſcles which move the Eyes: which is either natural, or elſe proceeds from a Palſey or Convulſion of the ſaid Muſcles.

Of what Cauſe ſoever it cometh, if it be connatural, it is incurable: but, if it come from Palſey or Convulſion of the aforelaid Muſcles, you may find out a way of Cure, in my Treatiſe of head Diſeaſes.

Finally, Other Depravations of ſight may come from the inverſion of the Cryſtalline be it greater or leſs; as when ſtreight things appear crooked, or when the Objects ſeem to be foulded: which happened to a certain Phyſitian (as *Sennertus* reports) who going up a Ladder to take a Book from a ſhelf, and turning his Eyes violently upwards, ſaw al things afterwards turned upwards as though men walked upon their Heads, which came by the attraction and diſplacing of the Cryſtalline. For a quarter of a yeer after when again he turned up his Eyes violently, his natural ſight returned, and al things appeared in right order.

Hence it appears that by a violent motion of the Eye that the Cryſtalline may be diſplaced, and again by the ſame motion be ſet right. I ſuppoſe that the diſplacing of the Cryſtalline was thus, It was ſo inverted that the fore-part of it (which is more depreſſed than the other) was not right againſt the *Pupilla*; but rather its ſide which being more round and convex might repreſent the ſpecies of the Objects inverted, as we may obſerve in round Glaſſes, which diſcover the Object inverted; and this is true from the principles of the Optick art: for in a Medium that is Convex and thick, the ſpecies are ſo broken, and as it were croſs-cut, That they which come from the upper part of the Object, do repreſent the lower part; and ſo contrarily, but if the inverſion of the Cryſtalline be leſs, ſo as both the depreſſed part of the Cryſtalline and alſo the Convex part thereof, be right againſt the *Pupilla*, the Objects may ſeem crooked. Although that Depravation of ſight whereby Objects ſeem crooked, may come by other means: namely when any part of the Cryſtalline is mixed with the watery humor then by reaſon of inequality of the Cryſtalline in regard of thickneſs, the refractions are divers, which are the Cauſe of Depravation of ſight whereby things appear crooked. This may be demonſtrated by a clear Example: A ſtaffe put half into the water, appears crooked for this Cauſe, namely, The ſpecies of that part in the water, when it is carried out of the water into the air, from a thicker to a thinner Medium, is broken by the perpendicular; but that part which is in the air is not broken, becauſe it doth not paſs through divers Mediums as that which is in the water: Hence it comes that the ſtick ſeems crooked. After the ſame manner the ſpecies of the object which is carried into the thicker part of the Cryſtalline is more broken, than that which is carried to the thinner, which is in its natural ſtate, and not mixed underneath with the watery humor; and ſo by reaſon of the divers refractions the objects appear crooked.

But ſince Medicines are to no purpoſe, we ſhal preſcribe none for theſe Diſeaſes.

CHAP. IV.

Of the Diseases of the Watery Humor, and especially of a Suffusion.

THe Watery Humor is out of its Natural Condition, when it is distempered in quantity or quality. When the Distemper is in quantity; it is enlarged or diminished, and makes the *Pupilla* be dilated or contracted, which Diseases shall be mentioned in their places. When the distemper is in quality, it becomes thicker, and that comes from another Humor mixed with it, and that is called Suffusion, which we here speak of. For although *Galen* 1. *de Symp. caus. cap.* 2. sheweth that a Suffusion may come from the condensation of the watery humor without the access of an excrementitious Humor: yet because it happens seldom, and is known rather by imagination than art, and is altogether incurable: omitting that, we shall speak of that Suffusion only which cometh from the afflux of another excrement or humor. This is called in Greek ὑπόχυμα, in Latin *Suffusio*, by the Arabians, Water, vulgarly a *Cataract*. Some Authors would distinguish these names, and make them signifie divers sorts of this Disease: They call it in the beginning (when the sight is only a little darkened) a Suffusion; but when it is grown older, and something gathered into the Pupil appears like water, then they call it only *Aqua*, Water: but when the matter is grown thick in the Pupilla, and the sight almost gone, then they call it a Cataract. A Suffusion comes from a serous Watery Humor spread in the space between the Cornea and the Crystalline: and since a Watery Humor is contained in that space, it may well be reckoned among the Diseases of the Watery Humor.

This is the Cause of a true Suffusion: There is another Bastard Suffusion which comes from vapors sent from the Stomach and other parts into the Eyes. *Galen* 4. *de loc. aff. cap.* 2. taught that vapors may be sent from the Head to the Eyes, and make a bastard Suffusion; but although Authors speak of two sorts of Suffusions, yet they are for the most part united, and a spurious or false pleurisie is complicated or joyned with a true one; because vapors sent from the lower parts to the Brain, are easily carried to those parts of the Head which are weakened with any Disease, and this appears in that all troubled with Suffusions are less troubled, and see better in the morning than at noon or night, because after dinner or supper many vapors are sent up from the Stomach to the Eyes which disturb the sight. And Experience teacheth, That men so diseased have their sight more dull and dark presently after meat, than a few hours after. Moreover, all that have a Suffusion relate that they see in the Air little bodies, as Gnats, Flyes, Hairs, Cobwebs, and the like; which could not be but by the gross vapors which are sent to the Eye, and there move: for although Authors suppose that these representations depend upon some thick Humors contained in the Eye, which make a Suffusion: yet this is not credible, Because then it should alwaies move in the Eye, to represent those little Bodies which fly in the ayr, which is contrary to reason. But rather without question, the vapors are in perpetual motion, and so can represent those flying fancies.

A Watery Humor is the chief and most ordinary cause of a Suffusion, yet other Humors at least in a final quantity may be mixed therewith: and if Choller be mixed, then it is citrine or yellowish; if Melancholly, then it is a black Suffusion.

And those Humors use to flow to the Eyes when they are weak, either Naturally, or by Accident.

From a Natural debility comes a thrusting forth of the Eyes, for they who have such Eyes, are very subject to a Suffusion; for such Eyes use to be great, and therefore the vertue spread abroad is less in them: as also by reason of their largeness they do more easily receive humors and vapors. External causes make an accidental or adventitious debility, as a stroak, contusion, baths, a Southern and rainy habitation or season, heat of the Sun, smoak, continual reading, especially by candle light, and the like: All which may also cause a flux of humors to the Eyes.

Now the Humors flow from the Brain to the Eyes by the Veins, by the Tunicle called *Uvea*, and by the Optick Nerve. The Veins by which they flow are divers: either those which come from the *Pericranium* to the *Conjunctiva*, thence to the *Cornea* and *Uvea*: or those which come from the *Meninges*, from which some branches come to the Membranes of the Eye, from which Membranes, especially from the *Uvea*, the excrementitious humors may easily fall into the watery humor being so neer.

Finally, Humors may easily be carried by the Optick from the Brain; by the *Tunica Retiformis* and *Aranea*, to the Crystalline; and then the matter of the Suffusion sticks upon the superficies of the Crystalline. Although a Suffusion for the most part comes by a defluxion, yet sometimes

it

it may come by congeſtion or gathering, when that nouriſhment of the Eye is not well changed, and the expulſive Faculty is ſo weak that it cannot expel ſufficiently the remaining excrements, ſo that they are by degrees gathered together about the *Pupilla*, and ſo make a Suffuſion, in which caſe other humors are ordinarily diſturbed, and difficult diſeaſes are produced.

The Differences of a Suffuſion are taken from the thickneſs and quantity of the humor cauſing it, and from the place in which the humor reſideth.

In regard of thickneſs more or leſs, the ſight is more or leſs offended, for if the humor be thin and ſerous, of which the Suffuſion is made, which is cured by pricking, as *Galen* taught 14. *Meth. cap. ult.* The ſight is little worſe, and it is called a Suffuſion only begun, if it be ſomwhat thicker the ſight is darker; if very thick blindneſs followeth.

In reſpect of the quantity and the place, Either the humor poſſeſſeth the whol Eye, and the ſight is equally hindered which way ſoever it be directed; or it poſſeſſeth one part of the Pupil more than another, and ſo the objects are not ſeen wholly at one direct view, nor can many objects be ſeen at one time: but if the humor be very little, and poſſeſs the middle of the Pupilla, the objects appear with holes through them. But if the matter be divided into divers parts, poſſeſſing divers parts of the Pupilla, the forms of Gnats ſhall ſeem to be before the eyes: All theſe differences are exactly diſtinguiſhed by *Galen*, 1. *de ſymp. cauſis*, *c.* 2.

Moreover, In reſpect of the place or Scituation of the matter, other differences may be made, as ſomtimes the matter is in the very hole or cavity of the *Uvea* about the *Cornea*; ſomtimes about the *Uvea*, and between that and the watery humor; ſometimes it is mixed with the Watery Humor; and finally, ſomtimes it is between the Cryſtalline and Watery Humor..

Some Differences may be taken from the figure or ſhape of the matter, which *Galen* relates 1. *de ſympt. cauſis cap.* 2. and 4. *de loc. affect. cap.* 2. for as the figure of the humor adjacent to the Pupilla is various, ſo divers objects are preſent thereunto, as Gnats, Hairs, Cobwebs, Circles about Candles, and other things.

The knowledg of this Diſeaſe, is firſt in diſtinguiſhing a true from a baſtard Suffuſion, and then in the diſcovery of the differences of true and right Suffuſions.

A true Suffuſion doth for the moſt part affect only one Eye; but if both be affected, they are not at one time, or alike affected, as in a ſpurious Suffuſion.

Secondly, In a true Suffuſion, ſome dark matter appeareth in the Pupilla, which doth not in a Spurious or Baſtard Suffuſion. But this is not alwaies a true ſign; for if the Suffuſion cometh of a thin and ſerous humor, becauſe it is no thicker than the Watery humor, there appeareth no change in the Eye, by which Phyſitians are ſomtimes deceived, not knowing that kind of Suffuſion, take it for *Gutta ſerena*, perceiving no change in the Pupilla: but this kind is eaſily diſtinguiſhed from *Gutta ſerena*. Firſt, in *Gutta ſerena* the ſight is quite gone, or much diminiſhed, no hurt appearing in the Eye: On the contrary, In a Suffuſion which we cannot ſee, there is only a ſmal decay of ſight, becauſe the ſerous humor from whence it proceeds, is thin, and tranſparent, ſo that it may be pierced by the ſpecies of objects like Glaſs. Secondly, They differ in this, For the moſt part in a Suffuſion, the Sight is not equally hindered in all parts of the Pupilla; but the objects ſomtimes are ſeen better when they are direct before the Eye, ſomtimes when they are oppoſite to the corner of the Eye, becauſe the humor is thicker or thinner in one part of the Pupilla than the orher.

Thirdly, In a true Suffuſion the Symptomes are continual, and have no intermiſſion: in a baſtard Suffuſion, they are ſomtimes encreaſed and remitted, as the vapors are more or leſs which are ſent unto the Brain. So they are fewer when the Stomach is empty, than when it is full, eſpecially preſently after meat, for then a greater company of vapors do aſcend, which ſent to the Eyes, repreſent to the ſight, Flies, Gnats, Cobwebs, and ſuch like ſmal bodies, not alwaies, but at ſome times only. Which little bodies repreſented in the Air, depend upon the Vapors as aforeſaid: but in regard the Eyes are weakned by a true Suffuſion there is almoſt a continual ſending up of vapors unto them, and therfore there is a continual appearance of theſe little bodies flying in the Air. Moreover, there is a conſtant darkneſs of ſight in a true Suffuſion, being alwaies after the ſame manner, as if all the objects were ſeen through a cloud or thick glaſs, which is the proper ſign of this Diſeaſe: but in a baſtard Suffuſion, there is ſomtimes a greater, ſomtimes a leſs, and ſomtimes almoſt no dimneſs at al of the Sight, even as the vapors are many, or few, or none that are ſent to the Eyes.

Laſtly, A true Suffuſion grows in a ſhort time, and is confirmed for the moſt part in ſix Months, and ſomtimes it encreaſeth in a few daies: and *Fernelius* ſaith, 5. *Pathol. cap.* 5. that a Suffuſion was perfect in one day, which we alſo have often ſeen: but a baſtard Suffuſion continueth many yeers without encreaſe.

The Differences among true Suffuſions are theſe:

In a Suffuſion beginning certain ſmal Bodies, as Hairs, Gnats, Flyes, pieces of Wool and Cobwebs, fly before the Eyes.

But when it is far gone, the Air appears cloudy, and the objects are ſeen thicker, as through a glaſs;

glaſs; the colour of the Pupilla is changed, and it appears either troubled or cloudy, or like filthy Glaſs, or of a sky colour when a ſuffuſion is perfect, the ſight totally periſheth: the Pupilla is either white, or of ſome other colour is mixed with white.

Some ſignes are taken from the Colour: for when it is like a Pearl in colour, it ſignifies that the flegm is ſtill fluid and tranſparent: when it is white as Chalk, then it ſignifies a thick and compacted matter: when yellow, then flegm and choller are mixed: when black, it ſhews Melancholly.

The Place in which the Suffuſion grows, is thus known; For if the matter be placed between the Uuea and Cornea, the Pupil appeareth more dark, becauſe the matter is neerer to the beholder: Moreover the Pupilla is dilated by the Humor contained therein; and when the Diſeaſe is confirmed, white or red veins, or ſwellings are perceived to be about the Iris, or circle of the Eye; or certain white ſpots appear about the Pupilla.

If the Matter be contained between the Cryſtalline and the Uuea, contrary ſymptoms wil appear: as alſo the Pupilla wil be contracted if the matter lie deep, and enlarged if the matter lie higher.

The Prognoſtick of this Diſeaſe, is to be diverſly made, according to divers ſeaſons: For when a Suffuſion is only begun, when the Patient can perceive an object as through a cloud, it is curable as *Galen* ſaith, 14. Meth. Cap. ult. and *Celſus* lib. 6 cap. 6. which Opinion wants a reſtriction: Namely, if the Patient be yong, but in old it is incurable: and if the eyes be not naturally of a weak conſtitution. We alſo have ſeen ſome that have been cured in fifteen dayes ſpace, of a Suffuſion newly begun; who have been above fifty years of age, only by univerſal Purging, ſweating Diet, and a Veſicatory, without any other application of Topicks.

This Cure is better wrought in a warm air and in ſummer time, becauſe the Pores are then open, the matter of the Diſeaſe is more moveable and obedient; ſo that oftentimes it diſchargeth it ſelf by ſeege; which, is very much to the Cure of this Diſeaſe: as *Hippocrates* ſheweth, Aph. 16. Sect. 6. in theſe words, *It is a good ſign, when men with ſore Eyes, have a looſe belly.*

If a Suffuſion come from an acute Feaver, a Peripneumonia, a Phrenzy, or from a violent pain of the Head, it is hard to be Cured.

A Cataract or Suffuſion confirmed when the matter is grown thick, cannot be diſcuſſed with Medicines, but muſt be couched with a Needle.

This Operation is not ſafe; and often hath ill ſucceſs: For either the Tunicle Uuea is torn, or by the pain and inflamation, a new flux of Humors is brought to the Eye, which hath been long before weak: and many other inconveniences by which the ſight is for ever loſt. But ſince this Operation hath been ſometime ſucceſful, it may be tryed by thoſe who have no other hopes of Cure; For it is better, as *Celſus* ſaith, to try a Doubtful Medicine, or Remedy, than None at all.

In a confirmed Cataract, if when the other Eye is ſhut the Pupilla appeareth larger in the Eye affected, there is hope of Cure by Couching; but if it be no larger, it is uncurable; as *Galen* teacheth, 1. *de ſymp. cauſ. cap.* 2. becauſe the optick Nerve is obſtructed, and the ſpirits cannot come to the Pupilla, though it be open.

But if the Patient perceive no light when the Pupilla is enlarged by the ſhutting of the other Eye, he cannot be recovered by the Needle, becauſe the viſive ſpirit is troubled and obſcure, and therefore unfit for ſight.

A black Cataract, free from al brightneſs, can neither be Cured by Phyſick, nor Chirurgery; becauſe the Viſive Spirits are deſtroyed; but a cleer Cataract that hath ſome ſplendor, is Cureable.

Theſe alſo are uncurable for the moſt part, a green, dark, very yellow, and hard Cataract; and that which moveth and is colored like quickſilver.

A Cataract which repreſenteth objects ful of holes, is not to be tampered with: For ſince the matter is in the Center of the Pupilla, it is to be feared, leſt when the Needle is thruſt in, the whol Pupilla be filled with the matter, and ſo the ſight be utterly loſt.

The Operation of the Needle, is more ſucceſful, in a ful Eye; and that which keeps its natural greatneſs: But if the Eye be ſmal and decayed, it is leſs ſucceſful.

In Old men, this Operation is not to be tryed; nor in Children, in them the Diſeaſe is incurable; in theſe the Humor is too ſoft being not ripe; there is moſt hope of ſucceſs in yong perſons.

If this Operation be, when ſome part of the Suffuſion floweth down (if the eye be compreſſed) and appeareth more large, and after returneth to its former ſtation and figure, it is not ſucceſful; becauſe the Cataract is not yet ripe, but thin and crude: But if by a compreſſing with the finger there is no change of the ſhape and figure of it; it is then ripe, and may be couched with a Needle. But we muſt take notice, That the ripeneſs or thickneſs of the Cataract ought to be moderate and not too much compacted, that it may be eaſily couched: for it ought to be like a thin skin which may be rowled about the Needle and ſo couched down; for if it be too thick and ſolid, it cannot be couched, which

which you may perceive when it is like Chalk or Hail. Contrarily that which is fit for couching uſeth to be Sky-colored, and Sea-green, of the color of Iron or Lead not black.

The Cure of a Cataract muſt be directed not only to the Conjunct, but to the Antecedent cauſe. And therefore you muſt purge the whol Body, and eſpecially the Brain very exactly. After you muſt diſcuſs that humor which obſtructeth the Pupilla, and ſome way ſoften it.

Which intentions, when they are almoſt the ſame which were propounded in the Cure of *Gutta ſerena*, we may uſe the ſame Remedies for Diet, evacuation or purging of the whol Body, for revulſion of the humor offending, and for the ſtrengthening of the the Head and the Eyes, ſo we ſhall not in vain repeat them.

Having therefore firſt uſed all that Method which was laid down for the Cure of *Gutta ſerena*, we will declare unto you thoſe Medicines, which belong properly to the taking away of the matter about the Pupilla. And though Topical Medicines are counted little worth according to *Galens* Opinion, 2. κατα τοπους, who ſaith that they promiſe more than they can perform: yet their Lawful uſe is not to be rejected: and Experience hath taught, by very good Authors confirmed, that Cataracts in their beginning, after univerſal Medicines uſed, have been cured with Topicks, that is, Medicines applied to the Eye.

Firſt therefore begin with mild diſſolvers, and ſuch as dry not overmuch leſt the matter grow hard, and be made unfit to be diſſolved: then uſe mollifiers with your diſſolvers, that induration may be hindered, and it may more eaſily be diſſolved. For this purpoſe the following Fomentation may be firſt uſed.

Take of *the Leaves of Rue, Fennel, Eyebright, the greater Celondine, of each one handful: Fœnugreek ſeeds one ounce: Chamomel and Melilot flowers, of each one pugil: Boyl them in three parts of ſpring Water, and one part of white Wine added towards the end of the Decoction. Foment the Eyes with a ſoft ſponge dipt in the ſtrained Liquor, morning and evening.*

Of the ſame Decoction you may make a Fumigation, covering the head that it may be received into the Eyes.

In the beginning of the Diſeaſe, while the defluxion is new, and that revelling Medicines are uſed, it is good to waſh the Eyes with only red Wine, which by its aſtriction hinders the defluxion, and by its ſpirits diſcuſſeth and diſſolveth it.

In the progreſs of the Diſeaſe, a Fomentation of white Wine, in which *Crocus Metallorum* hath been infuſed, is moſt profitable.

It is no leſs profitable to let a child eat ſweet Fennel Seeds in a morning, and afterwards breath into the Eyes.

As alſo to let him lick them, or to let a Dog lick them.

Alſo Bread hot from the Oven, in which is ſweet Fennel ſeed cut in the middle, may be ſo placed to the Eyes that they may behold it when they are wet with the vapor.

Theſe Medicines are to be uſed in the morning.

At night you may apply this Cataplaſm:

Take of *Fenugreek ſeed beaten one ounce: Aloes half an ounce: Saffron one dram: Make them into fine pouder, put it into white Wine wherein* Crocus Metallorum *hath been infuſed, and make a Cataplaſm to be applied to the Eyes at night.*

Many commend Pidgeons blood, put hot into the Eyes, for with the Natural heat of that Creature the part will be much ſtrengthened, and the excrementitious matter diſſolved: but becauſe the heat will quickly depart from the blood, it is better to take a yong callow Pidgeon, and ſlit it in the back, and apply it to the Eye.

With theſe Medicines you may diſcuſs the matter if it be poſſible.

Topical Medicines called *Collyria*, which are dropped into the Eyes, are of little force, and thoſe are they which *Galen* ſaid did promiſe more than they perform; for all their vertue is ſpent in the *Cornea*; neither can they reach to the internal parts, except they be made very ſharp, by which, pain would be cauſed, and a greater defluxion: hence many that have uſed them immoderately, have from a light infirmity become ſtark blind. But becauſe many of thoſe *Collyriaes* are found in Authors which have good report by them, leſt we ſhould ſeem defective, we will ſhew ſome of the choyceſt, that they who pleaſe may try them.

Take of *the beſt Honey two pints: Fennel Roots, and the Roots of long and round Birthwort, of each one pound: the leaves of Rue, Eyebright, Celondine the greater, and the tops of Fennel, of each ſix handfuls: Centaury the leſs three handfuls: Roſes four pugils: the Urine of a Boy two pints. Mix them all in a glaſs Veſſel and diſtill them in* Balneo Mariæ. *Drop this Water often into the Eyes.*

Or you may make Bread with the Bran in it, with the Pouder of Rue, Celondine, Eyebright, Bettony, and Fennel with a little Honey, which as ſoon as it is drawn and cut in pieces, muſt be put between two Pewter or Silver Diſhes; from whence will come a Water, which *Zechius* affirmeth, dropped

into

into the Eyes, doth wonders. Alſo this following is highly commended.

Take of *white Violet Leaves, one handful: Radiſh ſeed, one dram: Amoniacum, half a dram: mix them, and pouder them; then ſteep them twenty four hours in one pint of Fennel water: then let them boyl a little ſpace: add to the ſtraining one ounce of the clarified juyce of Fennel: the Balſom of Peru, two drams: make a Collyrium: which* Zechius *ſaith, Dropt into the Eyes morning and evening, after the Body is ſufficiently Purged, doth ſo cleanſe the Eyes, that it takes away a Cataract wonderfully without Couching.*

Hollerius Deſcribes a Water, that he ſaith, Cured one that was Nine yeers blind: Which is this.

Take of *the juyce of Smallage, Vervain, Germander, Burnet, Avens, Sage, Celondine, Rue, Knot-graſs, Chickweed, the pouder of Cloves, of each one ounce: groſs Pepper, Nutmeg, Lignum Aloes, of each three drams: ſteep them all in the Urin of a Boy, and the ſixth part of Sack: Let them boyl a little, then ſtrain them, and preſs them, put it in a Glaſs cloſe ſtopt; drop every night ſome of it into each Eye.*

The juyce of Brooklime only, being often dropt into the eyes, hath ſomtimes Cured a yong Suffuſion, when a Cautery alſo hath been applied to the Coronal Suture.

The Juyce of Celondine and Calcitrap mixed together, are as good.

Quercetan, in his Diſpenſatory doth much commend Water in which *Crocus Metallorum* hath been infuſed, which is thus made.

Take of *the Water of the greater Celondine, ſix ounces: Crocus Metallorum, one dram: infuſe them, and drop three or four drops of this Water warmed into the Eyes for three or four times a day for a long continuance.*

Fonſeca ſaith, That he knew one Cured by this Water, who was very dim ſighted many months: This is the excellency of it, which few other Medicines have; It cleanſeth very powerfully without any ſharpneſs.

The ſame *Fonſeca* ſayes the Water following is admirable.

Take *many Swallows, beat them with their feathers in a Morter: put to every pound of them four ounces of bread crums: of white wine, four pints: infuſe them ſix dayes, and diſtil them in Balneo till they are dry: then ſet that Water in a Glaſs in the Sun for twenty dayes, and drop it into the eyes morning and evening.*

There is a Water made of Roſemary flowers, which diſcuſſeth Films in the Eyes after this manner.

Take of *Roſemary-flowers as many as are ſufficient to fill a Glaſs which muſt be well ſtopt, and ſet it in the Wall againſt the South Sun, thence will an Oyl come, which with a feather anoint the Eyes with.*

Some Authors commend the Galls of Beaſts becauſe they cleanſe and diſcuſs ſtrongly, but they cauſe pain with their ſharpneſs, and therefore are ſeldom uſed.

Forreſtus, Obſ. 35. Lib. 11. commends a certain Fiſh in his Country, out of whoſe Liver there comes a moiſture, by which he ſaith Cataracts are preſently, as by a miracle, Cured. See in the place cited the uſe of it. *William Lozellus* ſaith, That he hath Cured many ſtark blind, after univerſal Medicines have been uſed, with this Water.

Take of *the Liver of a ſound Goat, two pound: Calamus Aromaticus, and Honey, of each half an ounce: the juyce of Rue, three drams: the Waters of Celondine, Vervain, Fennel, Eyebright, of each three ounces: Long Pepper, Nutmeg, and Cloves, of each two drams: Saffron, one ſcruple: Roſemary-flowers bruiſed, half an handful: Sarcocol, and Aloes, of each three drams: the Gall of Ravenous Birds, Capons, or Partridges, one ounce: let thoſe that are to be ſliced be ſliced, and that are to be bruiſed be bruiſed; then mixed altogether, with two ounces of white Sugar and ſix drams of Honey of Roſes, caſt them into an Alembick of Glaſs, and diſtil them in Balneo Mariæ with a gentle fire, keep this Water in a Glaſs cloſe ſtopt, for precious; which you may drop twice or thrice in a day into the eye affected.*

Zacutus Luſitanus commends the Water following, in theſe words, *For an old Diſeaſe in the Eyes, called* Ophtalmia, *or any other which cometh of overmuch moiſture, and groſs humors and miſts; as in thickneſs, whiteneſs, the Haw, and Suffuſion; this Water is the beſt in his Experience; if after ſufficient Purging, you drop ſix drops cold every night three hours after meat into the Eyes, then about two hours after you ſhall have Water flow out of them in abundance.*

Take of *Aloes, three drams: Rue, Fennel, and Bettony, of each two handfuls: Vervain and Tormentil, of each one handful: Sarcocol, three drams: the froth of Nitre, two drams and a half: Sugar Candy, three ounces: ſyrup of Roſes, four ounces: the Urin of a yong Boy, half a pint: Lizzards dung, three drams: Horehound, three handfuls: Eyebright, one handful and a half: Ginger, Spicknard, long Pepper, Cloves, and Tutty, of each two drams: Balſom, three drams;*

drams: Honey of Roſes, two ounces: Verdegreeſe, one dram: Licium, two ſcruples: Radiſh leaves, one handful: powder thoſe which are to be powdered, mix them, and infuſe them in the beſt white wine, in a Still, putting to a fourth part of the beſt Honey, for ten dayes, and ſtir them daily, then Diſtill them, and keep the Water.

The ſame *Zacutus* commends the Oyntment following, in theſe words: *For the drying up of moiſture flowing from the Head into the Eyes, and for Purging them by the Corners very ſtrongly; this Magiſtral Oyntment is excellent; being applied after univerſal Evacuations from the Head and the whol Body; let the upper Eye-brows be anointed lightly therewith morning and evening twice in a day three hours after meat: one hour after there will flow plentiful Water from the corners of the Eye, eſpecially from the great corner.*

Take of *the Oyl of Roſes, three ounces: Roſe-water, nine ounces: Camphire, one dram: Tutty, one ſcruple: Honey, two ounces: the Gall of a Goat, half an ounce: Lupin meal, half a dram: Aloes, Succotrine, one dram: Sugar candy, half a dram: the juyce of Horehound, Fennel, and Rue, of each half an ounce: Mirrh, one ſcruple: Ammoniacum, half a dram: Sarcocol one dram and a half: Pouder them that may, mix them, and boyl them a little with a gentle fire. and the greaſe of a Goat or Sheep, and a little wax: make an Oyntment according to art.*

Finally, when al Medicines fail, when the Diſeaſe is almoſt deſperate, it were good to try an experience with the Oyntment of Quickſilver; which *Fonſeca* ſaith was his invention, yet ſeldom uſed; for in his 19. *Conſultat. lib.* 1. he thus ſaith: *I have thought ſometimes that the Unction uſed for the Cure of the French Pox, hath power to take away Cataracts in their beginning and increaſe; by the ſame reaſon that it takes away the Humors remaining in the Eyes from the French Pox; for by it the Head may be ſo Purged, that a Cataract may be Cured; and I have determined to make tryal of it.* *Fonſeca* had much commended his Judgment if he had ſeen *Skenkius* his Obſervation, 309. Lib. 1. which is taken out of the 5. Book of *Alexander Trajanus Petronus*, of the French Pox, *Cap.* 1. *One* (ſaith he) *before he had the French Pox was blind of one Eye with a Cataract or thick Suffuſion; by the Unction with Quick-ſilver was freed wonderfully from his Pox and Cataract both at once: Neither is it without reaſon that Cataracts may be diſſolved with that Unction, when we ſee by Experience that very hard Tumors of thick and groſs Flegm are powerfully diſſolved by the Unction of Quick-ſilver.*

When a Cataract can be diſſolved with no other Medicines, the laſt Remedy is the Chirurgical Operation, which with a Needle put into the Eye, after the matter of the Cataract being thick, and turned to a little skin, thruſteth it to the lower part of the Eye, ſo that the ſight is reſtored as if a window were opened. This Operation is ſucceſsful ſometimes; but often not: But when the caſe is ſo that no hope remains of other wayes, it is better according to the Opinion of *Celſus*, formerly Commended, to try an uncertain Medicine than none: But it uſeth not to be tryed by reaſon of its uncertainty by ordinary Chirurgions; but of Quackſalvers, who go to and fro practiſing, and therefore the time and manner of the Operation is to be left only to them.

But becauſe thoſe things ought not to be hid from a Phyſitian, you may find them exactly treated on in divers Practical Authors, when the Cataract is Cured.

Whether it be with diſſolving Medicines or manual Operation you muſt uſe a courſe of Phyſick long after, becauſe there is a great fear of a Relapſe: For the Eyes having been much weakned by a long Diſeaſe, are very ready to receive any Defluxion again from the brain. Therefore you muſt follow the uſual Purging; you muſt have Iſſues continually for diverſion; and uſe often ſtrengtheners of the Eyes, ſuch as are preſcribed in *Gutta ſerena*: to which you may ad a waſhing of the Eyes, which muſt be done every day thus:

In the morning firſt chew ſweet Fennel ſeeds ſome ſpace of time, then fill the mouth with Wine, and after it is warm in the mouth, waſh the Eyes therewith till they begin to ſmart, which wil ceaſe when you leave waſhing.

Moreover Spectacles are very good to preſerve ſight which do make the Objects neither bigger nor leſs than they naturally are. And it is profitable to refreſh the ſight with green or sky coloured Spectales.

And Laſtly, You muſt avoid al things which hurt the ſight, and uſe thoſe things which help it, as is declared in the Diet for the Cure of *Gutta ſerena*.

CHAP. V.

Of the Enlarging, or Dilatation of the Pupilla.

THe Tunicle called *Uvea*, out of *Galen*, 1. *de sympt. caus. cap.* 2. is obnoxious to divers diseases, and especially to Ruption, Distortion, Dilatation, and Constriction.

A Ruption may come both of an external Cause, as stroak or contusion; and of an inward, when much humor distendeth and breaketh the Tunicle: But this being incurable concerneth not us.

A Distortion of the *Uvea* cannot be but in the first constitution of it, because it adhæreth to the *Cornea*. Therefore *Galen* in the place quoted doth only reckon it among the different symptomes of the *Uvea*: and doth not stand to explain it, because it is of no concernment in the practice of Physick. We therefore omitting the first two differences, wil only insist upon the explaining of the Dilatation, and constriction of the Pupilla.

The Dilatation of the Pupilla, which is a hole in the Uvea Tunicle, by which the Species of Objects pass into the Eye, is called in Greek *Mydryasis*; this hurts the sight because too much light goeth into the Eye; hence it is that they which have this disease, see better in a darkish place than in a light. Which appears by Natural and ordinary change in the Pupilla in bright and obscure places; for when the Sight is exercised in a cleer light place, the Pupilla is contracted that the light may go less into the Eye, and not hurt it with too much, by dissipating and dispersing the Spirits; and hence it is that they which go out of a very light place into a dark, see almost nothing at their first entry: because the Pupilla being formerly contracted, doth not in an obscure place receive light enough to make a perfect Sight. After, when they have continued a while in an obscure place, the Pupilla is by degrees dilated, to receive more light, for the cleering of Sight, and then those things which at first entrance were not seen, are cleerly perceived. On the contrary, they which go out of a dark, into a very light place, cannot at first endure the light, and their Eyes are much dazled, because the Pupilla being much dilated before in the dark place for to get light enough into the Eye, when it comes suddenly thus enlarged into a great light, too much light gets into the Eye, and so makes it dazle and disturbs the Sight. Whence it appears, that light necessary to sight ought to pass into the Eye in a moderate quantity, and for the receiving thereof, it is necessary that the Pupilla be moderately large.

Now the Preternatural Dilation of the Pupilla is either in the first original, which is not to be tampered with; or comes of Preternatural causes which are internal or external.

The neareſt and immediate of the internal causes, is the stretching of the *Uvea*, which comes either of drineſs or repletion.

Drineſs doth stretch the *Uvea*, and makes the form of the Pupilla larger, as when leather pierced through, when it is dried hath the hole larger: And this dry distemper comes from long watching, Feavers, and other drying causes.

The repletion of the *Uvea* when it distendeth it on every side, makes the Pupilla larger, and this is produced either of vapors, and wind sent into the Eye, or of humors flowing thither, or from the extraordinary encrease of the watery humor of the Eye, or lastly from the swelling of the Tunicle Uvea it self. To these Causes we may ad, the Convulsion of the Uvea, which appeareth chiefly in Epileptical fits; for then all the Nervous and Membranous parts are distended, and so is also the Uvea; and this appears chiefly most manifest in Epileptick Children, in whom the dilation of the Pupilla is so great, that it is over all the Circle called *Iris*, and therefore the sight is abolished.

The internal Causes are, a stroak, or a fall, or a retention of the Spirits, as in Women in Childbirth, and Trumpeters. A stroak or fall make a defluxion to the Eyes, hence comes extending of the Pupilla: retention of Spirits makes wind and humors, from whence comes distention.

The knowledg of this Disease is not difficult, because it may be seen with your Eyes, especially if the Physitian knew before it became infirm how large naturally the Pupilla was; as also if there be a hinderance of the sight by reason of the over largeness of it.

Moreover, The natural largeness of the Pupilla is known by this, If when you shut one Eye, the Pupilla of the other is larger, which will not be in a Preternatural dilatation, because then the Uvea cannot be further extended.

Lastly, If this dilatation of the Pupilla be only in one Eye, it is Preternatural, and signifieth one Eye only is affected.

As to the Prognostick, The Dilatation of the Pupilla from the original so, is incurable; but that which cometh after is hardly cured, especially that which comes of drineſs, but that which comes of other

tinuance, is curable; becauſe yong diſeaſes of the Eyes, according to *Galens* Doctrine may be cured, but old may not but with very much difficulty be cured.

The Cure is to be varied according to the variety of the Cauſe; and if it come from drineſs, which can ſcarce come from an internal cauſe, but alſo the whol Body muſt be ſo afflicted; therfore we muſt refreſh the whol body with moiſt Remedies, and nouriſhments, and ſuch as are reſtaurative, ſuch we uſe in Hectick Feavers: but more peculiarly the body is to be moiſtened with a bath of warm water, and new milk, which alſo muſt be often put into the Eyes, eſpecially womans Milk.

If it comes from a humor which filleth the Eye, becauſe it flowerh from the Head you muſt purge the Head and the whol Body alſo, and then you muſt diſcuſs the humor that is fixed in the Eye. Which when they may be ſufficiently performed by the Remedies propounded for the cure of a Cataract or Suffuſion, we ſhall not in vain repeat them here, but ſend you to the aforeſaid Treatiſe for them, where you ſhall find all things neceſſary for the diſcuſſing and diſſipating humors contained in the Eyes. Yet you may after uſe ſome aſtringents which may make the Pupilla which is too much enlarged more narrow: for this end you may make uſe of this following Collyrium, or Water for the Eyes.

Take of *red Roſes dried two ſcruples*: *Saffron, Spicknard, the Bark of the Frankinſence Tree, of each half a ſcruple*: *Tutty prepared, burnt Ivory, and Acacia, of each one ſcruple*: *Bring them into a Pouder, and put them in a thin linnen cloth, and tie it; then hang it in three ounces of Roſe Water, and waſh the Eyes often with the Water, dropping into them, ſqueezing the cloth as often as you uſe the Water.*

If it comes from wind (after univerſal Evacuations) thoſe Medicines are to be uſed which diſcuſs wind in the whol Body, and eſpecially in the Eyes, and ſo they may be fomented with the Decoction of Fennel, Rue, Dill, red Roſes, Myrtles, made in Roſe Water with the fourth part of white Wine.

Finally, If it come with a ſtroak, you muſt alter the manner of Cure, according to the greatneſs of the Contuſion; and if there be an Inflamation, you muſt cure it as an Ophthalmy: But if there be no Inflamation, you ſhall at the firſt apply a Cataplaſm of Bean flower, Plantane Leaves, and red Roſes made up with Roſe Water. After that, you ſhall often drop therein the blood of a Pidgeon, which is a moſt excellent Remedy in all Wounds and Contuſions of the Eyes.

CHAP. VI.

Of the ſtraitneſs, or Contraction of the Pupilla.

THe Pupilla being too ſtraight, hindereth the ſight, as the being of it too large, as was ſhewed in the former Chapter, becauſe a moderate largeneſs of the Pupilla is neceſſary for receiving perfectly the viſible Species. So when the Eye is in its Natural condition, and is in a light place, the Pupilla is contracted leſt it ſhould take in too much light, if ſuddenly it be in a dark room, the things therein contained are little or ſcarcely ſeen at the firſt entrance, by reaſon of the aforeſaid contraction. Afterwards when the Pupil is dilated, al things are ſeen rightly, therefore in a place moderately light, the breadth of the Pupilla ought to be moderate, that it may receive moderate light, nor too much, nor too little, for making a perfect ſight. But if the Pupilla be too narrow, it receiveth not light enough, therefore they who are ſo affected, the ſight is diminiſhed, yet they ſee well in a very light place, becauſe at that time light ſufficient will paſs through a narrow hole, if no other Diſeaſe of the Eyes be joyned with it.

Now the narrowneſs of the Pupilla, cometh either from the original, or firſt conſtitution, and then it little hindereth; for if they who are ſo affected ſee leſs in a dark or dusky place than they who have a Pupilla of its moderate natural breath, yet in a clear light place they ſee better. Hence *Galen* ſaid in 1. *de ſymp. cauſ. cap.* 2. that they who are born with ſmal Pupilla's ſee beſt.

Or the ſtraightneſs of the Pupilla comes from preternatural cauſes, namely, overmuch moiſture, drineſs, or defect of the Watery Humor, and want of Spirits.

The Pupil is contracted by humidity, when the Uvea is relaxed, and ſo makes the hole leſs or narrower: For although the dilatation of the Pupilla come of the ſame humidity, yet contrary effects come not of the ſame cauſe, becauſe if the cauſe may be called the ſame, it ought to have the ſame relation to its effects, but humidity is not in the ſame manner when it makes a Dilatation, for it makes that by filling and diſtending the Membrane, but it makes the anguſtia or narrowneſs by relaxing it: it relaxeth when it is united to its ſubſtance.

Concerning dryneſs there is the ſame difficulty, ſince it is mentioned among the cauſes of dilating the Pupilla. But this is the difference: When the Uvea is dryed, and the humors of the Eye remain

main in their due quantity, then it makes a dilatation of the Pupilla, becauſe it looſeth not the extention which it formerly had, as was ſaid in the precedent Chapter, concerning Skins extended when dryed, make their holes larger; but if the Tunicle Uvea when it is dryed, wrinckled, falls together, and looſe its former extenſion, from the defect or diminiſhing of the humors of the eye, then is the hole of the Pupilla made ſtraighter.

And ſo the conſtriction of the Pupilla by drineſs will be almoſt the ſame with that which happeneth from a defect of the watery humor in the eye; although it may come without drineſs, when by the powring forth of the watery humor the Uvea falls down.

Laſtly, The narrowneſs of the Pupilla comes from the defect of Spirits, or from the fewneſs of them, when by reaſon of the obſtruction of the optick Nerve or ſome other cauſe, the vitive ſpirit cannot come to the eyes, which when it is filled with ſpirit keeps its Tunicles extended; but when it wanteth ſpirits they grow lax and fal together: Hence the conſtriction of the Pupilla uſually cometh. This appeareth in very Old men, in whom the Pupilla is made narrow by reaſon of the want of ſpirits.

This Diſeaſe is known eaſily being open to the ſenſe, for if one eye alone ſuffer, by comparing it with the other you may perceive the ſtraightneſs of the Pupilla; but if both ſuffer, by looking upon the eyes of another man who is found ſighted, you find it out.

As to the Prognoſtick, a ſtraightneſs in the Pupilla which cometh from the loſs of the watery humor in the eye, is incurable, becauſe when that is once loſt it cannot be recruited; eſpecially in old folk: in yong people ſomtimes the watery humor of the eye hath been let forth by a wound, and hath been repaired again: A Conſtriction of the Pupilla from drineſs, can ſcarſe, and very hardly be cured: But that which comes from moiſture, in the beginning, and being yong, may be eaſily Cured: but an old one very hardly.

The Cure of this Diſeaſe differeth not from the former, for they come both from the ſame Cauſes, namely, Drineſs, or Moiſture; which diſtempers, although they produce contrary effects, after the manner before Explained; yet are they to be Cured by the ſame Remedies.

CHAP. VII.

Of Albugo, *or the white Spot called Pin and Web, and of other Colours of the Cornea changed.*

THe Natural Conſtitution of the Cornea Tunicle is deſtroyed when it looſeth its brightneſs and tranſparentneſs; or when its infected with another colour.

It looſeth brightneſs when it is grown thicker; now the Cornea doth grow thick by drineſs, as in old men, which is incurable; or by groſs humors faſtened upon it, which happeneth often in an Ophthalmy; when either by too much uſe of Reſolving Medicines the thinner parts of the humor are diſſolved, and the thick remain: Or when by an extraordinary uſe of cold Medicines the humors are thickned: and the Cornea doth not only become thicker in that part unto which the humor is faſtened, but it alſo contracteth a white Colour, which is called Leucoma, or Albugo; ſomtimes this alſo comes from a ſcar after an Ulcer, whereby the Cornea is made thicker in that part, and looſeth its tranſparentneſs.

The Differences are divers, as they are more or leſs thick; one doth poſſeſs only the ſuperficies of the Cornea: another lies more deep, and pierceth the whol Cornea: another is greater, and poſſeſſeth the whol Pupilla, or the greateſt part thereof: another is leſs, and comprehendeth but a little ſpace of the Pupilla, and then it is properly called Macula, or Pin and Web.

The Cornea is altered in Colour when it is blood-ſhot, which Diſeaſe is called Sugillatio, and then al Objects appear red: Or when Choller is got into it, as in thoſe who have the yellow Jaundice; and then the Objects uſe to appear yellow according to *Galens* Doctrine, which is to be underſtood of a great effuſion of Choller upon the Cornea, for if it be only lightly died therewith, which often happeneth (for the Tunicle Adnata receiveth more Choller than the Cornea) then the Objects wil not ſeem yellow, but as they naturally are.

Theſe Diſeaſes need their peculiar Diagnoſis for the knowledge of them; becauſe they are apparent to the Senſes, but eſpecially Albugo, which is thicker and more white; and more hindereth the ſight: So alſo that which is more ſuperficial is more white; but that which is deeper declineth unto black becauſe it is neerer to the Uvea, which being its ſelf black, communicates its Colour unto that.

The Cauſes which produce theſe, are eaſily known by what hath been ſaid; namely, if an Ophthalmy,

thalmy, or Wound, or Ulcer went before.

As to the Prognoſtick: An Albugo which comes of Flegm, or a thick humor remaining after an Ophthalmy, it is eaſily Cured, eſpecially if it be not inveterate: but that which cometh after a Wound or Ulcer, and is a ſcar, is very hardly cured; becauſe in a part which hath exquiſite ſenſe, ſharp Medicines, ſuch as are proper to wear away a Cicatrize or Scar, cannot be endured.

The Cure of an *Albugo* congealed or gathered in the Cornea from Flegm, is done by Emolients attenuating and diſcuſſing Medicines, but by alwayes uſing univerſal Medicines firſt, which may take away the antecedent Cauſe, and hinder a new defluxion from the eyes, which would be cauſed by Medicines to the place; eſpecially if they be ſharp, or hot, except the matter be firſt removed.

Therefore firſt make univerſal Evacuations, then revulſions, then Derivations, as it is ſet down in the Cure of *Gutta ſerena*, and *Cataract*.

Afterwards apply a Fomentation to ſoften the hard matter (with ſoft ſpunges) made of the Decoction of Fœnugreek, Melilot, Celondine, and Fennel.

Or, Let the Vapor of it be taken into the eyes; and to this purpoſe you may make this that followeth.

Take of *Marſh-mallow Roots one ounce*: *the Leaves of Mallows, Eyebright, Celondine the great, of each one handful*: *Linſeed and Fœnugreek of each three drams*: *Melilot flowers one pugil*: *make a Decoction of theſe in ſpring water, and let the ſteem or vapor of it be taken into the Eyes, morning and evening.*

Afterwards uſe Diſcuſſives, ſuch as are preſcribed in the Cure of a Cataract or Suffuſion; for they alſo wil do wel here. And ſo *Collyria* Eye waters which do attenuate and reſolve the Humor faſtened in the eye, may be taken from thence, and eſpecially thoſe which are made of Honey and things that quicken the ſight. For the Water of Honey diſtilled uſed alone, is very good to take away all blemiſhes in the Eye if you continue the uſe of it any time.

Sugar Candy is good for the ſame, Diſſolved in the Water of Eyebright, Celondine, or Fennel.

As alſo it would be very good to let a Child that hath chewed Fennel-Seed to lick the Eye often.

Amatus Luſitanus reports that he Cured thick clouds in the Eye of a Girle of twelve yeers of age after he had given the Decoction of Sarſa twenty dayes, with this Medicine.

Take of *Honey from the Hive two pints*: *the tops of Fennel, the flowers of Elder and Eyebright, of each two pugils*: *Sugar Candy four ounces*: *diſtil them in Balneo Mariæ*; *and let the water be dropped into the Eyes.*

The Seed of Clary put into the Eye at bed time, purgeth the Eye from Filth, and ſo cleanſeth it, that it conduceth to the Cure of *Albugo*.

The juyce of Fennel doth potently diſcuſs an *Albugo* if newly made, and mixed with a drop of the Ballom of Peru.

The ſame doth an Oyl made of burnt Rags mixed with the ſpittle of a Child, and laid on with a Feather: It is made by burning of a Linnen Rag, and quenching it betwen two diſhes; when it is cold you ſhal find the Oyl in drops upon the diſh.

But *Albugo* coming of a Scar, is cured with Remedies that are good to mollifie, attenuate, and diſſolve Scars; but ſince ſuch are alwaies ſharp, you muſt be more careful in applying, firſt univerſal Medicines, and revulſives, leſt a flux of humors be brought to the part. Having therfore uſed them as aforeſaid, firſt it is good to apply emollient Fomentations or Fumigations above preſcribed. Then uſe abſtergent & diſcuſſing Remedies: Firſt thoſe that are gentle, ſuch as are above mentioned, eſpecially the compound Water of Honey: After you may come to ſtronger, ſuch as are the Galls of Fiſhes, of the Uranoſcopus, or one-eyed Fiſh; of the Paſtinaca, or fiſh like the Ray; or of the Pike; as alſo of other Creatures, as of a Partridg, Cock, Gooſe, Ox, and others. After the ſame manner may be uſed the juyce of great Celondine, of the leſſer Centaury, of Brooklime, and the like, which muſt be mixed with Honey both becauſe Honey hath a cleanſing and diſcuſſing quality, as alſo becauſe Liquors that are put into the Eye, flow to the corners, and ſtay not in the Pupilla in which their operation is required; but being thickened with Honey, they cleave wel to the Eye: But if their ſharpneſs cannot be endured, the ſaid Juyces or Galls may be thickened, with that Mucilage or ſlime of Gum Traganth, of Fleabane, or of Quinces, being drawn with the Water of Fennel, Eye-bright, or other proper to the Eyes.

The form of a Collyrium made of Juyces, is thus:

Take of *the Juyce of Fennel, Celondine, and Brooklime, of each three drams*: *the Juyce of the leſſer Centaury, half an ounce*: *white Honey one ounce*: *Mix them like a Liniment. If with the Albugo there be redneſs of the Eyes, the Collyrium made of Salt, white Wine, and Wheat preſcribed*

in

in the Ophthalmia, is very good. Or this,

Take of *Aloes and Agarick, of each one ſcruple: Pouder them, and tie them in a clout; which ſteep in the Water of Eyebright or Fennel, and wipe the Eyes therewith morning and evening. Aloes doth clenſe, ſtrengthen, and ſtop the defluxion; Agarick doth powerfully clenſe.*

Sugillatio or blood-ſhot, or that red color in the Eye which cometh of blood ſent thither, if it be yong, is eaſily cured with Pidgeons blood dropped in: but in the want thereof you may uſe Womens Milk with a little Frankinſence and Saffron. Or you may apply the Yolk of an Egg with Wine; which is commended of *Galen*, 4. *de comp. Med. ſec. loc. cap.* 8. But if the diſeaſe be ſtubborn, you muſt foment the Eye with the Decoction of Fœnugreek, Marſh-mallows, Fennel, Rue, Celondine; or let the fume of the ſame be received into it. And finally, all Medicines preſcribed in the Cure of a Cataract may be very proper for the cure of this. But more eſpecially, when the diſeaſe is old, and the redneſs turneth black, *Galen* commends dried Hyſop tied in a rag, and put into hot water, and applied to the Eye: and Experience teacheth that this Medicine is of ſuch force that the blood is drawn away by it ſticking to the clout.

And laſtly, The yellow color of the Jaundice, which moſt appears in the Eyes, when the Jaundice is cured is eaſily diſcuſſed: if you would haſten the Cure, take the fume of Vinegar into the Eyes.

CHAP. VIII.

Of Ophthalmia, *or Inflamation of the Eyes.*

THe Tunicle called *Adnata* is ſo joyn'd to the *Cornea*, that many diſeaſes are in both; as the Inflamation of the Eyes, though it is proper to the *Adnata*, yet it is often extended to the *Cornea*, and produceth divers Diſeaſes in it, namely, Ulcers, *Hypopyon*, when matter is underneath, *Albugo* or Pin and Web, and others. So alſo Puſtals, and other Tumors, Wounds, and Ulcers are common to both Tunicles. Therefore becauſe all the Diſeaſes of theſe Tunicles cannot be ſpoken of ſeverally, we will only ſpeak of the Diſeaſes of the *Adnata* before we ſpeak more of the *Cornea*.

Beginning with an Ophthalmy; We ſay that it is, as the word in Greek ſheweth, only an Inflamation of the Eye, and by all Authors it is uſed for the inflamation of the Adnata, or Conjunctiva. It is called by the Latines *Lippitudo* or blood-ſhotneſs ſince *Cornelius Celſus*.

This Inflamation, as it is greater or leſs, hath a three-fold difference. The firſt is called in Greek *Taraxis*, in Latin *Conturbatio*, which according to *Paulus* cometh from an external cauſe, namely, the Sun, ſmoak, duſt, oyl, and the like: but it may alſo come of an internal, namely, by fault of the ſtomach after drinking of Wine, or other Diſtempers; and this is a light Inflamation called *Phlogoſis*, with a ſmal pain and redneſs, yet it ſometimes turneth into a true Ophthalmy, and is the original of it.

But a true Ophthalmy comes alwaies from an internal cauſe, and it is a true inflamation with which tumor, redneſs, and pain, it is called by *Celſus*, *Lippitudo* or blood-ſhotneſs, becauſe there cleaveth a thick excrement, which the Latins call *Lippa*.

The third is called *Chemoſis* in Greek; in Latin *Chemoſis* alſo, and it is when an inflamation groweth ſo high that it is very great with vehement pain, and both the Eyebrows are inverted ſo, that the Eyes can ſcarce be covered therewith; and the white of the Eye ſtands higher, and the red doth cover moſt part of the Iris or Circle. In Children, and ſuch as have great Eyes, this hath often happened, and it comes from a great repletion, and from flegmy humors.

There is another Difference of the Ophthalmy taken out of *Hippocrates*, *Aph.* 14. *Sect.* 3. by which it is divided unto a moiſt and a dry Ophthalmy: The moiſt Ophthalmy is that which is already deſcribed, and hath a weeping. But the dry Ophthalmy called by *Hippocrates*, *Xerophthalmia*, which cometh in dry weather, is made of Choller, or burnt or aduſt Melancholly, and is ſuch as wanteth humidity in part, and therefore there is no weeping. There are other ſubdiviſions from the adjuncts; for if there be an itching joyned with it, it is called *Pſorophthalmia*; but if it come with hardneſs of the Eye-lids, it is called *Sclerophthalmia*.

There is alſo another Difference of Ophthalmies, taken out of *Galen*, 2. *de diff. febrium*, *cap.* 11. where he ſaith That ſome are Periodical, or ſuch as cometh by fits, to thoſe which have a very hot and moiſt head, and weak Eyes, fit to receive a defluxion. Theſe after many yeers have a conſumption of their Eyes, and loſe their ſight; hence it is called *Tabida Ophthalmia*, or a conſuming Ophthalmy, or an Ophthalmy which ends in a conſumption of the Eye.

There is alſo another difference taken from the immediate cauſe, which is defluxion or congeſti-

on,

on, that is, gathering of humors. It comes for the moſt part by defluxion; but by congeſtion only, when there is either a diſtemper or weakneſs of the Conjunctiva, by which there is no equality, or *Omoioſis* in the part, but many excrements are gathered together, from whence through the weakneſs of the part cometh an inflamation.

The Conjunct cauſe of an Odhthalmy is Chollerick, or Wateriſh, or Melancholick Blood flowing into the Eyes, or gathered into them. The Cauſes of defluxion are manifold, both external and internal ordinarily known. But the cauſes of Congeſtion or Cumulation are all ſuch as diſtemper or weaken the Eyes; ſo that an Ophthalmy which at the firſt came only by defluxion, in time by weakening of the part may ſpoil its concoction, and ſo it may be ſaid to be an Ophthalmy partly from defluxion, and partly from Congeſtion, which is often ſeen in old Ophthalmies.

But when an Ophthalmy comes only by way of defluxion, it is certain that it comes for the moſt part from the head, and almoſt all Authors acknowledg this. Notwithſtanding Experience teacheth that many violent Ophthalmies come from the Liver, and the humors that come from thence to the Eyes; inſomuch that Cauteries applied to the hinder part of the head, encreaſe the Diſeaſe, which otherwiſe are good Remedies when the defluxion is from the head, for they draw up the humors: and we have often ſeen that old Ophthalmies which were accounted incurable, have ſuddenly gone away of their own accord, by ſtopping of an iſſue which hath long been kept open, namely, when the motion of the humors from the inferior to the ſuperior parts hath ceaſed, which before was cauſed by the Cautery or Iſſue in the Neck, by Nature ſending part of the humors to the weakened Eyes, not far diſtant from the Iſſue.

That defluxion which cometh from the head, either is carried by internal Veins, which are under the Skull, into the Eyes; or by the external Veſſels, which is moſt frequent, namely, by the Veins, and Arteries which come from the Pericranium by the Forehead and Temples, to the Conjunctiva.

An Ophthalmy is eaſily known, becauſe the blood diffuſed upon the Conjunctiva may be eaſily ſeen, and if redneſs appear without a tumor coming of an external, it is called *Taraxis*, or Conturbation. But if beſides the redneſs there be ſwelling and heat with weeping, it is a true Ophthalmy, and at length if it ſo encreaſe that it cover the black of the Eye, and the Eyelids be inverted, then is it called *Chemoſis*.

Hence we fetch the ſigns of the Cauſes: for if it comes from repletion, and of blood alone, not only the Tunicle Adnata, but alſo the whol face will be red; as alſo there will be a ſwelling of the Veins, drouzineſs of the Sences and whol Body, and a manifeſt ſwelling.

If it come from Chollerick Blood, there will be ſharpneſs of tears, and not only the corners of the Eyes, but alſo the very cheeks will be corroded, there will be a pricking and intollerable pain, a little ſwelling with redneſs inclined to yellow; and the patient hath formerly uſed immoderate exerciſe been inflamed by the Sun, ſubject to anger, and eating of ſharp things, his complexion is Chollerick, or he is yong, and the diſeaſe cometh in hot weather.

If it come from flegm, there will be a heavy pain, little heat, not much redneſs, little ſhooring, no ſharp tears, but many, and ſlimy and glutinatious.

If it come of Melancholly, the Tumor will be ſmal, the redneſs will be dusky, few tears, little clammineſs, but very thick, a Melancholick conſtitution, and the like ſigns of Melancholly.

If the defluxion come from the inner parts of the Head, there will be a pain in the Head internally coming to the Roots of the Eyes. But if the defluxion come into the Eyes by the exterior Veſſels, the pain of the Head will be more external, the Veins of the Forehead will be diſtended, and alſo there will be perceived a great beating in the Temples.

The Prognoſtick is either in reſpect of an Ophthalmy coming, or already begun.

An imminent *Lippitudo* is known by an itching and pricking in the Eyes, with heat alſo, and the diſpoſition of the Eyes to receive defluxions, doth give advantage to the prognoſtick of it; wherefore they who have great Eyes are more ſubject to this diſeaſe: Moreover, the ſeaſon doth much conduce to the breeding of it, as *Hippocrates* teacheth, Aph. 11. Sect. 3. If the Winter be dry and full of North winds, and the Spring rainy, and with South winds, in Summer you ſhall have ſore Eyes very common, eſpecially in women, and men of moſt conſtitutions.

A flux of the Belly coming upon an Ophthalmy is good, according to *Hippocrates*, Aph. 17. Sect. 6. becauſe the ſuperfluity of humors is diſcharged, and carried downwards.

An old pain in the Eyes is very dangerous, for it ſignifies the cauſe to be violent, and it is to be feared leſt Impoſthume, Suppuration, or Ulcer do follow.

An Ophthalmy beginning in one Eye uſeth ordinarily to paſs to the other.

For the Cure of an Ophthalmy, the external cauſes muſt be firſt removed, as alſo the antecedent cauſes are to be evacuated, revelled, and repelled; the conjunct cauſe is to be derived and diſcuſſed, and the part affected ſtrengthened. For the performing of which Indications there are theſe uſual means to be applied.

Firſt, Let his Diet be cooling and moiſtening, of Meats that breed good nouriſhment, boyled rather

ther than roasted; of suppings rather than solid things; because the Eyes are moved in chewing: let him avoid sharp things, Salt and Pepper. As also things that Fume, and wil fill the Head with vapors: As also such as quickly turn into Choller, as Milk, Sugar, Honey, and al sweet things; Wine especially is not good; but instead thereof use Barly water, with Liquoris and cooling things.

Sleep is very profitable, because then the Eyes rest from motion which is apt to stir up pain and defluxion; besides pain is asswaged by sleep, and the matter causing the Disease is concocted: Let the Patient sleep with his Head high, and more inclined to that side which is least affected.

Let him avoid al motion of his Body, for rest is so profitable that *Celsus* commands that the first day of Cure they speak not, lest by that motion matter be carried to the head.

The Belly must be kept Solluble, for *Hippocrates* saith it is good for him that hath sore eyes to fal into a loosenes.

Let him avoid Passions, especially Anger.

Let the Air be temperate and pure, without Smoak, Dust, and Winds, and somwhat dark; of the light by moving the Spirits causeth defluxion: Let him have a black, green, or sky colored cloth before his eyes; and keep not only his sore but his sound eye shut or covered; for while the sound eye is moved towards the Objects the sore is moved also, whence the pain encreaseth; and this is the reason why men have greater pain when one eye is affected, than when both.

The Diet being thus ordered, let us lay down the Cure of the Disease; and since it comes for the most part of external Causes: first let them be removed lest they nourish it: next make a *Collyrium*, or Eye-water, or Rose and Plantane Water, with the white of an egg, and Womans milk, and let that be instilled into the Eye often in a day; as also let a linnen clout be dipped therein and applied.

At the same time let him sleep as much as he can; for sleep is very profitable to concoct and discuss the matter causing the Disease. If it yeild not to these, you must use the Remedies proper for a true *Ophthalmy*, in this Order.

First open a Vein (having given a Clyster) on the contrary Arm, and do it often, till you have made sufficient Evacuation and Revulsion: For *Avicen* teacheth, That in a true *Ophthalmy* you may let blood till they faint. But *Galen, lib. de curat. per sangu. miss. cap.* 17. tells a story of a Steward which was freed of a great *Ophthalmy* by blood letting: first three pound; and four hours after one pound: And in his 16.*cap.* of the same Book he affirmeth, That *Ophthalmies* are often cured in an hours space only by Phlebotomy: which could not be but by loosing of a great quantity, as they did in those times in that case.

Phlebotomy must be regulated and moderated according to the temper, age, sex, strength, and kind of the Disease; for in a Plethorick body, and when it comes from blood, you must take a greater quantity: but in a Chollerick body, or Melancholly, or Flegmatick, and other Circumstances which prohibit blood-letting, you must take less.

If the whol body be ful of blood, first open the Liver or *Median* vein, after the Head vein; but if you intend to loose but little blood, begin with the Head vein.

But in them who have a stoppage of any ordinary accustomed Evacuation by the Terms or Hemorrhoids, you must open the veins beneath, or apply Leeches to the Hemorrhoid veins.

After you have bled enough, you must labor to make Revulsion by applying of Cupping glasses to the shoulders and the back, both dry and with scarrification.

Frictions also are good for the same; and Ligatures in the lower parts.

To the aforesaid Revulsions you must ad means to derive, which are by the opening of the veins of the Forehead and Temples; to which some ad the opening of the veins in the corners of the Eyes: others apply Horsleeches to the Temples, others behind the Ears; al which derivations are very profitable after sufficient Evacuation.

Galen 13. Meth. Cap. 22. Commended the opening of an Artery in the Temples, when the Disease comes of very hot blood: And though this way of Practice is not used in our times, yet it is very excellent and profitable, without any danger; for in those lesser Arteries the blood is stanched by good Ligature and bondage only; nor is the Plaister mentioned by *Galen* in the same place necessary, which is made of Bole, Frankinsence, Mastick, and the Hair of an Hare, with the white of an Egg: yet for the better security, they who are afraid of the opening of an Artery, may make use of it; you may see what we have said concerning the opening of Arteries in the Cure of the Headach.

Vesicatories also are very profitable in this Disease, both applied to the Neck and behind the Ears.

When you have bled sufficiently you must purge, that the Chollerick Humors, especially such as make the blood hot, may be evacuated: And *Hippocrates* saith it is very requisite, *Aphor.* 17.

Sect. 6.

Sect.6. For it is good for him that hath an Ophthalmy to fall into a flux. And *Galen*, 13. *Meth. Cap.* 11. ſaith, *That he hath ſeen ſome who began to have ſore Eyes to be cured in one day only by a Purge.* But it muſt be made of gentle ingredients, and ſuch as do aſſay the heat of the blood, taking heed of al Medicines that have Scammony in them, and they be made thus.

Take of *Tamarinds half an ounce*: *clean Senna three drams*: *Annisſeeds half a dram*: *Endive, Succory, and Fumatory, of each half a handful*: *boyl them to four ounces*; *and when it is ſtrained infuſe in the liquor of the beſt Rhubarb and yellow Myrobalans rubbed with the Oyl of ſweet Almonds, of each one dram*: *yellow Saunders half a ſcruple*: *after ſtrain it again, and diſſolve of Manna and ſyrup of Roſes of each one ounce. Make a Potion.*

Or in Form of *Bolus*, thus.

Take of *Caſſia newly drawn ſix drams*: *Diacatholicon three drams*: *Pouder of Rhubarb one dram*: *make a* Bolus *with Sugar.*

So many times we preſcribe Pills in an Ophthalmy which comes of Flegm, namely, Lucis majoris, of Agarick, and the like: which though they are very good in the ſtate of the Diſeaſe, yet it is better to abſtain from in the beginning, leſt the Humors moved with too violent a Medicine ſhould fal more upon the part.

Nor is one Purge ſufficient, but you muſt repel it a diſtance, if the Diſeaſe be old; firſt giving good preparatives by Apozemes or Juleps proper for the Humor offending: therefore in the beginning allay the heat of the Humors with cooling Juleps, and ſuch as thicken; or with Emulſions made of the greater Cold Seeds, Lettice and white Poppy ſeeds, in ſome cooling Decoction, with a little Roſe water.

After univerſal Revulſions and Evacuations come to Topical Medicines with that part, which from the beginning muſt be repelling; yet the ſoundeſt Practicioners do warn us not to uſe repelling Medicines to the Eyes at firſt, becauſe for the moſt part they ſtop the Humor and retain it in the Eye, and ſo increaſe the grief and inflamation: For *Galen* Comment. Aphor. 31. Sect.6. reproves a certain Oculiſt which uſed theſe kind of Medicines in the beginning of the inflamation; for they may be ſuſpected in the beginning not to ſtay violent defluxions, but rather to keep them from coming forth: Hence it cometh to paſs that when the humors are ſharp the Cornea is ſomtimes ulcerated, but when they are many it is ſtreaked and ſomtimes broken: But *Avicenna, fen.3. lib.3. tract.1. cap.9.* ſaith, That it is fit, that if poſſible, we abſtain from *Collyriums* the firſt three dayes. And a little after, he ſaith, That we ought not in the beginning to apply ſtrong Aſtringents and thickners: becauſe they thicken the Tunicles or coats, and hinder reſolution and increaſe pain.

Yet we need be ſo exact in the time and number of dayes, becauſe the Diſeaſe is in ſome older, and in ſome yonger: But we may with profit apply Aſtringents at the beginning to the Forehead and Temples; for by thoſe, the veins by which the humors flow to the Eyes are ſtopt, and they driven back.

The Form of this is as followeth.

Take of *Bole-Armonick, ſanguis Draconis, Frankinſence, Maſtich, of each one dram: red Roſes, Balaſtis, or Pomegranat flowers, & the pouder of Lentils, of each two ſcruples: mix them with the white of an Egg and Vinegar of Roſes, and make a Cataplaſm for the Forehead, and Temples.*

Moreover, A Cataplaſm made of the Juyce of Nettles and Wheat flower, applied to the Forehead and Temples, is excellent to ſtay a defluxion by reaſon the Juyce of Nettles hath a ſpecial Vertue for the ſtopping of al ſorts of Bleedings, as it doth the bleeding at the Noſe or Mouth.

But if the pain be very great, which uſeth to encreaſe the defluxion upon the Eyes, you muſt apply Anodines or Medicines aſſwaging pains upon them. Among which new milk, eſpecially if it be that which a ſound woman giveth is beſt, if it be often milked freſh into the Eyes from the breaſt, and not be uſed ſtale, for then it wil grow ſowr and be offenſive to them: inſtead thereof you may uſe freſh Cheeſe made of Sheeps milk, which you muſt often change, leſt it turn like Butter, and ſo inflame the Eye.

The white of an Egg wel beaten til it turn to water, is commended of *Galen*, for it aſſwageth pain, and gently ſtayes the Flux.

Alſo an Apple roaſted in the Embers doth much aſſwage the pain of the Eyes.

The Mucilages, or ſlime of the ſeeds of Fleabane, Quinces, Fœnugreek, drawn with Roſe-water, do take away pain; but they muſt be renewed every day or they wil grow ſowr.

Of theſe things you may make divers kinds of Medicines. As for Example.

Take of *the pap of a ſweet Apple roaſted in the embers, an ounce*: *the Mucilage of the ſeeds of Fleabane and Quinces drawn with Roſe Water, of each ſix drams*: *the white of a new laid Eg beaten into water, and womans Milk, of each one dram*: *Make a Cataplaſm and apply it to the Eyes.* Or,

Take of *the pap of a roaſted Apple one ounce*: *Crums of white Bread half an ounce*: *one Egg mixed with Breaſt milk*: *Make of theſe a Cataplaſm.*

Thin ſlices of Goats Fleſh, Veal, or Mutton, often applied to the Eyes, do very much aſſwage pain.

A Cataplaſm may be made more eaſily with crums of white Bread, and Womans Milk mixed with Roſe Water.

If the pain be intollerable, you muſt fly to Narcotick or ſtupifying Medicines, which you muſt uſe ſparingly, and with good advice, becauſe they do thicken the vitive Spirits, and make the Humors and Tunicles groſs, by which the Sight will become dim.

Among Narcoticks for the Eyes, the white Troches of *Rhaſis* are principal; made with Opium thus:

Take of *Roſe water two ounces*: *the Water of an Eg well beaten one ounce*: *the white Troches of* Rhaſis *with Opium, one dram*: *Make a Collyrium, or Water for the Eyes.*

When the pain is aſſwaged, you muſt come to repelling Medicines, which muſt be gentle and mixed with Anodines continually: for this end make this Collyrium following:

Take of *Plantane and Roſe water, of each one ounce and an half*: *the Water of the white of an Egg beaten, one ounce*: *the white Troches of Rhaſis with Opium, one dram*: *Make a Collyrium, and drop it often into the Eyes.*

If the pain be very great, you may put to it Womans Milk, and the Mucilages aforeſaid.

This following Medicine doth powerfully reniſt inflamation, and ſtay the flux.

Take of *the white of an Eg, beat it in a pewter diſh with a piece of Allum very well, till it come to the conſiſtence of an Oyntment, which you muſt ſpread upon a linnen cloth, and apply it warm to the Eyes*: *After two or three hours take it away, leſt by its long continuance having an extraordinary aſtringent quality from the Allum, it retain the humors in the Eyes.*

Alſo the Water of Allum diſtilled in an Alembick, laid to the Eye with a linnen clout, doth allay the inflamation thereof.

The Salt of Lead diſſolved in Roſe Water, or Wine Vinegar, or mixed with Pomatum, doth powerfully cool the inflamation.

In the encreaſe of the Diſeaſe you muſt mix digeſtives with Repelling Medicines, and therfore you muſt put the Water of Eyebright, Fennel, Celondine, and the Mucilage of Linſeeds, *Althææ*, or Marſh-mallows, and Fœnugreek, *Gal.* 13. *Meth.* commends eſpecially the Decoction of Fenugreek, becauſe it digeſteth, concocteth, and moderately repelleth: but you muſt ſift the Fenugreek to take out the duſt, and after waſh it often in warm Water, before you boyl it, or make the Mucilage of it. You may thus make a Collyrium.

Take of *the Mucilage of the ſeed of Fœnugreek, and Quinces drawn with Roſe, and Eyebright Water, of each one ounce and an half*: *the white Troches of* Rhaſis *with Opium, one dram*: *Tutty prepared half a dram*: *Make a Collyrium.*

When the Diſeaſe is at the height, you may put Sarcocol to it, which is of a more digeſtive quality; but ſince it is apt to hurt the Eyes by its over dryneſs and ſharpneſs, it muſt firſt be ſteeped ſome few daies in Milk, often changed, and you muſt prepare but a little at one time, for if it be long kept it wil grow ſowr, and hurt the Eyes. You may uſe it thus:

Take of *the flowers of Chamomel, Melilot, and red Roſes, of each one pugil*: *the ſeeds of Fœnugreek cleanſed one dram*: *boyl them in Plantane Water. Diſſolve in four ounces of the ſtraining, Sarcocol one dram*: *Tutty prepared, and of the white Troches of* Rhaſis *without Opium, of each half a dram*: *Make a Collyrium.*

Authors do commend ſome Waters to be very powerful.

Quercetan commends the infuſion of *Crocus Metallorum* made in Eyebright and Fennel Water, which is ſtrong enough, and is no waies too ſharp for the Eyes as others are.

Crollius and the reſt of the Chymicks, do highly commend the Salt of Lead diſſolved in Roſe Water, to which they put a few grains of Sal Armonick. The manner is thus:

Take of *the Salt of Lead twelve grains*: *Sal Armonick three grains*: *Roſe Water three ounces*: *Mix them, and drop ſome into the Eye morning and evening.*

There is alſo a Water made of calcined or burnt Lead, or Litharge, or Menium infuſed in Vinegar, which laid to the Eye with a linnen clout preſently cureth their inflamation.

The Water of white Vitriol is moſt common, being diſſolved in Roſe or Plantane Water; this mitigateth inflamations, diſcuſſeth, and hindereth defluxions. Thus they are proportioned:

Take of *white Vitriol one ſcruple*: *Roſe or Plantane Water four ounces*: *Diſſolve the Vitriol in it at the fire*: *Strain the Water and drop it into the Eyes. If it be too ſharp, you may qualifie it as you pleaſe with more Roſe or Plantane Water.*

This following Medicine is not ſo ſharp, and more diſſolving.

Take of *Flower-de-luce Roots, and red Roſes, of each one ſcruple*; *Roſe and Plantane Water,*

of

of each three ounces: Boyl them to the third part with a gentle fire. Ad to the ſtraining white Vitriol poudered eight grains: Make a Collyrium.

Many Oyntments alſo are uſed for the Eyes, of which, theſe three following are the beſt, and ſometimes do wonders. The firſt is in *Renodæus* his Diſpenſatory, called *Unguentum Ophthalmium*, made thus:

Take of *Bole-Armenick waſhed in Roſe Water, one ounce: Lapis Calaminaris waſh'd in Eyebright Water, and Tutty prepared, of each two drams: Pearl finely poudered half a dram: Camphire half a ſcruple: Opium five grains: Butter as much as will be ſufficient to make an Oyntment according to art, for to be applied to the corners of the Eyes, and the Eye-lids.*

The ſecond is *John Cratoes*, which is ſet down in his Phyſical Counſels gathered by *Laurence Scholzius, Conſ. 6.* thus:

Take *Butter made in* May, *if you can get it, or other that is freſh and well worked, or the marrow of an Ox or Deers Shank, and mix therewith as much of the fine pouder of Lapis Calaminaris as it will receive, make an Oyntment.*

The third is from *Fœnotus in denario*, thus made:

Take of *Tutty prepared one ounce and an half: Camphire one dram: Verdegreece twelve grains: Beat the Tutty with the Camphire together in a Mortar, the Verdegreece by its ſelf, all very fine: Then take of freſh Butter one ounce: Roſe water, one dram: boyl them gently together, and then take them from the fire, and firſt put in your Camphire with your Tutty, then your Verdegreece by degrees; ſtir them very well, and reſerve them in a glaſs. Make an Oyntment and ſtrain it through a Sarſenet; anoint the inſide of the Eye-lids, eſpecially about the corners, and the Patient will ſoon recover. This is a moſt approved Medicine againſt Inflamations both with matter and dry, againſt itching of the Eyelids, and weeping.*

There is another very good, though ſharp, and therefore muſt be only applied to the Eye-lids; it is thus made: (And when al have failed, this hath cured the moſt deſperate Ophthalmy) namely, *Of May Butter, and Juyce of Tobacco boyled to an Oyntment, which muſt be applied, the Eyelids being cloſed, and in a dark room; as ſoon as the Patient opens his Eyes, it will begin to bite, and will certainly cure.*

In the height of the diſeaſe, you muſt apply more reſolving than repelling Medicines, therefore they which were preſcribed in the encreaſe of it are good in the height or ſtate of it, if you encreaſe the quantity of the Reſolvers, and diminiſh the Repellers. But eſpecially theſe two following Oyntments may be uſed not only in the ſtate and height, but in the declination, to the perfect cure of the Diſeaſe.

Firſt Fomentations to diſcuſs the matter, are good in the height of the Diſeaſe, made thus:

Take of *the flowers of Chamomel, Melilot, and Roſes, of each one pugil: Fœnugreek ſeeds prepared as before ſhewed, two drams: Make a Decoction, with which foment the Eyes with four double clouts. This is good in the end, of the encreaſe, and the beginning of the ſtate of the Diſeaſe; and in Winter you muſt uſe it hot, in Summer only warm.*

In the end of the ſtate and declination, you muſt make a more reſolving Fomentation, which is done by adding to the former Ingredients, the Leaves of Eyebright, Marjoram, Bettony, and a little white Wine.

The beſt and rareſt Secret for the Cure of an Ophthalmy, is made of the Oyl which cometh from Linnen burnt between two cloſe diſhes; one drop of which mixed with the ſpittle of a Child muſt be dropped into the Eye with a Feather.

In the declination, not only the Remedies afore mentioned, but alſo Waters more reſolving are to be uſed, as thus:

Take of *Frankinſence and Aloes, of each half a dram: Sarcocol waſhed with Breaſt-milk, one dram and an half: Saffron half a ſcruple: the Mucilage of Fœnugreek half an ounce: Fennel and Eyebright Water, of each one ounce and an half. Make a Collyrium.*

But if you wil, dry more, and alſo digeſt.

Take of *Sarcocol one dram and an half: Tutty prepared one dram: Aloes one ſcruple: Mirrh half a ſcruple: the Mucilage of Fœnugreek half an ounce: Vervain and Celondine Water, of each one ounce. Make a Collyrium.*

In a defluxion which comes of flegm, you may uſe ſtrong Reſolvers, not only in the declination, but alſo in the ſtate and encreaſe of the Diſeaſe very confidently.

Moreover, In the declination Authors do ſet down two ſpecial Remedies, namely, The uſe of Wine, and Baths: which firſt were delivered by *Hippocrates*, Aph. 31. Sect. 6. in theſe words; Drinking of Wine, or Baths, or a Fomentation, or Blood-letting, or a Potion, do take away pains in the Eyes.

Galen in his Commentary thereon, diſtinguiſheth the Caſe and the Time in which theſe Remedies are good, which we have explained as to Blood-letting, Fomentations, and Purging: But *Galen*

in the place cited, *cap.* 22. *lib.* 13. *meth.* teacheth that Baths are then good, when an Ophthalmy comes of ſharp humors, and when the body is ſufficiently cleanſed by purging and bleeding: becauſe they qualifie the ſharpneſs of humors, and ſtayes their motion and defluxion; the chiefeſt part of them being ſent forth by inſenſible tranſpiration, and that which remaineth of the Chollerick humor is eaſilier overcome by nature.

Galen alſo commends a Bath in a Flegmatick Ophthalmy, alwayes uſing before Evacuations neceſſary, becauſe the thick humors faſtened in the Eyes are extenuated by Baths, and ſo are eaſily diſcuſſed.

So *Galen* in the ſame place ſaith, That the drinking of pure Wine is good for thoſe who have thick blood in the veins of their eyes, and have not groſs or phlegmatick bodies; becauſe Wine doth diſſolve, diffuſe, and diſcuſs the thick blood, and alſo openeth obſtructions.

For the taking away of the remainder of Redneſs and Inflamation, make this Fomentation following.

Take of *the Leaves of Eyebright and Pennyroyal of each one handful: the Flowers of Chamomel, Melilot, and red Roſes; and of Oaten chaff, of each one pugil: Fœnugreek-ſeed three drams: Fennel-ſeed one dram: make a Decoction, adding in the end a little white Wine, foment the Eye with this, dipping therein linnen Cloaths, or with bags being half filled with the aforeſaid ingredients.*

Fennel watter alone mixed with aſtringent wine is a good Fomentation to diſcuſs the reliques, and to ſtrengthen the eyes.

An Egg boyled hard, and the ſhel taken off, and cut in the middle, laid hot to the eye, takes away the remainder of redneſs.

So doth a Fomentation made only of the Decoction of Hyſop.

An old Ophthalmy requires another aud longer way of Cure, and is ſometimes very troubleſom to a Phyſitian; becauſe he can hardly hinder a delicate and noble part from receiving a defluxion by wh ch it hath been long weakned.

Moreover, This Diſeaſe is not only nouriſhed by defluxion, but by congeſtion whereby there is deſtemper brought into the part, which alſo is hard to cure.

But for the Cure of it you muſt firſt obſerve whether the Diſeaſe come not from a hot Diſtemper of the Liver, as often it doth: and then you muſt firſt adminiſter ſuch things as amend that. And chiefly after convenient Purging and Bleeding, Baths are good, Whey, and Mineral waters of Vitriol, as alſo Horſleeches applyed to the Hemorrhoids.

But if the matter of the Diſeaſe come only from the diſtemper of the Brain through which watery Humors flow to the eyes being mixed with ſome blood: then you muſt fal to purging the head with ordinary Pills, twice, thrice, or four times in a month, after you have given univerſal Medicines, as Apozemes or the like; which you may make according to our deſcription in the cure of cold Diſeaſes of the Head.

If the aforeſaid Purges with other Medicines now preſcribed do not prevail, you muſt uſe Mercurial Purges as the moſt excellent, by way of intermillion.

Moreover a Cautery applied to the hinder part of the head is very profitable, to divert the humor flowing.

Inſtead whereof you may apply a Seton to the Neck behind, with better ſucceſs, to them who can endure it.

A Veſicatory applied to the fore-part of the Head, as *Foreſtus* reports, *Obſ.* 11. *lib.* 11. did a wonderful cure upon an Old Woman with ſore eyes.

But *Rondoletius* ſayes, That a Cautery applied to the Coronal Suture, is better than to any other part.

Maſticatories are profitable for the deriving of the Defluxion, but not Errhins becauſe they are applied ſo neer the part affected that they may draw humors to it.

But if the Brain doth ſeem to want drying, you muſt have recourſe to your ſweating diet drink of China, Sarſa, and the like.

To theſe you may ad Topicks, which reſolve and ſtrengthen the eyes; ſuch as are Fomentations and Unguents before mentioned for the ſtate and declination of the Diſeaſe, which alſo are excellent for old Ophthalmies: nor muſt you forget the waſhing of the eyes as above mentioned with Fennel-water and red Wine, to take away the remainder of the redneſs, and to ſtrengthen the eyes every morning.

For which purpoſe alſo,

Take of *the beſt Aloes, and of Tutty prepared, of each ſix drams: white Sugar one ounce: Roſe-water, and mild white wine, of each ſix ounces: ſet them in the Sun fourty dayes in a glaſs well ſtopt: put ſome drops of this water not ſtrained, into the Eyes.* Or,

Take of *white Wine three pints: Roſe-water half a pint: Tutty prepared three drams: pou-*

dered

dered Cloves one dram: Camphire half a dram: mix them in a glaſs cloſe ſtopt, and ſhake them for two hours, and ſet in the Sun one whole month; remembering every day a little before Sunſetting to take it out of the air, and never bring it forth till the Sun is riſen: two or three drops of this water ſtrained by filtration, muſt be put into the Eye before he go to ſleep, or in the morning one or two hours before he riſe.

This takes away the oldeſt redneſs; it dryes up weeping, and Fiſtulaes; it conſumes al ſuperfluous moiſtures upon the outward membranes and quickens the ſight. This alſo following is excellent.

Take of *Wheat two handful: poudered Salt one handful: put them in a Copper Veſſel, and put white Wine to them two fingers breadth above them; cover the Veſſel, and let them ſtand in the ſhade ſix or ſeven dayes till the liquor turneth green, ſtirring them often with a wooden Spatula, after pour off the liquor by inclination without the dregs, and if need be, filter it. One drop into the Eye, takes away redneſs, and defluxion, and all ſpots or blemiſhes thereon, and quickeneth the ſight.*

Solenander, commends highly the Decoction of Quince Leaves, which are to be gathered without breaking in the beginning of the ſpring, and kept diligently that they neither be duſty, nor muſty; nor otherwiſe defiled: and when you uſe them, boyl one handful of them in pure water, and let the Eyes be often waſhed therewith: It is a wonder (ſaith he) to ſee how it doth preſerve, cleanſe, and ſtop Rhewms in the Eyes.

Sometimes in an inveterate Ophthalmy much filth like matter is gathered in the eyes, which can ſcarcely be cured with Collyriums, or other remedies: but in this caſe fine Cotton dried at the fire and laid like a ſmal pillow upon the eye and rowled down, is very good; for the next morning you may take much filth away with it. And with this Remedy uſed many nights together many eyes have been cured which could not otherwiſe; and this kind of Medicine prevailes chiefly among Children that have ſore eyes.

For a Concluſion of this Chapter, it wil not be amiſs to ſet down the experimental Medicines of *Sacutus Luſitanus* who cured an old Ophthalmy wch would no otherwiſe be removed in a whol yeer with a Mercurial Unguent, although there was no ſign of the French Pox: being perſwaded by *Mercurialis*, who in his Book of the French Pox ſaith, *When you ſee any Diſeaſe that will not be Cured by ordinary means, imagine it to be the French Pox.* He asked the Patient if ever he had the French Diſeaſe, or ever lay with a foul bodied Woman? He denied al but only confeſſed that he lay with one Man once in the bed, whom he ſuſpected to be Frenchified: Upon this conjecture, the Phyſitian preſcribed a ſudorifick diet of Sarſa for twenty dayes, but to no end. And though the Diſeaſe was chiefly in the upper parts, ſo that it was to be feared, leaſt if he fluxed him at the mouth with Mercury that the humors ſhould fal more into the eyes, but in regard it was old, and the force of the defluxion was attained, he preſcribed the Unguent of Mercury after his body was wel Purged, and by it in ſeven dayes ſpace after plentiful Salivation or Spitting, his pains ceaſed, that inflamation was gone, the itching abated which was before in his eye-lids, with much acrimony: And ſo leaving him only an iſſue in his Arm to breath the Brain; and preſcribing a good diet, which he kept; the Patient returned to his former health.

The ſame *Zacutus Luſitanus* in his *Praxis ad Hiſt.* commends that Water and Oyntment which we mentioned in the Cure of Suffuſion, for an old Ophthalmy.

Chap. 9. *Of* Hypopyo, *or Matter under the* CORNEA.

WHen the Inflamations of the Eyes are great, and ſwelling; ſomtimes they cannot be reſolved, but they wil be ſuppurated; which is much to be feared, and to be prevented by al means: For from thence Ulcers wil come; and ſomtimes Matter is gathered under the Cornea, which Diſeaſe is called *Upopuon*; and this comes often from a ſtroak or contuſion, & blood-ſhotneſs: ſomtimes it covereth al the *Pupilla*, and hinders the ſight: ſomtimes it compaſſeth the circle of the Iris, and is like the pairing of a nail, and thence it is called *Onux*, or *Unguis*.

This Diſeaſe is known not only by the whiteneſs which is like Matter, but alſo from the Inflamation and Blood-ſhot that went before; for when the Eye is moved, there appears a motion of the Pus or Matter urder the Cornea. There is a redneſs in the Eye, and Pulſation; or at leaſt went before it.

For

For the Cure, firſt uſing univerſal Medicines, if there remain any reliques of Inflamation, you muſt take them away by the Remedies preſcribed in the Ophthalmy: then you muſt apply gently Diſcutients mixed with Emollients, leſt when the thin part is reſolved, the matter become thicker, and leſs fit to be diſſolved. Therefore make your Fomentations of the Decoction of the flowers of Chamomel, Melilot, the ſeeds of Fleabane and Fenugreek, to be uſed with Linnen, or Bags. You may ad the Leaves of Eye-bright, Celandine, and Fennel ſeed: or uſe this following Collyrium.

Take of the Water of Vervain, Rue, Celandine, Roſes, and Fennel, of each half an ounce: the beſt Aloes and Tutty prepared, of each half a dram: Sugar-candy one dram. Pouder and mix them; with a little Breaſt-milk make a Collyrium, of which drop ſome into the Eyes twice or thrice in the day.

This following is excellent:

Take of *Saffron, Aloes, and Mirrh, of each one dram: Wine three drams: Honey ſix drams: Diſſolve the Saffron in the Wine; then mix them with the Aloes and Mirrh, then put them to the Honey, and anoint the Eyes.*

Laſtly, Thoſe Medicines which were preſcribed in the declination of an Ophthalmy, in the ſpots or Maculæ of the Eyes, and in Suffuſion, or Cataract are good here.

If the Matter cannot be diſcuſſed with Reſolving Medicines, you muſt ſeek others. *Gal.* in 14. *Meth.* reports, That there was one *Juſtus* an Oculiſt in his time, that cured many of this Diſeaſe by ſhaking their heads; for ſetting them ſtraight upon a ſeat, and taking hold on both ſides of their head, he ſhaked them till he perceived the matter to deſcend.

But if the matter which hindereth the ſight cannot be thus cured neither, *Galen* in the place cited flies to Manual Operation, or Chyrurgery; whom *Ætius* and others do follow, which is done by pricking of the Eye, which is uſed alſo in a Cataract. Which operation, as it is little uſed in our times, ſo it requireth the hand of a moſt skilful Chyrurgion; and it is much to be feared, leſt when the Cornea is opened, the Watery Humor come forth with the matter.

Chap. 10. *Of* Phlyctænæ, *or Bliſters in the Eyes.*

IN the *Cornea* and the *Adnata Tunica*, as in other parts of the Body, there breed ſometimes little bliſters full with water, like bubbles, or bladders, which come from the heat of the Humor *Phlyctainai* in Greek, and called in Arabick *Bothor*: and they are little tumors like Gromwel ſeeds, coming from a ſharp watery humor.

They are eaſily known. They in the Adnata are red: in the Cornea, blackiſh, if they be outward; but white if they be in the inner part of it.

As to the Prognoſtick: *Phlyctænæ* which grow in the Adnata, are leſs dangerous than they in the Cornea. The more ſuperficial theſe Puſtles are, the leſs dangerous they are; the more inward, the more danger; for it is to be feared leſt the whol thickneſs of the Cornea be eroded, and ſo either the watery humor wil flow forth, or elſe the Uvea wil ſtart out.

The Cure conſiſteth wholly in the reſolving of the matter conjoyned, and the averting of the antecedent cauſe. And we muſt take heed leſt we bring theſe Puſtles to ſuppuration, leſt they turn into Ulcers.

Therefore thoſe Univerſal Evacuations, Revulſions, and Derivations, which were declared in the Cure of the Ophthalmy, muſt here be uſed.

Afterwards we muſt apply Topicks, or Medicines to the part, which at the firſt muſt gently repel, and diſcuſs; ſuch as were laid down for them in the treaty of the encreaſe of Ophthalmy, which are moſt proper when there is an Inflamation alſo, as it often falleth out.

Afterwards you may uſe more drying and diſſolving Medicines, ſuch as are deſcribed for the ſtate and declination of Ophthalmy; and eſpecially the Oyntments there ſet down, which are very proper to diſcuſs and dry up Puſtles.

Chap. 11. *Of the Ulcers in the* Cornea *and* Adnata.

AFter an Ophthalmy, there followeth often Ulcers in the Tunicles called *Cornea* and *Adnata*, when it comes to ſuppuration. They follow alſo the *Phlyctænæ* or Puſtles, which bred in the *Cornea*, but not till they break. They alſo uſe to come from ſharp corroding humors flowing into the Eyes.

There are divers ſorts of theſe Ulcers mentioned in Authors, taken from their divers circumſtances, as they are ſuperficial or profound, broad or narrow, and according as they differ in ſhape and figure, and the like. So a hollow, narrow, and hard Ulcer is called *Bothrion*, or *Foſſula* like a little trench,

trench: A broad and not ſo deep an Ulcer, is called *Coiloma*: That which cometh in the Circle Iris, is called *Argemon*, or *Ulcus Coronale*: Finally, that which is deep and hard, is called *Epicayma*, and *Egcayma*.

The knowledg of Ulcers is eaſie, for they may be ſeen: If the Ulcer be in the Cornea, there will be a ſmal white blemiſh in the black of the Eye; if in the Adnata, there wil be a ſmal white blemiſh in the white of the Eye, becauſe the Veins of the Tunicle Adnata are ful of blood.

The Ulcer of the Eyes are dangerous, and hard to be cured; but more in the Cornea than in the Adnata. An Ulcer in the Pupilla is more dangerous, becauſe after it is cured, it wil leave a Scar, which wil hinder the perſpicuity of the Cornea, and ſo the ſight wil be hurt; and if the whol Tunicle be corroded, the Watery Humor wil flow out, and the Uvea ſtart forth.

The Cure of this Diſeaſe, as of other Ulcers, is, By clenſing and drying means; but they muſt be very gentle by reaſon of the tenderneſs of the part, and exquiſitneſs of the ſence. But you muſt firſt uſe ſuch things as revel and hinder the flux of humors from the Eyes; as in Ophthalmy either old or new, were declared. And if there be an Inflamation with it, you mix muſt things that are proper for that. With which alſo you may uſe things that aſſwage pain, if there be any.

Theſe things do moderately dry and clenſe: Sugar, Honey, Saffron, Mirrh, Frankinſence, Aloes, Sarcocol, Tutty, and Ceruſs; of which you may make theſe following Medicines:

Take of *Barley and Fœnugreek Water boyled, four ounces: the beſt Honey half an ounce: or of the Syrup of dried Roſes, one ounce: Make a Collyrium to waſh the Eyes often.*

Take of *Vervain and Plantane Water, of each two ounces: Sugar candy half an ounce. Mix them for a Collyrium.*

Take of *the Water of Honey diſtilled in* Balneo, *and of Roſe water, of each equal parts.* Or,

Take *a hard Egg peel'd, cut it in two pieces, and taking out the Yolk fill the hollow with the pouder of Sugar candy; tie it faſt, and hang it in a Wine Celler, and you ſhall have a Water drop from it, which is excellent to clenſe the Eyes without pain.*

But if you wil have it ſtronger mix the Pouder of Mirrh with your Sugar candy.

Montanus highly commends this Pouder following:

Take *twenty Whites of new laid Eggs, put them in a pewter diſh in the Sun till they are dry: then pouder them finely with as much Sugar; and this pouder put into the Eyes, doth much good without cauſing pain.*

In the Progreſs of this Diſeaſe, if you will clenſe and dry more, put to the former Medicines the white Troches of *Rhaſis*, Frankinſence, Aloes, Mirrh, Sarcocol, or the like, but in a ſmal quantity leſt it be too ſharp, and alſo mix them with Milk, white of an Eg, ſome Mucilages, and other Anodines, or things that mitigate and aſſwage pain.

Tutty is the beſt, for it cauſeth no pain, and dryeth and healeth; therefore Collyriums, or Unguents are good that are made thereof. And chiefly the Oyntment preſcribed in the cure of Ophthalmy, which hath in it a great quantity of Tutty.

This following is very clenſing, drying, and healing.

Take of *Sarcocol ſteep'd in Roſe Water, Ceruſs and waſhed Aloes, Mirrh, and Tutty prepared, of each half a dram: Sugar candy one dram: With the Mucilage of Gum Traganth drawn with Roſe Water, make a Collyrium, with which anoint the Eye-lids.*

Chap. 12. *Of a Cancer in the* Cornea.

AS a Cancer may come in other parts, ſo ſomtimes it breeds in the Eyes. And though the knowledg and Cure of a Cancer is in the Treatiſe of external Diſeaſes, yet we wil ſpeak briefly here of thoſe things which properly belong to a Cancer in the Eye.

A Cancer is either occult, or hidden, or ulcerated. The occult is reckoned among Tumors, and it is called a Cancerous Tumor, or Cancer of the Eye: But the ulcerated is called a Cancerous Ulcer in the Eye.

But in both there is an unequal hardneſs, a blew Lead color, a ſtrong pricking pain, eſpecially about the Head and Temples: the Veins adjoyning are blew, and very full. Somtimes aduſt and ſharp blood floweth from the part affected, when the Cancer is ulcerated. And this pain is encreaſed by any warm Medicines.

This Diſeaſe is incurable, as wel in the Eye as in any other part, when it is fixed; except it be taken away by manual operation.

Authors propound two waies of Cure, namely a True, and a Palliative. A true Cure (as was ſaid) cannot be wrought but by Chyrurgery when the Cancer is fixed: but when it is new in the beginning, it may be cured by often evacuation of the Chollerick humor, firſt having let blood; as *Galen* teacheth 2. *ad Glauconem, cap.* 10. where he boaſteth that he hath often cured this diſeaſe, adjoyning a convenient Diet with the aforeſaid Phyſick.

A Pal-

A Palliative Cure, which tends only to the mitigation of Symptoms, is done not only by the aforesaid Evacuations but also by convenient Topicks.

First then you must appoint a convenient Diet, such as is good against burnt Choller; and it must be cooling and moistning.

Then draw Blood on the same side, and apply Horsleeches behind the Ears, and also to the Hemorrhoids if they do appear, applying Cupping Glasses to the Shoulders, and use other kinds of Revulsions.

You must also prepare and Purge Melancholly by Potions, Apozemes, opening Broaths, by Magistral Syrups, and the like: But above al for the purging of Melancholly black Hellebor wel prepared is the best; and by giving the Extract thereof twice or thrice, we have somtimes cured a Cancer in the beginning.

These Remedies do exceedingly diminish the Humors that flow to the Eyes, and take away pains and other Symptoms: for which purpose also Topicks are good, such as are prescribed in Ophthalmy, for asswaging of pain: especially the Collyria made of Mucilages, the white Troches of Rhasis, and prepared Tutty, with the water of Roses, Nightshade, and Plantane.

This following Water is a good Collyrium to wash the Eye with.

Take of *the Roots of Pilewort, and herb Robert, of each two handfuls: Ribwort, Nightshade, Borrage, Bugloss, Purslain, Eyebright, and Bettony, of each one handful: green Frogs, and whites of Eggs, of each twelve in number: the seeds of Fœnugreek and Quinces, of each one ounce: let the Roots and Seeds be bruised, and the Leaves Cut: then pour upon them of Eyebright and Rosewater of each one pint: mix them and Distil them in a pewter Still.*

The flesh of Chickins is very powerful to asswage pain: and some say that the Disease it self hath been Cured by it alone. So *Maritius Cordæus*, Comment. 7. in lib. 1. *Hipp.* of Womens Diseases, relates a history of a noble Woman, who had the right side of her face a long time infected with a Cancer ulcerated, and having tryed al means she could from Italian, French, German, and Spanish Physitians, was at length Cured with this vulgar Medicine by a Barber: He took Chickins and cut them in thin broad pieces, which he often applied to the Cancer: Others apply the flesh of yong Pigeons so cut, while it is warm.

Finally, The true Cure of a fixed Cancer is only by taking it out by the roots, and is by a taking out of the Eye; which *Fabricius Hildanus* saith may be done very safely; and he sheweth the manner and Circumstances thereof at large, *Observ.* 1. *Cent.* 1. so that we shal not here Repeat them.

Chap. 13. *Of the Rupture of the Cornea.*

SOmtimes the *Cornea* Tunicle is so divided, that the watery Humor, and somtimes the *Uvea* also cometh forth; and this is called the Rupture of the *Cornea.*

The Cause of this is an Ulcer, or Wound in the Membrane, or a great afflux of Humors, by which the said Membrane is so distended, that it cracks in the middle, and the Humors conteined are let out: As *Paræus* reports it happened to a certain Woman in Paris, *lib.* 16. *cap.* 13.

This Disease is for the most part incurable, and takes away sight, because the Humors of the eye cast forth cannot be repaired: but if the Wound be smal, so that only a portion of the watery Humor is only lost, it may be Cured; for the watery humor may somtimes be renewed: as *Galen* taught 4. *de symp. caus. cap.* 2.

You must use Astringent and Glutinating Medicines; having first Bled and Purged if necessary, as the white of an Egg, with the white Troches of Rhasis dropt into the Eye.

Let the part be Fomented with a Decoction of red Roses of *Solomons* Seal, Bramble buds, shepheards-purse, and Plantane boyled in red Wine if there be no inflamation; but if there be, in spring water.

Take of *Quinces half a pound: red Roses three pugils: Acacia two drams: Saffron one scruple: boyl these in red Wine, and make a Cataplasm to be applied to the part.*

For the perfect Consolidation and Cure, use this Collyrium.

Take of *washed Aloes, Tutty prepared, and Sarcocol steept in breast Milk, of each half a scruple: Saffron five grains: with the Mucilage of Gum Traganth, make a Collyrium.*

CHAP.

Chap. 14. *Of the Coming forth of the* Uvea.

UPon the Rupture of the *Cornea*, often comes the ſhooting forth of the *Uvea*, which is called in Greek, *Propto ſis Ragoidous*: there are four kinds mentioned by Authors, eſpecially by *Paulus*; of which the firſt is called *Mucocephalon*, becauſe it is like the head of a Fly: and this is when a ſmal portion of the *Uvea* comes forth. The ſecond is called *Staphuloma*, and this is when a great part of the *Uvea* comes forth ſo that it is like the ſtone of a Raiſon. The third is called *Melos*, when there is ſo great eruption of the *Uvea*, that it ſeems like an Apple. The fourth is called *Elos*, or Clavus, when the *Uvea* being come forth groweth hard.

The Cure of this Diſeaſe is Difficult, and the more when the *Uvea* comes moſt forth: but when it is ſmal, as in *Muocephalon* it is Curable by moderate aſtringents, ſuch as we preſcribed in the Rupture of the *Cornea*.

The Antients as *Paulus Aetius*, and *Celſus*, do labor to Cure them when old and not moveable by Medicines, with Chirurgery; but this is now out of faſhion, by reaſon of its great difficulty and doubtful ſucceſs: but if any wil try it, he ſhal find the way exactly ſet down in *Jerom. Fabricius, ab Aquapendente, cap. de ſtaphylomate.*

Chap. 15. *Of* Ægylops, *and Fiſtula Lacrymalis.*

HItherto we have ſpoken of the Diſeaſes of the Eyes which happen in the humors and upon the Tunicles; it remaineth that we ſpeak of the Diſeaſes of the Corners of the Eyes and Eye-lids.

And firſt of the Tumor in the great Corner of the Eye, by the Root of the Noſe, called *Ægylops*, and *Anchylops* if not broken.

This little Tumor, is either with, or without Inflamation.

When it is inflamed, it is like a ſmal Phlegmon: or Bile, red about, with a ſhooting pain. And it comes of thin and chollerick blood that flows into the part by the veins of the Temples, Fore-head, and Face, and ſo impoſtumateth; which being open produceth an Ulcer, which ſpeedily turns hol-low, and then it is called *Fiſtula Lachrymalis*. And if this continueth one yeer, there is a Caries or foulneſs of the Bone, as *Hippocrates* ſaith, 45. *Sect.* 6. In Ulcers of a yeer old, the Bone is foul: And this Caries is known by the Cavity, which is known by the finger: and by the ſtinking Matter flowing from it.

Somtimes it comes without Inflamation, and then it is bred of a thick ſlimy Humor, like Pulſe or Hony: As the Tumors called *Atheromata*, *Steatomata*, *Meliceris*, which are without pain.

The Cure of an *Ægylops* is very hard, both in regard Medicines are ill to be applied to it, by reaſon the ſight is ſo nigh; and becauſe an Impoſtume wil quickly Ulcerate in ſuch a tender part (as aforeſaid) But it is moſt difficult when the Impoſtume breaks out at the Noſe, and the Matter flows through the Noſtrils; becauſe thereby the Bones wil be putrified.

Somtimes *Ægylops* turns to a Cancer, which comes with a prieking pain; extenſion of the veins, hardneſs and blewneſs of the skin, and then it is better to let it alone, becauſe Medicines wil enlarge it, and encreaſe pain.

A *Lachrymal Fiſtula* that is newly begun, and which hath an external orifice to be ſeen, is cureable by Medicines; but that which is deep and old, and hath fouled the Bone, is ſcarcely Cured without burning.

The divers times of theſe Diſeaſes require divers Medicines.

And Firſt in the beginning of an *Ægylops* you muſt revel the defluxion from the part by bleeding and purging; and uſe repelling Medicines to the Forehead, by which ſomtimes the Progreſs is ſtopt before it come to ſuppuration.

For this end, uſe the following *Ceratum*.

Take of *Pomegranate-peels, Acacia, Pomegranate flowers, Galls, Cypreſs-nuts, Roch-Alum, Bole-Armenick, of each one dram: white Wax four ounces: Turpentine three drams: Make a Cerate.*

After the uſe of Repercuſſives, you muſt apply Reſolvers to the part affected, as this Decoction.

Take of *pure Honey and Aloes, of each two ounces: Mirrh one ounce: Saffron one dram*

and an half: Water two pints: Boyl them gently to the consumption of half: dip a piece of soft Spunge therein, squeeze it a little, and apply it hot to the part, bind it on; and do thus often.

Amatus Lucitanus, Curatione 68. *Cent.* 5. prescribes a Cerat against Ægylops, which he highly commends, which is this:

Take of *the Powder of Cockle shels, two drams: Mirrh, washed Aloes, and Frankinsence, of each half an ounce: Sarcocol, Dragons blood, and Ceruss, of each three drams: Opopanax dissolved in Wine, Vinegar and Blood-stone, of each one dram and an half: Saffron two scruples: Wax and Rozin, of each three ounces: Mix them according to art at the fire, and make a Cerate to be applied to the corner of the Eye.*

If the Tumor wil not be resolved with the former Medicines, but wil come to suppuration, you must help it forward with a Plaister of Simple Diachylon; or if there be pain or inflamation, you may apply a Cataplasm of Crums of Bread. If it wil not break, open it with a Lancet, and delay not least the matter contained do corrode the parts, and make an incurable Fistula. Many open it with a hot Iron, but the cold is best.

After the imposthume is opened, you must clense the Ulcer, and heal it as others. But if it fistulate, cure it thus:

First make a general Evacuation by bleeding and purging. You must divert the defluxion from the Head by Cupping-glasses, Vesicatories, and Caustick applied to their proper places; and then use the decoction of China, or Sarsaparilla, for many daies. And at the same time dry the Brain with Fumes and Head Pouders, as in a Catarrh.

Instead of a Cautery you may apply a Seton to the Neck; for *Fabricius Hildanus* reports Obs. 41. Cent. 1. that it hath done it alone without other means.

If the distemper of the Liver be the Cause of the defluxion (as it often is) you must have a special care to administer Medicines proper for that.

When you use Topicks, open the orifice of the Ulcer, and dilate it by degrees, with a Tent made of an Elder pith, a spunge made fit, or a Gentian Root. When it is large enough, apply this following Medicine, commended by *Foreſtus, Obs.* 17. *Lib.* 11.

Take of *Honey two ounces: Verdegreece one dram: Water of Rue four ounces: Pouder the Verdegreece very fine, and boyl it with the rest at a gentle fire till the third part be consumed, and make a warm injection of the strained Liquor with a Syringe: if this be too sharp, wash the Ulcer every day with the Water of Rue, and after apply a little* Unguentum Apostolorum. *Continue this course for three weeks, laying on some convenient Plaister, and defending the Eye with Rose Water.*

When the Ulcer is sufficiently purged, use this following Collyrium to incarnate and cicatrize:

Take of *Frankinsence, Aloes, Dragons blood, Pomegranate flowers, Allum, and Antimony, of each one dram: Verdegreece five grains: Pouder them fine, and with Rue Water make a Collyrium to be dropt in with a stalk of Rue, thrice in a day, and put in a tent wet therewith, laying upon it a Diapalma Plaister: Lessen your Tent by degrees, and at length take it quite out, only washing the part with the aforesaid Collyrium, and laying on Diapalma.*

Foreſtus in the place cited saith, that new fistulaes have been cured thus by a famous Chyrurgeon of his time.

If it appear that the bone be foul, it must only be cured by an actual Cautery; the manner of which is exactly described in *Paræus, Fallopius*, and *Aquapendente* in their Works: But *Fabricus Hildanus* Obs. 22. Cent. 5. boasteth that he cured a Fistula lachrymalis with foulness at the Bone, that was four yeers old, and counted desperate, in a child of thirteen yeers of age, with Medicines alone, dilating of it with prepared Spunges, and after sprinkling Euphorbium into it, and that very much and often; and after applying only an Emplaister of Gum Elemi. Having used these things diligently for the space of divers weeks, he perceived a scale of the Bone, which he drew forth; and then with half a drop of Tolutan Balsom upon a little Lint, once in a day conveyed into the Ulcer, he perfectly consolidated the Fistula in a short time.

Chap. 16. *Of Rhyas and Encanthis.*

ANother Disease often followeth the Fistula *Lachrymalis* called *Rhyas*; and this is the consuming or diminishing of the smal flesh in the great corner of the Eye, from whence it is enlarged: This comes also of other Causes, as sharp humors falling upon the part, or from clensing Medicines formerly misapplyed.

Encanthis is contrary to *Rhyas*, which is the immoderate encrease and swelling of the Caruncle,

or

or little fleſh in the great corner of the Eye; and this comes from much blood flowing to the part, and the not orderly curing and drying up of the Ulcer.

The Cure of *Rhyas* is by Incarnatives, ſuch as follow:

Take of *red Roſes, one pugil: Cypreſs Nuts, and Myrtles, of each two drams: Aloes one dram and an half: old Wine one pint: Boyl them till the fourth part be conſumed: waſh the part often with this Decoction.* Or,

Take of *Aloes and Frankinſence, of each one dram: Dragons blood half a dram: red Roſes and ſeeds of Sumach, of each one ſcruple: Roſe Water one pint: boyl them to the conſumption of the fourth part. Make a Collyrium.*

Encanthis is cured by taking away of the ſuperfluous fleſh growing in the corner of the Eye; this is done with eating Medicines, beginning with the mildeſt firſt, therfore firſt uſe burnt Allum; after proceed to *Apoſtolorum Ægyptiacum*, or burnt Vitriol. But if theſe will not do, cut it out, or burn it with an Iron. But before you do theſe things you muſt prepare the Body with convenient Evacuations leaſt you cauſe a new defluxion: but in the cutting, burning, or conſuming of this Caruncle with Medicines, you muſt take heed that you take it not wholly away, but only that which is ſuperfluous, otherwiſe it wil turn to *Rhyas*.

Chap: 17: *Of Epiphora.*

THe word *Epiphora* ſignifieth any Defluxion into any part. But through cuſtom it is uſed eſpecially for the defluxion of a thin Rhewm from the Eyes; hence it is called involuntary weeping, which flows dayly from the corners of the Eyes.

For the producing of which Humor flowing preternaturally there is an evil diſpoſition in the part from whence it cometh, and in the part receiving it: the part that ſends this humor is the Brain, which when it is too hot, or too cold gathereth a watery Humor, and ſo ſends it to the inferior parts, which are fit to receive it: The part receiving is the Glandle or Kernel by the great corner of the Eye, and the Caruncle upon the corner; the thinneſs, or thickneſs, or other weakneſs of which parts cauſeth that they eaſily entertain the humors that flow thither. Therefore an Epiphora happeneth often in an Egylops, a Lachrymal Fiſtula, a Rhyas, and Encanthis, becauſe the ſuperfluous humors uſe to be eaſily received into the parts affected.

This humor is carried from the Brain into the corners of the Eyes, ſomtimes by the internal Veins, ſomtimes by the external, as we ſhal ſhew you hereafter by their proper ſigns.

But the Humor which maketh an Epiphora, is ſomtimes cold, and brings no other inconvenience, but only defluxion, ſomtimes it is ſalt and ſharp, and cauſeth pain, heat, and redneſs, and exulceration of the Eyebrows.

There need no ſigns to be given of Tears, they are viſible. It wil appear by what hath been ſaid whether they are cold or hot, and ſharp. But we muſt diſtinguiſh whether they come by the internal or external Veſſels. When by the internal, there is pain in the inſide of the head, and ſomtimes violent neeſing. But if they come by the external without the Skul. The Veſſels of the Forehead and Temples are ſtretched, and the head ſeems to be bound about and aſtringent means, outwardly applyed do help.

As to the Prognoſtick; New Epiphora's coming from outward cauſes are eaſily cured, eſpecially in youth: but old, and in old men very hardly. They which proceed from other diſeaſes, as Ægylops, Fiſtula Lachrymalis and the like, have their Cure with the diſeaſes whence they came.

The Cure of this Diſeaſe conſiſts in taking away the defluxion, and ſtrengthening the part receiving.

You muſt take away the defluxion with Evacuation of the humor offending, revulſion, derivation, and ſtrengthening the part from whence it cometh.

The Peccant humor which is a Water ſuperfluous in the Brain, muſt be evacuated with bleeding and purging.

Blood-letting is not good in a cold diſtemper of the Brain, except there be manifeſt ſigns of plethory or fulneſs; but in a hot diſtemper, when the humors are very ſharp, it is very good, and you may uſe it twice or thrice if need be.

You may purge by Potions, Apozemes, Pills, and the like, which you may proportion to the condition of the Patient.

Make a revulſion of the humors flowing by Cupping-glaſſes often applied to the ſhoulders, by Veſicatories to raiſe bliſters behind in the Neck, or with Cauteries to the hinder part of the Head, and Iſſues in the Arms.

In a ſtubborn *Epiphora*, a Veſicatory applyed to the fore-part of the Head doth wonders; as *Foreſtus* ſheweth, *Obſ.* 11. *lib.* 11. concerning an Old Woman who had ſore Eyes, weeping and mat-

very, with great pain and itching, and could by no means be Cured, that with applying a Plaister of *Cantharides* with Honey and Leaven to her head being shaven, he perfectly Cured her.

Rondeletius saith, That a Cautery applyed to the *Commissura*, doth more good than when it is used to any other part.

For Derivation, use Leeches behind the Ears; and Masticatories every morning.

But least the Humors once evacuated should breed again, the Brain must be strenghened and dried; and if it be too cold, you may use all our Remedies prescribed in the Cure of the cold Distemper of the Brain. But if it be too hot, those things which we prescribed in the Cure of a hot Catarrh; especially such as respect the Brain most, are here to be used.

While the former Medicines are used, you must apply Topicks to the part receiving; and first if the Humor comes through the external veins, apply Astringents to the Forehead and Temples: and if the Defluxion come from a sharp hot Humor, use the following Cataplasm.

Take *Bole-Armenick, Dragons Blood, Pomegranat Flowers, and Mirtles, of each one dram and an half: Accacia and Hipocistis of each one dram: Frankincence and Mastich of each two scruples: Red Roses one pugil: Pouder them and mix them with the white of an Egg and a little Vinegar, make a Cataplasm, which spread upon a Cloth and apply to the Fore-head and Temples, and renew it as just as it groweth dry.*

If it come of a Cold Humor, apply this following Ctrat.

Take of *Frankinsence and Mastich of each one dram and an half: Gum Anime, Tacamahacca, and Blood-stone, of each one dram: Grain of Juniper two scruples: Turpentine and Wax as much as will serve turn: make a Cerat.*

But you must apply Astringent and Drying Medicines to the part affected: which are thus made.

Take of *Tutty prepared one dram: Sarcocol half a dram: Frankinsence and Mastich of each a scruple: Spicknard six grains: make Troches, which being mixed with the white of an Egg, or the juyce of Quinces may be applyed to the corner of the Eye.* Or,

Take *Tutty prepared in a fine Rag, and tye it with a string, and put it in sharp Wine, and with this often wash the Eyes.* Or,

Take *Tutty prepared, Egg shells poudered, the best Aloes, of each one dram: tye them in a Rag and make a little Ball which steep in Fennel-water, and squeez the Ball often into the Eyes.*

Only Aloes poudered and made into a Ball (as above) and put into Rose-water, is very good. Or,

Take *Aloes, Cypress Nuts, Frankinsence, Mastich, Myrrh, of each two drams: Tutty prepared, and Sarcocol, of each one dram and an half: Sanguis Dragonis, Barberries, Sumach, red Roses, of each one scruple: Pouder them finely, and with Fennel-water make a Collyrium.*

In a Hot Defluxion this is excellent.

Take of *white Troches of Rhasis without Opium, Sarcocol, Lycium or Box-thorn, Acacia, Olibanum, of each one dram: the stones of Myrobalans calcined, of white and red Coral, of each half a dram: Pearl half a scruple: as much of the juyce of Pomegranats boyled to half, as will make a Collyrium.*

If Redness be joyned with it, this following is profitable.

Take of *the seeds of Sumach bruised one scruple: hot Plantane Water one ounce: macerate them a while, then press them strongly, and put of Rose, Eyebright, and the Waters of the white of an Egg well beaten, of each half an ounce: Sugar Candy finely poudered and strained with a little water, one scruple: Make a Collyrium.*

Lastly, Those Medicines which were prescribed for an Old Ophthalmy, are good in this Disease.

CHAP.

CHAP. XVIII.

Of Pterygium, *or Haw in the Eyes, called* Unguis.

THis is a Hard and Nervous little Membrane, which coming out of the great Corner of the Eye, firſt covereth the white, and after by continuance, the black; and covering the *Pupilla*, hindereth the ſight.

Sometimes it is thin and white; ſometimes it is fleſhly with many red veins, and it is called a *Pannicle*, and *Sebel*, by *Avicen*; although ſome diſtinguiſh a *Pannicle* from a *Haw*, or *Ungula*; becauſe *Ungula* is a Nervous Tunicle without repletion of veins, and is only in the *Adnata*: But *Sebel*, or *Pannicle*, Covereth the whole Eye, and is very Red, and full of Veins.

This Diſeaſe comes from Ulceration of the fleſh in the Corner of the Eye; or, of the *Adnata*, whence there comes a roughneſs or inequality in the part, which while the Nouriſhing Faculty labors to make equal, it fills with blood, and begets a preternatural encreaſe, or covereth it with a Skin.

And becauſe many Excrements do uſe to flow to an Eye diſordered, therefore the *Haw* is not bred of pure Blood, but of many Excrements alſo, whence ariſe many ſorts of *Haws*: Becauſe,

Some are Hard, others Soft, ſome White, ſome Red, ſome Yellow, ſome Brown, others are eaſily ſeparated from the *Adnata* and *Cornea*, others ſtick faſt; ſome are ſimple and without Malignity, others are Cancerous and filthy.

The Diagnoſis, or Knowledge of this Diſeaſe, is known by what is ſaid; alſo the Cauſes, namely, The Humors of which it is made, may be known by their Colour; for a Red *Haw* comes of pure Blood: a Yellow, of Choller: a White, of Flegm: a Dark and Black one, of Melancholly.

As to the Prognoſtick, This Diſeaſe is ſcarcely to be Cured, and that in a long time; becauſe ſharp Medicines which are proper for to eate it away, cannot be uſed but by degrees, by reaſon of the exquiſite ſenſe of the Eyes.

If the Eye Affected grow ſmaller, it is an evil ſign; for it argueth the Debility of the part.

A new *Haw* and ſmal, may be Cured with Medicines; but an over-grown, old, and one covering the black of the Eye, cannot, but by Chirurgery.

A *Haw* which is thick, turn'd out, ſtreteht forth, hard and black, cannot be Cured; for it is of a Cancerous nature.

The Cure is to be by the Antecedent and Conjunct Cauſe.

In reſpect of the Antecedent, firſt good Diet is to be enjoyned, ſuch as is mentioned in other Diſeaſes of the Eyes from Fluxes.

Alſo the afore-mentioned Evacuations and Revulſions may here be uſed, namely, Purgations, Bleeding, Cupping, Veſicatories, and the like.

And when the Body is ſufficiently Purged, we muſt come to Topicks, which may Conſume the *Haw*.

Beginning firſt with Mild, ſuch as were they which we ſpake of in Curing of the Spots in the Eye, ealled *Phlyctænæ*: which not prevailing, we muſt uſe ſtronger, which are frequent in Authors.

Foreſtus commends this following.

Take of *the juyce of Fennel four ounces*: *the juyce of Celandine three ounces*: *the juyce of Rue two ounces*: *the juyce of Mallows two ounces and an half*: *Aloes one dram*: *Vitriol two ſcruples*: *Verdugreeſe one ſcruple*: *Ginger and Cinamon, of each half a ſcruple*: *the Gall of an Eel half an ounce*: *the Gall of an Ox, or Hog two drams*: *Sugar Candy two ſcruples*: *Let the juyces boyl with the reſt, and then clariſie it and make a Collyrium.*

This alſo is by him Commended.

Take of *Blood-ſtone two drams*: *white Vitriol and Verdegreece calcined, of each three drams*: *Myrrh and Saffron, of each one dram*: *Long Pepper half a dram*: *Sugar Candy half an ounce*: *Pouder them very fine, and mix with one dram of this Pouder two drams of Radiſh-water, and apply twice or thrice in a day, as the Patient can endure it.*

Before you uſe theſe Remedies, you muſt Foment the part with an Emollient Decoction, which you muſt do alſo afterwards to aſſwage the pain.

Among

Among the Mildeſt, this following is beſt.

Take of *Cuttle Bone*, *one ſcruple*: *Sugar Candy*, *one dram*: *Vitriol*, *half a ſcruple*: *Tutty Prepared*, *half a Dram*: *Mix them*, *and make a fine Pouder*, *to lay upon the Haw.*

If it cannot be taken off with theſe Topicks, you muſt fall to Chirurgery, and taking up the *Ungula* with a Hook at the bottom or root; draw a double Thred through it with a Needle, then laying it down cloſe on both ſides beneath, cut it off with your Ciſſours; as is more at large ſhewed by *Celſus*, *Paulus*, *Aetius*, *Jerom ab Aquapendente*, in their Chirurgery, and by others.

Having made Inciſion, lay on a little Lint dipped in Roſe-water and the white of an Egg, to aſſwage pain, and hinder Inflamation.

And Laſtly, you may Heal it up with drying Medicines, as Collyriums of Tutty, Frankinſence, Aloes, the white Troches of Rhaſis, and the like.

The End of the Second Book.

THE

THE THIRD BOOK OF THE PRACTICE OF PHYSICK.

Of the Diſeaſes of the Ears.

The PREFACE.

THe *Ears as* Galen *ſheweth in* 1. de ſymp. cauſ. cap. 2. *have divers Diſeaſes ſimilary, organick, and common; which becauſe they are not to be known, but by their Symptomes, I determine to reduce them into a Series of Symptomes. The ſymptoms in the Ears either are ſuch as come from the Action hurt, or the fault of the Excrements. The Action is hurt either in the Ear alone, or in all inſtruments of Sence. The Action proper to the Ear, namely, Hearing, is hurt by being aboliſhed or diminiſhed and depraved. It is aboliſhed by Deafneß, diminiſhed by thickneß of Hearing, depraved by a noiſe in the Ears. The Action common to all the Inſtruments of Sence, is Feeling, by which they are ſubject to pain. The fault in the Excrement is ſeen by all thoſe things which come preternaturally out of the Ear. So this whol Book hath four Chapters. The firſt is of Deafneß and thick Hearing. The ſecond of noiſe in the Ears. The third of pain in the Ears. The fourth of thoſe things which preternaturally come forth of the Ears.*

Chap. 1. *Of Deafneß, and thick or dull Hearing.*

WEE comprehend Deafneſs and thick Hearing in one Chapter, becauſe they come of the ſame Cauſes, differing only in Degrees, ſo that when they are great they take the Hearing quite away; when leſs, they diminiſh it: And both theſe are called vulgarly Deafneſs; for they who cannot hear any but ſuch as ſpeak very loud, are called deaf folk.

But *Surditas* properly, or Deafneſs, is called in Greek *Cophoſis*, when the Hearing is totally gone; ſo that the Patient either heareth no noiſe, or if he do, he cannot diſtinguiſh it. Theſe are often dumb if they are born ſo; not only becauſe men learn to ſpeak by Hearing; but by reaſon of the great conſent that is between the Inſtruments of Hearing and Speaking by the Nerve of the fifth Conjugation, whoſe chief Branches are brought to the Ears, but ſome of them reach to the Tongue and

and Throat; whence it is, that when the inner Ear is pulled, there is a cough raiſed; and the reaſon is plain, for they who are born deaf, if they had their Inſtruments of Speech corrupted, would by a Natural inſtinct ſend forth ſome Articulate voyce; as other Creatures, although they are kept from their birth, from other Creatures of the ſame kind, ſo that they never hear them, yet they produce their connatural voyce; but men born deaf never ſent forth an articulate voyce, but only a confuſed ſound, which argueth a manifeſt hurt of thoſe parts which ſerve for Speech. Now the hurt of thoſe parts is chiefly from humidity, which affecting that Nerve which goeth to the Ears, Tongue, and Throat, muſt needs hinder both Speech, and Hearing.

Thick Hearing is called in Greek *Barueeoia*; and they who are ſo hear difficultly, and underſtand not what men ſay, except they ſpeak very loud: Others cannot hear ſo wel, and not except the ſpeakers whoop and hallow in their Ears.

Both theſe Diſeaſes come from the diſtemper of the Brain or Ears.

A cold diſtemper of the Brain, or repletion, or weakneſs, or ſome other hurt in that part, eſpecially in which is the riſe and progreſs of the Hearing Nerve, may cauſe Deafneſs or thick Hearing.

The Diſeaſes of the Ears are either in the inſide or the outſide thereof.

In the exterior Cavity, a perfect or an imperfect ſtoppage from a Tumor, Impoſthume, or Blood, Matter, Flegm, and other things coming either from within or without, may cauſe a defect in the hearing. But you muſt obſerve, that the ſtoppage of the external paſſage cannot make a perfect and abſolute Deafneſs, but only thick hearing, becauſe ſounds may be carried by the mouth alſo, to the Ears. For there is an open way from the internal Cavity of the Ear to the Pallat, by which ſounds do eaſily paſs, and inſinuate themſelves into the Ears; and this paſſage is made for the purging of the Ears. And many Experiments do ſhew that a ſound may paſs through the open mouth to the Ears. We may obſerve that they who are very thick of hearing, wil open their mouths that they may better hear thoſe that ſpeak unto them. And if you ſtop both Ears cloſe, and ſtrike a Muſick Inſtrument with a ſtick held in your Teeth, you wil hear the ſound better. And when you travel in the night, you wil better hear any man coming afar off, if you put one end of your Sword or Staff between your Teeth, and faſten the other end upon the ground.

The Humors which are gathered into the internal Cavity of the Ear, and eſpecially ſuch as flow from the Head do cauſe deafneſs or thick hearing in the inner part of the Ear, and theſe are for the moſt part flegmy, and ſometimes chollerick; as appears Aph. 28. Sect. 4. where *Hippocrates* ſaith, that chollerick Evacuations are good for deaf men; ſometimes bloody are good, for it is manifeſt, that the deafneſs accompanied with the Criſis, comes from the flux of blood to the Ears. Now the Humors are ſometimes ſent from the whol Body to the Ears, as in continual Feavers and eſpecially thoſe that are malignant. The ill compoſition of the Inſtruments of Hearing produceth the ſame effect; as when the Tympany or Drum groweth too looſe by a violent noiſe or over moiſtneſs; and for this reaſon deaf people are more thick of hearing in Southernly weather, becauſe the Membrane is relaxed by the moiſtneſs of the Air; or when the Tympany is over ſtretched or dried after a violent diſeaſe, long watching, or faſting; or when it is broken by violent motions, or eaten by a corroding humor: Sometimes blood cometh forth after a great hurt, and matter without hinderance to the Hearing, becauſe the paſſage is between the bone and the Membrane. Or when any parts of the Ear, either originally; or by ſome outward cauſe, as ſtroak, fall, or the like, are put out of their Natural order. Moreover, a cold diſtemper uſeth to produce this diſeaſe, coming either from the cold Air, or very cold Water powred in, or over much uſe of ſtupefactive Medicines called Narcoticks.

'Tis very hard to diſtinguiſh al theſe cauſes by their proper Signs, but by Art, and conjecture thus:

If Deafneſs come from the diſtemper of the Brain, either other Sences ſuffer, or there appeared ſome peculiar Diſeaſes in the Head, as head-ach, drouzineſs, Apoplexy, Lethargy, and the like.

The ſtoppage of the External Cavity of the Ears is diſcernable by the Eyes, if you look upon them in the Sun, for then it wil appear whether it be a tumor, or thick matter, or any other heterogeneal ſubſtance of another Nature which filleth the Cavity. As alſo the Patient will tell you if any thing fell into his Ears.

But if the internal Cavity be filled with a humor, we may conceive it to be flegm, if the Patient were formerly ſubject unto defluxions of that ſort.

But that this comes from Choller, is known by ſome Chollerick Feaver that went before, or now poſſeſſeth him, or by ſome violent pain. But when it comes from blood, there is a heavy pain, and abundance of blood in the whol Body, and this happeneth often in critical diſturbances.

The looſneſs and moiſtneſs of the Tympane is known by the cauſes preceding, which were moiſt, and diſtempered ſome other part: for it can ſcarce be, that moiſt cauſes ſhould only affect that part, and no other.

You may alſo know the diſtention and drineſs of the Tympane by the drineſs of the whol Body, and by the drying cauſes aforegoing.

And

And for the breaking or corroding of the Tympane, you may know that if there were formerly any vehement Cauſes that could break or gnaw the ſame.

You muſt make your Prognoſtick thus:

Deafneſs by Birth, and of long continuance, if it be abſolute and total, is incurable; and that which is not abſolute if it be old, is never or hardly cured.

A Deafneſs from Choller or Blood which hapneth only in ſharp continuing Feavers, uſeth to be cured with theſe Feavers.

Thick Hearing, if it be not ſpeedily cured, endeth in perfect Deafneſs; witneſs *Galen*, 3. *de comp. med. ſec. loc. cap.* 3.

The Membrane of the Tympane being broken, or a ſcar left thereon, makes an incurable Deafneſs.

A Deafneſs encreaſing and decreaſing by degrees, is curable, for it ſignifieth that it comes from a movable humor, which ſomtimes is more, ſomtime leſs in quantity.

A Deafneſs coming from diſtemper of the Brain, is more eaſily cured than that which comes from a proper diſeaſe of the Ear.

As to the Cure: That Deafneſs which depends upon any Diſeaſe of the Brain, requireth no other Cure, than that which belongs to ſuch diſeaſes, which you may find in their ſeveral Chapters. That which comes from a Tumor, if it be hard and old, admitteth no Cure; but if it be hot, you may find the Cure for it in the Chapter of pain in the Ears. But if it come from matter gathered in the Ear, you may find the Cure in the laſt Chapter of this Treatiſe, where we ſhal ſpeak of thoſe things which preternaturally come forth of the Ear.

If this Diſeaſe comes of Drineſs, it muſt be cured by the way of *Rhaſis*, that is by moiſtning things, long ſleep, and waſhing of the Head with warm water; as alſo putting of moiſt things into the Ear, as Oyl of ſweet Almonds, and the like. If Deafneſs or thick Hearing come from any thing that is fallen into the Ear, that muſt be taken away with waſhing, ſhaking, or extraction: or if any Vermine are got into the Cavity of the Ear, they muſt either be taken forth, or killed there: they are waſhed forth by making the part moiſt and ſlippery, and enlarging it, with either Milk, the Oyl of ſweet Almonds, or ſome mollifying or relaxing Decoction: they are ſhaken forth by neeſing, for ſo by the force of the air the parts being moved, that which lieth in the paſſage of the Ear is excluded, and the ſooner if the way be firſt made ſlippery and enlarged with Medicines (as we ſaid.) It is good alſo to hang down that ſide of the head, and to hop upon the leg on that ſide; by which way the Boyes after ſwimming get the Water out of their Ears. If theſe wil not do, you muſt endeavor to draw it forth with an Ear-picker, taking heed, leſt when you put it in, you thruſt that which you would draw forth, further in; therefore let the ſpoon of the Ear-picker be very thin that it may eaſier paſs by the thing in the Ear. Or you may lay hold of it, and take it out with a pair of Forcepts made on purpoſe, rough on both ſides within. And if this avail not, when the body is hard, as a nut or ſtone, it muſt be laid hold on with an Inſtrument and broken, and then the Ear muſt be waſhed as aforeſaid. If the Ear-picker will not enter, arm your probe with a little Cotton all over, and then dip it in Turpentine, or in ſome other clammy ſubſtance, and put it in the Ear that it may ſtick to that which is there, and ſtoppeth the Ear. The ſame may be done with a Wax Candle touched with Bird-lime; and if any of the Bird-lime ſtick in the Ear, you may afterwards take it out with the Ear-picker. There are ſome which put a hollow quil into the Ear, and draw out things with ſucking.

The worms in the Ears are enticed forth by laying to ſuch things as they love, as Milk with Sugar laid to the Ear in a ſponge, or eaſily put in; or a Fig turned inſide out; or the pap of a ſweet Apple, or Bacon, and turning the Ear to the Sun at that time; and eſpecially if Horſleeches get in, they are drawn forth by an Injection of blood. Fleas are drawn forth with Dogs hair; but if they be living they muſt be killed, and then they wil leſs hinder the hearing, and wil be drawn forth more eaſily: And they are killed with faſting ſpittle, or your own Urine dropt into the Ear.

Bitter things do ſooner kil thoſe Vermine, as the juyce of Wormwood, Centaury, or the Decoction of Aloes, or Beaſts Gall. Alſo ſharp things, as Vinegar, juyce of Onions, and the like.

And becauſe the uſual cauſe of Deafneſs is a cold diſtemper and a defluxion of moiſture to that part, you muſt labor moſt to oppoſe that.

But becauſe this defluxion comes originally from the Brain, therefore we muſt begin the Cure there, as in the cure of the cold diſtemper of the Brain; which a Prudent Phyſitian wil moderate according to the degrees and violence of the diſtemper.

The brief way of Cure is, firſt an attenuating Diet, moderately warm and drying, ſuch as is preſcribed in *Gutta ſerena*: and then avoiding of Southernly winds, by ſtopping the Ears; and vaporing nouriſhment, as Garlick and Onions; as alſo of things that beget thick and flegmy Humors, Firſt, Let a general Evacuation be made by Pills *Cephalick*, Purging Apozemes; then by Phlebotomy if need be; to which ad if the Diſeaſe be ſtubborn, a ſweating Diet; and then uſe particular Remedies that revel the defluxion, as Cauteries, Veſicatories, Neeſings, Maſticatories, Gargariſms: but

Masticatories, or Chewings, are peculiarly necessary in this Disease, by reason of the passage which comes from the internal Ear to the Pallat, and throws out the excrements of the Ears.

And finally, When the Disease grows old, you must use ordinary Pills, Magistral Syrups, Cephalick Opiats, Pouders and Caps to strengthen the head, and the like. Al which are laid down in the Treatise of the Cold Distemper of the Brain.

In time of Diet, if the Disease be stubborn, Bags are good applyed to the Head after the sweating Potion is administred, as in the said Treatise is prescribed, not only to the fore part of the Head, but to the Ears also.

Brimstone and Bituminous Baths are very proper in this Disease, with washing of the Head, for by them sweat is provoked, and the matter of defluxion is drawn out. But by washing of the Head, the Brain is strengthened and dried, and the humors fixed in the Ears are discussed. The way of using them is described by *Penotus*, and much commended, in these words: *There is nothing in the Cure of Deafneſs more prevalent after the use of an hundred Medicines, than that the Patient after his Body is first well purged, and then his Head. Waſh his Head well in Brimſtone Baths, thus: Let him wear a great cap reaching to his Eye-lids, and beneath his Ears, made of Spunges sewed together; let him sit under the cock or spout in the Bath, and let it run upon his Head; which Water the Spunges will suck up, and so keep the head in a continual heat; and so opening all the Sutures of the Head, and Commiſſures, it will take away all the vapors: or it will breath away the matter compacted in the Nerves, and the passages for Hearing, or so change it, that it will quickly be gone: It is good for him to sit so twice in a day for two hours, and presently after to sweat in his bed, and use a slender Diet of Juyces and Broth, and to beware of Wine except it be very weak.*

Then you must use Topicks, to discuss the matter fastened in the Ear, which may be thus applyed:

Take of *the Leaves of Organ, Wormwood, Penyroyal, wild Marjoram, Sage, Mints, Centaury the leſs, Mallows, and Marſh-mallows, of each one handful: the flowers of Chamomel, Melilot, Stœchas, and Roſemary, of each one pugil: Cinnamon and Cloves, of each half an ounce: Boyl these in equal parts of white Wine and Water: Foment the Ear with the straining hot in a spunge morning and evening.*

Of the same Decoction you may make a Fumigation into the Ear by a Funnel which must needs be excellent because the vapor ariling from the hot Decoction must needs reach into the innermost parts of the Ears.

Instead of a Fomentation you may apply a hot loaf made with Caraway seeds, and cut in the middle.

Or take ordinary Bread from the Oven, and break off the lower crust, and dip it in Spirit of Wine, and let the Patient endure it at his Ears as hot as may be, that the vapor may be received in.

Bread made of Bran is better with Caraway seeds, Bay-berries, Juniper berries, and Nutmegs mixed before it be baked: then after it is a little baked, break it and apply it hot to the Ears.

If you desire a stronger Decoction for Fomentation and Fume, you may ad one or two drams of the Pulp of Coloquintida, and the root of white Hellebore. You may make this Decoction in white Wine alone, or with Vinegar, that it may pierce more, and discuss.

The Fume of Cloves may be taken with much profit to the Patient by a Funnel into the passage of the Ear when the Head is covered with a warm cloth.

After Fomentations and Fumes, you must put some liquor into the Ears, and then stop them with Muskified Cotton.

Take of *the Oyl of bitter Almonds, and Rue, of each one ounce: Mix them and put them hot into the Ears.* Or,

Take of *the Oyl of white Lillies, and Caſtor, of each one ounce: the Oyl of Dill, half an ounce: white Hellebore half a dram: Aqua vitæ one ounce. Boyl them in* Balneo Mariæ *till the Aqua vitæ be conſumed; ſtrain them for the use aforesaid.* Or,

Take of *Cypreſs Roots, Bay-berries, Annis and Cummin seed poudered, of each one dram: Pouder of Caſtor half a dram: Oyl of Rue as much as will be ſufficient: Mix them and put them into a great hollow Onion; roast it, and strain out the Liquor to be dropped into the Ears.*

Chymical Oyls work most powerfully; as Oyl of Rosemary, Marjoram, Sage, Fennel, Spike, Cloves, which are too strong to be used alone, therefore you must mix a very smal quantity of any of them with the Medicines mentioned; thus:

Take of *the Oyls aforeſaid two ounces: Oyl of Spike, Fennel, Cloves, or the like, half a dram, or a dram: Mix them.*

There are also some Waters, which if dropped into the Ears do much good. Some Authors commend the Water of an Ash, which is made by putting one end of a green Ash into the fire, and taking the water out of the other end: this is best when deafness cometh of a hot cause, and you fear to use hot Medicines. But if not, then you may mix as much *Aqua vitæ* therewith. *Mathiolus* mixeth this

this Water with Juyces, and commends it highly, in theſe words: *We know that the Water which comes out of Aſh, when it is burnt, mixed with the Juyce of Sowbread, Squils, and Rue, in equal parts warmed together, to be excellent againſt Deafneſs, if it be dropped into the ſound Ear when the Patient goeth to bed, and lieth upon that Ear which is Deaf: but when both Ears are deaf, then into that which is leaſt affected.*

The Spirit of Wine wherein white Hellebore hath been infuſed, being dropped into the deaf Ear, is very efficacious.

Others commend the clarified juyce of Ivy mixed with ſtrong white Wine.

The Galls of Beaſts, as of Hairs, Goats, Partridges, are much commended if they be uſed freſh, with an equal portion of Honey, and warmed in the ſhell of an Onion.

The fat dripping of an Eel is much uſed; Put a great Eel upon a Spit, and take the dripping upon Bay Leaves, and drop it warm into the Ears.

Zechius commends Ants Egs, in theſe words: *Ants Egs mixed with the Juyce of an Onion, and dropped into the Ear, do cure the oldeſt Deafneſs.*

The Blood of a yong Wolf, dropped hot into the Ears doth the ſame.

Laſtly, If the Diſeaſe be ſo ſtubborn that it will not yield to the Medicines preſcribed, it will not be amiſs to uſe the laſt Remedy which is preſcribed by *Fonſeca, conſult. 58. tom.* 2. namely, an Unction with Quick-ſilver, becauſe when Deafneſs cometh of the French Pox, it is ſo cured, and it may be when it comes otherwiſe; and the reaſon is, becauſe Quick-ſilver doth diſſolve and diſcuts hard tumors, when they are gathered upon any part, and therefore when flegm is gathered in the Ears, which no other means can diſſolve, Quick-ſilver may diſſolve it. But this Remedy muſt not be tried but in a deſperate condition; for it is doubtful what the event will be, and the Unction with Quick-ſilver doth much weaken the Brain, and cauſe defluxions. So that ſome who have been cured of the Pox by Quick-ſilver, have after fallen deaf by defluxions; although ſometimes (as I ſaid) deafneſs coming of the French Pox is cured thereby, and Quick-ſilver rightly uſed after due Purgation doth no hurt to the Brain.

This you muſt alwaies obſerve in the uſe of Topicks, That you never put cold things, but warm, into the Ears, and you muſt not dreſs them till the old Medicine be taken out. And after dreſſing you muſt ſtop the Ear with Cotton Muskified, for that only conduceth much to the Cure: as *Foreſtus* ſaith, *Obſ.* 15. *lib.* 12. in theſe words: *A woman of* Delft *after a long diſeaſe fell deaf, which after ſufficient purging abſtained from Phyſick: at length ſhe was perſwaded by an old woman to put a grain or two of Muſk into her Ears with a little Cotton, and ſo doing ſhe was wonderfully cured. I have cured many the ſame way whoſe Ears have run.*

Chap. 2. *Of Noiſe in the Ears.*

THe ſence of Hearing is hindered by noiſe in the Ears; for as the Eyes muſt be void of all colors that they may truly perceive the colors of all Objects, and when they have a preternatural color, as in the Jaundice, the ſight is depraved; ſo the Ears muſt have no ſound in themſelves, that they may more diſtinctly receive al other ſounds; and if there be any noiſe in them, the Hearing is depraved. This is called in Greek *Paracouſis*, in Latin *Obauditio*, vulgarly a noiſe in the Ears.

This comes from a preternatural motion of the Air which is naturally contained in the Ears; for as *Ariſtotle* ſaith, Though the natural Air in the Ear do move, yet the noiſe is not heard except you ſtop the Ears with the hollow of your hand, or the like, for then the hearing is more inward when the outward air is kept out. This is ſeen by Experience, when one ſtoppeth his Ears, and holds the handle of an Inſtrument in his teeth, the ſound wil be four times greater than when his Ears are open, for it paſſeth through the mouth, there is a Natural Motion of air in the Ear by the Spiritus *Acouſtico*, continually working. But if it be too violently moved, then there is a preternatural noiſe in the Ear which hindereth the hearing.

The Cauſes are many of this preternatural Motion, but chiefly a vapor or wind ſent from other parts into the Ear, or bred there; either coming from the whol body, or from ſome peculiar part.

In Feavers it comes from the whol body; whence *Hippocrates* ſaith in *Coacis*; A noiſe in the head coming in an acute Diſeaſe is deadly, for it cometh of wind ſent by the Arteries from the whol Body into the Ears; it uſeth to come chiefly in the beginning of a fit, and before bleeding. Wind is alſo ſent to the Ear from a peculiar part, namely, the Stomach, Liver, Spleen, Midriff, Womb, and the like; whence it comes to paſs, that in great Vomitings, in Hypochondriack Melancholly, and fits of the Mother, there is for the moſt part a noiſe in the Ears. Often there is a wind ſent from the head coming of a cold flegm, through want of heat to the Ears by the Veins and Arteries, and the Nerves of the fifth Conjugation, by which paſſages alſo vapors come from the inferior parts. Wind

Wind is bred in the Ear alſo, of flegm contained therein; whence it comes to paſs that thick Hearing is alwaies accompanied with a noiſe in the head. For by the humor there is a ſtoppage, from whence comes deafneſs, and from the wind that proceeds from that humor, comes the noiſe.

There are other cauſes of this noiſe, as a great ſtroak upon the head, a great ſound, Ulcers in the Ears, a hot diſtemper, weakneſs, and exquiſite ſence.

A ſtroak, by moving the Spirits in the Head too violently, cauſeth a noiſe.

A great ſound doth violently move the natural Air.

And Ulcers by the heat of the matter boyling and working, make a noiſe; and by the Spirits gathered thither, and moving the Natural Air.

A hot diſtemper fills the inward Arteries of the Ear with much Spirit, whence a great beating noiſe proceedeth. Sometimes too much Spirit is ſent by thoſe Arteries into the Ears, and the Natural Air is thereby moved, from whence cometh a noiſe. And from this cauſe may come a continual noiſe for ſome months or yeers.

Weakneſs of hearing uſeth to make a noiſe in the Ears, as in ſick people, becauſe every ſence debilitated is hurt by every violent or moderate object: ſo they who have weak ſight, are offended by a ſmall light.

And laſtly, When the ſence is moſt exquiſite, as *Galen*, *lib.* 3. *de comp. med. ſec. loc. cap.* 1. there will be a noiſe in the Ears, becauſe even moderate objects are too vehement for it. Now this exquiſite ſence muſt be preternatural, for the exquiſiteneſs of ſence cannot of its ſelf produce a depraved action, but rather the more exquiſite it is the leſs will it Err. This preternatural exquiſiteneſs of ſence, comes from a hot diſtemper, ulcer, or the like: as parts inflamed do depravedly, that is painfully, feel moderate touchings. Or if the exquiſiteneſs of ſence be Natural, you muſt ſuppoſe that the cauſe of the noiſe is Preternatural; for the vapor which is ſo little that it cannot be felt of dull ſence, and ſo the action not be hurt, will be felt of him that hath exquiſite ſenſe, and will cauſe a noiſe; ſo that in one it is Preternatural, in another Natural.

There are divers ſorts of ſounds in the Ears, which proceed either from the quantity of the vapors as they are more or few, thinner or thicker, ſwift or ſlow in motion; for if the vapor be much, thick, and of quick motion, it will make a noiſe like ſwift running water, or like a drum, or like ſome ſuch Mufical Inſtrument, or a ruſhing wind, or the like; but if it be little, thick, and move quick, the noiſe is like the falling of a Tree or Houſe.

If it be much, thin, and ſwift in motion, it cauſeth a hiſſing, or is like falling of a gentle Water. If it be little, thin, and quick in motion, it cauſeth a tickling. If it be much, thick, and of ſlow motion, it makes a murmuring noiſe. If the matter be little, thick, and ſlow in motion, it makes a kind of whiſpering noiſe. If it be much, thin, and of ſlow motion, it cauſeth a hiſſing. And laſtly, becauſe the degrees of thickneſs and thinneſs, of greatneſs and ſmalneſs, of ſwiftneſs and ſlowneſs, are infinite, therefore there are innumerable ſorts of ſounds in the Ears.

There is no certain knowledg of the cauſes aforeſaid, as *Galen* teacheth 3. *de comp. med. ſec. loc. c.* 1. but we may make conjecture from the precedent Cauſes and Circumſtances.

We conjecture that the noiſe comes from wind, becauſe ſometimes it ceaſeth, and returneth again; as alſo when the Patient hath formerly uſed to eat windy meat.

It cometh by content from other parts, when there is ſome peculiar diſeaſe in them.

It appears to come from the brain when pain and heavineſs of the Head went before, and when other ſences alſo are hurt.

That the fault is in the Ears, appears by a continual noiſe without any intermiſſion.

We know that that Diſeaſe comes from a cold matter; if the Patient be better for the uſe of hot things, and if in time of health great noiſe be not much diſturbance.

The difference of ſounds above mentioned, do ſhew whether the diſeaſe comes of thick or thin, many or few vapors, it will eaſily appear by what hath been ſaid.

When it comes from the weakneſs of the faculty of hearing; as from ſome Diſeaſes aforegoing, of which the Patient is ſcarce recovered.

We conjecture that it comes from a hot diſtemper, and from an exquiſite ſence coming thereupon, when the Patient perceiveth a heat in his head about his Ears; when ſome hot Cauſes went before, and Medicines that diſcuſs wind do encreaſe the diſeaſe: as alſo when the Patient in time of his health could not endure any great noiſe by reaſon of the exquiſiteneſs of ſence.

As to the Prognoſtick: A new begun noiſe in the head is eaſily cured, but an old, hardly, and the more if it come from the French Pox. That which proceeds of a hot cauſe, is more eaſily cured than that which comes of a cold.

An old noiſe coming of flegm contained in the Ear, turneth to deafneſs; for when the matter is encreaſed, the paſſage of Hearing is ſtopped.

The Cure of this Diſeaſe is divers in reſpect of the diverſity of Cauſes.

And

And firſt the Cure of Noyſe in the Head coming from conſent with other parts, depends upon the Cure of the Diſeaſes of thoſe parts, and muſt be taken from their proper Chapters.

But that which comes principally from the Ear Diſtempered, muſt have its proper Cure: And if it come of a cold Diſtemper, and thick Vapour, it wil be Cured as in the Treatne of thickneſs of Hearing; for they are alike, and one is ſometimes changed into the other, and ſometimes they are complicated and joyned together; For Noyſe in the Ears is the fore-runner of thick Hearing, and Deafneſs.

Therefore all Remedies both Univerſal and Particular, may be uſed here which we preſcribed in the former Chapter of Deafneſs and thick Hearing.

If the Noyſe come from an Ulcer in the Ear, it requireth no other Cure, than that which is proper for the Ulcer. And that ſhal be laid down in the following Chapter.

If it cometh from weakneſs of Senſe as in them who are lately Recovered of ſome great Diſeaſe, it wil vaniſh of its ſelf as the Body gathereth ſtrength: yet you may drop ſome proper temperate Oyls ſometimes into the Ears to mitigate, as Oyl of Chamomel, Dill, Sweet Almonds, and the like.

And Finally, If it come from a hot diſtemper and exquiſite Senſe, you muſt preſcribe a Cooling and Moiſtning Diet; as alſo drop Cool things into the Ears, begmning with mild firſt, and after proceeding to ſtronger.

And firſt, Uſe the Decoction of Barley, Violets, Lettice, Water-Lillies, to which you may put a little Balm or Chamomel to make it pierce: which not prevailing, you muſt uſe the juyce of Lettice, Purſlain, Henbane: *Galen* alloweth the Juyce of Poppy and Opium its ſelf, but theſe muſt be uſed ſparingly and with much Caution, leſt by weakning the natural heat of the part, the Hearing grow more dull.

Chap. 3. *Of Pain in the Ears.*

PAin of the Ears called *Otalgia* in Greek, is a violent Diſeaſe, both in reſpect of the part affected, namely, the inward Membrane which goeth about the Cavity of the Ear; as alſo by reaſon of the neerneſs of the Brain which often ſuffereth at the ſame time.

But ſince al pain comes from the ſolution of Continuity, al thoſe things do cauſe pain in the Ears, which do diſſolve the Continuity of thoſe ſenſible parts which compaſs the Cavity of the Ear. the chief whereof are Diſtempers both without, and with, Matter, Wounds, Ulcers, or things fallen, or put into the Ears Externally.

A Cold Diſtemper doth ſometimes cauſe pain in the Ears, and it comes from cold Winds, cold Baths, and other very cold Cauſes.

A Hot Diſtemper without Matter, ſeldom or never produceth a pain in the Ears, as a cold doth: For Cold is an Enemy to theſe Nervous and Membranous parts, but Heat is a Friend to them. Nor can it cauſe any pain but that which is exceſſive, and wil cauſe a defluxion of Humors to the parts, and then it is not without Matter. For this Cauſe neither *Galen*, nor any of the ancient Greeks made mention of a Hot Diſtemper, although *Avicen* of al the Arabians have mentioned it.

Now the Cold Matter which cauſeth pain in the Ears is either flegm or water which comes from the Brain into them, or elſe wind coming from the Brain or the interior parts.

But the Hot Matter, is either Choller that fals from the Veins and Arteries into thoſe parts, or Blood, from whence cometh Inflamation.

The aforeſaid Cauſe produceth an occult Solution of Continuity from whence cometh Pain. But manifeſt Solutions of Continuity, as Wounds and Ulcers, are more evident Cauſes of pain. Wounds come from external Punctures, Cuts, and Contuſions. But Ulcers come either after Inflamation and breaking of an Impoſtume, or from ſharp Humors that corrode the parts,

Finally, Things that get into the Ear outwardly, if they be hard, ſharp, or any wayes piercing or biting, wil cauſe pain.

You may know al theſe Cauſes thus, If the Diſtemper be without Matter, there wil be no heavineſs, diſtention, or tumor: And you may know that the Diſtemper is Cold, when cold Cauſes have preceded, as travel in Winter, when the pain increaſeth in cold weather, or with cold Medicines and decreaſeth with hot: but you may know a hot diſtemper by hot cauſes preceding, as being long in the Sun, or heat, and when hot Medicines hurt, and cold do profit.

If the Pain come from flegm, there wil be a heavineſs in the Ear, and the Head; as alſo a Rheum wil fal upon ſome other part, beſides cold Cauſes did precede, as cold and Northerly weather, cold meats; or it is winter and the Patient is old, and the like.

If

If it come from Wind there wil be a great pain without weight or heavineſs, not conſtant, but intermitting and with noyſe.

That it comes from Water, the Patient wil have other Diſeaſes from the ſame, as ſharp and thin defluctions upon the Teeth, Eyes, Ears, Breaſt, and other parts; and Evacuation of ſerous Matter by Vomit, Stool, Urine, or Sweat.

If it come from a Chollerick Humor the pain wil be ſharp and pricking, and there wil be ſenſible heat; it wil be mitigated with cold things, and Choller wil ſometimes come forth of the heat; the Body is of a Chollerick temper, the Party yong, the Weather hot, and Diet alſo with the like, by which the Patient is often diſtempered.

An Inflamation is known by a great beating pain, with great heat and redneſs about the Cheeks and Temples, to which there is joyned a continual violent Feaver; ſometimes Doting, Swooning, Convulſion, and coldneſs of the extream parts.

A Wound is known by the blood which wil come forth of the Ear, but an Ulcer by the filth, or matter; but becauſe ſometimes there is a defluxion of filth from the Brain by the Ears, we muſt diſtinguiſh, for it if comes from the Brain; there went before it a Head-ach and other ſigns of an Impoſtume in the Brain: And firſt the matter is ſent forth in great abundance, and after by degrees while it is all ſpent. From an Impoſthume in the Ear may come plenty of Matter, but then there went ſigns before of an Inflamation there, and afterward followed an Ulcer, which you may know whether it came from an Impoſthume or a Defluxion of ſharp Humors by theſe ſigns following; There is a conſtant Flux of a little filth or matter by degrees; there is felt a pain burning and ſhooting in the Ear, eſpecially if it be picked. Moreover, We may conjecture of the Difference of the Ulcers, For if it be in the Bone, it is known by the thin Matter yellowiſh, and by the long continuance of the Diſeaſe: If it be deep, you ſhal know it by much Matter: If it be clean, by the laudible Matter: If it be foul, by the thickneſs and plenty: If it be virulent, by the thinneſs: If putrid, by the ſtink of it: If it be corroding, by blood following: If fiſtulous, from the oldneſs of the Ulcer, the virulency of the Matter, the callosity and hardneſs of the fleſh.

Finally, If there be any thing fallen into the Ear, either it may be ſeen, or related by the Patient.

The Prognoſtick of pain in the Ears is divers, according to the diverſity of the Cauſes. That which comes from a bare diſtemper is eaſily cured. That which comes from a cold flegmy ſerous, or windy matter, is not very dangerous, but uſeth to continue long. But that which cometh from hot humors, and eſpecially ſuch as cauſe inflamation, is very dangerous, for the Brain being nigh muſt need conſent, and be alſo affected; from whence Deliriums, and Convulſions uſe to proceed. In this Diſeaſe yong men are in moſt danger: for they being of a hot temper, and their blood hot, the inflamation is greater; and this diſſolveth the natural heat of the Brain, and killeth the Patient: Hence it is that they die for the moſt part within ſeven daies. But old men who are colder, have leſs inflamation, and ſo are in leſs danger.

Ulcers in the Ears are hard to be cured, becauſe the Brain being nigh, doth ſend its excrements to thoſe parts: But thoſe which follow an Impoſthume are eaſier cured, eſpecially if the matter be laudible. But where the matter is virulent, ſtinking, or the like, it is difficult, eſpecially if the Ulcer be cavous, and the bone foul.

The Cure, as the Diagnoſtick and Prognoſtick, is to be varied according to the Cauſe.

For if it comes from a bare cold diſtemper, hot Medicines applied to the Ears are ſufficient, ſuch as are in the cure of Deafneſs, eſpecially Fomentations and Fumes, as alſo the warm Oyls there deſcribed. But when a hot diſtemper comes without matter, it may be cured with Topicks, which are cooling, which we will ſhew afterwards, and eſpecially with the white of an Egg beaten with Breaſt milk, and put into the Ear.

If it come from a cold diſtemper with matter, as flegm, water, or wind, you muſt uſe the Medicines preſcribed in the cure of Deafneſs. Firſt, Purge the whol Body, then correct the diſtemper of the Brain, and apply warm Topicks that diſcuſs unto the Ears.

If it come from a hot diſtemper with Choller, which is of long continuance, or comes by fits. Firſt revel th humor that floweth to the part by Phlebotomy, by which the hot diſtemper of the whol Body with the Liver, in which Choller is made, is amended. Then purge the Humor with proper Medicines. You may amend the hot diſtemper of the Liver with Juleps or cooling Broths, with Whey of Goats milk, with ſharp Vitriolat, Mineral Waters, with hot Baths, and the like. And laſtly, All things are proper for it which are preſcribed in the Cure of the Head from a hot cauſe. But you may uſe cooling Topicks and Anodines that take away pain, which we ſhall ſhew afterwards concerning the Inflamation.

Inflamation of the Ear is cured firſt by blood-letting, according to the quantity of the humor, for revulſion of it from the Ears, firſt having given an emollient and cooling Clyſter: This muſt be done in great quantity, at divers times, for the greatneſs and violence of the Diſeaſe requires it. You muſt

open

open the Head Vein on that ſide the Ear is that is pained. If you think it comes from ſtoppage of Terms or Hemorrhoids, open the lower Veins, firſt having let blood in the Arm. When the cauſe is not from thence, it will do good for revulſion to apply Leeches.

Alſo you make good Revulſions by Frictions and Ligatures of the Arms and Thighs, by cupping the Shoulders and Back with Scarrification, or without.

Sometimes for Derivation it is good to apply Cupping glaſſes behind the Ears, with Scarrification; as *Zacutus Lucitanus* teacheth, *Obſer. 64. lib. 1. Praxis Admirande*, in theſe words. The Divine old man in his ſecond Book, Epid. Sect. 6. towards the end, ſaith thus: For pain in the Ear, clap on a Cupping glaſs. This worthy ſaying gave much help to a poor man which was in pain; and when all things failed, and he grew weak with watching, and mad with a continual Fever, being ready to depart; having opened a Vein, and applied Cupping glaſſes to the Shoulders and Neck, and taken revelling Clyſters, and purging, and the like; as alſo Anodines into his Ear without any profit, he was cured only with a Cupping glaſs with Scarification applied by the Glandles of the Ears, which drew much blood, and took away the inflamation.

The ſame *Zacutus Lucitanus* in *Praxi ad Hiſtorias*, commends four Horſ-leeches applied behind the Ears, which he ſaith gave much eaſe to a yong man which had a violent inflamation in his Ears.

The cutting of the Arteries in the Temples of the Forehead, doth produce rare effects for the appeaſing of the greateſt pain in the Ears, by taking away the hot and windy blood which produced that grievous ſymptome. The way of doing it, is ſet down by us, in the Cure of the hot Head-ach.

A Purge againſt Choller is good, for ſo the Choller mixed with Blood, which by it is made ſo fluid, is drawn down, and ſent forth.

Afterwards the whol maſs of humors is to be tempered with cooling Juleps, made of the Decoction of Lettice, Purſlain, Plantane, Sorrel, and the like, with Syrup of Lemmons, Pomegranats, or wild Poppies.

In the mean while, theſe Medicines are given; you muſt alwaies apply Topicks, which muſt alwaies be Anodine, by reaſon of the vehemency of the pain, the mitigation whereof muſt be your chief intent; and this will be more rationally done, if in the beginning and the encreaſe of the Diſeaſe, you mix things that do gently repel; but in the ſtate and declination, things that reſolve, ſuch as theſe following:

Take of *new Breaſt-milk two ounces: the white of an Egg beaten to Water half an ounce: drop theſe mixed together, warm into the Ear.*

Or Milk alone ſquirted into the Ear from the Breaſt; this doth much aſſwage.

Take *Plantane and Nightſhade, of each one handful: the flowers of Chamomel and Melilot, of each one pugil: Make a Decoction, and let the Patient receive the fume thereof into his Ear by a Funnel.*

Take of *the Oyl of Water-lillies and Roſes, of each one ounce: Mix them, and drop thereof into the Ear; after the fume.*

* Sows infuſed in the aforeſaid Oyls and ſtrained, are the beſt Anodines; for theſe Creatures have eſpecial force to appeaſe pain, and therefore are uſed in the toothach, hemorrhoids, and the like; or take them alive, and boyl them with Water in the Oyls til the Water be conſumed.

If the burning be very violently, you may mix cooling Juyces with the aforeſaid Oyls, thus:

Take of *the Oyl of Water-lillies, and Roſes, of each one ounce: the Juyce of Nightſhade and Plantane, of each half an ounce: Mix them, and drop thereof into the Ear.*

Roſe Vinegar is uſed of ſome Practitioners made of two parts of Oyl of Roſes, and one part of Vinegar, which ought to be ſuſpected, as al ſtrong repelling Medicines; for there wil be danger, leſt the humor flowing thither ſhould return to the Brain; and it is a general Precept alwaies to be obſerved. That you never lay repelling Medicines to inflamations which are near unto noble parts: but you may mix gentle Repellers with Anodines and Relaxers; for ſo they wil moderately repreſs the Defluxion, nor will they drive it far back: Such are the afore mentioned, to which you may ad this following:

Take of *the Oyl of Roſes, and Water-lillies, of each one ounce and an half: Roſe and Plantane Water, of each half an ounce: Breaſt-milk one ounce: the Mucilage of the Seeds of Fleabane and Quinces drawn with Roſe water, of each ſix drams: mix them. Put ſome drops thereof warm into the Ears, and bind clouts dipped in the ſame Liquor about the Ears.*

In vehement pain we are conſtrained to fly to Narcoticks, or Stupifactives; but you muſt uſe them ſeldom, and with much care, becauſe they offend the Brain. *Galen* ſaith, 3. de comp. med. ſec. loc. *I knew one, who only with the uſe of Opium, took away both ſpeech and ſence from his Patient, that he could be cured neither with Opobalſam, nor any other hot Medicine injected.* Therefore if neceſſity conſtrain, thus they are to be preſcribed:

Take of *Oyl of Poppy-ſeeds one ounce and an half: Camphire and Opium of each two grains: mix them, and drop them into the Ear.*

Take

* *Called Cheſlips, Kitchin bob, &c. many ſorts which being tou ed gath eth it ſelf round a ball.*

Take of *the Oyl of ſweet Almonds two ounces: the Juyce of Mallows half an ounce: Myrrh half a dram: Saffron half a ſcruple: Opium three or four grains: mix them for the uſe aforementioned.*

In applying of Topicks, the Rule of *Galen* is diligently to be obſerved, which is in *lib. 3. comp. medic. ſec. loc. cap.* 1. that an inflamed Ear be not touched, but let the Medicines be injected by an inſtrument for to ſee into the Ear, or a Probe armed with lint and dipt in the Medicines. Then that you ask the Patient if he feel it warm, and if he can endure it hotter? and let it be uſed ſo hot as he can ſuffer: You muſt put the Probe ſo armed gently into the Hole of the ear that the Medicine may ſoak from it into the ear, you muſt do thus till the paſſage of the ear be filled with the Medicine, then you muſt dip lint in the ſame Medicine, and lay it to the Hole of the ear, and round about.

In the ſtate of the Diſeaſe you muſt mix gently reſolving Oyls with Anodines, thus.

Take of *Oyl of Chamomel, ſweet Almonds and Violets, of each one ounce: the Oyl of Lillies half an ounce: Mix them.*

But theſe Fomentations and Fumigations which are made of the following Decoction, do reſolve more powerfully.

Take of *Marſh-Mallow-Roots one ounce: Mallows, Nightſhade, St. Johns-Wort, of each one handful: Linſeed half an ounce: the ſeeds of Mallows, Marſh Mallows, and white Poppies, of each two drams: the Flowers of Chamomel, Dill, and Roſes, of each one pugil: make a Decoction in Water and Milk for a Fomentation and Fumigation: Water taken out of Aſhen ſticks, being dropt into the Ears eaſeth pain and diſſolveth the cauſe of it. You muſt put green Aſhen ſticks in to the fire, and take the Water that comes from both ends.*

If the Tumor cannot be diſſolved but it ſeems to tend to ſuppuration, which you may perceive by the encreaſe of pain, by greater Pulſation, and a ſtronger Feaver.

You muſt help the motion of Nature, and apply this following Cataplaſm.

Take the *fæces of the former Decoction made for a Fomentation and Fumigation: and put to them of Ducks and Hens-greaſe, Marrow of Veal, and the Mucilage of Fleabane and Fœnugreek-ſeeds, of each one ounce: the Oyl of Chamomel and Violets, of each one ounce: Freſh Butter one ounce and an half: Saffron half a dram: Make a Cataplaſm.*

A Cataplaſm of Crums of Bread is alſo very good; for it aſſwageth pains and furthers ſuppuration gently without inflamation: and therefore it is very proper in al Phlegmous or hot Tumors: you muſt make it thus.

Take of *the Crums of white Bread one pound: boyl it in Goats Milk to a Pultis, then ad of the two Yolks of Eggs, the Oyl of Roſes two ounces: Saffron one ſcruple: Make a Cataplaſm.*

The Cataplaſm made of an Onyon, is much commended of *Victorius Faventinus.* Made thus.

Take *one Onyon: Freſh Butter two ounces: Oyl of Chamomel and Roſes, of each one ounce: Saffron one ſcruple: Make a Cataplaſm, apply it warm.*

The Suppuration being made, the Impoſthume breaketh, and the Matter comes forth either by the Membrane of the Ear made thin, or elſe corroded, and then the Patient muſt lie upon the Ear that is pained, that the quittour may come forth; and you muſt drop ſuch things into it as may cleanſe.

Take of *the Decoction of Barley four ounces: Honey of Roſes one ounce: drop this warm into the Ears at ſeveral times.*

If an Ulcer come from ſharpneſs of Matter, you muſt have a peculiar way of Cure; ſuch as is uſed to an Ulcer cauſed from a Deſluxion of Humors.

And firſt, becauſe according to the opinion of *Galen, 4. de comp. Med. ſec. loc.* we may not apply Topicks to any part, except the whol Body be firſt often purged: we muſt uſe ordinary Evacuations by Bleeding and Purging according to the nature and temper of the Patient; and theſe muſt be repeated through the whol time of Cure, as often as need requireth.

Then we muſt apply Drying and Cleanſing Topicks or Medicines to the place affected, beginning with the mildeſt firſt.

The Examples of which are theſe.

Take of *the beſt Honey and old white Wine of each three ounces: boyl them, and ſkim them: drop of this into the Ear, and ſtop it with Cotton dipt in the ſame.*

After that it may be ſtronger; mix the juyce of Horehound, Smallage, Wormwood, and the leſſer Centaury, or of Sowbread with Honey: boyl them gently, and drop thereof into the Ear.

Or,

Take of *the Juyce of Beets one ounce: Horehound half an ounce: the beſt Honey ſix drams: boyl theſe a little, then ad of the Syrup of Wormwood two drams: Mix them.*

You

You may make a ſtronger Medicine thus.

Take of *the Juyce of Sowbread one ounce*: *Myrrh one dram*: *Saffron half a ſcruple*: *Frankinſence one ſcruple*: *Verdegreece half a ſcruple*: *old Wine one ounce and an half*: *boyl them gently till the Wine be conſumed*: *drop of this twice or thrice in a day into the Ear.*

Obſerve, Before you drop any liquor into the Ear, you waſh the ear in warm Hydromel, or water and Honey, and wipe it wel with lint upon a Probe armed.

When the Ulcer is ſufficiently Clenſed, you muſt come to Cicatrizing. Thus.

Take of *Round Birthwort, Pomegranate peels, and Galls, of each half an ounce*: *boyl them in equal parts of Wine and Smiths-forge-water, to half a pint, when it is ſtrained, ad to it of the juyce of Plantane and Poligonum, of each one ounce*: *Honey of Roſes two drams*: *mix them, and drop of this into the Ear.* Or,

Take of *Frankinſence and Myrrh of each one dram*: *Gum of Juniper half a dram*: *Sarcocol, and Labdanum, of each one ſcruple*: *Make a Pouder of them and mix it with Turpentine into Balls, which you muſt lay upon the Coals ſo that the Patient may take the Fume into his Ear by a funnel.*

Or, You may mix that Pouder with ſome of the aforeſaid Juyces, and drop thereof into the Ear.

Or, You may mix burnt Allum with white Wine, for this hath a very great Drying quality.

If the Ulcer be ſtubborn and old, it is nouriſhed by a Defluxion, which you muſt labor to remove by uſual Purges, Diets of Lignum vitæ and Sarſa, by Errhins, Maſticatories, Cauteries, and other Remedies that wil divert.

Then muſt you uſe ſtronger Medicines to dry the Ulcer; ſuch as we preſcribed of juyce of Sowbread, Myrrh, and Verdegreece.

Or this following Medicine of *Valeſcus*, with which he ſaith that he Cured a Prieſt that had an Ulcer in his Ear from the eighth yeer of his age.

Take of *Honey ten drams*: *Vinegar eight drams*: *boyl them*: *take off the ſcum, and put to one dram of Verdegreece*: *Mix them.*

Theſe muſt be dropt morning and evening into the Ear, after it is waſhed with this Decoction.

Take of *Wormwood, Marſh Mallows and Agrimony, of each one handful*: *boyl them in equal parts of water and white Wine put to it towards the concluſion, to half a pint*: *Diſſolve in the ſtrained Liquor Oximel ſimple one ounce and an half*: *Allum poudered one dram*: *waſh the ear with this warmed, and after dry it with an armed Probe.*

If the pain come from ſharp Medicines, drop in the Oyl of ſweet or bitter Almonds with Myrrh, Aloes, and Saffron: and if it be violent, mix a little Opium, or drop in the Oyl made of yolks of Eggs in a leaden Mortar.

If the Ulcer be very foul, you muſt uſe *Ægyptiacum*, Diſſolved in the aforeſaid Juyces.

Laſtly, *Galen*, *Ærius*, and Others, both Greeks and Arabians do much Commend the Ruſt of Iron for the drying of Ulcers in the Ear.

Galen, 3. *de comp. med. ſec. loc.* uſeth Scales of Iron ground or boyled with the ſharpeſt Vinegar.

Hollerius in his Comment upon that Chapter doth prefer the Arrabian Preparation, for they firſt grind the Iron with Vinegar, then they dry it; thus they do ſeven times, then they make it very fine, and boyl it long with the beſt Vinegar, while it is as thick as Honey, and then they dry it, and uſe it with Honey or other liquors.

If the Pain of the Ear come from any thing fallen into it, as a little ſtone, Cherry-ſtone, or the like; which wil be very grievous, and ſomtimes cauſe Convulſions, Inflamations, and Death; as *Matthæus de Gradi* ſaith of a Boy of ten yeers had a Cherry-ſtone in his ear, and through the ignorance of the Chirurgeon, he endured great pain, and after died.

You muſt draw out theſe things thus.

Firſt, You may try with an Ear-picker which you muſt carefully attempt, leſt your inſtrument force it further, which often hapeneth.

Therefore if that which is fallen into the ear do fill the hole. it is better to abſtain from the uſe of the Ear-picker, and try theſe Remedies.

Paulus uſeth to dip his armed Ear-picker in Rozin, Turpentine, Gum, or the like; and to put it into the Ear, turning of it till you get it out by degrees.

If thus you cannot, put hot Oyl continually into the Ear to relax the part, and make the thing contained ſlippery, ſo it will eaſier come forth.

Uſe Neeſings with the mouth and noſtrils ſhut, for ſo it will be forced out of the Ears.

Theſe are to be followed till the party be freed; for if it continue long in the Ear, it will be inflamed, and then the thing will be more difficult and dangerous to be drawn forth.

Arculanus upon *Rhaſis*, affirmeth that the Head of a Lizard applied to the Ear, will draw out any thing; and confirmeth it by his own Experience, in theſe words: *In my Experiences for drawing things out of the Ear, this is one; Tie a live Lizard, or one lately dead, with his head to the Ear, for the ſpace of three hours, and when you take it away, you ſhall find the thing ſticking to the head of the Lizard: and this is good for the extraction of any thing wherefoever it is faſtened.*

Laſtly, If the former Medicines do not prevail, you muſt come to the uſe of a Chyrurgical Inſtrument, which is at large elegantly declared by *Fabricius Hildanus*, Cent. 1. Obſerv. 4, 5, 6. and by *Aquapendent*, in his Chyrurgical Operations, in his Chapter of the Chyrurgery for the Ears.

Sometimes Fleas get into the Ears, and moving themſelves in the Cavity, bring much diſturbance. For the taking out of them, make a little ball of dogs hair, and put it into the Ear, ſo will the Flea by reaſon of its affection to dogs come into it. Or make a tent, and put it often into the Ear, with a little Turpentine.

Oftentimes through ſwimming, or waſhing of the Head, water getteth into the Ears, which is very troubleſom: this is ſhaken forth by hopping on the contrary foot, and holding the Ear down. If this will not do, you muſt ſuck it out with a reed, or a pair of bellows. If you arm the pipe with tow to make it ſtick cloſe, and keep the air out of the Ear, it will be better.

Galen and *Aetius* continue in powring in of Oyl, ſuppling the Ear, and then wiping it with wool; and after uſing Oyl for divers times.

And laſtly, Put ſoft and dry Spunge into the Ear often, till it come out dry.

CHAP. IV.

Of thoſe things which come forth of the Cavities of the Ears preternaturally.

MAny Preternatural things come out of the Ears, which we will ſet down particularly with their Remedies.

Firſt, After an Impoſthume is broken which came after an Inflamation, or from an Ulcer coming from ſharp Humors, filth, or matter, uſeth to come forth; whoſe Cure is laid down in the former Chapter.

Sometimes blood comes out of the Ears; as in wounds of the head, or blows by which the Veins of the Ears are broken or rent. If this flux be ſmal, it is not to be ſtopt, becauſe then being retained, it would cauſe Inflamation; but if it be great, or of long continuance, it muſt be ſtopt by bleeding in the Arm, and Cupping glaſſes applied to the Shoulders with Scarification. Then you muſt drop cooling and binding things in, as juyce of Plantane, Polygonum, or the Decoction of Madder, red Roſes, Maſtich, Acacia, Hypocciſtis, Pomegranate flowers, Sumach, and the like, made in Wine and Vinegar, or Smiths Forge-water.

Sometimes Water comes out of the Brain into the Ears, as in children, which muſt not be ſtopt, for if it be ſuddenly ſtopt, it cauſeth the Falling-ſickneſs, or ſome grievous Diſeaſe of the Brain; for Nature caſts forth Excrements by that way, though not proper; and the great moiſtneſs in childrens heads is not only purged by the ordinary waies ordained by Nature, as the Noſtrils and Pallat, but alſo by the Ears, Eyes, and the whol Head, from whence it becomes ſore. But when this Evacuation is ſympromatical, and the humor begins to ulcerate the Ears, and hurt the hearing, we will lay down a convenient Method for the Cure.

And firſt, The abounding humors in the Head are to be purged with gentle Medicines often repeated, and to be derived by Veſicatories to the Neck, and by a Cauſtick.

Then you muſt cleanſe the Ears, and dry them with this Medicine:

Take of *the Juyce of Agrimony, and Wormwood, of each four ounces: white Wine, and Honey of Roſes, of each one ounce: Boyl them a little, and drop into the Ear after it is wiped; then ſtop it with Cotton dipped in the ſame.*

Take of *white Wine four ounces: the Juyce of Agrimony, Wormwood, and Centaury the leſs, of each one ounce: Boyl them, and drop into the Ear.*

In elder people, if water floweth out of the Ears long, you muſt purge the whol Body and the Brain with a Cephalick Apozeme that is purging; then you muſt conſume the ſuperfluous Humidity

dity with a Sudorifick Diet; derive it with Veſicatories, Cauteries, and Cupping glaſſes; and uſe other Remedies which are ſet down in the Cure of the Cold Diſtemper of the Brain.

Laſtly, There are Worms ſomtimes in the Ears coming out of filthy Ulcers, which are cured with the Ulcer; but becauſe the Ulcer cannot be ſpeedily cured, you muſt therefore endeavor the Cure of the Worms.

Take this one Medicine as an Example:

Take of *the Oyl of bitter Almonds: the Juyce of Smallage, and the leſs Centaury, of each two ounces: Vinegar two drams. Boyl them a little; then ad of Mirrh, and Aloes, of each one ſcruple. Mix them, and drop into the Ear.*

If you will make it ſtronger, put half a ſcruple of Coloquintida thereunto.

The End of the Third Book.

THE FOURTH BOOK OF THE PRACTICE OF PHYSICK.

Of the Diſeaſes of the Noſtrils.

The PREFACE.

THe *Noſtrils uſe to have many Affects which are referred either to the Series, or Method of Diſeaſes, or of Symptoms. Theſe are Diſeaſes, An* Ulcer, Ozæna, Sarcoma, *and* Polypus. *Theſe are Symptoms, The loſs of* Smelling, Stinking *in the* Noſe, *the* Coryza *or* Poſe, Sneezing, Bleeding. *Therefore this* Fourth Book *ſhall be referred to Seven Heads: The Firſt Chapter is concerning the* Ulcer *of the Noſtrils, and* Ozæna. *The Second of* Sarcoma *and* Polypus. *The Third of the loſs of* Smelling. *The Fourth of the* Stink *of the* Noſe. *The Fifth of* Coryza. *The Sixth of* Neezing. *The Seventh of* Bleeding *at the* Noſe.

Chap. 1. *Of the Ulcer of the Noſtrils, and* Ozæna.

THe Ulcer of the Noſtrils is either New and Simple, or Old and Stinking; This laſt is called *Ozæna.*

The New Ulcer which is Simple, either comes of External Cauſe, as a Wound, or Contuſion: Or, from an Internal Cauſe, as the ſharpneſs of Humors, flowing to the part; & eſpecially ſalt Flegm coming from the Brain.

Ozæna cometh from a ſimple Ulcer neglected, or from the Malignity and Acrimony of the Cauſe by which it becometh putrid and filthy.

The Diagnoſis of both is this; a Simple Ulcer Cauſeth little or no pain, but only ſends forth blood often, eſpecially when it is meddled or tampered withal; otherwiſe is is covered with a dry black Scab which ſomtimes is caſt forth. But *Ozæna* Cauſeth great pain, the Scab is fouler; as alſo Stinking Matter cometh from it. The Patient is not only annoyed therewith, but noyſom unto others: and the Greeks cal it *Ozæna* from the ſtink. Often this Ulcer creepeth, or either eareth the Griſtle of the Noſe, or the parts between, or the tender Bones thereof, and putrifieth them, and ſome-

ſomtimes deſtroyeth the Pallat, eſpecially if it turn to a Cancer, or if it come from the French Pox as it often doth, or from an *Elephantiaſis*.

As for the Prognoſtick, Ulcers that are New, and come from a gentle Humor that hath little Malignity are eaſily Cured: but Old Ulcers that are ſordid and putrid are hardly Cured, and if they turn into a Cancer, never. If they come of the French Pox, or Elephantiaſis, they cannot be Cured except thoſe Diſeaſes be firſt Cured.

For the Cure: Firſt you muſt appoint a good Diet, which may aſſwage the ſharpneſs of the Humors, and hinder the breeding of them; then you muſt Evacuate the whole Body by Bleeding, convenient Purging, and by Cupping Glaſſes with Scarrification: And if the Defluxion of Humors into the Noſtrils be very ſtubborn, it muſt be derived by Veſicatories and Caufticks applied to the hinder parts, and then you muſt give things to ſtrengthen the head.

After Univerſal Remedies you muſt come to Topicks. And firſt take notice if the Ulcers be Cruſty and Hard. and before you proceed, take away that with a little warm water and freſh Butter, or Gooſe greaſe, or Hens greaſe, Oyl of ſweet Almonds, or the like.

The Scabs being mollified, muſt not preſently be taken off by force, leſt the Ulcer be exaſperated with a Defluxion; but you muſt expect til they fal off of their own accord by blowing the noſtrils; or at laſt you may take them gently off with a little Oyl of ſweet Almonds upon the tip of your finger.

After the Scab is off you muſt uſe aſtringent and drying Remedies.

In a Simple Ulcer it is ſufficient to waſh it with Barley water, and Honey of Roſes, and then to anoint it with Ointment of Tutty, or with the white Ointment of Rhaſis, or the Oyl of yolks of Egs which wil be of more force if it be made in a Leaden Mortar.

But for the Cure of *Ozæna*, you muſt prepare theſe following Medicines.

Take of *Barley one pugil: Agrimony, Plantane, Wormwood, and the leſſer Centaury, of each one handful: Red Roſes half a pugil: boyl them in Forge-water: in the ſtraining diſſolve of Honey of Roſes four ounces: Make an Errhine to be often ſnuffed into the Noſtrils.*

After it is ſomwhat clean, you muſt uſe this following Decoction.

Take of *the Flowers and Rinds of Pomegranates of each two ounces: Plantane, Horſtaile, Fleabane, and Rupture-wort, of each one handful: the Roots of Biſtort, or Snakeweed, one ounce: Crude Allum, one ounce and an half: Make a Decoction.*

Allum Water is alſo good; as alſo thoſe Remedies which ſhal after be preſcribed for the Cure of *Polypus*, in the following Chapter.

Ægyptiacum Diſſolved in Barley Water is good for the ſame.

After this make Ointments which may Aſtring or Bind, Cleanſe, and Dry exceedingly, as of *Pompholygos*, with Allum *Chalcitis*, and the Pomegranate Peels.

Or, This following.

Take of *Oyl Olive, half an ounce: Pomegranate Peels, and Flowers, of each three drams: Mirrh, Allum, Labdanum, of each two drams. Chalcitis, Aloes, Frankinſence, of each one dram: Oyl of Roſes and Myrtles, of each two ounces: Red Wax as much as is ſufficient: Make an Ointment, which apply to the Ulcer; or diſſolve it in Wine, Plantane, Roſe or Myrtle-water, which often ſnuff into the Noſe, the mouth being filled with Water.*

If theſe things prevail not, waſh the Ulcer with ſublimate Water, twice, thrice, or four times in a day, for it dryeth very much, and cleanſeth without any pain or biting: You muſt make it thus.

Take of *Plantane water four ounces: Crude, Sublimate Poudered, twelve grains: boyl them in a Glaſs to the Conſumption of half, you may encreaſe or diminiſh the quantity of the Sublimate as you deſire to have it ſtronger or weaker.*

When the Ulcer is wel Cleanſed, you muſt proceed to the Drying of it up: for which purpoſe the Pouder of Red Roſes blown into it, is very good.

Rondeletius witneſſeth that there is nothing more efficacious for the drying of Ulcers after ſufficient cleanſing than a Fumigation, becauſet it entreth deep into the parts, and drieth, and he ſaith it muſt be made of powerful dryers, as of Orpiment, and Cinnaber, to which you muſt ad ſome ſweet things, from whence there will ariſe a fume or ſmoak to dry the Ulcer; as Mirrh, Frankinſence, Maſtich, Benjamin, and the like, which may be brought into this form:

Take of *the beſt Labdanum, Hypociſtis, Maſtich, and Mirrh, of each three drams: red Storax, and Styrax calamita, Frankinſence bark, Sandarach, & Orpine, of each two drams. Make them up with Turpentine into Troches, with which let the Patient be fumed morning and evening in his Chamber.*

It is excellent alſo to burn Candles of red Wax; for the ſmoak of them will powerfully dry the

Ulcers

Ulcers in the Noſe, eſpecially if the Patient be kept in a cloſe room. And *Rondeletius* ſaith, That we may perceive that the ſmoak of a Candle doth affect us by receiving it: for if at any time we ſit long in a little Study by Candle light, our ſpittle and ſnot will appear afterwards black: And by this means he ſaith he cured an Ulcer, which neither Italian nor French Chyrurgeons could Cure.

Chap. 2. *Of Sarcoma, and Polypus.*

SOmetimes there is not only an Ulcer, but an excreſcency of fleſh in the Noſe, which maketh preternatural Humors called *Polypus* and *Sarcoma*.

Sarcoma is fleſh growing in the Noſtrils without any certain ſhape, but like the proud fleſh of an Ulcer.

But *Polypus* is an Excreſcency of fleſh growing with ſmal roots, and ſpreading and hanging down to the lower part of the Noſe, like the fiſh called *Polypus*, from whence it hath the name. *Rhaſis* calleth it the Hemorrhoids of the Noſe, becauſe like thoſe of the Fundament. This fleſh is ſoft, ſometimes white, ſometimes red and blew, and if it grow big, it hangeth out of the Noſe: but if it grow in the higheſt part of the Noſe, it ſometimes hangeth down to the Pallat, and ſtops the common paſſages, and may eaſily be ſeen behind the Uvula. In Southernly weather, and at the full Moon, it is much ſwelled. But in a Northernly dry time, and at new Moon, it is leſs. It differs from Sarcoma in this: Sarcoma groweth chiefly in the loweſt part of the Noſe, where it is fleſhy; but Polypus grows in the higheſt part by the Root of the Noſe.

The Cauſe of both, is a groſs ſlimy humor coming from the Brain mixed with blood; ſometimes with melancholly, and then you may fear a Cancer. Sarcoma often cometh from the ſuperfluous nouriſhment of the Noſe turned into proud fleſh, and therefore is more eaſily cured.

The knowledg of theſe Diſeaſes is eaſie by what hath been ſaid, they being apparent to the Eyes.

The Prognoſtick is thus made:

A Sarcoma is eaſily cured for the moſt part; but Polypus hardly. But that which is ſoft, white, or red, or white and red, is more eaſily cured; but that which is hard and livid or blew, is difficultly cured, and is like to be a Cancer. Alſo that Polipus which groweth low, or in the middle of the noſtril, is more curable than that which is rooted high, becauſe Remedies will not ſo well reach it.

Both are cured with the ſame Medicines, which are to be ſo ordered that the ſuperfluous fleſh may be taken away; but firſt you muſt remove the antecedent Cauſe, that is, the ſlimy humor which cometh from the Head, which you muſt do by a drying and attenuating Diet, general purging, by Revulſion, derivation and drying of the head; all which may be done by thoſe Remedies which are preſcribed in the cure of the cold diſtemper of the Brain, being diſcreetly uſed; and although many Authors commend the Decoction of Guajacum with a drying diet, you muſt take heed leſt by ſo doing you mix the flegm with hot humors, and ſo it turn into a Cancer.

After this, you muſt take off the ſuperfluous fleſh with Cauſticks, or with Ciſſers made purpoſely, and then cicatrize. But in the beginning of this diſeaſe, it may be cured with only ſtrong dryers and aſtringents; and conſtantly you muſt apply ſuch kind of Medicines firſt, before you come to ſtronger.

Firſt of all, try the Medicine made of the three ſorts of Pomegranates preſcribed by *Galen*, lib. 3. de comp. med. ſec. loc. cap. 3. thus: *Take three Pomegranates, one ſowr, another ſweet, and the other of the middle ſort: let them be ripe, bruiſe them in a Mortar; then take the Juyce, and boyl it to a Liniment; dip a tent therein, and often put it into the Noſe.* This dryeth and aſtringeth without ſharpneſs, and conſumeth the Excrement.

This following Water doth it more powerfully:

Take of *unripe Grapes three pound: Pomegranate peels and flowers, and Sumach, of each two pound: macerate them in Vineger, and diſtil them: then put to it Allum one pound: Vitriol three ounces: then diſtil them all together again, and touch the part affected often with that Water.*

If theſe things will not do, you muſt uſe ſtronger, by putting Sandarach and Orpiment to the aforeſaid Water.

Or you may mix the Spirit of Vitriol, or the Water for ſeparating Gold, commonly called the ſecond Water, with Plantane Water, and touch the Polypus often therewith.

Or with the Mercury Water preſcribed in the Cure of the Ulcer in the Noſe.

Or you may put in a tent dipped in the juyce of Cuckoo-pintle roots, and if it be too ſharp, mix it with Plantane Water.

Mercury Precipitate, which is red, is accounted the beſt Medicine to conſume proud fleſh without pain, if it be often waſhed. This Pouder is to be mixed with Honey of Roſes, and applied with a tent.

There

There are alſo Plaiſters of the ſame vertue to conſume a Polypus, without pain, as this:

Take *the Emplaiſter* de Mucilaginibus *half an ounce*: *the pouder of Savin two drams*: *Incorporate them, and put thereof into the Noſtrils.* Or,

Take of *Verdegreece, Orpiment, Vitriol, and Allum, of each one ounce and an half*: *Antimony ſix drams*: *Steep them in Vinegar, then beat them fine, then dry them*: *thus beaten and ſteeped eight times, let them be ſteeped in Plantane Water, and then dried. Then take of Oyl of Roſes four ounces*: *Litharge two ounces*: *Boyl them, and about the concluſion ad two drams of the ſaid pouder*: *Make a ſtiff Plaiſter thereof, of which make tents.*

In the uſe of Cauſticks, firſt you muſt obſerve that before they be applied, you defend the Noſtrils with the cooling Oyntment of *Galen*, or with Nutritum, or Populeon, or white of an Eg beaten with Oyl of Roſes, and the like.

Secondly, leſt the Cauſticks ſhould hurt the Noſtrils, they muſt be applyed through a ſilver pipe, ſo that it may compaſs the Polipus, and the Medicines may be conveyed to it without touching the Noſtrils.

Thirdly, You muſt obſerve that theſe Medicines are to be uſed in the decreaſe of the Moon, for the rumor then is leſs, and therefore Medicines may eaſily be conveyed to the root.

Laſtly, If Polypus cannot be taken off with Medicines, you muſt come to Chyrurgery, or Manual operation; which is deſcribed in *Paulus Ægineta, Cornelius Celſus, Jerom, Fabricius de Aquapendente*, and other Modern Writers.

Chap. 3. *Of the loſs of Smelling.*

THe Sence of Smelling is hindered and hurt three waies, as other Actions are, that is, by diminiſhing, aboliſhing, and depraving.

The Cauſes are the ſame that diminiſh, and aboliſh the Smelling, only they differ in degrees, namely, diſtemper, obſtruction, and aſtriction.

A cold and moiſt diſtemper joyned with flegm, as it can eaſily make any ſence dull, ſo doth it eſpecially hinder the Smelling, or aboliſh it; hence it is that the Smelling is often hurt when there is a Catarrh, or a Coryza, for cold doth either diminiſh or aboliſh the ſence, becauſe it doth dull and weaken the Natural heat, which is the producer of every action.

Obſtruction comes alſo from flegm which fills the ſenſible Paſſages, as the Noſtrils; and alſo the inſenſible; as the pores of the Brain, and the proceſſus of the Temples, called *Mamillares*, ſo that the ſcents and ſmels cannot come to the parts: it may alſo come of a Sarcoma, Polypus, or other cauſe filling and ſtopping the Noſtrils.

Aſtriction ſometimes may come from flegm gathered in the fore part of the Brain, and compreſſing the *Proceſſus Mamillares*, as we ſaid of the diminiſhing of ſight, from the aſtriction of the Optick Nerves. This aſtriction may alſo come from the Natural ſhape of the Noſtrils, when they are ſo ſtraight that there is no free paſſage for the Scents.

The Cauſe of Smelling depraved, is a ſtink alwaies coming to the Noſtrils, either from an Ulcer there, or from ſtinking flegm in the Noſtrils, and *Os Ethmoides*: for thoſe things which putrifie either in the very ſence of Smelling, or neer it in the Meninges, are not ſmelt by the Patient, but by them that ſtand by; for it is fit that whatſoever toucheth the ſence of Smelling, ſhould be brought from other parts. Moreover, a foul ſtinking vapor ariſing from other parts, as the Stomach, Jaws, and Brain be carried to the *Proceſſus Mamillares*, and ſo infect them, that all the ſcents that are brought thither ſhall ſmel thereof; as when the Tongue is foul with Choller, all things which you taſt ſeem bitter.

The Cauſes are eaſily known. A cold and moiſt diſtemper of the Brain, and ſlimy flegm coming from the Brain, ſhew an abundance of flegm.

An obſtruction if it come from flegm ſhall be known by the ſame ſigns. If it come from Sarcoma or Polypus, you may learn the knowledg thereof from their Chapters.

Now the place in which the matter cauſing obſtruction is contained, is known thus: If it be in the paſſage of the Noſtrils, the voyce is hindered, becauſe the Noſtrils conduce to Speech: but the voyce is perfect if the matter be in the *Proceſſus Mamillares*, or the fore part of the brain.

You may know by the default of the parts, from whence comes the ſcent which hurts the inſtrument of Smelling.

As to the Prognoſtick: When the Smelling is newly hurt, and coming of a ſimple Coryza or defluxion, is eaſily cured; but when it is of long continuance, and from a ſeeled diſtemper, hardly: that which comes from the ill ſhape of the Noſtrils, is incurable.

You muſt order the Cure diverſly according to the diverſity of the Cauſes: If it come from a cold diſtemper

Distemper, you must use those Medicines which were prescribed for a Cold Catarrh.

For the taking away of the Obstruction or stopping of the Nostrils and Processus Mamillares by flegm fastened there; You must use Medicines that Purge those parts, as Errhins, Neezings, and Gargarisms; which were propounded by us in the Cure of the Cold Distemper of the Brain.

If the Nostrils be stopt by a Sarcoma or Polypus; you must fetch the Cure from the Precedent Chapter.

Chap. 4. *Of the Stink of the Nostrils.*

THe Stink of the Nostrils, and of the Breath, do much differ; for that comes only from the Nostrils, and this from divers parts, as from the Stomach, Lungs, Gums, Jaws, or being Ulcerated, which you may know by sense, or by their proper signs.

But the stink in the Nostrils comes of stinking Vapors either bred in the Nostrils, as in *Ozæna*, *Sarcoma*, or *Polypus*: or sent thither from putrid Humors contained in the fore-part of the Brain; or about the *Processus Mamillares*, or *Os Cribrosum*. Now the Humors do putrifie in the said parts when they are too long retained in them, especially if the Brain be hot and moist; and they are retained either by the stoppage or attriction of the parts, and in flat Noses.

The Diseases of the Nostrils which produce this stink, are known by their proper signs above mentioned; but if you find none, you must conjecture that the stink comes from a putrid Humor in the Brain, *Processus Mamillares*, or *Os Cribrosum*.

The Prognostick of the stink in the Nose coming of an Ulcer, *Polypus*, or *Sarcoma*, depends upon their Prognostick: but that which comes from corrupt Humors contained in the fore-part of the Brain, if it be New, is easily Cured; if Old, uncurable: especially if it come from a depression and flatness of the Nose.

The Cure is performed by removing the Causes, and appeasing the Symptoms.

The Cure of an Ulcer, Sarcoma, and Polypus is above mentioned: but you must take away the putrid Humor in the Brain, *Processus Mamillares*, or *Os Ethmoides*, by emptying and Clensing means.

And first, You must use Universal Evacuations for Clensing the whol body and the brain from flegmy Excrements, by Pills, Apozems, and the like; to which you may ad, if there be great plenty of Humors, a Sweating Diet: afterwards administer Errhins that clense and bring forth the Matter conjoined.

And first of al, Let him morning and evening snuff up white Wine from the palm of his hand in which the Lesser Centaury and Calamints have been boyled.

Then let the juyce of Beets extracted with the Water of Marjoram be used in like manner.

Or,

Take of *Cyprus Roots, and Calamus Aromaticus, of each half an ounce*: *Red Roses one pugil*: *Myrrh two drams*: *boyl them in white Wine for an Errhine.*

That you may draw down the flegm more violently, make this.

Take of *Flower-de-luce-Roots half a dram*: *white Hellebore and long Pepper of each half a scruple*: *Annis-seeds and dryed Marjoram poudered of each one scruple*: *Euphorbium one grain*: *Oyl of Spike Chiry, and Violets, of each as much as is sufficient*: *make a soft Oyntment, in which dip the top of your little finger, and anoint the Nostrils within*; *or put it with a Tent or Pledget as big as a Pease into the Nostrils.*

Lastly, To oppose the stink, you must snuff up sweet things, as *Galla Moschata* dissolved in sweet Wine, Angelica-water, or the like.

Chap. 5. *Of Coryza, or Pose.*

CO*ryza*, called in Latin, *Gravedo*, is a Catarrh falling from the Brain into the Nose; which Defluxion is of a crude Humor contained in the fore Ventricles of the Brain, and comes for the most or an External Cause, as from the heat of the Sun, drinking of much Wine, hot Baths, and the like, which do melt and dissolve the thick flegm gathered in the Brain: It comes also of External Causes which Cool the Brain, for then it is squeezed like a spunge, and so it sends down the Humor into the inferior parts: as also by over-cooling the Brain there is an encrease of flegm, for through want

want of heat the Excrements are not concocted; therefore are they ſent forth through the open paſſages by the Expulſive Faculty.

This Diſeaſe appears of its ſelf, for the Humor is ſent in abundance out of the Noſe.

Among al kinds of Catarrhs that which is through the Noſe is moſt ſafe and gentle, eaſily Cured if it be New, and come of an External Cauſe; but that which is Old, and comes from a ſtubborn Diſtemper of the Brain, is difficult.

As alſo, when it proceeds of a hot Diſtemper of the Liver, which ſomtimes cauſeth ſharp and hot Catarrhs; by which the Noſe is often Ulcerated and ill affected otherwaies.

The Cure of this Diſeaſe is by Curing the Catarrh; for it requires the ſame Evacuations, Revulſions, and Derivations; except that here you muſt not uſe Errhins, leſt they ſhould draw the Humors to the part affected; but Gargariſms and Maſticatories after Univerſals are very good.

And beſides theſe, Authors do commend thoſe things which properly belong to the ſtopping of a Cataarh; as the vapor of boyled Marjoram; or of Marjoram water taken into the Noſe. The fume of Vinegar ſprinkled upon a red hot Iron is good for the ſame; and the better if red Roſes have formerly been infuſed therein: If the Defluxion be very Cold, dry Fumigations of Nigella, Frankinſence, and the like, thrown upon Embers are very good; for by theſe the cold Diſtemper of the Brain is amended, and the ſuperfluous moiſture conſumed.

Chap. 6. *Of Sternutation, or Neezing.*

ALthough Neezing come often to found men, and uſeth to be ſo light an Affect that it deſerveth not the name of a Symptom; yet ſomtimes it is troubleſom, that it requireth a Phyſitian: As we may reade in *Foreſtus, Obſ.* 127. *Lib.* 10. in his Hiſtory of a certain Maid which had ſo grievous a fit of Neezing from a ſharp ſalt Catarrh, that ſhe had the advice of many Phyſitians. This is confirmed by the Old Cuſtom of ſaying *God bleſs you* to him that Neezeth; which ſome ſay came from hence, In the time of *Gregory* the Great there was an ordinary Diſeaſe of Neezing by which the Patients died; albeit ſome ſay that Cuſtom is more antient.

Sternutation is a ſwift motion of the Brain, with which the breath is forced out of the Noſe for the throwing forth of things that offend: By the Brain we underſtand not only the ſubſtance thereof, but the whole Body with its Membranes; eſpecially the fore-membranes, which are eſpecially contracted in this Diſeaſe, which we may gather from hence, becauſe when we hold up the head we Neez more eaſily; for then the matter provoking which for the moſt part is windy and tends naturally upwards, is more eaſily carried to that part.

But the motion which happens in Neezing belongs to the natural Expulſive Faculty of the Brain and its Membranes, according to *Galen*, 2. *de ſymp. cauſ. cap.* 1. where diſtinguiſhing Neezing from Trembling and Palpitation, ſaith, That Palpitation comes only from a Diſeaſe: Trembling from Nature and a Diſeaſe: but Neezing from Nature only.

But *Galen* at the firſt ſight ſeems to contradict himſelf; who in *Cap.* 4. of the ſame Book, ſaith, That a Cough and Neezing are Symptoms of the Voluntary Faculty; but it is no contradiction: and *Galen* cleers himſelf wiſely; ſaying, That in Neezing the Animal Faculty doth concur only ſecondarily; becauſe in Neezing breath is ſent from the Head and from the Lungs; yet the Head gives the original of the motion to the Breaſt; for when it haſtneth to ſend forth thoſe things that offend in the Noſe, it uſeth both wayes at once to ſend forth breath: One way which it maketh by it ſelf, Another way which it maketh by the Nerves, deſcending like long arms into the breaſt; whence *Galen, Com. Aph.* 51. *Sect.* 7. teacheth, That Neezing comes with antecedent inſpiration or taking in of breath when Nature gathers it together to make Sternutation, then the air which goes forth of the breaſt, joyned with that which is drawn by the Noſe into the Brain, doth expel with Noiſe and violence whatſoever offendeth the Membranes of the Noſtrils which have moſt Exquiſite Senſe.

From this place of *Galen*, we may gather, That the irritation which cauſeth Sternutation is made chiefly in the Noſe; which is confirmed, *Aph.* 51. *lib.* 7. where he ſaith, *They only Neez of thoſe thus affected which have a ſharp moiſture flowing from the head, as when you put ſharp things into the Noſe: For as a Cough is a certain natural motion to purge the Arteries which are in the Lungs; ſo doth Neezing the paſſages of the Noſe.*

But it may be objected, That many ſtanding bare-headed, or otherwiſe in the cold Air, do preſently Neez, that one would think the Brain was provoked immediatly at that time. We *Anſwer*, That cold Air is the Cauſe of Sternutation not while it doth immediately act upon the brain: but becauſe through compreſſion of the brain and its Membranes, it cauſeth a ſharp Matter to deſcend to the Noſtrils; although therefore in this Symptom the Membranes of the brain may be provoked: yet

Neezing is not produced before a ſharpneſs or tickling come to the Membranes of the Noſe which are exquiſitely ſenſible.

The Cauſes of Neezings are known by what hath been ſaid, namely, What things ſoever can provoke the internal coat of the Noſtrils, ſuch as are ſharp humors or vapors, either coming from the Brain, or ſent from the inferior parts; hence men neez in feavers, ſaith *Avicen*, becauſe ſharp vapors are ſent from the whol body into the head; or it is cauſed when ſharp things are externally put into the Noſe, as ſharp Medicines called *Pharmica* Neeſings. Theſe are the external Cauſes which provoke neezing immediately. There are many other mediate Cauſes which make internal Cauſes, or move them, as all alterations of the Air, as above ſaid of cold Air. *Galen* in his Book *de inſtrum. odoratus, cap.* 6. ſaith, That neezing is provoked by beholding the Sun, becauſe the Spirits of the Brain, like to a vapor, are diſcuſſed by the Sun.

The knowledg of this Diſeaſe is manifeſt. The outward Cauſes appear by the relation of the Patient; but the internal from the ſigns of the parts affected, by which the matter provoking is ſent to the Noſtrils, and fore part of the Brain.

As to the Prognoſtick; This Diſeaſe is of it ſelf without danger. But in the beginning of a Catarrh or Coryza it is very hurtful, becauſe it keeps the humor from concoction by its motion. Sometimes in Feavers it is ſo ſtrong that it takes away all ſtrength, and cauſeth bleeding at the Noſe; ſometimes it is no waies hurtful, and in ſound men it expelleth the ſuperfluities of the Brain: In ſick men it is held a good ſign. It promiſeth help in Feavers, eſpecially in malignant Feavers when all things are deſperate. If neezing happen to a woman in fits of the Mother, or that hath hard travel, it is good, Aph. 35. Sect. 5. Neezing provoked with Medicines is good againſt Apoplexies, and other great Diſeaſes of the Brain. And it being provoked they do not neez, it is a ſign of death, for it ſignifieth that Nature leaves to act.

In Diſeaſes of the Lungs, eſpecially in a Pleuriſie, and *Peripneumonia*, or inflamation of the Lungs, neezing is evil, *Hipp.* 2. *Progn.* becauſe from the ſhaking of the Brain in neezing, the parts of the Breaſt are violently pulled and torn; from whence the inflamation is encreaſed, and there is no other evacuation of the matter cauſing the diſeaſe; but for the expelling of flegm contained in the Griſtles of the Lungs, which could not be caſt out by a Cough: *Galen* ſheweth that neezing is good, *Gal.* 2. *de ſymp. cauſ. cap.* 5, & 6.

The Cure when it is neceſſary, or when neezing bringeth inconveniencies, is made firſt by removing of the External Cauſes, if it come from them. If it come of an internal Cauſe, you muſt remove that alſo, by Evacuations, Revellers, Derivers, and Diſcuſſers.

If a hot diſtemper of the Brain or any other part ſend ſharp vapors to the Noſtrils and inward Meninges. Then you muſt open a Vein, and then purge, then revel the vapors with Fricions, and Ligatures, with Cupping Glaſſes to the Shoulders; alſo uſe other Revelling, Deriving, and Diſcuſſing Medicines, comb the Head, pull the Ears, rub the Eyes, blow the Noſe, and hold the Breath.

Laſtly, To take away ſharpneſs, and hinder the Noſtrils from being provoked, it is good to take the vapor of hot water into the Noſe; or to anoint the Noſtrils with Oyl of Roſes, ſweet Almonds, Violets, or with freſh Butter; or to ſnuff up warm Milk into the Noſe; by which only Remedy *Foreſtus* preſently cured the Maid mentioned formerly.

Chap. 7. *Of Bleeding at the* Noſe, *called* Hæmorrhagia.

THe word *Hæmorrhagia*, vulgarly ſignifieth any flux of blood coming from any part. But peculiarly, when it is named ſimply of *Hippocrates*, it ſignifieth only that flux which cometh from the Noſe, as the firſt and moſt evident kind, as *Galen* obſerved, *Com.* 1. *in* 1. *Epid.*

An *Hæmorrhagia* of the Noſe, is a Symptome in the excrements of thoſe things which are wholly againſt Nature. For Blood coming through the Noſe, either comes from the Veins and Arteries in the Brain, or from the Veſſels coming from the Pallat to the Noſtrils, which are like the Hemorrhoid Veins in the Womb and Fundament.

But ſince every Symptome depends upon a Diſeaſe as its immediate Cauſe, the cauſe of this will be either an Organical, or a Common Diſeaſe.

The Organical is two-fold: The opening of the Veſſels, which is called in Greek *Anaſtomoſis*; and the thinning, or rarefaction of them, called *Diapedeſis*.

The Common Diſeaſe is two-fold: The breaking of the Veſſels, called *Rexis*; and the Eroſion called *Diabroſis*.

The Cauſes immediately producing thoſe Diſeaſes, are either exceeding in quantity or quality of Blood.

Blood

Blood offending in quantity can either break the Veins, or open the Orifices of them.

In quality, if it be too hot, or too thin, it will flow out by *Anaſtomoſis*, becauſe heat doth dilate the Orifice, and thinneſs maketh it flow more eaſily. Alſo the ſame qualities make a *Diapedeſis*: for heat maketh the coats of the Veſſels thin, and the thinneſs of the blood makes it eaſie to paſs through the pores of thoſe coats.

Laſtly, The ſharpneſs of the Blood gnaweth the Tunicles of the Veins, and ulcerateth them, from whence cometh a *Diabroſis*.

The external Cauſes alſo do concur to produce this Diſeaſe, either mediately, or immediately.

Immediately, as falls, ſtroaks, wounds, and the like, which break and divide the Veins.

They work mediately which do encreaſe, warm, and make thin the blood, as plentiful Diet, Drunkenneſs, Idleneſs, too much Exerciſe, great Noiſe, Heat, long ſtaying in the Sun, and the like.

The Differences of *Hemorrhagia* are theſe: Some are Critical, ſome Symptomatical.

Critical *Hemorrhagia's* are in acute Feavers, by the force of Nature endeavor to expel the cauſe of the Diſeaſe this way, as eſpecially in thoſe Diſeaſes which are joyned with the Inflamation of ſome Entral, eſpecially of the Liver, or the Spleen, which are many times diſcharged by theſe waies; ſomtimes it comes without a Feaver, when Nature diſchargeth her ſelf of the ſuperfluous blood, whence we ſee many in their youth have an Hemorrhagy by fits, and others bleed other waies.

A Symptomatical Hæmorrhagy happeneth chiefly in Chronical Diſeaſes, in which filthy blood is produced by reaſon of the debility of the Liver, or ſome other great Diſtemper, which either flows through thoſe Veins by the weakneſs of the retentive faculty, or is ſent forth by the expulſive, as an unprofitable burden, becauſe impure blood is not fit to nouriſh the Body.

Hæmorrhagia is known of its ſelf. But its Cauſes are thus diſtinguiſhed: That which cometh by *Anaſtomoſis*, hath this common with that which comes by *Rexin*, or rupture, in that in both the blood floweth plentifully; but in this they are diſtinguiſhed, If a blow or a fall went before, we ſhould ſuppoſe it to be *Rexin*: But when Ruption cometh from *Plethora*, or much Blood; as alſo apertion of the Veins; thus they may be diſtinguiſhed: When the Veſſel is broken, the Blood floweth conſtantly; when it is opened, at a diſtance, and by fits only; becauſe the Orifices of the Veſſels uſe to be knit and cloſed when there is leſs plenty of the Humor which dilateth flowing thereto; but broken Veſſels ſtand alwaies open, and therefore blood continually floweth till the ſolution of continuity be united. Moreover the opening of a Vein, is diſtinguiſhed from the breaking, by the ſubſtance of the blood: For if it be thin, it comes from a Veſſel opened; if thick, it comes from a broken. Hence it is that Hemorrhagy comes in yong men for the moſt part by the opening of the Veſſels, becauſe their blood is thin; but in old men from Ruption, becauſe theirs is thick.

If it comes from Erotion of the Veins, there will be ſigns of *Cacochymia*, or ill juyce in the body of an Ulcer, and matter ſomtimes comes forth: or at leaſt a ſalt Catarrh hath gone before. If it comes by *Diapedeſis*, or Rarefaction, the blood is thin and little.

The Cauſes antecedent and external, are eaſily diſtinguiſhed: For if it come from plenty of blood, there is a red face and large veins: as alſo the Diet hath been large and hot, or there hath been ſome external cauſe which hath melted and made thin the blood, and theſe eſpecially befal them who have very hot Livers.

If it come from evil Juyce, it is known by its proper ſigns, which declare whether Choller or Melancholly doth abound: Moreover, the Blood will appear corrupt either from the Noſe, or taken from the Arm.

If it come from the weakneſs of the retentive faculty, the face wil be pale, and the whol body weak; as alſo ſome Diſeaſe hath gone before, by which the Liver was firſt weakened, and then very little blood comes forth, and by degrees.

If the blood comes immediately from the Veins of the Noſtrils, it is eaſily ſtopt with aſtringent Medicines applied thereto, and there will be no pain in the Head. Contrarywiſe, if it come from the Brain, there is ſome pain in ſome part of the Head, the flux is hardly ſtopped, and things put up into the Noſe do no good. Somtimes blood comes from other parts, as the Liver, Spleen, Womb, whoſe ſigns are the pains and extenſions in thoſe parts.

If the blood flows from an Artery, it comes with force, it is hot, pure, freſh, and clear; but when it comes from a Vein, it is dark, red, thick, ſomtimes foul, and comes forth with ſmal force.

The Prognoſtick of Hemorrhagy coming, eſpecially if it be Critical, is taken from the hurt actions, when the Excrements and qualities are changed: as watchings, and dreams of red things, a great pain of the Head and Neck, heavineſs in the Temples, and great beating of thoſe Arteries, ringing and noiſe in the Ears, dulneſs of the Eyes, with redneſs thereof, and of the whol face, hating of light, involuntary tears, itching of the Noſe, a drop of Blood upon the day that declares the Criſis, difficulty of breathing, an extenſion of the Hypochondria without pain.

The Reaſon of which ſigns is: When the Blood begins to be carried to the Head, it begets in the Head Phantaſms of red things, both waking and ſleeping: as it happened to a yong Roman which

Galen mentioneth, *lib. de præſag. ad Poſthumum, cap.* 13. he had an acute Diſeaſe, and thought he ſaw a red Serpent about the Chamber Seiling, at which being frighted, he leaped out of his bed: Hence *Galen* foretold a Hæmorrhagy at hand, and hindered the letting of blood which other Phyſitians had preſcribed.

The pain of the Head and Neck comes from the tranſlation of the blood into the ſuperior parts, which by diſtending and pulling the Membranes cauſeth pain.

The Arteries in the Temples beat by reaſon of their compreſſion which is cauſed by the fulneſs of the Veins.

The noiſe in the Ears comes from vapors flying in abundance into the head.

The ſight is dim becauſe many thick vapors ſent up do ſtop the paſſages. Hence it is that when paſſage is denied to the Animal Spirits, the ſight is dim.

The things flying before the Eyes called *Marmaryges*, are nothing but thin bodies divided and of divers colours contained between the *Cornea* and the *Cryſtalline*, coming from vapors aſcending: which though they be inward, yet through deception of the ſight they ſeem to be outward; becauſe the Eye being uſed to ſee External things, ſuppoſeth whatſoever is within, to be without.

The Redneſs of the Face and Eyes comes from blood in thoſe parts increaſed: there is a deteſtation of light, becauſe the Eyes being diſtended with plenty of humors, wil be more diſtended with light, becauſe it diſperſeth the Spirits: Hence the Eye is dilated, which cauſeth pain, which that the Patient may avoid, he avoideth the light.

The involuntary Tears come from the repletion of the Eyes, and the parts adjacent, which being too much Diſtended to preſs the Glandles that contain the moiſture of which tears are made.

The Itching of the Noſtrils comes from vapors aſcending upwards.

Drops of blood upon the day of demonſtration, namely, the fourth or eleventh, ſheweth that there wil be an *Hæmorrhagy* upon the day of judgment; namely, the ſeventh or the fourteenth, becauſe in thoſe dayes Nature begins to tranſfer the Humors to thoſe parts.

The breathing is difficult, becauſe while the blood flyeth upward it compreſſeth the *Diaphragma*.

Laſtly, There is a ſtretching of the *Hypochondria*, becauſe the blood begins to move in its fountain, and in the roots of the veins: but this diſtention is not conſtant, and is without pain, as the difficulty of breathing is: for if they ſhould laſt long and increaſe they would be ſigns of the Liver inflamed.

The Prognoſtick of a preſent Bleeding at Noſe is thus.

If Blood flow moderately out of the Note in the day of judgment it is ſign of Health; although *Galen* doth confirm this; yet *Fernelius* denyeth it, ſaying, *lib.* 2. *de ſanguinis miſſ. cap.* 1. That no diſcharge of blood, although critical, is ſign of health; for though it eaſe madneſs, watchings, headach, and other Symptoms, yet it ſcarce ever cureth the Diſeaſe, becauſe the purer portion of blood is ſent forth and the pure remaineth; and this is thus proved, becauſe the blood coming from the noſe is of a laudable colour and ſubſtance, when blood at the ſame time taken out of a vein in the arm or elſe where, ſhal appear to be corrupt.

This Doctrine of *Fernelius* is very real, but not altogether to be received: It is true, That in acute Diſeaſes, eſpecially malignant Feavers, a *Hæmorrhag* doth not alwaies Cure the Diſeaſe: as Sweat is not alwaies a ſign of Health in thoſe Diſeaſes. becauſe theſe Evacuations being forced by Nature before the time, come for the moſt part from the malice of the matter of the Diſeaſe: Yet ſomtimes acute Diſeaſes are cured by *Hæmorrhagia*, as *Galen* taught in his Third Book *de criſ. cap. ult.* and elſewhere. And the reaſon why blood out of the Noſtrils is alwaies pure, is becauſe it comes by drops, and therefore would be ſo quickly cold that the impure parts could not be ſeparated; and the purer parts mixed with the reſt would make the whol maſs red. But blood taken out of the arm, becauſe it comes flowing freely, keeps the colour long in the veſſel from which the impure parts are ſeparated, ſo that the thick and droſſy part goes to the bottom, but the choller and flegm which is more altered and impure, ſwims at the top, and ſo the blood ſeems impure and ſordid.

On the other ſide, if blood ſhould drop from the vein it would appear pure, becauſe it preſently goes together before the *Heterogeneal* parts can be divided by the heat; nay if blood flow freely and be caught in a large veſſel, it wil appear pure becauſe it is quickly cold.

Hæmorrhagyes that are very great are the worſt, for they tend to a Convulſion: For ſomtimes it comes to paſs that Nature being burdened with much blood, and ſtirred up to throw it forth, cannot obſerve a Mean, and makes an over Criſis, which Phyſitians muſt ſtop.

An *Hæmorrhagy* in the beginning of the Diſeaſe is evil, becauſe it is Symptomatical, and comes from the malignity of the matter of the Diſeaſe, Nature being ſtirred up to ſend it forth before her time.

An

An Hæmorrhagy which is on the ſame ſide with the part affected is good, but otherwiſe it is evil ſo in the inflamation of the Liver when blown forth out of the right Noſtril it is good, but out of the left, bad.

Contrarily, When the Spleen is inflamed, if blood come forth of the left Noſtril it is good but out of the right bad: becauſe al good Evacuation ought to be *Kata ixin.*

A few drops coming from the Noſe are evil: for it ſignifies the weakneſs of nature, and the malignity of the diſeaſe.

For al Excretions are condemned by *Hippocrates*, in acute diſeaſes if they be begun only and not finiſhed, becauſe there is greater ſecurity in thoſe Feavers in which nature putteth forth nothing, than in which ſhe puts forth little to no profit.

For then it is to be ſuppoſed that ſhe tends to Concoction; but if a drop appear, it is a ſign that nature was ſtirred up before her time.

But a drop coming upon the day of Indication, and ſigns of Concoction alſo appearing, it ſignifies that there wil be an Hæmorrhagy upon that Critical day.

Hæmorrhagies continuing long, foreſhews the weakneſs of the Liver, and the coldneſs alſo, and an evil habit with a dropſie to be at hand.

To him who have bled at the noſe in Quartane Feavers it is evil, *Hippocrates*, *Aph.* 87. *Sect.* 7. For as *Avicen* ſayeth bleeding in Melancholly and Flegmatick people is hurtful, becauſe it cooleth too much.

To them who in Feavers have loſt much blood at the Noſe, or any part, when they amend their belly wil be looſe, *Hip. aph.* 27. *ſect.* 4. For as *Galen* ſaith in *Com.* when the natural heat is debilitated by bleeding, neither can their meat be wel concocted, nor turned into blood, nor diſtributed into the body: and therefore it is fit they ſhould be looſe bellied, until Nature recover her ſtrength.

In the Cure of *Hæmorrhagia*, firſt obſerve whether it be Critical or Symptomatical: For a Critical is not to be ſtopped, but you muſt ſuffer it to flow in a great quantity: For *Avicen* ſaith, That blood hath come from the Noſe to the quantity of four pints by a Criſis without any decay of ſtrength. And this ſeems to be taken out of *Galen*, who in his Book *de Progn. ad Poſthum. cap.* 13. ſuffered a yong Roman to bleed four pints and an half before he would ſtop it.

Which as it may fal out wel in very Plethorick people, ſo in others it may endanger life; and it is certain that a Critical Hæmorrhagy, although it is the work of Nature, yet ſometimes is beyond meaſure; for Nature being burdened with blood, and ſtirred up to expel it, ſometimes cannot keep within meaſure, but maketh too great an Evacuation; whence we ought to fear a great dejection of ſtrength, and death, and then it is to be ſtopt, as often as any notable infirmity followeth.

So alſo that blood which cuſtomarily floweth without a Feaver is not to be ſtopped, but to be left to Natures ordering, except it be immoderate; for many by ſuch bleeding have been freed from great Diſeaſes, into which after, upon ſuppreſſion thereof they have fallen.

But a Symptomatical Hemorrhagy is to be ſtopt, which may be done by revulſion of the Blood from the Noſe, and by repelling it to the parts adjacent, by ſtopping of the Veins which are open, by ſtaying the diſorderly motion of the blood, and by evacuating the ſharp and thin humors mixed with the Blood, which are the chief Cauſe of Hæmorrhagy, by correcting them, and hindering their encreaſe, and by ſtrengthening the retentive faculty of the Liver and Veins: All which may be done with the Remedies following.

And firſt Blood-letting is the chief thing for Revulſion, which muſt be done quickly before the Patient grow weak, and that out of the Vein on the ſame ſide the Noſtril is, out of which it cometh: on the right ſide, if from the right Noſtril; on the left, if from the left: And *Galen*, *lib. de ſang. miſſ. cap.* 11. confirmeth the efficacy of this Remedy, affirming that he hath preſently ſtopped violent bleedings at the Noſe only thereby. But it muſt be taken in a large quantity if the Patient be ſtrong, and from a large orifice: Although moſt of the Ancient and Modern Phyſitians think otherwiſe; and ſay that blood muſt be let out at a ſmal orifice by little & little often, by which means they ſay the Revulſion will be better. But that you may make the blood move the contrary way, you muſt have a ſtronger motion for hinderance of a weaker; therefore by how much the larger the orifice, and the more violent the motion is of the blood from the Vein opened, by ſo much the ſooner will the blood at the Noſe be ſtopped: But if by once letting blood, and applying other Remedies, the Hæmorrhagy be not ſtopt, you muſt repeat Blood-letting according to the ſtrength of the Patient. You may alſo open the Vein in the Foot, that a Revulſion may be made at a great diſtance, which alſo availeth much, as *Avicen*, *Paul.* and *Trallian* ſay.

After Blood-letting, as alſo before, rub and bind the extream parts, and clap great Cup-glaſſes to the Hypochondria; to the right ſide, if the right Noſtril; to the left, if the left do bleed: For *Galen* ſtopt an Hemorrhagy in a yong Roman, by a Cupping-glaſs to the Hypochondrion without blood-letting, as he ſaith *lib. de prog. ad Poſthum. cap.* 13.

Nor-

Notwithstanding, the applying of Cupping-glasses to the Hypochondria, is not altogether safe, for the blood then being hot may be drawn in too great a measure into the Liver, or the Spleen, and inflame them. Of which there is an example in *Fabricius Hildanus*, *Obs.* 47. *Cent.* 2. of a Courtier who bleeding violently at the Nose; to whom, with other Remedies, there were great Cupping-glasses applied to his Liver: The blood stopt, but there followed a great inflamation of the Liver. Therefore you must be wary in applying Cupping-glasses to the Hypochondria, and never use them but when all other Remedies fail, and after divers Phlebotomies: For after the plenty of blood is taken out of the Veins, there is less danger of attracting too much Blood to the Liver to inflame it, but which way soever they are applied, they draw blood and spirits to those parts whereby their heat is encreased, which seems to be contrary to the opinion of *Hippocrates*. Aph. 13. Sect. 5. where he saith, That in those parts from whence Blood cometh, or is about to come, you must use cold things. The Interpreters say, that cold things are to be applied to those parts from whence the motion of the Blood beginneth, as the Liver and Spleen.

Forestus commendeth Cupping-glasses to the Feet, by Experience, *Obs.* 14. *Lib.* 13. in these words: *When a Gentleman exceedingly bled at the Nose, and no Remedies would help him, having lost at least twelve pound of blood from both Nostrils; I was sent for and after he had bled a whol day, I commanded two Cupping-glasses without scarrification to be applied, one to his Liver, the other to the Spleen, and the blood seemed to stay a little; but after my departure, when his wife perceived him to bleed again out of both Nostrils, and that his cupping had done no good, she commanded that the cupping should be set upon his feet, and the blood wonderfully stopped beyond expectation: But after the Cupping-glasses had been a while fixed, the Patient fell into a swound; and therefore they took them off, and threw water in his face, by which he recovered; and then being refreshed with the scent of Wine, he came to himself, and was restored to his former health, from his bleeding, as it were by Miracle or Inchantment, beyond all expectation.*

Moreover, Cupping-glasses applied to the Shoulders both dry and with scarrification, do draw back the blood from the Nose. But they be not alwaies safe, for they may attract blood from the inferior parts, and so give occasion to a further bleeding.

Some Practitioners do apply Cupping-glasses to the Biceps Muscles of the Arms, by which they make revulsion.

Crato in his Counsels, reckoneth the bending of the little finger on the same side among the revulsives: for by the great pain that will be caused thereby, there will be a drawing back of the blood.

But the blood and Spirits are drawn inwardly more strongly by Swouning, whereby we saw a Bishop in the year, 1629 cured of a violent Hemorrhagy; for being in a malignant Feaver with the inflamation of the right Cidney, which after in the twenty seventh day of his sickness, turned to an Imposthume, he was taken with so violent a bleeding, that in four hours he lost two pounds, and still bleeding and strength decaying, we bethought how we should stop it; and after the use of many remedies to no purpose, the Patient desired to ease his belly, and could not be compelled to do it in his bed; we foretold him, that if he arose, he being very weak would faint away, but that would be good to stay his bleeding: and so it came to pass, for after he rose he swouned; from which with a little Wine he was recovered, throwing also Water in his face; after that he had a large stool was brought to his bed, and bled with less violence; then giving a dram and an half of Lapis Prunellæ in cold Water, presently the blood stanched when the same and other Medicines could not formerly do it. Although fainting be not vulgarly accounted a Remedy against bleeding at the Nose, yet *Hipp. lib.* 3. *Epid. Sect.* 7. saith thus: *These things stop the bleeding of the Veins, swouning, the alteration of the posture or figure of the Body, intercepting, a tent, apposition, and deligation or binding.* *Galen* in 5. meth. cap. 5. teacheth the same, in these words: *Moreover Blood is stanched both by fainting, and by revulsion, and derivation to the parts adjoyning, and by cooling of the whol Body, and especially the part afflicted: But you must observe that fainting doth only profit when the blood floweth from the Veins which are terminated in the superficies of the body, which* Hippocrates *also hints at, when he prescribeth tents, bandage, and the like.* For when blood cometh from the internal parts, as in an *Hemoptoe*, or spitting of blood, immoderate flux of the terms, or internal wounds, then fainting will encrease the bleeding, the heat being thereby drawn into those parts from whence the blood cometh.

Zacutus Lucitanus, *Lib.* 1. *Praxis admirandæ*, Obs. 66. reports that he cured a desperate Hemorrhagy, which would yield to no other Medicines, by an actual Cautery to the soals of both feet; which Remedy he saith had like success in a great bleeding at the mouth coming from the opening of the Vein called *Ranuncula* under the Tongue by corrosion from a sharp Catarrh; and when the Blood had flowen two dates to the quantity of twenty pounds, and many astringents and Emplasters had been used, as also Revulsives and thickening Medicines, with Narcoticks or Stupefactives, by a Cautery in the soal of the foot it was stanched.

If still he bleed after all the aforetaid Revulsions have been tried, you must come to repelling Medicines,

dicines ſuch as are vulgarly called *Anacollemata*, things to be applied to the Forehead and Temples, which are thus made:

Take of *Bole-Armenick, Terra Sigillata, Sanguis Draconis, Frankinſence, Maſtick, and Aloes, of each one dram: Bran and the hair of an Hare cut ſmal, of each half a dram: one white of an Egg, the Juyce of Plantane, and Nightſhade, of each as much as is ſufficient to make a Cataplaſm for the Forehead, and the Temples.*

In extremity you may quickly make a Cataplaſm of Bole-Armenick only, mixed with the white of an Egg and Vinegar for the ſame parts.

The moſt excellent is made of Time and Vinegar, and applied to the Temples and the Forehead as thick as two fingers: and if the firſt application do it not, let it be repeated, and it will certainly cure.

Amatus Luſitanus commends a cap made with the aforeſaid Pouders, mixed with Vinegar and Water, laid upon the Head being ſhaven; which you may try in great extremity.

Alſo you may make a Fomentation of very cold Water, or Water and Vinegar to the Temples and Forehead, changing your cloaths as they grow hot.

Or you may make a Fomentation of the Juyce of Plantane, Knotgraſs, Horſ-tail, Shepheards-purſe, and the like, with a little Vinegar to make it pierce. Where mark, That the Head is not to be waſhed with cold Water, nor repelling Medicines to be laid to the Forehead, before you have made ſufficient Revulſions; otherwiſe the blood being ſtruck in with cooling will fill the Veins above, as *Galen* ſheweth, 5. meth. cap. 6. and ſo the flux will be encreaſed, by the heat encreaſed through *Antiperiſtaſis*, by which the motion and force of the blood is encreated; or if the blood be ſtopt, there will follow a Convulſion, Apoplexy, ſhort and difficult breathing, called *Dyſpnœa*, or the like.

Vinegar alone will ſtop blood if the Forehead be fomented therewith in a Spunge.

Or if you dip a Spunge in Vinegar, and put it into the Noſe.

To throw cold Water in the Face, doth not only drive back the blood, but alſo draweth inward by fear, if done on a ſudden, and unawares. As a ſyncope or ſwouning, as we ſaid before, ſtancheth blood by the retraction of it inward; by the ſame reaſon doth fear alſo. A great quantity, namely, two or three glaſſes muſt be caſt into the face divers times in a ſhort time.

Ordinarily they uſe to hinder the aſcent of the Blood with fomenting of the Neck with a cloth dipped in cold Vinegar and bound about the Neck, changed often before it turn warm.

Vinegar and Water held in the mouth, doth drive the blood down, and keeps the blood from falling into the Throat.

Alſo Vinegar put into the Ear next to the Noſtril bleeding, is good to cloſe the Vein.

A Bean, or piece of money bound to the root of the Noſe, between the Eyebrows, ſtoppeth the flux.

Alſo you muſt obſerve if the Veins or Arteries in the Forehead or Temples do ſwell, for then you muſt bind them down with Money, or a dry Bean ſlit in length, and this is a ſpecial Remedy. And for the better Compreſſion, you muſt lay a Pledget dipt in the white of an Eg beaten with Time, upon the Bean or Money.

The fume of Vinegar ſprinkled upon a hot Iron, taken into the Noſtrils, will cloſe the opened Veins.

As alſo Vinegar and Water often ſnuffed up.

Beſides thoſe things which repel, we muſt uſe things that cloſe and glutinate the Veins. For which end, many Remedies may be put into the Noſe.

Galen, lib. de paratu facilibus, cap. 13. uſed Frankinſence and Aloes poudered, with white of an Egg, and the hairs of an Hare, upon lint.

Or you may make a Tent thus:

Take of *Frankinſence, Aloes, Dragons blood, Bran, Cobwebs, and the hair of an Hare cut ſmal, of each half a dram, made up in a Tent with juyce of Plantane.*

The ſame Pouders may be blown into the Noſe. For which purpoſe alſo great Practitioners do commend the pouder of Eg ſhels burnt, and burnt Paper. But you muſt remember beſides the uſe of theſe pouders, at the ſame time to fill the mouth with cold Water leſt the Medicine get into the mouth.

The Cotton of an Ink-horn ſqueezed a little, and made into a tent, doth powerfully ſtop.

As alſo laid and bound to the Forehead.

If it yet continue, you muſt come to Eſcharoticks, which by burning the mouths of the Veins produce a Scab, and ſo ſtay the blood. But theſe muſt be uſed warily, for when the Eſchar falls off, they will bleed again.

Burnt Vitriol is the beſt, which beſides its Eſcharotick quality, is good to ſtanch blood.

If you will make it gentle, you muſt mix other Medicines thus:

Take

Take of *Galls half a pound*: *Allum a quarter of a pound*: *Calcine them, and blow the pouder into the Noſe.* Or,

Take of *Bole-Armenick, Dragons blood, Frankinſence, Aloes, Time, burnt Vitriol, Sarcocol, and Maſtich, of each one dram*: *Make a fine Pouder.*

White Vitriol is more gentle than burnt Vitriol, and is not very Eſcharotick: yet it ſtaies bleeding very powerfully by aſtringing the Orifice of the Veins, if it be put into the Noſe with a Tent.

You may make Remedies to ſtop blood, by reſtraining its motion by cooling, thickning, and coagulating, thus:

Take of *Sal Prunellæ one dram*: *Troches of Amber half a dram*: *Blood-ſtone and red Coral prepared, of each one ſcruple*: *the Syrup of dried Roſes one ounce*: *Plantane Water three ounces. Make a Julep to be taken twice or thrice in a day.*

Take of *Conſerve of Roſes and Quinces, of each one ounce*: *the Troches of Spodium, or burnt Ivory, and Terra Sigillata, of each one dram*: *Coral prepared, and burnt Harts-horn, of each one ſcruple. Make an Opiate, of which let him take the quantity of a Cheſnut twice or thrice in a day.*

Vinegar and Water called Oxycrate, drunk plentifully ſtaies an Hemorrhagy.

Outwardly to cool the blood, and to hinder its motion, you muſt apply cold Water, or Water and Vinegar to divers parts, powring it upon the Arms, and putting the feet therein, and applying to the Cods, as alſo to the back, becauſe the *Vena Cava* runs that way, and ſo the blood will be cooled when it is exceeding hot, when the aforeſaid Medicines cannot remedy, ſome wet the whol Body with Vinegar and Water, or put him into cold Water, which is not without danger, when the Patient is weak.

It is excellent to temper the heat of the blood, to lay Epithems to the Liver and Spleen made of warm Vinegar and Water.

Finally, In the moſt deſperate Caſe, when no Medicines will prevail, you muſt uſe Narcoticks, or Stupefactives, which preſently ſtop all fluxes and evacuations and motion of Humors; and among the reſt three or four grains of Laudanum is the beſt. But take heed that you give it not to the Patient being very weak, for it is to be feared that the native heat being very little, will be thereby quite exſtinguiſhed. One ounce of the Syrup of Poppies given in an aſtringent Julep at night will do the ſame.

At length you muſt come to proper Remedies which by an occult ſecret quality ſtop bleeding. The moſt uſual and beſt are theſe:

The Juyce of Nettles is extolled for ſtrengthening any blood, of what part ſoever, and therefore it is both given inwardly to four ounces once or twice, as alſo inuſt into the Noſe, and applied to the Forehead and Temples made like a Cataplaſm with Bran, or the whol Nettle beaten. Some ſay that the Root held in the mouth will do the ſame.

Hogs Dung is one of the beſt Specifical Medicines, if it be applied hot to the Forehead and Temples, or ſmelt unto, or put dry into the Noſe, of which this is a form.

Take of *Hogs Dung dried three drams*: *the pouder of Roſes to take away the ſcent of it, half a dram. Mix them with juyce of Plantane, and dip a Tent therein to be thruſt into the Noſe.*

Aſſes Dung uſed thus is alſo commended. And *Rodericus a Caſtro lib. 1. de morbis mulierum, cap. 5.* ſaith that a Phyſitian of ſeventy yeers old given to violent bleeding, carried alwaies Aſſes Dung not quite dry in a box about him, than which he confeſſed he never knew a better Medicine; eſpecially if when it was dry he mixed it with the Juyce of a Nettle, or if wet he put it alone into his Noſe.

Zacutus Luſitanus, lib. ult. praxis Hiſtor. cap. 2. ſaith that he cured one of ſeventeen years of age that was weak and lean, after he had loſt ſeventeen ounces of blood and uſed many Medicines, only with this, He gave him the Dung of an Aſs very finely poudered in al his Drink and Broth, he made Tablets of the ſame with ſugar, and gave them with ſteeled water, by which means only the Patient recovered in ſeven daies ſpace.

The blood it ſelf which comes out of the Noſe, is not only vulgarly commended, but by the learned to ſtop an Hæmorrhagie by a ſpecifical quality; they fry it in a pan and give it the Patient to eat, he not knowing of it.

As alſo they Calcine it in a Potſheard, and mix it with the mentioned Aſtringents.

Others commend the Pouder of Snails burnt with their ſhels: and others put the Pouder of Frogs Calcined into the Noſe.

Pereda ſpeaks of an old Woman of *Mount pelior*, that ſhe was Cured of a Flux at the Noſe of three daies continuance, by only Mints put into the Noſe.

Among other Remedies this is excellent and uſual, The fine Pouder of Spicknard taken the quantity of a dram in Broth, Plantane-water, or other liquor, not only by a ſpecifical force, but alſo by ſtrengthning the Liver it ſtops bleeding.

Finkius

Pinkius witneſſeth that a dried Toad poudered and put in a fine red Sarcnet under the Armholes, or held in the hands til it grow warm, wil ſtanch blood preſently: And that the blood wil be immediately congealed as if it apprehended ſome terrible thing.

Others hang a Toad in the Air while al the fleſh is conſumed, and keep the bare thigh bone which they put into the Noſe, and then it ſtops bleeding preſently.

While you uſe the aforeſaid Remedies, you muſt think of the taking away of the Cauſe, which uſually is a thin watery Humor or Choller which abounds in the blood, and makes it move diſorderly, and provoketh Nature to throw it forth: whence it comes to paſs that when it is purged away and the blood cleanſed that then Nature embraceth blood moſt familiarly as its chief Friend and the treaſure of Life, and wil not labor to caſt it forth.

Therefore you muſt purge twice or thrice if need be with binding and cooling Medicines, thus made,

Take of *Tamarinds half an ounce*: *Plantane Leavs one handful*: *boyl them to four ounces, being ſtrained infuſe of the beſt Rhubarb one dram*: *yellow Myrabolans half a dram*: *Spicknard ſeven grains*: *ſtrain it and diſſolve therein one ounce of Syrup of Roſes, and ad one ſcruple of the Pouder of Rhubarb. Make a Potion.*

In an old Diſeaſe that Returneth often, ſuch a Purge repeated once every Week, is excellent.

And after every Evacuation, Aſtringent Juleps, or Opiates, that are above mentioned; you may make Juleps thus.

Take of *the Roots of Snakeweed, and the greater Comfrey, of each one ounce*: *Plantane, Knotgraß, Rupture-wort, & Fumitory, of each one handful*: *of the four great Cold ſeeds, of each one dram*: *boyl them to a pint, and diſſolve in the ſtrained Liquor of white Sugar, three ounces*: *Make a Julep for three mornings draughts.*

Inſtead of Juleps or Opiats, or after they have been uſed a while, you may give a Syrup made of the Juyce of Nettles, and an equal proportion of Sugar, two ſpoonfuls at a time every morning.

Nor is it ſufficient to take away the preſent Cauſe of the Hemorrhagy, namely, To Evacuate the Peccant Humor, but you muſt ſee that it return not again.

The Bowels are to be ſtrengthened, and their Diſtempers amended; eſpecially the Liver in which thoſe Humors uſe to breed.

And the Juleps formerly preſcribed wil do this, as alſo the Tincture of Roſes to Cool the Liver and ſtrengthen it, is very good.

Outwardly you may apply Epithems made thus,

Take of *the Water of Roſes, Plantane, Purſlain, Sorrel, and Succory, of each four ounces*: *the ſeeds of Purſlain, Sorrel, and Succory, of each one dram*: *the Troches of Camphire, and yellow Saunders, of each two drams*: *Vinegar, two ounces*: *Make an Epithem.*

To theſe you may ad al the Remedies which are preſcribed for the Cure of a Hot Liver.

Sometimes the Hot Diſtemper of the Spleen and Reins is the Cauſe of this Diſeaſe; and then you muſt apply Cooling Medicines to thoſe parts alſo.

To theſe muſt joyn a good order of Diet, which from the beginning of the Cure muſt be diligently obſerved.

And therefore, firſt the Air where the Patient is, muſt be Cool: and if it be Summer time let it be altered, by ſprinkling the floor with Vinegar and Roſe-water, and ſtrowing of the Leavs of the Vine, Willow, or Water-Lillies, or the like.

Let his Meat be thickning of little nouriſhment, as Calves-feet, Sheep and Goats-feet, and the like: Rice, new fat Cheeſe, hard Eggs, and the like.

Let him eat Fruits that are ſomwhat ſharp, binding, and bitter; as Pears, Quinces, Medlars, Services, and Sawces of the Juyce of Pomegranats, Lemmons, Orenges, Sorrel; ſome commend the uſe of Lentils or Peaſe boyled in Vinegar, becauſe they have vertue to thicken, aſtring, and allay the Acrimony of the blood.

Let the Patient abſtain, eſpecially in the beginning of the Diſeaſe while his ſtrength is good, from Wine, Fleſh, and Rear Eggs, which breed much and thin Blood: you muſt give him Moiſt Meats and Suppings in the time of his bleeding: As cooling Broths made of Barley, Oates, and Rice, with Water, for chewing doth provoke bleeding, if he be weak you may give him Fleſh-broth and Panadoes, in which there is Starch diſſolved, which is made without Chalk or Gum Arabick.

Let his Drink be ſteeled Water, and let al his Meat be boyled in the ſame, which wil be of more force if Nettle Roots be firſt boyled therein.

Command him to reſt, ſo that he neither Walk, nor Cough, nor Speak loud or at al, for the motion of the Tongue and Jawes provoke bleeding.

Let his Head be covered, and let him not ſee the blood, for thereby the imagination being moved, he wil bleed faſter.

Let him ſleep, for long Watchings make the blood more ſharp, Chollerick, and thin: but ſleep doth contemperate the Humors, and reſtrain the motions thereof.

Laſtly, Let him avoid the Paſſions of the mind, which cauſe the blood to aſcend, as Anger, Laughing, and Joy.

The End of the Fourth Book.

THE

THE FIFTH BOOK OF THE PRACTICE OF PHYSICK.

Of the Diſeaſes of the Tongue.

The PREFACE.

THE Tongue is the Inſtrument both of Speech and Taſting: But both theſe Actions are hindered by divers tumors which grow thereabout: And eſpecially every Action is diminiſhed, aboliſhed, or depraved by its peculiar Cauſe. That all theſe may be ſeverally deſcribed, this fifth Book hath four Chapters: Of which, The firſt is of Inflamation, and other Tumors of the Tongue. The Second is of the Ranula *under the Tongue; which though it belong to the kinds of Tumors, yet it is handled by it ſelf, becauſe it requires a different Cure from all the reſt. The Third is of the Taſte hurt. The Fourth of the Palſey of the Tongue, and other hinderances of its Motions.*

Chap. 1. *Of the Inflamation of the Tongue, and other Tumors of the ſame.*

AS all the Parts of the Body, and eſpecially the fleſhy parts, uſe to be inflamed; ſo alſo the Tongue by blood flowing unto it; which blood as it is either pure, chollerick, flegmatick, or Melancholick, produceth either a true Phlegmon, or a Phlegmon eriſipelous, œdematous, or ſchirrous, which ſometimes comes to ſuppuration: of which there is an Example in *Foreſtus*, *Obſ.* 24. *Lib.* 14. of a Brewer which had a great Inflamation of his Tongue that brake, which came to ſuppuration.

Alſo the Tongue often ſuffers a ſoft and looſe Tumor, which is purely œdematous, by the falling of Rhewm from the Head; of which *Galen* propounds an Example, *Lib.* 14. *meth. cap.* 8. in a certain man whoſe Tongue was ſo ſwoln, that he could not contain it in his mouth.

Sometimes the Tongue grows very great, which cannot be accounted any kind of Tumor; as *Galen* teacheth, *lib. de diff. morb. cap.* 9. that he ſaw a Tongue which grew exceeding great without any

 ſence

ſence of pain, neither would it pit or yield to the finger, but it was a bare increaſe of quantity in the Tongue, and the ſubſtance was no way hurt, which came by too much nouriſhment brought and converted into the ſubſtance of it.

And *Claudinus*, Conſult. 9. gives an Example of this in a maid of twelve yeers old, whoſe Tongue grew to a great bigneſs, and the Tumor could neither be called an Oedema, nor a Schyrrus, becauſe it was without pain; neither would it yield to the hand preſſing of it, nor take an impreſſion or pit, nor was it without Natural ſence.

The Original of it was a forceable breach of the bridle of the Tongue, by the pain whereof blood was attracted to the part; which being ſent thither continually cauſed this largeneſs. But in this caſe *Claudinus* obſerveth that it is bigger at night, and leſs in the morning, and alwaies livid, or blewiſh: The reaſon whereof he ſaith is, becauſe in the Concoction and aſſimulation of the blood, (which is flegmy otherwiſe, ſuch as is bred in children by reaſon of their moiſt Nature and intemperance) many vapors are raiſed, eſpecially at night, when the heat is drawn in and contracted, by which the Tumor is enlarged: but in the day they are diſcuſſed by the motion and heat of the Tongue, by which means it becomes leſs.

The reaſon of the blewneſs is the Air, to which it alwaies is open; for by the coldneſs of the Air, the blood which cometh to the ſuperficies of the Tongue, before it comes to be like in the ſubſtance, doth encreaſe ſomwhat, and ſo turns livid. For *Galen* ſaith that blood waxeth black with cold, 3. *de ſymp. cauſ. cap.* 2. which yet is not ſo in other parts, becauſe there is no ſuperfluity ſent to them, but as much as is ſufficient for nouriſhment.

The knowledg of theſe Tumors is not difficult, becauſe the preternatural greatneſs of them is viſible.

But the differences of theſe Tumors are theſe: If there be an Inflamation, then there is pain, heat, and redneſs alſo in the Tongue, wherewith alſo the face is ſomwhat infected: But if the Tumor come originally from flegm, the Tongue is white, and there is much ſpittle whoſe taſt is ſweet or without taſt. If there be only a bare encreaſe in the Tongue, there are no ſigns of other Tumors and Vitrous humors.

As to the Prognoſtick: Tumors in the Tongue for the moſt part do not endanger the life unleſs they grow ſo big that they cauſe ſuffocation, or come from a malignant melancholick humor; from whence they may prove Cancers, which is known by their hardneſs, blewneſs, and pricking pain.

You muſt begin the Cure of the Inflamation of the Tongue with Revulſive and Repelling Remedies; and therefore firſt, after you have given a laxative Clyſter, open a Vein, and take away as much blood as the Patients ſtrength will permit.

Then apply Cupping-glaſſes with ſcarrification to the Shoulders.

After that uſe cooling and repelling Gargariſms, and among the reſt the Juyce of Lettice, is commended of *Galen* to waſh the Tongue with often, *Meth.* 14. *Cap.* 8.

Or you may make one more compounded of the Decoction of Plantane, Nightſhade, Peaſe husked, and Pomegranate peels, adding ſom Syrup of dried Roſes, or *Diamoron*, that is, Syrup of Mulberries.

After bleeding, appoint a Purge made of things to purge Choller and Flegm, becauſe flegm from the Head doth peculiarly concurr to the production of theſe Tumors.

After the flux is ſtopped, you muſt labor to derive the humor fixed to the part by Evacuations, Revulſions, and Repercuſſives; and to this end open the Vein under the Tongue, which if you cannot reach by reaſon of the largeneſs of the Tongue, you muſt apply a Cupping-glaſs with Scarrification under the Chin.

If it tend to ſuppuration, it muſt be furthered with a fig ſlit in the midſt, often applied, or with a Gargariſm of the Decoction of Barley, Mallows, Violets, Figs, Raiſons, Quince ſeeds, and Fœnugreek ſeeds, with a little Syrup of Violets and Jujubes.

Suppuration being made, if the Impoſthume will not open of it ſelf, make inciſion: then cleanſe it with the decoction of Barley, Agrimony, and Plantane, with Honey of Roſes.

But a ſoft and lax humor coming of flegm, is cured firſt by a Revulſion with Phlebotomy, if the Patient abound in Blood: then give him a ſtrong Purge, ſuch as *Pilulæ Cochiæ minores*, made of Aloes, Scammony, and Coloquintida, which were happily uſed by *Galen* to one of ſixty yeers, 14. *Meth.* above mentioned. But if he cannot ſwallow Pills, make him a Medicine of Senna, Agarick, Diaphœnicon, and the like.

After theſe Evacuations you muſt firſt apply cooling and repelling Medicines, as we ſhewed in inflamation. And *Galen* in the place quoted, cured a Patient of ſixty yeers, only by waſhing with the Juyce of Lettice after Purging.

Moreover, You may with good ſucceſs waſh the mouth with Juyce of Lemmons, Pomegranates, Sorrel, and Plantane, becauſe they do not only repel with their coldneſs, but alſo with their ſharp-

neſs

neſs draw forth the moiſture that is faſtened in the Tongue.

Alſo the Tongue may be embrochated with Oxymel ſimple, unto which you may ad a little Ginger, Sal. gem. or Sal. armoniack.

You may alſo wath the Mouth with the Decoction of Origan, and Pellitory, with Hydromel, or Honey and Water.

Zacutus Lucitanus, *lib.* 1. in his Hiſtory of the chief Phyſitians, Obſ. 47. in a deſperate caſe, when the Tongue grew to a wonderful bigneſs, ſo that he feared ſuffocation, after emptying and revelling Medicines uſed in vain, applyed four Horſ-leeches to the Tongue, and in a ſhort time, after plentiful bleeding, it became thin and ſmal, and the Patient eſcaped.

The ſame *Zacutus*, Obſ. 48. of the ſame Book, ſaies that he cured a child of ten yeers old, who had a Tongue ſwollen by a deſluxion, ſo big that it could not be contained in his mouth (after Revulſions by bleeding, Cupping-glaſſes with ſcarrification, and ſharp Clyſters) becauſe the Tumor was ſoft and loos, only by profound ſcarrification of the Tongue, and after he commanded that it ſhould be waſhed with ſalt Water, from whence there came ſuch abundance of humors that the child preſently recovered. Which Obſervation he took from *Joachim Camerarius*, who ſaith in his Book of Obſervations, that one who was almoſt ſuffocated with a ſwollen Tongue, cured himſelf by cutting it a croſs with a ſharp Pen-knife, after he had loſt much blood.

Finally, A fleſhy Tumor of the Tongue, or the over-growing of the Tongue, coming of the ſuperfluous fleſh, although it ſeem to be uncurable; yet it is ſhewed by *Claudinus* by Chyrurgery to be done, in the place cited; namely, If whatſoever be ſuperfluous be taken away with an inciſion Knife, firſt giving fit preparations, all which are deſcribed by him in the ſame Place.

Chap. 2. *Of the Tumor called* Ranula *under the Tongue.*

ALthough in the former Chapter divers Tumors of the Tongue are laid down by us, yet there remaineth one called *Batrachos* in Greek, in Latin *Ranula*; for ſince it differs from the reſt in Nature, and requires a different way of Cure, we thought it beſt to deſcribe it in its proper Chapter.

Ranula is a Tumor under the Tongue in that part by which it is bound to the Ligament; and for the moſt part it is ſo large that it is above the lower Teeth; a cleft being in the middle dividing the right ſide of it from the left, it repreſenteth the hinder parts of a Frog, from whence it is called *Ranula*, a little Frog. Others ſay it is called ſo, becauſe they who have it, have an impediment in their Speech, and croak like Frogs, when they ſpeak. It is like the Tumor Oedima, or Meliceris, from which when it is opened, there comes as it were the white of an Egg, or matter like Honey. And becauſe the ſaid matter is contained in a bag, therefore it is accounted a Meliceris. In theſe bags ſometimes is found a ſtone as many obſerve, which *Schenkius* alſo obſerveth, Obſ. 388. Lib. 10.

The knowledg of this Diſeaſe is not difficult, for when the Tongue is lifted up, there is ſeen a certain looſe and ſoft carnoſity, and on both ſides of the Ligament there is a certain round ſwelling like a Peaſe, Bean, or Chenut.

This Diſeaſe is commonly without danger: But in Children ſometimes it threatneth ſuffocation by Reaſon of the neerneſs of the Larynx to the rough Artery. In men if they have pain and a Feaver there is danger, for it may turn to Squinancy. Alſo that Ranula is dangerous which is black or dusky and hard, and inclining to the Nature of a Cancer, and this muſt not be touched.

For the Cure of this Diſeaſe, firſt you muſt take away the antecedent cauſe by blood-letting, and with purging agreeable to the age and nature of the Patient.

And if the Diſeaſe be old you muſt uſe Cauteries and ſweating Drinks.

Then you muſt endeavor to diſſolve the Tumor with Topicks, thus:

Take of *Pomegranate peels, dried Hyſop, and common Salt, of each two drams: Make a Pouder thereof to hold under the Tongue, and uſe it often.*

Foreſtus ſpeaks of a Girl of twelve yeers of age, that was cured in two daies ſpace with this only Medicine; whoſe Author is *Nicolaus Florentinus*, who inſtead of common Salt, uſeth *Sal. armoniack* to men, becauſe it pierceth more, and diſſolveth better. And *Foreſtus* uſed the ſaid Pouder to a Student made with common Salt: as alſo a Decoction made of equal parts of Gals, Allum, and Pomegranate flowers: And laſtly, he commanded the part to be rubbed with parched Salt, and *Sal. gem.* and the Patient was cured without manual Operation, which is ſeldom ſeen, becauſe thoſe Tumors are of the Nature of Impoſthumes, and are contained in a little bag, ſo that when the matter hath been diſcuſſed, they have been filled again.

If this Tumor cannot be cured with diſcuſſing Remedies, you muſt open it, which muſt be often done, for it will not often be diſcuſſed.

You

You must not make a smal Orifice when you open it, because the matter contained in the Bagg, wil be again gathered and the bagg filled (unto which the part being loose and soft, is very much disposed) but you must make a very long Incision through the height of the Tumor in both sides that the whol matter may be discharged at once: then you must wash the Ulcer, first with gentle things, as the Decoction of Mallows: and then with Cleansers, as white Wine and Honey of Roses, or Diamoron, and after with Oxymel till it be clean and free from the Bagg: And finally, to heal it up, wash the mouth with red Wine in which Allum is dissolved.

Forestus Cured the like in a Woman by an Incision made on both sides, and after by washing with Wine and Water mixed with a little Salt.

If the Disease be old, and the Ulcer wil not be cured by the aforesaid Remedy, let it be touched with Oyl of Sulphur twice every day, mixed with Rose-water, one drop of Oyl to six of Water; for so the Distemper wil be corrected, and the part dryed, which must be often washed for confirmation, with Red Wine with Allum dissolved in it.

If after the use of these the Disease return, you must come to an actual Cautery, the manner whereof is taught by *Paræus, lib. 7. cap. 5.*

Chap. 3. *Of the Taste being Hurt.*

THE Taste as other Sences, and al actions of the Body, is hurt Three waies, by being Diminished, Abolished, Depraved; it is lessened when it scarce perceiveth remiss savors and strong savors but a little: It is Abolished when it no waies perceiveth those savors whether they be great or little: It is Depraved when the object seems to be of another taste.

The Causes of Diminishing and Abolishing the taste are the same, only they differ in degrees; for if they be light and weak, they Diminish; if great, they Abolish the taste.

And these Causes are either a Defect of the Animal Spirit in the part, or a Distemper of the Third pair of Nerves which come to the Tongue; or the Tongue it self is Preternaturally affected.

The Spirits fail, either by reason of their scarcity, as in dying men; or of the obstruction of the Nerves of the Third Conjugation by which they are carried: or by reason of a Tumor bred in that part of the Head from whence those Nerves do arise.

The Tongue is either covered with a moist slimy matter, or hath Tumors, Pustuls, or Ulcers, and by these the proper action of taste may be diminished or abolished.

The Taste is Depraved when the Tongue is infected with an evil Humor, as in Feavers, when the Tongue is infected with Choller, al things tasted are thought bitter: otherwise if it be with salt flegm or melancholly al things appear to be salt or sowr, for the outward objects being brought to the Tongue do move the vitious juyce of it, which at that time striking upon the tongue most leaveth its savor thereon, and so those things which are tasted, seem to be of the same taste.

It happeneth also sometimes that the Tongue perceiveth the savors of the juyces contained in its self, although no external Object be applied, as *Galen* teacheth, *1. de sympt. caus. cap. 4.* And it is confirmed by daily Experience in men in Feavers, whose tongue is covered with Choller; which if it be very bitter, they find a continual bitterness on the Tongue though they take nothing into their mouths.

The Diversity of the Causes aforesaid is known by the variety of the tasts and disposition of the Tongue; for a sweet taste and redness of the Tongue signifieth blood: bitterness and yellowness Choller: whiteness with sweetness Flegm: blackness and sharpness Melancholly: a Nauseous taste sheweth that evil Humors are contained in the stomach: Pustuls, Tumors, and Ulcers are manifest to the Eies. And Lastly, If the taste be hurt, and there appear no change in the Tongue, you must suppose that the Cause lieth in the Brain or Nerves.

The Cure is various according to the diversity of Causes; and therefore if the Disease lie in the Brain or Nerves, you must apply Remedies thereto, especially such as use to be prescribed for the Cure of the Palzey: but when the taste is depraved by ill Humors, commonly that Symptom depends upon other Diseases, especially upon Feavers, which being Cured the Symptoms also are removed.

If the Taste be offended by Tumors, the Cure thereof depends upon the Cure of the Tumors above mentioned.

Finally, If it come from Pustles or Ulcers of the Tongue, you must Cure them by blood letting and Purging of sharp Humors; to which you may ad Cooling, Drying, and Binding Topicks in form of a Gargarism: And if foul Ulcers be found, let them be cleansed with Honey of Roses, with a little Oyl of Sulphur or Vitriol, in such a quantity as may gently touch upon the Tongue.

Or,

Or, if you wil Dry more violently, Let the part Affected be often touched with the aforesaid Oyls, pure and not mixed; for so the Aphthe or Thrush and al Ulcers of the Mouth and Tongue are quickly Cured.

Chap. 4. *Of the Palzey of the Tongue, and the Hurt Motion thereof.*

THE Chief Action of the Tongue, is Speech: and this is Abolished, Diminished, and Depraved by divers Causes, which are referred to Similary, Organick, or Common Diseases.

As for the Similary; A moist Distemper with Matter maketh the Tongue more soft and loose, so that it cannot freely exercise its motions.

Dryness doth too much foul the Tongue, as in Feavers.

But Organical, or Diseases of the Instrument, are when the Tongue is enlarged, as we said before concerning Tumors, which hinder the free motion of it: also when the figure or shape of it is deformed, as when the Tongue is naturally too short, or by being partly cut off, or if it be tyed too strait; as also when the seventh pair of Nerves which come from the Brain to the Muscles which move the Tongue are stopped.

Lastly, Common Diseases are Solutions of Continuity or Wounds in the part.

Too much moisture maketh Balbuties, a kind of Stammering, which keepeth men from pronouncing of the Letter R.

And this is either natural as in Children by reason of their much moisture, who are Cured by age when the superfluous moisture is consumed.

But in some there is a moist distemper al their Life, and they are alwaies stammerers; of which *Hippocrates* speaketh *Aph.* 32. *Sect.* 6. thus, *Stammerers are most subject to long Fluxes of the Belly.* *Galen* in his Comments saith, *That they who naturally stammer, have either a moist Brain, or Tongue, or both.* From the moist Brain much moisture may fal into the belly, whence the Flux is caused. And when the tongue is naturally too moist, it is probable also that the belly wil be loose and weak through moistness: because the Stomach and the Tongue have both the same Tunicle: Now the proper passion of a moist belly is a loosness.

But *Avicen* seems to be against this Doctrine, saying, *Fen.* 1. *lib.* 3. *tract.* 4. *cap.* 18. That Stammerers are given much to Melancholly, and Melancholly cometh from a dry Brain: but this Contradiction is Reconciled, thus, *Avicen* meaneth by Stammerers, not such as are properly so called and cannot pronounce R, but such as Stutter, and repeat the same Syllable often before they speak a word; and this cometh from a hot and dry Distemper of the Brain; in which the thoughts are so quick that they out-run the tongue, and hasten its motion, whence comes that disturbance.

But the Stammering aforesaid coming from the Birth, is incurable.

In some an accidentary Stammering cometh by a Catarrh; and great Defluxion of Rhewm upon the Jaws and Tongue, which is cured by Evacuation, Revulsion, and Derivation of the Humors; as also by Strengthening and Drying the Brain: but because the Remedies are the same with those for the Palzey of the Tongue of which we shal now speak, they may be taken from thence.

Two pair of Nerves go to the Tongue: the Third pair to Exercise the act of Tasting and Sence: And the Seventh pair for Speech and diversity of Motion; by the Obstruction and Relaxation of the taste, cometh the Palzey of the Tongue, which is a Privation or Diminishing of the motion of the Part; and this useth to follow an Apoplexey when the hinder part of the brain is too moist, and then other parts of the body, and for the most part half the body hath the Palzey; sometimes it is only in the Tongue when the Nerves and moving Muscles are too moist: also by cutting of those Nerves there cometh a Palzey of which there is an example in *Avicen*, *Fen.* 6. *lib.* 3. *tract.* 1. *cap.* 12. in these words, *A certain man was Cupped and Scarified, and the smal hair like Nerve, was cut with Scarification, which it is the substance of the Pannicle joyned with the Tongue; wherefore the Tongue was relaxed.* We may suppose that these Cupping Glasses were applied to the Neck and hinder part of the head; for since the Nerves that move the Tongue, come from the beginning of the Spinal Marrow which is in the Neck: It is most certain that the Scarification was made so deep that some branch of them was divided.

But although the matter producing this Disease be Flegm, yet sometimes it is thicker and colder; sometimes thinner and hotter as the Humors which predominate in the Body; the knowledge whereof is from *Avicen*, *Fen.* 6. *lib.* 3. *tract.* 1. *cap.* 6. in these words, *And sometimes the redness of the Tongue and hotness shew that the matter is blood; and sometimes much watery spittle sheweth that*

the

the matter is thin, and when there is little benefit by Reſolving Medicines, and much by binding and aſtringent.

This Diſeaſe, if it come from the Brain, and follow an Apoplexy, ſo that other parts alſo are affected is ſeldom cured, eſpecially if the Patient be in yeers; but if it be ſingle, and in the part only it is to be cured, and the eaſier if the Patient be yong.

The Cure of the Palſey in the Tongue, is by taking away the antecedent Cauſe, that is the humor abounding in the Brain, and by diſcuſſing and diſſolving the conjunct cauſe, namely, the humor which is faſtened upon the Nerves that move the Tongue.

The antecedent cauſe will be taken away by the Medicines preſcribed in the Cure of the cold diſtemper of the Brain.

And firſt you muſt purge with Pills, or a Potion there mentioned. After if blood abound, and be either the Principal, or the aſſiſtant Cauſe of the Diſeaſe, take ſo much as age and ſtrength will permit, then adminiſter a Cephalick Apozeme, and if the Diſeaſe ſeem ſtubborn give a ſweating diet; all which are formerly preſcribed in the place mentioned.

After general Evacuations, come we to the Derivation of the matter, cauſing the Diſeaſe by Cupping and Veſicatories applied behind; as alſo by Cauteries. *Avicen* applied a Cupping-glaſs under the Chin, which is now alſo allowed.

Open the Vein under the Tongue, and it will profit, if before you have made general Evacuation to derive the Humor from the Muſcles of the Tongue.

For the diſcuſſing and drawing forth of this Humor, let the Gargariſm following be often uſed.

Take of *Flower deluce roots half an ounce: Origan, Sage, French Lavender, Roſemary, of each half a handful: Cubebs three drams: Liquoris one ounce: Boyl them in equal parts of white Wine and Water to a pint: Diſſolve in the ſtraining, Oxymel of Squils two ounces. Make a Gargariſm; to which if it work not ſtrong enough, you may ad two or three drams of the Decoction of Pellitory of Spain, or of Muſtard ſeed. You may alſo ad Caſtorium if it offend not the Patient with the ſcent.*

To this end you may often rub the Tongue with Oxymel of Squils alone, or mixed with Muſtard Seed.

A bag of Sage is much commended for to rub the Tongue with often, to which you may ad Muſtard ſeed alſo.

Alſo theſe following Pills ought to be held often upon the Tongue.

Take of *the Juyce of Bettony and Liquoris, of each one dram and an half: Caſtor and Aſſafœtida, of each half a dram: Nutmeg and Spicknard, of each one ſcruple: Incorporate them with Honey, and make them into the form of Lupines.*

Here alſo Gargariſms, Maſticatories, and Errhines, which are preſcribed in the Cure of the cold diſtemper of the Brain may be uſed.

Alſo for the ſtrengthening of the Brain, and diſperſing the reliques of the humors therein contained, Fumigations, and Pouders for the Hair, with Caps mentioned in the ſame Chapter are here to be uſed.

Laſtly, You muſt preſcribe the uſual Medicines againſt encreaſe of flegm, namely *Syrupus Magiſtralis*, or ordinary Pills, with a ſtrengthening Opiate, as is there declared.

The End of the Fifth Book.

THE

THE SIXTH BOOK OF THE PRACTICE OF PHYSICK.

Of the Diſeaſes of the Teeth, Gums, Jaws, Pallat, and Wind-pipe, or Larynx.

The PREFACE.

THE *Parts contained in the Mouth and Jaws ſuffers divers Diſeaſes, the Chief whereof we only deſire to lay down, and to omit thoſe that are ordinarily Cured by Chirurgeons: Therefore this Book ſhall contain Seven Chapters: Firſt, Of the Tooth-Ach: Secondly, Of the Blackneſs and Conſuming of the Teeth: Thirdly, Of the Eating away and Exulceration of the Gums: Fourthly, Of the Flux of Blood from the Gums: Fifthly, Of the Ulcers of the Mouth and Jaws: Sixthly, Of the Relaxation or Falling down of the Pallat: And, Seventhly, Of Angina, or Quinzy.*

Chap. 1. *Of the Tooth-Ach.*

GAlen in his Fifth Book of the Compoſition of Medicines, *cap.* 8. & 16. of the Uſe of Parts, *cap.* 2. ſaith, That the Teeth are not only ſenſible in reſpect of their Nerves at the Root, and Membrane which inwardly covers their Cavity, but alſo in their proper ſubſtance; and ſaith, That the Teeth and other parts of the Mouth do taſte, as alſo doth the tongue. And in his Book of Bones, *cap.* 5. he ſaith, Of Bones only the teeth are partakers of the tender Nerves of the Brain; and for that cauſe they alone do manifeſtly feel.

Therefore pain reacheth not only to the Nerves and inward Membrane, but alſo to the ſubſtance of the teeth.

The Tooth-Ach comes from a Flux of Humors, either Cold and Flegmy, or Hot and Watery, Salt and Sharp: hence comes the Diſtention or Convulſion of the parts: & theſe Humors either flow

to the Membranes of the Jaws, and of the holes wherein the Teeth are, or to the Nerve which is inserted in the root of the Teeth, or to the substance of the Teeth. Although some think that the Teeth cannot receive into their own substance afflux of humors and distention, because they are most hard and thick; yet this is taught by *Avicen, Fen.* 1. *Lib.* 1. *Doct.* 1. *Cap.* 5. and *Fen.* 7. *Lib.* 4. *Tract.* 1. *Cap.* 4. *And sometimes*, saith he, *there is matter which doth imposthumate the Tooth it self.* Which Opinion he confirmeth and treateth of chiefly, *Fen.* 1. *Lib.* 3. *Tract.* 3. *Cap.* 1. in these words: *It is not as some Physitians think, that the Brain it self wil not imposthumate, reasoning thus; That which is soft, as the brain, and hard, as a bone, is not extended, and that will not imposthumate which cannot be extended. But this is erronious, because that which is soft, if it be viscous or clammy, may be extended, and bones are imposthumated, as* Galen *teacheth, & we wil shew in our Chapter of the Teeth. Moreover, we say that whatsoever is nourished is extended and encreased with the nourishment, and it is likewise possible that it may be extended and augmented with its superfluity, and that is an imposthume.* This *Avicen* teacheth from the Doctrine of *Galen*, who *Lib.* 5. *de comp. med. sec. loc. cap.* 8. saith, *Because the Teeth cannot grow without nourishment, they are only obnoxious to these two Diseases following, namely, of want, and superfluity of nourishment: by want of nourishment they grow dryer and thinner, and by superfluity of it, there will be an inflamation about the fleshy parts.* Thus *Galen.* But it is probable that pain is more usual (if it be vehement) in those parts which have most exquisite sence, namely, the Nerve and the Membrane in the hole of the Tooth next to the root, which doth not only suffer distention and vellication, but also sometimes inflamation of the humors flowing down; for if blood be mixed with other humors, then the pain hath two causes, namely, Distention, and Compression, which comes from the hardness of the Tooth, which the Membrane being inflamed cannot endure: and this Inflamation of the Membrane is for the most part accompanied with the inflamation of the Gums; which also is reckoned by *Galen* and *Avicen* among the causes of the Tooth-ach.

Now the Humors commonly flow from the Head upon the Teeth and parts adjoyning, sometimes from the inferior parts; for when any bad humors, especially watery, bred in any part, are abounding in the Veins, Nature desiring to cast off her burden, sends them to the weakest parts. And if the Teeth by reason of the distemper, foulness, or erotion are such, the flux will chiefly come thither. *Charls Piso* propounds an Experiment of this (who also thinks the Tooth-ach comes chiefly from a serous humor) *lib. de morb. ab illuv. ser. obs.* 7. where he reports that himself being troubled with the Tooth-ach for many daies, half an hour after he had taken a purging Medicine, vomited up above a pint of cleer water with such success, that ten yeers after he was never troubled with it. By which Experience he alwaies prescribed Medicines that purge water to them who were so troubled, and with good success. Moreover, he striveth to prove that it comes from this cause, by this sign, Because they who have the Tooth-ach, do continually spet.

Besides the Causes mentioned, there are also Worms in rotten Teeth, and they breed of any matter which is contained and putrified in the Cavities, whether it be excrementitious, or come of putrifying meats, especially flesh and sweet meats, which by reason of their clamminess stick to the Cavities of the Teeth.

Others think that the Tooth-ach comes sometimes from wind contained between the Cavity and the Nerve, which doth violently stretch the inward Membrane, whence comes such intollerable pain.

The principal external causes of Tooth-ach, are all those things which cause defluxions; the chief are, Cold Air, South-winds, staying in the Sun, or night Air, Surfet, and all faults in Diet. Ad to these, things that debilitate the part, and make it more fit to receive a defluxion, as rottenness and hollowness in the Teeth, which sometimes make violent pains.

The diversity of Causes is known by divers signs. For pain when it comes from hot humors is stronger, the constitution hotter, the age yonger, if Summer, there is heat sensibly in the part, and inflamation of the Gums often times; it is better for the use of cold, and worse for hot things. But if it come from a cold humor, the signs contrary to these will appear.

If worms are the cause of pain, it will be intermitting, coming and going often, and sometimes the motion of the worm will be felt.

When it comes from Wind, it is known by the excess of pain, and sensible stretching, and it ends in short time, and is easily cured with discussing Medicines.

The Prognostick is divers, according to the variety of the Causes; for that pain which comes from a hot, thin, watery, sharp and salt humor, is more violent, but sooner at an end, by reason of the sudden change of the humor; but that which comes from a cold and flegmy humor, is less, and lasteth longer.

A Tumor rising in the Gums or Jaws, takes away the pain of the Teeth, for the flux is carried to the external parts, so that it no longer lieth in the Internal Cavity of the Tooth.

The Cure must be directed for the taking away the Cause, and mitigating the pain; for although

Anodines

Anodines profit but little except the defluxion be ſtayed, yet ſomtimes we are conſtrained not only to uſe them, but alſo Narcoticks or Stupefactives before we take away the Cauſe; therefore the humor flowing to the Teeth is to be revelled, evacuated, and repelled, and that which is there, is to be derived and diſcuſſed.

Firſt therefore, if the pain comes of hot humors, open a vein in the Arm on the ſame ſide, by which the humor flowing will be revelled. But if it come of cold, bleeding is not ſo good; but in regard of the defluxion it may be uſed, becauſe it is the chief reveller. But then you muſt take leſs blood, except there be a Plethory, in which regard, although it be from ſlegm, you may bleed freely according to *Galen*, who ſaid that a large evacuation of blood agreeable to the Plethory, is the beſt remedy for all pains, which we have found true by experience, not only in the paine of the teeth, but in other parts.

Let him purge the day following, with that which is proper for the humor; in the form of a Potion, if a hot, with Pills, if a cold humor be the cauſe of pain.

After this, if the pain continue, apply Cupping-glaſſes to the Shoulders with ſcarrification, or one great one between the ſhoulders without ſcarrification. A Veſicatory applied to the neck, or behind the Ears doth violently draw back the humors.

Alſo to hinder the defluxion, apply aſtringents to the Temples, as Emplaiſter of Gum Elemi, or Maſtich only, upon a piece of Silk, and heat with a braſs peſtle, the Shop Emplaiſter of Maſtich, or that againſt Ruptures called *ad herniam*. Or this following is good.

Take of *Frankinſence, Hypociſtis, Labdanum, of each one dram and an half: Pitch and Maſtich, of each one dram: Opium half a ſcruple: Oyl of Maſtich as much as is ſufficient: Make a Maſs of Emplaiſter.*

The Root of Comfry freſh and bruiſed, applied to the Temples doth intercept the defluxion very well.

There is alſo a good Plaiſter made of pouder of Allum, and Galls mixed with Pitch.

Riverius the chief Phyſitian to *Henry* the Great, had this Plaiſter as a Secret:

Take of *Cyprus nuts, red Roſes, Muſtard ſeed torrefied or parched, Maſtich and Terra Sigillata, of each one dram and an half. Let them be ſteeped in Vinegar of Roſes twenty four hours; then dry them: Opium diſſolved in Aqua vitæ three drams: Pitch and Colophonia, of each one dram: yellow Wax melted in the expreſſed Oyls, Henbane and white Poppy as much as is ſufficient: Make an Emplaiſter; apply it to the Arteries, and the part affected with pain.*

And becauſe the ſmal Veins by which nouriſhment is carried to the Teeth do run by the Ears, you put Medicines into them for the Cure of the Tooth-ach; as Oyl of bitter Almonds to the Ear on the ſame ſide, or the fume of Vinegar, in which Penyroyal and Origan have been boyled.

Others put Vinegar into the Ear, by which the defluxion is mightily ſtayed, eſpecially if the flux be hot.

But in a cold defluxion, the Juyce of Garlick mixt with Treacle and dropt warm into the Ear, doth wonderfully aſſwage the pain of the Teeth. A Clove alſo of Garlick peeld and put into the Ear, is good.

Alſo aſtringents in the beginning of the defluxion, may be applied to the part pained, cold, if the matter be hot, but if it be cold, you muſt put hot things with your repellers: But in every cauſe, if the pain be great, you muſt mix Anodines with Repellers. As,

Take of *the Roots of Snakeweed, Five-leaved-graſs, and Tormentil, of each one ounce: the Leaves of Vervain, Plantane, and Maudlin, of each one handful: Cypreſs Nuts, Galls, and Acorn Cups, of each two drams: red Sanders, and Cryſtal, of each one dram and an half: red Roſes and Pomegranate Flowers, of each one pugil: boyl them in red Wine and Vinegar, and waſh the part grieved often therewith warm.*

This may be uſed in the beginning of a hot defluxion, but in a cold ad Cypreſs Roots, Box Bark, Ivy Leaves, and the like.

A plainer Medicine is made of Plantane and Roſe Water, with as much Vinegar like an Oxycrate.

Or boyl Galls in Vinegar, and waſh the Teeth therewith. Or,

Take of *the Roots of Cinkfoyl half an ounce: Willow Leaves half a handful: Galls two drams: boyl them in red Wine, and waſh the mouth. This ſtaies the defluxion, and takes away pain.*

Then you muſt uſe theſe Remedies, which aſſwage pain, and take away the cauſe, of which there is in Authors, and vulgarly a multitude: we will give you the beſt; of which you muſt make your choyce with this judgment, That thoſe which do not only diſſolve and diſcuſs, but alſo aſtringe and ſtop the flux, be uſed in the beginning and the encreaſe of the pain, but things that only diſcuſs in the ſtate and declination.

Take of *the Juyce of Houſleek and Nightſhade of each two ounces: Cow or Sheeps milk eight ounces: Oyl of unripe Roſes one ounce and an half: Opium and Saffron of each three grains:*

mix them and apply it warm with a cloth to the Jaw of the ſame ſide often.

Take *the Papp of ſweet Apples two ounces: Bran ſteept in Vinegar three ounces: Oyl of Roſes one ounce: Saffron half a ſcruple: Opium two grains: mix them for a Cataplaſm to the part pained.* Or,

Take of *Barley and Bean meal of each three ounces: Oyl of Roſes and ſweet Almonds of each half an ounce: the juyce of Houſleek one ounce and an half: Milk as much as is ſufficient; make a Cataplaſm to be applied often warm to the part.* Or,

Take *two whites of Eggs, beat them with Roſe Water, and dip ſtuphs therein ſprinkled with two drams of Pepper Poudered: Apply them to the pained ſide over the whol Cheek.*

But here obſerve, That you apply not Aſtringents to the Jaws if they be ſwoln, for it is to be feared, That the Humor wil ſo be Repelled to the Throat, and the Patient Choaked: An Example of which *Valeſius de Taranta* giveth, of a Phyſitian troubled with the Tooth-Ach and Inflamation of the Jaws, who applied only Oyl of Roſes with Vinegar, which brought him to a Squinzy and he died.

Other Waters may be made to waſh the mouth: Thus.

Take of *the beſt white Wine four ounces: white Henbane Roots two drams: let them boyl to the Conſumption of the third part: ſtrain them, and ad one ounce of Vinegar: Varniſh one dram: let them boyl a heat, and let the Mouth be waſhed often therewith.*

The plain Decoction of Vervain is Commended of many for the ſame.

Alſo a Decoction of Guaiacum made with Wine, or Water, and a little ſalt. Or,

Take of *Arſmart, and the barks of the Roots of Henbane, of each equal parts, boyl them in Roſe Vinegar, and waſh the mouth.*

And if the pain cometh from a Hot Cauſe, only boyl a Henbane Root in Vinegar.

If the Arſmart be too ſharp, take a leſs quantity: Nay, you may leave it quite out in a Defluxion coming of a Hot Cauſe, and put Perſicaria Macutata inſtead of it, which is Aſtringent and Cooling, and his juyce may be given ſafely at the Mouth in al Defluxions that are ſharp and Chollerick: Alſo you may uſe the Leaves of Henbane inſtead of the Root.

Some uſe the Leaves of Henbane and Perſicaria Maculata as a ſecret Magnetick Charm, they boyl them in Vinegar, they burn the Leaves being boyled with a gentle fire, and waſh their Teeth with the Vinegar, and they ſay that as ſoon as the Leaves are burnt the pain wil be gone: But I rather think it is Cured by the Vinegar with which the Teeth are waſhed.

In the aforeſaid Decoctions if the Vinegar be ſo ſharp that the Patient can ſcarcely endure it, you may mix half Wine; and in a Cold Cauſe make them of Wine only.

Amatus Luſitanus, Commends Exceedingly Sandarach boyled in Vinegar and Wine, Thus.

Take of *Sandarak one ounce: Wine and Vinegar of each half a Pint: boyl them and let the ſtrained liquor be held a long time in the mouth.*

The Decoction of the Roots of the great Nettle, with a little Nutmeg and Saffron made in equal parts of Wine and Vinegar, and held warm in the Mouth, doth wonderfully draw the Humors forth.

But at the firſt, the pain wil ſeem to encreaſe; but afterward, it wil be mitigated, and ceaſe.

The Root of the ſharp Dock gathered in the Spring before it groweth forth and dried, applied to the Tooth pained, doth appeaſe the pain by a ſpecifical propriety: which is confirmed by the experiment of *Foreſtus*, in *Obſ. 6. lib. 4.* where he ſaith, That he applied this Root green, and cut in ſmal pieces to the Tooth of a Maid with good ſucceſs; and that he Cured many other therewith after he had given them univerſal Medicines.

If the body be wel purged, and the head be not very ful of flegm, Maſticatories to draw the Humors from the part affected wil do very wel: which are made either of Pelitory of Spain a long time held in the mouth and chewed, or as followeth.

Take of *Maſtich, Pelitory of Spain, and Staphiſagre, of each one dram: the ſeeds of Henbane half a dram: Pouder them, and mix them together, and make little balls thereof in a thin linnen Rag, which let him long chew, to make him ſpet.*

Commonly the Oyl of Cloves is uſed in a little lint to ſtop the Tooth if it be hollow, or otherwiſe, for ſo the humor adhering to the part is drawn forth and the part ſtrengthened.

Oyl of Camphire is very profitable for the ſame purpoſe.

Or Diſſolve eight grains of Camphire in one dram of the Oyl of Cloves; and uſe it as above.

But

But above al the reſt the Oyl of Box is extolled, which being but once dropt into the Tooth preſently ſtaies the pain.

This Oyl is made of Box cut in ſmal pieces, and then Diſtilled by deſcent, in two Veſſels, the one put into the earth, the other above, upon which you muſt make a ſtrong fire, and ſo the Oyl wil fal into the lower veſſel.

Beſides the aforeſaid Oyls, the Chymiſts commend the Oyl of the Hazel Nut uſed in the ſame manner.

If the pain be ſo great that it wil not away with the aforeſaid Medicines, you muſt come to Narcoticks, which are let down by Practitioners under divers forms; although their effect is as uncertain as others: but they do ſurely ſtupifie the Pain: Among the reſt Laudanum is chief, which doth not only appeaſe the pain, but alſo ſtop the Flux; and it may be given ſafely after univerſal Remedies to the quantity of three or four grains, if it be wel prepared.

Many Topicks made of Narcoticks are carried about; Theſe Two following are the beſt.

Take of *Opium, Myrrh, and Labdanum, of each one dram: Pouder them, and with white Wine boyl them into a Liniment, which put with lint into the Tooth.*

The Other is the Emplaiſter of *Riverius*, Chief Phyſitian to *Henry* the Great above mentioned.

If Worms be in the Teeth you muſt kil them with bitter things: And this following is good for that.

Take of *Aloes one dram: Camphire half a ſcruple: Aqua Vitæ half a dram: mix them and apply thereof with lint to the Tooth.*

It is to be obſerved, That the Teeth do ſeldom ake except they be hollow to the Nerve; therefore to take away the ſence of pain burn the Nerve with an actual Cautery, or with Aqua Fortis, or Oyl of Vitriol, which often done to a very hollow Tooth, it wil be broken in pieces, and ſo drawn forth.

If the Pain ſtil continueth, and the Tooth be very hollow, you muſt draw it out, and then the pain wil preſently ceaſe and never return.

But you muſt take heed that you draw not the Tooth when the Defluxion falls violently, or when the Head aketh, or the Gums twel, or when there is great pain.

And the Chirurgion is to be Admoniſhed, That he pul it not out violently at one pul leſt the brain be too much ſhaken, and the Jaw bone broken; from whence comes a great Flux of blood, a Feaver, and ſometimes death.

After it is Drawn, cloſe the part with your fingers, then let the mouth be waſhed with warm Oxycrate; and let him take heed of Cold Air, leſt a new Defluxion fal upon the other Teeth.

But if the blood flow ſo faſt that it wil ſcarce be ſtanched (which ſometimes happeneth by the breach of the Vein and Artery, without the breach of the Jaw: And *Varaiola* reports of one that had his Tooth pulled out without iron or force but with the fingers, and yet bled a pint at one time, and as much the next day from the Artery under the Gum) This Flux of blood is ſtopt by laying a hard peice of lint like a ball, and holding it down for one hour or two with the fingers: If that wil not prevail, apply burnt Vitriol, and lay a Ragg upon it dipt in Vinegar, and compreſs it with your finger til you make an eſchar. The laſt Remedy is an actual Cautery by which the blood wil preſently be ſtopped.

If any fearful people refuſe burning and require other means, you muſt try thoſe which Authors preſcribe; As Paſte made of the milk of Spurge, and the pouder of Frankincenſe mixed with a little Starch, the Root of Crowfoot, the Bark of the Mulbery Root, the pouder of Earth-worms, Pellitory of Spain ſteept in Vinegar, and the Root of Wild Cowcumber ſo ſteept, and the like. But the Leaf of Elleboraſter rub'd upon the Tooth is beſt; but you muſt not touch the other leſt they alſo fal out.

A Country man troubled with the Tooth-ach, was perſwaded by another to rubb his Tooth with Elleboraſter; he unwittingly rubb'd al the Teeth on that ſide, and preſently almoſt al his Teeth fel out: Therefore if any wil try this Medicine, I adviſe them to defend the other Teeth with ſoft Wax.

Although when there is a Tumor in the Jaws, the pain for the moſt part ceaſeth; becauſe the matter is carried outwards: Yet for the quick Diſſolving of it, uſe this Liniment.

Take of *Freſh Butter, and Hens Greaſe, of each one ounce: the Pouder of Flower-de-luce-Root, one dram: Saffron half a ſcruple: Oyl of Chamomel and ſweet Almonds, of each half an ounce: make a Liniment.*

A Cataplaſm made of Figgs, Bread and Vinegar, is better.

A Nettle bruiſed, and laid to the Jaw, doth quickly aſſwage the pain.

This

This is the Cure of the Tooth-ach for the present. But if it return often, as is usual, you must use prevention, which is to hinder the breeding of those humors that flow thither; and let the Teeth be strengthened that they may be less capable to receive them. Therefore if it proceed from a hot cause, you must use such Medicines as were prescribed in the Cure of a hot distemper of the Liver and a hot Catarrh. If from a cold Cause you must take that course which is prescribed in the Cure of the cold distemper of the Brain; but you must strengthen the Teeth with the Medicines in the Chapter following.

Chap. 2. *Of the blackness and rottenness of the Teeth.*

MAny times the Teeth do contract a black, livid, or yellow color, from the evil Humors, cleaving unto them, which by long continuance do also corrode them, and make them rotten: and these Diseases come from filthy vapors that fly upwards, and are engendered of evil nourishment, or from the distemper of the stomach, which corrupteth good nourishment.

Quick-silver doth black the Teeth, whether it be used to the whol Body, as in the Pox, or only to the Face. Hence it is that women which use Mercury to make them fair, have black and ill color'd Teeth.

For the Cure you must first remove the antecedent Cause, and if it comes from evil humors in the stomach, they must be discharged, and the distemper of the parts which produce them must be corrected, and a good diet prescribed, and those things forbidden which do corrupt the teeth, especially sweet things.

Infinite Medicines are prescribed by Authors for making teeth white, which may be experienced. We are contented with one, which presently makes them white, cleanseth them, and keeps them from rotting, namely, the spirit of Sulphur, or Vitriol, in which you must dip a little stick, and rub the teeth with the end thereof, and then wipe them with a clout. In a great foulness you may use the Oyls by themselves, otherwise you must mix them with Honey of Roses, or fair Water, lest by the often use of them the Gums should be corroded. *Montanus, consil.* 113. reports that he learned that at *Rome*, of a Woman called *Greek Mary*: to whom when he came when he was yong, and she twenty yeers old, and after when she was fifty, he found her almost in the same condition, and she confessed that her Beauty and strength was preserved by the Spirit of Vitriol, and that her Teeth which were very bad in her youth, were by that, made very fair and firm, and also her Gums; and also that she perceived her self by the use thereof to seem more youthful, and she used every day one drop or two to rub gently her Teeth and Gums.

The Ashes of Tobacco is very good also to cleanse and make white the Teeth.

For prevention, and to preserve the Teeth, first cleanse them with a Tooth-picker made of Mastich Wood, or the like; then wash the mouth with Wine, and rub the Teeth with this Pouder:

Take of *the Roots of Snakeweed, Allum, and white Coral, of each one ounce*: *Make a Pouder to rub the Teeth.*

Or wash them with this Water.

Take of *the fine Pouder of burnt Allum two drams*: *whol Cinnamon half a dram*: *Spring and Rose Water, of each four ounces*: *boyl them in a Glass upon hot Embers to the consuming of the third part. Wash the Teeth therewith every morning with a cloth dipped therein.*

Chap. 3. *Of the Erosion or eating away, and of the Exulceration of the Gums.*

THe Gums are eaten away and exulcerated by sharp corroding humors which come unto them. The parts from whence they come are, the Brain, Stomach, Spleen, and others. Men that have Diseases in the Spleen, are most subject to Ulcers in the Gums, as in the Scurvy; sometimes the erosion of the Gums comes from worms, or the corrupt humors which cause worms, so that it is a plain sign of worms when it continueth long. So saith *Fabricius Hildanus, Obs.* 59. *Centur.* 1. the Son of a Citizen of *Dusseldorp* was long troubled with erosion of the Gums, and died, after the use of many internal Medicines and Topicks: when he was opened we found abundance of worms, which had eaten through his Guts, and many in his Stomach.

The Cure is first to be directed to the antecedent cause, and the vicious humors are to be evacuated by blood-letting and purging; the sharp and hot humors are to be tempered with Apozemes, Juleps,

and

and Phyſical Broths, and the like. The flux of the ſame is to be diverted by Cupping-glaſſes, and Caureries fitly applied. And laſtly, the faults of the parts affected are to be corrected.

Afterwards you muſt uſe Topicks, which are to be altered according to the greatneſs of the diſeaſe, ſo that to a ſimple Eroſion, you muſt apply only thoſe which aſtringe and dry, as this Water following:

Take of *unripe Galls, Acorn Cups, and Flowers of Pomegranates, of each one ounce: red Roſes one pugil: Allum three drams: boyl them in two parts of Forge-water, and one part of old red Wine, and waſh the Gums often therewith.*

If the Eroſion be not taken away with that, uſe this Opiate:

Take of *Dragons blood three drams: Lignum Aloes, red Roſes, Spodium, and burnt Harts-horn, and Cypreſs nuts, of each one dram: Mirrh and Tobacco Aſhes, of each three ſcruples: Allum one dram. Make them into Pouder, and mix them with Honey and a few drops of Spirit of Vitriol, or Sulphur. Make an Opiate, which muſt be ſpread upon linnen cloth and laid to the Gums at night.*

The Spirit of Vitriol and Sulphur, as they cleanſe and whiten the Teeth, ſo they take away the rottenneſs of the Gums, either alone, or mixed with Honey of Roſes, or Water, as in the former Chapter.

If the Ulcer be deep and foul, anoint with this:

Take of *choyce Mirrh and Sugar-candy, of each equal parts: pouder them, and fill the white of an hard Egg cut in the midſt therewith; then tie it with a thrid, and hang it in a Wine-Celler with a glaſs under it, and there will come forth a Liquor or Baſſom, with which anoint often.*

But if by the uſe of the aforeſaid, the diſeaſe be not cured, if the Tooth neer the Ulcer be rotten, you muſt pull it out, and then it will be preſently cured, otherwiſe never.

Chap. 4. *Of bleeding at the Gums.*

SOmtimes abundance of blood flows from the Gums, either Critically, or Symptomatically, although the former be very ſeldom, yet it is ſometimes; ſo we may ſee by Experience, and by reading. So ſaith *Dodonæus, Obſ.* 14. A certain Quarrier having the imal Pox, had a flux of blood from his Gums, and being ſtopt, it made the Urine bloody, which being ſtopt it returned again to the Gums, and there continued till he recovered of the imal Pox. *Amatus Lucitanus, Curat.* 5. *Centur.* 5. ſaies that ſome have had benefit by bleeding at the Gums, and have been worſe when it was ſtopped. Alſo *Zacutus Lucitanus, obſ.* 86. *lib.* 1. *Praxis admir.* ſpeaks of a Goldſmith who when he fell into a Feaver by laboring at the Furnace, being of a ſtrong conſtitution, loſt much blood by opening a Vein and amended, ſo that the ſeventh day (having had an itching of his Gums, and a pain in the lower Lip) the blood guſhed from the Veins of his lower Gums for three daies in ſuch a quantity that he loſt above five pints more, and the more he bled, the more his Feaver abated, and when it was gone the blood ſtopped.

The Gums bleed Symptomatically when the blood is ſharp, and the Liver or Spleen diſtempered: So that in the Scurvy this flux is ordinary.

Sometimes after a Tooth is drawn, there is ſo great a flux of blood by reaſon the Artery is torn, which is the root of the Tooth, that ſometimes men have died thereof.

The Cure of a Symptomatical flux, is by bleeding and purging, and other Remedies for the bowels. As alſo by Topicks aſtringing, made into Gargariſms, Pouders, Liniments, or Opiates.

If it come from a Tooth drawn, you muſt firſt let blood and Cup to make revulſion, and apply aſtringents to the part, as a Cataplaſm, of Bole-Armenick, Terra Sigillata, Sanguis Draconis, and the like aſtringents made up with the white of an Egg. Alſo Time alone with the white of an Egg is good. But if they do not ſuffice, you muſt lay the Patients finger upon the part, and let him hold it there till the blood congeal above the orifice of the Artery. If it cannot be ſtopt with ſleight things uſe ſtronger. *Valeriola, obſ.* 3. *lib.* 5. reports that an old woman who had a Tooth taken forth with the fingers only, had a violent bleeding upon it, from the Artery under the Gum; which he ſtopt with burnt Vitriol when other things failed; which is excellent both for aſtringency and burning. *Zacutus Lucitanus, obſ.* 84. *lib.* 1. *Prax. Med. admir.* relates a Hiſtory of one who having a grievous Tooth that ached, drew it violently forth, and after had a great flux of blood from the Artery torn, which when it could not be ſtopped by Blood-letting, Cupping, and Aſtringents, nor by laying on the finger, nor by burnt Vitriol, at laſt by his advice the place was filled with Gum Arabick, which ſtopt it in three hours ſpace, for it hath power to ſtop, cool, glutinate, and dry. The ſame *Zacutus Obſ.* 85. of the ſame Book, reports of a certain ſtrong Soldier, who after great pain drew a Tooth violently, and bled much from the Artery under the Tooth, for two daies: the beſt Phyſitians uſe

all

al Aſtringents to the part, with Revulſives, and burn the Artery with a hot iron, but al in vain, for he bled ſtil even unto death: *Zacutus* being called, applied the Plaiſter of *Galen*, made of Frankinſence, Aloes, the hairs of an Hare poudered, and mixed with the white of an Egg, by which in a few hours the blood ſtopt and the Patient recovered.

Galen boaſteth that he invented this precious Medicine, *lib. 5. meth. cap. 7.* and ſtopped the Artery in the Elbow: And *cap. 4.* of the ſame Book, and in his Book of Curing by Blood-letting, Chapter the laſt, he confirmeth the Excellency thereof by many ſtories.

Chap. 5. *Of the Ulcers of the Mouth, and Jaws.*

THe ſmal and ſuperficial Ulcers of the Mouth are uſually Aphthæ or Truſh, although in *Galen* and *Hippocrates*, it is ſometimes uſed for Ulcers in other parts; but they which are deeper are abſolutely called the Ulcers of the Mouth and Jaws: Such as are in the French Pox.

Theſe Ulcers breed of ſharp Humors or Vapors coming from divers parts into the Jaws; ſo in malignant Feavers they often happen, or to thoſe that have hot Livers, or foul Bodies: So the Children have the Truſh, as *Hipp. aph. 24. ſect. 3.* either from the ſharpneſs of the Milk which Ulcerates thoſe tender parts in its paſſage, as *Galen* teacheth in his Comment upon the ſame Aphoriſm, or from the corruption of the milk in the Stomach by which ſharp vapors are ſent to the mouth, as *Galen* affirms, *9. de compoſ. med. ſec. loc. cap. ultimo.*

Now theſe Ulcers are divers, as ſome are ſlighter, ſome more dangerous; ſome are in Children, ſome in Men; ſome are joyned with Inflamation, ſome are without; theſe divers degrees are according to the variety of the Humors of which they come: For they proceed either of Blood, Choller, Flegm, or Melancholly, or Choller Aduſt, which hath not only a burning, but often a malignant quality, and begets evil conditioned Ulcers.

Theſe Differences are known by their proper ſigns, for if the Ulcers be Redish they come of Blood: if Yellow, of Choller: if White, of Flegm: if Livid or Blew, from Melancholly, if they ſtink they are foul.

As for the Prognoſtick.

Aphthæ, or Truſh is eaſily Cured, but deep Ulcers and putrid, called in Greek *Nomai*, are hardly Cured: And in Children they are more dangerous by reaſon of their tender fleſh which they ſooner devour: As alſo becauſe ſtrong Medicines cannot be applied unto them; hence ſometimes Children die of them, when they are Malignant and putrid.

Alſo in reſpect of the Cauſe, thoſe Ulcers which come of Flegm, are leaſt dangerous: thoſe that come of Blood or Choller, more: and thoſe that come of Melancholly, moſt of al.

Black and Cruſty Ulcers are deadly, eſpecially in Children.

The Jaws Ulcerated in a Feaver are hard to be Cured, as *Hipp.* teacheth, 3. *Prog.* Becauſe as *Galen* explaineth they ſhew the malignity of the matter.

The Cure is firſt by good Diet, which Cooleth and Dryeth, and hindereth the Generation of the antecedent Cauſe: Therefore when Children have it from their Suck, let the Nurſe be changed, or eate good Diet, as alſo let her bleed and be purged, if need be: eſpecially let her eate Cool Aſtringent things, as Quinces, Pears, Medlers, Services, Lettice, and Purſlain, preſcribe the ſame to men, and let them avoid ſharp things, ſalt, and pepper.

Then you muſt look to the antecedent Cauſe, with Univerſal Evacuations according to the age: And firſt Phlebotomy doth powerfully revel the Humors, and tempereth their ſharpneſs, by Cooling the whol body.

After this Cup and Scarrifie, put Horſleeches behind the Ears and under the Chin, and apply a Veſicatory to the Neck behind.

The next day after you have let blood, you muſt preſcribe a Purge, agreeable to the Humor offending, and the age of the Patient.

From the beginning of the Cure uſe Topicks, called by *Galen* Stomatica, or Medicines for the Mouth: and at firſt they muſt be mild, as Gargariſms, Mouth-waters made of Plantane, Honeyſuckle, and Roſes; Water with Syrup of dried Roſes and of Mulberies: or Decoctions of Plantane, Bramble Leaves, Knot-graſs, Pomegranat Flowers, Red Saunders, and the like; with Syrup afore mentioned.

And if there be Inflamation, you may do wel if you ad the Juyce of Nightſhade, Houſleek, and Purſlain, with as much Sal Prunellæ as wil not make it too ſharp: Or a little crude Allum.

If there be no Inflamation, the Chief & only Remedy is Spirit of Vitriol, or Sulphur, which may be uſed alone to Men, upon a little lint at the end of a ſtick, gently touching the part, by which it wil be preſently Cured if it be a ſimple Aphtha: But to Children you muſt mix the Spirit aforelaid with Honey

Honey of Roſes, ſo that it may be but a little ſharp, and with a little Lint at the end of a Probe often apply it, and they wil be quickly Cured.

If the Ulcers are very painful and inflamed, they muſt Gargle with Milk often, or with an Emulſion of the Cold Seeds, or the Mucilage of Fleabane-ſeeds and Quince-ſeeds extracted with the waters of Roſes, Plantane, and Nightſhade.

If the pain wil not be removed with theſe Revulſions and Topicks, but the Humors are ſtil drawn thither by it, which cauſeth want of ſleep, and Conſumption of the body, which endanger the life; the laſt Remedy is Narcotick, which wil aſſwage the pain and ſtop the Flux, you muſt give it according to the ſtrength and age of the Patient.

I once ſaved a Childs life (by Gods aſſiſtance) of Four Yeers old with one grain of Laudanum, when his Jaws and Tongue were deeply Ulcerated with ſuch an Inflamation, that he could neither take Broth, nor Topicks, the Humors flowing ſo faſt from his mouth, that he lay night and day complaining without any reſt.

If the Ulcer be ſordid, Firſt waſh it with the Decoction of Barley, and Honey of Roſes; and in Children, with Milk chalybeated, or in which Steel hath been often quenched, mixed with Conſerve of Roſes; then uſe ſtronger Medicines, and principally Honey of Roſes above mentioned made a little ſharp with ſome drops of Spirit of Vitriol:

If theſe wil not do, you may ad to the Waters and Decoction above mentioned burnt Allum, the Collyrium of *Lanfrank* and Ægyptiacum, in a quantity agreeable to the Diſeaſe.

Laſtly, If it come from the French Pox, it wil not be Cured til the Pox be Cured.

Chap. 6. *Of the Relaxation of the Uvula, or Falling Down of the Pallate.*

THe Relaxation of the Uvula comes from a Rhewm falling from the Brain upon it, with which there is ſomtimes bloud mixed, and then there is an Inflamation alſo, and this often fals upon the Tonſils or Spongious Kernels; the Inflamation whereof ſhal not here be treated of, becauſe it is Cured by the ſame means, with the Inflamation of the Tongue, and of the Ulcers of the Mouth.

A Wateriſh Humor falling upon the Uvula or Collumella, doth ſo moiſten, ſoften, and relax it, that it wil be extended to the upper part of the œſophagus or Wezand, and cauſe a Nauſeouſneſs, and the Patient wil ſeem to have ſomthing in his Throat which he cannot ſwallow down, by which you may know it without looking into the mouth.

The Cure is firſt by the Antecedent Cauſe, that is, by Evacuating the Humors flowing from the Head, by Revelling and Deriving them with ſuch Medicines as were preſcribed in the Cure of a Catarth.

The Chief Topicks are Aſtringents and Repellers, ſuch as were preſcribed in the Cure of the Ulcers of the Gums and Jaws, and ſhal be preſcribed in the Chapter following of the Cure of the Angina, to which afterwards you muſt ad ſome Reſolvers and Dryers: And though the Gargariſms in thoſe Chapters mentioned, are here good, yet when there is no Inflamation the uſe of Pouders is better; for with them the Vvula relaxed is more powerfully dried and Aſtringed.

And therefore, Firſt apply Pomegranat peels poudered, and after mix it with a little Pepper:

Or,

Take of *Red Roſes and Pomegranat flowers and Peels of each half a dram: the Roots of Snakweed and Tormentil, Galls and Flower-de-luce-Roots, of each one dram: burnt Allum, two ſcruples: make a Pouder. Ordinary Chirurgeons apply the Pouder of Long Pepper, but it is dangerous, for it is to be feared, leſt the Humors ſhould be drawn violently from the Brain, to the part.*

The Manner of applying this Pouder is to depreſs the Tongue with a Speculum Oris, and then blow up ſome pouder in your Uvula ſpoon: do this often til the Humor be ſpent: The inſtrument invented by *Fabricius Hildanus, Obſ.* 21. *Cent.* 2. is the beſt for this.

And if the Uvula relaxed cannot be brought to its former condition by theſe means, but continueth extended and painful; your laſt Remedy is to cut off a piece thereof: in which Operation you muſt take ſome Cautions. The firſt is from *Hippocrates*, 3. *Progn. Text.* 21. where he ſaith, *That Uvula's are Cut and Scarrified, and burnt when they are red and ſwoln, but not without danger; for an Inflamation followeth, and a Flux of Blood; but you muſt endeavor to extenuate theſe accidents by other means at that time: But when the Uvula hangs down, and the lower part of it is greater than the higher, and round, then it is ſafe to operate: but it is better firſt to adminiſter a Cly-*

ſter, if time will permit. *Galen* in his Commentary upon theſe words of *Hippocrates*, ſaith that an Uvula inflamed, is not to be cut off, or ſcarrified; but after the inflamation is gone, ſo that the ſuperior part is leſſened. Another Caution is taken out of *Paulus Æginet.* *lib.* 6. *cap.* 31. you muſt not touch the Uvula with an iron to cut it when it is livid or blackiſh, that is, when it hath malignity in it, and inclineth to be a Cancer. But out of the ſame Author we have a lawfulneſs of the operation, when they are long and white, or as *Hippocrates* ſaith, ſmal at the top. We have an Example of the good ſucceſs of this operation in *Amatus Lucitanus*, Obſ. 65. Cent. 3. upon a Student who had his Uvula hung down like a thong, long, and without blood in it; which when Medicines could not cure, he cut off, and after touching the part with a little Spirit of Vitriol, he cured the Patient.

The third Caution is, That you cut not off too much; for then the Voyce and Breathing will be hurt according to *Galen*, 11. *de uſu part. cap.* 11. and conſumption and death it ſelf will enſue as often is ſeen in the French Pox.

Chap. 7. *Of* Angina, *or Quinzie, or Squinzie.*

THe word *Angina* taken generally ſignifies every Diſeaſe of the Jaws and Throat, by which breathing and ſwallowing are hindered, when there is no defect in the Lungs and Breaſt.

And this is two-fold, a Legitimate and proper Squinzy; and a Baſtard, or improper.

A Legitimate Squinzy comes from an Inflamation by which the Muſcles of the Jaws and Throat being ſwelled, do ſtop and contract the waies of breathing and ſwallowing. This Inflamation doth either poſſeſs the Throat or the Jaws, called *Pharynx*. Both theſe parts have both internal and external Muſcles. And though for the moſt part the *Pharynx* and *Larynx*, Jaws and Throat, do ſuffer in an *Angina* by reaſon of their neerneſs, yet one is more affected than the other: Hence many differences of Symptomes do ariſe, in reſpect whereof *Galen* in 4. *de loc. aff. cap.* 5. makes four ſorts of *Angina's*, which the Grecians before his time named too curiouſly. One is called *Sunagchen*; another *Cunagchen*; the third *Paraſunagchen*; and the fourth *Paracunagchen*. If the Inflamation be in the inward and proper Muſcles of the Larynx, it is called *Cunagche*; if it be in the inward Muſcles of the Pharynx, *Sunagche*; if in the outward Muſcles of the Larynx, *Paracunagche*; and if in the outward Muſcles of the Jaws or Pharynx, it is called *Paraſunagche*.

Not only the Muſcles of the Jaws and Throat are for the moſt part inflamed, as aforeſaid, but alſo the parts adjacent, and the outward part of the Neck, as ſhall be ſaid in the Diagnoſtick and Prognoſtick of this Diſeaſe.

In all theſe kinds of *Angina's*, when there is great danger by the difficulty of ſwallowing, then thoſe things which are given uſe to fly out at the Noſe, eſpecially if they be liquid things, which are more hard to be ſwallowed at that time; becauſe they ſpread themſelves abroad, and therefore cannot ſo eaſily be comprehended of the Muſcles to be ſent into the *Oeſophagus*, which Muſcles cannot ſufficiently contract themſelves by reaſon of the inflamation; but ſolid nouriſhment being more corpulent, need only the ſuperficial action of the Muſcles, and are ſwallowed down by a ſmal contraction of them. But it ſomtimes falls out that ſolid things are harder, and liquid things eaſier to be ſwallowed, which dependeth upon the diverſity of the parts affected: For the Muſcles of the Larynx are ordained for to ſwallow meat, as well as for the voyce; and when the meat is thrown into the *Oeſophagus*, the Larynx is lifted up with the Tongue: But for to ſwallow drink we uſe the Tongue moſt, which while it is drawn inwards it brings the drink from the Lips to the Jaws. If therefore the Muſcles that move the Tongue are more affected, it is harder to ſwallow drink. But if the Muſcles of the Larynx are more hurt, it is harder to ſwallow meat.

Here by the way we muſt mark, that *Hippocrates* ſomtimes by the word *Angina*, doth underſtand only the inflamation of the Larynx, and ſo it is taken more ſtrictly; of which there is an Example 6. Epid. Sect. 8. Text. 1. where he ſaith thus: Some had inflamations of their Jaws, ſome had *Angina's*; where by the name *Angina* he underſtands the inflamation of the Muſcles of the Larynx, and diſtinguiſheth it from the inflamation of the Jaws.

A Baſtard *Angina* is without a Feaver, and is two-fold.

The firſt and moſt ordinary comes of Rhewm falling upon the Jaws and parts neer unto the Larynx.

The other comes from the Luxation of the *Vertebra's* of the Neck, by which the paſſage of the Gullet and Throat, is preſſed and made narrow.

The Cauſe of a true *Angina*, as of other inflamations, is either pure blood, or mixed with Choller, Flegm, or Melancholly, which falls upon the parts aforeſaid out of the Branches of the Jugular Veins, and this is either attracted by the heat or pain of thoſe parts, or ſent from other parts, becauſe the e parts are weak, looſe, and fit to receive a deſluxion, eſpecially if the whol Body abound with humors,

humors, or the Head, or the parts neer the Jaws. For when evil blood aboundeth in the whol Body, and is carried unto the Head, if the Brain be ſtrong it will not receive it, but ſends it down by the ſame Veins into the lower parts; hence come divers inflamations as Parotides, or tumors under the Ears, Ophthalmies, Angina's, and the like.

Young men are more ſubject to the Angina, than old, becauſe they have much Gollerick blood, and becauſe they are full bodied, and have much blood, eſpecially in the Head.

Some Authors ſay that men are more ſubject to Angina's than women; which it ſeems *Hippocrates* obſerved, 6. Epid. Sect. 7. where deſcribing an Epidemical Conſtitution, in which Angina's, Coughs, and Peripneumonia's, or Inflamations of the Lungs, were frequent, he affirmeth that few women were ſick, and he gives no other reaſon, but becauſe they went leſs abroad than men, and therefore were not ſo ſubject to injuries from the Air. Which Reaſon doth not agree with the univerſal Propoſition, That women are leſs ſubject to Angina's than men; but this may be a true Reaſon, becauſe women have colder Blood, a leſs Larynx or Wind-pipe, and narrower Veins of the Throat. For which Reaſon thoſe parts do not ſo eaſily receive defluxions.

The precedent Diſeaſes may be reduced to their internal Cauſes, as continual, putrid, burning, and eſpecially Epidemical Feavers, ſuch as were mentioned by *Foreſtus*, Obſ. 2. Lib. 6. which happened in the yeer 1517. at which time all that were infected had an inflamation of the Jaws, and died within ſixteen or twenty hours, except they were let blood within ſix hours. But in this *Angina* the Feaver is not Symptomatical, but Eſſential, and the *Angina* is ſymptome to it, becauſe part of the matter cauſing the Diſeaſe is ſent to this place; for in Epidemical Feavers, *Angina's*, Pleureſies, Inflamation of the Lungs, Diſenteries, and the like do happen, from ſome ſecret force and influence of the Stars, by which ſomtimes one part of the Body, and ſomtimes another is more affected.

Whatſoever can cauſe a flux of humors to theſe parts may be reckoned among the external Cauſes of this Diſeaſe: As Southernly winds, according to *Hippocrates*, Aph. 16. Sect. 3. in time of much rain, many diſeaſes happen, as long Feavers, Fluxes of the Belly, Putrifactions, Falling-ſickneſſes, Apoplexies, and Angina's. Alſo for the producing of this laſt, the inequality of weather doth much, when the parts are made looſe by heat; and by cold ſuddenly coming thereupon, the humors are ſent thither. A ſudden cooling after heat, and drinking of cold water doth the ſame, or if the Head be kept too hot or too cold.

The firſt Cauſe of a Baſtard Angina, is propounded by *Hippocrates*, 4. *de vict. rat. in morb. acut. text.* 39. where he ſaith, an Angina comes when in Winter and Spring time much ſlimy flegm falls from the Head to the Jugular Veins, which obſtructeth the paſſages of the Spirits with its cold glewineſs.

There is another Cauſe of a Baſtard Angina given by *Hippocrates*, 2. Epidem. Sect. 2. namely, a Tumor riſing in the Vertebra's of the Neck, and eſpecially in that which is called *Dens*, or the ſhape of a Tooth by *Hippocrates*, by which the *Vertebræ* are drawn inward, and therefore a Cavity appears in the external part. Now this Tumor either comes from flegm, removing by its encreaſe the *Vertebra* from its ſeat, or from blood falling upon the Muſcles, from whence comes an inflamation by which the Muſcles being contracted draw the *Vertebra's* inward, and then it is a true Angina coming from the inflamation of the ſaid Muſcles. There may alſo be a Luxation of the *Vertebræ* by a flegmatick humor looſing their Nerves, and making them ſlippery between the Joynts. And laſtly, it may come from an external Cauſe, as a fall, or ſtroak, as in other parts.

An Angina is generally known, firſt by its proper ſigns, namely, difficulty of breathing and ſwallowing, when there is no fault in the Breaſt and Lungs, and when pain is felt about the Jaws and Throat: and in a true Angina, redneſs, heat, and a feaver are ſigns.

The Differences may be diſtinguiſhed by their proper ſigns. In *Synanche* there is leſs difficulty of breathing, but great difficulty in ſwallowing, ſo that moiſt things can ſcarce be ſwallowed, but come out at the Noſtrils.

In *Paraſynanche* there is leſs difficulty of breathing, nay, very little, becauſe the inflamation of the external Muſcles of the Jaws doth little hinder reſpiration, there is pain and redneſs outwardly in the Neck, when the outward parts are inflamed.

In Cynanche there is great hinderance of Reſpiration, ſo as the Patient ſeems to be ſtrangled, and ſomtimes is ſtrangled for a ſhort time, and cannot breath but with the Neck upright, and the Mouth open.

The Jaws are much pained, yet there is no redneſs or Tumor inwardly in the Jaws, nor outwardly in the Neck; the Tongue is livid, black, and retorted, or bent by reaſon of the great fulneſs of the Veins about it. There uſeth alſo to be an acute Feaver, you may find an acute deſcription of this kind of Angina in *Hipp.* 3. *de Morbis*. And this is remarkable, which is obſerved of few, the inward Muſcles of the Larynx are not here only affected but the Lungs themſelves, from whence is difficulty of breathing and Suffocation, which *Dodonæus* obſerveth very wel, Obſ. Med. Cap. 18. where he relates a hiſtory of a Butcher who at noon felt a pain about his Jaws and Throat, and ſome diffi-

culty in swallowing, and died strangled the same night; his body being opened the substance of his Lungs were found turned into matter.

He gave other Examples, *Anno* 1565. in which yeer many had the Angina, with pain about the Larynx, which ceasing, they fel into Peripneumonia, and they being opened after death, had either their Lungs ful of Water or imposthumated; but nothing was perceived about the Larynx or its Muscles, which might shew an inflamation: And in these Causes he supposeth that the Larynx did not suffer principally, but by consent; and it is probable that the Aspera Artery, or rough Artery and its branches may be filled and extended with the Humor flowing from the head, and then if the Humor be sent to other vessels, the Aspera Artery and Larynx are freed from pain, and the Lungs are infected, and so an Angina may turn into a Peripneumonia: We may gather that the Lungs may be affected in an Angina from *Hippocrates*, 4. *acut. text.* 30. & 31. where he laies down Two kinds of Angina's from the diversity of the Humors; one, in which a Flux of Rhewm in Winter and Spring is carried to the Jugular veins; another, in which Choller abounds, which is in Summer and Autumne: of the last he speaks thus, When a hot and salt Defluxion comes from the head, being sharp it gnaws and ulcerates, fils with Spirits, brings an Orthopnæa or difficulty of breathing with the Neck stretched forth, and much drouth. Besides, there is no Tumor; the Tendons of the Neck behind are stretched like a Cramp, the voice is hindered, the breath is little, and often stopped, such have the Artery ulcerated, and the Lungs inflamed, so that they cannot breath: Thus *Hippocrates* he saith also that a hot and sharp Defluxion wil bring an Orthopnæa, because it biteth, ulcerateth, and filleth with Spirits, which are carried to the place hurt; hence comes the filling of the Lungs from whence Orthopnæa comes: When there is no room for receiving of the external Air, how much so ever the Lungs be enlarged. *Hippocrates* affirms this, 3. *de morbis*, where in the Cure of a Squincy he saith, the vein under the Breast or Papp is to be opened, for in this part there is a hot Spirit from the Lungs, and a little after he saith, You must make hast to cause Spetting, and that the Lungs may grow less, as if the Lungs were swoln by the hot Spirit contained therein. But it is most remarkable that when the Spirits are carried in great plenty to any part, there is also blood carried therewith, which if it flow in such a quantity that it cannot be wel governed by nature, it useth to make inflamations and imposthumes; from whence it is no wonder if in such an Angina the lungs become purulent or full of water.

In a Paracynanche the breath is less difficult than in a Cynanche; but more difficult than in Synanche, there is some redness and tumor about the Jaws.

A Bastard Angina is known by the Flegm, by want of Feaver, by the plenty of humors flowing to the mouth.

But a bastard Angina coming of a Luxation is known by the hurt motion of the Head and Neck, and by the Preternatural Cavity which appears in the Neck by reason of the Vertebra inwardly depressed.

The knowledg of the Causes is taken from the universal and particular signs of the humors predominating in the whol Body.

When an Angina comes of blood, there is heat and redness in the Face, and a great distention in the part affected. When it comes of Choller, the pain and heat is greater, with thirst, bitterness in the mouth, and sharpness. And if it comes from flegmatick blood, the pain and redness is less, and the Feaver little.

From the part affected some knowledg of the humor offending may be had. For Chollerick blood for the most part maketh an inflamation in the Muscles of the Larynx; but flegmy blood goes rather to the Jaws; for when the Veins of the Larynx are smal, only thin blood goes thither; but the Jaws being loose and spungy, do more easily receive the flegmatick humors.

Finally, From the time of the yeer you may know the peccant humor: For Chollerick Angina's do come chiefly in the Summer and Autumn, because in the Summer Choller breedeth, and in Autumn it is retained. But flegm breeds in Winter and the Spring, because the humors gathered in Winter are then melted and sent from the Head into the inferior parts.

As to the Prognostick. A true Angina is a most acure Disease, and very dangerous by reason of the hinderance of respiration, and for strangulation, which sometimes happens by the stoppage of the passages, by which respiration is made. Therefore by how much the greater the Constriction, so much the more danger, and so the first kind of Angina is most dangerous, because the inflamation of the internal Muscles of the Larynx doth more stop the passage. Whence *Hippocrates*, Aph. 34. Sect. 4. saith thus: *If a Suffocation comes presently upon a Feaver, and no Tumor in the Jaws, it is mortal.* Which Opinion he confirmeth in *coac.* & *progn.* saying that these kinds of Angina's do strangle in the same day, and in the second, third, and fourth.

The second sort of Angina, though it be very dangerous, yet is it not altogether deadly as the first, because the inflamation of the external Muscles of the Larynx doth not make so great and so sudden a constriction. Of this *Hippocrates* spake 3. Prog. Text. 17. thus: *Whatsoever Angina's do resemble others in pain, and make a Tumor and redness in the Jaws, are very deadly, and are of longer continuance than others if they be very red.*

The

The third kind is leſs dangerous, becauſe the Breath is leſs hindered than the Swallowing, from the inflamation of the internal muſcles of the Jaws: But the Swallow hurt is not ſo dangerous. Of this *Hippocrates* ſpeaks in the Book above cited, Text. 18. in theſe words: *If the Jaws and Neck are red, theſe Angina's continue longer; but they are chiefly preſerved who have red necks and breaſts, and the holy fire without, not within.*

The fourth kind is leaſt and ſafeſt, becauſe the inflamation is furtheſt from the Throat. Hence *Hippocrates*, Aph. 37. Sect. 6. ſaith, *If a Tumor appear in the neck in him that hath an Angina, it is good, for the Diſeaſe comes forth.* He confirms the ſame in 3. Progn. Text. 20. thus; *But it is moſt ſafe to have a Tumor or redneſs come forth.*

Hippocrates ſeems to comprehend all theſe Differences in one Sentence, 6. Epid. Sect. 7. where ſpeaking of the ſigns of an Epidemical Angina, he ſaith: *In the ſum of all, To them that could only not ſwallow, the diſeaſe was mild, and eaſie to be endured; but it was deſperate to them who had withal a difficulty of breathing.*

If the matter cauſing the Angina be carried to the Lungs, either the Patients die, or elſe turn Fools, or Empyick, that is, impoſthumated between the Breaſt and Lungs; as *Hippocrates*, Aph. 10 Sect. 5. and 3. Progn.

In an Angina that is ſtrong, if the Patient foam at the mouth, it is deadly, Aph. 43. Sect. 2. for it ſhews a great ſtraitneſs about the Heart, and violent heat, from which the proper moiſture of the Lungs is ſqueezed forth, and carried to the mouth in a kind of froath.

They who have an Angina, if they ſpit not concocted matter, but a little, viſcid, ſlimy, and thick, are deſperate; *Hipp. in coac.*

The Tumors of the Jaws in an Angina ſuddenly vaniſhing without reaſon are deadly, *Hipp. in coacis.* Without cauſe or reaſon, that is, without a precedent Evacuation by Art or Criſis; for it ſignifies the returning of the matter inwatd, from whence a more dangerous Diſeaſe may be in the internal parts; or as it ſometimes fals out, the matter returning to the ſame part makes a ſudden ſuffocation.

The Cure of the Angina is made by the ſame Indications which are obſerved in the Cure of all Inflamations, ſo the humor flowing to the part is to be revelled and repelled, that which is there is to be derived and diſſolved: But if it cannot be diſſolved, it is to be digeſted and ſuppurated; all which may be done as followeth:

Firſt, appoint a ſlender, cooling, and moiſtening Diet, of Barley, Cream, Chicken Broth, or Capon Broath, with cool Herbs, and the like. If the Patient cannot ſwallow by reaſon of the narrowneſs of the Oeſophagus, ſo that from thence you fear loſs of ſtrength and death. You may free him from that danger by putting down a Catheter into the Oeſophagus, to which you may fit a Syringe by which you may ſend Broath into the Stomach. The Practical Phyſitians uſe nouriſhing Clyſters, by which ſome nouriſhment may be carried to the Liver from the Meſeraick Veins. Let his drink be Barley Water, and other things uſed in acute Feavers. Let the Air be temperate, and without extremity, for the cold will ſtop the pores, and the hot will encreaſe the defluxion and inflamation. The Patient muſt lie with his head high, and his neck upright, that he may better breath: he muſt avoid much ſleep, as in internal inflamations; for as *Hippocrates* ſaith, Blood runs inward in time of ſleep, and ſo the confluxion of humors to the part affected will be encreaſed.

But ſince Angina is a moſt acute Diſeaſe, and ſomtimes kills a man in one day, you muſt uſe great Remedies with much diligence. Therefore in what hour ſoever the Phyſitian comes, let him preſently let blood, on the ſame ſide that is affected, out of the Head Vein, or if that appear not, out of the Median, to a pound, or a pound and an half, or two pound, as much as his ſtrength will permit, for in this there is moſt hope; but you muſt not take all that blood away at once, leſt the Patient faint, by which he would be in danger; but by degrees, and intermiſſion, at every third or fourth hour. This kind of blood-letting is ſo neceſſary in this diſeaſe, that it may be hindered by no contrary indication. So in the flowing of the Terms, or at any other time you muſt take away blood in a great quantity. Of which we have a preſident in *Zacutus Lucitanus*, 2. *Prax. admir. cap.* 135. of a Woman which was in her ſeventh month great with Child, and was taken with a Squinzy; but being ſeven times let blood in one day was cured. If the Diſeaſe be not violent, you may firſt give a Clyſter; but if otherwiſe, afterwards.

While Phlebotomy is iterated, make other revulſions in the ſame day with Cupping-glaſſes, both dry, and with ſcarrification upon the ſhoulders and loyns, make frictions and painful Ligatures upon the extream parts.

Having bled enough, fall to purging the next day, not expecting the concoction of humors, becauſe the diſeaſe admits of no parley; therefore give one proper to the humor, nay, if the diſeaſe do conſtrain you, let blood, and give a purge, both in the ſame day; as *Trallianus* did by his confeſſion, *Lib.* 4. *Cap.* 1. in theſe words: *I truly remember that I, when occaſion required, opened a Vein in*

the

the morning under the Tongue, and at night gave a purge of the extract of Scammony in Broth, and could scarce hinder strangulation for all that, and another the next day; after I had opened both the Arms, purged him again.

Now your purge must be of gentle things, if the disease come of Choller, lest the humors should be moved too violently, and so come to the part affected. Also if the Inflamation come only of blood, it is better to abstain altogether from purging. But if flegm run with it, make stronger Purges, and give Agarick, and Diaphœnicon with Senna; nay, in a strong flegmatick Angina you may rise to those Medicines which cause violent vomiting, and among the rest, the *Aqua Benedicta* of Dr. *Rowland* is the best, which given to the quantity of two ounces, doth wonders, and for the most part cureth the disease in the space of two hours. Moreover, it hath no evil taste, and so may easily be sipped up, which you cannot do in other Medicines, which by reason of their evil taste cannot be taken but at one draught by the Patient; therefore they can seldom be purged till the passages are a little opened. But that is supplied by often Clysters, and therefore they who cannot take *Aqua Benedicta Rulandi*, by reason of its heat, or their weakness (because they must be strong who take it) nor any other Medicine, must use often Clysters that are very sharp to draw down the Humors.

For the same Revulsion, it is good to apply Cupping-glasses to the Neck and Shoulders with scarrification, Frictions, and Ligatures, to the lower parts, and to wash their feet with hot Water.

But a Vesicatory to the Neck behind, doth more strongly revel the humors flowing from the head, which you must do presently after blood-letting.

After Revulsions are sufficiently and diligently made, you must derive the Humor from the part, and first open the Veins called *Ranulæ* under the Tongue, it is commended by *Hippocrates*, *Galen*, and the Modern Physitians, by which the blood which doth immediately cause the inflamation, is drawn forth.

The Ancients in a desperate Angina, open the Jugulars, which though some late Writers have approved, yet it is out of fashion, being thought dangerous by reason of the bleeding, which can scarcely be stopped by reason of the largeness of the Veins. But Experience hath taught that this operation is not so dangerous if it be well administred. First then, bend the Patients Head on one side as much as you can til his chin almost touch his shoulder; then open the Vein without a Ligature, with a smal Orifice, according to its longitude, for so it will more easily cicatrize; and having taken a sufficient quantity of blood, bring the Head to its natural position, and so sometimes the blood will stop of its self. But you must presently apply *Galens* Emplaster described 5. *Meth. Cap.* 4. made of Hares hair, Aloes, Frankinsence, and the white of an Egg, so the flux of Blood is surely stopped. *Trallianus* reports in *Lib.* 4. *Cap.* 1. that he cured many of the Squinzy with opening of the Jugular Veins; and *Zacutus Lucitanus*, *obser.* 89. *lib.* 1. *Praxis admir.* tells of a Spaniard which was cured of a most violent Angina.

A Cupping-glass with Scarrification under the Chin, is good for derivation, by which *Zacutus Lucitanus*, *obs.* 88. *lib.* 1. *Prax. adm.* saith he cured a woman of a *Cunagche*, or dog Squinzy.

Scarrifications under the Jaws, and upon the Neck are good, if deep, by which means *Benivenius* saith in *lib. de abdit. morb. caus. cap.* 38. *Nicholas Rota* was cured of a desperate Angina; whole story *Sennertus* hath fully related, *Pract. Med. lib.* 2. *part* 1. *cap.* 24.

While the aforesaid Medicines are used, the inflamation of the Throat and Jaws is to be allayed with Topicks, and they are to be varied according to the time, as in other inflamations, so in the first Repelling Medicines, are good made into Gargarisms that they may presently touch the part inflamed.

Take of *Plantane, Nightshade, and Woodbine Water, of each three ounces: Syrup of Mulberries three ounces: Sal prunella, one dram and an half. Make a Gargarism.*

Or of a Decoction thus:

Take of *Plantane, Sorrel, and the tops of Brambles, of each one handful: the Grains of Sumach half an ounce: one Pomegranate beaten with grains and peel: red Roses one pugil: make a Decoction to a pint: Dissolve in the straining Syrup of Mulberries, and the composition made of Nuts, of each one ounce and an half; Sal prunella two drams: Make a Gargarism.*

Concerning Gargarisms you must observe, that they are to be suspected, because the parts inflamed are moved thereby, which should be at rest; but you may remedy that if you hold the Gargarism in the Mouth, turning backwards, and not move it.

Without Gargling you may use the Spirit of Salt, Sulphur, or Vitriol, which mixed with Water, to qualifie their sharpness, are to be taken by little and little; for by passing through the part affected, they qualifie its heat, and being sent from the Stomach to the Liver and Veins, it allaies the heat of the blood; which Remedy is also good in the Inflamation of the Jaws and Tonsils.

While you use repelling Gargarisms, you must apply outwardly to the neck, loosning and resolving Liniments, that the matter may be brought forth; thus made.

Take

Take of *Oyl of Chamomel, Lillies, and ſweet Almonds, of each one ounce: Hens greaſe and freſh Butter, of each one ounce and an half: Saffron one ſcruple: Make a Liniment to be applied with greazie wool.*

This Liniment will aſſwage pain, which if violent, it may be qualified alſo with a Gargariſm made of Milk, or an Emulſion made of the four cold great ſeeds, or of Mucilages of Fleabane and Quinces, drawn with Roſe water, adding Syrup of Violets, or Caſſia diſſolved in Whey, or in a Decoction of Marſh-mallow Roots.

After the beginning of the Diſeaſe when it encreaſeth, or is at a ſtand, you muſt mix Digeſters and Diſſolvers with Repellers, which muſt be done the ſecond day, becauſe the Diſeaſe is moſt acute.

Take of *the Leaves of Hyſop and Plantane, of each one handful: Liquoris, Raiſons ſtoned, of each one ounce: fat Figs twelve: red Roſes and Barley, of each one pugil: make a Decoction of a pint. Diſſolve in the ſtraining Honey of Roſes, and Syrup of Violets, of each one ounce. Make a Gargariſm.*

Obſerve, That as long as the Inflamation continueth, you muſt mix ſome things that repel with Diſſolvers and Aſtringents, leſt the part which by Nature is ſoft, ſhould be more relaxed, and made more fit to receive a defluxion.

But outwardly you muſt apply Diſſolvers moſt, with a Swallows neſt, which by the Opinion of all Writers hath a ſpecifical property againſt this Diſeaſe.

Take of *the pouder of a Swallows neſt, and of Album Græcum, of each one dram: the pouder of Flower-de-luce Roots and Chamomel, of each half a dram: Hens greaſe and Oyl of Lillies, of each one ounce, yellow Wax a little: Make a Liniment.*

Or it may be made into a Cataplaſm thus:

Take *one Swallows neſt, Mallows, Violets, of each one handful: Althæa Roots, Lilly Roots, of each half an ounce: fat Figs three or four: Chamomel and Melilot Flowers, of each one pugil: boyl them and beat them; then put to them, Barley meal, Linſeeds, and Fœnugreek, of each three drams: Saffron, one ſcruple: freſh Butter one ounce: Oyl of Chamomel and ſweet Almonds, of each as much as will make a Cataplaſm to be applied to the fore part of the Neck.*

In the mean while, you may uſe Eclegma's, or things to be licked, now and then, that the matter which breaths forth of the part, or falls upon it from the head, may be clenſed.

Take of *the pouder of the Electuary of Diatragacanth frigid, two drams: Simple Diaireos one dram: Sugar-candy, and Penides, of each half an ounce: Diamoron one ounce: Syrup of Jujubes, as much as is ſufficient. Make a Lohoch.*

If the Tumor will not be diſcuſſed, but tendeth to ſuppuration, which uſeth to be upon the fourth or fifth day, you ſhall aſſiſt it with the Cataplaſm aforeſaid, and other Emollients and Suppuratives, and he muſt hold thoſe Medicines at the ſame time in his mouth, which was preſcribed formerly for aſſwaging of pain. Or,

Take of *ſliced Liquoris and Raiſons ſtoned, of each one ounce: fat Figs ſix: Althæa and Quince ſeeds, of each two drams: the flowers of Chamomel, one pugil: boyl them in Hydromel. Diſſolve in the ſtraining, boyled Wine two ounces. Make a Gargariſm.*

It is alſo good to hold Caſſia new drawn, in the mouth, that by degrees it may diſſolve into the Throat, for it aſſwageth pain, diſſolveth and maturateth.

If the Tumor come to ſuppuration, which may be known by the decreaſe of ſymptomes, and will not break, let the ſick man, or ſome about him, put their fingers into his mouth, and endeavor to break the impoſthume, which if it cannot be done, let his mouth be wide opened with a *Speculum oris*, and then open the impoſthume with a crooked inciſion knife called a Biſtort. Then let the Patient hold down his Head leſt the matter fall upon his Lungs: after, waſh the Ulcer with Barley Water and Honey of Roſes, Water and Honey called Hydromel, or Wine and Honey called Oinomel; after this, dry it up with Allum Water.

Others put a Wax Candle anointed with Oyl of ſweet Almonds into the Oeſophagus to break the Apoſthume; which if they cannot do, they uſe a ſharp wooden knife, or at laſt an inciſion knife.

Others touch it with Oyl of Vitriol, which preſently breaks it, *Arcalanus* opens it with a Lancet fixed at the end of a ſtick leſt it ſhould touch other parts. *Faventinus* commends the ſame, in theſe words; *Take a little round ſtick, & in the end of it, fix a little ſharp Iron as long as half a finger; then open the mouth, and put a ſtick between the Teeth, then let him open the impoſthume with the former Inſtrument: when it is open, let him bend forward with his mouth open, that the matter may come forth.*

Schenkius out of *Dovynetus*, uſed to break an impoſthume with the Decoction of Agarick, and confirmeth it by the following Hiſtory taken out of *Dovynetus, Apolog. lib. 3. cap. 1. A Noble Woman called* Gabriella Gouner, *Lady of* Saulton, *being taken with a Squinzie in Autumn, which*

is

is most dangerous, I remembred that I read in Aetius, lib. 15. cap. 6. *that Agarick doth destroy hidden imposthumes, or draw them forth; presently I took Agarick, and cut it and steeped it in the decoction of Althæa with the fourth part of white Wine, and Figs, and a little Ginger, with a little Syrup of Marsh-mallows, and gave it to the Lady to drink, commanding that she swallow it not down suddenly, but hold it in the mouth a little, if she would be cured: she obeyeth, and while I was talking with her, behold abundance of white stinking matter came forth of her mouth, in so much that her daughter that held the Bason fainted, the other people ran away, others came and took away the matter, others perfume the room; which done, I came to the Patient, and found her delivered from the impediment in her voyce, difficulty of breathing, and her feaver, and out of all danger.*

If the matter seem to tend to the external parts, you must open it outwardly; which *Lanfrank* saith he did with good success, *Chir. maj. doct. 2. tract. 3. cap. 5.* in these words: *Because the Chyrurgeon is much confirmed by good experience, I will tell you what befel me in the City of* Millane, *with a Lady of fifty five yeers old, which had a flegmatick Squinzie in the whol Throat, inwardly and outwardly, but outwardly it appeared most swoln, and she could neither speak nor swallow: being sent for, I felt her pulse, and found her exceeding weak; touching the part affected I found the matter very deep, and that she was more likely to be choaked, than that it should break either internally or externally: then I got ready my Rayfor, and touching the place with my fingers I found ripe matter between the Chin and the Epiglot, and there I made a deep incision, by which I drew forth a great part of the corrupt matter, but willingly left a great deal behind, for a reason known; then her breath grew better, and pulse stronger; then giving her Broath, a great deal of it came forth of the wound: then I invented a silver pipe which should pass the wound being put into the mouth, and by which she should receive her nourishment. I used Mundificatives, and Maturatives to the whol Throat and Neck, till I drew out of the wound a great piece of viscous matter, and stinking, like a Gut as long as my finger, which was condensed by heat; which taken away, the place did no longer stink, and the Patient began to cheer up: but I continued to mundifie, and after with Incarnatives and Cicatrizers, I healed up the wound, and the Patient was cured.*

Here may be related the History of *Beniven* before mentioned, of one in a Squinzy, who was left of other Physitians, and was cured by him with deep scarrification under the Jaws, and in the Neck, from whence much matter flowed.

If the Apostthume break inwardly in the Mouth, let it be clensed with Barley Water, and Hydromel (as is said.) But sometimes the Ulcer is foul, and then you must use stronger, thus made:

Take of *Scabious and Agrimony, of each one handful: Cypress nuts one dram: Flowerdeluce Roots, and round Birthwort, of each half an ounce: Mirrh half a dram: red Roses two pugils: boyl them in Hydromel to a pint; strain it, and wash the part ulcerated therewith.*

This Decoction is very good to clense an Ulcer; but if it be not sufficient, use the Collyrium of *Lanfrank*, which is wonderful.

After it is well clensed, you must endeavor consolidation with Bole-Armenick mixed with Honey of Roses for an Eclegma, with Frankinsence and Mirrh.

It comes to pass sometimes that the Inflamation decreasing, the Tumor will neither be dissolved, nor suppurated, but grow harder; in which case you must use Emollient and Suppurating Cataplasms, made thus:

Take of *Althæa, and Briony Roots, and of the wild Cucumer, of each one ounce: Mallows, Pellitory, Origan, and the lesser Centaury, of each one handful: fat Figs, six or seven: Linseed and Fænugreek, of each one ounce: Boyl them, beat them, and strain them, and then ad of the ponder of a Sallows Nest burnt, and of Album Græcum, of each three drams: Brimstone one dram: fresh Butter, and Ducks Grease, of each one ounce: Oyl of Dill two ounces. Make a Cataplasm.*

For a Conclusion, we will speak something of *Laryngotomia*, or cutting of the Throat, which Ancient Physitians mentioned, and the Modern approve and confirm by experience: As when in a desperate Squinzy when the Patient is almost choaked, an incision is made in the rough Artery, by which there is a passage for Air into the Lungs, and for vapors coming out of them. This *Avicen* alloweth, Fen. 9. lib. 3. cap. 11. *Paulus*, lib. 6. cap. 33. *Rhasis*, 3. continuentis. *Alsaharavius*, *Avenzoar*, *Albucasis*, and *Halyabbas* in their proper Chapters.

Galen sets down the same out of *Asclepiades*, in his Introduction, chap. 13. Of the Modern *Brassavolus*, comment. in lib. 4. Of *Hipp.* concerning Diet in acute Diseases, Sect. 35. saith, that he made this operation with his own hands, and good success.

But

But this is ſeldom uſed by Chyrurgeons for fear of diſgrace through the death of the Patient; for men are more apt to make the operation the cauſe of death than the diſeaſe, although the Phyſitian have been very careful, and foretold them the danger.

Moreover, In a deſperate Angina the Lungs are often affected, and full of humors, whence comes ſuffocation; and then the inciſion of the rough Artery will not profit. Which danger *Jerom Fabricius ab Aquapendente* obſerving, being a good Chyrurgeon, ſaith that he never undertook this Operation, nor any other in his time. But he confeſſeth it may be uſed, ſo that the Lungs and rough Artery be not full of filth: and he ſheweth the manner of it in its proper Chapter moſt exactly, from whence any one may take it.

The End of the Sixth Book.

THE SEVENTH BOOK OF THE PRACTICE OF PHYSICK.

Of the Diſeaſes of the Breaſt.

The PREFACE.

BY this name Thorax, *or Breaſt, we mean thoſe parts only which ſerve for breathing; for although the Heart be contained in the* Thorax, *yet the Diſeaſes thereof ſhall be ſet down in a Book by themſelves. But in this we will only ſpeak of thoſe which hinder breathing, and hurt the part of Reſpiration; as Aſthma, Pleureſie, Peripneumonia, or Inflamation of the Lungs, Empyema, and Phtyſis; and we have ordained proper Chapters for each of them.*

Chap. 1. *Of* Aſthma, *or Difficulty of Breathing.*

THe Breath is hindered by divers Cauſes, either by ſympathy, or propriety of part.

The hinderance of breathing by propriety called *Idiopathica*, comes from the Lungs diſtempered, and therefore every Diſeaſe of the Lungs hurts their action, which Diſeaſes are either in the ſubſtance of the Lungs, or in the Veſſels thereof.

In the ſubſtance of the Lungs come inflamations, pimples, impoſthumes, ulcers, and ſomtimes a drying, and atrophy of the part; ſomtimes a ſerous watery humor is ſuckt into the ſpungy ſubſtance of the Lungs, and hinders their free dilatation; ſomtimes, though ſeldom, there is a ſchirrus, a ſtone, or hard ſwelling in them.

In the Veſſels of the Lungs, there are often obſtructions, which hindering the free paſſage of the Air, cauſe difficulty of breathing.

Breathing is hindered by ſympathy or conſent from other parts, which are not only neer, but remote, ſo the Membrane that goeth about the ribs being inflamed, or the Diaphragma, or Mediaſtinum, the breath is hindered. So by cuſtom there is a great and often breathing when the heart is inflamed, as in Feavers; and on the contrary, when the Heart is cold, as in dying men, it is diminiſhed and

and ceaſeth; the ſame happeneth in ſwouning or ſyncope, when the action of the Heart, and conſequently Reſpiration ceaſeth.

So in the Empyema, or Dropſie of the Breaſt, when matter or water is collected in the Cavity of the Thorax, the Dilatation of the Lights, and Reſpiration is alſo hindered.

So the Muſcles of Breathing being hurt, hinder Reſpiration, as in wounds and tumors of them, eſpecially in an Apoplexy, when the influence of the Animal Spirits is kept from them.

Moreover, The Inflamation of the Muſcles of the Larynx makes difficulty of breathing in a Squinzy.

So alſo the Diſeaſes of the Hypochondria do hinder Reſpiration by conſent, as tumors of the Liver, Spleen, Sweetbread or Pancreas, do by their weight draw down the Diaphragma to which they are joyned, and ſo hinder the motion of it. Alſo vapors and wind ſent from thoſe parts compreſs the Diaphragma, and hinder its action, from whence comes a flatulent Aſthma. The ſame happeneth by the abundance of wind or water contained in the belly of an Hydropical man, and compreſſing the Diaphragma. Laſtly, Vapors coming from the Mother hinder Reſpiration, from whence this diſeaſe is called, Suffocatio Hyſterica.

Among the aforeſaid hinderances of Reſpiration, the Aſthma is handled by it ſelf, becauſe the other depend upon other Diſeaſes; they ſhall be mentioned in their places.

Although Aſthma uſed generally, comprehendeth in a large ſignification, all kinds of difficulty of breathing; yet it ſignifies more ſpecially that ſhortneſs of breathing which comes from the ſtuffing of the Lungs, and the obſtruction of the Bronchion, or Griſtles of the Wind-pipe; which of its ſelf eſſentially is without a Feaver, although ſomtimes it be joyned therewith. And again, it is ſubdivided into three other kinds; as firſt, *Dyſpnœa*; the ſecond called alſo *Aſthma*; the third *Orthopnœa*.

Dyſpnœa is a difficulty of breathing, in which the breath is drawn oftener and thicker, from the ſtuffing of the Lungs. This is leſs than Aſthma, or Orthopnœa, becauſe the matter obſtructing is leſs, and it rather ſtops the ſubſtance of the Lungs, than Griſtles or Bronchia: hence it is that there is no ſnorting at all, which comes from the commotion of the humors contained in the Bronchia, with the Air continually paſſing through.

Aſthma is a great and often breathing, in which the Diaphragma, the Intercoſtal Muſcles between the Ribs, and of the Abdomen, are violently moved, joyned with ſnorting and wheeſing. For in a true Aſthma properly ſo called, the Bronchia of the Lungs are filled with flegm, which (as is ſaid) being moved by the Air, make that noiſe.

Orthopnœa is a great difficulty of breathing, in which the Patient cannot breath but ſitting, and with the neck extended upright; and the aforeſaid Muſcles are not only moved vehemently, but alſo thoſe of the Breaſt and Shoulders.

The names *Dyſpnœa* and *Orthopnœa*, as we ſaid of Aſthma, are uſed commonly for all difficulties of breathing, which happen in Pleureſies, or Inflamation of the Lungs, or the like.

The ſame may be ſaid of *Apnœa*, which doth not only ſignifie a depravation of breathing as the former, but alſo a diminiſhing or aboliſhing thereof; and this happeneth in ſyncope, Hyſterical Paſſions, and ſtrong Apoplexies.

The humor which cauſeth an Aſthma, is for the moſt part flegm, which falls from the Head into the Lungs, and obſtructs the Bronchia or Wind-pipe. Somtimes it comes from crude and ſerous humors brought by *Arteria Venoſa* into the Lungs, and if theſe flow to the Bronchia, they produce a true Aſthma with ſnorting; but if to the ſubſtance of the Lungs, or ſmooth Arteries, they cauſe a baſtard Aſthma without ſnorting.

This kind of Aſthma, which is unknown to vulgar Phyſitians (who will acknowledg no other cauſe but a defluxion from the Head) is confirmed, not only by not ſnorting, but from the thick and turbulent Urine of the Patient at that time, eſpecially in the fit, becauſe ſome part of thoſe thick and crude humors in the Veins is ſent to the Reins and Bladder. And ſome Aſthmatical men are ſubject to ſtoppage of Urine, and when they are ſo, they are free from it. But when the fit of the Aſthma comes, the difficulty of Urine ceaſeth, becauſe the matter of the diſeaſe contained in the Veins goes from one place to another: We have alſo ſeen ſome ſubject to a flux in the Belly, who while they were ſo, were free from the Aſthma; but when that ſtopped, the Aſthma returned. Moreover, this kind of Aſthma which is without ſnorting, is ſo directly oppoſite to bleeding, that when a Vein is opened in the fit, as ſoon as it bleedeth, the Patient begins preſently to breath better, and in the end, or after a little ſpace, they are cured of their fit. And finally, theſe kind of Aſthmatical men, are for the moſt part of an ill habit of body, and have an œdematous humor in their feet, which ſheweth that the cauſe of the Aſthma at that time came from the Liver, and is contained in the Veins, ſo that ſomtimes a Dropſie followeth in many. Hence *Aretæus* reckoneth a wind in the Midriff, and belchings, without reaſon among the ſigns of an Aſthma at hand, which certainly do come from a crude matter moved in the Midriff.

That flatulent matter doth of its ſelf ſomtimes produce another kind of Aſthma, which is called

Asthma flatulentum, or *Hypochondriacum*; when many thick vapors rising from the Hypochondria, do compress the Diaphragma, and hinder its motion, whence comes great difficulty of breathing, without snorting.

The Knowledg of this Disease, and its kinds, may be by what hath been said.

In a Dispnœa, the breath is thick, without noise or anhelation, and with less trouble.

In an Asthma the Breast is more heavy, the Breath thicker and quicker, with anhelation, snorting, and wheesing.

But in Orthopnœa, the Patient cannot breath but with his neck upright, and if they lie down, they are ready to be choaked.

The Signs of the Causes are these:

If Asthma come from gross humors gathered in the Lungs, the difficulty of breathing comes by degrees, by little and little, and is continual.

But if Humors come at a distance from other parts into the Lungs, the difficulty of breathing is not continual. For albeit Asthma which comes from matter contained in the Lungs, useth to be encreased by external causes, as Anger, Southernly winds, and the like; yet in Asthma which comes from matter flowing from another part, the encrease is more manifest. If this matter come from the brain, there is a manifest Catarrh; but if no signs of a Catarrh appear, you must conjecture that the matter comes by the Veins to the Lungs, and the swelling of the feet, and evil habit of body called *Cachexia*, is a sign that the Liver is affected.

If a thick humor be contained in the Bronchia of the Lungs, the Respiration is with noise and cough; as also by spitting the disease ceaseth, or is diminished.

If the Humor be in the Veins, or substance of the Lungs, there is no noise, and there is seldom any spitting by Cough.

As to the Prognostick. An Asthma is a Chronical disease, and very hard to be cured, and often ends in a Cachexia or Dropsie. Yong men are sometimes cured, and not without great labor, but old men never. Infants except they be speedily cured, die by a Catarrh, which followeth:

They who grow crooked upon an Asthma or Cough, die before they come to ripeness of age, because the gibbosity hindereth the convenient growth of the breast, nevertheless get their due encrease and bigness, but having not room enough to dilate themselves; from whence the heat of the Heart being not sufficiently fanned, the Patient dieth.

A Pleurisie, or Peripneumonia coming upon an Asthma, is deadly, because the Lungs being weakned by a long disease, cannot resist so great a disease coming thereupon, and expel the matter.

The Cure of the Asthma is two-fold, namely, in the Paroxysme, and out of it.

In the fit, presently you must open a Vein, a Clyster being given, if the blood do seem any way to abound: for when the Veins are empty of blood, the Respiration is more free. But if the disease be elder, and blood hath been often drawn, it is better to abstain from bleeding, because by diminishing the natural heat, it will encrease flegm.

It is good to open the Veins in the Ancles in this disease, coming by consent from other parts.

After bleeding, or if it be omitted as not thought fit, you must purge flegm, with the things prescribed in the Cure of the cold distemper of the brain, putting to them alwaies things proper for the breast as much as may be.

Vomits, although disallowed by some in this disease, yet are they most convenient, as frequent experience hath taught, and sometimes the fit is taken away with a vomit only.

Among these the chief is *Aqua Nicotiana*, or Tobacco Water, given in the quantity of an ounce; and it may be made into a Syrup with Sugar: In want whereof you may use the Salt of Vitriol, *Aqua benedicta Rulandi*. Now the reason is excellent why Vomits do so much good in this disease. For while the thin humor falling from the head insinuateth it self into the Aspera Arteria, and the Bronchia of the Lungs; and the thick falls into the Stomach, and is there so fixed that it can scarcely be taken away. And while the weak heat of the Stomach doth stir the matter, thick vapors are produced, which puffing up the Stomach, compress the Diaphragma, and cause difficulty of breathing. Hence it comes that when the Stomach is emptied, the fit ceaseth, or is much less. Moreover, An Asthma sometimes (nay often, according to *Sennertus*) cometh of crude humors about the Liver, and in the Veins, which are carried by the *Vena Arteriosa* into the Lungs, and compress the Bronchia, from whence cometh an Asthma. For the evacuating and revelling of these humors from the Lungs, a Vomit is very good. As also for this cause, the Remedies purging humors downward are very excellent.

The Juyce of our Flowerdeluce, doth gently move and purge downward, taken to the quantity of half an ounce, with one ounce of Hippocras, which *Platerus* in his Observations saith he hath used with good success.

You may give two ounces of the juyce of Flowerdeluce, if the former did work sufficiently.

Also

Alſo you may uſe ſharp Clyſters often for revulſion. But they muſt be given in ſmal quantities, leſt by filling the Bowels the Diaphragma be compreſſed.

You muſt alſo uſe Frictions to the inferior parts, and apply many Cupping-glaſſes thereon, as alſo to the Neck. Afterwards you muſt extenuate and diſſolve the thick humors, and diſcuſs the vapors that come from them. For which purpoſe you may give a ſpoonful of Cinnamon Water, either by its ſelf, or with Syrup of Violets: as,

Take of *Cinnamon Water two ounces*: *Syrup of Violets one ounce*; *or inſtead of that, mix with the Water one ounce of Oxymel to diſcuß the humors better.*

It is alſo profitable to give three, four, or five drops of Chymical Oyl of Sage, Roſemary, or Annis ſeeds with a little Wine; or ſprinkle therewith the Tablets of Diatragacanth frigid, and ſo let the Patient eat them.

Others commend one ſcruple of Saffron given in a ſpoonful of Wine. Alſo *Aqua Clareta* thus made is very good.

Take of *Aqua vitæ four ounces*: *Water of Colts-foot and Scabious, of each two ounces*: *Cinnamon ſix drams*: *ſtrain them through an Hippocras Bag. Let him take two or three ounces.*

Tobacco taken in a pipe hinders the fit; ſo doth the Leaf chewed: and alſo the ſmoak of Cloves in a pipe.

In the mean time you muſt uſe expectorating Medicines, which bring forth the thicker matter upwards. As,

Take of *the Syrup of Horehound, Liquoris, and Coltsfoot, of each two ounces*: *Oxymel ſimple one ounce. Mix them, and let him lick it by little and little.*

Take of *waſhed Turpentine one ounce*: *Ammoniacum two ſcruples*: *Flower of Brimſtone one ſcruple*: *mix them into ſoft pills, of which let him take one every ſecond hour with half an ounce of the Syrup of Hyſop.*

Take of *the Oyl of ſweet Almonds new drawn without fire ſix ounces*: *Sugar Candy two ounces*: *Mix them for a Lambitive.* Or

Take of *candied Elicampane three drams*: *Sugar-candy half an ounce*: *Syrup of Hyſop and Horehound, of each one ounce*: *Ammoniacum diſſolved in Aqua vitæ half a dram. Mix them for a Lohoch.* Or,

Take of *Conſerve of Violets and Elicampane, of each ſix drams*: *the pouder of the Electuary Diatragacanth frigid, Diaireos Solomonis, of each one dram*: *Syrup of Violets and Maidenhair, of each as much as will make a Lohoch.*

Take of *Althæa Roots one pound*: *Elicampane four ounces*: *Quinces, or Marmalet thereof, ſixteen ounces*: *boyl them in Water till they are dry*: *Beat them and ſtrain them, adding two pints of Honey*: *boyl them again gently. Take them from the fire, and ad of Cinnamon one dram*: *flower of Brimſtone half an ounce*: *Liquoris perfumed with Muſk and Roſe water two drams. Make a ſoft Electuary*; *of which let him hold now and then as much as a Hazel nut in his mouth*: *'tis alſo very good to take half an ounce thereof morning and evening, when the fit is off.*

Alſo you muſt anoint the Breaſt with Mollifying and diſcuſſing Oyntments and Liniments, thus made:

Take of *the Oyl of Chamomel, Flowerdeluce, and ſweet Almonds, of each half an ounce*: *freſh Hens greaſe, one dram*: *the Pouder of Marſh-mallow roots and Flowerdeluce, of each one dram*: *the meal of Linſeed and Fœnugreek, of each two drams*: *Gum Ammoniacum diſſolved in Wine one dram and an half*: *Wax, as much as is ſufficient. Make a Liniment.* Or,

Take of *the Mucilage of the ſeeds of Quinces, Line, and Fœnugreek drawn with Scabious and Coltsfoot Water, of each ſix drams*: *the Pouder of Flowerdeluce root and Hyſop, of each half an ounce*: *Saffron one ſcruple*: *Oyl of Lillies and ſweet Almonds, of each two ounces*: *Wax as much as will make a Liniment.*

If the fit be long, clap a Veſicatory to the hinder part of the head.

Out of the fit you muſt ſtop the Defluxion, and alſo cut, clenſe, and expectorate that which hath fallen into the Lungs.

For ſtaying the defluxion, all thoſe Remedies are good which were mentioned in the cure of the cold Catarrh.

But you muſt take a Caution concerning ſome of them.

Firſt, In Apozems, Syrups, or the like, you muſt not make them two hot and dry, which by conſuming of the thin parts, may make the remainder thicker, and ſo the Diſeaſe will be worſe, But you muſt rather mix moiſteners, as Raiſons, Figs, Liquoris, Jujubes.

Secondly, Inſtead of Head Medicines, you muſt uſe things fit for the Breaſt, above mentioned.

Thirdly, For the Derivation of the Humors that abounds in the Head, uſe Errhines, Sternutatories, Gargariſms, or Apophlegmatiſms: Which laſt are not ſo proper, by reaſon of the neerneſs of the

part

part by which the humor runs to the Lungs. But Errhines and Sternutatories may be uſed ſafely.

Fourthly, To ſtrengthen the Head, and dry it, Fumigations are there commended; which are not ſo proper in this, eſpecially if taken in at the mouth and noſtrils, becauſe they make the breath ſhorter, and bring the fit. But with them you may air the Patients Caps, without, from the Chamber.

For to cleanſe and expectorate the thick Humors that ſtick to the Bronchia of the Lungs, the Medicines already mentioned, or theſe following, may be uſed.

Take of *Elicampane root, and Polypody of the Oak, of each half an ounce: the Leaves of Origan, Calamints, Hyſop, Savory, Maidenhair, Scabious, and Coltsfoot, of each one handful: the ſeeds of Marſh-mallows, and Cotton, and Carthamus, of each three drams: Liquoris and Raiſons ſtoned, of each ſix drams: Jujubes, Sebeſtens, and fat Figs, of each five, make a Decoction to a pint and a quarter of Hydromel; diſſolve in the ſtraining a pound and a quarter of white Sugar; make a Syrup well boyled, for a Lambitive.*

You may make a better and cheaper Syrup thus.

Take of *Elicampane Roots three drams: Spaniſh Tobacco one dram: infuſe them a whol night in ſix ounces of Aqua Vitæ: in the morning ſtrain them, and ad of the beſt Sugar four ounces; ſtir it well upon the fire, and ad of the ſyrup of Eryſimum or Coltsfoot two ounces: Oyl of Sulphur as much as will make it ſharp: make a Lohoch.*

Theſe following are proper for to unſtuffe and cleer the Lungs.

Take of *Ammoniacum, and Bdellium, diſſolved in Vinegar of Squills, of each half an ounce: Flower of Brimſtone three drams: the leaves of Coltsfoot and dryed Savory, poudered, Diaireos ſimple, of each half a dram; with ſyrup of Hyſop and Oximel of Squills make a maſs of Pills; of a dram whereof make ſix Pills, and let him take three of them two hours before ſupper twice in a week.* Or,

Take of *Aloes Succatrine, half an ounce: Myrrh and Ammoniacum, of each half a dram: Saffron half a ſcruple: Flower of Brimſtone half a dram: with the ſyrup of Coltsfoot make a maſs of Pills, of which let him take a dram two hours afore dinner for ſome dayes.*

Let the Water which is taken out of a hollow Briony Root, be diſtilled in *Balneo Mariæ* to eight ounces, whereof mix half an ounce of Spirit of Vitriol or Sulphur, let him take every day a ſpoonful faſting.

Take of *Tobacco Leaves, Hyſop, white Horehound, and Maiden-hair, of each two handfuls: the Roots of Flower-de-luce and Liquoris of each half an ounce: boyl them to a pint and an half, diſſolve in the ſtraining of white Sugar one pound, of the beſt Honey half a pound: make a ſyrup: well boyled, clarified, and perfumed, with a little Saffron and Cinnamon, let him take a ſpoonful or two every morning.*

The Oximel and Syrup of Tobacco invented by *Quercetan*, preſcribed in his Diſpenſatory, is of the ſame vertue.

The Tincture of dry Tobacco is drawn with Aqua Vitæ, a little thereof mixed with Honey, and that held in the Mouth as big as a Peaſe or Bean, ſwallowing it by degrees, this draws Flegm in abundance from the Stomach and Lungs.

Hogs Lice, called Millepedes, or Aſelli, in number twelve, put into a linnen Cloth, are to be ſteept in white Wine, and then ſtrained and ſo given to be drunk, and do in a ſhort time cleanſe the Lungs.

Oleum Sacchari doth powerfully diſſolve thick glutinous Humors in the Lungs, and cauſeth expectoration: But the Compound Oyl following is beſt.

Take of *the Roots of Flower-de-luce, and Elicampane poudered, of each half an ounce: the Pulp of Dates and Raiſons, of each three drams: Citron and Orange peels, of each one dram and an half: Benjamin two drams: Saffron one dram: infuſe them two dayes in the ſpirit of Wine well rectified: then take of the liquor by inclination, diſſolve as much Sugar Candy poudered as you can therein, then fire the ſpirit of Wine ſtirring them continually till it comes to a liquor as thick Oyl, then mix as much Oyl of Sulphur as will ſharpen it.*

A Decoction of Red Coleworts taken many dayes with a little Sugar, doth help the Aſthma.

But the Juyce of Red Coleworts with Sugar of Roſes, or Syrup of Coltsfoot, taken in form of a Julep for many dayes is better.

The Spirit of Sulphur doth diſſolve ſlymy Flegm, and open the Bronchia if four or five drops are taken in Broth, or convenient Syrup.

Turpentine is much Commended for this uſe, given often to two or three drams with the Oyl of ſweet Almonds or Conſerve of Violets, or you may make it into the form of an Opiate thus.

Take of *Turpentine well waſhed in Coltsfoot Water one pound: fat Figgs half a pound: Penides four ounces: Oyl of ſweet Almonds one ounce: mix them into an Opiate.*

Saffron in Sawce is good for the Breaſt; alſo a Junket made of Muſtard ſeed and Honey doth expectorate.

Oxymel

Oxymel allo with Agarick taken two ſpoonfuls in a morning, doth purge the Lungs.

The flower of Brimſtone made into Pills with freſh Butter, given three daies together to one ſcruple, doth much help the Aſthma. *Lac Sulphuris* doth the ſame better in eight grains, which is the greateſt doſe.

Alſo theſe Tablets following are excellent.

Take of *the pulp of Marſh-mallow roots, and of the greater Comphry, of each two ounces: flower of Brimſtone two drams: the flower of Benjamin half a dram: Sugar diſſolved in white Lilly Water eight ounces: make Tablets, which let the Patient hold often in his mouth.*

The Decoction of an old Cock is commended, and it is thus made:

Take of *the Roots of Elicampane, and Flowerdeluce, of each half an ounce: Hyſop and Horehound dried, of each ſix drams: Carthamus ſeeds one ounce: Annis and Dill ſeed, of each two drams: Liquoris and Raiſons ſtoned, of each three drams: the pouder of Fox Lungs prepared two drams. Beat them, and fill the belly of an old Cock therewith; then boyl him in fifteen pints of Water till his fleſh comes from his bones. After it is well ſtrained, ſet it in a cold place that the thickeſt may ſettle, and the thin may be taken off; of which let the Patient take ſix ounces with one ounce of Oxymel ſimple.*

If you will make it purging, you may ad two or three drams of Senna for every doſe, or half an ounce of Manna. Or if you will have it ſtronger, you may ſomtimes put in ſome Electuary that purgeth flegm.

Platerus prefers the following Preparation of a Cock before the reſt:

Take *an old Cock, kill him, pull him, and draw him; ſtuff him with theſe things following: Fox Lungs freſh, or prepared and dried, one ounce: Raiſons ſtoned, and Figs, of each two ounces: Elicampane one dram: Hyſop, Savory, Horehound, Thyme, Calaminth, Penyroyal dried, of each one dram: Fennel and Annis ſeed, of each one dram: Carthamus ſeeds bruiſed and Polypody, of each half an ounce: white Tartar one dram: Salt half an ounce: two yolks of Eggs: freſh Butter half an ounce: Cut them and bruiſe them, and ſew them into the Cock, boyl him till his fleſh comes from his bones in a large veſſel with ſo much Water as you may need to ad no more: then ſtrain it, and put to ten pints, one pound of pure Honey that it may not quickly corrupt. Let him take a Porrenger full every morning; in which let him diſſolve Manna and new drawn Caſſia, of each half an ounce, continuing it for a month and longer; which will be the better, if preſently after he take a dram of Turpentine with Penides in form of a Bolus, or otherwiſe.*

Ludovicus Septalius in his Practical Obſervations condemneth theſe Cock-broths as unprofitable, or hurtful: His Reaſons are, Becauſe they do not anſwer Experience, and have been uſed in vain by him and other Phyſitians of *Millane*. For by long boyling, the nitrous parts (by which thoſe Broths are thought moſt to profit) do ſettle, and are loſt in the ſtraining: but the ſlimy, glutinous, thick, and fatty, from the skin, feet, wings, muſculous and nervous parts do remain. Hence the matter is made thicker, and leſs fit to be expectorated.

But *Septalius* his Experience, muſt not be preferred before ſo many famous Phyſitians Experience, both old and modern. For if it did not profit ſome which he and others have cured, many other things might hinder, as namely, the evil diſpoſition of the Patient, and contumacy of the diſeaſe, or other things not well ordered which concerned the Cure, or the Medicine it ſelf not well made. And whereas he ſaith, that the nitrous parts do fall to the bottom by long boyling, and are loſt in the ſtraining, it is ridiculous; for only the Earthy parts do ſettle, but the nitrous part once taken into the liquor, is never ſeparated. Hence it is that the longer you boyl Broth the Salter it is. But this Salt doth cut, extenuate, and open, it is ſo far from incraſſating being ſalt. Neither hath the fleſh, or other parts of a Cock, ſuch a glutinous ſubſtance as he imagineth, as you may find in Neats feet, or Calves feet, but rather an attenuating quality, becauſe it is full of nitrous ſubſtance. And if purging and altering Medicines be made according to the Precepts of Pharmacy and Art, they do leave all their ſtrength in the Decoction, becauſe dayly Experience teacheth us that ſuch Broth of an old Cock doth purge. And if we may oppoſe our Experience to that of *Septalius*, we can truly ſay, that we have found admirable effects of theſe Broths in violent Aſthmaes and Chollicks. But this we uſe to alter in theſe Broths; We give many draughts in a day leſt it ſhould be ſpoiled by keeping. But this is the Example of what we preſcribe in this diſeaſe:

Take of *the Roots of Elicampane and Flowerdeluce, of each one dram and an half: Hyſop and Coltsfoot, of each one handful: Liquoris and Raiſons ſtoned three drams: fat Figs four: Senna three drams: Polipody of the Oak and Carthamus ſeeds bruiſed, of each half an ounce: Annis ſeeds one dram and an half: Boyl them with the third or fourth part of an old Cock: make a Broth for twelve or fifteen daies.*

By this Purging Wine following, *Platerus* cured a Woman of a Dyſpnœa, inclining to a Dropſie:

Take

Take of *Flower-de-luce-Roots one ounce*: *Elicampane, and Squills prepared, of each half an ounce*: *Horehound one handful*: *Elder Bark and Danewort, of each one dram*: *Senna one ounce and an half*: *Agarick two drams*: *Ginger one dram*: *Shake them well together, and ad of Wine four pints, boyl them a little*: *She drank hereof six dayes together when she went to Bed, the Dyspnœa ceased, the Tumor vanished, and she was finely Cured.*

But we must observe that we repeat Purging often in this Disease, under divers formes, lest nature should be used too much to one Medicine: So Clensing, Cutting, and Expectorating Medicines, and the rest are to be alterated for the same reason.

Chap. 2. *Of* Pleuritis, *or a Pleurisie.*

A Pleurisie is either True; or Spurious, called a Bastard Pleurisie.

A True Pleurisie is the Inflamation of the Membrane that goeth about the Ribs of the internal intercostal Muscles.

But a Bastard Pleurisie is the Inflamation of the external intercostal Muscles.

There are also other pains of the Side and other parts of the Breast which are improperly called a Bastard Pleurisie.

When the *Mediastinum* is inflamed, the Lungs cleave to the ribs, [illegible] when serous humors flow from the Head to the Membranes of the Breast, or when Wind doth tear the Muscles or Membranes of the Breast, or vapors rising from the Stomach, as in the Worms.

We have said that in a true Pleurisie not only the Membrane Pleura, but also the internal Muscles are inflamed, because it is impossible but the Inflamation of the Membrane should be communicated to the contiguous Muscles.

Besides, Others do affirm that the Lungs are inflamed in every Pleurisie, and confirm their Opinion by Authority, Reason, and Experience: The Authority is that of *Hippocrates*, *lib. de loc. in homine*, where he saith, That a Peripneumonia is when both parts of the Lungs are inflamed; but if only one part be inflamed, it is a Pleurisie. Also Reason may seem to confirm this, for the signs of a Pleurisie are also the signs of Peripneumonia; namely, a Cough, continual Feaver, difficulty of Breathing, and spetting of Blood.

Also the Prognostick and Cure is the same in both.

They say moreover, That they have found by experience in the opening of those who have died of Pleurisies that their Lungs appeared alwayes to be inflamed.

It is to be granted that in many the Lungs are affected as wel as the Pleura, for the Defluxion may easily fal upon both; because the Lungs are fastened to the upper part of the Pleura: but we must avouch that often the Pleura alone is only affected, and not the Lungs: or at least they are so lightly affected, that the Disease cannot be said to be an affect of that part. The Authority of *Hippocrates* in this, is cast off by some as false, and contrary to many of his own Assertions, in which he acknowledgeth the Pleura only as the part affected; especially in his 1. *lib. de morbis.* where he often saith, That Choller and Flegm do stick to the side, and cause vehement pain. But *Mortianus* doth reconcile this; saying, That *Hippocrates* speaks in that place of a Peripneumonia which comes of a Defluxion from the Head, a portion whereof fals upon the Pleura, and he cals it by the name of a Pleurisie, that he may distinguish that which inflameth one part of the Lungs, from that which inflameth both: For the same nature of a Disease being in both the Pleurisie and Peripneumonia, makes the likeness of Symptoms in both, being both from inflamation, and nearly adjoyned.

And though many who have died of Pleurisies, have been found to have their Lungs affected, it is not to be concluded that it is so in al; for the most vehement Pleurisies which use to cause Death, do many times turn into a Peripneumonia. But many do witness, and we have found by experience, That in many bodies dead of Pleurisies, the Pleura only hath been found putrified.

It may be questioned, Why the Pleura, rather than other Membranes, should be inflamed? But the Answer is from *Hippocrates*, 1. *de morb. text.* 124. according to the Division of *Salius*, where he saith, That the side is a very weak part, because it is naked from flesh in respect of other parts, and hath nothing to rest upon; therefore when the humors are moved and inflamed, their Defluxion is easily sent thither.

The matter Causing a Pleurisie is for the most part Chollerick Blood which doth easily penetrate a thick Membrane; As *Avicen* speaking of a Pleurisie, saith, Except the Humor be thin and Chollerick it cannot pierce into the Membrane. Other Humors may also Cause this Disease so they have a serous Chollerick Humor mixed with them for a Vehicle: I say other Humors not Excrementitious but Natural, which are contained in the form of blood, and are called either blood it self, or blood that is waterish, or melancholly.

But

But you muſt note, that thin Humors make a true Pleuriſie, and thick, a Baſtard Pleuriſie.

Now this blood is carried by the Veſſels which nouriſh the Breaſt, eſpecially the *Vena Axillaris*, and *Azygos*; and if it offend either in quantity, quality, or motion, it is caſt upon the Membrane and Muſcles adjoyning.

The Difference of Pleuriſies is taken from the part affected, and the Cauſes.

In reſpect of the place of the pain, it is divided by *Hipp. 2. acutor.* into an aſcending Pleuriſie, namely, when the pain reacheth more to the Throat; and a deſcending Pleuriſie, when it goeth down to the Hypochondria. Sometimes it is extended more towards the back, of which *Hipp. 3. de morbis* makes mention; and ſometimes it comes more forward.

In reſpect of the Cauſe and the Humor offending, it is called either Sanguineous, coming of blood, Chollerick, Phlegmatick, or Melancholick.

There is alſo another excellent Difference made by *Hippocrates*, 1. *acut.* where a Pleuriſie is divided into a dry and a moiſt Pleuriſie. A dry one is that in which there is little or no ſpitting, not only in the beginning, but continuance of the Diſeaſe; of which there are divers Cauſes, as the Crudity of the matter, the thickneſs and ſlimineſs thereof, the weakneſs of the faculty, the obſtruction of the Bronchia, or the vehemency of pain. But a moiſt Pleuriſie is that in which there is abundance of ſpittle, from the beginning of the diſeaſe.

The Diagnoſis or knowledg of this Diſeaſe, is by the ſigns, as ſaith *Galen*, 5. *de loc. aff. cap.* 8. and elſwhere; who reckoneth Five.

1 A pricking pain of the ſide.
2 A continual ſharp Feaver.
3 Difficulty of breathing.
4 A hard pulſe like a ſaw.
5 An often troubleſom Cough.

A pricking pain is chiefly in the Membranes, and comes from a Chollerick matter, and this pain poſſeſſing the ſide, ſtretcheth it ſelf into the parts adjacent, one while to the Throat, another while to the Hypochondria, by the continuity of the Membrane, which covers the whol Cavity of the Breaſt. By this ſign a Pleuritis is diſtinguiſhed from a Peripneumonia, in which there is no pain, or very little of the ſide, except it be joyned with a Pleuriſie.

A continual ſharp Feaver hath its original from a Flegmon or Sanguineous tumor in ſome part neer the Breaſt, and therefore is ſymptomatical: although ſometimes an eſſential Feaver be joyned with a Pleuriſie; and gives it ſometimes a being, for it often happeneth in the beginning of continual Feavers, that the blood boyling in the veins is expelled by Nature unto ſome part which is moſt fit to receive it; as the ſides, and there it breeds an Inflamation. The ſign of this is, That the Feaver firſt ſeizeth upon the Patient, and the ſecond or third day after the pain is in the ſide. But when the Feaver is ſymptomatical, then the pain in the ſide comes firſt, but the Feaver a little after.

Difficulty of breathing doth neceſſarily follow in this diſeaſe, becauſe the parts inflamed cannot ſufficiently diſtend themſelves to draw in a great quantity of Air, which is requiſite for the cooling of an inflamed heart.

The Pulſe is hard becauſe the Membrane is affected, and ſtretched forth, which alſo diſtendeth the Arteries, and they therefore make that difference of pulſe, called *Serratilis*, like a ſaw; for when you lay many fingers upon the Arteries of the Pulſe, one part ſeems to be more lifted up than the other, ſo that it ſeems to repreſent a ſaw.

A troubleſom Cough follows a Pleuriſie, becauſe Nature doth continually ſtrive to expel that which is troubleſom from the part affected: as alſo ſome of the matter ſweateth from thence into the Lungs, which moveth the expulſive faculty, whence the Cough cometh.

There is alſo a ſpitting of blood as another ſign, which is neither in al Pleuriſies, nor at al times of the Diſeaſe; therfore it is not reckoned as a proper ſign. They who ſay that the Lungs are alwais affected in a Pleuriſie, do affirm that the blood is ſpit from the Lungs, and they deny that it can paſs from the Membrane about the Ribs to the Lungs, becauſe it is very thick; and alſo the Membrane about the Lungs is of the ſame Nature, and cannot therefore be pierced by that blood which is without the Veſſels. But *Galen* doth cleerly confute theſe, 5. *de loc. aff. cap.* 3. where he firſt ſhews that the matter contained in the Cavity of the Breaſt may be taken into the Lungs, and be ſent upwards, by two cleer Examples. The one is of thoſe who have received a wound in the Breaſt that pierceth into its Cavity; for if an injection of Honey and Wine be made into the wound, and it be preſently cloſed at the orifice, in a little time the injection will be coughed up and ſpit forth, and the Patient wil have the taſte of it in his mouth. Another Example is taken from a Fracture of a bone, when the skin is not broken; which while the Callus is growing, and the broken bones begin to glutinate, that blood which flowed to the part affected is carried forth to the skin, and goeth through it, ſo that it moiſtneth and fouleth all the rowlers and ligatures about the part. *Galen* alſo ſhews the manner how blood, matter, or the like, being contained in the Cavity of the Breaſt may be taken through the lungs,

namely, by the extream outward orifices of the Bronchia or branches of the rough Artery, which are ſpread through the Lungs, and end in the ſuperficies of them.

Although the orifices of the Vein Arterial, and Artery Venal are alſo carried to the ſuperficies of the Lungs, yet the orifices of the Bronchia are more large and open than they. For by how much greater the Body or Trunk of the rough Artery is, than the Trunk of the Venal Artery, or Arterial Vein, by ſo much the greater are its branches than theirs; and its orifice than theirs; becauſe all theſe Veſſels are equally divided and diſtributed into the whol body of the Lungs. Moreover, the ſubſtance of the rough Artery, and its Bronchia or branches, are Cartilaginous or griſly, from whence it is that they cannot cloſe together ſo much as other Veſſels; and their orifices are more conſtantly open, by which they can better receive the matter from the Cavity of the Breaſt.

But *Galen* teacheth that the matter contained in the Breaſt is taken through at the time of breathing, when the Thorax is ſtraightened; for then the Thorax doth preſs thoſe things that are in the Cavity of it, and drive them into the Lungs, ſo that ſome part of them at leaſt is carried into the orifice of the Bronchia. Neither is the ſoftneſs of the Lungs, which yeild to a compreſſion, and therfore cannot be forced to receive the matter, any hinderance. For this ſoftneſs is the cauſe why all the matter is not received; yet it is no obſtacle but ſome part thereof may be received in, although the greateſt remain in the Cavity by reaſon of the ſoftneſs aforeſaid. Let us ad to this Doctrine of *Galen*, the wonderful providence of Nature, which hath found out waies, not only manifeſt, but alſo unknown, and ſomtimes incomprehenſible, by which ſhe uſeth to expel things hurtful; as we ſaid of the matter in Fractures, which is purged forth by the inſenſible pores of the Muſcles, and of the Skin.

A baſtard Pleureſie is diſtinguiſhed from a true, in that the pain is encreaſed when the Patient lieth on the contrary ſide, in a true Pleuriſie; for then the part inflamed is pulled, and more diſtended by its own weight; but in the other, the Muſcles external being inflamed, are compreſſed when the Patient lieth on the ſame ſide, and therefore he hath then greater pain.

The times of this Diſeaſe, are known by theſe ſigns following:

In the beginning of it, all the ſymptomes are weaker, the pain and feaver ſmal, there is a dry Cough, and very little and crude ſpittle: In the encreaſe of the Diſeaſe, the feaver and pain encreaſe, and there is more ſpittle. In the ſtate or height the ſymptomes are more vehement, want of reſt, dotage, pain of the Head; and if the diſeaſe will be cured, there is much concocted ſpittle eaſily raiſed. In the declination, the ſpittle is perfectly concocted, a free ſpitting, and decay of all ſymptomes.

The ſigns of the Cauſes, are generally taken from the temper of the Patient, the time of the yeer, the Country, the Diet, and the like. But eſpecially theſe things ſhew that a Pleuriſie comes of pure blood, red and bloody ſpittle, a ſtretching and pricking pain, the fulneſs of the Veins, eſpecially about the Forehead and Temples, redneſs of the whol face, a full Pulſe, thick and red urine, ſomtimes with a blew crown.

Theſe ſigns ſhew that it comes from Chollerick blood, yellow ſpittle, a burning feaver, great thirſt, a hard and quick pulſe, a more acute pricking pain, greater watchings and reſtleſneſs, bitterneſs of the mouth, a thin and very yellow urine.

Theſe ſigns ſhew that it comes from Flegmatick blood, a white, viſcous, or frothy ſpittle, ſweet and ſlow in coming forth, a remiſs feaver, little thirſt, much ſpittle, a leſs, but heavy pain, more ſleep, a little pulſe, and not ſo hard, pale and thick urine.

Theſe ſigns ſhew that it comes of Melancholick blood, blak ſpittle, tough and ſlow in coming forth, a leſs pain and feaver, a red urine and dark, a dry Cough, a black and rough tongue, a belly bound.

The Prognoſtick is taken firſt from the remiſſion or vehemency of the Symptomes. For if pain, difficulty of breathing, and a feaver be not great, they ſignifie that the diſeaſe is gentle; but if the pain be great, and the Cough, and there is nothing raiſed up, and if the feaver be violent with great difficulty of breathing, you muſt look upon it as a deſperate Pleuriſie.

A ſmal pulſe, quick, and hard, foreſhew death in a Pleuriſie. And *Galen* ſaith that none of this have been cured; *Gal. 4. de præſag. ex pulſ. cap. 5.*

An exquiſite Pleuriſie in which nothing is raiſed by Cough, or when with the ſpitting after it began, is reſtrained, having ſtill the pain and weight in the ſide, is moſt dangerous. For it ſignifieth a very crude diſeaſe, which will either ſhortly kill, or be long in cure.

If the ſpitting begin with the firſt, or within three daies, it ſignifieth the diſeaſe will be ſhort; but if it begin late it will be long. *Hipp. Aph. 1. Sect. 5.*

Yellow Choller mixed with flegm or a little blood, appearing in the beginning of the diſeaſe with much ſpittle, is a ſign of recovery.

Very bloody ſpittle is dangerous; for it ſignifieth a ruption, either of a Vein, or of the fleſh; from whence we expect ſuppuration: For it is thought that little blood doth breath through.

White,

White, glutinating, and round ſpittle, is evil, for the clammineſs comes from the fiery heat which burneth the matter.

Green and ruſtick ſpittle, is evil, but black worſt of all: For it ſignifies the greateſt aduſtion or extinction of the Natural heat.

A plentiful ſpitting which doth not abate the pain and other ſymptomes, is evil: For it ſignifieth great plenty of matter.

A Pleuriſie in old men, women with child, and in them that are Aſthmatical, or have twice or thrice had the ſame diſeaſe, is dangerous.

Whoſoever hath the diſeaſe in the ſide called Pleuriſie, and are not cleanſed of it in fourteen daies, have an Empyema, or collection of matter; Aph. 8. Sect. 5. Others do extend it to the twentieth day.

A Diarrhœa, or looſneſs coming upon a Pleuriſie or Peripneumonia, is evil; Aph, 16. Sect. 6. which we muſt underſtand of a Pleuriſie, in which there is ſo great an inflamation that the Liver and Stomach conſent therewith, or when the ſtrength is ſo gone by the diſeaſe that the retentive faculty is almoſt ſpent. But if the Pleuriſie be not ſo great, and be in a body full of evil humors, the flux of the belly uſeth then to be healthful, eſpecially if any ſigns of concoction went before.

A Chollerick and plentiful vomiting in the beginning of a Pleuriſie ſignifieth health to come: For Nature being eaſed by that evacuation of Choller, doth more eaſily overcome the diſeaſe.

If a Peripneumonia comes from a Pleuriſie, 'tis evil; Aph. 11. Sect. 7. For it is the tranſlation of the matter to a more noble part.

If the pain in the Pleuriſie, and the Chollerick ſpitting, go away without reaſon, the Patient falls mad. *Hipp.* 3. *Prorrhet.* For the Choller is carried into the Head, and then the urine looks thin and white.

A Pleuriſie which followeth an old diſeaſe, or is in a body of evil habit, is dangerous.

Thick bodies uſed to exerciſe, do ſooneſt die of Pleuriſies and Peripneumonia's, as *Hipp. in Coac.*

And Experience teacheth us that almoſt all the Diggers taken with Pleuriſies, do die thereof: Becauſe ſuch ſtrong bodies fall not ſick, but upon ſome great cauſe, and by reaſon of their thickneſs they cannot eaſily ſweat, ſo that the diſeaſe cannot breath forth.

They who in a Pleuriſie have much noiſe in their Breaſt from the ſpittle, and their countenance dejected, with yellowneſs in their Eyes, and miſts; in theſe death is to be expected, *Hipp. in Coac.*

They who in Pleuriſies have Chollerick tongues at the firſt, are judged in ſeven daies; but they who have not much Choller upon their tongue til the third or fourth day, are judged about the ninth day.

For the Cure of a Pleureſie, firſt the humor cauſing it is to be revelled, derived, and diſcuſſed, and if it cannot wholly be diſcuſſed, it muſt be digeſted, maturated, and expectorated; as alſo the Feaver which is commonly eſſential to a Pleuriſie, and not alwaies ſymptomatical, is to be cured by proper Medicines. All which may be done by the following Remedies.

And firſt you muſt (after a Clyſter, if the diſeaſe be not very violent) open the Baſilica on the ſame ſide; but if it be violent, give the Clyſter afterwards.

You muſt bleed every day till the pain or feaver grow leſs; nay, ſometimes twice in a day, if the Pleureſie be very violent.

Hippocrates in his 2. *lib. de ratione victus in acutis*, *Text.* 10. gave an excellent rule to poſterity moſt profitable in practice, That blood be let till the color of it change: For if at the firſt or ſecond time, it appear crude, flegmy, or watery, it is to be continued every day, ſometimes twice a day till it appear red or yellowiſh. But if it appear red in the beginning, you muſt bleed ſo often till it become livid or black, for that will ſignifie, that the laſt blood came from the part affected, or the neighbor Veins, which is altered by the part inflamed, and of crude is made red, or of red, black or blew by aduſtion.

Although the obſervation of that Rule bring commonly good ſucceſs, yet ſometimes you muſt not expect that change of color, but deſiſt from bleeding; namely, when the ſtrength is little, or the Patient is of a thin habit of body eaſily diſſolved, or the weather very hot. And although blood-letting is excellent in the beginning of the Diſeaſe, yet if it be omitted, or done inſufficiently, you may open a Vein after the ſeventh, ninth, or eleventh day, according to the Example of *Hippocrates*, who in 3. Epidem. opened a vein for Anaxion in the eighth day, either becauſe he was not ſent for ſooner, or becauſe that it was a moſt crude Pleuriſie, which will ſcarce concoct till the eleventh day.

But when he expectorateth freely, then you muſt abſtain from Phleboromy, which will ſtop his ſpitting, and bring him in danger of his life.

But blood-letting is ſo neceſſary in the beginning of this Diſeaſe, that it muſt never be omitted, neither in old nor yong, nor women with child, in child-bed, or having their terms; unto all which Experience hath taught us that Phlebotomy is good in this Diſeaſe. Yet you muſt obſerve ſome

Rules in bleeding of women in Child-bed, or having their Terms, which you may find hereafter in the Fifteenth Book, and the laſt Chapter, concerning the Cure of acute Diſeaſes in women that lie in.

From the beginning of the diſeaſe twice or thrice in a day, you muſt give cooling Juleps, which reſtrain the heat and boyling of the humor, and ſtop the defluxion; thus made:

Take of *Poppy Water four ounces: Syrup of Violets, or Poppies, one ounce: Sal prunella one dram. Make a Julep.*

After the firſt Phlebotomy let the ſide be anointed with this Liniment, covering the part with greazy wool ſewed into a linnen cloth.

Take of *Oyl of Lillies, Chamomel, and ſweet Almonds, of each one ounce: freſh Butter, and Hens greaſe, of each one ounce and an half. Make a Liniment.*

Many put Wax to theſe Liniments, which is not good, becauſe it ſtoppeth the pores; but the mutilaginous bodies do not, becauſe they cool and aſtringe.

In a malignant peſtilential Pleuriſie, you may ad to your Liniments, Oyl of Scorpions of *Mathiolus*, or a little Treacle.

After the ſecond bleeding, you muſt apply this Fomentation, made thus:

Take of *Althæa roots, and Lillies, of each two ounces: the Leaves of Mallows, Violets, and Pellitory, of each one handful: Line and Fenugreek ſeeds, of each one dram: the flowers of Chamomel, Melilot, Elder, and Violets, of each one pugil: Boyl them together, with which foment the ſide that is pained in a Hogs bladder.*

After Fomentation apply the Liniment aforeſaid, to which in the progreſs of the Diſeaſe, you may ad more diſſolving Oyls; as of Dill and Flowerdeluce; as alſo the pouder of Flowerdeluce and Saffron. And to the Fomentation ad diſcuſſing Herbs, as Origan, Calaminth, Hyſop, and the diſcuſſing ſeeds.

Many other Topicks are very profitable againſt Pleuriſies, which Authors relate; as theſe:

Firſt, anoint the part with Oyntment of Marſh-mallows, then lay on the pouder of Cummin ſeed, or a Colewort Leaf heat at the fire, and anointed with the ſame.

Faventinus mixeth the Oyntment of Althæa with Oyl of ſweet Almonds, and after he hath anointed, ſprinkles on the pouder of Cummin ſeeds, and laieth on a Colewort Leaf; and this he commends highly.

Alſo the Cataplaſm following is very profitable.

Take the *Reſidency or Ingredients of the Decoction above mentioned for a Fomentation; beat them in a ſtone Morter, adding of the Oyl of ſweet Almonds, Lillies, and Chamomel, of each two ounces: Hens greaſe one ounce: Barley and Bean flower, of each as much as is ſufficient to make a Cataplaſm.*

Alſo a live Hen ſlit through the back, and ſprinkled with the pouder of Flowerdeluce roots, being applied doth very well.

The Paunch of a Sheep laid hot to the part is a very good Anodine: but the Lungs are better.

The Chymical Oyl of Wax being mixt with the Liniments, aſſwageth pain, and powerfully diſcuſſeth the matter.

Hot Bread from the Oven, dipt in freſh Butter, and applied, doth very much diſſolve the matter fixed to the ſide.

After he hath taken twice or thrice of the Julep aforeſaid, you may uſe Pectoral Juleps thus made:

Take of *Barley one pugil: Liquoris and Raiſons ſtoned, of each one ounce: Jujubes twenty: the four great cold Seeds, of each three drams: Bugloſs and Violet flowers, of each one pugil: boyl them to a pint and a quarter. Diſſolve in the ſtraining, Syrup of Violets and Jujubes, of each two ounces. Make a Julep for four doſes to be taken morning and evening.*

Or if the Feaver be very ſharp, and much watching, you may make the Emulſions following:

Take of *Almonds blanched, and ſteeped in cold Water, one ounce: the four great cold ſeeds, of each half an ounce: Lettice and white Poppy ſeeds, of each two drams: beat them in a marble morter, powring on by degrees, the Decoction of Barley and Liquoris one pint and an half: ſtrain it and diſſolve in it Syrup of Violets three ounces. Make an Emulſion for three doſes to be taken morning and evening.*

Some Practitioners in want of ſleep give Narcoticks; as Syrup of Poppies, *Philonium Romanum*, and Laudanum, which are dangerous in this diſeaſe: for they ſtop ſpitting, and aſtringe and ſtrengthen the Breaſt. From whence often times comes ſudden death.

But this muſt be underſtood of the whol doſe of Narcoticks: for given in a very ſmal quantity they do good in vehement pain, a thin defluxion which cauſeth a Cough, and in want of ſleep. In which caſes I have often given one grain of Laudanum with good ſucceſs, and ſomtimes often. But the uſe of this is moſt proper in the beginning of the diſeaſe; for then the humor flowing to the part may be reſtrained,

reſtrained, and the encreaſe of the Diſeaſe hindered.

When the Cough is violent, and Nature begins to evacuate by ſpitting, let the Patient hold often in his mouth Sugar of Roſes, Sugar candy or Penides, or the Tablets of Diatragacanth frigid, Syrup of Violets and Jujubes. Or this Eclegma following:

Take of *Sugar candy, and Penides, of each one ounce: the pouder of Diatragacanth frigid two drams: Syrup of Violets and Jujubes, of each as much as will make a Lohoch; which let him take often with a Liquoris ſtick, or make it of Butter, Honey, and Sugar, of each equal parts: the Oyl of Linſeed, or of ſweet Almonds, being freſh drawn without fire, mixed with Sugar, doth much help the Cough and pain in the Pleuriſie, eſpecially if it be drunk in Broth, or any other Decoction.*

If the ſpittle be thick, you muſt mix ſome attenuating and cutting Medicines, as Syrup of Colts-foot, Liquoris, Oxymel ſimple, pouder of Diaireos, and the like.

You muſt take theſe lying with the face upwards, for ſo they better go to the Lungs.

As the Diſeaſe encreaſeth, you may uſe this reſtoring Medicine to ſtrengthen.

Take of *Conſerve of Violets one ounce: Conſerve of Borrage flowers, and Bugloſs roots, of each half an ounce: Confection of Alkermes two drams: pouder of Diamargariton frigid, and Diatragacanth frigid, of each one dram: Sugar of Roſes as much as all the reſt. Make a Compoſition covered with Gold to be taken often with a ſpoon.*

Purging is improper in a true Pleuriſie, except it be in the declination; and then you may appoint thus:

Take of *Senna half an ounce: Annis ſeeds one dram: Bugloſs and Maiden-hair, of each half a handful: Liquoris and Raiſons ſtoned, of each three drams: the flowers of Bugloſs and Violets, of each one Pugil. Boyl them to two ounces: in the ſtraining, diſſolve of Rhubarb infuſed in Scabious Water with a little yellow Sanders, four ſcruples: the beſt Manna, and Syrup of Roſes, of each one ounce. Make of theſe a Potion.*

In the whol time of the diſeaſe, let him take Barley Water for his ordinary drink, made with Liquoris, Poppies, and Maiden-hair; and let not his drink be actually cold, for it would hurt the Breaſt. Wine in this Diſeaſe is Poyſon, and alſo all ſharp things which provoke Coughing, and by their aſtringency hinder ſpitting.

In the declination of the Diſeaſe, after purging, and when the Feaver is leſs, if the pain continue, you may apply to the part, Cupping-glaſſes with Scarrification two daies together. They may alſo be applied before the declination, after often bleeding: And if the pain ſtill encreaſe, and return, you may again let blood, and after Cup with Scarrification.

Zacutus Luſitanus having taken off the Cupping-glaſſes, applied ſix Horſeeches with good ſucceſs, as he witneſſed, *obſerv.* 104. *lib.* 1. *Praxis admirandæ.*

For the ſame purpoſe to diſcuſs the reliques of the matter, having firſt tried Fomentations and Liniments, you may apply with benefit, the Emplaiſter of Brimſtone, and Bay-berries.

Beſides vulgar Medicines, there are ſome proper and ſpecifical, namely the ſhavings of a Boars Tuſk, the aſhes of the Pizzle of a Bull or Deer, the flowers of red Poppies, or Corral prepared.

Quercetan in his Diſpenſatory commends an Apple made hollow, and one dram of Frankinſence put therein and roaſted, which the Patient muſt eat, and drink three ounces of Carduus Water after, then cover himſelf warm, and ſweat. He will have this Medicine uſed after the third day, and affirmeth that many have been reſtored therewith.

The flowers of Box-tree do ſo much purge the Blood, that if a dram of them in pouder be given with Poppy Water, and a Vein opened an hour after, the blood will continue pure.

Hart-dung diſſolved in Carduus Water, and ſtrained, doth powerfully diſperſe the pain, and the humor in the Pleuriſie.

White Hen-dung given in a dram of the ſame Water, doth as much.

Theſe Dungs have much Volotile Salt, which is very piercing and diſcuſſing.

You may make a Potion of them both thus:

Take of *Hemp ſeed one ounce: bruiſe them, then put to them, of the white Dung of a Hen, and of Horſe Dung, of each half an ounce: diſſolve them in five ounces of Carduus Water; ſtrain them, and drink it.*

The Blood of a wild Goat given to ten drops with the aforeſaid Water, doth powerfully diſcuſs the Pleuriſie: In the want thereof, you may give the blood of a tame Goat. But becauſe the ſtrength of him is little, you may give thereof to the quantity of one dram. You muſt prepare it thus:

Hang up the Goat by the Horns, and bend his hinder Legs backward to his Horns, then cut out his Stones, and take the Blood in a broad Veſſel; dry it in the Sun in Summer, or at other times upon an Oven. It is far different from the Goats Blood in the Shops.

The

The Soot of a Chimney given to a dram is very good, but much rather the ſpirit of Soot, deſcribed by *Hartman* in his Practice of Phyſick.

In an Epidemical Pleuriſie, Sudoroſicks are to be given, ſuch as are preſcribed in malignant Feavers, which alſo ought to be made as proper for this Diſeaſe as may be.

A Diarrhœa coming upon a Pleuriſie is dangerous: therfore you muſt give Syrup of Myrtles, which doth ſtay the Diarrhœa, and alſo expectorate: and this is to be mixed with other Syrups. Let the Belly and Reins be anointed with aſtringents, as uſeth to be done in all Diarrhœa's. Give Clyſters made of Barley Water, which, as *Galen* ſaith, doth cool and aſtringe if it be boyled with red Roſes, and alſo Yolks of Eggs be diſſolved in it.

Chap. 3. *Of* Peripneumonia, *or Inflamation of the Lungs.*

Peripneumonia hath the ſame eſſence with a Pleuriſie, and is diſtinguiſhed only by the part affected, becauſe that is the inflamation of the Lungs, and this of the Membrane that compaſſeth the Ribs. They differ ſomwhat in the matter, for a Pleuriſie comes often of Choller, but a Peripneumonia of Flegm; although all humors (as we ſaid of a Pleuriſie) may produce this diſeaſe, I mean humors which are like blood, and make up the maſs of it. For as thick humors do hardly penetrate the thick Membrane called *Pleura*, but thin and Chollerick eaſily; ſo on the other ſide, thick flegmatick humors do eaſily go to the ſoft and thin ſubſtance of the Lungs, and ſtick cloſe thereto; but thin and Chollerick humors do eaſily paſs by. But this hindereth not, but the Chollerick blood may ſometimes cauſe the inflamation of the Lungs, as *Hippocrates* 1. *de morbis*, deſcribeth the Eryſipelas, or Chollerick tumor of the Lungs, which comes from Chollerick blood thrown into the Lungs from the right Ventricle of the Heart by the Arterial Vein. But an oedematous Inflamation comes from flegmatick blood falling upon the Lungs by way of defluxion from the Head. But only excrementitious flegm, falling as a Catarrh from the Brain, can make a Peripneumonia, becauſe it putrifieth in the Lungs, and attracteth blood, by the mixture whereof there is an inflamation, and this often happeneth in old folk. *Meſue* ſaith that this Peripneumonia comes rather of Choller, becauſe the Lungs are nouriſhed with Chollerick blood which cometh in great plenty to them by the Arterial Vein. To whom we anſwer, that freſh, thin, and ſteeming blood made in the right Ventricle of the Heart is carried into the Lungs, which by reaſon of its purity, is eaſily governed by Nature, and is ſent by the Venal Artery to the left Ventricle of the Heart, and it ſeldom is altered from its Natural condition, which uſeth to make a Peripneumonia. But contrarily, a defluxion from the Head cutting through the large paſſages into the Bronchia of the Lungs, if it there putrifie, will draw blood unto it, and make a Peripneumonia.

This Peripneumonia is ſometimes alone without another diſeaſe, ſometimes it followeth other diſeaſes, as Squinzy or Pleuriſie. *Galen* in Com. 11. Sect. 7. Aphor. teacheth that a Peripneumonia doth follow a Pleuriſie two waies: Either when a Pleuriſie is turned into a Peripneumonia, or when an inflamation of the Lungs followeth a Pleuriſie. This tranſmutation is when the former diſeaſe ceaſeth, and the other comes; but it comes upon it when it is white, the former remaineth.

Therefore the immediate internal cauſe of a Peripneumonia is blood, often flegmatick, ſeldom chollerick, and moſt ſeldom melancholick. Which either comes from the whol body being plethorick, or cachochymical, that is, full, or of evil habit; or from ſome part which is replete or diſtempered.

The External Cauſes of Peripneumonia and Pleuriſie are the ſame; namely whatſoever defluxion can come to thoſe parts: the chief whereof are: Firſt great exerciſe and violent motion of the Body, eſpecially after long reſt, and high feeding. For then the humors abounding from high diet, and kept in by long reſt, by exerciſe are diſperſed, attenuated, and heated, and are after ſent to the weaker parts, moſt fit to receive them, among which the Breaſt and Lungs are chief, becauſe by ſtrong exerciſe, there is cauſed great and often breathing, and ſo they become wearied, and the ſubſtance of the Lungs being ſoft and looſe can eaſily receive the humors coming to them.

Secondly, Among the external Cauſes the cold and Northernly Air is reckoned, when it comes ſuddenly after a Southern and warm; for the pores are opened by warm Air, and the humors are more fluid, which by the cold Air coming after, are compreſſed, and the humors ſent to the weak parts.

Laſtly, From *Hipp. lib.* of Air, Places, and Waters, the drinking of ſtanding Pools and Lakes, begets the Peripneumonia; for ſaith the Divine old man, we obſerve diſeaſes of the Lungs to be moſt in Marſhy Countries.

Alſo

Alſo the Signs of a Peripneumonia do agree with the ſigns of a Pleuriſie. Two are the ſame, as a ſharp Feaver, and a Cough; which ſomtimes is dry, ſomtimes moiſt, or with more Flegmatick ſpittle coloured with Choller or Blood; and in the progreſs of time, the ſpittle becomes Mattery when the matter of the Diſeaſe grows ripe, and concocted by heat, which ſomtimes comes to paſs when the ſubſtance of the Lungs is not hurt; for if they ulcerate, a Conſumption wil follow.

So we may obſerve, That in ſore Eyes that are Mattery, the humors are converted into Matter when the ſubſtance of the Eye is neither ſuppurated, nor ulcerated.

The other ſigns differ in reſpect of the part affected; the difficulty of Breathing is greater than in a Pleuriſie by reaſon of the narrowneſs of the part inflamed, ſo that the Patient ſeems to be chouked and cannot breath but with the head upright: For the part cannot be compreſſed by reaſon of the extention and repletion, nor be more dilated, although it be much dilated, yet it takes in but little Air, therefore the reſpiration is quick and often, with ſnorting: This is augmented by a Feaver by which the breath is hotter, and the deſire of cold air is greater.

The Pulſe is great, faint, and ſoft by reaſon of Flegm and the looſeneſs of the Lungs: yet there is ſome hardneſs by the Choller and blood: it is unequal from the impreſſion of the Artery neer the Heart, and in thick Humors moſt: Somtimes it is intermitting, watery, vermicular, when the Lungs are rotten by too much moiſture.

There is a heavy pain that reacheth from the Breaſt to the Back, ſomtimes it is between the Shoulders, and ſomtimes under one only Shoulder, and from thence communicated to the Throat and Pap: Eſpecially in a Cough, ſomtimes they feel no pain til they begin to Cough: ſomtimes there is alſo a pricking pain in the ſide when it is joyned with a Pleuriſie as it often happeneth: Although the Membrane that covers the Lungs be of the ſame nature with the Pleura, as *Galen* taught 4. *de loc. affect. cap.* 5. Yet there is not ſo great pain in a Peripneumonia as in a Pleuriſie, for two Differences which are laid down by *Galen* in the place afore-cited.

The Firſt is, Becauſe the Nerves that go to the Membrane of the Lungs, are few and very little; but they which go to the Pleura, are many and great.

Th Other is, Becauſe the Breaſt conſiſts of Bones and Fleſh, which wil not be ſtretched, from whence the pain is greater.

But the Lungs are ſoft and yeilding, and therefore their pain is leſs.

There is Redneſs in the Cheeks, by reaſon of the hot vapors which fly into the head and carrying with them the thinner blood. And this Colour is moſt in the Cheeks, becauſe their skin is thinneſt.

There are beſides theſe ſigns, Heavineſs, Weakneſs, and a Toſſing, with great ſenſe of Heat in the whol Body.

The Tongue is Yellow, and then it groweth Red; a great thirſt, ſwelling of the Eyes, and of the veins of the Temples.

There is a Delirium, or Doting, when it comes from Choller; and a Coma, when it comes from Flegm.

If the Diſeaſe comes of Chollerick blood, the ſpittle wil be yellow, the heat and thirſt greater, more difficulty of breathing with leſs Heavineſs; the air breathed forth is more hot: the Feaver is very violent, the Pulſe ſwift, the Delirium great, the Water thin, yellow and cleer, the age, time of the year, the Country, and Diet before, do al atteſt for Choller.

If Flegm (which is moſt ordinary) produce the Diſeaſe, the ſpittle wil be white, viſcous, and froathy; the Feaver, burning of the Breaſt, thirſt, and drineſs of the tongue, wil be leſs: the weight of the Breaſt greater; the Pulſe ſlower, and ſofter; the Age, old; Habit of body, time of the Yeer, and the Country, are cold and moiſt.

If the Diſeaſe come from pure Blood, the Spittle wil be Red; the Urin Red and Thick; the Face more Red; the Veins of the Temples more ſwoln; with heavineſs and diſtention of the whol body; and other things that declare abundance of blood.

Laſtly, If Melancholly blood be the Cauſe, the Spittle wil be black or blewiſh; the Tongue black, from the beginning dry and rough; there wil be alſo heavineſs and great ſighing between breathing; and al the ſigns of Melancholly predominating in the whol body.

The Prognoſtick of this Diſeaſe is thus to be made.

A Peripneumonia is more dangerous than a Pleuriſie; and for the moſt part deadly by reaſon of the neceſſity of reſpiration, and the neerneſs of the Heart.

Celſus ſaith, That this kind of Diſeaſe hath more Danger than Pain; and for the moſt part Killeth.

But ſtrength of Body, leſs vehemency of Symptomes, yellow Spittle, not mixed with much Blood, raiſed in the beginning; a great flux of blood at the Noſe in the Critical day; or a flux of the Belly which is Chollerick and froathy; or a flux of the Hemorrhoids or Terms, do ſhew ſome hope of recovery.

Impoſthumes

Impoſthumes about the Ears, or inferior parts, being well ſuppurated and kept open, do foretel recovery, as *Hipp. in progn.*

If a Peripneumonia be turned into a Pleuriſie, it is good, and though it ſeldom happen, as *Galen* teacheth, Comment. Aphor. 11. Sect. 7. becauſe there is a going from a Diſeaſe more dangerous, to one leſs dangerous. And this tranſmutation is known by a pricking pain of the ſide coming thereupon, and by abating the ſhortneſs of breath.

But the vehemency of the Diſeaſe and ſymptomes do declare a dangerous and deadly Peripneumonia, as want of ſpittle, continual watching, a Delirium or Coma, coldneſs of the extream parts, ſnorting with great difficulty of breathing, blewneſs and crookedneſs of the nails.

Moreover, A Peripneumonia coming upon a Pleuriſie is moſt dangerous, as *Hippocrates* teacheth, Aph. 11. Sect. 7. becauſe the tranſlation of a humor from an ignoble part, to a more noble, is evil; and the ſtrength being ſpent by the diſeaſe foregoing, can endure the force of a new, and worſe.

When the urine is thick in the beginning of the Diſeaſe, and after before the fourth day it becomes thin, death is at hand. *Hipp. in Epacis.*

The Cure of the Peripneumonia is very like that of the Pleuriſie, and there muſt be firſt bleeding as much as the ſtrength will permit, once or twice in a day till the diſeaſe abate: for ſince the Lungs are then full of blood, and draw much from the heart, which is inflamed, you need not fear to let blood thrice, four, five, or ſix times.

But if a Peripneumonia follow a Squinzy, or Pleuriſie, you may let blood more warily becauſe the ſtrength is abated by the former Diſeaſe.

You muſt let blood from the Baſilica Vein of both arms, if the whol Lungs be equally affected, or from either, on that ſide the pain is, or on which the Patient lets more weight, or from which he ſuppoſeth he raiſeth moſt ſpittle.

You muſt bleed women in this diſeaſe, firſt in the Ancle Vein, and after within ſix hours in the Arm; except it be ſo deſperate that you are conſtrained at the firſt to bleed in the Arm. In which caſe, all the time you bleed, and a little before, you muſt apply Cupping-glaſſes to the Thighs.

But after, if the ſtrength will not permit further phlebotomy, you muſt apply Cupping-glaſſes to the Shoulders and Back, both dry, and with Scarrification, as much as the Patient can ſuffer.

Alſo Emollient and looſening Clyſters are good revulſives; but you muſt not uſe too ſtrong purging Medicines therein, leſt you bring a flux of the Belly, which is moſt dangerous in this Diſeaſe.

If a crude flegmatick humor coming from the head cauſe this diſeaſe, or nouriſh it, a Veſicatory laid to the hinder part of the Head, doth very much good.

In the mean while uſe the Juleps and Emulſions preſcribed in the Cure of a Pleuriſie. Anoint the Breaſt with Oyl of Violets, ſweet Almonds, or with freſh Butter, or the like, or with this Liniment:

Take of *Oyl of Violets, and Water Lillies, of each one ounce and an half; freſh Butter and Mucilage of Fleabane ſeeds, of each one ounce: Oyl of Roſes half an ounce: the Troches of Camphire one dram. Make a Liniment.* Or,

Take of *Oyl of Violets three ounces: the Oyl of Pompion ſeeds, and Breaſt-milk, of each one ounce: freſh Butter one ounce and an half: Mix them and make a Liniment.*

You may provoke ſpitting with Syrup of Violets and Jujubes, and the reſt, preſcribed in the Cure of a Pleuriſie. As the Lohochs and Compoſitions there mentioned, given with this Caution, In a thin matter give things that thicken, and in a thick matter give things that attenuate.

Let his ordinary drink be Barley Water, with Liquoris, as in a Pleuriſie.

Purging is not good in this Diſeaſe, except in the declining of it, and you muſt make choyce of ſuch things then, as were preſcribed in the Cure of a Pleuriſie.

Chap. 4. *Of* Empyema, *or matter in the hollow of the Thorax.*

Although the word *Empyema* ſignifie all Suppuration, yet Cuſtom hath prevailed ſo that it is taken only for a Collection of matter in the Cavity of the Thorax.

Now there is a Three-fold Cauſe of the gathering of matter between the Lungs and the Thorax.

The firſt is an Inflamation ſuppurated, which happens in a Pleuriſie or Peripneumonia; and when the Impoſthume is broken, the matter falls into the Cavity of the breaſt. The ſame may be in a Squinzy, as *Hippocrates* teacheth, Aph. 10. Sect. 5. in theſe words: *Whoſoever is freed from an Angina,*

Angina, they have a Diſeaſe in the Lungs, and die within ſeven daies; but if they live longer, it comes to ſuppuration.

The ſecond is blood falling into the Thorax, where by continuance it muſt needs come to Suppuration. So *Hippocrates*, Aph. 20. Sect. 6. *If blood be ſent into the Belly beſides Nature, neceſſarily it is ſuppurated.* But this ſuppuration is not alwaies true, and properly ſo called, as *Hippocrates* teacheth, but rather to be called a corruption, of which there is matter like quitor produced. This Blood may come from a Vein wounded.

The third Cauſe is flegm falling from the Head & other parts into the Breaſt, and there putrifying. So *Hippocrates*, Aph. 38. Sect. 7. *The diſtillations into the upper Belly are ſuppurated in twenty daies.* *Galen* in his Commentaries, by the upper Belly underſtands the Breaſt. But the flegm there putrifying doth not beget a true *Pus*, or matter, but ſomthing like it; as we obſerve in flegmatick Tumors, as Atheroma, Steatoma, Melicer is, which are kinds of Impoſthumes.

The Diagnoſtick ſigns are of two ſorts: Some declare the diſeaſe to be in the beginning; others that it's old, and confirmed.

Hippocrates layeth down Three ſigns of this Suppuration, beginning 2. Progn.

The firſt is when the Feaver groweth ſtronger, becauſe the Pleuriſie, or Peripneumonia is not purged; for while the matter is turning into *Pus*, the feaver is encreaſed, *Hipp.* Aph. 47. Sect. 1.

The Second is a quaking, which comes when the ſharpneſs of the matter doth twitch the Membranous parts.

The Third is weight, and ſence of heavineſs in the part; for the humor being contained in the Cavity doth weigh heavier than when it is diffuſed. *Galen* addeth in 4. *de loc. aff. cap.* 9. fluctuation or routing: *For* (ſaith he) *if any one is forced to turn in his bed, and perceive ſomthing to flow down at that time, it is no doubt but that there is much matter contained there.* And you may often hear the fluctuation, unleſs the thickneſs or plenty of the matter, which fills the whol Cavity of the Thorax, do hinder the fluctuation. To theſe you may ad difficulty of Breathing. For although after the Impoſthume is broken, the pain of the ſide ceaſeth, and the Diaphragma and Muſcles of the Thorax move more freely; yet becauſe the Lungs are oppreſſed with matter round about them, ſo that they cannot move freely, and ſome part of the matter is ſucked into the ſubſtance of the Lungs, from whence it is that the Lungs are ſo heavy, and the Bronchia is obſtructed, thence is ſhort breathing. For the purulent ſpittle comes from the filth ſent into the Lungs and Bronchia, which ſhews an Empyema; but this is not alwaies a ſpitting of matter by reaſon of its thickneſs, which keeps it from coming to the Bronchia.

But a long lingering Feaver, partly putrid, partly Hectical, milder in the day, and ſharper at night, much ſweat, eſpecially at night, a conſtant troubleſom Cough, ſignifie that the Diſeaſe is old and confirmed; as alſo when the Cheeks grow red, and the Eyes hollow, the Nails crooked, the Legs ſwel, and Puſtuls break forth of the Breaſt by reaſon that the ſharpeſt part of the matter breaks out of the Skin; theſe ſignifie the Diſeaſe confirmed.

You may know which ſide is affected from *Hippocrates*, 2. Progn. text. 21. *If* (ſaith he) *an Empyema be only in one part, you muſt turn the Patient, and learn whether he be pained, or hotter in one ſide than the other, and to ask him if he perceives any burden to hang on the ſide that is upward, and if it be ſo, in which ſide ſoever the weight is, the ſuppuration is on the other; as if heat and weight be in both ſides, the Pus is contained in the whol Cavity of the Breaſt.* Alſo *Avicen* adds a Conjecture which he took from *Hipp.* 3. *de morb.* *Apply* (ſaith he) *a linnen cloth wet to both ſides, and that will be dry ſooneſt which lieth upon the part where the matter is contained.* We may lay down another ſign from our own Experience, which was not obſerved by Authors, namely, In the ſide affected there will be an Oedematory Tumor, from a Potion of the thinneſt matter breathing through the Muſcles of the Thorax. And when, in ſuſpition thereof there appears ſuch a Tumor, and blowing up of the skin on either ſide, you may certainly pronounce that the Empyema is there, and you may ſafely open the ſide.

The chief Prognoſtick Signs are given by *Hippocrates*, 2. Progn. Text. 63. in theſe words: *In Suppurations they chiefly eſcape, whom the feaver left the ſame day they broke; and they who preſently deſire meat, and are freed from thirſt, and have ſmel, and laudible excrements: and if the Pus be white and even, and of the ſame color, and when it is voided without pain or great Coughing. But they die whom the feaver leaveth not, or to whom ſeeming to leave them it returns again, and who are thirſty and have no appetite, have a looſe Belly, the Pus green, and livid, or frothy. They die who have all theſe ſigns: But they who have but ſome of them, ſome die, and ſome lie long ſick.*

To theſe we will adjoyn theſe following Prognoſticks.

They who have an Empyema, and by reaſon of the abundance of matter, lift up their whol Breaſt when they Breath, are quickly choaked. *Galen*, 4. *de Loc. Aff. Cap.* 7.

If an Empyema is not ſpit forth in forty daies, it turns into a Conſumption, which brings death. *Hipp. Aph.* 15. *Sect.* 5.

A Suppuration on both ſides of the Thorax, is more dangerous than in one; alſo that on the left ſide is more dangerous than on the right: by reaſon of the left Ventricle of the heart, which is more greivoutly affected with the matter gathered on that ſide.

Whoſoever are Burnt or Cut for a Suppuration, if the Matter cometh forth pure and white, they eſcape: but if it be bloody, foul, and ſtinking, they die. *Aphor.* 44. *Sect.* 7.

If the Matter flow plentifully by Stool and Urine, and the Patient continue ſtrong, it is a ſign of Recovery, although this Evacuation is very ſeldom: yet is it ſpoken of by *Galen*, *Aetius*, and *Paulus*: As alſo the way declared by *Galen* through which it paſſeth, 3. *de loc. affect. cap.* 4. and *com. in aphor.* 30. *ſect.* 3. In the firſt place he ſpeaks thus, *This queſtion doth not a little diſturbe the followers of* Eraſiſtratus, *who think that there is nothing but ſpirits in the Arteries. But we find no difficulty in it, becauſe we know that the ſmooth Artery in the Lungs, ſo much Pus as it receiveth from an Impoſthume broken, can carry the ſame into the left Ventricle of the heart, which after goes to the Reins by the great Artery.* In the laſt place, he ſaith, That the matter contained in the Lungs doth firſt come to the Ventricles of the Heart, and then to the great Artery; or by the hollow Vein to the outſide of the Liver, from thence to the inſide, and ſo to the Guts. From which you may eaſily ſee the way by which an Empyema may be purged by ſtool and urine.

If the Patient grow better, and be almoſt cleanſed, and then again raiſeth ſtinking Spittle, he dieth of that which remaineth and returneth. *Hipp. in Coac.*

For the Cure of this Diſeaſe: Firſt, if you cannot hinder the Suppuration of the matter in the Thorax, you muſt further it by convenient Cataplaſms. As,

Take of *Marſh-mallow Roots three ounces*: *fat Figs ten*: *Raiſons ſtoned one ounce*: *Chamomel and Melilot flowers, of each one pugil. Boyl them all well, then beat them and ſtrain them, then ad the flower of Line, Fœnugreek ſeed, and Wheat, of each one ounce*: *Oyl of Lillies, ſweet Almonds, and freſh Butter, and Turpentine, of each one ounce. Make a Cataplaſm.*

Alſo to help Concoction, and maturation within, you may give this following Apozeme:

Take of *Marſh-mallow Roots, and of the greater Comphry, of each one ounce*: *Agrimony, Colts-foot, Scabious, and Maiden-hair, of each one handful*: *the four great cold ſeeds, of each one ounce*: *Anniſs ſeeds one dram*: *Liquoris and Raiſons of the Sun ſtoned, of each one ounce*: *the three Cordial Flowers, and Chamomel, of each one pugil*; *Make a Decoction to one pint and an half*; *diſſolve in the ſtraining, Syrup of Colts-foot, Liquoris, and Sugar-candy, of each two ounces. Make an Apozeme perfumed with the Pouder of Flowerdeluce Root one dram*; *for five mornings draughts.*

This following Eclegma is good for the ſame purpoſe:

Take of *the pulp of fat Figs one ounce*: *freſh Butter two ounces*: *Oyl of ſweet Almonds newly drawn without fire, one ounce*: *Sugar candy two ounces*: *Starch two drams. Make a Lohoch.*

Venice Turpentine waſhed with Barley Water given to the quantity of three drams with the pouder of Liquoris, doth much profit for Maturation, Diſcuſſion, and Cleanſing.

But if the Empyema will not be ſpit up (as ſometimes it will not) you muſt come to opening of it, which you muſt do between the fourth and fifth Ribs, beginning to count from below, with many Cautions, which are elegantly ſet down by many Chyrurgions, eſpecially by *Hieronymus Fabricius ab Aquapendente*, in his Book of Manual Operations. But it is more profitable to open the Impoſthume which comes from a Pleuriſie before it break, and the Pus flow into the Cavity of the Breaſt, which is known by the Tumor which is againſt the place of Suppuration, and by other ſigns of an Empyema. And then you muſt not open it below, and between the fourth and fifth Rib, becauſe if you make an orifice far from the impoſthume, there wil no matter come forth; but you muſt open it in the middle of the Tumor, firſt applying a Cauſtick. But if no Tumor appear, it is hard to open it before the Impoſthume be broken.

But if any will try, he muſt find out the place in which the Patient finds weight, pain, and heat. And it muſt be made between two Ribs upon the higher part of the Rib, becauſe there is a Vein and Artery neer the Inferior; which you muſt obſerve in the opening of every Empyema. While the matter is taken forth by degrees, let the Patient take a Wound Drink twice a day, which will purge the blood, cleanſe the Ulcer, and hinder putrefaction: As

Take of *Sanicle, Bugle, Scabious, Bettony, St. Johns wort, Carduus, Mouſear, Burnet, Perewinkle, Agrimony, Plantane, of each one handful*: *the ſeeds of St. Johns wort, and Carduus benedictus, of each half a dram*: *Cordial Flowers one pugil*: *Boyl them in Hydromel to a pint and an half. Take ſix ounces every time.*

With this ſame Decoction Injections may be made into the Cavity of the Breaſt.

For his Drink, let him take Hydromel, or Barley Water, or Spring Water with Sugar.

If after the Breaſt is opened the matter do not flow freely, you muſt draw it forth with the following Plaiſter, which doth powerfully draw from all Impoſthumes.

Take

Take of Rozin of the Pine-tree that is freſh, cleer, and ſweet, half a pound: Oyl of Bayes and Turpentine, of each one ounce: Gum Elemi two ounces. Firſt let the Rozin and the Gum be melted and mixed; then ad the Turpentine and the Oyls, and let them boyl a little; then ſtrain them. Make a Plaiſter thereof for the part: change it once a day in Winter, and twice in Summer; cut it in two or three places that the matter may paſs through.

Chap. 5. *Of the Dropſie in the Breaſt.*

THe Dropſie in the Breaſt is like to Empyema which comes from a ſerous humor contained in the Cavity of the Breaſt. The common Practitioners do not deſcribe this Diſeaſe, although *Hippocrates* doth it excellently, 2. Lib. of Diſeaſes called dropſies in the Lungs, thus: *There is a Feaver, and a Cough, quick breathing, the feet ſwell, the Nails are contracted, and they ſuffer as they do in an Empyema, but not ſo violently, and longer; and if you powr any thing in, or apply a fomentation or fumigation the matter doth not follow; and by this you may know that it is not matter, but water that is within: and if you try a long time to diſcover it by your Ear laid to his ſide, it boyls inward like Vinegar; after that it goes into the belly, and then he ſeems to be recovered; But in progreſs of time, the belly is inflamed, and that endureth the ſame, or more: ſome ſwell in the belly, eeds, and face.* Thus *Hippocrates*.

This Diſeaſe ſeldom happeneth, it is more often than it is diſcovered, for it is not ordinarily known. Many relations of it are given by *Schenkius*, by which it appears that he never ſee it till their bodies who died of it were opened by him. Therefore we will deſcribe it exactly that a Phyſitian may not be deceived.

This ſerous humor, either may be bred in the Lungs, by the proper fault of them, as when it doth not concoct its own nouriſhment, but turneth it into Water, which by degrees is ſent to the Cavity of the Breaſt, or by bladders breaking upon the Lungs, which are mentioned by *Hippocrates* in his Book of Internal Diſeaſes, and alſo by others. Or it is ſent into the Breaſt from other parts, as from the Hypochondria eſpecially, when the Liver or the Spleen are diſtempered with a Schirrus or other diſeaſe by which much water is produced. This watery humor, is either ſent by the Veins to the Lungs which are weak, or elſe from the Cavity of the Abdomen it is carried to the Breaſt by Inſenſible Tranſpiration. Now Experience teacheth that this ſerous humor may be ſent from one Belly to another, becauſe the dropſie of the Breaſt turns into a dropſie of the Belly, and a dropſie of the belly into the Breaſt, from whence they are ſuddenly choaked.

The Diagnoſis of this Diſeaſe (as hath been ſaid) is very hard, for almoſt all the ſigns are the ſame with the ſigns of other Diſeaſes of the Breaſt. But a noiſe of Water in the breaſt, is only peculiar to this Diſeaſe, and to Empyema, which may be heard within if the body be moved to and fro, or be taken upon a ſtrong mans ſhoulders and ſhaken.

But all the Signs which we mentioned from *Hippocrates* taken together, may make a certain Diagnoſis. To which you may ad this one, as being moſt evident to ſhew the Diſeaſe, and by which the Dropſie in the breaſt is only diſtinguiſhed from other difficulties of breathing: namely, When at every firſt beginning to ſleep this difficulty of breathing cometh and hindereth it, and by night encreaſeth, and towards morning by degrees abateth.

To theſe you may ad ſomtimes, a pain of one Arm or Shoulder, which comes either from the humor falling from the Head into the Breaſt, part whereof falls into the Arm, being near, or from the water contained in the breaſt, and ſent to the Arms by the Axillary Veins of the Arm-holes; or from the Refrigeration of the Intercoſtal Muſcles, from which the Nerves are derived to the Arms, or from ſome other ſympathy by way of vicinity: For *Hippocrates* in *Coacis* obſerved this Sympathy of the breaſt and arms, *If thoſe parts or lobes of the Lungs which hang towards the right and left ſide of the Cheſt, be vehemently inflamed, ſo that they ſway or reſt upon one ſide of the Cheſt or Ribs, the watery matter breaks out on the ſame ſide of the Body where the Lungs lean or reſt.*

This is a great Diſeaſe, and hard to be cured, for they who have it have their Natural heat very weak, and their natural ſtrength alſo, from ſome great diſeaſe in the bowels: from whence it comes (that when the humor collected in the breaſt is evacuated by Medicines which is very difficult) there comes more in the place of it; from whence the diſeaſe is not only nouriſhed, but encreaſed; ſo that at length by abundance of water they fall into the Dropſie called *Aſcites*; yet in the beginning before the bowels are much hurt, it ſomtimes may be cured.

For the Cure of this diſeaſe, you muſt obſerve two Indications; namely, That the matter contained in the breaſt be evacuated, and that the breeding thereof again be hindered.

It is a hard thing to empty the water contained in the breaſt, becauſe the waies are not open by which it ſhould be brought forth. Therefore *Hippocrates* doth adviſe to open the ſide, which becauſe we never ſee practiſed, and never read in any Author that it was done with good ſucceſs, we cannot

abſolutely approve; and we may ſpeak of it as we have of the Opening or Tapping of the Dropſie, in its proper Chapter.

Therefore it is better to attempt this Evacuation with Medicines that expel Water, ſo which purpoſe al thoſe Medicines preſcribed by us in the Cure of the Dropſie, are good. Where we muſt obſerve diligently, That if when the Diſeaſe is confirmed, and much ſerous humor is gathred in the Breaſt, you give a violent Purge, thoſe humors wil be much moved, from whence there wil come a great Suffocation which wil kil the Patient: therefore be wary, and give your Medicine in a leſs Doſe, though oftener, and mix them with ſtrong Openers that purge Urin, that both the paſſages may be unſtopt, and the Matter carried to the Uritories.

Among Water Purges the Minerals are beſt, as Mercurius Dulcis, and Mercurius Vitæ ſo corrected that it may work only downward.

Alſo Diureticks alone, or Medicines to provoke Urin often uſed are good, becauſe they turn away the matter coming to the breaſt, to the bladder, and by way of Conſequence they bring it alſo from the breaſt.

Alſo Sudorificks are profitable, to the carrying away of this ſerous matter; and we ſaw a man of ſixty years old, who by the uſe of a Sweating drink made of Guaiacum and Sarſa taken fifteen days together, and by provoking ſweat with the vapor of the Spirit of Wine, was Cured.

Cauteries applied to make Iſſues in the Thighes and Legs, are alſo good to take Water from the breaſt.

You may hinder the breeding of this Water, by amending the faults of thoſe parts which ſend this Matter.

So if the Lungs be in fault you muſt apply proper Medicines unto them: if the Liver or Spleen be troubled with Diſtemper, Obſtruction, Scirrus, or the like, you muſt cure them by Medicines taken out of their ſeveral Chapters.

But thoſe things which do ſtrengthen the Vital and the Natural parts wil alwayes agree, ſuch as are preſcribed in the Cure of Weakneſs, Dropſie and Flux of the Liver.

Chap. 6. *Of* Hæmoptyſis, *or Spetting of Blood.*

ALthough uſually the word *Hæmoptyſis* doth ſignifie al manner of Spetting of blood from what part ſoever it doth proceed whether from the Breaſt, Lungs, Rough Artery, or from the Jaws, Gums, Pallat, Uvula, Brain, Stomach, Liver, and Spleen. Yet *Galen*, *lib.* 1. *decriſ. cap.* 5. ſaith, That *Hæmoptyſis* properly is taken for that ſpetting of blood which comes from the Vital parts, as the Breaſt, Lungs, and rough Artery.

It is a Symptome in the excretion of thoſe things which are wholly beſides Nature.

But ſince every Symptome depends upon a Diſeaſe as its next and immediate Cauſe: the Cauſe of this wil be either an Organical, or a Common Diſeaſe: The Organical is Two-fold; the opening of the Veſſels called in Greek *Anaſtomoſis*; and Rarefaction called *Diapedeſis*. Alſo the Common Diſeaſe is Two-fold, namely the breaking of the ſame Veſſels called *Rexis*, and the Corroſion of them called *Diabroſis*.

The Internal Cauſe immediately producing the Diſeaſes is a great quantity of blood.

Blood exceeding in quantity wil either break the Veins or open their Orifices, and ſo make either a *Rexis*, or *Anaſtomoſis*.

The ſame blood offending in quality, as when it is too hot or too thin, it wil come forth by way of *Anaſtomoſis*; but becauſe heat wil open the Orifices, and the thinneſs cauſeth it to flow more eaſily: Alſo the ſame qualities make a *Diapedeſis* or Rarefaction: for heat doth make thin the Tunicles of the Veſſels, and the thinneſs of the blood cauſeth it to flow more eaſily through the pores of thoſe Tunicles.

Laſtly, The ſharpneſs of the blood doth gnaw the Tunicles of the Veins and exulcerate them, & ſo cauſe a *Diabroſis*, or Eroſion; this alſo is cauſed by ſharp or ſalt humors which diſtil from the head, or coming from other parts to the Lungs.

Moreover, The External Cauſes do concur for the production of this Diſeaſe either mediately or immediately: It is produced immediately by a ſtroak, fal, wound, or the like; but they produce it immediately which encreaſe blood, heat and attenuate; as high and hot feeding, ſtoppage of Terms or Hæmorrhoids, too much exercite, great clamor, heat, long ſtaying in the ſun, and many others.

Moreover, External Cold may cauſe the Ruption of the Veſſels, by making their Tunicles harder and not ſo eaſily to be extended; but with this muſt be joyned ſtrong Motion, or abundance of Humors.

The Diagnoſis of this Diſeaſe is difficult in reſpect of the part from whence it comes: yet *Galen* declareth

declareth it in few words; 4. *de loc. affect. cap.* 6. namely, blood coming from the Gullet and Stomach is put forth by vomit; when it comes from the Vital parts, by Cough: from the Jaws and Weazand, by Hawking: from the Mouth by ſimple ſpetting, which wants a more cleer explication when blood comes from the head to the inner parts of the Weazand and the Jaws, it comes forth by Coughing, and ſo it doth when it comes from the breaſt; and therefore it is not diſtinguiſhed by this ſign.

Moreover, When blood coming from the Lungs or Breaſt is brought out by Coughing: There are other neceſſary ſigns from which the parts affected may be diſtinguiſhed.

Firſt therefore when blood comes from the head, although it ſometimes cauſe Coughing; yet the greateſt part thereof is put forth by Hawking, and there is a tickling in the Pallat as in a Catarrh: as alſo when you look into the Pallat it appeareth to be foul, and bloody; and it is more confirmed to be from the Head if at that time the Noſe bleed.

When the blood comes from the Lungs, it is diſtinguiſhed from that which comes from the Breaſt by *Galen* in the place mentioned; for that which comes from the Lungs is froathy, in greater plenty, and without pain: but from the Breaſt, it is black, little, and with pain.

But it may be objected, That blood coming from the breaſt is carried by the Lungs, and by conſequence is froathy, becauſe it is mixed with the air taken in, as that which comes immediately from the Lungs.

And *Avicen* ſaith, That blood from the breaſt is froathy: I Anſwer, That it is one thing to ſpet ſome froath mixed with the blood; and another thing to ſpet nothing but froath, which only comes from the ſubſtance of the Lungs.

Therefore you may obſerve Three degrees of froath: for it is either wholly froathy from the fleſh of the Lungs, which it reſembleth, for the Lungs are but a congealed froath; or it comes from the Veſſels of the Lungs and is very froathy: or it is mixed with froath and comes from the breaſt.

But the moſt certain ſign that it comes from the Lungs is taken from the pain, which is fixed and continueth where the ſolution of continuity is.

And you muſt obſerve, That blood is ſometimes ſent from the Liver, Spleen, Matrix, and other parts into the Lungs and ſpet forth: ſo that the Breaſt is not primarily, but ſecondarily affected; which thing is hardly to be diſcovered.

But we may conjecture of it, namely if any of the aforeſaid parts be troubled with pain, inflamation, or any other diſtemper, and there neither is, nor hath been, any other fault in the breaſt.

You may find out the ſigns of the Cauſes from what hath been ſaid: For if blood be brought by the Anaſtomoſis of the Veins, there went before ſome Cauſe that opened the mouth of the Veſſels, then blood is thrown forth in a pretty quantity and without pain. But if it come forth by Diapedeſis or Rarefaction, then is it wateriſh, little, and without pain.

When it breaks forth by Rixis, or Eruption, it is very much; if a Repletion went before, or any External Cauſe that might break the Veſſels.

Laſtly, If it comes by Diabroſis, or Corroſion of the Vein, there went before ſalt and ſharp diſtillations from the head: The blood is ſalt, and ſharp, and ill coloured; and ſome Cauſes of ſharp humors were formerly: in the beginning there is but little blood, but after when the Corroſion is greater, then is much blood ſpet forth, and at laſt there is a ſpetting of Matter.

Hippocrates, Aphor. 25. Sect. 4. doth lay down the Prognoſtick of this Diſeaſe, as what kind of blood ſoever is ſpet out of the mouth from any part below, it is evil: for every opening of a veſſel which letteth blood come forth ſo, is dangerous; eſpecially in the Lungs; concerning which his Aphoriſm chiefly ſpeaks.

But ſometimes ſuch ſpetting of blood may be without hurt; namely, When Nature by a critical Motion doth purge the ſuperfluous blood by thoſe waies. And it is obſerved, That Women which have had their Terms ſtopt have without harm at certain times ſpet blood from their Lungs by the Anaſtomoſis of the veins.

In reſpect of the Cauſes. Diapedeſis or Rarifaction is leſs dangerous than Anaſtomoſis; Aperſion and Eruption is moſt dangerous; for unleſs it be healed within three or four dayes there cometh an inflamation, which being ſuppurated produceth an Ulcer, from whence cometh a Conſumption: Whence *Hippocrates* ſaith, Aphor. 15, & 16. Sect. 7. That from ſpetting of blood there followeth ſpetting of Matter, and from ſpetting of Matter a Phthiſis or Conſumption.

But *Diabroſis* or Corroſion is moſt dangerous; and *Galen* ſaith, That it is incurable by reaſon the Ulcer that followeth it is incurable.

The Cure of *Hæmoptoe* or ſpetting blood, is wrought by Revulſion of blood from the Lungs by correcting the evil quality thereof, and cloſing the vein that is opened, by aſtringing and conglutinating means.

Firſt therefore let blood from the Arm on the ſame ſide on which you find heavineſs or pricking, in a ſmal quantity often, and at a diſtance for the better Revulſion.

After that, open the vein in the Foot, and ſo you wil make a Revulſion to a further diſtance, and this

this will be more profitable if the diſeaſe come from obſtruction of the Terms. If the Patient be ſubject to the Hemorrhoids, you muſt open them with Horſ-leeches.

Alſo apply Cupping-glaſſes with Scarrification to the ſhoulders and back, or without Scarrification to the Groins and under the Ribs. Rub and bind the extream parts, and in all the time of the Cure, at ſome diſtance apply often thoſe Cupping-glaſſes to the Hypochondria, or under the Ribs.

And let him take the following Julep thrice every day.

Take of *Plantane and Poppy Water, of each two ounces: Syrup of dried Roſes one ounce: Lapis Prunellæ one dram: Mix them for a Julep.*

Laſtly, You muſt often purge the ſerous and Chollerick humors which make the blood more thin and fluid with Medicines that have an aſtringent Vertue: As,

Take of *Rhubarb one dram: yellow Myrobolans half a dram: Tamarinds half an ounce: Infuſe them in Plantane Water; ſtrain it and diſſolve in it Powder of Rhubarb half a dram: Syrup of dried Roſes one ounce. Make a Potion.*

Then give Medicines that cloſe the Orifices of the Veſſels by an aſtringent quality, but ſuch as will not retain the blood in the Breaſt by too much aſtriction; therefore mix ſometimes with them ſuch as diſſolve and expectorate the congealed blood which is out of the Veſſels.

Of all which theſe following are the beſt:

Take of *Bole-Armenick, Terra Sigillata, both ſorts of Coral, Blood-ſtone, of each half a dram: Sugar of Roſes half an ounce. With one white of an Egg well beaten with Roſe Water, make a Lohoch.*

Or you may make one more ſpeedily, and more pleaſant thus:

Take of *the Water of the white of an Egg well beaten two drams: Sugar of Roſes one ounce: white Starch three drams. Mix them for a Lohoch.* Or,

Take of *Conſerve of Roſes, and the greater Comfry, of each one ounce: Bole-Armenick and Terra Sigillata, of each one dram: With the Syrup of dried Roſes make an Opiate to be often held in the mouth, and ſwallowed by degrees.*

Take of *Conſerve of dried Roſes, Troches of Amber, and of ſealed Earth, of each half a dram: prepared Pearls one ſcruple: Sugar of Roſes as much as of all the reſt. Mix them and let him take a ſpoonful thereof one hour before meat.*

Take of *the Juyce of Purſlain twelve ounces: Sugar eight ounces: Boyl them to a Syrup, of which let him often lick.*

This is the beſt for ſpitting of blood. And if you want Purſlain, you may take Plantane.

The Syrup of Comfry according to *Fernelius*, preſcribed by *Bauderon*, is good for the ſame.

Take of *Yarrow with the white Flower: and yellow Flower, of each two handfuls: Green Roots of Tormentil, with the Leaves if they may be had, otherwiſe of the dry, one ounce: the greater Burnet one handful: Conſerve of red Roſes half a pound: ſpring Water ſixteen pints: put them in a glaſſed pot covered and luted, that the vapors may not come forth: then boyl them in* Balneo Mariæ *ſixteen hours; keep the ſtraining in a glaſs, and take ſix ounces thereof every morning, noon, and night.*

Take of *the Troches of Amber one dram: Plantane and Roſe Water, of each one ounce and an half: Syrup of Mirtles and dried Roſes, of each half an ounce. Mix them for a Julep.*

Take of *Spirit of Vitriol half a ſcruple: Plantane Water four ounces. Mix them for a Potion.*

This preſently ſtops blood coming either by Cough or Vomiting.

Two ſpoonfuls of Syrup of Coral taken every day, is good againſt all manner of bleeding. But the Tincture of Coral drawn with Juyce of Lemmons, is more powerful.

Quercetan in his Diſpenſatory, preſcribeth this following Water againſt ſpitting of blood, which is very excellent.

Take of *the Roots of Snakeweed, Comfry, and Tormentil, of each one ounce: Knotgraſs, Yarrow, Veronica, Winter-Green, Sanicle, Shepheards-purſe with the Roots, of each one handful: Bramble tops, and Maſtich wood, of each half a handful: Sumach and Myrtle berries, the ſeeds of Plantane, Barberries, and white Poppies, of each ſix drams: the flowers of Water Lillies, Guords, Quinces, and red Roſes, of each two pugils. Bruiſe them and mix them; then ſteep them four daies at the fire in the Juyces of Plantane, Purſlain, Sorrel, and Agrimony, of each two pints: then ſtrain them well, and put to them Acacia and Hypociſtis, or Conſerve of ſloes, of each two ounces: ſealed Earth, Bole-Armenick, of each half an ounce: the Electuary of Diatragacanth frigid, two drams: then macerate them again four daies, and diſtill them. Take two or three ſpoonfuls of this Water alone, or with ſome proper Syrup.*

The

The Chymical Oyl of Amber doth pierce, aſtringe, and dry powerfully, if you give two drops thereof in Plantane Water: As *Ceſalpinus* teacheth in his *Speculum Artis Medicæ*.

Mercurialis in his conſultations doth highly commend the ſeeds of white Poppies, or white Henbane to be taken every morning in the quantity of a dram, with Sugar of Roſes and Syrup of Purſlane: So you may alſo uſe the white Diacodium or Syrup of Poppies preſcribed in the Cure of the Phrenzy.

Amatus Lucitanus doth highly commend the Juyce of Nettles, in theſe words: *They which have vomited blood, after they have been given over by Phyſitians, have been cured only by the juyce of Nettles drunk five or ſix daies faſting, in the quantity of four ounces, and by Nettle Broth.*

Sanguis Draconis doth wonderfully conglutinate all inward Veins, if you give half a dram thereof with Plantane Water, or other proper Liquor, or Medicine.

The uſual Pills to hold under the Tongue, may be made thus:

Take of *the Mucilage of Gum Arabick and Tragacanth, drawn with Plantane Water, of each two drams: Mummy and Maſtich, of each one dram: Sugar of Roſes as much as will make Pills, of which let him hold one continually in his mouth.*

And take this following Pouder in his Broths.

Take of *red Coral and prepared Pearl, of each half a dram: Gum Arabick and Tragacanth, of each two drams. Make a Pouder.*

Or boyl white Poppy ſeeds and Sumach tied in a clout, in his Broth.

Narcoticks are good in this caſe, and you muſt uſe them thus:

Take of *Syrup of Poppies, Jujubes, and dried Roſes, of each one ounce: Mix them, and take a ſpoonful every night.* Or,

Take of *Syrup of Poppies and Purſlain, of each three drams: Terra Sigillata half a dram: Purſlain and Plantane Water, of each one ounce and an half. Make a Potion to be taken at night.* Or,

Take of *Syrup of Myrtles and Poppies, of each one ounce: Bole-Armenick half a dram: mix them to be taken at night.*

Sometimes you may give Treacle of four months old, as *Galen* teacheth, 5. Method. cap. 13. or *Philonium Romanum*, or *Laudanum*.

Platerus reports that he cured one, only with the Troches of Winter Cherries, with Opium diſſolved in Goats milk, taken ſome daies; and alſo that he cured a Woman with one ounce and an half of Manna given in Broth, and with blood, and the uſe of the Tablets following, morning and evening for many daies.

Take of *the Seeds of white Henbane poudered finely two ſcruples: red Coral half a dram: Gum Arabick one ſcruple: new Violets ten: the Juyce of Barberries two drams: Sugar diſſolved in Roſe and Plantane Water, two ounces. Make Tablets.*

Trallianus, lib. 7. cap. 1. doth highly commend the Blood-ſtone, by which he ſaith that he cured many, giving it to four ſcruples, with the Juyce of Pomegranate, or Knotgraſs; but to them who bled not much, he gave it with warm water. But he ſaith you muſt ſift it well, give it often, that it may better be diſtributed, and in Wine.

Antony Valerius exercit. ad cap. 27. lib. 1. *Hollerij* de morb. internis, reports, that he cured, when all means failed, by this Pouder, which he had from *Julius Scaliger*.

Take of *Spodium, red Roſes, Bole-Armenick, Terra Sigillata, and Blood-ſtone, of each half an ounce: red Coral, Amber, and Pearls not perforated, of each two drams and an half: Gum Arabick and Tragacanth of each two drams: the ſeeds of Purſlain, Mallows, Ribwort, red Roſes, burnt Harts-horn, and white Starch burnt, of each three drams. Make thereof a fine pouder, and give three drams thereof with rain water.*

This Pouder *Scaliger* borrowed of *Serapio*, who mentioned it in his Book of Spitting of blood; and which *Valeſcus* alſo commends. And you may make Tablets thereof with Sugar diſſolved in Roſe or Plantane Water.

The Electuary of *Hælideus* is like it, and eaſier made; which was wont to be famous in *Germany*, and ſo commended of *Geſner*, *Eraſtus*, and *Crato*, thus:

Take of *the ſeeds of white Poppy and Henbane, of each ten drams: Terra Sigillata, and red Coral, of each five drams: old Sugar of Roſes, as much as will make an Electuary. Give hereof one dram morning and evening, after univerſal Medicines have been given.*

But becauſe that ſpitting is ſtopped by the uſe of Aſtringents, and thence comes difficulty of breathing, you muſt at times uſe things that mollify the Breaſt, and alſo ſtop bleeding, ſuch as they which are compounded of Gum Arabick, Tragacanth, Starch, and Syrup of dried Roſes, Quinces, Mirtles, and Jujubes the Juyce of Plantane and Purſlain, while you uſe Aſtringents, if the Belly be bound give a Clyſter or Purge, that leaves ſome Aſtringency.

In

In the whol time of the Cure, if you ſuſpect that there is any congealed blood in the breaſt, you muſt diſſolve it with Oxycrate thus made, according to *Galen*, 5. Meth. that it may be pleaſant and not provoke Coughing with the Vinegar; for ſo it diſſolveth the blood and gently bindeth: Let him take ſix ounces warm twice or thrice in one day: and if it provoke Coughing ſweeten it with Sugar: but you muſt uſe this when the bleeding begins to ceaſe; for this alſo Amber and Mummy mixed with glutinatours and aſtringents is good.

Alſo for the allaying the Heat of the Liver, uſe often a Cooling Epithem to the right ſide.

Take of *Roſe, Plantane, and Succory Water, of each four ounces: Vinegar of Roſes two ounces: the Pouder of the Electuary of the three Saunders one dram and an half: Camphire one ſcruple: make an Epitheme to be applied warm to the Liver.*

After the uſe of the Epitheme anoint the ſame part with Oyntment of Roſes, or the Cerat of Saunders, with a little Roſe-Vinegar.

Anoynt alſo the Reins of the Back with Oyl of Roſes and Water-Lillies waſhed with Vinegar; adding a little Camphire to allay the heat of the blood in the hollow Vein: But you muſt beware of things that are too Aſtringent, leſt they drive the blood from the hollow Vein into the Lungs.

It is alſo very good to waſh the ſtones with Oxycrate to ſtop the Flux and allay the heat: for there is a great conſent between theſe parts.

A Bath would alſo be good to allay the heat of the Bowels; but becauſe they relax and ſo open the Veins, you muſt avoid it.

Let him drink Syrup of Myrtles, Purſlain, and dried Roſes; or Sugar of Roſes with Barley-water, or with the Water wherein Blood-ſtone or ſealed Earth hath been infuſed. Or mix Conſerve of Roſes with the Water, or with Water wherein Coriander hath been infuſed, made ſharp with the Spirit of Vitriol: or with the Tincture of Roſes.

A weak Decoction of Yarrow drunk ordinarily is good againſt al bleeding.

If a ſharp Defluxion from the Head upon the Lungs, be the Cauſe of this Diſeaſe, beſides what hath been ſaid, you may uſe thoſe Remedies which are preſcribed in the Cure of a Hot Catarrh.

After the Blood is ſtopped, to keep it from returning you muſt firſt abſtain from al things that ſtir the Humors, as violent exerciſe, great heat, anger, roaring, rich Wines, the meates mentioned which are either ſalt or ſpiced.

Conſerve of dried Roſes muſt be held in the mouth, eſpecially at bed time.

Take of *Conſerve of Roſes and of Comfry Roots, of each one ounce: the Troches of Amber, and ſealed Earth, of each half a dram: red Coral and prepared Pearls of each one ſcruple: Sugar of Roſes as much as all the reſt: make a mixture, of which let him take a ſpoonful ſomtimes one hour before meat.*

Let him be purged four times in a yeer, or oftener if occaſion be, with the Potion of Rhubarb and Myrobalans above mentioned; to which, inſtead of Syrup ad one ounce of Manna.

You may with good ſucceſs give a ſcruple of torrefied Rhubarb every morning one hour before meat, eſpecially if the blood be very ſerous, as it is commonly in Hæmorrhages.

Alſo Rhubarb not torrefied given in the ſame quantity; for ſo the blood after the ſerous watery Humor is carried away wil grow thicker: Or, You may give a dram of Rhubarb once every Week.

There is alſo a Magiſtral Syrup to cleanſe the blood from thin ſerous Humors. As,

Take of *the Leaves of Bugloß, Fumitory, Hops, Succory, Endive, Agrimony, Plantane, Maiden-hair, of each one handful: the Tops of Aſparagus, Vervain, and Eyebright, of each half an handful: the Seeds of Gourds and Mellons, of each half an ounce: Endive and Dodder ſeed of each two drams: Liquoris ſcraped, and Raiſons, of each one ounce: ſweet Prunes twelve: Senna four ounces: Polypody of the Oak two ounces: Agarick tyed in a thin Clout, ſix drams: Mace one dram: the Three Cordial Flowers & red Peaſe or Pulſe of each one pugil: boyl theſe to a pint & an half: diſſolve in the ſtraining of the juyce of ſweet Apples three ounces: fine Sugar one pound and a quarter: make a Syrup boyled well, & ſented with yellow Saunders: Then infuſe in it one ounce of Rhubarb beaten and tyed in a Clout, let him take an ounce and an half, or two ounces, with Broth twice in a month.*

Make an Iſſue in the right or left Leg, as the Liver or Spleen are affected.

Laſtly, Let him uſe for a whol Month Aſſes-Milk ſteeled, for prevention of this Diſeaſe.

For his Drink, take Water boyled a little with Coriander ſeeds, or the Decoction of Barley and Liquoris.

CHAP.

Chap. 7. *Of* Phthiſis, *or Conſumption.*

ALthough the word *Phthiſis* ſignifie every Conſumption, yet it is moſt properly taken for that extenuation of body which cometh after an Ulcer in the Lungs.

For this Extenuation of body comes from a putrid lingring Feaver, which turneth to an Hectick; and this Feaver comes from the Ulcer in the Lungs, from which by reaſon of their neerneſs to the Heart putrid Vapors are continually ſent thither and cauſe the Feaver, which after is diſperſed from the Heart into the whol body; ſo al the parts being too cold and dry, and receiving the intemperate putrifying heat, do not wel concoct their nouriſhment, but are ill nouriſhed, from whence you may plainly perceive a Conſumption of the ſubſtance of the whol body: for that Feaver by reaſon of its continuance from the perſeverance of the Cauſe turneth Hectick: and its often joyned with a putrid Feaver, which is known by the Urine, and by the Diſtempers extraordinary at ſometimes, inſomuch that in ſome Conſumptions you may obſerve fits of an intermitting Feaver.

A ſharp and Corroding Humor, either coming from other Parts, or breeding in the Lungs, is the immediate Cauſe of an Ulcer in the Lungs.

Firſt ſharp and ſalt Rhewm falls from the brain, which being violent eaſily ulcerateth the Lungs: Somtimes Flegm that is not ſharp nor ſalt wil do the ſame: namely, if it lie long in them and putrifie, and from the putrifaction ariſeth an Acrimony, which Corroding Ulcerateth: yet this putrid flegm in the Lungs doth not alwayes ulcerate, as we may obſerve in a Catarrh when putrid Matter is ſpet forth, and the Lungs are ſound.

But there are two Conditions for the Cauſing of an Ulcer: one in reſpect of the matter flowing; another in reſpect of the Lungs: In reſpect of the Matter it is required that it ſhould be ſo diſpoſed, that when it is putrified it begets a ſharpneſs which may cauſe an Ulcer: In reſpect of the Lungs, they muſt be extraordinary tender, and diſpoſed to corruption, which in a word is called a Vitious Conſtitution of the Lungs, coming from the Parents uſually, of which we will ſpeak hereafter.

Now the Humors that Exulcerate and putrifie the Lungs, come from the parts adjoyning, as the Pleura, Mediaſtinum, Diaphragma, rough Artery, and eſpecially from an inflamation in them, which comes to Suppuration and turns into an Empyema: of which *Hippocrates* ſpeaks, Aphor. 15. Sect. 5. *They who fall from a Pleuriſie into an Empyema, if the Empyema break in fourty dayes and come away, are Cured; but if not, they fall into a Conſumption.*

The Humor is in the Lungs when from ſome veſſel broken, corroded, or opened by a wound, the blood flowing doth putrifie; or when an Ulcer is left there from the ſmal pox.

Somtimes from the evil Conſtitution of the Lungs, evil Humors proceed; which corrupt their ſubſtance and cauſe a Conſumption: and this comes commonly from the Parents, from whence a Conſumption is reckoned among the Hæreditary diſeaſes, of which it is the chief, ſo that we may obſerve how many whol Families are taken away with this diſeaſe.

This evil Conſtitution of the Lungs is not in the firſt qualities, but hath ſome malignant and venemous quality, by which it becomes infectious: Although we deny not but a ſoft and looſe ſubſtance of the Lungs, and therefore more fit for Corruption, doth much conduce to the breeding of this Diſeaſe.

This evil Conſtitution of the Lungs cauſeth that ſome fal into Conſumptions without a Diſtillation, Inflamation, or any other evident Cauſe, but only from the fault of the part that corrupteth its own nouriſhment.

Somtimes it comes from a Puſtulæ bred in the Lungs and broken, which by *Hippocrates*, 1. *de morbis*, is made two-fold:

One by him is called, A Crude Puſtule, becauſe it never comes to Suppuration, but growing by degrees ſtops the paſſage of the breath, and at length kils the Patient.

The other is that which cometh to Suppuration, and is called the Impoſthume of the Lungs, and theſe come two wayes, either by Defluxion, or Congeſtion; and the Matter gathered is either in a Bagg or without it in the very ſubſtance of the part.

The thickneſs of the Bagg often cauſeth that ſuch an Impoſthume is carried many yeers in the Lungs undiſcovered, and without any hurt to the body: From whence *Hippocrates* ſaith, Aph. 41. Sect. 6. *They who have an Impoſthume in the body, and feel it not, it is by reaſon of the thickneſs of the Matter, or of the place wherein it is that they feel it not*: For this Cauſe many who ſeemed to be in perfect health have ſuddenly died by an Impoſthume broken within: of which there are Examples in *Fernelius, lib. 5. de morbis, de part. morb. & ſympt. c.* 10. among which he mentioneth two Phyſitians who fore-ſaw the danger without ſigns.

If the matter which comes from the Impoſthume broken, flow into the Ventricle of the Heart, the ſick preſently die: but if it come to the Bronchia, or paſſages in the Lungs, it may be ſpit up; if the body be ſtrong, and the matter little in quantity; but commonly there is an ulcer remaining in the Lungs which cauſeth a Conſumption.

Moreover, There are external Cauſes, as contagion, which is the chiefeſt; for this Diſeaſe is ſo infectious, that we may obſerve Women to be infected by their Husbands, and Men by their Wives, and all their Children to die of the ſame; not only from the infection of their Parents ſeed, but from the company of him that was firſt affected.

And this Contagion is more eaſily communicated to them that are of kin, wherefore it is not ſafe for a Brother or Siſter to enter into the Chamber for the *Miaſmata*, or vapors infective, which come from their Lungs, and infect the whol Air of the Chamber, and being drawn in by others (eſpecially if they are any way diſpoſed to the ſame Diſeaſe) beget the ſame diſeaſe in their Lungs.

There are other external Cauſes, eſpecially very hot or cold Air; the hot Air doth melt down the ſharp humors which are contained in the Brain, and ſends them to the Lungs. The too cold Air by aſtringing, compreſſing, and Squeezing doth cauſe the like defluxion: But the Air in Autumn is moſt dangerous, becauſe by its inequality in heat and cold, it cauſeth ſharp and ſalt diſtillations; whence *Hippocrates* ſaith, Aph. 10. Sect. 3. *Autumn is the worſt time for People in Conſumptions.* Secondly, Sharp and ſalt meats and drinks do cauſe a Conſumption, which fill the Head with ſalt and ſharp vapors. And laſtly, all thoſe internal and external Cauſes which uſe to produce ſpitting of blood, which uſeth to end in a Conſumption, may be ſaid to be Cauſes thereof.

Among the Antecedent Cauſes, evil humors throughout the whol body, are accounted the chief, which being moved by external cauſes, are ſent to the brain, and from thence to the Lungs. Among which you may reckon the ſuppreſſion of the Terms, Hemorrhoids, or other uſual evacuations, which doth cauſe Catarrhs and defluxions.

The aforelaid Cauſes do produce this Diſeaſe, eſpecially among thoſe whom *Hippocrates* calleth *Phthirodeis*, and *Pterugodeis*, that is, ſuch as have a ſtraight and diſtreſſed breaſt, a long neck, and ſhoulder bones ſticking forth, who muſt of neceſſity fall into this diſeaſe, if they have tender Lungs, or any hereditary inclination thereunto. Alſo they are inclined to a Conſumption, who have a weak Head, which is eaſily filled winh ſuperfluous Humors, which are ſent to the Organs or Inſtruments of the Spirits.

There are no true and proper Differences of Conſumptions, but ſuch as come from the variety of their Cauſes. Yet *Hippocrates* doth lay down many kinds which are worth the obſerving, which muſt be reduced, not to a true Conſumption, but to one in general, which is without ulcer of the Lungs. And firſt *lib. 6. epid. ſect. 8. text.* 47. he ſheweth of a Conſumption which came from a running of the Reins, in this Hiſtory: *A Satyre called* Grypalopex, *being twenty five yeers old, had Nocturnal Polutions, and dayly loſs of Seed; who when he came to be thirty yeers of age, fell into a Conſumption, and died.* For by the continual loſs of Seed the nouriſhment of the body is taken away, by which the ſolid parts are conſumed and dried.

There is another kind in *Hipp. 2. de morb.* called the Conſumption of the back, which comes from too much Lechery, which deſtroyeth the whol habit of the Body, and takes away the nouriſhment from the ſolid parts: this happens to new married folks, who are unſatiable, and is the chiefeſt of the Conſumptions of the back; for *Hippocrates* laies down four kinds thereof: The firſt is that mentioned, which comes from Lechery. The ſecond is laid down *lib. 2. de intern. affect. text.* 13. which comes from too much blood, and nouriſhment going to the Spinal Marrow, by which the Natural heat, and all other faculties are ſtifled and deſtroyed. Now *Hipp. 5. epid.* ſheweth that the body may conſume by too much blood, in a ſtory concerning one, who, when nothing would nouriſh him, but he ſtill grew leaner, was perfectly cured, when all other Medicines failed, by bleeding in both Hands as long as the Veins would diſcharge. The third kind is in the place mentioned, namely, when the marrow of the back is dried, by which the whol body drieth and conſumeth. *Hippocrates* mentioneth two Cauſes of this drineſs: one is the obſtruction of the veins which go to the back with nouriſhment; another is the flowing of Choller from the head upon the back, which *Hippocrates* ſheweth in his Book *de locis in homine.* The fourth is deſcribed in the ſame Book, and it comes from a diſtillation upon the marrow of the back, in theſe words: *Moreover, when a defluxion falls upon the Back, this kind of conſumption cometh with pain in the Loyns, and ſeeming emptineſs to the Patient in the internal parts of the head.* In the ſame Book, numb. 18. he ſaith thus: *When there is a defluxion upon the Marrow, there is a ſecret undiſcernable Conſumption.* He calls it ſecret, becauſe when the body decaies, you cannot ſo eaſily find out the cauſe: he calls it undiſcernable, becauſe you cannot perceive the inconveniences of the defluxion at the firſt. But it ceaſeth to be ſecret and undiſcernable, if the defluxion be not only upon the marrow of the back, but alſo upon the *Os Sacrum*, and Hip: for then the diſtillation is apparent, and there is pain and loſs of motion, with dejection of mind. Theſe are more cleer in *Hippocrates*, in his Tenth Book *de glandulis*, in theſe

theſe words: *There is another Diſeaſe which comes from a defluxion from the Head by the Veins upon the Marrow of the Back, and from thence to the* Os Sacrum, *and Hip, which is a Conſumption alſo which deſtroyeth, for then the Shoulders and both the feet are weak, and after the leggs, and they alwaies die of it, though they have been formerly cured.* This kind of Conſumption is to be obſerved, becauſe it often happeneth, eſpecially to ſuch who have weak Nerves, which will eaſily receive the defluxion.

To this kind you may refer that which comes of want and hunger; which *Galen* mentioneth, *lib. de Maraſmo*, when the Body decaies for want of nouriſhment. Now Nouriſhment is wanting to the ſolid parts, not only for want of meat, which the Stomach concocteth, and ſends to the Liver to make blood for the whol Body: but alſo when the *Chylus* which is ſufficiently concocted in the ſtomach cannot paſs through the Meſeraick Veins, by reaſon of their obſtruction; as it happeneth to them who have a Struma, whoſe Meſentery for the moſt part is full of Glandles; by which the milky Veins called *Venæ Lacteæ*, are compreſſed, from whence the whol Body grows lean, and they die of a Conſumption.

But the ſolid parts are deprived of their neceſſary nouriſhment when ſalt blood that is not fit for nouriſhment is gathered into the Veins, which, as *Galen* ſhews, are incurable, 5. Meth. except by *Epicraſis*, or change of habit. And finally, *Galen, lib. de Maraſmo, decimo meth.* and in other places, ſpeaks of a Conſumption from a manifeſt or hidden Inflamation, from the ſyncope of the Heart or Stomach, and the like, which may be ſeen in their proper places.

The Diagnoſtick ſigns by which you may know a true Conſumption, do ſome of them, declare a Conſumption beginning, or begun, or confirmed, which are very well ſet down by *Hipp. 1. de morbis.*

The ſigns of a Conſumption at hand, are in *Hipp.* Book, mentioned, Text 9. in theſe words: *There is alſo a Suppuration when flegm flows from the Head upon the Lungs; and firſt for the moſt part it flows privately, and cauſeth a little Cough, and the ſpittle to be bitter, and a little heat.*

In this ſaying there are contained four ſigns of an eminent Conſumption.

The firſt ſign is, A defluxion from the beginning cloſely conveighed to the Lungs, becauſe then the matter is little, and becauſe the thinner part of the humor, which floweth about the rough Artery, and doth not vex the Lungs, which otherwiſe would be more diſturbed in the beginning, before they are weakened; thence it is called a ſecret defluxion, becauſe there is little hurt at the firſt done thereby.

The ſecond ſign is, When the Humor flowing makes but a ſmal Cough, being at the firſt but little and thin.

The third ſign is, When the ſpittle is more bitter than uſually it was, becauſe the humor that muſt ulcerate the Lungs muſt be ſweet, ſharp, or ſalt; which qualities being altered by a preternatural heat, do turn bitter: for it is known that ſweet and ſalt things overmuch boyled, do grow bitter. But in regard that preternatural heat is not very great at the firſt, the ſpittle is but a little bitter.

The fourth ſign, is a little heat, as being feaveriſh; for when the matter is not much moved, but receiveth putrifaction from the heat of the place, wherein it hath been long contained, the Feaver cannot be very violent, for the putrid matter can many waies be refrigerated; therfore it is no wonder if the Feaver be ſmal in the beginning.

To theſe ſigns of *Hippocrates* we may ad an evil formation of the Breaſt and Youth, which meeting with the aforeſaid ſigns, muſt needs declare a conſumption to be at hand.

The evil faſhion of the Breaſt is when it is narrow, and the Shoulder-blades ſtick up like wings, when the fore part of the Breaſt is narrow, and the hinder part broad, for then the Breaſt is both ſmal and evil proportioned. The ſtraightneſs of the Breaſt ſhews want of Natural heat, and the evil proportion ſhews its weakneſs. For if the Natural heat were much and vigorous, the breaſt would have thereby been extended. But ſuch and ſo great is this diſpoſition, that *Hippocrates* calls it a Natural Conſumption, coming from a principle in Nature. Wherefore they who are thus made muſt of neceſſity fall into a Conſumption, except ſome other diſeaſe take them off. Which by the way is obſervable, for if they have any acute diſeaſe, who are thus inclined, they ſeldom eſcape, becauſe the Natural heat is weak and little, and therefore will eaſily be overcome by a ſtrong diſeaſe. Therefore the moſt wary Phyſitians in ſuch kind of Natures and habits, do uſe to prognoſtick rather death and danger, than health or recovery, when they fall into any diſeaſe.

In them who are inclinable to this Diſeaſe, Youth is moſt dangerous, according to *Hippocrates*, Aph. 9. Sect. 5. eſpecially from Eighteen to Thirty Five yeers, in which time there is much blood for to break the veſſels; as alſo it is then thin and ſharp, more proper to open and corrode the Veſſels: In Children, the Catarrh is made ſlow with much Moiſture: in Old Men, it is allayed with Cold: but in the Middle Age, for the Reaſons aforeſaid, it doth often exulcerate.

Moreover, in Youth many diſtempers come by Diet, by which many ill humors are produced and the blood infected: as alſo by reaſon of violent Exerciſe, as running, wreſtling, leaping, fencing, going in the ſun, a vein may be broken in the Lungs which may produce a Conſumption.

The signs of a Consumption begun, are set down by *Hippocrates* in his Book of Diseases before mentioned, *Text* 10. in these words, *In progress of time the Lungs are exasperated and ulcerated within by the Catarrh putrifying there, whereby the breast seems ponderous, and there is a pain before and behind; and there is more sharp heat in the body: and the Lungs by reason of their heat draw moisture from the whol body and especially from the head, which also is made hot from that body, and spetteth forth thick matter.*

In these Words there are *Six Signs* contained of a Consumption begun.

The First sign is, That the Lungs are exasparated in progress of time: that is, The Cough is more violent; for the Disease increasing the Distillation is stronger, and the Lungs are peirced therewith, and provoked to Cough forth that which hurteth them: which Cough doth not only come from the matter flowing down, but from that which flowed formerly: for being not Coughed up it groweth foul by long continuance, by which means the Lungs are more forced to expulsion.

The Second sign is, The weight of the Breast which comes from the matter gathered into the Lungs: For albeit the Lungs of themselves do feel little or nothing, yet because they are tyed to the Breast by Membranes, they perceive a weight, when they are burdened.

A Third sign is, A sharp pain before, and behind: for the matter contained in the Lungs doth with its evil quality offend them, as wel as with its quantity and putrifaction, by which the Membranes are pricked, which cause great pain: for the pain in the Membranes is alwayes pricking. Now this pain is perceived before and behind; because these Membranes are joyned before to the Sternon, and behind to the Back: and the cause of this pain is from a great Cough, called by *Hippocrates*, A Malignant, or Cruel Cough.

The Fourth sign is, When sharp Heat falls into the body, and there followeth a violent Feaver: for when through progress of time the matter putrifieth more, it is probable that the Feaver wil be greater; for although the matter from the beginning do only putrifie in the Lungs, yet by reason of the Suppuration made in the Breast with an Ulcer, the filth is communicated to the humors contained in the Veins; from which come divers sorts of putrid Feavers, and these differ from that Feaver which comes only from the Ulcer in the Lungs, through the filthy vapors which are carried from them into the Heart, which turns to an Hectick; and therefore in a Consumption there is a Hectick Feaver often joyned with a Putrid.

The Fifth sign is, When a great quantity of Flegm falls from the Head to the Lungs: which *Hippocrates* confirms, when he shews the Cause of that great Defluxion; namely, The Lungs by their Heat drawing Flegm from the whol body: Hence it is that the humors contained in the whol body are the matter of a continual and great Flux which doth so trouble men in Consumptions. The Lungs by the filth which they have contracted, grow hot; by which heat Flegm is drawn from the Brain, which the Brain fetcheth from the whol Body: And this is one of the principal Causes of the extenuation of the whol body: for al the humors, good and bad, are carried to those parts, and so the whol body decayeth.

The Sixth sign is, Spetting of thick rotten Flegm: for when the Matter putrifieth and there is an Ulcer, quittor or filth must needs come from thence, and therefore the Spittle is Mattery: but it is between thick and thin: for after that it hath by long continuance in the Lungs grown thick, it is made thinner by the addition of that which breaks from the Ulcer, and so it becomes moderate, which *Hippocrates* calls Subcrassum, or Thickish.

To these mentioned Signs of *Hippocrates* you may ad this as most certain, namely, The Extenuating the body with a lingering and constant Feaver: For besides the putrid Feavers above mentioned which come and go by fits, and grow from the humors which putrifie in the Veins: there is also alwayes present a lingering daily Feaver coming from the vapors sent from the Ulcer to the Heart which corrupteth the nourishment of the whol body, and makes it dry and hot, from whence the body must needs grow extenuated.

To these you may ad Sweatings at Night, with which men in Consumptions are often troubled as soon as they begin to sleep: for by sleep the Heat is drawn in which encreaseth the Inflamation of the Lungs; and the heat inwardly increased, causeth abundance of vapors, which are thickned in the skin, and turned into sweat.

Moreover, There is a continual rigor which comes from the sharpness of the matter which pricketh the Membranes.

And Lastly, You may ad sweetness of spittle, which useth to come when it begins to Suppurate, which is the original of Saltness.

Hippocrates shews also the signs of a Consumption confirmed, in his 11. Text of the Book above mentioned in these words, *The longer this Disease lasteth, the more absolute matter will be spet, and the Feavers be the sharper, the Cough more frequent and strong. the body will more consume, and yet the body is disturbed downward from Flegm, and this comes from the Brain. when any man comes to this he must perish.*

In

In theſe Words we may obſerve that there are Five Signs of a Conſumption confirmed.

The Firſt is, The Spittle being more Mattery, or rather Matter it ſelf.

The Second is, A ſtrong Feaver, and ſharp, more putrifying; and the Ulcer more foul.

The Third is, An often and violent Cough more than formerly; often becauſe of the great provocation and little evacuation, therefore nature laboreth to do that at divers times which ſhe cannot do at once: and it is a ſtronger Cough, not only becauſe the greater ſharpneſs of the Water doth more violently ſtir up the expultive faculty; but alſo becauſe of the wearing away of the ſolid parts, the breaſt is made more hollow, hence comes a hoarſ and ſounding Cough, as from a hollow place.

The Fourth ſign is, Pining and want of Apetite, which makes them leaner; now the want of Appetite comes from the diſtillation which doth not only fal upon the ſpirital members, but alſo upon the natural: eſpecially the Stomach, whoſe mouth is thence weakened to the loſs of Appetite; as alſo from the putrid vapors ſent thither either from the Feaver or the Ulcer.

The Laſt ſign is, A looſe belly which comes from Flegm falling from the head, by which in time the ſtomach and guts are weakened, and the retentive faculty deſtroyed: and this kills the Patient as we ſhal ſhew more at large in the Prognoſticks.

To theſe ſigns of *Hippocrates*, we may ad ſome other:

The Firſt is, A great Extenuation of the whol body, ſo that al the Muſculous fleſh is conſumed, and the bones appear only covered with skin: and hence it is that the nayls are crooked, becauſe the Fleſh which was in the tops of the Fingers to hold up the nayls, is conſumed.

To this you may ad Difficulty of breathing, both becauſe the Faculty is weak, as alſo becauſe the Bronchia of the Lungs are ſtopt with putrid matter; as alſo becauſe the part is for the moſt part putrified and conſumed, and therefore cannot take in ſufficient air to cool the heart; ſo that what the Lungs cannot do by one breathing, it muſt do by often.

And Laſtly, We may ad, That in a confirmed Conſumption that is deſperate, the Hair falls off, the Cheeks wax blue, except it be after meat, and then the vapors ſent up make the red Lice breed in abundance, and the Feet ſwel.

Neither need we ſo many ſigns, for if any ordinary man, ſaith *Areteus*, ſhal ſee a man pale, weak, and coughing, and very lean, he wil conclude him to be in a Conſumption.

Yet we muſt obſerve diligently, That ſomtimes a violent Catarrh falling upon the Lungs wil reſemble a Conſumption ſo, that filth like Matter, ſhal be ſpit forth, and thence may a Feaver come through putrifaction and extenuation of body: but they who are ſo are eaſily cured by diligence in means, therefore let us diſtinguiſh this rightly from a Conſumption, which is chiefly done by diſcerning between putrid Flegm and Matter. Thus;

Matter is of a dun Colour, and leſs White than Flegm; ſomtimes of divers Colours, and being put into hot Water it ſinketh and diſſolveth: but Flegm ſwims at the top and ſticks together by reaſon of its ſliminels, and wil not diſſolve.

But if ſome of the Spittle diſſolve and the reſt not, it is made of Flegm and Matter, which often happeneth.

As for the Prognoſtick, it is very hard to Cure a new Ulcer in the Lungs; but it is impoſſible to Cure an Old, becauſe it is opened by the continual motion of the Lungs and by Coughing, ſo that it wil not be united: as alſo the force of the Medicine is gone before it can come at it, and the loſt ſubſtance of the Lungs cannot be repaired.

Moreover, An Ulcer, Spittle, Feaver, and Leanneſs, require contrary Remedies, for thoſe things which dry the Ulcer, do hinder Spittle, increaſe the Feaver, and Leanneſs: and Moiſt things which are good againſt the Feaver and Leanneſs, do make the Ulcer more foul.

Somtimes the Ulcer ſeems Cured, and there is a ſcab upon it, but with the leaſt motion it fals off, and the Diſeaſe returns.

A Conſumption which comes from a ſmal Ulcer of ſhort continuance, although it be difficult, yet is not uncurable if proper Medicines be timely uſed: And they who have gathered Obſervations mention many ſo Cured; now there is moſt hope when the Patient is ſtrong, the ſpittle white, even of one colour, and eaſily raiſed; if the humor falling from the head paſs through the Noſe, and if thereupon the Feaver abate, if the Appetite be good, & there be no thirſt, & if the belly bound & in good order, if the Patient have a good habit of body, yong, and have his breaſt large and hairy.

They whoſe ſpittle ſtinketh, or have looſe bellies, or cannot ſpet, are neer death, as *Hippocrates* teacheth, 1. Prog. & Aph. 11. & 12. Sect. 5. And, Aph. 16. Sect. 7.

A Conſumption coming upon an acute Diſeaſe doth kill ſpeedily, but if it come from other Cauſes it is Chronical, and laſteth many yeers: And *Avicen* ſaith, That he knew a Woman that lived twenty three yeers in a Conſumption. And *Matibew de Gradi* ſaith, That another Woman which was alwayes about the fire, lived in a Conſumption twenty eight yeers.

The Cure of this Diſeaſe, as is ſaid, is for the moſt part impoſſible, if the Diſeaſe be Old; but if it be New it may ſomtimes, and eaſier when it is but coming upon them who are diſpoſed thereto by

an

an hereditary disposition, but are not yet fallen into it. Therefore we shal first lay down a Prophylactick or preservative, and then shew how to cure the disease.

Therefore for the amending of the evil disposition in a Consumption, use a cooling diet, and moist, and all such things as correct the blood, and make it mild, and correct its saltnes and sharpnes: as the Waters of sweet Baths, the use of Milk and the like. As also China Roots boyled in smal Beer; but the Decoction of the Sanders is the best, which is not only good in a Consumption at hand, or begun, but also in salt and thin distillations, and in old bleeding from thence. The Decoction of Guajacum doth wonders upon the same account with the former, either given in distilled Waters, with a little white or red Wine, as the disease will bear it. Now the Decoction of Guajacum, and of Sanders, are made both alike, both for the first and second drink, and given the same way. To these you may ad change of Air, which is good both to prevent and cure, And lastly, those Remedies are good which we will lay down for the cure of the disease confirmed, to be used first.

Now the whol Cure consisteth in the clensing and glutinating of the ulcer, by taking away the Causes that produce and nourish it, by opposing the Hectick Feavet, and restraining of the Consumption.

First therefore, because an ill habit of body may encrease the Ulcer of the Lungs, you must use gentle purges, at divers distances, as long as the body is not very low. And these must be made of Manna, Rhubarb, Cassia, or Syrup of Roses, thus:

Take of *Barley half a pugil: Liquoris scraped, and Raisons stoned, of each three drams: Jujubes four: the flowers of Bugloß, and Violets, of each half a pugil: boyl them to three ounces: In the straining dissolve Rhubarb infused in Scabious Water with yellow Sanders four scruples: Manna one ounce: Syrup of Roses half an ounce. Make a Potion.*

Or give two ounces of Manna with Chicken or ordinary Broth.

Or make a Bolus of Cassia one ounce, and one scruple of the pouder of Liquoris.

In the beginning you may give stronger purges for to draw down the salt and sharp Catarrh which is the chief Cause of the Ulcer, such as are prescribed in a hot Catarrh.

Also before the body be too lean, at the first you may let blood to allay the Feaver, and the acrimony of the humor.

But in the beginning of the Cure you must stay and divert the Catarrh from the Breast, otherwise all other things will be in vain. And all those things which were prescribed for the Cure of a hot Catarrh are good in this case.

Besides a Seton to the Neck, is very good. And *Fabricius Hildanus* reports that he cured many by this way.

At length you must come to the Cure of the Ulcer; for which, give things that clense, knit, and expectorate. Many there are of this nature. But these following are the best.

Milk doth hit all intentions for Cure: It clenseth with its serous parts, it conglutinateth with its coagulating part, and nourisheth and refresheth with its unctious part. But there are divers kinds of Milk, and Womans Milk is the best, because it is more agreeable to our Natures, especially if it be sucked from the breast. *Platerus* affirms that he knew many cured by the use thereof; and that one of them did not only recover, but grew so strong, that least his Nurse should want milk for him, he got her with child again.

But because many will not endure that sort, Asses Milk is commended, which because it is very full of Whey, doth easily pierce into the Veins, and excellently clense the Ulcer: the next to this is Goats Milk. Let the Ass be fed with Plantane, Vine Leaves, Brambles, Polyganon, Grass, Barley, and Rye. Let him drink it new milked, warm, therefore let the Ass be brought neer the Chamber, and be milked into a warm Vessel. First let him take it in a smal quantity three or four ounces, that his Stomach may be used to it, encreasing the quantity by degrees to eight or ten ounces, or a pint, and least it should grow sowr or curdle in the Stomach; and that it may agree better with the Lungs, put Sugar of Roses to it, one ounce thereof to eight of milk: let him not sleep after his Milk immediately, but walk gently about the Chamber: let him not eat before the Milk be concocted, and he find a stomach, and that it be more effectual. You must not give it in a strong Feaver, or when there is a pain in the Head, or swelling in the Hypochondria, or a Chollerick flux, according to *Hippocrates*, Aphor. 64. Sect. 5.

Commonly it is taken only once in a day; but it is better twice; and best if the Patient live only upon it. For besides that it doth work more powerfully in a great quantity, there is a great profit by not mixing it with Broth and other meats, for they will easily putrifie. If therefore the Disease be very desperate, give Milk after purging every six hours with *Manus Christi* of Pearl and Coral. And least strength should fail, let him intermix a restoring distilled Water.

Sugar of Roses is very profitable, as also the Conserve; by use whereof, *Avicen* reports that he cured a Woman of a desperate Consumption, so that she was not only sound, but very fat afterwards.

Mesue

Meſue alſo witneſſeth that many have been recovered by the ſame, and he directeth that the Conſerve of Roſes be new, not above a yeer old, taken in a great quantity, and often, with Medicines, Meat, and drink, and alſo by it ſelf at any hour. But firſt give Clenſers, becauſe it will otherwiſe aſtringe and retain the excrementitious matter in the Lungs. But when breath begins to fail, and the Patient cannot raiſe flegm, let him take expectorating things; as Syrup of Hyſop and Colts-foot, and other Lohochs. And if heat ariſe from drying too much, give Syrup of Violets, Jujubes, the Mucilage of Fleabane and Quinces, and the like.

Montanus, *Valeriola*, and *Foreſtus*, ſay that they have ſeen ſome cured by taking Sugar of Roſes in great quantities. An Apothecary whom I knew in a Conſumption, made a great quantity of Sugar of Roſes for himſelf, and eat it conſtantly, by which he was cured.

An Infuſion of Yarrow, Tormentil, Burnet, and Conſerve of Roſes made in *Balneo Mariæ*, is very good, as it is deſcribed in the Chapter of ſpitting of blood, if it be uſed twenty daies together.

The Decoction of Bugle in Mutton Broth, doth excellent againſt a Conſumption and inward ulcers, it doth a little gently looſen the belly againſt the Nature of all the Conſolidæ.

Trallianus, *lib. 7. cap.* 1. boaſts that he cured many with Blood-ſtone. The preparation and uſe whereof we have ſhewed in the Cure of ſpitting blood.

The Syrup of the Juyce of Ground Ivy is commended by *Quercetan*, thus made:

Take of *the Juyce of Ground Ivy two pound and an half*: *let it be digeſted in* Balneo Mariæ. *To this Juyce well refined, put Sugar of Roſes one pound*; *Penides four ounces*: *Boyl them to a Syrup, to be taken now and then a ſpoonful.*

He alſo addeth the flower of Brimſtone to it to make it into a Lohoch, of which he gives four times in a day; and he boaſteth that he hath therewith cured many.

The Syrup of the flowers of St. Johns wort, made by Infuſion in *Balneo Mariæ*, is very good in this Diſeaſe, as alſo for all inward ulcers.

The Syrup of Comfry is excellent; for it clenſeth, healeth, and ſtrengtheneth by aſtringing; as alſo Comphry Roots boyled in Broth

It is affirmed that many have been cured by this Hydromel.

Take of *China Roots ſliced, ſix ounces*: *Colts-foot Roots three ounces*: *Burdock and Avens Roots, of each three ounces*: *Elicampane Roots two ounces*: *Lungwort Leaves, and Scabious Leaves and Roots, both the Veronicaes, Ulmaria, and Herb Two-pence, of each two handfuls*: *all the Capillar Herbs, of each one handful*: *the tops of Bugle, Bettony, Cowſlip flowers, and red Veronica, of each four pugils*: *Ground Ivy Leaves and Roots three handfuls*: *Jujubes, Dates, Sebeſtens, and Raiſons ſtoned, of each one ounce and an half*: *Spaniſh Liquoris one ounce and an half*. *Let them all, being well ſliced, boyl in thirty two pints of ſpring Water till half be conſumed, with a little gentle fire*: *ad to the Liquor being ſtrained, of the beſt Honey four pound*: *Boyl it again, and ſkim it*; *then ſtrain it through an Hippocras Bag, putting thereto half an ounce of Cinnamon, ſix drams of Coriander ſeeds*: *Annis and ſweet Fennel ſeeds, of each three drams*: *put the Liquor in a large Veſſel, and let it work in the Sun*; *for ſo it will be done in forty daies*; *otherwiſe it will be longer*: *but you muſt keep the Veſſel alwaies full and open, that it may froath over*: *therefore you muſt make more Hydromel than the Veſſel will contain*; *and if the diſeaſe require it you may uſe it freſh before it worketh till you make another in the Veſſel*; *and you may make this quantity twice or thrice at once, becauſe it muſt be taken divers months together*. *Let him take a good draught hereof twice or thrice in a day.*

This following Syrup is made more eaſily, and hath great Vertue:

Take of *the Juyce of Ground Ivy, Veronica, and Carduus Benedictus refined, of each eight ounces*; *in which, boyl gently Maiden-hair, Politrice, Scabious, and Lettice, of each half a handful*: *Diſſolve in the ſtrained Liquor one pound and an half of white Sugar*. *Make a Syrup well boyled, adding in the end three drams of the Extract of Juniper*; *Juyce of Liquoris and the Extract of Carduus, of each four ſcruples*. *Let the Patient take one ſpoonful an hour before dinner, and another before ſupper, and another at bed-time.*

Cardanus ſaith, that he cured many Conſumptions with this courſe following: namely, by giving no other nouriſhment than Barley Broth made without Fleſh, and Water with Sugar, and every morning four ounces of the Decoction of the Tails and Legs of Cray-fiſh made in Barley Water with two drams of Sugar.

Arcæus, *Ingraſſias*, *Fracaſtorius*, and *Eraſtus*, ſay with admiration, That they have cured many Conſumptions by the uſe only of Guajacum for a long time continued; yet this in reſpect of the antecedent cauſe, which is a hot and ſharp humor, ſeems to be an enemy.

Avenzoar reports that his Grand-father cured a Conſumption, with well leavened Bread, and Sallet Oyl, and alſo that he did the ſame.

This Pouder following is highly commended by *Valeſcus de Taranta*, and it is reported to be invented by *Haly Abbas*, and he ſaith, that he cured one with it. And *Foreſtus* ſaith that he cured his Brother with the ſame.

Take

Take of *white Poppy-ſeeds ten drams*: *Gum Arabick, Starch, and Gum Tragacanth, of each three drams*: *Purſlain-ſeed, and Mallows-ſeeds, of each five drams*: *Pompion, Melons, Cowcumbers, Gourds, and Quince ſeeds, of each ſix drams*: *Spodium, and Juyce of Liquoris, of each three drams*: *Penides the weight of all the reſt*: *make a Pouder*: *give every morning two drams thereof with the Syrup of Poppies or Jujubes*: *Let him alſo take it in Barley, Cream, or Almond Milk, and with other meats.*

Cappivaccius, and *Claudinus* do approve of Oyl of Vitriol to dry the Ulcer, giving two or three drops with Roſe-water or Juyce of Plantane, with a little ſugar.

Crollius alſo commends the Elixir Proprietatis which is made of the Spirit of Sulphur; with the Spirit of Wine, Myrrh, Aloes, and Saffron.

The Chymiſts do highly commend the Medicines made of Brimſtone, as the Flower, Milk, and Ballom thereof, as you may read in their Books: You may uſe them thus very wel.

Take of *the Flower of Brimſtone, and Pouder of Frankinſence, of each one ſcruple*: *put them into a hollow Apple, then roaſt it, and let the Patient eat it with ſugar every morning for eight or ten dayes together.* Or,

Take of *Conſerve of old Roſes, Diamargariton frigid, and Diapenidion, of each one ounce*: *Flower of Brimſtone three drams*: *make it up with clarified Honey, of which let him take the quantity of an Hazel-nut twice or thrice in a day.* Or,

Take of *Flor. Sulphuris three drams*: *Sugar diſſolved in Roſe-water three ounces*: *make Lozenges, which let him hold in his mouth often.* Or,

Take of *Lac. Sulphuris half a dram*: *Magiſtery of Pearl, and Coral, of each half a ſcruple*: *the Emulſion of Melon-ſeeds made with Coltsfoot or Veronica-water, two ounces*: *the Julep of Roſes ſix drams*: *Cinnamon-water, and Manus Chriſti, with Pearl, of each two drams*: *Mix them, and let him take two or three ſpoonful every morning.*

Some Chymiſts commend Antimonium, Diaphoreticum wel Calcined with thrice as much Saltpeter, ſo that al the vomiting quality be gone, which muſt be given every day in Lozenges made with Sugar of Roſes, or mixed with Conſerve of Roſes, or with the Medicines above mentioned.

The Ballom of Peru is good to heal Ulcers in the Lungs, if you give one drop made into a Pill with Sugar, every day.

The Pouder of Burnet, one dram given every day in Broth, is eſteemed excellent.

Ruffi Pills are commended by ſome taken one ſcruple every day, but made as followeth they do wonders.

Take of *the Maſs of Ruffi-pills, one ounce*: *Antimonium, Diabboreticum, and Gum of Guajacum, of each half an ounce*: *Make a Maſs with the Balſom of Peru*: *of this let him take one ſcruple every day for one Month.*

The Syrup of Coral, and Gelly of Quinces are good for the ſame.

Rodericus out of *Fonſeca* commends the Decoction of yellow Saunders for a good Medicine againſt Defluxions upon the Lungs; which he prepareth thus:

Take of *Succory and Sorrel Water, of each four pints*: *yellow Saunders ſliced three ounces*: *infuſe them one day, then boyl them in Balneo Mariæ in a cloſe Veſſel three hours*: *take three ounces of this every morning in Beer for fourty dayes together.*

Alſo al the Medicines which we mentioned for the Cure of Spetting blood, are here very good.

Fumigations may be wel uſed to dry the Ulcer of the Lungs very wel, and they muſt be often taken in at the Mouth and Noſe: You may make them thus:

Take of *the Gum of Ivy one dram and an half*: *Frankinſence one dram*: *Myrrh half a dram*: *Amber one ſcruple*: *Benoimin and Storax, of each half a dram*: *Hypociſtis two ſcruples*; *Coriander ſeeds, red Roſes, and red Saunders, of each one ſcruple*: *Pouder them, and mix them with the Mucilage of Gum Tragacanth*: *make Troches and caſt them upon Coals.*

Or, Make plain Fumes of Frankinſence, Myrrh, Maſtich, and Benjamin, alwayes in the Chamber that he may take in the dry and ſweet ſcent of them.

You may make a ſtronger Fumigation, but it is not to be uſed but in ſtrong bodies. Thus,

Take of *Gum Anime, or Gum of Guajacum, two drams*: *Tobacco half an ounce*: *dry Coltsfoot one ounce*: *Hyſop, white Horehound, Roſemary, and Orpiment, of each three drams*: *make a Pouder*; *put a little thereof into a Tobacco-pipe, take of it twice a day faſting, and half an hour after a draught of this Decoction.*

Take of *China and Sarſa of each half an ounce*: *Scabious, Coltsfoot, and ground Ivy, Ulmaria, Maiden-hair, and Avens Leaves and Roots, of each one handful*: *whol Barley one pugil*: *Liquoris ſcrap'd, and Currens, of each one ounce*: *boyl them to two pints, and put to it being ſtrained four ounces of ſugar of Roſes*: *Let him take half a pint twice in a day as aforeſaid.*

For the Rich People you may uſe a moiſt Fumigation made of the Decoction of Herbs, which is a good

a good way to carry the ſtrength of them directly to the Lungs: You may uſe al ſuch Herbs as are proper for the Lungs and to Cure Ulcers. Take this following for an Example:

Take of *green Coltsfoot eight handfuls: Hyſop two handfuls: bruiſe them and put them in a Pot with a little water, lute it cloſe, then ſet it into the Oven when the Bread is half baked, and then take it out with the Bread, and put a Funnel into a hole made at the top, and ſo take in the ſmoak through the mouth at the Lungs, and put it out at the Noſe, and it wonderfully provokes ſpetting.*

You muſt alſo Morning and Evening uſe a Cooling Liniment to the Breaſt. As,

Take of *Gum Tragacanth and Arabick of each one dram: infuſe them in Roſe water a day and a night: put then thereto of Oyl of Violets one ounce and an half: Freſh Butter half an ounce: Sal. Prunellæ two drams: Campbire one ſcruple: Breaſt-milk as much as will ſerve: Mix them in a Mortar to an Oyntment.*

To Repair a Conſumption, or to Prevent or Hinder it beſides Reſtoring Diets, which are principally made of Barley, Almonds, Pine-nuts, Rice, Nuts, and the like, which Authors declare; Milk commended at firſt is very good, and a Bath of hot Water of Barley and Almonds bruiſed: but this is not good in a Catarrh, nor while there is a putrid Feaver, nor when the Lungs are ful of Excrements.

Let his Drink be Water and Sugar, Barley Water, and Liquoris: an Infuſion of Liquoris, a thin Hydromel, or a weak Decoction of China.

The End of the Seventh Book.

THE EIGHTH BOOK OF THE PRACTICE OF PHYSICK.

Of the Diſeaſes of the Heart.

The PREFACE.

THE Heart *hath many Diſeaſes, Similary, Organick, and Common: But becauſe few will ſubmit to the Phyſitian, in regard of the nobleneſs of the part, which will endure long pain, but a man is ſuddenly gone, and there is no time for Phyſick; we who intend to bring all our Labors into practice, will lay down only three Diſeaſes of the Heart, which are uſual, and require many Medicines; and we ſhall bring them into three Chapters. The firſt ſhall be of Swooning. The ſecond of Palpitation of the Heart. And the third of Weakneſs.*

Chap. 1. *Of* Syncope, *or Swooning.*

Syncope is defined by *Galen*, 12. meth. c. 5. to be a ſudden failing of all the Strength: For although the Heart only ſuffer, and the Vital Spirits are only intercepted; yet when it fails, the reſt muſt ſuffer, becauſe they have a continual and neceſſary influence from it.

It is called a ſudden failing of all the Strength, that it may be diſtinguiſhed from other Diſeaſes, in which the ſtrength goes by degrees, till death come: nor is the Doctrine of *Avicen* againſt it, *Fen.* 1. *Lib.* 3. *Tract.* 2. *Cap.* 2. where he propounds the ſign of a Syncope that comes by degrees; for although the Cauſes that diſſolve the Spirits, do ſomtimes work by degrees, yet when they grow great they make a ſudden Syncope: and therefore *Avicen* rather propoundeth the ſigns that go before a Syncope, than thoſe that accompany it.

Moreover, This Definition may ſeem to agree with an Apoplexy, in which there is a ſudden failing of all the ſtrength; but in an Apoplexy there is ſtrength in the Heart, and the Pulſe is generally great and full. And alſo there is great hinderance of breath, with ſnorting; but in a Syncope the breath is no waies ſtopped.

The

The queſtion is, Why? When the action of the heart ceaſeth, doth the action of the Brain alſo ceaſe, ſince the Animal Spirit is made of the Vital by way of Concoction, and muſt therefore ſtay ſome time in the Brain, although the Vital do not conſtantly come to it? We anſwer, That the Brain as all other parts, for the perfecting of its actions doth alwaies ſtand in need of adventitious heat, which is brought to it by the Vital Spirits, and therefore when the Vital Spirits come not, neither doth heat come for the Brain to perform its functions.

There are other Diſeaſes very like to Syncope, differing only in degrees from it, namely, *Eccluſis*, *Leipothumia*, and *Aſphuxia*: *Eccluſis*, is a light fainting: *Leipothumia*, or *Leipopſuchia*, or *Apopſuchia*, is a very ſtrong and great fainting: *Syncope* is the greateſt, which if it go ſo far that the pulſe in the whol Body ceaſeth to beat, it is called *Aſphyxia*, which is next unto death.

The word *Synchope*, was not uſed by *Hippocrates*, and the Ancient Greeks; but they call'd this Diſeaſe *Leipothymia*, *Lipopſychia*, and *Aſphyxia*. But it was invented a little before *Galens* time, and uſed for the greateſt; ſo *Galen*, 1. *ad. Glauc. cap.* 14. ſaith, *Leipothymia* is an imperfect Syncope, and goes before it.

By what hath been ſaid, it appears, that the part affected is the Heart, where the Vital Spirits are all made; by whoſe influence the Natural heat and Spirits in every part are made to act: therefore when that ceaſeth by ſtoppage of the Influx of the Vital Spirits, it is neceſſary that the ſtrength of all parts ſhould fail, and their actions ceaſe.

The immediate Cauſe of this Diſeaſe, is the defect of the Vital Spirits, not wholly, for then ſudden death would come; but ſo great, that Nature is conſtrained (leſt the ſtrength of the Heart ſhould totally fail) to fetch the Spirits from the other parts to the Heart, by which means the parts loſe their functions.

Now this defect of Spirits comes four waies: Either becauſe they are Naturally few; or becauſe they are diſſipated, and ſpent; or becauſe they are preternaturally altered and corrupted; or laſtly, becauſe they are ſuffocated and deſtroyed: They are few by fault of the faculty making, or matter from which they are made. The Faculty is hurt, either by a diſeaſe proper to the Heart, or by conſent from another part.

The proper Diſeaſes of the Heart which are the chief, are great diſtempers, which overthrow the Natural temper, or deſtroy the ſubſtance of the parts, or of the Natural heat; as ſwooning Feavers, ſharp, and malignant, *Syntacticæ*, or *Colliquantes*, or fainting, peſtilential, hectical, or *Maraſmodes*, which conſume; to this come organical diſeaſes, as too much conſtriction and dilatation, and conſtant ſolutions, which come to the Ventricles of the Heart.

The Faculty may be hurt by conſent from other parts, which have great ſympathy with the Heart, as the Brain and Liver, and ſomtimes from the mouth of the Stomach, by reaſon of its neerneſs and exquiſite ſence; from whence a Syncope is divided into a Heart and Stomach Syncope. The Cardiaca or Heart Syncope, is when the Heart is principally affected; but the Stomachia, or Stomach Syncope, is that which comes by conſent from the Stomach. Somtimes it comes from the Mother, by filthy vapors ſent from thence to the Heart, from whence comes the Suffocation of the Matrix, Apnoea, or want of breath, and Hyſterical Syncopes, as thoſe vapors do aſſault the Lungs, Diaphragma, or the Heart.

The fault is in the Matter, when the Air or Blood is defective, or corrupted; from whence the Vital Spirits are generated. There is defect of Air when the Reſpiration and Tranſpiration is hindered; but the defect of Blood, is when Nutrition is hindered; there is a corruption of both, when their qualities are changed: So when the Air is infected in time of Peſtilence, it begets Leipothymia and Syncope, as alſo ſtinking vapors, and ſweet alſo do the ſame with ſome Women; and the blood is corrupted from evil meats.

Too great Evacuations, whether ſenſible or inſenſible, do diſperſe the Spirits. The ſenſible are chiefly of Blood, from the Mouth, Noſe, Womb, Belly, Hemorrhoids, Phlebotomy, and great Wounds: and next of other Humors, which though they are Excrementitious, yet becauſe of their great Evacuation the Spirits are much diſperſed, and cauſe a Syncope. Theſe Humors are diſcharged by Vomit, Stool, Urine, Sweat, the opening of a great Impoſthume, eſpecially if it be inward, as an Empyema; or outward, as in a Dropſie when the Navil is tapped.

The inſenſible Evacuations are by the Rarifaction of the Skin, and by the acrimony and thinneſs of the Humors, immoderate heat, hot Baths or Houſes, great Labors. Alſo long watchings, and faſting, Lechery, great anger, and joy, long and violent ſickneſs do diſſipate the Spirits; as alſo great pain of the Heart, Stomach, Guts, Reins, Ears, Teeth, and of all Nervous parts.

An evil diſpoſition of the Bowels doth alter and corrupt the Spirits, and whatſoever doth procure a malignant quality which is adverſe to the Heart, as Air, Stinks, veriemous and peſtilential, taken in by the Breath, or bred in the Body from putrifaction of Humors; as alſo poyſon taken in, or applied outward, or ſent to the Heart by biting of venemous Creatures.

Laſtly, The vehement returning of blood and Spirits to the Heart, and an abundance of evil va-

pors gathered about the Heart and the parts adjacent, and too much cold and thick blood gathered about the Heart and its Veins, Arteries, and parts adjacent, do ſuffocate and deſtroy the Spirits.

We lately ſaw a Noble Lady, a Virgin, which from her Infancy was ſo ſubject to this Diſeaſe, that with every light paſſion of the mind ſhe was taken therwith, taken with a violent Syncope which uſhered death in by a ſudden return of blood and Spirits to her heart; for when ſhe ſhould have been married to a fine yong man which lov'd her deerly, and her Parents, Friends, and Kindred were ſolemnly met about it, they gave her a Pen to write her hand to the Contract; but ſhe having not fully written her name fel down dead upon the ground: Hence we eaſily conjecture, that there was a great and ſudden retraction of the Blood and Spirits to the Heart by a vehement paſſion of the mind, which choaked the Natural heat, and the Spirits therein, of which ſhe died ſuddenly.

Petrus Salius Diverſus ſaw, as he reporteth, Lib. de aff. part. cap. 4. a Girle of fourteen yeers old fal into a Syncope from abundance of cold and thick blood garhered about her heart and the great veſſels: for having for a whol day a heavineſs of head with giddineſs and diſturbance, ſhe died the next day after ſuddenly: After being opened, the blood appeared ſo congealed in the great Artery and Vena Cava or hollow Vein, that taking it by the end you might draw it out like a Sword from a Scabbard.

Wherefore we judged, That the ſudden death came from the interception and ſtopping of the Veins by congealed blood.

This happeneth ſeldom, for you ſhal ſeldom ſee blood in dead bodies ſo congealed: for the veins have ſuch a property to retain blood, that even after death they keep it thin, though without them it groweth alwayes thick.

But *Salius* gives the Reaſon of this Congealation by comparing it with blood without the Veſſels, which as ſoon as it is cold, is congealed; and the ſooner from the coldneſs, thickneſs and ſlymineſs of the Melancholick or Phlegmatick humor therein contained.

Somthing like to this may be-fal blood conſtrained in the veins which abounding with vicious juyce thick and cold, doth ſo fill the greater Veins, that it ſtops the ſpirits, and ſo extinguiſheth them: and then the blood grows cold and thick, from thoſe humors which otherwiſe would have been thin.

The *Spagiricks* refer this to a congealing Spirit, made of a peculiar and extraordinary mixture of Humors, which ſince it ſeldom happeneth, the Diſeaſe is very rare: And truly a ſimple Refrigeration cannot cauſe that concretion, for then in dead bodies, eſpecially in winter, the blood would alwayes be thick in the Veins, but we find it alwaies thin; but we may ſuppoſe that this Congealing Spirit is like that which cauſeth a Catalepſis, or Congealation which makes the parts inflexible.

The Chymiſts do acknowledge ſuch kind of Congealing Spirits to be in many Creatures, Vegetables, and Minerals; ſuch as are reported to be raiſed out of the Earth, in ſome Hiſtories of Men and Beaſts who have been Congealed by filthy vapors coming from Earth-quakes, or Dens; ſo, that their bodies became preſently ſtiffe: And *Cardanus* ſaith, That ſuch ſpirits are in Thunder-bolts, in the Hiſtory of the Eight Mowers, who Supping under an Oak were ſtruck ſtiffe, and remained as at firſt, the one ſeeming to Eat, the other to reach the Pot, and the other to Drink.

The Signs to this Diſeaſe by either are from the Subject which is more capable to receive it, or from the Fit either coming or preſent, or from the Cauſes that produce it.

The Subjects which are moſt fit to receive a Syncope are men who by ſome Natural Debility or Weakneſs from ſome Diſeaſe, become faint-hearted. Women rather than Men, eſpecially in their Terms, or with Child: As alſo they who have fine Conſtitutions, ſubject to the Jaundice, Spleen, or Melancholly.

Theſe things ſignifie that a Syncope is coming to them who are ſubject to it; Anxiety and ſudden diſturbance of mind, heavineſs in the head, giddineſs, an apprehenſion of divers colours, green, and yellow, a ſudden and often change of the colour in the face, and of the beating of the Pulſe.

When *Leipothymy* is preſent the ſame ſigns are, but greater; and there is often a cold ſweat, alſo the ſick complain of their faintneſs.

But theſe ſigns ſhew a Syncope, A ſudden failing of al ſtrength, a ſlow pulſe, low and at length ſtopping, a pale and blewiſh face, coldneſs of al the body, eſpecially externally; a cold ſweat eſpecially in the temples, neck, and breaſt, from whence the Diſeaſe is named.

The ſigns of the Cauſes are commonly manifeſt, for Feavers malignant, acute, ſyncopal or fainting, cauſe a proper Syncope or Swooning, are eaſily known: As alſo thoſe external Cauſes which make a ſudden Syncope, may be plainly ſeen, As Anger extraordinary and Joy, a ſudden Fright, ſtinking ſmels, great bleeding, and other large evacuations, long watchings, and faſting, much lechery, and grievous pain.

Theſe things do ſignifie that the Humors and the Body are thin, a ſharp noſe, hollow eyes, temples fallen; and the gnawing of the mouth of the ſtomach, trouble of mind, pricking, heat and great pain, do ſhew abundance of Choller.

When

When there is abundance of crude Humors you may know by the enlarging of the body, ſwelling about the breaſt, a pale colour, black and blew, a ſmal, obſcure, and unequal pulſe.

A ſwounding by way of Sympathy from other parts, is known by the ſigns of thoſe parts affected; ſo that if it come from the ſtomach, that hath been diſtempered with loathing, vomiting, gnawing, the mouth hath been bitter, and dry, and the like. The ſame Judgement is to be taken in other parts: but if you ſee no ſign of any other part affected, you may conclude that it comes principally from the heart.

Moreover, A Syncope is diſtinguiſhed from other Diſeaſes by its proper ſigns. From an Epilepſy, becauſe that hath a Convulſion, but a Syncope not: From an Apoplexy, becauſe in that the breath is ſtopt, and there is often ſnorting, and the pulſe is not much abated, except when Death is at hand; but in a Syncope the Pulſe is almoſt gone, and the breath is free. It is diſtinguiſhed from the Mother, for in that the breathing parts are moſt affected, ſo that the Patient is almoſt ſtrangled, but the Pulſe is not much altered, nor the colour of the face, but keeps its natural complection, and ſometimes is higher coloured; but in a Syncope the breath is not ſtopt, but the pulſe is almoſt gone, and the face is pale: But ſometimes a Syncope is joyned with the Suffocation of the Mother, and then the Pulſe is not perceived.

The Prognoſtick of this Diſeaſe is firſt taken from *Hippocrates*, Aph. 41. Sect. 2. *They who often and violently faint without a manifeſt Cauſe, do die ſuddenly.* For as it is ſaid, a great Syncope doth quite take away the ſtrength from the heart.

A Syncope from which a man is not recovered by Roſe Water thrown in his face, and Wine given to drink with ſneezing-pouder put into the Noſe is deadly.

When one is raiſed from a Syncope, health is not to be promiſed; for if his Pulſe return not, but his colour be wan, and he ſtill be cold, he wil quickly Relapſe, in which is danger.

That Syncope which comes from immoderate Evacuations, fear, ſorrow, or ſome evident Cauſe, is of leſs danger than that which comes from an internal Cauſe.

As for the Cure, becauſe it comes from divers Cauſes, it muſt be various.

But of what Cauſe ſoever it come, in the time of the Fit theſe are good, Lying upon the back, throwing of cold Water in the face, provoking to neez, putting of ſtrong Wine, Cinnamon, or imperial Water, Aqua vitæ, Coeleſtis, and the like into the mouth, holding of hot bread to the Noſe, loud calling and ſhaking, ſtopping of the Noſtrils, wringing of the Fingers, pulling of the Hair, rubbing, binding, and cupping.

But in reſpect of the Cauſes which are divers, you muſt vary the Cure thus:

If it come from want of meat, he wil be Cured with ſtrong Wine, and a Toaſt, or Sop: Alſo with nouriſhing Broths, and Reſtoring diſtilled Waters among other things, a diſh of Eggs with ſugar, Wine and Cinnamon deſcribed in the following Chapter.

If it come from thinneſs of the Humors by which the ſpirits do eaſily flie away, give him ſweet things and meats of good juyce, and thickning; let the pores of the skin be ſtopt with Oyl of Roſes, and let the Patient ſtay in a cold place.

If it come from the Mother, you muſt give Medicines for that.

If it come from ſome evil quality, give Cordials and Antidotes, ſuch as are preſcribed in malignant Feavers.

If from poyſon, give things to expel it: Firſt a Vomit, and then Treacle; and then if he feel burning or gnawing in the Guts, let him take Milk or Butter, or fat Broth, or cooling Cordial Potions.

If it come of immoderate Evacuation, let the Patient be refreſhed with Scents, Meat, Drink, ſleep, and reſt.

If from too great loſs of Blood, lay him upon his bed, with his Head backwards, daſh his face with cold Water, give him a little Wine with cold Water.

If it come of too much Purging, give him new Treacle, or old if you cannot get new, with two grains of Opium diſſolved in Wine, or three grains of Laudanum which is better. And let the Belly be anointed all over with this following Oyl:

Take of *Oyl of Myrtles, and Quinces, of each one ounce and an half: Oyl of Wormwood one ounce: With a little Roſe Vinegar mix them and anoint often.*

Give a Clyſter of ſteeled Milk with three Yolks of Eggs, and two drams of Philonium Romanum.

Uſe Frictions of the Arms and upper parts, give him a Sop in Wine, or Wine alone.

And laſtly, Every Evacuation whether it be of Blood from the Noſe, or Womb, or other parts, or of Humors by Vomit, or Stool, muſt be ſtopped with their proper Medicines preſcribed in their ſeveral Chapters.

That Syncope which comes from too much Sweat, is cured by Medicines that reſtrain Sweat; as with Cold, or Roſe Water alone, or with a little Vinegar ſprinkled upon the Face and Hands. Alſo

ſo let the Air be cooled with the ſame Water, and with Fanning. Apply cold Epithems to the Heart made of Roſe, Sorrel, and Borrage Water, with Pouder of Diamargariton frigid, with a little Wine to make it pierce.

You muſt alſo give often cooling Juleps made of Syrup of Sorrel, Violets, and Apples, or Lemmons, with cooling Waters, and Lapis Prunellæ. Let the Pores be cloſed with anointing the Skin with Oyl of Roſes, Myrtles, and Maſtich. Let him abſtain from Wine. Let him not be rubbed, but let him move often gently, being lightly covered.

Let his bed be perfumed with this Pouder following:

Take of *the flowers of Water-lillies, red Roſes, of each three ounces: the beſt Labdanum half an ounce: Storax two drams: Myrtles, and grains of Sumach, of each two ounces. Make a Pouder.*

If it come from ſuffocation of the Spirits, you muſt call them forth by Frictions, Ligatures, Cupping-glaſſes, and the like. And if this Suffocation came of Repletion, you muſt bleed plentifully, but by degrees.

If it comes from terror and fear, you muſt alſo bleed, leſt it cauſe an Obſtruction or Inflamation.

Chap. 2. *Of the Palpitation, or Breathing of the Heart.*

AS in a Syncope the motion of the Heart is diminiſhed, ſo in this Diſeaſe it is depraved. It is wrongly ſtiled by ſome a trembling of the Heart, when trembling is a paſſion of the Animal and voluntary motion, and is not proper to any parts but ſuch as have voluntary motion.

Galen in his Book of Trembling, Palpitation, and Convulſion, ſaith, That Palpitation comes only from the Diſeaſe that is from the Cauſe which lifteth up, and depreſſeth the part, without any help of the Faculty; but Trembling comes partly from the Faculty, partly from the Diſeaſe. Hence it is that many uſing the word Palpitation indifferently to any part, think it is in the Heart, as in the Skin and Muſcles, in which it comes from wind driven violently thither: for if the Heart be moved as a Bladder by water or wind, they ſuppoſe that to be a Palpitation. But the reaſon is different; for the Skin and Muſcles cannot naturally dilate and contract themſelves, but by Diſeaſes. But the Heart hath a Natural Faculty to contract and dilate it ſelf, therefore a Palpitation cannot be without its motion. And they do in vain muſter up *Galens* Reaſons, ſo thought by them, to prove that the Palpitation of the Heart comes not by Nature, but by a Diſeaſe, or cauſe of a Diſeaſe. For *Galen* in all thoſe places ſpeaks of no other Palpitation than that which is in the Skin and other external parts, and not of the palpitation of the Heart, which is of another Nature; and *Galen* 2. de ſympt. cauſ. cap. 2. ſaith that the Palpitation of the Heart and Arteries, is different from that of the other parts.

Therefore the Palpitation of the Heart is an immoderate and preternatural ſhaking of the part, with a great Diaſtole or Dilatation, and a vehement Syſtole or contraction which ſometimes is ſo great that as *Fernelius* obſerves, it hath often broken the Ribs adjoyning, & ſometimes diſplaced them which are over the Paps; and ſometimes it hath ſo dilated an Artery forth into an Aneuriſm as big as ones fiſt, in which you might both ſee and feel the pulſation.

This immoderate ſhaking of the Heart comes from the Pulſative Faculty provoked.

But here may be objected, That in Feavers all theſe things are found, for this is an immoderate Syſtole and Diaſtole, by the provocation of the Faculty through ſome troubleſom matter, or by encreaſe of heat in the Heart.

To this we anſwer, That the motion of the Heart in Feavers is diſtinguiſhed from Palpitation, only by its degrees, and the depraved motion of the Heart when it is vehement, is called Palpitation; but if it be not vehement, it is called a quick, great, and ſwift Pulſe, and is referred to the differences of Pulſes.

Now the Efficient Cauſes of this Palpitation may be referred to Three Heads: Either it is ſomwhat which troubleth and pricketh; or neceſſity of Refrigeration; or defect of Spirits: which two latter may be referred to the encreaſe of Cuſtom.

The Moleſting Cauſe is moſt uſual, ſo that many Authors knew no other, the other are rare, and that is either a vapor or wind which troubleth the Heart either in quantity or quality, or both. The quality is either manifeſt or occult.

A vapor troubleſom in a manifeſt quality, is either in the Heart and its parts adjoyning; or it is ſent from other parts; and this ſuddenly getting to the inmoſt parts of the Heart, doth ſtir up the Expulſive Faculty, which being Naturally very ſtrong, ariſeth powerfully with all its force to expel the enemy.

In

In the Heart, and thereabout, especially in the Pericardium, are gathered sometimes cold and thick Humors, which send up vapors to the Ventricles of the Heart, which cause Palpitation.

But from more remote parts, vapors and wind are sent to the Ventricles of the Heart; as from the Stomach, Spleen, Mother, and the other parts of the lower Belly.

Many times a Vapor that troubles the Heart by an occult quality, ariseth in malignant Feavers, Plague, and after Poyson, and sometimes from Worms putrified, and the terms stopped from corrupt seed, or other putrid matter which do much stir up the Expulsive Faculty thereof.

Divers Humors do molest the Heart, either with their quantity or quality; so too much Blood oppressing the Veins, Arteries, and Ventricles of the Heart, so that they cannot move freely, makes a Palpitation by hindering motion, which that the Faculty may oppose it moveth more violently. So Water in the Pericardium, being in great quantity, doth compress the substance of the Heart and its Ventricle, so that they cannot freely dilate themselves. The same do Humors flowing in abundance to the Heart, as it happens sometimes in Wounds, Fear, and Terror.

Humors offending in quality, hurt the Heart, if they be venemous, putrid, corrupt, sharp, or too hot, especially burnt Choller coming to the Heart, and provoking its Expulsion.

Also Tumors, though seldom, cause this Disease; as Inflamation of the Heart, Imposthumes, or Swelling in the Arteries of the Lungs neer the Heart; which *Galen* saith befel *Antipater* the Physitian, 4. de loc. aff. by which, after an unequal Pulse, he fell into a Palpitation and an Asthma, and so died: so *Dodonæus* reports that he found a Callus in the great Artery next to the Heart, which caused a Palpitation for many yeers. Also Tumors in the Pericardium, whether they be without humors and scirrhus, or with humors in them, as the Hydatides or watery Pustles, and little stones, bones, and pieces of flesh are sometimes growing in the Heart, which cause Palpitation. So *Platerus* reports, that in one who had a long Palpitation, and died thereof, there was found a bone in his Heart. But *Schenkius* reports, that in a Priest who was from his youth to the age of forty two troubled with a Palpitation, there was found in the bottom of his Heart an Excrescens of flesh which weighed eight drams, and resembled another Heart.

The Second Cause of Palpitation is necessity of refrigeration, which is, when there is a preternatural heat in the Heart, by which the Spirits are inflamed within, and therefore the motion of the Heart and Arteries is encreased, that what is spent, may be restored, and the heat cooled; and this comes sometimes from an internal cause, which is rare, but oftener of an external, as anger, vehement exercise, and the like. As *Platerus* observed in a yong man, who being hot and angry at Tennis, fell into a Palpitation of the Heart, and so died.

The third Cause, is the defect of Spirits which comes by hunger, watching, anger, Joy, fear, shame, and great Diseases, and other causes which do suddenly dissipate the Spirits, which defect the Heart laboring to repair, that it may beget more quick and plentiful, and send them into the whol Body sooner, it doth enlarge its motion, and make it quicker.

You must observe for conclusion that it is more ordinary to see a Palpitation which comes by consent from other parts, than from the Heart it self: For it hath a consent with all parts by the Veins and Arteries, by which, Vapors, Wind, and Humors are sent. Which all shall be shewed in the Diagnosis following:

The Diagnosis or knowledg of this Disease, is directed either to the Disease, or the Causes which produce it.

The Disease is subject to sence; it may be felt with the hands, somtimes seen and heard; for the Artery may be seen to leap especially in the Jugular. And *Forestus* saith it may be heard, by an Example of a yong man, that they who passed by might hear it by laying their Ear to the Window.

Also the Causes are distinguished by their Signs: A hot distemper is known by the greatness of the Pulse and swiftness, by a Feaver and heat of the Breast, by great and often breathing, and desire of cold things.

If the Palpitation come of wind, it quickly comes and goes, and is presently raised by little motion, and the Breath is difficult, with trembling sometimes at the knees, mists in the Eyes, noise in the Ears, and sometimes pain of some part, which quickly is gone; but you must gather the Nature and quality of the Vapor by the signs of the Humor which aboundeth in any part, because vapors do always arise from Humors.

If the Palpitation come from Humors in the Heart, the Disease doth not come so suddenly, and continueth longer, and you may know what kind of humor it is by the signs of the Humor which abounds throughout the whol Body. And especially if it be from Blood, from which it most often proceedeth; and this is known by a divers and unequal Pulse, sometimes great, sometimes smal, slow, and swift, to which the Breathing answereth in proportion; the Patients heart seemeth to be bound and oppressed, as appears by the exceeding heat, distension of the Veins, redness of Face, the time being Spring, the Age, Region, and Diet causing blood to abound.

That

That which comes by conſent from other parts, is known by the proper ſigns of the parts affected, ſo we know that it is from the ſtomach, when there is want of Appetite, loathing, vomiting of baſe Humors, and gnawing at the Stomach. A troubleſom breathing about the Pancreas or Spleen, or any other diſeaſe of the Spleen, ſheweth that the matter lurketh there, from whence the vapors fly to the Heart; ſo ſuppreſſion of the Terms, and Hyſterical fits, declare that it comes from the Womb.

The Water abounding in the Pericardium is harder to be known, but we may conjecture, if the Pulſe be weak and faint, and the Patient bemoaneth himſelf, that his heart as it were is ſomtimes in Water, and is ſuffocated, and if it be conſtant, and he incline to an Atrophy or Hectick.

If malignant humors cauſe it, there will be great change in the Pulſe, a loſs of ſtrength, ſomtimes fainting, and other ſigns of malignity.

If it come from a Tumor there is remarkable variety in the Pulſe, and the motion of the Heart is different from the natural, very unequal and inordinate, and if the humor be hot, there will be great inflamation in the Body, great thirſt, difficulty of breathing and fainting will follow with death: but if the Tumor be hard, and in the Pericardium, the diſeaſe is conſtant, and the Patient decayes by degrees without any manifeſt cauſe: if fleſh, or any more ſolid thing grow to the heart, there will be a continual Palpitation from the beginning of the Diſeaſe to the end of Life.

Laſtly, You may know when it comes by want of Spirits, by the precedent cauſes, which deſtroyed the Spirits, and by the quick and ſmal pulſe, and when it comes from the leaſt labor or motion. Somtimes the like befals them that are well from walking or other motion, with a change of Pulſe, and a reſembling Palpitation.

The Prognoſtick is to be taken thus: It is dangerous from the hinderance of the motion of the Heart, by which Life is preſerved, and it brings Syncopes and death: For it is a true Obſervation of *Galen*, Com. Aph. 41. Sect. 2. and 5. de loc. aff. cap. 2. All that in youth, or in declining age are troubled with the Palpitation of the Heart very much, die before they are old; for the often Palpitation is a ſign that the Vital faculty was very weak.

A Palpitation by Propriety is worſe than by conſent, and ſomtimes deadly. And that which is of an internal, is worſe than that which comes of an external Cauſe, unleſs it be from poyſon, or ſome great wound.

If it come from a Tumor, or ſolution of Unity, it is incurable.

The Cure is various, according to the variety of the Cauſes: and firſt that which comes from a peculiar diſtemper of the Heart and Pericardium, is incurable; therefore we muſt look only at the Cure of that which is by conſent, which depends upon the divers diſeaſes of the parts, whoſe Cure muſt be ſought in their proper Chapters.

But beſides thoſe Remedies which take away the Cauſe, you muſt uſe thoſe which aſſwage the Symptomes by refreſhing the Heart, and ſtrengthening it, and which diſcuſs the vapors which ariſe from melancholly, or crude & wateriſh Humors; as Cordial Juleps, Opiates, Epithems, & Perfumes, which are preſcribed in weakneſs, and theſe that follow.

Take of *Conſerve of Balm, Roſemary-flowers, Borrage-flowers, and Clove-gilly-flowers, of each one ounce: Confection of Acorns and old Treacle, of each one dram: the Powder of Diamber, and Diamoſchi dulcis, of each one ſcruple: with the Syrup of Citron Barks make an Opiate, which let him take often.*

Take of *Bugloſs, Roſe, and Orenge-flower Water, of each two ounces: the ſyrup of Clove-gilly-flowers, one ounce and an half: Cinnamon Water half an ounce: the ſpirit of Roſes two drams: Confection of Acorns one dram: mix them and give two ſpoonfuls now and then.*

This following Liquor which immitateth the Juyce of Hearts deſcribed in the following Chapter, is good.

Take of *Hogs or Sheeps Hearts three: Cinnamon and Cloves of each one dram: Lettice and Sorrel ſeeds, of each one dram and an half: white Wine two ounces: Borrage, Scabious, and Roſe Water, of each one ounce and an half: Confection of Alkermes, one dram: boyl them all between Two Diſhes, and let him take two ſpoonfuls of the Liquor morning and evening.*

Take of *Red Roſes and Roſemary-flowers of each two drams: Lavender flowers one dram: Angelica ſeeds, Citron peels, Cloves, Cinnamon, and Mace, of each half a dram: Saffron one ſcruple: Muſk and Amber-greece of each ſix grains: Make a Bag with red Silk and ſprinkle it with Roſe water and white Wine, and apply it warm to the Heart.*

Take of *Oyntment of Roſes half an ounce: Oyl of Cinnamon and Cloves of each ſix drops: Muſk and Amber-greece of each four grains: Mix it for a Liniment for the heart.*

Purging Clyſters and Carminative to expel Wind are often to be given.

But in the Fit it is beſt to open a vein; And *Galen* witneſſeth 5. de loc. aff. cap. 2. That he never did it without profit.

Some

Some apply Cupping Glaſſes without Scarrification to the Breaſt, which they ſay are excellent to diſcuſs Wind there contained. Others to the Hypochondria, when the matter of the Diſeaſe is there.

But *Zacutus Luſitanus* applied a Cupping Glaſs with Scarrification to the heart with wonderful ſucceſs, as you may read in *prax.admir.obſ.*133.*lib.*1.

Others commend true Rhapontick given to two ſcruples in Wine, or Wine wherein the ſame hath been ſteeped.

Chap. 3. *Of* WEAKNESSE.

ALthough Weakneſs of Strength doth generally comprehend the hinderance of al Actions, Animal, Vital, and Natural; yet more particularly it comprehends the Vital which are known by a Weak Pulſe: yet this Weakneſs uſeth to be found in al great Diſeaſes, in which Nature doth yeild or reſiſt the Cauſe.

Therefore as in Palpitation the Action of the Heart that is Pulſation is depraved, ſo in Weakneſs it is diminiſhed.

Which is the ſame with a Syncope, but it differs in this, In a Syncope it is ſo little that it is hardly perceived; but in Weakneſs the Pulſe is manifeſt and not ſo little.

In this alſo the Animal Faculty is alwaies offended: Hence comes weak motion without hurt of the Brain, Nerves, or Muſcles, but from the defect of Vital Spirits which are not ſo ſufficiently ſent to the Head that they may be made Animal.

The immediate Cauſe of Weakneſs is Defect of the natural heat and ſpirits from which the life and ſtrength of the parts do depend.

And this Defect is in every part from the Defect of Vital Spirits, and heat flowing from the heart.

Now the Vital Spirits are Defective, either becauſe they are not bred many; or becauſe they are diſſipated after they are Bred, or Corrupted, or Suffocated, as we ſaid in a Syncope, where there is this difference, That in a Syncope the Cauſes of Defect of Spirits, do ſuddenly produce their effect; but in Weakneſs they operate by degrees. And therefore in Syncopes and Leipothymia al the Vital Spirits almoſt, do ſuddenly fail, but in this there are fewer then ought to be communicated to every part.

Moreover, When the Natural heat wants not only adventitious heat, but alſo radical moiſture to feed upon: if this moiſture be wanting and diminiſhed, the natural heat muſt be leſs, and the ſtrength abated.

Now the Cauſes which hinder the ſpirits from being Generated, or maketh them diſperſe themſelves, or Corrupt, or Suffocate them, are propounded in the Treatiſe of a Syncope.

The Diagnoſis of this Diſeaſe needs no Explication becauſe it is manifeſt, and the Patients do complain of their Weakneſs. But the ſigns of the Cauſes were Propounded in the Syncope.

The Prognoſtick depends upon the various diſpoſition of Cauſes, for as they are greater or leſs, there is more or leſs danger.

The Cure of this Diſeaſe is to be directed to two things, To the taking away of the Cauſe, and the Reſtauration of the Heart and vital ſpirits.

The Cauſes are, almoſt al great Diſeaſes, in which either Nature yeilds to, or reſiſteth with difficulty, therefore the taking away of the Cauſe belongs to the Cure of almoſt al Diſeaſes: which you muſt take from their proper Chapters.

But the ſtrengthning of the Heart, and reſtoring of the vital ſpirits are to be here declared; ſomtimes to be preferred before the Cure of the Cauſe, when death ſeems to be at hand: but we muſt alwayes take heed leaſt when we encreaſe the ſtrength we encreaſe the Cauſe of the Diſeaſe: and therefore in a hot Diſeaſe you muſt uſe more temperate Cordials, but in a Cold Diſeaſe thoſe that are more hot.

Firſt then mix Cordials in his nouriſhment, as Confectio Alkermes, or Confectio de Hyacyntho in Broths, or with pleaſant Wine or Cinnamon Water, if there be great weakneſs.

Boyl alſo between two Diſhes a piece of a Leg of Mutton, after the skin and fat is taken off, and after that let the Patient drink the Broth, being ſtrained, at one draught. Or,

Take *the Fleſh of a Capon after the skin and fat is taken away, cut it in pieces, and put it in a glaſſed Pot well Luted, and ſet it in Balneo Mariæ to boyl for five hours, then let the Patient take two or three ſpoonfuls of the Liquor in all his Broths.*

Or you may make a diſtilled Water thus:

Take *a Capon or an Hen, after the ſkin is taken off, and the fat, cut it in pieces; then powr upon it Water of Bugloſs, Borrage, Sorrel, Roſes, and Orange Flowers, of each half a pound: the Poudr of three Sanders, Aromaticum Roſatum, and Cinnamon, of each half an ounce: yellow Sanders one ounce: Lemmons ſliced, three. Diſtill them according to art, which muſt be given every hour by the ſpoonful.*

The Juyce of Legs of Mutton only is of much uſe.

Half roaſt a Leg of Mutton, and ſlaſh it upon the Spit; take the Juyce and boyl it a little in the diſh, and give it either alone, or with Broth, or with Yolks of Eggs.

Valeriola doth much commend the Juyce taken out of Sheeps Hearts. And *Zacutus Lucitanus* confirms it by his Experience, ſaying, That he with this only Medicine a month continued, cured a rich man, who often ſwouned through weakneſs of the Vital Faculty, and reſolution of the Blood and Spirits, when many other Medicines had been uſed in vain.

The Juyce is thus taken forth:

Slit the Heart of a Sheep or Goat in the middle, then waſh it well, and laſt waſh it with Roſe Water; then cut it in ſlices and put it in a glaſſed Veſſel with a few Cloves, and no other Liquor. And after the Pot is well luted, put it into the Oven after it is drawn, till the Juyce come forth. Give this to the Patient to drink.

The Italians uſe Caudles of Yolks of Eggs, Wine, Sugar, and Cinnamon, which is very reſtorative.

Zacutus Lucitanus makes a fine diſh of twenty Yolks of Eggs; as you may ſee in the 107. Obſervation, Lib. 2. of his Admirable Practice.

You may make Cordial Juleps thus:

Take of *the Water of Bugloſs, Roſes, and Orange flowers, of each one ounce: Syrup of Apples and Lemmons, of each half an ounce: Confectio Alkermes one dram: Cinnamon Water two drams. Make a Julep.*

Or make this following mixture:

Take of *white Sugar two ounces: moiſten it well with the beſt Cinnamon Water; then put to it as much Spirit of Vitriol as is ſufficient to make it ſharp; then add of the Eſſence of Cinnamon four drops; the Eſſence of Mace, Nutmegs, and Annis ſeeds, of each three drops; the Eſſence of Cloves two drops. Mix them, and take it either by it ſelf, or in Broth.*

You may alſo make a reſtoring Opiate thus:

Take of *Conſerve of Roſes, Bugloſs, Borrage, and Clove gilli-flowers, of each one ounce: Citron Barks, and Nutmegs candied, of each three drams: one candied Myrobalan; Confectio Alkermes half an ounce: the Spirit of Roſes, and Eſſence of Citrons, of each half a dram: the Eſſence of Cinnamon ſix drops: With the Syrup of Apples make an Opiate; take it often.*

This Water following is excellent:

Take of *the Jelly of Harts-horn drawn with white Wine, four pints: the Blood of a Lamb and a Calf clenſed with the hands from all fibres, of each two pints: Muſchadel, Canary, and Malago Wine, of each three pints: of Calfs Hearts cut in pieces four: Crums of new white Bread dipped in Milk two pound and an half; the Juyce of Balm one pint and an half: Roſe and Orange Flower Water, of each one pint: great Citrons ſliced three: Cinnamon four ounces: Mace one ounce: Put them in a large glaſs Still, and ſtill them in* Balneo Mariæ.

You may make a moſt excellent and precious Cordial Water after this manner:

Take of *Amber-greeſe two drams: Muſk two ſcruples: Lignum Aloes one dram and an half: the white part of Benjamin three drams: after they are bruiſed and mixed, put them into Spirit of Wine, and ſetting them upon a gentle fire draw out the Tincture fully; and then filter off the Liquor, and draw off half the ſpirit with an Alembick upon the aſhes with a very gentle fire; keep the Liquor cloſe ſtopped in a Glaſs, with a Cork waxed over, and a bladder; of which you may give two, three, or four drops in Broth, or in Juleps, or in this following Syrup.*

Take of *Cinnamon Water four ounces: the beſt Roſe and Orange flower Water, of each ſix ounces: Mix them, and diſſolve therein as much Sugar candy as you can, and make it into a Syrup without fire; with a ſpoonful whereof, mix four Drops of the aforeſaid Cordial Liquor.*

Of the Ingredients remaining from the former Liquor, with as much of Damask Roſes, and four times as much Benjamin, you may make Cakes to perfume the Chamber.

Apply both Liquid and Solid Epithems to the Heart, and yong Pidgeons ſlit and ſprinkled with Cordial Pouders.

Apply

Apply to the Stomach, bags of Spices dipped in Wine. Let the Stones and privy Members be fomented with Confection of Alkermes diſſolved in Wine.

Let the Arteries of the **Temples, Hands and Feet** be touched with Confectio Alkermes, adding a little Cinnamon Water.

Apply this following to the **Noſe**:

Take of *the Leaves of Balm, Bazil, and Marjoram, of each two drams*: *Citron peels, yellow Sanders, and Cloves, of each one dram*: *Saffron half a ſcruple*: *Amber-greeſe ſix grains*: *Muſk four grains*: *tie them in a clout and dip them in Roſe and Cinnamon Water, and ſmell thereto often.*

Or make a Balſom to anoint the Noſtrils with the Chymical Oyls aforeſaid of Nutmeg, Cinnamon, and Cloves, with a little Wax.

The End of the Eighth Book.

THE NINTH BOOK OF THE PRACTICE OF PHYSICK.

Of the Diſeaſes of the Stomach.

The PREFACE.

AS there are divers *Actions of the Stomach, ſo there are divers Hinderances of thoſe Actions which Cauſe variety of Diſeaſes: For this part being ordained to Concoct meat, and make the Chyle; for the performance thereof firſt it is conſtrained to deſire Meat and Drink by the Appetite which may be diminiſhed, aboliſhed, or depraved. When it is aboliſhed, it is called* Anorexia, *&* Apoſitia: *When 'tis diminiſhed, it is called* Inappetentia, *and Loathing: But when it is depraved, it is called* Doggshungs, *or* Pica, *or* Malacia: *Too great deſire of Drink is called* Sitis Morboſa: *Theſe Diſeaſes mentioned do concern the attractive Faculty, they which concern Concoction, as it is diminiſhed, aboliſhed, or depraved, are comprehended under the name only of Concoction hindered; if the Retentive and Expulſive Faculty be hurt, it conſiſts in Vomiting and Hickocks: There are divers kinds of Vomitings according to the divers Condition and nature of the Matter Vomited forth. And becauſe the Stomach is of exquiſite ſence of Feeling by reaſon of the famous Nerve it hath from the ſixth Conjugation, it is therefore as other ſenſible Parts, ſubject to pains; and it hath ſomtimes Tumors, (as other parts) and Inflamations, Impoſthumes, and Ulcers. That therefore we may in this Book explain all the Ordinary Diſeaſes of the Stomach, we will Comprehend it in Eleven Chapters. The Firſt, Of Inappetentia, or Loathing of meat. The Second, Of Fames Canina, or Dogs Appetite. The Third, Of Pica and Malacia, or Green-ſickneſs. The Fourth, Of Sitis Morboſa, or diſeaſed Thirſt. The Fifth, Of Concoction hindered or hurt. The Sixth, Of Hickocks. The Seventh, Of Vomiting. The Eighth, Of Vomiting Blood. The Ninth, Of the Diſeaſe called Chollera. The Tenth, Of Pain in the Stomach. The Eleventh, Of its Inflamation, Impoſthume, and Ulcer.*

CHAP.

Chap. 1. *Of Want of Appetite, or Loathing of Meat.*

INappetentia, and Loathing, is either from the aboliſhed or diminiſhed Action of the ſtomach: When it is Aboliſhed it is called *Anorexia*, & *Apoſitia*: but when it is Diminiſhed it is called *Duſorexia*, but by Cuſtom *Anorexia*, & *Apoſitia* are uſed for both.

The Cauſes of this Diſeaſe are divers, which that we may bring into Order, let us conſider the Natural Cauſes of Hunger or Appetite: Theſe are called by *Galen*, lib. 1. de ſymp. cauſ. cap. 7. Symptomes: and are Five, The Firſt whereof is emptineſs of the parts. The Second is the Natural Appetite of thoſe parts ſo emptied. The Third is the Sucking and Attraction of the Meſaraick Veins in the Stomach and Guts. The Fourth is the ſenſe of their ſucking in the Stomach. The Fifth is the Animal Appetite wch cometh from the Nerve in the mouth of the ſtomach which comes from the Brain, and is endued with great ſenſe and feeling. As alſo the Melancholick Humor which comes from the Spleen to the mouth of the ſtomach, which with its ſharpneſs gnaws the inmoſt Tunicle of the ſtomach, and is like ſawce to ſtir up Appetite; which that it may be natural, it is neceſſary that al thoſe Cauſes be in Order; for if there be any fault in either, then there is a hurt or hinderance of Appetite.

Therefore the Firſt Cauſe which is Emptineſs of Parts, if it be wanting there is no Attraction made by them from other parts and the ſtomach, and ſo there is no Appetite: now this Emptineſs is wanting either when the parts are filled with plenty of crude juyces, by reaſon of gluttony or drunkenneſs; or for want of exerciſe, or uſual evacuations, or when there is ſo much fat that it is ſufficient to nouriſh the parts: Alſo the great ſtoppage of the pores of the skin, doth hinder the emptineſs of the parts: or great weakneſs of the natural heat, ſo that it can diſperſe none or but little of the ſubſtance of the Parts: or the calling of that heat to the concoction of the matter of a Diſeaſe whereby the nouriſhment of Parts is neglected, as in Feavers.

The Second Cauſe is Natural Appetite, and the Attraction of nouriſhment to the ſtomach; and this is depraved when the Parts though empty, wil not draw by the veins, by reaſon they have loſt their ſtrength, but languiſh and forget their duty: As happeneth in acute, malignant, peſtilential, ſynteckick, and hectick Feavers: And in immoderate evacuations, as in Flux of the Liver, Womb, Hæmorrhoids, Bleeding at the Noſe, Great Sweat, much Lechery, long Faſting, and the like.

The Third Cauſe is, The Attraction of the ſtomach by the Meſaraick Veins, which uſeth to be depraved by ſtoppage of thoſe veins, by which means the empty Parts cannot attract their Chylus, nor make the mouth of the ſtomach ſenſible: ſo we may perceive in Children troubled with Struma, to conſume by a long Flux of Chyle, by reaſon al the Meſentery is full of Glandles which ſtop its Veins, and hinder the paſſage of the Chyle to the Liver, by which means it is ſent half concocted forth by ſiege, and the Parts are deprived of their neceſſary nouriſhment.

The Fourth and Fifth Cauſes, which are Senſe of Sucking, and Animal Appetite, do require a good diſpoſition in the ſtomach, brain, and nerves: Therefore whatſoever can alter their diſpoſitions may alſo deſtroy Appetite; ſo every great diſtemper of the belly, eſpecially if it be hot and dry, doth hinder Appetite. Great heat by diſperſing the moiſt ſubſtance of the ſtomach, doth take away Appetite; as alſo great Cold not only poſitive as when the bowels are ſo cold that they are ſtupified by Air, Water, Froſt, Snow, and the like; but alſo privative, when the native heat is ſpent, which *Galen* cals Narcoſis or Stupefaction, as by long bleeding, feavers, and the like, by which the ſtrength of the ſtomach and other Parts is conſumed. Evil alſo and corrupt Humors; whether hot or cold, do cauſe want of Appetite: The hot are chollerick, aduſt, putrid, or virulent, whether they are bred in the ſtomach for want of Concoction, or brought from other infirm Parts.

The Cold Humors are, Flegmy and Slimy, gathered in the ſtomach by evil Concoction, or coming from the whol body, as in them who by often Vomitings bring the corruption of other Parts into the ſtomach.

Or from the Brain by Catarrhs in which the ſtomach uſeth to be troubled with Flegm: The ſuppreſſion of the Terms and Hæmorrhoids alſo, by choaking and ſmoothering the natural heat do alſo diminiſh the Appetite.

Moreover, The diſtemper of the Brain and Nerves Cauſe that the Sucking is not felt in the ſtomach in them who have loſt or depraved the Animal Faculty; therefore they are ſick in mind, as in an Apoplexy, Lethargy, Phrenzy, Madneſs, and the like; as alſo in a Palſie by reaſon of the Obſtruction

of

of the Nerve of the ſixth Conjugation which comes to the Stomach, or by reaſon of the ſtupefaction thereof, by the uſe of cold and narcotick things.

The knowledg of this Diſeaſe is manifeſt, for the Patient will complain of his want of appetite, and loathing of Meat. But the ſigns of the Cauſes are partly manifeſt, and partly to be diſcovered by art.

And firſt, they which cauſe the want of emptineſs, are known by former high feeding, repletion, want of exerciſe, or evacuation, long ſleep, and other Cauſes of crude Juyces; as alſo if the body be full, and the Veins ſwoln. Alſo the thickneſs of the Skin ſignifieth the ſame, for that hinders the diſperſing of the nouriſhment, as alſo ſome great diſeaſe in ſome particular part, by which there is a diſperſing of the Natural heat in the whol body, ſo that it is ſo weak that it cannot concoct the nouriſhment brought to the parts, and ſupply its wants.

The ſigns of the ſecond Cauſe are manifeſt, namely acute, malignant, peſtilential, and ſyntectick Feavers, ſtrong evacuations, and other Cauſes, by which there is a great decay of Natural heat in the parts, ſo that they cannot attract neceſſary nouriſhment.

The ſigns of the third Cauſe are obſtructions, whoſe ſigns are known in the diſeaſes of the Liver, Spleen, and Meſentery.

The ſigns of the fourth and fifth Cauſe, need a more curious ſearch, and firſt heat in the Præcordia, eſpecially in the Stomach, thirſt, dryneſs, and bitterneſs of the Tongue and Jaws, and a Feaver, do ſignifie a hot diſtemper of the ſtomach, and abundance of Choller. And if this hot humor do flow from other parts, the diſeaſe of that part will ſhew it, as inflamation of the Liver, or other part. But if no other part ſeem to ſuffer, you muſt conjecture that the fault is in the Stomach, or that evil meats have been received. To theſe are joyned Cardialgia, Heart-ſcalding, Nauſea or loathing, Vomiting, and Purging, the Nature of which humors are known by what is ſent forth. A cold diſtemper and much flegm is known by cooling Cauſes afore going, or ſuch as diſperſe the Natural heat, and extinguiſh it; as alſo from the ſence of weight in the Stomach, from ſharp belching, or from a ſlimy thick humor ſent out of the mouth, or by ſtool.

The ſame is ſignified by a long Catarrh, and a diſeaſe in ſome part which may ſend flegm or melancholly to the Stomach, as of the Spleen, Womb, or the like. Alſo the diſtempers of the Brain and Nerves are to be known by their proper ſigns.

As to the Prognoſtick: As a good Appetite is good in all Diſeaſes; as *Hipp.* Aph. 33. Sect. 2. ſaies, To be right in mind, and to be willing to take that which is brought, is good: ſo want of Appetite uſeth to be an evil ſign. For it ſignifieth a great digreſſion from the Natural ſtate; and it comes, as *Galen* teacheth, Com. in 3. Epid. either from evil Humors in the Mouth of the Stomach, or from the loſs of the Faculty, whoſe duty it was to be ſenſible of the want of nouriſhment, and conſequently to deſire it. So *Hipp.* in 1 Epid. ſaith concerning men in Conſumptions that died in the time of an Epidemical diſeaſe, they alwaies abhorred meat and drink. And ſo *Galen*, Comment. in 3. Epid. ſaith that he hath ſeen many in a Plague time which could take no ſuſtenance, and died: But ſome who were ſtronger, and took courage, and did eat, recovered. So in *Hipp.* 3. Epid. Sect. 1. Ægr. 2. *Hermocrates*, who died the twenty ſeventh day, *abhorred meat all the time, and in the laſt daies could not taſt.* And Sect. 2. of the ſame Book, Ægr. 6. Euryanactis *her daughter, abhorred meat all the while, and drank nothing worth ſpeaking of, died about twelve daies after.*

But we muſt obſerve, that loathing of meat is bad if it come from the deſtruction of the Natural heat: but it is not ſo dangerous if it come from abundance of evil humors, and Cacochymia; as you may ſee in *Hipp.* 7. Epid. by the Son of *Cleomenis*, who without a Feaver abhorred meat for two months, through abundance of crude and viſcid flegm, which he at laſt vomited up. So in the beginning of Diſeaſes, and eſpecially of Feavers, want of Appetite is not ſo dangerous, becauſe then Nature being buſie about the concocting of filthy humors, is called from her uſual deſire of meat. But after, when the Feaver is appeaſed, and the humors that cauſed the Diſeaſe being ſpent, ſhe returns to her old cuſtom.

In Children, want of Appetite is worſe than in others, becauſe their ſubſtance is moiſt, and eaſily diſſipated, and requires more uſe of nouriſhment to reſtore them.

In men recovered of a Diſeaſe, loathing threateneth a relapſe, by reaſon the reliques of the Diſeaſe cauſe it.

In a continual Diſeaſe, loathing and ſincere dejections are evil. *Hipp.* Aph. 6. Sect. 7. loathing is an evil ſign in long diſeaſes: but they who are like to eſcape, have the contrary; that is, a good appetite. But ſincere dejections coming, do cauſe a worſe Prognoſtick; becauſe *Hippocrates* underſtands by ſincere dejections, ſuch as have no humidity mixed with them, when the humor alone without any Water, is caſt forth, whether Choller or Melancholly; for theſe ſtools do ſhew that all the Natural humidity is burnt up by the heat of the Feaver.

In long Diſeaſes of the Guts, loathing of meat is evil, and with a Feaver worſe; *Hipp.* Aph. 3. Sect. 6. when there are deep and putrid Ulcers in a dyſentery, the Stomach ſuffering with the Guts doth

doth not well concoct, which offence ariſing higher, affects the mouth of the Stomach with loathing. There are ſome in Dyſenteries, who abhor meat from the beginning of the Diſeaſe, by reaſon of the evil humors which come from the Liver; for the ſuperfluous part of them comes to the mouth of the Stomach, which is not alwaies dangerous. But in long Diſeaſes when it is ſo, there is either a putrifaction about the Ulcer, or a great Inflamation, both which are deſperate.

The Cure of this Diſeaſe, if it come from the diſtemper of other parts, muſt be by the Cure of it. But if it come only from a fault in the Stomach, it is to be reduced to a hot or cold diſtemper joyned with matter.

A hot diſtemper is to be cured firſt by purging of Choller gently and often. And this may be made of Rhubarb, Myrobalans, Tamarinds, Syrup of Roſes, or of Succory with Rhubarb; Or if the Patient be ſubject to vomiting, you muſt give him a gentle one.

The ſame Humor is to be altered with Juleps or cooling Broths, in which you muſt not omit the Spirit of Vitriol or Sulphur; becauſe all ſharp things do not only allay Choller, but provoke an appetite. Hence it is that we uſe Sallets in Summer, to provoke appetite.

Or you may alter and purge this Humor at once with a convenient Apozeme, to which, for the Stomach, ad half a handful of Sea Wormwood, and half an ounce of Citron Myrobalans.

After Purging, Marmalad of Quinces is good to ſtrengthen the Stomach; or the Syrup mixed with Syrup of Wormwood, the Lozenges of Diamargariton frigid, or Triaſantalon, or Diarrhodon abbatis, if there be a ſuſpicion of Obſtruction. Or this Opiate:

Take of *Candied Lettice, and Guords, of each one ounce: Conſerve of Sorrel, Roſes, Succory, and Bugloſs, of each half an ounce: red Sanders, Coral, and Pearl prepared, of each half a dram: the Troches of Spodium and Sorrel ſeeds, of each one ſcruple. With Syrup of Lemmons make an Opiate, of which let him take the quantity of a ſmal Nut morning and evening, drinking after a little Wine and Water.*

Anoint the Stomach outwardly with this Oyntment.

Take of *Oyl of Roſes, Myrtles, and Quinces waſhed with Vinegar of Roſes, of each two ounces: all the Sanders, red Coral, Coriander ſeed prepared, and red Roſes, of each one dram: grana Kermes and Spodium, of each half a dram: white Wax as much as is ſufficient. Make a Liniment, with which anoint the Stomach with your warm hand only twice or thrice in a day, putting in a little Roſe Vinegar at the ſame time.*

Or lay on a Roſe Cake ſprinkled with Roſe Vinegar, or ſteeped therein, which you muſt remove before it groweth hot.

Laſtly, In the continuance of the Diſeaſe a Bath is good twice or thrice uſed, by which many are brought to their former appetites.

Vinegar, and all ſharp things are good with their meat.

A loathing cometh from a cold diſtemper, when flegmy melancholick humors are gathered into the Stomach, and hinder its office; or being drawn from all other parts of the Body, as in them who uſing to vomit, draw the impurity of other parts to the Stomach, or from the Brain, Spleen, and Mother, and other parts.

In the Cure hereof, you muſt firſt look at the diſtemper of the parts from whence they come, which muſt be amended with Remedies laid down in their proper Chapters.

Then you muſt apply Medicines to the Stomach by Evacuation of the Humor offending, and ſtrengthening the parts.

Evacuation may be made by vomit or ſtool.

By Vomit, If the Patient be Nauſeous, and eaſie to vomit, with Medicines for that purpoſe.

But if the Humors be thick, and faſtened upon the Tunicles of the Stomach, and the Patient is not uſed to vomit, they muſt be purged, eſpecially with Pils, becauſe they ſtay longeſt in the Stomach; as *Galen* ſheweth cap. 7. lib. 4. *de ſanit. tuenda.* Who exceedingly commends Pils of Hiera; which may be given to two ſcruples or a dram in the morning two hours before meat: and you may make them freſh, thus:

Take of *the beſt Aloes waſhed with the Juyce of Wormwood one ounce: Agarick trochiſcated two drams: the pouder of Rhubarb ſprinkled with white Wine one dram: Nutmeg and Spicknard of each half a dram: Salt of Tartar, Maſtich, and Cinnamon, of each one ſcruple: With Syrup of Wormwood make a Maſs of Pills; of a dram whereof make ſix Pills guilded. Let him take them in the morning if you will purge much; or give half a dram two hours before dinner twice or thrice in a week. They may be quickened with Diagridium, if you will have them ſtronger.*

If you fear the Liver is too hot, you may mix cool things; as red Roſes, Sanders, Diamargariton: and make up the Maſs with Compound Syrup of Succory.

Strong Pills are not good, becauſe they wil draw humors from other Parts to the ſtomach.

If he cannot ſwallow Pills, you muſt give him Hiera to drink with a convenient Liquor. Or,

If a Potion ſhal be unpleaſant, make an infuſion of Senna, Myrobalans, Rhubarb and Agarick in Worm-

Wormwood Wine, or the ſtomach Decoction, diſſolving in it a little of the Electuary of Citrons ſolutive, if you wil make a ſtronger.

If this Diſeaſe comes from ſlow, ſlimy Flegm, before Purging you muſt diſſolve it with Honey of Roſes, and Oxymel, with ſyrup of Hyſop and the like, with a cutting and cleanſing Decoction.

Or, This following Apozeme will do both.

Take of *the Roots of common Acorus, Cypreſs, and Calamus Aromaticus, of each one ounce: dried Citron peels, and Sarſa, of each ſix drams: Wormwood, Mints, Marjoram, Germander, and Chamæpitis, or Ground-pine, of each one handful: Citron and Annis-ſeeds, of each two drams: Senna, two ounces: Carthamus-ſeeds bruiſed, one ounce: Agarick trochiſcated, three drams: Dodder of Thyme, or Epithimum Flowers, Sage, Roſemary, and Lavender, of each one pugil: boyl them to a pint and an half: in which diſſolve of the Syrup of Wormwood and candied Citron-peels, of each two ounces: make a cleer Apozeme, and ſcent it with a little Cinnamon, and pouder of Aromaticum Roſatum for four mornings draughts: in the firſt and laſt whereof you may diſſolve for the better Purging three drams of the Solutive Electuary of Citrons, with one ſcruple of the pouder of Rhubarb.*

The uſe of Turpentine is good, becauſe it cleanſeth al the Bowels; eſpecially if you make it into Pills with Rhubarb.

It is not good to let blood in this Diſeaſe, except the Liver be very hot.

After ſufficient Purging, you muſt come to Strengthning; both Internally, and Externally: Thus,

Take of *Syrup of Wormwood, one ounce: Let him Drink it Faſting many mornings: or Wormwood-wine.*

Take *Conſerve of Mints, Citron peels candied, and candied Mutmegs, of each half an ounce: one candied Myrobalane: of Confectio Alkermes, three drams: the inward skins of Hens-maws poudered, two drams: Cinnamon and Aromaticum Roſatum, of each one dram: with ſyrup of Mints make an Opiate: or candy them with ſugar of Roſes; uſe it in the morning, drinking after it a little Wine.*

Salt of Wormwood is good to be put to the aforeſaid Medicines, Or, Oyl of Mints Chymical.

Or, Salt of Wormwood with Orange peels, or either of them to half a dram in Wine, or Broth.

This following Syrup is moſt excellent:

Take of *the ſyrup of Quinces, and Citron Barks candied, of each two ounces: Cinnamon water, one ounce: Oyl of Sulphur twelve drops: mix them to be taken now and then a ſpoonful.*

Clarret Water is uſual, and it is made thus:

Take of *Cinnamon groſly poudered two ounces: ſteep them in one pint of Aqua Vitæ in a glaſs; in another glaſs put ſix ounces of ſugar with half a pint of Roſe water: let theſe Glaſſes ſtand two or three dayes; every day ſhaking them often; then mix them both together and ſtrain them by filtration; keep the Liquor in a Glaſs cloſe ſtopt, and let the Patient take a ſpoonful or two Faſting.*

In *Paris* the Syrup of Wormwood made by *Pena* is highly eſteemed; made thus,

Take *half a pound of candied Citron barks ſliced: boyl them in equal parts of the Waters of Succory and Agrimony, make a ſtrong expreſſion and put to it the juyce of Quinces, and Wormwood water, of each half a pint; in which infuſe for four dayes four ounces of Schœnanth in a cloſe veſſel well glaſſed and ſet upon the Embers; diſſolve in the ſtraining as much ſugar as is needful; then boyl them to a ſyrup, in which when it is hot diſſolve one dram of aſh-coloured Amber: keep it in a cloſe Glaſs.*

Cinnamon Water alone is excellent good in a Cold Stomach, or with other Medicines, as Syrup of Wormwood, Mints, or Coral; to which you may alſo put Amber-greece.

The Syrup of Cinnamon made with Aqua Vitæ, according to *Quercitanus* Diſpenſatory is no leſs powerful.

And Cinnamon Water diſtilled with Juyce of Quinces.

And alſo the Spirit of Maſtich made thus,

Take *three ounces of Maſtich, one ounce of Galangal, half a pint of Spirit of Wine, digeſt them and diſtil them.*

The Elixir Proprietatis, deſcribed by *Crollius*, is good, if you give twelve or fifteen drops in Wine they wonderfully ſtrengthen the Stomach.

You may make Tablets for the ſame purpoſe thus:

Take of *the pulp of Rinds of freſh Oranges, and Aromaticum Roſatum, of each two drams: white Sugar diſſolved in Orange flower water four ounces. Make Lozenges.*

Tablets

Tablets of Aromaticum Roſatum, Opiata Solomonis, and old Treacle are good for the ſame.

A Decoction of Guajacum or Saſſaphras taken many dayes together with a little ſweating, or without in weak people, is very good in this Diſeaſe, being of long continuance.

Alſo Sulphurous and Nitrous Baths, as our Bellilucanæ being taken in great quantity many dayes, do powerfully cleanſe the Stomach and Gutts from al ſlimy filth.

Take of *Agrimony, Centaury the leſs, and common Wormwood, of each half an handful: boyl them to half a pint, and ad one ounce of ſugar, drink it, either in a cold or hot Cauſe.*

Hartman exceedingly commends the uſe of Zeadoary in theſe words, *The often uſe of Zedoary doth ſo ſtrengthen the ſtomach, as nothing more, therefore we may commend it having tryed it often, and never miſſed; you muſt eate it often.*

Coſtæus Commends hot Wine thus, *Hot Wine drunk ordinarily doth amend the imbecillity of the ſtomach: It is uſually obſerved that they who have been continually vexed with Wind and Pain from an evil Concoction when they have begun to drink warm drink, have been cured, and lived after a long time more comfortably.*

You muſt give him Wine in Water, wherein Coriander hath been boyled, for his ordinary Drink.

But obſerve, That if a hot diſtemper of the Liver meet with that of a cold ſtomach, as often it doth, you muſt give hot Medicines warily, and rather thoſe that are remperate.

Zechius Commends this Bolus following, in theſe words, *That the ſtomach may be warmed gently and not dryed, you can uſe no Medicine inwardly more powerfull.*

Take of *waſhed Turpentine two drams: Pouder of Maſtich half a dram: Aromaticum roſatum half a ſcruple: make a Bolus to be taken two hours before meat.*

This digeſtive Pouder is uſual to help Concoction,

Take of *Coriander ſeeds prepared half an ounce: ſweet Fennel ſeed and Annis ſeed of each two drams: Cinnamon and Cloves of each half a dram: Sugar twice as much as the reſt: make a Pouder, of which let him take one ſpoonful after every meal.*

The Ballom of Peru is good if you give a few drops in Wine one hour before meat.

Or in form of a Pill, one or two drops in ſugar for many dayes.

There are ſome ordinary Medicines for this, Hippocras Wine, a Decoction of Annis, Coriander and Cinnamon mixed with ſugar for ordinary drink.

The Dukes Pouder, commonly ſo called, made of two parts of Sugar and one of Cinnamon, to ſprinkle upon al meats.

A Salt to be eaten with meat, made of Coriander, Annis ſeeds, long Pepper, Galangal, and Nutmegg, mixed with an equal proportion of Common ſalt.

Some Grains of Pepper whol or beaten, taken faſting.

Acrons ſtuck with Cloves and Cinnamon, and candied with Sugar, Citron, and Orange peels candied together, Annis ſeeds, Fennel, Coriander and Cinnamon introſted with Sugar, al theſe men may uſe as they pleaſe.

Citron Peels are more pleaſant than the reſt, but becauſe it wil grow ſo dry that it wil hardly be chewed; we are often conſtrained to make it up in a Mortar with Roſe Water, in the form of an Opiate.

Candied Myrobalans and Nutmegs may be uſed for the ſame, and be made up as the former, though they are not ſo apt to grow hard.

The Eſſences of Annis, Cinnamon, Citron peels, Nutmegs, and Olives, are excellent to ſtrengthen the ſtomach, and they muſt be uſed as above in the Diſeaſes of the Heart.

Of Meats, They which are Salt do moſt provoke Appetite, and Sharp things in a ſmal quantity; and mixed with other things leſt they cool the Stomach.

Outwardly apply Liniments, Fomentations, and Emplaiſters, thus made:

Take of *Cypreſs Roots, Galangal, Flower-de-luce, and dried Citron peels, of each two ounces: Mints, Hyſop, Sage, Roſemary, and Marjoram, of each one handful: Annis ſeeds, Bayberries, Nutmegs, Cloves, and Cinnamon, of each three drams: the flowers of Stœchas, Schœnanth, and Roſemary, of each one pugil; ſlice thoſe that muſt be ſliced; and bruiſe thoſe that muſt be bruiſed, according to art, and put them into two Bags with holes pricked through, and ſteep them in ſtrong Wine, and lay them warm to the ſtomach one after another.*

Take of *the Oyl of Wormwood, Mints, and Spike, of each half an ounce: Oyl of Nutmegs, two drams: Wood of Aloes, Mace, and Cinnamon, of each one ſcruple; with a little Wax make a Liniment, which will be better if you ad ſix drops of Oyl of Cloves, and of Muſk and Ambergreece, of each eight grains.*

Alſo there is a Liniment of Oyl of Nutmegs, Balſom of Peru, or of Oyl of Wormwood, Maſtich, and Ballom of Peru.

Take of *the Emplaiſter of Maſtich one ounce: Aromaticum Roſatum one dram: Oyl of Nutmegs as much as is fit to make a Plaiſter like a Buckler for the Stomach.*

Crato doth wonderfully commend this following Plaiſter:

Take of *Labdanum two ounces: Wax four ounces: Oyl of Nutmegs three drams. Make an Emplaiſter.*

Galen adviſeth 7. meth. not to keep theſe Plaiſters long upon the part, for at length they will diſſolve the hear.

Many Practitioners do not only apply theſe Remedies before to the Cartilage called *Xiphoides*, like a ſword; but alſo behind upon the thirteenth Vertebra, becauſe the proper orifice of the Stomach inclineth backward; but the thickneſs of the Vertebra is ſuch, and of the Muſcles under them, that the ſtrength of the Medicine cannot pierce through to the Stomach.

Take of *Galangal, and Calamus Aromaticus, of each three drams: Maſtich, and Cloves, of each two drams: one Nutmeg: dried Citron peels half an ounce: Annis ſeeds one dram and an half. Make a bag of theſe being bruiſed and put into red ſilk pricked through, and into muſked Cotton, to be worn alwaies upon the Stomach.*

The Skin of a Vultur dreſſed and worn upon the Stomach, is commended for the ſame: in want of which a Hairs Skin, or a piece of Scarlet may be uſed.

Chap. 2. *Of Dogs Appetite, called* Fames canina.

HAving in the former Chapter ſpoken of Appetite diminiſhed and aboliſhed, now we ſhall ſpeak of it depraved. And this is done two waies: When it either offendeth in quantity or quality. It offends in quantity when nouriſhment is required in a greater quantity than Nature would; and this is called *Boulimia*, or Dogs Appetite: It offends in quality when things are required which are evil, or are not food, and this is called *Pica* or *Kitta*. Of the firſt we ſhall ſpeak in this Chapter, of the laſt in the Chapter following.

The word *Boulimia* comes *apo tou bou kai limou*, becauſe the Particle *Bou* put to other words, encreaſe the ſignification, as if it were compared to the greatneſs of an Ox. It is alſo called *Phagedaina*, which word is given to Ulcers which eat the fleſh and enlarge, and therefore called *Ulcera Phagedaina*, that is, ſpreading Ulcers. Now it is called *Fames Canina*, or Dogs Appetite, becauſe they who have it are hungry as Dogs.

But you may obſerve that theſe two words, *Boulimia*, and *Fames Canina*, are ſomtimes confounded, and uſed for the ſame thing: and ſomtimes diſtinguiſhed, ſo that it is called *Fames Canina*, when after much feeding they vomit like Dogs. But ſome purge rather than vomit, when Nature throweth down that which it cannot concoct. In *Boulimia*, vomit doth not follow, but ſomtimes Lipothymia. There are ſome who feed unſatiably, and yet vomit not, nor purge, but concoct all, and if they have not preſently more, are ſick. As *Sennertus* reports of a Scholler, who was black colored, who eat not only in the day, but night, and digeſted it without vomiting; he could not be ſatisfied with delicate meats, but required groſs, and therefore would eat no Bakers Bread, but ſuch as the Country people made, and would eat as many raw Parſnips in a Summer morning as could be bought for ſix pence, without damage.

Hence it appears that this diſeaſe is a Symptome of an action depraved, in reſpect of quantity, which action being encreaſed, is called Dog-like, or an Appetite beyond Natural Meaſure. The part affected is chiefly the mouth of the Stomach. The cauſe containing, is ſence of ſucking, and vehement pulling, which ſtirs up the Appetite.

Galen 2. de ſymp. cauſ. cap. 7. reduceth the immediate cauſes of this Diſeaſe to two Heads, in theſe words: *Evil Appetites exceeding in quantity, which are called by ſome Canine, are then, when either ſome evil ſharp Juyce biteth the Stomach, or when the whol Body immoderately concocting, wants nouriſhment; for evil Juyce which is cold, biteth like the Natural ſucking, and produceth appetite by the reſemblance of Nature.* The immediate cauſe of a preternatural Appetite, according to *Galen*, is firſt a vicious humor, and cold, ſticking to the Stomach: Secondly, want of Food by over much concoction.

Evil Humors ſticking to the Stomach, cauſe immoderate Appetite, becauſe they by their too much coldneſs, ſharpneſs, and fowrneſs, do conſtringe, wrinkle, and pull the mouth of the Stomach, and ſo make a ſence of feeling like a natural ſucking, and beget a falſe Appetite.

This Humor is either fowr flegm ſtaying long in the Stomach, or many times Melancholly ſent from the Spleen into the Stomach, which in a natural ſtate, and a moderate quantity and quality begets a moderate and natural Appetite; but if it be preternatural and exceed, it makes the Appetite too great.

The

The want of Food, by reaſon whereof the Veins do continually ſuck from the Stomach, either it comes from too great Evacuation by bleeding, purging, vomiting, ſweating, and the like, or from too great a Conſumption of the alimentary ſubſtance, by reaſon of the immoderate heat of the parts, or the thinneſs of the humors, and body, and looſneſs of the pores, watchings, baths, immoderate exerciſe, much venery; all which do diſſolve the ſubſtance, making humidity; and by theſe emptineſs being cauſed, and want of food, the meat is carried from the Stomach ſooner than it ought.

Alſo this *Fames Canina*, or Dogs Appetite, may come from Worms which devour the Chylus; as *Trallianus* reports, *lib. 7. cap.* 4. of a Woman in this Diſeaſe, which voided a worm twelve Cubits long by the uſe of Hiera, and was cured.

The Hermetical Phyſitians do lay down another cauſe of this wonderful Appetite, namely, a certain diſſolving Spirit begot in the Body, which by an inhærent property doth ſo readily conſume whatſoever meat is taken, ſo that it doth not allow Nature a lawful and neceſſary bound of nouriſhment. This they call a hungery devouring, ſalt, ſharp, vitriol Spirit. For ſay they, as from divers Salts, Vitriol, Niter, common Salt, and Salt Armoniack, with the like, Aqua fortis is made by Chymiſtry, which will diſſolve the hardeſt Stones, Mettals, into Liquor in a ſhort time; ſo that Gold which will not be diſſolved in a month by a ſtrong fire, in a quarter of an hour will be diſſolved in *Aqua regia*, and be turned into a Liquor of the ſame color.

This Doctrine is diligently to be examined; for as the digeſtion of the Stomach in its Natural condition hath ſomthing to be admired by the curious Searchers into Nature; ſo the ſame being made preternatural hath ſomthing to be wondered at.

This is wonderful in the Natural digeſtion of the Belly, that the hardeſt meats are digeſted therein, and in three or four hours ſpace are turned into a Chylous Liquor, ſo thin that it may be ſtrained through the narroweſt branches of the Venæ lacteæ; and that Dogs do turn the hardeſt bones into the ſame Liquor, is not to be attributed to a ſtronger concocting heat, becauſe meat in a pot, although the fire be never ſo hot, cannot in twenty four hours, or many daies be converted into the ſame. The Galeniſts hold that this comes from the faculty of the Stomach, which faculty works not without an Inſtrument, becauſe if there is an *Idioſyncraſia*, or a certain proportion of the firſt qualities, as is commonly reported, its chief action muſt be from heat; for cold, moiſture, or drineſs, do nothing to that great diſſolving of food, and heat, as it is ſaid, hath not that power. Therefore the Idioſyncraſia is ſomwhat more unknown, and not to be expreſſed. Let us therefore ſearch after it in the Macrocoſm or greater World, of which there is a great Analogy or reſemblance in the little World. And therefore the more witty Hermets ſay that there is a certain Spirit or acide Liquor ſent from the Spleen into the Stomach, which diſſolveth the ſolid nouriſhment, and ſhortly converteth it into Chylous Liquor, and that is the principal Inſtrument of digeſtion. And ſome conjecture that this may be made, becauſe Birds who digeſt the hardeſt nouriſhment have a Spleen round about their Maw; for the fleſh which is found about their Stomachs is like the ſubſtance of a Spleen; from whence there is a more noble uſe of the Spleen than what is allowed by the Ancients, who ſaid that it was only for the purging of the groſſer ſort of Blood; becauſe according to this opinion it ſerveth for concoction of meat. Therefore if the Spirit or ſharp Liquor which comes from the Spleen when it is in its Natural condition, makes a natural and moderate digeſtion; the ſame ſpirit being altered from its natural condition and defiled, or made ſharper or more diſſolving, it will ſooner diſſolve ſolid nouriſhment; and when they are ſo diſſolved and thrown from the Stomach, it will make a new immoderate Appetite. We do not conclude that this new Doctrine is certain and undoubted, but we only ſhew it that ſolid wits may examine it. And we will talk of it again when we ſpeak of the cauſes of the hinderance of Concoction.

The ſigns by which this diſeaſe is known are manifeſt; for it will appear to them that eat, and to the ſtanders by, that the Appetite is depraved which cauſeth ſuch devouring of meat, which afterwards is thrown up by vomit, and then it is Fames Canina, and if Vomits follow not, then there is fainting, with coldneſs of the extream parts, and this is called *Boulimia*.

The ſigns of the Cauſes may be found by the Antecedents, Concomitants, and Conſequents. Theſe are the ſigns of a cold diſtemper, and of ſharp humors in the Stomach, belching, and ſharp vomiting, crude dejections, or ſtools, want of thirſt, and external Cauſes of refrigeration afore going. If it come from defect of Nouriſhment, the Patient is lean, and there are cauſes preſent or fore-going of the diſſolving of the Humidity; and laſtly, the ſigns of Worms ſhall be ſpoken of in their proper Chapter.

The Prognoſtick of this Diſeaſe, is thus: If it come only from External Cauſes it is not dangerous if they be preſently taken away: And if it come of Worms there is little danger, for when they are taken away the Diſeaſe is cured.

But it is very dangerous if it follow great Evacuations and meltings of the body; eſpecially if after meat when the belly is yet ful there come a fainting; for when that which ſhould moſt help, becomes unprofitable, it ſignifies a great diſtemper of the Stomach.

So a Dog Appetite continuing with Vomiting and great Purging is dangerous, for it useth to end in an evil habit, dropsie, lethargy, consumption and the like.

As for the Cure, because Fames Canina for the most part takes its Original from Melancholick and Flegmatick Humors fastened in the Mouth of the Stomach; therefore Medicines must principally be directed to them; such as do empty and change the Humors and also strengthen the part affected.

You must Evacuate by Vomit or Stool with Medicines Prescribed in the Cure of Want of Appetite from a Cold Cause; for although these Diseases are contrary, yet come they from the same Humors, different in the degrees of Coldness, and second Qualities, and such as diversly affect the Stomach.

Also the Remedies there Prescribed to heat the Stomach and strengthen it both internally and externally are excellent, because they not only correct the Cold Distemper, but dry and cause thirst; and thirst coming, hunger is diminished.

Moreover, Wine plentifully taken asswageth hunger, according to *Hippocrates*, Aph. 21. Sect. 2. And especially the Spirit of Wine, or Aqua Vitæ.

They do properly stay Hunger which do much moisten the Stomach, relax it, and asswage the sharpness of humors. As al Fat things and Oyls, as *Villanovanus* reports, That one thus diseased did eat a hot Loaf dipp'd in Oyl; and a Woman drank the melted Sewet of an Ox with as much warm Oyl at Twice, and both did so Disdain Meat, That they eat nothing in Five Dayes, and were Cured.

Narcotick Medicines by Dulling the too exquisite sense of the Stomach, do lessen this Disease; and new Treacle is most usual for it because besides its stupifying quality it doth correct the malignity of the Humors which is some cause thereof.

But because these are to be used but seldom and not without urgent necessity, somtimes you may use old Treacle, for the reason aforesaid, as also to strengthen.

Five or Six Grains of Amber-greece taken in a rear Eg doth not only strengthen the Stomach, but by a special quality cureth this Disease.

Chap. 3. *Of Pica and Malacia.*

Pica and *Malacia*, are a depraved Appetite; by which, evil, unprofitable, and hurtful things are desired.

It is called *Kitta* or Pica from the bird called a Pye, either in regard of the variety of colours, or because it eateth lumps of Earth, for Women in this Disease use to eat Earth and Chalk, and the like: It is called Malacia by *Pliny*, for these Women through Weakness of mind, and tenderness, want that right and natural Appetite.

This Disease comes of evil corrupt Humors, which are gathered into the Stomach by reason of its hurt Concoction, or else sent from other parts.

Flegmatick and Melancholick People are most disposed for the production of these Humors, especially Women, to whom this Disease seems proper and peculiar; although somtimes Boyes and Men, though seldom have the same: Eating of evil Diet doth cause this, want of any natural Evacuation, especially of the Terms, Sadness, Distemper of the Liver and Spleen, Obstructions and Weakness, divers diseases of the Womb, and the like.

These Vitious Humors according to the divers degrees of distempers and other dispositions have a diverse nature, from whence come divers appetites of evil things: For since som Humors are crude and inconcocted, others burnt, and adust; some require sowr things, sharp, bitter, and very cold, so that they are delighted with the continual use of unripe Fruits, Vinegar, Juyce of Lemons, Pomegranats, and Orenges, cold Water, Snow, Ice, and the like. Others desire Earthy, Dry, and Burnt things, as Gloves, Cinnamon, Nutmegs, and other Spices, Salt-Ashes, Chalk, and the like.

This Disease is Common to Women in the Chlorosis, or Green-sickness; to Women great with Child; and such as have their Terms stopped; which staying in the Body corrupt, and ascending do infect the Stomach, from whence its Actions are depraved, and chiefly the Appetite is taken from its natural Condition.

Boyes are somtimes troubled herewith, and especially if they are born of a Woman that hath the Chlorosis: Nor are men altogether free from it, although it happen seldom; and they are especially troubled therewith who are Melancholick, have Obstructions, or want their usual Flux of the Hæmorrhoids.

It is Disputed much among Authors, Whether a Depraved Appetite require those Things which are like to the Preternatural State or Distemper of the Stomach, or those that are Contrary? *Galen* raised

raiſed the firſt Diſpute, *cap.* 3. *artis parvæ*, where he teacheth, *That the Stomach being diſtempered, doth deſire Contraries, and in its natural ſtate and temper it deſireth things like to its ſelf.* Which Doctrine *Avicen* following, *Fen.* 1 3. *lib.* 3. *tract.* 2. *cap.* 19. ſpeaks thus, *When there is an evil Humor gathered in the ſtomach, different in quality from its own nature, then it doth require things contrary to it; therefore ſome deſire Clay, Coals, Earth, Loam, Chalk and the like, by reaſon of the quality that is in them, to dry up and cut that which is contrary to the quality of the Humors:* But they who are in health deſire judicially rather things like, than contraries; for ſince fancy is much imployed in ſtirring up of Appetite, and is much ſtirred up from the diſpoſition of the body, it is probable that the humor predominating ſhould move the fancy to deſire things like unto it; For as cholerick men both in time of health and ſickneſs, do dream of Fire and Anger: and Flegmatick men of Snow, Ice, and Waters: the Apprehenſion of which things proceeds from the Humors predominating in the body: So when the ſeat of Appetite the mouth of the Stomach is affected by foul humors there long continuing, they do imprint their ſimilitudes in the Fancy which ſtirs up the Appetite to deſire things like it though never ſo contrary to reaſon, which is now overcome by the force of imagination.

Moreover, If things contrary to the diſeaſe or its cauſe were deſired by the continual uſe thereof, the diſeaſe would be cured; daily experience confirmeth this.

By which we are taught, That Virgins in the Green-ſickneſs, and Women with Child, do for the moſt part deſire thoſe things which are agreeable to their preſent Diſtemper and evil Habit, ſo that they who have Salt and Aduſt Humors long for Coals, Salt, Spices, and the like: but they who have Melancholly or Salt Flegm predominating, deſire Vinegar, green Fruits, and the like.

As for the Authority of *Galen*, ſome wholly reject it; ſaying, That if it were true, That Diſeaſed Diſpoſitions ſhould deſire their Contraries, al ſick men, of evil Habit, would deſire Meat of good nouriſhment; which is not true, for we often ſee that ſick men deſire evil meats, and refuſe good: and we ſee that bodies inflamed, whether they are in a preternatural ſtate, as in Feavers; or in a natural, as by violent exercile, require cooling.

Some deſire to Reconcile this Opinion of *Galens*, ſaying, That in this Pica the diſtemper upon the Stomach is habitual and connatural, and therefore doth cauſe an Appetite like to a natural, which is for things like it; which may be thus explained, When we ſay that every natural temper doth require the like, and every preternatural the contrary; the laſt is to be underſtood of diſtempers which come without overflowing moiſture; for they which are with much moiſture when it is ſucked up by the tunicles of the Stomach, do rather deſire things like the moiſture with which they are wet, becauſe the Humor which now pierceth al the Tunicles although it be noxious, yet it is not troubleſome: On the contrary, when the humor only poſſeſſeth part only of the Stomach, or is only in the bottom, the Stomach deſires the contrary to that which is offenſive unto it; but if it poſſeſs the whol Stomach, and be ſoaked into its Tunicles, then the natural Faculty is deſtroyed and ſo changed, that it doth not deſire any thing but what is like to the Humor ſo ſoaked in, and ſo it may be rightly ſaid that the humors was become as it were connatural.

Platerus and *Sennertus* do eaſily free themſelves from theſe difficulties, by flying to an occult quality, and they take occaſion from hence, if the Patients ſo affected ſhould require things like to the cauſe of the diſeaſe, then by the plentiful uſe of them the diſeaſe would be exceedingly encreaſed, but we ſee that they wil devour Chalk, Clay, Coals, and the like traſh, and receive not the leaſt hurt thereby, by which men that are ſound would be almoſt killed.

Moreover, They ſay that Women with Child wil often void ſalt and ſowr humors, and yet not require ſalt or ſowr things, but the contrary. And laſtly they affirm conſtantly that there is no agreement of Coals, Chalk, raw Fleſh, and the like with the Humors. And therefore they ſay that they muſt not reſt in manifeſt qualities, and that the Cauſe of this Symptome and wonderful Appetite cannot be taken from them, but they muſt fly to ſome occult quality not to be explained.

Yet *Sennertus* confeſſeth that it is probable that this Appetite depraved, ſhould proceed rather from a like, than a contrary quality: but what that quality is cannot be explained, becauſe the things which are deſired have no agreement with the humors either ſweet, ſalt, or ſowr in manifeſt qualities.

We may Reconcile al theſe thus:

The deſire of Traſh is ſtirred up by humors of the like nature and temper, but theſe humors beſides their native temper have a certain peculiar fault from corruption, which ſince it cannot be wel explained, it may be called an Occult Quality.

The Knowledg of this Diſeaſe is eaſie, for the Patient can relate it; it is manifeſt that the part affected is the mouth of the Stomach, for that is the Seat of Appetite. The Cauſe alſo may be found out by conjecture from the ſuppoſed deſire of things like. For if they deſire Coals, Salt, and the like,

like, we may gather that the diſeaſe depends upon Salt and burnt humors, which will more cleerly appear, if any of thoſe Humors be caſt forth by vomit or ſtool, if there be ſharp belchings, or ſalt, a taſt bitter, ſowr, or ſalt.

As to the Prognoſtick; This Diſeaſe is Chronical, of continuance, but not very dangerous, if the Body by Nature or Art may be brought to its old condition, which is not very difficult. For in time the Humor offending may be ſent forth by vomiting naturally, or by Medicines: and the Terms or Hæmorrhoids ſtopt, which cauſed this diſeaſe firſt, may in time be diſcharged; which if neglected, and Nature ſinks under the burden, great diſeaſes follow: For when the firſt Concoction is hurt, it is neceſſary that the ſecond and third be corrupted, from whence come great Obſtructions, evil habits, and dropſies. Or if the Humor be carried in greater plenty to the Stomach, and partake of greater Malignity, ſomtimes it produceth violent Cardialgiaes, or Heart diſeaſes; from whence fainting, ſwooning, and ſomtimes death doth follow.

If Women in this diſeaſe begin to abſtain from traſh, and to eat good meat with leſs diſdain, it is a moſt certain ſign of health at hand.

Women with Child uſe to be freed of this diſeaſe about the fourth month, becauſe then the Child is grown greater, and ſo conſumeth more of the humors, and the mother hath ſent it forth by often vomitings; but if it laſt longer, 'tis dangerous; for it ſignifies that the evil diſpoſition of the Stomach hath taken deep root, which will hardly be pluckt up.

It is better for people in this diſeaſe to deſire ſharp and ſowr things; it is worſe if they deſire things contrary to Nature, as *Avicen* teacheth, *fen.* 13. *lib.* 2. *tract.* 2. *cap.* 20. for it ſignifies a greater diſtance from the Natural ſtate, which is harder to be cured.

The Cure of this diſeaſe is divers, according to the variety of the Bodies affected.

In Women with Child, few Medicines are to be uſed, by reaſon of the unfitneſs of the ſubject, and danger of Miſcarriage, but you may give them gentle things, and ſuch as were preſcribed in the Cure of want of Appetite to cleanſe and ſtrengthen the Stomach. Nor muſt you omit blood-letting, which done ſparingly and often, is of great conſequence.

But in Virgins of the *Clorosis*, or green ſickneſs, this diſeaſe is cured with the ſame Remedies, which ſhall be preſcribed for the Cure of Cloroſis in its proper place.

But the *Pica* which is in men, is very ſeldom, becauſe it comes from obſtructions of the Liver and Spleen, you may uſe thoſe things which ſhall be preſcribed for the Cure of them.

Chap. 4. *Of the Thirſty Diſeaſe, called* Sitis Morboſa.

THe Appetite of Drink, or Thirſt, may be three waies hurt, as that of Meat, by diminiſhing, aboliſhing, and depraving; it is diminiſhed many times by a ſweet inſipid humor, which moiſteneth the Tunicle of the Stomach, or from too much moiſture in the whol Body, from whence it is that the parts do not draw the drink from the Stomach. It is aboliſhed by acute Diſeaſes through interception of the ſence, when the mind is ſick, or becauſe the Natural Faculty is decayed by the extinction of the Natural heat; from whence *Hipp.* ſaith, *It is evil not to thirſt, when a cauſe of thirſt is taken*: and ſince thirſt diminiſhed doth depend upon the ſame cauſe, from which want of Appetite is produced, and thirſt aboliſhed, is only in acute Diſeaſes, we ſhall not ſpeak here of them particularly. But we will only ſpeak of thirſt depraved, as being moſt uſual: and this is to be divided two waies, and Hunger. The one requiring divers kinds of Drinks; the other great quantities, and often. That which deſireth filthy drink is to be referred to Pica, as when they deſire Vinegar, Lemmons, and ſalt Water. It remains that we ſpeak of thirſt encreaſed, which is an uſual Symptome when the Appetite offends in the quantity of Liquor, and much drink is deſired.

The immediate Cauſe is a want of moiſt nouriſhment, and drineſs of the Stomach, and of other parts which make the Stomach ſenſible of their wants.

This drineſs and want of moiſture, uſeth to come from all ſuch things which can conſume the dewy moiſture of the Stomach and the whol Body, and dry it up, and they are hot and dry. The dry do principally ſuck up the Humor, and the hot things ſecondarily.

Alſo this diſeaſe is either by Propriety, or by Sympathy. It is by Propriety when the innate moiſture of the Stomach is altered and drawn forth by an unequal diſtemper, dry or hot, or both; ſomtimes by a ſimple diſtemper, but often by that diſtemper which is joyned with matter; as a ſalt, ſharp, or filthy humor fixed in the mouth of the Stomach, or contained in its Cavity. But that which is by Sympathy, comes by conſent from the whol Body, or ſome part whoſe Veins having loſt their moiſture, do ſuck from the Stomach; as it is in Feavers, Inflamations of the Liver, Lungs, and other parts, as alſo in hot and dry diſtempers, eſpecially of the Reins, as you may ſee in a Diabetes, or involuntary

voluntary pissing, which is called by the name of *Dipsacus*, by reason of the great thirst which accompanieth it.

The outward Causes are all such as extraordinarily heat or dry, as very hot and dry Air, long continuance in the Sun, or at the fire, use of Salt meats, sharp, and spiced, much use of old rich Wine, great watchings, too much evacuation, especially by purging.

The Hermetical Physitians say, that immoderate preternatural thirst comes from some thirsty spirits which are bred of Sulphureous excrements, which will not be satisfied with simple cooling and moistening, but with other Spirits like unto themselves; as we see in Feavers that a strong thirst is little allayed with much Water, which with sharp Spirits of Vitriol, Sulphur, Salt, and the like, wil be satisfied with a less quantity of Water.

The knowledg is easie, for the Patients will complain. But the Causes are known by their proper signs; as a hot and dry distemper cleaving to the Stomach and other parts; as also sharp, salt, and bitter humors, some whereof are sometimes cast forth, or they have their tasts in their mouths, if the humors are in the Stomach; but if thirst come by consent from other parts, the signs of those Diseases will be manifest.

As to the Prognostick: That thirst which comes from Primary Causes is safest, for that is quenched presently with drink. But that which comes from internal Causes, is more or less dangerous, according to their differences.

That thirst which comes with Feavers, and other easie cures, endeth with them. But if it come from great and dangerous Diseases, it is very dangerous; as in a Dropsie in which thirst is not slacked, but rather encreased with drink.

The Cure of this Disease is often in Feavers, and Inflamations of some parts; which is described sufficiently in our Method of the Cure of Feavers, Sect. 2. Cap. 2.

But if Thirst be contracted by immoderate Evacuations causing a dry distemper of the Stomach, and other Causes, the Cure is by suppressing those Evacuations, and by restoring the empty parts with moist Medicines.

Therefore first, having ordered a restoring Diet, as in a Hectick Feaver, Consumption, and Marasmus. Two Remedies prescribed by *Galen* are the best, 7. meth. namely, Milk and Baths. Although *Hippocrates*, Aph. 64. Sect. 5. forbids milk to thirsty people, that is to be understood of those who thirst from abundance of Choller, and putrid Humors, in whom Milk is easily putrified; not of those who thirst from drineſs and Consumption. We shewed the use of Milk in the Cure of a Consumption.

Let the Bath be made of the Decoction of Althæa Roots, and Lilly Roots, with Mallows, and Violet Leaves, and of a Decoction of the Heads, Feet, and Guts of Sheep, or melt fresh Butter, or Oyl in warm Water, to be changed often.

Going out of the Bath, let the Loyns, Back, and Stomach be anointed with Oyl of Violets, the Marrow of a Veal Bone, and the like, with which let as much Breast, or Goats Milk be mingled, as they will receive.

Let the Patient in the mean while use restoring Syrups and Lozenges, and other Remedies which shall be laid down in the Cure of an Hectick Feaver.

This following Opiate is excellent:

Take of *Eryngus Roots candied, and Conserve of Bugloss, of each two ounces: Conserve of Violets and Borrage-flowers, of each one ounce: Confectio Alkermes half an ounce: Diapenedion newly prepared without the Species, two drams: with Syrup of sweet Apples make an Opiate, of which let him take the quantity of a Chesnut at the time of thirst, drinking after it a little Borrage Water.*

Chap. 5. *Of the Hurt Concoction of the Stomach.*

THe Concoction of the Stomach called *Chylosis*, as of all other parts, is hurt three waies, either by diminishing, abolishing, or depraving. This Concoction diminished is called *Bradupepsia*; the abolished *Apepsia*; the depraved is called *Dyspepsia*; all which differences are comprehended in this one word *Crudity*. Now this Crudity is two-fold: either nidorous, stinking, and acidous, or sharp. The nidorous Crudity is when the nourishment is turned into a stinking, burnt matter, as when the stink of Eggs, or rotten fish, or fryed Oyl, is smelt by belching, which happens often in hot Chollerick Bodies. But a sharp sowr Crudity is when meat turns sowr, and the belchings are sowr, and this comes from a cold distemper. To these you may ad a third difference of Crudities, when by reason of weak heat the matter is imperfectly concocted, and is turned into flegm without sowrness.

The

The Cauſes that hinder Concoction in the Stomach may be brought into three Heads, namely, a fault in the Organ, Object, and things External and Internal.

The fault in the Organ comprehendeth all diſeaſes in the Stomach, whether they be Similar, or Organical, or Common, all which may overthrow its actions, but diſtemper is commonly the cauſe of hurt Concoction; for ſince Concoction is made by a moderate heat according to Nature, if at any time it want its due moderation, the Concoction is hurt. So a cold diſtemper of the Stomach which diminiſheth the Heat, if it be gentle it only weakeneth the Concoction, and make a Bralypepſia, or ſlow Concoction. If the cold diſtemper be greater, it aboliſheth Concoction, and makes Apepſia. But a hot diſtemper doth deprave Concoction, and make a Dyſpepſia, which is a difficult Concoction. Theſe diſtempers are ſometimes ſimple, and in ſuch who have Naturally a weak Stomach, and ſmal Natural heat; or have a ſharp and burning heat, but they are commonly with matter: hence in Hypochondriack Melancholly, much flegm and fermentation of a black Humor uſe to cauſe Crudities, Winds, Swellings, Rumblings, and ſowr belchings.

The fault of the Object, that is, the nouriſhment which is the proper Object of the Stomach, comes many waies, when it offendeth in Subſtance, Quantity, Quality, time, or Order of being taken.

Nouriſhment is vitious in reſpect of its ſubſtance, when it is too hard and difficult to be concocted, as Deers fleſh, Hairs fleſh, eſpecially if old, and made hard with Salt or Smoak, Bread full of Bran, Muſhroms, Roots, Pulſe, and the like, which are called Dyſpepta.

Meats offend in Quantity when too much is taken at once, and therefore cannot be overcome by the heat, hence come Crudities, which are moſt uſual among them who do ſurfet themſelves. If there be leſs eaten than is required, it may ſeem to be crude, becauſe too little meat will be burnt and dryed in a Chollerick Stomach.

Meats offend in Quality which are too cold and moiſt, and windy, or they which are too hot, whereby the thinner part of the Chyle is burnt, and turned into nidorous vapors.

To this may be reduced the Art of Cookery, and Sawce-making; for the divers waies of roaſting, boyling, and making of Sawce, do alter the diſpoſition of Meat, by which means they become more eaſie or hard of Concoction.

The time and order of eating being prepoſterous, may alſo ſpoil the Concoction, as if any one ſhould omit his uſual time of eating, and fall to at midnight, or a little before he goes to ſleep, fill his Stomach; or if after taking of ſolid and aſtringing things, as Cheeſe, Pears, Quinces, and the like, they take liquid things which do ſoon corrupt.

Alſo external things may ſpoil the Concoction, if they be immoderate: ſo too cold Air by dulling the natural heat, if it be weak or too hot, by diſſipating the heat may hinder Concoction; as alſo immoderate exercile, eſpecially after meat, by drawing the natural heat forth from the Stomach to the external parts, and ſo diſperſing it extraordinarily; as alſo by throwing the Chylus yet imperfect into the Guts. The ſtoppage of the Belly and other excrements, or an immoderate flux, great watchings, ſleep in the day time, great paſſions of the mind, eſpecially ſadneſs, and deep ſtudy preſently after meat, and the like, do not a little hinder the action of the Stomach.

Beſides the Cauſes mentioned, the Hermeticks of late time mention one leſs uſual, and not noted by the Ancients, which alſo is not plainly demonſtrated by them; but it is confirmed by ſome conjectures, not to be contemned; of which we made mention in the explaining of the Cauſes of Fames Canina. Firſt therfore they affirm that the Natural Concoction of the Stomach is not made by heat only; but that quick melting of ſolid meats by which it is converted into Chylus, is from another cauſe; ſince Experience teacheth that meat boyling in a pot at a ſtrong fire many daies, will never be diſſolved: and bones in a Dogs Stomach are quickly diſſolved, and turned into Chylous Liquor; and in the bellies of Fiſhes which have no actual heat, all that is brought in is diſſolved and concocted the ſame way. Therefore they lay down the principal Cauſe of this diſſolving to be a certain Spirit or ſharp Liquor ſent from the Spleen into the Stomach, which hath great power to diſſolve. And they take this opinion from *Galen*, by whom it is confirmed that a Melancholick Humor ſent from the Spleen into the Stomach, doth cauſe appetite, and that either by aſtringing or wrinkling the inner Tunicle of the Stomach, or pulling of it by its ſharpneſs, which may be oppoſed; for if it do it by aſtriction, then all aſtringent things would do the ſame; and if by pulling, ſharp things rather than ſowr would provoke Appetite. Therefore they think it more probable, that that humor ſhould ſtir up Appetite by accident, by cauſing want of nouriſhment, by diſſolving of that which comes in. And therefore they allow a more noble uſe of the Spleen than ever the Ancients thought of, namely, to be a chief inſtrument to ſerve the Stomach in Concoction: This may be conjectured from Birds which diſſolve the hardeſt ſeeds, and have a Spleen round about their Stomach or Maw, that it may more powerfully inſpire that diſſolving Spirit, or communicate unto it ſowr Liquor. And *Helmont* from his own experience ſaith, that that ſowr Spirit is very ſtrong in Birds; for he relates that when he was a Boy and kept a Sparrow, he gave it his Tongue, which the Sparrow catching with his Bill deſired to

twal-

ſwallow; and that touching the Throat of the Sparrow with the tip of his Tongue, he found it exceeding sharp. The diſſolving Spirit inherent in the Gizzards of Birds is proved from Phyſical Practice, in which the Gizzards of Hens for to help Concoction are uſually preſcribed in digeſtive powders, and it is credible that they produce that effect by helping the diſſolution of the meat, and the ſame are preſcribed in the Stone, and they do much diſſolve them; and that is more manifeſtly declared in that from the Gizzards of Birds, there is a ſalt taken which is excellent to diſſolve the Stone: out of which ſalt, being in great plenty in their gizzards, Nature being wiſe and provident knows how to draw a ſpirit in a living Creature, by help whereof with the natural heat ſhe may diſſolve ſolid nouriſhment: and it is ordinarily ſeen, that there is a ſpirit made of diſſolving ſalt, as of Vitriol, Niter, Armoniack, and common ſalt, which is more powerful to diſſolve.

Therefore the Spirit or ſharp Liquor which is ſent from the Spleen into the Stomach while it is in its natural ſtate makes a laudable Concoction, but if it be changed it overthrows the actions of the Stomach as aforeſaid, from theſe Poſitions, That a Dog Appetite was ſtirred up, when that ſpirit or acid Liquor, is too active and powerful to diſſolve: So on the other ſide, if the diſſolving power be too weak, or be defective, there followeth a diminiſhed or aboliſhed concoction. Hence *Helmont* ſaith, That the 1. Aph. of *Hipp.* Sect. 6. which is this: In long raging of the Guts, if ſowr belchings ariſe, which were not formerly, it is a good ſign; is thus to be interpreted, becauſe that ſowr belching ſignifieth that that fermentation which was loſt by the diſeaſe begins to return.

Let us hold up this new Doctrine by our own Experiment, for in the yeer paſt, 1648. we had a great Flegmatick and Melancholick Flux for four months, and were brought thereby to extream leanneſs, by reaſon all our nouriſhment turned into a Flegmatick and ſlimy ſubſtance, from the debility of the Stomach which could not well concoct the ſame, after many Medicines uſed all along that time, the chief part whereof profited little or nothing, at length by the often uſe of very ſharp Vinegar in a few dayes we were perfectly cured of that violent diſeaſe; by the force of which Vinegar we may conjecture that the natural ſowrneſs which was almoſt loſt was much reſtored: We uſed this Vinegar at our meat with hard Egs, which being cut in pieces we dipped therein, and for ſome dayes we continued the uſe thereof in all our meats: And we manifeſtly perceived that if the Vinegar was not very ſharp it did our Stomach little good.

The Knowledg or Diagnoſis of this Diſeaſe, according to the differences of hurt Concoction is divers: And firſt, Apepſia and Bradypepſia are known by the ſame ſigns only differing in degrees: and theſe ſigns are ſowr belchings, vomiting or purging forth of food either not, or but half concocted, ſome cauſes of refrigeration went before, there is a weight, extention and inflamation in the ſtomach, inconvenience by taking cold things; thin urine, watriſh, and pale; ſometimes thick and red from that impure and filthy juyce which by reaſon of the imperfection of the firſt concoction could not be ſeparated from the Chylus, but being ſent to the Reins with the ſerous humor, makes the urin foul, ſuch as uſeth to be voided by Melancholick and Scorbutick perſons.

See the Explication of this Urine more at large in *Sennertus*, lib. 3. pract. med. part. 8. ſect. 2 cap. 7. but theſe ſhew Concoction depraved or Dyſpepſia, Nidorous ſtinking belchings, the like taſte or ſmk in the mouth, ſenſe of thirſt and heat, inconvenience by hot things.

If the Stomach is affected principally, there will be the proper ſigns of its Diſeaſe; but if by conſent, this ſympathy is to be found out from the proper ſigns of the part affected: but if the ſymptome depend upon the fault of external cauſes, or of the object, it will appear by the relation of the Patient and thoſe that ſtand by, from the preſent or foregoing Conſtitution of the ſame.

The Prognoſtick is thus made; the fault of Concoction which comes from external cauſes is eaſily helped, by taking away thoſe cauſes, and by ordering a good diet.

Concoction hurt is more eaſily cured when it comes of humors which are brought from other parts into the ſtomach, then when it is only from the ſtomach: for as if thoſe humors are purged before they faſten any diſeaſe in the ſtomach, concoction is reſtored.

The Aboliſhed Concoction of the Stomach is worſt of al, becauſe the whol nouriſhment of the body is fruſtrated, from whence comes moſt deadly diſeaſes, as Lientery, Dropſie, Atrophy, and the like.

The Concoction Diminiſhed brings its inconveniencies, as Chollick, Cachexy, or evil Habit, and ſometimes divers ſorts of Dropſies.

The Concoction Depraved, is the Cauſe of many Evils; of Obſtructions, Scabs, Feavers, and the like.

The Cure is wrought by taking away Cauſes external, antecedent, and conjunt, which do cauſe, encreaſe, and preſerve this diſeaſe.

And firſt obſerve, if the humors be brought from other parts into the ſtomach, and in this caſe they muſt firſt be Evacuated and Revelled, the diſeaſe of the part ſending thoſe humors is to be amended, and the ſtomach ſtrengthned, the cures of the diſeaſes of other parts muſt be taken from their proper Chapters: But the ſtrengthening of the ſtomach may be taken from the cure of the Want of Appetite.

But the Hurt which comes to the Concoction from the proper fault of the ſtomach, that chiefly takes its beginning from cold or hot humors; and therfore requires the ſame cure, which was propounded for Want of Appetite coming of the ſame Cauſes, which we wil not repeat.

Laſtly, If the proper Cauſe of the Hermeticks afore-mentioned be worth obſerving, you muſt look to it; firſt correcting the Evil ſtate of the Liver, and then reſtoring the Spirits diſſolving, with ſome acid ſubſtance; of which kind is Spirit of Sulphur, Vitriol, Salt, juyce of Lemons, Pomegranats, Orenges, and Vinegar.

Chap. 6. *Of* Singultus, *or Hiccough.*

Singultus or Hiccough, is a depraved Motion of the Stomach, by which it deſires to expel ſomething that is hurtful.

It is diſtinguiſhed from vomiting, becauſe that which is ſo ſent forth, is contained in the Cavity of the Stomach; and it is wholly turned to throw it out: But in Singultus the matter offending is fixed in the Tunicles of the Stomach, therefore it doth contract it ſelf, and ſhakes its fibres, to exclude it. And that we may comprehend loathing alſo in this Definition, we ſay that the expulſive motion of the Stomach is three waies: For either Nature would ſomtimes riſe to expel, and cannot; or it is not ſufficiently raiſed to this motion, and then it is Nauſea or loathing: ſomtimes it riſeth and expelleth, and then it is Vomiting: or laſtly, it riſeth to expel, and cannot, and that is Singultus.

This is a Convulſive Motion, not a Convulſion, which is only in the Muſcles, and parts given to voluntary Motion.

The immediate Cauſes of Singultus are propounded by *Hipp.* Aph. 39. Sect. 6. that is, Emptineſs and Repletion, as of a Convulſion. But *Galen* and *Avicen* ad a third Cauſe, namely, a provocation by a ſharp matter. Some labor to bring the matter provoking to a kind of repletion, that they may excuſe *Hippocrates*. But when the matter is plain, we need not confound and darken the evidences of things for Authors words: For what is more cleer, than that Singultus comes from the expulſive faculty provoked? Therefore whatſoever can provoke is the immediate cauſe of Singultus or Hiccough. But Humors and Vapors offending either in quantity or quality may provoke the Stomach to expulſion, and ſo repletion and acrimony are two diſtinct cauſes. But it is not eaſie to ſhew how emptineſs makes a Singultus: For ſince its Eſſence is in defect, none will ſay that Nature riſeth to expel a defect; but rather will be moved to refreſh and repair it, and ſo it doth rather move the Attractive than the Expulſive Faculty. But if Singultus follow great Evacuations, as in ſharp Feavers, and malignant, and purging with Hellebore, it is not ſimply to be attributed to the Evacuation, but rather to a malignant quality in the Stomach, coming from the Diſeaſe, or ſome Medicine taken.

The Matter cauſing Singultus is either gathered in the Stomach, or ſent from the Liver, Spleen Guts, or other parts; or from the whol Body. So ſharp Nouriſhment, or ſharp Medicines, or ſharp Humors, or gnawing Worms contained in the Stomach, cauſe a Singultus by propriety: but inflamation of the parts adjacent by water or vapors ſent to the Stomach, make it by conſent: as alſo becauſe the Tumor, eſpecially when the Liver is inflamed, doth compreſs the Stomach, by which the expulſive faculty is continually provoked. Finally, Humors may be brought from the whol Body, or ſharp humors to the Stomach, in diſeaſes of the whol Body, as appears in ſharp and malignant Feavers.

The Diagnoſis, or knowledg of this Diſeaſe, is manifeſt of it ſelf. But the ſigns of the Cauſe are thus to be diſtinguiſhed, ſo that if it be by propriety, the diſeaſe is more laſting, and there will appear ſigns of the Humors contained in the Stomach, and the diſeaſe is aſſwaged by Vomit. The Humor contained in the Stomach is known by vomit, belching, taſte in the mouth, and by other ſigns. And finally, if it come from a diſeaſe in any other part, you may take the ſigns thereof from their proper Chapters.

As to the Prognoſtick: Singultus that comes from any principal Cauſe, as Meat, Drink, or Cold, is not dangerous; as alſo that which goes before a Criſis by Vomit, and then other ſigns muſt be healthful.

If any have the Hiccough in a great Feaver, the Diſeaſe is very dangerous, *Hipp. in Coacis.* For it comes from ſharp Humors, and malignant, which pull the Tunicle of the Stomach inwardly, and force its expulſive faculty. And *Valleſius* ſaith, that he never knew any extenuated perſons taken with a hot and malignant Feaver, who had a Singultus, to eſcape: So it is in *Hipp.* 3. Epid. Sect. 2. Ægr. 12. A woman living in the Marker, had many Hiccoughs upon the twelfth day, and died the fourteenth day of her ſickneſs. Alſo *Platerus* obſerved, that a Singultus coming upon burning Feavers, and continuing, is for the moſt part a forerunner of death; and the ſame is deadly in a Dyſentery, or bloody flux.

After

After Vomiting, Singultus and redneſs of the Eyes is evil, *Hipp.* Aph. 3. Sect. 7. Theſe two ſigns coming after Vomiting in acute Diſeaſes, and continuing any time, therefore are ſaid to be deadly, becauſe they declare an inflamation of the Brain or Stomach; which inflamation is not only the cauſe of Hiccoughs and redneſs of Eyes, but alſo of Vomiting: For if Vomiting come from ſharp Humors that gnaw the mouth of the Stomach, and its Tunicles, when thoſe Humors are thrown out by Vomit, the Singultus and vomiting would ceaſe, nor would any ſharp vapor be ſent to the Eyes, which ſhould make them red: But when Vomiting doth not only not profit, but alſo brings after it Hiccoughs and redneſs of the Eyes; it is moſt certain that theſe three, namely, Vomiting, Hiccoughs, and Redneſs of the Eyes, do come from the Inflamation of the Brain or Stomach: for the Brain being inflamed, doth through abundance of blood ſend it to the Eyes, and into their extream Tunicles, whence comes redneſs; to which alſo the Stomach conſenting by the Nerves of the ſixth Conjugation, is eaſily from the Inflamation of the Brain brought to Vomit and Hiccough. Alſo the Stomach inflamed by a concourſe of hot blood to the Eyes by reaſon of the great conſent between thoſe parts, brings Vomit, Hiccoughs, and redneſs of the Eyes, which the beginning of ſuffocations do demonſtrate, and the appearance of things before the Eyes which are in the Stomach diſordered; whence *Hippocrates* in his Book *de locis in homine*, affirms that the Eyes are chiefly hurt by Vomiting.

Singultus from Inflamation of the Liver is hurtful, *Hipp.* Aph. 17. Sect. 7. which comes then, as *Galen* ſhews in his Comment upon that Aphoriſm, when the Inflamation is greater and worſe, for then it is ſo great in the Liver that it lieth upon the Stomach, and brings the Singultus: nay, ſometimes by conflux of matter, there is ſometimes an inflamation or Eryſipelas in the Stomach: or elſe there comes gnawing from the ſame being ſucked into the Tunicles of the Stomach.

The Cure of this diſeaſe is directed to the Cauſes, which as I ſaid, do either produce it by way of Sympathy, or Propriety. The Cauſes which produce it by ſympathy, are the diſeaſes of other parts, which being cured, this is cured, although theſe Medicines are to be adminiſtred then, which are good to allay the Symptome, which ſhall be afterwards declared.

This Diſeaſe by Propriety comes of Flegm, Wind, Choller, or ſome ſharp or maligant Humor.

That which comes from Flegm in the Tunicles of the Stomach is cured by Medicines which cut the Humor, cleanſe and purge it, and by ſtrengtheners of the part, ſuch as were preſcribed for the Cure of want of Appetite coming of a cold Cauſe. To which we may ad theſe following, as more proper to this diſeaſe.

Take of *Caſtor one dram*: *the juyce of Mints four ounces*: *Mix them, let the Patient take one ſpoonful or two every fit*: *and you may anoint the Stomach with the ſame Medicine warm, twice or thrice in a day.*

He may take Vinegar of Squils often to cut and diſſolve the matter contained in the Tunicles of the Stomach, or inſtead thereof, Oxymel of Squils.

Cloves held often in the mouth do not a little profit.

Alſo the *Elixir Proprietatis* of *Crollius*, is very profitable.

Take of *Dill ſeeds, two or three drams*: *boyl them a little in eight ounces of the beſt Wine*; *of which let the Patient take one ounce firſt and laſt. Let the ſame Seed be put into a cloth, and often ſmelled to.*

When the Diſeaſe is violent, theſe Pills following are very good.

Take of *Caſtor and Myrrh, of each three drams*: *Sal gem. half an ounce*: *Diagridium, and Maſtich, of each one dram*: *Agarick newly trochiſcated three drams*: *Aloes, as much as all the reſt*: *make them with Juyce of Mints into a maſs, of one dram whereof, make ſix Pills gilded. Let him take two or three in the morning twice in a week, two hours before meat.*

Plainer Pills, and almoſt as good, may be made of Hiera with Oxymel, of which you may give a dram.

In the daies between the taking of Pills, give this Pouder:

Take of *Dill ſeeds half an ounce*: *Zedoary, Lignum Aloes, Nutmegs, Cloves, and ponder of Diambra, of each one dram. Let him take two ſcruples in a morning with a little ſweet Wine, or put to them three ounces of Common Salt, and let him eat it with all his Victuals.*

Apply this Cataplaſm following to the Stomach.

Take of *Roots of Ariſtolochium, or long Birthwort, Flowerdeluce, Bay-berries, dried Leaves of Rue and Mints, of each three drams*: *Caſtor and Myrrh, of each two drams*: *Cloves, and Hypociſtis, of each one dram. Make a Cataplaſm with Honey of Roſemary.*

At length, when the diſeaſe is ſtubborn, you muſt uſe the Decoction of Guajacum and Baths of Brimſtone, as the beſt Medicines.

That which comes from wind, is cured by the ſame Medicines, adding thereto things to expel wind.

Apply also Cupping-glasses to the region of the Stomach, which miraculously do presently abate, and take away the windy diseases of the Stomach.

That which comes from a sharp Chollerick Humor, besides those Remedies which were prescribed in want of Appetite coming of a cold distemper, most proper also to this Disease, must be cured by Phlebotomy (if there be Plethory or fulness) by vomiting and gentle purging every third day, thus made:

Take of *the pouder of Rhubarb, sprinkled with Endive Water half an ounce: the pulp of Tamarinds, two drams: the seeds of Endive and Purslain, and of Spodium, of each one dram: yellow Saunders, and Diagridium, of each half a dram: with syrup of Lemons make a Mass of Pills of half a dram; whereof make Four or Five Pills to be given in the Morning as aforesaid.*

Upon other daies let him take Conserve of Roses and Borrage, mixed with a little Triasantalon or the Opiate mentioned in the Cure of Want of Appetite.

Emulsions often used, made of the Cold Seeds, do powerfully asswage the sharpness of the Humor; or in a disease not very hot, the milk of sweet Almonds.

Syrup of Apples, with Syrup of Quinces is to be given in a spoon.

He must take Broth often.

And must drink cold or warm Water or Ptisans often.

The Oyl of sweet Almonds doth asswage the sharpness of the humors.

Let the Stomach be Fomented with a spung dipt in Rose water.

Take of *the Cerat of Saunders and Oyntment of Roses, of each one ounce: Mastich half an ounce: Citron peels and pulp of Quinces, of each one dram: with Juyce of Housleek and a little Turpentine, make two Emplaisters, of which lay one to the fore part, another to the hinder part of the stomach.*

Anoint the region of the Liver with Cooling Oyntments, because the Humors use to flow from thence to the stomach.

If you suspect any infection, you must give Treacle and other Antidotes, and anoint the stomach with the Oyl of Scorpions according to *Matthiolus*.

These Medicines following are good against the Hiccough of what cause soever.

First, Expel the Humor offending by Vomit, if the Patient can wel endure it; and Repeat it, if the Disease abate, and give stronger if necessity requires.

As *Platerus* sheweth in his *Practice*, of which he gives an example, in his *Observations* in these words, *A Chirurgion being sick began to Hiccough day and night so that he could neither sleep, speak well, or take meat: at last being thus weak and nothing profiting him, when he was in an agony, we gave him not without fear but at his own entreaty, a strong Chymical Vomit at hand, by which he vomited abundance of choller green and black, and so was cured.*

If the Patient abhor Vomits, Purge him.

But prepare the Humors first or before you repeat it, with cutting and clensing means; after use these following:

Apply Cupping Glasses to the Back against the Stomach or before.

Bind the Stomach that it may not be dilated.

Use Ligatures to the remote parts.

Take Annis-seed, for they say that doth specifically cure.

And give often Clysters to draw the Humors from the Stomach.

Apply yong Creatures to the Stomach.

And, Take Vinegar of Squils in a spoon.

Neezing doth shake off the Matter which is compacted in the Tunicles of the Stomach; as *Chrysimachus* the Physitian in *Plato* cured *Aristophanes* by Neezing, when he could not be cured by holding his breath, and gargling of cold water.

Galen, 8. *de comp. med. sec. loc.* mentiones the Medicine of *Asclepiades*, of which he examineth every Simple, and approveth them as if it had al Faculties fit for this intention; namely, To discuss and Evacuate the Matter hurtful, by Stool and Urin, to strengthen the stomach; and lastly to mitigate sharpnels.

The Composition is thus:

Take of *Costus or Galangal, Saffron, Spikenard, Roses, Mastich, of each four scruples: Asarabacca and Aloes of each two scruples: Opium one scruple: with the Juyce of Fleabane make them into little Balls or Cakes, and let him take one of a scruple in weight every morning.*

In imitation of that you may quicklier prepare Pills for one Dose, of one dram of Aloes two or three grains of Laudanum; And if you wil Purge more, give three or four grains of Diagridium.

Duretus

Duretus teſtifieth what excellent force Aloes hath in this Diſeaſe, in theſe words, *Many when they have been almoſt dead with the Hiccough, have been cured with Purging five dayes together with Hiera after they have voided black glutinous humors.*

Platerus reports in his Obſervations, That he Cured a Boy of ten yeers old, that was troubled night and day for eight dayes together with the Hiccough, with the Water of green Nuts, diſtilled with Rhadiſh firſt macerated in Vinegar, which he gave as a Vomit; and though he vomited not, yet he was eaſed; and taking a draught thereof at night, was preſently Cured.

Foreſtus reports, That he Cured one with one draught of the Decoction of Dill-ſeeds, Carva, Purſlain, and white Poppy-ſeeds, made in ſmal Ale.

Claudinus doth highly commend Diaphœnicum with Philonium Romanum, when the Cauſe and the Symptome are very violent.

Laſtly, Narcoticks only do alone Cure this when al other things fail, by ſtupifying of the ſenſe of the part which is too exquiſite.

Chap. 8. *Of* Nauſea, *and Vomiting.*

N*Auſea* and Vomiting differ only in degrees, and both are the motion of the Stomach by which it either expelleth or labors to expel things contained therein; therfore Nauſea is a deſire to Vomit with trouble, and only ſending and pewking forth a thin wateriſh Humor by Salivation: whatſoever troubles the Stomach either in quantity or quality uſeth to ſtir that up, when it cannot be voided by reaſon of the weakneſs of the Stomach, or the ſtrength of the upper Orifice, or thickneſs of the Matter, or ſliminess.

But Vomiting, which is called in Greek *Emetos*, or *Emeſia*, is a Depraved motion of the Stomach, which ſhaketh it, by which the Expulſive Faculty is ſtirred up by Contraction of the Fibres of the lower part and looſening thoſe in the ſuperior, doth ſenſibly with a violent Motion throw upward the Matter contained therein, which is troubleſom unto it; it is called a Depraved Motion both in reſpect of the Object troubling it, as alſo in reſpect of the Motion it ſelf, which is from the bottom of the Stomach to the Mouth of it, turning it, when the natural Motion of the Stomach is Compulſive towards the Guts and the Pylorus.

The Differences of Vomitings are taken from their Cauſes, which are either External or Internal; therefore it is Divided firſt into Natural and Artificial; the Natural again, is either without a Diſeaſe, or in the Diſeaſe; from whence ariſeth a Three-fold Difference, one is called Periodical, another Critical, and another Symptomatical.

Periodical is that which without a Diſeaſe, is uſed for preſervation often, from whence we reade in *Hippocrates*, That the Ancients did Vomit Twice every Month, either at diſtance, or together.

And there are many in our times, who uſe either every Month, or Week, or Day to Vomit Choller, or Flegm; by which they are Preſerved from many Diſeaſes: And this is not properly a Symptome, becauſe there is no Diſeaſe preſent; but it is rather to be termed a Motion of Nature.

Critical Vomiting often happens in Diſeaſes, and by that the Matter of the Diſeaſe, if preparation be firſt made, is wholſomly Evacuated; either al, by which it is Cured; or in part, by which it is Diminiſhed.

Symptomatical Vomiting comes from Nature provoked and weakned and without eaſe to the Patient, becauſe it is not enough, or it is nouriſhed continually with the Matter that maketh the Diſeaſe.

Other Differences of Vomitings are taken from the things vomited, for they are either Nouriſhable or Excrementitious; the firſt is of Meat, Chylus, or pure or mixed blood: the latter is of Flegm, Choller, Melancholly, Water, Matter, Worms, and the like.

Artificial Vomiting, generally is whatſoever is from an External Cauſe: The External Cauſes, are chiefly Stroaks, Falls, Compreſſion of the lower Belly, Southernly weather, or infectious Air, Poyſonous Breath, Stinking Smels, Violent Exerciſe, Riding, Sayling at Sea, eſpecially in a Southernly wind, beholding or conceiving of ſome filthy thing: And the like External Cauſes which provoke Nature, or move the Humors; but eſpecially things taken in have great force, not only vomits called *Emetica*, and Poyſons which we diſtaſte; but alſo Nouriſhment either hurtful in their Nature, or hated peculiarly of ſome; as in *Hippocrates*, who ſpeaks of one who with eating of Muſhromes or Toad-ſtooles, died Vomiting. The ſame happened to a Courtier of *Antoninus* the Emperor, who by eating much mouldy Cheeſe died Vomiting. The quality of Food wil do the ſame if it be Fat or Oyly, as alſo a propoſterous order in eating, when moiſtning and looſning things

are

are eat after aſtringents, and alſo too much food taken, though never ſo good, as appears in Gluttons; for then Nature being over charged, deſires to throw out what ſhe cannot concoct, to which ſhe is alſo ſtirred up by the evil quality which is brought to thoſe meats by corruption, or evil concoction.

The internal Cauſes are either Antecedent, or Conjunct.

The Antedent Cauſes either come from the whol Body, or from ſome proper peculiar part into the Stomach. They come from the whol Body in a Plethory, evil habit or Cachexy, Feavers, and other diſeaſes of the whol Body. The Humors are often derived from ſome peculiar part into the Stomach in the inflamation of the Liver, Spleen, or other Obſtruction of the Meſentery, from the Terms ſtopped, or Hemorrhoids, from a Catarrh, or the like. To this you may ad the evil Conformation of the *Porus Cholidochus* when it is not placed into the Duodenum, but into the Stomach, whence they are called *Pichrocholi Ana*, who are often troubled with Chollerick Vomits, by reaſon of this evil Conformation. Alſo this vomiting cometh by the Periſtaltick motion of the Guts, when they are ſtopped in the Chollick, and the humors cannot well get forth, but come upwards; alſo Worms coming up into the Stomach from the Guts, and pulling the inward Tunicle thereof, do cauſe vomiting. And laſtly, An Impoſthume broken in the Spleen, Metentery, and other parts of the Abdomen, uſeth to cauſe a vomiting of Matter.

The Conjunct Cauſes of Vomiting, are them before mentioned, when they come to the Stomach; for while they were in other, they were antecedent Cauſes. Theſe are eſpecially divers Humors, ſome bred in the Stomach, eſpecially Flegm, of which there is often much in the Stomach, by Crudities, and want of Concoction when the Stomach is weak, and turns it into flegm. So alſo is there ſomtimes green Choller in the Stomach bred of corrupt Humors, as *Galen* teacheth, Com. in 2. Progn. and this cleerly appears in ſucking Infants, who through corruption of Milk in their Stomach uſe to avoid green ſtools like Leeches, or Verdegreeſe.

This green Choller which comes from corrupt nouriſhment in the Stomach, is not the ſame with that which cometh from yellow Choller by aduſtion and torrefaction.

The Signs of Vomiting are manifeſt. But the Cauſes, as they are divers, ſo they have divers ſigns.

Firſt then, if Vomiting come from a fault in the Stomach, there are ſigns of that part being affected, as loathing of meat, heavineſs, extenſion, ſwelling in the Region of the Stomach, ſlow and hard Concoction, ſowr and ſtinking belchings, and other ſigns that ſhew the diſtemper of that part. So if it come from a Common and Organical Diſeaſe in the Stomach, as a Tumor, or Ulcer, the ſigns of theſe Diſeaſes will diſcover themſelves. But if Vomiting come by ſympathy from the whol body or other parts, there will appear ſome Diſeaſe of the whol body, or ſome part.

The whol Body is affected in Feavers, evil Habit, Jaundice, Atrophy or want of nouriſhment. But the Principal parts from which the Humors are ſent more frequently to the Stomach, are the Brain, Liver, Guts, and Womb.

If the Humors flow from the Brain to the Stomach, there will appear ſigns of diſtillations, frothy and flegmy vomitings, and a great loathing at meat time.

If the Humor come from the Liver, it is commonly Choller; and Vomiting before meat, is worſe than after; and there appears ſome diſeaſe in the Liver, as pain or tumor.

If the Matter come from the Guts, either there will be Chollick or Illiack paſſion, or the ſigns of Worms.

Laſtly, If it come from the Womb, there is Conception, ſuppreſſion of Terms, or other Symptomes.

We may alſo know by ſome ſigns whether the Humor be contained in the Cavity of the Stomach, or ſtick to the Tunicles thereof. For if it be in the Cavity it is eaſily caſt forth, and there is ſtretching in the Stomach, and trouble after Meat, which will not ceaſe till the Humors are ſent out by vomit, which are for the moſt part thrown out alone, and the Meat retained. But if the Humors ſtick to the Tunicles, vomiting is chiefly after Meat, and the Meat is caſt forth without the Humors, but when there is no Meat, there is a loathing, and that which is caſt forth, is thick and ſlimy, and with great ſtraining.

The external Cauſes are known by relation of the Patient, as if he hath eat or drunk too much, or received a ſtroak, or eat any evil thing.

The ſigns of Vomiting to come are ſhewed by *Galen, lib.* 3. *de criſ. cap. ult.* as Headach, dark giddineſs, trembling of the lower Lip, gnawing at the mouth of the Stomach, often and much ſpitting.

You muſt make the Prognoſtick thus:

Vomiting from Choller and Flegm, which is neither very thick, nor very much, and which hath both thoſe Humors exquiſitely mingled, is good. For it is commendable in ſubſtance, quantity, and quality. For of all excrementitious Humors, Flegm and Choller are the mildeſt: if then they be

be vomited well mixed, and in a moderate quantity and conſiſtence, it hath all the laudable conditions.

Chollerick and Flegmatick Vomitings on a critical day are very good: For not only mixed are good, but vomiting of one ſingle, if it cauſe the Diſeaſe. So in Chollerick Feavers, when Choller comes forth critically, or Flegm in Flegmatick Feavers, the Diſeaſe is at an end, or at leaſt there is great hopes of recovery.

A Vomiting naturally after a long flux of the Belly, cures the diſeaſe, Aph. 15. Sect. 6. for there is a revulſion of the Matter to the contrary part. And this ſhews that Nature is refreſhed, and gets ſtrength: For as the Phyſitian ought to labor for the retraction of thoſe things that flow to any part. So Nature, when ſhe begins to prevail, makes a repulſion of the Humor, which flows to the part affected, that the part may be refreſhed and ſtrengthened.

Little and violent vomiting in a ſharp Feaver, is evil; for it is not good to void ſparingly in a Criſis; for it ſignifieth one of theſe two things: Either abundance of Matter which Nature cannot bear, but muſt ſend ſome of it forth: or the weakneſs of Nature, which ſtriveth in vain to ſend forth that which is ſuperfluous.

Vomitings of divers colors are evil, it ſignifieth divers Humors lurking in the Body, and therefore Nature will be more put to it with divers enemies; for if it be troubleſom to Nature to contend with divers Nouriſhments, how much more dangerous is it to ſtrive to concoct and tame divers preternatural Humors, eſpecially in acute Diſeaſes, in which there is but ſhort time to fight, which ſhould be long, that there might be more hope of Nature being a Conqueror.

Green Vomiting like Leeks, Verdugreeſe, as alſo blew, black, or ſtinking, is deadly: For it ſignifieth that there is abundance of Choller of thoſe colors: And all theſe kinds of Choller uſe to produce malignant and deadly diſeaſes. And if there be a ſtink, it ſhews a great corruption of Humors, with which Nature cannot long conſiſt.

In acute Feavers, Vomiting without mixture of Humors is evil, according to *Hipp.* 1. Porrhet. For a pure Humor is not only crude, but incapable of Concoction, becauſe it excludeth not only the act, but the power of Concoction. *Hippocrates* calls every humor that is without mixture, and every Excrement that is hot and crude, *Acriton*, becauſe it is bred either by the defect of ſome part, or by reaſon the watery, ſerous matter is exhauſted by the heat of a Feaver. Therefore in ſharp Feavers it ſhews that there is a great inward inflamation, and for the moſt part ſuch as Nature cannot conquer.

As for the **Cure**: If Vomiting come from a diſeaſe in ſome other part, it needs no other Medicines than thoſe which are agreeable to the diſeaſe from whence it comes.

But if it come from Chollerick, Flegmatick, or Melancholick Humors which ſtimulate and provoke the Stomach, either by their quantity or quality, you muſt throw out thoſe Humors by Vomitive Medicines.

But if they be thick and glutinous, or clammy, they are to be cut and cleanſed, as we ſhewed in the Cure of want of Appetite.

The beſt Vomit in this caſe, is that which is indifferent gentle, and not too weak, as warm Oyl: nor muſt you give ſtrong ones made of Antimony, which draw violently from remote parts. But ſuch as do cleanſe and diſſolve the glutinous Humors, as *Gylla Theophraſti*, or white Vitriol prepared: but Salt of Vitriol brought to a high redneſs by Calcination, is the ſtronger.

If Vomits are unpleaſant, you muſt take away the Matter with often Clyſters and gentle Purgations with Rhubarb in them, which aſtringeth and ſtrengtheneth afterwards.

In Chollerick Vomitings, theſe Pills following may be preſcribed:

Take of *Aloes waſhed with Roſe Water three drams: the pouder of Rhubarb ſprinkled with Borrage Water one dram: Maſtich, red Sanders, and Coral prepared, of each one ſcruple: With Syrup of Roſes Solutive make a Maſs of Pills, of which take half a dram, or a dram every other day till the Vomiting be ceaſed.* Or,

Take of *Rhubarb poudered one dram: yellow Myrobalans one ſcruple: Spodium, or burnt Ivory, and Harts-horn ſhaved, of each ſix grains. Make a pouder, and give it twice in a week, in a little Broth.*

Or make a Bolus of Hiera Picra, or three drams of Diacatholicon, with one dram of poudered Rhubarb.

In a moſt violent Vomiting, give three grains of Laudanum, with two ſcruples and an half of Cochie Pills the leſs, the Vomit will be ſtayed, and five hours after they will work downwards. There is a good quantity of the purging Pills in this Receipt, becauſe Laudanum doth aſtringe, and therefore it muſt be given with Medicines made of Diagridium, and Coloquintida. And if the Medicine do not come away, you muſt give a ſharp Clyſter.

After ſufficient purging, you muſt ſtrengthen the Stomach with Syrup of Quinces, ſowr Pomegranates, old Conſerve of Roſes, or Comfry Roots, Conſerve of Quinces; or this following Julep, if it be very Chollerick and vehement.

Take

Take of *the juyce of sowr Pomegranats six ounces: the juyce of Mints clarified two ounces: Sorrel Water one pint: white Sugar half a pound: make a Julep, in which while it is clarifying boyl gently in a clout of yellow Saunders, red Roses, and Spodium, of each one dram: Let him take four ounces first and last.*

Take of *Terra Sigillata, or sealed Earth, Bole Armonick, red Coral, prepared Pearl, Purslain, and Sorrel seed, of each one dram: shavings of Harts-horn, and of dried Mints, of each one scruple: red Roses half a pugil: Make a Pouder to be taken in Broth, or the like; or in a spoonful of Cha'ybiate Water.* Or,

Make Tablets thereof with Sugar dissolved in Plantane Water, or an Opiate with Syrup of Quinces, Conserve of Roses, or Comfry Roots.

Some few Grains of the best Mastich, taken in the Morning, is good to stay Vomitting.

Three Grains also of Balsom of Peru taken in a rear Egg, or in Sugar like a Pill, do it better.

Also a Decoction of Beans, or Pease, after the first Water is cast away, with a little Vinegar, is much Commended.

And the Crude Juyce of Quinces, taken Two or Three spoonfuls at a time, doth Wonders.

Camphire often smelt to, or taken with a little Rose Water, and a little Pouder of Diamoscum, is good for the same.

The Spirit of Vitriol mixed with Plantane or Spring Water, to make it sharp, doth also powerfully stay Vomiting.

If it be very violent, make the Water sharper with Spirit of Vitriol; or give it in Sack, or rich Wine; if you want Spirit of Vitriol, use the strongest Vinegar without mixture, one spoonful or two at a time.

One Scruple of Salt of Wormwood, mixed with a spoonful of the Juyce of Lemons, is a most excellent Medicine; especially in those Vomitings which happen in Malignant Feavers.

If the Patient grow very Weak with Vomiting, give him Laudanum with Conserve of Quinces, or Syrup of dried Roses; and then apply a Cupping Glass to the Stomach, and a Cataplasm of Leaven, pouder of Wormwood, and Orange peels, made up with juyce of Mints.

Apply also outwardly a Fomentation to the region of the Stomach, a new Spunge dipt in Rose water and Rose vinegar; or let the Spunge boyl in strong Vinegar, and apply it hot to the Stomach.

Or make a Fomentation of the Decoction of the Roots of Snake-weed, Plantan-leaves, Purslain, Mints, Bramble-tops, and Willow-tops, and then anoint it with this Oyntment.

Take of *Acacia, Hypocistis, grains of Sumach and Myrtles, of each two drams: Mastich and grains of Kermes, of each one dram: Oyl of Myrtles two ounces: Wax as much as is sufficient; make an Oyntment: or apply this following Cataplasm.*

Take of *Quinces boyled in Rose water and Vinegar, or Marmalate thereof well beaten, three ounces: the pouder of Mastich, Grane of Kermes, and Myrtle berries, and Plantane-seed, of each two drams: with the Juyce of Mints, or Quinces, or Syrup of Wormwood, make a Cataplasm.*

Or, Steep a Crust of Bread in Rose Vinegar, and sprinkle it with this pouder following:

Take of *red Roses, and Pomegranate flowers, and Coriander seeds prepared, of each one dram and an half: Mastich, red Coral, Sorrel seeds, Spodium, of each half a dram: yellow Saunders one scruple: mix them into a pouder.*

Or, Apply this following Emplaister:

Take of *Mastich plaister, one ounce: the pouder of Myrtles, and Bistort-Roots, of each half a dram: with the Oyl of Mastich make an Emplaister in the form of a Buckler.*

If the Vomiting be very violent, and bring a Feaver Symptomatical, and the Body very full, it is good sometimes to let blood to prevent inflamation which may be in the internal parts by reason of the violent straining; and this must be done warily, and but a little, least the strength be abated.

Moreover, It is good to apply Cupping Glasses to the Back and Navel, and to rub and bind the extream parts.

You may bind about the Neck Linnen Clothes dipt in Oxycrate to repel the humors: putting of the hands into cold Water, doth stay all kinds of vomiting.

And Last, When other things avail not, use Narcoticks which do very quickly stop all Evacuations.

In

In a Flegmatick Vomiting (if it wil not be ſtaid with the aforeſaid Vomits) give Pills of Hiera, with Rhubarb and Agarick, or other fit Purges.

Then come to ſtrengtheners for the Stomach, ſuch as were preſcribed for the Cure of Want of Appetite: to which ad this following:

Take of *Conſerve of Roſes and Comfry Roots, of each one ounce: confection of Hyacinth, three drams: the pouder of Diambra, and Aromaticum Roſatum, of each half a dram: Troches of Spodium, terra Sigillata, and grana Kermes, of each one ſcruple: with ſyrup of Quinces make an Opiate.*

The Spirit of Vitriol with Wormwood water, or Juyce of Mints, doth mightily ſtay Vomiting, and Strengthen the Stomach.

Or, One or two ſpoonfuls of Aqua Imperialis, given after Vomiting if the Stomach be very Cold.

Apply theſe things following outwardly:

Take of *Wormwood, Mints, and Balm, of each three handfuls: boyl them in a ſufficient quantity of Vinegar and Wine, to the conſumption of the third Part; make a Fomentation for the ſtomach.*

After apply the Plaiſter afore-mentioned, or the Cataplaſm of Quinces, uſing the Pouder of Nutmegs and Cloves, inſtead of Myrtles and Plantane. Or,

Take of *Wormwood and green Mints of each one pound: a Toaſt dipt in Roſe-water weighing half a pound: the Pulp of Quinces, or Marmalat of the ſame, two ounces: Maſtich half an ounce: Mace and Nutmegs, of each two drams: beat them all well together with Oyl of Quinces and make an Emplaiſter.*

Or, Make a Cataplaſm of Quinces boyled in ſtrong Vinegar and then beaten with a little Muſtard-ſeed and Pouder of Cloves.

Or, Apply a Toaſt dipped in ſtrong Wine and Juyce of Mints, and ſprinckled with pouder of Nutmeg, Cloves, Frankinſence, Maſtich, and Graines of Kermes.

Villanovanus much Commends ſharp Leaven, which he applieth to the Stomach twice or thrice, being ſteept in ſtrong Vinegar and juyce of Mints: this doth moſt certainly ſtop Vomiting after convenient Evacuations, and Revulſions.

In a long Vomiting where the Stomach is very Weak, you muſt uſe ſtrong Aſtringents made thus.

Take of *the Roots of Snakeweed and Tormentil, Pomegranate peels and flowers, and Hypociſtis, of each two drams: Leavs of Mints, and dried Wormwood, of each half an handful: Sumach and Myrtle berries, of each one dram: red Roſes one pugil: Cinnamon, Cloves, and Maſtich, of each half an ounce: green Galls, and Cypreſs Nuts, of each two drams: boyl them in Iron water and Red Wine, in which diſſolve a little Musk, for ſweet things do much aſſwage Vomiting, of which let the Patient take two ounces every morning, and Foment his ſtomach with the ſame.*

After the Fomentation apply ſome Plaiſter or Cataplaſm, made as aforeſaid.

Chap. 8. *Of Vomiting Blood.*

THis Diſeaſe is a caſting forth of Blood from the Stomach by the Mouth: And as al other Bleeding, it comes from the Veins either by Anaſtomoſis, or opening of them by Diapedeſis, or Rarefaction, by Rixis breaking, or by Diabroſis corroding, which Diſeaſes of the Veins were ſhewed in the Cure of Spetting of Blood, called Hæmoptyſis.

The Cauſes alſo are the ſame.

And Firſt the Conjunct Cauſe; Exceſs of Blood in quantity or quality.

Blood offending in Quantity, wil break or open the mouths of the Veins, and ſo comes Rixis, or Anaſtomoſis, which happeneth in ful bodies.

If it offend in Quality, as when it is too hot, or thin, it may cauſe an Anaſtomoſis, becauſe heat doth open the Orifices, and thinneſs makes it flow eaſily through; The ſame Qualities may Cauſe a Diapedeſis; for heat doth make thin the Tunicles of the Veſſels, and thinneſs Cauſeth the Blood to paſs through their pores.

Laſtly, Sharpneſs gnaweth and Ulcerateth the Tunicles of the Veins, and ſo produceth a Diabroſis.

The Antecedent Cauſes are the ſame with the Conjunct, but they differ in place; for when blood offending either in Quantity or Quality, doth immediately open the Veins: it is called a Conjunct Cauſe; and the ſame being contained in the Veins, is called an Antecedent Cauſe.

The parts sending, of which the chief are, the Head, Liver, Spleen, and Womb, are antecedent Causes.

Often times Blood is carried from the Head to the Stomach by the Pallat and Gullet, or Oesophagus: and also a violent Catarrh of sharp and Salt flegm, doth corrode the Stomach, and open the Veins thereof.

It is carried from the Liver and Spleen by the Veins that go to the Stomach from the Womb, when blood by the stoppage of the Terms, runs back and opens the Veins of the Stomach, so that some Women have had their Terms by vomiting blood constantly at the time.

Vomiting of blood comes oftener from the Liver and Spleen, than from other parts, and from the Spleen than the Liver, because it doth more consent with the Stomach. For it is evident by Anatomy, that the great branch of the Gate Vein, or *Porta*, goeth to the Spleen, from which many Veins are sent to the Stomach both above and below; and these are so great that being distended with wind or blood, they are as thick as the middle finger: this we have observed in Dissection. Moreover, the *Vas breve* being wide, as in a natural state, it doth continually send Melancholly into the Stomach; so being in a Preternatural state, it may send great plenty of blood. But observe here, that in this case, that blood is voided by stool as well as vomit, both because a part thereof which went to the Stomach, is sent downwards, and also because the Meseraick Veins are open, and send blood into the Guts, which by its long passage through the Guts groweth black, and comes forth like Tar.

The external Causes are, all things that can wound or bruise, as also great heat which causeth boyling of the blood; hence it is that yong men to the age of thirty five, are very subject to vomit blood, and other bleeding, as also great cold by too much astriction may endanger to break the Veins: the same doth unseasonable Motion and Labor, unusual Exercise, great hollowing, and the like, which move the blood violently in the Veins.

And finally, All the Causes of Blood-spitting afore mentioned. For Blood being violently moved either in the Veins or Arteries, whether from an external, or an internal Cause, goes sooneſt to that part which is weakeſt, and most fit to receive it; and therfore if the Stomach, or the Veins going thither are so disposed, there will be vomiting of Blood rather than any other way of bleeding.

The Diagnostick of this Disease lieth chiefly in the discovery of the part from which the blood comes.

If from the Stomach, the scituation of the part, and the constant pain and heavineſs thereof will demonstrate, and there is less blood, for the Veins of the Stomach are small, and it comes with loathing, and there is a biting when they swallow, as also somtimes it comes forth mixed with Meat, Flegm, or Choller.

If it come from the Head, there will be tickling about the Jaws and Pallat; and some blood will be blown out of the Nose with Snot; there went before it some Head-ach or heavineſs, which after bleeding ceaseth.

If from the Liver or Spleen there is more plenty of blood, and somtimes a tumor or dolor in the part. From the Liver the blood is red and frothy, from the Spleen it is thick and black. Also Blood from the Liver goes most downwards, because it commonly goes from thence to the Guts through the Meseraicks, and must ascend from them into the Stomach to cause Vomiting, but it doth easier descend. Contrarily, that which comes from the Spleen, is rather by vomit, because the Veins from the Spleen to the Stomach, are shorter and narrower.

Lastly, If from the suppression of the Terms, you may know it from the Woman, and it will come at those times which will be more probable, if there be no disease in any other part.

As for the Prognostick: Vomiting of Blood, of what cause soever, is dangerous; for it either threateneth death suddenly; or if it stay in the Stomach, and putrifie, it breeds faintings, swoonings, and suffocations.

Vomiting of Blood from suppression of the Terms, is less dangerous than that from the Liver or Spleen; for when they are brought down it is usually cured, as *Hippocrates* taught, Aph. 34. Sect. 5. in these words: *When a Woman vomiteth Blood, if her courses break down, she is cured.* And in this case only, the opening of the inferior Veins doth provoke the Terms, especially if she take something besides for that purpose.

They who after Vomiting of Blood fall into the Dropsie called Ascites, do die thereof. *Dodonæus* doth testifie that he never knew any that escaped: and Experience teacheth that a Dropsie from any kind of bleeding is deadly; for it comes from a great dissipation of Natural heat, which cannot be repaired.

For the Cure of this Disease use Medicines which revel the Blood from the Stomach, and correct its distempers and the open Veins with astringents and glutinatives. To which ad those things which concern the part chiefly affected, from whence the Blood is sent into the Stomach, according to the divers Nature, and Disease of the part.

And because Diet is of chiefest concernment in this Disease, let us shew some Rules therefore.

Let

Let his Nouriſhment be commonly aſtringent and Emplaſtick, and cold both actually and potentially, as Barley, Almonds, Rice, Panadoes, Gellies, and eſpecially Starch made without Chalk, and boyled in Milk, which is good alſo in ſpitting of Blood: to all theſe you may alwaies add ſome Pomegranates, or Vinegar of Roſes. Alſo hard Eggs ſteeped in Vinegar are good; Bread crums ſteeped in cold Water, and Chicken Broth, with Sorrel, Purſlain, Plantane, and unripe Grapes; the feet and hips of Sheep, Kids, and Calves, boyled to a Jelly, for the firſt courſe, let him take that which is aſtringent, as a Quince, or ſowr Apple, or Pear roaſted in the embers, Marmalat of Quinces, or Jelly of ſharp Cherries, Medlers, or Services.

Let him abſtain from all ſharp, ſalt, peppered, and fried Meats, as alſo from things that breed much Blood, except he grow weak, and then you may give him them ſparingly. He muſt be but little nouriſhed, for the leſs Blood is bred, the Diſeaſe will be the leſs, and the empty parts by their attraction will ſtay the flux.

Let him drink little, only a little Iron Water with a little Juyce of Pomegranates. He muſt drink no Wine except it be thick and ſharp, which we call Tortium, and it muſt be when there is no Feaver.

Let the Air be cool, without Wind, Sun, or Moon ſhine; let him ſleep little, and not in the day; for although all fluxes are ſaid to be ſtopped by ſleep, yet this by long keeping the heat in the Center may be encreated. Let his Belly be looſe, and he kept free from paſſions.

After his Diet is thus ordered, we muſt go on to Chyrurgery and Medicine.

And firſt take away a little Blood, often, for the greater Revulſion: and that out of the Liver Vein called *Baſilica*, in the right Arm, if it come from the Liver; in the left, if from the Spleen; or from the Ankle Vein, if from ſtoppage of the Terms.

Uſe Frictions and Ligatures to the extream parts, and give clenſing Clyſters.

Apply Cupping-glaſſes to the Buttocks, Thighs, and Loyns, and to the Hypochondria.

Give half a ſcruple of Camphire with four ounces of Oxycrate, or Plantane Water. Which *Rondeletius* commends in his Counſels for excellent.

If you ſuſpect there is congealed Blood, give him a glaſs of Vinegar and Water, or Oxycrate, for it eaſily diſſolveth blood, and ſends it from the Veins of the Stomach, and ſhuts them up.

And foment the Stomach cold with the ſame.

When Vomiting ceaſeth, to aſtringe the Veins, uſe theſe following:

Take *the white of an Egg, Roſe Water and Vinegar, of each one dram and an half: Beat them well; then ad two drams of Chalk. Let the Patient take now and then a ſpoonful.* Or,

Take of *prepared Coral, Terra Sigillata, Bole-Armenick, Blood-ſtone, and Troches of Amber, of each one dram: Plantane Water, and Syrup of Myrtles, of each two ounces: mix them for to be uſed as the former, or the pouder in Broths.* Or,

Take of *the Juyce of Plantane four ounces: give it cold morning and evening.* *Galen* ſaith there is nothing better for to ſtop any kind of Bloody flux.

The Juyce of Purſlain and Polyganon, or Knot-graſs taken with Sugar, is very good for the ſame.

Take of *Plantane and Purſlain Water, of each one ounce and an half: the Syrup of Myrtles half an ounce: the Syrup of Poppies two or three drams: Sal Prunellæ one dram: Mix them for a Julep often to be repeated. Or make a Julep of the Decoction of the ſaid Herbs.*

Take of *old Conſerve of Roſes, and of Comfry Roots, of each one ounce: of Cydoniatum half an ounce: one candied Myrobalan: Troches of Carabe, and Terra Lemnia, of each two drams: Coral prepared, and Crocus Martis, of each one dram: With the Syrup of dried Roſes, make an Opiate to be taken often.*

The Troches of Carabe do not only aſtringe, but diſſolve congealed blood, therefore uſe them often.

The Syrup of Coral is good; but the Tincture drawn newly with the Juyce of Lemmons is better.

When Blood is vomited violently, and will not be cured by what hath been ſaid, ſo that death threateneth; you muſt give Narcoticks, either at the Mouth, or by Clyſters.

Anoint the Stomach without with Oyl of Roſes, and Myrtles waſhed in Vinegar; and after ſprinkle on the pouder of Coral, Bole-Armenick, and Terra Sigillata.

Or anoint with this:

Take of *the Juyce of Plantane, and Knot-graſs, of each one ounce and an half: Vinegar of Roſes one ounce: Oyl Olive ſix ounces: Boyl them till the Juyces are conſumed: then ad of Sanguis Draconis, Maſtich, Pomegranate peels, and Myrtles, of each two drams: Camphire one ſcruple: as much red Wax as will ſerve to make an Oyntment.*

Let him drink ordinary Water, wherein Iron hath been quenched, with Syrup of Quinces, and Spirit of Vitriol: alſo make all his Broths of Iron Water.

Let his Hypochondria and Loins be Fomented with the Decoction of Plantane and Purſlain made in Oxycrate.

Let his hands be put into cold Water, for ſo al Vomiting is ſtaied.

After uſe the Oyntment of *Galen*, called, Refrigerans; waſhed in Vinegar, to the ſame parts.

After ſufficient Phlebotomy, you muſt appoint an often and gentle Purge to take away the cauſe, and deſtroy the Diſeaſe, by which the blood wil be purged from Wateriſh and Chollerick Humors which produce this Diſeaſe.

Theſe kinds of Purges, given by a wiſe Phyſitian, do Miracles; as we have learnt by Experience.

They muſt be made of Rhubarb, Myrobalans, Tamarinds, and Tryphera Perſica; which Medicines do al aſtringe with their Purging, & do no wayes ſtir the Humors, ſo that you need not fear they wil provoke Vomiting of blood; you may give them in form of a Bole, with Syrup of Myrtles, or of dried Roſes; or in form of a Potion, with the Decoction of Succory, Sorrel, Purſlain, or the like.

In time of Purging, which may continue three or four dayes in a ſmal Doſe; at night you may give the aforeſaid Opiate or Syrup of Coral, or ſome of the afore-mentioned Aſtringent and ſtrengthening Medicines.

Finally, To prevent, you may give for a long time once in a Week, one dram of the Pouder of Rhubarb, or the Magiſtral Syrup preſcribed for to prevent Spetting of Blood; as alſo almoſt al other Medicines laid down in the Cure and Prevention of that, are very good here.

Chap. 9. *Of the Diſeaſe called Cholera.*

THis Diſeaſe is a violent ſending forth both by Stool, and vomiting corrupt, ſharp, and chollerick Humors.

It is called Cholera *Apo tes Choles* from Choller, as *Galen* ſhews from the opinion of the *Gnidian* Phyſitians, 2. meth. c. 2. that it comes from yellow Choller and evil humors like it which is ſent upwards and down-wards. But *Alexander Trallianus*, lib. 7. c. 14. wil not have this Name to be derived from a Chollerick humor, becauſe Choller is not alwayes vomited, but alſo often times a ſerous and Flegmatick Humor; but it comes rather *Apo toon Cholaſtoon* from the Inteſtines which were called *Cholados* by the Antients; becauſe theſe Humors come from the Inteſtines and intrals: yet the firſt Etymology is more to be approved, becauſe it is uſed not only by *Galen*, but by *Hippocrates* 7. epid. text. 19. by *Celſus*, lib. 4. cap. 11. and *Aurelianus*, lib. 3. acut. cap. 19. And although a chollerick humor is not alwayes ſent forth, yet one like Choller, ſharp, biting, and corrupt, is alwayes voided.

Some ſay the Stomach is the part affected, others the Guts, others both; but we muſt be of *Galen*'s mind, who ſaith, 3. de ſympt. cauſ. cap. 2. The part which is principally affected is the Stomach, whoſe expulſive Faculty is vehemently ſtirred up, ſo that it expels the noxious humors at both orifices. But there is no doubt but the Gullet and Guts are ſecondarily affected.

Therefore this Affect is a Symptome of the expulſive Faculty being hurt, and vehemently ſtirred up, for it cannot depend upon the retentive faculty debilitated, for then the humors flow by degrees as in Lienteria and Cœliaca Paſſio: but we muſt confeſs that the Diſeaſe is more violent if the Retentive Faculty being weak do not reſiſt the expulſive.

Moreover, The Concoction is hurt alſo, by which evil humors are bred in the Stomach which ſtir up the expulſive Faculty: but this is an Antecedent Cauſe, *Hipp. 4. de victus ratione in acutis textu* 104. laies down Two kinds of Choller, the one Moiſt, and the other Dry; the Moiſt is that which hitherto hath been deſcribed, and which is meant only in this definition as being the more uſual: but the Dry is more rare, and it comes from a windy ſpirit going from the Stomach and Guts, and griping thoſe parts through which it paſſeth.

Theſe Winds are produced either from the fiery heat of the Stomach corrupting the meat and making it ſtinck, or from windy rank meats, and Onyons, Radiſhes, and the like. *Sennertus* addeth another Cauſe, borrowed from the Hermetical Doctrine, namely, Salt Humors, and Aduſt in the Hypochondria, which grow hot by the mixture of another humor: For (ſaith he) as Salts and the Spirits of Salts mixed with ſharp Spirits, make abundance of flatuous Spirits, as appears by the mixing of Oyl of Vitriol and Aqua fortis with Salt of Tartar. So doth it fal out in mans Body, by the Commixtion of a Salt and Aduſt Humor with other Spirits, there are many windy Spirits produced.

The immediate Cauſe of this Diſeaſe is a Chollerick, Burnt, Sharp, Salt, or rotten Humor in the

the Stomach, Guts, Spleen, Meſentery, or Prancreas, or ſome nouriſhment of evil quality, ſome ſtrong deadly Medicine, or poyſon taken. *Hipp. 7. Epid. Text.* 90. doth reckon up almoſt all the Cauſes of thoſe evil Humors, in theſe words: *Chollerick Evacuations upwards and downwards, come from eating too much fleſh, eſpecially Swines fleſh not roaſted: Alſo for meats not formerly uſed, from drunkenneſs with old Wine, and ſweet, from Pine Kernels, Locuſts, rotten Nuts, and from the uſe of Garlick, Leeks, Onions, eſpecially from boyled Lettice, Coleworts, and the like crude things; alſo from Tarts, and ſweet meats, Honey meats, Fruits ſoon periſhing, eſpecially from Cucumers, Pompions: and theſe Evacuations happen moſt in Summer, for then they are eaſily corrupt, and are indigeſted.*

It is worth the obſervation from whence ſo many Chollerick Humors ſhould come, which in this Diſeaſe are ſent forth by Vomit and Stool? It is uſually anſwered, that they come from the Meſentery, and the places adjacent, and ſomtimes from the whol Body, which though it be probable, yet we may ſay, That Humors corrupted in the Stomach, and parts neer therto, do infect other Humors with their Malignity, and that Nature is conſtrained to ſend to the Stomach and Guts, as venemous Medicines, Antimony, Coloquintida, Elaterium, and the like, by corrupting of the good Humors, do make an Hypercarthaſis, or over-purging.

The ſigns of this Diſeaſe, are an often and plentiful ſending forth of Chollerick, ſharp, and other corrupt Humors by vomiting and ſtool; a gnawing of the Stomach and Guts; a ſwelling with wind, pains, thirſt, with much heat and diſturbance; great Nauſeouſneſs, and loathing, which is somwhat appeaſed with cold drink, but preſently is caſt forth with hot. The Pulſe is ſomtimes ſmal and unequal; ſomtimes with great ſweating, and Convulſion of the Thighs and Arms, ſwooning, coldneſs of the extream parts, and other grievous Symptomes.

The Cauſes of this Diſeaſe are eaſily known.

And firſt, the external are known by relation of the Patient, and thoſe that ſtand by. If he have taken too much, or food of an evil quality, or poyſon, or ſome violent Medicine.

The internal Cauſes are known by the quality of thoſe Humors which are ſent forth. We conjecture that it comes from the fault of the Stomach, if other parts are not diſtempered, and when there is a continual loathing, gnawing, and pain of the Stomach, the matter is ſent forth green; but if it be bred in the Veins, there is commonly a Malignant Feaver adjoyned.

You muſt make your Prognoſticks thus,

If it be very violent, it brings commonly ſudden death. If it come from ſome evil Food, it is leſs dangerous; for when that is ſent forth, the Diſeaſe ceaſeth.

By how much the greater the Symptomes are, as Swooning, Convulſion and coldneſs of the extream parts, by ſo much neerer at hand, is death.

Hippocrates in Coac. ſheweth that this is ſomtimes Critical to Feavers called *Lipyriæ*, which can no other waies be cured (as he ſaith) but by a great caſting forth of Choller both upwards and downwards; and theſe Criſes or Judgments happen ſeldom, and ought to be ſuſpected, becauſe they have not the conditions of a good and Health bringing Criſis.

If vomiting begin to ceaſe, and the wan and deadly color of the Face to be reſtored, there is hope of Health.

In the Cure of this Diſeaſe, in the beginning thereof, ſome evacuation may be allowed while the evil and corrupt Humors do flow forth. And you muſt help it forward with drinking warm Water with Syrup of Vinegar, or with a great deal of thin Chicken Broth; which if it provoke not Vomit, will allay the ſharpneſs of the Humors. Or you may evacuate them with Rhubarb brought into a Pill with Syrup of Wormwood, and with cleanſing Clyſters.

Alſo fat mollifying Clyſters are to be given, made of Milk, Oyl of Roſes, freſh Butter waſhed with Roſe Water, or made of Chicken Broth, or Veal Broth with Yolks of Eggs; with which, as the diſeaſe ſhall require, you may mix Narcoticks.

Alſo Clyſters of Oxycrate are good, or made of the Decoction of Lettice, Plantane, with a little Vinegar, Syrup of Water-lillies, and Yolks of Eggs.

Alſo you muſt qualifie the Humors ſharpneſs with internal Medicines; as with the Decoction of Purſlane and Plantane with Syrup of Quinces and dried Roſes, with Lapis Prunellæ, if there be heat and thirſt.

And you muſt ſtop Vomiting with thoſe things both internal and external, which were preſcribed in the Cure of Chollerick Vomiting, Chap. 7.

Among which, the Narcoticks are beſt, and eſpecially new Treacle, which given in the quantity of a dram, doth preſently ſtop thoſe violent Evacuations. Laudanum doth the ſame, if you give four grains thereof.

If there be great weakneſs (as often happeneth) it is not ſafe to give the whol doſe of Laudanum; but it is better to give one or two grains, and to give it once or twice in a day, as neceſſity urgeth: for ſo the force of the Humors will be reſtrained, and Nature will have time to tame and concoct them.

After

After vomiting and purging are ſtayed by the Medicines aforeſaid, & the ſtrength is reſtored by Cordial means, the Patient ſeemeth to be paſt danger; which doth not only ſomtimes deceive the ſtanders by, but alſo the Phyſitians themſelves: for after a day or two of reſt and intermiſſion, the ſymptomes return more ſtrong and violent, and deſtroy the Patient who was made weak by their former encounter; which danger you muſt prevent, not only with Reſtauratives, and things that take away the heat of the Humors, as before mentioned, which muſt be continued after they are appeaſed; but eſpecially with Blood-letting, which doth revel the burnt and boyling blood, and greatly aſſwage it: and you muſt do it twice, or thrice, if the ſtrength be not impaired by the firſt, but rather ſeem to be refreſhed. Some Practitioners adventure in the time of the fit, when the ſtrength is decayed, adventure to open a Vein, becauſe they ſay the ſtrength is oppreſſed. But it cannot then be done without danger: and ſomtimes the Patient preſently after dieth, to their ſhame. For though we acknowledg that there is an oppreſſion of the ſtrength by reaſon of the ſuperfluous Humor, which is contained in the Veins, being an Enemy to Nature; yet it cannot be denied but it is greatly decayed by thoſe grievous vomits and ſtools. It is better therefore firſt to allay the violence of the Humors, and after the ſymptomes are aſſwaged to open a Vein.

And becauſe in this Diſeaſe the ſtrength quickly fails by ſtrong evacuations, you muſt be very careful in the reſtoring of it by that way which is ſhewed in the Cure of weakneſs in the eighth Book, and the third Chapter.

Chap. 10. *Of Pain in the Stomach, called* Dolor Ventriculi.

IT is a ſad and troubleſom ſence in that part, from ſome things that gnaw and ſtretch it till it break, or be wounded.

In the Stomach, you muſt conſider three parts, which much differ one from the other, namely, its upper Orifice, and its lower, called *Pylorus*, and the reſt of its Body which maketh up the whol Cavity.

The upper Orifice is of exquiſite ſence, by reaſon of the great Nerve which it hath from the ſixth Conjugation, and therefore pain therein is very ſharp, and makes the Heart which is the moſt noble part, and neer unto it ſenſible of the ſame; from thence it is called *Cardialgia*, and *Cardiogmos*: for there is ſuch a neer conſent between the mouth of the Stomach, and the Heart, that the Ancients called it by the name of the Heart, *Cardia*.

But if the Membranes of the Cavity, or the Pylorus be pained, it is called ſimply *Dolor Ventriculi*, and ſomtimes *Colica Ventriculi*, eſpecially when it comes of wind.

The immediate Cauſe of this pain, is ſolution of Continuity by things ſharp and diſtending, and they are chiefly Humors, or Wind; and ſomtimes Worms gnawing the Tunicles.

Sharp and malignant Humors, as green Choller, or black, ſalt Flegm, corrupt Matter ſent into the Stomach from an Impoſthume broken in the Liver or Breaſt, and all other ſharp Humors which may cauſe pain.

Alſo ſharp vapors coming from thoſe Humors uſe to cauſe this pain.

The Wind contained in the Cavity of the Stomach doth cauſe ſwelling and painful diſtenſion, eſpecially if it be reſtrained within its Tunicles, which makes a very ſtubborn Diſeaſe, and cannot eaſily be ſent out.

The Diſeaſes both of the Stomach it ſelf, and of the parts adjoyning, uſe to breed this pain, as any great diſtemper, either hot or cold, and eſpecially an Inflamation, and ſomtimes a Schirrus or other hard Tumor which maketh a heavy pain; as alſo Wounds and Ulcers of the ſame part, and ſwellings in parts adjoyning by wind or other waies, cauſe this pain by compreſſion of the Stomach.

Now theſe Humors and Winds which cauſe pain in the Stomach, either come from the whol Body, or ſome parts thereof. From the whol Body, in Feavers, or when the Body is filled with evil Humors. And from other parts, eſpecially the Liver, Spleen, and Brain: from the Liver there comes Choller; from the Spleen, Melancholly; and from the Head, ſalt Flegm.

Alſo this pain may ariſe from other extraordinary Cauſes not uſual; as *Schenkius* obſerves from ſtones bred in the Stomach, *lib.* 3. *obſervat.* And *Fabricius Hildanus*, obſerv. 33. lib. 4. reports that a Woman had a piece of Rind or ruſty Bacon two yeers in her Stomach, wherewith ſhe was continually pained, and which after by taking a Vomit, ſhe threw up, and was cured.

The external Cauſes of this Diſeaſe, are either evil qualified, or of ſharp Nouriſhment, which of themſelves produce it, or things apt to breed Wind; or things taken in too great a quantity, which putrifie and turn ſharp; or things that are too hot, and breed much Choller: As alſo ſtrong, ſharp, deadly

deadly Medicines, either taken in too great a quantity, or not ſufficiently corrected, and poyſon.

The Diagnoſtick Signs are from the part affected, and the cauſe.

And firſt, when the pain is under the Cartilago *Enſiformis* or *Xiphoides*, it ſhews that the upper Oriſice of the Stomach is affected: but that it is a true Cardialgia in the mouth of the Stomach, you may know more certainly when there is a moſt ſharp pain from the exquiſite ſence of the part with ſuch trouble and diſturbance that the Patient cannot ſtay in a place, or in one poſture, but often ſwounds and fainteth by conſent and ſympathy of the Heart with the Stomach, not only by neerneſs to it, but alſo by reaſon of the diſſipation of the Spirits by the pain. Sometimes the Brain conſents, by Reaſon of the famous Nerve which is in the Stomach, and the ſharp vapors which are directly ſent into the Head from thence, from whence come Cephalalgia, Hemicrania, Vertigo, and Epilepſie.

In other parts of the Stomach there are great pains, but they have not ſo great Symptomes, and therefore they are like the Chollick, differing only in place.

The Cauſes alſo are known by their proper ſigns. The moſt manifeſt are taken from the Excrements; for Choller, Flegm, Wind, or Worms, are voided at the Mouth or Belly, it is eaſie to conjecture that the Diſeaſe depends upon theſe Cauſes. But if no Humor be diſcharged we may know when Choller, Flegm, or Wind abounds by their proper ſigns; and the ſigns of Worms are to be taken out of their proper Chapter: As alſo the proper diſeaſes both of the Stomach and parts adjoyning which produce this Diſeaſe, are known by their proper ſigns. The knowledg of the Humor cauſing this pain, is alſo taken from the time of its coming, encreaſe, and ceſſation. Some are troubled moſt violently before meat, and this ſhews that Choller is predominant, which is ſtirred in time of emptineſs, and drawn to the Stomach, and made more ſharp. Some are pained preſently after meat, becauſe the raw biting Humors, which before were quiet, and fixed to the Tunicles of the Stomach, are moved when Meat is taken, or they which were in the bottom of the Stomach, are raiſed up, and diſturb the mouth of the Stomach. Others are pained in time of Concoction, becauſe ſharp gnawing vapors ariſe from the Matter, cauſing the Diſeaſe from the heat encreaſed in the Stomach in time of Concoction. Others are pained four or five hours after meat, becauſe it is corrupted by evil concoction, and ſo gnaweth the Stomach. Some are worſt after ſleep, and that comes from a Catarrh from the Head in the time of ſleeping, which being heaped up in the Stomach, produceth pain afterwards. Sometimes the pain is appeaſed after Meat, becauſe the ſharpneſs of the Humors is qualified by the ſweetneſs of the Meat.

As for the Prognoſtick, it is moſt certain that Cardialgia is more dangerous than any other diſeaſe of the Stomach by reaſon of the exquiſite ſence of the Mouth of the Stomach, and its great conſent with principal parts.

The danger is more or leſs, according to the malignity of the Cauſe, and the vehemency of the ſymptomes.

A continual acute Feaver joyned with a great pain of the Stomach, threateneth great danger; as *Hippocrates* ſaith, Aph. 65. Sect. 5. *In Feavers, if there be great heat about the Stomach, and Cardiogmos, it is evil*: for it ſignifieth that there is a great Inflamation of the Stomach, or abundance of bad Humors contained therein.

The pain of the Stomach coming from Worms or Wind, is commonly leaſt dangerous, becauſe the Cauſe is not ſo bad, and not fixed to the part. But ſomtimes from Worms gnawing in the Stomach, great Symptomes happen, of which the Patient ſuddenly dieth.

So when the diſtemper which begets wind, is ſtubborn and habitual, it is not without danger, for it turneth to a dry droplie; *Hippocrates*, Aphor. 11. Sect. 4. In a Cardialgia, coldneſs of the extream parts ſignifieth death at hand.

The Cure of this Diſeaſe is to be varied according to the diverſity of the Cauſes. If it come from the Diſeaſes of other parts, you muſt cure them. But if the Cauſe be in the Stomach alone, the pain comes either from wind, or ſharp Humors and Chollerick, or from Inflamation, Impoſthume, or Ulcer.

That which comes from Wind is to be cured by Medicines that diſcuſs and evacuate that flatulent Matter, as alſo the flegm from whence it comes.

And firſt you muſt give a gentle Emollient Laxative Clyſter, and preſently after another Carminative, that is, expelling wind, and diſcuſſing, of the Decoction of Origan, Calamints, Penyroyal, Rue, the leſſer Centaury, Annis ſeeds, Fennel ſeeds, Carrots, and Cummin ſeeds, and the like: In which diſſolve Benedicta Laxativa, Oyl of Dil, Rue, and Honey of Roſemary.

If the pain continue, you muſt make a Clyſter of equal parts of Sack, or Hippocras, Oyl of Rue, or of Nuts, with two ounces of Aqua vitæ.

Or make a Clyſter of white Wine with Oyl of Juniper, or eight drops of the Chymical Oyl of Cinnamon or Cloves, which doth Miracles.

Then foment the Stomach with this:

Take of *Cypreſs Roots, Galangal, Calamus Aromaticus, of each one ounce*: *Mints, Origan, Penyroyal, Marjoram, Hyſop, Sage, of each one handful*: *Annis, Fennel, Caraway, and Carrot*

ſeeds,

seeds, and Bay berries, of each half an ounce: Chamomel, Melilot, Rosemary and Lavender flowers, of each one pugil: beat them, and slice them: put them into two bags, and boyl them in Sack; then squeeze them, and apply them one after another to the Stomach and all the Belly.

When the Matter is not so cold, this Fomentation following may be prepared, which is highly commended by *Forestus*, because it hath presently cured when other things failed.

Take of *Althæa Roots half an ounce: red Roses, Chamomel Flowers, and tops of Wormwood, of each one handful: Boyl them in common Water, and Chamomel Water, to one pint and an half, adding in the end a little Rhenish Wine, Rose Water, and Vinegar. Make a Fomentation.*

After Fomentation, anoint with Oyl of Rue, and Dill mixed with Aqua vitæ, and a little Chymical Oyl of Sage, or Cloves.

After the anointing, apply a Plaister of Bay-berries, or instead thereof a Cataplasm of Honey and Cummin seed.

While these are doing, if there be loathing, you may provoke vomiting gently, or give a Purge against flegm.

After Purging give Oyl of bitter Almonds newly drawn, mixed with white Wine, or Hippocras mixed with Aqua Clareta, or Cinnamon Water.

This following Julep is most admirable to assuage pain, discuss wind, and strengthen the Stomach.

Take of *Wormwood, Centaury the less, and Agrimony, of each half a handful: boyl them to five ounces, and ad to it being strained, one ounce of Sugar. Let him take it two mornings together.*

Amatus Lucitanus commends highly the distilled Water of Chamomel flowers as a most excellent Remedy to assuage the pains of the Stomach and Entrals, of which you must give three ounces warm. Or in the defect of that, you may make a Decoction of Chamomel flowers, which is so much commended by *Forestus*, who saith that he cured a Merchant with this only Decoction, once only given, of great pain of his Stomach, which made him to roar; which when he had drunk off, he belched, and fell into a sweat, and all his pain vanished, as by an Inchantment, so that he needed no other help. You may also make a Vomit at the beginning of the disease, which by evacuation may abate the pain, of this Decoction, made with Dill seeds, or Agarick, or the Roots of Afarabacca, dissolving therein, Oxymel, Syrup of Vinegar, or of Roses Solutive.

Galen teacheth that a Cupping glass applied to the Stomach, doth presently take away pain. But you must use this Caution, That no crude Humor, or very little, lie in the Stomach, otherwise the pain will be encreased.

Also you may with good success apply Bread hot from the Oven, cut in the middle, either by it self, or sprinkled with Spices.

Lastly, If the pain continue violent, you must use a bath of the Decoction of mollifying Herbs that are hot, which is most safe and powerful, for it takes away the pain by discussing the wind, and sending it forth by the open pores, which it will better do, if you give some discussing Medicine to the Patient while he is in the Bath; for both internal and external helps concurring, the work will be done.

The Bath must be very hot that the wind may be the better discussed, and the thick Humors melted.

If by reason of the vehement pain, Clysters can neither be given nor retained, you must give a Purge in the Bath, and let him stay therein an hour, or half an hour, till the power of the Medicine touch the Stomach.

Sometimes when the violence of the pain threatneth danger, you must give Narcoticks, which being wisely given, bring wonderful effects.

Some mix Narcoticks with their Purges that the pain may be allayed, and the Matter evacuated: such as the Medicine of *Elideus* commended by *Forestus*, made thus:

Take of *Diaphœnicon half an ounce: Philonium Romanum two scruples: with the Water or Decoction of Chamomel make a Potion.*

After the pain is gone, let them who are subject to this Disease, be purged once or twice in a month, to take away the immediate cause of wind. And let them use strengtheners, such as were prescribed in the Cure of Concoction hurt.

That pain which comes of Choller, is to be cured by the evacuation thereof, with a gentle vomit or Purge, or with frequent Clysters that are emollient, not sharp or hot.

Afterwards, qualifie the sharpness of the Humors with cooling Juleps that thicken, with Emulsions of the great cold Seeds, new Milk, new Oyl of sweet Almonds, Yolks of Eggs, and the like.

In the mean while omit not Opiates, and other strengtheners prescribed in the former Cures.

And at last, when need requireth, use Narcoticks.

Apply outwardly a Cataplasm of Bread and Milk, with yolks of Eggs, and Saffron.

Or

Or Bread from the Oven broken in the middle and dipt in Vinegar.

Or Foment the part with the Decoction of Chamomil-flowers, Violets, and Water Lillies, or which is beſt, put the Patient in a warm Bath, for that is moſt proper.

After the pain is gone leſt it ſhould return, let the Patient Purge twice every month, and let the hot Diſtemper of his Belly be corrected with a Cooling Diet and Convenient Remedies.

That Pain which comes from Inflamation, Impoſthume, or Ulcer, may be Cured with the Remedies Preſcribed in the following Chapter.

Chap. II. *Of the Inflamation, Ulcer, and Impoſthume in the Stomach.*

ALthough al kinds of Tumors may ariſe in the Stomach as wel as other parts, yet we wil ſpeak here only of a Phlegmon or Inflamation, which is moſt uſual; the other happen ſeldom, and may be Cured by the ſame Method with the Tumors of other internal parts.

The Inflamation of the Stomach is a preternatural Tumor coming of Blood which is ſent into the ſubſtance of the Stomach and its Membranes by the Veins derived from the branches of the Vena Porta.

This Blood is either pure and makes a proper Phlegmon, or mixed with Choller, Flegm, or Melancholly, and makes a Phlegmon Eryſipelatous, Oedematous, or Schirrous.

The External Cauſes may be many, al that inflame the Blood, as hot meats, wine, or al that can drive it to the part; as a blow upon the belly, eſpecially when it is ful; to which you may ad things that are very ſharp and very hot, as Cantharides, ſublimate.

The ſigns of this Diſeaſe, called Diagnoſtica, are a great Pain, burning, pricking, diſtending and bearing, reaching to the back; you may feel a Tumor, and ſomtimes ſee it, the ſhoulders are drawn downwards; the breathing is difficult, as alſo ſwelling and belching, ſomtimes blood is vomited; there is a moſt burning Feaver, with moſt greivous Symptomes.

If the Inflamation be pure only from blood, it is ſomwhat gentler; but if it be with Choller called Eryſipelas, there are greivous Symptomes, and the febris called Lipyria in which the exterior parts are cold, and the internal burn, and there is an unquenchable thirſt; ſuch a kind of Feaver uſeth to be in an Eryſipetous inflamation of the inteſtines.

Like to this Inflamation of the Stomach, is that which is in the upper part of the Liver by which the Stomach is covered or in that part of the belly which lieth upon it; which is only diſtinguiſhed by the deadly Symptomes, for then the Stomach hath the moſt deſperate.

From what hath been ſaid is eaſie to Prognoſtick and to pronounce this Diſeaſe to be for the moſt part deadly.

But that is moſt Dangerous which is over the whol Stomach, or its upper part, or which is like to an Eryſipetas.

Galen 3. Prorrhet. ſhews, That much Loathing and Rumbling of the belly, is evil: For it ſhewes that evil Humors do ſtick cloſe to the Tunicle of the Stomach, and pul them to provoke Expulſion.

If the Inflamation do not kill, nor is diſperſed, it turns to an Impoſthume, which is known by the mitigation of the Pain and the Feaver, while the Tumor remaineth.

After the Impoſthume is broken there remaineth an Ulcer which is known by voiding of Matter by Vomit and Stool.

But an Ulcer is produced in the Stomach, not only from an Impoſthume, but from other Cauſes which we ſhal here reckon up, leaſt we ſeem defective in the Theory.

The Cauſes of Ulcers in the Stomach, are either Internal or External.

The Internal are ſharp Humors bred in the Stomach, or ſent thither from other parts, as yellow Choller, or black, or ſalt Flegm.

The External are ſharp Medicines that Corrode, or Poyſons, and Wounds of the Stomach not wel Cured, which turn into Ulcers; as alſo the breach of ſome great Veins which could not wel grow together, after much Vomiting of blood.

An Ulcer bred in the Stomach is known chiefly by Matter which is caſt forth by Vomit or Stool, to which principal ſign there are others to be added: Firſt there is perceived in the belly a pricking pain joyned with burning, eſpecially when any thing is taken that is ſtrong in quality, either ſharp, ſalt, or ſowr, or very hot, or cold: there is alſo no Appetite, ſtinking belching, and a conſtant lingring Feaver.

The Prognoſtick is alwayes deadly, except the Ulcer be very little, and only in the ſuperficies,

and without a Feaver. For the Membrane of the Stomach being ulcerated, being a Spermatick part, will hardly grow together again: the Nouriſhment will not be well concocted in a Stomach ill affected, but will be thrown out before concoction, and ſo rend the Ulcer. Moreover, Medicines do little good becauſe cleanſers which are required for cure of Ulcers increaſe pain; and dryers which alſo are required, are continually hindred by the Meat and Drink, and Chyle, and other Humors which continually are in a weak Stomach.

The Cure of the afore ſaid Diſeaſes, is ſeveral.

And firſt, the Cure of Inflamation is to begin with Blood-letting often in both Arms, as the ſtrength will endure. And although by reaſon of ſwooning and coldneſs of the extream parts, the ſtrength ſeem at firſt to be impaired, yet becauſe it comes from oppreſſion, it requires evacuation, and therefore blood-letting muſt not be denied.

Moreover, the opening of the Hemorrhoids, if the Patient be uſed to that evacuation, doth revel Blood from the Stomach. Alſo Cupping-glaſſes both dry, and with Scarrification to the Shoulders, Back, and Buttocks, with Ligatures and Frictions of the extream parts, and heating of them (becauſe they are uſually cold) with hot cloathes, and anointing with Oyl of Flowerdeluce, and Spike, and other hot things are very good.

We diſallow Purges in this caſe, becauſe they trouble the Humors, and draw them to the part affected.

But *Avicen* commends the Decoction of Tamarinds, or half an ounce of Caſſia diſſolved in Whey, or Endive Water if it be given every day to the ſeventh day, becauſe they purge not by attraction, but by mollifying, mitigate ſharpneſs, and aſſwage pain. But it is better in the beginning to abſtain from all Purges. After the ſeventh day is paſt, when there appear ſome ſigns of Concoction and declination, you may give a Purge of Rhubarb one dram, with one ſcruple of red Sanders infuſed in Borrage Water, adding one ounce or two of Syrup of Roſes, that the filth which ſticketh to the part may be brought forth more powerfully.

In the mean while, you muſt every day give Emollient, Cooling, and Lenitive Clyſters, ſuch as theſe:

Take of *Chicken Broth, or the Decoction of Mallows and Violets, of each one pint: Caſſia new drawn, one ounce: Oyl of Roſes and Violets, of each two ounces: Sugar one ounce and an half: With two Yolks of Eggs make a Clyſter.*

You muſt give altering and ſtrengthening Medicines at the Mouth, they may be the ſame which were prepounded in the Cure of the Pain of the Stomach from a Chollerick Humor.

But the Syrup of Water Lillies, and of the Juyce of Purſlain, are peculiarly good, eſpecially in the beginning, becauſe they ſupply the place of Repelling Medicines.

Alſo Emulſions made of the four great cold Seeds, and white Poppy Seeds are good, for they aſſwage pain and heat. As alſo theſe following Juleps.

Take of *Roſe Water three ounces: Plantane Water two ounces: the Juyce of Sorrel and Pomegranate Wine, one ounce and an half: Sugar of Roſes one ounce: Boyl them a little, and ſtrain them. Let him take two ounces twice or thrice in a day.*

If the pain be great, you may give the Syrup of Poppy.

Let his Drink be Barley Water with Syrup of Violets taken cold.

In the progreſs of the Diſeaſe, you muſt mix other Medicines with the aforeſaid, which may help to diſſolve. To this end you may preſcribe theſe following Juleps:

Take of *the Syrup of Water Lillies, Apples, and of the Juyce of Purſlain, of each one ounce: Syrup of Sea Wormwood half an ounce: Lettice, Sorrel, and Fennel Water, of each three ounces: the pouder of Diamargariton frigid one dram: Make a Julep for three Doſes to be taken twice in a day.*

To theſe you may ad reſtoring Opiates, Narcoticks, and the like, all which are to be varied many waies, according to the Judgment and Wiſdom of the Phyſitian.

Turpentine waſhed with Wormwood Water, if it be given twice or thrice doth either diſſolve or maturate the Impoſthume of the Stomach.

Let this following Fomentation be applied in the beginning.

Take of *Sorrel Roots two ounces: Endive, Succory, and Mallows, of each one handful: Lettice, and white Poppy ſeeds, of each three drams: white and red Sanders, of each half a dram: Violets, and Water Lillies, of each one pugil. Make a Decoction, adding a little Roſe Vinegar. Let the Stomach be fomented warm therewith.*

Or make one with the diſtilled Waters of Lettice, and Water Lillies with a little Vinegar, and Pouder of Triaſantalon.

After fomenting, let the part be anointed with Oyl of Roſes and Violets mixed, or with this following:

Take of *Oyl of Roſes one ounce and an half: Oyl of Violets, and Roſe Vinegar, and of the Juyce*

Juyce of Sowthistle, of each half an ounce: Boyl them to the consumption of the Juyces; then ad of red Sanders one dram: red Roses half a dram: Lavender and Camphire, of each half a scruple: as much Wax as will make an Oyntment.

Caraplasms in the beginning are not good, because they burden the part with their weight, and by retaining the heat, encrease the Inflamation.

In the declination, when the Tumor is resolved, which is chiefly to be desired; you may apply a dissolving Fomentation, made thus:

Take of *Flowerdeluce Roots two ounces: the Leaves of Mints, Marjoram, Penyroyal, Sea Wormwood, of each one handful: Annis and Fœnugreek seeds, of each two drams: Grains of Kermes one dram: the flowers of Starchas, Rosemary, Chamomel, of each one pugil: Make a Decoction, adding in the end a little white Wine. With this foment the Stomach.*

After fomenting, anoint the part with Oyl of Wormwood, Nutmeg, Spike, and the like; of which you may make an Oyntment with a little Wax and Pouder, Orris Roots, or Cinnamon. But Emplasters and Cataplasms, because they burden the part with their weight, are not here good.

But if the Tumor tend to Suppuration, foment the part with the Decoction of the Flowers of Chamomel and red Roses: Then apply this following Cataplasm:

Take of *Althæa Roots two ounces: Brank Ursine, and Roses, of each one handful: Boyl them well, and beat them together: then ad of Barley meal, Lin-seed, Fœnugreek, and pouder of Chamomel, of each half an ounce: white and red Sanders, of each two drams: with Oyl of Roses, and Chamomel. With a little Hens Grease make a Cataplasm, often to be renewed.*

After the Imposthume is broken, let the Ulcer be clensed with Hydromel, given in a smal quantity: To which you may ad the Manna of Frankinsence, according to *Galens* Precept. Or give it with Barley Water with Sugar of Roses in the beginning, in time of heat.

When the Ulcer groweth old, of what Cause soever it come, either from sharp torroding Humors, or burning Medicines, or Poyson, Broths of cool Herbs, and frying of Barley, Almonds, and Sugar of Roses, or new Milk with Sugar, and a little Honey, are very good. At length, Chalybeate Milk and Iron Water for ordinary drink; or Water wherein a piece of Bole-Armenick, or Terra Sigillata hath been steeped, is very excellent. To which you may put a little sharp Wine, if there be but little heat in the part.

Then give this Apozeme:

Take of *Barley one pugil: Scabious, Agrimony, Burnet, and Maiden-hair, of each half a handful: Melone seeds two drams: red Roses dried, one pugil: make a Decoction to one pint, in which dissolve three ounces of Syrup of dried Roses. Make an Apozeme for four doses to be repeated often.*

Also the Decoction of China, is excellent for internal Ulcers, when there is no Feaver, taken twenty daies, or more, swearing gently, for so the Ulcer will be dried by degrees. But if you fear a consumption, boyl the China Root aforesaid in Chicken Broth, or Pidgeon Broth with the aforesaid Herbs, and Barley made clean.

In an old Ulcer, the drinking of Mineral Waters, either of Vitriol, Iron, or Allum, for a Month together, are very good.

In the whol time of the Disease to keep the Stomach clean, use gentle Purges, as Rhubarb, Tamarinds, Myrobalans, Syrup of Roses, and Diacatholicon, taken once in a week.

Lastly, To heal up the Wound, use these following:

Take of *Bole-armenick, Terra Sigillata, red Coral, and Blood-stone wash'd all in Rose Water, of each one dram: Sanguis Draconis, Gum Arabick and Traganth, of each half a dram: white Poppy seeds bruised and parched, Hypocistis, Frankinsence, and Sarcocol, of each one scruple: Sugar of Roses one ounce: Make a Pouder, of which take a dram in Plantane Water, or Conserve of Roses every day.*

Or make an Opiate of the same Pouder with Conserve of Comphry and Roses, Syrup of Quinces, and Myrtles. Or you may make Troches of the same Pouder, with the Mucilage of Fleabane seeds, or Gum Traganth. All which the Patient may use by turns, lest he grow weary of the same.

Outwardly, to close the Ulcer, you may apply to the Stomach, a Fomentation of the Decoction of Wormwood, Roses, Pomegranate peels, Galls, Pomegranate Flowers, Myrtles, Frankinsence, Mastich, or the like. And lastly, anoint the part with an astringent Oyntment, or apply an astringent Emplaster.

The End of the Ninth Book.

THE TENTH BOOK OF THE PRACTICE OF PHYSICK.

Of the Diseases of the Intestines, or Guts.

The PREFACE.

THE Perfection of all Nourishment consists in these Three Operations, to Ingest, Digest, and Egest; that is, To take in, Concoct, and send forth: The first respects the Appetite: The second the Concoction, & belongs to the Stomach: But the third respects the Intestines, whose office of Egestion or sending forth being moderate, and according to the rules of Nature brings great benefit to the whol Body: On the contrary, if it be defective as in the binding of the Belly, or abound as in divers Fluxes, there arise divers greivous Diseases: Moreover, the reteining of superfluous things doth cause Chollicks, Iliacks, and Hemorrhoids: And finally putrifactions in the Guts doth not only produce Fluxes, but Worms: That all these may be severally Explained, this Book shall contain Eleven Chapters: The First is of the Chollick: The Second of the Iliack Passion: The Third of binding of the Belly: The Fourth of Lienteria or Cœliack Diseases: The Fift of Diarrhœa: The Sixth of Dysentery: The Seventh of Tenesmus: The Eight of the Hepatick Flux: The Ninth of the Worms: The Tenth of the Flux of the Hemorrhoids: The Eleventh of the pain of the Hemorrhoids.

Chap. 1. *Of the Chollick.*

THe Chollick takes its Name from the part affected which is the Gut called *Colon*: which is long and winding, and ordained for receiving the Excrements of almost al the Body; these Excrements retained too long, use to cause this pain.

Therefore the Causes of the Chollick are excrementitious Matter, which by distending, pricking or corroding can make a Solution of Continuity, and these are either Winds or Humors.

Winds are bred of Crudities, or a cold Distemper of the Stomach or Intestines; and if they be not

not sent forth by reason of the hard excrements or other things that obstruct the Intestines, they are in great plenty shut up in the Guts, especially the *Colon*; and make a very violent pain.

Also grois Humors, Cold and Flegmatick, being fastened upon the Tunicles of the Guts cause the same pain both by gnawing, if they are sharp or salt; as also by cooling the part, which by consequence must suffer Constriction and Divulsion, as *Galen* speaks of himself, That having had a great Fit of the Chollick did void glairy Flegm that was actually cold; and by producing Wind which is easily raised from a gross, slimy, and slow Humor, by a weak heat.

Lastly, Chollerick and sharp Humors; as also Melanchollick and sowr by pricking and twitching the Guts, make these pains: but we may doubt in the action of these Causes how the Chollick should be sometimes more violent, sometimes more remiss, since the same matter remaineth in the Intestines? To which Doubt we thus Answer, That the matter doth sometimes lie quiet, and then it causeth none or very little pain; but sometimes it is moved and stirred up by divers Fermentations which happen among the Humors, as in an Epilepsy, the fits of the Mother and Agues.

But you must observe diligently that those Winds or Humors do not only remain in the Cavity of the Guts, for then were they easily excluded by evacuating, cleansing, and carminative Medicines, but for the most part they are fixed to the very Coates of the Guts, whence it comes that they are not so easily taken off; but they make a long and a stubborn Disease which will not easily be cured: So thick Flegmatick and Melanchollick humors to flow by degrees through the veins of the Guts into the fleshy substance, and do not presently cause pain; but till they so encrease that they provoke nature to expel them, and so being moved they cause pain; or send out Vapors which being included in the Tunicles of the Intestines, do stretch and extend them, and finding no passage, cause a long pain. And Choller being after the same manner spread and sucked into the veins of the Guts and the Tunicles thereof doth stir up sharp pains which use to be long, because the Choller is very hard to be pulled from the substance of the Guts.

There is another kind of Chollerick Chollick, which turns into a Palsie, not known to the Ancients, which comes of a Chollerick Humor, not in the Gut Colon as the former, but suddenly sent into the Membranes of the Abdomen, and it is carried thither from the Cystis, or bladder of Gall, or the Melentery in the Crisis of continual Feavers, or from great anger, or some other external Cause, when by reason of Obstructions it cannot be sent by the common passages, but by a preposterous motion it is presently sent to the aforesaid Membranes of the Abdomen, hence comes a cruel pain like that of the Chollick, which neither by Clysters, Fomentations, or other Medicines can be cured; but continueth many Months, by which means the body consumeth, sometimes it is like an intermitting Feaver, sometimes and often like a continual lingring Feaver: and at length when the pain begins to ease, there is a Palsie, by reason the Humor gets by degrees into the back by the Membranes of the Abdomen: This Palsie doth trouble the upper parts most; but the Thighs and Legs commonly are pained, in some they are wholly resolved and made numb, because the Choller being light flyeth to the upper parts: Sometimes it gets into the Brain, and begets Epileptick Convulsions, from whence death commonly ensueth.

There are other Causes of the Chollick, but less usual; namely, Stones bred in the Guts, and knots of Worms which stop them: The compression of the Guts from Tumors in the adjoyning parts, or narrowness by reason of Inflamation, and other Tumors of the Intestines, or Contortion, or twisting of them by reason of Wind which is the way to the Iliack Passion; sometimes also the Matter causing the Chollick is Poysonous and Malignant, and makes a Pestilent Chollick; as *Paulus Ægineta* reports, That a Pestilent Chollick in Italy infected most of the Roman Provinces. Finally all hard Bodies by Obstructing and Distending the Guts may make a Chollick, as stones bred there, many Cherry-stones swallowed, hard Cheese, and the like: *Platerus* reports, That a certain Governor long laboring of the Chollick with Convulsions, after the use of Clysters, voided a great quantity of hard Cheese which had a long time stuck in his Guts, because before his Sickness he had eaten immoderately thereof.

The External Causes are Cold Air, which constring: and indurate the Belly; or too Hot Air, by which the Excrements grow hard, and loose their moisture; the use of meat and drink not agreeing with the Constitution; as raw Fruits, and binding; grois meats, and hard of digestion; too much rest, and immoderate sleep; unseasonable exercises, immoderate venery; and other External Causes which disturbe the Concoction of the Stomach.

The Knowledge of this Disease generally is easie: For first the pain is very sharp, for if it be light it cannot be called a true Chollick from the Opinion of *Galen*, lib. 6. de loc. aff. cap. 2. And it is sometimes moveable, sometimes more in one place than in another: sometimes in the region of the Liver, sometimes of the Spleen, Stomach, Reins; sometimes above, sometimes beneath the Navel, and oftentimes it is most upon the left side; in which, as *Bauhinus* first observ'd, there is a little streighness; for when the Excrements in the upper and widest part of the Colon grow into hard lumps according to its Capacity great, and then by Wind are driven into a streighter part, they must needs pass with much

much pain, in which Symptome the Chollick, and the Spleen, and the Stone, are not distinguished but by comparison of other signs; for sometimes the pain is like an Auger boring, or a Sick fastened, more fixed in some part. When the Stomach consenteth, there is vomiting of Flegm, Choller, that is green or the like. After Meat the pain is greater, because the Stomach being filled compresseth the Intestines. The Belly for the most part is bound, so that the Patient cannot so much as break wind, and if any thing be voided either naturally or by art, it is for the most part windy, and like Cow-dung, with water at the top, because it is most Flegm which useth to be so. Sometimes the Belly is so bound that in the heigth of Pain, Purging Medicines that are very strong, will not work.

The Signs of the Causes are thus to be distinguished:

If the Pain come of Flegm, it is not so great, unless it be mixed with wind which cannot get forth of the places wherein it is contained: for then the pain is very great; sometimes in one part, as if it were bored through with a wimble or stick; sometimes in many, if the wind do remove, the Patient is better for hot, and worse for cold things. He used a Diet formerly which bred flegm, his water is sometimes more crude and white, not always, which deceiveth yoog unexperienced Physitians, and sometimes in a flegmatick and flatulent Chollick, the Urine will be yellow and reddish by reason of the extraordinary pain which doth inflame the Spirits and Humors contained in the Veins and Arteries. Which *Avicen* wisely observed, Fen. 13. Lib. 3. Tract. 3. Cap. 11. *Let no man be deceived* (saith he) *to think by the foulneß, inflamation, and redneß of the Urine, that therefore the Diseaſe is hot; for that is common to all Urines.*

If the Chollick proceed of wind, there will be a stretching pain, and a swelling of the Belly: the Patient perceiveth a rumbling of the Belly, and much wind, and he is better when he breaketh it: he used a Diet to breed it, as unreasonable drinking of cold water, often use of Peale, Rapes, Chesnuts, Sallets, Fruits, and the like. And if the wind be contained in the Cavity of the Guts, the pain is movable, not in one place, and is sometimes greater. But if it be in the Coats and Tunicles of the Gut, the pain is fixed because the wind cannot move, and it is constant because it cannot get forth.

If the Chollick come from a sharp and Chollerick Humor, it is most grievous, pulling and pricking, there is heat, thirst, and often a Feaver, the Urine is very Chollerick. It is worse for hot Meats and Medicines, and better for cold. By sending forth of Choller the disease is diminished, and there was before, a Diet breeding Choller.

The pains of other parts under the Navil, are easily distinguished from the Chollick by their proper signs, except the Stone, whose signs are so like with those of the Chollick, that very skilful Physitians have been deceived by them: As *Galen* himself was, as he confesseth 2. *de loc. aff. cap.* 5. when he was troubled with the Chollick, he thought that he had the Nephritis, and that a stone was fastned in one of the Ureters till the Humor was purged away, and the pain ceased; after which he found it to be the Chollick.

But by these following signs these two Diseases may be plainly distinguished, if they be well observed.

First, The Nephritis: or pain of the stone, is fixed in the Reins, and comes from thence to the Testicles, according to the length of the Ureter: But the Chollick is movable, and girts about the middle of the belly like a girdle.

Secondly, The Chollick encreaseth after Meat by reason of the compression of the Intestines from the full Belly: but the Nephritis encreaseth not, but rather decreaseth, because some of the Nourishment is carried to the Reins, which doth something asswage the pain.

Thirdly, In the Chollick, the vomiting is more vehement, and the Body is more bound, because the Colon lieth in the bottom of the Stomach, and the Intestines being stretched, or much provoked, do constringe themselves that they may expel what is noxious. But both the Symptomes are common to both Diseases, so that you can hardly know their intension and remission, because a strong Nephritick pain, may cause a greater vomiting and affriction of the Belly, then a weak Chollick.

Fourthly, In a Chollick there is more ease found after Evacuation than in a Nephritis.

Fifthly, In a Nephritis or the stone, the Urine is first clear and thin; afterwards there is a sediment, and at length sand and little stones are voided. But in the Chollick the Urine is thick from the beginning.

As to the Prognostick: The Chollick for the most part, if it be gentle and little, and not long, nor in one place constantly, but intermitting and not binding the Belly, is curable, and without danger. But if the pain is very great and fixed in one place, not intermitting, and if the Belly be bound that nothing can get forth, with great watchings, and if vomiting follow, hiccoughs, doting, and coldness of extream parts, with cold sweats, it is deadly.

A stubborn Chollick coming of sharp and Chollerick Matter degenerateth into other grievous Diseases, as Arthritis, Epilepsie, or Paralysis, which is most usual.

An

An Epidemical Chollick, which is contagious and peſtilent, is commonly deadly.

The Cure of this Diſeaſe is divers, according to the variety of the Cauſes.

And firſt, there is the ſame Cure of a flatulent and pituitous Chollick, which begins with an Emollient Clyſter, after which followeth one Carminative and diſcuſſing, as was preſcribed in the *Dolor Ventriculi*, from the like Cauſe, which muſt be repeated twice, thrice, or four times in a day, till the pain be gone; and if he go not to ſtool in one or two Clyſters, as ſomtimes happeneth, you muſt give a ſharp Suppoſitory. In one of the aforeſaid Clyſters, you may do well to ad four ounces of the *Aqua Benedicta Rulandi.*

Or two or three drams of Coloquintida boyled in an Emollient and Carminative Decoction.

If Clyſters will not give eaſe, you muſt not ſtay too long upon them, but uſe ſome gentle Medicine. It hath been obſerved that when a ſick man had taken three Clyſters without benefit, that another Phyſitian came and gave but one ounce and an half of Manna, with two ounces of the Oyl of ſweet Almonds in the fat Broth of a Hen, and cured the Patient. But in a pain that comes from groſs flegm you muſt give ſtronger Medicines.

Afterwards, Fomentations, Oyntments, Baths, Emplaiſters, and the like, are good, which were declared in the Cure of the *Dolor Ventriculi* of the ſame Cauſe, to which you may ad ſome ſpecifical things, which are fit for this Diſeaſe.

Waſh the Guts of a Wolf in white Wine, then dry them in an Oven in an Earthen pot, till they may be poudered. Let the Patient take a dram thereof in white Wine, and he will be preſently cured.

Boyl fair Water, and ad to it the fourth part of Oyl, and ſome groſs Pepper; let him take three or four ſpoonfuls as hot as he can endure it, and the pain will be inſtantly gone.

Take of *the beſt Aloes one dram: Laudanum four grains: Diagridium ſix grains: Mix them and make ſix Pills gilded: Let him take them at a convenient time. They take away the pain after one hour, and then purge out the noxious humor.*

Inſtead of theſe you may give Diaphœnicon, and Philonium Romanum, as is preſcribed in the Cure of the pain of the Stomach. *Hipp. Lib. de intern. aff.* propoundeth a Purge of Purſlain, and Juyce of Poppies.

Six ounces of Oyl of ſweet or bitter Almonds, do aſſwage pain, and caſt the Matter cleaving to the Inteſtines downwards.

If you mix it with theſe things following, it will be better:

Take of *Oyl of ſweet Almonds, or Sallat Oyl for poor people, four ounces: Spaniſh Wine one ounce and an half: Syrup of Poppies one ounce: Mix them for a Potion.*

Alſo Oyl of ſweet Almonds mixed with Manna in fat Broth as beforelaid, doth eaſe pain, and evacuate the Matter offending.

One dram of Annis ſeeds poudered and given in Wine, doth firſt aſſwage, and the ſecond time it is given, quite take away the pain; applying at the ſame time a Cataplaſm of Turpentine three ounces, laid on with Stuphes ſprinkled with Pepper and Sanguis Draconis finely poudered, of each one dram.

Galbanetum Paracelſi is good to diſcuſs the Humor if the whol Belly be anointed therewith. The deſcription is in *Crato* thus:

Take of *Gum Elemi, Ivy, Galbanum, Oyl of Bayes, of each equal parts: diſtil them in Sand with a Retort; keep the Liquors aſunder, firſt the Water, then the cleer Oyl, then the thick Oyl like Honey, which you muſt uſe firſt.*

Take of *Calamus Aromaticus one ounce: Galangal three drams: the outward yellow of the Orange peel four ounces: Cinnamon, Annis, and Fennel ſeeds, of each three drams: Cummin ſeeds ſix drams: Juniper berries green half an ounce: Bay berries three drams. Pouder them finely, and infuſe them in ſix pints of the beſt Spaniſh Wine in a hot place ſix dayes; then diſtil them* in Balneo Mariæ. The Doſe is one ounce after Evacuations.

You may with good ſucceſs apply to the Belly Gum Caragna, and Tacamahacha; but firſt let a great Cupping-glaſs be applied to the Navil.

Although you apply not the Plaiſters, yet you muſt not forget to cup; which as *Galen* ſaith, doth diſcuſs pain that comes of wind like an Enchantment.

If the Diſeaſe laſt long, you may cure it with a Decoction of Guajacum continued for many daies, Purging ſomtimes, and giving often Clyſters. And if it come of glaſſy flegm, let Guajacum be boyled in Wine, as *Amatus Luſitanus* uſed it with good ſucceſs, *Curat.* 32. *Cent.* 1.

After the pain is allayed, uſe an Apozeme to purge flegm for the carrying away of the reliques, or inſtead thereof, the Decoction of an old Cock made with inciſing, attenuating, and purging things. Or that excellent Julep preſcribed in the Chollick of the Stomach.

A Chollerick Chollick is cured by Emollient Clyſters, and ſuch as temper the acrimony of the Humors.

Let

Let the Belly be Fomented with an Emollient Decoction, which is Anodine; or which is better, make a Bath of the ſame.

Alſo Caraplaſms made of Barley and Linſeed Flower, boyled in Oyl of Chamomil, applied to the bottom of the Belly are good.

As alſo a Cooling Epithem to the Liver, made thus:

Take of *the Juyce of Endive and Succory, of each half a pint: the Juyce of Lettice, and Roſe-Vinegar, of each two ounces: mix them and make an Epithem.*

Give Juleps of Poppy, Lettice, Endive, and Sorrel Water, with Syrup of Violets, Apples, and Lemons.

If the Pain be urgent, come to Narcoticks.

When the pain is mitigated, give the infuſion and expreſſion of Rhubarb in Succory Water with Syrup of Roſes, often, til al the filth be evacuated.

If this be too gentle to eradicate the Diſeaſe, give Mercurius Dulcis, which being ſomtimes given with ſome Purging Diagrediats, doth finiſh the Cure.

They who are not to take Diagrednm, may take Mercurius dulcis alone made into a Pill with conſerve of Roſes, drinking after it the infuſion of Senna with Rhubarb, adding a little Manna and ſyrup of Roſes.

After this you may give your ſharp Vitriolated Waters.

When the pain is violent, fly to Baths and Laudanum, to which you may ſomtimes mix Purgers, but in a great quantity; becauſe their force wil be hindered by the Laudanum.

Galbanetum Paracelſi, although hot, is fit to diſcuſs the Humor if al the Belly be anointed therewith: it is deſcribed formerly.

Somtimes Blood-letting is good where there is fear of a Feaver by the heat of the blood: and if the Feaver be begun, do it preſently.

When there is a great Thirſt, give cold Water. as *Galen* teacheth, lib. 12. meth. cap. 7. And *Amatus Luſitanus* ſaith, That he Cured one preſently with it: And *Septalius* ſhews in Two Stories in the Seventh Book of his *Practical Animadverſions*, That he hath given the ſame, and taken it with very good ſucceſs.

For the Cure of that Chollick which turneth into a Palſie, after the Belly is looſened with many Clyſters, and the firſt wayes being made open by a Purge, put the Patient into a warm Bath made of an Emollient Decoction, twice, thrice, four, or five times in a day, that the ſharpneſs of the humors may be allaied, and the pores of the Membranes opened.

The day after let the Humor be Purged with a fit Medicine; then let him be bathed again, and if his ſtrength wil endure it, let him do it every other day, til the humors are Purged and the pain gone, and the Patient Cured.

In the mean time let the Clyſters be continued, eſpecially thoſe made of Milk are beſt to aſſwage pain, to which you may put Caſſia, Oyl of Violets and Lillies.

Let the Belly be often anointed with Oyl of Chamomil, Dill, ſweet Almonds, Lillies, or with freſh butter.

Then let him uſe Whey and ſharp Waters.

And Laſtly, When the Diſeaſe is of long continuance, you may uſe thoſe things which were preſcribed for the Cure of Hypochondriak Melancholly.

Nor muſt you omit Phlebotomy from the beginning of the Diſeaſe before Purging, and it muſt be often repeated if the Blood be evil, or the pain come of a Catarrh any wayes.

Finally, Al the Medicines mentioned in Chollerick Chollick may here be applied, which if it avail not, ſome Phyſitians uſe this following Potion, which though it be ſordid and not fit for men wel educated, yet they ſay it Cureth preſently.

Take of *Horſe-dung one ounce: break it in pieces, and infuſe it in one pint of Poppy-Water with eight or ten drops of ſpirit of Vitriol: ſtrain it gently, and divide the Liquor into three Doſes, for the time of the violent pain.*

But if it turn into a Palſie, you muſt anoint the Spina or back Bone and the Paralytike parts with a Reſolving and a Nerve Corroborating Balſom if there be no Feaver; but if there be, bind Wool dipt in Oyl, or ſome digeſting Oyntment, to the Paralytike parts, taking heed of Cold, by which the humor wil be faſtned to the parts, and the breathing forth of it hindered.

Galbanetum Paracelſi is beſt, if it be applied to the parts aforeſaid, and the Navel.

CHAP.

Chap. 2. *Of the Iliack Paſſion.*

ILEOS, or *Iliack Paſſion*, took its name (as ſome ſay) from the Gut *Ileum*, which chiefly is Affected in this Diſeaſe; although the other thin and ſomtimes thick Guts are capable of the ſame: Or, rather from *Eileſthai*, which ſignifieth to be rowled and girt about; therefore the Latins call it *Volvulus*, or *Convolvulus*, becauſe the Guts in this Diſeaſe ſeem manifeſtly to be rowled about, and to be moved upwards: it is alſo called *Kordapſos*, becauſe the Guts, if you lay your hand on them, ſeem to be like a ſtretched or twiſted cord.

The *Barbarians* cal it *Miſerere mei*, becauſe it is a miſerable Diſeaſe and commonly deadly, and therefore needs divine Commiſeration.

This Iliack Paſſion is a prepoſterous motion of the Inteſtines, in which the Belly is alwayes bound; and the Excrements which ſhould be carried downwards, are brought to the Stomach, and caſt out by vomiting.

It is known that the Inteſtines have a natural motion by which the Chylus and Fæces are by degrees carried downwards, which is called *Periſtalticus*; this motion is by the Orbicular and Tranſverſe Fibres which contract the Inteſtines, and is compared to the motion of Earth-worms which move the parts of their bodies ſucceſſively. And this motion is ſomtimes inverted by preternatural Cauſes, as when the Fibres of the Inteſtines which ought to be contracted from above down-wards, are contracted upwards; and whatſoever is in the Guts is not ſent towards the Belly but towards the Stomach, and then is this Iliack Paſſion: We obſerve ſomthing like this in Vomiting; for when the Fibres of the Oeſophagus contract themſelves from the upper part towards the Stomach, the meat is ſwallowed down; but when by an inverted order they contract themſelves from the part beneath upwards, there is vomiting. This Periſtaltick inverted motion comes from the vehement ſtirring up of the Expulſive Faculty of the Guts, which when it cannot throw down-wards the ſuperfluous Excrementitious matter, doth by a violent motion caſt it upwards. This motion is ſomtimes ſo violent, that not only Chyle, and Wind, and Excrementitious Humors, but the Fæces alſo, and Excrements which ſhould be ſent out by the Anus are thrown forth by vomiting; So that Clyſters and Suppoſitories alſo are ſnatcht up and vomi ed out: So *Matthew de Gradi* reports of a Girle of twelve yeers old, who in this Diſeaſe for three dayes together, did not only vomit up Dung and Clyſters, but alſo a long Suppoſitory a ſhort time after it was adminiſtred unto her; and when another Suppoſitory was tyed to her Thigh, that was preſently broken off and vomited up with a piece of the Thred at it: And when Thirdly, a Suppoſitory was tyed with four ſtrong Threds as before, that alſo was broken off and Vomited up with part of the Threds: And at length when the Mother, as deſired by the Phyſitian, to adminiſter another, it was drawn upward with ſo much violence, that ſhe was conſtrained ſuddenly to draw it out leaſt it ſhould be again Vomited up. There are the like ſtories in Authors, which for brevity take we omit.

This ſtirring up of the Expulſive Faculty of the Guts comes from divers Cauſes: The chief is Obſtruction; therefore whatſoever doth ſo violently obſtruct the Guts that nothing can deſcend, doth beget this Diſeaſe: for after the Faculty hath long labored to throw out ſuperfluities the ordinary way, and is fruſtrate of her intention; deſiring to ſatisfie the neceſſity of excluſion, ſhe takes another Courſe, and by a prepoſterous motion drives them upwards, and vomiteth them out.

The Cauſes obſtructing are hard Dung long retained, groſs vapors gathered in abundance into the Guts and violently diſtending them; Inflamation, and other great Tumors, which wholly ſhut up the internal Cavities of the Gut, and the circumvolution of it, ſo that it is as it were tied in a knot, which often happeneth in a Hernia or rupture, and alſo in the Chollick, after which often follows this *Ileos*, becauſe the Inteſtines being ſtretched with wind, do rowl together, and ſomtimes knit a knot.

The more unuſual cauſes which do ſo provoke the expulſive faculty that are conſtrained to alter their motion, are great Ulcers, or ſharp Humors which twitch the Guts; for when the fæces or other Humors going downwards, do touch the ulcerated part, they ſo prick it that the faculty is provoked not to ſuffer ſo noxious a thing to paſs, but driveth it upwards with violence; which motion the other Inteſtines ſtirred up by ſympathy, do follow till the noxious Matter goes to the Stomach, which following the ſame Motion, by the help of the aforeſaid faculty, drives it forth by vomit.

The Signs of the Iliack Paſſion are partly Common to thoſe of the Chollick, and partly proper.

The Common Signs are, pain in the Abdomen, ſwelling and puffing up of the Belly, a bound Belly, loathing of Meat, Nautea, Vomiting, want of Reſt, difficulty of Breathing, and Piſſing.

Thoſe which are Proper and peculiar to this Diſeaſe, are a ſharp pain and moſt violent, puffing up

and very violent distension, an eminent hard tumor in the Hypogastrium, a total suppression of feege, so that nothing is voided that way. In progress of the Disease, there is irregular vomiting, first of Choller, then of Flegm, and Chylous Matter, and at length of dung, or rather of a Matter like it, of corrupt and stinking Meat, for the fæces are seldom sent upwards, when they are neer death, there is abundance of cold sweat, refrigeration of the extream parts, trembling of the Heart, disturbance and fainting.

Galen in Comment. Aph. 10. Sect. 7. affirms that the proper and inseparable sign of this Disease is not to go to stool at all. But *Hippocrates* seems to affirm the contrary, 3. Epid. Sect. 2. Text. 7. in an History of a Woman thus affected, which dwelt at *Tisamen*, saying there were thin, few, and crude dejections. To which difficulty we answer, That in the beginning of the disease, some stools may be from the fæces contained beneath the Gut affected, which by Nature or Art may be excluded before all the Intestines consent and lose their proper and Natural faculty. But when the Disease is confirmed and the motion of all the Guts is peristal like and inverted wholly, there is nothing more sent downward.

The signs of the Causes are these: If *Ileos* come from Inflamation (which often happeneth) the Disease is most acute, and comes quickly to the heighth, there is an intense feaver, a most vehement pain, Chollerick Vomitings and flegmatick do soon appear, and faces and dung do presently, and other deadly signs before mentioned.

If it come from the fæces endurable, there went before it a constriction of the Belly for many daies, and in the beginning there is no pain, but afterwards there is, the Disease is of longer continuance, nor is it so acute as that which comes from Inflamation, neither is the pain so great, nor the Feaver so strong, and sometimes there is none.

If it come from wind or flegm, it followeth for the most part the Chollick, and signs of the Chollick, of flegm and wind went before, which are laid down in the Chapter afore going.

As for the Prognostick. Every *Ileos* is dangerous, but one more than another. That is most deadly, in which first there is chollerick, then flegmatick, and after stinking vomiting; and *Galen*, 6. *de loc. aff. cap.* 2. saith none of these escape; but Experience teacheth that some do, as when the disease comes from retention of the fæces, or *Hernia Intestinalis*, or Rupture in the Guts.

They who have this Disease with the Strangury, die within seven daies, except a Feaver coming, the Urine be more plentifully voided. *Hipp.* Aph. 44. Sect. 6. if the Strangury come of thick and and flegmatick Humors which are plentiful in the Veins and Guts, a Feaver coming thereupon, they may be concocted, melted, and attenuated, and pissed forth, by which means the *Ileos* is cured. Although *Galen* in his Comment upon this Aphorism, saith that he is ignorant of what *Hippocrates* saith here, and that it cannot be confirmed by Reason and Experience.

If Symptomes be remitted, and either Medicines or meat taken at the Mouth, pass through, there is hope of recovery.

The Cure of this Disease, is to be varied according to the difference of the Causes. And first, if the obstruction comes from the Fæces indurate, or from gross and slimy flegm, you must use Emollient and Laxative Medicines, both internally and externally.

First then, give Clysters of the Decoction of Althæa, Mallows, Violets, Chamomel, and Melilot, with Lin-seed and Fœnugreek seed, or of common Oyl to a pint, in which you may dissolve the third part of Butter, or of the Broth of a Sheeps Paunch, in which dissolve Butter, Honey, and Sal gem. To which Decoction, if there be wind (as commonly there is) it is good to put Carminatives and Discussers.

After the Matter is somwhat mollified with these Clysters, you must give first some gentle Purges, then stronger, and last the strongest.

In the mean while you must apply Fomentations and Liniments that are Emollient, to the whol Belly, and continue them long. The Paunch of a Gelding warmed in hot Water, applied to the Belly, is good; but mollifying Baths are better, especially if they be made of Air only.

Also you may give inwardly the Oyl of sweet Almonds either alone with white Wine. To which if the pain be great, you may ad the Syrup of Poppies, as was shewed in the Cure of the Chollick.

And lastly, If there be vehement pain, and much flatus, you may give those other Medicines which are prescribed in the Cure of the Chollick, not omitting Purges, which being opportunely given, take away the Cause.

That which comes from Inflamation of the Intestines, is to be cured by often Blood-letting, if strength permit, both in the Arm and Foot, and by applying of Cupping-glasses with Scarrification to the Groins. Also Emollient Clysters and cooling, are to be given, made thus:

Take of *Althæa Roots two ounces: Mallows and Violets, of each one handful: Guord seeds half an ounce: Line and Fleabane seeds, of each two drams: Water Lillies and Roses, of each one pugil: Chamomel Flowers half a pugil: make a Decoction, in a pint whereof dissolve two ounces of Oyl of Roses; Cassia one ounce: make a Clyster, and in progress of time ad Oyl of Violets and Chamomel.*

The

The aforeſaid Emollients muſt be boyled in Oxycrate.

Or give new Milk with a little Sugar, and the white of an Egg, or the Mucilage of Fleabane ſeeds one ounce, to aſſwage pain.

Or you may make a Clyſter of Oyl of ſweet Almonds, Barley Cream, ſtrained from the Decoction of it, adding a little freſh Butter and Sugar.

A Clyſter may be made of ſimple Oxycrate, and be every day given, which is excellent againſt the Inflamation of the Guts.

Anoint with Oyl of Violets, ſweet Almonds, and Chamomel, with Mucilage of Linſeed, Fænugreek ſeed, and Quinces, with Axungia of Hens and Ducks, and ſweet Butter.

Alſo make a Fomentation of the Decoction of thoſe Simples which were preſcribed for a Clyſter.

Alſo Foment in the beginning with Oxycrate, and after let the Simples aforeſaid, be boyled in Oxycrate.

And make a Cataraplaſm of the reſidence of thoſe things in the Decoction with Barley Meal, Fœnugreek, Lin-ſeed, and Butter, with Axungia's and Oyls aforeſaid.

Alſo a Bath of warm Water, in which cold and Emollient things have been boyled, is moſt convenient.

After bleeding, give two ounces of Oyl of ſweet Almonds to appeaſe pain, and if it be very great uſe Narcoticks.

If there be no vomiting, you muſt provoke it with a draught of warm Water with Oyl of Violets, for ſo the upper parts will be purged, and the Humors will be revelled from the part affected. In the whol time of Cure, you muſt give Juleps and Emulſions preſcribed in the Inflamation of the Stomach.

Let his Drink be Barley Water: and in the beginning let him abſtain from all Nouriſhment for twenty four hours, that ſome of the Matter may be conſumed; then give him Chicken Broth. This Diſeaſe is to be attended with diligence, for it is for the moſt part deadly.

The chief buſineſs in the Cure, is by abſtinency; and this is taken from the example of thoſe that are wounded in the Guts, for they are almoſt famiſhed for forty daies. Therfore let men in this diſeaſe for four or five daies, take only three ſpoonfuls of Broth every day, that vomit may be hindered which doth encreaſe the Diſeaſe.

Moreover, Food bringeth no comfort to the ſick, for it turneth not to nouriſhment, but is plainly corrupted, and the Chyle which goes from the Stomach into the Guts, is mingled with the excrements retained, and encreaſeth vomiting.

He may drink more freely, becauſe it goes more eaſily to the Liver, and it may be fit to oppoſe the Diſeaſe, if it be well tempered Oxycrate, and in a ſmal quantity.

Laſtly, It comes ſomtimes but ſeldom, from the circumvolution of the Inteſtines; and this is either from Wind, which tortureth them; or from a Hernia called Interocele, or Rupture.

That which comes from Wind, is cured by the ſame Medicines which Cure the flatulent Chollick. But if after long uſe of theſe Medicines, the belly will not be opened, but all things taken are vomited up, that there is little hope of health, the laſt Remedy muſt be uſed, which *Hippocrates* propounds 3. *de morbis*, namely, That a pair of Smiths Bellows be applied to the *Anus*, and that they blow into his Belly. Then give an Emollient Clyſter with Troches of Alhandal to bring out the fæces. This is good not only againſt the *Ileos* from contorſion of the Inteſtines, but in that which comes from a grievous obſtruction, for by dilating the Guts it takes away the obſtruction. *Amatus Luſitanus*, *Curat. ult. Cent.* 1. teſtifieth that he cured one deſperate by this means: as alſo *Epiphanius Ferdinandus* in his Phyſical Hiſtories, Hiſt. 74. reports that the ſon of *John Altimar* of *Naples*, a moſt expert Phyſitian, was ready to die of this Diſeaſe, and taken as it were from the Graves mouth by this means. But *Aurelian* diſalloweth it, becauſe the wind coming from the Bellows may much hurt with its cold. But this may be avoided if the Bellows be filled with wind by the fire.

Paræus alſo propounds another unuſual Medicine, by which he boaſteth that he cured many at deaths door, namely, by drinking three pound of Quick-ſilver in Water alone, for with its weight it doth unite the Gut, and open, and ſends down the hard excrements, which Remedy is commended by others, who ſay that it may be taken without harm.

But we may wel fear ſo great a quantity, leſt it extinguiſh the Native heat with its coldneſs, and coagulate the Blood in the Veins; therefore in a deſperate caſe it is better to give a leſs quantity. Some give two ounces in a rear Egg, and think good to repeat it if the firſt Doſe do not ſucceed well, but you may ſee in our Obſervations, that one ounce hath done well.

But when the Illiack Paſſion comes from the Guts falling into the Cods, all the care is to place them right, which muſt be done by the gentle hand of a Chirurgion, long fomenting the part affected, firſt with an Emollient Decoction, and Relaxing Oyls, giving often Emollient and Carminative

Clysters, so placing the Patient that his Head be low, and his Thighs high, for some having been hung by the Heels, were quickly cured.

If the Hernia comes with Inflamation of the Intestine, it is cured with a fomentation of cold water. If wind stretch the Gut, discuss with a Fomentation of Spirit of Wine. See the examples of both Cures in our Observations.

Chap. 3. *Of Astriction, or binding of the Belly.*

BY Astriction of the Belly, we do not understand all kind of supression, by which nothing is let forth downwards, as in the *Ileos*. But only a dull and slow dejection, by which the fæces and reliques of Meat are seldom and not according to the quantity of Food thrown forth; therefore they are necessarily indurated, because of their long continuance being dried with heat, and some moisture is alwaies drawn from them by the Meseraick, which reach not only to the thin, but thick Guts. It is a Symptome of the Expulsive faculty diminished, or the retentive encreased, and it is the cause of many diseases; therfore the Excreta and Retenta are reckoned among the six things not Natural, which not keeping the Law of Nature, produce divers Diseases, so it being bound, sends vapors to the Head, and produceth Catarrhs, and other Diseases of the Brain, disturbs the Concoction of the Stomach, and the actions of other parts.

The Causes of this Symptome are many: And first, hardness of the fæces, and driness, are not only Effects, but also Causes of them, because being hard, they are more difficult to be voided, and do less provoke the expulsive Faculty. They become dryer and harder chiefly, and oftenest from the excessive heat of the Liver, which powerfully draws away all the moisture contained in the Intestines, and leaves the fæces dry. This is also caused by violent motion, especially riding: also by few Excrements through want of food, or because they have no acrimony to prick the Intestines, as it happens in cold Meats; and when the Choller doth not go to the Guts, as we observe in the Jaundice. And lastly, Many diseases of the Guts may cause this constriction, as a cold and dry Distemper, Tumors, Obstructions, Numbness of the Anus, and Palsey, and many others.

The Signs depend upon the knowledg of the Causes, which must be taken from their proper Fountains.

The hot distemper of the Liver is to be taken out of its proper Chapter. Also Tumors, and other Diseases of the Guts, have their proper Diagnosis, or signs, and so the external Causes, as little Meat, or coldness thereof, riding, and the like, are known by relation of the Patient.

As for the Prognostick: The Constriction of the Belly is more or less dangerous, according as the Cause is greater or less. For if it come of Inflamation, or other Tumor of the Intestines, it is very dangerous: but from other Causes less. It useth to be contumacious and long when it comes from the fæces indurate; and thence come often Chollicks, which return after they have been cured, by reason of the new dryness of the fæces; as also because though the Belly seems to have been made sufficiently soluble by purging, and many liquid Excrements are discharged, yet there remains sometimes many hard Excrements in the Guts, which breed new pains, and cannot be taken out, but by many Clysters given after Purging.

The Cure of this Disease depends upon taking away the Causes, which are to be taken from their proper Chapters. But because it is commonly long, especially when it depends upon a hot distemper of the Liver, and dryness of the Guts; and in the mean time the Belly bound brings many inconveniences. We will speak of its Cure by its self, which is generally done by Emollients, and Laxatives made thus:

Take of *Althæa, or Marsh-mallow, and Lilly Roots, of each two ounces: Mallows, Marsh-mallows, Mercury, Violets, and Brank Ursine, of each one handful: Lin-seed and Fœnugreek of each half an ounce: Annis seed one dram and an half: sweet Prunes three pair: Chamomel and Melilot flowers, of each one pugil: boyl them to a pint and an half. Dissolve in the straining Oyl of Lillies and Lin-seed, of each two ounces: fresh Butter one ounce and an half: Diacatholicon, and Diaprunis simple, of each six drams. Make a Clyster to be given as often as need requireth.*

Sometimes instead of this use the following:

Take of *the Decoction of Sheeps entrals one pint: fresh Butter two ounces: Cassia, Diacatholicon and Diaprunis simple, of each half an ounce: red Sugar one ounce: Make a Clyster.*

Also twice in a month, or thrice, you may give one pint of common Oyl alone for a Clyster.

And because Nature will grow dull by too much use of Clysters, and at length will never officiate that way; but when she is provoked by one, you must endeavor to mollifie the Belly with other means.

For

For this end, ſweet Prunes and roaſted Apples with Sugar, may be taken one hour before dinner, as *Galen* ſheweth 2. *de facult. alim. cap.* 31. For if they be taken immediately before dinner, they will not work. Or take Chicken Broth, or other Broth, in which have been boyled, Beets, Borrage, and ſome Apples, or one ſpoonful of Oyl of ſweet Almonds newly drawn without fire, with as much Syrup of Maiden-hair, or two ſpoonfuls of this Syrup following:

Take *of the Mucilage of Fleabane ſeeds, and of Quinces drawn with Mallows Water, one pound and an half: white Sugar one pound. Make a Syrup according to art.*

That the Prunes may work better, let him drink half a glaſs of *Vinum Lymphatum*, or Wine and Water, before and after he taketh them, freſh Butter taken an hour before Dinner the bigneſs of a great Nut, and drink Wine and Water will do the ſame thing.

Once in a week let him uſe one of theſe following Medicines:

Take *of Caſſia new drawn one ounce: Cream of Tartar one dram: Make a Bolus.*

Take *of Manna one ounce, or an ounce and an half: Mix it with Broth, and take it in the morning.* Or,

Take *of Oyl of ſweet Almonds, and Manna, of each one ounce: Diſſolve them in Broth to be taken two hours before dinner.*

Take *of pulp of Caſſia two ounces: Tamarinds and Manna, of each one ounce: the pouder of Senna half an ounce: Cremor Tartari two drams: With Syrup of Roſes ſolutive make an Opiate. Let him take half an ounce or an ounce.*

Or diſſolve in the Decoction of Prunes half an ounce, or an ounce of Manna: let him take it one hour before dinner as all the aforeſaid, for ſo they will work better.

Ptiſans of Succory, Agrimony, and Sorrel, caſt into Water that begins to warm, and infuſed one night, either drunk alone, or with Wine, for ordinary Drink doth keep the Body looſe.

This following Broth doth moſt certainly looſen the Belly, and keeps it ſo.

Take *of Beets and Mercury, of each one handful: Boyl them in Broth, and take it one hour before dinner.* Or,

Take *of Conſerve of Damask Roſes with Manna and Sugar, of each equal parts, one ounce for a doſe.*

Laſtly, A Bath, or Tub with a Decoction of Emollient Herbs is very profitable to moiſten all the parts Natural and mollifie the Belly.

Chap. 4. *Of Lientery, and Cœliack Paſſion.*

LIentery is a kind of Flux of the Belly, in which the Meat is quickly ſent through the Belly, as it was taken unchanged. But in the Cœliack Paſſion the Meat comes forth crude, and imperfectly concocted, whence it appears that theſe two Diſeaſes differ only in degrees, ſo that Lientery is referred to the act aboliſhed, and Cœliack Paſſion to the act diminiſhed. For although the Meat is ſent forth, either altogether unconcocted, or imperfectly concocted, yet theſe Diſeaſes are not to be referred to concoction hurt, but rather to the retention; for they are either il concocted, or not at al, becauſe they are quickly ſent forth, and are not long enough retained to be concocted. Hence it is collected, that though this Diſeaſe be reckoned among the Diſeaſes of the Guts, yet the Stomach is much affected, and ſomtimes more than the Inteſtines: Hence *Galen 6. de loc. aff. cap.* 2. ſaith that a Lientery and Cœliack Paſſion come both by fault of the Stomach and Guts.

Many Cauſes of theſe Diſeaſes are propounded by Authors; all which we may refer to three Heads; the cold diſtemper of the Stomach and Liver, the provocation of thoſe ſame parts; and a great debility of the retentive faculty from ſome deadly diſeaſe.

The cold diſtemper generateth great plenty of flegmatick and glutinous humors, which covers and daubs over the wrinkles of the Stomach, ſo that it cannot retain the food. Hence we may admire why *Galen 6. Aph.* 1. doth ſpeak againſt the old Greeks, who called this Diſeaſe *Lienteriam*, or ſmoothneſs of the Inteſtines therefore, becauſe the internal ſuperficies, or the Stomach being made ſmoother, doth not retain the Meat; whereas the Stomach doth not retain the Meat til a perfect concoction be made ſo much by the roughneſs of the inward coat, as by an innate propriety of aſtringing. For as we muſt confeſs that the principal cauſe of retention is the faculty; ſo alſo muſt we acknowledg that the faculty doth want inſtruments fitly diſpoſed, without which it cannot act: and therfore ſince the inward Tunicle of the Stomach is made rough and wrinkled, that the Meat may be retained in the Stomach, it is no doubt but if that roughneſs be taken away while the wrinkles are filled up with flegm, the retention of the Stomach wil be hurt, ſo that the Food wil ſlip away unconcocted. The like is in the Womb whoſe inward Tunicle is rough and wrinkled, that it may the better retain the Seed for Conception; but if it be covered with glutinous Humors, it doth not retain, and the Seed preſently comes forth, whence many Women are barren.

But

But let us note, That if any wil ſtrictly examine this word, he ſhal find that this Symptome is rather to be called the Smoothneſs of the Stomach than of the Inteſtines: neither doth it comprehend al its ſorts, but only that which comes from Flegm, which becauſe it is moſt uſual, the reſt have their denomination from it.

The provocation of the Stomach and Guts is by ſharp Humors which by twiching thoſe parts ſtir them to ſend them forth too ſoon, as it is in the Bladder, which being pricked by Acrimony, doth often piſs: Hence comes the Strangury, *Galen* 6. Aph. 1. ſaith, That by thoſe ſharp humors there is an Ulcerous Diſpoſition in the Stomach, as the Aphthæ, or Thruſh is in the mouth of Children.

The great imbecillity of the Retentive Faculty in great and deadly Diſeaſes often cauſeth a Lientery, as you may ſee in a Dyſentery, which when nature is conquered degenerateth into a Lientery, the Stomach being drawn to conſent with the Guts which are ſo grievouſly affected, and its Faculty being overthrown; ſo alſo in Malignant Feavers there happeneth often a Lientery wherby the Food as ſoon almoſt as taken is caſt forth unconcocted; and the ſame is when Poyſonous and Hurtful things are taken.

There is alſo another Cauſe different from the former, which peculiarly makes a Cœliake Paſſion, namely, The Obſtruction of the Meſaraike Veins which hinder the paſſage of the Chylus to the Liver; whence it muſt needs be caſt forth by the Belly, but that this may be, it is neceſſary that al the Meſaraick Veins, or the greateſt part of them be ſtopped, as in Children who have the Struma, or Kings Evil, whoſe Meſentery is found ful of Glandles, by which the Meſaraike Veins are ſtopped: and theſe continually have a Chylous and Cœliake Flux: They eat much and grow leaner til they fal into a Maraſmus.

Ætius and *Celſus*, and many of their followers, do propound another Cauſe of the Lientery, namely, A Smooth and Thick Scar in the Guts remaining after a long Dyſentery, by which the mouths of the Veins being ſtopped, the diſtribution of Nouriſhment is hindered, and thence comes a Lientery, which Cauſe we cannot entertain for then al the Guts ſhould have been Ulcerated, and the Scar in them al ſhould ſtop al the meſeraiks which is not agreeable to reaſon: becauſe it is impoſſible that al the Guts ſhould be ulcerated, and the man not die.

The chief Signs of theſe Symptomes do appear by what is ſaid, for if crude meat and unchanged deſcend quickly and often through the Guts it ſignifieth a Lientery; but if it be ſomewhat changed and ſeem like Chylus; it ſhews a Cœliack Paſſion.

The Signs of the Cauſes are thus gathered,

If Lientery or Cœliake Paſſion come of a cold diſtemper and Flegmatick humors, there wil be ſowr belchings, the excrements of the belly are Flegmatick, there wil be thirſt and want of pain: if the Flegm come from the Head, as it often doth, the excrements are frothy, and the Flux is greater after ſleep; And there are other Cauſes which alter the Head, and other Signs of a Catarrh.

If it come from Irritation, or provocation, there is ſomtimes a gnawing in the Stomach, a heat in the Hypochondria, there is great thirſt, ſharp excrements and chollerick.

As for the Prognoſtick, Thus,

Lientery and Cœliack Paſſion laſting long is dangerous, becauſe it catcheth away the nouriſhment from the whol body, from whence comes an Atrophy, or a Dropſie: and if it follow great and acute Diſeaſes, it uſeth to be deadly.

The Cure of this Diſeaſe is to be altered according to the variety of the Cauſes that produce it.

And Firſt,

That which cometh from Flegm may be Cured by thoſe Remedies which were propounded for the Cure of Want of Appetite coming of a cold Cauſe; Chuſing thoſe things which are moſt Aſtringent to ſtay the Fux of the Belly.

Therefore you muſt begin with Purging of the peccant humor with Medicines made of Aloes, Rhubarb, and Myrobalans.

Clyſters are here of little force, while the Stomach is chiefly diſtempered; except an immoderate Flux do require them: and then they muſt be Aſtringent and ſtrengthening according to the Forms which ſhal be propounded in the following Cures.

After Purging ſufficiently you muſt ſtrengthen the Stomach with Opiats, Pouders, Fomentations, Plaiſters, and other Remedies mentioned in the place above quoted, in which (as I ſaid) you muſt not omit Aſtringents, as Maſtich, Citron peels, Coriander ſeeds, Snake-weed Roots, Tormentil, Coral, &c.

And beſides others, the Opiate following which is greatly Commended by *Amatus Luſitanus* is Convenient, by which he ſaith he Cured an Old man, after many other Medicines failed.

Take of *Conſerve of old Roſes ſix ounces: of the beſt Treacle ſix drams: Syrup of Quinces as much as will make an Opiate, of which let him take half an ounce in the morning, not drinking preſently after.*

That

That which comes of Choller is to be cured by thoſe Remedies which were laid down againſt Chollerick Vomiting; as alſo by thoſe which ſhal be deſcribed in the Cure of a Chollerick Diarrhœa.

That which comes from the imbecillity of the Retentive Faculty in a deadly, or at leaſt dangerous Diſeaſe, is to be cured firſt with Fomentations applied to the Region of the Stomach, thus made:

Take of *the Roots of Snakeweed, Tormentil, and dried Citron peels, of each two ounces: the Leaves of Mints, Plantane, and Sea Wormwood, of each one handful: Nutmeg, Cloves, and Cinnamon, of each three drams: red Roſes four pugils, beat them and cut them according to art, and fill two bags pinked therewith, and ſteep them in equal parts of Iron Water, and red aſtringent Wine; or in Wine alone, if there be no great Feaver, and let them be applied to the Stomach warm one after another.*

Afterwards uſe this Oyntment, or ſome Emplaiſter made of thoſe which are preſcribed for Chollerick Vomiting.

Alſo anoint the whol Belly with Oyle, or aſtringent Liniments.

Give Clyſters of Broth in which red Roſes have been boyled, diſſolving therein Sugar and Yolks of Eggs, and ſometimes *Confectio de Hyacintho*, if the Patient be very weak.

And finally, You may give at the Mouth, ſtrengthening and aſtringent things, as in the Cure of Vomiting before mentioned; as alſo thus, which ſhal be ſhewed for the flux of the Belly.

In a Cœliack Paſſion the Food is ſent forth crude and imperfectly concocted. It only differs from Lientery in degree, and is cured with the ſame Remedies.

But if the ſtools be altogether Chylous, this Diſeaſe doth not depend upon the fault of the Stomach, but upon the obſtruction of the Meſeraick Veins, which is uſual, eſpecially in Children. And therefore it is to be cured by Remedies which open obſtructions and ſtrengthen the Liver, becauſe that is commonly alſo weak; but you muſt uſe no aſtringents, leaſt another kind of flux ſhould follow. Theſe Medicines are at large ſet down in the Cure of the Diſeaſes of the Liver.

Chap. 5. *Of Diarrhœa.*

Diarrhœa is that kind of flux of the Belly, by which the excrementitious Humors are ſent forth without Blood or Food, and without the Ulceration of the Inteſtines.

By the Conditions of Diarrhœa properly ſo called, is diſtinguiſhed from other kinds of fluxes, becauſe in Lientery and Cœliack Paſſion, the Food is caſt forth unconcocted, or half concocted; in a Dyſentery and Tenelmus, Blood is mixed with the Excrements, as in the flux of the Liver, called *Hepaticus*, and in the *Hæmorrhoidal*.

Many are the Differences thereof; which that they may be clearly explained, are to be referred to three Heads: The firſt whereof reſpects the Matter which is voided; the ſecond the place from whence it comes; the third, the Manner, and efficient Cauſe which produceth the flux of the Belly.

In reſpect of the Matter voided, this flux is divided into a Chollerick, Flegmatick, Melancholick, and ſerous, or watery.

In reſpect of the place from whence it comes; either it comes from the whol Body, or ſome peculiar Part, as the Brain, Stomach, Guts, Liver, Spleen, Meſentery, Womb, and other Parts.

Thirdly, In reſpect of the Manner and Efficient Cauſe; one Diarrhœa is Critical, another Symptomatical; one comes from an internal Cauſe, as a diſtemper, or evil diſpoſition of the internal parts; another from an external, as from ſome Medicine or Poyſon.

Theſe Differences are ſeldom found ſingle, but they are often complicated in one and the ſame flux. So a Chollerick flux is from the Liver or the whol Body, a Flegmatick from the Brain or Stomach, a Melancholick from the Spleen, and a Serous from the whol Body.

Alſo theſe Differences are complicated from a divers mixture of Humors, ſo that ſometimes Choller, Flegm, and Water, are ſent forth by the ſame flux.

There is another kind of Diarrhœa different from the reſt, which is called *Syntectica*, or *Colliquativa*, coming from the melting away of the ſubſtance of the Body, and Humors by the violent hot diſtemper of the ſolid parts: ſuch as happeneth ſometimes in the Inflamation of the Bowels, in a ſtrong burning Feaver, hectick, or peſtilential; in which a fat Matter as it were mixed with Oyl or Greaſe is voided.

Laſtly, *Fluxus ſtercoroſus*, or a dungy flux, is another kind, in which much liquid excrement is often voided, which comes from excrementitious Meats corrupted in the Stomach, or a great plenty of Excrements heaped up in the Inteſtines.

The

The Knowledg in general is manifeſt, namely, when more liquid Excrements are voided, and oftener than uſually Nature doth allow.

The Signs of theſe Differences which are taken from the matter are manifeſt to the Senſes, namely, Whether they be Flegmatick, Melancholick, Cholerick, or Serous.

The Parts Sending have a more difficult Diagnoſis or way of Knowledg, yet they are thus Diſtinguiſhed:

If the Humors flow from the whol body, there either is, or hath lately been, a continual Feaver, or ſome other diſeaſe of the whol body, as Cachexia, evil Habit, or Leucophlegmatia, or white Dropſie; or there hath been over-eating or drinking, and there is no ſign of any Diſeaſe of any peculiar part.

If it be Critical, it is a benefit to the Patient, and is eaſily endured; and thence the Diſeaſe is either Cured, or Diminiſhed.

Somtimes there hapneth a Critical Diarrhœa without a Diſeaſe in ſome bodies which uſe to lay up evil Humors; and being ſtrong, do throw them forth at times when they abound and burden nature as *Galen* taught, 7. meth. Cap. 11. of which Flux *Celſus* maketh mention, *lib.* 4. *cap.* 19. in theſe words, *It is healthful for to go often to the Stool in one day, and in many dayes together if there be a Feaver, and if it ceaſe before the ſeventh day; for the Body is purged, and that which inwardly would have hurt, is now ſent forth.*

Among Critical Fluxes, the Serous is one; which comes without a Diſeaſe aforegoing, in them who have much Water in their Veins, and that chiefly in the Harveſt time, or Autumne: namely, when the night and morning cold of Autumne, finding the paſſages external and pores of the skin open, by reaſon of the heat of Summer aforegoing doth therefore inſinuate it ſelf deeper into the body, preſſing forth internally the Serous Humors contained in the Veins, which Nature afterwards being over-burdened with, ſends by the Meſeraick Veins into the Inteſtines, and many times into the Uriters.

Hence it is that many in the beginning of Autumne, and in the firſt cold weather, do make abundance of Urine for many dayes together.

But if a Diarrhœa be Symptomatical, it troubles the patient much, and weakeneth him; and the Diſeaſe upon which it comes, is encreaſed; or at leaſt is in the ſame ſtate.

This Symptomatical Flux in burning Feavers and Malignant, is often melting; and hence it is known, becauſe the Excrements appear unctious, and the body forthwith becomes lean, and conſumed, and almoſt in a Maraſmus.

If the Diarrhœa comes from the Brain, the Stools are frothy, as *Hippocrates* taught, Aphor. 30. Sect. 7. which is not alwaies ſo; For Flegm may flow from the brain without Wind, which is the only cauſe of froth: as alſo Wind may be mixed with Humors that are bred or contained in the ſtomach or inteſtines, from whence the Excrements may be frothy, though they come not from the Head.

Therefore we muſt joyn other Signs to this, namely, If the Brain have any manifeſt Diſeaſe, as a Catarrh, Deafneſs, Lethargy, Apoplexy, or great Heavineſs, Pain, or Sleepineſs; and if the Flux be more at night than day.

If it come from the fault of the Stomach, there wil be the Signs of the Concoction of the Stomach Hurt; As if the Food be corrupted, and have a ſharp and ſtinking quality, by which the Expulſive Faculty is ſtirred up to expel them.

Alſo there wil then be the Signs of a Hot Diſtemper of the Stomach: So, if the Stools be Crude and Flegmatick, and if Concoction be ſlow and diminiſhed, we argue that the Concoction of the Stomach is hurt by a cold Diſtemper: and laſtly we know that the fault is in the Stomach, if the Patient did before fill himſelf with evil Food which would eaſily corrupt.

The Flux of the Belly comes from the Guts, when they are ful of Worms, and then there wil be ſigns of Worms which you may take from their proper Chapters.

If from the Liver, The Stools wil be Cholerick, becauſe Choller is bred there; and there wil be Signs of a Hot Diſtemper, Inflamation, Obſtruction, and other Diſeaſes of the Liver.

If from the Spleen, The Stools wil be commonly black or blackiſh, a diſtention in the left Hypochondrion, a heavineſs alſo or pain there, and other ſigns of the Spleen Diſtempered wil appear.

If from the Meſentery, There wil be extenſion, ſtretching, or pain in that part: But Humors gathered in the Meſentery, come commonly from the Liver and Spleen.

If from the Womb, There wil be ſtoppage of the Courſes, or the Symptomes of the Womb affected, which uſe to be more violent, and the Flux alſo at that time when the Terms ought to flow.

The

The Prognoſtick of a Diarrhœa is made thus,

A Flux of the Belly which is eaſily endured, and in which the Patient finds refreſhment, is good: On the contrary, that which is painful and weakneth, is evil: The firſt is to be accounted Critical, the laſt Symptomatical.

When the Liquid Excrements grow thicker, it is good: For it ſignifieth, That the Faculty Worketh well by Concocting of evil Humors: which is done by making them thick.

Thin Excrements with pain often voided are evil, for they ſignifie great ſharpneſs of Humors which do violently pul, ſtimulate, prick, and gnaw the Guts.

Liquid Stools without Feeling when they are voided, are evil: For they either ſignifie Diſturbance of Mind, or Doting, or Diſſolution of the Natural Heat, which is followed by the loſs of Senſe.

Liquid Stools beginning with an acute Diſeaſe, and continuing with the ſame, is evil: for it ſignifies great plenty of Matter, or an evil quality therein, which forceth Nature to ſo ſudden a flux.

If a ſtrong Diarrhœa comes upon him who hath the Leucophlegmatia, it cauſeth recovery, *Hipp.* Aph. 29. Sect. 7. For there is an Evacuation of the Matter, which was in the whol Body. But this wants a limitation. The Aphoriſm is true, if this flux happen in the beginning of a Diſeaſe while the ſtrength is good; otherwiſe it doth not take away the diſeaſe, but the Patient.

If a Woman with Child have a flux of the Belly, ſhe is in danger to miſcarry; *Hipp.* Aph. 34. Sect. 5. For the food which ſhould nouriſh the Infant, is for the moſt part carried away, and the ſtrength is abated; as alſo the Ligaments of the Womb are relaxed by a continual flux of Humors thither; as alſo the Child and the Womb are infected by the vapor of thoſe excrements which are continually voided.

Yellow Stools like Yolks of Eggs; green, like Verdegreece; livid, black, of divers colors, or very ſtinking, are evil: For the reaſon which we gave in the Chapter of Vomiting.

As to the Cure: Since a Symptomatical Diarrhœa comes commonly from corrupt Humors, Chollerick, Flegmatick, Melancholick, or Serous, and eſpecially from Chollerick, which provoke the expulſive faculty of the Inteſtines by their ſharpneſs. You muſt begin the Cure by Evacuation of the Humor offending, which muſt be done by a Medicine which doth aſtringe by purging, leſt that flux ſhould be encreaſed by motion of the Humors; and you may make it thus:

Take of *the beſt Rhubarb one dram: Citrine Myrobalans half a dram: Yellow Sanders half a ſcruple: Infuſe them in Plantane Water, diſſolve in the Liquor ſtrained half a dram: the pouder of Rhubarb, and one ounce of Syrup of Roſes. Make a Potion.*

You may ad Diacatholicon, or other Medicines, according to the condition of the Humor to be purged.

Alſo Vomiting is ſomtimes good, becauſe it Revelleth and Evacuateth the Matter of the Diſeaſe.

If there be ſigns of blood abounding, and ſtrength, you muſt firſt let blood. And if there be a Feaver, you muſt open a Vein, though there appear no Plethory, or fulneſs.

Before and after Purging, give cleanſing Clyſters, ſuch as theſe:

Take of *whol Barley two pugils: Bran and red Roſes, of each one pugil: Liquoris ſcraped, and Raiſons whol, of each one ounce: boyl them to a pint: Diſſolve in the ſtraining of white Sugar one ounce; Yolks of Eggs two. Make a Clyſter.*

After the Body is ſufficiently emptyed, you muſt give aſtringents, and ſtrengtheners, both at the Mouth, and by Clyſters, as alſo to the Belly; the Forms whereof you may take out of the Cure of Dyſentery.

Beſides, You may conveniently uſe theſe that follow:

Take of *Chalybeat Vinegar one part: Chalybeat Water two parts: the Leaves and Fruit of Myrtles, Quinces, Medlars, Cervices, of each two handfuls: Cypreſs Nuts ſix pair, boyl to halfs. Foment the Belly warm with the ſtrained Liquor often.*

Take of *Oyl of Maſtich, Quinces, and Myrtles, of each one ounce: Sanguis Draconis, Frankinſence, and Gum Traganth, of each one dram: Wax as much as will make an Unguent to anoint after the Fomentation.* Or,

Take *Crums of toaſted Bread infuſed in Chalybeat Water, and Quinces roaſted in the Embers, or Marmalade, of each three ounces: Frankinſence, Maſtich, Sanguis Draconis, of each two drams: With Syrup of Quinces and Wormwood, make a Cataplaſm.*

Take of *Maſtich two drams: Boyl it in three pints of Water for ordinary drink, Iron Water is alſo good; but in a hot Diſeaſe, it is good to uſe the Tincture of Roſes, or Conſerve of Roſes mixed with Spring Water, or Water wherein Gold hath been quenched, mixed with Syrup of Quinces.*

Amatus Luſitanus reports of one that was cured of a Chollerick Diarrhœa by taking much cold

Water in the Summer time. We also once prescribed to a Sanguine man who was troubled with a Chollerick Diarrhœa in the midst of Summer with great thirst, Sal Prunella in his ordinary drink, and Juleps made of Lettice and Purslain Water to be taken thrice in a day, and he was cured in twenty four hours.

If the Humor be very sharp, and adust or burnt, the Patient must be purged sparingly with mild Medicines, otherwise the Disease will encrease, and he is to be cooled and moistened; as also to be blooded a little.

In the same case a warm Bath is very good; the Example whereof is in our Observations.

Plantane boyled in Broth, is excellent.

And least a Diarrhœa turn into a Dysentery, you must give Clysters of Chalybeate Milk, and Emulsions of the cold Seeds, and of white Poppy Seeds, to asswage the sharpness of the Humor.

As also this Syrup following.

Take of *the Juyce of Quinces six ounces: the Juyce of Endive and Sorrel, of each three ounces: Sorrel and Plantane Seeds, of each two drams: red Coral one dram: Plantane Water four ounces: Boyl them to the Consumption of half: strain and press them well; put to it as much Sugar to make a Syrup to be taken two drams first and last.*

In al Diarrhœa's, after universal Medicines, this following Bolus is good.

Take of *Conserve of old Roses half an ounce: Candied Quinces one dram: the pouder of Tormentil one scruple: With Sugar make a Bolus to be often repeated. Or if the Disease be old you may make an Opiate of the same, or the like, in a greater quantity to be taken at many times.*

Or to astringe more powerfully give this Pouder:

Take of *Sanguis Draconis, Frankinsence, Mastich, Mummy, Terra Sigillata, Lapis Hæmatitis, or Blood-stone, Troches of Amber, of each one dram: true Bole three drams: make a Pouder, of which give two drams in convenient Liquor.*

Rhubarb twice infused, and then twice or thrice washed in Rose Water and dried, is good.

The Lozenges of the three Sanders, with four times the quantity of Rhubarb given twice in a day, the weight of two drams, do take away the Matter, and strengthen the Bowels.

The Leaves of Fleabane laid upon fire so that the smoak may be taken through a hollow Chair, do stop the flux of the Belly by a specifical quality. As also if the same Herb be beaten with Vinegar, and applied to the Stomach.

Also the smoak of Mullin taken through a hollow Chair, is excellent; the example of which is in our Observations.

Syrup of Coral is excellent, and much more the Tincture or Magistery of the same.

The Conserve of the wild Rose, or sweet Bryar Rose, is good against a Chollerick flux, especially if it be mixed in astringent Opiates.

But when there is danger of weakness through a long and often flux, you may give Laudanum with Mastich and Terra Sigillata.

When it is very violent, a Clyster of Broth and new Treacle is excellent.

Pils of Bdellium taken twice or thrice in a week, or every other day, are good against al old fluxes.

For the same is the often use of Medlars; as *Forestus* confirms by experience, obs. 1. lib. 22. in these words: *One that had a constant Flux, and spent all he had upon Physitians, came to me for counsel, whom I advised to eat Medlars, though green, as many as he could, by which he was speedily cured. As it was with a Zeland Merchant that came to* John Spirinchius, *a Physitian of* Lovan, *who having been long sick, and of a Dysentery at last, and could not be cured by any, was at length by his advice cured only with Medlars, and gave the Physitian three hundred Crowns for his advice.* Thus Forestus.

But we must observe that the Body before the use of Medlars be cleansed from Excrements.

In an old Diarrhœa, the following Medicines are excellent:

Take of *the shavings of Ivory three drams: Confection Alkermes one dram: Sugar dissolved in Rose Water four ounces. Make Lozenges.*

Take of *Crocus Martis six grains: Bezoard Mineral half a scruple: Conserve of Roses two drams: Spirit of Vitriol three drops: Mix them in a Bolus to be given twice a day, long after and before Meat.*

Take of *the Juyce of Persicaria Maculata, and of the great Housleek, of each three ounces: boyl them till the third part be consumed, and give them in the morning, they do certainly cure any flux though very old.*

Mercurius Diaphoreticus given some daies together, twelve grains at a time, taketh away all the impurities of the Body, which use to beget fluxes.

The Decoction of Juniper Berries in Wine given three daies together, is good; and also one dram of the Pouder of Grashoppers given in white Wine. These two by deriving the Matter of the flux to the Ureters.

The

The Decoction of Juniper is thus made:

Take of *Juniper Berries one handful: red Wine one pint and an half: boyl them to the conſumption of two thirds. Let him take the ſtraining three daies together.*

The Water of Brimſtone Mines cure an old Diarrhœa by purging the whol Body, and by ſtrengthening the Stomach. Of which there is an example in our obſervations.

If a Diarrhœa come from a Catarrh, you muſt look to the Brain, as the part that ſends it, with the Medicines preſcribed in the Cure of a Catarrh. But if it depend upon the Obſtruction or weakneſs of the Liver or Spleen, you muſt cure them as ſhal be ſhewed in their proper places; and then there is little or no uſe of aſtringents. *Platerus* in the Cure of the Hemorrhoids, ſaith that hot blood given as a Clyſter, doth wonderfully cure a flux.

Chap. 6. *Of* Dyſenteria, *or Dyſentery.*

A Dyſentery is an often and bloody looſneſs of the Belly, with pain and torment depending upon the ulceration of the Inteſtines.

The word *Dyſenteria* is taken commonly among the Antients for every bloody flux of the Belly: but ſtrictly and properly it is taken only for the bloody flux, which comes from an Ulcer in the Inteſtines.

Gal. 3. de ſymp. cauſ. cap. 2. nameth four kinds of bloody fluxes, which he commonly calls Dyſenteries.

The firſt is when any part of the Body is cut, or when any exerciſe is omitted, or any bleeding is omitted, as uſual bleeding at the Noſe and Hæmorrhoids, that by reaſon whereof the blood abounding is ſent by the Meſeraick Veins to the Inteſtines, and ſo evacuated by the Belly.

The ſecond is, when by reaſon of the weakneſs of the Liver, Watery blood like that water wherein fleſh hath been waſhed, is voided; as it is in the Hepatick or flux of the Liver, of which we ſhal hereafter ſpeak.

The third is when Melancholick and ſhining blood is caſt forth, which by reaſon of the long continuance in the Liver or Spleen is burnt, and mixed with Melancholly. Shining ſignifieth burning, becauſe blood which groweth black by cold doth not ſhine, but loſeth that brightneſs or ſplendor which it had before.

The fourth Difference, is when the Patient at ſome ſhort diſtance voids blood with Humors or Excrements, with which ſomtimes there is mixed Pus or Matter, and that with pain and torment, by which we may conclude that there is an Ulcer of the Guts. And this is properly called a Dyſentery, of which only we here diſcourſe.

The Internal Cauſes of a Dyſentery, are ſharp and ulcerating Humors, as yellow Choller, green like Leeks or Verdegreece, and black; as alſo ſalt flegm bred in the Head from great heat, or in the Belly by putrefaction, and ſo brought to the Inteſtines, where cleaving a long time, it doth ulcerate.

Here is a great Doubt propounded by Authors; How yellow Choller in a ſhort time ſhould cauſe a Dyſentery? When green Choller in a long time maketh only a Diarrhœa, which never turneth into a Dyſentery, ſince the green is made of the yellow by aduſtion, and hath more ſharpneſs.

Mercatus anſwereth, That there muſt be a clammineſs, by which it may remain long in the Guts to corrode and gnaw them, as wel as a ſharpneſs. And therefore if yellow Choller be ſuch, it cauſeth a Dyſentery; on the contrary, if green Choller be more fluid, and ſtay leſs while in the Guts, it makes but a ſimple Diarrhœa.

Sennertus ſaith that this anſwer is probable; but it doth not ſatisfie, becauſe oftentimes there are fluxes, in which there is clammineſs with ſharpneſs, and yet there is no Dyſentery. And contrarywiſe, often times there is no clammineſs in Chollerick Humors which cauſe a Dyſentery, and therefore he thinks that the Humors which produce a Dyſentery have a peculiar occult quality, with which the Inteſtines are offended and ulcerated, as the Lungs are with the fiſh Lepus, and the Bladder with Cantharides, and no other part. And he proveth that malignant quality in that a Dyſentery is contagious for the moſt part, ſo that the infections which come from the vapors riſing from the excrements of thoſe that have a Dyſentery, do only infect the Guts of them that are infected, and not upon other parts. The ſame happeneth in other Epidemical and infectious Diſeaſes, in which the poyſon doth go only to ſome peculiar part; ſo their Pleureſies, Peripneumonia's, or Impoſthumes in the Lungs, and Squinzies which are infectious. So the Poyſon of a mad Dog doth only infect the Head. This is more cleer to be ſeen in Purging Medicines, which have a peculiar vertue to move the Humors in the Body, and bring them to the Guts, which wil not only, being taken at the Mouth, purge by ſtool, but laid to the Navil are taken by vapor at the Noſe; it is probable that they piercing into the Veins and

Arteries by the Pores of the Skin aud extremities of the Veſſels, do ſtir up motion, and Fermentation or working in the Humors, becauſe the bad Humors are ſeparated from the good, and by pricking or ſtimulating of Nature, they are driven to the Inteſtines by the force of the Medicine, directing the expulſive faculty to thoſe parts. By the ſame reaſon, but after another manner, do Sudorificks, or Sweating Medicines, and Diuretick, or ſuch as provoke Urine work; the former forcing the Humors to the Skin, the latter to the Bladder. From which we may collect that the infection of a Dyſentery, by what manner or part ſoever it is admitted into the Body, doth cauſe a certain fermentation or working in the Humors by giving them a Diſpoſition like it ſelf; which being an enemy to the Guts, doth provoke the flux of the Humors to them, by which they are ulcerated; and they being infected with the like diſpoſition, do infect the Humors and Nouriſhment; from whence comes a true and proper Dyſentery.

It is demanded of divers Authors, What is that ſnotty and white Matter which is voided in ſuch great plenty in Dyſenteries, mixed with Blood and other Humors? Some think that it is the fat of the Guts; others that it is that with which the Inteſtines are lined for the better paſſage of the excrements; others, that it is flegm from the Head or other parts; others, that it is Pus or Matter from the Ulcers. But we conclude, That it is nothing elſe but a preternatural excrement of the Guts; for they being decayed from their Natural Conſtitution, cannot convert their proper Nouriſhment into their own ſubſtance, but by an imperfect way change it into that Matter; which when it is unfit for nouriſhment of thoſe parts, is expelled forth, and then the parts wanting again Nouriſhment, attracteth or draweth new, which is changed as the former, and there muſt needs be a great encreaſe thereof, becauſe the part affected continually draweth Blood from the Veins, which is changed into this ſlimy ſubſtance, by which it is deceived of its expectation, and therefore again draweth new for its Nouriſhment, which it continually aimeth at, but cannot turn into its own ſubſtance, but into this ſlimy Matter, of which there is ſo great an encreaſe. The ſame thing is done in other parts, and eſpecially in great and profound or deep Ulcers. For the part Ulcerated when by reaſon of its evil diſpoſition, it cannot be wel nouriſhed, draws blood continually from the Veins, which is changed into Pus or Quittor, by which means the whol body by degrees conſumeth. Nor doth this befal only parts ulcerated, but others that have no Ulcer or Impoſthume; ſo that although the aforeſaid Excrement be like Quittor, yet is not true Pus or Quittor; for that comes only from an Ulcer or Impoſthume. This chiefly appears in an Ophthalmy or Inflamation of the Eyes, in which when there is no Ulcer or Impoſthume, there is a continual Excrement like Quittor, which comes only from the diſtemper of the part, and the depravation of the Homiofis, or quality by which it makes Nouriſhment like it ſelf. The ſame befals men in Aſthma or Ptiſick, and other Diſeaſes of the Lungs, for their Lungs being diſtempered, do il concoct their own Nouriſhment, but turn it into an Excrement like Quittor, which is expelled by coughing, and yet they have no Ulcer in their Lungs; as many learned Phyſitians wil conclude when they ſee the Matter.

The External Cauſes of a Dyſentery, are al things that produce ſharp and evil Humors, or give them being produced, a diſpoſition to cauſe a Dyſentery. The principal are, ſharp Meats, or very ſubject to putrefaction, as Fruits ſoon rotten, and al unripe things, Waters that are drunk ordinarily, wherein there is Crudity or a Mineral, and Medicines which are deadly qualified, and evil Air, as *Hipp.* Aph. 11. Sect. 3. when the Winter is too cold or dry, the Spring too wet, and too full of South winds, then there wil be Dyſenteries in the Summer. And Aph. 12. Sect. 3. If the South wind blow much in Winter, and it rain much: but if it be dry, and the North wind blow much, in the Spring, thoſe ſeaſons produce Dyſenteries.

But the proper Diſtemper of the Air to produce a Dyſentery is known in a contagious or Epidemical Dyſentery, which ſometimes is more dangerous than others. As alſo there is an Infection in the Excrements of thoſe that have this Diſeaſe to them that ſmel them, and if they be caſt into the Privy they infect moſt of the Family that ſit over them.

The Signs of a Dyſentery are taken out of the Definition mentioned, an often bloody Evacuation with pain and torments of the Belly, and ſometimes a Feaver, watching, thirſt, loathing of Meat and other Signs common to many Diſeaſes.

But it is hard to know whether the thick or thin Guts are ulcerated. Uſually if the pain be above the Navil, they ſay it is in the thin Guts, and if below, in the thick; but this is contrary to reaſon, becauſe both the thin and thick Guts are carried both to the ſuperior and inferior parts. Therefore this ſign is rather to be taken from the quality of the pain, and the excrements. For if the thin Guts are affected, there is vehement pain, like pins pricking, becauſe they are more Membranous, and of more exquiſite ſence. As alſo they go not to ſtool preſently after the pain, and there is blood in every ſtool; for becauſe the Blood and purulent Matter comes far before it be voided, it is more mixed with the Dung; but if the thick Guts are affected, the pain is leſs vehement and lathing, there is preſently after a going to ſtool, the Blood and Matter ſwim upon the excrement, or are very little mixed, and in a great Ulceration there are as it were little pieces of fleſh.

The

The Signs of the Cauſes are taken eſpecially from the Colour of the Excrements, when they are yellow, green, white, or black, to which you may ad the Signs of Humors abounding from the Age, Temperament, time of the yeer, and courſe of Life.

The Prognoſtick is thus made,

If the Thin Guts are Ulcerated there is more danger, for they are more Nervous, and being neerer the Liver they receive more pure Choller.

Dyſenteries coming from black Choller, or Melancholly, are deadly; *Hippocrates*, aph. 24. ſect. 4. becauſe the Ulcer grows Cancerous, which is ſeldom Cured outwardly in the body. But if this Melancholly comes by Criſis, of Judgement, it is not ſo dangerous. But you muſt beware leaſt you take Congealed blood for Melancholly.

A Dyſentery from Choller or ſharp Diet is eaſily Cured: from ſalt Flegm it is worſe than from Choller, becauſe by reaſon of the Clammineſs it ſtayes longer in the Guts to ulcerate.

In long Diſeaſes of the Guts, Loathing of Meat is evil, and worſe with a Feaver: *Hippocrates*, Aph. 3. Sect. 6.

If in a Dyſentery there be as it were little pieces of Fleſh voided, it is deadly: Aphor. 26. Sect. 4. for it ſignifieth a deep Ulcer which takes away pieces of the guts.

Much Watching, Stools without mixture of Humors, black, ſtinking, much blood, a Lientery coming after, Hickers, Chollerick Vomits, pain of the Liver, Midriff, great thirſt, do commonly declare that it is deadly.

A Dyſentery coming to thoſe which have the Gout or a Diſeaſe in the Spleen, is good: *Hippocrates*, 2. progn. & aph. 46. ſect. 6. but this is rather a ſimple Diarrhœa which ſends forth the matter of thoſe Diſeaſes.

Old Men and Children more commonly in this Diſeaſe than Men of middle Age, *Hipp.* 2. *progn* Children becauſe of their tenderneſs, and their not obſerving rules: Old Men becauſe their ſtrength is ſpent, and becauſe there is a great overthrow of their natural ſtate thereby: for they do not eaſily produce excrements that are fit to cauſe a Dyſentery.

The Cure of this Diſeaſe is wrought by Medicines that aſſwage, cleanſe, and evacuate ſharp humors that Conſolidate and dry Ulcers and ſtop the flux.

At firſt you muſt evacuate the Humor offending leaſt it do more miſchief, and you muſt Purge often; and if you think it not ſafe to purge every day or every other day, do it every third or fourth day: Rhubarb is the beſt for this purpoſe, either given in ſubſtance with Broth, or made into a Potion, as in Diarrhœa, Or thus,

Take of *Plantane half an handful*: *Liquoris ſcraped, and whol Raiſons, of each three drams*: *Red Roſes one pugil*: *Tamarinds ſix drams*: *yellow Myrobalans rub'd with Oyl of ſweet Almonds, two drams*: *boyl them to three ounces*: *Diſſolve in the ſtraining, of Rhubarb infuſed with Lavender in Plantane Water one dram*: *Syrup of Quinces one ounce*: *Make a Potion*:

Or,

Take of *Tamarinds half an ounce*: *Citron Myrobalans, two drams*: *boyl them in Barley and Plantane Water, infuſe in the ſtraining, of Rhubarb one dram and an half*: *yellow Saunders half a ſcruple*: *to four ounces of the ſtraining ad one ounce of the ſyrup of Roſes ſolutive*: *make a Potion.*

The Decoction of Myrobalans made thus, and given in many Draughts, is Commended of many.

Take of *the rinds of Myrobalans Chebs, ten drams*: *Citron Myrobalans five drams*: *Currans two ounces*: *boyl them in twenty ſix Pints of Water, to the Conſumption of the third part*: *ſtrain them, and adde ten drams of Sugar, clarifie it, and put to it half an ounce of Cinnamon.*

Penotus Commends the following Potion as good againſt both Dyſentery and Diarrhœa.

Take of *the Bark of Guajacum beaten two ounces*: *boyl them to halfs in a ſufficient quantity of Water, adding of red Roſes, Pomegranate Flowers, and Plantane, of each two drams*: *boyl them for an hour, and then adde to the ſtraining of powdered Rhubarb one dram*: *Diacatholicon, three drams*: *make a Potion.*

Many give Parched or Torrified Rhubarb, that the Purging Quality may partly be taken away: But *Amatus Luſitanus* takes the ſecond Infuſion of Rhubarb, and ſaith, That in the firſt Infuſion all his ſharpneſs is taken away, and it is better ſo than Parched, for by ſo doing it is burnt.

The Preparation is thus made:

Take of *Rhubarb one dram and an half*: *infuſe it in three ounces of Plantane Water ſome few hours, ſtrain it, preſs it gently, and then infuſe it again in three ounces of new Plantane Water, and diſſolve in the ſtraining half an ounce of Caſſia*: *make a Potion.*

If you deſire, by reaſon of the abundance of crude Humors, to Purge more, then you may make Syrup of Roſes, or Diacatholicon, or other mild things, but beware of ſtrong.

Sometimes

Sometimes a Vomit is very good, if the Patient be inclinable, and the Humors ſtand in the Stomach; for it makes a revulſion of the Humors from the part affected. Which *Amatus Luſitanus* wiſely mentioned, Curat. 44. Cent. 2. in theſe words: *If the Phyſitian can draw upwards, and caſt out by Vomit a Humor that is Chollerick and ſharp, flowing to the Guts to make a Dyſentery, it would be contrary to the Precepts of* Galen, *in his Book of Medicinal Art, and Method of Cure, to carry the matter by the Guts which are full of Ulcers. But when the Phyſitian cannot do it, although he ought to try his beſt skill, he muſt then uſe Purges, and eſpecially Rhubarb.* This *Hippocrates* taught, Aph. 15. Sect. 6. *After a long flux of the Belly, if Vomiting come of it ſelf, the diſeaſe is cured.* But *Galen* in his Comment upon this Aphoriſm, ſaith, *That this is the example of thoſe things which are done rightly by Nature, which a Phyſitian ought to imitate.* And *Mercatus* confirms the ſame in theſe words: *Divert the Humors another way by bleeding if thou canſt; alſo purge, and Vomit, eſpecially in ſalt flegm, for thus we have ſeen old Dyſenteries cured.*

Angelus ſala preſcribeth this following Vomit in a Dyſentery:

Take of *Salt of Vitriol half a dram, or a dram: Syrup of Quinces, and Bettony Water, of each one ounce: Cinnamon Water ten drams: Mix them and drink it off.*

There is great Diſſention among Authors concerning Blood-letting in this Diſeaſe. And it is the Opinion of the wiſeſt, that in a Feaver and Inflamation of the Inteſtines (which is commonly joyned with an Ulcer) that it ought to be in the beginning of the Diſeaſe, before the ſtrength be decayed by it: for ſo there is a revulſion of Blood, and ſharp Humors flowing to the Guts. And *Valeſcus de Taranta*, and *Amatus Luſitanus* in an old Dyſentery drew Blood. *Valeſcus* ſaith, *That a very old man had a Dyſentery three months; I being ſent for, when other Phyſitians oppoſed it, commanded a Vein to be opened, he preſently amended.* And *Amatus* ſaith thus; *That an honeſt Phyſitian went to a man, who had a Dyſentery thirty daies with a great Feaver, and after the uſe of divers Medicines was brought very low, and lean, his flux continuing with much Blood, and drew Blood from the Liver Vein of his right Arm: and obſerve with what ſucceſs; Preſently, miraculouſly the blood ſtopped, though his flux continued. But by Clyſters with Sugar, and aſtringent Medicines, both internal and external, his belly was bound, and he cured.*

In the mean while give many Clyſters, firſt aſſwaging, mild, and cleanſing; then glutinous and aſtringent; and ſometimes in one Clyſter all together, or moſt of them.

Mild, gentle, and anodine Clyſters that aſſwage pain, are made of Milk, either alone, or with two or three yolks of Eggs, or with the Mucilage of Fleabane Seeds and Quinces, of each four ounces; with Sugar or Honey of Roſes one ounce; Goats Suet one ounce; or with Milk wherein Gold, Iron, or Flints have been quenched, that the ſerous part may be conſumed, and ſo it may be more glutinous.

In want of Milk, you may give Almond Milk, or Barley Cream, or Rice Milk, alone or together; as alſo the Broth of Mutton, Chicken, Capon, or a Sheeps Head, and mix the former things therewith. It is uſual to boyl Roſes, and the Herb Hort-tail with a Sheeps Head. Or this following:

Take of *Marſh-mallow Roots one ounce: cleanſed Barley, or Rice one Pugil: Lin-ſeed and Quince ſeed, of each one ounce: Fleabane ſeed half a dram: Chamomel flowers one pugil: Boyl them in Milk or Broth, adding the Suet and Yolks of Eggs, and other things before mentioned.*

Or you may make it of Milk alone, boyled with Marſh-mallow Roots at the firſt, to cleanſe and aſſwage the pain.

If the Pain be great, you muſt mix Narcoticks; as Philonium Perſicum, one or two drams: Pils of Hounds-tongue one or two ſcruples: Syrup of Poppies one ounce and an half: Laudanum five or ſix grains, in your Clyſters.

If there be an Inflamation in the Guts, which may be known by conſtant pain, and increaſing when it is touched, alſo by a Feaver and dryneſs of the Tongue; let blood again, give Clyſters of Roſe Water, with Salt of Lead, and foment the Belly with Oxycrate, or Wine and Water.

Alſo you may give Salt of Lead at the Mouth to ten grains, with Conſerve of Roſes.

Cleanſing Clyſters are made of Barley Water, Bran, red Roſes, Sugar or Honey of Roſes.

But for the greater cleanſing and glutinating the Ulcer, ad one dram of Turpentine diſſolved with the Yolk of an Egg. When the Ulcer is more foul, you muſt uſe greater cleanſers, as Beets, Pellitory of the wal in the aforeſaid Decoction. The ſtrongeſt Cleanſers are, Centaury, Wormwood, Gentian, Brine or Pickle, from *Galen* 12. Meth. Cap. 1. and the like; the uſe of which is now very rare.

Zacutus Lucitanus durſt uſe Arſenick, and yet with good ſucceſs; as you may ſee Obſ. 18. Lib. 2. of his Admirable Practice of Phyſick.

Some Chymicks uſe of the Oyl of Wax in Clyſters one dram; and anoint the Belly with the ſame.

To glutinate or heal up the Ulcer, firſt uſe gentle Dryers in Clyſters, and a little aſtringent; then ſuch

ſuch as are more drying and binding. Therefore make them firſt of Chalybeat Milk, in which Roſes have been boyled, or of Barley Water, or Water of parched Rice, and red Roſes one pugil, adding to both Clyſters two Yolks of roaſted Eggs, ſometimes Honey of Roſes; and when you will have it work better, one ounce of the Juyce of Plantane.

To bind and glutinate more, make it thus:

Take of *the Roots of Comphry and Mullein, of each one ounce: Plantane and Comphry leaves, of each one handful: red Roſes, and parched Barley, of each one pugil: Myrtles two drams: Make a Decoction in Ciſtern Water; in one pint of the ſtraining, diſſolve of Honey of Roſes one ounce; one white of an Egg, or one ounce of the Mucilage of Gum Traganth, Goats Suet two ounces: the Juyce of Yarrow and Knot-graſs one ounce. Make a Clyſter.*

Take of *Snakeweed Roots, or Tormentil, one ounce and an half: Shepheards-purſe, Knot-graſs, Horſtail, and Mouſear, of each one handful: Pomegranate flowers, Acorn cups, Cypreſs Nuts, of each two drams: parched Rice one pugil: make a Decoction in Forge Water: in a pint of the ſtraining diſſolve two ounces of the Juyce of Plantane, and two Yolks of roaſted Eggs. Make a Clyſter.*

Angelus ſala wonderfully commends the following Clyſter:

Boyl a Sheeps Head cloven in two, till the fleſh come from the bones, add to the Broth ſtrained of the tops of St. Johns Wort two or three handfuls; Tormentil Roots groſly bruiſed two ounces: Infuſe them three or four hours upon the Embers. Let the ſtraining be twice or thrice given as a Clyſter.

The Juyce of Plantane alone, or with the Milk or Barley Water, is good.

Gum Traganth two drams, or the Infuſion of it in Roſe or Plantane Water, is good to put in Clyſters; or it makes a very good one if it be mixed with Juyce of Plantane and Goats Suet inſtead of Gum Traganth. Or with it you may with profit uſe Gum Arabick, Frankinſence, Maſtich, and Sarcocol. All which being diſſolved in the aforeſaid Liquors, do work by glewing, neither do they exaſperate the Ulcer as the ſtrong Aſtringents. *Amatus Lucitanus* doth much approve Clyſters made of them, becauſe they do cover, as with a Plaiſter, the internal Superficies of the Guts againſt the gnawing of the Matter; he makes them thus:

Take of *Barley Water ten ounces: one white of an Egg well beaten: Gum Arabick and Goats Greaſe, of each half an ounce: Oyl of Roſes two ounces: Bole-Armenick and Gum Traganth, of each one dram: mix them for a Clyſter.*

But leſt thoſe Emplaſtick Clyſters ſhould faſten the ſharp Matter, and ſhut it up by their clammineſs, you muſt uſe cleanſing Clyſters alſo, which muſt not be long retained; and you muſt ſometimes uſe cleanſing Clyſters intermixed with aſtringent.

In the aſtringent you may put Acacia, Hypociſtis, or Conſerve of Sloes, Sanguis Draconis, Bloodſtone, the Juyce of Maddir taken out with Roſe or Plantane Water, Bole-Armenick, Terra Sigillata, or ſealed Earth, the Troches of Amber, and the white Troches of *Rhaſis* to one or two drams. Other Pouders are hurtful, becauſe they ſettle in the Liquor, and provoke the part to pain.

And it is better to infuſe the aforeſaid Pouders in Liquor, or in a Decoction, and to give them ſtrained.

While you give Clyſters, you muſt give at the Mouth, Medicines of the ſame Nature, and that oftener when the upper Guts are ulcerated, to which the Clyſters cannot reach.

If there be no Feaver, you may profitably, when you intend to cleanſe, give Goats Milk; and when you intend to glutinate, Cows Milk, both with Sugar of Roſes. But Chalybeat Milk, that is, Steel infuſed, doth knit or glutinate better; three ounces thereof with Juyce of Plantane, and Sugar of Roſes, of each one ounce, make an excellent Medicine. Or boyl Comphry Roots in Steeled Milk.

Or make Bread of the fineſt Barley with Yolks of Eggs, and ſet it into the Oven after the Bread is drawn: Crum Milk and Sugar therewith till it is as thick as a Pultis; of which let him take five or ſix ſpoonfuls twice or thrice in a day.

Veal broth boyled very long doth aſſwage pain in the Ulcers.

And Cream of Rice doth heal them up.

Lerius reports in his Hiſtory, That many troubled with Dyſenteries, in a long voyage almoſt ſtarved, and were cured with Rice boyled in Milk with Yolks of Eggs, and Juyce of Ground Ivy.

Alſo you may boyl Rice in Almond Milk, in which Gold hath been quenched.

Cream of Barley with Sugar doth cleanſe and cool.

Broth made of Burnet with Butter, given three daies together morning and evening, doth much further the Cure, and the more if the Decoction of Burnet at the ſame time be given for ordinary Drink.

The Rinds of two greeniſh Oranges boyled in eight pints of Water for ordinary Drink, doth half the Cure.

Of

Of the Pouder of a dead-mans Skul one dram twice or thrice given in Broth or other convenient Liquor doth quickly cure perfectly.

Two ſpoonfuls of the Mucilage of Gum Tragacanth drawn with Roſe Water or Gum Arabick half a dram, may be diſſolved in al his Broths; as alſo one ſpoonful of the Gelly of Harts-horn is good.

After the Body is wel Clenſed, give aſtringent Decoction to compleat the Cure; which muſt be made of the Roots of Snake-weed, Tormentil, Comfry, Plantane Leaves, Yarrow, Shepherds-Purſe, Horſe-tail, Mouſe-ear, Agrimony, Plantane and Sorrel Seeds, Sumach, Grape-ſtones, Red Roſes, &c. in Cyſtern Water; diſſolving therein the Syrup of Quinces, Myrtles, or of dried Roſes, as alſo ſomtimes Acacia Hypociſtis, Conſerve of Sloes, Bole Armenick, Spodium or burnt Ivory.

The Juyce of Quinces boyled to the conſiſtence of a Syrup or Rob, without an addition given a ſpoonful or two often is very profitable.

The like Juyces may be made of Pears, Cornel, or Dog-tree Berries, and other ſharp Fruits.

Take *the Fat Guts of a Sheep, boyl them till the Liquor come to half a Porringer, then put a little ſweet Oyl thereto and let him drink it; if the Dyſentery be not very ſtubborn it cureth it at the firſt or ſecond draught.*

Oyl and Roſe Water given in equal parts do the ſame.

Let two yolks of hard Egs, and mixed with Roſe Water, be taken with Sugar and a little Nutmeg twice or thrice.

The Juyce of Plantane only given, three or four ounces at a time, or mixed with other proper things, is excellent; and if there be an inflamation it allayeth it.

Hollerius ſaith, That the Juyce of Ground-Ivy taken, hath ſaved many a mans life.

Juleps of Waters or Decoctions and Aſtringent Syrups are to be often given.

Syrup of Coral, as alſo the Tincture and Magiſtery thereof are very good, which muſt be taken often in a ſpoon; Or theſe following,

Take of *ſyrup of Grapes, Myrtles, and of Juyce of Plantane, Quinces, and dried Roſes, and ſyrup of the Juyce of Purſlain, of each one ounce: mix them for the uſe aforeſaid.*

In the end of a Dyſentery the Juyce of Wormwood and Mints wel purified, and made into a Syrup with Sugar, is very available: For Mints mixed with Wormwood hath great force to ſtrengthen the Stomach.

And if the Dyſentery came by eating much Fruit, in the beginning Syrup of Wormwood with Cinnamon or Treacle Water is excellent, if you at the ſame time uſe Fomentations and Emplaiſters to ſtrengthen the Stomach.

A Quince made hollow and filled with the ſhavings of Virgins Wax, roaſted under the Embers, given for ſome few days together, is a moſt proper Remedy.

Quercetanus makes the ſame Medicine of Pomum Curtipendulum made hollow and filled with Gum Arabick and Wax, of each one dram, then roaſted, and after 'tis eaten let him drink a draught of aſtringent Decoction.

Others roaſt a yong Pidgeon ſtuft with Wax, and give it for a dinner.

The uſe of Medlers, according to *Foreſtus*, cures old Dyſenteries, lib. 22. obſ. 1. which we mentioned in Diarrhœa.

Bruyerinus, *lib.* 8. *de re cibaria*, *cap.* 12. writes that he was Cured of a deſperate Dyſentery by eating raw Service-berries, by the advice of an Old Woman.

Nor let us omit the Oak Grape mentioned by *Martin Ruland*, which he ſaith is under the Earth upon the Roots of an Oak in Spring time, of a binding taſte, outwardly like Purple, inwardly white and like Milk, which dieth in Summer and turns to a ſtick, and therefore muſt be dried in the ſhade, and poudered in the Spring: He ſaith, That there is no more excellent Pouder to ſtanch Blood and Dyſenteries than this. Alſo *Encelius*, *Bauhinus*, and *Skenkius* mention the ſame.

In every Flux of putrid Humors let the Guts be ſtrengthened with bread twice baked, firſt boyled in Vinegar and then dried; after it is twice or thrice thus prepared, pouder it, and thicken Broth therewith.

Alſo there are many Pouders for this: As,

Take of *Snake-weed and Tormentil Roots, of each one dram: Red Coral and Pearl prepared of each half a dram: make a Pouder to be taken one dram at a time in Broth, or the like: You may make it more Aſtringent with Red Roſes, Myrtles, Pomegranat Flowers, Harts-horn burnt, or Ivory burnt, or Troches of Spodium: Or for more Binding, with Sanguis Draconis, Acacia, Galls, Bole Armenick, ſealed Earth, Blood-ſtone: And if you deſire to glutinate, alſo ad Fleabane-ſeeds, Starch, and Gum Tragacanth.*

The

The Eaſtern Bole, given one dram in Broth, doth cure the Dyſentery if ſufficient Purging went before. Or,

Take *Pouder of Tragacanth one dram*: *Nutmegs, Coral prepared, of each half a dram*: *mix them, and let it be given at twice or thrice with a rear Egg, or Broth.* Or,

Take of *Gum Arabick one dram*: *Coral and Bole prepared, of each half a dram*: *mix and uſe it as the former.* Or,

Take of *burnt Harts-horn, Bole Armonick, both Corals, all the Saunders and Maſtich, of each half a dram*: *Frankinſence and Tragacanth, of each half a ſcruple*: *mix them for a pouder of which take half a dram often.*

Foreſtus doth highly Commend the following Pouder,

Take of *Citrin Myrobalans and Rhubarb a little parched, of each one ſcruple*: *make a Pouder for one Doſe.*

Hercules Saxonia ſaith, That al new Dyſenteries are preſently, and ſurely Cured by this Pouder:

Take of *Cuttle-bone burnt two drams*: *ſponge dipt in Pitch and burnt in a Pot, and of Egg-ſhels the inward skins taken away, of each one dram*: *make a Pouder, the Doſe is one dram in a convenient Liquor.*

The Pouder of Elder-Berries is by Experience approved, it is preſcribed by *Quercetanus* in his Diſpenſatory, and there you may ſee the uſe of it.

You may give Opiates made after this manner,

Take of *conſerve of old Roſes and Quinces, of each one ounce*: *conſerve of Comfry Roots half an ounce*: *Coral prepared one dram and an half*: *Crocus Martis, Bole Armonick, ſealed Earth and Plantane ſeeds, of each one dram*: *Spodium two ſcruples*: *with ſyrup of dried Roſes or Myrtles make an Opiate*; *of which give the bigneſs of a Cheſnut twice or thrice in a day*; *Or with an equal weight of Sugar you may make a Compound to be uſed often.*

Mycleta Nicolai is good for the ſame.

Crato wiſely admoniſheth, That before the ſeventh day, before the Ulcers of the Guts are wel clenſed, you give no aſtringents at the mouth, nor externally, but after the ſeventh day you may begin with gentle aſtringents.

Montanus doth wholly forbid them, and uſeth only Clenſers, Aſſwagers of pain and thickners: But when the matter of the Diſeaſe is wel evacuated, the weakneſs of the retentive Faculty by which the Flux is nouriſhed, may be wel taken away with aſtringents.

Therefore it wil be profitable, after ſufficient Purging to give for many days Bole, Terra Lemnia, pouder of Elder-berries, or other aſtringents and dryers with Sugar, till the Patient be wel: but if too much binding ſeem to hurt, you muſt purge again, then bind and after purge; and you muſt obſerve that thoſe Earths do avail too wayes, namely by Binding, and by Oppoſing the evil quality which is in the Diſeaſe: And the Obſtruction which is feared by their uſe is taken away by Sugar mixed with them.

To allay Pain, and heal the Ulcer, this Electuary is beſt.

Take of *the mucilage of Quince-ſeeds, Comfry Roots, and Gum Tragacanth, all extracted with Roſe Water, of each one ounce*: *Starch one dram*: *Red Coral two drams*: *Bole Armonick prepared one dram*; *Pomegranate Flowers half a dram*: *Rob, or conſerve of Services, or Quinces two ounces*: *Sugar of Roſes one ounce*: *make it like an Electuary*: *the Doſe is two drams.*

Narcoticks, or things that bring reſt given at the mouth do wonders, for they take away pain, ſtop the Flux, provoke ſleep, and refreſh the ſtrength: but they are better when they are mixed with Aſtringents and Strengthners. As,

Take of *old conſerve of Roſes two drams*: *Laudanum three grains*: *Confectio Alkermes, half a ſcruple*: *make a Bolus.*

In a Malignant, and Epidemical, or Common Dyſentery, Medicines of Bezoar and Sudorifick, or Swearing Medicines, are powerful; for it is obſerved that by theſe Remedies, that the matter hath been diſcharged, and the Dyſentery cured: Therefore obſerve at firſt the nature of the Humor; for if it be Malignant, as in a Common Epidemical Diſeaſe it is, you ſhal in vain try other Medicines, except at the ſame time, and in the beginning you give Antidotes or Cordials. Here you may uſe al things proper to a Malignant Feaver: And beſides thoſe things that provoke Swear, as Bezoar and Aqua Theriacalis, or Treacle water; Harts-horn, ſealed Earth, Bole Armonick, Unicorns-horn, Coral, Amber, Scordium, St. Johns-wort, Plantane, Tormentil, Burnet, and many others are very good.

Outwardly to the whol Belly apply Oyl of Quinces and Roſes; or if you wil have it more aſtringent Oyl of unripe Olives, or put the third part of Vinegar to them, and boyl them to the Conſumption of the Vinegar: If the Stomach be Affected alſo, adde Oyl of Maſtich, and Wormwood.

After Anointing, Sprinkle the part with ſome Aſtringent pouder, made of Myrtles, Pomegranate peels, Galls, Cypreſs Nuts, Acron Cups, Red Roſes, Pomegranate flowers, Frankinſence and Maſtich; to which for the more binding, ad Bole Armenick and Terra Sigillata, or Sealed Earth.

Of the ſame Pouders without the Oyls, you may make an Ointment for the ſame Uſe, with a little Wax: Or, You may uſe Unguentum Comitiſſæ alone, or with other Ointments.

The Cataplaſm preſcribed before for Diarrhœa, and this following, if you will Bind ſtrongly, may be uſed:

Take of *Bole ſix drams*: *Frankinſence ſix ounces*: *Sanguis Draconis, Maſtich, and Mummy, of each two drams*: *make a Pouder, which you may apply to the Belly beneath the Navel if you mix it with Vinegar and the white of an Egg and lay it upon a Cloth.* Or,

Take *three ounces of Spiders Webs, and one white of an Egg well beaten: fry them in a pan, and apply them hot to the Navil.*

A Cataplaſm of Treacle and ſealed Earth to the Belly, is good in an Epidemical or contagious Dyſentery.

This following Cataplaſm to ſtrengthen the Liver, is much commended of *Solenander* in every flux, both of the Liver, called *Hepaticus*, and in a Dyſentery, and old Diarrhœa. Nor muſt you fear Aſtringents, ſaith he, becauſe they are tempered with things to ſtrengthen the Liver.

Take of *Liver-wort and Schœnanth, of each one handful*: *Indian Spike half a pugil*: *Maſtich, and Mace, of each half an ounce*: *Lignum Aloes three drams*: *Myrobalans Chebs, and Emblicks parched, of each one ounce*: *Bole, ſealed Earth, and Blood-ſtone, of each ſix drams*: *Coriander ſeeds prepared one ounce and an half*: *Spodium or burnt Ivory, two drams*: *Roſes one ounce*: *the Species of three Sanders without Camphire half an ounce*: *Ruſt of Iron prepared one ounce*: *Barley flower two ounces*: *Oyl of Maſtich and Myrtles, of each as much as is ſufficient*: *make an Emplaiſter to cover the whol Belly, from the Cartilage called* Enſiformis *or* Xiphoides, *to the* Os Pectinis, *or the Bone at the bottom of the Belly.*

You may alſo make a Fomentation for the whol Belly of a Decoction of aſtringent things made in Iron Water, with a little red Wine and Vinegar. Or,

Take of *red Roſes two handfuls*: *Wormwood and Mints, of each one handful*: *Nutmeg and Cypreſs Roots, Maſtich and Galangal, of each one dram*: *With a linnen cloth, make a bag as big as the belly, which being warmed in red Wine, or Vinegar, may be laid upon the belly.* Or,

Take of *Wormwood, Mints, Plantane, Oak Leaves, and tops of Brambles, Horſtail, and Knot-graſs, of each one handful*: *Chamomel flowers two pugils*: *red Roſes half a handful*: *Myrtles one dram*: *Seeds of Sumach, Plantane, and Coriander, of each ſix drams*: *Nutmegs three*: *make a Decoction in ſteeled Water, and red Wine for to foment the Belly.*

Rulandus doth apply a bag of Bran boyled in Vinegar.

If the pain be great, apply a linnen cloth wet in ſteeled Milk that is warm.

But if Fomentations wil not Cure, you may uſe Waters to ſit in called *Inſeſſus*. Theſe are commended by *Matthew de Gradi*, *Savanarola*, and *Jachinus*, who ſaith that they are a great ſecret for the Cure of Children, for by their actual heat they do drive the Humors ſomwhat towards the Skin; and by their aſtringent quality ſtop the flux. But you muſt not uſe them if the Body be very full of evil Humors; or if the Dyſentery be malignant, and joyned with a Feaver. They are made of Oak buds, green Cypreſs Berries, green Pine-nuts, or Leaves, Barks, and other ſuch like boyled in Water, of the aforeſaid Decoctions for Fomentations.

You may make Fumigations that the Patient may receive the vapor of them through a hollow Chair.

Eſpecially a Decoction made of Mullein, and the Fume thereof received, is commended in this Diſeaſe, and alſo for a Diarrhœa.

Faventinus commends a Fumigation made of Turpentine caſt upon a hot Iron, taken up into the Body twice a day.

And he commends alſo this Fomentation:

Take of *Balm one pound*: *Mullein one handful*: *Put them in a long bag; boyl it well in red Wine and ſtrong Vinegar, and apply it to the Fundament.*

Rulandus uſeth a Decoction of Acorns in Vinegar for a Fomentation.

And *Faventinus* propoundeth this following Lotion as a ſecret to ſtop the Dyſentery:

Take of *the droſs of Iron, and filings of Steel, both prepared in Vinegar, of each one pound*: *then boyl them in two pints of very ſtrong Vinegar to the conſumption of half. Let the Patient put his feet and his hands half an hour every morning and evening therein.*

In a long Diſeaſe, and when there are Ulcers in the Guts, Quick-ſilver is good, if it be mixed with Oynt-

Oyntment of Roſes, and the belly anointed therewith. As alſo the Clyſters afore mentioned for filthy Ulcers.

At the ſame time, you may give Milk, and Syrup of Myrtles.

Alſo one dram of true Ballom given in a Wafer doth wonderfully heal al inward Ulcers.

For aſſwaging pain, apply the Caul of a new killed Sheep to the belly, and bind it on, eſpecially to Children, and repeat it often.

If the Liver, Stomach, or Brain, cauſe this flux, you muſt uſe proper Medicines to them, alwaies making choice of thoſe that do aſtringe and ſtrengthen.

For his ordinary Drink, give him Spring Water with Conſerve of Roſes, the Tincture of Roſes, a Decoction of Oaken Leaves, or Water wherein *Terra ſigillata* is infuſed, or wherein red hot Gold hath been quenched with Syrup of Quinces, Myrtles, or dried Roſes. Or when there is no Feaver uſe a weak Decoction of Maſtich with the Syrups aforeſaid. According to *Crato*'s Judgment, you muſt not uſe any chalybeat or ſteeled Drink; for it doth not aſtringe, as commonly they ſuppoſe, but troubleth the belly. Others commend the Decoction of Gramen or Dogs Tooth, becauſe it is good to dry and divert by Urine.

Laſtly, 'Tis worth the Obſervation, which *Ætius* ſpeaks, Lib. 3. Cap. 8. and *Paulus*, Lib. 1. Cap. 35. that old fluxes are dryed up by Venery. Which *Hippocrates* ſaid formerly, 7. Epid. in the end: *Exceſſive Venery doth cure fluxes of the belly.* *Amatus Luſitanus* learned this Truth by Experience, Curat. 41. Cent. 2. *One troubled with a Dyſentery* (ſaith he) *very violently, was married, and the firſt night he lay with his Wife, was cured.*

Let this be added for a Concluſion, which is related in the Cure of Diarrhœa, out of *Platerus* in his Cure of the flux of the Hemorrhoids; Hot Blood of either Man or Beaſt given in a Clyſter, doth wonderfully ſtop and cure the flux.

Chap. 7. *Of Teneſmus.*

TEneſmus, is a continual deſire to go to ſtool, and voiding of nothing but Slime or bloody Matter.

The immediate Cauſe of this Diſeaſe, is an Ulcer in the ſtreight Gut called *Inteſtinum rectum*; from which, Quittor or filthy Matter continually floweth, and ſtirreth up the expulſive Faculty, by which means there is a continual deſire of going to ſtool. Moreover, there is voided a ſlimy Matter mixed with blood, from the depravation of the *Homoioſis* (or quality that converts things into its likeneſs) of the ulcerated part, becauſe it cannot wel concoct its proper Nouriſhment, and make it like it ſelf, but turns it into another ſlimy ſubſtance; as we ſhewed more at large in Dyſenteries, and other Ulcers of the Guts.

But in regard we ſaid in the Chapter of Dyſentery, That al the Inteſtines might be ulcerated in that diſeaſe; thence it ſeems to follow, That the Ulcers of the ſtraight Gut called *Rectum* belong to a Dyſentery. Yet Cuſtom hath ſo prevailed, that when the Rectum is only hurt, it is called by the name of *Teneſmus*: And becauſe when other Guts are affected, if the Rectum ſuffer, there is alſo Teneſmus or needing, although the diſeaſe be then called a Dyſentery; therefore Dyſentery and Teneſmus are of the ſame Nature, and have the ſame Cauſe, and differ only in reſpect of the part affected. And therefore we need not repeat the Cauſes, becauſe they are the ſame with thoſe that produce a Dyſentery.

For the Knowledg of this Diſeaſe, there is no more required but to diſtinguiſh it from a Dyſentery, which you may learn from the definition. For in a Teneſmus, there is a continual needing; but in a Dyſentery it is by fits: beſides, in that, after great ſtraining, there is voided only a little ſlime, bloody or mattery; but in a Dyſentery, both Excrements and Humors are continually voided.

The Signs of the Cauſes are the ſame with a Dyſentery.

As for the Prognoſtick, *Celſus* Lib. 4. Cap. 19. ſaith that a Teneſmus is eaſily cured, and that of it ſelf it never kils any, yet *Galen*, 5. *de uſu partium, cap.* 4. reckons it among the chiefeſt Diſeaſes of the Belly; and truly it may very wel be accounted grievous in reſpect of its troubleſomneſs and long continuance; yet it is not dangerous except it come of Melancholly, for then it tends to a Cancer ulcerated: beſides, it brings great inconveniences, as Miſcarriage or Abortion to Women. So *Hipp.* Aph. 27. Sect. 7. ſaith, If a Woman with Child have a Teneſmus, ſhe wil miſcarry. For the continual ſtraining at ſtool doth much diſturb the Womb, which is ſo neer to the ſtraight Gut. Beſides, the ſame Muſcles which ſerve to throw out the Excrements, are imployed for delivery; therefore when they daily compreſs the lower Belly, they cauſe Abortion. Laſtly, the Ulcers of the *Rectum Inteſtinum* being neer the *Anus* or Fundament, if they continue long, turn to an incurable Fiſtula.

The Cure of a Teneſmus, little differs from the Cure of a Dyſentery. And therefore firſt, the ſharp Humors that come from the Liver and other parts, are to be purged with Medicines that leave an Aſtringent quality, as chiefly Rhubarb, which muſt be ſo often given till the Humor ſeem to be ſpent.

If there be an Inflamation (which is chiefly known by a Feaver) or if much blood, you muſt open a Vein. And in caſe it continue after bleeding, and cauſe a ſtrangury or difficulty of Urine (as it often doth) it is very good to open the Hemorrhoids with Hors-leeches.

Alſo you muſt uſe aſſwaging Clyſters when there is much pain; and cleanſing, glutinating, and aſtringent, according as the Ulcer requireth; the Forms whereof are to be found in the Cure of Dyſentery.

But in the uſe of Clyſters, obſerve firſt, that you give them often, and in a ſmal quantity, only half a pint, becauſe they wil be hardly kept any time, by reaſon of the continual needing. And the pipe muſt be warily conveyed in, leſt the pain be encreaſed.

And you muſt diligently apply Fomentations, Inſeſſions or Baths to ſit in, Fumigations, Suppoſitories, and Oyntments.

You may make a Fomentation thus,

Take of *Mullein & Wormwood, of each ſix handfuls: boyl them in new Milk, and put them into two Bags, which apply to the Anus and whol belly one after another very warm.* Or,

Take of *Chamomel Flowers, and Roſes, of each one handful: Red Wine two Pints: infuſe them two hours upon hot Embers: Foment the Fundament as hot as can be ſuffered with four times doubled cloathes: After let the Patient ſit upon a ſponge dipped and ſtrained from the ſame Liquor.*

Or, Fill two Bags with Barley Bran and boyl them in Vinegar: Let the Patient ſit one while upon one, another while upon another as hot as he can.

If he void much Blood, make the Fomentation thus,

Take of *Mullein Leaves and Roots two handfuls: Red Roſes one pugil: Pomegranate peels, and Galls, of each half an ounce: boyl them in two parts of Iron-Water, and one of Red Wine for a Fomentation: which you may make ſtronger if you ad half an ounce of Allum.*

Inſeſſus, or Baths to ſit in to aſſwage Pain, are made of Emollients boyled in Water, or Broth of Sheeps Heads and Feet, to which you may ad Violets, Nightſhade, Gourds, and Mellons ſliced, but for healing of Ulcers you muſt make them of Aſtringents afore-mentioned.

Fumigations are good to dry the Ulcer made of Frankinſence burnt, or the Decoction of Savin made in Oxycrate, or other things mentioned in the Cure of a Dyſentery, the Fume whereof muſt be taken ſitting in a hollow Chair. But this following is Commended by *Foreſtus.*

Take of *Maſtich one dram: Frankinſence one ſcruple: Myrtles one dram and an half: Red Roſes two ſcruples: make a Pouder for a Fumigation.*

Suppoſitories are good in this Diſeaſe, they muſt be gentle and mild, leaſt they exaſperate the part which is ſo ſenſible: They are fitly made of Goats Suet cut into the form of a Suppoſitory; for they appeaſe the pain & heal the Ulcer: but they wil be better againſt Pain if you mix the ſeed finely poudered of Poppies or Henbane, & tye them in a knot in Paper like a Suppoſitory: But far beſt if you inſtead of theſe things put three drops of the Oyl preſſed out of theſe Seeds to every Suppoſitory: or one grain of Opium diſſolved in half a ſcruple of Oyl of ſweet Almonds.

The Ulcer wil be ſooner healed, if you firſt diſſolve the Suet, either alone, or with white Starch, Gum Tragacanth beaten, and firſt ſteeped in Plantane Water, or elſe with ſome Narcoticks: Or, thus,

Take of *Gum Tragacanth as much as is ſufficient, ſprinkle it with Plantane Water that it may only ſwel and not diſſolve; then ad as much of the mucilage of Fleabane ſeeds, or Quince ſeeds, and mix them with the white of an Egg roaſted; then with melted Wax make them into a Suppoſitory: You may alſo ad Narcoticks: as likewiſe to Cure the Ulcer better, the Pouders of Ceruß, Tutty, Bole, Pomegranate Flowers, and the like which dry without Acrimony, and ſharpneß; And theſe muſt be very finely Poudered and ſifted, leaſt the Part be Exaſparated.*

You may apply Oyls and Oyntments as in a Dyſentery, to the Belly and Fundament: As Oyntment of Roſes, Populeon, or of the Mucilages, of the whites of Eggs, Oyl of Roſes, and the like, to take away Pain and Inflamation: and other things that ſhal be mentioned in the Chapter of Hæmorrhoids, or to Cure the Ulcer, the white Oyntment of Rhaſis or Pompholygos, melted in Hydromel, or in Honey and Water.

Laſtly, In a more deſperate Condition, uſe Narcoticks both inwardly and outwardly; but three or four grains of Laudanum is beſt given with Maſtich and Terra Sigillata, or mixed in a Clyſter made of a Decoction of the Flowers of Chamomel.

CHAP.

Chap. 8. *Of* Fluxus Hepaticus, *or Flux of the Liver.*

A Flux of the Liver, is that in which ſerous and bloody Humors like water wherein fleſh hath been waſhed, are voided

This Diſeaſe is produced from the Liver being weak and out of tune; by reaſon whereof it cannot breed good blood, but turneth the Chylous Matter into thin and ſerous blood, which becauſe it is not fit to nouriſh, is ſent by Nature into the Inteſtines, from whence comes this flux of the Liver.

This weakneſs and diſorder may come from any diſtemper: For by the exceſs of any of the firſt qualities, the native heat, and its power to make blood, is dejected. Yet this hath a doubt riſing from Experience, becauſe we ſee often, that great diſtempers of the Liver, and exceſs in the firſt qualities, do produce other diſeaſes, and not this. And again, this flux is many times without the exceſs of the firſt qualities. That therefore the Nature of this Diſeaſe may be declared, we muſt ſay with wiſe *Varandæus* my Maſter, There is ſomthing more than an ordinary diſtemper for producing of this diſeaſe. And it is occult or hidden, conſuming the radical moiſture in the Liver, which alſo deſtroyeth the Natural heat.

This evil diſpoſition, and occult diſtemper may come by burning and ſwooning Feavers by a hot diſtemper of the Bowels, which melteth the Oyly ſubſtance by occult corruption, and corruption of Humors, by a great coldneſs from flegm and Melancholly abounding, which doth oppreſs and corrupt the Natural heat; and it may come by outward Cauſes, as great draughts of cold Water, Snow, or Ice, extraordinary eating of raw Sallets, Poyſon, and Medicines that purge too vehemently. By drinking of too much new Wine, ſalt, ſharp, and peppered Meats, and ſtrong things which parch the ſubſtance of the Liver. To theſe you may add al other Cauſes which by too much cooling or heating do diſſolve the ſtrength and tone or order of the Liver.

Hitherto is declared a true and proper flux of the Liver which hath this ſign, there are Liquid and ſerous ſtools, like waſhings of fleſh, from the weakneſs of the Liver, which cannot ſanguifie or make blood well, or from a malignant diſtemper which ſpoileth the Natural heat and moiſture.

There is alſo a baſtard flux of the Liver, which comes of a ſimple diſtemper without any fault of the radical moiſture; by which diſtemper the faculty is not hurt, but the work hindered, ſo that inſtead of pure blood, there comes impure and corrupt, or the good turns into evil, when in a true of the Liver there is never any good blood in the Liver.

The Blood is corrupted, either by the mixture of Choller, or Melancholly, or ſome other impure Matter, or from its too long ſtaying in the Liver, and the parts adjacent, by which it is made thicker or burnt, or rotteth; or from the fault of the Spleen, which doth not ſuck away the droſſie blood; and in this baſtard flux, ſomtimes thick, ſomtimes black, and ſomtimes blood is voided mixed with Humors of divers colors.

The ſigns of this Diſeaſe may be gathered from what hath been ſaid. For in a true flux there appear moiſt ſtools like waſhings of fleſh, which is not in other bloody fluxes, if in a Dyſentery at any time, it is ſeldom, and then there is choller, flegm, and excrements of divers colors voided: and in a Dyſentery there is pain and torment of the belly, but in this none.

The Signs of the Cauſes are known by their proper Characters: For if the weakneſs of the Liver come from a hot diſtemper, there went a burning and conſuming Feaver before, or there is green vomits or ſtools, thirſt, and a Feaver, foulneſs of Body, and want of appetite, and ſtinking Evacuations; but if it come from a cold cauſe, the ſtools are leſs ſtinking, neither is there thirſt or conſumption; the whol Body is colder and blewiſh.

Somtimes there comes a Feaver from the putrefaction of Humors, which changeth the ſaid ſymptomes; but you muſt examine the Cauſes afore going, which will declare both diſtempers. Alſo in this cold diſtemper the Patients deſire much ſtrong Wine.

A moiſt and dry diſtemper are known by the contrary effects. A moiſt cauſeth more and oftener ſtools, very thin; but a dry, little and thicker ſtools, but there is alſo great thirſt.

Laſtly, The external Cauſes are known by the relation of the Patient, and thoſe that are with him.

A baſtard flux of the Liver hath almoſt all ſigns of a Dyſentery, only there is no pain of the belly, nor pieces of fleſh in the ſtools as in a Dyſentery.

The Prognoſtick of this Diſeaſe uſeth to be evil and deadly; for when a principal part is very ill, by conſumption of the radical moiſture, whoſe reparation is ſcarce to be hoped for, we can expect for the moſt part nothing but deſtruction, eſpecially when the Diſeaſe comes of heat.

When

When this diſeaſe comes in Feavers, there preſently follows a melting of the Body, and great putrefaction, which preſently kils the party: For in malignant and peſtilent Feavers the danger is encreaſed according to the evil condition of the Cauſe. But when this Diſeaſe comes of a cold diſtemper, it uſeth to laſt longer, and turn into an incurable Dropſie.

Laſtly, A baſtard flux of the Liver, although it be dangerous, yet is it leſs than a true, becauſe it comes only from a ſimple diſtemper and evil diſpoſition of the Humors, the tone and ſtrength of the Liver remaining ſound, and may be cured by taking away the Cauſes that defile the Blood.

The Cure of this Diſeaſe is wrought by Medicines that ſtrengthen the Liver, correct its diſtemper, and ſtay the flux. And becauſe it comes oftenеſt of a hot diſtemper, therefore we wil firſt ſpeak of the Cure of that diſtemper, becauſe it comes ſeldom of a cold Cauſe, and is to be cured as a Dropſie.

Firſt therefore (although Evacuations ſeem to be needleſs by reaſon of the greatneſs of the flux) you may give Rhubarb either alone, or with Myrobalans, as in the Cure of Dyſentery, becauſe it doth ſtrengthen the Liver, and the rather if you find any filth in the ſtools: for many Patients have been cured by only one ſcruple of Rhubarb given many daies together in Conſerve of Roſes.

Clyſters are here of little worth, becauſe the Liver is affected; yet ſomtimes you may give one of chalybeat or ſteeled Milk, or of a gentle aſtringent Decoction, leſt the Guts ſhould be too much relaxed.

But you may make Juleps to ſtrengthen the Liver, and correct its diſtemper, thus:

Take of *Succory, Graminis (or Dogs Teeth) and Sorrel Roots, of each one ounce: Endive, Succory, Plantane, and Dodder, of each one handful: Sea-wormwood half a handful: red Sanders one dram and an half: the ſhavings of Ivory and Spodium, of each two ſcruples: Coriander ſeeds prepared one dram: red Roſes one pugil: boyl them to one pint and an half; diſſolve in the ſtraining Syrup of Quinces, and ſimple Syrup of Vinegar, of each two ounces: Make a Julep for four Doſes to be taken morning and evening.* Or,

Take of *Plantane Water four ounces: Syrup of dried Roſes one ounce: Spirit of Vitriol as much as will make it moderately ſharp: make a Julep to be repeated often.*

He may alſo take of theſe Syrups following, often in a ſpoon:

Take of *Syrup of Myrtles, Quinces, and dried Roſes, of each one ounce: the Syrup of Succory ſimple or compound with Rhubarb, one ounce and an half: mix them.*

There is an excellent Syrup made of the Tincture of Roſes, made in Roſe Water, and with Sugar of Roſes brought into a Syrup.

Alſo this following Pouder given to the quantity of half a dram or a dram once or twice in a day in a rear Egg, Broth, or other fit Liquor may be uſed with profit.

Take of *Plantane and Sorrel ſeeds, of each one dram: Endive, Purſlane, Dodder, and Coriander ſeeds, of each one ſcruple: red Roſes, and Troches of Spodium, Gum Tragacanth torrefied, of each half a dram: the inward skins of Hens Gizzards dried, half a ſcruple: make a very fine Pouder.*

Or the Lozenges made of the three Sanders, with a double quantity of Rhubarb given to two drams at a time, are good to ſtrengthen the Liver; as alſo this following Opiate:

Take of *Conſerve of Succory Roots one ounce: Conſerve of old Roſes half an ounce: the pulp of Currans ſix drams: Crocus Martis one dram: prepared Coral, ſhavings of Ivory, and Hartshorn, of each one ſcruple: with the Syrup of dried Roſes make an Opiate, adding half a ſcruple of Spirit of Vitriol, of which let him take the bigneſs of a Cheſnut three hours before meat. You may alſo add the Liver of a Wolf prepared, which is a ſpecifical proper Medicine according to divers Authors.*

Raiſons of the Sun, becauſe they are good for the Liver, are commended in this diſeaſe, therefore you may eat them in great plenty with their ſtones: which that they may be better taken, may be beaten firſt in a Marble Mortar.

Or make a Rob or Syrup of Raiſons, boyling them in red Wine, if it be not too hot, and then ſtraining out the Juyce, and boyling it again til it is thick: which you may uſe alone, or in ſome of an Opiate, with theſe following:

Take of *Currans half a pound, boyl them to the thickneſs of a Pultis in old Wine; paſs them through a ſieve, and mix with the ſtraining, candied Citron peels half an ounce: the pouder of the three Sanders, and Diamargariton frigid, of each one dram: Coral prepared, and red Roſes of each four ſcruples: the Liver of a Wolf prepared three drams: make an Opiate.*

The Syrup of Coral is very excellent to ſtrengthen the Liver, and ſtay the flux thereof: but the Tincture thereof is far better: As alſo the Extract or Magiſtery given in Plantane Water.

The Juyce of yong Nettle tops given either by it ſelf to two ounces, or with Water and Vinegar every morning for three daies together, ſtops the flux, and purifieth the corrupt blood.

But

But becauſe in this Diſeaſe the Body is much conſumed, a reſtoring diſtilled Water that wil alſo ſtay a flux, either muſt be given often by it ſelf, or with all other Drinks.

Take a *fat Capon, and a Partridg, and pulling of the Feathers and the Guts out, fill their Bellies with Succory, Agrimony, and Snails, of each one handful: Conſerve of Roſes three ounces: Plantane and Coriander ſeeds prepared, of each two drams: Citron Myrobalans one dram: Blood-wort half a handful: the Troches of Amber and of Spodium, of each four ſcruples: the pouder of the Electuary de Gemmis (or precious Stones) the three Sanders, and Diamargariton frigid, of each one dram: Sprinkle them all with aſtringent Wine, and putting them into the bellies of the Fowls: boyl them in a cloſe veſſel in four pints of Water til half be conſumed: then put them al into a glaſs Limbeck with three ounces of good Wine; diſtil them in* Balneo Mariæ *for the uſe aforeſaid.*

For Drink, let the Patient take the Tincture of Roſes, or the Decoction of Succory, and Dogs-tooth, with Syrup of Quinces, and ſome few drops of Spirit of Vitriol.

Things made of Barley, Almonds, and Rice, are beſt in his Meats.

Outwardly to his Belly apply thoſe things which were preſcribed in the Cure of Dyſentery, with ſome things for the Liver, as Wormwood, Roſes, all the Sanders, Spodium or burnt Ivory, &c. Which anointings of the Belly muſt reach to the region of the Liver.

You may alſo apply the following Epitheme to the Liver:

Take of *Endive and Succory, of each one handful: Dodder, and both ſorts of Wormwood, of each half a handful: red Roſes one pugil: red Sanders one dram and an half: Spodium two ſcruples: boyl them to one pint and an half, and diſſolve in the ſtraining two ounces of Roſe Vinegar: boyl them again gently, and make an Epitheme.*

Let the ſame part be anointed with the following Oyntment:

Take of *Cerat of Sanders two ounces: Oyl of Quinces and of Wormwood, of each three drams. Mix them for a Liniment.*

Laſtly, If the Patient be troubled for want of ſleep, as is uſual, becauſe this kind of flux is moſt in the night, you muſt uſe Narcoticks, ſuch as were propounded for the former fluxes.

Chap. 9. *Of the Worms.*

ALthough Worms breed in divers parts of the Body, yet becauſe they are more uſual in the Gut than in other parts, therefore we wil ſpeak only of thoſe.

By ſome it is queſtioned, to what kind of Diſeaſe that is preternatural the Worms are to be referred? But we can take away al occaſion of doubting, by ſaying that after a divers conſideration they may refer to all kinds of Diſeaſes; for as they prick and pull the Guts, or obſtruct them, and produce other diſeaſes, they may be ſaid to be cauſes of diſeaſes. But as they are ſubſtances added to thoſe which ought naturally to be contained in the Guts, they are reckoned by *Galen* in the number of thoſe Diſeaſes which are in the number encreaſed wholly againſt Nature, as the ſtone alſo. And laſtly, as they are ſent out preternaturally by the belly, or the mouth, they are to be referred to the fault in Excretion, or ſending forth.

Galen in his Comment upon the Aphoriſms, Aph. 26. Sect. 3. propounds three kinds of Worms: The round Worms, which are often bred in the Guts, and get often up into the Stomach; the Aſcarides, or little Worms like ſmal thrids, which uſe to lie in the inferior part of the thick Inteſtines, and over againſt the Sphincter Muſcle; and the broad Worms, called *Faſcia*, becauſe they are long and broad like Childrens Swathing bands. This kind is more rare to be ſeen than the reſt, and a Phyſitian ſhall ſcarce ſee them in his practice twice or thrice in a yeer, yet there are great Controverſies among Authors about them; ſome ſay it is one Worm only; ſome that it is made of many united, which they call *Cucurbitinos*, or Gourd Worms, and ſay that they are parts of the broad Worm; others make a fourth kind, containing the Gourd Worms; but we do not intend here to ſhew their Reaſons and ſeveral Experiences they have ſo much boaſted of: the curious Reader may ſearch for his better ſatisfaction, *Rondoletius*, *Platerus*, *Sennertus*, and many others.

Moreover, There is a great Controverſie of the Cauſes of Worms: ſome ſay they come of putrid heat, others from the Natural, others ſay that both concur for the production of them.

The firſt ſay, That all Inſects or Vermine come from corruption, according to *Ariſtotle*. The ſecond ſay, That putrid heat is ſtrong, fiery, and deſtructive, and therefore is not fit to produce a live body. The third ſort, to reconcile the former, ſay that the Matter is diſpoſed by the putrid heat to generate Worms and the Natural heat doth turn it ſo prepared into worms by way of Concoction.

But this Reconciliation wil not hold, becauſe according to the axiome in Phyſicks it is the property of the ſame thing to diſpoſe the matter and bring in the form, and therefore the preparation of

the matter, and the introduction of the form, ought to be from the same agent; besides, Worms breed in Carkasses where there is no native heat, we may say that the heat which is putrid, in respect of the matter putrifying, is native in respect of the Worms, because the natural and putredinal heat differ but in degree, but divers degrees of heat are required for the generation of divers Creatures; and therefore heat which is putrid in respect of us, may be natural in respect of another Creature: So the heat which is natural to a Lyon, would cause Feavers in us; and by consequence is putrefactive: Many flie to the heat of the Sun which is the universal Cause of al generation; but we must alwayes acknowledge a particular Cause from whence the effect is immediately produced, by the Concurrence and Co-operation of the universal Cause: but here is a greater difficulty, because it is a common axiome or theoreme, That nothing can beget a thing more Noble than it self; and therefore heat is not the chief agent in breeding of Worms which are in the prædicament of substance, and heat is but an accident; and whatsoever is spoken of the Sun, the form of a Worm is more Noble than the form of the Sun, because it is the form of a living Creature; and that of the Sun is *Forma mixta*, or the form of a mixed body only: This Doubt brings us into that large and weighty Disputation of an Æquivocal Generation, in the Circuit whereof very excellent Philosophers have Writ whol Volumns, to which we send our Reader, and chiefly to *Fortunius Licetus* his Book of the *Spontaneous Generation of Living Creatures*: Let it suffice in this place to say that many of their Opinions are brought to this, They believe Seeds of many things to be in divers Substances, which according to their divers Changings, come to light; even as the matter is more or less disposed by putrefaction, or other alteration to receive this or that form: and the Seed which is more agreeable to that Disposition is brought into act, and bringeth into the matter a form proper to its self. This Opinion doth not much differ from the old Philosophy, which teacheth, That Forms proceed from the power in the Matter: but they think it safer to hide the Seeds of things in their Matter, which are truly efficient, than to acknowledge only the power of the Matter, which hath no power to be an efficient, for we must find out some efficient with the power in the Matter which may raise a Form from it, or rather introduce, or bring a Form into it.

The material Cause of Worms is commonly sweet Flegm which groweth putrid, by which it gets a Disposition to be turned into Worms; but we think it no wayes necessary, that food which wil breed Worms, should be first turned into Flegm: For Worms may breed of their immediately being putrified, as we see in Flesh, Cheese, Chessnuts, Apples, Pears, Cherries, and other Fruits which bring forth Worms by being putrified: So it is in our bodies, especially in Children which are given to Gluttony and eat the aforesaid things, and take new commonly before the old is Concocted. Hence is it that they putrifie and breed Worms.

But let yong Physitians observe this, It is daily observed in Practice, That Sucking Children, that eat meat are most troubled with Worms, and because their Stomachs are not able to digest it, therefore it is corruption and turned into Worms; moreover, Milk is quickly digested in the Stomach, and presently sent to the Guts; and if it hath meat mixed with it which could not so suddenly be digested, it wil be sent into the intestines with the Milk, and therefore corrupt and breed Worms. And observe, That Worms never breed of Milk only, so that as often as you consider the Disease of an Infant, take notice, Whether it have the Worms or no, which Women alwayes proclaim and say al their Diseases came from thence, as they ascribe al the Diseases of Women to the Mother; and the Physitian may certainly pronounce that the Child hath not the Worms, if it live only upon Milk, and have eat neither meat nor Broth: *Galen* in his *com. aph.* 26. *sect.* 3. taught this, saying, That in Children that Suck milk only no Worms do breed; the Reason whereof is not plain. Many say, That in sucking Childreu the Heat is not strong enough to breed Worms. And this is confirmed by *Galen* in the place cited; where he saith, That strong Heat is required for the Generation of Worms; and thence he saith it comes that Worms are more in Youth, than Infancy; which also *Hippocrates* teacheth in the Aphorism aforesaid; and which he seems to gain-say in *lib.* 4. *de morbis*, where he saith, That Worms breed in Children before they are born; but these have not stronger heat than they that suck: And *Hippocrates* gives another Reason why Children in the Womb should have Worms, because their Excrements are reteined; but when they are born they do not breed Worms, because then their Excrements are not reteined. But this wil not satisfie, because oftentimes in Children that Suck the Excrements are reteined, and yet they have no Worms while they live only upon milk; therefore since the aforesaid Reasons do not content solid wits, we expect the new Thoughts of Wise men touching this matter; and in the mean while, we wil briefly declare our Opinion, and leave to the Judgment of the Learned: We say then, That Milk putrifying doth grow sowr, and then is unfit for to breed VVorms, but rather hindereth them; for it is known that al sowr things do kill VVorms: Hence it is that the Juyce of Lemons is so ordinarily given against them, and in ordinary drink a little Spirit of Vitriol to sharpen it doth wonders.

It is Commonly thought, That among the Material Causes of Worms, Sweet things are the chief; which is to be doubted of, because it is confirmed by a Common Axiome, That Sweet things do easily

turn

turn into Choller, and Choller by its bitterneſs doth kil Worms: but we can eaſily anſwer this doubt thus; In Chollerick Bodies, and ſuch as are ſharp with heat, ſweet things do eaſily breed Choller, becauſe by over Concoction, they grow bitter, as we ſee dayly in artificial Concoction: but in other Conſtitutions that are not Chollerick, ſweet things do not breed Choller, but rather flegm, when they are ſent too ſoon from the Stomach into the Guts, and ſo being crude, and only half concocted, they putrifie, and become a fit Matter to breed Worms.

But there is yet a difficulty concerning Sugar and Honey, which ſince they have a ſubſtance not ſubject to Putrefaction, but rather that doth preſerve other things from it, cannot breed Worms. This Reaſon convincing, we ſay that Sugar and Honey will not breed Worms, becauſe their ſubſtance is incorruptible; but being once bred, they do feed and maintain them, becauſe the Worms loving ſweet things, do ſtir themſelves at the approach of Honey and Sugar, and get into the Stomach, where they grow with ſpeed; from whence thoſe Symptomes do ariſe which are proper to Worms.

The ſigns of Worms in the Guts are divers; not all in all people alike. The uſual and moſt ordinary ſigns, A ſtinking Breath ſomwhat ſowr, as the women call it, and ſtools like Cow dung, of a gray color like Potters Earth diſſolved. Other ſigns are leſs uſual, as a continual Feaver, which is often in a day, more violent from the motion of the Worms, with heavineſs, cold ſweat ſomtimes, and fainting, loathing, vomiting, and unquenchable thirſt. The Pulſe is unequal, the Cheeks are by turns red or blew, the Eyes ſhine, the Noſe itcheth, the Teeth gnaſh, and ſomtimes chatter, there is a ſmal dry Cough, much Spittle: ſomtimes there is heavineſs of head, and ſleepineſs; ſomtimes doting, and Epileptick Convulſions. There is often a pain in the Belly, by gnawing, ſomtimes by inflamation and diſtenſion or ſtretching forth like men in dropſies: ſomtimes there is ſtarting in the ſleep, and ſome tremble, and riſe up, and fall aſleep again; ſomtimes all the body puneth, and the Patient hath a Dogs Appetite, inſatiable, which is moſt uſual in the flat worms, which eat up all the Food. Moreover, If Gourd Worms, called *Cucurbitini*, be voided, they are a ſign of flat. The Aſcarides are known by the itching of the Anus, or Fundament, and the Excrements are many times filled with them.

For a Concluſion, The conſuming, putrefaction, and eating away of the Gums, is to be reckoned among the ſigns of the Worms, which is confirmed by this following Obſervation: A certain Boy was a long time troubled with eating away of his Gums, many Medicines both internally and externally were applied, and all in vain; at length he died: The body being opened, there were found ſo many Worms, that in ſome places the bowels were eaten through, and many were found in the empty places of his Belly.

As for the Prognoſtick: Many Worms are worſe than few, great than little. Many times they are dangerous, and bring great Diſeaſes; as a ſtrong Feaver by fits, ſwooning, ſpeechleſneſs, doting, epilepſie, chollick, and dogs appetite.

In the beginning of a diſeaſe, it is evil for VVorms to come forth, either alive or dead, eſpecially if they come forth alone, and without dung; for when they are alive, and come forth, they ſignifie great crudity, or want of nouriſhment; but dead, they ſignifie great putrefaction, by which they are killed.

VVorms in the declining of a Diſeaſe, coming forth with the Excrements, ſignifie Health, if concoction appear; for it appears then, that Nature ruleth and maſtereth the Excrements.

The Cure of the Worms is by driving them out, becauſe they are wholly againſt Nature. And this is done by purging Medicines, which kill VVorms, and evacuate the Matter that breedeth them.

Rhubarb is the beſt, which you may give in a Flux or Feaver. But you muſt firſt give things that kill them, or at leaſt that drive them to the inferior Inteſtines by things taken at the Mouth, or thoſe things that draw them down by Clyſters.

The uſual forms whereof, are theſe:

Take of *Dogs-tooth, and Purſlane Water, of each one ounce and an half: Syrup of Lemmons one ounce: Confectio de Hyacintho one dram: the Pouder againſt Worms, one ſcruple. Make a Potion; give it preſently, and then this Clyſter:*

Take of *whol Barley, Bran, and red Roſes, of each one pugil: Liquoris and Raiſons, ſcraped and ſtoned, of each half an ounce: Boyl them to half a pint, or three quarters of a pint: Diſſolve in it ſtrained, red Sugar one ounce, and one Yolk of an Egg. Make a Clyſter.*

You may ad Caſſia, or Diacatholicon, if you deſire it ſtronger.

After thoſe Medicines have been given once or twice, give this Potion:

Take of *Rhubarb one dram: yellow Sanders half a ſcruple: infuſe them in Water of Dogs-tooth or Purſlain, two or three ounces: ſtrain them, and diſſolve in it, the pouder of Rhubarb, and pouder againſt the Worms, of each one ſcruple: Syrup of Roſes one ounce: Mix them for a Potion.* Or,

Take of *the pouder of Rhubarb and Coralline, of each half a dram, more or leſs, according to the age: Dogs-tooth Water two ounces: Syrup of Violets one ounce. Make a Potion.*

If the Feaver be not great, two drams of Hiera Picra more or leſs, are to be mixed in a Potion: for by its bitterneſs it killeth and expelleth Worms excellently.

If theſe things will not Cure them, uſe theſe following:

Take of *Dogs-tooth, and Sorrel Water, of each one ounce*: *Endive, Succory, Sorrel, and Purſlane, of each one handful*: *the tops of St. Johns-wort, Scordium (or Water Germander) and Centaury the leſs, of each one pugil*: *Coralline three drams*: *boyl them to a pint*; *diſſolve in the ſtraining three ounces of Syrup of Lemmons. Make a Julep for three or four Doſes, to be taken twice in a day.*

Take of *the Oyntment de Artanita, or (Soubread) three ounces*: *Quick-ſilver one dram*: *mix them, and anoint the whol belly.*

Then purge again, and often, till the body be cleanſed.

And you may ad to the former Decoction, Senna, Agarick, Rhubarb, &c. and give it but once in a day.

Rondoletius highly commends the Electuary Diacarthamum, as an excellent Remedy to expel Worms, and to purge Flegm and corrupted Chyle, of which worms breed and are nouriſhed; alſo he commends the infuſion of Agarick in Oxymel. Which Remedies are proper, if there be no Feaver.

But becauſe often times the diſeaſes of the worms in ſome Children cannot be cured without much labor and time, there are many Remedies found out by Authors, both internal and external.

Among the Internal, firſt we will treat of Pouders, whereof there are divers Forms in Authors.

The chief are theſe following; the doſe whereof, is from one ſcruple to a dram, according to the age of the Patient in ſome convenient Liquor.

Take of *Worm-ſeed half an ounce, Coralline three drams*: *Harts-horn two drams. Make a Pouder.* Or,

Take of *Worm-ſeeds, Coralline, and Harts-horn burnt, of each equal parts.* Or,

Take of *Hiera ſimplex two drams*: *Worm-ſeed, Scordium, the leſſer Centaury, and Coralline, of each one dram. Make a Pouder.*

Take of *Rhubarb and Agarick, of each one dram*: *Troches of Alhandal one ſcruple*: *Diagridium half a ſcruple*: *Coralline and burnt Harts-horn, of each half an ounce*: *Myrrh, Zedoary, and Tanſie flowers, of each one ſcruple*: *Salt of Wormwood and Tartar, of each half a dram. Make a fine Pouder.*

In the uſe of theſe Pouders, obſerve that they which are made of hot things, are to be given ſeldom, and in ſmal quantities to hot Natures, and in Feavers.

VVomen uſe to give to Children troubled with the worms, VVorm-ſeed made up with Sugar, or mixed with Honey; which is an excellent Medicine, becauſe the worms deſiring ſweet things, take in the Honey, and withal the VVorm-ſeed, whereby they are deſtroyed.

But becauſe VVorm-ſeed is very hot, it may be made temperate by infuſing it two hours in Vinegar, and after mixing it with boyled Honey into the form of an Opiate, which *Amatus Luſitanus* doth praiſe as a principal Medicine againſt VVorms

Burnt Harts-horn is commended by *Foreſtus*, given with Raiſons, or otherwiſe, and ſome have been cured with that alone. But it is chiefly good for them who have the worms, and a flux withal. In which diſeaſes coming together, he commends alſo the Juyce of Plantane, and the Decoction of Knot-graſs given to drink. To which may be added Topicks applied to the Belly, partly aſtringent, and partly having vertue to kill worms.

Women do uſe common Oyl given with Wine, for that Oyl ſtops the pores of the Worms, and ſo choak them for want of breath, and VVine kills them by its ſharpneſs. But when there is a Feaver, it is better to give Oyl with the Juyce of Lemmons or Pomegranates; or which is better, Oyl of bitter Almonds with the ſaid Juyces, or Orange flower water.

Stocherus in his Empirical Medicines, commends the Oyl that is taken out of a dried Hazel ſtick, if it be given but a drop or two at a time to a child; or to a youth, three or four in a crum of Bread; *For* (ſaith he) *it doth immediately kill them, and caſt them forth by ſtool*; *alſo by but touching of Worms or Lice out of the Body, it killeth them.* The beſt Authors will have this Oyl of Hazel to be the *Oleum Heraclinum*, by which *Martin Ruland* did cure Children of the VVorms in a moment, by anointing only their Lips and Navils, as you may ſee in his Centuries.

But we have found by Experience that the Oyl of Juniper given but a drop at a time in Broth, to be excellent for children ſo troubled, if they have not a Feaver.

But Quick-ſilver would exceed all, if we durſt give it inwardly; which great Doctors ſay may be done. Some of whom I wil mention, ſo that they who pleaſe to try it, may have Authority for it.

Mathiolus in his fourth Epiſtle to *Stephanus Laureus*, the Emperors Phyſician, ſaith, *Becauſe Quick-ſilver (as Diolcorides ſaith) doth no otherwiſe kill, but by tearing the Guts with its great weight:*

weight: we fear not that it will do it in a ſmal quantity, eſpecially becauſe its weight and roundneß will eaſily carry it through the Body. Therefore let us not wonder why Braſſavolus *that famous Phyſitian of our Age, hath written that he gave Quick-ſilver to Children without any inconvenience. And alſo a* Padua *Phyſitian uſed it with good ſucceß, but never would tell us the way of giving and preparing of it. And I, though I never gave it, have ſeen Midwives give a ſcruple, or half a dram to Women that had hard labor, without inconvenience, and alwaies with good ſucceeß.* Thus *Mathiolus.*

Falloppius in his Tractate of the French Pox, Cap. 76. *If* (ſaith he) *Quick-ſilver be drunk down, it doth not ſo much as when it is uſed with an Oyntment; I have ſeen Women to cauſe Abortion take a pound thereof without hurt. I give it to Children for the Worms, and it doth bring no ſymptome, but only kill the Worms.*

Platerus in the Cure of the Worms, ſaith the ſame; *Give a drop or two, or half a ſcruple of Quick-ſilver, and it kills the Worms, or makes them crawl out of the Body, and it may be done without hurt, as we ſhewed elſwhere.*

Fabricius Hildanus in his 71. Obſervation, Cent. 2. ſaith, of a woman troubled with the Worms, ſent to him by *Gilbert Saracenus*, thus: *Having reckoned up many Medicines to theſe* (ſaith he) *I added the excellent Medicine of Quick-ſilver, a dram and an half ſtrained through Leather, and yet ſhe was not freed of them.*

John Baptiſta Zappa, in his Book of Womens Secrets, Chap. 5. tells many famous Stories of the Cure of Worms by Quick-ſilver, when Aloes and VVormwood would not do it. He ſhews two waies of giving it.

The firſt is this:

Take of *Quick-ſilver one dram, but a ſcruple or two for little Children: Benjamin half a ſcruple: four or five drops of Aqua vitæ. mix them in a glaß mortar with a glaß peſtle; then put to it a little Conſerve of Roſes or Violets for a Bolus, which let the Patient take in the morning by it ſelf, or with a little Bread.*

The ſecond way is this:

Take *a little courſe Sugar, and three or four drops of Spring Water: mix them in a glaß mortar till they are like Honey: then put to it as much Quick-ſilver as was aforeſaid: mix them together, with ſix or ſeven drops of Oyl of ſweet Almonds, which will keep the Quick-ſilver from coming again to its body: And with a little Conſerve of Roſes, make a Bolus.*

Baricellus in his Book called the Genial Garden, ſaith thus: *Quick-ſilver, which ſome account poyſon, is ſafely given againſt worms, and it is accounted ſo certain a Medicine in Spain, that the Women there give three grains thereof to children which newly ſuck up their milk. I cured a Widdow which vomited nine daies together by reaſon of Worms, and ſcarce eat in three daies, neither could retain any thing ſhe took; to whom I gave two ſcruples of Quick-ſilver, with a little Conſerve of Quinces, and ſhe voided downwards above an hundred Worms, and was cured the ſame day, and went about her buſineß, to the great admiration of her Parents, being formerly weak and lean. I have given it alſo to others, and with good ſucceß alwaies; and I keep continually at home, Quick-ſilver infuſed in Water, which Water I give to children for Worms; nor did I ever receive any diſcredit thereby.* Mathiolus *uſed the ſame,* Horatius Angenius, *and many other famous men, who all do extol the benefit of this Medicine. You may give it to Children in ſubſtance, one ſcruple, and to youths two ſcruples or a dram. It is mortified and corrected with red Sugar, in a glaß mortar, wherein it muſt be ſo long ſtirred that it be inviſible, and leaſt it ſhould return to its former condition, you may add thereto two drops of the Oyl of ſweet Almonds. Give it with Sugar of Roſes Violets, or Quinces, faſting.* Thus *Baricellus.*

Sanctorius in meth. vitand. error. lib. 5. cap. 11. ſaith, *That except we uſe ſtrong Medicines to kill worms, as waſhed Aloes, or a ſcruple of Quick-ſilver, with a little Turpentine and Aloes made into a ſmal Pill, we do nothing.*

They who fear to uſe Quick-ſilver crude, may give it prepared, as *Mercurius dulcis*, not only thrice, but ſix times calcined (for by often preparation the malignity of it is abated) with ſome few grains of Diagridium, to carry it ſooner out of the Body, and expel both the Worms, and the Matter of which they breed.

You muſt enlarge or diminiſh the quantity, according to the Age of the Patient. As for example, to a Boy of eight or ten yeers old, it may be thus given:

Take of *Mercurius dulcis twelve grains: Diagridium ſix grains: Make a Pouder to be given with a roaſted Apple and Sugar, or the like.*

For ordinary drink, the Water made of Quick-ſilver, which was formerly mentioned, is very profitable, or that in which Quick-ſilver hath been ſhaken in a glaſs half full, for the ſpace of one hour.

Alſo VVater wherein melted Tin hath been often quenched. But if you will rather uſe

Quicksilver, it is better to let the Water boyl with it, and so it wil be stronger.

Also Spring Water made sharp with some few drops of the Spirit of Vitriol or Sulphur, is of no less force. For sharp things do properly kill VVorms, and the Water is to be made more or less sharp according to the age of the Party.

The Decoction of Dog-tooth with Coriander seed prepared, is used vulgarly for ordinary drink, mixed with Syrup of Lemons or of Pomegranats; Or you may put Sugar and a little Vinegar in the Decoction.

While the aforesaid Remedies are used, you must give Clysters often the whol time of the Disease, first made of sweet things to attract and draw down the VVorms, as at first we said: which may be made not only of a Decoction of Liquoris, Raisons, and Figs, but also of Chicken-broth and Sugar, and Honey of Roses, or of Milk if there be no Feaver, otherwise it wil be easily Corrupted.

But if we conjecture that the VVorms are already in the thick Guts, because then they can scarcely ascend into thin Guts, you may give Clysters to kil them, made thus:

Take of *Dog-Tooth Roots, one ounce: Beets, Mallows, Pot Mercury, and Purslain, of each half an handful: Coralline one pugil: Coriander seeds prepared, and Wormseed, of each two drams: boyl them in a Quart of Water, in one Pint of the straining dissolve two ounces of Oyl of Roses, Cassia newly drawn, six drams: Hiera Picra, two drams: Honey of Violets one ounce: make a Clyster.*

If you wil have a stronger,

Take of *Gentian Roots one ounce: common Wormwood and Southernwood, of each one handful: the lesser Centaury half an handful: Lupines half an ounce: Wormseed two drams: make a Decoction: In as much of the straining as you think fit, dissolve the Oyl of Wormwood one ounce and an half: Salt one dram and an half: Make a Clyster which must be repeated, and in the last that the Worms may be brought forth after they are killed, dissolve of Benedicta Laxativa, and Hiera Picra, of each three drams, or half an ounce.*

If there be a Flux of the Belly, give this following Clyster:

Take of *Tormentil Roots, and of Round Birth-wort, of each one ounce and an half: Pomegranate Peels and Myrobalans, of each one ounce: Pease a smal handful: Myrtle berries one dram: Red Roses one pugil: make a Decoction and dissolve in the straining of Oyl of Mints or of Wormwood, one ounce: make a Clyster.*

Outwardly may divers Topicks be applied, not only those that were mentioned, but these following.

Take of *Gentian Roots one ounce: Birth-wort Roots six drams: Orange Peels one ounce: Coloquintida one dram: burnt Harts-horn two drams: Saffron half a dram: make a Pouder, which mix with Oyl of Wormwood, or Bitter Almonds, and with a little Wax make an Unguent.*

Also common Oyl boyled with the Pulp of Coloquintida is powerful.

Also Oyl of Wormwood, and St. Johns-wort, must be applied to the whol Belly, morning and evening.

Take of *Oyl of Wormwood, Mints, and bitter Almonds, of each half an ounce: the Juyce of Wormwood and Rue, of each two ounces: Tormentil, white Dittany, and Zedoary, of each half a dram: Ox Gall three drams: Aloes one scruple: Pouder them, and with a little Wax make an Oyntment:* Or,

Take of *Coloquintida six drams: Pouder it, and with an Ox Gall lay it to the Navel, by which both the Worms are killed, and the belly kept loose.*

Take of *Myrrh seven drams: Mastich eight ounces: Aloes eighteen ounces: common Salt one pound: bruise them all and Distil them by a Retort with a gentle Fire, and great diligence; first you will have a Water, than an Oyl; with which if you anoint the Navel of a Child, all putrefaction will be clensed which is in the Mysentery.*

Also you may make a Cataplasm thus,

Take of *the meal of Lupines two ounces: Myrrh and Aloes, of each two drams: Ox Gall as much as is fitting: Oyl of Wormwood two ounces: make a Cataplasm for the Belly.*

If a Looseness hath Continued long, apply this following Cataplasm:

Take of *Oyl of Quinces and Wormwood, of each one ounce: the Juyce of Purslain extracted with Vinegar, one ounce and an half: Pease flowr an ounce: Lupine flowr half an ounce: Red Coral and burnt Harts-horn, of each three drams: mix them together with as much Turpentine as wil make a Cataplasm.*

A Cataplasm also made of only Hiera Picra, is most powerful.

Somtimes you may use Fomentations, when there is a great stretching and puffing up of the Belly. Made thus:

Take

Take of *Wormwood, Southernwood, Tanſie, Scordium, Mallows, and Violets, of each one handful: beaten Lupines half an ounce: Centaury one pugil: boyl them in Vinegar and Water, and Foment the whol Belly hot therewith very often.*

Finally, For Flat VVorms and *Aſcarides*, or Arſ-Worms, Clyſters made of bitter things are good; to which you may ad the Purging things aforeſaid, while the filth of which they breed be purged away.

Chap. 10. *Of the Immoderate Flux of the Hæmorrhoids.*

ALthough the moderate Flux of the Hæmorrhoids be healthful, and preſerveth a man from many and grievous Diſeaſes, as *Hippocrates* taught in Epidemii, and in his Aphoriſms, as from a Pleuriſie, Peripneumonia, or Inflamation of the Lungs; Nephritis, or the Stone in the Kidneys; Madneſs, Melancholly, and innumerable other: Yet the immoderate Flux is moſt dangerous, and brings other pernicious Diſeaſes, as Weakneſs of the whol Body, Coolneſs of the Bowels, and eſpecially of the Liver; an Atrophy or want of nouriſhment, an evil Habit, and Dropſie by the loſs of Natural Heat, by ſpending too much Blood which is the treaſure of Life, and the cheeriſher of the whol Body.

And this Immoderate Flux hath the ſame Cauſes which uſe to provoke other ſorts of Bleeding: namely, Blood offending in Quantity or Quality; when it offendeth in Quantity, and is brought in great plenty to the Hæmorrhoid Veins, it doth violently dilate them and open their Orifices, by the ſtrength of the Expulſive Faculty: but ſomtimes too much Blood coming thither, doth oppreſs the Retentive Faculty.

Hence it comes that ſhe being Defective in her duty, there is a great Flux which muſt be reſtrained by art.

But while Blood offends in Quality, as ſharpneſs or thinneſs, it ſtirs up the Expulſive Faculty, to caſt forth by thoſe Veins not only the unprofitable but profitable Blood, the Blood Cauſing this Flux is made ſharper by a mixture of Choller, or ſharp Water.

This immoderate Flux is known by the loſs of Strength, and a Senſe of Weakneſs coming from a long Flux and loſs of Blood: As alſo from an evil yellowiſh colour of the whol Body, as if it were the Jaundice.

If the Diſeaſe come from Quantity of Blood, there went before Cauſes of increaſe of Blood, and the Patient bears it wel in the beginning, and is more cheerful; but afterwards the Flux continuing, he grows weak, and dejected.

But if it comes from ſharpneſs and thinneſs of the Blood, there went before Cauſes that breed choller or ſharp Water, the body is of a Chollerick Conſtitution and burnt: the blood floweth violently, and it is very red, ſhining, and as it were flaming, when otherwiſe offending only in Quantity it uſeth to be black and Melancholly.

The Prognoſtick is gathered eaſily from what hath been ſaid, when we reckon up thoſe grievous Diſeaſes which come from this.

For the Cure, The Blood muſt be ſtanched, or moderated at leaſt, which muſt be done by Revulſives, Derivatives, Thickners, and Aſtringents.

And firſt, Phlebotomy is a Revulſive Remedy in every Flux of blood, therefore in the Hæmorrhoids thus flowing, draw blood from the Arm; and more plentifully if there be ſigns of fulneſs and much hath not been loſt, otherwiſe take but little, and at divers times.

Alſo Frictions and Ligatures of the Superior parts do revel the blood, as alſo Cupping Glaſſes applied to the Shoulders, Breaſts, and Hypochondria, which for the better Revulſion may have Scarification in the Shoulders, but they muſt be often applied to the places afore-mentioned.

Alſo a Gentle Purge doth derive the Chollerick Humors which make the blood ſo violent in the Guts; and this muſt be made of Purging things that have an Aſtringent Quality, as Rhubarb, Myrobalans, and Tamarinds, ſuch as were preſcribed againſt Vomiting of Blood: And *Mercurialis* teacheth, That Tamarinds have an eſpecial power to ſtop this kind of bleeding, whether they be taken boyled or in ſubſtance.

Alſo ſharp French Pruens which are ſomwhat like Tamarinds being often eaten afore meat, are good: and their uſe is convenient to keep the body looſe, and if theſe wil not ſuffice you may ad other things which were propounded for the Cure of a Belly bound, becauſe by uſe of Aſtringents the belly wil be bound, and by ſtraining to diſcharge the Excrements that are hard, the Veins wil be more open and bleed more.

Afterwards

Afterwards you muſt uſe thoſe things that thicken the Blood, and aſtringe the looſe Veins, ſuch as were preſcribed for vomiting and ſpitting of blood, in form of a Julep, Pouder, Opiate, and the reſt; coming to Narcoticks, as is there ſaid, if great need require.

And beſides thoſe Remedies, the Pills of Bdellium are much commended by Authors; which *Rondeletius* rejecteth, becauſe the Apothecaries have not true Bdellium, and uſe Mirrh inſtead thereof, which cauſeth bleeding. But *Solenander* oppoſeth him, ſaying by Experience, that he hath found theſe Pills make of ordinary Bdellium, ſo cleerly to produce their effect, that he wil not doubt of the compoſition. Except ſome ſhould think that the Myrrh is made dull by drying things, and aſtringents that are mixed therewith. To this we may add what *Bauderon* in his Diſpenſatory, and other Modern Writers ſay, That we have true Bdellium brought from *India* at this day, which is hard to be diſtinguiſhed from Myrrh.

The uſe of theſe Pills, is after this manner:

Take of *Pills of Bdellium one dram: the Troches of Amber, and Terra ſigillata, of each one ſcruple: With the Mucilage of Quince ſeeds extracted with Roſe Water. Make a maſs of Pills, of which let him take a ſcruple twice a day, before Dinner and Supper.*

At the ſame time you muſt uſe Topicks made after divers forms.

A Fomentation of Mullein boyled in Smiths VVater, or aſtringent VVine, is beſt; for that Plant is proper for the pain and bleeding of the Hemorrhoids. But you muſt diligently obſerve in the uſe of Fomentations, that they be either cold, or moderately hot.

A more compound Decoction may be made thus:

Take of *Snakeweed Roots half a pound: Plantane, Mullein, Bramble and Oak buds, of each two handfuls and an half: Sumach berries, Pomegranate flowers, green Galls, and Pomegranate peels, of each one handful: Myrtles half a dram: red Roſes two pugils: Allum one ounce: boyl theſe in three parts of Forge water, and one of old red Wine, for a Fomentation.*

Martin Ruland commends a Fomentation made of two bags, applied hot by times, made of red cloth, and filled with beaten Acorns and Oak Leaves, and boyled long in ſtrong Vinegar.

Of the Decoction before mentioned, with a greater quantity of every Simple, you may make a Bath to ſit in, which the ſick man muſt uſe ſomwhat cold, as is ſaid of a Fomentation.

Unguentum Comitiſſæ is very good, if you anoint the Back and Hemorrhoids therewith: or you may make for the preſent this following:

Take of *Oyl of Roſes, Olives, and Myrtles, of each two ounces: the Juyce of Plantane and Mullein, of each one ounce and an half: red Wine Vinegar one ounce: boyl them till the juyces are conſumed: then add of Bole, Sanguis Draconis, Frankinſence, and droſs of Iron finely poudered, of each one dram: Wax as much as will make an Unguent.*

Rondoletius approves rather of thoſe Oyntments which are made without Oyl, becauſe they are more aſtringent: and they are thus made:

Take of *the Juyce of Plantane, Shepheards-purſe, and Mullein, of each two ounces: the ſimple Syrup of Vinegar three ounces: boyl them gently; then add of Bole, Terra ſigillata, and Snakeweed Roots poudered, of each one dram and an half: Sanguis Draconis one ounce: Ceruſs waſhed two ſcruples: mix them into the form of a Liniment.*

If the Hemorrhoids be ulcerated, you may make this following:

Take of *Oyl of Roſes two ounces: Frankinſence and Aloes, of each one dram: Sarcocol, Sanguis Draconis, and Bole, of each half a dram: Spodium, and Carabe, of each one ſcruple: white Starch three drams: Juyce of Plantane one ounce. Make an Unguent.*

The Fat of an Eel, which comes out when it is roaſted, put to the Oyntments, makes them better by a proper Vertue.

Alſo you may with profit apply a Cataplaſm to the ſaid parts, made thus:

Take of *Bole, Aloes, Maſtich, Frankinſence, and Sanguis Draconis, of each half an ounce: the ſtones of Myrobalans, and Galls, of each one dram: mix them with the white of an Egg, and Juyce of Plantane. Make a Cataplaſm.*

Or the Hairs of an Hare burnt, and Spiders webs mixed with the white of an Egg, will make a Cataplaſm, which you muſt apply to the Vein where it is open, if it appears, or put it gently in.

Suppoſitories are good for this uſe, becauſe they are put up into the part.

The Form of them is,

Take of *Colophony, and Frankinſence, of each three drams. Bole half an ounce: Ceruſs and burnt Lead, of each one dram: Acacia half a dram: pouder them finely, and make them into a Suppoſitory with Goats Suet.*

Make Injections into the part by a Syringe of the Juyce of Plantane, and other things mentioned for a Fomentation. The Blood of any Creature newly drawn, and injected while it is hot, doth wonderfully reſtrain any flux of blood from the belly.

The

The Lungs of a Sheep being hot and bloody, being ſat upon, have great power to ſtop this Blood.

Alſo Fumigations made of the Decoctions of the Fomentations aforeſaid, are good for the ſame end. To which you may ad thoſe things mentioned in a Dyſentery. As alſo this following:

Take of *Frankinſence, Aloes, Maſtich, red Roſes, Myrtles, and Wormwood, of each half a dram: Troches of Carabe one dram: Make a groſs Pouder to be caſt upon the hot coals; and let the fume thereof be received in a large funnel by a hollow chair, tying a wooden or ſilver pipe to the narrow hole, and putting it into the Fundament.*

A Fumigation made of Mullein is the beſt of all.

If you can apply Remedies to the Veins that bleed, it is beſt therefore that they may appear And therefore let the Patient be laid upon a Table, and ſtrain as if he were at ſtool till they appear; uſing an Inſtrument if there be need. And then apply the afore mentioned Cataplaſm of the Hair of an Hare and Spiders Webs, or other very drying Remedies; Bole, Allum, or burnt Vitriol. Alſo to touch the Vein with Oyl of Vitriol, is good; or in extream danger with *Aqua fortis*.

Which things, if they prevail not, *Hippocrates* in his Book of Diet, in acute Diſeaſes, and of the Hemorrhoids, ſhews the way of tying, cutting, and burning of them; which operation is out of faſhion now, as being moſt painful and perilous. Although *Maſſaria* ſaith that he once ſaw it, the ſtory whereof will be profitable to be related; for by that you may learn the way of working, and the event. The Hiſtory is this: Frederick Corſicus *of* Vincentia, *firſt had the pain, then the immoderate flux of the Hemorrhoids: And when he had in vain tried many things, went to* Padua; *where the Phyſitians by a common conſent, concluded that the blood muſt be ſtopped. But when many means inwardly and outwardly, were in vain uſed, in the end finding no Remedy, they concluded to try this Manual Operation: But having no fit Chyrurgion, they ſent for a Neapolitan, who profeſſed this Art, and he cut, tied, and burnt the Hemorrhoids of* Fabricius *thus: Firſt he bound him ſo that he could no waies move; then he ſeparates the Hemorrhoids from the Inteſtine; then with a Needle, he paſſeth throw, and ſeweth them, and tieth all about ſtrongly: then cutting off the part of the Vein which is above the ſewing, he burns it with a hot Iron. It was a painful Operation from the Ligature, Section, and Burning: So that* Frederick *had a Feaver, and great pain. But the Chyrurgion gave him a few Medicines by which he was freed both from feaver and pain in a few daies to the admiration of all men there, and recovered from bleeding. But it is not to be omitted, how he being too confident, and neglecting bleeding and purging, which he ſtood after in need of, keeping no orderly diet; the next yeer he was taken with a peſtilent Feaver, and died. From whence we may obſerve the Precept of* Hippocrates, *Aph.* 12. *Sect.* 6. *That one Hemorrhoid muſt be kept open. Except the Patient, as* Aetius *obſerveth, had rather prevent the danger that comes by ſtopping of it by a good diet, exerciſe, bleeding, and purging.*

But in an ordinary Cure by Medicines, you muſt conſider the Liver and Spleen, becauſe the Meſeraick Veins are inſerted into them, eſpecially if they be hot or weak. And therefore not unprofitably do we apply Epithems, or cooling and ſtrengthening Oyntments, ſuch as we preſcribed in the flux of the Liver, and ſhal more at large be laid down in the hot diſtemper, and inflamation of thoſe parts. Sometimes the Obſtruction of the Bowels, and Meſeraick Veins do cauſe this Diſeaſe; which are to be taken away for the Cure of the Patient. And we have ſometimes done it with Pills of Steel, which are preſcribed in the Obſtruction of the Liver.

The whol time of Cure, let the Patient drink ordinarily Iron Water, or the Decoction of Yarrow.

At the ſame time, above all things you muſt rectifie the blood, which is the chief cauſe of this flux. Therefore if it be ſharp and Chollerick, it is often to be corrected with the infuſion of Rhubarb and Tamarinds. If it be hot and thin, with thickening and cooling Medicines: if watery, with dryers: if much, with a ſlender Diet. For it is vain to think of ſtopping of the blood, except the original of the evil be firſt taken away. Which *Solenander* obſerved, Conſ. 22. Sect. 4. in this following Hiſtory. *I remember* (ſaith he) *that I had one* Ann, *a Dukes Daughter, of a great flux of the Hemorrhoids; and becauſe ſhe was far ſpent, I took much pains to ſtop the flux. But when I perceived that the firſt day after they were ſtopped, ſhe began to ſwel about the Heart. Being ſent for again, the ſeventh day I opened the Veins again; nor could I ſafely ſtop them before I had given gentle Evacutions, and altering and ſtrengthening things for the Liver.*

After you have cured the flux of the Hemorrhoids, you muſt prevent their return: which is done by good Diet, and bleeding twice or thrice in a yeer, and with an ordinary Purge of a Magiſtral Syrup, or other Medicine, with an iſſue made in the Leg, and the like; which are to be altered according to the divers diſpoſitions of Bodies. Moreover, Mineral Waters of Vitriol, Allum, and Iron, are very convenient.

Fonſeca commends the Decoction of the Maſtich Tree, or the Infuſion of it in VVine, for a Prevention, thus made:

Take

Take of *the shavings of Mastich wood two ounces: infuse them in twelve Pints of Wine twenty four hours in a warm place, then strain it and drink of it a whol month for ordinary drink: for it hath strength to stop the Hæmorrhoids, and strengthen the Stomach.*

Chap. 11. *Of the Pain of the Hæmorrhoids.*

THe *Hæmorrhoid* Veins that are in the end of the *Rectum Intestinum*, or streight Gut, sometimes do swel and cause very great pain.

This swelling comes of the same Cause with the Flux or bleeding of the Hæmorrhoids; namely, Of blood offending in Quantity or Quality, which if it findeth not away, and cannot open the ends of the Veins, there it settleth, and by filling of the Veins causeth a Tumor with Inflamation, and pain. The principal Cause why Blood cannot get out of the Veins, is the thickness of it, because it is Melancholly: for commonly the Hemorrhoid Veins, especially internal, are said to receive Melancholly from the Spleen, and sometimes to purge it forth.

Authors give many differences of Hemorrhoids, from their greatness, number, figure, and place: whence some are called great, others little; some more, some less; some are like Grapes, Mulberries, Warts, or Bladders; thence termed Uval, Moral, Verrucal, or Vesical. Some are External, some Internal.

From these things the knowledg of them is easie; for from a Tumor in the outside of the Fundament, from its greatness, color, and consistence, the differences are known. And they are to be distinguished from other Diseases which use to be in the Fundament, as *Rhagades*, Clefts; *Condylomata*, Swellings with Inflamation; *Thymi*, Kernels; *Fici*, Piles, and the rest.

Rhagades are certain Ulcers like Clefts in the Hands and Lips, from vehement cold. They have no likeness with the Hemorrhoids; but we will explain them with the rest, although they are properly to be referred to external Diseases, that you may with the knowledg of the Hemorrhoids know all diseases of the Fundament.

Condylomata are certain Tumors of the Skin, which being wrinkled, if it swel by Humors, it is called *Condyloma*. It is distinguished from a Hemorrhoid, because a Hemorrhoid is greater, black, and round in a Vein; but this is long, of the same color, and not in the Veins.

Thymi are carnous swellings, which are not only in the Fundament, but Privities of Men and Women, like Warts, and like the flowers of Thyme, from whence they have their name. These are little, white, or reddish, without pain; but the Hemorrhoids are greater, black, for the most part painful.

Fici are also fleshy Swellings, but greater than *Thymi*; also they are blew and painful, and therefore more like Hemorrhoids: but they are distinguished from them, because they are all flesh; but the Hemorrhoids shew the Veins full, and enlarged at the ends. Moreover, *Fici* for the most part ulcerate, and are malignant, so that they are like a Cancer.

Those Caruncles, or pieces of flesh which grow in the Fundament, are like these *Fici*, called *Cristæ*, or Tutts, usual in *Italy*, but unusual among us, because they come from an impure and unnatural Lechery: they look like the Combs of Cocks, and thence they have their name: Because they are nothing like the Hemorrhoids they need no distinction. But let this be for a Conclusion, All the aforesaid Diseases are cured only by Chyrurgery, so that a peculiar way is not to be layed down here.

As for the Prognostick, The Swelling Hemorrhoids, they are seldom dangerous; but sometimes so inflamed, that you may fear a Gangrene; or else they extreamly torment the Patient.

Hemorrhoids, if they come to Suppuration, or an Ulcer, often times leave a Fistula, which is many times incurable, by reason of the tenderness of the part, and the great moisture which hindereth the healing of it.

For the Cure hereof, first let blood in the Arm, and make a Revulsion from the part affected. Which being sufficiently done, you may also open the Vein in the Ancle for revulsion.

The same is done by Cupping of the Hypochondria for Revulsion, and the Hipps for Derivation.

Strong Purges are not good in this case, because they draw the Humors to the part, and encrease the Tumor. But you must constantly keep the Body open, because hard Excrements, and voided with straning, encreate pain. An Infusion of Cassia given morning and evening, is good for this, thus made:

Take of *Lettice, Bugloss tops, Mallows, of each one handful: Liquoris scraped, and Raisons stoned, of each half an ounce: Bugloss, Borrage, and Violet flowers, of each one pugil. Boyl them to eight ounces. In the straining infuse Cassia new drawn one ounce; strain it, and clarifie*

it;

it; *and then put thereto one ounce of Syrup of Violets. Give it twice a day as aforeſaid.*

Sometimes to aſſwage the ſharpneſs of the Humor you may give the Emulſions of the cold Seeds, made with the aforeſaid Decoction.

In the mean while, divers Topicks are to be uſed to appeaſe pain, take away Inflamation, and diſcuſs the Humor. Or Oyl of ſweet Almonds newly drawn, and which is better, the Oyl of Peach Kernels, or Gourd Seeds, Poppy, or Henbane Seeds.

Oyl of Box-tree is beſt, becauſe it is ſtupifying: And as it cures all Tooth-ach miraculouſly, ſo doth it mitigate all other: and this, if you lay but a drop with a little Lint upon the Hemorrhoids; or if you mix it with Lin-ſeed Oyl, in this proportion, that there be half an ounce of that, and one ſcruple of Oyl of Box.

Quercetan highly commends the Oyl of Nuts in which Sows or Hog-lice have been boyled. You may alſo boyl Hog-lice in common Oyl, and it will much aſſwage pain.

Plain Oyl of Eggs, or made in a Leaden Mortar, doth the ſame.

Divers Liniments and Oyntments may be preſcribed for the ſame: Some whereof do only appeaſe pain; ſome diſcuſs the Tumor, and dry; others heat the Ulcers. And you may apply them with Lint.

Take *one Yolk of an Egg; as much Oyl of Roſes, or Violets as will make a Liniment: To which if you put Populeon, it will aſſwage pain better; and when the pain is very violent, you may add a little Opium.* Or,

Take of *Hens Greaſe half an ounce: the pap of an Apple roaſted in the Embers one ounce: Saffron half a dram: Populeon half an ounce: With the Yolk of one Egg make a Liniment.* Or,

Take of *Oyl of Violets two ounces: Populeon half an ounce: With one whol Egg make an Oyntment: or let the white of an Egg be beaten with Breaſt-milk, and applied to the part, with clouts dipped therein.* Or,

Take of *the Mucilage of Fleabane ſeeds two ounces: Oyl of Violets three ounces. Make a Liniment.* Or,

Take of *the Mucilage of Fleabane and Fœnugreek ſeeds extracted with Wine, of each two drams: Freſh Butter three ounces: Goats Suet one ounce. Mix them in a Leaden Mortar for a Liniment.*

Or Butter alone, ſet in a Leaden Mortar in the Sun till it wax black, is an excellent Medicine.

Alſo freſh Pomatum is very Anodine.

Take of *the Juyce of Purſlain and Honey, of each four ounces. Mix them in a Leaden Mortar into the form of a Liniment.*

Take of *Unguent of Roſes two ounces: Quick-ſilver two drams. Mix them into a Liniment.* Or,

Take of *white Diachylon mollified with the Oyl of Chamomel two ounces: Saffron one ſcruple: Opium three grains. Make an Unguent.*

Horſtius much commends an Oyntment made of wild Flax, with its flowers boyled in Hogs greeſe. To which being ſtrained, and a little cooled, you muſt add the Yolk of an Egg, and apply it to the part with Lint. He ſaith that it aſſwageth theſe kind of pains miraculouſly, and that he had from *John Wolf* that famous Phyſitian of *Heſſe*, who refuſed to diſcover it to his Prince, the Landgrave of *Heſſe*, till he promiſed him every yeer a fatted Ox.

Theſe Liniments following are good to diſcuſs the Tumor, and aſſwage pain.

Take *Leeks and roaſt them in a wet cloth in the embers, and beat them with freſh Butter, and they will take away pain and ſwelling.*

A red Onion doth the ſame boyled with the pap of a Lilly, and beaten with Oyl of Myrtles.

Take *the Oyl of Peach Kernels, and bitter Almonds, of each two ounces: Liquid Storax and Bdellium, of each two drams. Diſſolve them in* Oleo, *and mix them for a Liniment.*

The Balſom of Sulphur made of the Flower of Brimſtone, and Spirit of Turpentine, is good to aſſwage pain and ſwelling, and to cleanſe the Ulcers of thoſe parts. And better, if inſtead of Oyl of Turpentine you uſe the Oyl of St, Johns-wort, and of Eggs. Alſo when there is great ſwelling with Inflamation, you may uſe Oyl of Roſes, or of Violets inſtead of the Oyls aforeſaid.

Alſo Cataplaſms are good for the ſame purpoſe. Of which the moſt common for taking away all pains, is that of white Bread and Milk boyled, adding Oyl of Roſes, and Yolks of Eggs.

Aquapendens commends a Cataplaſm of Plantane, Pellitory of the wall, and Mallows boyled in Water, and after with Oyl of Roſes; to which, when he would have it more drying, he adds Barley Meal, and Millet Meal: And if the pain be great, he makes it of Milk. He commends alſo the Cataplaſm of Leek Heads, boyled in Common Oyl or Oyl of Myrtles, or made of Pilewort boyled in Water.

Green Elder Leaves boyled to ſlime in Water, and then ſpread upon a cloth as big as the Palm of your Hand, and applied hot to the Patient lying upon his Belly; if it be often renewed for many hours, and the part firſt anointed with common Oyl, or the Decoction of the ſame, is very excellent.

The Leaves alſo of Elder ſtamped and applied cold, do take away the pain the third dreſſing.

Alſo Purſlain ſtamped and applied, aſſwageth pain and ſwelling, heats the Ulcers, and conſumeth proud fleſh.

A white Onion roaſted in the Embers, and made with freſh Butter into a Cataplaſm, doth aſſwage pain, and diſcuſs the Tumor.

Let Fomentations be applied to the part to take away pain, made of the Decoction of Mullein, Mallows, Holyhocks, Pellitory, Lin-ſeed, Fœnugreek ſeed, Marſh-mallows, Chamomel flowers, and Dill boyled in Milk, or in the want of Milk, in Water and Oyl, or Tripe Broth.

You may make a Bath with a greater quantity of the ſame Ingredients.

Cold Water alone, is a good Fomentation, and a Bath alſo. But in Winter warm it.

Alſo foment in Roſe Water in which Salt of Lead hath been diſſolved, eſpecially if the part be inflamed.

To take away ſwelling, it is good to foment with red Wine wherein Allum is boyled.

Polypody of the Oak, and St. Johns-wort boyled in equal parts of Wine and Water, doth ſenſibly abate the ſwelling of the Hemorrhoids, if the Decoction be ſqueezed in by degrees with a ſponge, the Waters of hot Baths applied with Spunges, or to ſit in, are alſo good.

Aquapendens applieth a Spunge dipped in Time Water and ſqueezed, and after bound upon the part; a Fumigation of the aforeſaid Decoction while it is hot, or of Mullein boyled in Milk with Rye Flower, doth alſo appeaſe pain. Or,

Take of *Houſleek two handfuls*: *boyl them in white Wine, and let the Patient receive the Fume through an hollow Chair.*

To conſume and dry up the Piles, a Fumigation made of the Pouder of Darnel, Mullein, Pilewort, caſt upon hot coals, is good, and better if you mix Brimſtone therewith. Alſo it is made of Brimſtone only, which taken in with a Funnel, drieth up the blind Hemorrhoids. Alſo a Fumigation made of a Fire-ſtone quenched in Vinegar.

And this following Injection is marvelous good for the ſame, if often uſed.

Take of *Juyce of Plantane, and Oyl of Violets, of each four ounces*: *Natural Balſom half an ounce.* *Make an Injection into the Anus.*

Amatus Luſitanus in the 91. Cure, Cent. 2. doth praiſe this following Suppoſitory, in theſe words: *A Roman Lady which lived at St. Angelo's Bridg, having her Womb forth, complained alſo of the pain of the Hemorrhoids: And after we had uſed many choyce Medicines, by which ſhe received no benefit, we gave her a Suppoſitory of Goats Suet and Opium, by which ſhe was cured perfectly. But we waſhed the part afterwards with ſtrengthening things warm, as ought to be after ſtupefying Medicines have been applied.*

The ſame *Amatus*, Curat. 6. Cent. 3. commends this following Topick in theſe words: *A Reverend man was grievouſly troubled with the Hemorrhoids; and after divers means uſed by Phyſitians, was cured by us with this Medicine immediately.*

Take *an Orange, and make it hollow, and fill it with Oyl of Roſes, and of Spike: then roaſt it, and apply it hot, repeated often, it is wonderful.*

The Lungs of a Goat are uſed commonly, applied hot to the part, or ſome ſlices made hot between two Diſhes with a little VVater, to aſſwage pain.

Both the aforeſaid Balſom of Sulphur, and theſe following Oyntments, are good for the Piles ulcerated.

Take of *new Oyl of Eggs two ounces*: *Stir them in a Leaden Mortar, and apply them.*

Take *four ounces of Oyl of Roſes, and one ounce of Ceruß*: *With half an ounce of Litharge, and ſix drams of new Wax, and four grains of Opium.* Make an Oyntment. Or,

Take of *Frankinſence, Myrrh, and Saffron, of each one dram*: *Opium two grains*: *One Yolk of an Egg*; *Oyl of Roſes, and Mucilage of Fleabane ſeeds, of each as much as will make an Oyntment.*

If they will not eaſily be diſſolved, you muſt open them after convenient Revulſions, rubbing them with a rough cloth dipped in the Juyce of Onions, in which there was diſſolved one dram of Aloes. This is *Hartmans* Secret. But they are ſoon opened, and with leſs pain, with a Pen-knife, or Horſ-leeches.

Some ſpecial things are taken by the Mouth to aſſwage pain, and conſume the Hemorrhoids. The chief are theſe:

The Decoction of Yarrow taken three daies as ordinary Drink, and the ſeed of three Leaved Graſs given many daies together with the Yolk of an Egg, is alſo excellent.

The

The Pouder of Mullein given in Milk, or otherwiſe, is much approved againſt the Swelling of the Piles.

The Pouder of Yarrow and Tormentil, are commended to do the ſame.

The Juyce of Mullein by its ſelf, or mixed with Sugar of Roſes, or Penedies; or made into a Syrup with Sugar, is alſo excellent.

Finally, Pills of Bdellium taken often, do conſume the Piles, and take away the cauſe of them inſenſibly.

An Iſſue made in the Legg, is very good for them who are ſubject to this Diſeaſe.

The End of the Tenth Book.

THE ELEVENTH BOOK OF THE PRACTICE OF PHYSICK.

Of the Diſeaſes of the Liver.

The PREFACE.

THe Liver (as other parts) is ſubject to all kind of Diſeaſes: For as it is compounded of ſimilary parts it hath divers diſtempers, and as it is an organical part, it is Affected with Tumors and ſtoppages, as alſo with ſolution of Continuity, which is Wounds and Ulcers. And although the Dropſie be in the whol Abdomen or Belly, as in an Aſcites or Tympanites; or in the whol Body, as in Anaſarca: yet the Original thereof for the moſt part is from the Liver. We intend here only to ſhew the chief Diſeaſes which are moſt ordinary, and we ſhal Comprehend them in Six Chapters: The firſt whereof is concerning the Hot diſtemper of the Liver: The ſecond of the Inflamation, Ulcer, and Impoſthume of the Liver: The third of Obſtruction of the Liver: The fourth of the Jaundice: The fifth of Scirrhus: The ſixth of the Dropſie.

Chap. 1. *Of the Hot Diſtemper of the Liver.*

MAny men have a Hot Diſtemper of their Liver, from their Birth; of which here we ſhal not treat, but only of that preternatural Diſeaſe which manifeſtly hindereth the Actions of the Liver.

This Diſtemper is either Simple, or Compound; either with Matter, or without; but for the moſt part it hath Matter joyned with it, becauſe a Hot Diſtemper of the Liver uſeth to produce Hot and Chollerick Humors.

The Cauſes of this Diſtemper are Hot Weather, immoderate Exerciſe, much Anger, and other great Paſſions of the Mind, and eſpecially hot nouriſhment, and Phyſick, or things Spiced, a pure and ſtrong Wine drunken plentifully: To theſe you may ad the Heat of the Part adjacent as in ſtrong Feavers, the Liver waxeth Hot from the heat of the Heart.

The

The Signs of a Hot Diſtemper of the Liver, are Loathing of Meat, eſpecially Fleſh; Thirſt, binding of the Belly, vehement heat in the whol body, eſpecially in the palms of the hands and ſoles of the feet; leanneſs of the whol body, the Patient is worſe for hot things, and better for cold: and if there be plenty of hot Humors, there wil ſomtimes be Vomiting and purging of Choller; there is a bitterneſs in the mouth, and for the moſt part a Feaver.

As to the Prognoſtick, A Hot Diſtemper of the Liver is not very dangerous, becauſe it is not much contrary to the Conſtitution of the Liver, but it uſeth to be the Cauſe of many Diſeaſes not only of the Liver, but alſo of other parts: It is hard of Cure, eſpecially when the Stomach is cold, as often it is; for thoſe things which are given to Cool the Liver hurt the Stomach and enlarge its Diſtemper.

The Cure conſiſts altogether in the correction of the Diſtemper by cooling Medicines, and by the Evacuation of the Chollerick humors which comes from the Liver, encreaſing the Diſtemper, and that Diſtemper it, and is the Cauſe of other Diſeaſes.

And firſt, Opening of a Vein doth much cool the Liver, takes away ſome of the Choller, and opens the Obſtructions which comes from Choller; therefore you muſt open the Liver Vein of the Right Arm, and let ſuch a quantity of blood as is agreeable to the fulneſs and ſtrength of the Patient, either at once, or divers times, according to the greatneſs of the Diſeaſe and the continuance of it, and that after a Clyſter or Laxative Medicine hath been adminiſtred.

Then you muſt give a Medicine which doth gently Purge Choller, and Repeat it often at diſtance; or an Apozem for divers Doſes; or the Magiſtral Syrup, or Syrup of Succory, Compound with a four-fold proportion of Rhubarb which is moſt convenient, becauſe it doth innocently purge the Chollerick Humors, cooleth the Liver, ſtrengthneth it, and opens Obſtructions.

The Forms of theſe Medicines, are theſe that follow:

Take of *clenſed Senna and Tamarinds, of each half an ounce: Annis ſeeds one dram: Succory and Sorrel, of each one handful: ſcraped Liquoris three drams: the three Cordial Flowers, of each half a pugil: boyl them to three ounces: and diſſolve in the ſtraining, of Rhubarb infuſed with a little Lavender Spike in Succory Water, one dram and an half: double Catholicon three drams: ſyrup of Roſes one ounce: make a Potion, give it in the morning with due cuſtody.*

For the finer ſort of People you may make Clarified Potions which are lately invented, which are in form of a Julep, but ſomwhat unpleaſant to the taſte, and in them there is preſcribed a double quantity of Purging Medicines becaute the much ſtrength of them is loſt in the Clarifying, ſo that they do ſeldom work upon ſtrong bodies; eſpecially in a dry Country where the Humors are leſs flowing and not ſo obedient to purges; but in moiſt Countries, theſe kind of Medicines work ſucceſfully.

This following is an Example of Clarified Potions.

Take of *clean Senna one ounce: Annis ſeeds one dram: Succory Leaves and Maiden-Hair, of each one handful: ſcraped Liquoris half an ounce: boyl them to ten ounces, and infuſe in the ſtraining two drams of Rhubarb: Caſſia new drawn, and double Catholicon, of each one ounce: bruiſed Tamarinds half an ounce: Coriander ſeeds prepared one dram: ſyrup of Roſes one ounce: ſtrain them and clarifie them according to art: make a Potion.*

An Apozeme to Purge Choller is thus made:

Take of *Sorrel, Dogs-tooth, Succory, and Dock Roots of each one ounce: Endive, Succory, Dandelion, and Maiden-hair, of each one handful: of the Four great ſeeds, of each three drams: ſcraped Liquoris one ounce: Succory, Bugloſs and Violet flowers, of each one pugil: clean Senna two drams: Tamarinds one ounce: Mace, and Cloves, of each one dram: boyl them to a Pint and a Quarter: in the ſtraining diſſolve half an ounce of Rhubarb infuſed in the aforeſaid Decoction with a little Cinnamon, of compound ſyrup of Succory, and Roſes ſolutive, of each two ounces: make an Apozeme, clarifie it, and aromatize it with two drams of yellow Saunders, for four mornings draughts.*

A Magiſtral Syrup may be made of the ingredients of the former Apozeme, with a treble quantity of Purgers, and adding an equal proportion of Sugar to the Decoction.

A Syrup made of Juyces is moſt uſed amongſt us, it is of great power in Chronical Diſeaſes, which come from a Hot Diſtemper of the Liver, and from yellow and burnt Choller: And it is made thus:

Take of *the new made Juyces from their Fæces, of Endive, Succory, Sorrel, Fumatory, Burrage, and Bugloſs, of each three Pints: the Juyce of ſweet Apples newly drawn and purified two Pints: freſh Polypody of the Oak, half a pound: clean Senna eight ounces: Dodder of Thyme three ounces: Agarick newly Trochiſcated half an ounce: Mace and Cloves of each half a dram: infuſe them, and boyl them according to art while there remains one Pint and an half of the ſtraining, in which diſſolve of Rhubarb infuſed with a little Lavender in the aforeſaid Juyces and ſtrained, one ounce: white Sugar one pound and an half: make a Syrup well boyled, clarified, and aromatiqed*

aromatized with two drams of Triaſantalon: keep this ſyrup in a Glaſs: give two ounces at a time, or three, twice or thrice every month with Chicken Broth wherein Endive, Succory, and Sorrel have been boyled; or in Whey.

Theſe things following are excellent to cool the Liver. And firſt for ordinary Drink, uſe the common Ptiſan made of Barley Water and Liquoris, or with Dog-tooth and Sorrel Roots. Or mix ſuch a Decoction with Syrup of Lemmons, or Maiden-hair. Or they who are more dainty may take only the ſimple Spring Water, mixed with the aforeſaid Syrups. And if you deſire to cool more, you may put as much Spirit of Sulphur, or of Vitriol, as will make it a little ſharp. And when the heat is very vehement, you may give a dram of Lapis Prunellæ therewith. There is alſo made a moſt pleaſant Drink of Conſerve of Roſes mixed with Spring Water and ſtrained: to which you may ad ſome drops of Spirit of Sulphur or Vitriol to make it ſharp and red like VVine.

You may alſo make a Tincture of Roſes thus:

Take of *red Roſes dried one ounce: warm Water three pints: Spirit of Sulphur or Vitriol one dram and an half: Infuſe them three or four hours: add to it being ſtrained, three quarters of a pound of white Sugar. Keep it for your uſe.*

The Alexandrine Julep for this purpoſe, is made thus:

Take of *Spring Water one pint: Roſe Water, Juyce of Lemmons, and white Sugar, of each four ounces: Boyl them with a gentle fire till they are skinned.*

Theſe two laſt Remedies are uſed two waies, either for ordinary Drink, or as a Julep twice or thrice in a day.

Alſo divers Juleps to cool the Liver uſe to be preſcribed; of which, the Forms following may be Examples.

Take of *Sorrel, Succory, Dog-tooth, and Dock Roots, of each one ounce: Endive, Succory, Sorrel, and Maiden-hair, of each one handful: Succory, Bugloſs, and Borrage Flowers, of each one pugil: boyl them to a pint. In the ſtraining diſſolve Syrup of Lemmons three ounces: Make a cleer Julep for three Doſes, to be taken twice in a day. If you will make it cooler, add a little Spirit of Sulphur or Vitriol to every Doſe to make it ſharp. And to make it colder yet, add a dram of Sal prunellæ.*

VVhen Herbs are wanting, you may make a Julep of ſtilled VVaters thus:

Take of *Endive, Succory, and Sorrel Water, of each three ounces: Syrup of Lemmons, and Pomegranates, of each one ounce and an half: Make a Julep for three Doſes.*

You may alſo make Juleps that are good and pleaſant, of Juyces: an Example of all which, may be this that followeth:

Take of *the Juyce of ſweet Apples newly drawn, and taken from the fæces, four ounces: the juyce of Lemmons three ounces: Roſe Water two ounces: the Juyce of Pomegranates one ounce: white Sugar half a pound. Make a Julep for three Doſes.*

Inſtead of Juleps, Phyſick Broth may be made for the dainty folk, of the Herbs aforeſaid boyled with a Chicken. To which you may add one dram of Lapis Prunellæ, that it may cool the better; or make it ſharp with ſome drops of Spirit of Vitriol.

Blood of Succory and Germander, brought into a Syrup as followeth, are good to cleanſe the blood, open obſtructions, and cool the Liver.

Take of *Succory Water made in Balneo Mariæ, as much as you pleaſe: the Leaves of Succory two parts: Germander one part: Steep them together, and digeſt them in Balneo Mariæ three daies: then ſtrain them, and add to the Liquor, freſh Succory, and Germander: then digeſt them again three daies; then ſtrain them: and let this way of Infuſion be repeated eight or ten times. The Liquor will turn red like blood, to which you muſt put as much Sugar, and make it into a Syrup.*

Beſides, You may make Opiates and Tablets to cool the Liver, and ſtrengthen it, thus:

Take of *Conſerve of the Flowers of Succory, Violets, Water-lillies, and Bugloſs, of each one ounce: the powder of the three Sanders one dram and an half. With Syrup of Lemmons make an Opiate to be taken often.*

Take of *the Lozenges of the three Sanders, with a double quantity of Rhubarb, four ounces. Let him take every morning two hours before meat, one of the weight of two drams.*

Conſerve of Hips of the Canker Roſe, well cleanſed, and boyled with Sugar into the Form of a Marmalade, doth powerfully cool the Liver, if the Patient taketh it inſtead of the former Opiate.

The Tincture of Coral, made with Juyce of Lemmons, doth cool and ſtrengthen the Liver, if you give two ſpoonfuls thereof every day, or twice in a week at the leaſt.

A Bath of warm VVater uſed often, doth more powerfully and profitably cool and moiſten the Body than any other Remedy, eſpecially in lean folk.

VVhey is good for the ſame, if it be uſed fifteen daies, or more, together. It is made beſt by boyling

ling the Milk, and powring in a little Vinegar or Juyce of Lemmons, and afterwards ſtraining it.

Amatus Luſitanus prepareth it thus:

Take of *Whey one pint: very ſharp Syrup of Vinegar three ounces: Mix them, and after a little boyling let it be taken as Mineral Waters, twice or thrice, and then walk upon it. The Ancients took it five pints at a time.*

Quercetan prepareth it thus:

Take of *Whey two pints: Juyce of Lemmons two ounces: the new made Juyce of ſweet Apples three ounces. Clarifie them all together at the fire with the white of an Egg, and put to them a little Sugar. When it is ſtrained, take ſix or eight ounces every morning, for fifteen or twenty daies together.*

And if the Body be lean and conſumed, you may give Milk alone, eſpecially if it be of an Aſs, for many daies.

The Decoction of China prepared with the Juyce of Lemmons, is alſo good for this purpoſe, eſpecially if there be Obſtructions. It is made thus:

Take of *China Roots ſliced one ounce: Spring Water ſix pints: the Juyce of Lemmons three ounces: Steep them twenty four hours: then boyl them till the third part be conſumed; then ſtrain them through a Hippocras Bag, and let him take ſix ounces thereof morning and evening, and mix it with Wine when he pleaſeth.*

Laſtly, Mineral Waters that have Vitriol, are good, becauſe they open and cool.

If the Diſeaſe continue after all this, open the Hemorrhoids with Horſ-leeches once or twice in a month.

And alſo uſe outwardly Epithems and cooling Oyntments to the Region of the Liver.

Make Epithems of Sorrel, Succory, Roſe, or Plantane Water, or of Vinegar and Camphire: to which for the ſtrengthening of the part, add a little Pouder of the three Sanders.

The Oyntments are, *Galens* cooling Oyntment, and the Cerat of Sanders.

Chap. 2. *Of the Inflamation, Impoſthume, and Ulcer of the Liver.*

THe Inflamation of the Liver, is a hot Tumor ariſing from Blood, which is out of its Veſſels, and ſent into the ſubſtance thereof.

And as the Blood is either pure, or mixed with other Humors, ſo doth it produce divers kinds of Tumors. For if it be pure, it makes a true Phlegmon; but if it be mixed with Choller, Flegm, or Melancholly, it produceth an Eryſipelous, Oedematous, or Schirrous Phlegmon. And if the ſaid Humors predominate over the Blood, there is a Phlegmonous Eryſipelas, œdema, and ſchirrus.

There is another difference in reſpect of the place in which the Inflamation is; it is either in the gibbous part, or Cavity of the Liver. Which is thus to be underſtood according to *Galen*, 5. *de locis, aff. cap.* 7. An Inflamation cannot be in either part of the Liver diſtinct, ſo that the other ſhal be free, becauſe the fleſh in the part is contained in all parts, and therefore when one part ſuffereth, the other alſo ſuffereth in ſome meaſure.

Moreover, That which *Galen* taught 13. Meth. Cap. 14. is worth obſervation: When the hollow part of the Liver is offended, it is neceſſary that the Inflamation reach to the Veins of the Meſentery, which come from the Gate Vein. And Experience teacheth that they who have died of this Inflamation have had, not only an Impoſthume in the Liver, but alſo in the Meſentery.

We muſt alſo obſerve from *Hippocrates*, Aph. 45. Sect. 7. That an Impoſthume ſomtimes is only in the Membrane which covereth the Liver, and ſomtimes in the ſubſtance, or Parenchyma of it: *For* (ſaith he) *they who have a hot Liver ſuppurated, if pure white quittor or matter flow from thence, do eſcape; for it is contained in the Tunicle: But if it be like Lees of Oyl, they die.* *Galen* in his Comment, ſaith thus: *They who have matter in the Tunicle of their Liver, and the ſubſtance not ſuffering, do all eſcape: but they who are corrupted in the very fleſhy ſubſtance of the Liver, die; and there is good reaſon to be given why they do.*

The immediate Cauſes of this Diſeaſe are, too much Blood, or the boyling heat, thinneſs, and ſharpneſs of the ſame; or the motion and ſtirring of it in the Veins; from whence by the aforeſaid Cauſes, it is eaſily thrown into thoſe parts which are moſt fit to receive it. The Liver is moſt fit to receive blood abounding when it is too hot, or hath any pain, for heat and pain do attract, or if it have any Natural or adventitious weakneſs: For all parts that are burdened with any Humor, do disburden themſelves upon the weakeſt. Among theſe Cauſes you may reckon the obſtruction of the Liver, by which the thick Humors are retained, and are inflamed by a Preternatural heat.

The

The External Cauſes may be many, as too much heat of the body from immoderate Excerciſe, the Sun, or fire: but Meats ſharp and ſpiced, immoderate taking of two much ſtrong Wine, too much Letchery, Fear, a Stroak or Fall upon the Liver ſide, alſo hot Medicines applyed without reaſon thereto; as *Fabricius Hildanus* reports of one who having a cold diſtemper of the Stomach had Emplaſters and hot Oyntments of Pepper, Cardamons, Oyl of Cloves, and the like applyed to him, by which means the Inflamation of the Liver was encreaſed: for the Liver covereth the Stomach, and the Medicines which are applied to the Stomach, do firſt touch the Liver with their Vertue.

Cupping Glaſſes applied to the Region of the Liver wil do the ſame, of which *Fabricius Hildanus* brings an Example concerning one who bled at the Noſe, to whom he applied great Cupping Glaſſes upon the Region of the Liver which ſtayed the blood; but a great Inflamation of the Liver followed.

The Signs of this Diſeaſe are many according to *Galen* and other Authors, which we ſhal lay down ſeverally, becauſe many errors are committed in the diſcovery thereof.

The Firſt Sign is Heavineſs in the right Hypochondrion which comes from the Repletion and Diſtention of the Liver; becauſe being of its own nature large and very compact, if it be filled with much Humor it wil grow very heavy: which the Patient apprehends when he turneth from one ſide to the other.

The Second Sign is Pain, which ſomtimes is perceived in one place, ſomtimes in two or three: in the Region of the Liver there is a weighty Pain; ſomtimes it is very extending in the lower Ribs when the Inflamation reacheth to the Ligaments of the Liver which are faſtned to the Ribs: ſomtimes the Pain is communicated to the Throat, by the continuation of the Membranes, which have conſent with the Membrane which covers the Liver.

The Third Sign is a Feaver, which is commonly at night, and is more or leſs ſharp according to the Humor offending: for in a Chollerick Inflamation it is moſt burning; but in a Flegmatick, gentle; and in a Sanguine Inflamation, moderate between both.

The Fourth Sign is Difficulty of Breathing, becauſe the Liver is tyed to the Diaphragma, or Midriff; and therefore by its weight forceth it downwards, as alſo preſſeth it with greatneſs and ſwelling; ſo that both wayes the free motion of the Diaphragma is hindered.

The aforeſaid Signs are Univerſal or proper to declare the Diſeaſe: there are many other equivocal Signs, which alſo do much avail to the knowledge of the Diſeaſe: As a dry Cough, a hard Pulſe unequal, and like a Saw: the colour of the Tongue firſt red, and then black: great Loathing of meat: unquenchable Thirſt: vomiting of Choller, and ſomtimes of Flegm: a pale Colour of the whol Body tending to the Jaundice, yellowiſh: red and flaming Urin, which is ſharp: when the Patient lieth with his face upwards, he is more at eaſe than when he lieth on either ſide; becauſe when he lieth upon the right ſide the Liver is preſſed upon by the Stomach; when he lieth upon the left, it is extended by its own weight, hanging down; the Belly is bound, by reaſon of the Heat which conſumeth al the moiſture of the Chylus matter: Somtimes it is looſe, namely, when a great weakneſs of the Liver is joyned with the inflamation; for then the Excrements are ſent forth moiſt like the Water wherein Fleſh hath been waſhed.

The Signs of the Differences are theſe; If the Gibbous or Convex part of the Liver be affected, there is a Tumor to be felt in the right Hypochondrion, and it makes the figure of the Liver like a half Moon: there is great pain in the Breathing, and it reacheth to the right ſide of the Throat, ſo that it ſeemeth to be pulled down: There is a greater Cough and Difficulty of Breathing, and greater weight.

But if the Hollow part of the Liver be affected, the Tumor is not ſo eaſily felt; but becauſe as I have ſaid, one part of the Liver cannot be inflamed, but the other muſt alſo ſuffer; when the part is touched and preſſed down, ſome pain is perceived.

Moreover, Becauſe this part lieth upon the Stomach, there is a greater loathing of Meat, vomiting, thirſt, and loolneſs of the Belly, from the food corrupted in the Stomach which is diſtempered by the neerneſs of the Liver to it.

The Signs of the Cauſes are theſe,

If the Inflamation come from pure Blood, there is either a perfect Red or duskiſh colour in the face; the Pulſe is great, ſoft, and wateriſh; the Urin is red and thick; the Body is full of fleſh: there is ſweetneſs in the mouth, the party is yong and hath fed high.

If Choller predominate, the Face is yellow, the Pulſe ſwift, hard, and unequal, the Urin thin and very yellow, ſomtimes flaming: the Body is lean and thin: the Eyes hollow: the Mouth bitter: there is vomiting of Choller, and Cauſes that bred Choller went afore.

But becauſe the Inflamation of the Muſcles of the Abdomen or Belly is very like the Inflamation of the Liver, there we muſt diſtinguiſh them by their proper Signs.

In

In the Inflamation of the Muſcles of the Abdomen, the skin is ſo extended that if you lay hold of it you cannot move it; the humors of the ſtreight Muſcles are long and over the whol belly comprehending the Navel: and the inflamation of other Muſcles is in the form of them. On the contrary, the Inflamation of the Liver is in the ſhape of the part affected; and if you lay hold on the Muſcles, they yeild and the Tumor is ſomwhat deeper.

Moreover, The color of the whol Body is of much concernment for the diſtinguiſhing of theſe Diſeaſes; for in the Inflamation of the Muſcles, it is freſh, and almoſt in its Natural condition; but in the Inflamation of the Liver, it is pale, yellow, and like the Jaundice.

There is a famous Example of this in *Galen*, 5. *de loc. aff. cap.* 7. of one *Steſianus*, who when he was judged by other Phyſitians to have an Impoſthume in the Liver; *Galen* being ſent for, at the firſt view of his face, preſently ſaid that there was none, and ſearching his Belly, he found it in the Abdomen: He judged upon this ground, Becauſe the Patient had not his face ſo diſcolored, as uſeth to be in the Inflamation and Impoſthume of the Liver.

The like Example is in *Valeriola*, Lib. 4. Obſ. Cap. 5. of a certain Woman which was thought by another Phyſitian to have a Phlegmonous Tumor in the Liver. But ſaith he, *When ſhe ſent for me, I judged it not to be ſo, but in the Muſcles.* And a little after he ſaith, *When I firſt came, I touched the place, and I found a long ſwelling in the right Hypochondria, down to the very Navel; the Face was red, freſh, and of a Roſie color, mixed with white, continuing all the time of the Diſeaſe in the ſame ſtate; the Urine was very good, both in color, and in reſpect of the things contained: From all which it appeared, that not the Liver, but the Muſcles over it were affected; for when the Liver is affected, there is alwaies a diſcoloring of the face.* For *Galen* ſaith, that he knew many diſeaſed in their Livers by their colors, Lib. 5. de loc. aff. cap. 7. for the color in ſuch is commonly yellowiſh, white, and inclining ſomtimes to green.

Moreover, It is troubleſom to diſtinguiſh a Pleuriſie from an Inflamation of the Liver: as you may obſerve in *Galen*, 5. de loc. aff. cap. 7. in his Hiſtory of *Siculus* the Phyſitian, who was deceived in himſelf, ſuppoſing that he had a Pleuriſie; becauſe he had a Feaver, little and frequent breathing, a ſmal Cough, and a pain neer the lower Ribs: but *Galen* by his ſtools, which were like water wherein fleſh had been waſhed, knew that his Liver was inflamed, for ſuch a flux doth ſhew that the Liver is greatly diſordered. But this ſign cannot alwaies diſtinguiſh a Pleuriſie from an Inflamation of the Liver. For as *Galen* teacheth in the place cited, ſuch kind of moiſt and bloody ſtools come only when the Liver is inflamed, when it is alſo very weak, otherwiſe one ſign of the Liver inflamed is (by *Galen*) coſtiveneſs. Therefore when the Liver is not weak, you muſt look for other ſigns, by which you may diſtinguiſh them.

If then the Inflamation be in the Pleura towards the right Hypochondria, the pain wil be vehement and pricking, the breath more difficult, there will be no change of color, the Cough will be greater, and not dry, but commonly (eſpecially in the encreaſe of the Diſeaſe) with bloody Spittle, ſomwhat at leaſt diſcolored; and laſtly, the Pulſe will be hard, and like a Saw: But in the Inflamation of the Liver, the pain is leſs, joyned with heavineſs, the color is yellowiſh, there is a dry Cough now and then, the Pulſe is not ſo hard; and laſtly, there is a Tumor in the right Hypochondrion.

And if the Inflamation be in the Meſentery, the Tumor will appear beneath the Region of the Liver, there will be no change of color in the Face, the ſtools will be moiſt, in which at firſt there wil be thin and unconcocted Matter, afterwards concocted, in thoſe of whom there is hope of recovery.

The Prognoſtick of this Diſeaſe, is thus made:

Every Inflamation of the Liver is very dangerous, and for the moſt part deadly. And if it doth not kill preſently, it ends in a Dropſie, or Atrophy, or Conſumption. All the hope of recovery is from the ſtrength, as *Galen*, 10. meth. cap. 5.

An Inflamation of the Gibbous or bunchy part of the Liver, is more dangerous than that which is in the hollow part, by reaſon it is neerer the Heart, the Midriff, and hollow Vein.

An Inflamation coming from Choller, is more dangerous than that which cometh of pure Blood, becauſe then the Feaver is ſtronger, and other ſymptomes greater.

The Hiccoughs in an Inflamation of the Liver are evil, *Hipp.* Aph. 17. Sect. 7. For it ſhews the encreaſe of the Inflamation, and malignity, which doth by conſent diſturb the Stomach.

A Looſneſs joyned with an Inflamation of the Liver, is deadly, except the Matter voided be concocted, and the flux be Critical.

If the Inflamation of the Liver cannot be diſcuſſed, as it ſeldom can, and if the Faculty be ſtrong, it turns into an Impoſthume; otherwiſe it turns into a Gangrene or Sphacelus. The Suppuration for the moſt part wil be within twenty daies. And this Impoſthume is very dangerous, and few eſcape thereof. But if it be little, and only in one part of the Liver, and the matter white and even which comes forth by Urine or Stool, they eſcape. Alſo a Tumor in the Convex, or outward part of the Liver, which appears in the Skin as it were movable, may be opened with an actual Cautery;

and if the Matter coming forth be pure and white, they escape, for the Matter is contained in the Tunicle; but if it be like Lees of Oyl, they die.

After the Impostthume is broken, if the Patient live, there remains an Ulcer, which is very troublesom to cure; and if it be not superficial, it causeth a Dropsie or Marasmus.

Also an Ulcer may be in the Liver from sharp Humors that corrode it, especially if they be cholerick, and spread through the substance of the Liver, which putrifying by degrees, get a malignant and venemous quality.

The knowledg of this Ulcer, which comes from the sharpness of the Humors without Inflamation afore going, is difficult. But it may be known by some signs. And first, there is an ulcerous pain in the right Hypochondrion, and the Patient waxeth lean; and if it be in the hollow part of the Liver, there are stools with Pus or Matter, and sometimes with Blood, and pain of the Guts by reason of the sharpness of the Humors, like a Dysentery, which is distinguished from this Disease in this, Because there is a weight and pricking about the Liver. And sometimes Authors have observed that pieces of the Liver have been voided by stool. But if the Ulcer be in the gibbous or outward part, the Water is Mattery without any distemper of the Reins or Bladder. There is a final Feaver in the encrease of the Disease, which turneth into an Hectick. The color is yellow, and sometimes there are final pustuls which come from the adustion of Humors in the Face. There is a loathing of Meat, and especially of flesh, a stinking breath, and often fainting.

Concerning the Prognostick, It bringeth a lingering Hectick Feaver.

And if the Ulcer be not small, superficial, and cured betimes, it is deadly.

Those Exulcerations of the Liver which follow Inflamations and Impostthumes, are more dangerous than those that arise without them.

The Cure of the Inflamation of the Liver, is the same with that of the Inflamation of the Stomach aforementioned, and chiefly in respect of Phlebotomy, Purges and altering Remedies are to be given in the beginning of the Disease.

You must also give often Clysters, such as were prescribed in the Inflamation of the Stomach.

But afterwards, cooling, clensing, and opening Juleps, such as were described in the Chapter aforementioned, bewaring that they be not too sweet, for by sweet things, the Liver being inflamed, grows larger, as *Trallian* teacheth, Lib. 4. Cap. 10.

Let his Drink be the Decoction of Barley, Dog-tooth, with a little Liquoris, Syrup of Violets, or Maiden-hair.

In the Decoction you may ad to the former Juleps, the Roots of Smallage and Parsley, the Leaves of Agrimony, Maiden-hair, &c.

And afterwards Turpentine, washed Agrimony, or Parsley Water given twice or thrice, takes away the reliques of the Disease.

But if the Disease be stubborn, and last long, you must prescribe an Apozeme of opening and loosening things, thus:

Take of *the Roots of Smallage and Parsley, of each two ounces: new Polypody of the Oak three ounces: the Leaves of Agrimony, Burnet, Ceterach, Maiden-hair, of each one handful: Annis, Fennel, and Parsley seeds, of each one dram: Chamomel and Violet flowers, of each one pugil: clean Senna one ounce: Boyl them to a pint and a Quarter. Dissolve in the straining Rhubarb infused with a little Lavender in Succory Water, two drams: simple Syrup of Vinegar four ounces. Make an Apozeme for four Doses, to be taken every other day.*

Outwardly, many Topicks are good to be used the whol time of the Disease. And in the beginning, Epithems, Liniments, and cooling Plaisters, such as stop Fluxes, made thus:

Take of *Endive, Succory, Sorrel, Plantane, and Rose Water, of each three ounces: Vinegar of Roses one ounce: the pouder of the Electuary of the three Sanders, one dram and an half: Camphire half a scruple. Make an Epithem to be applied warm to the Region of the Liver.* Or,

Take of *the Leaves of both Endive, Succory, Plantane, Bugloss, Burrage, and Water-lilly flowers, of each one handful: Roman Wormwood half a handful: red Roses two pugils: red and yellow Sanders, of each two drams: boyl them to one pint and an half. Dissolve in the straining half a pint of Rose Water; Rose Vinegar one ounce; Camphire one scruple. Make an Epithem.*

If you desire to cool more, you may ad the Juyces of the aforesaid Herbs.

Take of *Oyl of Roses two ounces: Oyl of Wormwood half an ounce: mix them and wash them with Oxycrate, and anoint the place therewith after the use of the Epithem.* Or,

Take of *Oyl of Roses, and of Myrtles, of each two ounces; the Juyce of Endive and Succory, of each one ounce: Vinegar half an ounce: boyl them to the Consumption of the Juyces: then add the pouder of red Sanders, and Roses, of each one dram: as much Wax as will make an Unguent.*

Or

Or you may uſe the Oyntment of Roſes alone, or *Galens* cooling Oyntment waſhed with Oxycrate.

In the progreſs of the Diſeaſe, when the Feaver and pain decreaſe, you muſt mix Diſſolvers with Coolers, either in equal, or unequal proportion, as the Diſeaſe grows neerer to the ſtate or declination, theſe muſt be wiſely compoſed. But that you may know what to make them of, we wil ſhew you ſome Examples.

Take of *Oyl of Roſes two ounces: Oyl of Wormwood one ounce: Oyl of Chamomel half an ounce: Pouder of the three Sanders one dram: Spicknard half a dram: Wax, as much as will make a Liniment.*

Take of *clean Dates ten: whol Raiſons three ounces: boyl them in Oxycrate; then beat them with Chamomel, Melilot, and red Roſe Flowers, of each one pugil: Spicknard and Schœnanth, of each one dram: Smallage and Parſley ſeeds, of each half a dram: Endive and Purſlain, of each one dram and an half: Oyl of Wormwood and Roſes, of each one ounce: Barley meal two ounces. Make a Cataplaſm.*

Or you may make one not ſo hot, thus:

Take of *Barley meal three ounces: red Sanders two ounces: Oyl of Roſes three ounces. Mix them with the Decoction of Endive and Succory, for a Cataplaſm.*

In the declination, when the Feaver is gone, you muſt uſe Diſſolvers, with Emollients, leſt any hardneſs ſhould remain, and ſome Aſtringents to ſtrengthen the part.

Take of *Marſh-mallow Roots three ounces: Cypreſs Roots, and Calamus Aromaticus, of each half an ounce: Mallows, Violets, and Agrimony, of each one handful: both the Wormwoods, of each half a handful: Fœnugreek, Annis, Fennel, and Line ſeed, of each half an ounce: Chamomel, Melilot, and Dill flowers, of each one pugil: Spicknard, Schœnanth, and Maſtich, of each one dram and an half. Make a Decoction of them, and foment the part affected with it, ſomwhat hot.*

Take of *Oyl of Chamomel, Lillies, and ſweet Almonds, of each one ounce: Oyl of Wormwood and Spike, of each half an ounce: the Pouder of Schœnanth, Roſata Novella, and Wormwood, of each one dram: Wax ſo much as will make a Liniment to be uſed in the declination of the Diſeaſe.*

If the hardneſs of the part continue, it will be good to add to the former Liniment, Gum Ammoniacum diſſolved in Vinegar. Or this Plaiſter:

Take of *the Emplaiſter of Melilot and Diachylon with Flowerdeluce, of each one ounce. Mix them, and ſpread them upon Leather, cut like a half Moon, to be laid to the part.* Or,

Take of *Gum Ammoniacum diſſolved in Vinegar one ounce: Labdanum and Maſtich, of each two drams: Oyl of Wormwood and Wax, of each as much as will make a Plaiſter.*

If the Inflamation tend to ſuppuration, which is known by encreaſe of the Feaver, and the pain, according to *Hipp.* Aph. 47. Lib. 2. there is great danger, and few eſcape in this caſe. Yet you muſt further the Suppuration with the aforeſaid Emplaiſters, which will diſſolve the Matter which will be diſſolved, and ſuppurate that which will be ſuppurated or ripened; as alſo with mollifying Cataplaſms, and you muſt give inwardly Chicken Broth wherein Mallows, Marſh-mallows, Figgs, and Prunes have been boyled.

After the Impoſthume is broken, if white Matter flow by ſtool or urine, you muſt cleanſe with Barley Water, or Whey with Honey of Roſes, or with thoſe Remedies which are preſcribed for the Cure of the Ulcer of the Stomach. But if the Suppuration tend outwardly, you muſt open it with a red hot Inciſion Knife, according to *Hippocrates*. And if the Matter come forth white and concocted, there is hope of Cure; but if red, filthy, and ſtinking, the Patient is neer death.

Chap. 3. *Of the Stoppage, or Obſtruction of the Liver.*

THe Obſtruction of the Liver is a preternatural cloſing or ſtraightneſs of the Branches of the Vena Porta, and Cava, that is, of the Gate and Hollow Vein, and ſomtimes of the ſubſtance of the Liver, hindering the paſſage of Natural Humors, and the diſtribution of the Nouriſhment, coming from ſome Matter which filleth their Cavities.

Hence it is that Obſtruction is an Organical Diſeaſe, namely, in the way and paſſage obſtructed, which hinders the diſtribution of Blood for the Nouriſhment of the parts. Theſe waies or paſſages are not only the Veins which are diſperſed through the whol ſubſtance of the Liver; but alſo the Pores and inſenſible Paſſages, with which the whol ſubſtance of the Liver, and alſo of other parts, is very full; which being ſhut up by a preternatural Humor; neither can the heat of the Liver be cooled, nor can the thin vaporous Excrements be evacuated.

The Matter that Cauſeth the Obſtructions, commonly is a groſs Excrement, viſcous and clammy, which being not able to paſs freely, ſticks in the paſſage, and is more and more thickned by the heat of the part, ſo that the longer Obſtructions continue, the worſe they are.

Somtimes plenty of Humors cauſe an Obſtruction, as *Galen* ſheweth, 10. meth. cap. 2. in theſe words, *Of Obſtructions ſome come of abundance of Humors, and ſome from the Quality, as when they are groß or clammy; Blood letting is the beſt Remedy againſt thoſe which come from plenty, and the uſe of attenuating things is beſt againſt thoſe that come of Quality.*

This Obſtruction which comes from plenty of Humors, happens chiefly in the Veſſels and their cavities when being too full, they are ſo diſtended, that they cannot contract themſelves for the ſending forth of the Matter contained: As we may obſerve by the Bladder when it is ſtretched out by long retention of too much Urin, that it cannot contract it ſelf; from whence there comes a ſtoppage of Urin, or difficulty of voiding thereof.

Not only Humors, but alſo ſomtimes many groſs Vapors, which cannot eaſily be diſcuſſed (becauſe the way is not open, as in the Chollick) may be the Cauſe of Obſtruction, as *Galen* teacheth, 3. de loc. aff. which Cauſes are very rare, and abſolutely denyed of ſome.

The Humors which ſtoppeth with its thickneſs is chiefly Flegm, which wil eaſily grow groſs and clammy. Melancholly is next, which by its coldneſs, thickneſs, and droſſineſs, may cauſe Obſtructions: Alſo Blood may do the ſame by its Quantity and thickneſs: And laſtly, Choller ſtaying long in the Liver grows thick, and breeds dangerous Obſtructions. The Antecedent and Principal Cauſes, are al things that produce thick and clammy Humors, and thick and cloudy Air, Meats of groſs Juyce, viſcous, hard of Concoction, and diſtribution, aſtringent, cold, and not fit for to be eaten, as Pears, Quinces, Services, Medlars, Muſhrooms, Cheeſe, Pulſe, Peaſe or Beans, Beef and Pork, ſlymy Fiſh, and dryed in the ſmoak, Bread not wel baked, Rapes, Cheſnuts, thick, red, and aſtringent Wine, and muddy Ale.

Alſo an evil Diſpoſition of the Liver, eſpecially a cold diſtemper, which may alſo produce Obſtructions from good Juyce, as when it doth not wel Concoct, but turns the meat into a ſalt tartarous and mucilaginous or ſlymy Matter.

Alſo the Diſtemper of the Stomach may be a Cauſe of Obſtructions, when it begets too crude a Chyle, which cannot after be wel ordered by the Liver, becauſe the fault of the firſt Concoction is not amended by the ſecond.

The Signs of this Diſeaſe are to be divided into divers ſorts, ſome ſignifie the kind of the Diſeaſe, others the part affected, and others the cauſe that produce it.

The Signs that ſhew the kind of the Diſeaſe are common to al natural parts that are ſubject to Obſtructions: for they ſhew only Obſtructions lying in the lower Belly, and theſe therefore wil ſerve for the knowledg of the Obſtructions of the Spleen, and Metentery eſpecially.

Theſe Signs ſhew that there are Obſtructions in the ſaid parts,

The Excrements of the Belly being out of their natural condition, eſpecially when they are moiſt, white, chylous, or bloody: white Urine, thin and watery, and as it were ſtrained, becauſe the thicker parts cannot paſs through by reaſon of the Obſtructions, but only the pure water comes through unmixed; and it may be yellow if there be heat.

Difficulty of Breathing, eſpecially when the Patient walketh faſt, or goes up a hill, or pair of ſtairs, becauſe the Parts obſtructed do draw the Midriff down-wards, and hinder its free motion; the Face is pale; there is leanneſs and dulneſs over the whol body; the Pulſe is unequal; and laſtly, there is ſuch a ſenſe of weight in the Hypochondria as they who have been feeding very hard; Therefore *Hippocrates*, 4. *de victus ratione in acut.* calls that heavines a fulneſs of the Hypochondria, attributing that Diſeaſe to the Hypochondria, which properly belongs to the Stomach: for as often as the Spleen and Liver are filled with evil Humors, and ſwel, they are preſſed and feel a heavineſs, after the leaſt eating of the lighteſt meats, as they who have over-gorged themſelves. This Sign doth ſo ſurely declare the Obſtruction of the Hypochondria, although there be neither pain nor apparent ſwelling, that *Proſper Marrianus* in his Comment upon the aforeſaid Book of *Hippocrates*, affirmeth, That he hath concluded that the Bowels were obſtructed, before ever he handled the Hypochondria.

The ſtretching of the right Hypochondrion ſheweth the part affected, together with the other ſigns, and ſomtimes pain, that is heavy and dul, which encreaſeth after meat, eſpecially if exerciſe immediately follow; ſomtimes a dry Cough; difficulty of Breathing by reaſon of the neerneſs of the Diaphragma, and a greater weight of that part than of any other.

The Signs of the Cauſes are if it come from Humors, the pain is more heavy, extending and fixed: if from Wind, it is ſharper and more moveable: if from cold Humors, there is more ſenſe of weight in the right ſide, the Face is more pale, there is no Feaver nor thirſt; there was a cold and thick diet without exerciſe that preceded: if it comes from hot Humors, there is leſs weight, more thirſt, the Face

Face is yellow by reaſon of Choller, or red by reaſon of Blood, there is a Feaver and a pricking pain ſomtimes, and hot diet went before.

The Prognoſtick of this Diſeaſe is to be made thus,

A New Obſtruction is eaſily taken away, an Old hardly.

An Obſtruction of the Liver, except it be ſpeedily and wholly taken away, uſeth to bring many Evils, namely, Putrefaction of Humors, Feavers, Inflamations, divers Fluxes of the Belly, conſtant and vehement, becauſe the nouriſhment can paſs to the parts: the Chollick, Jaundice, Evil Habit of body, Dropſie, Scirrhus, and other infinite Diſeaſes, ſo that *Avicenna* calls Obſtructions the Mother of Diſeaſes.

An Obſtruction made by Humors, is worſe than that which comes of Wine.

That which comes of Crude and Flegmatick Humors, or of Wind, is ſomtimes cured by a Feaver; becauſe the Heat doth diſcuſs the Flatus, or Wind; makes Flegm thin, and more apt to flow.

The Cure of an Obſtruction is to be begun with an univerſal Evacuation of the whol body; by a Potion agreeable to the nature of the Diſeaſe: Afterwards if there be ſigns of Plethory or fulneſs, and if the body be not very thin, you muſt draw blood out of the Liver Vein in the Right Arm.

Then preſcribe this Apozeme,

Take of *Smallage, Parſley, and Fennel Roots, infuſed a whol night in white Wine, of each one ounce: the Roots of the greater Celandine, two ounces: Fearn Roots, Elicampane barks, the Roots of Capars, the inward bark of an Aſh, and Tamariſk, of each half an ounce: Wormwood, Agrimony, Maiden-hair, Germander, the tops of Saint Johns-wort, and the Leſſer Centaury, of each one handful: Smallage, Parſley, Annis, and Fennel ſeeds, of each half an ounce: clean Senna, Polypody of the Oak, and the Kernels of Carthamus ſeeds, of each two ounces: Epythimum, or Dodder of Thyme, one ounce: Ginger and Cloves, of each one dram: the flowers of Tamariſk, Marigolds, and Red Fitches, of each one pugil: make a Decoction to a Pint and a quarter, diſſolve in the ſtraining of the Syrup of the Five Roots, and of Roſes Solutive, of each two ounces: make an Apozeme, clarified and aromatized with two drams of Cinnamon for four mornings draughts, adding to every Doſe one dram of Cream of Tartar, ſalt of Wormwood and Tamariſk, of each half a ſcruple.*

In the laſt Doſe (if the firſt hath not ſufficiently purged) diſſolve of the Electuary of Citrons Solutive and Diacarthamum, of each one dram and an half.

Somtimes we put white Wine in the Decoction before mentioned. Somtimes a little Vinegar, according to the nature of the Patient.

If the Patient be dainty, and will not take an Apozeme, inſtead thereof you ſhal give theſe Broths,

Take of *Smallage, Parſley, and Sparagus Roots, of each half an ounce: Agrimony, Hyſop, Maidenhair, of each one handful: Criſtal of Tartar one dram: boyl them with a Chicken or a neck of Mutton, make Broth for nine dayes together every morning.*

The Criſtal of Tartar diſſolved in new made Broth and ſtrained is better, for when the Decoction is cold, for the moſt part it congealeth again, and is ſeparated from it: and when you give it in the Broth, you muſt ſtir it about well with a Silver Spoon afore it be taken, or you will leave the greater part in the bottom of the Diſh.

Every other day, infuſe in his Broth, half an ounce of Senna and one dram of Annis ſeeds.

As long as he taketh theſe Medicines, and after, as often as need requires, let the Region of the Liver be fomented every morning one hour before he taketh his Broth, and every evening one hour before Supper, with this following Fomentation:

Take of *Marſh-mallow, and Briony Roots, of each one ounce and an half: the Roots of Danewort, Cypreſs, Eryngus, the Barks of the Roots of Capars, and the middle rind of Tamariſk, of each one ounce: the Leaves of Mallows, Marſh-mallows, Violets, Agrimony, Germander, Mints, and Wormwood, of each one handful: Lin-ſeed, Fœnugreek, and Juniper Berries, of each half an ounce: Coriander ſeeds, and yellow Sanders, of each three drams: Broom, Elder, Chamomel, and Melilot flowers, of each one pugil: boyl them all in two parts of Chalybeate Water, and one of white Wine, added in the end: and when it is ſtrained, add half a pint of Vinegar: Foment the part as aforeſaid.*

After the Fomentation, let the part be anointed with the following Oyntment.

Take of *Oyl of Lillies and Capars, of each two ounces: the Juyce of the Roots of Briony and Smallage, of each three ounces: Boyl them till the Juyces are conſumed, adding the Oyntment of Marſh-mallows, and Gum Ammoniack diſſolved in Vinegar, and ſtrained, of each one ounce: Carrot ſeeds, and Spicknard, of each one dram and an half: yellow Wax as much as will make an*

Unguent.

Unguent. Uſe it as aforeſaid, adding in the time of anointing, a little Vinegar of Roſes.

After the uſe of theſe Remedies, this Opiate following is good to wear away the reliques of the Obſtructions, and recover ſtrength to the part.

Take of *Conſerve of Wormwood, Maiden-hair, and the Flowers of Tamariſk, of each one ounce: the Conſerve of Elicampane Roots, and Citron peels candied, of each half an ounce: one candied Myrobalan: candied Nutmegs three drams: Confection Alkermes two drams: the Pouder of Diarrhodon Abbatis, one dram: Salt of Wormwood, and Tamariſk, of each two ſcruples: Saffron one ſcruple: Amber-greece half a ſcruple: with the Syrup of Citrons make an Opiate, of which let him take the bigneſs of a Cheſnut every morning two hours before meat, and drinking after it, a little Hippocras.*

Warm Baths are alſo very good, in which ſoftening and opening things have boyled.

If the Obſtructions are very ſtubborn, theſe following Pills are very good.

Take of *the beſt Aloes infuſed in the Juyce of Wormwood very well, half an ounce: Gum Ammoniack diſſolved in Vinegar and ſtrained, three drams: Myrrh diſſolved in warm Wine, and ſtrained, two drams: the pouder of the three Sanders, and Cryſtal of Tartar, of each one ſcruple: Agarick newly made into Troches, and of the beſt Rhubarb, of each two drams: the Salt of Wormwood and Tamariſk, of each half a dram: Saffron half a ſcruple: With the Syrup of Roſes ſolutive, make a Maſs of Pills, of which let him take half a dram two hours before dinner twice in a week.*

Inſtead of the Apozeme aforeſaid, you may make an old Cock Broth, when the Obſtructions are old and ſtubborn.

Take of *Polypody of the Oak, and Carthamus ſeeds, of each one ounce and an half: the tops of Time and Epithimum, of each one pugil: Annis, Fennel, and Caraway ſeeds, of each two drams: clean Senna two ounces: Cryſtal of Tartar half an ounce: beat them, and fill the Belly of an old Cock therewith: boyl them in three parts of Water, and one of white Wine, till the fleſh of the Cock fall from the Bones. Make Broth, and let the Patient take it four mornings.*

Or (which is better) make a Decoction for one draught every day of the fourth part of the Ingredients.

To this Broth you may ad Herbs, and opening Roots in a ſmal quantity.

Quercetan commends exceedingly in his Diſpenſatory, the Compound Pouder of the Root of Cuckoo-pintle, to open Obſtructions; of which you may give two drams for divers daies together, in a convenient Decoction.

But of all Remedies, to take away old Obſtructions, Medicines made of Tartar, Vitriol, and Steel, are the beſt.

Of Tartar there is made Cryſtal, Salt, and Spirit, which are to be given in divers forms.

The uſe of Cryſtal of Tartar is formerly mentioned in the Apozeme, and Phyſick Broths, made either of a Chicken, or old Cock.

Concerning this Medicine, yong Phyſitians are to be admoniſhed, that it is of more force than it is commonly ſuppoſed to be, although we ſeldom obſerve it in Practice, by reaſon of the negligence of Apothecaries, the deceit of falſe Chymiſts, and vulgar Diſtillars, which ſtill Chymical Medicines to the Apothecaries, of which, few are good, but moſt adulterate.

The negligence of Apothecaries for the moſt part is, That they had rather buy Cryſtal of Tartar of ſuch fellows, than make it themſelves (though it be the eaſieſt of all) becauſe they ſell it cheaper than they themſelves can make it: for thoſe Impoſtors wil ſell a pound for ſeven pence, or eight pence, from which alone the Apothecaries might argue deceit, perceiving that they would be loſers in ſo telling, if it were rightly made.

The deceit lieth here, Thoſe Impoſtors put a little Tartar, and a great deal of Allum into their Decoctions; not becauſe Tartar is ſold dearer, but becauſe it yields but a little Cryſtal; but Allum will run all into Cryſtal. Hence it is that the Phyſitians are deceived of their intentions, becauſe Allum is aſtringent, which is contrary to the opening Faculty which they deſire.

Moreover, There is another wrong done to this Medicine, when it is made in a Braſs Kettle, which leaves a malignant quality upon the Medicine; for it is a known and vulgar ſaying among Apothecaries, You muſt not boyl ſharp things in Braſs Veſſels, becauſe they eaſily pierce, and attract a noxious Tincture from them. But the Cryſtals of Tartar are moſt ſharp, called by ſome *Acidum Tartari*, or the ſharpneſs of Tartar.

This Error is often made by Apothecaries; and almoſt all they who make this Cryſtal themſelves uſe Braſs Veſſels, ſo that I have ſeen ſome Tartar look Skie-colored from the Verdugreece which it hath taken from the Copper. Therefore Phyſitians ſhall do conſcienciouſly, honorably, and for the good of their Patients, if they cauſe their Apothecaries to make Cryſtal of Tartar themſelves, and in Glaſs, Iron, or Earthen Veſſels glaſſed.

The Salt of Tartar hath great power to open Obſtructions, and may well be mixed with Apozems,

Opiates,

Opiates, and opening Pills. But the chief uſe of it is in a looſening Ptiſan, or Barley Water, made of two drams of Senna, infuſed in eight ounces of cold Water, with one ſcruple, or half a dram of Salt of Tartar, by which the Tincture of the Senna will be powerfully extracted; ſo that this Ptiſan ſhal work better than any ordinary one; and continued many daies it takes away all Obſtructions: we have ſeen Quartan Agues cured, by the uſe of it fifteen daies together. If you fear the ſharpneſs of the Salt of Tartar, you may correct it with the Spirit of Sulphur, or of Vitriol, putting fifteen drops of Spirit, to half a dram of Salt.

You may find the uſe of the Spirit of Tartar in our Obſervations for the Cure of the Dropſie, under the Title of a Diuretical Spirit.

Of Vitriol, only the Oyl or Spirit is uſed in Apozemes, Syrups, and other Forms of Medicines.

This following Syrup, which is good againſt all Obſtructions of the Liver, Meſentery, and Veins, may be for an Example, by which, many through continual Feavers falling into evil Habits and Dropſies, have been perfectly cured.

Take of *the Roots of Smallage, Elicampane, Sparagus, Eringus, of each one ounce: Leaves of Agrimony, Ceterach, Maiden-hair, Dodder, Carduus, of each one handful: the tops of Sea Wormwood, and of the leſſer Centaury: of each half a handful: Winter Cherries one ounce: Spring Water ſix pints: boyl them till two pints of the ſtraining remain; in which diſſolve of the juyce of Succory, and Burnet refined, of each one pint: the juyce of Fumitory and Hops, of each ſix ounces: Fennel and Parſley juyce, of each three ounces: Vinegar of Squils one pint and an half: white Sugar ſix pound: make a Syrup, to which add of the Oyl of Vitriol as much as will make it ſharp; of which let the Patient take three ſpoonfuls before Break-faſt, and as much before Dinner and Supper.*

The Natural ſharp Baths ſhew the Efficacy of Vitriol, the uſe whereof is frequent and profitable in all Diſeaſes coming of Obſtructions.

But the Spirit of Vitriol mixed with the Salt or Spirit of Tartar, is much commended by the Chymiſts, and of them they make Tartar Vitriolate, and that rare mixture of Spirit of Vitriol, Tartar, and Treacle, which may be mixed with other openers.

Laſtly, There are divers Medicines made of Steel, both by Galeniſts, and Paracelſians, which plainly opening Obſtructions preſently, compel al men to uſe them, even thoſe who reject all Medicines made of Mettals, as Enemies to our Natures.

Theſe Medicines of Steel are made either in the Form of Wine, Syrups, Opiates, Pills, or Lozenges.

Steeled Wine is made thus:

Take of *the Filings of Steel four ounces: Eryngo Roots, and Elicampane, of each one ounce and an half: yellow Sanders one ounce: red Coral and ſhavings of Ivory, of each ſix drams: Cloves, Nutmeg, and Cinnamon, of each two drams: Flowers of Broom, Roſemary, and Epithimum, of each two pugils: the beſt white Wine ſix pints: ſteep them eight daies in Balneo Mariæ, or behind an Oven: then ſtrain them through a Hippocras bag, and let the Patient take two or three ounces every morning two hours before meat for fifteen daies, or more if need require.* Or make it thus:

Take of *Steel prepared with Sulphur, one ounce: Elicampane, and the middle rind of Tamariſk, of each half an ounce: Senna three ounces: Epithimum one ounce: Fæcula Brioniæ, and Cinnamon, of each two drams: Pouder of the three Sanders, one dram and an half: Agrimony Water, and white Wine, of each one pint: Infuſe them three daies in Balneo Mariæ. Let him take three or four ounces when it is ſtrained, three hours before meat.*

Commonly they uſe the Infuſion of Steel in white Wine, or Claret, for ordinary Drink, with much Water for two or three months together.

You may make a Syrup of Steel thus:

Take of *Filings of Steel ſteeped in Vinegar, two ounces: the inward rind of Tamariſk half an ounce: Ceterach half a handful: Cinnamon three drams: Wormwood and Agrimony Water, of each half a pint: white Wine one pint: Infuſe them ſix daies in a warm place: add to the ſtraining, Sugar one pound and an half: make a Syrup. Let the Patient take every morning two or three ounces.*

For the Preparation aforeſaid of Steel, you muſt ſteep it in Vinegar in the Sun, while the Vinegar is conſumed three times, and then grind it upon a Marble.

This Syrup may be made Purging, and better, if you diſſolve the Sugar with a pint of Water wherein three ounces of Senna, and half an ounce of Rhubarb have been ſteeped a whol night.

The Pouder of Steel is made thus, taken out of *Quercetan*'s Diſpenſatory.

Take of *the ſhavings of Steel, either commonly prepared, or with Sulphur, one ounce: the fæcula of the Root of Cuckow-pintle one dram and an half: Amber-greece half a dram (for the Poor, a*

Cordial

Cordial Species will ſerve inſtead of Ambergreece) Coral and Pearl prepared, of each two drams: Amber prepared and Cinnamon, of each four ſcruples: Sugar as much as is ſufficient to make a pleaſant Pouder, of which let him take half a ſpoonful, or two drams with Wine for fifteen dayes.

Of the ſame Pouder and Sugar diſſolve in Turnep Water and Confection Alkermes, may be made very pleaſant Lozenges to be taken as the former: Or,

Take of *Steel prepared with Brimſtone half an ounce: confection Alkermes two drams: Ambergreece one ſcruple: Sugar diſſolved in Roſe Water four ounces: make Lozenges: Let him take two drams every morning.*

Inſtead of the Pouder the Extract of Steel may be uſed, made in white Wine for thoſe who are dainty.

Divers Opiates are made alſo of Steel; theſe following are beſt.

Take of *the conſerve of the Flowers of Tamariſk and Maiden-Hair, of each one ounce and an half: conſerve of the Roots of Elicampane ſix drams: Steel prepared either with Sulphur or Vinegar one dram: Salt of Tamariſk one dram: Spirit of Vitriol half a ſcruple: with the ſyrup of candied Citrons make an Opiate, of which let him take two or three drams every morning*: Or,

Take of *the filings of Steel half a pound: white Wine one Pint and an half: mix them in a Glaſs, ſet it to the fire, let be boyled gently, ſtirring it up and down, till a ſcum ariſe, then take the frothy and fat part of the Steel which is ſeparated by the heat, and put it with Wine into another Glaſs: do thus four times, adding freſh Wine, heating, and ſeparating them, ſet it on a gentle fire, till it be hot and grow thick as Honey, keep it for your uſe, which is this,*

Take of *Steel ſo prepared ſix drams: Parſley and Carrot ſeeds, the ſpecies of Diacurcuma, and Diarrhodon Abbatis, of each one dram: Cinnamon half a dram: with clarified Honey make an Opiate, of which take three drams or half an ounce every morning.* Or,

Take of *Steel prepared with Brimſtone one ounce: the beſt Senna, Rhubarb, and Agarick, of each two drams: Diarrhodon Abbatis one dram: Saffron one ſcruple: with ſyrup of Roſes ſolutive, make an Opiate: of which let him take two drams every morning for fifteen dayes, three hours after meat.*

Pills of Steel are as good as the reſt, and they may be made thus,

Take of *Steel prepared with Brimſtone half an ounce: the beſt Aloes, Senna, Agarick and Rhubarb, of each one dram: Diarrhodon Abbatis half a dram: Saffron half a ſcruple: with ſyrup of Roſes ſolutive make a maſs of Pills: of one dram whereof make ſix guilded Pills, which give in the morning for fifeen dayes, three hours afore meat.*

To theſe Pills you may ad according to the kind of the Diſeaſe and the Patients occaſion, of Gum Ammoniack, Sagapenum, Opopanax, Myrrh, Gentian, Birth-wort, Maſtich, Nutmeg, and the like.

In all Medicines made of Steel, this is alwayes to be obſerved, That Exerciſe be uſed after them, as Walking, to make the ſtrength of the Medicine to go into the parts obſtructed: This Walking muſt be for two hours after; after which give a little Broth, in which opening Herbs and Roots have been boyled.

Beſides al theſe Remedies, the Chymiſts commend Mercurial Purges, of Mercurius dulcis, eſpecially given with ordinary Pills, or Extracts, becauſe Mercury doth violently penetrate, and open Obſtructions.

The *Bezoard* Mineral is very much commended, and given with Mercurius dulcis: You may give it thus made.

Take of *Bezoard mineral twelve grains: Mercurius dulcis ſix grains: conſerve of Roſes one or two drams: make a Bolus which muſt be given many dayes.*

If there be an Obſtruction of the Liver in a Chollerick body, with a hot and dry diſtemper of the part, then muſt you give cooling or temperate Openers, which ſhal be ſhewed in the Cure of Flatus Hypochondriacus, mentioned among the Diſeaſes of the Spleen.

For his ordinary drink let him take Water and ſmal Wine wherein Steel hath been infuſed: Or, a weak Decoction of Tamariſk, Agrimony, Ceterach, Maiden-hair, Burnet, all or ſome with Wine,

Some commend the Infuſion of the Wood againſt the Stone called Lignum Nephriticum for ordinary drink: Others the Decoction of Eglentine or Sweet-bryer which opens very powerfully, and ſtrengtheneth; and they ſay that many have been Cured of deſparate Diſeaſes by that alone.

But the Infuſion of the filings of Steel made in white Wine, or thin red Wine, doth open better mixed with the aforeſaid Waters, or with ordinary Water: for by this Medicine alone many Virgins have been Cured of the Green Sickneſs, and this Wine wil work better, if they take every morning two ounces of cleer Wine, beſides the ordinary drink.

CHAP.

Chap. 4. *Of the Jaundice.*

THe Jaundice is a yellow color of the whol Body, coming of Choller, ſpread over all the Skin.

It is therefore a Symptome of the Quality changed. And now preſently, that vulgar difficulty which is controverted by almoſt all Writers, offers it ſelf; namely, That the yellow color in the Cornea, doth immediately hurt the Sight, making all objects appear yellow. To which (that I may anſwer in a word, without circumſtances) I ſay, That it is a diſeaſe in the encreaſe of Number; for ſince the Cornea ought to be void of all color, that it may let the Species of Objects paſs through pure and unchanged, if it have any preternatural color, it hath a Diſeaſe in the encreaſe of Number, that is, more than what is neceſſary to the Natural Conſtitution thereof.

Authors do make two ſorts of Jaundice; Yellow, and Black. The Black proceeds from the Spleen and is very rare: therefore here treating only of the Diſeaſes of the Liver, we will ſpeak only of the Yellow Jaundice.

The ſpreading of Choller upon the Skin, comes from many Cauſes; which may be reduced to three Heads: namely, An Evil Diſpoſition of the Liver; An Obſtruction of the Bag that contains the Gall; And the malignity of the Chollerick Humor.

The Evil Diſpoſition of the Liver is divers; as Diſtemper, Inflamation, Obſtruction, Schirrus, and whatſoever may ſo weaken the part, that Excrementitious Choller cannot be ſeparated from the Blood, but is with it diſtributed through the whol Body.

The Obſtruction of the Bag or Cyſtis, which contains the Gall, hinders the paſſage of it into the Guts, whereby it remains in the Liver, and goes from thence with the Blood into the whol Body. This Obſtruction is either from groſs Flegm, or Choller abounding; ſomtimes from little ſtones which are often bred in the Bag of Gall; which may alſo be made narrow in the Paſſage, by the compreſſion of ſome part nigh unto it, which is inflamed or ſchirrous.

The Evil of the Chollerick Humor conſiſts, either in the great quantity thereof, which cannot be regulated by Nature, nor be ſeparated from the Maſs of Blood, or which ſo filleth the Bag of the Gall, that it cannot contract it ſelf to expel it; or it conſiſts in an evil quality, which by corrupting of the Humors, doth hinder their due Evacuation, or ſtirs up Nature ſuddenly to caſt it forth, as you may obſerve in a Critical or Symptomatical Jaundice. This Corruption happens in continual Chollerick Feavers; as alſo after Poyſon is taken, or from the biting of ſome venemous Creature, by which the whol Blood is turned into Choller.

The Signs of the Yellow Jaundice are manifeſt; namely, a yellow color through the whol Body, eſpecially in the white of the Eyes. Alſo an itching, and lazineſs, bitterneſs of the Tongue, ſomtimes Chollerick Vomitings, and Hiccoughs.

The Signs of the Cauſes are to be taken from their proper Fountains; for if the diſtemper of the Liver be hot, this Diſeaſe comes from Inflamation, Obſtruction, Schirrus, or the like: the knowledg of which is to be taken from their proper Chapters.

Theſe things properly ſhew the Obſtruction of the Bag of the Gall, white Excrements, and a Belly bound through the want of Choller, which uſeth to make the Excrements yellow, or red, and to ſtir up the Expulſive Faculty of the Guts like a Clyſter. The Urine is very yellow, inclining to red and if you put a Linnen clout therein, it will dye it yellow.

If it come from the malignity of the Chollerick Humor, the Excrements of the Belly are high colored, and alſo the Urine, eſpecially if it follow a putrid Feaver, when the Jaundice is a Symptome, and then after the coming of the Jaundice the Feaver remains: but if it be critical, the Feaver ceaſeth, and the Excrements with the Urine are wel colored. The External Cauſes, as Poyſon, and venemous bitings may be declared by the Patient, and thoſe about him.

The Prognoſtick of the Jaundice is various, according to the variety of Cauſes.

That is more Curable which comes from the Obſtruction of the Bag containing the Gall, becauſe its paſſages are neerer the Guts, and the Matter cleaving thereto, is eaſily ſent into them, provided that the Obſtruction come not from a ſtone, which becauſe it cannot be diſſolved, renders the Diſeaſe incurable.

The Jaundice coming from an Inflamation or Schirrus of the Liver, is moſt dangerous; for one commonly ends in an Impoſthume, the other in a Dropſie.

They who in a Feaver, have the Jaundice before the ſeventh day, are deſperate, *Hipp.* Aph. 62. Sect. 4. againſt which Aphoriſm, there is another of, *Hippocrates* oppoſed, which is in 4. *de victus ratione in acutis*, in theſe words: *In a Chollerick Feaver, if the Jaundice come before the ſeventh day, with chillneſs, the Diſeaſe is cured; but if it come without chillneſs, it is deadly.* There is

Reason for what he saith; for when in the third, fourth, and fifth day, the Crisis (or ground of Judgment) is healthful, if it be by Sweat, Urine, or Stool, why should not a Critical Jaundice fall upon those daies? And Experience from many allowed Authors doth testifie that the Jaundice doth often happen with safety before the seventh day. Now these Authors do interpret the aforesaid Aphorism thus; namely, That *Hippocrates* by the seventh day, understands any Critical day, and he mentioneth the seventh as the most noble day, and to be taken for all the rest. But that is a true Critical Day of Judgment, afore which, a ful Concoction of the Matter causing the Feaver, did appear.

The Cure of the Jaundice, is by taking away of the Causes: For if it come from a hot distemper of the Liver, or a Tumor in that part, you must consult with the Chapters afore mentioned for the Cure of them.

But that which comes upon acute Feavers, if it be Critical needs no Cure. Yet if it be Symptomatical, the Cure of it depends upon the Cure of the Disease upon which it depends.

That which comes from the Obstruction of the Cystis, or Bag of the Gall, is cured by taking away of the Obstruction, which may be conveniently done by the Remedies mentioned in the former Chapter. To which we may add these as more proper.

First take away part of the Humor with this following Bolus:

Take of *the Electuary of the Juyce of Roses, and Diaprunis solutive, of each three drams: the pouder of Rhubarb one dram: Saffron half a scruple: With Sugar make a Bolus; which you may give once or twice, if the Body be of a very ill habit.*

As for Phlebotomy, though *Galen* denyeth it, as unprofitable, yet if you perceive abundance of Blood, it is very good to abate it.

After general Medicines, this following Infusion used six or seven daies, doth commonly pluck this Disease up by the Roots, if it be but yong.

Take of *Madder Roots half an ounce: the greater Celandine one handful: the tops of Sea Wormwood, and of the lesser Centaury, of each one pugil: Cinnamon half a dram: Saffron half a scruple: Infuse them a whol night in eight ounces of white Wine, and add to the straining half an ounce of white Sugar. Let him take it in the morning three hours before dinner.*

Or you may make this Decoction following:

Take of *Celandine Roots and Leaves one handful: the Leaves and Flowers of St. Johns wort, of each half a handful: the shavings of Ivory and poudered Goose dung, of each three drams: Saffron half a dram. Put the Pouder of Goose dung and the Saffron in a clout, and boyl them all in equal parts of white Wine, and Wormwood Water to one pint: and when it is strained, add one ounce of Sugar. Give it for three morning draughts, and repeat it if you think fit.*

Quercetan commends for this purpose, the Dung of a green Goose that eats Grass in the Spring; and the dried white Dung of an Hen, given for divers daies to the quantity of half a dram or a dram; and he saith that the Dung of these Aerial Creatures, is full of Nitre and Sulphur, and hath a wonderful Faculty to cut, attenuate, and dissolve.

Dioscorides commends the Juyce of Horehound for this Disease, and since his time, others, and especially *Forestus*, who reports that some were only cured by the use of the Syrup of the Juyce of Horehound, when other means failed.

Gesner commends the Nettle Root thus prepared:

Take of *Nettle Roots one pound: Saffron one scruple: beat them wel, and take out their Juyce with white Wine, and let the Patient take four ounces every morning for four or five daies, and cover himself to sweat after it.*

While inward Medicines are given, let the Region of the Liver be anointed with this following Oyntment.

Take of *the Juyce of Smallage, Parsley, and Succory, of each one ounce: white Wine Vinegar half an ounce: the Oyl of Tamarisk two ounces: boyl them til the Juyces and Vinegar be consumed; then add of yellow Sanders and Spicknard, of each one dram: Wax, as much as will make a Liniment.*

After the Obstructions are taken away, the yellow colour will presently vanish by the strength of Natural Heat, which will discusse the Humor from the Skin. But that it may sooner be gone, make a Bath of warm VVater, and rub the Body therein with a Bag of Barley and Bean Meal.

Chap.

Chap. 5. *Of the Scirrhus of the Liver.*

THe Scirrhus of the Liver, is a hard Tumor without pain, bred of a thick Humor, faſtened and hardened upon the Liver.

This Scirrhus is Two-fold; either it is Exquiſite, or Perfect; or Imperfect. That which is a perfect Scirrhus, is laid down in the Definition propounded, which is without Pain or Sence.

That which is not exquiſite or perfect, hath ſome kind of pain, and comes from a Matter leſs hardened; in a word, it is a Scirrhus beginning, and not confirmed: but that which is exquiſite is confirmed, ſo that they only differ in Degrees.

A Scirrhus breeds in the Liver two waies; either from Defluxion, or Congeſtion of a thick and glutinous Humor upon the part; or from Inflamation, which diſſolveth the thin Humors, and leaveth the thick.

The Matter of the former, is Flegm or Melancholly, either ſent from other parts, or bred in the ſubſtance of the Liver by an evil Concoction. For the producing of this Humor, evil diet is a main cauſe, if it be of thick, cold, and viſcous, or clammy Nouriſhment; as alſo a Flegmatick or Melancholick Conſtitution, and a Natural ſtraightneſs of the Liver. From whence *Galen* ſaith, 13. Meth. That a Scirrhus eaſily breedeth in the Liver, Spleen, and Reins: In the Liver, becauſe the Paſſages are narrow, and it is nouriſhed with thick blood in the Spleen, becauſe it receiveth the thick blood: and laſtly, in the Reins, becauſe they are nouriſhed with thick blood.

The Cauſes of the latter Scirrhus, which followeth other Humors, is the immoderate uſe of diſcuſſing Medicines, or of Repercuſſives, which by cooling and binding, do thicken the Matter, and keep it from diſſolving. Beſides, the Matter of the Diſeaſe, which is properly cold and thick, and will not be diſſolved; or the weakneſs of the part, which cannot help the breathing forth of the Humors. And laſtly, a cooling and thickening Diet.

The ſigns of a Scirrhus in the Liver are, a hardneſs in the right Hypochondrion, and that more than in an Obſtruction, next a heavineſs in that part, eſpecially when there is violent breathing, no Feaver, nor pain, by which it is diſtinguiſhed from an Inflamation, or there is but little pain, as when the Schirrus is not exquiſite or perfect: There is leſs repoſe upon the left ſide, becauſe the Liver being hard and heavy, doth then lie upon the Stomach, and burden it: the color of the Face is pale, and and greeniſh, becauſe when the Liver is Schirrus, there is no good Blood produced by it: The whol Body alſo, is fallen away, becauſe there is neither Sanguification, nor diſtribution of Nouriſhment as it ought to be.

The Prognoſtick of this Diſeaſe is given by *Galen*, 2. *ad Glaucum, cap.* 4. in theſe words: *An inſenſible Scirrus is incurable, but that which is a little ſenſible is curable, though with much difficulty.* Alſo *Galen*, cap. 5. of the ſame Book, ſaith, *We have cured a Schirrus of the Liver often in the beginning of it; but when it hath been of long continuance, neither could I, nor any other that I ever heard of, cure it.*

An old inveterate Scirrhus turns to a Dropſie incurable, of which ſome die ſooner than others, if they have a looſneſs of the Belly therewith of long continuance.

A Scirrhus which followeth the Jaundice, or cauſeth the ſame, is dangerous. Whence *Hippocrates*, Aph. 42. Sect. 6. ſaith, that if the Liver grow hard in them who have the Jaundice, it is an evil ſign.

The Cure of a Scirrhus, is firſt by the taking away of the Antecedent Cauſe, by the Apozem which is preſcribed in the Obſtruction of the Liver. To which you may add other Medicines proper to open Obſtructions.

Afterwards you muſt diſcuſs the hard Matter with mollifying and opening things. For this end the Steel Pills above mentioned, are excellent, eſpecially if you add thereto, Bdellium, Ammoniacum, and Sagapenum.

But if the hardneſs be very great, you muſt give theſe Pills following, many daies together.

Take of *Gum Ammoniacum diſſolved in Vinegar, and ſtrained, and again made thick, two drams: Bdellium, and Storax, of each four ſcruples: mix them. Take one dram every other day.*

And in the daies between, let him uſe the Opiate, or ſtrengthening and opening Lozenges preſcribed in the Cure of Obſtructions.

Theſe following Pills have a wonderful Vertue to ſoften a Scirrhus, and diſſolve it.

Take of *the beſt Aloes, and Gum Ammoniack diſſolved in Vinegar, ſtrained, and again made thick, of each half an ounce: Mercurius dulcis two drams: Diagridium one dram: With Oxy-*

mel of Squils make a Maſs of Pills; of which let him take half a dram four hours before Dinner, for twenty or thirty daies together.

Zacutus Luſitanus, Obſ. 41. Lib. 1. Praxis Admir. reports that there was a ſtrong Scirrhus cured by the uſe of Conſerve of Horehound forty daies together.

Some Practitioners commend the uſe of Turpentine thus prepared:

Take of *Turpentine waſhed with white Wine one ounce and an half: Sugar half an ounce: Give one dram every day, or every other day, for it is an opening Medicine that provoketh Urine, and looſeneth the Belly.*

All the time of Cure, let the Patient take white Wine, or thin Claret ſteeled, for his ordinary Drink.

Alſo the other Preparations of Steel before mentioned, are very good.

Outwardly you muſt apply Fomentations, Oyntments, and Plaiſters, thus made:

Take of *Marſh-mallow Roots, Briony and Lilly Roots, of each one ounce: Mallows, Violets, Pellitory of the Wall, Wormwood, and Agrimony, of each one handful: Linſeed, Fœnugreek and Dill ſeed, of each half a dram: Chamomel, Melilot, and Roſe flowers, of each one pugil: boyl them in three parts of Water, and one of white Wine, or in Water and Vinegar. With the ſtraining, let the Region of the Liver be fomented every morning and evening.*

If the Scirrhus be very great, add to the Decoction, Flowerdeluce, wild Cucumers, and Dwarf-Elder Roots, and make the Decoction in Tripe Broth, and white Wine.

Take of *Oyl of Lillies, Chamomel, Melilot and ſweet Almonds, of each one ounce: Oyl of Roſes and Wormwood, of each half an ounce: Gum Ammoniack diſſolved in Vinegar three drams: Wax two drams: make a Liniment, with which anoint the part aforeſaid, after the Fomentation.*

If you deſire a ſtronger Liniment,

Take of *the Juyce of Briony and wild Cucumers, of each two ounces: the Oyl of Capars and Tamariſk, of each three ounces: white Wine one ounce: boyl them till the Juyce and the Wine be conſumed, then add two drams of Wormwood in powder, Gum Ammoniack diſſolved in Vinegar half an ounce: with a little Wax make a Liniment.*

Take of *the Emplaiſter de Mucilaginibus one ounce: Melilot half an ounce: Gum Ammoniack melted in the Juyce of Wormwood three drams: ſoften them with a little Oyl of Wormwood and Lillies, and make a Plaiſter to be laid on after the Liniment.*

The Leaves of Henbane boyled in Vinegar are good to be outwardly applied to the part, made into the form of a Cataplaſm or Pultis, with Oyl of bitter Almonds.

To theſe you may add Baths made of ſoftening and digeſting things, and of ſtrengtheners, ſuch as we preſcribed for Fomentations; and let the Patient uſe them by turns.

And finally, Make an Iſſue in the right Leg, that part of the Matter offending may be that way drawn forth.

Chap. 6. *Of the Dropſie.*

Hippocrates makes two kinds of Dropſies; namely, An Univerſal, and a Particular. An Univerſal Dropſie, is that which is in the whol Body, or over the whol Belly: a Particular, is that which is only in one part: hence there is the Dropſie of the Head, Breaſt, and Womb; of which, here we ſhall not ſpeak, but only of the Univerſal.

Galen gives three kinds of this Univerſal Dropſie; namely, Aſcites, Tympanites, and Anaſarca, or Leucophlegmaſia.

Aſcites is a ſwelling of the Belly, cauſed of a ſerous Humor; nor doth the Belly only ſwell, but many times the Feet, Legs, Thighs, and Cods. Nay, an Aſcites ſomtimes begins with a ſwelling in the Feet, which aſcends after to the Legs, and ſo to the Thighs and Belly.

This ſerous Humor, as it is of the Nature of Water, it is cold; but as it is ſalt, it hath in it heat, which then is encreaſed by the neerneſs of the Bowels, and more by the putrefaction which it gathereth by long continuance: hence comes a Feaver and Thirſt, namely, from the ſtinking ſalt vapors which do infect the mouth of the Stomach.

It falls out ſomtimes, that this Watery Humor, is not contained in the Cavity of the Belly, but in certain Bladders growing to the parts of the lower Belly.

An Example whereof is given by *Schenkius*, Lib. 3. Obſervation; and *Mauritius Cordæus*, Com. 5. in *Hipp.* Lib. 1. of Diſeaſes in Women. *Galen* ſuppoſed (and almoſt all Phyſicians, new and old, have followed him) that every Dropſie comes of a cold Liver, which cannot Sanguifie or make Blood compleatly, but inſtead thereof much Water, Flegm, or Wind. Which Opinion, as it is moſt true in Anaſarca, and approved; ſo in Aſcites and Tympanites it is much queſtioned by many

Modern

Modern Writers, becauſe in the opening of many that died of Dropſies, the Liver hath been found very ſound, as is manifeſt by many relations in thoſe Authors mentioned. Moreover, *Hippocrates* 2. Prorrhet. wittily affirms that a Dropſie may come either from the Liver, or from ſome empty part: by an empty part, he meaneth all that ſpace from the Ribs to the Guts, and the parts contained in it. Alſo *Hipp.* 4. *de morb. Mulierum*, mentions a Dropſie coming from the Spleen. To which places of *Hippocrates* they uſually anſwer thus, That the Liver is alwaies affected either primarily or ſecondarily; ſo that there is never a Dropſie before there is a hinderance of Sanguification, or breeding of Blood. But two Reaſons do ſtrongly oppoſe this Doctrine: The firſt is from the Experience before mentioned, namely, That if the Liver ought neceſſarily to ſuffer in the producing of a Dropſie, it would never be found free and unknit in the Diſſection of a dead Body. The ſecond is, That if the Liver ſhould breed watery Blood, it would be ſent into the whol Body, as in Anaſarca; nor can a ſufficient reaſon be given, why that ſerous Humor bred in the Liver ſhould be ſent to the Belly, and not to other parts.

As for the cold diſtemper of the Liver, that is denied by *Trallianus*, *Avicenna*, and others, who affirm that a Dropſie may ariſe from a hot diſtemper of the Liver, and cannot be cured but by cooling means. And this may be maintained by the Authority of *Hippocrates*, in 2. Progn. *A Dropſie* (ſaith he) *coming after an acute diſeaſe, is evil, for it doth not take away the Feaver.* If therefore a Dropſie may come while the Feaver is, it is cleer that there is ſtill a hot diſtemper. Neither could that ever pleaſe me, which is uſually ſpoken by *Galens* Servants, That the Native heat is diſſolved by a hot diſtemper, and much diminiſhed, and that diminiſhed heat may be called cold. For ſo in a Hectick Feaver, and other conſtant Feavers, in which the Natural Heat is much diminiſhed, we ſhould alwaies blame a cold diſtemper, and the Symptomes which follow ſhould be imputed to cold, and not to heat. From whence, who doth not perceive that there would ariſe a great confuſion in the ſearching into the Cauſes of Symptomes.

Among the late Writers, *Carotus Piſo*, whom *Sennertus* followed, hath dived moſt deep into the true Cauſes of Aſcites, which he affirms to come from a ſerous Matter contained in the Meat and Drink, which by reaſon of ſome preternatural Cauſe, is ſtayed too long in the Gate and Hollow Veins, not ſent into the Body, as in a Natural ſtate and condition it uſeth to be, but into the capacity of the Abdomen. This ſerous Humor is retained in the Veins, from the whol Body, by reaſon the attractive faculty of the Parts, to which it ſhould be carried, is either hurt or hindered.

Now the chief parts which draw the ſerous Matter, are the Liver and the Spleen. For they attract the Chylous Matter in which the moiſture of Meat and Drink is contained. As alſo the Spleen draws Drink to its ſelf, pure and without mixture; as *Hippocrates* taught, and Experience confirms, That they who drink much after Meat, do preſently avoid it by Urine; which learned Authors ſay, is by reaſon the Spleen ſucks the watery Matter before there is a perfect Concoction made in the Stomach.

The Attraction or drawing quality of the Liver and Spleen, is loſt chiefly by defect and weakneſs of Natural Heat: the Natural heat is debilitated by a cold or hot diſtemper, or by Suffocation.

A cold diſtemper coming either from too cold a Diet, from loſs of too much Blood and Spirits, or any other Cauſe, doth deſtroy the Natural Heat of the Liver and Spleen, and ſo hinder their Actions.

A hot Diſtemper doth diſperſe the Native Heat; whence being made weaker, the Liver and the Spleen become leſs Active. This comes from Feavers, much Wine, or hot Meats.

Laſtly, The Natural Heat is weakned by Suffocation, when there is too much Blood in the Veins, eſpecially if it be foul, as when the Terms or Hemorrhoids are ſtopt, by which the Blood was cleanſed formerly, but now by ſtoppage corrupted.

Alſo the Attraction or drawing vertue of thoſe parts, is hindered by Obſtructions, which hinder the free paſſage of the ſerous Matter. So a Dropſie followeth a Scirrhus of the Liver and Spleen, not only becauſe thoſe parts being weakened cannot produce good Blood, but eſpecially becauſe they are not able to attract, and ſend to other parts whatſoever is drunk.

Here it may be objected, That in a Dropſie the whol Body is nouriſhed by Blood bred in the Liver of a Chylous Matter, which it draweth to it ſelf. We anſwer, That the Liver doth better attract that which is moſt familiar unto its ſelf, and moſt fit to be made blood; but it draweth to it leſs than is ſufficient, by reaſon of the weakneſs of the attractive faculty. Hence it is that the Body grows lean, becauſe it draws ſome water along with the Chylus, and leaves the reſt in the Meſeraick Veins, and the Veins of the lower Belly, which is by degrees carried into the Capacity of the Abdomen.

We do not deny that Sanguification or making of Blood, is hindered in a Dropſie, eſpecially when the diſtemper is very cold or very hot, or the Obſtruction or Scirrhus great, for then there cannot be a perfect making of blood. But we deny that that is the next and immediate Cauſe of a Dropſie; but rather an effect thereof, when the Water corrupted in the Abdomen, doth alſo corrupt the Bowels that ſwim therein.

Next to the Liver and the Spleen, the Reins do attract the watery Matter which is in the hollow Vein, and free the whol body from the superfluity thereof, so that if at any time they do not their office, there remains much matter in the veins, which being sent to the Abdomen do quickly make an Ascites; now the attraction of the Veins may cease for divers Causes, because of a Cold Distemper, Tumors, Ulcers, and Obstructions, which wil Diminish, Abolish, and intercept their Function.

Lastly, The distribution of Water is hindered from some external Cause, as when much cold Water is drunk, which Nature cannot govern, nor sufficiently distribute into the Veins: So *Carolus Piso* reports of a yong man that had a Tertian Ague, and drinking Water exceedingly in his Fit fel into an Ascites, from which by the taking of one Lozenge of Diacarthamum he was Cured by discharging the Water which was in the Abdomen, but if he had continued drinking so much water any longer, he had not been so easily Cured, because it would have brought great obstructions and a cold distemper of the Bowels, by reason of the loss of natural heat.

But it is questioned of many by what wayes that serous matter should be carried by the Veins into the Capacity of the Abdomen, to whom we may plainly answer, by saying from *Hippocrates* that in a living body al things are passing to and fro, so that in time of necessity not only thin and serous Matter, but also that which is very thick may be sent through the insensible passages: So in a Pleurisie blood and matter wil pierce through the thick substance of the Pleura and Membrane which covers the Lungs, and be spit forth at the mouth: So in a Fracture of the Leg or Thigh, which hapens without hurt to the Muscles and Skin, the matter which floweth from the broken bone, pierceth through the substance of the other parts and wets the bouisters and rowlers.

So also in a Dropsie oftentimes a great quantity of Water is vented in one day by giving of Quicksilver, which cannot be except the Water conteined in the Abdomen do pass through the Tunicles of the Guts.

Nor is the Objection of *Fernelius* of any force, when he saith that Nature had in vain made so many open wayes, if the Humors can pass through those invisible passages: For we Answer, That in an ordinary and natural motion of Humors ordained for the nourishment of the whol body, those passages are necessary through which they may easily flow, but in an extraordinary case, provident Nature doth find out extraordinary wayes by which she may cast out hurtful Matter, or at least send it to a place less dangerous.

Fernelius Objects again, That in them who have died by a stoppage of Urine for twenty dayes together, it was never perceived that any Water went through those blind passages: We Answer, That Nature doth not alwayes work the same way in preternatural Causes, nor send hurtful Humors to the same places, but especially to those parts which are more disposed to receive them through weakness.

So in the Suppression or Stoppage of Urine, the Serous Humor flowes openly through the Veins and Arteries and fils them, and if it find any part weaker than the rest it falls forceably upon it: hence it is that some die of the hurt of one or other remarkable part. So nothing hinders (if the parts of the Abdomen in which the Veins and Arteries end) be grown weak, but that the Watery Humor may be sent into its capacity or hollowness.

Nor is that true which *Fernelius* would infer, namely, That a Dropsie never comes from suppression of Urine, for Reason and Experience teacheth the contrary: as we shewed afore in the Discourse of the Loss of Attraction in the Reins: but you must observe that the Stoppage of the Urine doth make an increase of Water rather in the branches of the hollow Vein, then of the Gate Vein or *Vena Porta*, by which the watery Humor chiefly flows into the capacity of the Abdomen as appears by what followeth.

Therfore we may Answer this Question, by saying, That the water got into the hollow of the Abdomen, by the insensible passages though there are also other manifest wayes by which it may pass.

Hippocrates, Aph. 55. Sect. 7. hath shewed them, for (saith he) they who have much Water about the Liver, if it get into the Omentum, or Kels, their belly will be filled with Water, and then they die. The meaning of which Aphorism is (though *Galen* did not plainly see it) that the Water from the Liver doth flow into the Branches of the *Vena Porta* which go to the Omentum, and when they are filled, either by their Tunicles made thin by Diapedesis or Rarefaction, or by the mouths of the Vessels being opened by Anastomosis, the Water gets into the Cavity of the Abdomen: This happens often in the Spleen also, when it draws Water in abundance from the Stomach, as appears by many sayings of *Hippocrates*; and in *lib. 4. de morbis*, he saith, That Water may press from the Spleen to the Omentum or Kell, in these words, *Drink is also carried into the Stomach with which when it is filled the Spleen takes it from thence and sends it to the Veins and the Omentum.* From which we may perceive, That Water chiefly gets into the Abdomen, by the Veins of the Omentum which are called Epiploicæ, and Gastrepiploicæ, although it may pass also through their Veins.

Besides

Beſides the aforeſaid Cauſes of a Dropſie, which are more ordinary, there are mentioned by Authors ſome leſs uſual, confirmed by Obſervation: and theſe come from the diſorder of ſome peculiar part, not only of the Liver and Spleen, but alſo of the Meſentery, Sweet-bread, Stomach, Guts, Reins, Bladder, and Womb, namely, when the *Homioſis*, or faculty to convert nouriſhment into themſelves is hurt, from ſome great Diſeaſe, ſo that their proper nouriſhment is corrupted and turned into Water. So *Galen*, Comment. Aph. 55. Sect. 7. ſaith, that watery bladders are ſometimes in the out-ſide of the Liver, which being broken, ſend Water downwards into the Cavity of the Abdomen, the encreaſe whereof breeds a Dropſie.

Fernelius ſuppoſeth that the Liver being very dry, hath clefts like the parched Earth, and that through them there flows a conſtant Water which fills the Cavity of the Abdomen. Others ſay that a Dropſie may come from the Guts, if they be perforated or pierced through, and yet the Patient dieth not preſently, but a watery Humor ſtill flows through them into the Cavity. It comes alſo from the Kidneys, if they be much Ulcerated, and water flow from them. So *Platerus* reports of one that in a Dropſie had many Ulcers in both Kidneys, from whence both matter and water flowed into the Cavity. There is alſo a Story in *Sennertus*, taken out of *John Heinzius*, of a certain Woman who had a Dropſie from the diſtemper of the Womb, whoſe Bowels were all ſound, except the Teſticles or Stones, which were found to be ſwollen as big as the Head of a new-born Child, being blew, hollow, and full of Ulcers, from which there came a ſerous Matter which cauſed the Dropſie.

The Dropſie called Tympanites, hath its name from *Tympanum*, a Drum, becauſe the Abdomen is ſtretched out like a Drum, and if you ſtrike it with your hand, it ſounds like it. This ſtretching comes from wind ſhut up in the Cavity of the Abdomen. But ſometimes this wind is in the Cavity of the Guts; which *Platerus* obſerved, laying in ſome that have been thought to die of a Tympany, after they were opened, have had no wind coming forth of the Cavity of the Belly; neither did their Bellies, but their Guts ſink, eſpecially the thin Guts, which were ſo ſtretched with wind that they came forth ſo rouled together that they could not be again thruſt into the Belly.

But we muſt obſerve that the wind which cauſeth a Tympany, is ſeldom contained in the Belly alone, but for the moſt part mixed with Water; as in an Aſcites, not only Water, but Wind alſo is contained; and both theſe Dropſies have their name of that which predominateth: if there be more wind than water, it is a Tympany; but if more water than wind, an Aſcites: but if they be equal, it is between both; ſo that we may doubt whether that Dropſie be a Tympany, or an Aſcites.

The Material Cauſe of Wind, is a crude Humor and thick, whether it be Flegm or Melancholly, which being ſtirred and made thin by heat, ſends forth thick vapors, which are hard to be diſſolved, and theſe are called *Flatus*.

This Crude and thick Humor, is partly in the Stomach and Guts, but eſpecially between the Membranes of the Midriff and Guts, from whence it is more hard to be moved than from the Cavity of the parts aforeſaid. The 11. Aph. Sect. 6. of *Hippocrates*, makes this very probable; *They who have pains and gripings about the Navel and Loyns, which cannot be removed, have a dry Dropſie.* For becauſe the Meſentery is joyned to the Guts by the fore part, and to the Loyns by the hinder part, we may eaſily perceive that the pains which reach from the Navil to the Loyns, come from the Meſentery. Beſides, The greatneſs of the pain, ſhews that the Cauſe is deep in the ſubſtance of the part, and cannot be removed: For if it were in the Cavity of the Stomach and Guts, it would eaſily be remedied.

Concerning the Efficient Cauſe, Authors differ; ſome ſay from a cold, ſome from a hot diſtemper. They which accuſe a cold diſtemper, think they have *Galen* on their ſide, who ſaies that wind is bred of a weak heat. To whom we anſwer, That heat may be ſaid to be weak in reſpect of the Matter which cannot be diſcuſſed or diſſolved thereby. But this is to be imputed to the Matter, which is rather defective than the Heat, which is commonly too great and preternatural. And we muſt acknowledg with the Learned, That a burnt Melancholick Humor is moſt fit to breed a Tympany, which proceedeth from the parching heat of the Bowels; which heat doth ſtir that Matter, and produceth from it thick vapors that are hard to be diſſolved.

The Dropſie called *Anaſarca*, comes of a Flegmatick Humor ſpread through the whol Body, and therefore the Body is ſwoln and white; from whence the Diſeaſe is called *Leucophlegmatia*. This Flegm comes from a cold Liver, which inſtead of good Blood, produceth crude and flegmatick; which when it cannot be turned into the ſubſtance of the parts, leaveth the crude part that is unfit for Nouriſhment upon them, and makes them ſwell; hence comes Anaſarca, or *Leucophlegmatia*.

This Diſeaſe beginning, is called *Cachexia*, or an evil Habit, and turns into *Leucophlegmatia*, from which it differs but in degree.

The Antecedent Cauſes are, all things that cool the Liver too much, and hinder its Concoction, as too much cold and moiſt Diet, the ſtopping of the Terms or Hemorrhoids, Obſtructions, cold Tumors,

mors, Scirrhus and large bleeding, and other great Evacuations, by which the Native heat is diminiſhed.

The Signs of a Dropſie, and every ſort of it, may be known by what hath been ſaid.

In an Aſcites, you may know that there is water in the Abdomen by its greatneſs, ſoft Swelling, and broad, and if you preſs the ſides, you ſhall eaſily hear a noiſe of Water, and when the Patient turns from one ſide to the other, and then the whol Belly lieth as it were on that ſide: then the Feet and Cods ſwell, but the higher part grow leſs; the Urine is little and thick, ſomtimes red, becauſe there goes but little water to the Reins and Bladder, and ſtaies long there, by which means it becomes red and thick. In the progreſs or encreaſe of the Diſeaſe, there is difficulty of Breathing, by reaſon of the abundance of water which lieth upon the Diaphragma or Midriff, eſpecially when the Patient lieth down, and therefore he is forced to ſtand or ſit moſt uſually. There is a troubleſom thirſt from the ſaltneſs of the Humor, with which the Stomach ſwimmeth. And laſtly, there is a conſtant lingering Feaver from the corruption of the Water, which at length doth corrupt all the Bowels ſwimming therein.

In a Tympany, the Belly being ſtrook, ſounds like a Drum; the Bulk of the Belly is leſs burdenſom than in an Aſcites: There were formerly pains about the Navel and Reins, when the Patient lieth with his face upwards, his Belly remains hard and ſtretched forth, nor doth it turn aſide when he turneth himſelf.

Laſtly, In an Anaſarca, not only the Belly, Thighs, and Leggs, but alſo the Hands, Arms, Breaſt, Face, and whol Body ſwel; and whereſoever you thruſt your finger upon it, it will pit, and leave an impreſſion. The color of the Skin is pale and Earthy, the Fleſh ſoft and looſe, the Water thin and white, breathing difficultly, and ſomtimes a lingering Feaver.

As to the Prognoſtick: Every Dropſie is dangerous, and hard to be cured, and the more hard by how much the elder, but Anaſarca is leaſt dangerous; but Aſcites and Tympany are ſomtimes one more dangerous than another, according to their Cauſes. So if Aſcites come from a Scirrhus of the Liver, or Ulcer of ſome internal part, it is more dangerous than a Tympany; but if it come of drinking too much Water, or new Obſtructions, it is leſs dangerous.

A Dropſie is more eaſily cured in Servants than in Free-men, in Country men than in Noble men; for they will be better conſtrained to abſtain from Drink and the like, and be more patient than they who have liberty.

A Dropſie from the hardneſs of the Spleen, is leſs dangerous, than from the hardneſs of the Liver, becauſe the Spleen is not ſo Noble a part.

A Dropſie coming upon an acute Diſeaſe, is evil; nor will it abate the Feaver, but cauſe pain and death. *Hipp.* 2. Prognoſt.

They whoſe Liver being full of water, diſcharge it into the Omentum or Caul, their Belly is filled with Water, and they die. *Hipp.* Aph. 55. Sect. 7.

He who hath Water between the Skin, or an Anaſarca, if that water which is in the Veins flows into the Belly, the diſeaſe is cured. *Hipp.* Aph. 14. Sect. 6. This Aphoriſm ſeems contrary to the former. But this contrariety is anſwered, by ſaying that *Hippocrates* in the former, by Belly, underſtood the Cavity of the Abdomen; but in this, Belly its ſelf; for if the water flow through the Belly, the Diſeaſe is at an end. Which Opinion is more clearly explained by *Hippocrates*, in Coacis, in theſe words: *In the beginning of a Dropſie, if there come a flux of the belly, without want of Concoction, or Crudity, it is prevented.* You muſt mark that it is in the beginning; for if a flux come upon an old Dropſie, it is not ſo ſafe, becauſe commonly there is ſome fault in the Bowels by continuance, as a Scirrhus, or corruption of ſubſtance, which begets new matter, and death alſo. Hence *Hipp.* in Prorrh. ſaith, that they who are to be cured of the Dropſie, muſt be *Euſplagchnous*, that is, thoſe that have ſound Bowels, free from the great Diſeaſes mentioned. Otherwiſe, if a flux of the Belly happen with a Scirrhus or corruption of the Liver, they die preſently, as *Galen* ſhews 2. ad Glau. cap. 5. And *Avicen* ſaith thus: *Straitneſs of breath, and flux of the belly, ſignifie death within three daies.*

Little Urine in Dropſies, is evil; the leſs, the worſe, becauſe the Drink runs into the Belly, and not into the Reins. Hence *Hipp.* in Coac. ſaith, *Little and thick Urine, and a Dropſie that is Feaveriſh, is deadly: but if the quantity of Urine encreaſe, we may hope well.* Which is elegantly laid down by *Celſus*: *And then* (ſaith he) *there is hope of Health, when they void more Urine than they drink: Therefore it is good every day to meaſure the Urine, and the Drink, and the Belly with a ſtring, eſpecially while Phyſick is given, to ſee whether it grow leſs or not; for if it encreaſe notwithſtanding the Medicines, it is deſperate.*

Impoſthumes, or ſpots in the Legs of Hydropical men, are deadly. *Hippocrates* confirms this 7. Epid. in the Hiſtory of *Bion* and *Cteſiphon*; the one whereof died preſently after an Impoſthume which ran in his left Knee: the other after he had a red and blewiſh gathering in his right Thigh.

Men

Men that are cured by Medicines for Dropſies, if they fall again into the ſame, are deſperate, *Hipp.* in Coac. For it ſignifieth that there is ſome incurable fault lurking in the Bowels, which after the water is emptied, reneweth it again.

If the Patient have ſound Bowels, and ſtrength, eat his meat, and concoct well, and be not ſick after; breath freely, have no pain, cough, or thirſt, and his tongue grow not rough, ſo much as in his ſleep; if Medicines preſently purge him; and if without Medicines he be bound, and in a Natural order; and if his Urine change according to his Diet, or if he be not faint. If all theſe things be preſent, the Patient is recovered; if ſome of them, there is hopes of amendment; if none, he is deſperate.

In a dry Dropſie, to piſs by drops is evil. *Hipp. in Coacis.*

A Tympany in a Melancholick Body, is deadly, and Remedies are given in vain.

If in a Leucophlegmatia, a ſtrong Diarrhœa follow, the Diſeaſe is cured. *Hipp.* Aph. 29. Sect. 7. but this Diarrhœa muſt be at the beginning, or at leaſt before the Diſeaſe be old, or the ſtrength of the Party weakened; but if it happen when the Patient is weak, it is dangerous.

The Cure of the Dropſie conſiſts in the Evacuation of the Matter, whether it be in the whol Body, or in the Abdomen or Belly; in taking away the Cauſe that produced that Matter, and in ſtrengthening of the Bowels, eſpecially the Liver.

The chief and moſt ordinary Cauſes are, great Obſtructions, and Scirrhus or hard Tumors, the Cure of which Diſeaſes is to be taken out of their proper Chapters. But if they will not ſuffice, you muſt uſe theſe following, which are more proper in Dropſies, and vary them according to the variety of Cauſes, and the Bodies ſick.

And firſt, you muſt give an ordinary Purge, by an opening Apozeme that expels flegm and water, made thus:

Take of *the Roots of Eryngus, Madder, Smallage, Parſley, and Elicampane, of each one ounce: Valerian, Aſarabacca, Dwarf-Elder, and Flowerdeluce Roots, of each half an ounce: the Bark of the Roots of Capars, and inward Bark of an Aſh and Tamarisk, of each ſix drams: the Leavs of Agrimony, Ceterach, Maiden-hair, Germander, St. Johns-wort, Wormwood, and the leſſer Centaury, of each one handful: Soldanella, or wild Mercury half a handful: the ſeeds of Carrots, Parſley, and Fennel, of each half an ounce: ſcraped Liquoris, and Raiſons ſtoned, of each one ounce: clean Senna one ounce and an half: Agarick tied in a clout three drams: the ſeeds of Dwarf-Elder, and Jallap Roots, of each one dram and an half: Ginger and Cloves, of each one dram: Broom, Elder, and Tamarisk flowers, of each one pugil: Boyl them in equal parts of ſteeled Water, and white Wine added towards the end, to a pint and a quarter. When it is ſtrained, diſſolve therein, Syrup of Succory with Rhubarb, four ounces. Make a cleer Apozeme, aromatized with three drams of Cinnamon, for four morning draughts.*

After Univerſal Purging, let the Patient take this following Pouder once a week:

Take of *Clean Senna, Gummy Turbith, Hermodactls, Dwarf-Elder ſeeds, Jallap, and Mechoacan, of each one dram: Cream of Tartar two drams: Cambugia, half a dram: the pouder of Diamber, Diarrhodon Abbatis, and Fennel ſeeds, of each one ſcruple: Sugar candy three drams: Make a Pouder of them all, of which infuſe two drams, or two drams and an half all night in four ounces of white Wine. Let him take the Wine and the Pouder in the morning.*

The Syrup of *Rhamus ſolutivus*, or Buckthorn, made of the Juyce of its Fruit, called Rhein Berries, with Sugar, given one ounce at a time, doth wonderfully purge water. It muſt be taken preſently after Dinner.

Or give the Magiſtral Syrup made of the Decoction of the Apozeme afore mentioned, the doſe of Purgers being encreaſed; or this following:

Take of *the Juyce of Damask Roſes two pints: the Juyce of the Roots of Danewort, Flowerdeluce, Succory Leaves, and Agrimony, of each half a pint: the ſeeds of Danewort, Mechoacan Roots, and of the beſt Rhubarb, of each two ounces: Spicknard three drams: yellow Sanders two drams: Cryſtal of Tartar one dram and an half: infuſe them a whol night, and after a little boyling ſtrain them; then put as much white Sugar as is of the Liquor: boyl it into a Syrup, and add to it of the ſalt of Wormwood half an ounce. Let him take two drams with opening Broth once in a week.*

Or inſtead of this Syrup, or at other times when it is not taken, you may give theſe Pills, which purge the evil Humors, and alſo open Obſtructions.

Take of *the beſt Aloes, ſteeped in the Juyce of Wormwood, half an ounce: Gum Ammoniack diſſolved in Vinegar and ſtrained, the beſt Myrrh, and Crocus Martis prepared with Sulphur, of each three drams: Salt of Wormwood and Tamarisk, of each two drams: Diagridium, and Troches of Alhandal, of each one dram: Saffron, Ginger, and Sal gem, of each one ſcruple: With Oxymel of Squils make a Maſs of Pills, of which give half a dram twice in a week two hours before Dinner.*

Alſo Purging Wines are much commended for the cure of the Dropſie, of which there are divers Forms. But theſe are beſt:

Take of *the Roots of Aſarabacca, and Mechoacan, of each two ounces: the French Flowerdeluce, and Bark of the Roots of Danewort and Elder, of each one ounce: Elicampane Roots half an ounce: dry Wormwood and Dodder of Time, of each one pugil: clean Senna one ounce: Soldanella or Sea-foal-foot two drams: the Troches of Rhubarb and Agrimony, of each one dram: Mace and Cinnamon, of each half a dram: Scammony four ſcruples: white Wine two pints and an half: Infuſe them three daies in Balneo Mariæ; the veſſel being well ſtopped, keep it without ſtraining. Let him take two or three ounces in the morning, twice or thrice in a week.*

Among Medicines for drawing forth of Water, the Juyce of French Flowerdeluce is very much commended, if it be drawn forth with white Wine, it may be given to three ounces; it provoketh ſtool and urine very powerfully. But becauſe it is very offenſive to the mouth and ſtomach with its ſharpneſs, it uſeth to be mixed with Manna or Honey. *Maſſaria* gives it thus:

Take of *Juyce of Flowerdeluce newly drawn with white Wine, three ounces; the beſt Manna one ounce and an half. Mix them for a Potion.*

Platerus in his Obſervations; *I gave* (ſaith he) *to one in a Dropſie, of the Juyce of Flowerdeluce to drink with Honey two ounces, and he often piſſed and purged; and after he had taken it twice or thrice, his Belly ceaſed ſwelling, and his Feet, and he was cured.*

Rhubarb is commended of ſome, becauſe it purgeth noxious Humors, and ſtrengtheneth the Liver. And *Stocherus* ſaith that he cured many with the uſe of Rhubarb given every third or fourth day, one or two drams in an opening Decoction. Alſo in *Scoltzius* his Epiſtles, there is a famous Story of one who was cured of a Dropſie, only by the uſe of Rhubarb, which he took every day in ſuch a quantity as was neceſſary to purge.

The Troches of Rhubarb are much commended by all Authors. And *Mathæus de Gradi* reports that a certain Duke of *Orleans*, was cured with them alone, taking two drams twice in a week.

Michael Paſchalius ſaith that he cured a Dropſie with the ſame, making them into Pills, by reaſon of their bitterneſs.

The Chymiſts commend the Extract of black Hellebore., *Aquila Cæleſtis*, and *Mercurius vitæ*, and they mix them with other vulgar Medicines, from whence followeth a plentiful Evacuation of Water. But they had need of ſtrong Bodies who take them.

Mercurius dulcis works moſt gently, and *Mercurius Diaphoreticus*. But *Antimonium Diaphoreticum* cures without manifeſt Evacuation, if it be calcined with Salt-Peter till it be white: but the Diaphoretick or Sweating Medicine made of the Butter of Antimony, cures all kinds of Dropſies beſt.

But you muſt obſerve in the giving of all ſorts of Purges, That they, eſpecially if ſtrong, are not to be given often, as *Galen* teacheth Lib. 9, *Cata Topous*, becauſe they weaken the body, and then there will more water be bred afterwards. Therefore you muſt preſcribe ſtrengtheners and openers oftener than purgers. And Experience teacheth us, That the Evacuation by Urine in this Diſeaſe hath better ſucceſs than that by ſtool.

Inſtead of Purgers, you may give Clyſters, which diſcuſs wind, purge water, and take down the belly, made thus:

Take of *Mallows, Mercury, and red Coleworts, of each one handful: Soldanella or wild Mercury half a handful: Annis, Caraway, and Dill ſeeds, of each three drams: Chamomel, Melilot, French Lavender and Broom flowers, of each one pugil: boyl them to a pint. In the ſtraining diſſolve of Diacatholicon one ounce: Hiera Picra half an ounce: Oyl of Dill and Lillies, and of common Honey, of each two ounces. Make a Clyſter twice in a week.* Or,

Take of *very ſowr Leaven half an ounce: common Salt one pugil: Boyl them in as much Water as is ſufficient: ſtrain it, and add to it, the Urine of a Child four ounces: Oyl of Rue three ounces. Clarified Honey one ounce. Make a Clyſter.* This *Valeriola* commends highly.

This following Clyſter, brings forth Water in abundance:

Take of *Coloquintida one dram, Infuſe it for a night in three ounces of white Wine: when it is ſtrained add thereto, Tripe Broth one pint: common Oyl two ounces: Salt-Peter melted one ounce: ſtrong Vinegar one ſpoonful: make a Clyſter.* Or,

Take of *the Pulp of Coloquintida one dram: Clean Bran one handful: boyl them in white Wine for a Clyſter.* Or,

Take of *Carthamus ſeeds one ounce: the beſt Agarick half an ounce: the pulp of Coloquintida three drams: Centaury the leſs, Germander, and both the Wormwoods, of each half a handful: boyl them to a pint. In the ſtraining diſſolve of Oyl of Chamomel, Rue, and Capars, of each one ounce: Honey of Roſes two ounces: make a Clyſter.* Or,

Take of *the Emollient Decoction one pint: thick vomiting Wine, the Infuſion of Crocus metallorum four ounces: Diaphœnicon one ounce: make a Clyſter.*

Blood-

Blood-letting here, is for good Reaſon omitted, except the Diſeaſe come from ſtoppage of the Terms or Hemorrhoids. And then you muſt not bleed except it be in the beginning of the Diſeaſe, before the Liver be grown too cold.

Iſſues, Bliſters and Scarrifications, uſe to cauſe Gangrenes, or mortifications in a Dropſie, becauſe the heat of the part being ſmal, is quickly extinguiſhed: Therefore it is better wholly to abſtain from theſe kind of Remedies, although ſomtimes they have done ſome people good.

Paracenteſis, or cutting of the Skin, is ſeldom to be uſed, becauſe few are cured thereby, eſpecially becauſe the Patients, or their kindered will not yield to it before the Diſeaſe is confirmed, and the Bowels are ſo putrefied that there is no hope. Therefore for the moſt part they die the ſecond or third day after they are cut. The wiſer ſort will have the Inciſion made in the beginning or encreaſe of the Diſeaſe, before the Bowels are corrupted. Neither is it neceſſary at that time, becauſe the diſeaſe being ſmal may more ſafely be cured with other Medicines.

Among empty ing Medicines, Sweat ings are accounted moſt profitable, which, as they are alwaies good in Anaſarca, ſo in a Tympany, or Aſcites, they ſomtimes hurt, namely, when drineſs of the Liver (which is uſual) cauſeth the Diſeaſe. Moreover, it is commonly impoſſible to make men in Dropſies ſweat. But if the Liver be not dry, Sweats are good in all kinds of Dropſies, eſpecially when they decline, to diſcuſs the reliques of the watery Humor by the Habit of the Body. So *Valeriola* reports that he cured an Aſcites with a Decoction of Guajacum given fourty daies together. It is good to make the Decoction with ſteeled Water and Wine. The Chymicks commend Antimonium Diaphoreticum.

Martinus Rulandus makes a Sudorifick of Juniper Berries, which becauſe they are forceable to provoke Urine, may do good both waies. It is thus made:

Take of *Juniper berries bruiſed three handfuls: Sack as much as is ſufficient: boyl them to halfs and give two ounces every morning, covering warm after it.*

Horatius Reſerus in *Scholtzius*, boaſteth that he hath cured many Boyes, and ſome Women of the Anaſarca with Syrup of St. *Ambroſe*, which is a Sudorifick: Its deſcription is in an old Diſpenſatory called *Luminare majus*, thus:

Take of *Gromwel ſeeds huſked two ounces: ſpring Water half a pint: boyl them till three or four ounces of water only remain; which being ſtrained, mix it with as much Sack, and give it warm; it will ſweat him plentifully if he be covered warm.*

But thoſe Medicines are beſt which purge by Urine, and the Cure is commonly better this way.

One of the chief, is two ounces of the Juyce of Chervil given every morning in Wine for many daies.

Opening Wines that purge by Urine are good in this caſe; as this,

Take of *Elecampane, Smallage, Fennel, and Flowerdeluce Roots dried, of each one ounce and an half: Roots of Valerian, Gentian, Aſarabacca, and Squils or Sea Onions, of each one dram: the middle Bark of an Elder, and Saſſaphras, of each ſix drams: dried Wormwood, Agrimony, Germander, and Maiden-hair, of each two drams: the tops of Centaury the leſs and Broom flowers, of each one dram: Parſley, Annis, and Dill ſeeds, of each one dram and an half: Cinnamon two drams: Spicknard half a dram: bruiſe them together, and infuſe them in white Wine ſome few daies, and let him drink thereof every morning.*

The ſteeled compound Wine preſcribed in the Obſtruction of the Liver, is good for the ſame.

The Decoction of Juniper mentioned, is to be reckoned among the Diureticks. And if you fear it is too hot, you may make it in Water, and put a little Spirit of Vitriol to it.

Fonſeca commends the uſe of Turpentine waſhed with Barley Water, and he gives half an ounce thereof twice in a week.

And laſtly, The Spirit of Salt, Tartar, and Vitriol, given in a true quantity with an Apozeme, or other opening Decoction for ſome daies, do wonders; becauſe they being very thin, do run into all the parts of the Body, and open them.

The Salts of Wormwood, Juniper, Bean Stalks, and the like, given in white Wine, do the ſame. Or in want of Salts you may make a Lee of the Aſhes of the ſame, which will be ſufficient

Mathiolus upon the 87. Chap. Lib. 1. of *Dioſcorides*, ſaith, *That a Lee made of Juniper Aſhes with white Wine, and four or five ounces thereof taken, doth powerfully provoke Urine, ſo that I have ſeen ſome men cured of a Dropſie with it alone.*

Moreover, In the whol time of the Cure, you muſt uſe ſtrengtheners to the Liver; for it is in vain to purge water, if you do not hinder the encreaſe of it: which you cannot do except you refreſh the Liver, and bring it to its former temper.

Among the chief Strengtheners is Cinnamon Water; of which you may give one Spoonful every morning, and before Supper.

But *Galen* in his Eight Book *Kata Topous* commends the Electuary called Cyphoides by the Arabians from the Wine whereof it is made, of which you may give half an ounce in the morning, according to *Hollerius* it is thus made,

Take of *Curans clenſed half a pound*: *boyl them in old Sack to the conſiſtence of a Pultis, ſtrain them after they are pounded, and then ad of the conſerve of Roſemary flowers, Citron bark candied, and Cinnamon, of each one dram*: *the Pouder of Aromaticum Roſatum, Diamargariton calidum, and Diacinamom, of each two ſcruples*: *Lignum Aloes half a dram*: *Saffron half a ſcruple*: *mix them for a ſoft Electuary.*

The Opiates preſcribed for the Obſtruction of the Liver are here very profitable.

The Conſerve of Sea Wormwood is very good, made of one part of the Leaves and three of Sugar with which *Matthiolus* in his Chapter of Wormwood ſaith ſome have been Cured.

Poterius makes an Opiate of Conſerve of Roſes, Specificum Somachium, and Crocus Martis, and Oyl of Vitriol, by which only Medicine he ſaith he hath Cured Dropſies. The Specificum Stomachium, is Antimony fixed.

The Cure of men in Dropſies lieth much in their drink: therefore there muſt be care of that, that he drink ſparingly, and endure thirſt as much as may be: for it is known that many have been Cured only with abſtaining from drink and eating of dry meats without other means: For Drink let him take Elicampane or Wormwood, Juniper, or Steeled Wine, or let him uſe the aforeſaid Steel Medicines. *Avicen* forbids men in a Dropſie to ſee Waters. But if you fear too much Heat or Drineſs, or if the Patient be Abſtemious, he may uſe the Decoction of Juniper, of Guajacum, or Saſſaphras, or of Madder, which provokes urin very much, either alone, or with white Wine: But becauſe he muſt abſtain from Drink (as we ſaid) and yet there is great Thirſt, it muſt be aſſwaged by Fits with waſhing the mouth with ſteeled Water and Vinegar, or with often chewing Maſtich or the like; for it wil draw water to the mouth, not only (as ſome think) out of the head alone, but from the Stomach and Cavity of the Abdomen, and therefore it will do much good.

Of Meats we ſay thus, That he muſt chuſe the Dryeſt and avoid Sweet meats as the Plague.

While you uſe Internals, forget not Externals, for they are of great force to diſcuſs the Humor of the Belly; as Fomentations, Bags, Oyntments, Pultiſſes, and Plaiſters: The Chief are made thus,

Take of *Marſh-mallow and Lilly Roots, Cypreſs barks, Capar barks, middle barks of Aſh, Tamariſk, dwarf-Elder, & the greater Snakeweed of each three ounces*: *Wormwood, Agrimony, Marjoram, Organ, Calamints, Peny-Royal, Rue, Ground-pine, Southernwood, and Elder, of each one handful*: *Parſley, Dill, and Cummin ſeeds, of each one ounce*: *Chamomel, Melilot, and Broom flowers, of each three pugils*: *Spickenard, Schœnanth, Nutmegs, Cloves, and Cinnamon, of each half an ounce*: *Salt and Allum, of each half a pound*: *boyl them all in a Lee made of Oak Aſhes, or branches, with this Foment the whol Belly with Spunges dipt therein and ſtrained.*

Or,

Take *the Urine of a ſound Boy, four Pints*: *Lapis Prunellæ, three ounces*: *boyl them to the conſuming of the third part for a Fomentation.*

Aqua-pendens Commends Lime Water, in which he dips a new Spunge which wil compaſs the whol Abdomen; this he ſtrains and binds on, by which he affirmeth, That the Waters that Cauſe the Dropſie are conſumed, the cold and moiſt diſtemper of the Bowels are taken away, and the hardneſs of the Spleen diſſolved.

Claudinus quencheth the Lime in a Salt Bath Water, that is either of Brimſtone or Salt-peter, and bindeth cloſe the Spunges dipped therein and ſtrained with Rowlers to the Belly, and keeps them there long, and then changeth them.

You may make Bags of the Ingredients of the former Fomentation boyled in white Wine, and applied warm to the belly.

After the Fomentation let the belly be anointed with Oyl of Dill, Rue, or Flower-de-luce, mixed with Pouder of Ammoniacum, Galangal, Dill, Bay-berries, and the like.

It is alſo good to anoint with the Oyl of Scorpions according to *Matthiolus*, and with a little Oyl of Roſemary.

Many do make Oyntments and Liniments of ſtrong Purgers, which draw VVater violently from the Dropſie, and aſſwage the Swelling of the belly, but they are dangerous, for the Purging Quality getting between the Muſcles and the Membranes, doth often ſtir up a deadly Looſeneſs.

After Liniments, or if they be omitted you may apply Cataplaſms or Emplaiſters: This following is the beſt,

Take of *the Roots of wild Cowcumbers well bruiſed and ſteeped twenty four hours in Vinegar of Squills, one pound*: *clarified Honey two Pints*: *mix them, and boyl them to the conſiſtance of a Cerat, and ad in the end four ounces of the Pouder of Cumminſeed, make an Emplaiſter for the belly to be renewed every day*: Or,

Take

Take of *dryed Cow-dung one pound*: *Brimſtone and Cummin ſeeds Poudered, of each two drams*: *New Wine boyled called Sapa*: *or of the Urine of a Boy, as much as will make a Cataplaſm.*

A Cataplaſm of Rhadiſhes bruiſed and laid to the Navel and Reins, doth provoke Stools and Urine.

Galen Commends a Cataplaſm of Snails bruiſed with their Shells, which muſt be kept to the belly till it fal off of its own accord; it draws water forth violently.

Valeriola makes it in form of a Plaiſter thus,

Take of *Cow-dung one pound*: *Goats-dung half a pound*: *boyl them in ſtrong Vinegar, and beat them in a Mortar with three ounces of Brimſtone, and one ounce of Allum*: *the Juyce of Spurge and dwarf-Elder newly drawn, of each three ounces*: *Lupine and Orobus meal, of each two ounces*: *the Pouder of Soldanella, Annis, Fennel, and Cummin, of each two drams*: *common parched Salt, three drams*: *Turpentine, four ounces*: *Pitch, ſix ounces*: *make a Plaiſter.*

It is worth the Obſervation which *Wierus* and *Varignana* ſay they have found by Experience that a Toad found in the Woods, cut through the belly and tyed to the Reins, doth provoke Urine violently; and when you wil evacuate more, apply another.

Petræus alſo reports that the Pouder of the ſame Toad dried and calcined in an Oven, drunk half a dram in Wine or other Liquor, doth wonderfully expel the Dropſie by Urine.

The firſt Inventor of which Experience deſiring thereby to deſtroy himſelf, was cured thereby contrary to expectation.

Alſo this following Cerat made of a Toad is excellent,

Take of *Toads two pound*: *the Juyce of dwarf Elder three Pints*: *Oyl one pint*: *Wax half a pound*: *boyl them in a luted Pot to the conſumption of half, ſtrain them for a Cerat*; *ſpread this upon a Leather and lay it to the Spleen it evacuateth all waters.*

All the time of the Cure you muſt ſtrengthen the Liver and Stomach, if the humor doth begin to abate, or is not ſo great that it hinders the Vertue of outward Medicines from coming to the part.

Take of *the Oyl of Orange flowers one ounce*: *the Oyl of Spike three drams*: *the Oyntment of Roſes, the ſtomach Cerot of* Galen, *of each two drams*: *diſtilled Oyl of Maſtich two ſcruples*: *the diſtilled Oyl of Wormwood one ſcruple*: *Oyl of Nutmegs one dram and an half*: *white Wax a little*: *mix them for a Liniment to be applied to the ſtomach.*

Take of *Sea Wormwood three drams*: *Horehound and Roſemary, of each two drams*: *Red Roſes two pugills*: *Chamomil flowers and Bay Leaves, of each half an handful*: *Orange peels and ſweet wood, Aloes of each three drams*: *Cypreſs Roots, Schœnanth, and Spikenard, of each half an ounce*: *with two parts of the beſt Wine, and one part of Wormwood and Agrimony Water make a Decoction, with which Foment the Region of the Liver with a ſponge firſt waſht in Wormwood Water.*

Take of *the Oyntment of Roſes and Cerot of Sanders, of each three ounces*: *Red Roſes, Endive and Sorrel ſeed, of each one dram*: *Spikenard, Schœnanth, dryed Wormwood, and Styrax Calamita, of each four ſcruples*: *Oyl of Maſtich or Wormwood as much as will ſuffice to make a Liniment to be applied to the ſame part after the Fomentation.*

For the moſt part in a Dropſie the Thighs, Legs, and Feet have a cold ſwelling, and for the diſcuſſing of it a Lye is good in which the Roots of Dwarf Elder, and Elicampane, Roſemary Leaves, Marjoram, Thyme, Bayes, Organ, Salt and Allum have been boyled.

Although the things aforeſaid are chiefly uſed, yet ſomtimes they are not neceſſary, namely, when the Dropſie comes in a hot and dry Conſtitution from hot cauſes which diſperſe the natural heat, as in vehement Chollerick Feavers, for then cold things for the Liver mixed with warm Openers are beſt, ſuch as are uſed in continual Feavers: And the Magiſtral Syrup above mentioned made of the Juyce of Roſes, Succory, and Agrimony.

For ordinary Drink give a Decoction of Succory Roots and Calcitrapa, or white Chamelion, which is not unpleaſant; or of other Openers, but in a greater quantity than above, which may quench thirſt, aſſwage the heat of the Liver, and moiſten the drineſs thereof: It is not amiſs to confirm this Doctrine by a famous example (though it be allowed by *Avicen*, *Trallian*, and others) becauſe it ſeems ſtrange to ſome. and is of great Conſequence: *Baptiſta Montanus* reports, *Conſ.* 263. in theſe words; *I ſaw* (ſaith he) *in Venice a certain Predicant Frier that was cured of an Aſcites and Tympanites*: *there were with me many famous Phyſitians*; *namely*, Papienſis, Eugubinus, Trincavella, *and others*: *He had* (*as I ſaid*) *an Aſcites with a Tympany, and a Conſumption with a Hectick Feaver*; *therefore we were bound both to dry and moiſten*: *therefore we were in a great contention*; *I was willing that he ſhould drink much, but things that Open, becauſe he had many obſtructions,*

ſtructions, and that moiſten becauſe he had a Conſumption: I preſcribed the Syrup of Vinegar with all things that provoke Urine: Eugubinus *would not allow him to drink, and told a ſtory of one who was cured by dry things:* Papienſis *to end the controverſie, ſaid, That he ſhould neither drink much, nor at all; we argued till night: the Noblemen brought their Phyſitians to their Boats, and there* Papienſis *ſaid to a Nobleman, what he had concealed formerly, If you would have this man cured, there is nothing to be done but what* Baptiſta Montanus *ſaith.*

In this caſe alſo Medicines of Steel, Tartar, and Vitriol are excellent, becauſe they ſtrongly Open and provoke Urine without any great heat.

But the tart, Vitriol Mineral Waters are beſt, becauſe they powerfully open the Bowels, provoke Urine, and correct the Diſtemper of the Bowels, whence experience ſheweth us that many Dropſies are every yeer cured at the Spaw.

Avicen reports in the Chapter of the Cure of Aſcites, of a Woman *which had a great Dropſie and eat an incredible number of Pomegranats, whereby ſhe was cured.*

And *Varignana* reports out of *Platearius*, That an Old Woman boyled the Juyce of Plantane to the Conſumption of half, and gave it to one that had a Dropſie from a Hot Cauſe every day, and ſo Cured him.

By theſe Examples it is plain, That ſomtimes a Dropſie is Cured with Cold things; and to theſe we may ad the teſtimony of *Chriſtopher a Vega*, lib. 3. art. med. ſect. 8. cap. 12. who ſaith there, *We ſaw one that had a Tympany from the Hot Diſtemper of the Liver whom we cured with cold things, laying upon the Liver the Juyce of Endive and Succory with a little Vinegar, and giving Endive and Succory to be eaten.*

The End of the Eleventh Book.

THE

THE TWELFTH BOOK OF THE PRACTICE OF PHYSICK.

Of the Diſeaſes of the Spleen.

The PREFACE.

ALthough the Spleen may be afflicted with all kinds of Diſeaſes, both Similary, Organick, and Common: yet we will only ſpeak of thoſe which are moſt ordinary in practice; and we will contain them in ſix Chapters. The firſt ſhall be of the Inflamation of the Spleen. The ſecond of the Pain. The third of the Obſtruction and Tumor, or puffing up of the Spleen. The fourth of the Scirrhus, or hard Tumor. The fifth of Hypochondriack Melancholly. The ſixth of the Scurvy.

Chap. 1. *Of the Inflamation of the Spleen.*

THe Inflamation of the Spleen is of the ſame Nature with that of the Liver: only it differs in this; That it ſeldom comes from pure, but from Melanchollick Blood. It hath the ſame Cauſes, both Conjunct, and Antecedent: but the Diagnoſis, or knowledg by ſigns, is different.

The ſigns of the Spleen inflamed, are ſwelling and pain in the left ſide under the Ribs, which ſomtimes reacheth to the Midriff, and the left Shoulder; alſo heavineſs, and beating in the ſame ſide, a conſtant Feaver, loathing of Meat, Thirſt, blackneſs of the Tongue, troubleſom lying on the right ſide, by reaſon of the heavineſs of the part lying upon the Stomach then; ſomtimes troubleſom lying upon the left, if the Tumor be great, for then it is preſſed both by the Stomach, and the Liver; ſomtimes the Tumor is in the ſhape of the Spleen, ſomtimes it fills the whol left Hypochondrion, ſomtimes it appears below the Navel, when the matter is encreaſed, and when the Inflamation reacheth to the parts adjacent, and eſpecially to the Navel.

Theſe ſigns are greater or leſſer, according to the divers mixtures of Humors. For if Choller be mixed with Melanchollick Blood, the Urine is more red, the Mouth bitter, the Thirſt greater, the Feaver ſtronger and worſe every third day; great watchings, and ſomtimes doting: if it be mixed with

with Flegm, the Color is pale, the Feaver and Thirſt is leſs, and the pain leſs: But if the Blood be only Melancholick, the hardneſs is greater, the color is black, and ſomtimes the Urine, and there is other ſigns of Melancholly predominating.

The Prognoſtick is almoſt the ſame with that of the Liver inflamed, but leſs dangerous, becauſe the Liver is the nobler Part. If it kill not the party, either it ends in a Criſis, or it is diſſolved or ſuppurated, or grows hard and turns into a Scirrhus. A good Criſis is when the left Noſtril bleeds, or when there is a purging by Stool or Urine.

The Cure of this Diſeaſe, is the ſame with that of the Liver: only obſerve theſe Differences.

Firſt, You muſt open the left Arm in this, and not ſo often as in the Inflamation of the Liver, becauſe the Liver being the Fountain of blood, wants greater Evacuation. That which is reported of the Salvatella Vein to diſcharge the Spleen ſo properly, is but a conceit, and is now out of uſe: you may better take blood out of the Liver Vein, called Baſtica.

Secondly, You muſt apply thoſe Topicks, or outward Medicines now to the left ſide.

Thirdly, You muſt not take ſuch care in the uſe of binding Medicines outwardly, becauſe the Spleen is not ſo noble a part, and needs leſs ſtrengthening.

Other things are to be taken out of the Cure of the Inflamation of the Liver.

Chap. 2. *Of the Pain of the Spleen.*

SOmtimes the Spleen is pained without Feaver or hardneſs; and this comes from wind which doth not only ſtretch the ſubſtance of the Spleen, which is almoſt inſenſible, but the Membranes that covereth it.

It is eaſily diſtinguiſhed from the Inflamation by the Feaver, and hardneſs being abſent, but hardly from the Chollick, becauſe the Colon is juſt under and over the Spleen: yet the pain of the Spleen is weighty, and in one place; but the pain of the Colon is ſtretching, ſharp, and movable, and runs about the whol Belly.

The Cure of this Diſeaſe, is with Clyſters that are Carminative, or that expel wind with convenient purging, and with Emollient and Diſcuſſing Fomentations mixed with Vinegar: As alſo with Liniments made of Oyl of Lillies, Chamomel, Capars, and Wormwood, with a little Spike and Vinegar.

If the pain remain after the uſe of theſe, apply a Cupping-glaſs to the left Hypochondrion, if there be no ſuſpition of the Inflamation or Defluxion.

Chap. 3. *Of Obſtruction, Tumor, or Puffing up of the Spleen.*

THe Spleen is no leſs ſubject to Obſtructions than the Liver, but more, becauſe it receiveth thicker and fouler blood, which is more eaſily contained in its Veins, or inſenſible Paſſages, by reaſon of the ſoftneſs and looſneſs of the part, which is more fit to receive thick Humors. And when thick Humors ſtick in the ſubſtance of the Spleen, it makes a Tumor, and an Inflamation in the part. And if the Humor by long continuance grow thick and hard, it breeds a Scirrhus; but as long as it is moiſt with Flegm, it is like an Oedema or flegmatick Tumor, which is moſt uſual with them who live in Marſhy moiſt places, or who live upon cold Diet. But if this Tumor be ſoft and looſe, it is called ſimply an Inflamation, or puffing up, the cauſe whereof, is partly flegm, and partly wind. They are commonly called Splenitick people who are thus afflicted.

The Cauſes of the Obſtruction of the Spleen, are the ſame with them of the Liver, and this or that part is, as it is more or leſs diſpoſed to receive them: Somtimes both Liver and Spleen are affected together; for a groſs Humor can hardly be in one part, but ſome of it muſt be carried to the other.

The Obſtruction of the Spleen is diſtinguiſhed from the Obſtruction of the Liver, from the Situation of the part; for there is a heavineſs in the left Hypochondrion, and ſomtimes pain, eſpecially after running or great walking or riding: and when you handle the Hypochondrion, there is a ſtretching and reſiſtance; Beſides, the Face is blewiſh, and there are other Signs of Melancholly.

This

This Diſeaſe is ſtubborn and of long continuance, by reaſon of the ſoftneſs and looſneſs of the part, which cannot therefore eaſily diſcharge the humor; and if it laſt long and be not Cured ſpeedily, it turns into a Scirrhus.

The Cure is the ſame with that of the Obſtruction of the Liver, by adding ſome things which do more properly reſpect the Spleen, and are fitter to prepare and purge Melancholly.

The Pills of Ammoniacum which follow, are to be added as moſt excellent, and to be uſed often,

Take of *the beſt Ammoniacum diſſolved in Vinegar of Squills one ounce*: *the extract of Aloes half an ounce*: *Cryſtal of Tartar one dram*: *Myrrh and Saffron, of each half a dram*: *Maſtich, Benjamine, Salt of Aſh, and Wormwood, of each one ſcruple*: *with Oxymel of Squills make a maſs of Pills. The Doſe is half a dram twice in a Week, with Purging between.*

In Apozemes and other Opening Drinks, Oxymel ſimple, and of Squills, or Sea Onyons may be very wel diſſolved, to cut and diſſolve powerfully the groſs and earthy humors.

Of all other Medicines thoſe which are made of Steel are the beſt to open the Obſtructions of the Spleen.

Alſo you may give Steeled or Ironed Waters for ordinary Drink, which are known to leſſen the Spleen (as *Celſus* ſaith) by this, becauſe Beaſts that are brought up at Smiths houſes have little Spleens.

To the Fomentation put Vinegar inſtead of white Wine, which wil make them peirce better, which is requiſite in a groſs humor.

Moreover *Galen* Commends Vinegar exceedingly in the Diſeaſes of the Spleen, uſed both inwardly and outwardly.

Put Hemlock to the Cataplaſms; as being moſt Powerful to Soften, and Diſcuſs Humors.

There is an Excellent Cataplaſm made of Green Tobacco; boyled in Oyl, and White Wine.

Of which alſo boyled to the Conſumption of the Wine, you may make a Rare Liniment.

Amatus Luſitanus, curat. 6. cent. 5. mentioneth a Cure of an Obſtruction of the Spleen remaining after a Quartan Ague, That it was taken away with a Decoction of China uſed twenty dayes after convenient Purging.

Chap. 4. *Of the Scirrhus, or Hard Swelling of the Spleen.*

THe matter of the Spleen cauſing obſtruction by continuance grows thicker, and makes a Scirrhus: And ſince the Scirrhus of the Liver and Spleen are both of one Nature, whatſoever we have ſaid of the Scirrhus of the Liver, may be here alſo uſeful.

The Knowledg alſo of the Scirrhus of the Spleen is the ſame with that of the Liver, but only the hardneſs is on the contrary ſide.

It is Diſtinguiſhed from a Windy Tumor; becauſe there is more Heavineſs in a Schirrhus, than in a Windy Tumor, which yeildeth to the Finger, and maketh a Noiſe; al which are not in a Scirrhus.

If it come only of Melancholly, there wil be evident ſigns thereof; but if it be mixed with Flegm, there is apparent in the whol body a Phlegmatick evil habit.

The Prognoſtick alſo is the ſame with that of the Liver; only this of the Spleen is more eaſily Cured; becauſe the leſs Noble the part is, the ſtronger Medicines may be Applied without Danger.

And Laſtly, The Cure is the ſame with that mentioned in the Scirrhus of the Liver.

And becauſe it is to be done by degrees, from mild to ſtronger Medicines: firſt you muſt uſe thoſe Remedies which we ſaid were good for the Obſtructions of the Liver and Spleen: and among the Chalybeat Medicines there commended, the Principle is the Pills of Steel, made with Amoniacum, and other things mentioned in the Obſtruction of the Liver.

Pills of Aloes, Ammoniacum, and Mercurius dulcis, are the beſt among the Medicines for the Scirrhus of the Liver.

But this following Opiate is the Medicine wil Cure, if it be not incurable:

Take of *Gum Ammoniack, Opopanax, and Bdelium, of each two drams*: *diſſolve them in white Wine*: *ſtrain and boyl them, then ad of confectio Hamech, and Diaphœnicon, of each two drams*:

drams: double Catholicon half an ounce: Pilulæ fœtidæ two drams: make an Opiate, of which let him take half an ounce with twenty grains of Mercurius dulcis for many daies together, and ſo the Tumor and hardneſs will vaniſh.

And beſides what was ſaid concerning the Liver, you muſt obſerve theſe following Precepts in in this Diſeaſe.

Firſt, Becauſe Blood-letting is much queſtioned, we reſolve that it may be good in the beginning. But it is good for nothing when the Diſeaſe is old.

Secondly, The dead or blind Nettle called *Galiopſis*, or *Pliny*'s Arch-angel, is commended by *Solenander* and *Fonſeca*, for a ſpecial Remedy; the Italians call it the Spleen Herb: this is given boyled in Wine, the quantity of an ounce, or one dram in Pouder, with Wine or other convenient Liquor or Decoction, with moſt admirable ſucceſs.

Thirdly, Beſides the Fomentations there mentioned, *Aquapendens* in his Chyrurgery, commends the fomentation of the Belly, with a Spunge dipped in Time Water, and ſqueezed; and with that he ſaith he hath cured the Scirrhus of the Spleen and Dropſie.

Fourthly, Beſides the Oyntments afore mentioned, *Amatus Luſitanus* commends this following as admirable, by which he ſaith he cured a Scirrhus of the Spleen; and he ſaith that he had it from the Phyſitians of *Ferraria*.

Take of *Common Oyl three pints: the Marrow of an Ox bone one pound: freſh Butter half a pound: the Juyces of Briony and Sowbread, of each one pint: boyl them gently till the Juyces are almoſt conſumed. Add to the ſtraining, yellow Wax eight ounces: the Pouder of Ceterach or Spleenwort, Capar barks, Tamariſk, and Agnus Caſtus ſeeds, of each three drams. Mix them into an Oyntment.*

Thus it is deſcribed by *Amatus*; but there is too much for one Patient, therefore you may leſſen it thus:

Take of *Common Oyl three ounces: Ox Marrow one ounce: freſh Butter half an ounce: the juyce of the Root of Briony and wild Cucumers, of each one ounce and an half: boyl them as afore, and add one ounce of Wax, and of the pouder of Ceterach: Capar and Tamariſk Barks, and Agnus Caſtus ſeeds, of each two drams.*

Fifthly, The Cataplaſms following are excellent:

Take of *the Roots of wild Cucumers one pound: Mallows and Violets, of each three handfuls: boyl them till they are ſoft, beat them and ſtrain them: then add of the Oyl of Capars and Tamariſk, Vinegar of Squills a little: make a Cataplaſm.*

Take of *ſowr Leaven two pound: Boyl it in equal parts of Oyl and Wine to a Pultiſs.*

Beſides the Plaiſters mentioned in the Scirrhus of the Liver, theſe are very good:

Take of *Gum Ammoniack four ounces: Diſſolve them in ſtrong Vinegar: then ſtrain them, and boyl them till the Vinegar be conſumed: then with a little Wax make a Plaiſter.*

Take of *Hemlock four handfuls: Ammoniacum half a pound: Infuſe them in Vinegar eight daies: then boyl them til the Ammoniacum be diſſolved: then ſtrain them through a linnen cloth, and boyl the Liquor again a little while, and with Wax and Oyl of Almonds, make a Plaiſter.*

Take of *the Juyce of Mallows, Creſſonis, the Stalks and Roots of Fern, of each two ounces: Gum Ammoniack four ounces: With a little Vinegar, firſt diſſolve them with a gentle fire, then boyl them, and ſtrain them: then boyl them again to the conſiſtence of a Syrup; and with one ounce of Oyl of Capars, and a little Wax, make a Sparadrap for the Spleen, to be renewed every third day.*

Aquapendens in the place cited, ſaith, that he cured many with this Plaiſter, which is made of two parts of Ammoniacum diſſolved in Vinegar, and one of the Juyce of Tobacco; one of the Rozin of the Pine-tree, Turpentine, and Juyce of Danewort; one of Oyl of Capars, and a little new Wax in the Form of a Cerat.

Chap. 5. *Of Hypochondriack Melancholly.*

Although all the parts beneath the Ribs, called Hypochondria, are affected in this Diſeaſe, yet its thought the Spleen is moſt, becauſe it receives the Melancholly, and therefore it is fitly placed among the Diſeaſes of the Spleen.

This Diſeaſe comes of Preternatural Melancholly, and other aduſt Humors, eſpecially Blood, or Choller, or Natural Melancholly.

This

This Melancholick Humor is not pure by its ſelf, but commonly mixed with others, as Choller, Flegm, and Water, from whence come the diverſity of Symptomes, which hereafter ſhal be mentioned. Theſe Humors breed in the Spleen, eſpecially when it is diſtempered with heat, and alſo in the Liver: hence it is that they draw meat and drink to themſelves, which is not concocted, that which is thin of the Chyle ſooner than that which is thick: and then the thicker part for want of ſomthing to carry it, ſtaies in the Meſeraick Veins, and the longer it ſtaies, the thicker it grows, and ſomtimes is burnt: and afterwards coming to thoſe parts, it is not well concocted. Moreover, thoſe parts in their Natural ſtate ſhould concoct by boyling, now do it by roaſting; hence comes this great aduſtion of Humors.

It may alſo be, that this Diſeaſe may be bred without the diſtemper of theſe parts, from evil Nouriſhment that breed Melancholly blood; and alſo from good blood retained too long in the veſſels, and being too much, as in the ſtoppage of the Terms and Hemorrhoids, which continuing long in the Veſſels, is burnt, and turned into Melancholly.

It may alſo come from the Stomach not well concocting, but turning it into a parched Crudity, from which thoſe evil Juyces are bred in the Liver, and the Spleen. And *Galen*, 3. de loc. affect. cap. 7. following *Diocles*, thought the proper ſeat of it was in the Stomach, becauſe in this Diſeaſe there are commonly ſigns of an ill Stomach: But it is more probable that the Stomach ſhould be afflicted ſecondarily from the Liver or the Spleen, as we will cleerly ſhew hereafter.

Theſe evil Humors are gathered into the Veins and Arteries, which are in the bottom of the Stomach, eſpecially in the great branches of the Gate Vein, the Spleen Veins, and thoſe of the Meſentery, Caul, and Belly, in which they have often great and grievous ferventations or workings; from whence ſtinking Vapors are ſent to the Brain, Heart, and Midriff, which cauſe thoſe divers Symptomes in thoſe parts, which we ſhall after mention.

Alſo the Humors are contained in the Bowels, eſpecially in the Spleen and Sweet-bread, and the Glandles of the Meſentery, the ſubſtance of which parts is ſoft, and like a Spunge, and therefore is more ready to receive them, and harder to caſt them forth. Beſides, the Glandles which are diſperſed through the Meſentery, to be a prop to Veins and Arteries, and to hinder leaſt they ſhould be preſſed by the Guts being full, or by any other thing: If theſe ſwell much, they do preſs upon the Veſſels, and hinder the paſſage of the Humors, whence come Obſtructions in thoſe paſſages.

Boyes and yong men are little ſubject to this Diſeaſe, by reaſon of their moiſt temper unfit to breed Melancholly: but men often, becauſe the Humors are burnt by heat in youth; and when that heat decaies, and the thin parts are exhaled, there is a great encreaſe of Melancholly.

The Antecedent and principal Cauſes of this Diſeaſe, are firſt Meats of evil Juyce, and hard of Concoction, which are fit to breed Melancholly; as brown Bread, or unleavened, or cruſty, Pulſe, Cheeſe, hard Eggs, and fried Meats, Water Fowl, Beef, Veniſon, Hairs, and all Salt and ſmoaked Meats, and many other things of hard ſubſtance.

Secondly, Great Paſſions of long continuance, eſpecially Sadneſs, are very powerful to breed this Diſeaſe becauſe they diſperſe the Spirits, by which means the Concoction is weakened, and ſo there is great Crudity, which being burnt by the hot Bowels turn into Melancholly.

Thirdly, Idleneſs, by which the Excrements are retained, eſpecially if there be much ſtudy and watching; hence it is that learned men, and ſuch as ſit much are very ſubject to this Diſeaſe.

Laſtly, The ſtoppage of the Terms and Hemorrhoids, both in reſpect of their quality and quantity produce it: For when Melancholick, Salt, and burnt Humors, uſed to be diſcharged by thoſe waies, if they are ſtopped they return to the Hypochondria and cauſe this Diſeaſe.

The Knowledg of this is taken from the Symptomes which follow, and they are many, becauſe almoſt all parts of the Body ſuffer thereby when it is high: We ſhall reckon them up, admoniſhing firſt, That all do not happen to all Patients, but ſome to one, ſome to another, according to the diverſity of the Humor, and the part affected.

Firſt therefore, the Stomach commonly ſuffers, not principally, as *Galen* from *Diocles* ſuppoſed; but ſecondarily: When Blood coming from the Branches of the Gate Vein, to nouriſh the Stomach is not good; from whence the Stomach being ill nouriſhed, doth ill concoct, and turns its Meat into corruption. Hence comes a circular Evil, when the Liver and Spleen ſend evil Blood to the Stomach, and the Stomach breeds evil Chyle to return to them, of which they make bad blood.

Therefore in this Diſeaſe the Stomach commonly concocteth ill, and turns the chief part ſomtimes into Water, ſomtimes into ſharp, ſowr, and clammy ſubſtance; which being not drawn by the Guts and Meſeraick Veins, becauſe unfit for nouriſhment, ſtaies in the Stomach; and coming upwards ſomtimes fills the Tongue with Spittle, ſo that the Patients ſpit much, and ſomtimes vomit.

Somtimes the Matter in the Stomach boyleth, and fermenteth; from whence comes wind, which doth not only ſtretch the Stomach, but the parts adjacent, and make the Heart ſo ſick that ſomtimes

the Patient swooneth. Sometimes the Wind is sent out upwards and downwards, and by insensible transpiration, or the Matter causing them is vomited forth.

Yet you must observe that al that is vomited out is not bred in the Stomach, but is sent from the Spleen and other parts to it: for sometimes the humors vomited are so sharp that they set the teeth on edg, and these are sent by the short vessel from the Spleen to the Stomach.

In some there is blood so sent, with Melancholly and other evil Humors, which is cast forth partly upward, and partly downward; as we shewed at large in the Vomiting of Blood.

In this Disease there is often belching and noise beneath the ribs, by reason of the abundance of Wind made of those Crude Humors: hence it was wont to be called the windy Disease. Now, how Wind is bred of Melancholly, we shewed in the Tympany.

Sometimes pains arise in the Stomach and Hypochondria, of the same Wind, which reach to the Back and Loyns, so that you would think it the Stone of the Kidneyes, especially if the Urine be thick and red, as usually it is.

The Belly is often bound, because the Meat is turned into clammy Matter, which sticks to the Guts, which the expulsive Faculty cannot cast out without help of Medicines, and therefore the Patients are constrained to take Purges and Clysters often.

Sometimes there is a Flux of the Belly, if the Humors grow sharp, and have in them much Choller or burnt Melancholly.

There is a heat in the Hypochondria, and a certain Inflamation inward, sometimes in one side, sometimes in another, from hot Humors contained therein, especially when they are moved by inward or outward means; so that the Face will grow hot and red from those vapors; and sometimes there is an Ephemeral, or Feaver, for a day, by those vapors sent through the whol Body.

The Urine is sometimes thick, sometimes thin. Thin, when thick Humors stop the passages through which it is as it were strained, thick, red, and troubled, by reason of the mixture of the thick Matter, which is very salt, and therefore is called (*Materia Tartaria*) and it lies at the bottom of the Urinal like a thick Sediment. Or some part of it sticks like red Sand to the sides, which makes many fear the Stone without cause, because this same is not bred in the Reins, but in the Liver, from a burnt and salt Humor, and you may know this, because it dissolves between the Fingers like Salt, which will not when it comes from the Reins.

Sometimes there is a Palpitation, or beating of the Heart, by reason of the vapors ascending, which while it labors to expel, make it move violently; and then the Patient thinks himself in great danger.

Sometimes there is a beating in the left Hypochondrion, when hot Humors are there; from whence vapors arise, and make the Pulse or Systole and Diastole of the Arteries greater; so that both the Patient and the standers by may feel it, which is chiefly after heat with Anger, motion, or drinking of much Wine. This beating is chiefly in the Cœliack Artery, which is the chiefest in that part. In an old Disease, it is sometimes constant; and this signifies an Habitual and incurable Disease. An Aneurism sometimes followeth this great breathing, from the enlarging of the Cœliack, or some other Artery, and from the hot blood in them, which being very thin and full of many hot Spirits, continually dilateth and stretcheth the Arteries while there is an Aneurism, such as *Fallopius* observed, *Lib. de tum. præter naturam, cap.* 14. in an old woman, who being opened had an Aneurism in her Belly, into which he put his fist. From which, mark by the way, the great providence of Nature, which fearing the breaking of an Artery through too much enlarging, hath made the coat of it as hard as a bone, as *Fallopius* observed in the same place. Also *Paræus* in his sixth Book, Cap. 28. tels the like story of an Aneurism, found not in the Belly, but the Breast, in the Venal Artery, which was so stretched that it could contain his fist; and also the inward Tunicle thereof was like a bone. And we have seen the like about two yeers agone, namely, an Aneurism in the Breast by the dilatation of an Artery, which would hold the fist of a Boy of fifteen yeers old; and the Tunicle thereof was grown like a Gristle.

The evil vapors that ascend from the Hypochondria, produce many Symptomes: for being sent to the Pallat and Tongue they dry those parts, and cause a thirst: when they go to the Lungs and Midriff, they cause shortness of breathing; when to the Membranes of the Brain, Head-ach; when to the Brain, noise in the Ears, dimness of Sight, Giddiness, Fear, and Sorrow, and divers Melancholly Phansies. And if they be malignant, and very sharp, they cause an Epilepsie, or Falling-sickness: if they come to the Nerves, Convulsions: and if they be stupifying they cause a Numbness, and bastard Palsey, Coma, and Apoplexy, if they get into the Brain. But if these vapors be hot and dry, they dry the Brain, and cause watchings, troublesom sleep, and frightful Dreams: and at first, though they sleep well after Supper til midnight, afterward they wake, some three or four hours, and some sleep again about three or four a clock, others not at all. The reason whereof is this: Because while the Chyle is carried to the parts that serve for the second Concoction, then the evil Humors lying in the Vessels, are stirred, and send up vapors, which being sent by the Veins and Arteries to the Head,

cause

cauſe watching, and if they be quickly diſcuſſed, they ſleep again; but if they continue long, they watch the other part of the night.

We have formerly ſpoken of all theſe Symptomes, and we ſay again, That all are not in all men, but more or fewer, according to the variety of the Humors, and parts affected.

This alſo is to be marked; It is not Eſſential to Hypochondriack Melancholly, that ſtretching, hardneſs, pain. and ſwelling, ſhould be in the Hypochondria, becauſe the cauſe is for the moſt part in the Branches of the Gate Vein, and Arteries adjoyning, and ſends from thence vapors to the Heart and Brain. Oftentimes there is ſtretching in the Liver and Spleen, which ſignifieth, That the Humors ſtick in thoſe parts: but if there be no ſtretchings, it is a ſign that the evil Humors lie in the Veins of the Meſentery, Caul, Sweetbread, and Stomach. Theſe proper Symptomes ſhew that the Stomach is affected with ſowr belchings, and ſtinking, or loathing, vomiting, want of concoction, and ſomtimes flux of the belly.

As for the Prognoſtick: This Diſeaſe is not deadly for the moſt part, but of long continuance, many times the whol life, therefore it is commonly called the diſgrace of Phyſitians, becauſe they do ſeldom cure it; and if the Patient ſeem to be cured, it returns again in a few months: it is alſo called the Scourge of Phyſitians, becauſe they who have it are continually asking new Medicines, and preſently ſatisfied therewith, and dayly complain to the Phyſitian for others.

The Flux of the Hemorrhoids doth good in this Diſeaſe, if it be moderate; but if it continue long it is dangerous.

A thick Urine is better in this Diſeaſe, than a thin and watery, which ſhews that the thick Humors are detained in the Body. Black Urine without a Feaver, doth often Cure this Diſeaſe.

Its good in this Diſeaſe to have a looſe Belly, and bad to be bound. Alſo Vomiting, if the Patient be refreſhed thereby, is profitable; but if it continue long, it is dangerous.

A Giddineſs, and continual pain in the Head in this Diſeaſe, ends in an Epilepſie, Blindneſs, or Apoplexy.

The Cure of this Diſeaſe, is in three things chiefly: firſt in opening Obſtructions: ſecondly in amending the diſtempers of the Bowels: and in diſcharging of the peccant humor, not omitting ſtrengtheners: For which a wiſe Phyſitian may uſe theſe following.

Firſt give a Clyſter, then this Potion:

Take of *Senna half an ounce*: *Annis ſeeds, and Cream of Tartar, of each one dram*: *Borrage flowers, Fumitory, and Sorrel, of each half a handful*: *Liquoris three drams*: *boyl them to three ounces. Diſſolve in the ſtraining, Rhubarb infuſed in Lavender Water one dram and an half*: *double Catholicon three drams*: *Compound Syrup of Succory one ounce. Make a Potion; to which you may well add in a ſtrong Melancholly, one dram of Confectio Alkermes.*

The day following, let Blood from the left ſide chiefly, or as the Liver or Spleen are moſt affected.

Then give theſe Broths:

Take of *Sparagus, Dog-tooth, and Succory Roots, of each half an ounce*: *Agrimony, Ceterach, Maiden-hair, Bugloſs, and Succory, of each half a handful*: *Cream of Tartar one dram*: *boyl them with a Chicken, and make Broth ten or twelve daies, adding four drops of Spirit of Vitriol to cool and open more.*

In old Obſtructions, you may add to the former, China Roots, Saſſaphras, white Sanders, Smallage Roots, and male Fern Roots, Bettony, Scabious, Coriander prepared, Raiſons, and the like.

If the Belly be bound, or the Body very foul, give in every third draught of Broth, half an ounce of Senna, with Annis ſeeds.

Or this Apozeme inſtead of the Broth:

Take of *Bugloſs, Sparagus, Succory, and Sorrel Roots, of each one ounce*: *the middle rind of Tamariſk and Aſh, of each half an ounce*: *Agrimony, Ceterach, Maiden-hair, Dodder, Succory, Fumitory, Hops, Bugloſs, and Borrage, of each one handful*: *the four cold ſeeds, Annis and Fennel ſeeds, of each two drams*: *Currance one ounce*: *Senna and Polipody of the Oak, of each two ounces*: *Dodder of Time one ounce*: *the beſt Agarick and Rhubarb infuſed by themſelves in Cinnamon Water, of each two drams*: *Mace and Cloves, of each one dram*: *the three Cordial Flowers, of each one pugil*: *Boyl them to a pint, and diſſolve in the ſtraining, Syrup of Succory with Rhubarb, and of Roſes ſolutive, of each two ounces. Make an Apozeme clarified and aromatized with two drams of yellow Sanders, for four morning draughts.*

Or give Cock Broth thus made:

Take of *Roots of Aſparagus, Bruſcus, and the bark of Capar Roots and Tamariſk, of each half an ounce*: *Agrimony, Ceterach, and Maiden-hair, of each one handful*: *Annis, Citron, and Cardius ſeeds, of each one dram*: *Senna half an ounce*: *Polipody of the Oak, and Epithimum,*

or Dodder of Time, of each three drams: Cinnamon one ſcruple: Cryſtal of Tartar one dram. Boyl them all with half a Cock, which let him take four mornings.

After you have ſufficiently purged, a Bath of warm Water is moſt convenient, uſed many daies, in which cool Herbs have been boyled, and ſweet Apples. Sometimes it is made of Barley and Almonds beaten, and put into a Bagg and boyled in Water. It muſt be often repeated, if the ſeaſon will permit; for *Galen*, 8. *de loc. aff. cap.* 6. ſaith that he cured many melancholick men, only with the uſe of hot baths, without any other Medicine. And if the Patient cannot endure a whol bath, let him have one for half the body.

And leaſt often waſhing ſhould hurt the Stomach, when he enters into the Bath, let it be anointed with Oyl of Nutmegs by Expreſſion, or the like.

When he goes forth of the bath, let the Region of his Liver be anointed with the Cerat of Sanders, or Oyntment of Roſes waſhed in Oxycrate.

After his laſt bath, let the Hemorrhoids be provoked with ſharp Suppoſitories, or with rubbing the Anus with Fig Leaves, or with a rough linnen Cloth; and with two or three Horſ-leeches applied to the moſt apparant places, take away five or ſix ounces of blood. And this muſt be done every Spring and Fall, and ſomtimes once a Month.

They who are uſed to have the Flux of the Hemorrhoids, if it hath been long ſtopped, ſo that they wil not appear, muſt have a Cupping Glaſs applied.

If after the Leeches are fallen off, they bleed ſtil, as ſomtimes they wil, ſtop them with Clay, or Pouder of Coal, or with Spiders Webs, or with Pouder of Lime, or with aſtringent Pouders taken up with the white of an Egg and Pledgets.

And if you cannot conveniently open them, it is good to draw blood from the inferior Veins, that the moſt impure may be voided.

An Iſſue burnt in the left Legg doth purge the Spleen and other Bowels from ſuperfluous Humors, and therefore forget it not.

But becauſe this Diſeaſe uſeth to be very ſtubborn, and after Purging, new Humors return, you muſt purge by fits, that the Body may be freed from them by degrees: which may be wel done by a Magiſtral Syrup, made thus:

Take of *new drawn purified Juyces, of the Flowers of Borrage, Bugloſs, Endive, Succory, Fumitory, and Sorrel three pints: the Juyce of ſweet Apples newly drawn and clenſed two pints: freſh Polipody of the Oak half a pound: clean Senna eight ounces: Dodder of Time three ounces: Agarick newly made into Troches one ounce: Ginger and Cloves, of each one dram. Infuſe them and ſtrain them according to art, till there remain five pints and a quarter of the Liquor; in which diſſolve the ſtraining of an ounce of Rhubarb diſſolved in the ſaid Juyces by themſelves with a little Cinnamon, and one pound of Sugar. Make of theſe a well boyled Syrup; clarifie it, and aromatize it with two drams of the Pouder of the three Sanders, keep it in a Glaſs, and let him take two ounces thereof, twice or thrice in a month, with a little Chicken Broth, boyled with Endive, Sorrel, Borrage, and Burnet.*

Or inſtead of the Syrup, you may give Pils, eſpecially in Winter, ſuch as were mentioned in the Obſtruction of the Liver; or if you fear they are too hot, you may make theſe following:

Take of *Polypody of the Oak half an ounce: Aſarabacca Roots, and Broom buds, of each one dram: Currance three drams: Cryſtal of Tartar one dram and an half: Bugloſs and Borrage flowers, of each half a pugil: Boyl them in Spring Water. Take half a pint of the ſtraining being well clarified, and ſix ounces of the Juyce of ſweet Apples alſo well clarified; and infuſe therein one ounce of clean Senna: Turbith and Agarick, of each three drams: Mace, Cloves, Cinnamon, and Dodder of Time, of each one dram: digeſt them four daies in Balneo Mariæ: then ſtrain them, and add to the ſtraining, one ounce of the Extract of Aloes made in Endive and Sorrel Water; Myrrh diſſolved in Wine and ſtrained, two drams: Salt of Tartar one dram. Evaporate them all, and inſpiſſate and thicken them at a gentle fire, adding towards the end when the matter is almoſt evaporated, Diarrhodon Abbatis Lætificans* Galeni, *and the Troches of Dialacca, of each half a ſcruple: bring them into a maſs for Pills; and let the Patient take half a dram once in a week, two hours before meat.*

Pereda witneſſeth, that he hath cured many Melancholick men with this following Pouder; and he cals it Bleſſed, and Divine

Take of *Dodder of Time half an ounce: Lapis Lazuli, and Agarick in new made Troches, of each two drams: Scammony one dram: Cloves twenty: mix them into a Pouder, and give two drams twice or thrice in a month with Whey or Borrage Water.*

If you cannot conveniently give often Purges, it is good every other day to give a Clyſter to revel vapors, and draw forth ſome part of the Humor: for if they go deep into the Guts, they take away the greateſt part of the filth from the Meſeraicks. We knew a Noble Man, who being long troubled with this Diſeaſe, was cured by often Clyſters, when other Medicines did nothing.

While

While you give intermitting Purges, let the Body at other times be moiſtened with Baths, or half Baths, or Fomentations, by which both the violence of the Humor is reſtrained, and the Body made moiſter.

Alſo at thoſe times, you muſt uſe ſtrengtheners, which will alſo open Obſtructions, and they uſe to be made often like Opiates, or a hard Electuary, or Lozenges, thus:

Take of *Conſerve of Bugloſs Roots half an ounce: Conſerve of Borrage Flowers, and Violets, of each one ounce: Conſerve of Roſes, and candied Citron peels, of each half an ounce: one candied Myrobalan: Confection Alkermes three drams: Powder of Ivory, Harts-horn, and Bezoar ſtone, of each one dram: Lætificans Galeni, and Diarrhodon Abbatis, of each two ſcruples: Coral and Pearl prepared, of each half a dram: Amber-greece half a ſcruple: the beſt Muſk five grains: Gold three Leaves: with Syrup of Apples, and of candied Citrons, make an Opiate, of which give the quantity of a Cheſnut two hours before meat, every day drinking after it a little white Wine.*

A plainer and better taſted Opiate, is made of one part of Confection Alkermes, and four parts of Conſerve of Borrage Flowers. And to open more powerfully, if you fear no hurt by hot things, add Conſerve of Tamarisk flowers, Elicampane Roots, Wormwood, Maiden-hair, and the Salts of Wormwood and Tamariſk, &c.

You may make Lozenges thus:

Take of *Diambra, Diamoſchi dulce, and Lætificans Galeni, of each one ſcruple: Confectio Alkermes three drams: Sugar diſſolved in Borrage and Roſe Water, four ounces: make Lozenges of two drams in weight, gilded. Let him take one every day two hours before meat.*

Or you may make them more pleaſant thus:

Take of *Confectio Alkermes two drams: Amber-greece one ſcruple: Sugar diſſolved in Roſe Water four ounces. Make Lozenges.*

Amber-greece alone, given five or ſix grains at a time every day with Wine or Roſe Water, doth cheer the Spirits and the Natural Heat, and much rejoyce the Heart.

Some Authors do much commend the uſe of Bezoar ſtone againſt all Melancholick Diſeaſes, becauſe it doth much ſtrengthen the Heart, and you may give five or ſix grains in Roſe Water, or other Liquor.

After the Body is well purged, if it be Spring or Summer, you may give Whey for fifteen or twenty daies, which will open the Obſtructions of the bowels, and amend the hot diſtemper. Make it by boyling and clarifying it, and putting into it every night two drams, or half an ounce of Epithimum.

You muſt proportion the quantity according to the ſtrength of the Stomach. For if it can eaſily paſs through the Veins, being ſomwhat open, and be ſent forth by ſtool and urine, it is good to give it in great quantities, as Mineral Waters preſcribed in the hot diſtemper of the Liver, with this Caution, That you ſtrengthen the Stomach with Baggs, and other things hereafter mentioned, and give every day at evening a Cordial ſtrengthening Opiate. Inſtead of Epithimum, you may mix with the Whey, the juyce of Succory, Borrage, or of any other proper cool Herb, thus:

Take of *Goat Whey four or five pints: the juyce of freſh Lemmons four ounces: the new juyce of ſweet Apples ſix ounces: Conſerve of Roſes or Violets, or white Sugar, one ounce. Clariſie theſe with whites of Eggs. Let him take every morning three or four more Cups thereof, if his Stomach will bear it.*

In Bodies that are very lean, after the Obſtructions are a little opened, you may give Aſſes Milk with Sugar of Roſes; and if there be rumbling in the Hypochondria, a little Aromaticum Roſatum, or Diarrhodon Abbatis wil do very wel.

But your ſharp and Vitriol Mineral Waters, are beyond all Medicines, which by correcting the diſtemper of the bowels, do powerfully open Obſtructions, eſpecially the warmeſt, which do make the Humor thin, and cleanſe it.

There is great diſpute among Authors concerning drinking thoſe Waters. Some (with *Sennertus*) do allow it, becau e they receive Vertue from their Minerals, and do thereby both cleanſe the paſſages, and ſend forth the filthy Humors which ſtick to them by ſtool and Urine: they warm the Stomach, and ſtrengthen the Liver and Spleen: And we may rather fear that theſe Waters wil hurt by the uſe of them external than internal, by heating and drying. Others (with *Claudinus*) do altogether deny them, by reaſon of their drying quality. Others (with *Montanus*) do neither altogether reject them, nor wholly approve of them; they ſay they are good, by reaſon of the coldneſs of the Stomach, which is alwaies in this Diſeaſe, and by reaſon of Obſtructions. But in regard the Liver and Spleen are hot, they wil have them defended with the cool Oyntment of *Galen*. And alſo the Loyns, for then (ſaith he) the water will not hurt, becauſe it ſtaies longer in the Stomach, and cold places, but only paſſeth through other parts. We ſuppoſe that the uſe of them is convenient, if the Stomach being cold have much thick and clammy flegm in it, and if the heat of the Liver be not very

great.

great. Which part is not like to ſuffer, if the aforeſaid Oyntment be not only given, but alſo cool Broths after the Waters; and after they have been uſed enough, cold and moiſtening baths for ſome daies.

Medicines made of Steel, uſe to be of great Vertue to open theſe Obſtructions, ſuch as are mentioned in the Obſtruction of the Liver, and of the Spleen, avoiding thoſe which do heat and dry much. In hot bodies you may give Steel prepared with Brimſtone or Vinegar, with Conſerve of Borrage and Succory, made in the form of an Opiate.

For dainty folk, the Syrup of Steel afore mentioned in the Obſtruction of the Liver and Spleen, is excellent; or the Froth which remains in the Glaſs after the Evaporation of the Wine which hath been often ſteeled, mixed with the aforeſaid Conſerves.

But Salt or Vitriol of Iron goes beyond all Medicines, becauſe it opens Obſtructions, ſtrengthens the Bowels, and qualifies their heat. The Doſe is from twelve to twenty grains, with a fit Liquor, Syrup, or Conſerve. But becauſe it is diſpleaſing to the taſte, I uſe to make it into Pils with the Mucilage of Gum Tragacanth. You muſt uſe it long, and therefore get a great quantity, which is not eaſie to be got after the way that *Beguinus* and others make it. We will ſhew you the eaſie way of making it, which few men know.

Take of *the Oyl of Vitriol, or of Sulphur, half a pint: the Spirit of Wine one pint: Put them in a new Iron Pan that is clean, and cover them well; within fifteen daies of them there will be a Salt-like gathering, which you muſt ſet in the Sun to dry it throughly, ſomtimes ſtirring it with an Iron Spatula: In Winter you may dry it upon a gentle fire, or in a Hot-houſe. Let the Salt being well dried, be kept in a cloſe Glaſs; for if it be expoſed to the Air, it eaſily turneth moiſt. Alſo the Pills that are made thereof, of Tragacanth, muſt be hardened with the Pouder of Tragacanth, and after put in a Glaſs, otherwiſe they will grow moiſt. You may continue this Medicine for a month or two, not only without hurt, but with great profit.*

Fonſeca commends theſe Pils following, which he cals *Diatartarum*, for opening Obſtructions by degrees, and purging Melancholly gently, and for allaying it.

Take of *the Pouder of Senna, and Salt of Tartar, of each one dram: Pouder of Cinnamon half a ſcruple: with Syrup of Lemmons make a Maſs, of which give three Pills made of half a dram one hour before Supper, to give him two or three ſtools, for Salt of Tartar hath great Vertue to allay black melancholick Humors; for it draweth to it ſelf by certain propriety ſowr things, as you may perceive when it is mixed with Vinegar, or Spirit of Vitriol, whoſe ſowrneſs it taketh away: For we muſt know, that* Fonſeca *by Salt of Tartar, meaneth Cryſtal of Tartar. Yet you may as well infuſe your Senna with the Salt of Tartar, and ſome drops of Spirit of Vitriol in ſome convenient Liquor.*

To open the ſame Obſtructions, ſome commend the Decoction of China, as we ſaid in the Obſtruction of the Spleen; which a wiſe Phyſitian may do with good ſucceſs.

Some commend the Juyce of VVormwood thickened into the form of a Pill, given either by its ſelf, or with Gum Ammoniacum; and after that preſently, Oxymel made of the Decoction of Aſarum Roots and Liquoris.

Others ſay, That Hypochondriack Melancholly hath been cured with the Decoction or Wine of Wormwood taken thirty or forty daies together.

The Juyce of Buglois is excellent, not to open Obſtructions as Wormwood, but to qualifie the Melancholick Humor. Therefore they give two ounces thereof with two drams of Sugar, and as much Wine as of both, for ten or twelve daies every morning.

The principal thing for this Cure, is to keep the Body alwaies ſoluble: Therfore the Patient muſt have ſome familiar Medicines, which he may often uſe before meat, ſomtimes one, ſomtimes another, leſt he grow weary of them. For this he may take the Magiſterial Syrup, and the aforeſaid Pils, and thoſe which were preſcribed for a coſtive Belly. To which he may add (out of *Montanus*) Venice Turpentine, which he orders to be ſwallowed in the quantity of an Acron, three hours before dinner, once, twice, or thrice in a week: for beſides that it looſeneth the belly, it alſo cleanſeth the Stomach, opens Obſtructions, provokes Urine, warms the Stomach, and doth not heat the Liver, but doth it good by opening and cleanſing it.

For his ordinary Drink let him uſe Water wherein Gold hath been quenched, or the infuſion of Tamarisk, Agrimony, Burnet in thin Wine, either alone, or made Phyſical in Vintage time with the Roots of Bugloſs, Borrage, with a little white Sanders and Roſemary Flowers.

The Decoction of the Sweet Bryar Root, is commended for ordinary Drink; for it openeth and ſtrengtheneth all natural parts.

The Decoction of *Lignum Nephriticum* doth open the Obſtructions of the Bowels without any manifeſt alteration. But ſteeled Water is more uſual. All which Waters and Decoctions, you may alſo mix with Wine.

While

While in the internal Medicines mentioned or any of them are uſed, you muſt apply External, as Fomentations, and Oyntments to the Hypochondria, ſuch as are preſcribed for the Obſtructions of the Liver and Spleen, making Choice of the Cooleſt.

You muſt alſo apply ſtrengthners to the Stomach, becauſe that part doth alwaies ſuffer in this Diſeaſe; therefore you may uſe thoſe Fomentations, Oyntments, and Emplaiſters mentioned in the Diſeaſes of the Stomach: Alſo thoſe Internal which wil not inflame the Liver; and eſpecially the Digeſtive Pouder to be taken after meat: in a Fit when the Vapors ariſing from the Hypochondria do trouble the Heart, Brain, and other parts, and produce great Symptomes, as Swoonings, Palpitations, Tremblings, Convulſions, Head-ach, and the like; you may uſe thoſe things which are given in Swooning, or the Mother; but among the reſt Laudanum uſed wiſely, doth wonders.

Chap. 6. *Of the Scurvy.*

THe Scurvy is uſual in the North, in moſt places thereof Common, but almoſt unknown in the South; ſo that al Writers that have Practiced in theſe Parts, have never mentioned it: and we may wel leave it out, becauſe in our Preface to this Book we promiſed to meddle only with the uſual Diſeaſes of the Spleen; but Experience hath taught us, That our Country is not altogether without it, for though it be not in every Symptom the ſame with that of the North, yet it hath enough to confirm it to be the ſame: for the aforeſaid Authors ſay that one Symptome is ſufficient to diſcover it; we have ſeen many Symptomes of it in many people, but becauſe it is not familiar here, and al our Phyſitians ſay we have it not, we would not abſolutely cal it a Scurvy, but we thought it better to cal it a Scorbutical Diſeaſe, ſuch an one as comes next to it, though it be not a true Scurvy.

For the Scurvy is nothing elſe but an Hypochondriack Diſeaſe, having a peculiar degree of Malignity from which more Symptomes ariſe than in the Hypochondriack Diſeaſe: this malignity comes from the putrefaction of Melancholly, not of every kind of melancholly, for it is often corrupted, from which other Diſeaſes ariſe and not the Scurvy, as a Quartan Ague, an Impoſthume in the Meſentery, and other parts; but of a peculiar and proper Melancholly which is agreeable to that Malignity. This is known by the Infection which is found in this Diſeaſe, becauſe al Authors hold it to be infectious. And becauſe al the degrees of malignity which lie in the Humors and produce divers Diſeaſes are unknown unto us and al men, therefore is this of the Scurvy obſcure and hidden; and it is wonderful that ſo many Diſeaſes ſhould ariſe from the variety of malignity which is in the Humors, as malignant Peſtilential Feavers, Smal Pox and Meaſels, Cancers and Elephantiaſis, the Pox, and many others. And eſpecially Elephantiaſis comes from a peculiar malignity in a Melancholick Humor, and ſo doth the Scurvy, and yet theſe two Diſeaſes differ ſo much, that none can tel their divers degrees of malignity.

Divers Symptomes common to both, do ſhew a great likeneſs of the Scurvy and Hypochondriack Melancholly: for al they which were mentioned in the former Chapter, are found in this Diſeaſe, as Crudities and want of Concoction in the Stomach, often ſpitting, flegmatick, ſharp, and ſtinking vomitings, noiſe in the Hypochondria, belchings, breaking of Wind downwards, vomiting of blood, and purging of blood, pains from wind under the ribs and in the ſtomach, ſomtimes Coſtiveneſs, and ſomtimes Looſeneſs, heat in the Hypochondria, beating of the Left ſide, Urine now thin, than thick, heart beating, thirſt, drought of the mouth, ſhort breath, head-ach, noiſe in the ears, dimneſs of ſight, giddineſs, ſorrow and ſadneſs, and divers dolings, convulſions, falling-ſickneſs, numbneſs, coma, watchings, troubled ſleep, and terrible dreams: The Reaſons of al which were ſhewed in the Chapter above, and they may agree with this of the Scurvy.

But if any Symptomes appear beſides theſe, which are not found in that, nor mentioned by Authors, nor belong to another Diſeaſe; you may conjecture that it is the Scurvy: The Chief are theſe, which are not al found in one Patient; but one of them is ſufficient to ſhew that the Diſeaſe is ſuch.

The Firſt moſt remarkable Sign is in the Gums, Mouth, and Teeth, in the Gums redneſs, itching, and putrefaction, and ſomtimes bleeding and ſtink, which are ſomtimes in the Palate, Jaws, and Teeth, which are looſe and black.

The Second, which is an evident Sign alſo, is Spots in the Legs which at firſt are Red, and after Purple, blue, and black: Somtimes there are in the Legs broad ſpots, black or blue, or both; theſe come from the ſerous filthy part of the blood which is unfit to nouriſh the body, and therefore is ſent by nature out of the Veins to the Skin, by the Nauſioſis of the Veins, as *Hippocrates* ſaies of Fractures, and this happens often in the Shins and Legs, becauſe nature uſeth to ſend the worſt Humors

to the moſt ignoble and remoteſt parts; ſomtimes when there is more plenty of matter you ſhal find them in the back, arms, neck, and face.

The third ſign, is ſhortneſs of Breath, and ſtraightneſs of the Breaſt, which comes commonly from thick vapors, ariſing from the Hypochondria, that get to the Midriff, as alſo from Tumors and ſwellings by wind of thoſe parts that preſs upon the Midriff, eſpecially from the ſwelling of the Sweet-bread, which commonly in this Diſeaſe is filled with groſs Melancholly: Hence the Patients complain not of their Breaſt, but of the part affected, whereby they feel the weight, and by reaſon whereof the Breath is ſhort, as *Eugalenus* noted well, who was much acquainted with this Diſeaſe, and many Obſervations therein: yet he knew not the cauſe of this weight, namely, the ſwelling of the Sweet-bread; nor doth any that write hereof make mention of it. Yet we obſerved it in My Lord *Andreyer*, Preſident of the Senate of Gratianopolis, whom we thought had the Scurvy, as you may reade in his Hiſtory, at length, in our Obſervations, Cent. 3. Obſ. 85. For being very lean, we did eaſily perceive with our fingers, a hardneſs in the Sweet-bread; and by handling of the part, he confeſſed that all his ſhortneſs of Breath and ſtraightneſs came from thence.

The fourth ſign, is Lazineſs, and heavineſs of Body, eſpecially in the Legs, which comes from watery and foul Humors, which come through the Veins to the Muſcles, and the whol Body.

The fifth ſign is in the Urine, which is divers, as in Hypochondriack Melancholly; but in this they ſomtimes differ, becauſe they are cleer and red like a Lye, from the plenty of ſalt Humors. The redneſs is higher and inclining to black, by how much the more ſalt humor there is. As in a Lixivium ſomtimes the Urine is very thick, with a red thick ſediment, like the Pouder of Bricks, and ſomtimes this Humor is ſo much, that it cauſeth burning and piſſing by drops, eſpecially in them who have this Diſeaſe from ſtoppage of the Hemorrhoids; and after it is ſetled, the third or fourth part of the Urinal is filled with thick and black filth, which makes ſome think it to be the Stone or Ulcer of the Bladder.

Somtimes the Urine varieth without manifeſt cauſe; to day thick, to morrow thin; now pale, then yellow, or red.

The ſixth ſign is from the Pulſe, which is now weak and unequal, leaping, or formicans, that you would wonder he ſhould live with it; anon it is great and hard, without Inflamation. And this is to be obſerved, That in time of fainting and ſwooning, with which he is often troubled, his Pulſe is greateſt and ſtrongeſt. Which comes from the Heart contending to caſt out thoſe vapors with which it is oppreſſed.

The ſeventh ſign, is pain in divers parts: in the Thighs heavy, and ſomtimes ſtretching; ſomtimes *Oſtokopos*, or at the bone; ſomtimes in the Shins, Ankles, Soals of the Feet, in the tips of the Fingers, in the Hips, Knees, and other Joynts, or parts to which the Salt Humors flow; ſomtimes in the Belly, like the Chollerick Chollick; and it comes from theſe Humors flowing upon the Caul: theſe in the Arms, Thighs, and Legs, are like thoſe of the Pox, and may wel deceive a Phyſitian in *France*, where the Scurvy is rare, and the Pox common.

But they may be thus diſtinguiſhed; The pains in the Pox are between the Joynts, and if they ſtay long, make knots, and there are, or have been then alſo other Symptomes of it, as running of the Reins, Ulcer of the Yard, Bubo, and the like, or Uncleanneſs with Women. But the Scurvy pains ſeize upon al parts indifferently; and then there are other ſigns of it, or at leaſt a Melancholick Conſtitution; and the Matter is certainly known, if the Patient wil truly ſay that he hath not been with unclean Women. Which cauſed our ſuſpicion in a Magiſtrate, who had a long time great pain in his Feet, Shins, and Thighs, and was brought very lean, ſo that you would have thought that he had the Maraſmus, or Conſumption: And when no Medicines for a long time would do him good, we from his Melancholick Complexion, and other ſigns, eſpecially becauſe he led a moſt chaſt life, and becauſe for many yeers his Gums did bleed at certain times, conjectured that it was the Scurvy, and by uſing of things againſt that Diſeaſe for ſome time, he was cured.

Somtimes thoſe pains remain in the Hypochondria, ſomtimes in the Loyns, ſo that they are weak, and can ſcarce go. Hence this Diſeaſe is called *Lumbago*.

Somtimes the pains are like the Stone, and the Urine is very red or black; and if you do not diligently obſerve, you will think they are bloody, and that it comes from the Reins wounded by the Stone, when it is from a ſcurvy ſalt Matter in the Spleen, and parts adjacent, ſent into the Urine.

Some have Head-ach, and heat at nights, if they caught this Diſeaſe from ſtoppage of the Hemorrhoids, by reaſon of the vapors which aſcend, and all the night after they are as in a Feaver all over their Bodies, which the next morning vaniſheth by ſweating.

They have often the Tooth-ach, without any evident reaſon or cauſe; and it is not in one place, but movable from one Tooth to another, making them looſe, and they again fix of their own accord, the pain and tumor being diſcuſſed.

Somtimes

Sometimes the pain of the Scurvy is in the ſides, imitating the Pleuriſie; from which it is eaſily diſtinguiſhed, becauſe it is without a Feaver, at leaſt a ſtrong one; the breath is not hindered, there is no Cough, no ſpitting, nor is the pain conſtant, but coming by fits.

Alſo it will be in the Joynts; and we muſt declare how it is diſtinguiſhed from a true Arthritis, or Joynt-gout. The pain of the Joynts in the Scurvy, is not fixed and conſtant in the ſame place, but runs from one Joynt to another, either on the ſame, or on the contrary ſide; ſometimes it vaniſheth, and then returns; ſo that he which now ſeems free, and in perfect health, is ſuddenly taken with pain, ſometimes with ſwelling, ſometimes without. But a true Joynt-gout ſeldom changeth the place.

The Joynt Scurvy hath this peculiar diſtinction: It is for the moſt part joyned with a ſmal Palſey, by reaſon whereof the Patient can hardly move the part affected; and when the Palſey ſeizeth or returneth, the pain doth ſo alſo.

The eighth ſign is from the divers hinderances of Motion, they have a baſtard Palſey; the Examples whereof we laid down in our Obſervations: and it is diſtinguiſhed from a true Palſey, becauſe this is conſtant; but in the Palſey from the Scurvy, he that yeſterday could ſcarce ſet one foot before another, can now ſtand, and walk with a little help, and it may be preſently after he cannot move at all: and ſometimes the motion is trembling, and with Convulſion, which doth not happen in a true Palſey. And this kind of Palſey cometh from a filthy kind of Matter or vapor, which gets into the Nerves and Muſcles. And if the Matter be ſharp, it cauſeth trembling and Convulſion by pulling the Nervous parts.

And Convulſions are not only in ſome peculiar part, but ſometimes in the whol Body like an Epilepſie, by a windy or watery matter full of ſharpneſs, and malignity, which is ſent to the Brain, which being diſcuſſed doth give eaſe, and gathered again, maketh new Convulſions.

Alſo in this Diſeaſe there is a Contraction of the Members, ſometimes of all, ſo that the Patient cannot move one Joynt; ſometimes of one, and that principally in the Leg, when the Tendons which are made to move the Leg grow hard and ſtiff in the Hams. This contraction comes by reaſon of the ſalt Humor that flows with much moiſture to the Nerves and Tendons; and when the thin and watery part, through continuance of time is conſumed, the thick is dried and made hard; from whence come theſe contractions of Nerves and Tendons.

Sometimes there is a contraction in the Gullet, ſo that the Patient can ſcarce ſwallow, and is in fear of ſtrangling. And this comes from aſtringent vapors, which contract the Oeſophagus, or Gullet.

The ninth ſign, is the Flux of the Belly, either with, or without blood. The ſimple Flux which is without blood, is diſtinguiſhed from others, in that the Excrements are thicker, and more than the quantity of meat that is taken; when a common Flux is more thin, and of Humors only.

The Flux of blood in this Diſeaſe is diſtinguiſhed from a Dyſentery, becauſe it is without pain of the belly, and it is thick blood which is ſent into the Guts by the Meſeraick Veins. Sometimes the Hemorrhoid Veins do receive that filthy blood, and ſend it forth: but if this flux of the belly continues long, the Veins ſwell, and ſend forth not only much blood, but alſo other ſalt and ſlimy Humors.

The tenth ſign, is a ſtinking Breath, which is common to all in the Scurvy, as *Fugalenus* witneſſeth, ſo that they which ſtand by cannot endure it, but muſt turn aſide their Noſe.

The eleventh ſign, is often ſhivering, with none or little heat following it.

The twelfth ſign, is an intermitting Feaver, which ſometimes they have, which are unlike the other ordinary Agues or Feavers: for in them the Pulſe is weak, ſlow, and unequal, eſpecially in the declination; but in the height it is commonly great and hard. Beſides, at the firſt coming there is ſuch a twitching in divers parts, eſpecially the Legs, that they ſuppoſe their fleſh to be torn; and ſometimes they have convulſive motions therewith. And though ſometimes this Ague is a Quotidian, Tertian, or Quartan, yet ſometimes the fits are diſorderly, coming once it may be, or twice in a month, without certainty.

The Thirteenth Sign is Tumors in divers parts; ſometimes hard, ſometimes ſoft like bladders, and ſometimes like an Eryſipelas, or red Tumor.

The Fourteenth Sign is Atrophy or Conſumption; which is ſo great in this Diſeaſe ſometimes that they are nothing but skin and bones like a Sceleton or Anatomy; eſpecially after long ſickneſs, which comes from the evil blood; ſo changed from its natural Condition that it cannot be made like unto the parts which ſhould nouriſh.

Fugalenus propounds many other Signs of the Scurvy, and *Sennertus* with others: ſome whereof are Common to many other Diſeaſes, which we will Conceal, leaſt they breed Confuſion.

And though (as we said before) the Scurvy is not ordinary in France, as in Poland and other Northren parts, and almost unknown; yet if any in Practising Physick shal observe al the Symptomes of Melancholly he shal find some inclining to the Scurvy, in whom some of the former Symptomes proper to the Scurvy wil appear.

As to the Prognostick: This Disease is hard to be Cured, as al other that come of Melancholly, and here much more hard, because of the malignity in the Melancholly which doth more cruelly overthrow the body, and wil not obey the greatest part of Medicines.

It is also dangerous because it many times brings a Consumption or Dropsie, and destroyes others by sudden death, by an Apoplexy, Swooning, and other acute Diseases.

Yet sometimes they who have seemed desperate have been Cured, and oftener in this Disease than in any other: And we have seen some brought to a Consumption by long pain, and bloody Flux (which by many circumstances we conclude to be from the Scurvy) to have been perfectly Cured.

Moreover, The Pulse is deceitful, especially in the Fits; it wil be so quick, smal, and unequal sometimes that the Patient seems to be at deaths door; yet after his Fit he wil rise from his bed, and is as formerly; As we peculiarly observed in a Dutch Schollar, unto whom we being sent for in the time of his Fit, thought that he would presently die; but the next day we saw him seemingly in very good health; and when we had examined the Circumstances of the Disease, we Concluded that he had the Scurvy, which he brought out of his own Country where it is very usual.

The same Cure is to be used in this Disease as in Hypochondriack Melancholly: because as we said at the first it comes from the same Humor more differing from its natural state; therfore for the most part it needs stronger Medicines.

But because this is a general Rule in Physick, That we alwaies begin with the weakest Medicines, and so proceed to stronger, if the former will not cure: It will be good in this Disease to appoint the whol course of Cure for Hypochondriack Melancholly, because a stubborn disease requires a long course; and if that will not root out the Disease, let us then use the Medicines more specifically proper: And it will not be amiss to mix some such with the other at the beginning.

These Specifical Medicines are called *Antiscorbutica*, or Medicines proper for the Scurvy, and there are many of them in Authors that have written of this Disease; whose strength chiefly depends upon a Volatile or flying Salt, of which they are very full, by which means they make thin and fluid, that thick, earthy, and salt humor, and at length discuss it. Moreover, they have a certain preservative and opposing Vertue against the poyson of the Scurvy which is in the Melancholick Humor. Among these, the chief is Dutch Scurvy-grass, which is not in *France*. Another is, Cresses of both sorts (but the Water-cress is best) Brooklime, Horse-Rhadish, the lesser Celandine, Wormwood, and Fumitory. To which may be added many others, but of less vertue, and all they are such which can prepare, correct, and tame the Melancholick Humor. Hence it is that we directed the Cure against Hypochondriack Melancholly to be used here: Those are, Carduus, Ceterach, all the Capillar Herbs, Hyssop, Germander, Bettony, Agrimony, Borrage, Bugloss, Elicampane, Asarum, Ditch Dock, Polypody of the Oak, Capar, Ash; and Tamarisk barks, Flowers of Elder, Tamarisk, and Dodder of Time.

In the choyce of these Plants, you must alwaies observe this, That you give the least quantity of hot things, and that you alwaies mix with them cold or moderate things, and in a greater quantity, especially in hot Countries, in which Melancholly is burnt. And besides the Capillar Herbs with Borrage, Bugloss, and Agrimony before mentioned, when there is a Feaver, or we fear heat, you may ad Endive, Succory, Sorrel, Juyce of Citrons, Lemmons, Orrenges, and also Spirit of Sulphur, or Vitriol, or whey.

Of these former Plants you may make many sorts of Medicines, which are all gathered by *Sennertus* out of all Authors, which every man may imitate as he pleaseth. Yet this we must mark, which all Authors mention, That the aforesaid Plants work more powerfully if you take their Juyce, or make them into Conserves; because the flying salt wherein all their vertue remaineth is gone by decoction, as also if the Plant be dried.

We have used these following forms with good success.

Take of *cleer Juyces, of Water-cresses, and Brook-lime, of each one ounce: the Juyce of Fumitory two ounces: white Sugar two drams. Make a Potion.*

Or,

Take of *the Juyce of Fumitory, and Water-cresses, of each two ounces: mix them.*

Or,

Take of *the Juyces of Sorrel, Fumitory, and Water-cresses, of each two ounces. Mix them.*

You may give more Juyce of Sorrel, if you desire to cool more, or Juyce of Lemmons, or the like.

The

The power of the Medicines, will be more to diſſolve that ſticking clammy Tartar, if you add one dram of Salt of Tartar with Spirit of Sulphur, or Vitriol, one ſcruple or half a dram; and becauſe in the uſe of theſe Medicines, we purge often, it is good to infuſe one dram or two of Senna all night in the ſaid Juyces, and give it every other day, or every third day.

It is worth your while to give ſometimes alſo ſome Steeled Medicines, ſuch as we preſcribed in Hypochondriack Melancholly; as alſo the ſtrengthening and opening Opiates, and others, as in wiſdom you ſhall think fit.

And laſt, Mineral Waters that are ſharp, and of Vitriol, uſed in due ſeaſon, are very beneficial for the Cure of this Diſeaſe.

The End of the Twelfth Book.

THE

THE THIRTEENTH BOOK OF THE PRACTICE OF PHYSICK.

Of the Diſeaſes of the Meſentery, Sweet-bread, and Caule.

The PREFACE.

MAny Authors are very ſhort in the explaining of the Diſeaſes of the Meſentery, Sweet-bread, and Caul; and the moſt of them have left them out, becauſe they are hard to be known, and for the moſt part only from Diſſection of dead Bodies; as appears by ſtories in Schenkius, Sennertus, *and others. Yet they are very ordinary and uſual: from whence* Fernelius *ſaith, That oftentimes there are cauſes of many Diſeaſes in the Meſentery: as of Choller, Melancholly, Diarrhœa, Dyſentery, evil Habit, Conſumption, Faintneſs, of lingering Feavers, Vomitings, Chollicks, Tumors, and Impoſthumes. And* Sylvius *called the Meſentery, the Mother of many Diſeaſes: by others ſhe is called the Phyſitians Nurſe. We may ſay the ſame of the Sweet-bread and Caul; for they are ignoble parts, and as it were ſinks of the Body, to which the noble Members do ſend their Excrements. And although theſe parts (as all other) are ſubject to all kinds of Diſeaſes, Similary, Organical, and Common, and many Symptomes ariſe from them; yet we will only ſpeak of thoſe which are moſt in practice, and comprehend this Book in five Chapters. The firſt ſhall be of the Obſtruction of the Meſentery. The ſecond of the Inflamation of the Meſentery. The third of the Impoſthume, Scirrhus, and Ulcer of the Meſentery. The fourth of the Diſeaſes of the Sweet-bread. The fifth of the Diſeaſes of the Caul.*

Chap. 1. *Of the Obſtruction of the Meſentery.*

THeſe Obſtructions in the Meſentery, come of the ſame Cauſes which are mentioned in the Obſtructions of the Liver and Spleen; but they happen more eaſily, and more often, by reaſon of the ſtraitneſs of the Meſeraick Veins, and eſpecially of the Milky Veins, which carry the Chylous Matter to the place of the ſecond Concoction: and when that Chylous Matter is filled with crude and thick

thick juyce it comes to paſs that not having a free paſſage, it ſticks in thoſe little Veins and makes Obſtructions. Alſo the Meſeraick Veins are ſtopped by thick Humors ſent from the Liver, Spleen, and other parts, and there continuing till they grow thicker, ſo that ſomtimes they cauſe a Scirrhus. With theſe Humors ſomtimes groſs Vapors are mixed, which uſe to be the cauſe of great Symptomes. To the Obſtruction, or rather making narrow of theſe Veins, we refer compreſſion, which comes from the Glandles which are ſpread through the whol ſubſtance of the Meſentery: for when theſe grow beyond meaſure, as in thoſe who have the Kings Evil, or Struma, they compreſs the Meſeraick Veins, and hinder both the paſſage of the Chylus, and of the Blood.

The Signs of theſe Obſtructions are to be divided into three kinds, as we did in the Obſtructions of the Liver; namely, into ſuch as ſhew the Diſeaſe, the Part affected, or the Cauſe.

The Signs of the Diſeaſe (that is) of the Obſtructions lying in the Hypochondria, and alſo the Signs of the Cauſes are the ſame with the Obſtruction of the Liver and Spleen, and are from that Chapter to be taken. But thoſe Signs which properly ſhew the peculiar Diſeaſe of the Meſentery, are ſtretching, and reſiſtance in the middle of the Belly, and under the Stomach, and about the Navel; a weight in the ſame parts, and ſomtimes a dull pain, and ſomtimes a moſt ſharp, when wind is contained in thoſe parts; ſomtimes there is pain in the back, becauſe the Meſentery is tied to that part: there is rumbling in the Belly, belching, and vapors flying to the Head, from whence come divers Symptomes: and laſtly, all thoſe which uſe to happen in Hypochondriack Melancholly, ſignifie Obſtruction of the Meſentery, becauſe that alſo proceeds, and is maintained by the ſame Obſtructions.

As for the Prognoſtick: This Diſeaſe of its ſelf, is not dangerous, becauſe an ignoble part can endure great evils without danger of death: moreover, you may apply ſtrong Medicines for the Cure, which being well adminiſtred, do commonly bring about the deſired effect; except Hypochondriack Melancholly riſe from thence, which uſeth to be called the ſhame of Phyſitians, by reaſon of the rebellious Nature of the Melancholick Humor. But becauſe this part hath not exquiſite ſence, and the Obſtructions do not alwaies greatly diſturb the Patient, they are often neglected, and become the cauſes of other moſt dangerous diſeaſes.

The Cure of this Diſeaſe is the ſame with that of the Obſtruction of the Liver, and you muſt fetch it from the Chapter treating thereof.

Chap. 2. *Of the Inflamation of the Meſentery.*

WHen the Meſentery, as I ſaid, is as it were the ſink into which the Noble Parts do ſend their ſuperfluous Excrements, which afterwards are ſent forth by Nature, either by Vomit or Stool; as you may ſee in ſome who ſend abundance of Humors forth at divers times by Vomit and Stool: if thoſe Evacuations be hindered by ſtoppage of the waies by which they are made, or by any other cauſe, thoſe Humors which are there detained, ſtaying long in the part, do get a preternatural heat, from whence come putrefactions, inflamations, divers Feavers, and impoſthumes. But an Inflamation is peculiarly made, when blood heaped up in the Meſeraick Veins, by the opening of ſome branch is ſent into the ſubſtance of the Meſentery: but becauſe by reaſon of Obſtructions it is chiefly gathered in thoſe Veins, therefore all the cauſes of Obſtructions may be referred to the Cauſes of Inflamation.

For the making of this Inflamation, that ſharpneſs and gnawing of the Humors gathered together, do much conduce, a fall or ſtroak upon the Belly, the weakneſs of the attractive concoction, or retentive faculty of the Liver; too much heat of the body, or inordinate uſe of cooling things; the critical motion of Nature in malignant Diſeaſes, or ſmal Pox, by which it ſends the peccant Humors into this ſink; a Diarrhœa, or Dyſentery ſuddenly ſtopped.

The ſigns of the Inflamation of the Meſentery are, a lingering Feaver without Thirſt, and great Symptomes, want of Appetite, a ſence of ſtretching and heavineſs beneath the Stomach, without great hardneſs, and which is not felt but by the hand preſſing of it, and without pain, worth the ſpeaking of, becauſe the part is of dull ſence; Chollerick ſtools, which commonly hath thin matter, without pain, ſomtimes pure, ſomtimes mixed with Excrements.

If the Meſentery be only inflamed, all the aforeſaid Symptomes are milder: But if the Liver or Spleen, or Guts, are alſo inflamed, all the Symptomes are ſtronger: And beſides, the ſigns of the aforeſaid parts affected will appear, which are to be taken out of their proper Chapters.

And becauſe the Inflamation and Impoſthume of this part, are very hard to be known if they be alone, by reaſon of the dull ſence of the part, and becauſe it performeth no action in the body, whoſe hinderance may be perceived; but only ſerveth for the diſtribution of the Chylus and the Blood: therefore they are rather to be diſcovered by conſequence, than directly, and according to artificial

conjecture;

conjecture; namely, when there is a Feaver and other Symptomes, and no sign of the Liver, Spleen, or Guts distempered. A half Tertian Ague sheweth that the Guts are inflamed with the Mesentery; which *Spigelius* observed to come commonly from the Inflamation of these parts. Also this Disease is distinguished from the inflamation of the Muscles of the Belly, because the Tumor and pain is enlarged according to their proportion, and they are commonly long, or over the whol belly, and more in the outward parts, so that they are perceived by the least touch, and they use to bring great pain, and a Feaver.

Lastly, This Disease is to be distinguished from the Humors of the Midriff, which have been, as yet, known to few Physitians: for in them there is alwaies great difficulty of breathing, removing of the Hypochondria, a Pulse hard and smal, without any sence of Tumor in the Hypochondria. And if the Tumor come of a hot cause, a sharp Feaver, great pain, doting, and Convulsions do follow; which Symptomes never happen when the Mesentery is only inflamed.

As for the Prognostick: This Disease is very dangerous; for it either ends in an imposthume, or there follows a rottenness, and corruption of the Mesentery. Oftentimes the Matter of the Disease is sent by Nature another way, and yet is not clean taken away, whence the Disease returns, and continues for many yeers, somtimes till death, now with a Feaver, then a Chollick, or Inflamation.

The Cure of the Inflamation of the Mesentery, is not unlike to that of the Liver and Spleen, and therefore you must peruse that.

Chap. 3. *Of the Imposthume, Ulcer, and Scirrhus of the Mesentery.*

THe Inflamation of the Mesentery often turneth into an Imposthume, yet every Imposthume thereof is not from Inflamation, but many times from vitious Humors therein contained, which putrefie, so that these Imposthumes come by degrees without a Feaver afore going, or other great Symptomes; as we see in other parts, when *Atheromata*, *Steatomata*, and *Melicerides*, and other kinds of Imposthumes are bred without Inflamation going before. And when they are broken, the Matter being voided, there remains an Ulcer which is hard to be cured. But if those Humors are very flegmatick, or Melanchollick, and resist putrefaction, they grow, and somtimes are hardened, and turn to a Scirrhus: somtimes they are as hard as a stone, as many affirm who have found stones in the Mesentery.

The Knowledg of the Imposthume in the Mesentery, is somtimes easie, somtimes hard; for if it comes from an Inflamation of that part, that being perceived by the signs in the former Chapter, it is a sign that the Inflamation could not be discussed, but suppurated and turned into an Imposthume. But when an Imposthume comes from evil Humors remaining long in the Mesentery, and at length putrefying, it is hard to know it; so that many Authors who have written Observations upon such kind of Imposthumes, say, that they never were known, but after death, when the Bodies were opened. For although for the most part, they may be known by the touch, yet somtimes they lie so deep, that they cannot be touched, and the part being dull in sence, that they will not be discovered by pain. But because they come divers waies, they must be thus distinguished.

If the Imposthume of the Mesentery, hath a visible Tumor, it is first to be discerned from an Inflamation and a Scirrhus: It is distinguished from an Inflamation if it come not from it, when there is no Feaver, or at least but smal, when none went before, nor any other signs that may shew an Inflamation; but if it follow an Inflamation, it can no other waies be distinguished than by hardness & continuance; for if the signs of Inflamation have continued twenty or thirty daies, it is a sign that it is turned into an Imposthume. It is distinguished from a Scirrhus by hardness, which is great in a Scirrhus, but in an Imposthume there is some kind of softness, as also by the want of pain altogether; for in an Imposthume there is alwaies some pain, especially if it be presled hard. Moreover, this Tumor is distinguished from the Tumor of other parts, by the Situation thereof, as we said before of the Inflamation of the Mesentery. But if the Imposthume lie in the Mesentery without any visible Tumor, there can be no certain sign, but by an artificial conjecture we may suspect, namely, if there be loathing of Meat, or vomiting without manifest fault of the Stomach, and a great fulness after little Meat, weariness of the whol Body, and fainting without manifest cause, if the Belly be unaccustomarily bound, or loose, and void stinking Excrements, and somtimes bloody, without suspicion of a Dysentery. To these you may add great watchings, and if they sleep they faint, and have great Sweats. And though somtimes there appear neither Feaver nor pain, yet there is commonly an obscure one; of which, if there appear no manifest cause, we must conjecture that it comes from this Disease, especially if any of the aforesaid

signs

ſigns be joyned therewith; as alſo if the Abdomen be violently preſſed, the Patient will perceive ſome inward pain: it is true, that by violent compreſſion you may cauſe pain in ſound places; but if you perceive more pain in one part than in another, after all parts have been preſſed, and when that part is alwaies moſt pained, and the more by preſſing, you may ſtrongly conjecture that the impoſthume is there.

If at length there come forth Matter, then the Impoſthume will be manifeſt. Commonly it is voided by ſtool of divers ſorts according to the diſpoſition of the part affected, and of thoſe adjacent.

Hence one while the Matter is pure and white in great plenty, without ſence of pain, when it is ſent by the Meſeraick Veins into the Guts, ſomtimes when the Impoſthume is in the thick and loweſt Guts, the Matter is mixed with the Excrements, ſomtimes it is ſent to the Reins, and caſt forth by Urine; ſomtimes being ſent in great quantities between the Peritonæum, and the Muſcles of the Abdomen, it falls into the Cavity of the Belly by breaking of the Peritonæum, or breaks outwardly by an Impoſthume, ſo that a great quantity of Matter flows from the Navel, and ſomtimes Worms therewith, through the corruption of the Meſentery. And that which ſent forth by ſtool (which is the uſual) is ſomtimes white and laudable, as was ſaid; ſomtimes mixed with blood or water, ſomtimes black blood, and ſtinking, ſomtimes other black Matter, or of divers colors. But whether this purulent Matter come from the Meſentery, Liver, Spleen, or other part, it is known by the proper ſigns of every part affected.

When the Impoſthume is broken, and the Matter floweth, it is certain that there is an Ulcer in the Meſentery, which ſomtimes is quickly cured, and ſomtimes it is of long continuance, and brings rottenneſs upon the whol part, and a Gangrene.

As for the Prognoſtick: The Impoſthume of the Meſentery is dangerous; for if it continue long in the part, as it often happens, it breeds filthy rottenneſs, or a Gangrene, or brings the Patient into a Conſumption or Dropſie. If it break, and the Ulcer be not quickly cured, but gets an evil condition, it hath the like event, a Gangrene, Conſumption, or Dropſie. Somtimes when the Impoſthume is broken, and very ſtinking Matter is ſent into the Cavity of the Belly, the Patient dies ſuddenly. The Scirrhus, or hard Tumor of the Meſentery is leſs dangerous, and if it be new will admit of a Cure; but if it be old, it brings the Patient to a Dropſie.

The Cure of theſe Diſeaſes, is to be varied according to the diverſity of them. And firſt, an Impoſthume bred requires opening and evacuation, and it muſt be ſoftened with opening and purging Medicines, ſuch as are laid down in the Obſtructions of the Liver and Spleen, not omitting outward Softeners and Looſeners, Fomentations, Cataplaſms, and Liniments, which do make the Matter of the Impoſthume thin, and open the paſſages that the Matter may better be voided.

After the Impoſthume is opened, you muſt cleanſe the Ulcer and heal it; for which purpoſe the Remedies mentioned in the Cure of the Ulcers of the Stomach, Liver, Reins, and Womb, are very good; of which a wiſe Phyſitian may take his choyce according to the divers diſpoſitions both of the Bodies, and the Diſeaſes.

And a Scirrhus of the Meſentery is cured with the ſame Medicines, which are ſet down for the Cure of the Scirrhus or hard Swelling of the Liver and Spleen.

Chap. 4. *Of the Diſeaſes of the* Pancreas, *or Sweet-bread.*

THe Ancient Anatomiſts knew no action of the Pancreas, or Sweet-bread, but the uſe only, namely, to prop the Veſſels, leaſt they ſhould be in danger of breaking, and to be inſtead of a Pillow to the Stomach, leaſt when it is full it ſhould be hurt by the hardneſs of the Vertebræ or Back-bone. But the Modern Anatomiſts have aſcribed very great action unto it; namely, the firſt preparation of the Chyle, and cleanſing of it, ſo that it may be brought to the Liver more pure; which the milky Veins ſeem to confirm, becauſe they are diſperſed through the Pancreas. Beſides, in the middle of it there is an open paſſage which goes to the Guts, by which it is probable that the Excrements of the Chyle are purged; therefore the Pancreas hath its Diſeaſes, which hurt the whol Body, eſpecially Obſtructions and Tumors, as the Meſentery hath; namely, when the Chylous Matter is crude and thick, and is brought to it from the Stomach, not ſufficiently digeſted, and when it doth not freely flow from it.

Riolanus obſerved a Scirrhus of the Pancreas, in *Auguſtine Thuanus*, that wrote the Hiſtory of his Times moſt elegantly in Latin; who when he had for four yeers, among other Symptomes, a heavineſs continually in his Stomach, eſpecially when he walked or ſtood ſtill, without Swelling or hardneſs in the Hypochondria, had a Pancreas as big as his Liver, after he was dead, hard and Scirrhus, full of knots like Pidgeons Eggs.

But becauſe the Pancreas is covered with the Stomach, its Tumors are ſcarce to be felt; and this is

the cause, because there is no mention commonly of them, and they have been found only after death: Yet you may make a handsom Conjecture of them, from what *Riolanus* observed in *Thuanus*, namely, If there be a sence of weight or heavines in the Stomach, and no Tumor or hardnes in the Hypochondria; and other signs of Obstructions than are mentioned in the Obstructions of the Liver, Spleen, and Mesentery. To which you may add pain, and other Symptomes of the Stomach, by reason of its neerness, shortness of breath, by reason of the compression of the Diaphragma; By which signs we suppose that the Lord *Audeyerius*, President of the Senate of Gratianopolis, had a Scirrhus of the Pancreas, and we could perceive it by touching, by putting our hand deep to the sides of the Stomach about the middle, because he was lean; and we found a hardness there, which being touched, pained him: the story whereof, is at large related in our 81. Observation, Cent. 3. And in the knowledg of the Scurvy we observed (which none that ever wrote thereof did) That in all Scurvyes there is a Tumor of the Pancreas, because you may find a straightness, oppression, and weight in the Region of the Stomach: And this Sign is laid down for a cleer one by *Eugalenus*, *Sennertus*, and others.

There are some stories in Authors, of Imposthumes found in the Pancreas, which were not discovered while the Patients lived. But by the Symptomes they had they may be partly known; as some like those of the Scirrhus; to which you may joyn these, a lingering Feaver, which is the companion of almost all inward Imposthumes, much watching, short sleep, and after it, pain, swooning, and cold sweats.

The Cure of the Obstruction, Scirrhus, and Imposthume of the Pancreas, is the same with those of the Liver, Spleen, and Mesentery. There you may fetch Medicines from the Chapters concerning them.

Chap. 5. *Of the Diseases of the Caul, or Omentum.*

Because the Omentum is a soft part, and fat, fit by reason of its loosness to receive Humors that come from other parts: It is subject to divers Diseases, as the Mesentery and Pancreas: And these are not described by Authors, because they can scarce be seen in living men, but only by Anatomy, as you may see in some Stories in our Observations. *Vesalius* saith that he saw in a Body opened, an Omentum so swoln that it weighed five pounds, when in its Natural condition it would weigh scarce half a pound. *Roussetus* in *lib. de partu Cæsareo*, reports that in *Paris* there was found a great Imposthume in the Omentum. *Riolanus* in his Anthropographia, saith that he saw an Omentum in a Noble Youth of ninteen yeers of age, so full of kernels, by which it received abundance of filthy Humors, the Mesentery and Pancreas being imposthumated, and the Spleen almost consumed. We also saw a Scirrhus Omentum in a Fryar of *Montpelior* all over the lower part of the Belly, and four fingers thick; it was of the color of the Spleen, so that it was probable that it was caused by Melancholly from thence, because he was of a Melancholick temper, and the passage is very open by the branches of the Spleen Veins, to the Omentum; by which branches (as *Hippocrates* teacheth, the water in a Dropsie is brought from the Spleen to the Omentum, from which by degrees it distils into the Cavity of the Abdomen.

But because the swelling of the Omentum can by no means be distinguished from that of the Mesentery, therefore we cannot appoint a distinct knowledg. It is true, that the Tumors of the Omentum are easier known at the first touch, because it is immediately under the Peritonæum; but the Mesentery is deeper. But the Tumors of the Mesentery arise greater towards the Peritonæum, and are sometimes so united to it, and the Muscles of the lower Belly, that they are sent forth by suppuration through the Navel, or other external parts.

Yet this Difficulty of Knowledg, doth not hinder the Cure, because the same Medicines serve for all Tumors that are alike in all the parts of the belly: but the Cure is worse to be made in the Omentum, because it hath not fit way, as other parts have for the purging of its self.

The End of the Thirteenth Book.

THE

THE FOURTEENTH BOOK OF THE PRACTICE OF PHYSICK.

Of the Diſeaſes of the Reins and Bladder.

The PREFACE.

THE *Reins and Bladder have divers, and all ſorts of Diſeaſes, both Similary, Organical, and Common; from which, divers Symptomes ariſe, both in the actions hurt, and alſo in the fault of the Evacuations. We will comprehend the chief in Nine Chapters. The Firſt ſhall be of the Stone in the Kidneys, and the pain of the Reins, called* Dolor Nephriticus. *The Second of the Stone in the Bladder. The Third of the Inflamation of the Reins and Bladder. The Fourth of Piſſing of Blood. The Fifth of the Ulcer of the Reins and Bladder. The Sixth of Diabetes, or Involuntary piſſing. The Seventh of the not holding of the Water. The Eighth of Iſchuria, or ſtoppage of the Water, and Strangury. The Ninth of Dyſuria, or ſcattering of the Urine.*

Chap. 1. *Of the Stone in the Kidneyes, and Pain in the Reins, called* Dolor Nephriticus.

THat is called *Dolor Nephriticus* which doth afflict the Ureters or Reins; the common people call it the Stone-Chollick, becauſe of the great affinity it hath with the Chollick, ſo that it is hard to diſtinguiſh them, as you ſhall ſee in the Diagnoſtick, or Signs.

The Cauſe of this Pain is manifold, but chiefly the ſtone or thick flegm. A ſtone continuing in the Reins, cauſeth either little or no pain, becauſe the ſubſtance of the Reins hath little Sence: but if it fall upon the Head of the Ureters, or get into the paſſage, and diſtend it, and cannot be brought to the Bladder by reaſon of its greatneſs, then it cauſeth grievous pain. But groſs flegm faſtened upon the Ureters, doth diſtend them; and cauſeth the Nephritical pain.

The leſs ordinary Cauſes are, thick blood fixed in the Ureters, or thick Matter coming from the Kidneyes, or other parts; ſomtimes wind gets into the Cavity, and cauſeth great pain.

There are many Controversies in Authors about the stone, which is the chief and usual cause of the pain of the Reins, which we shall not accurately declare, but only touch those things which are necessary to declare its Nature and Causes.

And first, they doubt under what kind of Disease they should reckon the stone; *Galen* placeth it among the Diseases in number, of those things which are wholly besides Nature, as also the Worms. For though a Disease in number properly doth respect living parts, whose number being encreased or diminished, maketh an organical Disease; yet those things which are preternaturally added to the number of those things of which the Body is compounded, ought to be referred to the Diseases in number, so that sometimes the bare qualities are sometimes referred to Diseases in number; when they do immediately hurt the actions, as yellowness in the Eye of one that hath the Jaundice, a noise in the Ears, and a bitter tast upon the Tongue.

Oftentimes the stone is reckoned among Causes of Diseases, as it breeds Obstruction or Distention.

It may also be placed among the Symptomes, those that are voided or retained: for if it be retained in the Kidneys, Reins, or Bladder, when it should be voided, it is to be reckoned among those things that are preternaturally retained: but when it is voided, it is to be reckoned among those that are voided wholly against Nature.

But there is more difficulty about the cause of the stone, both material and efficient. *Galen* and his posterity, thought that flegm was the material cause of the stone, which is thick and slimy, fit to be hardened, and (as they say of late) faculent, slimy, and Tartarous, and heat the efficient, which drieth and hardeneth that matter, and at length turneth it into a stone Which Doctrine is oppoſed with strong Reasons.

First, If it should come of a slimy and thick flegm, then it would often be bred in the Brain and the Stomach, in which such flegm doth chiefly abound. Neither will it suffice to say that there is not sufficient heat in those parts to harden it; because according to the Doctrine of *Hippocrates* and *Galen*, a gentle heat by a continual action is sufficint to congeal; and hence is the reason why old men do more often breed the stone, when yong men have hotter Kidneys; because the matter of the stone lies longer in old mens Reins, by reason of the weakness of the expulsive Faculty, and so it's longer concocted by the heat, and at length hardened.

Secondly, From *Aristotle*, 2. *meteor. cap.* 4. they which grow together by heat, are melted by moisture, as Clay. But the stone is never dissolved with water. Neither doth it hinder to say that a strong heat makes such a Concretion or growing together, that it cannot be dissolved by moisture, as in Bricks. For first, in Man there is not so great a heat; then the not dissolving of Bricks with Water is not because of the strong heat they had, but rather from the disposition of the Clay; for Clay made of common Earth, although it be baked in a Furnace, wil never be hard as a Brick, but alwaies be dissolved with moisture.

Thirdly, From *Aristotle* in the place mentioned, the heat that makes concretion must be dry. But there is a continual flowing of moisture into the Reins and Bladder, therefore such a drying and hardening cannot be in those parts.

Fourthly, Stones bred in Rivers and Fountains, in which there is no heat, and in some Dens and Holes that are very cold, tho water that fals turns into a stone; from whence strange shapes do arise. Therefore we must find another cause besides heat, and another Matter besides clammy and glutinous Flegm.

Fifthly, Flegm made hard is like Chalk, and is brittle, as you may see in the knots of the Joynts. But some stones are like flints, which they cannot be from Flegm: nor is there so much heat in mans Body to make it so.

This slimy flegm hath deceived the Physitians of all Ages, which is found in the Urine of many Patients, and they thought it to be the immediate Cause: But they were out. For first, In the stone of the Kidneys such Urines are seldom made, but often in the stone of the Bladder. But if this were the matter of the stone it would be alike in both. Therefore this Matter depends especially upon the proper Disease of the Bladder, for it is an Excrement of it distempered. The disease of the Bladder is this: we have seen in the Bodies of them who have died of the Stone in the Bladder, and who voided much of that matter, that the bladder grew fleshy, as thick as ones finger or thumb, so that it filled the whol Cavity, and lay next to the stone till by stopping the Urine it killed the Patient. But in those who made thin cleer Urine, their bladder was not altered. The Reason of these accidents are taken out of *Hipp.* Aph. 66. Sect. 5. If there be no Tumor in great and evil wounds, it is evil. And *Galen* gives the Reason because there is a suspition that the Humors which should come by reason of pain to the wound, are gone to some noble part. Moreover, it is Natural to all parts; as *Galen, lib. de diff. febr. cap.* 11. that they which are stronger, send that which hurteth them to the weaker, nor do they cease so doing till it come to the weakest. So when the part wounded is very weak, and therefore fit to receive Humors, if they come not thither, it is a sign that other parts are very weak,

which

which cannot ſend, and that others are weaker than the wounded, to which the humors are carried. Not only the bad Humors are carried to the wound, but alſo good blood, which Nature ſends to refreſh it. All theſe things are in the bladder that hath the ſtone. A great uneven ſtone, or ſharp, hurts the Tunicle of the Bladder; hence comes pain and weakneſs. And Nature to help it ſends more than uſual blood, and the ſtronger parts ſend their ſuperfluities. Theſe the bladder concocteth as much as may be into its ſelf, and ſo groweth thicker. But when it cannot take in all, eſpecially the evil Humors, hence come many foul Excrements, which from the Nature of the part turn ſo flegmatick. But in them who have clear Urine, either the ſtone hurteth not, which cauſeth the attraction, or ſome other parts are weaker than the bladder, to which the humors flow.

But becauſe this Doctrine doth deſtroy an old Opinion, we will confirm it by a cleer Example of the Womb. The Womb is Membranous, as the bladder: but in Women with Child it is fleſhy and thick; ſo that in the laſt months it is two fingers thick; becauſe Nature all the time ſends much blood to it to nouriſh the Child; which when the Child doth not wholly conſume, ſome part of it is taken into the Womb: and ſo it encreaſeth. The ſame is in the Bladder, though Preternaturally (which in the Womb is Natural) that when much blood comes to it, it converts it into its ſelf, and grows thicker. But if without being with Child, the Womb be diſtempered and made weak, then Humors ſuperfluous from other parts come to it, which when they cannot be taken into its ſubſtance, turns to the Whites. And that flux is a proper Excrement of the Womb, as the flegm is of the bladder. The ſame thing is in the Reins, though not ſo often; as when by a ſtone in them there is pain and weakneſs, Nature ſends much blood and humors to them, which when they cannot be turned into the ſubſtance of the part, they are turned into a ſlimy Excrement, which is voided in abundance; and this vulgar Phyſitians take for Matter or Pus, which is only flegm, or mixed with a little Pus, as when by the grating of the ſtone there is an Ulcer.

Some Modern Writers being converted with the aforeſaid Reaſons, have made a Juyce, which will turn into a ſtone to be the material cauſe of the ſtone called *Succus Lapideſcens*; and the efficient to be *Spiritus Lapideſcens*. They call the former a certain Humor naturally proper to turn into a ſtone: And this they deſire to prove by the breeding of ſtones in the Earth, which are by many Authors ſaid to come of Waters and things caſt thereinto to be hardened preſently; ſome Waters in Caves to be made Stones, and ſome part of the Wine groweth to the Veſſel, called Tartar; and Urines that are cleer, when they are cold grow to the glaſs. And although the peculiar fitneſs of the Matter to be thus turned, is not ſufficiently known; yet ſome ſay they have found it out, ſaying that it is of Salt mixed with Earth. Some Salts do grow hard in the Sun, and are eaſily diſſolved in Water; and if they be joyned with Earth like themſelves, by the force of the efficient cauſe they may be ſtones. So we ſee in Wines turned to Tartar: but Tartar calcined goes all into Salt, which ſhews that it is chiefly made of Salt. So in Urines that have much Salt, eſpecially in thoſe which have ſlimy matter, we ſee a Tartarous Matter cleaving to the glaſs. This Salt Matter, which is mixed with the Urine, comes from Meat and Drink ſo affected, and they are caſt forth in a ſound Body, nor are they retained in the Reins when the efficient Cauſe is abſent.

We have called the efficient Cauſe, *Spiritum Lapidificum*, or a Spirit that makes a ſtone: *Fernelius* calls it a ſtony diſpoſition, which is in the Reins commonly Hereditarily. But we like the foremoſt Title beſt. For firſt, ſome have ſtones which have them not Hæreditarily if they eat or drink things that breed them, becauſe in them there is both the Material and Efficient Cauſe; therefore the Hermets impute the Efficient Cauſe of ſtones to their proper ſeeds, which in a Matter rightly diſpoſed, produce their form.

Moreover, Many Hiſtories ſhew that Stones come from a Stone making Spirit, of Men, Beaſts, and other things turned into Stones by a Breath or Spirit out of the Earth. So in *Aventinus*, lib. 7. *Annal. Bavar. an.* 1343. that more than fifty Country men and their Cows, were turned into Stones. And ſo ſaies *Ortellius* in his Deſcription of *Ruſſia*, of whol Heards of Cattel. So alſo *Camerarius* reports of a South wind that bloweth ſome times of the yeer, in the Province of *Chilo*, in *Armenia*, by the blaſts whereof, whol Troops of Horſes are ſuddenly turned into Statues of Stone, and ſtand in the ſame rank and file in which they were.

This Stone making Spirit, is not only in the Reins of thoſe which have this Diſeaſe, but alſo in the Juyce of thoſe things that are eaten and drunk ſeparated from them; ſo that ſomtimes both come together: Hence it is that ſome that eat but any Meats that incline to the breeding of the ſtone, do preſently produce it, becauſe there is a Stone-breeding diſpoſition, or Stone-making Spirit in their Reins. But if their Reins be free from this Spirit, ſuch meat will not breed ſtones, becauſe their ſtone-making force is not ſtrong enough without the aſſiſtance of the Reins to convert that matter into ſtone. On the Contrary, if the ſtone-making power be greater in the meats that are taken, and they are often eaten, ſtones will be bred, although the Kidneys have no ſuch diſpoſition or ſtone-making Spirit. So we ſee in divers places, where the Water or Wine are full of ſtone-making juyce,

the

the greateſt part of the Inhabitants are ſubject to the ſtone; as we may ſee in *Ovid* concerning the Thracians, in theſe Verſes:

The Thracian Waters, all things Marble make,
Their Guts turn Stone that inwardly them take.

And contrary, If there be that ſtone-making vertue in the Kidneys, it makes ſtones of any nouriſhment, though never ſo wholſom. So about three yeers ſince, I ſaw one who for three or four months voided more than twelve little ſtones every day by Urine, when all that while he kept his bed, very ſick, and fed only upon Broth and Panadoes.

The Antecedent and Primary Cauſes, either reſpect the ſupply of Matter for the ſtone, or the conſtitution of the Reins, by reaſon whereof the ſtones do more eaſily grow.

The Stomach, Liver, Spleen, and Reins, do much cauſe the breeding and heaping up of Matter for the ſtone; chiefly the Stomach, if it do not wel concoct, there is a crude Chyle brought to the Liver; and from thence impure and Earthy Juyces are ſent with the Serum or Water into the Reins. A hot liver doth bake the Chylous Matter, and makes it fit to breed a ſtone; as alſo being too cold it makes crude blood moſt fit for the ſame purpoſe. A Spleen weak or ſtopped, or otherwiſe diſturbed, doth not ſufficiently purge the droſſie part of the blood, but ſends part of it to the Reins, which will more eaſily be turned into a ſtone. And laſtly, the Reins beſides their conjunct cauſe, which is a ſtony diſpoſition, are an Antecedent Cauſe in two reſpects; namely, in reſpect of their Temper, and of their Form. In regard of their hot Temper, they more violently draw the Stone-making Matter, and thicken it more: but in reſpect of their Form, they are an Antecedent Cauſe, if the Emulgent Veins are more looſe, ſo that that thick and Tartarous Matter may be more eaſily received into the Reins; or if the Ureters, and thoſe Veſſels that ſend the ſerous Matter to them, be too narrow, ſo that the thick Matter hath not a free paſſage, but is retained in the Reins.

Thick and ſlimy Nouriſhment doth chiefly afford Matter for the Stone, ſuch as are full of Salt, as Beef, Pork, Hairs, Geeſe, or things dried in the Smoak, or poudered, as Salt-fiſh, Shel-fiſh, Eeles, Pulſe, Cheeſ, and all Milk meats, hard Eggs, Cheſnuts, Pears, Quinces, Medlars, unleavened Bread, and Rice; thick Wine, ſharp or black, or new Wine not purged, ſtanding Waters, and ſuch as are full of ſtone-breeding Juyce.

To theſe add very hot Meats, as Pepper, Ginger, Garlick, Onions, old ſtrong Wine, which makes the Liver and Reins too hot, too ſtrong Diuretick, which carry the Matter that will cauſe the Diſeaſe too violently to the Reins; thick Garments, Down Beds, Baths, inordinate Lechery, which is a great Enemy to the Reins, violent Exercise, eſpecially after meat, too much feeding, or long faſting, great anger, and other paſſions.

The Signs of the Stone taken by themſelves, are equivocal, and common to other Diſeaſes: but if you conſider them all together, you may have certain Knowledg by them.

The Firſt Sign, is a fixed pain about the Loyns, ſomtimes heavy when the Stone is faſtened to the ſubſtance; which being of a dull ſence, hath a weighty pain; but as often as the Stone gets into the Head of the Ureters, then it cauſeth a ſharp and pricking pain, and this is called the Nephritical pain, or pain of the Reins, and it continueth while the ſtone is there; neither will it ceaſe to torment the Patient till the ſtone get into the Cavity of the Bladder, or turn back into the hollow of the Kidneyes.

The Second Sign, is bloody Urine, which comes from the opening or corroſion of the Veins which are diſperſed into the ſubſtance of the Reins, which comes from the rubbing of the Stone that ſticks in the ſubſtance; but if there be but little blood voided, being mixed with Urine it looſeth its color, ſo that the Urine looks like a Lye. This Sign is not alwaies, but ſomtimes depends upon other cauſes. But when it doth appear, it is one of the chief, which diſtinguiſheth the Stone from the Chollick. It uſeth to be cauſed by riding, much walking, and other violent exercise; for then the ſtone if it be rough and ſnaggy, being removed from its place, doth cut and tear the tender Fleſh of the Kidneyes.

The Third Sign, is thin Urine, water-like, and little, in the beginning of the fit; after which ſomtimes followeth a total ſtoppage, if both Ureters are ſtopped: but when the fit is paſt, and the ſtone that was fixed in the Ureters is fallen into the bladder, there comes forth much thick troubled Urine, with a ſandy Sediment.

The Fourth Sign, is often voiding of ſand and ſtones. Concerning voiding of a ſtone, it is evident, That if the Patient voided any formerly, though never ſo ſmal, when he had a fit, it is moſt certain that the Diſeaſe is the Stone. But concerning Sand we cannot ſpeak ſo infallible; for we may ſee many all their lives time void Gravel, and never be troubled with the ſtone; for ſand comes often from aduſtion of Humors in the Liver and Veins, and it ſticks to the ſides of the Urinal, and goes not to the bottom, as that which comes from the Reins. Beſides, if you rub it between your fingers, it diſſolveth, and is like Salt, when the other will not yeeld to the fingers, and will not diſſolve. And finally, becauſe this Sand is ſalt, it is diſſolved in hot Urine, nor will it appear while the Urine

Urine is ſo; but when it is cold it grows together to the ſides of the Urinal, not unlike the Cryſtal of Tartar; which being diſſolved in warm water, when it grows cold, congealeth and ſticks to the ſides of the Glaſs; ſo the Nature of them both is very like.

The Fifth Sign, is a ſtone voided, and this is moſt certain: For if any former Sign, though equivocal do appear, and a ſtone be voided, you may be certain of the Diſeaſe.

The Sixth Sign, is a numbneſs of the Thigh on the ſame ſide that the Back is pained of: for the ſtone being great, doth oppreſs the Nerve which is inſerted into the Muſcles of the Loyns, under the Reins, called by the Anatomiſts *Pſoas*, and thoſe Muſcles go to the Hip for its motion, ſuch a numbneſs is perceived by ſitting upon the Thigh, through the compreſſion; or in the Arm by long leaning thereon.

The Seventh Sign, is the drawing in of one ſtone, on that ſide where the pain is: For the Kidneys and Ureters being provoked with the greatneſs of the pain, do vehemently contract themſelves, and then the Spermatical Veſſels and all the parts adjacent are alſo contracted, and theſe Veſſels do raiſe up the ſtone which is joyned to them, ſo that it ſeems ſometimes to be fixed to the Groyn. And this retraction or drawing in of parts reacheth to the bladder and Guts: For in great pain the belly is bound, and Urine ſtopped; ſo that then Purges will not work by reaſon they are hindered by that Contraction.

The Eighth Sign is, loathing and vomiting by the connexion of the Kidneys with the Stomach, by the Membrane that comes from the Peritonæum, and by the Nerve of the ſixth Conjugation, two branches whereof reach from the Stomach to the inward Tunicle of the Kidneys. Therefore when thoſe ſenſible parts in the Kidneys are pulled, the Stomach conſenting, is ſtirred up to exclude that which hurteth; and firſt it ſends out Flegm, then yellow Choller, after green, if the evil continue, becauſe through long pain and watching the blood is altered in the Veins, and that part which is moſt diſpoſed for it, is turned into green Choller.

Finally, The Nephritical pain is ſo like the Chollick, that *Galen* himſelf was deceived in the diſtinguiſhing of them, as we ſhewed in the Diagnoſis or Knowldg of the Chollick: where alſo we laid down ſigns by which we may diſtinguiſh them, which we ſhall not need to repeat.

The Signs afore mentioned are equivocal, and one of them can ſcarce give a certain knowledg. Some Authors mention others, which are more equivocal and uncertain, but joyned with others they help the knowledg of the Diſeaſe, therefore it will not be amiſs to mention them.

Hipp. Aph. 34. Sect. 7. ſaith, *They who have bubbles in their Urine, have an old Diſeaſe in the Reins.* For theſe bubbles come from thick Humors full of groſs vapors, which are either bred in the Reins, or ſent from other parts to them, that matter is proper to breed the ſtone, and cannot be preſently cured, therefore the Diſeaſe is long. *Galen* in his Comment upon this Aporiſm, ſaith that the mouthes of the Arteries which come to the Reins, are opened by the ſharpneſs of the Urine, and thence comes a Spirit which being mixed with the Urine, maketh bubbles. But it is not probable that ſuch a groſs Spirit that will remain ſo long, ſhould come from the Arteries, and Urine being cold may long time ſo continue, as we ſee many bubbles many hours ſwimming thereupon. And alſo when the Arteries are opened by the ſharpneſs of the Urine, blood will alſo come forth. And the mouthes of the Veins having thin Skins, would be more eaſily opened, and ſo there would be alſo blood mixed with the bubbles.

Hippocrates alſo Aph. 76. Sect. 4. ſaith, *They who void little bits of fleſh, and things like hairs, with a thick Urine, do it from the Reins.* The bits of fleſh come from the Ulcer of the Reins, of which we ſhall ſpeak hereafter: but theſe thrids or hairs are ſaid by *Galen*, in his Commentaries, to come from thick and crude flegm, made long and round by the extraordinary heat of the Reins. Yet *Galen* confeſſeth, 6. loc. aff. cap. 3. that after a long ſearch he was ignorant of the cauſe of their length. *Avicen* ſaith that theſe thrids grow long in the veſſels of the Reins, or others; for in regard theſe are taken away by Diureticks, and the Patients acknowledg pain in the Reins, it is credible that they receive their form from thence. *Actuarius* doth directly ſay they come from the Ureters: For when the Reins abound with flegm, it goes with the Urine into the Ureters, and ſticking to them and growing thick by heat, it gets a long ſhape like a thrid or hair. But *Fernelius* writes that thoſe hairs come from the Paraſtatis or kernels, from his Obſervation, in which they grow long like hairs from the matter of the ſeed, which by force of the Diſeaſe flowing down by degrees, grows thick by heat, and that they appear much in thoſe who have lately had a filthy Gonorrhœa, and in thoſe women who have the Whites, or a foul Womb, and in that Urine which they make next after they have known a man. Others ſuppoſe, that thoſe thick Humors of which thoſe filaments or hairs are made, are firſt bred in the Veins, but take their form in the narrow paſſages of the Reins, through which, as through a ſieve, they turn ſmal, and after they deſcend into the Ureters, in which they grow dryer, till they are ſent into the bladder, neither can they be broken by reaſon of their toughneſs. Whatſoever the cauſe is, ſince the beſt Authors do agree that theſe hairs breed of thick flegm in the Kidneys,

or

or come to them from other parts, it is certain that they may turn into a ſtone, if there be an efficient cauſe fit to produce it. And therefore this may be a probable ſign of the ſtone.

As for the Prognoſtick. The ſtone of the Kidneys is very dangerous, for it uſeth to bring great evils; as Inflamation, Exulceration, great Pains, Watchings, dejection of ſtrength, Feavers, ſtoppings of Urine, and the like dangerous Symptomes.

If this Diſeaſe be Hæreditary coming from the Parents, it is incurable.

And becauſe *Hippocrates* ſaith that the Diſeaſes of the Reins are hard to be cured in old men, Aph. 6. Sect. 6. The Stone of the Kidneyes in old men is difficult, if not incurable.

If the pain of the Kidneys continue many daies, and cannot be cured with any Medicines, there is danger of death, and it is neer at hand when they are cold externally, and have a cold ſweat in the face. Urines that are firſt thin, and after thick, and have ſand at the bottom, do ſignifie that the fit is towards an end.

A Stone joyned with an Ulcer in the Kidneys, is incurable: for thoſe things which break the Stone, do exaſperate the Ulcer.

The Cure of the pain of the Kidneys, and ſtone ſticking in them, or in the Ureters, is by enlarging of the paſſages, and relaxing them by throwing forth the ſtone, and any other thing that hurts them, by removing or taking away the antecedent cauſe, and by taking away the pain. Which you may do with theſe Medicines.

Take of *Marſh-mallow and Lilly Roots, of each one ounce: Mallows, Violets, Pellitory, Bear-foot, of each one handful: Lin-ſeed and Fenugreek ſeed, of each half an ounce: fat Figgs, ſix: Chamomel and Melilot Flowers, of each one pugil: boyl them to a pint. Diſſolve in the ſtraining, Caſſia, and Diacatholicon, of each ſix drams: Oyl of Lillies and Violets, of each one ounce and an half: freſh Oyl two ounces: make a Clyſter to be given preſently.*

Afterwards open the Liver Vein of the right or left Arm, and take away eight or nine ounces of blood, according to the ſtrength and fulneſs of the Patient. Phlebotomy is very neceſſary to prevent Inflamation, which uſeth to come from continuance of pain.

After blood-letting, give this Clyſter.

Take of *the flowers of Chamomel and Melilot, the tops of Dill, Pellitory of the wall and Rue, of each half a handful: Annis, Fennel, and Cummin ſeeds, of each half an ounce: Make a decoction to one pint; in which diſſolve Diaphœnicon half an ounce: Turpentine diſſolved with the Yolk of an Egg one ounce: Oyl of Dill and Scorpions, of each three ounces. Make a Clyſter.*

To mollifie more, and aſſwage the pain after your Laxative, you may make one of Oyl thus:

Take of *Oyl of Dill and of Chamomel, of each half a pound: Oyl of ſweet Almonds two ounces. Oyl of Rue one ounce: mix them for a Clyſter.*

At the ſame time appply a Fomentation to the part pained, made of the Decoction of the firſt Clyſter, with Annis ſeeds and Fennel ſeeds, Oyl and Water, with Spunges.

Take of *Oyl of Scorpions compounded two ounces: freſh Butter, Hens Greaſe, Oyl of Lillies, and of ſweet Almonds, of each one ounce. Make a Liniment to be uſed after the Fomentation.*

Or this Cataplaſm:

Take of *Mallows and Pellitory, of each two handfuls: Parſley with the Roots one handful: Rhadiſh Roots two ounces: boyl them ſoft and beat them: then add of Onions roaſted, two: Oyl of Lillies, bitter Almonds, and ſweet Butter, of each two ounces. Make a Cataplaſm, which you muſt put between two thin linnen cloaths and apply warm to the Belly, according to the length of the Ureters, and heat it as often as it grows cold.*

You may alſo apply one either made of Pellitory alone, or with Eggs fryed in a Pan with Oyl of Chamomel, bitter Almonds, Scorpions in a cloth.

Or make it of Onions ſhred and fryed with Hogs Greaſe, or the Oyls aforeſaid, with five or ſix warm Eggs applied.

And becauſe in this Diſeaſe, there is abundance of crude Humors, after Clyſters (which muſt ſtill be repeated as the pain cometh) you may give a purging Medicine, eſpecially in form of a Bolus, leſt it be eaſily vomited up, becauſe theſe Patients are commonly ſqueazy ſtomached.

Take of *Caſſia new drawn with Oyl of ſweet Almonds one ounce: Diaphœnicon three drams: Pouder of Rhubarb one dram: with the pouder of Liquoris and Tragacanth, make a Bolus.*

If the Patient cannot ſwallow a Bolus, diſſolve purging things in the Decoction of Mallows.

But you muſt diligently obſerve that you muſt not give a Purging Medicine before the pain be allayed. For when the pain is great, a ſtrong Purge ſeldom works, becauſe then all the parts contract themſelves, and refuſe to help the Medicine.

But at that time you may give a Vomit, by which the plenty of Humors may be abated, and a revulſion is made from the part affected; and often Nature of her ſelf, when the pain is urgent, doth endeavor the ſame, and after it finds eaſe.

A gen-

A gentle Vomit which will alſo aſſwage pain, may be made thus:

Take of *warm Water four ounces: Sallet Oyl one ounce: ſimple Syrup of Vinegar one ounce and an half: Make a Vomit.*

If you will have a ſtronger, you muſt uſe Salt of Vitriol, or Mercurius vitæ, with which *Angelus Sala* ſaith, that he hath often cured this diſeaſe.

Before and after purging, you muſt give at the mouth, thoſe things which open the paſſages, and abate the pain: for which purpoſe the Syrup of Marſh-mallows preſcribed by *Fernelius* often given, is excellent. But becauſe it is not alwaies ready in the Shops, you may make it ſimply thus:

Take of *Marſh-mallows three ounces; boyl them to a pint: diſſolve in the ſtraining half a pound of Sugar. Let him take it often.*

This following Julep given often, is good to mollifie the Paſſages.

Take of *Barley one pugil: gray Peaſe half a pugil: Mallow and Marſh-mallow ſeeds, of each two drams: the four great cold ſeeds, of each one dram: fat Figs, eight: Sebeſtens, ſix: Liquoris half an ounce: boyl them to a pint and an half. Diſſolve in the ſtraining, Syrup of Maiden-hair four ounces. Give it at four draughts, twice or thrice in a day.*

Give for his ordinary drink, a decoction of Marſh-mallow Roots, one ounce and an half: Barley two pugils: Liquoris ſix drams, in five pints of water to a pint.

Or make Broths of Mallows, Marſh-mallows, and gray Peaſe, with much butter, and a little ſalt: or boyl the ſame in fat broth.

Or give Emulſions made of the four great cold ſeeds.

But Oyl of ſweet Almonds above all Medicines, doth mollifie and relax the Paſſages, and aſſwageth pain, if it be new drawn: give three or four ounces by its ſelf, or with white Wine, or a Decoction of Marſh-mallows, Liquoris, and gray Peaſe; or make a Potion of equal parts of Oyl of ſweet and bitter Almonds, becauſe bitter Almonds are good alſo to expel the Stone.

The day after you have opened the Arm, you may open the Ham or Ancle Vein on the ſame ſide, for that will derive the Humor, and the Patients find much eaſe thereby. Which Rule is given us by *Hippocrates*, 6. Epid. Part. 1. Aph. 6. and by *Ætius*, lib. 11. cap. 5.

And if the Diſeaſe laſt long, you may open the Hemorroids; according to *Hipp.* Aph. 11. Sect. 6. who ſaith, That it is good for Melancholick men, and ſuch as have the ſtone, to have their Hemorrhoids bleed. From the ſame branch of the Spleen there are Veins which go to the Reins, bladder, and Hemorrhoids.

If the pain be not aſſwaged by Fomentations, Liniments, and Cataplaſms aforeſaid, put him into a Bath made of the Emollient Decoction, with white Wine added, for it aſſwageth pain, at leaſt while the Patient ſits therein; but you muſt not uſe it much leaſt it take away ſtrength.

And laſtly, When the pain is very great with watching and weakneſs, you muſt give Narcoticks, and put two drams of Philonium Romanum, or five or ſix grains of Laudanum in a Clyſter, or three or four grains at the mouth, or one ounce of Syrup of Poppies in a convenient Julep.

After theſe Topicks have been uſed, in a long pain, it is good to apply a Plaiſter of Melilot, malaxed with Oyl of Chamomel and Dill.

This pain uſeth to be bred with ſome of theſe Medicines, and with repeating Purges (if they be needful) or giving Caſſia often. But if after the uſe of them it continue, it is moſt certain that they are great ſtones which ſtop the Ureters, which muſt be ſent out by Diureticks, which will break them. But you muſt firſt begin with the mildeſt, leſt by ſtrong and ſharp you inflame the Blood and the Reins. And you muſt conſider the habit of the Body: For a full Body will endure things that do more pierce and make thin; but a ſlender, leſs.

There are abundance of this kind in Authors, that diminiſh, break, and expel the ſtone, but we will give you only the moſt choyce.

Take of *Smallage, Parſley, Butchers Broom, Couch-graſs, and Sparagus Roots, of each one ounce: Mallow and Marſh-mallow Roots, of each half an ounce: Pellitory of the wall two handfuls: Annis, Fennel, Dill, Caraway, Carrot, Amye, Carthamus, Cummin, Rue ſeeds, and Bay-berries, of each two drams: Chamomel, Melilot, Dill, and French Lavender, of each one pugil: boyl them in white Wine to the conſumption of half. Diſſolve in the ſtraining, being one pint, freſh Butter four ounces; Honey of Roſes two ounces; red Sugar one ounce; Benedicta Laxativa half an ounce; one Yolk of an Egg; Oyl of Nuts, Lin-ſeed, and Dill, of each three ounces: mix them for a Clyſter, which let him keep two hours, if he can.*

Take of *Strawberry Water, and Saxifrage Water, of each two ounces: the beſt white Wine ſix ounces: Oyl of ſweet Almonds two ounces: Spirit of Vitriol one dram: mix them for three doſes. Give the firſt as hot as may be endured; after ſix hours give the ſecond as the former; and if this will not do (as it ſeldom miſſeth) let him take the third.*

You may ſooner make a Julep of Saxifrage Water, and Syrup of Violets, with fifteen or twenty drops of Spirit of Vitriol.

Take of *the Juyce of Pellitory drawn without fire three ounces: Juyce of Lemmons, and Oyl of ſweet Almonds drawn without fire, of each one ounce and an half. Mix them for a Julep to be given three or four times morning and evening.* Or,

Take of *the Juyce of Lemmons and white Wine, of each two ounces: Sugar candy half a dram. Take it inſtead of the Julep.*

Concerning Juyce of Lemmons you muſt note, That it muſt be uſed warily, for being given often and much, it maketh Exulcerations in the Stomach, from whence cometh the Flux called *Lienteria.*

Theſe Pills following are excellent:

Take of *Sal prunella, Cryſtal of Tartar, Salt of Ivy Berries, and of Water-creſſes, of each equal parts: with ſome proper Syrup or Turpentine, make a Maſs of Pills; of which give one dram every morning.*

This following pouder of *Quercetan* is much commended.

Take of *the inward skin of Hens Gizzards, and their white Dung, of each half an ounce: the inward skins of Egg-ſhels poudered, two ounces and an half: Rupture and Cinnamon, of each four ſcruples: Medlar ſtones two drams: Annis and Fennel ſeeds, of each one ounce: make them into very fine pouder, and give half a dram or a dram thereof in white Wine.*

The Aſhes of burnt Egg-ſhels from half a dram to an ounce given in white Wine, doth powerfully expel the Stone that ſticks in the paſſages of the Ureters.

Goats blood prepared is commended of all Authors, old and modern, as the beſt Medicine to diſſolve the ſtone. The Doſe is from half a dram to a dram.

The Water of Goats Blood diſtilled in a Glaſs in Balneo Mariæ, doth wonders. But you muſt feed the Goat one month with Saxifrage, burnt Juniper berries, Parſley, and other Diureticks, without Drink.

Hartman commends the Urine of a Goat in theſe words as a wonderful Remedy: *In the ſtoppage of the Reins by a great ſtone, or when the Ureters and Bladder are ſtopped by ſtones ſent thither, ſo that one drop cannot be voided, it is excellent if you take the Urine of a Goat taken out with his Bladder while he is yet alive, and drink and apply his Paunch and Guts to the Belly and Privities, for ſo the ſtone will be preſently conſumed without hurt to the Veſſels, and the Patient cured.*

The Pouder of Millepedum, or Sows, is excellent to diſſolve the ſtone, and we will teach the uſe thereof in the ſtone of the Bladder.

Alſo the infuſion of the ſame in white Wine, and continued

There is a Wine of Winter Cherries commended of *Arnoldus Villanovanus*, and they ſay it doth ſo bring forth the matter of the ſtone that you may take it up in your hand. And this is done by beating the Winter Cherries in white Wine, and giving the ſtrained Liquor.

Theſe alſo following are good:

Take of *Lapis Judaicus, or Jews ſtone, Pulvis Lithontribi Juſtini, of each one dram: Peach Kernels, Gum Tragacanth, and Cherry-ſtone Kernels, of each half a dram: bring them to Pouder, and with Turpentine make a Bolus, which give in three Doſes morning and evening.*

Take of *Horſ-Rhadiſh ſcraped two ounces: white Wine four ounces: ſteep them a few hours; then ſtrain them ſtrongly. Let the Patient take the ſtraining twice or thrice, at convenient hours.*

Savin Water given to an ounce or two, doth purge ſtones and gravel.

Take of *Mallow Roots clenſed in white Wine, ſix ounces: Burdock and Couch-graſs Roots, of each four ounces: Aſarum, Parſley, Valerian, and Fennel Roots bruiſed, of each two ounces: Maiden-hair, Saxifrage, Burnet, Golden rod, and Betony, of each four handfuls: Bazil, Burdock, Carduus, Mountain Oſier ſeeds, Medlar ſtones, and Peach ſtones, of each one ounce: Gromwel ſeeds two ounces: Lapidis Lyncis, and Judaici, of each one ounce and an half: Turpentine three ounces: Goats Blood prepared two ounces and an half: Saffron two drams: white Wine four pints: bruiſe them that muſt, and mix them all; diſtil them in* Balneo Mariæ. *Take two ounces of this Water three hours before Supper, drinking after four ounces of white Wine.*

Take of *the bark of the Roots of Carduus Aſininus one ounce: Liquoris two drams: boyl them to ſix ounces: let him take the ſtraining many daies. It doth wonderfully clenſe Stone and Gravel.*

Take *four pounds of ſhred Onions that are white; two pound of Sugar; one pint and an half of white Wine: diſtil them in* Balneo Mariæ *till they are dry. Give every morning two or three ounces for many daies together.*

The Aſhes of a Scorpion is commended by Practitioners, if you take one ſcruple at a time, with Water of Couch-graſs, Pellitory, or white Wine; but it is ſeldom uſed.

Mathiolus his Oyl of Scorpions is more in uſe; a dram taken at the Mouth with the aforeſaid Liquors.

The

The Chymiſts brag much of their Salts: among which the beſt is, Salt of Bean Cods, or Stalks, half a dram whereof, with white Wine works very well. And alſo Tartar vitriolate in the ſame quantity, They commend alſo Spirit of Salt, Vitriol, Mercurius dulcis, with their proper Vehicles or Liquors.

Outwardly you may help the Stone, if you continually chafe the Reins and Ureters with warm hands anointed with Oyl of Scorpions.

Alſo many Cupping-glaſſes from the Kidney affected downwards, applyed without Scarification.

Then anoint the Part with *Mathiolus* his Oyl of Scorpions; to which add a little pouder of Cantharides. Or make a Liniment of Oyl of Wax, Bricks, and Scorpions, of each equal parts; it is very piercing and good, if you fear no inflamation of the Reins.

You muſt obſerve in the uſe of Medicines to break and expel the ſtone, That they muſt not be uſed twice or thrice, but often, till the paſſages ſtopt are open; and while you give them, you muſt cheriſh the Reins and Bladder with Baths, Fomentations, Oyntments, and Cataplaſms, that the other may work the better. And you muſt give thin Liquor, as white Wine, often; and uſe inward Emollients, Looſeners, and Openers, to enlarge the Paſſages, and temper the ſharpneſs of other Medicines.

By theſe Remedies the pain of the Reins is cured, and ſtone diſſolved and expelled. But becauſe they who are dipoſed to this Diſeaſe, and cured, do often relapſe: therefore we muſt appoint ſome Preſervatives that we may hinder it as much as may be.

And firſt, if there be a Plethora or fulneſs, or the Reins and Liver hot, it is good to open a Vein, Spring and Fall, a Clyſter or gentle Purge being firſt given: And then to purge the Matter away which is proper to breed the ſtone before it come to the Kidneys, which you may do by a Vomit twice or thrice in a month, to thoſe which eaſily vomit.

Or you may give a Purge by a Bolus of Caſſia, Diaphœnicon, and Rhubarb, preſcribed in the Cure, or ſome other convenient Medicine every month; or two or three, according to the habit of the Patient, and the plenty of Humors, and that in the laſt quarter of the Moon.

Or if there be evil Humors, they muſt be purged Spring and Fall with a convenient Apozeme: for by that, not only the Antecedent and remote cauſe will be taken away; but alſo ſome part of the conjunct cauſe; as alſo the Obſtructions of the Bowels, which uſually accompany this diſeaſe, will be taken away, if you mix therein cleanſing and cutting Medicines.

Or inſtead of the Apozeme, you may uſe the Decoction of an old Cock made thus:

Take of *Polypody of the Oak, Carthamus ſeeds, of each one ounce and an half: Thyme and Epithimum, of each one pugil: Cummin, Annis, Dill, Fennel, Caraway, and Carduus ſeeds, of each two drams: Senna one ounce and an half: Gummy Turbith half an ounce: Cinnamon one dram: Cryſtal of Tartar two drams: beat them and mix them together, and put them into the belly of an old Cock; and then boyl them till the fleſh come from his bones. Let him take the Broth being ſtrained, at four mornings draughts.*

Or you may give this following Pouder commended of *Solenander*, by the uſe whereof he teſtifieth, that he cured many of the pain of the Reins, giving it in the fit.

Take of *Senna two ounces: the beſt Rhubarb half a dram: Turbith one dram and an half: Hermodactls two ſcruples: Polypody half a dram: Cinnamon, Ginger, Gromwel ſeeds, Saxifrage, Broom ſeeds, of each one dram; pouder them finely. Give one dram, or a dram and an half in white or thin red Wine, once in a month.*

Carolus Piſo doth extol this following Pouder:

Take of *Annis, Fennel, Caraway, and Cummin ſeeds, of each one dram: Coriander prepared half a dram: Liquoris and Burdock ſeeds, of each one dram and an half: Cinnamon and Galangal, of each one ſcruple: Gromwel and Broom ſeeds, of each half a dram: Diatragacanth frigid two drams: Diagridium one ſcruple: Senna as much as all the reſt: make a Pouder. The Doſe is one dram, with the Broth of gray Peaſe.*

Or you may make a Magiſtral Syrup thus:

Take of *Sparagus, Couch-graſs, Marſh-mallow, Knee-holm, and Parſley Roots, of each one ounce: Bettony, Burnet, Saxifrage, and Pellitory of the Wall, Maiden-hair, of each one handful: Bazil, Parſley, Gromwel, Broom, and Burdock, and Mountain Oſier ſeeds, of each two drams: Liquoris, Raiſons, and Polypody of the Oak, of each one ounce: Make a Decoction to one pint and an half. Infuſe in the ſtraining, four ounces of Senna: white Agarick two ounces: Ginger two ſcruples: boyl them a little, and ſtrain them: after diſſolve in it one pound of white Sugar. Boyl it up to a Syrup, and give thereof two ounces once or twice in a month, with the Decoction of Barley, Couch-graſs, and Gray Peaſe.*

Or if the Body be very foul, make Pils of Aloes and Agarick, and give two or three of them every other day before Dinner.

After Purging, give Diureticks, to bring forth the slimy Matter, and Sand that is about the Ureters.

For this end, make Decoctions of the Diureticks mentioned in the Magistral Syrup, with Sugar, into the form of a Julep, or Apozeme. Or Chicken, Goat, or Mutton Broth, to be taken many daies together after general Evacuations.

Also after every Purge, take some of these following, once or twice in a week.

Take of *the stalks and flowers of Beans three pound: Calcitrap one pound: beat them, and add one pound of Sugar candy; the Juyce of Lemmons one pint and an half: the Juyce of Oranges half a pound: the Decoction of Mallows, and Marsh-mallows wel strained two pound: Honey one pint: Distil them with a gentle fire, and let them not be burnt, nor the Liquor wholly consumed. Let the Patient take four ounces of this Water every morning.*

Take of *the stones of Medlars, and the pouder of Diatragacanth frigid, of each one ounce: dried Rest-harrow Roots, Liquoris, Melone and Gromwel seeds, of each two drams: Saxifrage, Broom, Rhadish, Knee-holly, Calcitrap seeds, of each one dram: Marsh-mallow and Sparagus seeds, of each one scruple: Sugar candy two ounces: make a Pouder. Of this let him take one spoonful thrice in a month in the morning, about New moon, Full moon, and Wain, drinking after a little white Wine, or red Pease broth, Sea-holly, and Liquoris, exercising after it.*

Carolus Piso highly commends this following Pouder, which he gave with his purging Pouder before mentioned, and took away many boxes of smal stones from a President of *Lorrain.*

Take of *Marsh-mallow and Violet seeds, of each half a scruple: Gromwel seeds, and Liquoris, of each one scruple: the Jews stone, and Spunge stone, of each six grains: the pouder of Dates, Medlar, and Cherry stones, of each two scruples: Melone Seeds three drams: make a Pouder. Give one dram with unleavened bread dipt in white Wine three daies together of the New moon, and let him drink red Pease broth after it, wherein the Roots of Marsh-mallows, Fennel, Sea-holly, Rest-harrow, and Parsley, and Juniper berries bruised have been boyled, adding a little white Wine, Honey, Butter, and Juyce of Lemmons.*

This following Electuary prescribed by *Zappata*, is excellent.

Take of *the Seeds of St. Johns-wort dried, and finely poudered, three ounces: Conserve of Roses or Violets one pound: mix them into an Electuary, of which let the Patient take half an ounce every morning three hours before meat the first two weeks two daies together; and after for fifteen daies once in a week; and after that once in a month, or oftener, according as the Disease requireth.*

Conserve of Roses, is better than Violets, because it correcteth the scent of the Turpentine which comes forth of the Seeds of St. Johns wort beaten. But Violets agrees best with the Reins.

These following Lozenges are very safe, and most excellent.

Take of *the four great cold seeds, and of Liquoris, all clensed one scruple: Burnet, Bazil, Parsley seeds, and Nutmeg, of each half a dram: Aromaticum Rosatum two scruples: Sugar dissolved in Winter Cherry Water, four ounces: make Lozenges of three drams in weight. Let him take one in the morning three hours before meat, drinking after it four ounces of Rest-harrow, or Rupture-wort Water, with two ounces of white Wine.*

The Wine of Winter Cherries described in the Cure, if it be drunk somtimes, doth take away the Matter that breeds the Stone, saith *Villanovanus.*

In the use of all Diureticks observe this, They must not be used too often because they draw to the part affected; there once or twice in a month, or somtimes seldomer, is sufficient, purging before, lest the Humors of other parts should be carried to the Reins.

Turpentine may be used oftener: for *Amatus Lusitanus* in Curat. 68. Cent. 2. reports of a Monk that had the Joynt-gout, and the Stone both, and could find help by nothing; at length by the use of Turpentine he was cured within six months of them both. Every morning he swallowed the quantity of a smal Nut with Sugar. And the reason why Turpentine often used doth not hurt as other Diureticks, in my Judgment is this; Because it looseneth the Belly withal; so that those gross Humors, which by other Medicines would be carried to the Reins, are sent out by stool.

But commonly Turpentine is used seldom, as other Diureticks, either alone, or with other Medicines, thus:

Take of *Turpentine ten times washed in Saxifrage or Pellitory Water, half an ounce: With Sugar make a Bolus.* Or,

Take of *Cassia newly drawn six drams: Turpentine half an ounce: Pouder of Liquoris two drams: mix them for a Bolus.* Or,

Take *half an ounce of Turpentine, and one dram of poudered Rhubarb: mix them for a Bolus.* Or,

Take *Four ounces of Turpentine, burn it upon a hot Iron that it may pouder, and give two drams with convenient Liquor.* Or,

Take

Take *Turpentine half an ounce*: *Pouder againſt the Stone, called* Pulvis Lithontribus, *two drams*: *mix it for a Bolus.*

Zacutus Luſitanus, Obſer. 58. lib. 2. Praxis admir. doth much commend Natural Ballom for expelling ſtones, and that a man of three ſcore yeers of age that had his Water ſtopped eighteen daies with ſtones, was cured thereby. Firſt he took ſome drops of it with Oyl of ſweet Almonds, encreaſing the quantity of both till he came to half an ounce of Ballom, and three ounces of Oyl of ſweet Almonds, within ten daies he voided ſix ſtones; and afterwards he was preſerved by the ſame Medicine, by taking in a morning half an ounce of Oyl of ſweet Almonds, and ſix drops of Ballom, by which means he made a Sandy Urine, and lived long. If you want Eaſtern Ballom, you may take that of *Peru*.

The ſame *Zacutus* in the ſame Obſervation, doth commend Tobacco Water, in theſe words: *I remember* (ſaith he) *that I took away many great ſtones faſtened in the hollow of the Reins, with diſtilled green Tobacco Water. If you want that, then uſe the Decoction.*

Moſt wiſe *Varandæus*, my Maſter, commends the Waters of ſome Baths, Balervacan, or Bitumenous for Preſervatives againſt the Stone, of which we have ſeen rare effects. We add his words: *There is* (ſaith he) *no better Medicine after Purging, than the drinking of Balervacan Waters; for by the heat which comes from the Bitumen, they diſſolve groß humors and ſtones, and by their Nitrous quality they cleanſe, and by their great quantity, do not only cleanſe the Guts, but Reins; ſo that it is incredible to tel what abundance of thick Water ſome have made after it. But when we fear the Inflamation of the Guts, we ordered them to abſtain from Wine, and gave them Chicken Broth with cold Herbs and Juleps. Therefore we put fat Flegmatick men into them once a day in the morning, having firſt anointed their Reins and Liver with ſome proper Oyntment, and bound them with doubled linnen cloaths, that the Excrements might be received from the Pores opened. And if their Bowels grow hot, they may after uſe ſweet Water Baths that cool and moiſten.*

Sharp Mineral Waters, or Vitriol, are alſo good to prevent, for they do not only diſſolve the ſlimy Tartarous Matter that breeds the Stone, but correct the hot diſtemper of the Liver and Reins, and therefore in hot diſtempers theſe are beſt.

And becauſe hot Bodies are hurt by hot things, we will preſcribe more temperate; as Bean and Rupture-wort Water, and Lemmon Water diſtilled. Slice them and diſtil them in Balneo Mariæ. And for their better cooling, ſtill them with Milk.

The Conſerve of Hipps, is Diuretick and cooling, and is commended by *Crato* in this caſe alſo.

The Conſerve of Marſh-mallow and Mallow flowers, which by mollifying and moiſtening helps the ſtones to come forth.

The inſpiſſate Juyce of Purſlain made into Pills, and given one dram at a time, doth powerfully cleanſe the Reins.

The dried Flowers of Pomegranates in one dram, doth purge the Matter cauſing the Stone.

And the like Quantity of the Dryed Spunge of white Thiſtle, given in like quantity, is excellent.

Freſh Butter with as much Sugar candy taken every morning faſting, doth cleanſe the Paſſages of the Urine, and hinder the breeding of the Stone.

Bitter Almonds taken ten or twelve in a morning, do the ſame.

Filberts alſo taken before meat, are commended by *Crato*, who ſaies that he found by Experience, that many long affected with the pain of the Reins, were cured by them. Which *Amatus Luſitanus* Curat. 78. Cent. 7. wiſely confirmeth, where he thus ſaith: *A man that had the pain of his back, and piſſed often red hairs, complained of his Loyns and Guts, for which he had took many things in vain; but contrary to all hope he was cured with eating of Filberts. For one counſelled him that if he would be cured, he ſhould eat Filberts with their inward Husks before Dinner and Supper. But he conſidering the Innocency of the Medicine, eat them at meat, and after alſo: by which he was cured perfectly, and his pain never returned.* *Amatus Luſitanus* in his Notes, adds this: *That not only that man, but many others have been cured thereby. Theſe are thoſe vulgar Nuts that Avicen reckons among the Medicines that conſume the Stone. But the queſtion is, by what faculty they work? whether by the dryneſs of the inward skin? But ſome ſay that they work by their Oyly quality.*

The Chymiſts commend the Spirit of Salt, and give ſome drops thereof in a morning with Broth, or other Liquor.

Zechius commends boyled Water given warm, the quantity of ſix or ſeven ounces, once or twice in a day, before meat. For it cleanſeth the Reins, and extinguiſheth the heat, ſo that they cannot after breed ſtones.

Let

Let his Drink be thin Wine, with the Decoction of Sea-holly. This *Crato* commends. And we have ſeen excellent effects thereby.

Sowr Wine called in French, *Unies*, drunk often, doth ſo much good, that ſome have Vinyards of thoſe Grapes on purpoſe.

To correct the hot diſtemper of the Reins, is the beſt Preſervative, by ſuch things as are mentioned in the hot diſtemper of the Liver. For they help the Reins and the Liver, from whence many times they are diſtempered.

Among the reſt, Whey drunken in Summer, a whol month together, is the beſt. And ſharp Mineral and Vitriol Waters, to cool al the Bowels.

You may apply this following Epithem often to the Reins.

Take of *Lettice, Water-lilly, and Roſe Water, of each three ounces*: *Roſe Vinegar two ounces*: *Apply them very warm morning and evening.*

This following Liniment is good, eſpecially in Winter.

Take of *the Oyl of Roſes, Water Lillies, and Violets, waſhed in Vinegar and Roſe Water, of each one ounce*: *the Mucilage of Marſh-mallows drawn in Pellitory Water, ſix drams*: *Wax, a little. Make a Liniment for the Reins morning and evening.*

The extraordinary heat of the Reins, is allayed with a plate of Lead, alwaies warm.

And laſtly, Becauſe the Crudities of the Stomach do breed the Stone, you muſt have an eye to that, and ſtrengthen it with ſuch things as are preſcribed in the Chapter of the Weakneſs thereof.

Chap. 2. *Of the Stone in the Bladder.*

ALthough we ſhould ſpeak of theſe Diſeaſes of the Reins in order, yet becauſe the Stone in the Kidneys and Bladder are of the ſame Nature, and what hath been ſaid of the one, may agree with the other, we ſhal ſpeak next of the Stone in the Bladder.

The Material and Efficient Cauſe is the ſame of both: only this Difference there is; That Children are moſt ſubject to the Stone in the Bladder, and Men to that in the Kidneys. The Reaſon of which, is given by *Galen*, 6. Epid. Sect. 3. becauſe thickneſs of Urine, which Children often have by Reaſon of their gluttony, is diſſolved by their gentle heat; neither doth it ſtay in the Reins by the help of the Expulſive Faculty of the Reins, which is ſtronger in that age; but being fallen into the Bladder, there it ſtaies longer, becauſe children given to play and ſleep, piſs more ſeldom. Moreover, their Urine is not ſo ſharp, neither doth it provoke the expulſive faculty of the Bladder, while the quantity is burdenſom, and ſo the dregs remain becauſe the Paſſage is very narrow; beſides, the bladder being ſtretched by the plenty of Urine cannot ſo exactly contract it ſelf to empty out all the Urine, but ſome remains in the bottom, which is thick, and fit to breed the Stone. On the contrary, old men do often piſs forth that Matter which is in the bladder, and their paſſage is larger; but the thick humor remains in the Reins, becauſe it is clammy, and cannot be diſſolved by their weak heat, or ſtrain through by reaſon of its dryneſs. Hence *Hippocrates in Coacis*, ſaith that the Stone in the bladder is not bred after fourteen yeers of age, to three ſcore, except it was there before.

Fernelius mentioned a new Opinion of the Stone, breeding in the Bladder, ſaying, That every ſtone in the bladder, had its beginning from the Kidneys, and grows afterwards in the bladder: For when in a fit of the ſtone, it fals from the Reins, if it be great, it ſtaies in the Bladder, and by getting new Matter it encreaſeth by degrees. For he affirmeth that in grinding of ſome ſtones taken out of the Bladder, he found as it were a Kernel which fel from the Reins of another color and ſubſtance, and that he never knew any that had a ſtone in the bladder, who was not formerly vexed with pains in the Reins. But this Opinion is caſt off by divers very good Authors, who by their Experience have found the contrary, and have taken many ſtones from the bladders of children, which have been wholly of the ſame color and ſubſtance within. And common Experience teacheth us, that Children have the Stone in the Bladder, who never had pain in the Reins, which would be otherwiſe if the ſtone came firſt from the Reins. It is true, that in men many times ſtones fall from the Kidneys into the Bladder, and encreaſe by the addition of new Matter; but we deny that it is alwaies ſo, and we conſtantly affirm, that many ſtones have taken their beginning in the bladder.

The knowledg of the ſtone in the bladder is difficult, eſpecially in the beginning, when it is little; but when it is great it is evident. But we ſhall diſcover it as much as we can by Art.

The Firſt Sign is, pain in the neck of the bladder, which is worſe towards the end of piſſing, and reacheth to the end of the Yard, like that which is in difficulty of Urine from Inflamation, called *Dyſuria*, and it is ſcarcely at firſt diſtinguiſhed from it, but when other ſigns appear.

The

The Second Sign is, Itching in the Yard, which makes the Patient ſcratch it often.

The Third Sign is, Weight in the Peritonæum, or inward covering of the Guts, and all about the Pecten where the Hair groweth, with a heavy pain, when the ſtone is great.

The Fourth Sign is, When there is a great ſtone there is great ſtoppage of Urine, with pain like women in travel, and dropping of water, and often endeavoring to piſs.

The Fifth Sign is, Stoppage ſuddenly in time of piſſing, by reaſon of the ſtone falling to the Orifice of the Bladder.

The Sixth Sign is, Eaſier making Water lying upon the back, becauſe it puts the ſtone from the Orifice to the bottom of the bladder.

The Seventh Sign is, Often ſtanding of the Yard, which comes from ſtoppage of Urine, and of the Inflamation of the bladder by the ſtone rubbing againſt it.

The Eighth is, An often deſire to go to ſtool, which follows the deſire of piſſing, by reaſon of the conſent of the Sphincter Muſcles of the Anus and Bladder; for when one is provoked, the other is provoked, becauſe they have branches from the ſame Nerve.

The Ninth is, The Patient cannot reſt in a place, but ſhakes his Leggs, and if the ſtone be great he can ſcarce ſtand upright, ride, or walk in rough places; for then the mouth of the bladder is much afflicted with the ſtone.

The Tenth is, That the Patient is helped by no Remedy, but worſe commonly; for all Medicines that go through the paſſages of the Urine, either do bring new matter, and encreaſe the evil, or carry away the flegm, which being about the ſtone made it leſs offenſive, but being bare, doth grate the inward Tunicle of the bladder.

The Eleventh Sign is, When the Patient is in pain of the Reins, and after a fit uſeth to void ſtones which cauſed it, but now voideth none as formerly, it is a ſign that the ſtone cauſing the pain is ſent to the bladder, and there remains, where by degrees it encreaſeth, and cauſeth the aforelaid Symptomes. Therefore if any after ſuch pain, voids no ſtone, and after a time begins to be ſtopped from making urine, it is very probable that there is a ſtone in the bladder.

The Twelfth Sign is from *Hippocrates*, Aph. 79. Sect. 4. *They who make a ſandy Urine have a ſtone in the Bladder.* Which Aphoriſm hath troubled many Wits. *Galen* in his Commentary thereupon, ſaith, that it is manifeſtly lame, and defective, becauſe *Hippocrates* left out half of it; for whether the ſtone be in the Kidneys or Bladder alwaies the Urin is ſandy. And *Hippocrates* himſelf contradicts this Aphoriſm, *Lib. de internis Affectionibus*, where he reproveth the old Phyſitians that ſuppoſed ſand in the Urine to be the ſign of the Stone in the Bladder. *Cardanus* in his Comment upon the ſame Aphoriſm, ſaith, That he voided for thirty yeers, firſt red, then white ſand, every day in abundance without any ſuſpicion of the ſtone either of the Kidneys or Bladder; and he further ſaith, that there are ſcarce one in ten who doth not void Gravel, yet few there are that are troubled with the ſtone in the Kidneys, and fewer with that in the bladder. The Spaniards void much Gravel, and yet are not ſubject to the ſtone.

We diſtinguiſhed of ſand in the former Chapter, which may ſignifie the ſtone: But we ſaid it was an equivocal ſign. For that ſand is ſometimes ſent forth by the ſtrength of the expulſive faculty, and is not kept in the Kidneys and Bladder any while. And if this ſand did ſhew the ſtone more ſurely, yet it would never declare that of the Bladder only. And therefore that Aphoriſm, as the words are, is falſe.

Beverovitius and *Salmaſius*, have greatly contended about this Aphoriſm (both Learned men) and good to open dark Sentences) and they have written both whol Volums of the ſame. It is not our intention to ſtay long upon it, determining this one thing for an end of all Controverſies; That the Opinions of Authors, which at firſt ſeem contrary to Truth and dayly Experience, are alwaies to be taken in that ſence which is moſt conformable to Truth, although the words will not bear it, which in ſuch a caſe are to be thought to be added by ſimple fellows in the Tranſlation, or the whol Sentence to be put in by them; as *Galen* ſaith often of ſome of *Hippocrates* his Sayings, That they are thruſt in by others, when they carry not the weight and Majeſty of *Hippocrates*. And the Opinion of *Beverovitius* concerning ſand in the Urine, ſeems not to be according to the mind of *Hippocrates*, nor to be of great uſe in Practice. Firſt, it ſeems not to agree with *Hippocrates*, who in his foregoing Aphoriſms, takes ſigns from things contained in the Urine; and following his matter in hand, ſaith, That Sand in the Urine, ſignifieth the ſtone of the Bladder. But *Beverovitius* inverts the Sence, and ſaith that *Hippocrates* is to be underſtood of Sand, which formerly uſed to be voided, that if they ſubſiſt, that is, be retained in the Bladder, and be no more ſent forth, it is a ſign that the Sand ſo retained is turned to a ſtone in the bladder. This Interpretation, as I ſaid, doth agree with *Hippocrates* his Intention, and it nothing avails for Practice: for they who uſe to void gravel, have ſome time of intermiſſion, in which there is not a ſtone bred in the Bladder. Nor hath it much weight that *Beverovitius* obſerveth, That *Hippocrates* in his other Aphoriſms, where he lays down the ſigns to be taken from the things contained in the Urine, doth not uſe the word *Subſidentia*, or ſet-

ling,

ling, or falling down; but the word Excretion, or voiding. As for example, they who piſs matter or blood, with thick and branny Urine, &c. But here he uſeth the word that ſignifieth ſetling, to ſhew that he meaneth ſomthing elſe. But we bringing all things to Practice, ſay that *Hippocrates* in this Aphoriſm, could not uſe a word which ſignifieth only ſending forth, or Excretion, becauſe he ought to diſtinguiſh that ſand which ſignifieth the Stone, from that which doth not. This Sand, as we ſaid in the former Chapter, ſettles in the bottom of the Urinal; but other Sand doth only ſtick to the ſides; and therefore *Hippocrates*, that he might diſtinguiſh them, ſaid well, They whoſe ſandy matter ſettleth; for others which do not ſettle, are not a ſign of the ſtone in the bladder.

But that we may bring this Aphoriſm to Truth, and Practical uſe, we ſuppoſe that the Opinion of *Johannes Zechius*, is the beſt; who makes it a proper ſign of the ſtone of the bladder, and there is great uſe of the Aphoriſm in Phyſical Practice, when by al other Interpreters. it is made unprofitable. And that *Zechius* may be honored by them who have not his Works, we think it worth our labor to repeat his words, which are in his Book of Conſultation, 58. Conſult. *Hippocrates* (ſaith he) *Aph. 79. Sect. 4. ſaid thus, which was never underſtood yet, either by* Galen, *or any other. They whoſe Urine hath a ſandy ſettling or ſediment, have the ſtone in the bladder. Which Sentence, if we ſhould take it according to* Galen, *would be falſe, becauſe we obſerve that many men do piſs ſand all their lives (whereof I am one) without any ſuſpicion of the ſtone in the bladder. From whence I cannot but wonder at* Galen, *and all the reſt after him, that they ſhould either not underſtand ſo uſeful an Aphoriſm (which I can ſcarce beleeve) or by reaſon of its ambiguity paſs it by. The whol difficulty is in the ſignification of the word* [Sabuloſa] *in Greek called Pſammodea: Hippocrates would have nothing underſtood thereby but thick gravel mixed as it were with fat Earth like Clay or ſnot in the bottom of the Urinal; a certain ſign of a great ſtone in the bladder. But becauſe there is nothing conſtant in man, it is not to be admired that ſome that have this Diſeaſe have not this ſign; as when the ſtone is ſmal, as we obſerved in Cardinal* Paleotus. *Now the cauſe of this muddy Excrement hath been ſhewed in another place.* So far *Zechius*; but where he ſhewed the cauſe of it we could never find. But we plainly ſhewed it in the former Chapter, when we ſaid that this ſnot-like matter is the proper Excrement of the bladder diſtempered, when it cannot concoct the great quantity of blood, and ſuperfluous humors which are ſent thither, and turn them into its ſelf, but turns them into that conſiſtence like ſnot; and this evil diſpoſition of the bladder comes from the ſtone therein. Let that be peruſed, for it maketh much for the underſtanding of what hath been ſaid.

But there ſtill remaineth one difficulty, for ſome have dayly flegmatick, ſlimy matter in their Urine, and yet are free from the ſtone in the bladder. And *Cardanus* reports of an Auguſtine Monk called *Leo*, that ſhewed him often ſo much congealed flegm in the bottom of the Chamber pot as was bigger than a Gooſe Egg, and yet he had not the Stone. To this doubt we anſwer, That the ſlimy matter that comes from the bladder, is to be diſtinguiſhed from that which comes from other parts, becauſe that which comes from the bladder, is more clammy and glutinous, ſo that it ſticks faſt to the bottom of the Pot or Urinal, and cannot be ſhaken off when the Urine is powred forth; but that which is from other parts doth not ſo cleave, but comes preſently forth with the Urine; Experience hath taught me this, which hitherto no Author ever yet obſerved. This clammineſs comes from the Nature of the Bladder, which is a Membrane, and apt to produce this glewineſs, as you may ſee Glew is made of Membranous Skins of Beaſts.

This tough glutinous Matter, I ſay, comes from the evil diſpoſition of the bladder, which is cauſed by the ſtone there, and we can thus prove it beſides what hath been ſaid; Becauſe we have known a Child of twelve yeers old, that had a ſtone in the Bladder, and piſſed continually a glutinous matter that cleaved to the bottom of the Glaſs. And after the ſtone was cut forth, he voided the ſame for a month, but afterwards none at all. Which cleerly ſhews that that Matter comes from the evil diſpoſition of the Bladder, which could not preſently be cured after the cutting: but after the Bladder was cured, that matter appeared no more, which ſhews that it came from no other part but the bladder.

For a Concluſion of this, let us take notice, That whenſoever this ſlimy matter appears with all the aforeſaid conditions, there is a ſtone in the Bladder; but when it doth not appear, it doth not follow that there is no ſtone, for it often happeneth that the ſtone is ſmooth, or little, and ſo doth not hurt the bladder, and then the Urine is alwaies cleer. This is a true ſign, that there is a ſtone when it appears; but when it is abſent, it is not a ſign of no ſtone.

Nor would this Objection, or rather Cavil, become a wiſe man, becauſe from our Obſervation before mentioned, we proved that ſuch matter might be voided by Urine, and yet no ſtone in the bladder, for it was cut forth. It is ſufficient that either a Stone was lately there, which was the cauſe of this Diſeaſe; and ſo this kind of Matter ſignifieth, either a Stone there now, or lately hath been there.

The laſt ſign is by tryal with the Catheter, and putting the finger into the Anus, which operation muſt

muſt be uſed to take away all doubt; for the moſt part it doth: for ſomtimes the Stone is covered with ſlimy matter, ſo that the Cutters themſelves are deceived thereby. But the Catheter is more uncertain than the finger, by which you may not be certain of the Stones being there, but of the form and bigneſs of it.

As for the Prognoſtick of this Diſeaſe: It is alwaies painful and dangerous; painful, becauſe only very ſmal ſtones can paſs through the Neck of the Bladder.

The great ones, if like flint, cannot be diſſolved; if ſoft like Chalk, or brittle, they may be diſſolved with long uſe of powerful Medicines, which for the moſt part the Patients wil not ſtick to, and therfore they are ſeldom cured; therfore there is often cutting, which how terrible it is, dayly Experience wil declare, becauſe many die under that Operation. Hence *Hippocrates* in his Oath commands his Diſciples that they uſe it not, but leave it to men of that Profeſſion only. But in Women, the Operation is leſs dangerous, becauſe their Paſſage for Urine is wider, and it may be done without cutting, only by enlarging the part.

The way of Cure is the ſame with that of the Kidneys, firſt Evacuation of the antecedent matter, Revulſion, and hindering of the breeding of it: and let the Matter conjunct, or the Stone it ſelf, be diminiſhed, worn away, or diſſolved; for which there are good Medicines in the Chapter aforegoing.

Of which, the diſtilled Water of Onions is moſt excellent, by which continued twenty daies we ſaw a ſtone bigger than a Bean thrown out of the Bladder.

But the beſt Authors and Experience teach, That things taken at the mouth cannot diſſolve the Stone in the Bladder. Hence it is that we commonly refer them to the Cutter. But becauſe there are many ſtories of men cured by ſuch Medicines, we wil ſpeak of the chief, that every one may try them, if he pleaſe, before he go to the terrible Chyrurgion. Somtimes the Stone is ſo ſoft and newly congealed that it is not impoſſible to diſſolve it; but hard flinty ſtones cannot.

Horatius Augenius, Tom. 2. Epiſt. Med. Lib. 9. Epiſt. 8. *I* (ſaith he) *have twice ſeen the ſtone broken in the Bladder. Once by chance I had the ſame of one* Janetus *a Printer at* Rome *in cure, whom I purged that he might be cut with more ſafety. For he had tried all the Venetian and Florentine Phyſitians. But when nothing did him good, he ſent for the Prieſt to conſult about his ſoul, and reſolved to be cut. The Prieſt being a Jeſuite, and hearing his Confeſſion, and the condition of his Diſeaſe, told him a Medicine, of which he had made tryal in himſelf and others. He tryed, and was cured in the ſpace of nine daies. The Medicine was this:*

Take of *the Pouder of Hog-lice or Sows, one dram, or four ſcruples at the moſt: Aqua vitæ half an ounce: red Peaſe Broth, nine or ten ounces. Let him take it five hours before dinner.*

I cured one of eighteen yeers of age, of a hot and dry complexion, by taking away ſome part of the Aqua vitæ, and gave it him but every other day, and at other daies of Bean and Strawberry Water, of each five ounces, with ſix drops of Oyl of Vitriol, and one ounce of the Julep of Violets to cool him, thus:

Take of *the pouder of Sows prepared, one ſcruple: Aqua vitæ two ſcruples: red Peaſe Broth eight ounces. Mix them, and give it ſix hours before meat.* Thus *Augenius.*

Sennertus in his Chapter of the Stone in the Bladder, tels a famous ſtory of *William Laurenberg*, Profeſſor of *Roſtoch*, who being old, and troubled with the ſtone, was unwilling to be cut, and therfore ſought for other Remedies. Firſt he tried the famous Water againſt the Stone, which is ſo much prized by Princes, which is thus made:

Take of *Salt of white Tartar one ounce: Parſley Water one pint: Mix them, and ſtrain them with a brown Paper; and with Orange peels make it yellow. He uſed alſo the Indian Jewel, called in Spaniſh,* Igiada, *which is moſt famous for breaking the Stone; but both to no purpoſe. Therfore he deſired to make tryal of the Medicine of Sows, which* Horatius Augenius *ſaith, cured two yong men.*

In imitation of whom, after general Phyſick, and good Diet, he took of Sows one ſcruple; the Spirit of Juniper two ſcruples; red Peaſe Broth ten ounces: which he took in the morning; but the firſt and ſecond time he found a ſtraightneſs in his Breaſt, and a fainting, ſo that he was conſtrained to take one dram of Treacle with the Potion; and ſo uſed it fifteen daies: but all this while he voided no gravel. And then he added other things, and made it thus:

Take of *prepared Sows two ounces: a Hares and Goats Blood prepared, wild Roſe Flowers, and purple Violet ſeeds, of each one ounce: Species Lithontribi, two ſcruples: mix them for an Antidote, of which take two ſcruples: the Diuretick Decoction ten ounces: the Spirit of Juniper two ſcruples.*

Which Medicine after he had taken it the ſecond time at five a clock in the morning, four hours after he felt a great pain under the *Os Pubis*, about the Neck of the Bladder: A little after he made a little Water, and therewith ſome thin red things like ſcales of fiſhes; which though they ſeemed to be ſlimy, yet when they were touched turned to ſand. So that it plainly appeared that they were the outſide of the Stone.

By the continuance of this Medicine, every fourth or fifth day he voided the like ſcales, and ſometimes bigger pieces, eſpecially when he uſed a ſweet bath. But when the neck of the bladder was wounded by the fragments and the ſtone, he uſed Medicines to aſſwage pain; and by the uſe of theſe Medicines, was in ſeventeen months cured. The Decoction was.

Take of *Liquoris four ſcruples*: *Roots of Marſh-mallows, Couch-graſs, Reſt-harrow, of each half an ounce*: *Winter Cherries twenty*: *red Peaſe ſix ounces*: *Raiſons one ounce*: *the four great cold Seeds, of each one ſcruple*: *Barley two handfuls. Boyl them in Winter Cherry Water, Reſt-harrow, Strawberry, and Bean Flower Water, of each one pint and an half*: *to the ſtraining add of the Syrup of Marſh-mallows four ounces.*

The Sows are thus prepared:

Take of *live Sows two pound*; *waſh them in Reſt-harrow Water*: *then drown them in Spaniſh Wine*; *then powr the Wine out, and put them in Glaſſes, the more Glaſſes the better, becauſe then they will dry better*: *Put theſe Glaſſes well ſtopt into the Oven when the Bread is drawn, that they may dry gently till they will pouder*: *then put ſome Spaniſh Wine upon this Pouder, as much as it will take in, and dry it again*; *do ſo thrice*: *and fourthly waſh it with this Liquor*:

Take of *Straw-berry Water three ounces*: *Spirit of Vitriol half a dram*: *mix them. Then dry it, and make it fine, and keep it in a Glaſs for your uſe.*

Beſides the aforeſaid, the uſe of the diſtilled Water of Goats blood, or of the Urin of a Goat newly ſlain, which was formerly mentioned in the Stone of the Kidneys.

If the Stone cannot be broken with Medicines, neceſſity requireth the manual operation, though it be dangerous, leſt the Patient die with lingering pain. This requires a skilful and wel exercited Artiſt, and that it may have good ſucceſs, as we have obſerved.

It is the Duty of the Phyſitian, before the operation to prepare the body by bleeding, purging, and diet, as the ſtate of the buſineſs requireth. And obſerve, that the taking away of a ſtone from a Woman hath no danger, becauſe it is done only by enlarging the Paſſage of the Urine, which in them is very ſhort.

If the Patient fear cutting, or want a good Chyrurgion, he may uſe aſſwaging Medicines leaſt the Stone ſhould eut and ulcerate the neck of the bladder, ſuch as are preſcribed for heat of Urine.

But if a ſtone faſtened in the neck of the bladder ſtop the Urine, it muſt be ſhaken back with lying upon the back with the leg up, and the body ſhaked; and then by a good fomentation or bath, and with a Catheter, let the ſtone be ſent back into the bladder.

Chap. 3. *Of the Inflamation of the Reins and Bladder.*

BEcauſe the Inflamation of the Reins and Bladder are cured with the ſame Medicines, therefore we will put them in the ſame Chapter, although the Signs are different, as ſhall be ſhewed.

This Inflamation is a Tumor of thoſe Parts, from the flowing of Blood or Choller unto them.

This is not very ordinary, becauſe the ſubſtance of thoſe parts is ſolid and thick; but ſomtimes it happeneth, becauſe the Kidneys are fleſhy and apt to receive blood: but the Bladder, though it be without blood, and ſpermatick, becauſe it receives blood for its Nouriſhment through the ſmal Veins, is without queſtion ſubject to Inflamation by too much blood; as other Membranes of the Brain, or Meninges, the Pleura, Mediaſtinum, and the like.

We ſaid that theſe Inflamations come from Blood or Choller, as when Flegm or Melancholly in the Blood make the parts thicker, becauſe they cannot pierce into their thick ſubſtance.

The Cauſes of this Diſeaſe, are either from things Natural, not Natural, or Preternatural.

From Natural things, when there is a Natural Infirmity of thoſe parts from the Parents, or a great looſneſs of them, a great heat originally in them, by which they draw plenty of Humors: In Youth theſe conduce much to an Inflamation.

From things not Natural, as much Venery, which weakeneth thoſe parts, and draws much blood or other Humors to them; Gluttony, Drunkenneſs, and eating of Salt and Spiced Meats; great Paſſions of the Mind, lying upon the back in a ſoft bed, great Exerciſe, ſtoppage of ſome great Evacuations, as of the Months and Hemorrhoids, or uſual bleeding at the Noſe, thoſe things which cauſe repletion and evil concoction, and drive the humors to the inward bowels.

From Preternatural things, as a ſtroak or wound upon the Reins, or about the Bladder; a preſſing or bruiſe of thoſe parts; conſtant Feavers, foulneſs of the Veſſels, or other parts that purge themſelves

ſelves by Urine, as in a Pleuriſie, Empyema or impoſthume in the ſide, Obſtruction of the Spleen, breaking of the Meſentery, and the like. And laſtly, Diſeaſes of thoſe parts do cauſe Inflamation, as the ſtone, great pain, exulceration, heat of Urine, and ſtoppage thereof, or the like.

The Signs of the inflamation of the Reins, are a weighty pain in the Reins, ſomtimes beating, if the place be affected where the Arteries are: And this pain extendeth to the parts adjacent, ſo that the Patient can neither lift himſelf up, nor ſtand upon his feet, and ſcarce turn himſelf, and neither lie upon his ſide, nor his Belly, becauſe then the part inflamed will hang down; therefore he lies alwaies upon his back, and if he either neeze, or otherwiſe move his Body, the pain is encreaſed. He hath a numbneſs or pain in the Leg on the ſame ſide, by reaſon of the Nerve that goes from thence to it. He hath difficulty of piſſing by reaſon of the heat which is ſent to the Urine, and filth mixed with it coming from the inflamed part. The Urine is firſt thin and yellow but after red and thick; he hath a conſtant ſharp Feaver, which is attended often with watchings, dotings, and other great Symptomes; alſo loathing and vomiting, by which he voids Choller, Flegm, and other Humors.

Somtimes the Gut Colon is inflamed, and if it be that part which is neer the Liver, it brings the like Symptomes: but here is the difference; In the Inflamation of the Reins, the pain reacheth to the ſhort Ribs, the Back, and Bladder; but that of the Colon tends more to the Belly, and there is a greater change of Excrements of the Belly, than in the Inflamation of the Kidneys.

But in the Inflamation of the Kidneys, there is a pain about the *Pubis* and *Perinæum*, in which there is heat, and ſomtimes redneſs. There is conſtant heat of Urine, but that is ſtopped when the part ſwelleth, and ſtoppeth the paſſage.

The ſtraight Gut ſuffers by reaſon of its neerneſs; hence it is that there is often deſire to go to ſtool with burning, ſomtimes the belly is bound, when the Gut is ſtopped by the inflamed Bladder. There are alſo other common Symptomes mentioned in the Inflamation of the Reins, as a Feaver, watching, doting, thirſt, and the like.

There can be no good Prognoſtick in this Diſeaſe: For the inward Inflamation of the noble inward parts, do threaten continual danger of death. It is moſt deadly when a Convulſion or dotage followeth, or the like great Symptome: and if there be a cold ſweat, death is at hand.

In the Inflamation of the Reins, if the Hemorrhoids follow, it is good.

If the Inflamation Suppurate, and the Impoſthume break, and go into the paſſages of the Urine, there is hope; but if it go by the Emulgent Veins into the Liver, and labor to get way through the Guts, it is dangerous.

A ſmal Inflamation of the Bladder with a Sediment in the Urine that is white and equal, promiſeth health.

An Inflamation of the bladder, is ſomtimes cured by an Eryſipelas, or Chollerick Humor ariſing in the Skin ſuddenly, and by making much Urine.

The Cure of both Inflamations of the Reins and Bladder, is made by revelling, deriving, cooling, and moderately repelling, by Anodines, Reſolvers or Ripeners, if need be, and the like: whoſe Matter and way of uſing, ſhall be as followeth:

And firſt, Phlebotomy is very neceſſary in the Liver Vein, on the ſame ſide the pain is, twice, thrice, or four times, or oftener, if the ſtrength will bear it, til the defluxion ceaſeth, which you may know by the abating of the pain. But in the Inflamation of the bladder, the right ſide is to be choſen by reaſon of the Liver, from whence, as from a Fountain, the blood floweth to the part.

After much blood is taken away, and revulſion is made by the upper Vein, you muſt alſo open the inferior for derivation ſake, in the Ham or Ancle; as alſo the Hemorrhoids are to be opened, eſpecially if they be ſwelled.

Cupping-glaſſes with Scarrification, are alſo good for Revulſion, both above and beneath, and Fricſtions with ſtrong Ligatures of the extream parts, to draw the humors outward.

After, and before blood-letting, give a mollifying and cooling Clyſter that is a little looſening, and let it be of a ſmal quantity, leſt it oppreſs the Tumor, thus made:

Take of *Marſh-mallow Roots one ounce*: *Mallows, Violets, Lettice, of each one handful*: *ſweet Prunes four pair*: *Barley and Violet Leaves, of each one pugil*: *make a Decoction to eight or ten ounces. In the ſtraining diſſolve of Caſſia, or Diaprunes ſimple, one ounce*: *Oyl of Violets four ounces*: *two Yolks of Eggs*: *Make a Clyſter.*

Allay the heat of the blood with Juleps and Emulſions made thus:

Take of *Endive, Lettice, and Purſlain Water, of each four ounces*: *Syrup of Pomegranates two ounces*: *Syrup of Water Lillies one ounce. Make a Julep for three draughts, morning and evening.* Or,

Take of *Sorrel Roots two ounces*; *Mallowes, Plantane, Purſlain, and Endive, of each one handful*: *the tops of white Poppies half a handful*: *Annis and Lettice ſeed, of each one dram*: *Borrage, Violets, and Water-lilly Flowers, of each one pugil*: *boyl them to a pint and an half*: *then add four ounces of the juyce of Pomegranates.* Or,

Take of ſweet *Almonds blanched one ounce: freſh Pine-nuts half an ounce: Lettice, Sorrel, Purſlain, and Poppy ſeeds, of each three drams: beat them according to art, powring on by degrees, of Barley, Lettice, and Purſlain Water, one pint and an half. Diſſolve in the ſtraining, Sugar of Roſes one ounce. Make an Emulſion for three Doſes, in which we leave out the great cold Seeds, becauſe being Diuretick they may draw ſomthing to thoſe parts, eſpecially in the time of the defluxion, but in the declination they may be uſeful. You may profitably add to the Emulſion, the Syrup of Poppies to ſtop the flux more violently.*

Alſo the parts inflamed may be cooled by Clyſters, made of the Decoction of the Julep aforeſaid, with Oyl of Roſes or Violets two ounces.

In the beginning of theſe Inflamations, purging is not proper; for it is to be feared leſt the Humors being moved, ſhould flow to the parts affected; ſo that if there then be a great flux of the Belly, it is to be ſtopped for that cauſe. But when the Inflamation is a little allayed, and the diſeaſe declineth, a Purge made of gentle things may be good, as of Manna, Caſſia, Rhubarb, Tamarinds, Diaprunes ſimple, Catholicon and Syrup of Roſes with a Decoction of Lettice, Purſlain, and other cooling things preſcribed in the Juleps. Or you may make a Bolus of ſome of them.

Outwardly, All the time of the Diſeaſe, you muſt apply cooling things that gently repel, as moiſt Epithems of the Water and Juyce of Plantane, Sorrel, Endive, Nightſhade, Roſes, with a little Vinegar, red Sanders, and Camphire. Liniments alſo of Oyl of Roſes and Olives, Violets, Cerat of Sanders, white Oyntment, or Populeon alone, or mixed with a little Vinegar, which you muſt apply to the parts aforeſaid, every hour cold.

Or you may make a Liniment of an Egg wel beaten, with a little Oyl and Roſe Vinegar.

Or you may make that which is excellent, of Oyl of Roſes, with Vinegar and Juyce of Knot-graſs, or Purſlain; to which add, if you pleaſe, a new Yolk of an Egg. Let theſe be applied cold upon a Cloth.

If the pain be very violent, it is not amiſs in theſe Epithems and Liniments, to mix a little Opium or Saffron.

Alſo you may make a Cataplaſm of Barley Meal, with Juyce of Endive, Purſlain, and Nightſhade, with Oyl of Roſes and Populeon. But this muſt be often changed leſt it grow hot.

Three things are to be diligently obſerved:

Firſt, That you uſe not Coolers too long, leſt the Matter be kept from breathing forth, and the Tumor grow hard or ſcirrhus.

Secondly, In the Inflamation of the Bladder, you muſt uſe leſs aſtringents and coolers, leſt you ſtop the Urine, which Symptome alone, is very uſual and dangerous in this cafe.

Thirdly, Cataplaſms in the Inflamation of the Bladder, are leſs neceſſary than Oyntments and Liniments, becauſe they burden the part, ſo that it is more hard to dilate it ſelf.

After you have uſed Coolers a ſhort ſpace, and often bleeding, when the defluxion is ſomwhat ſtopped, you muſt uſe Softeners and Diſſolvers; ſuch are, Fomentations of the Decoction of Marſh-mallow Roots, Mallows, Violets, Pellitory, Lin-ſeed, Fenugreek, Mallows, Cotton-weed, with Melilot, Chamomel, Roſemary flowers, and Roſe Leaves to ſtrengthen the part.

Then apply a Liniment of Oyl of Lillies, with a little Oyl of Chamomel.

Among the Diſſolvers and Anodines together, there is none better than the Cataplaſm made of Crums of Bread, made thus:

Take of white Bread Crums one pound; boyl it in Goats Milk to a Pultiß: then add three Yolks of Eggs; four ounces of Oyl of Roſes: half a ſcruple of Saffron: make a Cataplaſm, change it often. You may add a little Opium and Campbire if the pain be very great.

In the Inflamation of the Bladder, if you fear a Gangrene, you may make a ſtrengthening Cataplaſm of Bean Meal, and Orobus Meal, or Lupines boyled in Wine.

When the greateſt part of the Inflamation is abated, then you muſt uſe Decoctions and Liniments which do only diſſolve, that the reliques may be conſumed.

In the whol time of the Cure, you muſt have a ſpecial care of great Symptomes, as the Feaver, pain, watching, ſtoppage of Urine, and belly; of the ſtomach and other parts.

And as for the Feaver, pain, and watchings, it is moſt certain that the things mentioned to evacuate and alter, do much for the mitigation of them. But to them you may add Epithems, Liniments, and Roſe Vinegar, ſuch as uſe to be applied to the Region of the Liver, Heart, and Brain; and in time of neceſſity, Narcoticks both by mouth and Clyſter.

There are ſpecial Anodine Suppoſitories to take away the pain of the Bladder, or knots, made with Yolks of Eggs, and a little Opium, and juyce of Henbane, or the like.

If the Strangury or ſtoppage of Urine follow this Inflamation, you muſt cure them with Medicines taken from their proper Chapters.

If the Inflamation of the Reins cannot be cured by what hath been preſcribed, but it tendeth to ſuppuration, which you may know by the encreaſe of the feaver, pain, and other Symptomes; as al-

ſo by trembling and vomiting, by greater weight about the part, eſpecially when the Patient lieth on his ſound ſide; you muſt help Nature with Cataplaſms of Roots and mollifying Herbs, Line-ſeed, Chamomel flowers: To which being boyled and beaten, you muſt add Meal, Butter, Greaſe, or Oyls of the ſame vertues With which, if the Impoſthume break not preſently, and come forth by Urine, the Matter wil get into the Cavity of the Abdomen, whence wil proceed either ſudden death, or a Hectick Feaver. Sometimes the Tumor appears outwardly, and then you muſt open it either with a Potential Cautery, or an Inciſion Knife.

Sometimes thoſe Tumors grow hard, and ſcirrhus, when the Feaver is gone, and the pain remains with a greater ſence of weight, and a kind of numbneſs of the ſubject parts: And this is commonly incurable, and brings an evil habit, or a Dropſie. Yet you may try with mollifying, cutting, and digeſting Medicines, ſuch as were mentioned in the Scirrhus of the Liver.

Chap. 4. *Of Piſſing of Blood.*

BLood may come from divers parts to the paſſages of the Urine, and be mixed with it, and make it look like blood: but becauſe this happeneth but ſeldom, and we here treat only of the Diſeaſes of the Reins and Bladder, we ſhal ſpeak only of that bloody Urine which is made ſo from the defect of the Reins and Bladder. Blood flows from theſe parts, as from al the reſt (as we ſaid in Hæmorrhagy, Hæmoptyſis, vomiting of blood, and Hæmorrhoids) either by Anaſtomoſis, or opening of the mouths of the Veins, by Rixis, or Rupture, by Diabroſis or Corroſion, and ſeldom by Diapedeſis, or Rarefaction.

The uſual cauſes are much or ſharp blood, or a ſtone faſtened in the Reins: the Veins are often broken with plenty of blood; but Corroſion, or Anaſtomoſis, or opening comes from ſharpneſs: alſo corroſion or tearing may come from the ſtone, when being fixed in the Reins or Kidneys through violent riding, or other exerciſe, it is moved ſo that it hurts the parts with its roughneſs.

Alſo other cauſes may break the Veſſels beſides repletion, as a fal or ſtroak, lifting, carrying, vehement motion, and the like.

That blood which is brought forth by Urine from Plethory, is not alwaies a Diſeaſe or Symptome, but ſometimes for the good of the Patient, when Nature lates that which is burdenſom unto her by that means, as *Aretæus* reports that ſome piſs blood at ſeveral times, and when they do not, they have the Head-ach, miſts before their Eyes, and giddineſs.

Alſo the Bladder may bleed if it be wounded by a ſtone, or corroded by a ſharp humor; but it is but little, becauſe it is membranous, and without blood; but if the Sphincter Muſcle be hurt, or the paſſage of the Yard, there wil be much blood, as in extraordinary Venery is ſeen often, eſpecially when the *Proſtates* are inflamed by a Gonorrhœa, or running of the Reins.

The Signs of this Diſeaſe are from the Kind of it, from the Part affected, and from the Cauſe.

The Kind of this Diſeaſe is apparent to the Sences, for it is eaſie to know when blood is mixed with Urine, for it is like the waſhings of fleſh, with ſmal clodders at the bottom; ſometimes the Urine is like a Lye, when it ſtaies too long in the Bladder, by which means it grows black.

The place of the pain ſhews the part affected, for if it be in the Loyns, it ſignifies that the Kidneys are affected; but if it be in the belly below the Navel, the bladder is the part ſuffering. Moreover, if the blood comes from the Reins, it is mixed perfectly with the Urine; but if from the bladder, it is not mixed. *Hippocrates* ſheweth this Sign in two Aphoriſms, namely, in Aph. 78. Sect. 4. *They who ſuddenly piſs blood without force, have a Vein broken in their Reins*; and Aph. 80. of the ſame Section; *If men piſs blood, or there be clots or drops in the Urine, and pain in the lower part of the Belly, the Peſſen, or Perinæum, theſe have their diſeaſe from the Bladder.*

If it come from the ſtone, the ſigns thereof which are mentioned in its proper Chapter, wil appear; if they do not, you muſt conclude that it comes from too much blood or ſharpneſs thereof. The abundance of blood wil be known by the ſigns of repletion, and ſharpneſs by the ſigns of Choller or Melancholly predominating; alſo ſalt flegm in the Urine wil make a great ſtoppage of Urine, and piſſing of blood; this happeneth often in old men that are very apt to be troubled with ſalt flegm. And the piſſing of blood from ſharp humors, is diſtinguiſhed from that in the ſtone, that in which there were firſt pains of the Reins, and voiding of ſtones; but not in the other whoſe Urine is cleer, with no ſtrange things therein, And the Diſeaſe proceeds not only from immoderate Exerciſe, which is ordinary to both cauſes, but alſo from the paſſions of the mind, when it comes from ſharp humors which are much ſtired up by paſſions; ſo that they who are ſubject to this Diſeaſe after Anger and Sadneſs, or great diſturbance of the mind, uſe commonly to piſs blood.

As for the Prognoſtick. A plentiful and often piſſing of blood is very dangerous; for it wil bring either a Conſumption or a Dropſie: And if it continue long, it may cauſe an Ulcer in that part from

whence

whence the blood floweth; if much blood flow at one time, it wil cauſe a great ſtoppage of Urine in the Bladder, or ſome other evil Symptomes, as it encreaſeth therein, and grows evil qualified.

The Cure of this Diſeaſe is divers, according to the variety of the cauſe.

And firſt, if it come from blood abounding, or from ſharpneſs, it muſt be firſt cured with Phlebotomy on the ſame ſide, often and little for the better revulſion: And by Cupping, Friction, and Ligatures in the upper parts; and if blood flow violently, Cupping-glaſſes muſt be applied to the Hypochondria.

For derivation, let the Vein of the Ancle be opened, and the Hemorrhoids.

When watery Chollerick Humors cauſe it, let them be purged with Medicines mentioned in ſpitting of blood, often repeated at diſtance. To which alſo you may add theſe following, at your diſcretion.

Take of *the Pouder of torrefied Rhubarb one dram*: *prepared Coral half a ſcruple*: *Goats Whey, or Plantane Water three ounces. Make a Potion.*

Take of *Caſſia newly drawn half an ounce*: *the Pulp of Tamarinds ſix drams*: *Eaſtern Bole-armenick half a ſcruple. With Sugar make a Bolus.*

After due Evacuations and Revulſions, or at that time, if need require, you may uſe things to ſtop blood, and knit the Veins. And theſe are not preſently to be uſed at the firſt, leſt being ſtopped too ſuddenly it ſhould grow cloddy in ſome part. For this purpoſe the Juyce of Plantane newly drawn, is much commended, given four or five ounces in a morning and evening, which is good for any kind of bleeding. But if you fear it will cool the Stomach too much, you may boyl it a little with Sugar.

Sheeps Milk is much commended by *Foreſtus*, Lib. 24. Obſerv. 13. *Often* (ſaith he) *I have cured piſſing of blood with only Sheeps Milk ſix ounces, and one dram of Bole-armenick.* The ſame is an Experience of *Gatinaria*; who alſo commands that none do ſleep preſently, or exerciſe after it. Alſo *Hollerius* and *Duretus*, from *Avicen* and *Hippocrates*, commend the ſame.

Alſo Decoctions of Knot-graſs, Horſtail, Purſlain, and Bramble tops, are good for this, adding the third part of the Juyce of ſharp Pomegranates or Quinces.

Or to allay the heat of the Blood, let him take the Apozeme following many times, morning and evening.

Take of *Lettice, Purſlain, Plantane, and Comphry, of each one handful*: *all the cold ſeeds, of each one dram*: *Jujubes three pair*: *Liquoris half an ounce*: *Water-lillies, Violets, and Roſes, of each one pugil*: *boyl them to a pint and an half. In the ſtraining diſſolve of Gum Tragauth one dram and an half*: *Syrup of Violets and dried Roſes, of each one ounce and an half*: *Lapis prunellæ half an ounce*: *the Troches of Winter-cherries without Opium, half a dram. Make a Julep for four Doſes.*

To thicken and ſtop the blood more, put one ounce of Syrup of Poppies thereto.

Alſo you may give the Pouders that ſtop blood, as of red Coral, Blood-ſtone, Bole-armenick, ſealed Earth, either with the Apozeme, or with Roſe or Plantane Water.

If the Diſeaſe continue, give this Opiate:

Take of *Conſerve of Roſes, and Comphry Roots, of each two ounces*: *Sealed Earth, Bole-armenick, Sanguis Draconis, red Coral, Blood-ſtone, and Troches of Amber, of each one dram*: *Hypocyſtis, or Conſerve of Sloes, Kermes berries, and Plantane ſeeds, of each one ſcruple*: *with Syrup of Poppies and Myrtles, of each equal parts*: *make an Opiate, of which let him take the bigneß of a Cheſnut morning and evening, drinking after a little Plantane Water.*

If it yet continue, it is good to give at diſtance the Decoction of Myrobalans in Whey, or the like.

Hollerius affirms, and *Duretus*, that the Troches of *Gordonius* are the beſt for it.

Chriſtopher Vega commends the Troches of Amber given with Plantane Water, and ſaith that he cured this Diſeaſe with giving them only once at night.

For ordinary Drink, give the Infuſion of Maſtich wood in Wine, made thus:

Take of *ſliced Maſtich wood one ounce*: *ſpring Water four ounces*: *Infuſe them in Balneo Mariæ very warm in a cloſe Veſſel. Keep the ſtraining for your uſe.*

But becauſe clods of blood are often retained in the bladder, which beget grievous Symptomes, give warm Water and Vinegar, or Mallow Water and ſharp Vinegar warm. Let the Vinegar be ſo little that it is ſcarce taſted.

Apply Topicks to the Loyns that cool and aſtringe.

Take of *Snakeweed and Comphry Roots, of each one ounce*: *Plantane, Purſlain, Horſ-tail, Knot-graß, and Shepheards-purſe, of each one handful*: *Pomegranate peels half an ounce*: *Sumach, and Myrtle berries, and Hypocyſtis, of each two drams*: *Acron Cups, red and yellow Sanders, of each one dram*: *red Roſes three pugils*: *boyl them in Smiths Water, and a little Vinegar. With the ſtraining, let the Reins be fomented hot.*

Of

Of the ſame Decoction you may make a Bath to ſit in, adding more ſimples.

Take of *Unguentum Comitiſſæ, and refrigerans* Galeni, *of each one ounce and an half: waſh it with Oxycrate, and anoint the Loyns therewith.* Or to bind more,

Take of *the Juyce of Plantane and Blood-wort, of each two ounces: Vinegar half an ounce: Oyl Olive ſix ounces: boyl them till the Juyces be conſumed: then add of Sanguis Draconis, Maſtich, and Pomegranate peels, of each two drams: Camphire half a dram: Unguentum Comitiſſæ four drams: Wax as much as will make a Liniment: put a little Vinegar to it when you uſe it.*

Alſo a Plate of Lead ful of holes worn about the Reins, is good.

You muſt guard the Liver when it comes from ſharp Humors, with Epithems, and Oyntments.

When it comes from the Stone and Gravel; after Purging, Revulſion, and things that allay ſharpneſs, mentioned; you muſt uſe thoſe things that may gently cleanſe, as theſe that follow:

Take of *Pills of Turpentine, with Rhubarb one ounce: give half a dram in a morning, with two ſpoonfuls of Syrup of Scurvy-graſs every other day.*

But when he takes them not, give this Pouder and Confection following:

Take of *Liquoris two drams: the four cold Seeds, of each one dram: Purſlain and Lettice ſeed, of each half a dram: the Troches of Amber and burnt Harts-horn prepared, of each one ſcruple: Sugar as much as all the reſt; make a fine Pouder: give one dram with Mallows Water in which Quince ſeeds have been infuſed.*

Take of *blanched Almonds, and Pine ſeeds cleanſed, of each half a dram: Marſh-mallow ſeeds, and Winter Cherries, of each one ſcruple: Lettice and white Poppy ſeeds, of each half a ſcruple: Starch and Tragacanth, of each half a dram: Liquoris two drams: Sugar ſix ounces: With Pellitory Water make a Confection in Morſels. Take it morning and evening half an ounce.*

Stronger Diureticks are not convenient, for they wil provoke the flux.

And laſtly, Vitriol Waters are good to ſtop blood, cool the Reins, and expel ſtones.

Chap. 5. *Of the Ulcer of the Reins and Bladder.*

THe Ulcer of the Reins and Bladder, comes of three Cauſes; from an Impoſthume broken after Suppuration; from the ſharpneſs of Humors, ſuch as cauſeth piſſing of blood, which being violent and continual, doth ulcerate the parts, or from a ſharp ſtone that corrodeth them; the laſt is moſt uſual, the former ſeldom.

Among the Signs, the chief is voiding of Matter with Urine, which laſting long, doth ſhew that there is an Ulcer certainly in the Ureters. But whether the Reins, or the Bladder be affected, is known by the place of pain, whether it be in the Loyns, or neer the Privities. Moreover, If Matter come from the Reins, it is better concocted, white, thin, and not ſtinking, becauſe the body of the Kidneys being fleſhy doth better concoct; beſides, the Matter is more abundant, and more mixed with the Urine, which is voided like Milk, till after long ſtanding it ſettle to the bottom. That Matter which comes from the Bladder, is little, and not much mixed with the Urine, not ſo wel concocted, but crude, of divers colors, and ſtinking; for that part being without blood, and having little heat, cannot concoct ſufficiently. But often pure Matter is voided without Urine, from the neck of the Bladder, and then there is a continual difficulty of Urine, and pain in that part, which is not in an Ulcer of the Reins but by fits.

When the Ulcer is in the Reins, ſomtimes much Blood is voided, which is hard to be ſtopped, and ſomtimes pieces of fleſh and matter, or blood, ſomtimes ſo big as they hardly paſs, and cauſe pain; but from the bladder come ſcales, or skins, or bran.

And from an old Ulcer of the Bladder that is callous or hard, there flows that ſnotty flegm which we ſpake of in the ſtone of the Bladder.

As for the Prognoſtick: All inward Ulcers are dangerous, but theſe moſt, becauſe of the conſtant flux of Humors to theſe parts; for although the ſerous humor hath a cleanſing quality; yet here being mixed with other qualities, it doth not as in its Natural condition; and if evil, ſalt, and ſharp humors are mixed therewith, they will make and nouriſh an Ulcer.

New Ulcers of the Reins and Bladder are curable, old not.

They are incurable in old men, ſomtimes incurable in yong men, with much difficulty.

Ulcers that come from the Stone, and are maintained by it, cannot be cured before it be taken out.

The pain and Symptomes which accompany the aforeſaid Ulcers, cauſe watchings, and conſume the Body.

The

The Cure is by clenſing drying, and heating, as al other. For this purpoſe uſe theſe following.

Firſt, If there be a repletion, or inflamation in the part affected, let blood, firſt in the Arm, then in the Hand.

Then purge often, to take away the vitious humors that flow to the part affected, but with gentle things, as Caſſia, Manna, Syrup of Roſes, Agarick, Rhubarb, made into a Bolus; becauſe in a moiſt form being drunk, they quickly go to the Ureters, and encreaſe pain.

You may give this Opiate following:

Take of *Polypody of the Oak, and Liquoris, of each half an ounce: the four great cold ſeeds, of each one dram: Borrage and Violet flowers, of each half a pugil: Jujubes ſix pair, Damask Prunes three pair: ſmal Raiſons half an ounce: Senna one ounce and an half: Infuſe them all night in Barley Water; then boyl and ſtrain them: then diſſolve of Manna one ounce and an half; Caſſia three ounces: boyl them to an Opiate, adding in the end half an ounce of Rhubarb in pouder. Give one ounce at a time, once in a week, two hours before meat.* Or,

Take of *Caſſia two ounces: Manna one ounce and an half: the Mucilage of Fleabane ſeeds ſix drams: the four great cold ſeeds, of each one dram: the fuyce of Liquoris two drams: With Syrup of Roſes ſolutive make an Opiate.*

Theſe Opiates wil be better if you put Mercurius dulcis to them, becauſe Mercury doth cleanſe and heal al Ulcers both internal and external.

Turpentine is purging, and excellent in this Diſeaſe, becauſe it clenſeth the Ulcer. And you muſt give half an ounce thereof waſhed at once, with Pouder of Liquoris. But it is chiefly good when the Urine is thick.

Avicen commends Vomiting for this Diſeaſe, *Cap. de Ulcer. Renum, A Vomit* (ſaith he) *is the beſt way to cure an Ulcer in the Reins, becauſe it clenſeth and emptieth, and draweth the Humors from the part.* But *Ætius* in his Chapter *de ſuppuratis Renibus*; *If* (ſaith he) *any man will take a ſtrong Vomit every month, he will happily cure the Ulcer of the Reins, or any other evil that ariſeth from them.* Many Modern Phyſitians follow theſe; ſome gave warm Oyl and Water one hour before meat: which only Medicine being often repeated hath cured this Diſeaſe, as they ſay. But *Rondeletius* wil have them vomit after meat, becauſe then men vomit moſt eaſily; and he gives warm Water and Oyl, and anoints the Stomach with Oyl of Lillies. But you muſt never give a Vomit, but to them that are eaſie to vomit; for otherwiſe it would Inflame the Ulcer.

After due Evacuations and Revulſions, you muſt uſe Clenſers. The chief is, Whey taken every morning in abundance; or thin Hydromel, ſix or eight ounces in a morning in ordinary drink, or the Decoction of Barley and Liquoris with Sugar, and give Water and Sugar for ordinary Drink. You may boyl in Hydromel, if you fear heat, the cold Seeds, Liquoris, and Mallows. Aſſes Milk doth not only clenſe with its Wheyie part, but heal with its cheezy part, but you muſt not give it in a Feaver, or you may make this following Decoction to clenſe and eaſe pain.

Take of *Marſh-mallow Roots half an ounce: Plantane, Agrimony, Maiden-hair, and Mallows, of each one handful: Mallows and Melone Seeds with their Husks beaten, of each half an ounce: Winter Cherries ſix drams: ſcraped Liquoris one ounce: Barley one pugil: boyl them to two pints. Diſſolve in the ſtraining three ounces of Honey, and two ounces of Sugar candy: make a Julep. Take eight ounces every morning for ten daies.*

Thoſe Medicines you give for the Reins or Womb, muſt be given in great quantities leaſt they loſe their vertue before they come there.

Inſtead of them al, you may uſe Mineral Waters of Allum and Iron, by the conſtant uſe thereof the heat is corrected, and the Ulcer mundified and healed.

Some commend the Decoction of China, Sarſa, or Saſſaphras, or of Guajacum given thirty daies or more together, with a ſecond Decoction thereof for ordinary Drink, and a thin drying Diet; and leaſt the Bowels ſhould thereby be too much inflamed, they give cool Broths at night, and anoint the Reins with cold Oyntments. And this courſe is taken to dry up the matter, to purge and clenſe, eſpecially in them that are flegmatick, or have the French Pox, and have neither Feaver, nor Flux of Blood.

But in any caſe you may uſe with more ſafety this following:

Take of *Sarſaparilla three ounces: Shavings of Maſtich Tree two ounces: Saſſaphras one ounce: Shavings of Ivory and Harts-horn, of each ſix drams: Jujubes and Sebeſtens, of each half an ounce: Lignum Nephriticum four ounces: Barley two ounces. Infuſe them twelve hours in five pints of ſpring Water: boyl them to three pints, for ſix draughts, to be taken twice in a day; aromatize them with two drams of Cinnamon.*

After the uſe of Clenſers, when you ſee by the decreaſe of the quantity of Matter in the Urine, that the Ulcer is clenſed, as when it is white, and even, and not filthy, give drying, aſtringing, glutinating, and heating things; as theſe Troches following:

Take

Take of *Bole-armenick, ſealed Earth, and red Coral, of each three drams: Gum Arabick and Tragacanth, of each half an ounce: with Agrimony Water make Troches of two drams apiece. Let him take one every morning with boyled Milk, or the Decoction of Comphry.*

The Troches of *Gordonius* are beſt of all, becauſe they aſſwage pain and heat. Their Doſe is two or three drams, with Hydromel, or Barley Water, when you wil clenſe more; or with Goats or Sheeps Milk, when you wil glutinate more.

For the ſame, uſe this following Opiate:

Take of *Conſerve of old Roſes three ounces: Purſlain and Plantane ſeeds, Myrtle Berries, Bole, ſealed Earth, Sanguis Draconis, of each one dram: the ſhavings of Ivory, and Troches of Winter Cherries, of each half a dram: with Syrup of dried Roſes make an Opiate, of which give the quantity of a Cheſnut twice in a day.*

You may make knitting Juleps thus:

Take of *Comphry Roots two ounces: Plantane and Mouſ-ear, of each one handful: the tops of Mallows and Maiden-hair, of each half a handful: Liquoris half an ounce: Starch and Gum Arabick, Tragacanth and Bole, of each one dram: Lettice and Purſlain ſeeds, of each one dram and an half: red Roſes one pugile boyl them in Rain Water to one pint and an half. In the ſtraining, diſſolve four ounces of Sugar of Penides two ounces: make a Julep. Give eight ounces in a morning for ten or twelve daies.*

Alſo the following Pills are good:

Take of *Turpentine waſhed in Plantane Water one dram: Juyce of Liquoris and Gum Tragacanth, of each two ſcruples: Bole and Troches of Winter Cherries, of each half a ſcruple: With the Juyce of Horſ-tail make Pills. Let him take half a dram morning and evening.*

They are ſtronger made thus:

Take of *Marſh-mallow Roots and Comphry dried, of each two drams: Gum Arabick, Cherry and Plum-tree, of each one dram: Olibanum and Myrrh, of each four ſcruples: white Poppy ſeeds, and Winter Cherries, of each one dram and an half: Camphire two ſcruples: beat them finely, and add the weight of the third part of them all of Antimonium Diaphoreticum; and with Venice Turpentine make a Maſs. Give one dram morning and evening long from meat, and after it a little of his ordinary drink.*

If Turpentine cauſe pain, give inſtead thereof Juyce of Liquoris diſſolved in Pellitory Water.

And above all, new Milk from the Cow with one dram of Bole-armenick that is true, every morning, is excellent, as *Foreſtus* ſaies: And it is a ſecret of his Maſter *Helidæus*, becauſe it clenſeth and healeth the Ulcer.

Quercetan in his Diſpenſatory, commends the Water that is given for the Gonorrhœa, as good for the ſame, as well as other Ulcers.

Hartmannus commends an Opiate made of Conſerve of Roſes two parts; and the Pouder of the Seeds of St. Johns wort one part, given in the end of the Cure many evenings together. And alſo two or three grains of Mercurius Dulcis given every day in Plantane Water.

But Mercurius Diaphoreticus is better, if wel made, and as it were fixed: this cures al internal ulcers miraculouſly.

In old Ulcers, the Decoction of round Birthwort in white Wine with Sugar, is very good.

Alſo obſerve, what *Garcias ab Horto* ſaies, That in *Goa* they give Aloes and Milk for Ulcers in the Reins and Bladder, or to ſuch as piſs filth, and it preſently cureth.

Outwardly to knit give this Oyntment:

Take of *Juyce of Plantane and Nightſhade, of each four ounces: Oyl of Roſes three ounces: Vinegar one ounce: Litharge finely poudered one ounce and an half: waſhed Ceruß half an ounce: fine Pouder of Tutty two drams: Sanguis Draconis one dram. Make them into an Oyntment.*

Alſo you may uſe this following when there is no Inflamation.

Take of *Oyl of Roſes and Maſtich, of each two ounces: Myrrh, Aloes, Sarcocol, Sanguis Draconis, of each one dram: Starch and Gum Tragacanth, of each four ſcruples: Styrax Calamita one dram: white Wax as much as will make an Oyntment.*

In the Ulcer of the Bladder it is proper to make Injection twice in a day; firſt with Hydromel, or Whey, or the Decoction of Barley with Honey of Roſes to clenſe; then with Aſtringers and Binders made of Iron Water, in which Comphry Roots, Myrrh, Allum, and Sarcocol with Tragacanth have been boyled. But eſpecially with the Troches of *Gordonius* diſſolved in Milk.

Fabricius Hildanus cured a great Ulcer in the Bladder with this following Injection, and ſome few other Medicines, Obſ. 69. Cent. 3.

Take of *the Roots of Comphry one ounce: Agrimony, Pauls Bettony, Water Germander, Ladies Mantle, Sanicle, of each half a handful: boyl them to a pint. In the ſtraining diſſolve two drams of Honey of Roſes: mix them for an Injection.*

And you muſt obſerve that theſe Injections are not only to be made with a Syringe, becauſe they wil not enter into the Cavity of the Bladder, the Sphincter Muſcle being ſhut, but you muſt conveigh it in with a Catheter.

And becauſe in theſe Ulcers the pains are uſually great, you muſt through the whol Cure abate them with Anodines inwardly and outwardly. Inwardly with Syrup of Poppies, Laudanum, and the Troches of Alkekengi made for this purpoſe; as alſo with Emulſions made of the cold Seeds, and white Poppy Seeds, with a little Syrup of Poppies, or with the often giving of Conſerve of Marſh-mallow flowers.

Outwardly you may apply this Fomentation following, to the Reins.

Take of *Marſh-mallow Roots two ounces: Mallows, Pellitory of the wall, Violets, of each one handful: Lin-ſeed, Fœnugreek, and Winter Cherries, of each three drams: Chamomel, Melilot flowers, and Water Lillies, of each one pugil: make a Decoction, with which foment the part, not with Spunges, becauſe they have a ſaltneſs in them from the Sea.*

After the Fomentation you may apply this Liniment:

Take of *the Oyl of Violets, and of ſweet Almonds, of each one ounce and an half: Oyl of Roſes one ounce: Mucilage of Marſh-mallow ſeeds, and Fœnugreek, of each two ounces: Saffron one ſcruple: make a Liniment.*

Make this following Injection againſt the pain of the Bladder.

Take of *Fœnugreek and Quince ſeeds, of each one ſcruple: ſteep them one hour in one pint and an half of Barley Water: after ſtrain them, and make a moiſt Mucilage; to which add of Oyl of ſweet Almonds two ounces: Honey of Roſes ſtrained one ounce: mix them for an Injection.*

And if you inject warm Milk, it is excellent for the ſame purpoſe. In which if you diſſolve the Troches of *Gordonius*, you wil compleatly eaſe pain, and cure the Ulcer.

Chap. 6. *Of* Diabetes, *or extraordinary Piſſing.*

Diabetes is a quick and plentiful ſending forth of Drink by Urine; after which there comes a violent Thirſt, and conſuming of the whol body.

It is called Diabetes *apo tou diabainein*, from paſſing through, as Water through a Conduit pipe, which is called Diabetes. This Diſeaſe is alſo called *Dipſacas*, from the unquenchable Thirſt, and the Piſs-pot Dropſie, from the continual making of Water. It is ſeldom ſeen, for *Galen* in 6. de loc. aff. cap. 3. ſaith that he ſaw it but twice.

The next and immediate Cauſe of this Diſeaſe, from *Galen*, and al his followers, is held to be a hot diſtemper of the Reins, which makes them draw Water violently from the Veins, and ſend it to the Bladder being not able to contain it themſelves; the Veins being drawn dry, ſuck from the Liver; the Liver from the Guts and Stomach; hence comes a continual Thirſt after drink, which as ſoon as it is taken, it is forthwith carried from the Liver and Veins into the Reins, where by its quantity it ſtretch up the Expulſive Faculty, and burdening the Retentive Faculty, it is ſent to the Bladder.

Some ſuppoſe that this cauſe is inſufficient, becauſe the hot diſtemper of the Reins is an uſual diſeaſe, but Diabetes is very rare; therefore there muſt be ſomthing elſe that is leſs uſual, namely, a ſharp or ſalt Matter in the Kidneys, either of Choller or of Flegm, which doth continually provoke the attractive vertue of them; as in Chollerick Feavers there is a Thirſt which cannot be quenched, from the Chollerick Humor which is fixed to the coat or Tunicle of the Stomach, or from Chollerick Vapors ſent from ſome adjacent part into the Stomach, by the motion of ſome putrid Choller which lodgeth there. This Opinion is probable; but we think good to add thus much to it, That the Kidneys alone are not affected in this Diſeaſe, becauſe Choller and other burnt Humors are firſt tred in the Liver; and therefore they cannot be in any quantity in the Kidneys, but the Liver muſt participate of them. And if we may reaſon where Nature ſeems to be ſilent, we can ſay that there is a venemous quality concurring for the producing of this Diſeaſe. For that kind of Serpent called *Dipſacos*, found in *Lybia*, when it bites any man, doth ſend into him ſuch a poyſon as begets an unquenchable Thirſt. The like kind of venom may be bred in our Bodies, by a peculiar corruption of ſome humors, which may cauſe ſuch a Thirſt; for *Galen* teſtifieth that divers kinds of poyſons may breed in our Bodies. And if ſuch a kind of poyſon may be bred in our Bodies as may cauſe a deteſtation of Drink,

Drink, as in *Hydrophobia*, in which the Patient cannot endure the ſight of Water, or any Drink, why may not then there be produced another poyſon, which hath the contrary quality, to cauſe a great and unquenchable Thirſt? And hence may be the reaſon why this Diſeaſe is ſo rare; becauſe this kind of poyſon is ſeldom bred, but Choller and Salt Flegm, and the Diſeaſes from thence, are ordinary. And as the Diſeaſe called Dogs Appetite, which is compared to this for the unſatiable deſire of meat, is aſcribed by the wiſeſt Phyſitians to an occult quality; ſo this unquenchable thirſt may be ſaid to come from a peculiar and hidden quality.

The Signs of this Diſeaſe are cleer from what hath been ſaid; as an extraordinary making of Water, an unquenchable Thirſt, and a ſudden piſſing forth of what is drunk, a decay of the whol Body; for the moiſture which would nouriſh the Body, is piſſed forth with the drink. And though there be often a large Evacuation of Urine in ſharp Feavers, and other caſes, yet that is not to be called Diabetes, becauſe the aforeſaid Symptomes, as great Thirſt and Conſumption of the Body are not joyned therewith.

The Prognoſtick of this Diſeaſe is deadly, for it is incurable, except it be in the beginning thereof; for it preſently brings a Conſumption. In old men it is more dangerous; and when it comes after inordinate Lechery, or Agues.

The Cure is wrought by allaying the hot diſtemper of the Kidneys, and by ſtrengthening them by thickening the Humors that flow unto them, and by oppoſing the malignant quality thereof; all which may be done with theſe Medicines following:

In the beginning of the Diſeaſe while there is ſtrength, you may open a Vein, for to revel or pluck back, and cool the Humors; but it muſt be done divers times, and but a ſmal quantity of blood taken away. But if the ſtrength be decayed, or if this follow another Diſeaſe, Phlebotomy muſt not be.

You muſt give Mollifying and Aſſwaging Clyſters to draw forth the Excrements, made thus:

Take of *Lettice, Purſlain, Mallows, and Plantane, of each one handful: clenſed Barley, and red Roſes, of each one pugil: make a Decoction to one pint and an half. In the ſtraining diſſolve of Diaprunes ſimple ſix drams: Honey of Roſes, and Sallet Oyl of each two ounces: make a Clyſter, and uſe it often.*

You may alſo give a gentle Purge with Caſſia, and Pulp of Tamarinds, or the Decoction of Plantane, Purſlain, Lettice, Tamarinds, and Myrobalans, with Syrup of Roſes.

Some commend Vomits made of the Decoction of Rhadiſh Seed, and Dwarf-Elder with Oxymel, which doth Evacuate and draw from the Ureters.

To correct the diſtemper of the ſaid parts, and to thicken the Humors, Juleps made of the Waters or Decoctions of Lettice, Purſlain, and Plantane, with Syrup of Myrtles, Quinces, and the like, and Syrup of Poppies, in a ſmal quantity, adding the Pouder of Diatragacanth frigid, and the Troches of Sealed Earth, and the like.

Or to aſtringe more, make them thus:

Take of *Comphry and Plantane Roots, of each one ounce: Plantane Leaves one handful: Pomegranate Flowers, and yellow Myrobalans, of each one dram: Plantane and Purſlain ſeed, of each half a dram: red Roſes one pugil: boyl them to a pint. In the ſtraining diſſolve of Syrup of Quinces three ounces: make a Julep for three Doſes.*

For the ſame end you may make a Pouder, or an Opiate thus:

Take of *Plantane, Purſlain, and Coriander ſeeds prepared, and red Roſes, of each one ounce: prepared Coral, Bole-armenick, prepared Pearl, and Tormentil Roots, of each one ſcruple: Nutmeg half a dram: mix them into Pouder.*

Take of *old Conſerve of Roſes, four ounces: Bole, prepared Coral, and burnt Harts-horn, of each one ſcruple: with Syrup of Quinces make an Opiate.*

Eraſtus highly commends the Syrup of Comphry Roots and Sloes, which he ſaith he uſed with good ſucceſs in theſe Diſeaſes.

Alſo Narcoticks, or Stupefactives uſed wiſely, are very good, as new Treacle, Syrup of Poppies, and Laudanum.

If it continue long, Sheeps Milk, Cow, or Aſſes Milk, are excellent, if you firſt conſume the Whey thereof, with often quenching Flints therein, and he may uſe it in the morning, as we ſhewed in other Cures.

Sweating is commended by Authors, by which means the ſerous Humor is drawn outward. But it is to be miſtruſted, becauſe it is very like to purge by Urine, and encreaſe the diſtemper of the Bowels. But if it be uſed at any time, it muſt be of the mildeſt ſort, as of Roots of China, Sarſa, Endive, Borrage, Sorrel boyled in Water, or for thoſe who are conſumed, in Chicken Broth; but we think it ſafer to provoke ſweat by outward means; as by a vapor from ſome convenient Decoction in a wooden Inſtrument.

Such Sudorificks as are preſcribed in malignant Feavers, are excellent, eſpecially if Spirit of Vitriol be in them, to quench Thirſt, ſtay the flux, and reſiſt the malignity.

For Drink, let the Patient uſe Iron'd Water with ſharp and aſtringent Syrups, or a Decoction of Sloes, and the inward Bark of an Oak; by which Medicine even alone, *Eraſtus* ſaith that he cured this Diſeaſe in a Boy.

Outwardly, Apply a Fomentation to the Loyns made of Sorrel Roots, Plantane, Pomegranate peels, Sumach Seeds, and the like, with a little Vinegar; or, which is moſt proper, make a Bath of the ſame Decoction to ſit in.

And anoint the part with Unguent of Roſes, Sanders, and Comitiſſa mixed together, or this following:

Take of *Oyl of Roſes and Myrtles, of each one ounce: red Sanders, red Roſes, and red Coral, of each one ſcruple: Juyce of Plantane one ounce: Wax, as much as will make an Oyntment.*

Then you muſt allay the Symptomes that accompany this Diſeaſe, as thirſt, watching, conſumption, and the like, by their Remedies mentioned in their proper Chapters.

Chap. 7. *Of Piſſing the Bed, of Involuntary Piſſing, or not containing of Urine.*

THe not holding of the Urine conſiſts in the hurting of the Retentive action of the Bladder, as Diabetes, or extraordinary piſſing, comes from the hurt done to the attractive faculty, and Dyſuria from the diſtemper in the Expulſive: ſo this comes from the diſorder in the Retentive Faculty of the Bladder. This comes ſomtimes to people awake, and then the Diſeaſe is worſe; ſomtimes to them aſleep, and then it is leſs, becauſe then the animal Functions are exerciſed leſs freely. And this in time of ſleep comes two waies, either from weakneſs and looſneſs of the Sphincter Muſcle of the Bladder, as in ſucking Children, weak people, and ſomtimes in them of yeers, or from the hurt of the Imagination: for many do piſs their Beds, either from too much drink, or from the exquiſite ſence of the Bladder, and the Urines ſharpneſs, with ſome conſent of their will, when they dream they are piſſing againſt a wall, or other place; and they are ſo accuſtomed to it, that it is done without any diſtemper either of the Bladder, or its Sphincter; nor are they to be cured with Medicines, but by change of their fooliſh Imagination, as Children by whipping; or, in thoſe of yeers, by adorning thoſe places which they dream they piſs upon, with ſome coſtly things, and ſhewing them often.

The true cauſe of this is in the Sphincter Muſcle, which ſuffers either from its ſelf, or by conſent from other parts.

It comes divers waies by conſent, as when the whol Body is weak, and the vital heat ſpent, as in dying men, or when the whol Body, or half of it is taken with the Palſey, or thoſe branches of Nerves which come from the *Os Sacrum* to the Bladder: ſomtimes the looſneſs of the Muſcle comes from the pain only, and neerneſs to other parts affected, as in Women with Child, from the ſwelling and pain of the Womb, and in the great Diſeaſe of the ſtraight Gut.

The Sphincter Muſcle ſuffers divers waies by its ſelf, as when it is wounded, as in cutting for the Stone, or in deep Ulcers which hinder its contraction and ſhutting. But the chief and uſual cauſe is, a cold and moiſt diſtemper, which is moſt fit to weaken and make looſe the part. Which is produced of a cold and moiſt Native temper, Youth, old Age, Women, and the Diſeaſes of the whol Body, or ſome parts thereof, coming of a moiſt and cold diſtemper: to theſe you may add external cauſes, often mentioned.

But here we may diſpute how contrary Effects may be produced of the ſame Cauſe: for *Hippocrates* in Coac. ſaies that ſtoppage of the Urine comes of a cold cauſe, in theſe words; *A ſtoppage of Urine coming of cold is worſt of all*; now not holding, and ſtopping, are contrary. We muſt anſwer that when a cold diſtemper doth only hurt or aboliſh the ſence of the Bladder, there may be a ſuppreſſion of Urine, becauſe the Bladder cannot be ſenſible of provocation to expel Urine: but if the motive faculty which is in the Sphincter Muſcle be hurt, by reaſon of the looſneſs of it, the Urine cannot be retained.

The Signs of this Diſeaſe, either ſhew this Diſeaſe to be by conſent, and theſe muſt be taken from the Diſeaſes before mentioned, which are apt to produce this not holding the Urine, which if you find, you may conclude that the diſeaſe comes from them: but if they be abſent, then you muſt bethink your ſelf of the propriety of the Diſeaſe to the part, which will be eaſily diſcovered if it come from a wound and Ulcer, or the like Diſeaſe of the Sphincter: but if neither of theſe appear, you muſt conſider of the cold and moiſt diſtemper of the part; and this is known by the cauſes both internal and external, and by the effects which depend upon them, as ſoftneſs of the whol Body, whiteneſs,

neſs, looſneſs of the Nerves and Privities, Childhood, Age, evil Flegmatick Concoction, and the like.

As for the Prognoſtick.

This Diſeaſe is incurable in old men, by reaſon of their great moiſtneſs, and the loſs of Vital heat, which cannot be repaired.

In an acute Feaver, involuntary Piſſing is very dangerous; for it comes either of a Delirium, or from a great deſtruction of al the Faculties, which followeth the extinction of the Natural heat.

In Children it is cured when they grow elder, and the ſuperfluous humidity is by degrees conſumed, and the parts that were looſe, are more knit: But if they be not cured before twenty five yeers of age, they are incurable.

The Cure is wrought by amending the cold and moiſt diſtemper, and looſneſs of the Sphincter Muſcle; but that which comes by ſympathy from other diſeaſes, muſt be cured by the removing of them: as alſo that which comes from Wounds, Ulcers, and other manifeſt Diſeaſes, depends upon the Cure of them. Therefore we ſhall lay down a way of Cure proper both for Children and men, provided that the Phyſitian be skilful in the choyce of his Medicines, to give the gentleſt to Children, and that he encreaſe and diminiſh the quantity according to the Patients age.

Firſt, Here is little uſe of Phlebotomy, becauſe it comes from a cold diſtemper, and flegm; except there be a general Plethory in the whol Body, being youthful.

But Purging is alwaies neceſſary in this Diſeaſe, made of things that purge flegm, mixed with ſome aſtringents that are not only Alterers, but Purgers, as Rhubarb, and Myrobalans, and the like.

After, to dry up the Matter that is flegmatick, and to knit the part, you may uſe Pouders, Opiates, and Phyſick Wines, and the like, made thus:

Take of *Cypreſs Nuts, and Myrtles dried at the fire, ſhavings of Ivory, Coriander ſeeds prepared, red Coral, and Amber, of each two drams: Spodium, or burnt Ivory one dram, Cypreſs Roots, and Galangal, of each half a dram: With the Syrup of Citrons make an Opiate, of which let him take the quantity of a Cheſnut morning and evening. Drink after it a little red Wine.*

Or you may give the aforeſaid Pouder from half a dram to a dram, with red Wine twice in a day, long after, and before meat.

Take of *Comfry Roots half an ounce: Cypreſs Roots, and Galangal, of each one dram: Plantane, Horſ-tail, and Five-leaved Graſs, with the Roots, of each one handful: Cypreſs Nuts, Acron Cups, of each four ſcruples: Rue ſeed, Agnus Caſtus, Frankinſence, and Ivory ſhavings, of each half a ſcruple: red Roſes one pugil: red Wine four pints. Infuſe them twenty four hours, ſtrain them through an Hippocras Bag, adding of Cinnamon half an ounce: Sugar as much as is ſufficient to make a Claret, of which let him take three or four ounces twice in a day.*

Many proper things are propounded by Authors, which do conduce to the Cure of this Diſeaſe. *Galen* in his Book of Local Medicines, and of things eaſie to be prepared, commends the Brain and Stones of a Hair burnt. Alſo a Snail burnt, with its ſhell given to Drink. The Modern Phyſitians give Hares dung, pouder of burnt Mice, the Hoofs of Hogs burnt, the aſhes of Date ſtones, roaſted Hazel Nuts, pouder of Egg ſhels. But above all are commended the Pouder of Agrimony, and the inward Skins of Hens Gizzards dried, given either by themſelves, or mixed together with red Wine.

Solenander witneſſeth that he ſaw happy ſucceſs in a Medicine invented by one *Gilbert Holland*, a Roman Phyſitian: He took the Throat of a Cock, and dried it at the fire til it would pouder. He gave it before ſupper in red Wine, or with Oxycrate, for ſome daies together.

In people of yeers, ſweating Decoctions uſed twenty daies together, are good to dry the Body, made of Guajacum, and Saſſaphras; or Stuphs, Hot-houſes, Brimſtone Baths, and thoſe of Niter.

For his Drink, let him take ſharp red Wine without mixture, or with a little Ironed Water.

They who can drink only Water, may take Ironed Water, or that in which Coriander ſeed, or a little Maſtich hath been boyled. Or laſtly, for the better aſtringing, let them take Water in which new Tiles have been quenched, and boyl their meat with the ſame. But they muſt drink but little, eſpecially at Supper. And let the Patient make water when he goes to bed, and be raiſed again at midnight, and in the morning for the ſame purpoſe, and this wil alter cuſtom.

Outwardly to the Privities, apply warm, ſtrengthening, and drying things, thus made:

Take of *Elicampane Roots, Calamus Aromaticus, Acorus and Cypreſs Roots, of each half an ounce: Mints, Sage, Organ, Calamints, and Wormwood, of each half a handful: Cypreſs Nuts, Myrtles, Galls, and Pomegranate flowers, of each one dram: red Roſes one pugil: boyl them in equal parts of Smiths Water, and red Wine to two pints. In the ſtraining, diſſolve of and Allum, of each one ounce. Foment the Privities and Perinæum warm, morning and evening.*

Or

Or you may make a Bath of the same things in larger quantities.

After the Fomentation, anoint the same parts with an Oyntment of Oyl of Foxes, Rue, Flower-deluce, Unguentum Martiatum, Aregon, with Pouder of Mastich, Cypress, and Myrtles.

Or you may use Storax Liquid, or Indian Balsom, dissolved with a little Wine; or for rich folks Musk and Civet dissolved in Muskadel.

Or apply this Plaister to the parts aforesaid.

Take of *Labdanum, Mastich, of each two drams: Wood of Aloes, Styrax Calamita, Cinnamon, Turpentine, of each one dram: Myrtles, and Cypress Roots, of each half a dram: Juyce of Mints, and Horse-tail drawn with red Wine, as much as will make a Plaister.*

Lastly, If there be a defluxion from the head, which causeth the weakness; you must divert by Errhines, Masticatories, and Causticks to the Neck or Arm, and other Remedies, mentioned in the Cure of the Catarrh.

Chap. 8. *Of stoppage of the Urine, and Strangury.*

THe stoppage of Urine is called by Authors *Ischouria*; but when little is voided, it is called *Strangouria*: although this word be larger, and comprehends all dropping of Urine; but if it be without pain, and the Urine come by drops, with straining, it is a final Ischuria; but if it be with pain, it must be referred to Dysuria, or scalding of Urine.

Therefore Ischuria, or a whol suppression of Urine, is two-fold, namely true, when the bladder is full; or Spurious, when the Bladder is empty, and nothing comes to it from the Reins.

A true Ischuria comes of three Causes: The first is when the sence is lost in the Bladder, by reason of the Palsey, and obstruction of the Nerve that comes to it, or by the eversion of the Spirits, by whose defect it comes, so that the Bladder feeleth no pricking to expel, as in dotings, and sleepy diseases.

The second cause is a cold distemper of the Bladder, coming from internal or external cold causes, which dull the sence of the Bladder, and weaken its expulsion.

The third Cause is the narrowness of the Neck of the Bladder, which will not suffer the Urine to pass. *Galen* gives three causes of this, 1. *de loc. affect. cap.* 1. either the Muscle is swollen by an Inflamation, Scirrhus, or Imposthume, or the like; or there is a little flesh grown in the passage, by reason of a former Ulcer; or there is a hardness from some thick Humor of long continuance. Also the Passage is stopped by the Stone, by a Crude and Thick Humor, by a Clod of Blood or Matter.

Besides, The Urine may be stopt by a Tumor in some part nigh to the neck of the Bladder, from the swelling of the Womb, from the Excrements in the straight Gut, or from the Hemorrhoids growing big.

Somtimes it comes from the long holding of the Water, by which the Bladder is so stretched that it cannot contract it self to expel Urine, by which stretching, the Passage is stopt and contracted. Now the Bladder is filled by Urine too long detained, two waies. First, when a sound man by urgent occasions in the Market, Senate, Church Banquet, Running, and the like, holds his Urine for want of opportunity to void it, which stretcheth it so that it cannot again contract it self; and the pricking of the Urine is not perceived by reason of its dull sence from the distemper of the Nerves which come thither, when those Nerves which are for the contracting of the Muscle, are well and sound, which *Galen* saith befel one 6. de loc. aff. cap. 4. when his Back bone was strained.

That is called a bastard Ischuria, in which the Urine is stopped, and the bladder empty, because no Water descends into it. There is a two-fold Cause why no Urine comes to the Bladder, either because the Kidneys do not draw that wherof the Urin is made, and send it down, or because the Ureters will not receive it, therfore either the attractive or expulsive Faculty of the Reins is hurt. The attractive or drawing Faculty is hurt by the Error of the Object, or in its self. This is from a strong distemper, especially cold, or from some stoppage in the Reins, or in the Emulgent Veins. These Obstructions proceed from the Stone, thick flegm, or Matter that falls down thither. The obstruction of the Emulgents comes somtimes from too much blood, or serous Matter; a Story whereof we have in our Observations, Observ. 1. Cent. 1.

By the fault of the Object, the attraction of the Reins is hindered, when the serum or water is spent, as in burning Feavers; or sent to other parts, as in a Dropsie.

The Expulsive Faculty is hurt by the same Causes, namely, distemper, the stone, clods of blood, matter, or gross flegm, or Inflamation.

The

The Ureters do not receive the Serum, nor ſend it to the Bladder, by reaſon of Inflamation, or Obſtruction by the Stone, a clod of Blood, Matter, or thick flegm, or by a compreſſion from ſome humor in a part adjacent.

We muſt obſerve that both Kidneyes or Ureters are affected, for the total ſtoppage of Urine; for if one be open, the Urine may paſs.

The aforeſaid Cauſes, if they be violent, may make a total Obſtruction of Urine, which is called *Iſchuria*; but if they be ſmal, or remiſs, they make only an evacuation in part, which is called a Strangury; and both Diſeases come from the ſame cauſe, different in degrees.

A true Iſchuria is known by the weight and enlarging of the lower part of the belly, and by a Tumor in form like the bladder.

The Cauſes are known by things aforegoing, or that accompany it: For if it come from too great a quantity of Urine, which hinders the contraction of the bladder, the Patient wil tel you how that he forbore to piſs by reaſon of long riding, or the preſence of ſome people of Honor, and that before he never had any diſtemper in thoſe parts. But if he hath had a Delirium, a Palſey, or the like, you may refer the ſtoppage to them.

The Stoppage which comes from Tumors of thoſe, or the adjacent parts, or other Cauſes before mentioned, wil be known by their proper Signs.

The ſtopping of the paſſage of the Bladder is known by a ſearing Candle put in, or a Catheter; which if they cannot pierce, but are ſtopped by the way, ſhew that there is a either ſtone, or a Caruncle, or a little Excreſcens of fleſh, or the like in the paſſage.

And theſe are to be diſtinguiſhed; for if it be a Stone, there was formerly a pain of the Reins, whether it came from the Bladder or Reins. If a Caruncle, there was a ſtinking Gonorrhœa, or running of the Reins, or an Ulcer in the paſſage of the Yard that did long run.

And laſtly, If there be a Clod of Blood, or Matter, or Flegm, you ſhal ſee ſome part of it come out of the Yard, or it wil ſtick to the Catheter.

A Baſtard Iſchuria is hence known, There is neither extenſion, nor Tumor, nor weight about the Privities, but rather a kind of emptineſs thereabout; there is no deſire to piſs, no tickling in the bladder, and no Urine made, there went before the ſigns of the Stone in the Kidneys, or Ureters, or of Inflamation, or great fulneſs, or much drink was taken, which was not plentifully piſſed forth: whence the Veins might be ſwoln, or elſe there is a burning Feaver, or a Dropſie, which ſignifie the revulſion, and turning away of the Water or ſerous Matter.

As to the Prognoſtick. The ſtoppage of Urine is very dangerous, and if it continue above ſeven daies, it is deadly: for the Serum being retained in the Veins, doth oppreſs the Liver, infect the blood, and runs into the whol body, it brings danger of choaking, and being carried to the brain, produceth a Coma, or kind of Lethargy.

The ſtoppage of Urine which comes from the back, being wounded, or by a fall, or ſtraining of the Vertebræ, or back-bone, is incurable.

If the Patient ſtink of Piſs at his mouth or noſe, it is deadly.

If a Tenaſmus or Needing follow a ſuppreſſion of Urine, it is death in ſeven daies. And alſo if the Hiccough follow upon it.

The Cure of the ſtoppage of Urine, whether it be total or partial, muſt be by aiming at the Cauſes. And firſt, that ſuppreſſion which is called ſpurious, and depends upon the Diſeaſes of the Reins or Ureters, is to be found in the Cure of the Inflamation, pain, or ſtone of the Kidneys; that which comes from the fulneſs of the Emulgent Veins, is to be cured by large bleeding, and Medicines that purge Water. A true Iſchuria is cured by things that take away the cauſe: and firſt, if it come from Inflamation of the bladder, or parts adjoyning, you may find Medicines for it in the Cure of the Inflamation of the bladder.

But if it come from a ſtone in the neck of the bladder, you muſt uſe theſe Remedies following.

Firſt, you muſt lay the Patient upon his Back with his Thighs lifted up, and then ſhake him ſoundly to make the ſtone return into the Bladder: And if this wil not do it, uſe the Catheter. But if the ſtone be in the paſſage of the Yard, you muſt labor to get it out with your fingers, gently ſtroaking it to the end of the Yard; and you muſt put the Yard into warm Water or Milk, or the Patient into a Bath to open the Paſſage. But if you can neither get it out nor in, Practitioners ſay that you may bind the Yard on both ſides of it, and take it out by Inciſion.

The Obſtruction of the neck of the bladder, which comes from Inflamation, wil be cured with the proper Medicines againſt Inflamation. But in the mean while, if the Urine be there long detained, you may gently conveigh in a ſearing Candle dipt in a little Oyl of ſweet Almonds, avoiding the Catheter, leſt it cauſe pain, and ſo encreaſe the Inflamation.

If the ſtoppage of Urine comes from a Caruncle, you muſt take that away. This is done by proper Medicines conveighed thither with a Wax Candle, which muſt be done by a skilful hand. And if

the

the Caruncle swel and stop the Passage, necessity wil constrain you to use the Catheter to draw away the Urine, although there be danger left the part disturbed should swel more. But you must first make use of Revulsions, by bleeding, vomiting, and Repellers to the Privities, to take away the Inflamation of the Caruncle, that way may be made for the Urine.

If suppression of the Urine come from thick flegm, first it is good to purge with a Bolus made of Diaphœnicon and Rhubarb, and then to give Turpentine often with Pouder of Liquoris; afterwards a Decoction of opening Roots, with Oxymel, or Syrupus Bizantinus; not omitting in the mean while, Clysters, Fomentations, and Baths, that mollifie and open. And all those things will be proper which were propounded for the dissolving and expelling of the Stone.

And among the rest, Experience hath taught us that these following are excellent.

Take of *Benedicta Laxativa half an ounce: the Troches of Myrrh two scruples: the Decoction of Savin three ounces. Mix them for a Potion. By this a woman was presently cured of the stoppage of Urine.*

If there be abundance of Flegm in the whol Body, or in the Head, after blood-letting, from the beginning of the Cure, you must purge with an Apozeme three or four daies together.

Also the Julep mentioned in the Cure of the Stone of the Kidneys, made of the juyce of Pellitory of the wall, Sea-fennel, and Lemmons, with Oyl of sweet Almonds.

The Syrup of Rhadishes, of *Fernelius* his Prescription, given two ounces at a time, is very excellent.

Dodonæus in Observat. Cap. 48. reports of one of fourscore yeers of age, that was cured of a stoppage of Urine with dropping, by a Lixivium or Lye made with ashes of Egg-shels, and Rhenish Wine, once taken.

Arnaldus Villanovanus commends the Wine of Winter Cherries in this following History, mentioned in his Book of Wines. *There was in my time a Cardinal, who had not pissed for four daies, who was desperately swoln, and cured by the advice of a weak Physitian, with Winter-Cherry Wine, and he voided as much Urine as would fill a Bason. By that only Experiment, that Physitian being poor, and of smal parts, became a great rich man. Many God bestows his Blessings upon, his waies are unsearchable.* This kind of Wine, as *Arnaldus* shews, is made by taking five, or seven, or more Winter Cherries, and beating them with good white Wine, and then straining them, and giving them to be drunk.

Hog-lice also beaten with white Wine, and given to be drunk, are good for the same.

The Oyl of Scorpions, as *Mathiolus* prescribed it, given five or six drops in Broth or other Liquor, doth powerfully provoke Urine.

The often use of the Crystal Mineral, doth provoke Urine, especially when you fear inflamation, which is often caused in the inward Skin of the Bladder, by the stoppage of Urine.

The Spirit of Salt doth it better.

The Vulgar Medicine of the Juyce of Pellitory of the wal refined, four ounces with half an ounce of Sugar, doth very much good. You may mix therewith Sal Prunellæ, or Spirit of Salt.

If these stoppings from Flegm, do often return, there is nothing better than Brimstone, and Niter Bath-Waters; which both by drinking and bathing, do easily dissolve, cleanse, and consume that slimy matter.

A certain Noble man having his Urine suppressed many daies, after other Medicines taken in vain, by this following Clyster kept two hours in his Body, was cured.

Take of *the Roots of Smallage, Parsley, Butchers Broom, Dogs-tooth, Sparagus, Mallows, and Marsh-mallows, of each two drams: Pellitory of the wall two handfuls: Annis, Fennel, Dill, Caraway, Carrot, Ameos, Carthamus, Rue, and Cummin seeds, with Bay-berries of each half an ounce: Chamomel, Melilot, Dill, and French Lavender flowers, of each two pugils: boyl them in white Wine to halfs. In a pint of the straining, dissolve of fresh Butter four ounces: Honey of Roses two ounces: red Sugar one dram: Benedicta Laxativa half an ounce: one Egg: the Oyl of Nuts, Dill, Lin-seed, of each two ounces. Make a Clyster.*

The Chymists brag of their Medicines against this Disease; namely, Spirit of Salt, Vitriol, Sulphur, and Turpentine, which they give to half a scruple in convenient Liquors, or Chicken Broth. They Commend also the Salt of Tartar and of Bean Stalks, given from half a dram to a dram.

And for Revulsion of the Humor from the part affected, they give Vomits, and they boast that very many have been cured thereby.

You must all the time of the Cure, use Liniments, Fomentations, Cataplasms, and Baths, and other external things which must be the same that were before mentioned for the pain in the Kidneyes: Among the rest a Cataplasm made of Pellitory of the wall, fryed in Butter or Oyl of Scorpions, is excellent. Also a Bladder half full of Oyl; which will be of more force, if you boyl Spanish Flies, called Cantharides therein.

Commonly

Commonly they apply a Cataplaſm of fryed Onions with Hogs Greaſe to the Loyns and Privities, with ſome Eggs.

But raw white Onions beaten with Oyl into the form of a Cataplaſm, do far better, if they be applied to the Kidneys, Ureters, and Privities.

A Cataplaſm made of beaten Rhadiſhes, is good for the ſame.

When the Iſchuria comes of clotted blood, you muſt diſſolve it. For this purpoſe uſe Troches of Amber, the Rennet of a Kid or Hair, Mummy, ſimple Oxymel, and Oxymel of Squils, Syrup of Vinegar, and the like. Outwardly, a Cow-turd doth wonders, according to the Judgment of Learned *Ætius*, Tetr. 3. Serm. 2. Cap. 27.

Laſtly, When the Urine is ſtopt by Matter, or comes only dropping, you muſt uſe Cleanſers and Cutters, ſuch as were ſet down in the Cure of the Ulcer of the Reins and Bladder.

Chap. 9. *Of* Dyſuria, *or Scalding of the Urine.*

BY the word *Dyſuria*, we underſtand all painful piſſing, which the Modern Writers call Scalding of the Urine. Many Authors make it all one with the Strangury, becauſe there is painful piſſing; but they will have it differ from Dyſuria in this only, but becauſe in Dyſuria there is a greater quantity of Urine made, than in Strangury, which is therefore called piſſing by drops. But we had rather for Inſtruction ſake, call that Strangury which is piſſing little, without pain, and put them in one Chapter, becauſe they muſt be cured both the ſame way, and to treat here of all painful piſſing under the name of Dyſuria, being they come all of the ſame Cauſes, and are cured by the ſame Medicines.

The immediate Cauſe of painful piſſing, is a ſolution of continuity in the Sphincter Muſcle, or the paſſage of the Bladder: and therefore whatſoever can cauſe a wound in thoſe parts, may cauſe heat of Urine.

The moſt uſual Cauſe is ſharpneſs of Urine, ſomtimes without mixture of other Humors, which is cauſed by a hot diſtemper of the Bowels, or of the whol Body, or by eating of hot and ſharp Meats; but it often comes by mixture of hot and ſharp Humors, as Choller and ſalt Flegm. Somtimes matter coming from the Reins or Bladder, being ulcerated, may cauſe ſuch a ſharpneſs of Urine. Somtimes a white Humor like Milk comes plentifully forth with the Urine, and cauſeth ſcalding, which is commonly thought to be Matter from the Reins; but *Sennertus* denies it for this Reaſon, For if all the Reins were turned into Matter, they could not afford ſo much as is many times voided at once, every day for a week together. And he ſuppoſeth that it comes from an evil Concoction, firſt of the Stomach, then of the Liver, becauſe the error of the firſt Concoction cannot be mended in the ſecond, hence the Chylus, and then the Blood remains crude, not freed from its Salt and Tartar-like parts, which ought to be ſeparated in the firſt Concoction, and they being after ſucked into the Reins, and ſent to the Bladder, cauſe pain in piſſing. He ſaith that he was brought to be of this Judgment, becauſe a Learned man, who was troubled ſome weeks with heat of Urine, which he voided plentifully with half an Urinal ful of ſuch white Matter, was (when nothing elſe could aſſwage his violent pains) cured only with drinking of Sack.

Alſo a ſtone in the Bladder, if it ſtrike againſt the Neck of it in time of piſſing, cauſeth pain; and alſo large Gravel which grates upon the paſſage of the Urine.

Alſo Inflammation, or Ulcer of thoſe parts, cauſeth heat of Urine, becauſe the ſence is more quick at that time, and though the Urine be wel tempered, it is troubleſom; as we ſee externally how the leaſt touch is offenſive to a ſore place. So in a Gonorrhœa, as long as the Paraſtates are inflamed, there is a continual heat of Urine.

The Knowledg of this Diſeaſe is evident, for the Patient is forced to roar ſomtimes with pain. But you muſt diſtinguiſh the Signs of the Cauſes thus:

If it come from ſharpneſs of Urine, it wil be thin and high colored, ſomtimes like fire, or there wil be a viſible mixture of Choller, Flegm, or Matter; the Bowels wil be diſtempered, or the Patient hath eaten hot and ſharp meats, and endured great heat.

The Stone and Inflamation of thoſe parts are known by their proper Signs.

As for the Prognoſtick. This Diſeaſe of it ſelf, is not dangerous, but very painful: and according to the cauſe, it is ſomtimes hard to be cured, eſpecially in old men, which if they be decrepit, die thereof; and in all ages, if it continue long, it ulcerateth the neck of the Bladder.

The Cure is, firſt by taking away the Cauſe. And therefore if it come from the Stone, Inflamation, or Ulcer, you muſt cure them according to the Rules in their proper Chapters. But theſe things after mentioned, wil be good to allay the Symptome.

They who have it from the ſharpneſs of Urine mixed with hot Humors, are to be cured by the Medicines following.

And firſt, Phlebotomy is good to correct the diſtemper of the Liver and other parts. This muſt be often, according to the Plethory and Inflamation; firſt from the right Arm, to evacuate and revel the Matter; and after in the lower Veins, to derive it from the part affected; for which cauſe, *Hippocrates*, and *Galen* who followed him, do command the lower Veins to be opened in Diſeaſes of all parts beneath the Reins.

Purging alſo is good, of mild and gentle things, that cool, leſt the heat be encreaſed. Therefore do not give any thing but a Bolus of Caſſia alone, and indeed that is beſt. But you may make it cooler if you add the Pulp of Tamarinds. Or you may mix it with the Decoction of Lettice, Purſlain, and Mallow Tops, and give it many daies together, that the ſharp Humors may be brought back from the part by ſtool. But if you deſire to purge more by reaſon of the plenty of Humors, uſe this following:

Take *Lettice, Purſlain, Plantane, and Mallow tops, of each half a handful: Tamarinds half an ounce: yellow Myrobalans one dram: boyl them to ſix ounces, and add to it ſtrained, one ounce of Caſſia: ſtrain it again, and then add one dram and an half of Rhubarb infuſed in Lettice Water, with yellow Sanders, Manna, and Syrup of Roſes, of each one ounce. Make a Potion.*

In an old Dyſury, the purging Opiate preſcribed in the Ulcer of the Bladder, is very good.

A gentle Vomit is excellent, for it revelleth from that part affected, and hinders thoſe inconveniences which uſe to come by purging: Therefore give it once or twice in a week to them that can vomit eaſily.

By often Clyſters, the ſharp Humors are not only brought to the Guts, and ſent out by degrees, but the diſtemper of the parts is qualified.

They are made thus:

Take of *Marſh-mallow Roots one ounce: Mallows, Violets, and Lettice, of each one handful: Water Lillies, and cleanſed Barley, of each one pugil: boyl them to a pint: Diſſolve in the ſtraining, Caſſia new drawn one ounce: one Egg: and two ounces of Oyl of Violets. Make a Clyſter.*

The Mucilages of Seeds of Marſh-mallows, Quinces, and Fœnugreek, may be mixed with Clyſters to aſſwage pain.

But Clyſters of Milk only, or mixed with the aforeſaid things, uſe to be ſo powerful to allay heat and pain, that we have known ſome of long continuance cured by them alone, and a Bath, whereof we wil ſpeak hereafter.

Experience hath found out many things good to be taken at the mouth, to allay heat, and to correct the diſtemper of the parts. The chief are theſe following:

Take of *Water Purſlain, Lettice, Roſes, and Water Lillies, of each one ounce: Syrup of Violets and Water-lillies, of each ſix drams: Sal prunellæ one dram. Mix them for a Julep, repeat it often.*

Take of *Marſh-mallow Roots one ounce: Lettice, Endive, Purſlain, and Mallow tops, of each one handful: Melone, Guord, Mallows, Lettice, and white Poppy ſeeds, of each three drams: Jujubes and Sebeſtens, of each ſix pair: Violets, Roſes, and Water-lillies, of each one pugil: boyl them in a pint and an half. Diſſolve in the ſtraining, Syrup of Violets, Jujubes, and Poppies, of each one ounce and an half: Sal prunellæ half an ounce: make a Julep for four Doſes to be taken twice in a day.*

Emulſions alſo may be uſed although they be Diuretick, becauſe they cool and cleanſe the paſſage of the Bladder. Make them thus:

Take of *the four great cold Seeds, and white Poppy Seeds, of each three drams: ſweet Almonds blanched and infuſed in cold Water half an ounce: beat them in a ſtone Morter, powring on by degrees the Decoction of Barley, Liquoris, Purſlain, and Mallow tops one pint and an half: make an Emulſion for three Doſes, adding to each Doſe one ounce of the Syrup of Violets, and one dram of Lapis prunellæ, and if the pain be great add a little Syrup of Poppies, and one dram of Gum Arabick in pouder, or the Syrup of Marſh-mallows, according to* Fernelius, *or of Mucilages.*

You may make Broths thus:

Take of *Marſh-mallow Roots half an ounce: Mallows one handful: Liquoris half an ounce: Quince ſeeds one dram: boyl them with Chicken Broth: make it often.*

The Whey of Goats Milk is very good given in great draughts, as we ſaid in the hot diſtemper of the Liver.

And if there be no Feaver, you may with more profit give Milk by it ſelf, becauſe it doth not only cleanſe, but allay pain, and temper the ſharpneſs of the Humors.

In-

In an old Diſeaſe, it is good to give Mineral Waters that cool, eſpecially Allum, Iron, and Vitriol Waters; for by Experience we find that they have cured this Diſeaſe when it hath been inveterate.

Inſtead of the aforeſaid Juleps, the ſimple Decoction of Mallows, with Syrup of Violets, may be uſed; by which *Foreſtus* ſaith, Obſ. 4. Lib. 25. he cured a grievous Dyſury many times, and that there is nothing like it.

Foreſtus alſo Obſ. 3. of the ſame Book, that an Apothecary cured himſelf and others, with the white of an Egg beaten with Roſe Water.

He alſo reports that a woman cured an old man of *Delf*, with Chamomel flowers boyled in Milk.

Amatus Luſitanus, 58. Curat. Cent. 6. ſaith that a Woman was cured when all means failed, with Conſerve of Mallow flowers; ſhe took one ounce morning and evening, and drunk after it three ounces of Mallows Water. And Curat. 59. he ſaith that one who had a Dyſury, after he had voided a ſtone was cured by the ſame in three daies. The Conſerve of Marſh-mallow flowers, is of the ſame or greater Vertue.

Some commend the Troches of Winter Cherries given with convenient Liquor, the quantity of a dram, becauſe they are Diuretick, abate ſharpneſs and pain.

When the pain is very great, it is good to put the Yard when you piſs, into warm Milk, or a Decoction of Mallows and white Poppy ſeeds, or warm Water only.

A ſmal Decoction of Mallows with Syrup of Violets and Conſerve of Roſes, is good for ordinary Drink.

You may alſo make Injections into the paſſage of the Bladder, of Milk, or of an Emulſion of cold Seeds, Plantane Water, or Whey, with the Water of a white of an Egg beaten, or one ſcruple of the Troches of Winter Cherries.

External Medicines are alſo good, as Baths, half Baths, Fomentations to the Privities made of cool Herbs, Liniments of Oyl of Roſes, Water Lillies, Unguent of Roſes, *Galens* cooling Oyntment, Populeon with Camphire, and the Mucilage of Fleabane made with Plantane Water. Alſo you muſt apply Epithems that cool to the Reins and Liver, and the aforeſaid Liniments, and the things mentioned formerly for the ſame.

When ſharp and chollerick Humors flow from the Liver, you may derive by an Iſſue in the right Leg, or by opening the Hemorrhoids, which is very good in al diſeaſes of the Reins and Bladder; according to that of *Hippocrates*, Aph. 11. Sect. 6. becauſe from the Spleen Vein called *Ramus Splenicus*, there are branches go to the Reins, Bladder, and Hemorrhoids.

The End of the Fourteenth Book.

THE FIFTEENTH BOOK OF THE PRACTICE OF PHYSICK.

Of WOMENS Diſeaſes.

The PREFACE.

THoſe are called *Womens Diſeaſes which are proper to them only, and come from the defect of that part which is diſtinct in them from men*, viz. *the Womb*; *of which* Democritus *in his Letter to* Hippocrates *ſaid that it was the cauſe of ſix hundred miſeries, and innumerable Calamities. But we to lay down thoſe Diſeaſes of the Womb which are moſt uſual, will divide them thus: Some come from the Veſſels, and ſome from the Body of the Womb, or Cavity; others are in reſpect of its chief and nobleſt act of Generation. From the diſtemper of the Veſſels of the Womb, and the preternatural cauſes, come* Chlorotis, *or green Sickneſs, ſtoppage of the Terms, immoderate Flux, the Whites, Rage of the Womb, and the Mother. In the Cavity of the Womb are, Inflamations, Ulcers, Scirrhus, Cancer, Gangrene, Dropſie, coming forth, and ſhutting up thereof: theſe may hinder Generation but by accident. The Diſeaſes which are in reſpect of Conception, Breeding, and Bringing forth, are, Barrenneſs. acute and Chronical Diſeaſes of Women with Child, Abortion, difficult bringing forth, dead Child, Secundine retained, immoderate flux, or ſuppreſſion of blood, and the acute Diſeaſes of women in Child-bed. All which Diſeaſes we will ſpeak of in as few words as the dignity of the Matter will permit.*

Chap. I. *Of the Green-ſickneſs, called* Chloroſis.

THis Diſeaſe by *Hippocrates*, is called *Chloroſis*; by the Modern Phyſitians, the white Feaver, the Virgins Diſeaſe, the Pale color of Virgins, the white Jaundice, but vulgarly the Green-ſickneſs.

It may be defined thus: An evil habit of Body from the Obſtruction of the Veins of the Liver, Spleen, and Meſentery, and eſpecially of thoſe which are about the Womb, which is accompanied with a heavineſs or unwildineſs of the whol Body, beating of the heart, difficulty of breathing, a deſire of evil Food, and the like.

This

This Diſeaſe depends immediately upon the Obſtruction of the parts in the lower Belly, eſpecially of thoſe Veins which are about the Womb, whereby the free paſſage of blood to the Womb is hindered, which abounding in Virgins when they begin to have their Terms, and being hindered of its Natural courſe by thoſe Obſtructions, runs to the upper parts, and oppreſſeth the Heart, Liver, Spleen, Diaphragma, or Midriff, and other parts, deſtroyes their Natural heat, ſtops the Veſſels; hence is there an evil Concoction in the Bowels, and from thence their body is full of Crudities, which being carried forth, make an evil Habit. In other parts they produce divers Symptomes in the Hypochondria, a ſwelling of the Bowels, by which the Midriff is oppreſſed, which cauſeth ſhortneſs of breath. And becauſe groſs blood and wind are carried by the Branches of the hollow Vein, and great Artery into the Heart, which contend againſt them for fear of Suffocation, by often moving of its Arteries, there is a palpitation of the Heart, and often a beating in the Temples. Beſides, they have in this Diſeaſe a loathing of meat, becauſe the Stomach is filled with crude Excrements by reaſon of its evil Concoction and diſtribution: which excrements having gotten an evil quality by a peculiar kind of corruption, cauſe a deſire of evil meats, and things not ordained for nouriſhment, as Salt, Spices, Chalk, Coals, Aſhes, and the like, which Diſeaſe is called *Pica Malacia*, or ſtrange Longing, which we have at large ſpoken of in its proper place, among the Diſeaſes of the Stomach.

The Cauſes of the Obſtructions in the Veins of the Womb, and the Hypochondria, are thick, ſlimy, and crude Humors, coming commonly from evil Diet: for theſe Virgins drink great draughts of Water at bed-time, or in the morning faſting; or eat Vinegar, Herbs, unripe Fruits Snow, or Ice; hence it is that they loſe their Natural heat, and there is abundance of crude Excrements. Others ſleep too much, or are very idle, as Seamſters, which by ſitting full a day are very cold. Others watch too much, and uſe unſeaſonable exerciſe, as dancing preſently after meat, and ſo continuing with their Sweet-hearts all night. Moreover, they have great cares and diſturbances of mind by which the Concoction is deſtroyed, and the body filled with evil Juyce.

The Knowledg of this Diſeaſe is eaſie from the Symptomes following:

Firſt, The Face and all the Body is pale and white ſometimes of a Lead color, blew, or green; for crude, flegmatick, and ſerous Humors abounding, and being carried to the habit of the body, do diſcolor it; and if Choller or Melancholly be mixed with that flegm, the color will be yellowiſh, greeniſh or blew.

The Second is, Swelling in the Face and Eye-lids, eſpecially after ſleep, becauſe the motive heat being cloſed and contracted at night, raiſed more vapors than it could diſcuſs. The Leggs alſo and Feet, eſpecially about the Ankles, and the whol Body is looſe and ſoft by reaſon of the abundance of flegm.

Thirdly, Heavineſs and Idleneſs in the whol body, a lazy ſtretching forth of the Leggs from the Humors being fallen down.

Fourthly, There is difficult breathing, eſpecially when they move themſelves, or go up Hils or ſteep places, then the thick blood grows warm, and thence ariſe many vapors, which cauſe ſhortneſs of breathing.

Fifthly, There is Palpitation of the Heart and beating of the Arteries in the Temples when the Body is exerciſed, by reaſon of the ſame evaporation, which is raiſed from thick Humors heated by Exerciſe.

Sixthly, There is often a great Head-ach, and ſometimes in the hinder part of the Head, when the Womb ſuffers; but in the Forehead when the vapors ariſe moſt from the Hypochondria.

Seventhly, The Pulſe is ſwift and quick, as if they were in a Feaver, and therefore this Diſeaſe is called the white Feaver, by reaſon of the quickneſs of the Pulſe, which is for this reaſon; The vital faculty being weak, makes the Pulſe little, therefore Nature ſupplies the ſmalneſs of it with often beating.

Eightly, The ſleep is very ſound, they ſleep til midnight, except they be forcibly awaked; and this is from many thick vapors which ariſe from the filthy flegm.

Ninthly, There is a great loathing of wholſom meat by reaſon of the great collection of Crudities in the Stomach and parts adjacent; and theſe Humors when they grow worſe, cauſe the Pica, or longing for things that are not to be eaten.

Laſtly, When the evil encreaſeth, and the Obſtructions are multiplied, the Terms ſtop, which ſhews the Diſeaſe to be at the height, and confirmed.

As for the Prognoſtick: That Diſeaſe commonly is not dangerous, and continueth a long time. But if it be too much neglected, and ſuffered to take root, ſo that the Nouriſhment is hinder'd, there follow great Diſeaſes of the Natural parts, as ſcirrhous and other Tumors, and corruption of the ſubſtance of them, which cauſe death, by Dropſies, long Feavers and the like.

When the Diſeaſe is leſs, and comes only from the Obſtruction of the Veins of the Womb, in yong women it is cured by Marriage.

Women

Women that have long been in this Disease, either are barren, or their Children are diseased, and weak.

There is great hope of recovery when the Terms keep their ordinary course, and their due quantity and quality.

The Cure of this Disease is by opening Obstructions, by emptying of the filthy Humors from the whol Body, and correcting the distemper of the Bowels, and strengthening of them.

The Obstructions are taken away by the Medicines which were mentioned in the Cure of the Obstructions of the Liver and Spleen, adding some things which respect the Womb, and that are more proper to open those Veins.

First then, give a purging Medicine agreeable to the Patients temper, made of gentle things, to clense the first Region only, and a Clyster before it, if the Body be bound.

Then open a Vein, if the Disease be not very old, and the Maid very much without blood, and inclining to an evil habit. Let the Vein of the Arm be opened first, although the Terms be stopped; for if then you draw blood from the Foot, the Obstructions of the Veins of the Womb will be greater by their fulness. And if the Liver be most stopped, take blood from the right Arm; if the Spleen from the left.

After you have bled sufficiently, you must give an ordinary Purge, by way of an Apozeme, such as was prescribed in the Cure of the Obstructions of the Liver. To which you may add some Herbs that are proper to the Womb, as Mugwort, Feaverfew, Peny-royal; and if the Spleen be stopped you may add proper things for that, as Capar barks, Ceterach, or Spleenwort, Harts-tongue. If the temper be Chollerick, and there be signs of a hot and dry Liver, you must take all the hot simples out of the Apozeme, and put in cold openers instead thereof.

For the more delicate Virgins, instead of Apozemes, you may give the Broths prescribed in the aforesaid Cure of the Liver, and change the simples as we said of the Apozeme.

In the mean while you may use Fomentations and Liniments prescribed in the same Chapter, not only to the Liver, but to the Spleen and Womb.

After Purging, make this Bath following, to open and looſen the Vessels, and to dissolve and digest the Matter causing Obstructions, which are of such force that we have known sometimes the Terms to begin to flow at the third or fourth bathing, when they have formerly been long stopped.

Take of *Marsh-mallow Roots, Lilly Roots, Elicampane, Briony, wild Cucumer, of each two pound: Mallows, Violets, Mercury, Penyroyal, Feaverfew, Balm, of each four handfuls: Linseed and Fenugreek beaten, of each two ounces: boyl them in spring Water for a Bath. Let her go into it warm twice in a day, not sweating, long before and after meat, for two daies, renewing each day the Decoction.*

The day after the last Bath, if the Terms be stopped, let the lower Veins be opened, and take away three ounces of blood: and this may be done twice or thrice at that time, in which the Terms used to flow. Or if they never did appear at that time in which the Patient is most afflicted.

After these Medicines to strengthen the Bowels, and to wear away the reliques of the Obstructions, an opening and strengthening Opiate wil do very wel, described in the place mentioned; to which you may add two drams of *Fæcula Brioniæ*, and as much of Salt of Mugwort.

But because sometimes the Obstructions are so great that they wil not presently be cured, you must make a Magistral Syrup of the Ingredients to the Apozeme before mentioned, with an encrease of the purging Medicines in quantity, and let the Patient take it twice or thrice in a month.

The ordinary Pils mentioned in the Cure of the stoppage of the Liver, are most excellent; to which you may add the Medicines there mentioned, of Tartar, Vitriol, and Steel.

Zacutus Lusitanus, Observ. 99. Lib. 2. reports of a certain Woman which had the Green-sickness ten yeers with stoppage of her Terms, and could not be cured with divers opening and purging Medicines, and some made of Steel, that he cured her with nothing but Conserve of Mugwort given thirty daies together, drinking after it the distilled Water of Savin, in which Rhubarb had been a whol night infused.

The same *Zacutus*, Observ. 117. Lib. 3. tels of a Virgin, which eating much Salt every day, fel into a Diarrhœa of Choller, mixed with a Consumption, which he cured after general Medicines, with Goats Milk steeled, and cold things applied to the Liver.

In the greatest Obstructions, an Issue made in the right or left Legg, as the Liver or Spleen is affected, is very good.

After the Obstructions are opened, you must discuss the flegm like serous humors that remain in the Veins, and in the habit of the Body by sweats; for which you must use the Decoction of Guajacum in cold Constitutions, or of China and Sarsa in those that are hot, for fifteen or twenty daies; with this Caution, That every fourth or fifth day, you give a Purge to clense the Bowels of Humors which cannot be sent forth by sweat; and which if they continue wil grow hard and putrefie, and be the occasion of Feavers, and other Diseases. For this Purpose you may use Brimstone Baths, both for drink and bathing: for by the drinking thereof, when the passages are first open by the Medicines aforesaid,

aforeſaid, the Humor that is contained in the firſt and ſecond Region of the Body, is cleanſed and ſent forth by the belly and urine; and the third Region is cleanſed by ſweating in them.

And laſtly, Copulation, if it may be legally done, after the uſe of opening Medicines, is very good; for thereby the Natural heat is ſtirred up in parts Natural, by which the Veſſels of the Womb are much enlarged. And Experience teacheth, that ſomtimes theſe Women have their Terms the firſt night after Marriage, and that others who are in good health, have them before their accuſtomed time.

Chap. 2. *Of the ſtoppage of the Terms.*

THe Terms are ſaid to be ſtopped, when in a Woman ripe of Age, which gives not ſuck, and is not with Child, there is a ſeldom, ſmal, or no evacuation of blood by the Womb, which uſed to be every month.

The cauſe of this ſtoppage is either in the Womb, or in its Veſſels, or in the blood which comes, or ought to come that way.

Divers Diſeaſes of the Womb may cauſe this Diſeaſe; namely, a cold Diſtemper, and dry, which thickeneth and bindeth the Body of the Womb; or a hot and dry diſtemper by drying the part, or burning up the nouriſhment thereof, from whence come evil humors, which being faſtened in the part, hinder the Terms from flowing. Alſo the Organical Diſeaſes of thoſe parts, as inflamation, or ſcirrhus, the turning of the inward mouth thereof, or compreſſion from the Tumors of the parts adjacent, or the Omentum or Caul growing too thick. The thickneſs of the Womb it ſelf, Ulcer, or Scars, which they leave, or from the tearing of the Cotyledones, or Mouths of the Veſſels, in a great Abortion.

The Veſſels of the Womb do often ſuffer Obſtruction, which is the chief cauſe of ſtopping of the Terms, and they come from cold and thick Humors: ſomtimes there is a ſuppreſſion of thoſe Veins by binding of them, and that is from the parts adjacent being ſtretched and ſwoln, as we ſaid in the binding or cloſing of the Womb.

The blood offending either in quantity, quality, or motion, may be a cauſe of the obſtruction of the Courſes. It offends in quantity, when it is too much or too little; too much, when it ſtretcheth out the Veins, ſo that they cannot contract themſelves to expel it; as in the bladder when it is too full of Urine, it cannot contract it ſelf to ſend it forth; too little, when the Body hath not blood enough to nouriſh it.

The blood offends in quality, when it is thicker, and more ſlimy of its own Nature, by reaſon of the cold diſtemper of the Liver, and other parts, or from the mixture of thick and flegmatick or melancholick humors, from whence commonly Obſtructions come.

The blood offends in motion, when it paſſeth other waies, as by the Noſe, vomiting, ſpittle, urine, hemorrhoids, and many other parts. I ſaw a Maid who had a Sore in her head, which opened every month, and bled plentifully; and we have ſeen many that have ſent forth blood at fixed times by their Lungs; and this evacuation was inſtead of a Menſtrual flux.

The external Cauſes, are cold and dry Air, Northern winds, often going into cold water, eſpecially in the time of their flux; too little or two much meat, either too thick and cold, or too aſtringent; alſo hot things, as too much Salt and Spice, by drying of the ſubſtance of the Liver, and other parts, and by drying up the blood, by which it groweth thick, and fit to ſtop; violent exerciſe and watchings, which do conſume the blood; long ſleep, and idleneſs, which do weaken the Natural heat, and cauſe Crudities; too long retaining of Excrements; by uſual bleeding at the Noſe, Hemorrhoids, Diarrhœa, and other evacuations by vomit, urine, or ſweat; and laſtly, great paſſions of the mind, anger, ſudden fear, ſorrow, jealouſie, and the like.

The Knowledg of this is to be taken from the Patients relation; but becauſe it comes either from Natural or Preternatural Cauſes, we ſhal lay down ſome diſtinguiſhing ſigns, leſt the Phyſitian be deceived by Women that would diſſemble their being with Child, and leſt he ſhould raſhly preſcribe Medicines to provoke Terms to Women with Child.

Firſt, If they be with Child, they have commonly their Natural Complexion; but others are pale and ill colored.

Secondly, The Symptomes which Women with Child have at the firſt, do dayly decreaſe; but in others ſtoppage of the Terms, by how much the longer the Terms ſtop, by ſo much the more the Symptomes encreaſe.

Thirdly, In Women with Child, after the third Month, you may perceive the Scituation and Motion of the Infant, by laying your hand upon the inferior Belly; in others there is a Tumor to be felt, but

but it is œdematous or flegmatick, not hard; neither is it proportionable to the Womb.

Fourthly, If a wise Midwife touch the inward Mouth of the Womb, it will not be so close shut as in women with Child, but rather hard, and contracted, and full of pain.

Fifthly, Women with Child are commonly merry, and little disturbed; but when the Terms are otherwise stopped, they are sad and sorrowful.

The Signs of the Causes are these:

The faults of the Womb which use to cause stoppage of the Terms, shal be laid down in the following Chapters; but the greatest part of them is found out by touching, seeing, and relation of the Patients.

The Obstruction and straightness of the Vessels of the Womb are known by pain in the Loyns, and parts adjacent, especially in the time the Terms should flow, and if any thing flow at that time, it is slimy, white, and blackish. Now the Diseases of the adjacent parts, which may shut the mouth of the Womb, or the Veins, will appear by their proper signs.

You may know the abounding of blood in the Veins, by the swelling of the Veins in the Thighs and Arms, especially if the Woman be fleshy and red, and have fed high. You may suppose there is want of blood, if the Woman be fat, if she have had a long Feaver went before, or loathing of meat. The evil quality of the blood is known by the evil habit of the Body, by the distemper of the Liver, and other parts, and especially by the blood it self, if you can see some of it. The preposterous motion of the blood, when it flows another way, is manifest of it self.

As to the Prognostick. The stoppage of the Terms is very dangerous, and many great diseases come thereof, and some in the Womb it self, as swellings, imposthumes, and Ulcers; others in the whol Body, and divers parts thereof, as Feavers, Obstructions, evil Habits, Loathing, Dropsie, Heartach, Cough, short Breathing, Fainting, sore Eyes, Madness, Melancholly, Headach, Joynt-gout, and the like. *Hippocrates*, *Lib.* 1. of Womens Diseases, hath shewed the encrease of Diseases from the stopping of the Terms, in these words. *The third month after the stoppage of the Terms, they begin to feel suffocation, or shortness of breath, with horrors, heavines of the Loyns, and sometimes a Feaver.* But if it last long, the Belly grows hard, they piss much, they loath meat, and watch much, they grate their Teeth in sleep; and if they continue longer stopped, the pains will be greater; but in the sixth month, that Disease which was formerly curable, will be then incurable: then she wil be troubled in mind, and faint, vomit flegm, thirsty, the Belly about the Privities will be pained, there will be a Feaver, and the Body bound, and the Urine stopped, the Back will ach, and she will stammer. Afterwards the Leggs, Feet, and Belly will swell, and the Urine be red, bloody, and pain over all the Body, especially the Neck and Back-bone, and Groyns, and so they die of a Dropsie. Thus far *Hippocrates*. But here is a doubt, because the Author saith, That in the sixt month the Disease is incurable, when Experience teacheth the contrary: and *Hippocrates* himself, 4. Epid. reports that a Maid who had her Terms stopped for seven Yeers, was restored to health by the return of them. *Hippocrates* may be reconciled to himself, by saying, That after six months the Disease is incurable, when the Terms are in the Body or Cavity of the Womb, because there they putrefie, and come to suppuration, as in the After-birth, or Blood retained. But this is not to be understood of every Suppuration.

That Stoppage is least dangerous which comes from plenty of good Blood, or fat, bleeding, or other Evacuations, because those Causes may easily be removed.

That is hardest to be cured which comes from heavines of Humors, Obstruction of Vessels, or straitnes, because that stubborn Humor, getting into the innermost passages, cannot be got forth but by long pains and Medicines, which Women are very unwilling to receive.

That stoppage which cometh from the distemper only of the Womb, is worst, because the part being hurt by propriety is hard to be cured by reason of the continual flux of Humors, which the part is disposed to receive, and therefore is called the Jakes of the whol Body.

The Cure of this Disease is divers, according to the variety of the Causes. And first, if it come from too much blood, you must abate the quantity by Phlebotomy in the Arm; for if the lower veins should be first opened, the blood would be drawn more to the Womb, where it would make greater obstruction and distention of Vessels, and break them, or cause Inflamation of the Womb.

After the Plethory, or abundance of blood is taken away, you must draw the blood down by opening the lower Veins about the time that the Patient used before to be cleansed, as also by Frictions, Ligatures, Cupping-glasses, dry, and with Scarrification.

These things done, you must relax and soften the parts of the Womb with Fomentations, and Baths, and moistening Unguents; which if they cannot master the Disease, you may give Hysterical Purges, and such as do properly provoke the Terms, which we shal after describe, using the mildest.

If want of Blood be the cause, as after long Feavers, great Evacuations, and Extenuation of the Body, you must not provoke them till you have used Restoratives, and blood be renewed, and whatsoever

ever is the cauſe of extenuation be removed; which things being done, the Terms do commonly flow of themſelves; which if they do not, but Nature forgets her office, you muſt open the inferior Veins, and uſe the Medicines afore mentioned, ſo that you take not away too much blood, becauſe the ſtrength is little, and leſt the Patient fal into a Conſumption. But here you muſt diligently mark, That every extenuation of the body doth not ſignifie want of blood, but only after great evacuations & conſuming Cauſes; for it comes to paſs ſomtimes, that the Terms ſtopt in the Veins get an evil quality, which makes the blood unfit to nouriſh: hence comes leanneſs, although the Veins be filled with much bad blood, and then large bleeding is very good, as *Galen* confirms, Comment. 3. in Lib. 6. Epid. *I* (ſaith he) *cured a Woman that had her Courſes ſtopped eight months, when ſhe was lean by drawing much blood; as alſo others. But what happened to that famous Woman was remarkable; I opened a Vein when other Phyſitians feared the ſucceſs, and were againſt me, ſaying that it muſt hurt her, not only becauſe ſhe was lean, but alſo becauſe ſhe had no ſtomach to eat. But theſe yong Phyſitians had a more Sophiſtical way, to obſerve what happened to the Patients, and to neglect the affects and Cauſes, which are the ground of Cure. I took* (to my beſt remembrance) *the firſt day, a pint and an half of blood from the woman; the next day one pint; the third, not above half a pint, or eight ounces.* Thus *Galen*. By which it is manifeſt, That from lean women, of this diſeaſe, you may take a great quantity of blood, although the women of our Age will not endure it.

The ſtoppage of the Courſes comes from a prepoſterous motion of the blood, when it is ſent forth by the Note, Vomiting, ſpitting, or Hemorrhoids, and the like: The Cure is by repelling it from thoſe parts, and bringing it to the paſſage of the Womb. Firſt (while they bleed) you muſt waſh Arms, Head, and Face, with cold Water, and keep them from the uſe of thoſe parts, eſpecially loud ſpeaking; then you muſt open a Vein beneath. Two or three daies before they bleed, apply Cupping-glaſſes to the Thighs and Calves of the Leggs, ſomtimes dry, ſomtimes with ſcarrification; by provoking the Hemorrhoids, by Frictions, Ligatures, Walking, Fomentations, Baths of opening Herbs, Oyntments, Peſſaries, Clyſters for the Womb, and the like, which ſhall be deſcribed hereafter. The uſe of a Natural Bath is principally commended, if it be of Brimſtone or bitumen; into which let the Patient go often, long before, and after meat, not above the Waſt, and at the ſame time, let the upper parts be cooled with a Fan, leſt by the heat of the Bath, they alſo wax warm.

If Blood flow from the Hemorrhoids being diverted from the Womb, it is hard to be cured; for if you uſe Attractions to the lower parts, they will go by ſtool, and if you uſe Aſtringents below, they will repel from the womb by the neerneſs of parts. Therefore there is no way of Cure but this, That after you have uſed Attractive things beneath, you apply Topical Medicines to the Womb, which may draw the Humor now in motion, more unto the Womb.

But that Suppreſſion of the Courſes is of all other moſt frequent, which is cauſed by obſtruction of the Veins of the Womb. The Cure whereof, is in a manner the ſame which hath been propounded in the Caſe of Pale and diſcolored Virgins, ſome things only being added, which do more ſpecifically reſpect the Womb.

In the firſt place therefore, All thoſe things may be uſed in their order one after another, which have been preſcribed for the Cure of the Green-ſickneſs. And for the moſt part it falls out that the Obſtructions of the Bowels being opened, the Courſes flow of their own accord: whoſe Eruption may yet be furthered by the uſe of ſuch things as cauſe the Humors to work downwards; as opening of the Inferior Veins, about that time when the Courſes have been wont to come down; or inſtead of Blood-letting, Cupping-Glaſſes faſtened unto the Hips and Ankles, both without and with Scarrification, frictions of the ſame parts, and painful bindings.

If the Diſeaſe be ſo rebellious as not to give way to the former Remedies, we muſt proceed to ſuch as by a proper and ſpecifical vertue, do move the Courſes, which are wont to be uſed under divers forms. And in the firſt place, moſt effectual Pouders, and grateful to the Taſt, are thus made:

Take *Cinnamon and Amber, of each one ſcruple: Saffron half a ſcruple. Mix all, and make them into a Pouder, to be taken divers mornings one after another.* Or,

Take *Pouder of the Roots of Madder, ſuch as Diers uſe, and Sugar Poudered, of each one ounce. Mix them, divide all into three parts; of which, give one at the time in which the Courſes ſhould flow, early in the morning in hot Wine, while the Patient is yet in her bed; wherein let her continue five hours, well covered with cloathes. If her courſes ſhall not flow the next courſe of the Moon, at the wonted time, give her the ſecond part: If yet they come not, give her the third part at the third return of the time of her Courſes.* Or,

Take *Roots of round Birthwort half a dram: Savin Leaves dried one dram and an half: Dictamnus Cretenſis, and Troches of Mirrh, without Aſſafœtida, becauſe of the ſtrong ſmell, of each one dram: Elect Cinnamon two drams: white Sugar two ounces. Make all into a moſt fine Pouder, of which let her take two drams in the morning for certain daies together, with broth of red Vetches, wherein two drams of Cinnamon, and half a dram of Saffron have been boyled.*

Moſt excellent Pills are made after this manner:

Take *Troches of Mirrh one dram: Caſtorium half a ſcruple. With Juyce of Mugwort make ſmal Pills.*

Among familiar Medicines eaſily provided, are accounted the flowers of Lavender eaten with Honey many daies together, or Conſerve of Mary-gold flowers, given to the quantity of two drams at a time.

The Blood of a wild Goat, and likewiſe of a tame one, hath mighty vertue to bring down the ſtopped Courſes, according to that preparation and doſe propounded in our Cure of the Pleuriſie.

In hot Conſtitutions, Cream of Tartar uſed many daies together in Broth, or ſome Melancholly-driving Decoction, does further the Courſes ſtopped.

But the Pills of *Montagnana* are mightily praiſed, being thus compounded:

Take *Troches of Mirrh one dram and an half: Parſley ſeed, Caſtorium, Cinnamon, of each one ſcruple: Muſk ten grains. With Juyce of Smallage form all (being poudered) into twenty two Pills, gilt with Gold. Let her take two in the morning, or at her entrance into bed, for ſome daies together.* Or,

Take *Madder Roots, and round Ariſtolochia, or Birthwort, of each three drams: Agarick and Cinnamon, of each one dram: Saffron one ſcruple: With Juyce of Mugwort, make a Maſs of Pills; whoſe doſe is one dram.*

Old Leven is commended by many, the quantity of a Cheſnut, with the ſame quantity of Sugar, given three daies together. Yet it will do more good, if pouder of the Troches of Mirrh, Dictamnus, or ſome ſuch like be mixed therewith.

The moſt uſual and profitable Decoctions are made in this manner:

Take *Roots of Parſley, and great Madder, of each two ounces: red Vetches four pugils: boyl them to a pint and an half. In the ſtrained Liquor boyl Cinnamon Pouder one dram: Saffron half a dram: Honey as much as ſhall ſuffice: mix them. Let her take ſix ounces warm, in the mornings twice a day, before her Courſes break forth, or when they begin to flow, if they flow but ſparingly.* Or,

Take *Roots of Smallage, Aſparagus, Fennel, of each one ounce: Feaverfew, Maiden-hair, Nep, Peny-royal, of each one handful: Boyl all to a quart. To four ounces of the ſtraining, ad one ounce of Syrup of Mugwort. Let her drink it hot twice a day as before.* Or,

Take *Cyperus Roots, Angelica, Valerian, and Madder of the Diers, of each half a dram: Leaves of Mugwort, Peny-royal, Savin, of each half a handful: Seeds of Carrots and Seſeleos, of each one dram:* Dictamnus Cretenſis *one dram and an half: Choyce Cinnamon four ſcruples: Saffron one ſcruple; make a Decoction to four ounces. In the ſtraining add Syrup of Mugwort and Hyſop, of each half an ounce: make a Julep for one doſe. Let her take it every other day.*

Quercetanus in his *Pharmacopœia*, doth exceedingly commend two Decoctions: the firſt of which is thus made:

Take *Gromwel ſeed, Annis ſeed, Miſſelto of the Oak, of each three drams:* Dictamnus Cretenſis *one dram: Saffron one ſcruple. Beat what is to be beaten, and ſteep all in rich white Wine twenty four hours: afterwards let them boyl a little. Of this Decoction give the Patient four ounces.*

The other Decoction is thus deſcribed:

Take *the whol Spleen or Milt of an Ox: cut it in bits, and put it in a capacious Glaſs, ſo as it may fill the Glaſs half full, adding of Cinnamon groſly poudered, one ounce: Cloves half an ounce: Saffron two drams: of the beſt white Wine as much as ſhall ſuffice only to moiſten all that is in the Glaſs. Let the Glaſs cloſely ſtopped, be put into a* Balneum Mariæ *exceeding hot, ſo that it boyl twenty four hours together, until the Spleen ſhall be boyled and conſumed into little crums, and there remains a great quantity of Broth excellently well boyled, and of a very fragrant ſmel; of which let the Patient take in the morning four ounces, continuing the ſame for four or five daies, when her Courſes ought to flow.*

Diſtilled Waters ought to be preferred before other Liquors, as being more pleaſant to the taſte: and becauſe of their ſubtil thinneſs of parts, they pierce more eaſily to the obſtructed Veſſels of the Womb.

The Preheminence above all the reſt, is by *Mercatus*, *Rodericus a Caſtro*, and *Sennartus*, given to this following:

Take *a Loaf almoſt as ſowr as Leaven, indifferently baked, and hot; take away the Cruſt, and add thereto, of Honey twelve ounces, Pouder of Nettle ſeeds, Carrot ſeeds, Amy, Annis and Fennel ſeeds, of each one dram: Troches of Gallia Moſchata, red Mirrh, of each one ſcruple: Cotula fœtida, or ſtinking Fennel, half a dram. Infuſe all in three pints of the Decoction below deſcribed, which is made of red French Beans, and red Vetches, of each half a pugil: Juniper berries one ounce: Roots of Madder, Butchers Broom, wild Rhadiſh, Aſparagus, Smallage, and*

Parſley,

Parſley, of each two ounces: Green Germander one handful: Seeds of Amy, Annis, and Fennel, of each two ounces: Boil all according to Art. Then ſtil the liquor out in Balneo Mariæ; *of which give to the Patient two ounces early in the morning. Alſo there may be added Syrup of Maiden-hair, of Opening roots, of Mugwort. Alſo the Doſe may be augmented, the following daies, if the Stomach be not offended.*

A Decoction of Guajacum or Saſſafras is good in flegmatick bodies, alſo Dictamnus Creticus may be added; taking the ſame twelve or fifteen daies without ſweating. *Facchinus* relates an Experiment thereof, writing upon the ninth of *Rhaſis*, Chap. 66. I boiled (ſaies he) the Indian wood, and added Dictamnus thereto. By which I procured both her Courſes, and Child-bearing to a Woman which had wanted her Courſes five years, and had been Barren.

The Chymiſts commend Tartarum, Vitriolatum, Spirit of Tartar, Mixtura Spiritalis, Salts of Mugwort, Bawm, Celondine roots, and Valerian.

This Treacle-Water following is mervailouſly effectual to this intent.

Take old Venice-Treacle five ounces, Red Alexandrian, Mirrh two ounces and an half, Elect Cinnamon, Oriental Saffron, of each half a dram; Camphire two drachms. Pour upon them of the beſt Spirit of Wine, till it ſtand three fingers breadth above the Ingredients, and draw out the Tincture with a gentle heat, whereunto being poured off without ſtraining, add a ſixt part of the Spirit of Tartar; The Doſe is one ſpoonful with ſome appropriate Water, or Wine.

Whilſt the aforeſaid Remedies are in Uſe, Clyſters frequently injected are exceeding good, becauſe the Womb does reſt upon the ſtraight Gut, or *Inteſtinum Rectum*; and they may thus be compounded.

Take roots of Lillies one ounce, of Orice and Valerian, half an ounce of each, of Mercury leaves two handfuls, Mugwort and Savine of each one handful, Chamomel flowers and Lavender, of each one pugil, Seeds of Caraway and Nigella of each one dram; boil all to one pint. In the ſtrained Liquor diſſolve of Hiera ſimplex, and Benedicta Laxativa, of each half an ounce, Oleum Cheirinum two ounces, Electuarium de Baccis Lauri half an ounce. Mix all into a Clyſter.

Yea, And the truth is Purgations repeated at certain convenient ſeaſons will be very good, which may be in divers manners prepared.

And in the firſt place *Galen* exceedingly commends the Pils of Hiera, ſimple and compound; becauſe over and above their purging of ſuperfluous humors, they have a faculty of opening the narrow paſſages, and of cleanſing the Womb. Or,

Take Aloes three drachms: Maſs of Cochie pills one drachm, with juice of Savine forme twenty pills; of which give the Patient three before dinner, every third day. Or,

Take Aloes one drachm: Choice Rhubarb one drachm and an half: Diagrydium one ſcruple: Myrrh and Aſarum roots of each half a drachm: Spicknard one ſcruple. With Syrup of Mugwort make a Maſs of Pil-Paſte. The doſe is from two ſcruples, to a drachm, made into pils. Or,

Take of the Maſs of Cochie-pil-paſte half a drachm: Mercurius dulcis *twenty grains, with Syrup of Roſes ſolutive forme eight pills, or ſix, Let her ſwallow them early in the morning.*

Alſo outwardly, the Courſes ſuppreſt, are wont to be holpen with theſe Topick Medicaments following, which muſt be outwardly applied, to widen the paſſages, make thin the humors, and to rouſe and awake the Expulſive faculty.

Take roots of Briony, Lillies, Cyperus, Valerian, Angelica, Aſarum, Orice, and of Parſly of each an ounce: Leaves of Mugwort, Baies. Rue, Savine, Time, Roſemary, Penyroyal, Nep, Mallows, Mercury, of each one handful: Flowers of Elder, Cheiri, Chamomel, of each two pugils: Juniper berries two ounces: Boil all in Water and white Wine, with the ſtrainings, let the Patients belly and the parts about the Privities be fomented with a ſponge.

With the ſame Decoction, the Quantity of Ingredients being augmented, may be made a Bath to ſit in; wherein the Patient may ſit up to her Navil, and the boiled Herbs being put into a bag muſt be applied to her belly. But let her take heed of ſweating, which doth ſtop the Courſes.

Take Oyl of Lillies, Dill and Rue, of each one ounce and an half: Generous Wine three ounces: Squinanth, roots of Bindweed, Angelica, the two Birthworts and Savin leaves of each half an ounce. Let them boil till the Wine be conſumed. Let them be ſtrained and the Oyl preſſed out, wherewith warmed, let the ſhare and parts about the Privities be anointed, after fomentation, or ſitting in the Bath.

Moiſt ſuffumigations are made of the Vapour of the Decoction for the Fomentation, and for the ſitting-Bath, which being moderatly heated, muſt be covered with a cover that hath a hole in it, whereunto muſt be faſtened a long pipe, which muſt reach into the neck of the Womb, through which let her receive the ſmoake morning and evening, being covered with cloaths.

A drie Suffumigation may be thus made.

Take Cloves, Cinnamon, Mace, of each two drachms: Juniper berries half an ounce: Nigella seeds one drachm: Storax two drachms. Make all into a gross pouder, which being laid on Coles, let her receive the smoake into the Womb, after her manner aforesaid. Or,

Take Storax two drachms: Frankinsence one drachm: Benjamin, Alipta Moschata, of each half an ounce: Cloves, Lignum Aloes, Cinnamon of each two scruples: With the Mucilage of Gum Tragacanth, extracted with Cinnamon Water, make little Cakes for to burn as aforesaid.

Pessaries may be made after this manner.

Take of *leaves of Mercury bruised one handful*: *Pouder of* Hiera picra, *and* Benedicta Laxativa, *of each two drachms*: *Pouder of long Birthwort one drachm*: *Honey and juyce of Mercury, as much as shall suffice, make all into a Pessary,* Or,

Take of *Agarick, Mirrh, of each two drachms*: *Galbanum half a drachm*: *Saffron one scruple*: *With clarified Honey make all into a Pessarie, which put into a warm thin rag, and conveigh into the Womb; but let it not abide long there for fear of inflamation.*

Pilulæ Cochiæ minores, brought into the form of a Pessarie, doth excellently move the Courses.

Also injections are wont to be made into the Womb, which are wont to be called Womb-Clysters; for they wash away the filth which cleaves to the sides of the Womb, and they open the internal Orifices of the Veins. Now they are made of the Decoction of the Fomentation aforesaid, leaving out the more sharp things; or with a Decoction of fat Figs, with Mugwort, Penyroyal, and Mercury; or of the juyce of Mercury alone, purified, in which a little *Benedicta Laxativa* is dissolved. For we must by no meanes use more sharp Ingredients for fear of Inflamation. Yea, and after the use of the aforesaid Injections, which ought to be retained but an hour; it will be good to Inject a Decoction of Mallows, Barley, and Violet leaves, or a little Hydromel tempered with Whey of Goats-Milk.

In an old inveterate Disease, Issues made in the Legs may do very much good. For although *Semmertus* approves not of them, because they rather derive from the Womb, and teach the humors which were wont to flow unto the Womb, to come rather that way, and hinder their inclinations to the Womb: Yet have they been found to do much good by the frequent experiences of *Mercurialis*, *Varandæus*, and others. For by those Issues the superfluous humors are continually evacuated, and the Course of the humors is guided into the inferior parts. And the derivation of superfluous humors from the Womb, is so far from hindring the Flux of Courses to the Womb; that it rather furthers the same, by making the Blood more pure, and more obedient to the command of Nature, which with the Humors aforesaid, is not drawn unto the Issues. And hereunto, that these Humors, if they be not by these waies evacuated, being retained in the Veins, they double the Obstructions, and so do augment the suppression of Courses. Howbeit, We are of opinion, that the menstrual purgations being restored to their due Course, the Issues ought to be closed up, that Nature may accustome her self to exclude superfluous Humors by the Womb.

In the Use of the Remedies aforesaid, some precepts are to be observed worthy of Note.

First, That we must never use Medicines that move the Courses, but after Universal Purgations; least the Humors being plentifully carried to the Veins of the Womb should increase Obstructions; or being much attenuated, should reach into other parts of the Body, and produce grievous Diseases. As *Schenkius* relates in his Observations, that a Physitian of *Venice* gave a Woman that wanted her Courses a certain Apozeme to move them, not having first purged her Body of Flegm; and a little after she had taken her Apozeme, she fell into a Palsey.

Secondly, That in giving such things as bring down the Courses, we must begin with the gentler, proceeding by little and little to such as are stronger.

Thirdly, That Medicaments procuring the Flux of the Courses, must be given in greater quantity than ordinary, because their vertue is abated in their long passage from the Stomach unto the Womb.

Fourthly, That the Medicaments aforesaid, are to be given either in the morning, when the Patient is fasting, or sometimes at her going into, or coming out of the Bath: For so the Medicine slipping into a warm and opened Body, doth powerfully exercise it's strength; and this it doth yet more effectually, if it be given a little before the inferior Veins be opened.

Fifthly, That Pessaries, and Womb-Clysters, or Injections, are only to be prescribed to married Women, and such as have been carnally imbraced by Men; but to Virgins we must prescribe *Nascalia* (viz. Wool dipped in the Medicament) Fomentations, Baths to sit in, and Suffumagations.

Sixtly, In Choleriek or Melancholliek Constitutions, all hot Medicaments are to be avoided, and only the gentler and milder sort are to be used; and with them temperate Aperitives, or openers, as also moistning and softning Medicaments are to be mixed.

CHAP.

Chap. 3. *Of the Immoderate Flux of the Courſes.*

WOmens monthly Courſes, being moderate in quantity, and flowing in due ſeaſon, are Natural: But if they exceed in quantity, or come too often, or ſtay too long: They are to be accounted Immoderate, and beſides the intent of Nature.

The Cauſes of this Immoderate coming down of the Courſes, are the ſame which (we in it's proper place have ſhewed) do concur to Cauſe ſpitting of Blood; *viz.* An opening of the ends of the Veins, a ſoaking of the blood through the Coates of the Veins, a forcible rending of the Veins, and their being eaten through by ſharp humors; all which are cauſed by the bloods over great abundance, Heat, Thinneſs, or Sharpneſs: By ſome blow, fall, or wound: Which we have at large declared in our Speculations touching ſpitting of blood, ſo that it is needleſs here to repeat the ſame. Let the reader be pleaſed to peruſe that Chapter.

The Signes of this Infirmity, are either of the Diſeaſe it ſelf, or of it's Cauſe. Immoderate Flux of the Courſes is known by the il-bearing of the Patient, decay of ſtrength, want of appetite to meat, indigeſtion of Humors, ill Habit of the whole Body, colour of face like a dead Corps, ſwelling of the Legs, and other more grievous maladies, cauſed by decay of Natural heat paſt away in the Blood.

To know the Cauſes, obſerve theſe ſignes following: A thin Habit of Body, and ſoftneſs of the Fleſh, with ſuch a diet as tends to increaſe the wheyiſh, and thinner parts of the Blood; and eſpecially the Blood it ſelf appearing thin and watry, in the cloaths coming from the Patient, doth ſhew that the Blood hath ſoaked through the Veins.

That the Immoderate Flux is cauſed by an opening of the ends of the Veins, or a breaking of their Coates, is known by the Foregoing of Wounds, Falls, or Bruiſes; by the uſe of dancings, long outcries, carrying unuſual weights by a Perſon corpulent and full of Blood: By ſome foregoing great heat, extream Cold, Immoderate carnal imbraces, great Anger, and the like. The ſame may alſo happen after ſore labor in Child-birth, or by the unskilful handling of a Midwife; after a miſcarriage, or after a long ſtoppage of the monthly Blood, which makes the ſame being collected in too a great quantity, breaks out on a ſudden with violence.

That there is an Exulceration in the Womb, whereby the Veins are eaten through, appears by the Bloods dropping out by little and little with a ſence of pain and ſharpneſs; and by the Bodies being repleniſhed with ſalt and ſharp Humors. Alſo the blood which comes away, is at firſt Matteriſh, Wheyiſh, Blackiſh, or Yellow; and afterward if the Exulceration increaſe, ſome bits of the parts affected are eaten off, whereupon follows a great effuſion of Blood, hard to be ſtopped. Alſo there have proceeded ſuch things as are wont to breed bad Blood, ſuch as are the uſe of ſharp things in Diet, the uſe of Salt meates, of meates putrefied, and ſuch like.

As for the Predictions belonging to this infirmity, we are to know that, all large and long-laſting Iſſues of Blood are dangerous; eſpecially thoſe from the Womb, which hurts not only her that ſuffers them, but hinders poſterity.

That which comes by a ſoaking of the Blood through the Veins, is of al others the leaſt dangerous, as cauſing leſs expence of heat and Spirits, yet it continues longer, by reaſon of the continual ſupply of raw and Wheyiſh Blood.

The breaking of Veins, and the opening of their mouths, cauſe greater danger, becauſe they do ſuddenly Iſſue forth great quantities of Blood; yet are they ſooner cured, as happening for the moſt part, only in Bodies over ful of Blood, and otherwiſe healthy.

But of all others, that which Springs from Exulceration is moſt hard to cure, becauſe where the Ulcer is, there ſome part of the ſubſtance of the Veins is periſhed, which hinders the growing together again of that breach, whence the Blood Iſſues.

If the ſick party grow daily weaker and weaker, and the Diſeaſe ſtronger and ſtronger, it portends her death.

In an elderly Woman, over great Flux of her Courſes, is commonly incurable, and deadly.

The Cure of Immoderate Flux of Courſes, muſt be in a manner the ſame, which we have preſcribed to cure the immoderate running of the Hemorroids.

For in the firſt place, to draw the Blood from the part affected, the Patient muſt bleed in her Arm, not all at once, but by degrees, now and then ſtopping the Orifice with your finger, and then letting it bleed again. She muſt bleed plentifully, as much as her ſtrength can bear. For *Hollerius* in his Comment upon the 50. Aphor. of the 5. Sect. doth teſtifie that he hath ſeen many Women cured by large Blood-letting, when the Iſſue of their Blood, could by no other remedies be ſtopped.

Rubbings, Bindings, and Cupping-glaſſes, are good to cauſe revulſion, as in the cure aforeſaid we have

have ſhewed, eſpecially if the Cupping-Glaſſes be faſtened upon her Dugs, according to that Sentence of *Hippocrates*; If you would ſtop a Womans Courſes, faſten a very large Cupping-Glaſs unto her Dugs: Howbeit, if upon the ſetting on of the Cupping-glaſs, ſhe grow ſhort breathed, you muſt quickly take it off again.

Likewiſe the ſame Purgation may ſerve which we propounded in the Cure of the Hemorrhoids; and it muſt be reiterated once or twice in a week, until the impurity of the Bowels, and the Veins be taken away. For when the Chollerick and Wheyiſh Humors are taken away, which make the blood thin and ſharp, it leaves running of it ſelf. If the Wheyiſh parts ſeem moſt to abound, Mechoacan with Rhubarb will be a good Purge.

A Vomit likewiſe doth powerfully draw the Blood upwards, and is commended by *Hippocrates*, in his Second Book of Womens Infirmities. But the Vomit muſt be gentle, and often repeated. Alſo it may ſuffice for the Patient to put her finger into her Throat, and ſo procure Vomit: Yea, and the Truth is, it may ſerve the turn, and will be very profitable for her to provoke her ſelf to Vomit before her Dinners, but ſo as not to vomit, only to uſe ſome forcing thereunto. Unto which Remedies, theſe which follow may profitably be added, as being tried by very learned Phyſitians.

Take *the Shels of two new laid Eggs burnt, Frankinſence, Maſtich, of each half an ounce: Pearls prepared, red Coral prepared, and Amber, of each two drams: Blood-ſtone and Smaragd prepared, of each half a ſcruple: Barley made without Bran, two pugils: four whites of Eggs, and if need be, add a little Water, in which red hot Steel hath been quenched, and make two Cakes, which muſt be baked ſo hard in an Oven, that they may be beaten to Pouder. Of which Pouder give from half a dram to a dram early in the morning, in a draught or meſs of Broth made of Sheeps Trotters.*

John Michael Paſchalius doth witneſs that many Women long troubled with this Infirmity, have been cured with this Pouder.

Alſo the Pouder of Egg-ſhels alone is commended, a dram thereof being given divers mornings together; and it is accounted by ſome for a Secret.

Foreſtus commends the following Pouder, which he ſaies was one of the Secrets of his Doctor or Inſtructor, *Helidæus*.

Take *a Turtle Dove moderately fat, draw it, and waſh it with aſtringent red Wine, and Roſe Water mingled together, and put an ounce of Maſtich in the Belly of it, and ſow up the belly that none of the Maſtich may fall out: Then roaſt it upon a Spit, and inſtead of Butter, baſt it with Vinegar of Roſes, and ſave the fat which ſhall drop from it for your uſe. When it is excellently well roaſted, put it into a new glazed pot or pipkin, cloſed up with ſuch Materials as the Chymiſts uſe to cloſe their Veſſels with, that nothing may vapor out. Then let it be ſet into the Oven, till it be ſo dry that it may be beaten into a Pouder, Of which Pouder, let the Patient take one ſpoonful every morning in Plantane Water, or in ſome aſtringent Decoction. And with the fat which was reſerved at the roaſting, let the Reins of her back, her groins, and Privy-part, with the ſhare, be anointed.*

Our Country-women have an ordinary Medicine of the flowers of the long-ſtalked common Thiſtle, wherewith they uſe to curdle their Milk when they would make Cheeſe. They adminiſter theſe Flowers in Broth, or other convenient Liquor. Others uſe of the Runnet of a Kid or an Hare, to the quantity of ten grains, which both ſtops the flowing of the Blood, and diſſolves that which is clotted together in the Womb.

Galen accounts Juyce of Plantane newly made, to be the beſt Medicine in the world, being given to the quantity of three or four ounces.

Solenander adds to the aforeſaid Juyce, a quantity of Colophony, and avouches it to be a remedy that never fails; his words are theſe: *To ſtop an old flux of the Courſes, take two ounces of the Juyce of Plantane, and mingle therewith a dram of Colophony poudered, and give it the Patient to drink. Let her take it four times, and ſhe ſhall be undoubtedly healed, with Gods Bleſſing.*

The Juyce of Yarrow is very convenient in this caſe, if two or three ounces thereof be given with Syrup of Coral, or ſome other convenient Syrup.

The Juyce of Nettles is no whit inferior to, or rather exceeds the former in efficacy: It may be given alone, or in mixture with others of little faculty: Or a Syrup may be made of Nettles, to be ever in a readineſs.

A Water drawn out of the moſt tender Oak Leaves, which are of a reddiſh color, ſtops the aforeſaid flux.

Mercatus makes up a very effectual Water, after this manner:

Take *a Loaf made of Wheat Flower, Barley Meal, and Rice: break it in pieces, and powr upon it ſeven pints of Water in which red hot Steel hath been quenched: Whereunto add, red Roſe Leaves dried, three pugils: juyce of Plantane a pound: the Roots of the larger Comfry, being green and bruiſed, two ounces: the Herb Horſ-tail, or Shave-graſs, one handful: the pulp of Choak-pear,*

Choak-pears, and Quinces, of each two ounces: Purſlain two handfuls: Bole Armonick one ounce: Balauſtians, and the three ſorts of Sanders, of each half an ounce. Let all theſe be diſtilled in an Alembick. Let the Patient take of this Water three ounces mixed with half an ounce of Syrup of Purſlain, or of dried Roſes.

For the more tender ſort of Women, Broths may be made of Calves feet, with Plantane Leaves, or Bloodwort. Or to thicken the Blood, a Broth may be made of red Roſe-Water alone, and the Yolks of new laid Eggs. Likewiſe a Conſerve of Bramble Roſes is good for them, being often uſed, eſpecially if their Liver be diſtempered with heat.

In all Fluxes of Blood, Practitioners do uſe to adminiſter Water and Vinegar in a large quantity to be drunk down. But in this Flux of the Courſes it is to be feared as an Enemy to the Womb, which is a Menbranous Part.

Among the Speciſick or appropriated Medicines, are reckoned, Filipendula Roots, with the outer Rind of the Mulberry-tree Root, whoſe Poudes are adminiſtred to the quantity of a dram, in ſome convenient Liquor.

The Flowers of the Nut-trees are gathered when they are ripe and ready to fall, and poudered, and a dram given in a Cup of Wine warmed in the mornings, for divers daies together. *Solenander* witneſſeth that all are cured with this Medicament. Alſo it hath a peculiar propriety to help fits of the Mother.

Spicknard in very fine Poudor, and taken to a dram in ſome convenient Liquor, ſtops the Courſes: Alſo being conveighed into the Womb in Lint, Wool, Cotton, Raw Silk, &c.

Milk in which red hot Steel hath been quenched, being drunk many daies together, is very effectual in an old flux of the Courſes; for it allayeth the ſharpneſs of the Humors, and thickens them; it nouriſheth the Body, and ſtops the Flux. *Avicenna, Rhaſis*, and the reſt of the Arabian Phyſitians, extol this Medicine to the Skies: and ſo doth *Horatius Augenius*, a noted Italian Phyſitian. Yet it is not to be uſed, if we ſuſpect the Body is not yet cleer of the vitious Humors.

The Acid Mineral Springs, whether they have their Tincture from Vitriol, Iron, or Allum Mines, do much conduce to the ſtoppage of immoderate Courſes, both by removing the Cauſes, and by ſtrengthening the Bowels affected.

The Chymiſts do much commend the Tincture of Coral, and *Vitriolum Martis* [Vitriolated Steel] and many other Medicines, which you ſhall find in their Books.

Let the Patient uſe to drink the Decoction of Maſtich, Yarrow, or of the dried Lentiſch, or Maſtich tree. Alſo the Lentiſch or Maſtich Wood, may be ſteeped in black harſh Wine, which doth very much ſtrengthen the Bowels, and ſtop defluxions.

It muſt be diligently remembred, That in an old Flux, very aſtringent and thickening Medicaments, are not to be uſed long together. For it is to be feared, leſt they ſhould fill, ſtraighten, and ſhut up the ſecret paſſages of the Body, and ſo breed Obſtructions, and very much hurt the principal Bowels, which are wont to ſuffer very much in this Diſeaſe. But it is much better to perſiſt in the uſe of ſuch things as ſtrengthen the Liver, which have ſome aſtriction, but ſo moderate as can do no harm.

Ludovicus Septalius in his Medicinal Animadverſions, in the 144. Article, gives ſuch commendations of the Decoction of Orange Peels, as of a Medicine that never fails, that it will be worth our while to tranſcribe his very words. *When ſuch Medicines as theſe* (quoth he) *have been judiciouſly adminiſtred; in the next place, ſuch Medicines as have a thickening and aſtringing quality are to be uſed; among which there is one which I cannot omit to ſet down, wherewith I have cured almoſt an infinite Number of Women troubled with this Infirmity; which I kept long as a Secret, and afterwards communicated to ſome yong Students, whom I did inform in the Art of practiſing Phyſick, and now publiſh the ſame to the whol World for the good of Man-kind: which Medicine hath ſcarce ever failed me, when there was no Veſſel of the Womb exulcerated, that fed the Flux. It is a Medicine, eaſily gotten, and eaſily made, thus:*

Take *Seven pints of Water; boyl therein the rinds of three ſowr Orrenges not throughly ripe, being cut into little thin bits or chips, and boyl them till two parts of the Water be conſumed. Give eight or nine ounces of the ſtrained Liquor to the Patient in the morning to drink. If you would have it more effectual, put an handful of Mouſ-ear into it, when it is almoſt boyled. And it will be yet more powerful, if you boyl it in* Tunbridg *water, or the like Medicinal Spring water: or if you boyl the aforeſaid Ingredients in eight pints of water, till two third parts be conſumed, and then ſtrain it, and quench red hot Steel divers times therein.*

Externally this flux may be ſtopped by Medicaments applied to the outward parts of the Patients Body.

And in the firſt place, Fomentations may be thus made:

Take *the Roots of Biſtort* [Adder-wort] *Tormentil, and the peels of Pomegranates, of each one ounce: The Leaves of Plantane, Knot-graſs, Shepheards-purſe, and Horſ-tail, of each one handful:*

handful; Cypress Nuts, Balaustians, Myrtle-berries, Sumach, of each one ounce: Boil them in Water that hath had Iron quenched in it, and in red harsh Wine mixed together. Strain out the liquor, and Bath therewith, the whole Share and Privy-parts, warmish, but not hot.

Also, Boil a piece of Sea-sponge in strong Vinegar, and lay it upon the Patients Share, and Privities, and it wil powerfully stop the immoderate Flux of Courses.

A Bath made of the aforesaid Decoction, the Dose being augmented, will be good for the Patient to sit in: But care must be taken that it be not hot, but only warmish; otherwise it wil by it's heat, the more open the Veins of the Womb. A Bath made of the Decoction of Allum is very effectual; but it causeth barrenness.

After Fomenting and Bathing, the Patient must be anointed upon her Loyns, her Share, and Privities, and between the Water-gate, and the Dung-gate (which space is called *Perinæum*, and wants an English name) with an Ointment made as followeth.

Take *Oyl of Mirtles, of Mastich, and of Quinces, of each one ounce: Bole-Armoniack, Dragons-blood, and Carabe, of each one drachm: Vinegar one spoonful. Make all into an Ointment.*

Unguentum Comitissa may also be used, or *Unguentum de bolo* newly made, or this following Cerate, which is very effectual.

Take *Ship-pitch half an ounce: Male Frankinsence one ounce: Mastich half an ounce: Turpentine one ounce: Dragons-blood, Red Roses, of each two drams. Make thereof a Cerate to be applied to the Reins of the Back.*

Plaisters are also profitably applied unto the Navil, and Loyns, made of the Mass of Plaister against Ruptures, the Plaister against the Mother, and of Mastich Plaister, either alone, or mingled together: Or of the Plaister of *Vigo* for Fractures, which is most excellent; and works it's effect without heating the Part.

The following Cataplasmes, are much more effectual, and very prevalent in a large Flux of Blood, causing danger of Death.

They are made, either of Bole-armoniack, incorporated with juyce of Plantane and a little Vinegar, and so applied.

Or of Plaister of Paris, lib. 1. incorporated with ten drachms of Gum-Arabick one pound toasted at the fire, and laid upon the Parts aforesaid in Cotton-Wool: The Whites of four Eggs being first mingled with it. *Solenander* saith, that this Cataplasm stops al Womens Fluxes in one day.

A Cataplasm, or Pultis made of Nettles, fried in a Pan, and laid upon the Share and Privities, works more kindly than the former; rather by a specifical property, then by it's astringency.

Injections made of juyce of Plantane alone, are likewise conveighed into the Womb by an Instrument for that purpose; which is very effectual, and much cryed up by Practitioners. Juyce of Knot-grass may be used to the same intent. And sometimes we are wont to add to the aforesaid Juyces, of the Mucilage, of Gum Tragacanth one ounce: Starch one drachm: Water of Rose-stalks, and Seeds three ounces, which are mixed, and Injected into the Womb. Or,

Take of *the leaves of Knot-grass, Plantane, Yarrow, Shepherds-purse, Horse-tail, of each half a handful: Boil all in Water sufficient to half a pint. In the strained liquor dissolve three drams of Acacia, Dragons-blood, Bole-Armoniack, and Blood-stone, of each one ounce: Mix all, and make thereof a Clyster for the Womb.*

A Fume made with Vinegar, poured upon a red hot Iron Plate, and received by the Patient sitting over a Close-stool, is very profitable; or a Fume may be compounded after this manner.

Take of *Frankinsence, and Mastich, of each two ounces: Mirtles and Labdanum, of each one ounce: Amber, Red Roses, Balaustians, of each half a drachm: With the infusion of Gum Tragacanth in Red-Rose Water, make Cakes to burn under a stool as before.*

John Michael Paschalius doth testifie that he cured a Woman troubled neer seven months with this Disease, with the smoak of burnt Frogs: and he affirms that the smoak of a Mules Hoof, is an experimented Remedy, wonderfully effectual in this Case.

Astringent Pessaries, are likewise usual in this Cure. Howbeit, they profit little, seeing they can hardly reach unto the Orifice of those Veins, which are opened in this Disease. But if the Veins of the Neck of the Womb are opened, they may be useful; and are thus Compounded.

Take of *Juyce of Plantane, or Knot-grass two ounces: Troches of Carabe in pouder, and Acacia, of each one drachm: Mix them with the White of an Egg, rowl them in silk, and make a Pessary.* Or.

Take of *the pouder of Hypocistis, Acacia, Bole-Armoniack, Dragons-blood, Comfry roots, Lambs-tongue, Plantane, Galls, of each half a drachm: Juyce of Purslain, or Plantane, or Syrup of Red Roses, or Myrtles, as much as shall suffice, and with Cotton Wool make a Pessary.*

Pessaries are likewise made of the leaves of Purslain, Plantane, or Knot-grass, or some other convenient

venient Herb bruiſed, and rouled in a piece of fine Linnen; or the Counteſſes Oyntment wrapt in Wool, and put into the Womb.

Neither are we to neglect the waſhing of the Patients Legs with cold Water, or ſome aſtringent Decoction, which is commonly uſed by Practitioners, and doth not a little further the ſtoppage of the immoderate Courſes.

Touching the adminiſtration of Topical Medicaments, it is to be obſerved, That aſtringent Medicines, eſpecially the ſtronger ſort of them, are not to be applied before ſufficient Revulſions have been made, eſpecially by Blood-letting: for it is to be feared leaſt they cauſe Tumors, or other worſe Diſeaſes in the Womb. Wherefore alwaies, as far as the Diſeaſe will allow time, the Cure muſt be begun with internal Medicines of a thickening and aſtringent Nature, before we make uſe of the Topical Medicines aforeſaid.

This Method of Cure aforeſaid may with Judgment be accommodated to the Flux of Courſes, ariſing either from an opening of the mouths of the Veins, or from a dreining of the blood through their Coats, or from a breaking of the Coats of the Veins: But if it ariſe from an eating or exulceration of the Coats of the Veins, it ought to be cured after the ſame manner, as an Ulcer of the Womb is cured, of which hereafter.

In the whol Courſe of the Diſeaſe, while the foreſaid Medicaments are uſed, care muſt be had to ſtrengthen the Bowels, and to correct the vitious quality of the Blood, as we ſhewed in our Cure of the Hemorrhoids.

And to conclude, When the Flux is allaid, the ſame Rules of Prevention are to be uſed in this diſeaſe, which we preſcribed concerning the Hemorrhoids.

Chap. 4. *Of the Whites.*

A Woman is ſaid to have the Whites, the Womans Flux, the Flux of the Womb, or the White Menſtruals; when Excrementitious Humors do flow from her Womb, either continually, or at leaſt without any certain order, or courſe of time obſerved in their flowing.

And the ſaid Excrementitious Humors are ſomtimes white and flegmatick, very like to Whey, or Barley Cream; ſomtime they are pale, or yellow, or green by the mixture of Choller; ſomtimes watery by the admixture of ſerous Humors: ſomtimes blackiſh, by the admixture of Melancholly; ſomtimes ſharp and Corroſive, ſo as to eat into, and exulcerate ſome parts of the Womb; ſomtimes they are of a ſtrong and beaſtly ſmel, and other whiles again, not at all offenſive in that kind.

This Diſeaſe is wont to ſeize upon grown Women for the moſt part, and ſuch as are of riper Age; yet are not Virgins alwaies free from the ſame: ſo that ſome have done ill in daring to affirm, That ſuch Maids as are troubled with this diſeaſe, have parted from their Virginity, taking their Ground from the ſtraightneſs of thoſe Paſſages Naturally: For if Virgins have the Veins of their Wombs ſo large, that their wonted Courſes can flow through them, why may not the Whites likewiſe drop out by the ſame paſſages, ſeeing they are many times more thin and fluxive than the Blood it ſelf, as being wheyiſh and chollerick. The ſame is confirmed by the produced Experience of moſt learned Phyſitians, and dayly Practice teacheth me as much, *viz.* That the moſt chaſt and perfect Virgins in the World have had this Infirmity, of whom there could be no ſuſpicion that they had been corrupted. And *Fernelius* doth witneſs, That he ſaw a Girl eight yeers old which had this Diſeaſe, and was afterward a long time grievouſly troubled therewith.

The Excrementitious Humors aforeſaid, are bred either in the whol Body, or in ſome principal Part of the Body, or in the Womb it ſelf.

If the Humors flow from the whol Body, they proceed either from bad Diet, or from a vicious habitual diſtemper of the whol Body, and they take their courſe unto the Womb as unto a Sink, or Common-ſhoar, whereinto the reſt of the parts of the Body disburden themſelves.

The particular parts, by whoſe conſent the Womb ſuffers in this Diſeaſe, are chiefly, the Brain, Stomach, Liver, Spleen, Meſentery, and the Bladder, which diſpatch their Excrements unto ſuch parts as are more weakly, and ſo more diſpoſed to receive them.

Theſe Excrementitious Humors are bred in the Womb, becauſe when it is unable to digeſt its proper nouriſhment, by means of the weakneſs of its Retentive or Concoctive Faculty, the greater part of its Aliment is turned into Excrements, being imperfectly digeſted, or corrupted rather. It is imperfectly digeſted in cold diſtempers of the Womb; and it is corrupted in hot diſtempers thereof. And ſeeing the Womb by want of Digeſtion, is defrauded of its Nutriment, it preſently draws new Aliment, which being turned into Excrements, is by the Womb expelled as unprofitable; and new Aliment is continually drawn, whereby this flux of evil Humors from the Womb, becomes both plentiful and continual. The Womb is weakened and more diſpoſed to the Reception of theſe Excrements by Child-bearing, travelling in Child-birth, Abortion, and Contuſion, Inflamation, Impoſthumes, or Ulcers.

The Signs of this Diſeaſe, are referred to the Infirmity it ſelf, to the part affected, or to the cauſe producing the Diſeaſe.

The Diſeaſe it ſelf is eaſily known by relation of the ſick party, and it is often times attended with divers Symptomes, *viz.* Paleneſs of Face, want of Appetite, ſickneſs of Stomach, ſhort breathing, weakneſs, ſwelling of the Eyes, fulneſs, penſiveneſs and ſadneſs, thick Urines, turbulent, and many other accidents, which differ according to the diverſity of the Humors offending, as we ſhall declare more diſtinctly by and by.

The part affected, and the place in which theſe Excrementitious Humors cauſing the flux are bred, may be known by theſe following tokens.

If the matter of the Flux is bred in the whol Body, theſe ſigns do ſhew it; *viz.* Wearineſs and heavineſs not proceeding from any work, of which the Patient is eaſed, having disburdened her ſelf by the flux plentifully; and then again, when new matter is collected, ſhe begins to be weary and heavy as before; her Veins are full; her Feet, Hands, and Thighs, are apt to be numbed. And theſe ſigns do eſpecially diſcover only a plenitude of Humors. But that corrupt Humors do abound in the whol Body, is known by an evil habit in the whol Body [that is, an ugly ſickly appearance in the looks, and whol outward ſtate of the Body] a puffing up of the Hands and Feet, an itching and ſtinging in the whol Body, if the Humor be ſharp, and many ſuch ſigns as theſe.

If the matter offending reſide in ſome peculiar part; the Symptomes and Excrements proper to that part, diſcover the ſame; as for example: A pain, heat, and ſwelling of the Liver, with Cholleric Excrements, do ſhew the Liver to be affected; and the ſame Symptomes happening on the left ſide, with Excrements of a Melancholick appearance, do argue the flux to ſpring from the Spleen: Flegmatick Excrements, Stomach-ſickneſs, want of Appetite, and ſomtimes extream Appetite, frequent corruption of the meat, and ſowr belchings, or fatty (as of the Dripping-pan, or over-ſcorched fleſh) are ſure tokens of the Stomachs faultineſs.

Pain of the Head, Frothy Excrements, ſome uſual evacuation by the mouth or noſtrils being ſtopped, do witneſs that flux ſprings from the Head. If none of the aforeſaid ſigns of ſome part affected appear, then we may conjecture that the flux proceeds primarily from the womb. Alſo the Woman (in ſuch a caſe) is well colored, the matter flowing is but little in quantity, being the excrement of the womb alone. There have preceded ſuch cauſes as weaken the Womb, as are hard Travel, Abortion, a Fall upon the Belly or Back, immoderate Carnal Embraces, eſpecially if the woman have been too yong married, Tumors, Ulcers, and other Infirmities of the Womb, whoſe ſigns are propounded in their proper Chapters.

The Humor cauſing the Flux is known chiefly by the colors of that which comes away, which were a little before declared, and which appear in the cloaths wherewith it is received, if, as *Hippocrates* teacheth in his ſecond Book of Womens Infirmities, the ſaid cloaths being dried, ſhall be after waſhed in Water alone, and dried in the ſhadow: for ſo they manifeſtly declare the color of that Humor which moſt abounds in the Excrements. Hereunto may be added the ſigns of an Humor abounding in the whol Body, uſually delivered in that part of the Inſtitution of Phyſick, which treats of Signs.

In the laſt place, We are to propound ſuch Signs as diſtinguiſh this Diſeaſe from others like unto it, as namely, Excretion of Purulent matter proceeding from an Ulcer of the Womb, and the Gonorrhœa, or flux of Seed.

It is diſtinguiſhed from purulent Matter by the ſigns of an Ulcer in the Womb, which ſhall be ſet down in their proper Chapter; as likewiſe, becauſe the Purulent Matter or Quittor, is much thicker, whitiſh, and leſſer in quantity, if it be digeſted rightly; but if it be of a goary, ſanious, and fleſhy appearance, like blood and water mingled, there is then blood amongſt the matter, and it is wont ſomtimes to come away with ſtrings from the Womb, and with exceeding pain; alſo the Women that have Ulcers in the Womb or its Neck, admit not of Copulation but with pain, which exaſperates their Diſeaſe; but thoſe which are troubled only with the Whites, do willingly and patiently ſuffer themſelves to be embraced by their Husbands.

In the Gonorrhœa, the matter which comes away is not ſo much in quantity, is thicker, of a more ſhining whiteneſs, holds up longer from flowing, and ſeldom or never ſtinks. But if it be a virulent or venereous Gonorrhœa (ſuch as accompanies the Letchers Pocks) it is known by ſharpneſs of Urine, Ulcers of the Privy parts, and other Signs that argue Malignity.

The Predictions or Prognoſticks of this Diſeaſe, are as followeth:

This Diſeaſe in one reſpect may be called good, in another reſpect bad: Good, foraſmuch as commonly it is not attended with any danger of death; and bad, becauſe it is a ſtubborn Diſeaſe, long laſting, and moſt exceeding hard to be cured; foraſmuch as the flux of evil Humors having once taken this courſe, is very hardly turned out of its Channel, becauſe the Womb (as we ſaid before) is the Draught of the whol Body, whereby even in time of Health, the ſuperfluous Humors of the whol Body are monthly evacuated.

If

If this Infirmity get head, it may bring many other Evils upon the Patient, as Barrenneſs, falling down of the Womb, Exulceration, Cachexia, Dropſie, and Conſumption.

A Flux of Whites, blewiſh, bloody, ſtinking, is worſe than the white, pale, not ſtinking.

The longer this Diſeaſe hath laſted, the harder it is to cure.

It attends old Women to the grave for the moſt part, becauſe of their abounding with flegm, and the weakneſs of their Concoctive Faculty.

The Cure of this Diſeaſe is to be begun by a convenient purging of the Peccant Humor. And becauſe flegmatick and wheyiſh Humors do moſt commonly offend, ſuch things as purge thoſe Humors, muſt chiefly be uſed, and with them Purgers of Choller, or Expellers of Melancholly muſt be mingled, according as Choller or Melancholly is adjoyned to the Humor offending. An Apozeme therefore may be appointed both altering and purging for four or five daies by way of a ſolemn purgation, alwaies remembring that to the purging Medicaments, ſome aſtringent and corroborating things are to be added, leſt the Humors of the Body being ſtirred, ſhould fall more abundantly into the Womb.

Touching Blood-letting, it is a queſtion, whether it be convenient in this Diſeaſe or nor: For ſeeing this Flux is cauſed by ill Humors in the Body, which by Blood-letting are drawn into the Veins and ſo may corrupt the Maſs of blood; it ſeems there is in this caſe no place for bleeding. Alſo, ſince in this lingring Diſeaſe, the Patients ſtrength is much abated, and the Body often brought into a Conſumption, it ſeems unfit to weaken it yet more by blood-letting, and to defrauding it of its nouriſhment. Which Controverſie is thus decided; That if the flux be not pure and ſimple, but in ſome meaſure mingled with Blood, and it appear reddiſh, that then a Vein may be opened; as alſo if the Liver be very much heated, and the ſharpneſs of Choller be joyned with the flux. In other Caſes, eſpecially if the flux have endured long, it is better to abſtain from Blood-letting.

Bindings of the upper parts of the Body, and Cupping-glaſſes applied to the ſhoulder-blades, and to the back, wil be very uſeful to draw the Humors upward; alſo rubbings of thoſe parts wil be ſpecially profitable, firſt with finer and ſofter cloaths, than with rougher and courſer, which *Galen* dayly practiſed upon the Wife of *Boetius*, whom he cured in the ſpace of thirteen daies, as himſelf relates in his Book of Prognoſticks dedicated to *Poſthumus*, Chap. 8.

And beſides the Univerſal Purgation already propounded, ordinary Purgations are alſo to be adminiſtred, and frequently reiterated, that the ſuperfluity of Excrements may be the better evacuated by little and little, and that Nature may get a cuſtom to void thoſe Humors by ſtool, which formerly had their recourſe unto the Womb. To this intent, Magiſterial Syrups, Pills, and uſual Opiates may be compounded, ſuitable to the temper of the Patient, and the Humors offending. In this Diſeaſe cauſed by flegm, *Mercatus* commends a Syrup of the Decoction of *Lignum vitæ*, with Senna, Turbith, and Agarick; as alſo the following Pills:

Take *of the Maſs of Pills of Hiera picra, one dram: Agarick trochiſcated one dram and an half: with Honey of Roſes make them into Pills, of which let the Patient take early in the morning ſix or ſeven every third day: afterward, only three of them every fift or ſixt day.*

Or for the greater Aſtriction, as wel as purging, they may be thus compounded, in whatever Complexion.

Take *Choyce Rhubarb oft-times ſprinkled with the Juyce of Roſes, two drams: Citrine colored, white and black Myrobalans ſteeped in the Juyce of Roſes, of each one dram: Maſtich one ſcruple: Spicknard half a ſcruple: With Syrup of Roſes make all into a Maſs of Pills. Let the Doſe be one dram twice in a week.*

For a Flux ariſing of Seroſity, or Wheyiſh Excrements, Jallap is moſt excellent, which may be thus uſed:

Take *Jallap finely poudered one dram: Cinnamon finely poudered half a ſcruple. Mix them, and with a draught of Chicken Broth, give it the Patient in the morning.*

A Laxative Ptiſan dayly taken for a month together, hath cured a ſtubborn Flux of Whites, when nothing elſe could, as is to be ſeen in our Book of Medicinal Obſervations.

Vomiting is likewiſe much commended in this Diſeaſe, eſpecially in ſuch as are eaſie to vomit, becauſe ſuch indigeſted humors as are wont to be gathered about the Stomach, are hereby both evacuated, and powerfully revelled or drawn back from the Womb. Among convenient Vomits, Diaſarum of *Fernelius* his Invention is commended, half an ounce whereof, given in Water and Honey, or with one ounce of Oxymel, and warm Chicken Broth, twice or thrice in a month, moves three or four Vomits, without any trouble.

After ſufficient Purgations, ſweat may be procured to expel the remnants of the Excrementitious Humor; and alſo to cauſe a further Revulſion of the Humors falling into the Womb.

To this intent, a Decoction of *Lignum vitæ*, and Saſſaphras, will be good in ſuch as are flegmatick; and of China and Sarſaparilla in ſuch as are Chollerick and Melancholick, cooling and temperate Herbs being added, leſt the evil Humors be more exaſperated, and become more ſharp.

Or Sweat may be provoked by a Decoction of hot Herbs, as Nep, Calaminth, Fennel, Hyssop, Elecampane, Chamomel, Dill, and such like, the evaporation of which Herbs being artificially received upon the Patients Body, will procure sweat. A Bath may also be made of the same Decoction, by which sweat may be provoked. But in hotter Constitutions, a Bath of fresh fair Water blood-warm, will be sufficient, in which moderate and gentle sweats only may be procured.

Sulphurous Baths do also powerfully cause sweat, and consume the reliques of this Disease: and by help of such Baths we have known some Women cured, that no other means could help.

As touching Pils-driving Medicines, its a weighty question whether or no they are fit to be administred in this Disease? For they do not only provoke Urine, but the Courses likewise, by heating and attenuating the Humors contained in the Veins. Yet are they allowed by all Authors, and by *Galen* himself, who used them in the Cure of the Wife of *Boetius*: And the reason is, Because Pils-drivers do provoke Urine Primarily, and the Courses Secondarily, and as it were by accident or chance. Again, the Kidneys do perpetually draw Wheyish Humors unto themselves, whereas the Womb does only receive them; whereupon it is credible that the greatest part of such Humors, will have recourse unto the wates of Urine.

Now the Pil-driver which *Galen* used in the foresaid Woman, is a Decoction of Asarum and Smallage in fair Water; howbeit, it will be better temper'd, if it be made in Succhory Water.

A more compounded Pils-driving Broth, may be thus made:

Take *the Roots of Asarum, and of Smallage, of each one ounce: Leaves of Calaminth, and Soldanella, of each one handful: Elder flowers half a handful: Polypody, and Carthamus seeds, of each half an ounce: boyl all to a pint. Give five ounces of the Liquor or Broth strained, in the morning. If you would make it purgative, add a little Agarick, and a little Turbith boyled with the rest, in a Bag.*

It's questioned whether Issues in the Legs are good for this Disease; for by drawing the Humors downwards, they may decrease the Flux. Howbeit, experience hath shewed that they do good in old Fluxes, because by such passages, some part of the Excrementitious Humor is voided.

If Choleick and sharp Humors cause this Disease; not only purgers of Choller are to be given, but likewise Alteratives which cool and thicken, and are moderately Astringent; such as these Juleps following.

Take of *the leaves of Succory with the roots, of Endive, Borrage, Lettice, and Purslain, of each half an handful: of new Sebestens and Jujubes, of each seven in number: of the four greater cool Seeds, and white Poppy Seeds, of each half a drachm: of red Rose-leaves a pugil. Boil all in Water sufficient, unto a pint, and in the strained liquor dissolve Syrup of Quinces, or of dried Red Roses three ounces, and make a Julep, for three Doses.*

But if Melancholick humors abound, they are to be altered and Purged away, by Medicines proper to that intent.

The use of Chalybeate milk taken forty daies together, the quantity of four or five ounces, is very proper for either of the aforesaid Humors; whereunto may be added towards the end, a little Bole-armoniack, or *Terra Sigillata*.

In the whole Course of Curing, it is to be considered, whether any part of the Body be misaffected, and so may send the matter of the Flux into the Womb; and if so, then care must be taken for the use of that part.

For if Humors flowing from the Brain, do cause this Disease, Remedies are to be applied to that part; especially such as revel and divert the Fluxion, *viz.* Cupping-glasses frequently fastned upon the shoulders and Back, Medicines snuff up into the Nostrils, Masticatories, Vesicatories, and Issues made in the hinder part of the Head, or in the nape of the Neck; instead where of Setons may be used, which are more effectual. And *Fabritius Hildanus* in the forty one Cure of his first Century, relates that he cured a Woman long troubled with the Whites, and thereby Barren, by a Seton.

If the Humors flow from the Stomach, Liver, or any other part, suitable Remedies must be applied to that part.

The Body being prepared, and the offending Humor for the most part evacuated, or derived another way: We must proceed to corroborating and Astringent Medicaments. But they must never be used until the Antecedent matter be wel evacuated, and diverted. Otherwise, those Humors retained, do rush into the more noble parts, and stir up more grievous Symptoms. As *Galen* in the afore-cited place relates to have befallen the Wife of *Boetius*, whose Belly, swelled, by meanes of the unseasonable use of Astringents, by which the Wheyish Humors were retained in her Body, which were wont to pass away in the Flux. It is likewise to be remembred, that whilst we are in the use of Astringent Remedies, we do then divert the Antecedent Matter, and hinder the same from increasing, by the Remedies aforesaid. Amongst these principal corroborating Medicines, Treacle is reckoned, which is to be used in flegmatick Constitutions. Conserve of Roses, and of Wormwood,

my

may be mingled with the Treacle; Or the following Opiate may be compounded,

Take *Conſerve of Roſemary flowers one ounce: Conſerve of Calamus Aromaticus two drachms: Species of Diarrhodon Abbatis, and of Aromaticum Roſatum, of each one drachm: Red Coral prepared half a drachm: Treacle two drachms; with Syrup of preſerved Citron peeles Make all into an Electuary.* Or,

Take *old Conſerve of Red Roſes, Roots of Comfry, Bugloſs, and Citron peeles, of each one ounce: Red Coral burnt, ſhavings of Ivory, Bole-armoniack,* Terra Sigillata, *Dragons-blood, of each one drachm; with Syrup of Red Roſes dried: make all into an Opiate.*

The pouder of Sage, Sarſa-parilla, and Baulaſtians taken every morning in broath, is the Court-Ladies Medicine.

Zecheus commends this following Electuary, which he had often uſed with happy Succeſs.

Take *Gum Arabick, and Gum Tragacanth, of each two drachms: white and red Coral, burnt Eg-ſhels, Harts-horn, Dill ſeeds, Amber, of each four ſcruples: Honey of Roſes, as much, as will make all into an Electuary. Of which give half an ounce two hours before meat. Let the Patient ſwallow it down, and drink after it four ounces of Plantane Water, mingled with two drachms of red Wine.*

Juleps may be made of Roſe-water, Knotgraſs, and Plantane waters, with the Syrup of Myrtles, dried Roſes, and the like: Some of the aforeſaid pouders being added.

Mercurialis ſaies he frequently uſed a Decoction of Oak-leaves, with the Runnet of an Hare; wherewith he cured many Women of this Diſeaſe. His manner of making his Medicine was thus.

Take of *the Decoction of Oak-leaves five or ſix ounces: of the Runnet of an Hare, one dram: Let her take this Medicine eight or ten daies.*

When the Diſeaſe comes from Choller, the following Syrup may be prepared, which is ſtrengthening, Aſtringent, and cooling. Thus,

Take *red Roſe Water four pints: Spirit of Vitriol, ſo much as will make the Water a little ſharp; but ſo as ſcarce to be perceived by the taſte: red Roſes dried three pugils: Steep them in the Water cold, two daies; Strain it, and add thereto ſo much Sugar of Roſes, as will make a Syrup.*

And Finally, Thoſe Aſtringent remedies muſtred up in the former Chapter, touching the Immoderate Flux of Courſes, may be likewiſe uſeful in this Cure.

The Patient may uſe inſtead of ordinary drink, a Diet drink of China-roots, or Maſtich wood, with Aſtringent Wine mingled.

The ſame time that the Patient takes in ſuch things as are Aſtringent, and do ſtrengthen the Womb, ſhe muſt likewiſe uſe outward Remedies applied to the place affected, *viz.* Fomentations, Baths to ſit in, Oyntments, Plaiſters, Injections, Fumigations, and Peſſaries; ſuch as have been preſcribed againſt Immoderate Courſes.

But before theſe external Aſtringents are applied, the Womb muſt be well clenſed. Otherwiſe ſuch impurities would be therein retained, as returning back into the Body, may cauſe more grievous Diſeaſes. And in our clenſing, we muſt regard the Humor offending; for one ſort of Clenſers are fit for Flegmatick, another for Chollerick Humors.

If the Humor be Chollerick, let the Clenſing Injections be made of Barley-Water, Whey, Water ſweetened with Sugar. If it be Flegmatick, let them be made of Hydromel, or of the Decoction of Wormwood, Fever-few, and the like.

Alſo a Detergent Peſſary may be made of Treacle, and Turpentine; or of Mercury leaves bruiſed, and wrapped up in a fine Linnen rag very thin worn.

Let the Patient uſe theſe Clenſers, before the Aſtringents be applied, until her Womb be well purified; which may be known, if little or no Humors come therefrom.

After the Uſe of the Clenſers, the Fumes are firſt to be received over a Cloſe-ſtool, becauſe they dry and ſtrengthen the Womb; and they may fitly be made of Frankinſence, Ladanum, Maſtich, Sanders, Nutmeg, and Red-Roſe leaves. And afterwards we muſt proceed to other Aſtringent Remedies.

Chap. 5. *Madneſs from the Womb.*

WOmb-Furie is a ſort of Madneſs, ariſing from a vehement and unbridled deſire of Carnal Imbracement, which deſire diſthrones the Rational Faculy ſo far, that the Patient utters wanton and laſcivious Speeches, in all places, and companies, and having caſt off all Modeſty, madly ſeeks after Carnal Copulation, and invites men to have to do with her in that way.

This Immoderate deſire of Carnal Conjunction, ſprings from the abundance of Seed, from it's Acrimony,

crimony, and heat transceading the bounds of Nature, whereby it is made to heave and work in the Seminal vessels, as Yest works, whereby the parts made for generation, are vehemently stirred up, and inflamed with lustful desires. And from the same Seminal matter so affected, Vapors ascend unto the Brain, which disturb the Rational Faculty, and depose it from its throne. Howbeit, The Immoderate appetite of carnal Conjunction alone, without the help of any such vapors, is able of it self to master the Rational faculty, as also all other Immoderate passions; but especially Immoderate Love, which is called *Erotica affectus*, or Love-Melancholly.

Now the Seed acquires the aforesaid qualities, when it is over long retained in Bodies prone to lust, and full of heat; and therefore this Disease is incident to Virgins, and young Widows peculiarly; although it may also betide married Women, that have impotent Husbands, or such as they do not much affect, whereby their Seminary Vessels are not sufficiently disburthened, or their amorous affections duly satisfied.

Some hold, That the Seed being corrupted, acquires a malignant quality, which causes these grievous Symptoms. But they are not weldable, so holding, to shew any difference between this Disease, and fits of the Mother, which arise from the Seed being corrupted, and thereby infected with a malignant quality. For although several degrees of putrefaction do produce different degrees of malignity, from whence a great variety of Symptoms are wont to arise; yet these manifest qualities aforesaid, *viz.* great plenty of Seed, it's heat, Acrimony, and Fermentation in excess, together with the great heat of the genital parts; are sufficient to produce this Disease we treat of.

Now the Causes producing so hot, plentiful, and sharp stinging Seed, are youthful age, Sanguine complexion, and Cholerick, or melancholly adust; meats that nourish much, a plentiful table, especially if the meats be spiced; the frequent smel of Spices, Musk, Amber-greece, and such like: large sleeping, and upon soft beds filled with Feathers, or down; amorous Courtings, reading of lascivious Books, Dancings, and other pleasures usual in the meetings of youthful persons.

The Signes of this Disease may easily be gathered out of what hath been already said. But because it is wont to discover it self gradually, by little and little; it is fit to relate it's progress. In the beginning, whilst the sick persons do yet enjoy their understanding, they are more sad, and silent than ordinary, but with a wanton rowling of their Eyes, and a ruddyness of countenance; which ruddiness, is sometime more then at others? especially when mention is made of matters belonging to bodily lust, for then their breathing is changed, and their Pulse too, by Sympathy of the Heart, which made *Galen* boast that he knew the furious lusts of Women by their Pulse; because such Lovers, do of a sudden undergo divers changes of their Pulse, when desirable objects are presented unto them, or brought into their remembrance. Afterwards when the Disease is exasperated, they begin to scold, and to weep, and ever and anon they fall a laughing, they speak many things without rime, or reason unadvisedly, out of which no certain sence can be gathered; a while after, they repent of this their folly, until another fit take them, by reason of the inordinate motion of the peccant matter, which observes no certain period in it's Fermentations. Women possessed with this kind of dotage, when the Disease is come to it's height, do openly before all the world ask men to lie with them expressing the actions of Generation in the most proper, and broadest language, their mother tongue affords.

As for the Prognosticks of this Disease. It is a curable sickness, if meanes be used in time. But if it continue long, and take firm rooting, it turns into a true and perfect Madness.

There is a great hope of Recovery, when the distances between the fits begin to be longer than ordinary, or when the Patients Body, being grown lean becometh fat again, and when mention of matters pertaining to Generation, doth no longer affect or disturb them.

The Cure of this Disease tends to correct the hot distemper of the Bowels; especially of the Womb, and the Blood, and Seed; likewise to evacuate the sharp Humors, and Seminal matter offending. All which may be done by the following Remedies.

And in the first place, Blood must be often drawn, as far as the Patients strength can bear: that so the whol Mass of Blood, and the Womb it self may be cooled, and the fervent Blood may be withdrawn from the Veins of the Womb.

And if the Patients monthly Courses be stopt, the inferior Veins are afterwards to be opened, that they may by that means be brought down.

But if the Blood seems to have recourse to the Hemorrhoid Veins, which is known by their swelling and redness; the said Veins are to be opened by Application of Leeches

Afterwards a Purgation is to be given, made of the gentler sort of Medicines purging Choller or Melancholly, according as the one or other Humor shal seem to abound.

This purgation is to be followed by Juleps that prepare the matter offending, *Viz.* such as cool and gently open; which must be given three daies together.

Then a more strong purgation is to be administred, which may wholy extirpate the foresaid humors. To which intent these Purging Medicaments may be used, which was set down in our Cure of Madness, which must be now and then repeated.

After

After iterated Purgations, the following Bath being frequently uſed in the whol courſe of the diſeaſe, will be very uſefull to cool the whol Bodie, and temper the fervor of the peccant Humour.

Take *Leaves of Lettice, Willow-tree, Water-lillies, Vine-tree, Purſlain, Penny-wort, of each a handful: Flowers of Violet, Water-lilly and Roſes, of each two handfulls. Boyle all for a Bath, into which Blood-warm let the Patient enter, twice in a day, without ſweating, far from meal-tide.*

And forasmuch as a compleat, and entire Bathing cannot conveniently be continued for ſo many daies together; at leaſt the Patient may Bath her lower parts frequently in a part of the aforeſaid Decoction, yea or of meer Water, and the liquor muſt be only warmiſh: For the prime intention of this Cure is, that the Womb may be cooled to the purpoſe: which is confirmed by a remarkable Experiment propounded by Dr. *Harvey*, in his Treatiſe of the Child-bearing of a noble Lady, who had been more than ten yeers beſide her ſelf, by reaſon of this Womb-fury; whoſe Womb (after all things had been tried to reduce her to her wits, in vain) fell out, which they did not put up til the coldneſs of the external Air had healed its diſtemper; the event was, as the Doctor imagin'd, and ſhe grew quickly well, and her Womb was at laſt reſtored to its proper place.

For the greater cooling of the Body, it may be convenient to give the Patient Whey to drink many daies together.

And to be brief, Whatever hath been preſcribed in our Cures of Madneſs and Hypochondriacal Melancholly, will be good in this Diſeaſe, according as it ſhal be cauſed either by Choller or Melancholly.

Unto all which may be added ſuch things, which by a peculiar property, diminiſh and cool the Seed: Among which take theſe that follow for example.

Take *Leaves of Water-lilly, Willow, Agnus Caſtus, of each four handfuls: Lettice, Purſlain, Penny-wort, or Two-penny Graſs, of each a handful: the four larger cooling Seeds, Lettice, and white Poppy ſeeds, of each half an ounce: Dill ſeeds two drams: the flowers of Water-lilly, and Violets, of each one handful. Let all be ſtamped, being freſh, and let them be ſprinkled with Juyce of Lemmons, and diſtilled in Balneo Mariæ; and to every pint of the Water, add a dram of Camphire. Let the Patient take an ounce divers times.*

Or of all, or ſome of the Simples aforeſaid, a Decoction may be made, and ſweetened with Sugar, and a little Camphire put to it, to be taken divers times one after another.

Or an Emulſion may be made of the greater cool Seeds, Lettice ſeeds, and white Poppy ſeeds, extracted with the Waters of Lettice, Willow and Water-lillies, and ſweetened with Syrup of Violets.

An Electuary may be preſcribed after this manner:

Take *Conſerve of the Flowers of Water-lillies, Violets, and Agnus Caſtus, of each half an ounce: Conſerve of Roſes half an ounce: Lettice Stalks preſerved one ounce: Coral and Smaragd prepared, of each one dram: with Syrup of Violets, and water-lillies, make an Opiate.*

In the greateſt extremity of the Patients raving, ſuch things as procure ſleep, are very profitable, both inward and outward Medicaments, as they are ſet down in the Cure of Phrenzy and Madneſs.

In the whol courſe of the Diſeaſe, Clyſters which cool and gently purge, are to be uſed, taking heed of ſharp Clyſters, and ſuch as vehemently purge, which do exagitate the Humor contained in the Womb, or its Veſſels, whereby the Symptomes are wont to become more fiery.

Alſo Injections may be made into the Womb, of the Decoction of ſuch Herbs as have formerly been ſet down for Baths and other Remedies, whereunto *Sal Saturni* may profitably be added.

Frequent Clyſters may likewiſe be good to the ſame intent, being made of Vinegar allaied with Water.

Alſo cooling Oyntments are to be applied to the Loyns, Privity, the Share, and between the Water-gate, and the Dung-gate, made of Oyl of Water-lillies, Oyntment of Roſes, *Unguentum Album Camphoratum*, with the Juyces of Nightſhade, Henbane, and Water-lillies, melted together, adding a little Camphire.

Alſo a Plate of Lead is good to be worn continually upon the Reins.

In regard of the immediate Cauſe, ſeeing the evacuation of the ſharp and corrupted Seed, may cure the Diſeaſe; it is very good Advice in the Beginning of the Diſeaſe, before the Patient begins manifeſtly to rave, or in the ſpace between her fits, when ſhe is pretty well, to marry her to a luſty yong man. For ſo the Womb being ſatisfied, and the offenſive Matter contained in its Veſſels being emptied, the Patient may peradventure be cured.

But if the Patient cannot ſo conveniently be married, or the condition of her life will not bear that eſtate, ſome adviſe that the Genital Parts ſhould be by a cunning Midwife ſo handled and rubbed, as to cauſe an Evacuation of the over-abounding Sperm. But that being a thing not ſo allowable, it may ſuffice whilſt the Patient is in the Bath, to rub gently her Belly on the Region of the Womb, not

coming

coming neer the Privy parts, that the luke-warm temper of the Water may moderate the hotness of the Womb, and that it may by the moisture be so relaxed, as of its own accord to expel the Seminal Excrement, and that nothing else be done with the hand, save a little to open the Womb, so as the Water may pass into its more inward parts; forasmuch as the water will operate as much as any of those Medicines which are used to extinguish the seed withal.

Pessaries may be compounded to the same intent of the Leaves of Mercury bruised, with a little Myrrh or the Powder of Aristolochia or Birthwort; which must be put up, when the Patient is in the Bath, lest otherwise the VVomb should be over-heated; and after an hour, it must be taken away. And afterward, let an Injection be made into the VVomb of VVhey, or Barley water, with a little Juyce of Nightshade, Houseleek, or Hemlock, which is specially commended in this Disease.

To purge out the Seed, the following Bolus or Morsel will be very profitable.

Take *of Venice Turpentine three drams: Agarick trochiscated one dram: Carrot seed, Hemp-seed, and Lignum Aloes powdered, of each eight grains: With Sugar make all into a Bolus or Morsel to be swallowed.*

If the Disease do yet continue, let Issues be made in her Thighs; for nothing is better than by such meanes to draw the matter downward, from the Womb, to those inferior parts.

And if swellings of the Spleen shall arise, and Obstructions, during this Cure, as it often times happens; they must be carefully cured with their proper Medicaments.

Finally, Because in this Disease the Brain and Heart, are grievously affected, by reason of Vapors arising from the Womb, they are both of them diligently to be provided for; the Brain being secured by rubbing and chafing the lower parts, and by Cupping-glasses frequently fastened upon the Hipps, and Groins; and the heart defended by Cordial things outwardly applied, both Liquid and Solid, such as are described in our Chapter, touching decay of strength.

Chap. 6. *Of the Mother-Fits, or Womb-sickness.*

WHen Seed and Menstrual Blood, are retained in Women besides the intent of Nature, they putrefie and are corrupted, and attain a malignant and venemous quality: from whence venemous Vapors are elevated and carried to divers parts of the Body, from whence divers Symptomes do arise, and those so divers, that *Democritus* might justly say in his Letter to *Hippocrates*, That the VVomb is Author of a thousand sad Sorrows, and innumerable Calamities. And *Hippocrates* himself saies in his Book of Virgins Diseases, That miserable VVoman-kind is commonly laded with incomprehensible and manifold Diseases. All which Infirmities we intend to explain in this Chapter, under the name of Mother-Fits: herein imitating *Galen*, who in his sixt Book of Parts Affected, and the fifth Chapter, saies that the Mother, or Hysterical Passion, is but one name indeed, yet comprehending under it divers and innumerable Accidents. Notwithstanding all late Writers in a manner, do handle the Suffocation of the Womb, under the Title of Hysterical Passion, calling a particular Symptome by such a name as is common to many others, because it, of all the rest, is most frequent, and most troublesom. But herein the very best Authors seem to have been superfluous in their Treatises of Womens Diseases, while in different Chapters they describe several Diseases springing from the Womb, viz. Suffocation of the Womb, Head-ach, Epileptical fits, Palpitations of the Heart, Pulsation of the Arteries about the short Ribs, and in the Back, the Diseases of the Stomach, Liver, and Spleen arising from the Womb, and divers pains in sundry parts of the Body arising therefrom; seeing all these Infirmities do arise from one and the same cause, and are to be cured by the self same Medicines; so that the aforesaid Authors, are fain to repeat the same things over and over, in several Chapters, not without much wearines to the Reader.

We therefore, That we may more briefly, and methodically set down the Nature of all these infirmities, think it worth our labor, first to set down the universal Causes of them all; and afterwards to declare how those Diseases arise from the said Causes.

We have shewed in the beginning of this Chapter, that there are two special Causes of all these Symptoms, *viz.* the Womans Seed, and the Menstrual Blood, being retained beside the intent of Nature, and corrupted, and possessed of a malignant, and venemous quality; out of which malignant Vapors, do arise, and afflict divers parts of the Body. Unto which Doctrine generally propounded, two other things of greatest moment must be added, *viz.* First, That not only the Seed and menstrual Blood, do produce Hysterical, or Womb-sicknesses; but divers Humors also of an excrementitious Nature flowing into the VVomb, and by a long abiding, growing putrefied, and sending out filthy Vapors. This is verified by many Ancient VVomen, who being destitute of menstrual Blood and of Seed, are yet very much subject to these VVomb-sicknesses or Hysterical passions. Secondly, that not only vapors arising out of the aforesaid substances, are causes of these distempers, but the very Humors themselves are a cause, which finding no free vent by

the Veins of the Womb (into which as a Common-ſhore Nature diſburthens ſuperfluous Humors) by reaſon of the ſtoppage of the Monthly Courſes or of the Whites; they flow back again into the ſuperior parts of the Body, and doe infect the ſaid parts with that vitious quality, which they have contracted by their long abiding in the Veſſels of the Womb, or by their mixture with Seed, or Menſtrual Blood corrupted.

Theſe Foundations being thus laid down, let us ſee how Hyſterical Symptomes are ſtirred up by the Cauſes aforelaid, beginning with the Suffocation, or ſtrangling fits of the Mother, which is the moſt frequent and principal Sickneſs of theſe kind of Women, being accompanied with very many, and thoſe moſt grievous Symptomes. For beſides their breathing impaired, and ſomtimes aboliſhed, their whol Body becomes cold, their Speech and Pulſe is intercepted, ſo that they lie like dead Women; and ſome have been accounted dead, and laid out for Burial, and yet afterward Revived.

Now this Sickneſs comes by fits, which makes their returns ſomtimes ſooner, ſomtimes later; and endure ſomtimes a longer, ſomtimes a ſhorter time, according to the quantity of the Humor offending, which is ſomtimes quickly collected, and ſomtimes long in gathering; ſomtimes ſoon diſcuſſed, and ſomtimes long before it can be diſcuſt: For ſuch like Cauſes of Diſeaſes in the Body of Man, have their times of digeſtion and exaltation; which having arrived unto, they do ſuddenly, and as it were in a moment, break forth into action. Yea, and ſuch Humors being already collected in the Body, may for a ſeaſon lie hid, until being ſtirred by ſome internal or external Cauſe, they ſhed forth their poyſonous blaſts and vapors into other parts of the Body. Now the moſt frequent and noted Cauſes of this Commotion and Agitation of theſe Humors, are ſweet ſmelling things coming neer the Patients Noſe, or ſweet Meats taken in, which quickly bring Women ſubject to this Infirmity, into their fits; alſo vehement Anger, Terror, and other grievous Paſſions of the Mind.

Now there are divers Degrees of this Sickneſs, according as the Matter offending differs in Quantity, or Malignity. For ſomtimes the Choaking-fits, with want of breathing, are light and ſoon go over; ſomtimes it is extream, ſo that the Patient breaths not at all, and is attended with other Hyſterical or Womb-ſickneſſes, ſuch as Vomitings, Ravings, Convulſions, and Swoonings, or Faintings away.

And for the moſt part, more grievous Symptomes do ariſe from corrupted Seed, than from Menſtrual Blood, or other corrupted Humors. For look how much Seed retaining its Natural Diſpoſition, is of a more excellent Nature than Menſtrual Blood, by ſo much does it degenerate when corrupted, into a greater or worſer kind of Venom or Poyſon.

There are likewiſe other Differences of this Choaking Mother-ſickneſs, to be obſerved, viz. That ſomtimes the Patients have their Breath ſtopt as it were, ſomtimes they complain that they are choaked, as it were with a Rope that ſtrangled them; and ſomtimes their breathing is much abated, or aboliſhed, without any pain or ſence of ſtrangling. The Reaſon of which diverſity is this; That the ſimple Suffocation, and difficulty of breathing, do ariſe from abundance of Vapors, which do ſomtimes very much abound in Hyſterical or Womb-ſick Women, eſpecially when the Hyſterical Paſſion, and Hypochondriacal Melancholly are joyned together. Which Vapors or Winds, do compreſs the Midrif and Lungs, as it is wont to fall out in the windy Aſthma; but the ſence of choaking, in which the Patient feels her ſelf as it were ſtrangled in her Throat, depends upon a ſpecial property of the venemous Vapor; as there are other Poyſons in the greater World, which have ſuch a property of throatleing and choaking, as is known of one ſort of Muſhroms. And, that the venemous qualities bred in Hyſterical Women are divers, *Galen* does ſufficiently hint in his ſixt Book of the parts affected, Chap. 5. where he compares the malignity of this Vapor, to the venom of the Fiſh *Torpedo*, and to the ſting of a *Scorpion*; which Poyſons, though in quantity they are ſmal, in operation they are mighty, and being received into mans Body, they do in a ſhort ſpace of time, grievouſly afflict the ſame, and produce there in moſt vehement Symptomes. As for Reſpiration diminiſhed or aboliſhed, it is cauſed by the ſaid Vapors being endued with a Narcotick or Stupefactive power, which being mighty contrary unto the Heart and Vital Spirits, their action is thereby hindered, whence follows a cooling of the whol Body through defect of that Spirit which ſhould flow from the Heart, and a ceſſation of Reſpiration, becauſe there is now no need thereof. For ſeeing that drawing of Breath is neceſſary to cool our Hearts, when the Heart is extreamly cooled by the venemous Vapors aforeſaid, it needs none of that cooling which is cauſed by drawing in the Air, and ſo breathing ceaſes, becauſe there is no uſe thereof. We may alſo ſay, That the ſaid venemous and ſtupefying vapor, does aſſault the Brain, and hinder the Influx of the Animal Spirits, whereby the motion of the Midrif, and the Muſcles ſerving for reſpiration, is hindered; ad hereunto, That the Vital Spirits being deſtroyed, the Animal Spirits, which are made of the Vital, muſt needs be deſtroyed likewiſe.

In the place before alleaged, *Galen* reſolves a Doubt, which is this: That ſeeing it is generally held that a man cannot live without breathing, therefore it is impoſſible that Hyſterical perſons ſhould in their fits be quite deprived of breathing. To which he anſwers, That in an extream cooling of the

Heart there is no need of respiration, which if it were stopped, and the Heart vigorous and hot, present death would follow; but that little warmth which is yet remaining in the Heart, is cherished only by transpiration, or ventilation through the Pores of the Body; even as Creatures lying all the Winter in holes, do live only by transpiration, because they are exceeding cold, and that little heat they have, needs no ventilation by way of drawing in Air into their mouths.

Besides, The fore mentioned cause of Womb-suffocation, viz. A malignant and venemous vapor, some ad another, namely, The ascending or rising of the Womb into the superior parts of the Body, whereby the Stomach and Midrif are compressed; from whence, not only Hysterical Suffocations, but other sicknesses also do arise. This ascending of the Womb, *Hippocrates* propounded in his Book of the Nature of Women, in these words: *The Womb of Women being turned from their Natural posture, do strive towards the Liver, and bear violently upon the Midrif; for they are carried upwards, seeking moisture to refresh them, being over dried with Labor; and the Liver is the fountain of pleasing moisture.* And *Fernelius* in his sixt Book of *Pathology*, that is, of Diseases and their causes, Chap. 16. saies, he had often felt the Womb thus ascending, bearing up against the Stomach like a round Globe, and grievously oppressing the same, from whence it hath been often thrust down by force of hand, and manifestly driven back into its own proper place. *Eustachius Rudius* in the Second Book of his Practice, in the 51. Chapter, saies the same thing, viz. That he with his own hands hath felt the Womb raised as high as the Navel, and somtimes above the same, and hath by little and little thrust the same down into its proper place. But *Galen* in his sixt Book of Parts affected, Chap. 5. opposes this Opinion, and teaches that although the Womb may in some sort be moved, and ascend, yet that motion and ascention is very little, neither is it any waies possible, That the Womb should ascend unto the Stomach, so far is it from being able to transcend the same so far as to reach unto the Midrif. A very strong Reason hereof is brought from Anatomy, seeing the VVomb is so fastened in its proper place by four very strong Ligaments, that cannot be lifted up so high. VVhereunto the Defenders of this Opinion do make answer, That in the falling out of the VVomb, those Ligaments are so relaxed that it is wont to come without the VVater-gate, and therefore it may ascend as far up as it can go down, when those Ligaments are relaxed or slackened. To this we reply, That the falling out of the VVomb comes to pass by little and little, through length of time, by the moistening and softening of the Ligaments, caused by a defluxion of Flegm thereupon; but that which they call the Ascent or Rising of the VVomb or Mother, happens in a moment, and is as soon restored; and it is requisite that the Ligaments should have been first relaxed, and consequently all VVomen should be troubled with the falling out of their VVombs, who are subject to this Ascent or rising we speak of, because the occasions of this Ascent being ceased, the VVomb would of its own accord, and by its own proper weight fall downwards, and lie continually without the Body.

It is harder to make Answer to the Experience of *Fernelius*, *Rudius*, and others; of which they testifie themselves eye witnesses, who profess they have with their own proper hands perceived the Womb to ascend like a Globe or Bowl to the Navel and higher, being afterwards by them thrust down into its own proper, place. *Sennertus* makes answer to this, that the round body which was by them so felt, was not the Womb, but the Stones, with that blind Vessel, which from *Fallopius* the finder or first Observer thereof is called *Fallopious* his Trumpet, because he likened the same to the broad end of a Trumpet. For the Stones appertaining to the Womb being pendulous (that is, Hang dangling movable as on strings) and the Body of the Trumpet aforesaid being hollow as a pipe, lax and apt to move this way, and that way; when they are filled with corrupt Seed, with vitious Humoes, and with windy Vapors, and swell and strout again, they may move this way and that way in the lower Region of the Belly, and ascend as high as the Navel. And that such a round swelling may happen in the Stones and Trumpet, as is somtimes felt in hysterieall Women. The observations of *Riolanus* may teach (propounded in his Book called *Anthropographia*, where he relates) that in hysterical Virgins such as have had the Womb-sickness, He had found their Stones greater than his Fist, strouting with wheyish seed; also the Trumpet of the womb amplefied or inlarged and very much widened. And *Salius* observed some such thing in a certain noble yong Damsel troubled with suffocations or strangling of the womb, in whom one stone was swelled to the greatness of a large hand-bal, being filled with a saffron-color'd humor, very stinking, and sending forth a filthy and poysonsom kind of vapor: Which humor dyed the adjacent parts yellow, just as we see the Gut Colon where it is carried under the Liver, is by the Bladder of Gall rendered of a clay-like yellowish Colour

Yet is not *Sennertus* very far from the judgment of the Authors aforesaid; for granting, as he saies, that the Stones and Trumpet of the Womb, being filled with corrupt sperm, vitious Humors, and vaporous winds, do strout again, move to and fro in the lower Region of the Belly, and can ascend as high as the Navel; seeing those parts are contiguous with the Womb, they cannot be moved in the Region of the lower Belly, nor ascend unto the Navel, unless the Womb be moved with them:

them: ſo that this motion may be aſcribed to the whol Womb very well, as it conſiſts of its owne perfect parts together with ſuch parts as are knit there unto. Againe if the Stones and Trumpet being filled with vitious Seed, Humors or vapours, may be diverſly moued to and fro: Why may not the Womb being filled with like Humors and vapors, be moved with the ſame motion. The reaſon indeed of *Sennertus*, which he borrowed from *Galen* does convince, that the VVomb tied with four ligaments, cannot aſcend ſo high as the Midrif, no not as high as the Stomach; but it muſt not be denied, that it may be carried as high as the Navel, where the Authors aforeſaid perceived that Globe, both becauſe thoſe Ligaments may be ſomwhat ſtretched by matter working in them like yeſt, and like-wiſe becauſe the womb whiles it is blowne up, fils a greater ſpace, and may be perceived towards the Navel; ſo that whether the whole womb, or the parts faſtened there unto. *viz.* The Stones and the Trumpet be moved upwards, we may ſtill call it the Riſing of the VVomb or Mother and cleave to the Doctrin of *Hippocrates*.

Head-ach from the womb, comes divers waies; for ſomtime it poſſeſſes the whol Head, otherwhiles the forepart, and then again the hinder part thereof, and ſometimes it is felt about the Eyes, in ſuch manner as if the Patients Eyes would leap out of her Head.

Now theſe pains are cauſed by the aforeſaid ſharp and malignant Vapors mounting into the Head, and twitching as it were, or grating upon theſe Membranous parts: Alſo evil humors brought from the womb to the Head, may cauſe the ſaid pains. For vitious Blood; eſpecially the more thin and wheyiſh part thereof, aſcends from the womb into the Head, and being ſhed into the Membranous parts, breeds thoſe pains. VVhich pains are ſomtimes, pricking, ſmarting, and ſore as an Ulcer, by reaſon of the ſharpneſs of the Vapors, or Humors aſcending: Sometimes they are ſtretching, as it were, and ſwelling, becauſe of the plenty and multiplicity which diſcend and ſtretch: Somtimes they are pulſatory pain, beating like the Pulſe; when the Vapors or Humors are carried thither in the Arteries, or when the Arteries of ſome peculiar part of the Head are filled with over hot Blood.

The Falling-ſickneſs ſprings from the womb, being cauſed by the aforeſaid ſharp and malignant Vapors, which being poſſeſſed with a very great Acrimony and malignity, do vehemently, and ſharply ſmite the Nervous parts, whereby they come to be contracted, and whilſt they endeavor to expel what offends them, they draw themſelves together, and expreſs theſe convulſive motions.

Palpitation of the Heart, is often cauſed by the ſaid Vapors, being carried from the womb to the Heart, and provoking the expulſive faculty to the Heart.

Alſo a Pulſation is cauſed in the Arteries of the Back, and about the ſhort Ribs, by reaſon of an over hot Blood, carried from the womb into thoſe Arteries, and diſtending them, whereby their Pulſation becomes greater, which ſmiting the adjacent parts, cauſes a feeling of the ſaid Pulſation in them: Yet, ſomtimes ſuch Pulſations are cauſed in Hypochondriacal melancholly, which when we come to the Signs of this Diſeaſe, we ſhal diſtinguiſh.

Divers diſorders are likewiſe raiſed from the womb, in the ſtomach, liver, and ſpleen; from the ſtomach diſorders ariſe, as appetite loſt, or more than is fit, or deſirous of abſurd things; or Hiccoughs, Vomitings, Belchings, & Heart-burnings: al which Symptoms do ſpring from the aforeſaid vapors ſent into the ſtomach by the Hypogaſtrick, and Cæliack arteries, or other blind paſſages; & thoſe vapors do ſtir up this variety of Symptoms, according to the diverſity of their Nature, and the different degrees of their putrefaction, and malignity. For by their heat they cauſe want of appetite, and thirſt; but if they be cold they hurt digeſtion. And the coveting of abſurd things (as Chalk, Oat-meal, Smalcoles, Linſey-Wolſey cloth, &c.) is cauſed by the malignant quality of the Humors, and Vapors; as we have ſhewed in our Diſcouſe touching that Symptom: and according to the different kind of malignity, it comes to paſs that the Patients appetite inclines her too long, for this, or that od thing; as ſome for Coales, others for Clay, or Morter, Salt, Cinnamon, Nutmegs, &c. And from a certain kind of malignity ſprings likewiſe, the loathing of ſome certain meats; and which is more wonderful, in ſome hath been obſerved an univerſal loathing of al kind of Drink; as *Ludovicus Mercatus* relates concerning a noble Gentlewoman, which would not away with any Drink, and of another, who though ſhe deſired Drink, yet did ſhe Vomit it al up again, being likewiſe vexed with other grievous Symptoms. Where we may conjecture, that the evil Humors in that Gentlewoman, had attained ſuch a kind of malignity, as that is which cauſes Water-Fear in ſuch as have been bitten with a Mad-dog. It is, notwithſtanding, undeniable, that the diverſity of parts into which theſe Humors, and malignant Vapors are carried, conduce not a little to the variety of the Symptoms. For; If they are carried unto the mouth of the Stomach, they ſtir up Belchings, and Vomitings; if they ſtick to the Coates of the Stomach, they induce perpetual inclinations to Vomit; if they are endued with any ſingular Acrimony, they cauſe Hiccoughs, or pains of the Stomach; which pains may alſo ariſe from the plenty of Humors, weighing heavy upon, and ſtretching the parts containing.

The Liver is eaſily offended by menſtrual Blood retained, and by the Veins flowing back therein-to; hence ſprings the Green-ſickneſs, by reaſon of bad Blood flowing from the Womb into the Li-

ver, and from the Liver ſhed abroad into the whol Body. Hence come Swellings, Feavers, and other Diſeaſes very many, in the whol Body, and ſeveral parts thereof, forasmuch as all of them are nouriſhed by the Liver.

But if the vitious Blood aforeſaid do flow back from the Womb unto the Spleen, Swellings, Stoppings, and melancholick, and Hypochondriacal Diſeaſes are wont to be raiſed.

And, To conclude, Women feel divers kinds of pains in their Loyns, Thighs, and other parts, which ariſe from filthy Humors, and Vapors conveighed from the Womb into the ſaid parts: All which Symptoms, taking riſe from the Womb, ſhal be diſtinguiſhed from others which ariſe from other parts, and are like them, but produced from different cauſes; in our following Deſcription of the Signes of this Diſeaſe.

In the firſt place therefore, Womb-ſickneſs is known for the moſt part by what hath already been ſaid of it. For the fore recited Symptoms do appear therein, not al in every one, but ſome in one Patient, ſome in another, according to the differing condition of the Cauſes. Now theſe Symtoms are, Breathing depraved ſo, as ſometimes the Patient ſeems to be choaked; otherwhiles her breathing is leſſened or wholly taken away, without any trouble or Sence of Suffocation; Refrigeration, or cooling of the whol Body, and ſtopping or Interception of the Pulſe; ſomtimes alſo a taking away of Sence and motion; ſomtimes Ravings, Convulſions, Swoonings, Vomitings, and Hiccoughs are joyned together.

But for a more clear Diſcovery of this Diſeaſe, thoſe Signs are firſt to be propounded, which ſhew the Diſeaſe approaching, ſuch as have a noyſe in their lower Belly (firſt from the Navel downwards) with belching or inclination to Vomit; Wearineſſes, Yawnings, and ſtretchings, proceeding from a flatulent matter, which begins to mount from the Womb into divers parts of the Body; a ſad Look pale Face caused by the drawing back of the Natural heat, from thoſe Parts, to it's Fountains.

When the Diſeaſe gathers ſtrength, a ſence of ſtrangling begins to trouble the Patient, as if they had ſwallowed ſome great morſel which ſtuck in their Throat. Afterward their breathing ſtops, and their Suffocation is increaſed. And in concluſion al their Vital, and Animal actions, are depraved, diminiſhed, or aboliſhed. Hence ſpring Ravings, Convulſions, and other grievous Symptoms. In ſome the Womb is ſenſibly toſſed and tumbled, and gathered round like a Foot-bal; and felt after that manner in divers parts of the lower part of the Body. And when the Hyſterical, or Womb-Fit begins to go over, a certain moiſture flows out of the Water-gate, their Guts rumble, they lift up their Eyes, redneſs ſprings up in their Cheeks, Sence and motion is reſtored, their Body grows warm, they fetch deep Sighs, and ſo the Sick-Party by little and little, is freed from her Fit.

By the Signs propounded, Womb-ſickneſs may eaſily be diſtinguiſhed from ſuch infirmities as are of kin, or otherwiſe like the ſame, *viz.* the Syncope (Swooning-ſickneſs) Apoplexie (blaſting Planet-ſtriking)) and the Falling-ſickneſs: howbeit the difference between Womb-ſickneſs, and thoſe diſeaſes aforeſaid is peculiarly to be noted.

And in the firſt place, by three general Signs we may conjecture that theſe Symptoms which are common to Womb-ſickneſs, and the aforeſaid maladies, do proceed rather from the Womb, than from any primary miſaffection of the Heart or Brain. The firſt whereof is, that if the ſick Patient be ſubject to Womb-ſickneſs, and hath been often anoyed with aforeſaid Symptoms; when they come afreſh, we may conclude the Diſeaſe to be no other than Womb-ſickneſs. The ſecond is, That when Women begin to feel thoſe Symptoms, they complain that their Womb is out of order. A third is, That in Womb-ſickneſs Women do feel great eaſe when ſtinking things are put to their Noſes, and ſweet ſmelling things are put in by the Water-gate, which in thoſe other infirmities falls not out.

And the Hyſterical, or womb-ſickneſs is more peculiarly diſtinguiſhed from that which we cal Syncope, or the Swooning-Fits, becauſe in the Syncope, the breathing and Pulſe do wholly ceaſe; but in the VVomb-ſickneſs, it remaines in a ſmall meaſure, til they come into the very height of the Fit, wherein is moſt danger. Secondly, The Swooning Fits come more quickly, and ſeaze upon the Patient, as it were on a ſudden. But in the VVomb-Fit, there proceed evident tokens of the approaching Fit. Thirdly, The Patients Face is paler in the Swooning-fits, than in the Womb-fits; yea verily, ſome Women have a ruddy countenance in their Fits of the Mother, and than the Diſeaſe is ſufficiently known by that Sign alone. Fourthly, In the Swooning Fits, we find commonly cold, and Diaphoretick Sweats, which in the Womb-fits appear not. Fiftly, The Swooning Fits are ſhorter, and the Patient is ſoon either wel or dead; but the ſtrangling Fits of the Mother laſt longer, continuing a whol day, or divers daies together ſometimes. But it is to be remembred, that the Swooning-ſickneſs, and the Womb-fits are ſomtimes joyned together, when the Heart is more grievouſly afflicted than ordinary, or when the Patients ſtrength hath been much weakned by protraction of the Diſeaſe; and then the Symptoms of both Diſeaſes may be mixed one with another.

The Womb-Fit is diſtinguiſhed from the Apoplexie; Firſt becauſe that in the Womb-Choaking

king-Fits, the Joynts are not ſo looſened, neither is the Sence of feeling wholly gone, as in the Apoplexie; but if they be pricked, or have their hairs puld off, they give a ſufficient Sign with their Hands that they feel the pain. Secondly, In perſons Apoplectical, Planet-ſtruck (as the ſimpler ſort do phraſe it) there is a perpetual ſnorting of the Patient, but in the Womb-ſtranglings, not. Thirdly, Womb-ſtrangled Patients when their Fit is over, remember what was done and ſaid, during their extremity; but in the Apoplexie it is not ſo.

It is diſtinguiſhed from the Falling-ſickneſs; Firſt, Becauſe convulſive motions are not alwaies joyned with Hyſterical Suffocations; and thoſe that do accompany the womb-Fits, are not ſo Univerſal as in the Falling ſickneſs, but moleſt only one or two members. Secondly. The Pulſe is greater in the Fits of the Falling-ſickneſs, than it uſes to be when the Patient is wel; but in the Mother-Fits it is quite contrary. Thirdly, In the Falling-ſickneſs, the Patient fomes at the mouth, but in the Mother-Fits there is no ſuch foming. Fourthly, In the Falling-ſickneſs, the Patient remembers not what was done to her during the Fit, but in the Mother-ſickneſs ſhe remembers al, as we ſhewed before. Fiftly, Thoſe that have Fits of the Mother, do in the end of the Fit come to themſelves like perſons awaked from ſleep, with a noyſe in the lower part of the Belly, the Womb as it were becoming quiet, and returning to it's Natural place, and ſometime much humor flows from the Womb, which doth not befal ſuch as have the Falling-ſickneſs.

We muſt alſo enquire how ſuch as are in the Fits of the Mother, may be diſtinguiſhed from thoſe that are quite dead; ſeeing many Hiſtories relate that ſome Women in that Caſe have been accounted dead, appointed to buryal; yea, and ſome buryed. The waies which Authors preſcribe to make this tryal, are divers: For either they lay teazed wool, or light Feathers upon the Patients mouth, and if they ſtir not ſhe is given over for dead; or they apply a bright looking Glaſs to her mouth, which will be dulled with her breath, if ſhe be yet alive; or they ſet a cup full of water upon her breaſt, and if the water ſtir not, they account the party dead. Theſe Signs do for the moſt part hold good, but they are not perpetual, neither do they put the matter paſt diſpute; ſeeing as was ſaid before, ſome VVomen in theſe Fits do live only by Tranſpiration, as thoſe live-wights which live in holes al the winter, and fetch no breath at al by their mouths. VVhich though it very ſeldom fals out, yet it is a very good Caution, not to ſuffer women which die of this Diſeaſe, to be buried til the third day after their death, or at leaſt til they begin to ſtink.

The Signs of the Cauſes are likewiſe to be declared; which Cauſes we have ſhewed to be three, *viz.* Seed retained and corrupted; Menſtrual Blood in like manner retained and corrupted, and vile humors contained in the veſſels, or in the Cavitie of the womb.

If this Diſeaſe ariſe from Seed retained, or corrupted, there have preceeded al thoſe Cauſes, which might encreaſe, gather together, and corrupt the Seed in the veſſels; as flouriſhing age, ripe for Generation, or formerly accuſtomed to the actions thereof, which of late it hath left off; Sanguine complexion, an idle life, and given to pleaſures; a rich and plenciful table, with the uſe of ſuch meates as are eaſily corrupted. In ſuch perſons if the womb-Fits happen, they having their Courſes wel, we may gueſſe they come from Seed retained.

If theſe womb-Fits depend upon the Menſtrual Blood retained and corrupted, as their cauſe; the Patients Courſes are either wholly ſtopt, or flow very little, and to no purpoſe; and ſhe her ſelf is not to ſeek for carnal Embracements: but wel provided; And ſome Symptoms do attend this ſuppreſſion, as Melancholly, Watſifulneſs, Sluggiſhneſs, Drowſineſs, Head-ach, ſwelling of the Dugs heavineſs of the Loyns and Thighs.

That this Diſeaſe comes from evil Humors is known, by the Patient having her Courſes well, being exerciſed ſufficiently with actions of Generation, by her being ſtept into years, or being very full of evil Humors, or being troubled with ſome other Diſeaſe in her womb.

We muſt alſo ſet down theſe Signs of thoſe other Symptoms which we formerly deſcribed, as ſpringing from the womb.

Head-ach coming from the womb is known, becauſe the Patient hath not her Courſes right, the pain does chiefly trouble her, or is moſt increaſed, at, or neer the time of her Courſes flowing, and her womb is out of order. Alſo we may diſtinguiſh whether an Humor, or a Vapor cauſe this pain; for if the pain be not great, heavy, and preſſing, and come by fits; it comes certainly from a Vapor: but if the pain be continual, joyned with heavineſs, it ſhews an Humor contained in the part; which if it be Chollerick, the pain is biting, pricking, and acute or ſharp; if it be Flegmatick, it cauſes ſleepineſs; if Melancholly, Sadneſs.

Pantings of the Heart, and beatings of the Arteries about the ſhort Ribs and Back; Diſeaſes of the Stomach, Liver, and Spleen; and divers pains may be conceived to ariſe from the womb, if theſe other Signs and Symptoms of the womb affected, before recited, be likewiſe preſent. As alſo, if by putting ſweet ſmelling things to the water-gate, and ſtinking things to the Noſe, the Patient do find ſome kind of eaſe.

What concerns the Prognoſtick, or Predictions of this Diſeaſe; If it is a malady which ſeldom kills

kills the Patients, but uſes to ſtick a long time by them. But ſomtimes they are in danger of death by reaſon of ſwooning fits that happen, or by ſome extraordinary Convulſion. Likewiſe if the fits are frequent and hard to be removed, it is to be feared, leſt Reſpiration being ſo often hurt, the Native heat ſhould be ſuffocated, and the Patient come to die.

That Womb-paſſion is worſt, in which more parts are drawn into conſent; and that is bad which ſprings from corrupted Seed, or from a long ſuppreſſion of the monthly Courſes.

In Elderly perſons, this Diſeaſe is hardly curable, becauſe of that plenty of Corruption wherewith they are wont to abound. In yonger VVomen, it commonly ceaſes when they begin to bring forth Children.

In VVomen with Child, and that lie in Child-bed, it is a dangerous Diſeaſe; in the former, for fear of Miſcarriage; in the latter, becauſe of their weakneſs after Child-bearing.

For a VVoman troubled with theſe VVomb-fits, to ſneeze is good, for it ſignifies ſtrength of Brain; and by the motion of ſneezing, the Malignant Vapors which beſiege the Brain, are diſcuſſed; and likewiſe the vitious Humors contained in the VVomb evacuated.

A twofold Cure belongs to this Infirmity: one in the fit, another out of the fit. In the fit, thoſe vapors which cauſe it are to be diſcuſſed and drawn back from the part affected; the Humors contained in the VVomb which ſend up thoſe Vapors, muſt be voided; and the VVomb when it is removed out of its proper place (which often happens according to *Hippocrates*) muſt be reſtored to the ſame again.

Firſt therefore, The ſick party muſt be laid upon a bed in ſuch a poſture, that her Neck and Shoulders lie high and ſloaping, but her Thighs and Privy parts lie low and ſhooting downwards, for ſo the VVomb is more eaſily reduced.

Then muſt her lower parts be tied very hard, ſo as to cauſe pain; likewiſe they muſt be well rubbed and chafed; alſo Cupping-glaſſes are to be ſet upon her Hips; and a very large Cupping-glaſs ſet upon her Share is very profitable. But take heed that you do not apply a Cupping-glaſs upon the Patients Navel, which many ignorantly are wont to do, for by that means the VVomb is drawn upwards again. VVhen Convulſions happen, or ſwooning fits, hard rubbings with courſe cloaths are good upon the ſoals of the Feet, alſo with Vinegar and Salt; it is good likewiſe to pluck off ſome Hairs from the Head and Share, to cramp the fingers of the Patient, whoop aloud in her ears, and ſuch like.

It is alſo good to lay unto the ſoals of her Feet, this Epiſpaſtick, or drawing Cataplaſm or Pultis.

Take *Leaves of Artemiſia (Mugwort) Feaverfew, Rhue, of each a handful: Sage, half a handful: Pidgeons dung poudered three ounces: Black Soap an ounce and an half: Amber, Frankinſence, Maſtich poudered, of each a dram and an half: Juyce of Rue, and Vinegar, allayed with Water, as much as ſufficeth to make all into a Cataplaſm.*

At the ſame time, ſtinking and ſtrong ſmelling things are to be put unto her Noſe; as Partridg feathers burnt, old Leather burnt, and Brimſtone fired, Jeat or Agate Oyl, a Pomander of Aſſafœrida, Caſtoreum, Galbanum, Rue, moiſtened with Syrup of Artemiſia, or with Vinegar; Garlands of Rue, Tanzy, Wormwood. But if the VVoman be Epileptick, or ſubject to the Falling-ſickneſs, we muſt abſtain from the ſtronger things before mentioned, becauſe the Brain being therewith offended, is put into a Commotion, by which means the Humors are tumbled ſuddenly into the Ventricles thereof, and the Syptomes are made more grievous.

The ſmoak of Tobacco blown into the Mouth and Noſtrils of the Patient, does quickly free her from the fit.

Contrary wiſe, ſweet ſmelling things muſt be put unto the VVomb, as ſome grains of Muſk or Civet wrapped in Cotton-wool.

The following Pouder may be blown up her Noſtrils.

Take *white Pepper, Muſtard ſeed, Pellitory, Caſtoreum, of each one ſcruple; make it into a very fine Pouder.*

If the Patient be very much oppreſſed with her fit, let her be provoked to ſneeze, according to that Aphoriſm of *Hippocrates*, his 5. Section, 35. *To a Woman troubled with Womb-fits, or hard Labor, if ſhe happen to neeze it is good.* Neezing is many times provoked by the foreſaid Pouder; and if that alone will not do it, a little white Hellebore, or Euphorbium may be added.

Alſo Oyl of Amber or Agates, may be anointed upon her Noſtrils.

But laxative and wind-expelling Clyſters do exceed all other Medicaments, in diſcuſſing ſuch filthy Vapors as cauſe the fit: which may be made after this manner:

Take *Mercury Leaves, Pellitory of the wall, Mugwort, Penyroyal, Rue, Calaminth, of each one handful: Caraway ſeeds, Cummin ſeeds, and Bayberries, of each two drams: Boyl all to a pint and an half. In the ſtraining diſſolve* Hiera Picra, *and* Benedicta laxativa, *of each ſix drams: Oyl of Rue three ounces: Camphire half a ſcruple. Mix all into a Clyſter.*

If the firſt Clyſter be not ſufficient, another muſt be given of the ſame or ſuch like Decoction, diſſolving therein, Diaphœnicon ten drams: Turpentine diſſolved with the white of an Egg one ounce: the aforeſaid Oyl, and half a ſcruple of Camphire diſſolved in Oyl of Water-lillies.

And in a word, The Diſeaſe continuing, a third Clyſter muſt be given meerly Hyſterical and diſcuſſing, but not purging, which will be very effectual, compounded after this manner:

Take *Oyl of Rue four ounces*: *Aqua vitæ one ounce*: *Canary Sack three quarters of a pint*: *Galbanum two drams*: *Mix all, and make a Clyſter, and adminiſter the ſame after a Laxative Clyſter.*

A Clyſter of Vinegar, tempered with Water, does preſently aſſwage the Mother-fit, by compreſſing and coagulating the vapors, which cauſe the ſame.

The ſame does a draught of Vinegar allaied with water, being taken in at the mouth.

Authors do likewiſe counſel that the Patients belly above the Navel, be ſtrongly girt with a ſwath-band, that the womb may be thereby reduced, and the vapors hindred from aſcending.

Concerning letting blood, it is a great queſtion, Whether it be convenient in the fit, or no? For ſeeing there is at that time a great weakneſs in the Patient, and ſometimes deſpair of life, and the body is cooled all over by malignant vapors which infeſt the Brain and Heart, which can no waies be expelled by blood-letting; no queſtion the uſe thereof is very dangerous during the fits. And of this Opinion are *Varandæus* and *Sennertus*. But *Mercatus* and *Rodericus a Caſtro*, do determine contrarily, That a Vein ought to be opened in the Patients Ankle or Inſtep, when the Diſeaſe ſprings from an abundance of Menſtrual blood retained; and that the Patients ſtrength oppreſſed with the burden, the paſſages obſtructed with too much blood, and the danger of ſuffocation hence ariſing, can be remedied by no other means but bleeding; ſeeing in this caſe, neither ſtinking ſmels, nor ſweet ſmels, nor Cupping-Glaſſes, can bring the Patient out of her fit. *Philippus Hoechſtetterus* in the ſecond part of his Obſervations, makes it appear by certain Hiſtories, that bleeding in the Foot hath done much good: Inſomuch, as a certain Nun, which had been ſpeechleſs, and in Convulſion fits for two daies together, two hours after ſhe had bled, began to ſpeak, and to eat and drink. I am of Opinion, a Vein may be opened, if the Pulſe be ſtrong, and there be evident tokens that blood doth ſuper-abound: But if the Pulſe be weak, we muſt forbear, and ſtay till the fit is over for a more convenient ſeaſon, in which blood may be ſafely taken away.

Plaiſters are profitably applied under the Navel, of the Maſs of *Emplaſtrum Ceronum*, which molliſies and diſcuſſeth, and ſo is better than the vulgar Womb-Plaiſter, which doth ſomwhat bind, and therefore may retain the vapors and malignant humors. Plaiſters are likewiſe made of Galbanum and Aſſafœtida, or of Caranna, and Tacamahaca, either alone, or with ſome Spices mingled with them. As for Example:

Take *Gum Caranna half an ounce*: *Pouder of Nutmegs, and Cloves, of each half a dram*: *Oyl of Amber four drops*: *Turpentine two drams. Make all into a Plaiſter. Such Plaiſters are to be made in faſhion of a Shield, or Scutcheon. and in the pointed part of the Plaiſter, which muſt be laid towards the Water-gate, ſome grains of Muſk or Civet are to be put, that they may ſend forth a ſweet ſmell, and thereby allure the Womb back again. Three grains of Muſk may be put in a little Cotton, moiſtened with Oyl, and thruſt into the hole of the Navel: then lay on a ſmal Plaiſter of diſſolved Galbanum. This ſome Women uſe for a Secret.*

Or four grains of Camphire may be diſſolved in Oyl of ſweet Almonds, and put into the Navel, and a Diapalma Plaiſter laid over it.

If the Diſeaſe ſeem to be ſoſtered by plenty of wind and vapors, Fomentations and Baths will be good, of the Decoction of Rue, Mugwort, Time, and Calaminth, Fennel ſeed, Annis ſeed, Cummin ſeed, Bay-berries, Chamomel Flowers, Dill flowers, &c.

Alſo little bags may be prepared with Cummin ſeed, Annis ſeed, Carrot ſeed, Salt, Rue, Bran, in them, and applied very hot, and often renewed Or,

Take *Oyl of Rue four ounces*: *Spirit of Turpentine half an ounce*: *Mingle them, and dip therein a piece of Bread hot out of the Oven, and lay it upon the Navel.*

Alſo it will be good to anoint the lower part of the belly, the Region of the womb, Share, and Loyns; becauſe ſuch anointings do dilate the Paſſages, attenuate the Vapors, and diſcuſs them. They may be made of Nard Oyl, Spike Oyl, Oyl of Dill, Seſamine, Saffron, Lillies, and Sweet Almonds.

Authors do very much commend a fume of the warts which grow upon Horſes Legs; which being dried in an Oven, and beaten to Pouder, they are burnt under the Noſes of women in theſe fits as a preſent Remedy, whereby women are wont to be in an inſtant delivered of their fits, to the admiration of the by-ſtanders.

If the Diſeaſe ſpring from Retention of Seed, nothing is better than carnal Conjunction, as ſoon as the Patient is out of her fit, if ſhe be married.

Inſtead of carnal Conjunction, where that cannot be had, many adviſe that the Patient be rubbed and

and tickled by a Midwife in the Neck of her womb, into which the Midwife muſt put her fingers anointed with Oyls of Spices, that ſo the offenſive Speech may be voided. But ſeeing that cannot be done without wickedneſs (underſtand by a ſilly ſuperſtitious Papiſt, that counts it a meritorious good work to burn Mother and Child in her womb alive, as at *Jerſey*, and a wickedneſs to free a ſick body of a little offenſive humor) a Chriſtian Phyſitian muſt never preſcribe the ſame.

To Diſcuſs thoſe malignant Vapors which cauſe the womb-fit, many Medicines are wont to be given down the Throat, among which is a dram of old Venice Treacle, with water of Mugwort, Peny-royal, and Balme; Troches of myrrh, to the quantity of two ſcruples: or Oyl of Amber to five or ſix drops, with the ſaid Liquors.

Pills are frequently uſed; the beſt are made after this manner.

Take *Caſtorium, Myrrh, Aſſa-fœtida, of each one ſcruple: fœcula Brioniæ half a ſcruple: ſeeds of Rue and Saffron, of each ſeven grains: with Syrup of Mugwort make twelve pills. Let her take three or four; if ſhe cannot ſwallow them, let them be diſſolved in Water of Mugwort.*

Theſe following Pills are good in a violent fit, which they are wont to remedy without fail.

Take *Aſſafœtida one ſcruple: Caſtoreum ſix grains: Laudanum three grains; make all into three or four Pills. Let her take them preſently.*

Pilulæ Fœtidæ majores, although they be purging, yet are they given to good purpoſe in the Fit, to half a dram. For they gently evacuate, and are not wont to work till the fit be over; ſo that there is no danger in their working.

Alſo many waters are wont to be given in the fit, *viz. Aqua vitæ*, Cinnamon water, or Treacle water.

Or a ſpecifical water may be made after this manner.

Take *Zedoary roots, Carrot ſeeds, Lovage roots, of each two ounces: red Myrrh, Caſtoreum of each half an ounce: Piony roots four ounces: Miſſeto of the Oak gathered at the wain of the Moon, three ounces: powr upon all theſe being prepared, four pints and an half of Feaver-few-water. Spirit of Wine half a pint; let them digeſt three daies, and afterward ſtill them. The doſe is a ſpoonful, by it ſelf, or with ſome other convenient liquor.*

A more eaſie water to make, more pleaſant to taſte, and no leſs effectual is this following.

Take of *the juyces of Bawm, and Borrage clarified, of each two pints: the beſt Saffron one dram. Let them be infuſed, and diſtilled in* Balneo. *The Doſe is a ſpoonful with Broth. This following potion is vulgarly uſed.*

Take of *Cinnamon Water half an ounce: Turnep Water four ounces: Caſtoreum four grains. Make all into a potion, or draught.*

Oyl of Amber given to three or four drops, in Orenge-flower-water, or ſome other ſpecifical, doth quickly rid away the womb-fit.

The following potion is wont to do very much good, as it is to be ſeen in our obſervations.

Take *Water of Mugwort, Roſes, and Orenge-flowers, of each one ounce: Cinnamon Water three drams: Confection of Hyacinth ſtone one dram: Diamargaritum frigidum (that is the cooler perled pouder) half a ſcruple: Saffron four grains. Make them all into a potion.*

Orange flower water doth good alone, given three or four ounces; but mingled with Musk, and Dragons blood, it doth wonders: witneſs *Solenander* in theſe words. *A certain Woman was vexed with moſt cruel Symptoms, Head-ach, Belchings, contraction of the Body, pain in her Groin, grinding of her Teeth; ſomtimes falling to the ground ſpeechleſs, with her mouth ſhut, ſo as ſhe could not open it; and all this through diſorder of her Womb. Many remedies being uſed in vain, a certain old Woman comes, and gives her thirteen grains of Musk, and as many of common Dragons blood, in four ounces of Orenge-flower Water; ſhe was cured, and never felt the like griefs any more. I have in the like caſe given the ſame Medicine divers times, and alwaies with good effect.*

An Elks Claw is alſo very good in theſe fits, according to the experiment of *Appollonius Menabeus* in his Treatiſe of the Elk. Chap. 10. in theſe words. *I confeſs I have both heard from others, and found by my own Experience, that an Elks Claw is a preſent remedy for the Suffocation of the Mother. For being called to help a Woman in thoſe Fits, I gave her the raſpings of the Elks Claw with Zedoary, with which, and with other remedies adminiſtred according to the rule of Art, I did the Cure with Honor. And when I underſtood, that ſhe was wont to be troubled with thoſe Fits oftentimes, I injoyned her to wear a piece of Elks Claw continually about her Neck: Which when ſhe diligently obſerved, for the ſpace of three months that I was in the place, ſhe was ever free from thoſe Fits, and gave me often times thanks for my advice.*

Camphire fired, and caſt into the water, and there abiding till it be quenched, is an excellent Remedy, given to the quantity of a dram.

The Cats-tails of the walnut, in the Epiſtles collected by *Laurence Scholtzius*, in the Letter written from *Thomas Mouſet* to *Peter Monavius*, are extolled with this Commedation. *In Srangulation of the Womb, the Cats-tails of the Walnut tree, are a ſingular Medicine being dryed, and poudered.*

You

You may give two ſcruples with two drops of Oyl of Amber. I never knew any thing more excellent in that Diſeaſe.

Two moſt excellent Remedies may be made in the form of Pouders, which I have oftentimes tried.

The one is of the After-birth of a woman that lies in of her firſt Child, dried in the Chimney, and beaten to pouder. The Doſe is a dram in ſome convenient liquor. It preſently takes away the fit.

The other is made of two parts of Brimſtone, and one of Nutmeg. Pouder them and give a dram.

Pouder of Jeat given to half a dram, or one dram, will do much.

The Pouder of Elder-berries of Quercetanus taken a dram in Wine, cures the Epilepſie, or Falling-ſickneſs, by conſent of the Womb, and being taken the ſecond time, makes that the fits return not.

Where that Pouder cannot be had, the ſame quantity of Soot from the Chimney, may be given in an Egg ſoft boiled.

And becauſe the Womb is oftentimes filled with evil, and Excrementious Humors, from whence ugly Vapors are raiſed up; we muſt be careful to purge the ſame, which may be moſt conveniently done by this following Peſſarie.

Take *Diaphœnicon one dram*: *pouder of Hiera picra half a dram*: *Turpentine three drams*: *mix all, and with Tow make a Peſſary.*

For her ordinary drink let the Patient drink a thin weak Decoction of Cinnamon, Caraway, or Annis ſeeds.

Touching Wine, It is a queſtion whether it may be given a Woman in theſe fits. *Hippocrates* in his firſt Book of the Nature of Women ſeems to commend the ſame: and there is much reaſon to back his opinion. For an extream refrigeration of the Body, and Languiſhment of natural ſtrength, cannot be better holpen, than by giving the Patient a Cup of rich Canary. But *Avicenna* wholly forbids it. And indeed, Becauſe this Diſeaſe depends for the moſt part upon Seed retained, or of Blood and foul Vapors carried up from the Womb: Wine by it's thinneſs, and exceeding piercing faculty, doth more exagitate and vex the morbifical matter. Whence we ſee by common Experience, that Women troubled with this Diſeaſe, are worſe if Wine be given in their fits. To Compoſe this Contention, we ſay; that Wine ordinarily is not to be given during the fit, but upon extraordinary occaſion: Namely when the Patients ſtrength is extreamly decai'd, ſhe hath Swooning fits joyned with the Mother fits, or ſeems to be at the laſt gaſp: all other Remedies tried in vain, we make uſe of Wine as our laſt Refuge, and preſent help.

In this Cure we muſt be very careful, if the Patient be with Child, and prudent in our adminiſtration of Medicaments; neither muſt we uſe thoſe more vehement and ſtinking ones, leaſt we cauſe miſcarriage; and we muſt perform the Cure rather by outward than inward Medicaments.

In the Courſe of the Cure, care muſt be taken of the Heart and Brain, and if they ſeem much oppreſſed, they muſt be releived by ſuch Medicines as are proper unto them. To the Heart, Wine, and Orange-flower-water, or Imperial water, or Treacle of Andromachus diſſolved in Wine, muſt be applied by wetting things therein, and laying them upon the Region thereof; or hot living Creatures are to be applied thereunto. For to ſtrengthen the Head, thoſe Remedies muſt be uſed, which are ſet down in our Chapter of ſleepy Diſeaſes.

When the fit is over, Care muſt be taken to prevent the return thereof, either wholly, or at leaſt for a long time: which is done by a removal of the Cauſes, and by ſtrengthening the Womb.

In the firſt place therefore at a convenient ſeaſon; but eſpecially in the Spring and Fall, the Patient muſt be yeerly evacuated, beginning with a purging Potion, or ſome other Medicament ſuitable to the nature of the Patient; alwaies adding Hyſterical things.

And then, If Blood ſeem ſuperfluous, it muſt be drawn firſt out of the Arm, and then out of the Foot; chooſing as neer as poſſibly the middle ſpace between the Patients monthly purgations.

Afterwards, That the redundancy of evil Humors may be ſufficiently prepared and purged out, an Apozeme muſt be compounded, altering, opening, and purging, to be given at four or five times.

If Nature ſeem to incline to the opening of the Hemorrhoids, they muſt be opened by application of Leeches. And *Mercatus* doth witneſs in his 13. and 14. Counſel, that they have much profited in theſe fits.

After general purgation, to diſcuſs the remainders of the morbifical matter, a ſweating Decoction will be good to give divers daies together; made of Saſſafras, Guajacum, with ſeeds of Fennel, Rue, and Agnus Caſtus.

To the ſame intent Sulphurous, and Bitumenous Baths will be very good, ſuch as we have at *Baleruca*, by whoſe uſe many are holpen, as daily experience ſhews.

In this Diſeaſe being of long continuance, beſides the remedies aforeſaid, it will be good to purg the Patient frequently, by uſual Pills, Syrups or Potions. VVhich may be made after this manner,

Take *Troches of Agarick one dram and an half: Hiera of Coloquintida one dram: Carrot ſeed, Agnus Caſtus ſeed of each one ſcruple: mirrh, Coſtoreum, Diagrydium of each half a ſcruple: Turpentine, as much as ſhall ſuffice to make all into a Maſs. Let her take hereof half a dram, or two ſcruples twice or thrice in a month.*

The following Syrup is mightily extolled by *Mercatus*, as a wonderful Syrup, and very profitable for all womb-ſick women. in his 13. Counſel.

Take *Juice of Herb Mercury and the Cream of Carthamus ſeeds of each ſix ounces: Scorzonera water ſeven ounces Sugar as much as ſhall ſuffice to make it into a Syrup. Add hereunto while it boyls, Confection of the Hyacinth ſtone, Confection of Kermes Berries, and Pouder of the Electuary* de Gemmis [*that is, made of precious Stones*] *of each two drams: Let the Doſe be two or three ounces.*

Take *Briony Roots three drams, Senna Leaves half an ounce: Agarick two ſcruples: Ginger one ſcruple: Cinnamon one dram: Let them ſteep all night in Fountain water. In the ſtraining mix one ounce: of ſyrup of Damask Roſes. Make hereof a potion to be taken twice or thrice in a month.*

Pilulæ fœtidæ majores [that is ſtrong ſmelling Pils made of Gums] taken twice in a month to half a dram, are very profitable.

In ſuch as eaſily vomit, it is good to provok to caſt, once or twice in a month, after this manner:

Take *Agarick cakes* [*troches of Agarick*] *one dram and an half: Oxymel one ounce: Bawm water, and Mugwort water, of each three ounces: Mix all into a vomiting Potion.*

Chymiſts give ſalt of Vitriol in ſome appropriate water, from half a dram to one dram, and cry it up for a ſpecifick remedie in womb-fits.

After all particular evacuations are ended (that is after each evacuation) ſome ſtrengtheners are to be adminiſtred, ſuch as this following Electuary.

Take *Conſerve of Roſemary flowers Betony, and Bawm, of each one ounce and an half: Species of the muſked Electuary, and of Electuary of Calaminth of each half a dram: With ſyrup of Mugwort Make all into an Electuary.*

Treacle by it ſelf is very proper for this occaſion, which for hotter conſtitutions may be tempered by the mixture of Conſerve of water Lillies, Maiden-haire &c.

But the following pouder is far more effectual, which heales old and ſtubborn womb-fits, if it be frequently taken one dram at a time, in Wine, in a bolus or morſell made up with ſyrup of Mugwort.

Take *Gentian Roots, white Dittamnus, tormentill, pellitorie, Rhaponticum, Biſtort, Ariſtolochia, or Birthwort the rounder, Chamelion thiſtle, Bay-berries, Angelica, Maſter-wort, Coriander ſeeds prepared, annis ſeed, juniper berries, Maſtich, Bole armoniack,* Terra Sigillata, *of each two drams and an half: Orientall Saffron three ounces and an half. Make all into a fine pouder, and keep it in a cloſe veſſel.*

Neither muſt we omit ſuch Medicaments, which are wont to help theſe fits by a peculiar property thought to be in them: An Example whereof may be this that follows, made in Pills, becauſe of the ungrateful taſte of the Simples.

Take *Aſſa fœtida half a ſcruple: Caſtoreum, Mirrh, Galbanum, Sagapenum, of each one ſcruple. With Honey of Mercury make a Maſs; of which give the Patient half a ſcruple, or a ſcruple frequently.*

Platerus makes Pills of extreamly odoriferous Ingredients, after this manner:

Take *of Muſk ſix grains: Benjamin half a dram: Sugar one dram: With Cinnamon Water make them into a Maſs for Pills. The Doſe is half a ſcruple.*

Thoſe Hyſterical Waters before ſet down to be given in the fits, may likewiſe be profitably uſed out of the fits, a ſpoonful or two in a morning, when the Patient is free, by way of prevention.

Mathiolus extreamly commends the briony Root, in theſe words: *Briony doth wonderfully help Women ſubject to ſtrangulations of the Womb, ſo as to free them from their choaking fits, and cure them. Truly I knew a Woman, dayly almoſt vexed with theſe fits for a yeer together, who being at laſt taught by an ordinary Herb-man, to drink white Wine, wherein an ounce of Briony Root had been boyled, once in a week, when ſhe was going to bed: when ſhe had uſed this Medicine for a yeer together, ſhe was perfectly recovered of that Diſeaſe.*

The Liver of a Wolf dried, and one dram taken, may prevent the fits of the Falling-ſickneſs proceeding from the Mother, if it be given three or four times after an ordinary Purgation.

The Chymiſts do commend *Vitriolum Martis* [that is, Vitriolated Steel, or chalybeated Vitriol, or Salt of Steel] whereof they give a grain or two, with a double quantity of Sugar, many daies together, in Wine or other fitting Liquor.

And

And the Truth is, it may be given to twelve, fifteen, and twenty grains in ſome convenient Conſerve; or it may be made into Pills, with Mucilage of Gum Tragacanth.

Cream of Tartar frequently taken, is alſo very good in the Cure of this Diſeaſe.

Theſe two Medicines do good, not only by opening, but alſo by cooling; for oftentimes an hot diſtemper is rooted in the womb of VVomen ſubject to this Diſeaſe, ariſing from Blood retained within its Veins, and over-heated; as *Galen* ſaies in Hypochondriacal Melancholly, That there is a burning diſtemper in the Parts under the ſhort Ribs, by reaſon of blood retained in them by obſtructions, and there over-heated. Thoſe things therefore which have power to cool the Womb, are very proper in this caſe, ſuch as are Baths to ſit in, Vinegar and Water mingled and drunk down, or injected, and ſuch like. Unto which we may add the Hiſtory related by Dr. *Harvey*, touching the Childing of a woman long afflicted with womb-fits, not curable by all that could be done; who at length, after many yeers, was cured by means of the falling out of her womb: Becauſe her Womb expoſed to the Air was cooled, and ſo its Inflamation and hot diſtemper was repreſſed.

Alſo the uſe of Steel it ſelf is much commended by ſome Practitioners, as very convenient for all Infirmities of the VVomb. VVhoſe Preparations look for in our Cure of Obſtructions of the Liver.

Iſſues made in the Thighs, are likewiſe very good. For they derive and turn aſide evil Humors from the womb, by reaſon of thoſe Veins which are common to the womb and Thighs.

Neither are Amulets to be neglected, faſtened about the Patients Neck, and hanging down upon her Navel, as we formerly mentioned touching the Elks Claw, good in this caſe.

Some commend Peucedanum, or Hog-fennel root, hung in a ſtring about the Neck. And our women do with good ſucceſs, wear a piece of Aſſafœtida in a thin rag of cloth. I have known ſome that have worn a Foxes Pizzle and Stones dried, tied about their Neck in a ſtring, and reſting upon their Navel, and by that means preſerved themſelves from the womb-fits.

Some wear a piece of Wolfs fleſh dried, or of the Liver of a Wolf, not without profit.

As for external Remedies after every Purge, or at leaſt once in a month, eight or ten daies before the monthly Purgations of blood, Fomentations or Baths to ſit in will be good, that the Humor cauſing this Diſeaſe being reſolved, may more eaſily find its way by the opened Paſſages of the Courſes, and flow out with them. They may be made of the Roots of Marſh-mallows, Briony Roots, Orris Roots, Madder, Valerian, Angelica, Mugwort Leaves, Nep, Feverfew, Bawm, Bayberries, and ſuch like.

To diſcuſs the remainders of the Matter cauſing the Diſeaſe, and to ſtrengthen the Womb after Fomentation, or ſitting in a Bath, as aforeſaid, the following Plaiſter may be laid on under the Navel.

Take *Gum Tacamahacca and Caranna, of each two drams: Alipta Moſchata half an ounce: Agnus Caſtus ſeeds, one dram and an half: of each of the Sanders half a dram: Turpentine, Labdanum, Wax, of each as much as ſhall ſuffice to make a Plaiſter.*

If this Diſeaſe ariſe from the Seed retained, uſe thoſe Remedies which we have formerly ſet down to quench and diſcuſs Seed in our Cure of Womb-Fury.

Chap. 7. *Of Inflamation of the Womb.*

INflamation of the Womb, is a Tumor or ſwelling of that Part, ſpringing from blood that is ſhed into the ſubſtance thereof.

And the ſaid Inflamation poſſeſſes either the whol Womb, or ſome part thereof; and it is produced either by pure blood, and is called meerly *Phlegmont*, an Inflamation; or it comes from blood mingled with Choller, and it is called *Phlegmone eryſipelatodes*, a chollerick Inflamation of kin to the Roſe, or St. Anthonies fire; or it hath its original from blood mingled with flegm, and is called *Phlegmone œdematodes*, a flegmatick Inflamation; or it comes from blood mingled with Melancholly, and is called *Phlegmone Scirrhodes*, which is a Melancholick Inflamation or Swelling.

The Cauſes which produce or encreaſe this Diſeaſe, may be divers; viz. A Sanguine Conſtitution over loaded with blood, or infected with choller; a natural looſneſs of the womb with wideneſs of the paſſages, air extream hot, inflaming the humors, or very cold compacting & knitting them together, and ſo ſtopping the monthly Courſes flowing, or ready to flow; vehement Exerciſe, immoderate carnal Conjunctions, a blow or fall lighting upon the Wombs Quarters; Perturbations of Mind more violent than ordinary, eſpecially wrath; acrimonious or ſharp vehement meats, of a hot nature, and whatever elſe is taken in of a fretting and vehement operation, as Authors report of Canthatides, That they are very hurtful as well to the womb as the bladder; ſharp Peſſaries long time uſed, or purging Medicines, or ſtrong alteratives, ſuch as barren women are wont to take and rend from all quarters; Retention of the Courſes encreaſing the over fulneſs of blood; or over great flux of Courſes relax-

ing the Passages, and bringing the Humors from all the parts of the Body to the Womb; likewise Cupping-glasses fastened about the privy parts, may violently draw the blood and humors unto the Region of the Womb, and there detain them. Laborsom Child-birth may cause as much; Abortion, a violent handling of the parts of Generation by an unskilful Midwife; and a troublesom inconvenient bearing of a Child in the Womb.

The Signs to know the Disease by, are, Swelling, Heat, and Pain in the Region of the Womb, with a continual Feaver. But because the strait Gut (that is, that which is united to the Dung-gate) and the Bladder, do lodg in the same quarters with the Womb, therfore must we distinguish this Disease by other signs: such are, Suppression or diminution of the Courses, and their paleness or yellowish citrine color, with pain in their coming forth; and in the absence of the Courses certain stinking and rotten stuff sweats through the Vessels of the Womb, and bedews the VVater-Gate. Whereinto if search be made, it will plainly discover the Disease: for the inner mouth of the womb will be found to swell, to be drawn inwards, and subject to pain if touched; the neck of the womb will appear red and inflamed, the Veins dispersed there-through, strutting with blood.

If the whol Womb be inflamed, all Symptomes will be more vehement. If the Inflamation be rather in the neck of the womb, the heat and pain is spread most towards the Groyns and the Water-Gate. If the former side of the womb do suffer, the Bladders fellow-feeling wil be the greater: If the hinder side of the Womb be inflamed, the strait Gut will be more compassionate, and the pain wil stretch it self towards the Loyns. If the right or left side of the womb be inflamed, the heat and pain wil appear most about the one Groyn; and the Thigh of the same side wil be heavy, and as it were in a sort burdened.

The Signs of the Causes are these. If the Inflamation spring from pure blood, al the Symptomes are milder; but if there be Choller mingled therewith, the Feaver is more burning, and al the Symptomes are more vehement; but if the blood be Flegmatick or Melancholick, the Feaver wil be less acute, but the Disease more lasting, and more stubborn. And here we are to consider such Signs as may inform us what Humor is most predominant in the whol Body.

If the Inflamation turn to an Imposthume and gather Matter, the pain and Feaver are encreased, and shaking fits come without any certain course, yet commonly they take their turn about Evening. And al the other Symptomes are heightened. When Suppression is accomplished, al the Symptomes are mitigated, and Swelling rises higher, whereby somtimes the Excrement of the Guts, or Urine is stopped. But if the Inflamation be discussed without Suppuration, the Swelling lessens, and the Symptomes becomes gentler.

If it turn to a Scirrhus (that is, hard swelling) the Feaver, Pain, and other Symptomes are diminished; the Swelling abides, becomes harder; likewise the weight and heavines remain, both in the womb, and the adjacent parts, so that the Patient can hardly stir her self.

A good Prognostick cannot be made of this Disease because it is very dangerous, and for the most part deadly. But more or less danger is threatened according to the greatnes of the Disease, its Causes and Symptomes, as thus:

If the Inflamation possess the whol Womb, its a desperate Disease; but if only a part be inflamed, there is some hope of help.

If a VVoman with Child have a Chollerick swelling in her womb, its deadly. *Hipp.* Aphor. 43. Sect. 5. For the Child dies by reason of the greatnes of the Inflamation, whereupon follows Abortion, which coming upon the back of a grievous disease, kils the Mother. *Galen* in his Comments upon this Aphorism, doubts if this be not true of every Inflamation of the womb as well as of the Chollerick, and whether it be possible that a Child in such a case can live.

Inflamation of the womb easily degenerates into a Gangrene, Because the womb, as it were the Bodies Close-stool, receives a mighty charge of nasty Excrements, by which the inbred heat is easily suffocated.

Ravings, turning of the womb, Hiccoughs, Coldnes of the Hands and Feet, Diaphoretick sweat seizing on a woman in this Disease, do portend sudden death.

If an Inflamation of the womb come to Suppuration, its hopeful that it may be cured; but a foul Ulcer will follow, which wil make the Patient to pine away with a lingering Feaver, or to fall into the Dropsie.

If the Inflamation turn into a Scirrhus, the evil becomes lasting, and often brings a Dropsie.

To cure this Infirmity, the Course of the Blood to the Womb is to be drawn back, it is to be driven from the womb, it is to be diverted another way: that which is flown in and contained in the part, is to be resolved. And if the swelling tend to suppuration, it is to be furthered, and when it is broken, the Matter or Quittor must be voided out; Which may be done by the following Remedies.

An Emollient and cooling Clyster being premised, let Blood be drawn from the Basilick Vein of the Arm, on that side on which the Womb is most affected; or from both Arms, if the swelling be in the

the whol Womb; and let the Blood-letting be repeated twice, thrice, or four times, according to the ſtrength of the Patient, and the greatneſs of the Inflamation.

After ſufficient Revulſion, the Diſeaſe being come to its height, when there is no longer ſuſpition of any preſent flux into the Womb, the lower Veins are to be opened, to derive from the part affected. In which ſence we muſt underſtand, *Galen* in his Book of Blood-letting, and in his 13. Book of the Method of Healing, where he teacheth, That in the Inflamation of the Womb, we muſt open the Veins about the Knees and Anckles. But ſo long as there remains any Indication of Revulſion, it is better to open the Veins of the Arm.

Alſo to revel or draw back the Humors, Frictions are good, and Ligatures or bindings of the uper parts, and Cupping-Glaſſes ſet upon the Shoulders, Loyns, and Back.

If vitious Humors (eſpecially Chollerick) do abound in the Body, which are as it were the Coach of the other Humors to hurry them about the Body; they are to be evacuated with gentle Medicaments, as Syrup of Roſes, and Syrup of Violets ſolutive, Manna, Rhubarb, Catholicon, or Electuary Lenitive; for ſtronger Medicaments by ſtirring the Humors over much, would excite the Flux of Humors more abundantly to the part affected.

And vomiting Medicaments, though preſcribed by *Avicenna*, ſeem no way convenient in this caſe: For if they be mild and gentle, they evacuate nothing to ſpeak of: If they be ſtronger, they cauſe a great Agitation in the Body, by which means the Humors being in a Commotion, may flow more plentifully unto the part diſeaſed.

In regard of the greatneſs of the Feaver, cooling Medicaments are to be uſed, as Juleps and Emulſions; whereunto, if very great wakings, pain, and tumblings and toſſings do diſquiet the Patient, ſome Narcoticks may be added, which may likewiſe be given by themſelves.

After the Firſt Evacuations, let outward Medicines be applied to the lower part of the Belly, between the Navel and the Share, and about the Kidneys; firſt of all repelling and cooling things, in the form of a Liniment, an Epithem, and Cataplaſm.

The Liniment may be made of Oyl of Roſes waſhed in Vinegar, or of Oyntment of Roſes, *Ceratum Santalinum*, or *Galens* cooling Oyntment, with a little Vinegar added.

The Epitheme may be made of the Waters or Decoction of Plantane, Sorrel, Nightſhade, the tops of white Poppies and Roſes, adding a little Bole-Armoniack, Dragons Blood, and *Terra Sigillata*.

The Cataplaſm or Pultiſs may be made of the Crums of fine Manchet boyled with Milk, to which a little Oyl of Roſes may be added, with Juyce of Henbane. Nightſhade, and the whites of Eggs; or of Barley Meal, Linſeed, Fenugreek ſeed, with Oyl of Roſes; whereunto likewiſe the aforeſaid Plants being bruiſed may be added.

Injections muſt be made into the Womb, compounded after this manner:

Take *Plantane Leaves, Water-lilly Leaves, Nightſhade, and Endive, of each one handful: red Roſes two pugils. Boyl all till a third part of the Water be conſumed: and add to the ſtrainings Oyl of Mirtles one ounce: Vinegar half an ounce. Make an Injection.*

Of the ſame Herbs bruiſed with Oyl of Roſes and Vinegar, Peſſaries may be made, and put into the Womb.

Neither muſt Repelling, and Refrigerating Medicaments be long uſed, leſt the Swelling harden and degenerate into a Scirrhus. Wherefore ſoftening and diſcuſſing things are to be mingled with the repelling Simples; with this Proviſo, That the longer the Inflamation is from its Infancy, the greater muſt be the quantity of Digeſtives. So that to the foreſaid Medicaments may be added, Mallows, Marſh-mallows, Mugwort, Fenugreek, Chamomel, Melilot; their Doſe being augmented or diminiſhed, as the caſe ſhall require.

In the mean while, if the Patient be coſtive, ſhe muſt be helped by gentle Purgatives. Yea, and the truth is, frequent Clyſters may do a great deal of good to temper the Inflamation, ſeeing the Womb reſts upon the ſtreight Gut, called *Inteſtinum rectum*. But let them be little in quantity, that they may be kept the longer, and that they may not compreſs the Womb; of which this may be an Example.

Take *Marſh-mallow Roots, the Leaves of Mallows, Violets, Lettice, of each one handful: Nightſhade half a handful: Violet flowers, red Roſes, of each a pugil: ſowr Prunes, ten: boyl them in Barley Water. In ſix ounces of the ſtrained Broth mix three ounces of Oyl of Roſes, and make all into a Clyſter.*

If the Patient be in great pain, to the aforeſaid Clyſters may be added, the Yolks of Eggs, the fat of an Hen, Breaſt-milk, Mucilage of the ſeeds of Fenugreek, Lin-ſeed, or Mallows; yea, and a little quantity of Opium, with ſome Saffron.

In ſuch a caſe, Injections into the Womb may likewiſe be made, of Goats or Sheeps Milk, with Opium and Saffron, of each three or four grains, and a little Roſe Water.

Or

Or unto Peſſaries may be added a little Opium with a little Saffron, the whites of Eggs, and Oyl of Roſes. Or Peſſaries may be made of *Philonium Romanum* with Cotton. Or a Fomentation to eaſe pain, may be prepared on this manner:

Take *Marſh-mallows Branch and Root, Violet Leaves, of each a handful: Chamomel, Melilot, Roſes, of each a pugil. Boyl all for a Fomentation.*

When the Diſeaſe begins to decline, Purgation is to be iterated with gentle Purgatives. And when the Diſeaſe tends to a Reſolution or Concluſion (which is known by remiſſion of the Symptomes, and becauſe the part is not ſo oppreſſed with any Heavineſs) Diſcuſſives muſt be uſed in greater quantity than any of the foregoing Medicaments. Or this Cataplaſm may be made.

Take *Ponder of Marſh-mallow Roots one ounce: Chamomel and Melilot flowers, of each two drams: Mugwort Leaves poudered, Barley and Bean meal, of each half an ounce: boyl them a little in harſh red Wine; add new Hogs Greaſe, Oyl of Chamomel and Lillies, of each one ounce. Make a Pultiß or Cataplaſm.*

Fomentations and Baths to ſit in, may likewiſe do good in this caſe.

If the ſwelling cannot be diſcuſſed, but ſeem to tend to ſuppuration, it is to be furthered by the following Cataplaſm:

Take *Marſh-mallow Roots poudered, Chamomel flowers, Melilot, Meal of Lin-ſeed, Fenugreek, of each one ounce: fat Figs, eight: boyl all to the conſiſtence of a Pultiß. Then add the yolks of four Eggs: Saffron half a ſcruple: Oyl of Lillies and freſh Butter, of each an ounce. Make of all a Cataplaſm.*

When Matter or Quittor is made, which may be known by the abatement of heat and pain, and by a certain inundation perceivable by the touch, the Matter quaking like a quagmire, endeavor muſt be uſed to break the Impoſthume by moving of the Body, by coughing, by neezing, by faſtening Cupping-glaſſes, by cleanſing and attenuating Injections, or by Peſſaries that wil draw and break. As for Example.

Take *Gooſe-Greaſe half an ounce: Turpentine two drams: Rue ſeeds poudered, Nitre, Orice Roots, of each half a dram. Mix all, and with Wool make a Peſſary.*

When the Impoſthume is broke, we muſt endeavor to purge out the Quittor or Matter, and to cleanſe and conſolidate or cloſe up the Ulcer, as ſhall be ſhewed in the Cure of an Ulcer of the Womb, in the Chapter immediately following.

Chap. 8. *Of an Ulcer of the Womb.*

After a ſuppurated Inflamation of the Womb, follows an Ulcer, which likewiſe depends upon other Cauſes, namely, ſo many as may cauſe an Eroſion, fretting, or gnawing the ſubſtance of the Womb.

The Cauſes therefore hereof are, An Impoſthume breaking, Sharp Humors flowing into the Womb, Sharp and Corroſive Medicines conveyed into the Womb, or taken at the Mouth, as was ſaid before touching Cantharides or Spaniſh Flyes.

The Antecedent Cauſes are all ſuch things, which we have formerly ſhewed, have power to cauſe an Inflamation, as difficult Child-birth, violent and unbridled Carnal Conjunction, a long flux of Sharp Humors from the Womb, wounds, fals, and bruiſes, and eſpecially a venemous Gonorrhea, and the Lechers Pocks, the infection whereof is ſoon communicated to the Womb, and its Neck.

The Differences of this Diſeaſe, are taken from the place, the magnitude, the figure and complication with other Infirmities.

In reſpect of the place, that is to ſay, the ſeveral parts of the Womb; the Ulcer is ſomtimes poſſeſſed of the Neck of the Womb, and its inner Orifice; ſomtimes it is in the bottom, though but ſeldom. Somtimes, and that moſt frequently, it ſeizes the inner ſurface of the Womb; ſomtimes, but ſeldom, it aſſaults the outer ſurface; whence it comes to paſs, that ſomtimes the Quittor of theſe Ulcers comes out by the Bladder or Guts, or if it ſettle in the Cavity of the Abdomen, Impoſthumes ariſe about the Patients Groyns, of which *Hippocrates* ſpeaks in his 47. Aphor. Sect. 5.

In reſpect of Quantity, ſome are great, others ſmal Ulcers, according as they take up more or leſs ſpace in the Womb; which if they be little and ſuperficial, they differ little from the Scab and Itch; but if they be great, grievous, and as it were devouring, they are called by *Hippocrates*, *Noma*, that is, eating Ulcers.

In regard of their Figure, Ulcers are called Round, Long, Hollow, or Fiſtulous, that is, like a Pipe.

In regard of Complication with other Infirmities, they are called Phlegmonous, Cancerous, Scirrhous, Painful, VVater-bloodiſh, Poyſonous, and Infectious.

The Signs of an Ulcer bred in the VVomb, are, Pain and biting in the womb or its neck, voiding of

of ſnotty Matter or Quittor out of the Womb, which Diagnoſis wil be more illuſtrated, if the Cauſes producing the Ulcer, ſuch as we have muſtered up, have preceded.

If the Ulcer poſſeſs the neck of the womb, it is diſcerned by the ſight, by help of the Womb perſpective Inſtrument; alſo by the Midwifes hand, or in the genial Embracement, in which the Patient feels a troubleſom pain, But if the Ulcer be in the bottom of the Womb, the pain is felt about the Share, and the Excrements flow more abundantly.

If the Ulcer pierce to the outward ſurface, the Patients Urines or Stools appear Matteriſh, or a Fluctuation is perceived in the Paunch, or a Swelling towards the Groyns, where it threatens to Impoſthumate.

If the Ulcer be ſingle and benign, the Quittor is little, white, and not ſtinking. But if it be malignant and eating, the Quittor will be greeniſh, Lead colored, and party-colored, coming away with great pain and ſtink.

If it ſhall ariſe of the Lechers Pox, Gonorrhœa will uſher it in, or attend upon it, and other tokens of the Whore-maſters Pox will appear.

For the Prognoſticks of this Infirmity, *Hippocrates* in the firſt Book of Womens Sickneſſes, ſaies, That no Ulcer in the Womb ought to be ſlighted, becauſe it is in a part of exquiſite feeling, which hath a fellow feeling with the principal parts of the Body, and is very much diſpoſed to receive a flood of Excrements from them.

If the Ulcers of the VVomb prove Cancerous, Phagedenick, or VVolf-iſh [ſuch as we ſimple people cal the VVoolf, and tel ſtrange tales about, how it eats fleſh, &c.] hollow, or fiſtulous, they are for the moſt part incurable, and do vex the poor Patients miſerably, all their life long.

Ulcers in the Neck of the VVomb are more eaſily cured, becauſe Medicaments may be applied to them immediately.

In women that are recovering of this Diſeaſe, it is a token of perfect health, if they begin to conceive, and conveniently to receive the Mans Sperm, or if they have their monthly Courſes orderly and without pain.

The Cure of a womb Ulcer, muſt tend to hinder the flowing in of ſuch Humors as either beget or cheriſh the Ulcer, and to cleanſe the Ulcer, and cauſe it to come to a coalition. To which purpoſe the following Remedies may be uſed.

And firſt of all, If the Patient be over ful of blood, or the Ulcer have an Inflamation joyned therewith, a Vein in the Arm muſt be opened, and repeated ſo often as there ſeems danger of a new Fluxion; which is eſpecially to be done when the Patient hath her Courſes, that they may flow the leſs, becauſe they are wont to ſupply Matter to the Ulcer, and to cauſe other Humors to flow unto the womb.

Alſo Purgation is very neceſſary, that the Body may be freed from evil Humors; and it ought to be procured by the gentler ſort of Purgatives, as Senna, Rhubarb, Tamarinds, Myrobalans, Catholicum, and ſuch like; and Purgation is often to be repeated, that evil Humors may be diverted from the womb, and it is in this caſe of ſuch moment, that *Foreſtus* witneſſeth in the 48. Obſervation of his 28. Book, That *John Tiengius*, a Phyſitian of *Amſterdam*, cured a Gentlewoman of *Amſterdam* of an Ulcer in her womb, to whom he gave every fourth day, five ounces of the Decoction of Senna, Epithimum, red Roſes, and Indian Myrobalans ſweetened with Sugar, uſing to caſt cleanſing Decoctions, as Injections into her womb.

For to be ever in a readineſs, This following Magiſterial Syrup may be compounded.

Take *of the greater Comfry Roots, and new Polypody of the Oak, of each one ounce: Citron peels dried, ſix drams: Leaves of Plantane*, Vinca pervinca, *Ladies mantle, Sorrel, Maiden-hair, of each a handful: Liquoris ſcraped and ſplit, and Raiſons ſtoned, of each one ounce: Senna cleanſed ſix ounces: Carthamus ſeeds bruiſed two ounces: Agarick newly made into Cakes and bound in a Cloth, ten drams: Muſk-melone ſeeds, and Annis ſeeds, of each three drams: the Cordial Flowers, Roſemary Flowers, and Epithimum, of each one pugil. Make of all a Decoction in Barley Water, in part whereof infuſe of choyce Rhubarb half an ounce: Cinnamon one dram. In a pint and half of the ſtrained Liquor, diſſolve three ounces of the Syrup of Damask Roſes, and as much Sugar as ſhall be requiſite to make it into a Syrup perfectly boyled. Of this let her take two or three ounces, twice or thrice in a month with ſome Decoction of Agrimony and Plantane, or the Infuſion of Rhubarb in Endive Water.*

If the Patient be eaſie to vomit, a purge upwards by Vomit, is to be preferred before the other, becauſe it draws back the Humors from the womb.

In the ſpaces between purging, a Vulnerary Decoction is long to be uſed, which may be made after this manner:

Take *Leaves of Agrimony, Burnet, Knotgraß, Plantane, of each half a handful: China Roots three drams: Coriander ſeeds one dram: Currence half a dram: red Sanders one ſcruple. Boyl all in the Broth of a Chicken. Let the Patient take of the ſtrained Liquor morning and evening.* Or,

Take

Take *Leaves of Mugwort, Plantane, Yarrow, of each one handful: Rhaponticum half an ounce: Agnus Caſtus ſeed one dram. Boyl all in a ſufficient quantity of white Wine. Sweeten the ſtrained Liquor with Sugar; and give her two or three ounces in a morning,*

If a Feaver urge, and great quantity of bloodyiſh Quittor be voided, Whey and Milk will be very good; let her take eight ounces or more in a morning, adding a little Honey of Roſes, or Sugar.

If her fleſh begin to fall away, with tokens of an Hectick Feaver, Milk, eſpecially Aſſes Milk, muſt be given with Sugar of Roſes for a whol month.

Sweat-provoking Medicines may likewiſe do good where there is no Inflamation, nor hot diſtemper, to dry the Ulcer, and to revel the ſerous humors towards the habit of the Body.

Turpentine waſhed in ſome convenient water for the womb, as of Mugwort or Feaverfew; or in ſome water reſpecting the Ulcer, as of Plantane, and red Roſes, taken now and then with Sugar of Roſes, doth cleanſe and conſolidate or fil up the Ulcer.

Pils of Bdellium given to a dram at a time, or every day, or once in two daies one ſcruple, do very much good, and ſtop the blood in caſe it flow.

Or new Pills may be made on purpoſe, to be uſed after the ſame manner, thus:

Take *Bdellium three drams: Mirrh, Frankinſence, of each one dram: Sarcocolla, Storax, Amber, Cheb-Myrobalans, of each half a dram: red Coral two ſcruples. With Syrup of Poppies make a Maſs fit for Pills, whereunto, in caſe of extream pain, a little Opium may be added.*

Trochiſci Alkekengi [Cakes compounded with Winter-Cherries, of which conſult my *London Diſpenſatory*] with Opium, are likewiſe (being poudered) given to drink down, where the Patient is troubled with great pain.

Alſo to mitigate pain, the ſame Remedies may be uſed, which we preſcribed for that intent, in our diſcourſe of the Inflamation of the womb.

This following Pouder is very effectual to dry up the Ulcer:

Take *Acacia, Juyce of Hypociſtis, of each one dram: Dragons blood, fine Starch, Plantane Roots, Birthwort, or round Ariſtolochia Roots, of each half a dram: Bole Armoniack one dram: Maſtich, Sarcocolla, of each half a dram. Make all into a moſt fine Pouder, whoſe Doſe let be one dram, with Plantane water, red Roſe water, or water wherein Steel hath been often quenched.*

Zacutus Luſitanus in the 87. Obſervation, and the 88. of his ſecond Book, propounds an Electuary and a Water, wherewith he witneſſeth that he had cured Ulcers of the womb judged incurable. Any one may find the Deſcription of them in the places above cited.

To cleanſe, dry, and fill up the Ulcer, divers ſorts of Injections are uſually made; which are nevertheleſs, not to be uſed, until the Inflamation be firſt taken away, which is oftentimes attendant upon theſe kind of Ulcers; and until the pain be aſſwaged, which is not only very troubleſom, but alſo by vexing the part, it is wont to encreaſe the flux of Humors.

In regard therefore of that ſame Inflamation and ſharpneſs of Humors, let Emulſions of the cooling Seeds, Whey of Goats Milk, or Milk it ſelf, either alone, or mingled with the Juyce of Plantane and Shepheards-purſe; or if need be, a Decoction of Poppy heads, and the tops of Mallows be firſt of al injected. Some Practitioners are of Opinion, that luke-warm water alone, doth very much good in theſe caſes, if it be often injected. And there is reaſon for it, ſeeing by that means the heat and Inflamation of the womb is tempered, the pain is aſſwaged, and the filth adhering to the Ulcer is waſhed off. *Valeſcus de Taranta*, doth approve of cold water likewiſe, in theſe words: *I have known* (ſaies he) *ſome women, who perceiving they had Ulcers in their wombs, did waſh them with cold Water, and then wipe them clean, and dry them with linnen cloaths, which they did often put in at the Watergate. And by theſe means often renewed, they came many times to be perfectly cured.*

The hot diſtemper taken away, and the pain aſſwaged, or for the moſt part diminiſhed, we muſt proceed to Clenſers, firſt uſing the more light and eaſie Clenſers, and after the more ſtrong.

The gentle Clenſers are, Whey taken with Sugar, Barley water ſweetened with Sugar, or Honey of Roſes, to make it more clenſing; or Hydromel ſimple (ſee my *Diſpenſatory*, a mixture of water and honey boyled a while together.)

For a more ſtrong Clenſer, uſe the Decoction of Barley, Lintels, ſhaled Beans, and the Leaves of Smallage, Pellitory of the wal, Plantane, boyled together, a little Honey of Roſes being added to the ſtraining.

When the Ulcer is very foul, the wound-decoction commonly called *Aqua Catapultarum*, is the beſt thing that can be uſed, whoſe Compoſition is thus:

Take *the Roots of Gentian, Rhapontick: Zedoary, and round Ariſtolochia or Birthwort, of each one ounce: white Wine ſix pints: boyl all till a third part of the Liquor be conſumed. In the ſtraining*

ſtraining diſſolve half a pound of white Sugar. Let it be kept for uſe as occaſion requires.

Or the following Decoction may be provided:

Take *of whol Barley, courſe Bran, and red Roſes, of each one pugil: Leaves of Agrimony, Wormwood, Woodbind, and Smallage, of each one handful: Beans and Lentils, of each three drams: ſcraped Liquoris, Orice Roots of Florence, and Zedoary, of each two ounces. Boyl all in water, adding towards the end, a little white Wine.*

If the Ulcers be very ſtinking and ful of rotten Quittor, there may be added to the Decoction, a little *Unguentum Ægyptiacum, Collyrium Lanfranci*, or the Pouder of dulcified Mercury.

When the Ulcer ſhal be wel ſcoured and clenſed, we muſt uſe drying and ſolidating things, made after this manner.

Take *the greater Comfry Roots, Biſtort Roots, of each one ounce: Leaves of Plantane, Horſtail, Shepheards-purſe, Ladies Mantle, Mouſ-ear, Yarrow, of each one handful: red Roſe Leavs half a handful: Boyl all in water, and make thereof an Injection.*

With the which or like injection, this following fleſh-creating Pouder may be mingled.

Take *the Roots of Orice, Birthwort, great Comfry, of each half an ounce: Mirrh one ounce: Aloes three drams. Make all into Pouder, of which half an ounce may be mingled with every Injection.*

Turpentine waſh'd in Plantane Water to the quantity of two drams, diſſolved with Honey and the Yolk of an Egg, wil do very much good, mingled with the Injection; and the more if the fleſh-creating Pouder be alſo added.

The Oyntment *Pompholygos, de Ceruſa, de Plumbo*, of each ſix drams for a Doſe, mixed together, are likewiſe uſed in Injections. But the Egg-yolk Oyl, rubbed about with a Peſtle in a Leaden Morter, is better than al the reſt.

Fumes received through a cloſe ſtool, do pierce to the deep Ulcers which are about the bottom of the Womb, and dry them: Which may be thus prepared:

Take *Frankinſence, Mirrh, Maſtich, Storax, Juniper, Gum, Labdanum, of each one ounce: Turpentine as much as ſhall be requiſite. Make all into little Cakes for to be burnt under a cloſe ſtool.*

In a moſt ſtubborn Ulcer, Cinnabarus or Minium being added to the Fume-Cakes, bears away the bell from al other Medicaments.

Alſo Baths that are drying, Sulphurous, and Allumiſh, are uſed in long Ulcers: and Phyſitians are wont to ſend their deſperate Patients to thoſe Baths, as the laſt Remedy.

It wil not likewiſe be unprofitable to apply convenient Plaiſters to the Region of the Womb, ſeeing their vertue can paſs to the innermoſt parts of the womb, by the inviſible pores of the Body.

If an Ulcer be in the neck of the womb, it muſt be ſmeared with ſcouring and drying Liniments, or Oyntments. The Scourers may be made after this manner:

Take *of the Juyce of Smallage two ounces: Honey of Roſes one ounce and an half: Turpentine half an ounce: Barley Meal as much as ſhall ſeem convenient. Boyl them all gently, and make them into the form of a Liniment or Oyntment.* Or,

Take *the round Birthwort half an ounce: Horehound, Centaury the ſmaller, Agrimony, of each half a handful. Boyl them in a fit quantity of Hydromel. To the ſtrained Liquor add the pouder Florentine Orice Root two drams: Barley meal, and clarified Honey, of each as much as ſhall ſuffice. Make all into a Liniment or Oyntment.*

And ſometimes the Oyntment *Pompholygos* is uſed, adding thereto, Frankinſence, Maſtich, Mirrh, Aloes, as the Nature of the Ulcer ſhal require.

When the Ulcer is ſufficiently clenſed, a drying and ſcar-contracting Oyntment is to be laid on, which may be thus made:

Take *Tutty Pouder waſhed half an ounce: Litharge of Gold and Silver, Ceruß, Sarcocolla, of each two drams: Oyl and Wax as much as will ſuffice. Make all into an Oyntment.*

It falls out ſometimes, That Ulcers of the Womb do penetrate unto the ſtreight Gut, and ſometimes unto the Bladder; which is known by the Quittor iſſuing through the Water-Gate, or the Dung-Gate.

If the Quittor or Matter come out by ſtool, Lenitive, Scouring, and Drying Clyſters are to be uſed; ſuch as we propounded in our Cure of the Bloody-flux.

But if the Quittor come away by Urine, gentle Piſs-drivers and cooling wil be requiſite, which may purge out the filth ſent into the Bladder, and further the Cure of the Ulcer; ſuch as are, Emulſions of the greater cold Seeds, after which, Turpentine muſt be uſed, and other Medicines preſcribed for an Ulcer of the Bladder.

If the Ulcer degenerate into a Fiſtula, which chiefly fals out when it opens outwardly towards the Hip, though it may likewiſe happen in the Womb it ſelf, and its Neck; it is to be conſidered, which

is better for the Patient, to leave that Passage free and open, to which Nature hath been accustomed, and by which she endeavors to disburden her self of manifold Excrements, or to stop the same. If it be judged best to keep it open, a palliative Cure must at least be made, by Purges frequently repeated, and Sweat-provokers are to be administred twice in a yeer,; also scouring Injections, and strengthening must be used, and *Emplastrum Diapalma Divinum*. and such like Plasters, are to be laid upon it. But if there be hopes to make a perfect Cure, and heal up the Fistula, such Medicines must be applied, as are wont to be used for the cure of other Fistulaes.

If Ulcers happen in the Water-Gate, or in the Cavity of the Womb, by reason of the Lechers Pox, they cannot be Cured without the General Cure of the said Pox. In the performance of which Cure, of many waies, there is none better than Fumigations of Cinnabaris or Minium; for they do not only help to rid the whol Body of that Infection, but being received into the Cavity of the Womb, they do in a peculiar manner hasten the Cure of these kind of Ulcers. Likewise in the Cure of this Disease, by Quick-silver'd Oyntments, the said Oyntments must be conveighed into the inner parts of the Womb.

In whatsoever Ulcers of the Womb, if the Neck thereof be molested with an itch, as it often falls out, by reason of a deflux of a sharp and salt Humor into that part; to pacifie the said Itch, a Pessary wil be good, dipped in *Unguentum Emulatum cum Mercurio*; or in *Ægyptiacum* dissolved in Sea-water, or in Allum water; or in new Butter wherein Quick-silver hath been killed, with some Brimstone mingled.

Chap. 9. *Of a* Scirrhus, *or a Painless hard Swelling of the Womb.*

THe Nature, Sorts, and Causes of a Scirrhus, or hard Swelling in the Womb, are the same which have been set down in our Chapter of the like Swelling in the Liver, and need not in this place be vainly repeated, but must be sought for in the said Chapter.

Howbeit among the Antecedent Causes, this is proper to an Hard-Swelling of the Womb, and is very frequent, namely, for women when the flux of their Courses or Child-bed purgations are upon them, undiscreetly to expose themselves to the cold Air, or to drink cold water; whereby the flux is stayed, and the retained blood grows thick, and is condensed, and at length produceth a Scirrhus or stony hard Swelling in the Womb.

The Signs of such a Swelling bred in the Womb, are, An hardness felt in the Region of the Womb, such as resists the touch, which hardness represents the compass of the Womb; an heaviness in the same place, and a sence of some weight bearing down, especially when the sick woman stands, as though the womb would fal down into the water-Gate; but when they sit or lie, it bears upon the streight Gut with its weight. There is no Feaver nor pain; wherein it differs from an Inflamation, or at most there is but very little pain in an imperfect Scirrhus, but in the Womb there is none. If it follow an Inflamation, the Feaver and pain ceases, the hardness and resistence abiding. If it be in the Body of the Womb, it is easily discerned by handling the parts about the Share; but if it be in the Neck of the womb, it may be perceived by ones finger. It is distinguished from a Mole by the preceding Causes; and because in a Mole, if the Courses flow, they flow disorderly, but in this Hard Swelling they keep their order; and in a Mole, the womans Dugs strout with Milk, but in the Hard Swelling they are extenuated.

As for the Prognostick Signs, Every Scirrhus or hard stony Swelling, is very exceeding hard to cure; for an extream Hardness once contracted can hardly be softened; also Natural heat is so very weak in that part where there is such a Swelling, that it can very hardly discuss an hard and almost stony substance.

A great and unvanquishable Scirrhus, or stony Swelling, doth at length bring the Dropsie to keep him company.

A Scirrhus, or stony hard Swelling of the womb, if it be tampered withal with over hot and moist Medicaments, it turns into a Cancer.

The Cure of this Disease aims at two things, the Antecedent Cause, and the conjoyned or concomitant Cause.

In respect of the Antecedent Cause, a Vein must be opened, first in the Arms, if the Disease be of no very long continuance; afterward in the lower parts, especially when the Patients Courses are stopt.

The opening of the Hemorrhoid Veins, is also very profitable in this case: For they do both evacuate dreggy blood, and they turn the Humor from the womb, because of the communion which the Veins have with the womb.

Purging is likewise necessary, by fits repeated, procured by such Medicines as purge Melancholly, using

uſing firſt the gentler, and then the ſtronger ſort by degrees.

And before the Purges, ſuch things muſt be given as prepare the Melancholly Humor, and open the narrow paſſages of the Excrements, in the form of Apozems, Juleps, or Broths, according to the diſpoſition of the ſick party.

And beſides the ordinary Openers, Medicines with Steel, muſt be likewiſe uſed, whereby thoſe ſtrongeſt Obſtructions cauſed by thick and rebellious Humors in the Womb and other parts, may be diſſolved.

And that ſuperfluous humors may be derived from the womb, Iſſues may profitably be made in the Thighs, which are to be kept open until the Patients monthly Courſes (which are commonly ſtopt in this Diſeaſe) ſhal return unto their ordinary form, in reſpect of time, quantity, and quality.

In reſpect of the conjoyned Cauſe, Emollient and Reſolving Medicaments are to be applied outwardly, compounded after this manner:

Take *the Roots of Marſh-mallows and Lillies, of each two ounces: the leaves of Mallows, Violets, Marſh-mallows, Bears-foot, of each one handful: Leaves of Mugwort, Nep, of each half a handful: Seeds of Line and Fenugreek, of each one ounce: Flowers of Chamomel and Melilot, of each a pugil. Make a Decoction of all, wherewith the Region of the Share, and the Groins muſt be fomented, a warm ſponge being firſt dipped therein, and then ſqueezed out, and ſo laid on, and held to the parts aforeſaid.*

For the greater mollifying, the Decoction may be made in Water and ſweet Oyl, or in the Broth made of a Wethers Guts.

There may alſo be added to the Decoction, that it may become more powerful, the Roots of Briony and wild Cucumers; for we muſt begin with the milder, and proceed to the ſtronger by Degrees.

Of the ſame Decoction (augmenting the quantity of the Simples) may a Bath be made for the Patient to ſit in, which is very effectual in this Caſe, and more powerful than a Fomentation.

Alſo frequent Clyſters and Injections into the Womb, are to be made of the ſame Decoction, whereunto the Oyls of Lillies, Chamomel, or ſweet Almonds may be added.

Take *of the Oyl of Lillies, and ſweet Almonds, of each three ounces: Mucilage of Fenugreek ſeed extracted with white Wine one ounce: Hens, Gooſes, and Ducks Fat, of each one ounce and an half: new Butter and Hogs Greaſe, of each two ounces: Wax and Turpentine as much as ſhal ſuffice. Make all into an Oyntment.*

This which follows, is approved in al hard Swellings, being deſcribed by *Rhaſis* in his Seventh Book, dedicated to King *Almanſor*.

Take *Bdellium, Ammoniacum, Galbanum, of each equal quantities: Beat them in a Morter with Oyl of Ben, and of Lillies; then add the Mucilages of Fenugreek Seed, Lin-ſeed, and Figs, in equal quantities. Make all into an Oyntment.*

Of the ſame Materials, adding Wax, may a moſt effectual Plaiſter be made, to be applied to the Region of the Womb, both before and behind. Or a Plaiſter may be applied made of *Emplaſtrum Diachylum ireatum.*

A Cataplaſm or Pultiſs may be made of what remains after the Decoction aforeſaid, being beaten and forced through an Hair Searce, adding of the meal of Lin-ſeed and Fenugreek ſeed, of each an ounce: ſix Figs: two drams of Orice Root: half a dram of Saffron: Hens Greaſe, and Oyl of ſweet Almonds, of each a ſufficient quantity. Make of al a Pultiſs.

The Bitumenous clay taken out of Brimſtone Baths, and ſuch as are Bitumenous, is profitably applied as a Cataplaſm.

The Fume of the Stone called *Pyrites* [that is, the Marchaſite, or Fire-ſtone] being made red hot, and quenched in Vinegar, is by *Galen* wonderfully extolled for diſſolving all ſtony hard Swellings, ſo that it works like a Charm. In the ſaid Vinegar, Savory and Pellitory may be boyled: but care muſt be had, leſt your *Lapis Pyrites* prove to be the Stone called *Plumbarius*, or the Lead-ſtone, which would do very much hurt.

Finally, All the Medicines, as wel internal as external, which were before deſcribed in our Cure of the hard Swellings of the Liver and Spleen, may alſo be uſeful in this caſe.

Yet muſt theſe Medicaments in the whol courſe of the Cure be moderated and accommodated with the greateſt judgment and diſcretion imaginable, leſt the hard Swelling become harder; or (which is much worſe) degenerate into a Cancer, Which al Practitioners fear, when Medicaments are unwarily adminiſtred for a long time together: ſo that it is better ſometimes to pauſe, and give or apply nothing, that we may mark what good is done by the former applications. For it is vain ſtriving, when the Swelling (having loſt al ſence of feeling) hath put on the Nature of a ſtone.

Chap. 10. *Of a Cancer of the Womb.*

A Cancer is a hard Swelling of the Body or Neck of the Womb, which reſiſts the touch, and cauſeth a moſt vehement pain, as it were pricking and cutting the part affected.

It is cauſed by black Choller gathered in that part, or by reaſon of a Scirrhus, or ſenceleſs hard tumor ill cured, which eaſily turns into a Cancer, eſpecially in this part of the Body, by reaſon of the copious afflux of blood, which being retained in thoſe Veins which are nigh unto the Scirrhus, and not ſufficiently evacuated by the monthly purgations, it becomes aduſt or burned, and acquires a malignant diſpoſition.

It is ordinarily reckoned to be of two ſorts, Ulcerate, and not Ulcerate.

So long as the Morbifick matter is of leſſer Acrimony and Malignity, it cauſeth a Cancer not ulcerated; but when it grows more ſharp by putrefaction or aduſtion, it doth exulcerate the tumor, and produce an ulcerated Cancer.

The Diſeaſe may eaſily be known by the definition propounded; for if an hard Tumor reſiſting the touch, be felt in the Body of the Womb, or its Neck, cauſing a pricking and cutting pain, we may pronounce boldly that it is a Cancer, Yet it is more evidently diſtinguiſhed by the eye-ſight, when it may be ſeen as in the Neck of the Womb it may be, with help of a Womb-perſpective Inſtrument; for we ſhal ſee an uneven and bunching ſwelling, Lead-colored or black, compaſſed about with certain branches of Veins, as it were with roots; but if it be ulcerated, it ſends forth a certain blood-watry quittor or matter, which is yellow or black, and ſtinking, and ſometimes blood, by corroſion of the Veins which paſs through that part, ſometimes in ſuch quantity that the Patient incurs danger of death. Hereunto is added a ſmal Feaver, unquietneſs, Stomach-ſickneſs, an heat in, and about the Water-Gate, &c.

By way of Prognoſtication, we can only ſay thus much, That a Cancer is incurable, be it ulcerated or not ulcerated. Which as it is true of al Cancers, not excepting thoſe in the outer parts of the Body, much more is it of a Cancer in the Womb, by reaſon of that perpetual Common-ſhore of Excrements which flows into the part.

Seeing then a perfect Cure cannot be hoped for, we muſt content our ſelves with ſuch a Cure as is called *Palliative*. The ſcope whereof is, to hinder a not ulcerated Cancer from ulcerating, and an exulcerated Cancer from becoming more exulcerate: and in both to allay and temper the extremity of the pain. Which muſt be done, firſt by univerſal Purgations of the whol Body, and by other Medicines which may qualifie and evacuate the black Chollerick, and Melancholick blood, and hinder the further generation thereof. In the number of which are, bleeding in the Arm, Anckle, and Hemorrhoid Veins; Potions, Apozems, Juleps, Broths, Milk, Whey, cold Mineral Waters, and ſuch like Remedies as theſe uſually preſcribed by Practitioners for the Cure of al Cancers in what part of the Body ſoever. And eſpecially Purgations muſt be frequently reiterated, that the antecedent matter of a Cancer may be abated.

And then outward Remedies are to be uſed, ſuch as are moderately cool and aſtringent, without any corroſive or biting quality; they are commonly applied in form of Liniments or Oyntments. The beſt are made after this manner:

Take *Oyl of Myrtles and Roſes, of each two ounces: Juyce of Nightſhade and Houſleek, of each one ounce. Stir all together in a Leaden Morter, with a Leaden Peſtle, until they grow black: then add Litharge of Silver, and Ceruß, both waſhed in Scabious Water, of each two drams: Camphire ten grains. Make all into an Oyntment, with which let the part affected, be ſmeared three or four times a day.* Or,

Take *Oyl of Egg-yolks, and of Roſes, of each one ounce and an half: Sugar of Lead one dram. Stir them together in a Leaden morter till their color change.*

This following puts down al the reſt, wherewith Swellings of the Dugs which have been accounted Cancerous, have been perfectly cured.

Take *Egg-yolks Oyl two ounces: Juyce of Nightſhade and Veronica or Houſleek, of each half an ounce: Quick-ſilver not killed two drams. Stir them luſtily together in a leaden morter, with a leaden peſtle, till they become thick as an Oyntment.*

The foreſaid Oyntments are to be conveyed into the womb upon long tents, or upon wax Candles, wound in Linnen. But Injections may much more eaſily be conveyed into the Womb. They are compounded on this manner:

Take *Barley Water half a pint: Nightſhade and Plantane Water, of each two ounces: Water of Houſleek one ounce: white Troches of* Rhaſis *two drams: Sugar of Lead one dram. Make of all an Injection.*

If pain be very vehement, add to four ounces of the Injection, one ounce of Syrup of Poppies.

Alſo

Also let the part affected be fomented with the waters of Plantane and Nightshade, or their Decoctions; whereunto may be added the Leaves of Water-lilly, white Poppy, red Roses, and Camphire. Which Decoction may also frequently be injected into the womb, and it will become much more effectual, if it shal be wel wrought about in a Leaden morter, or a dram of the Sugar of Lead be added to it.

Among Specifick Remedies, Frogs are commended, being washed and boyled, and laid on as a Pultis, or their Broth being used as an Injection. Also the Decoction, or juyce of River Crabs, injected into the womb. As also Herb Robert used inwardly or outwardly.

If the Cancer be ulcerated, the Dose of Minerals must be augmented in the foresaid Liniments, and to them the ashes of River Crabs may profitably be added. And with the Injections, the white Troches of *Rhasis* may be mingled, and Barley Water with the Materials of the foresaid Injection.

If pain be very urgent, Fomentations of Mallows, Marsh-mallows, Water-Lillies, Poppy, Henbane, Green Coriander, Dil, Fleawort seeds, Milk, Saffron, and the like, are to be used at convenient seasons; or Pultisses made of them are to be applied. And of their Decoctions, Injections, and Baths to sit in, may be provided.

Yet wil not al these Medicaments somtimes serve turn to pacifie a most cruel pain, which somtimes gives the Patient neither rest nor sleep. Which compels us many times to make use of Narcotick or stupefactive Medicines, which in this Disease, by reason of the exceeding Heat of the Humors, do less hurt. And I have seen a woman, having a Cancer in her Dug, that took every night for four months together, two or three grains of Laudanum, and had no hurt, but very great comfort thereby.

If from an ulcerated Cancer much blood do proceed, as it often fals out, let Juyce of Plantane with a little Frankinsence be injected into the womb.

Chap. II. *Of Mortification, or Gangrenation, and Sphacelation, or Blasting of the Womb.*

A Gangrene is the corruption or mortification of a part beginning; but when it is wholly corrupted, and dead, it is said to be Sphacelated, or blasted.

In the Genital parts of Women, this Disease is easily bred, because those parts are moister and softer than ordinary, and do easily receive the Excrements of the whol Body.

It often follows an Inflamation, Imposthume, Ulcer, or Cancer il cured, when the vital heat of the part, is choaked or destroyed. It is choaked in great Inflamations, when more blood flows in than the Natural heat of the part can digest, or turn into Matter. It is destroyed, either by a cold distemper extinguishing it, or by an hot one, dissipating and resolving the same.

A beginning Gangrene is known by an unusual heat felt in the part, a horror and trembling seizes upon the Patient, with a languishing and quick-beating pulse, and with fainting away, or swooning. And seeing this Disease doth for the most part happen to the Neck of the Womb, so that the part affected may be perceived by the Eye; it is discovered to be soft, Lead-colored, black and carrion like, and may be prickt or cut, and the Patient never feel it; and it sends forth besides, a stinking and carrion-like smel.

As for the Prognostick or Predictions belonging to this Disease. It is a most grievous, most dangerous Disease, and for the most part deadly: yet it hath been observed by very many Authors, That the Womb being putrefied and Gangrenated, hath either fallen away of it self, or been cut away, the womens lives being saved: which Observations of Authors, *Schenkius* hath collected to a great number, in the fourth Book of his Observations.

The Cure is performed with the same Remedies which are wont to be applied to other parts being Gangrenated, if it be in the Neck of the Womb, or tend toward the outward parts; as namely, with Scarrifications, and washings or bathings with a Decoction of Wormwood, Mirrh, and such like, with the Oyntment called *Ægyptiacum*, the Cataplasm called *De Tribus farinis*, which is thus made:

Take *Barley meal, Bean meal, and Orobus meal, of each two ounces: Oxymel one pound: Boyl them to the thickness of a Pultiss or Cataplasm. Whereunto if there be added, meal of Lupines, Mirrh, Aloes, and Wormwood, it will be more effectual.*

If any part of the Womb be wholly corrupt and dead, it must be cut off; or if the Womb fall down, it must be separated, by binding the Ligature every day faster and closer. Of which kind of Operations, there be many Examples collected by *Schenkius* in the fourth Book of his Observations.

Wierus also relates in his Observations, That he cured a woman of twenty five yeers of age, who

in

in the hotteſt of the Dog-daies, had a certain little bunch growing in her Water-Gate. Whereunto an unskilful Chyrurgion applying Pultiſſes that were not proper, within a few daies, all that part began to putrefie, grow black and dead, and the Diſeaſe paſt on with incredible ſwiftneſs towards the Dung-Gate. And *Wierus* undertook the Cure after this Method: Firſt, he ſquirted good ſtore of the Juyce of Nightſhade and Plantane with a Syringe into both the Paſſages three or four times a day; between which times, he applyed a bolſter wet with the foreſaid Juyces, Vinegar being mixed therewith; which growing dry was wet again with the ſame Liquor. And in this courſe of reiterated Application he continued til the fervent heat was quenched, and the putrefaction began to ceaſe. She took in the mean while, thrice every day a Potion, of the Decoction of Sorrel, Scabious, Burnet, Damask Prunes, the tops of Borrage and Bugloſs, Marigold flowers, with Water, Sugar, and Vinegar, made in the manner of a long, acid, or ſharp Syrup. Her Diet was ſpare, but cooling and tart, to prevent putrefaction. On the third day, the fury of the burning heat, and of the putrefaction, was abated. Whereupon he commanded the black and dead fleſh to be drawn or plucked out with a little Forceps [Chyrurgions Inſtrument, like Tongs or Pincers] and ſeparated round about from the live fleſh, without any pain, and ſo to be cut off. Then he conſumed the reliques even to the live fleſh with the Oyntment called *Ægyptiacum*. And proceeded to cicatrize, or bring it to a Scar, after the ſame manner which is uſed in other Ulcers.

In the whol courſe of the Cure, care muſt be had to ſtrengthen the Heart, both by things given in, and applied outwardly: Likewiſe Emollient, Cleanſing, and Refrigerating Clyſters, are frequently to be given, which do much help the part affected, by reaſon of Neighbor-hood.

Chap. 12. *Of the Wombs Wind and Water-Swelling, or Dropſie.*

THe Inflation or blowing up of the Womb with Wind, and its Dropſie, are by Writers confounded or jumbled together; ſo that they call the Inflation, a Dropſie coming of wind; whereas the Dropſie properly ſo called is ingendered by a watery Humor, Yet are they diſtinguiſhed, and there is a certain puffing up of the Womb with wind, ſuddenly ruſhing in, and ſtretching the ſame, and cauſing vehement pain, as in the Chollick; which becauſe it continues not, but is ſoon diſcuſſed, it deſerves not the name of a Dropſie; and ſuch a puffing up is often ſeen in Hyſterical women which have the Womb-fits.

There is therefore to be reckoned a two-fold Dropſie of the Womb; one from Wind, which is like that ſort of Belly-dropſie which is termed *Tympanitis*, or the Drum-belly Dropſie: another ariſing from a wheyiſh Humor, anſwering to the Dropſie of the Belly, called *Aſcites*, that is, the Bottle-belly Dropſie: Some add a third ſort, anſwering to the third ſort of Belly-Dropſies, called from its cauſe, *Leucophlegmatia*, that is, white-flegm Dropſie, which is ſeldom ſeen in the courſe of Practice. Yet I have ſeen a Gentlewoman, which in one day voided ſuch plenty of thick flegm out of her womb, as might weigh probably ſix or ſeven pound weight: which flegm long retained, might doubtleſs have cauſed in her, a Dropſie of the womb.

Wind and water cauſing a Dropſie of the Womb, are contained either within the Cavity of the Womb, or in its Membranes, or in certain Bladders. Touching the Cavity of the VVomb, it is ſomwhat doubted how Wind and Humors can be contained therein, ſeeing there is ſo eaſie a Paſſage through the Neck and Mouth of the VVomb. We anſwer, The inner Orifice or Mouth of the VVomb, may be cloſed up divers waies; either by thick flegm ſticking faſt thereunto, and growing hard, or by a Scirrhus, or ſome other cauſe. *Mercatus* conceives, That a ſnotty kind of flegm is voided by the mouthes of thoſe Veins which are ordained for the monthly Purgations, and that of the ſaid ſnotty flegm a skin is framed, which covers all the inner ſurface of the VVomb, within which thin skin, the wheyiſh and windy Matter is contained. But *Fernelius* thinks, That water may be contained in the womb, without any thing amiſs in its mouth, but barely by its conſtriction or purſing of it ſelf together. All theſe ſorts are to be allowed of, and may be confirmed by divers Examples.

And firſt of all, Examples of VVinds contained in the VVomb-Cavity, are recited by *Sennertus*, in the Fourth Book of his Practice, Part 1. Sect. 2. Chap. 10. The firſt is taken out of *Valeſcus de Taranta*, touching a certain Jewiſh woman of *Liſbon*, who taking her ſelf to be with Child, when ſhe expected to be delivered, a great quantity of wind came away, and ſo her womb was brought down again. The Second is taken out of *Mathiolus de Gradi*, who relates the ſame thing to have befallen his own wife. And other Examples taken out of *Dodonæus*, *Thadæus Dunus*, and other VVriters, do teſtifie the like Caſes; and we ſee the ſame often in the courſe of our Practice. Whereunto may be added a Hiſtory, which we ſhall in the Cure relate out of *Solenander*, of a woman who by

by means of a Fumigation made of Nutmegs, let wind fly out of her Womb, which gave a report like a Piſtol.

And Examples of Water contained in the Womb are propounded by the ſaid *Sennertus*, out of *Rhaſis*, who ſaw a woman out of whoſe Womb there flowed twenty five *Cotila's* of water, which is a Meaſure not uſed with us, containing about half an Ale Pint. Alſo out of *Jacobus de Partibus*, and *Dodonæus*, who relate ſuch a like Story. And *Veſalius* Diſſected or Anatomized a woman, in the hollowneſs of whoſe womb, were found above ſixty *Auſburg* Meaſures of water, each Meaſure containing three pints, and the mouth of her womb was grown to a wonderful hardneſs.

And that water is ſomtimes contained in the womb in bladders, many Authors do teſtifie, who have ſeen examples thereof in ſome women, who voided ſuch bladders ful of water from their wombs; among the reſt *Aetius*, *Valeriola*, *Chriſtopherus a Vega*, *Mercatus*, *Platerus*, and *Fabricius Hildanus*.

Somtimes alſo women with Child have a Dropſie at the ſame time in their wombs, as *Fabricius Hildanus* relates of his own wife, whoſe Belly was ſwelled to a monſtrous greatneſs; and at the time of her delivery, ſhe voided firſt of all, eighteen pints of water, and half an hour after, nine pints more; and at laſt ſhe was delivered of a Boy, ſtrong and healthy. The like caſe we find in *Skenkius*, but with a contrary event, concerning a woman, who being delivered of a living Child, continued ſtil big-bellied, and her belly growing ſtil greater and greater, ſhe died of it, and her womb being opened, a great quantity of water was found therein.

Finally, *Fernelius* hath an Example, in the ſixth Book of Diſeaſes, Chap. 15. of water retained in the womb, only by reaſon of the cloſe ſhutting of the mouth of the womb, without any other fault therein. The ſtory is of a woman that had a Dropſie in her womb, who as often as ſhe had her monthly Purgations, voided al her watry Excrements out of her womb, filling ſix or eight Baſons with a very hot yellowiſh water, til the ſwelling of her belly was wholly abated. The next month the like redundancy of watry Excrements being collected, was in like manner evacuated.

The immediate Cauſe of the windy and watry Swelling of the womb, is the weakneſs of Natural heat, reſiding in the Liver or Spleen; and from thoſe parts, wind, flegm, or wheyiſh humors are tranſmitted into the womb; or the weakneſs is in the womb it ſelf, whereby the ſaid Excrements are therein collected and heaped together.

And the Cauſes which weaken Natural heat, either directly, or by accident, are very many, and the chief are, of thoſe things which are collected by Phyſitians, *Res non Naturales*, things not Natural. So, cold air, eſpecially after Child-birth, heedleſsly received into the womb, is a moſt effectual cauſe of this infirmity. Alſo cold Air unſeaſonably received when the Courſes flow, and going frequently into cold water, or padling in the ſame, eſpecially during the ſaid flux, is a cauſe thereof. So is much uſe of cold Meats, or windy, as fruits, Herbs, Beans, and Peaſe, and likewiſe of Vinegar: Cold water plentifully and unſeaſonably drunk down, long and deep ſleep, painful childing and abortion eſpecially if it often happen, immoderate flux of the Courſes, exhauſting the Natural heat, or their ſuppreſſion choaking the ſame. Add to theſe, the proper Diſeaſes of the womb, as ſwellings, ulcers, and ſuch like, which do reſolve the heat of the part; or elſe ſhut the mouth of the womb, and hinder the egreſs of Menſtrual blood, and excrementitious humors.

In the Diſcovery of this Diſeaſe, many things are to be conſidered:

Firſt, How this particular Dropſie of the womb, may be known and diſtinguiſhed from that of the whol Body?

Secondly, How the ſeveral ſorts of this Womb-Dropſie may be diſcerned, as whether it come from wind, from wheyiſh Humors, or from flegm?

Thirdly, Whether it proceed primarily from ſome infirmity of the womb, or by fault of ſome other parts of the Body?

Fourthly, Whether the Matter offending be contained in the Cavity of the womb, or between its Membranes, or in certain Bladders?

Fifthly, How to diſtinguiſh it from other Tumors of the womb?

Sixthly, How from being great with Child?

Seventhly, How it may be known from a Mole?

As for the Firſt Queſtion. It is diſtinguiſhed from an Univerſal Dropſie of the Belly, in that the Womb-Dropſie ſwels chiefly the lower part of the Belly; whereas the univerſal Dropſie diſtends equally the whol Belly in all the parts thereof. Again, In the Womb-Dropſie, paleneſs and falling away of the fleſh of the whol body, are not ſo ſoon diſcerned as in the univerſal Dropſie, in which alſo for the moſt part, there is evident thirſt and drineſs of the tongue, which are not found in the womb-Dropſie, in which al other Symptomes are likewiſe far more gentle, than is uſual in the univerſal Dropſie. In a word, In the Womb-dropſie, ſome wind breaks out of the womb by fits; or a little water comes away, which evidently declare, that wind or water are contained in the womb.

To the second Question we Answer thus. That the sorts of Womb-Dropsies may be known from one another after this manner. If it arise from wind, the lower part of the belly being struck gives a sound; the belly is afflicted with pricking paines, which reach sometimes as far as the Midrif, Stomach, Loyns, and other parts; sometimes wind breakes evidently out of the neck of the Womb. Likewise, women often feel their Wombs riseing like a Globe towards their stomachs. Sometimes their breath is short and the sick woman when she awakes out of sleep, oftentimes is much troubled to fetch her wind. After all meat and drink whatever, they are worse. They often belch, and their belchings give them ease. They are oft troubled with Womb fits or suffocation of the Mother. Sometimes they are pained below the navel, so as they cannot endure to be touched. Those Signes do also appear in the Inflation or Blowing up of the Womb with wind, which differs from this Disease (as was said before) only in this, that the Inflation is of less durance, but a Dropsie of wind continues a far longer time.

But if the Wombs Dropsie arise from a wheyish Humor, the Region thereof appeares soft and flaggy; whereas wind stretches it stif: there is a greater heavines in the part and a noyse as of water flowing this way and that way: some water now and then drops from the Privity. And finally if it arise from flegm, the softness and flagginess of the part will be yet greater, and encrease daily more and more; and the bordering parts, as all under the Navel, the Privy parts, the space between the Privity & Fundament, with the Loynes, will be seen to swell with a Phlematick kind of Swelling.

To the Third Question we answer thus. If there be apparent tokens of the whol Bodies being misaffected, as by acute or long feavers, immoderate fluxes of blood, grievous distillations from the Head, Weaknesses of the stomach: swellings of the Spleen or Liver and other stubborn Diseases of those parts, with which the Wombes Dropsie began, encreasing as they encreased; it will be more than an even lay, that the Womb receives the matter of it's Dropsie from those parts by way of a flux of Rhewm. But if this Womb-swelling happen, when the whol Body is in good health, and do succeed particular diseases of the Womb, such as are hard Travels in Child-birth, Suppressions of the monthly courses, or over great flux thereof, Ulcers, Chollerick, or Melancholick, or hard Tumors, we may conjecture, that the Wombes-Dropsie doth depend upon those particular dispositions, and that the matter causing the said Tumor, is gathered together in the Womb it self, by means of its inability perfectly to digest and assimilate its nutriments.

To the fourth Question, we may Answer by saying, That the Matter which is contained in the cavity of the Womb, doth make a much larger Swelling, than when it is contained in bladders. Again, when it proceeds from a wheyish humor, a greater fluctuation of the water is perceived than when it is contained in bladders. And if so be, little bladders full of water be voided out of the Womb, it's a most certaine sign, that the Humour is contained in the little bladders.

To the first Question we must Answer; that the Wombs-Dropsie is Differenced from Tumors of blood or Choller, arising in the Womb: because in such Tumors or Swellings there is a feaver and a pain which is encreased by the least touch; also the Inflamation reaching even to the parts of Generation. And it is distinguished from Scirrhous and Cancerous Swellings, because in it there is no such great Hardness, which can resist the impression of the Finger, but it rather gives way, and pitts.

To the Sixth Quære wee say: When a woman is big with Child, the Swelling is not so even and depressed, but it is sharp, buncheth out, and seems greater about the navel than elswhere. Secondly, In Greatness with Child, after some months, women are for the most part somwhat better than they were, because the Child grown big consumes the greater part of those humors, which in the first months were burdensome: But the Dropsie, the further it proceeds the worse it growes. Thirdly, In greatness with Child, the child is manifestly perceived to stir, after the third or fourth month; which is not in the VVomb-Dropsie. Yet it falls out sometimes, that when the Dropsie is caused by wind, a certain Palpitation is preceived in the VVomb; but it is easily distinguished from the moving of a Child, which is more even, and is wont to be perceived in divers parts of the Belly. Fourthly, In Greatness of Child, the womans Duggs swell; but in the Dropsie they are extenuated and become smaller.

To the seventh Quære we Answer, that in a Mole, women find a kind of Heavines in their VVombs, which they feel not in the VVomb-Dropsie; and when they lie on the one of their sides, they preceive the weight to roul like a stone to that side. Again, in the Mole, violent flux of Courses comes by fits, namely, every third or fourth month; which happens not in the VVomb-Dropsie. Lastly, in case of a Mole, the Duggs swell, and sometimes have milk; in the VVomb-Dropsie, quite Contrary.

As touching the Prognosticks of this Disease. A simple Inflation or puffing up of the womb with wind, because it lasts not, is without danger. Yet if not quickly cured it may grow to a true Dropsie.

A Womb-Dropsie caused by a good conditioned Humor void of putrefaction, is wont to proue a long

long Diſeaſe; yet may it in proceſs of time be cured, yea ſomtimes, the water flows of its own accord out of the womb, and the Patient recovers her health.

But if the Humor be malignant, ſharp, or putrid, which is known by the grievous Symptomes following; the Diſeaſe is dangerous, and for the moſt part deadly: For if the Diſeaſe depend upon ſome private Diſeaſe of the Womb, it betokens a perfect ruine of the natural Functions of that part; whence follows at laſt an univerſal Dropſie of the whol Body. But if the Womb ſuffer by conſent of other parts, viz. of the Liver, Spleen, or Stomach, the Miſchief will be the greater, and ruine is thereby threatned to the whol Body. Hence it was well ſaid of *Aetius*, Such as is a womans womb, ſuch for the moſt part, is the reſt of her body.

If wind or water be contained in the Cavity of the womb, it is more eaſily cured than if it be ſhut within little skins or bladders.

The Cure of this Diſeaſe is performed almoſt by the ſame Remedies which have been propounded to cure the Dropſie and Green-ſickneſs. Whereunto ſome things more properly belonging to this diſeaſe muſt be added. And in the firſt place concerning Blood-letting; In the Diſeaſe, being new, proceeding from a ſuppreſſion of the Courſes and from ſome Plenitude ſtill appearing, blood-letting may be convenient; otherwiſe it wil hurt, ſeeing natural heat is exceedingly weakened and diminiſhed; and ſtubborn Obſtructions cauſed by a cold Humor, do cauſe fear of an Univerſal Dropſie.

But Purging is altogether neceſſary, and muſt be often reiterated, as we ordered in the forenamed Diſeaſes.

After ſufficient Purgation, Openers, Diureticks, and ſuch things as move the Courſes, are to be given, ſuch as are deſcribed in the places aforetaid. Unto which, theſe following may be added.

Take *Roots of Smallage, and of Madder, of each half an ounce: the Leaves of Savin, Feaverfew, Penyroyal, of each one pugil: Carrots ſeeds one dram. Boyl all in the Broth of a yong Pidgeon, and let her drink the ſtrained Liquor divers daies together.*

Before ſhe drink of the Broth, let her twallow one of the following Pills.

Take *of the beſt Caſtoreum, Mirrh, Madder, of each half a dram: Saffron twenty grains. With Juyce of Lemmons make all into nine Pills.*

After which Medicaments the Patient muſt exerciſe her ſelf ſtoutly, by which means, not only the Excrements bred in the bowels, and the whol compaſs of the Body, may by aſſiſtance of Heat be diſſipated; but all which is contained in the womb, may be voided out, the bladders being broken by violence of the Exerciſe.

If the woman do eaſily vomit, ſomthing may be profitably given her twice in a week to that end; by which means, not only the Humors which were wont to flow unto the womb, will be recalled, and brought forth; but the foreſaid bladders ſticking in the womb, and ſomtime containing a watry Humor, happily may be broken by the vehement motion and agitation, whereupon the Humor offending wil be voided.

To diſcuſs the ſaid Humor contained in the womb, the following Bolus, or Morſel, will be moſt effectual.

Take *of Mineral Borax half a dram: Saffron twenty grains: With Juyce of Savin, make all into a Morſel. Let it be taken twice in a week.*

Sweat-drivers are likewiſe very profitable in this diſeaſe, for by them, wheyiſh and flegmatick humors, whether in the womb, or the whol body, are diſcuſſed and evacuated.

In the mean while, the inbred heat of the Stomach muſt be ſtrengthened both with things given in, and outwardly applied, deſcribed in the Cures of the diſeaſes of that Part.

And outwardly, Medicines muſt be applied to ſtrengthen the womb, and to diſcuſs the Humors contained therein.

And in the firſt place, Fomentations and Baths to ſit in, may be made of a Decoction of Briony roots, wild Cucumer, the leavs of Danewort or Dwarf-Elder, Mercury, Elder, Origanum, Calamint, Wormwood, Rue, Sage, Marjoram, Time, Bay, Penyroyal, Mugwort; Seeds of Broom, Carrots, Cummin, Annis, Fennel; Berries of the Bay and Juniper Tree; Flowers of Chamomel, Melilot, and Roſemary. Of which, little bags may likewiſe be made, boyled in white Wine. Or the foreſaid Ingredients, or ſome of them, may be boyled in the Lye made of the aſhes of Vine-boughs.

And that the foreſaid Fomentations may work the better, they are to be applied before and behind: and the ſick woman ought to ſweat, if ſhe can, in her bed, or in a Stove conveniently prepared. Which likewiſe may be procured by help of a Bathing Tub.

In a windy Dropſie, dry Fomentations will be more profitable, with bags of Milet, Salt, Cummin-ſeed, and Bran fryed in a pan and beſprinkled with Wine.

After Fomentation let her Belly from the Navel downward, be anointed with Nard Oyl, Oyl of Dill, Oyl of Rue, Wormwood, and Southernwood. Which Oyls, if drawn out by Chymical Art, they wil be much more effectual.

After Unction, lay on a Plaiſter of Bay-berries, or a Pultiſs of Cows and Sheeps Dung, with Seeds of Smallage, Parſly, and Cummin, as alſo Honey boyled therewith.

To the ſame purpoſe the Skin of a Sheep newly killed is commended, ſprinkled with warm Canary Sack, and laid warm upon the Belly.

Clyſters are frequently to be given, made of the Decoction of Wormwood, Origanum, Penyroyal, Rue, Centaury, and the like: Or of the Oyl of Rue, Nuts, and Dill, with white Wine, Hypocras, or Muskadine. In which Clyſters diſſolve *Benedicta Laxativa*, *Hiera Diacolocynthidos*, *Terebinthinam*, Contection of Bay-berries, Roſemary-flower Honey, and the like.

Injections into the womb may be very profitable to evacuate the Humors contained therein, being compounded after this manner:

Take *Roots of Arabacca three drams*: *Leaves of Penyroyal, Calaminth, of each half a handful*: *Savin a pugil*: *Mechoacan a dram*: *Annis ſeed, Cummin ſeed, of each half a dram. Boyl all, and in ſix ounces of the ſtrained Liquor, diſſolve an ounce of Oyl of Orice, and as much of Elder Oyl, and make thereof an Injection.*

To the ſame end may Peſſaries be made, thus:

Take *Coloquintida and Mechoacan, of each one dram*: *Sal Nitre ten grains*: *boyled Honey as much as ſhall ſuffice. Make all into a Peſſary.* Or,

Take *Bindweed Roots, Roots of Eſula, of each a dram*: *Seed of Gith, or Nigella Romana half a dram*: *Honey as much as ſhall ſuffice. Make all into a Peſſary.* Or,

Take *Elaterium half a dram*: *bruiſed Figs as much as ſhall be requiſite. Make them into a Peſſary.*

When the Swelling of the womb proceeds from wind, a Fumigation of Nutmegs is very helpful, being commended by *Solenander*, in theſe words: *A woman newly out of Child-bed, expoſing her ſelf over ſoon to the wind and air, fell into inſufferable pains, neither could ſhe find any help. At laſt comes an old well experienced Midwife, and calls for three Nutmegs groſly poudered. Then ſhe put an Earthen pan with hot Coals under the woman, and ſprinkled the pouder of Nutmegs upon the Coals, ſo placing the pan, that the woman might receive the ſmoak through a funnel into her womb by the Water-Gate. At the ſame time ſhe was ſmoaked above with the ſame Fume: Which when it had penetrated into her body, the woman preſently cries out, I muſt needs go to ſtool: which ſhe had hardly ſpoken, but a hiſſing and ſound was heard, ſuch as is made when Gun-pouder is fired being ſhut in a narrow box: which wind being expelled, the woman was perfectly well in a moment. Being adviſed by this Experiment, having upon like occaſion uſed the like Remedy, I have very often found it to do much good.*

In the ſame caſe, Cupping-Glaſſes with much flame, is profitably ſet upon the Navel, for it excellently diſpels wind.

If the Diſeaſe come from Humors, Iſſues are to be made in the Thighs, that by thoſe Fountains the filth of the womb may be by little and little drained out.

Brimſtone and Nitrous Baths are commended likewiſe by many, both to drink, and to be waſhed in; provided there be no great heat of the Liver or whol Body, conjoyned with this Diſeaſe.

For the pain of the womb, which is frequently troubleſom in this Diſeaſe, *Amatus Luſitanus* commends the water or Decoction of Chamomel flowers, given to the quantity of four or five ounces.

And finally, If the Inflation or puffing up of the womb happen after Child-birth, there wil need no other Purgation than that by the womb: Which if it find any hinderance, it muſt be helped forwards by drawing Peſſaries, and by Cupping-Glaſſes faſtened to the Thighs, and by other Medicines deſcribed in our Chapter of Suppreſſion of Courſes. And if there be wind, the Fumigation made of Nutmeg aforeſaid, will be moſt ſeaſonable.

Chap. 11. *Of the falling down of the Womb.*

When the womb loſeth its Natural Scituation, and fals towards the Water-Gate, the Diſeaſe is termed, the falling down, or ſlipping forward of the womb.

Many Differences there are of this Diſeaſe, differing only in degrees: For ſomtimes only the inner neck falls down into the Water-gate: ſomtimes the whol body of the womb fals downwards, but does not appear without the Water-Gate, in the threſhold whereof appears the inner mouth of the womb, in likeneſs of a mans Yard, or a Gooſe Egg with an hole in it. Other whiles with the bottom turned out, it hangs without the Water-gate like a mans Cod, or an Oſtridges Egg, ſave that it is rugged, and hath an uneven ſurface: and it is in a word, ſomtimes ſo relaxed, that it falls ſo far out as to reach the Patients Thighs.

The

The immediate Cauſe of the falling down of the womb, is the Rupture, or Relaxation of thoſe Ligaments, which are wont to retain it, and its Neck in their proper place.

A Rupture of the foreſaid Ligaments may proceed from all violent Cauſes, as a blow, a fall, dancing and leaping, lifting ſome heavy burden, or carrying the ſame, violent compreſſion of the Abdomen, vehement Coughing which dures long, violent neezing, eſpecially in Child-bed, hard ſtraining to ſtool, difficult Travel, violent extraction of the Child out of the womb, or of the After-birth; vehement endeavor of the womb to caſt out ſomwhat offenſive thereunto, as a dead Child, a Mole, or an After-birth: for then, according to *Galen*, in his Third Book of Natural Faculties, the ſame thing betides the womb, which is wont to happen to two wraſtlers who endeavor to throw one the other upon the ground, till both fall together. Hereunto add, frequent ſetting of Cupping-Glaſſes upon the Thighs, and very vehement agitation of Body, or of Mind.

Relaxation or ſlackening of the Ligaments is cauſed likewiſe by divers cauſes, as by a long-laſting Catarrh, divers Crudities, which are caſt out into the womb, as the ſink of the whol Body. Whence it is that women long troubled with the Whites, can ſcarce avoid this Diſeaſe, eſpecially elderly women which are moſt of all troubled therewith. Add hereunto external cauſes, as over-frequent bathing, eſpecially in cold water; Southern and moiſt Air, eſpecially being received into the womb after Child-birth; moiſt Diet, much drinking; Idleneſs, long ſleep, and all other cauſes, which may decreaſe flegm, and cauſe its flux into the womb.

The Signs whereby to know this Diſeaſe are evident to the ſence. For the womb is found ſticking in the Water-gate like an Hens or Gooſes Egg, or like a Clew of Thrid, with the perceivance of a weight preſſing upon the Water-Gate, when the Patient ſtands upright. And while they ſit or go to ſtool, a vehement pain is felt about the privy Parts, and the Region of *Oſſacrum*, or the Hanch-bone. If it hang far out, the greater pain and heat is felt, the urine comes away by little and little, and makes the womb ſmart as it paſſeth.

The Cauſes procuring this Falling-down of the womb, may be thus diſtinguiſhed. If it proceed from loonets or ſlackneſs of the Ligaments, it comes by little and little, hath the leſs pain, and white Purgations have preceded, or other Cauſes moiſtening the womb, and relaxing the Ligaments thereof. But if it proceed from a breaking of the Ligaments, the pain is more vehement, and blood ſomtimes breaks forth; and ſuch Cauſes have preceded which have been able to break with violence the Ligaments.

As for the Prognoſticks belonging to this Diſeaſe. The Diſeaſe of it ſelf is not dangerous; yet is it very unhandſom and troubleſom, hindering the Patient from freedom to go and walk at will; alſo from Conception and convenient expurgation of her Courſes.

Yet may it ſomtimes occaſion death, if pains, Feavers, convulſions, or other grievous Symptomes be joyned therewith.

Alſo the womb in this Caſe is ſomtimes corrupted through diſtemper of the Air, or by violent impulſion, and becomes Gangrænated, which neceſſitates it to be cut off.

The Diſeaſe being freſh, and the womb coming not far out, is more eaſily cured than when it is an old Infirmity, and the womb comes far out.

In yonger women, the womb is more eaſily reſtored to its place than in Elderly women.

Falling down of the womb, by reaſon of the Ligaments being broken, is incurable.

To come to the Cure. The womb is to be thruſt back into its Natural place, and to be detained there; and the fault of its Bands or Ligaments muſt be corrected; If they be broken, by things that do glue and ſodder together; if they be relaxed or ſlackened, with things drying, aſtringent, and ſtrengthening. All which may be done by the following Medicaments.

In the firſt place therefore, That the womb may more eaſily be reſtored to its place, the Guts and Bladder muſt be disburdened, leſt preſſing the Neck of the womb, they ſhould hinder its reduction; foraſmuch as the neck of the womb reſts upon the ſtreight Gut, and the bladder reſts upon the neck of the womb.

When the Gutts and Bladder are diſcharged of their Excrements, let the woman lie along upon her Back, with her thighs wide aſunder, and her knees drawn upwards, and let her with her hands thruſt her womb inwards; and force it ſtill upwards into the neck, ſo as to turn it inwards as it goes, till all is returned within the cavity of the Belly which ſhould contain the womb. Or if ſhe is not able to do it her ſelf, let her do it by help of the midwife; or uſe a thick blunt ended ſtick with Cloaths wrapt about it, by which it may be forced further into the Cavity of the Belly, than is poſſible by the hands to drive it. Or, for fear of hurting her Body, a Peſſary may be made of Linnen Cloth often doubled and rowled together with a ſtring tied faſt thereunto, and accommodated to this ſervice of thruſting up of the womb.

But if the womb fallen from its place ſhall ſwell, ſo that it cannot enter into the cavity of the Belly, the ſwelling muſt in the firſt place be removed. And if there be an inflamation, ſuch things muſt be applyed as are fit to heal the ſame. If otherwiſe it be blown up, ſuch things muſt be uſed

as will diſcuſs the inflation. *Rodericus a Caſtro* waſhes the ſwollen womb with a Decoction of Beets, and then ſprinkles it with vineger and ſalt, and ſo when the ſwelling is abated, he reduceth the ſame.

The ſame *Rodericus a Caſtro* writes, that it is very good towards reſtoring the fallen womb, for a Phyſitian or a Chyrurgion to come with burning red hot Iron in his hand and to make as if he would thruſt it into the womb. by that means nature contracts her ſelf, and the womb with her, and any other part that ſticks out of the Body. For he relates that a certain very expert Chyrurgion did by this ſtratagem force Back a mans Gutts, that were ready to come out at a wound in his belly, when other remedies did no good. For holding a great red hot Iron in his hand, the Patient looking on, he made as if he would Clap it upon the wound. VVith the ſudden fright whereof the Gutts were preſently drawn back into their place.

Avenzoar in his Second Theizir, Tract 5 Chap. 4. Propounds ſome ſuch thing as this. *When this diſeaſe* (ſaith he) *begins firſt to appear, the Phyſitian may gently cure the ſame. And it is reduced all theſe wayes, viz. by your hand If you pleaſe; and if not make her lie on her Back and let ſome Body ſit upon her breſt, and another upon her thighes; and then cauſe her to be frighted putting ſome creeping Vermin upon her Leggs, ſuch as Mice, Eſts, frogs and ſuch like; by which let her be ſo frighted as to endeavour to get away by drawing her Leggs and thighs up to her; whereby all her Members and her whol Body may at once be contracted: by which meanes the Womb will return unto its own place.*

Zacutus Luſitanus following *Avenzoar* relates the following ſtory in the 66 obſervation of his Second Book. *Coming to a woman* (ſaies he) *which had her Womb fallen down the ſpace of a year & an half, with extream hardneß; it ſeemed very hard by reaſon of its ſtretching out to be reduced to its place; eſpecially ſeeing* Avenzoar *ſaies, that this work muſt be done before the Womb be grown hard. I deviſed many remedies for this diſeaſe; aſtringent Inſeſſions, Peſſaries, Plaſters, Confections. At laſt, having wraſtled ſtoutly with the diſeaſe, I could do no good. I betook my ſelf to this ſtratagem. I put Mice tied by the tailes, between the womans Leggs. Which running up her Thighs, the woman is mightily frighted, and forthwith* (a ſtrang thing to ſee) *her Womb is reduced into its proper place. This done, The Plaſter againſt Ruptures being laid upon the Region of the Womb and to the Groynes, ſhe remained for the time to come free from that Diſeaſe.*

Before the VVomb be repoſed in its place, it muſt be anointed with the Mucilage of comfrey Roots, or with an infuſion of Gum Tragacanth. Then are pouders to be ſprinkled thereupon, which have no aſperity or ſharpneſs, leaſt they hurt the VVomb or its neck; but of quality rather gluing than aſtringent or binding. Such an one may be thus made.

Take *Frankincenſe, Maſtick and Sarcocolla nouriſhed* (that is, well ſteeped ſo as to drink up as much of the Milk as it can hold) *with Breſt-Milk, of each one dram. Mummy, Gum-arabick, Acacia, Hypociſtis, of each half a dram. Make all into a moſt fine Pouder, to be ſprinkled as aforeſaid.*

The ſame Pouder may be applied in form of an Oyntment, if it be mixed with the aforeſaid mucilages, or Oyle of Saint Johns wort, or ſome other conſolidating thing.

After the VVomb is conveniently replaced, all art muſt be uſed to retain the ſame in its place, the woman lying in her bed, a little bending, with her thighes gently ſtretched out and the one reſting upon the other. And let her abide ſome daies in this poſture, and put in at the Water-gate a little wooll, cotton, or ſponge wet in harſh red VVine, or in Roſewater wherein Acacia or Hypociſtis hath been diſſolved.

To further this Retention of the VVomb in its place, Cupping-Glaſſes with much flame are frequently to be faſtened under her Duggs and upon her Navel.

Likewiſe ſweet ſavors are be preſented to her Noſe, and ſtinking things to be applied to her Genitalls, unles ſhe be ſubject to fits of the Mother.

Let the ſaid Parts be fomented with a Decoction of aſtringent things made in red VVine and the VVater of a Smyths Forge.

Alſo Practitioners uſe a Bath to ſit in, made of the Same Decoction. In which there needs caution. For it is to be feared, leaſt in that poſture, the VVomb ſhould again fall from its place, eſpecially at the beginning, while the Diſeaſe is yet freſh. But when it hath held the Patient long, and ſhe is provided of a convenient kind of Truſs, ſuch a bath will do much good.

After the ſaid Bath a Fumigation will likewiſe be very good, of Frankincenſe, Maſtich, Sandarach, red Roſes. Others indeed do commend a Fumigation made of a ſalted Eel-skin.

Injections into the VVomb will work much more effectually than thoſe remedies which are outwardly applied: they may be compounded of the Decoction for the Fomentation or Sitting Bath aforeſaid,

Oyntments and plaſters will likewiſe be good in this caſe ſuch as were deſcribed in the Immoderate flux of Courſes and in the VVhites; and as ſhall hereafter be propounded to prevent Abortion.

The

The Retention of the Womb in its place may likewiſe be holpen, by aſtringent and ſtrengthening Medicaments taken in at the Mouth. And among the reſt, the following Pouder frequently taken is very proper for this Diſeaſe.

Take *Mullein two drams: Myrtle Leaves, Garden Parſnep Seeds of each one dram: Shavings of Harts-Horn, half a dram: Aſhes of Cockle-ſhells one dram: red Coral two drams: Make all into a Pouder. The Doſe is one dram with harſh red Wine.*

Touching theſe aſtringent Medicaments both internal and external it is to be obſerved; that they muſt be warily uſed, if the womans courſes do ſtill flow at their ſeaſons, leaſt they being ſuppreſſed may cauſe more grievous Diſeaſes to follow. The beſt ſeaſon for theſe Medicaments, is when the Patients courſes are paſt.

Theſe Remedies are to be contained twelve or Fifteen daies together. Alſo care is at the ſame time to be taken, that the Patient be neither coſtive nor looſe. For if the Excrements be hard, the Womb is eaſily thruſt out by the Patients ſtraining at ſtool; and a looſe Belly doth relax or ſlacken the bands or Ligaments of the Womb.

While the foreſaid Remedies are uſed, we muſt reſiſt the Antecedent Cauſe, by ſuch things as ſhall purge out and diſcuſs thoſe flegmatick humours which relax and ſlacken the Ligaments of the Womb.

And firſt convenient Purgations muſt be ordered; which muſt not be violent in their operation and diſturbing, leaſt they caſt the Womb out of its place again, bringing abundance of humors into thoſe parts.

Some allow of vomiting, becauſe it draws the humors into the upper parts of the Body: and in that reſpect it would be profitable, if it were not to be feared in another regard: Namely becauſe it is performed with great ſtraining, and drives the Womb downward, as much as neezing. Yea and experience hath taught that nothing doth more effectually facilitate hard travel, and bring the Child ſooner into the light, than a Vomit given to the Childing woman.

After ſufficient Purgation, a Decoction of Guajacum is to be given three weeks together that every day the Patient may ſweat in the morning. And in the Evening let her Belly beneath the Navel be fomented with a Decoction of Sage, Origanum, Marjaram, Time, Feaverfew, Tanſie, Wormwood, Rue, red Roſes, Cyperus Roots, Calamint, Cypreſs Nutts, and the like ſimples boyled in Smythes Forge-water and red Wine. After the Fomentation, the Fumigation and Liniment may be uſed which were before deſcribed.

Inſtead of a Sweat-driver, or after the uſe thereof, Bathes ariſing from Sulphurous Mines, will be ſingularly profitable, ſuch as our Balerucan Baths; and experience hath ſhewn that many have bin cured by ſuch Bathes.

And that a woman may be ſecure that her Womb fall not down again, which it is very apt to do; or if there be no hope of a perfect cure let her wear ſuch a kind of truſs as is called *Hyppocrates* his Girdle. Whereby women are ſo guarded and defended, that without fear of the falling down of their Wombes they may go about and do their daily buſineſſes; alſo their Womb is thereby defended from the cold. They are made almoſt after the ſame manner, as truſſes that are uſed againſt Ruptures or Burſtennes.

Peſſaries are likewiſe very profitable in deſperate Fallings down of the Womb, which ſome do make of a good long piece of cork covered over with Wax. Others make of Wax alone, ſome round, others ſquare, triangular, oval or any other faſhion; which are conveighed into the Cavity of the Womb, and are never taken out, but keep the Womb in its place: ſo as the women notwithſtanding do all their uſuall enployments, conveniently are enjoyed by Men in carnal conjunctions, do conceive, carry their big Bellies, and bring forth. VVhich is confirmed with many Examples by *Franciſcus Roſſetus* in his Book entituled *De Partu Cæſareo*, Sect. 6. Chap. 5. and by *Baubine* in his Appendix to *Roſſetus*. All which are tranſcribed word for word by *Schenkius* and *Sennertus*, in their proper Chapters, where they are to be ſeen.

Chap. 14. *Of the Womb ſhut up, or Imperforated.*

VIrgins that have their Wombs cloſed up, are ſaid to be imperforated, or unboared, like a Barrel of Beer that hath no hole to put in a Spigot. Now this Cloſure of the Womb is wont to be in three places; viz. In the inner Mouth of the Womb, in its Neck, and in the outward mouth of the Womb next the Water-Gate. And it is cauſed, either in the firſt formation of the Infant, when ſome Membrane is drawn before the mouth of the Womb, or its neck; or by ſome precedent wound or ulcer, which growing whol again, the parts of the neck of the womb, or its lips come to be cloſed together; or by tumors ſhutting or ſtopping up the inner Orifice; or by ſome compreſſion, ſtreightneſs, or diſtortion, which hinders the mans Yard and Seed from going in, and the Monthly Purgations from coming out.

This

This Disease is in part easie, and in part hard to be known. If the closure or stoppage be in the outward Orifice of the Privity it is discerned by seeing & feeling. But if it be in the Neck or Mouth of the Womb, it is not discerned til the courses begin to break out, or til the parties begin to addict themselves to generation. For when the time of their monthly Purgations is come, pains and gripings are felt in the Region of the Womb at certain periods of times, with a sence of weight, yet no flux of Courses follows; the Conjecture will be more probable, if the Virgin be of a good habit of Body, not troubled with any Obstructions, or Cachectick dispositions. The Disease persevering, their wombs swel, so that Maidens seem to be with Child; and sometime their whol Body swels, which likewise seems as it were black and blew through the abundance of blood. But if the closure do possess the neck of the womb, it is perceived in the first Carnal Conjunctions, because it doth not admit the Mans Yard.

Lastly, If the Closure be in the Orifice or Mouth of the Womb, it is hardly discerned; yet may it be in some measure perceived by the hand of a skilful Midwife; and it gives some suspition thereof when the mans seed doth presently slip away, as soon as it is cast in.

As for the Prognostick. If the Closure be in the Orifice of the Privity, it is easily cured, being opened by a slight Section. But if it be in the inner parts, it is much harder to cure.

When the Passage is stopped with a Membrane, its more easily cured; but when the closure is caused by a fleshy matter, as it happens after Ulcers, the Cure is more difficult.

The Closure of the inner Orifice of the Womb is incurable, because the Instruments of Chyrurgiry cannot be applied to open the same.

The Cure of this Disease, because it belongs chiefly to Chyrurgiry, we shall dispatch in few words.

If the Closure of the Womb have been caused in the first formation, it is to be opened by cutting only. The manner of which cutting is largely described by *Sennertus*, in its proper Chapter.

But if the Closure have been occasioned by reason of an Ulcer, as it happens in the Whores Pox; it is to be considered, whether it be only an excrescence of flesh not wholly stopping the passage, or a perfect and entire growing together of the sides of the neck, or of the lips. For, if flesh only be grown up, endeavor must be used, convenient Evacuations being premised, first to prohibit the encrease of that flesh by drying and discussing Medicaments, then to diminish the said flesh by Medicines of Frankincense, Birthwort, Bark of Frankincense, Roses, Balaustines, Mastich, Mirrh, Aloes, and such like. Which not doing the deed, we must come unto such flesh-consumers as are least painful, as burnt Allum, *Unguentum Ægyptiacum*, and such like. And at last, if this will not consume the flesh, it must be cut off round about, with the same Instrument wherewith the superfluous flesh breeding in the Nose, called *Polypus*, is wont to be cut off. But if the neck of the womb be wholly grown together, we must try to renew the Ulcer, and with the foresaid Medicaments to remove the superfluous flesh. And if that cannot be, we must undertake to cut it, in the very self same manner, as we are wont to cure the natural coalition of the neck of the womb.

If the passage of the womb be shut up by some tumor, proper Remedies are to be appointed thereunto; such as have been propounded in the Inflamation, Scirrhus, and Cancer of the womb.

If it be caused by compression of the neck of the womb, or of the inner mouth therof, the compressing cause is to be taken away, which may be divers, viz. A Stone in the Bladder, a Swelling in the streight Gut, Fatness of the Caul, the Legs or Thighs distorted, and going a-play; the Cure of which accidents see in their proper place.

In streightness of the Passage, which is chiefly caused by hardness or dryness, we must work with things moistening emollient, and laxative; with Baths to sit in, Fomentations, Liniments, and Pessaries: and so when the part is relaxed, a little pipe of Lead may be put in, or of white wax artificially contrived, and smeared with Butter, or some emollient Oyl, which let her always carry, or at least in the night when she goes to bed, and in the day time, let a Pessary conveniently made of Cotton be put in the place, being smeared with Oyntment of Marsh-mallows, or such like.

In Distortion, the same Method of Cure, very neer, is to be observed; and let the pipe be so framed, that it may gently bow the contrary way to the distortion; and so the neck of the womb may by little and little be reduced to its due place.

Chap. 15. *Of Barrenness.*

THis word *Barrenness* or *Sterility*, is not in this place taken in so strict a sence, as to signifie only a total defect, and perfect abolition of Conception; but in a large and ample signification, so as to comprehend all kind of impotency, and every impediment of Conception: namely, When a woman at such an age in which she ought naturally to be capable of Conception, and using the company

pany of a man, doth not conceive. And this defect is termed *Agonia*, or *Atecnia*, that is, Inability to conceive or bear children.

And this Barrenneſs or Impotency of Conception, is cauſed divers waies; all which for cleerneſs ſake, we may reduce to four Heads, according to thoſe four Natural Operations which are required to perfect Conception.

The Firſt of which is, That the Woman in her Genial Embracements, do conveniently receive the Mans Sperm into her Womb.

The Second, That ſhe retain the ſame a convenient ſeaſon.

The Third, That ſhe cheriſh and preſerve the ſame in her Womb.

The Fourth, That ſhe afford fitting Materials to form the Embryo, or firſt Conception, and duly to augment the ſame, as need ſhall require.

Hence Four Impediments of Conception do ariſe; viz. If the woman receive not the Seed; If ſhe retain it not; If ſhe preſerve and cheriſh it not; If ſhe nouriſh it not ſo as it encreaſe and grow.

Reception of the Seed is hindered by many Cauſes; by things Natural, things not Natural, and by things Preternatural. Among things Natural hindering the Reception of the Sperm, in the firſt place is reckoned, yongneſs of Age, in which, by reaſon of the ſmalneſs and ſtraitneſs of the Genital Parts, the woman cannot receive the mans yard, or not without very great pain, which makes her worſe for Genial Embracements. The ſame effect is cauſed by over great Age, ſeeing that in elderly Virgins, the Genital Parts, through want of being exercited in actions tending to Generation, do become withered, flap, and flaggy, and ſo ſtrait, that they cannot afterwards eaſily admit a mans Yard. Likewiſe, all ſuch as are naturally lame, with diſtorted Legs, and their Crupper-bone depreſſed, can hardly put themſelves into ſuch a convenient poſture during the genial Embracement, as neceſſary that the Seed may be duly and rightly received. Hereunto add over great fatneſs, which ſtraitens the Paſſages of the womb, and by greatneſs of the Belly, hinders the right and fit Conjunction of the man with the woman. And laſtly, a cold diſtemper of the womb, makes women dull and liſtleſs, ſo that they enjoy no pleaſure (to ſpeak of) in the Genial Embracement, or it is long before they are provoked with deſire; ſo that the inner Orifice of the Womb is not timely enough opened to receive the Mans Sperm.

Among things not Natural, Paſſions of the Mind hold the firſt rank, and eſpecially hatred between Man and Wife; by means whereof, the Woman being averſe from this kind of pleaſure, gives not down ſufficient quantity of Spirits wherewith her Genitals ought to ſwel at the inſtant of Generation, that her womb skipping as it were for joy, may meet her Husbands Sperm, graciouſly and freely receive the ſame, and draw it into its innermoſt Cavity or Cloſet, and withal bedew and ſprinkle it with her own Sperm, powred forth in that pang of Pleaſure, that ſo by the commixture of both, Conception may ariſe.

The things Preternatural which can hinder the Reception of Seed, are certain Diſeaſes incident to the Genital Parts, or to ſuch as border neer upon them; as Tumors, Ulcers, Obſtructions, Aſtrictions, Shuttings up, Diſtorſions, Stone in the Bladder, and other ſuch like.

The Second fault in Women, which hinders Conception, viz. When the Seed is not retained, depends either upon the over great moiſture of the Womb, namely, when the womb is filled with many excrementitious Humors, by which becoming looſer and more flaggy than is fit, it doth not rightly purſe and contract it ſelf together, ſo as to retain the Sperm; or the Orifice of the Womb is ſo ſlack that it cannot rightly contract it ſelf to keep in the Seed; which chiefly is cauſed by Abortion, or hard Labor in Child-birth, whereby the fibres of the Womb are broken in pieces one from another, and they, and the inner Orifice of the Womb over much ſlackened. And that ſame immoderate moiſture may ariſe both from the proper Conſtitution of the woman, and from external cauſes of moiſture, ſuch as Baths, Idleneſs, moiſt Diet, and eſpecially from the Whites; which flux of Whites happens very frequently, ſince the Womb is as it were the Common-ſhore, whereunto all the parts of the Body do diſcharge their Superfluities, ſo that this is wont to be the moſt frequent and ordinary Cauſe of Barrenneſs.

The Third Cauſe hindering Conception, viz. When the Sperm is not ſufficiently nouriſhed in the Womb, depends upon ſuch things as are apt to corrupt the Seed, as every diſtemper of the womb; namely, a cold diſtemper, which extinguiſheth the Seed; an hot diſtemper, which diſſipates the Spirits; a moiſt diſtemper, which robs the Seed of its due thickneſs; and a dry diſtemper conſumes and drinks up the Seed: and thus the Seed being by theſe diſtempers corrupted and degraded from its natural Conſtitution, becomes unfit for Conception. To theſe Cauſes, Authors do add Witchcrafts, and Charms, by which all confeſs that Conception may be hindered. Likewiſe external things, as Meats and Poyſons may do as much, ſuch as are reckoned up by Authors, viz. Among Meats, Vinegar, Mint, Water-Creſſes, Beans, and ſuch like: and among Poyſons, or at leaſt ſuch things as have a certain venemous property cauſing Barrenneſs, The Agate or Jet, the Matrix of a

Goat

Goat or Mule, Glow-worms, Sapphires, Smaragds, and the like. And laſtly, Malignant and venemous Diſeaſes, may exceedingly corrupt the Seed, and render it unfit for Generation, as the Conſumption, Leprous Infections, Whores-Pox, ſtinking and cancerated Ulcers.

The Fourth and laſt Cauſe of Barrenneſs, viz. When the woman doth not yield convenient matter to form the Conception, and to augment the ſame, depends upon a want of Seed and Menſtrual blood; ſo over yong women and over old, do not conceive, through want of both thoſe Materials. The Age of a woman fit for to conceive, is commonly determined to be from the fourteenth to the fiftieth yeer of her Age. Yea, and though thoſe foreſaid Materials are not wanting, if yet they are ill diſpoſed, they are not fit for Generation. And they may be ill diſpoſed through divers diſtempers, and other Diſeaſes; likewiſe by reaſon of bad Diet, producing none of the beſt blood. So women which gorge themſelves with much raw fruit, and cold ſmal drink, breed wheyiſh blood unfit for Generation. Yet we muſt needs confeſs, that ſome women have conceived who never had their Courſes, as may be collected out of the Obſervations of divers Authors; yet ſo much Menſtrual blood was collected in thoſe women, as uſeth to remain over and above in ſuch as have their Courſes, though they had not ſo much as to cauſe their monthly Courſes.

To the Cauſes hitherto muſtered up, muſt be added a certain diſproportion or unſutableneſs between the Mans Sperm, and the Womans, which makes they cannot be rightly mingled, nor conſpire to the Joynt-making up of an Embrion or Rudimental Infant; though there be in the mean while, no ſenſible defect, either in the Man or Wife. And it ſomtimes happens, that the ſame man can have a child by another woman, and the ſame woman by another man; whereas they have lived together in the married eſtate barren. It comes likewiſe to paſs, That a woman ſhall live with a man for ten or more yeers together, and not conceive child, and afterward ſhall begin to conceive and bring forth: the Cauſe of which accident is, The change of Temperature cauſed by yeers, whereby the Seed comes to have another temper, ſo that being before diſproportioned to the mans Seed, it comes by change of Age to be fitly proportioned thereunto. Now this diſproportion of Seeds, conſiſts chiefly herein; When men much exceeding in ſome quality belonging to their temper, are joyned with women which partake of the ſelf ſame exceſs, viz. When over hot men are joyned with over hot women, over cold men with over cold women; for thoſe diſtemperatures can procure no mediocrity in the Seeds, and other cauſes neceſſary to Generation. Some fly likewiſe to occult or hidden qualities, which make the Sperms to agree, or diſagree, though no exceſs of the firſt qualities can be diſcerned.

To theſe Authors add an hidden kind of Diſpoſition, which makes ſome women barren, though no manifeſt cauſe of ſuch Barrenneſs appear in them.

The Signs of Barrenneſs, we will run over according to theſe four ſorts of Cauſes propounded.

And in the firſt place, Cauſes hindering Reception of Seed are not hard to be diſcovered, being evident to our very Sences. For tenderneſs of Age is eaſily obſerved, and ſo is an over elderly ſtate of yeers; and the evil conſtitution of thoſe parts which border upon the womb, as when women halt, have crooked wreathen Legs, have their Crupper-bone depreſt, or are over fat; as for the cold diſtemper of the womb, we ſhall treat of that in our third Rank of Cauſes. Hatred between Man and Wife is known by relation of themſelves, or of thoſe that live with them. Alſo the particular Diſeaſes hindering the reception of Seed, as Tumors, Ulcers, Obſtructions, Aſtrictions, ſhuttings up, Diſtortions, may be known through ſearch of the Genital Parts made by a Midwife or Chyrurgion.

Of the Cauſes hindering the retention of Seed, which make the ſecond Rank; we ſhall treat of over great moiſture among thoſe of the third Rank; as for Abortion and hard Travel, they are known by the womans relation.

The Cauſes of the third Rank, viz. Which have power to corrupt the Seed do require more exquiſite ſigns to know them by, which we ſhall proſecute as followeth.

A Cold Diſtemper of the Womb, is hereby known, In that the Woman longs not after Carnal Embracements, and feels little pleaſure therein; her Face is ſoft, whitiſh, and cloudy; her feeling is dull about her Share, Loyns, and Thighs; ſhe voids thin and crude Sperm, and with little pleaſure; her Courſes are ſuppreſſed, or they come very ſparingly, and keep no conſtant orderly time, and they are pale and diſcolored. Add hereunto, Diet preceding of a cooling Nature, conſiſting of a long uſe of Fruits and Herbs, with much drinking of cold ſmal Drink.

A moiſt diſtemper of the womb is known by the lax, and ſlap, flaggy, ſoft habit of the womans body, her much lifting, frequent and almoſt continual flux of Whites; plenty of Courſes, thin and watry, no appetite to fleſhly Conjunctions, heavineſs of her Loyns, aptneſs to miſcarry, plenty of Urine, and a moiſt Diet.

An hot Diſtemper is known, by the manly and ſtrong habit of the womans Body, ſuch as is ſeen in Viragoes and Amazones; by a ruddy countenance, black hair of the Head and Eye-brows; a ſtrong and

and manly voyce; ſhe is frequently diſpoſed to be angry, over prompt to all kind of actions, her thirſt cannot be ſatisfied, her Urine is yellow, her Courſes few, their color is a dark red, their heat and acrimony ſo great, that oftentimes they exulcerate the ſecret Paſſages; their Privities itch, and they are prone to carnal Embracements; they are quick and ſuddain in the voiding of their Seed; they have frequent Pollutions, and luſtful Dreams.

A dry diſtemper of the womb is known by the ſmal quantity of Courſes; drineſs, itching, and choppings of the Mouth of the Womb; little excretion of Sperm in the Genial Embracement; trouble arising from over much carnal Conjunction, and Leanneſs.

If the Seed be corrupted, and Barrenneſs cauſed by Witch-craft, all other ſigns will be abſent, which are wont to declare the Natural and manifeſt cauſes of Barrenneſs. There will be likewiſe ſome alienation of minds between the married Couple, of which neither of them can give any handſom account; yea, and ſomtimes they can both of them, but ſeldom ſhoot forth their Seed, and that with Labor and Difficulty.

Diet or poyſons that extinguiſh Seed, if they have been taken in, we ſhall come to knowledg thereof, by diligent queſtioning of the woman, and thoſe that are about her.

And laſtly, Malignant Diſeaſes, ſuch as are of power to extinguiſh the Sperm, as Leprous Manginеſs, the Whores-Pox, and ſuch like, are known by their proper ſigns.

The fourth Cauſe of Barrenneſs, which conſiſts in defect or badneſs of the Menſtrual blood, is known, firſt by the over great fatneſs of the whol Body, to the nutriment whereof the blood is carryed away, and conſumed, and is not allowed for the nutriment of the child in the womb. The ſame is likewiſe known by great Leanneſs of the Body, and extream ſlenderneſs; for when there is not blood enough to nouriſh the Body, it can hardly ſuperabound to nouriſh the Conception.

And in a word, All ſuch things as conſume, and much diminiſh the blood, if they have preceded, or be at preſent in the Patient, they ſignifie want of blood in her body; ſuch as are, extream labors and pains-taking, immoderate ſitting up, and watching, auſtere faſtings, large bleedings at noſe or elſewhere, acute or chronical Feavers, Fiſtulous Ulcers, and Iſſues that run much.

Somtimes likewiſe, over great quantity of blood, doth hinder the nouriſhment of the Seed, and of the Conception; for the Seed is oppreſſed with ſo great plenty, and cannot exerciſe its formative faculty: which is wont to happen in full bodyed, and ruddy women, ſuch as live a jovial life, and delight in Feaſting, whoſe wombs are alwaies bedabled with a continual moiſture.

Now the ill diſpoſition of the womans blood, may be known by the ill habit of her Body, the color of her Courſes, and other ſtrange diſpoſitions, together with an ill diet foregoing.

The diſproportion of the Husband and the Wifes Seed is hardly known; but if both of them be of a very hot, or a very cold Conſtitution, we may conjecture, That the diſproportion ariſeth from thoſe diſtempers; if other more manifeſt cauſes of Barrenneſs, do not appear.

It is yet harder to diſcover that kind of Barrenneſs which depends of a certain hidden diſpoſition, no manifeſt cauſes thereof appearing. Yet many Experiments are related by Authors, whereby to know whether a Woman be Naturally Barren, which though they carry no great certainty with them, yet are Phyſitians neceſſitated ſomtimes to make uſe of them, in favor of Princes and Nobles, who are permitted to divorce their Wives, in caſe of Barrenneſs.

Hippocrates in Aphor. 59. Sect. 5. ſaith, *If a Woman conceive not, and thou wouldeſt know whether ſhe ſhall conceive or not, cover her with blankets, and burn ſome perfume under her, and if the ſmell proceed through her Body, up to her Noſtrils and Mouth, know that ſhe of her ſelf is not Barren.*

The ſame *Hippocrates* ſuppoſeth that it may be known whether a woman be fruitful or not, by putting a head of ſcraped and peeled Garlick into her Womb; for if the next day the ſmel ſhall come into her mouth, ſhe is apt to conceive; if not, ſhe is barren.

Or put Galbanum ſoftened at the fire, and encloſed in Silk, into the womans womb at night, and bind her whol head in perfumed Linnen; if in the morning the crown of her head ſhall ſmel of Galbanum, the woman is wel purged, and wil be fruitful.

You may try the ſame, if you put a little Baliſom mingled with Water, and received in Cotton, into the Womb, binding it with a ſtring to her Thigh; for if the womb do draw it inwards, it is a moſt approved ſign of fruitfulneſs.

Amatus Luſitanus commends this following as a moſt true ſign: He takes a dram of a Hares Runnet, which diſſolved in warm water, he gives the woman to drink, being in a bath of hot water, and faſting. If the Woman do then feel pains in her Belly, he pronounceth her fruitful; if not, barren.

Many ſeek to know the Barrenneſs of a woman by her Urine, wherein they ſteep Barley: which Barley, if it grow within ten daies, they count it a ſign of Fruitfulneſs; if not, they account it a certain token of Barrenneſs.

And others, Finally, do powr the Womans water upon Bran or Fenugreek, and take it for a note of Barrenness, if Worms breed there.

For a Conclution to these Discoveries, We shall diligently consider and enquire, whether Conception and Generation be not hindred by fault of the Man, or any defficiency in him. For in such a Case, it were vainly done to torment the Woman with a multitude of Medicines. Barrenness proceeding from the Man, may be known by the diseases of his Genital parts, as inability to raise his Yard, want of Sperm, Swelling of his Stones, Gonorrhœa, and the rest. And it gives some token hereof, if the Man be faint-hearted and Womanish by Nature, if he want a Beard, be slow in casting forth his Sperm, and his Sperm be cold, so that his Wife feel it cold in her Womb; if he have little or no Lust to Carnal Embracements, and perceive very little pleasure therein. And lastly, If such Causes have preceded which are of power to make the Seed unfruitful.

The Prognostick must be regulated according to the Method of the Causes, as we have ranked them.

And in the first place, Tenderness of Age hinders conception only for a time, which cannot be expected till the Woman is more grown. But Elderly years cause a Total dispaire of Conception. But if the Parties Courses do as yet proceed, in due season, there may be yet some hope of Conception; howbeit very smal, especially in such Women as are at the fortieth yeer of their Age; for although Women that have had Children younger, are likewise wont to Conceive at that Age; yet such as have never been with Child, have little reason to hope that they shal Conceive at that Age, because the Womb having been so long unimployed, is become withered, shrunken up and unfit to Conceive Child.

Barrenness which is caused by an evil shape of the Members, as in such as are Lame, have distorted Thighs, or their Crupper-Bone depressed; is incurable.

But if Barrenness proceed from over Fatness, or some distemper of the womb not over old, the cure is to be hoped, by procuring leanness and by correcting the Distempers.

That Barrenness which is caused by other diseases, as by a Swelling, an Ulcer, Obstruction, whites, want of Courses, falling of the Womb, Consumption, Leprous Mangyness, Whores-Pox, and such like; is easier or harder to cure, according as the said diseases are either easie to be cured or hard.

For the Cure of this disease, whichsoever of the causes aforesaid hath produced the same; we must seek the removal thereof.

And in the first place, the straitness of the Genital Parts in regard of youngness of Age, needs no cure, for as Age encreases, they attain to a convenient wideness. But in the mean time, it is necessary that the Party abstain from Carnal Conjunction; because the oversoon use thereof, doth spoil the natural constitution of those parts.

Barrenness which is caused by lowness of stature, or Elderliness of years, is incurable, yet endeavour may be used to help the same, by Emollient and Relaxing Medicaments, provided the Courses do still flow.

Over great Corpulency, must be corrected by an extenuating Diet and convenient Evacuations.

If Barrenness seem to arise from a bad Course of Diet, as in persons given over much to Belly-cheer, to Wine, or small Drink, such women are to be reduced to an exact Course of Life; and all excess of eating and drinking must be avoided.

Viragoes and strong constitution'd women, such as come neer to the Nature of Men, that they may be rendred fit for conception, must by all the art possible be effeminated, and reduced to such manners as become their sex; all meats of grosser nourishment being forbidden them, and all labours and exercises; their Courses being made conveniently to flow, by plenty whereof they may be abated of their manly courage, and grow soft and gentle. And if their monthly courses shall not suffice to that end, their humors must be diminished, by frequent Blood-letting, and purging; and by frequent bathing and other alteratiue remedies, the whole habit of their Bodys must be moistened and cooled.

If Barrenness be caused by Closure of the Womb, by distorsion, by obstructions, by Tumors or Ulcers; all these must be remedied by such Medicaments as are propounded in those Chapters which treat of their Respective cures.

Barrenness depending upon an hidden property in the woman which is natural to her, is incurable, and therefore it ought diligently to be enquired after, least remedies be applied in Vain.

If Barrenness come by witch-craft, Charming, or hidden power of Medicaments, there is little place for Physick; but the party must have recourse to prayers and supplications, which being Zealously poured forth, by men eminent in piety, do procure Help from the Almighty.

Howbeit against Medicines which by a secret power do cause barrenness, certaine Amulets are propounded by Authors, which have a peculiar vertue to resist the malignity of such Medicaments. *Cardan* will have it, that the Pizzle of a Wolf worn about the woman, will frustrate all such

Incantations

Incantations and faſcinations. Others do much commend the Adamant and the Hyacinth Stone. The Antients called Saint John-wort, the Divel-driver. The ſame vertue is likewiſe attributed to the Squil or Sea-Onion, to Eryngus, Sagapenum, Rue, & other things, being worn by Man & Wife. Alſo certain it is, that for the parties concerned, to endeavour confidently to deſpiſe and ſlight all Charmes and Witch-crafts, is very profitable in this caſe. Alſo (if the Author of the Witch-craft be not known) it is good for them to Change their Habitation, and to forſake their Houſes, Beds, wearing Cloathes, and other Houſhold ſtuff, wherein the Charmes are oftentimes concealed.

If an hot Diſtemper be the cauſe of Barrennes, the ſame Cure is to be uſed, which was deſcribed in the hot diſtemper of the Liver. But if the Exceſs of Heat be yet more violent, recourſe muſt be had to thoſe things which have bin deſcribed in our Chapter of Womb-fury. But the camphire muſt be left out of thoſe Medicines, Becauſe it is held to be a very great Enemy to fruitfullneſs.

Extream Dryneſs, hindring Conception, muſt be cured by a reſtorative Diet; and if the Conſumption of the fleſh be much, we muſt have recourſe to the Cure of an Hectick feaver *viz.* Uſe of Milk, frequent bathing, and ſuch like.

But the moſt frequent Cauſe of Barrenneſs is a cold and moiſt diſtemper of the whol Body and of the Womb, which is often accompanied with the Whites, whoſe particular Cure muſt be fetcht from its proper Chapter. But the following Medicaments may be peculiarly applied to theſe diſtempers, which by a diſcreet Phyſitian may be varied; ſo as to make them more heating or drying, according as Moiſture ſhall the more offend.

And in the firſt place flegmatick humors abounding in the Body are to be evacuated by purging, diuretick and ſudorifick Medicaments. And certain Revulſions are to be made, by Iſſues in the Armes, Neck, or thighs. Alſo the principal parts are to be ſtrengthened with Treacle, Mithridate, Tablets or Lozenges of Aromaticum Roſatum, Confection of Alkermes and ſuch like. Alſo Purgations muſt be repeated at certain diſtances of time, if Evil humors do ſeem to abound.

Afterward we muſt proceed to ſuch things, which do by a peculiar virtue or ſpecifick property ſtrengthen the Womb, help Conception, and procure deſire of fleſhly Imbracements, of which kind of Medicaments there are innumerable formes deſcribed by Authors. We ſhall in this place chuſe out the principal and ſet before you,

And in the firſt place, An Electuary may thus be made.

Take *Roots of Eryngus and Satyrion candied or preſerved, of each one ounce. Green Ginger candied, half an ounce. Filbert Kernells, Pine-Kernells, and Piſtachios of each ſix drams: one preſerved Nutmeg. Seeds of Rocket and Water-Creſſes of each two drams. aſhes of a Bulls Pizzle, the Reins of the Sea-Scinkos and ſhavings of Ivory, of each one dram. Confection of Alkermes three drams. The Powders Diambra and Diamoſchum* Dulce, *of each one ounce and a half. Amber Greece half a dram. With Syrup of Preſerved Citrons, make an Electuary, of which let her take the quantity of a Cheſſnut, at her lying down to ſleep, twice or thrice in a week, drinking a ſmall draught of Canary Sack or Hyppocras, after it.*

In the form of a Pouder, the following Medicaments may be adminiſtred.

Take *Seeds of Rocket, Siler Montanum, of each half a dram, ſhavings of Ivory, Cinnamon, Nutmeg, of each a dram, Muſk (in ſuch as can away with it) three grains. White Sanders three drams. Mix them and make of all a Pouder. The Doſe is one dram in Canary. Or*

Take *Seeds of Rocket, wild Parſnep, Cinnamon, Pouder of the Nutmeg, Electuary Diambræ and Diamoſchus, of each one dram: the Matrix of an Hare, a Bores-ſtones, a ſtaggs Pizzle, Cloves, of each half a dram: Muſk and Amber-greece, of each ſix graines, Sugar the weight of all the reſt. Mingle them, make them into Pouder, whoſe Doſe is two drams with rich Canary.*

The Afterbirth of a woman is believed to be of great efficacy, being dried and Poudered and taken to the quantity of a dram.

Some Reckon as a ſecret the Pouder of the Liver and Stones of a Boare-Pig which the Sow his Mother farrowed alone without any Brothers or Siſters by him. This Pouder they ſay cures Barrenneſs both in men and women.

Matthiolus in his Comments upon *Dioſcorides* cries up the Seed of the Herb Amy, in theſe words: *The Seed of the true Amy, which is brought from Alexandria, does exceedingly help the Barrenneß of women. For experience hath ſhewn, that many have bin made fruitful only by the uſe of this Seed. For if it be drunk a drams weight in a morning in ſtrong Wine, or in broath of fleſh, being finely Poudered, every other day three hours before Meat, it gives great hopes of Children. But the Man muſt have to do with his Wife only on thoſe daies in which ſhe does not take the Seed.*

In ſuch women whoſe bowells are apt to be Inflamed, the ſhavings of Ivory will be very good, taken to the quantity of a dram in White Wine, for four or five daies together, after the monthly Purgation.

The Eſſence of Satyrion, deſcribed by *Crollius*, is moſt excellent in this caſe, if it be given from a ſcruple and two ſcruples, to a dram, in a Cup of Muſcadine.

Salt of the ſaid Satyrion is alſo very effectual, given to the quantity of ten grains in Muſcadine, after the Courſes.

Divers Decoctions are wont to be made to the ſame intent. The moſt effectual, are theſe which follow:

Take *Eryngo Roots one ounce: Mugwort, Nep, of each a handful: Boyl them in white Wine. Give a Cup of the Decoction morning and evening, with a dram of* Tryphera Magna, *made without Opium, nine daies together.*

Quercetanus highly commends this which followeth:

Take *of the Stones of a Ram prepared with Wine and dried, the Matrix of an Hare prepared after the ſame manner and dried, Mace, Cinnamon, Cloves, white Ginger, Seeds of Ammeos, of each two drams: Saffron a dram and an half: Hazel-nut Kernels, and Piſtachios, of each three drams. Beat ſuch of theſe as require beating, and boyl all in a quart of Muſcadine till a third part be conſumed. Let her take three or four ounces of this Decoction in a morning three hours before meat, and that three daies together; and upon the fourth let her lie with her Husband.*

The diſtilled Water following, is likewiſe very effectual.

Take *of Cinnamon, Cloves, Nutmeg, Mace, of each an ounce: Cubebs, long Pepper, Galangal, Zedoary, Seeds of Ameos, Seſeleos, of each half an ounce: Juniper Berries one dram: rich white Wine, Roſemary Water, Marjoram water, Balm water, of each as much as ſhall ſuffice. Let them digeſt together ſix daies, and then diſtil them, and give of the ſtilled Water morning and evening two or three ſpoonfuls.*

Pena and *Lobellius* propound as a Secret not to be communicated to any living Creature, the diſtilled Oyl of the ſmaller, and more delicate ſort of ſweet Marjoram, mingled with the Runnet of an Hare, and a little Muſk, to facilitate Conception.

If a woman upon the fourth day of her monthly Purgations, ſhall drink about half a pint of the Juyce of Sage with a little Salt, and a quarter of an hour after ſubmit her ſelf to the Genial Embracements of her Husband, many grave men affirm, ſhe will undoubtedly conceive. With which Medicine, *Aetius* teſtifies that the Ægyptian Women after a great mortality by Peſtilence, had abundance of Children.

To the foreſaid internal Medicaments, external Medicaments muſt be joyned. In the uſe whereof, it is diligently to be obſerved, that before we go about to dry, bind, and corroborate the womb, that the filth contained in the Cavity thereof be firſt drawn away and purged, leſt it either flow back into the noble parts of the Body, or be more affixed to the ſubſtance of the Womb. Firſt therefore ſuch things muſt be given as purge the womb, after this manner compounded:

Take *Diaphœnicon and Hiera Picra, of each half an ounce: Turpentine and Honey of Mercury, of each one ounce: Caſtoreum a dram. Mix all, and according to art bring them to ſuch a conſtitution as ſhall be fit to make Peſſaries, to put into the Womb.* Or,

Take *of Hiera Picra half an ounce: Agarick trochiſcated and poudered, Orice Roots of Florence, of each one dram: old Mithridate, and Diaphœnicon, of each two drams. With Juyce of Mercury, make a Peſſary. Roul it in a cloth, put it up when ſhe goes to bed, and let her keep it two or three hours.*

If the Womb be very full of Excrements, a more ſtrong Peſſary muſt be put in, after this following Injection.

Take *Leaves of Wormwood, Mugwort, Mercury, and Rue, of each one handful and an half: Pulp of Coloquintida ten grains: Agarick trochiſcated half a dram: Ginger and Myrrh, of each a ſcruple. Boyl all in water and white wine to a pint, wherein diſſolve two ounces of Honey of Roſes. Let three ounces of this Liquor be injected into the Womb for three daies together, in the morning, and when ſhe goes to bed, after her Courſes have done. Then put up this following Peſſary.*

Take *Hiera Picra, and Benedicta Laxativa, of each an ounce: the pulp of Coloquintida, and Agarick trochiſcated, of each half a dram: Spicknard, Seeds of the Roman Nigella, Savin Leaves poudered, of each a dram: Incorporate them with Honey of Roſemary flowers, and include them in a piece of Silk. Make Peſſaries hereof, and put one into her womb, when ſhe is going to bed, and let it bide there two hours, and afterward waſh the part with white Wine.*

To ſtrengthen, faſten, and dry the womb, theſe following Medicaments may be uſed:

Take *Roots of round Birthwort half an ounce: Lignum Aloes three drams: Cypreſs Nuts and Roots, of each two drams: Calamus Aromaticus a dram: Dictamnus Creticus, Winter Savory, and Mirrh Leaves, of each one handful: choyce Mirrh, Storax, and Benjamin, of each two drams and an half: Stœchados, Roſemary flowers, and Marjoram, of each one pugil: Boyl*

all

all in a ſufficient quantity of ſtrong white Wine. In a pint and an half of the ſtrained Liquor diſſolve two drams of Troches of Alipta Moſchata, Amber-greece, and Muſk, of each ſeven grains: Civet five grains. Make hereof an Injection into the Womb warm, morning and night for certain daies together.

Before or after the Injection, this following Fumigation may be uſed:

Take *Troches of Gallia and Alipta Moſchata, of each two drams: Storax, Benjamin, and pure Ladanum, of each half an ounce: Lignum Aloes, and Lignum Rhodium, of each one dram: Nigella Seeds, Cubebs, and Cloves, of each four ſcruples: Amber, and Tacamahacca, of each one dram and an half: Mace half a dram. Make of all a Pouder, of which with Orange-flower water, wherein Gum Tragacanth is diſſolved, make little Cakes or Troches: of which, let one or two be laid upon burning coals, and let the ſmoak be received by a Funnel into the Patients Womb.*

The poorer ſort may be ſmoaked with Mirrh, Frankincenſe, Lignum Aloes, Storax, Benjamin, Cinnamon, and Cloves, of each a like quantity. After the Injection and Fumigation, let the following Peſſary be put up.

Take *Frankincenſe, Maſtich, of each two drams: Troches of Gallia and Alipta Moſchata, of each four ſcruples: Biſtort Roots, Cypreſs nuts, Shavings of Ivory, and red Roſes, of each one dram: Styrax, Benjamin, and Ladanum, of each two ſcruples: Calamus Aromaticus, and Cypreſs Roots, of each half a dram. Make them into a Paſte with Orange-flower Water: then with thin linnen cloth, make two Peſſaries of ſufficient greatneſs; one of which put up when ſhe goes to bed, anointing the top thereof with a little Oyl of Nutmegs and Civet mingled together.*

It is furthermore related of Garden Garlick, That if it be beaten with Oyl of Spike, and thruſt into a piece of Linnen made like a Pudding-bag, and ſo put up far within the Womb, that it powerfully brings down the Courſes being ſtopt, and wonderfully delights the womb, and purgeth it: ſo that hereby, many have been brought to conceive Children, who for a long time had been paſt all hope of ever having any.

Before the ſtrengthening Injections and Fumigation, a Bath to ſit in may be uſed for an hour together, before the Patient goes to bed; and it may be thus prepared.

Take *Roots of Briony, Maſter-wort, Valerian, Orice, Enula Campana, of each three ounces: Leaves of Marjoram, Mugwort, Nep, Penyroyal, Mercury, Sage, Bay, of each four handfuls: Bay-berries, and Juniper Berries, of each an ounce: Boyl all, and make thereof a Bath for the Patient to ſit in.*

As for total Baths, ſuch as ariſe from Brimſtony and Bituminous Mines, are moſt excellent; and very many women in this Condition, do flock unto ſuch Baths, as to a Sanctuary.

After Bathing and Fumigation, the Share, and the ſpace between the Privities and Fundament, muſt be anointed with this following Oyntment:

Take *Oleum Nardinum, & Moſchatellinum, of each an ounce and an half: Oleum Cheirinum half an ounce: Pouders Diambræ, and Diamoſchi, of each one dram an half: Liquid Storax one dram: Civet ten grains: Muſk, Amber-greece, of each ſix grains: a little white Wax. Mix all, and make them into an Oyntment: Wherewith let the parts aforeſaid be anointed. Within let her be nointed with Civet, or Indian natural Balſom. Or let the Man ſmear his Yard with Civet immediately before he joyn himſelf.*

Finally, Let Plaiſters be applied to the Share, and to the Loyns, which let her wear continually, or at leaſt every night, until the laſt week, in which her Courſes are wont to flow. Let them be made after this manner:

Take *of the Rowl of Emplaſtrum pro Matrice four ounces: Of the Rowl of Emplaſtrum de Maſtiche two ounces: Tacamahacca, and Caranna, of each one ounce: Pouder of Tormentil and Biſtort Roots, of each three ounces: Pouder of Mirtle two drams: Pouder of Aromaticum Roſatum four ſcruples: Soften them with Oyl of Quinces, adding thereto a dram of Oyl of Nutmegs. Spread it upon Leather, and ſhape two Plaiſters, the one round to be applied to the Share; the other ſquare for the Loyns of the Patient.*

Chap. 16. *Of Acute and Chronical Diſeaſes of Women with Child.*

THe Acute and Chronical Diſeaſes of women with Child are the ſame in Eſſence or Nature, and have the ſame ſigns, with the like Diſeaſes in women not with Child, or in men; wherefore it is needleſs in this place, to ſpeculate thereupon, let the Reader pleaſe to look for them in their proper Chapters.

But

But the Prognoſtick of theſe Diſeaſes is not the ſame; becauſe in women with Child they are far more dangerous, and very often times mortal. So ſaith *Hippocrates* in Aphor. 31. Sect. 5. For a Woman with Child to be ſeized by an acute diſeaſe, is deadly. For if the Diſeaſe have a Feaver joyned with it, there is a two-fold danger attending the ſame (as *Galen* ſhews in his Commentary upon this Aphoriſm) one from the Feaver, which will kil the Child; another from the ſlender diet which is requiſite to the Cure of the Feaver, but is not ſufficient to nouriſh the Infant in the Womb. Or if it be an acute Diſeaſe without a Feaver, as the Falling-ſickneſs, Apoplexy, Univerſal Convulſion of the whol Body, the Mother and Infant cannot withſtand the violence of the Diſeaſe, neither can they bear ſuch ſtrong Medicines as are requiſite to the Cure of thoſe Diſeaſes. Yet we muſt know that this Prognoſtick is not perpetually true. For we know by the Teſtimonies and Examples in Authors, and by dayly Experience, That many women with Child having acute Diſeaſes, eſcape with their lives.

But Chronical or lingering Diſeaſes, as Intermitting Agues, Catarrhs, Teneſmus, &c. do threaten Abortion, and if they cauſe it not, they can hardly be cured before the woman be brought to bed, but do keep her company till ſhe lie down.

Diſeaſes Acute and Chronical in the firſt and laſt months, are more dangerous, than in the intermediate months. For in the firſt months, the bands wherewith the Infant is faſtened to the Womb are weak, ſo as they may eaſily be broken, and the tender Infant is more eaſily over preſſed with thoſe preternatural Cauſes. But in the laſt months, namely, the ſixth, ſeventh, and eighth, the Child being grown greater, requires much nouriſhment, which in theſe Diſeaſes it is deprived of. Alſo the foreſaid bands do not ſtick ſo faſt as in the third, fourth, and fifth months, in which there is leſs danger of Abortion. Therefore *Galen* doth excellently compare the Child in the Womb to Fruits hanging on a Tree, which upon their firſt growing out have very tender ſtalks, ſo that they may be eaſily ſhaken off with the wind, or any other violent commotion; and when they are neer ripe, they hang not ſo faſt upon the bough, as in the intermediate ſpaces they did.

Likewiſe the Cure of the foreſaid Diſeaſes in women with child doth remarkably differ, as touching their Diet, and thoſe two grand Remedies, Blood-letting and Purging; whereunto we may ad Medicaments which evacuate by other waies, viz. Such as move the Courſes, Piſs-drivers, and Sweat-drivers, becauſe it is feared leſt by theſe evacuations, abortion may be cauſed: of theſe therefore we ſhall only treat at preſent, referring what elſe belongs to the Cure of theſe Diſeaſes, to the proper Chapters, where ſuch reſpective Diſeaſes are handled.

As for Matter of Diet, it is not to women with Child in Acute Diſeaſes to be enjoyned ſo ſpare, leſt the little Infant be famiſhed; neither is it to be allowed ſo liberal, that the Feaver ſhould be thereby ſtrengthened; but we muſt ſteer a middle courſe, with this Caution, That in the firſt months of their Belly-burden, a thin Diet be enjoyned, and in the latter ſomwhat more ſolid and plentiful, becauſe the Child doth then ſtand in need of more nouriſhment. Yet if there muſt needs be ſome error in Diet, it is better to err in keeping too full, than too ſlender diet; for recovery is chiefly to be expected from the ſtrength of the Mother, and the Child.

Touching Bleeding, that Aphoriſm of *Hippocrates*, viz. the 31. of Sect. 5. is preſently brought in oppoſition, where he ſaies, *If a woman with child be let blood, ſhe miſcarries, eſpecially if the child be grown.* And *Galen* renders the Reaſon in his Comment, Becauſe the Blood being let out, the Infant wants its nouriſhment, whence follows Abortion. On the other ſide, daily Experience ſhews, That in very many Diſeaſes of big-bellyed women, eſpecially acute diſeaſes, as the Pleuriſie, Inflamation of the Lungs, continual Feavers, and ſuch like, blood-letting is neceſſary, and may be adminiſtred, not only in the firſt, but alſo in the middle months, and ſomtimes in the laſt months of a womans Belly-bearing. Which if it be omitted, both Mother and Child are in great danger of death. And to this latter Opinion the Elder Phyſitians aſſent, not diſſenting from the Mind of *Galen* and *Hippocrates*, by ſo doing. For therefore it is they held a woman would miſcarry, if being with Child, ſhe were let blood, becauſe blood being taken away, the Child would want its Nouriſhment. So that if blood may ſo be taken away, as that the Infant ſhall not want its Nouriſhment, there wil be no danger of Abortion thereby.

Now to the caſe may ſtand: As firſt, In the firſt Months of a Womans Belly-bearing, while the Infant in the womb is little, and wants but little Nouriſhment, for then its Nouriſhment by bleeding will not be drawn away, eſpecially if certain ſigns of ſuperfluity of blood be apparent in the Mother. So that from the firſt month to the fift blood-letting, may be ſafely practiſed. But in the middle and laſt Months, greater circumſpection is to be uſed, becauſe the Child being greater, and wanting more Nouriſhment, cannot ſo ſafely admit of Phlebotomy. Howbeit, if the Woman abound with blood, and a ſmal quantity be taken away, ſhe may ſafely be let blood, becauſe hereby the Diſeaſe will be allaied; neither wil ſo much Nutriment be thereby withdrawn from the Child, as to cauſe Abortion. But if it ſeem that *Hippocrates* thought otherwiſe, let us conſider that we let blood after a far other faſhion than the Antients did, they let blood by pounds, and we by ounces. The very truth is, there

is

is no better way to preſerve women from Abortion, than by blood-letting, when it ſprings from over-much blood ſtrangling the Infant, and overwhelming the ſame, in ſuch women as have been accuſtomed out of their time of being with child to have a plentiful flux of Courſes for divers daies together. Thus *Petrus Salius Diverſus* in the 22. Chapter of his Book of particular Diſeaſes: *I for my part proteſt* (quoth he) *that I have preſerved many women from Abortion, which they had often ſuffered, only by letting them blood in the firſt months of their being big. Neither would I have it thought, that no other kind of blood-letting may be practiſed in childing women, ſave that which is ſparing or moderate. For ſomtimes plentiful bleeding in the laſt month hath done very much good. And I have ſomtimes experienced this plentiful Blood-letting in the laſt month, when the women with Child were afflicted with a burning Feaver, and were full of Blood hoping thereby an abatement of the Feaver, and an haſtening of the Birth, both which I obtain'd by blood-letting, and ſaved both child and mother in danger of death, by this only Remedy. Which being in ſome Patients omitted, and neglected by Phyſitians, minding more the words of* Hippocrates, *than the matter it ſelf, hath been the cauſe that both child and mother hath miſerably periſhed, being ſtrangled by the plenty and fervency of blood.* So far *Salius*. *Amatus Luſitanus*, in the 57. Cure of his 1. Section, let a woman with child of eighteen yeers of age, blood, in the ſixth month, four times with happy ſucceſs, ſhe being in a burning Feaver. And *Rodericus a Caſtro* in his third Book of Womens Diſeaſes, Chap. 21. writes, that he let a woman of *Liſbon* blood, who had a Pleuriſie in the eight month, and was given over for deſperate by other Phyſitians, four times and no leſs one after another, and ſhe recovered, and had a healthy Boy. And to conclude, If I may freely relate ſomwhat from mine own Experience, I will ſet down the following Hiſtory, which is a rare one, and worthy to be regarded. *The Wife of* John Vicules, *Citizen of* Montpelier, *had three miſcarriages one after another at ſeveral times of her being with child: When ſhe was the fourth time with Child, about the end of the ſecond month, ſhe was taken with the ſame pains of her Belly and Loyns, which had been the uſual fore-runners of her former miſcarriages. I being called to her, and conſidering ſhe was a Sanguine Woman, and full of Blood, preſently cauſed four ounces of blood to be taken from her; and within half an hour the foreſaid pains quite ceaſed, and the Woman was ſo well that ſhe would not uſe thoſe other Medicines which I preſcribed for her to prevent Abortion.* Now thoſe Symptomes appeared in the ſelf ſame time, wherein ſhe was wont to have her Courſes, when ſhe was not with Child. Again in the third month of her being with Child, at the ſame period of time, the ſame Symptomes return upon her: She ſending for me, deſires I would order her to be let blood, ſeeing the month preceding ſhe had found ſo ſudden help thereby. I conſent, and ſhe is again let Blood, with like good ſucceſs as before. In like manner in her fourth, fifth, ſixth, ſeventh, and eighth months the ſame Symptomes returning, in their juſt diſtances of time, ſhe was again let Blood and preſently recovered. The laſt of her bleedings was but eight daies before the beginning of her ninth month, with like profit as before; and about the end of the ninth month the ſaid woman brought forth a living Male-child and Luſty.

Yet I would not have a young Phyſitian moved with theſe examples be too bold in letting women Blood in their laſt months of being with Child. But the Nature of the Diſeaſes and of the women muſt be diligently conſidered, that Medicaments may be conveniently ſuited thereunto. Allwaies remembring that ſins of omiſſion are lighter than ſins of commiſſion, and that it is better in a doubtfull caſe to fall ſhort, than to outpaſs the due and fitting bounds. Yet when he finds the evident indications of Blood-letting, let him boldly draw Blood, firſt enforming the by-ſtanders or friends of the ſick, that there is more danger of abortion, and of the death of Infant and Mother from the Cruellty of the diſeaſe, than from Blood-letting: and allwaies remembring that but little Blood be taken away, that the Child may not miſs of its nouriſhment. And if plenty of Blood require a larger quantity to be taken away, let it be done at divers times and not all at once.

Wherefore the foreſaid Aphoriſm of *Hippocrates* does not abſolutely forbid the opening of a vein, but only warnes that Phyſitians be wary what they do in that kind. Which is elegantly delivered by *Cornelius Celſus* in the 10. Chapter of his 2 Book, in theſe words. *The Antients did judg that young and old people could not bear Blood-letting. And they perſwaded themſelves that a woman with Child, let Blood would miſcarry. But experience hath ſince taught us, that theſe are no generall Rules, and there are other conſiderations of more weight, which the Practitioner is to regard. For it matters not of what Age the Patient is, nor what ſhe hath in her Body, but what her ſtrength is. So that if a young man be weak, or a woman not with Child be weak, Blood is ill taken from them, for the remaining ſtrength dies, and they periſh. But a ſtrong Child, and a ſtrong old man, and a woman with Child that is luſty, are ſafely cured by bleeding.* So for *Celſus*. Some latter Phyſitians have dared to open the lower veins in women with Child, to Cure the Falling-ſickneſs by conſent of the Womb, the venerial and peſtilential Bubo, yea, and to prevent abortion, as we may ſee in *Zacutus Luſitanus* in his Book of Wonderful Cures Obſ. 23. Book. 1. and Obſ. 130 and 151 of Book 2. Who by his own and other mens

experiments

experiments endeavours to prove, that such Blood-letting may be safely practised. Which I leave to prudent Physitians to consider of.

We said about the beginning of this Chapter, that there is no difference in Curing the diseases of women with Child, saving with respect to the greater remedies; which difference must be in them thus determined, *viz.* That the diseases which hold women not with Child, as vomiting, want of appetite and the like; in them being not with Child, they are to be Cured rather by vomiting than by Blood-letting, because they come from evil humors abounding in the stomach and the whol Body; but in women with Child, they need rather Blood-letting, because they Spring from Blood retained in in the very beginning of their being with Child. And experience hath taught that the vomiting, which is wont often to trouble women with Child, is in the first months of Childing exasperated by purges; but by bleeding much abated, yea and wholly taken away, if the Blood-letting be iterated every month till the symptom cease.

The use of Purging in women with Child *Hippocrates* hath defined in Aphor. 1. Sect. 4. Women with Child (saith he) are to be purged if the humor offending do work in the fourth month and to the seventh, But these about the seventh less. And we must take heed what we do when the Child is very young, or old. *Galen* in his Comment saies that there is the same proportion between a Child in the Womb and fruit upon the true. For fruit when it first grows upon the bough, it is held by a very tender stalk, and therefore quickly falls, being shaken by a vehement wind. afterwards when they are grown greater, they are not easily separated from the boughs. And yet when they are fully ripe they fall off of their own accord. In the same manner women suffer abortion in the first and last months, because in them the Child is not so fast tied to the Womb. But in this Age of ours, purges are wont to be given to women with Child in all the months (very neer) of their being with Child in diseases springing from the tyranny of humors & excrements vitiated, when the matter is in motion and works, or when it is concocted: so often as there is more danger feared from the evil humor causing the disease, than from the commotion raised by the purging Medicaments. Gentle and harmless Medicaments have made Physitians bolder in this kind, such I mean as we use at this day, as Rhubarb, Myrobalans, Cassia, Manna, Senna, Agarick and the like. But we must allwaies remember that saying of *Hippocrates*; and we must more freely give purges in the middle months and more warily in the first and last. Also the use of Pills is ever more suspected in women with Child; both because they make a greater commotion in the Body, and also by reason of the Aloes, which by reason of the extream bitterness is an enemy to the Child, and is thought to open the mouths of the veines. But if sometimes the use thereof seems necessary, in some grevious infirmities of the stomach, which are wont frequently to infest women with Child the first months of their being with Child bearing, let it be carefully washed with Rose-water, that the acrimony thereof may be taken away; or let it be mixt with strengthening and astringent things, as Rhubarb, Mastich and such like.

Clysters are not very safe, because by compressing the Womb they may cause abortion. So that when there is need of them, and in women accustomed to that kind of evacuation, they must be made in less quantity, and of such things as are rather mollfying and lenefying than much purging.

In a word, touching Sweat-drivers, Piss-drivers, and such things as move the Courses, our Opinion is, That Movers of the Courses properly so called are never to be used in women with Child. And Piss-drivers because they likewise are apt to bring down the Courses, ought to be suspected; and if the necessity of some disease require the use of them, the gentler must be made choice of. And finally, Sweat-drivers may be safely given, because they drive the humors out, by the habit of the Body, whereby no danger of abortion is incurred, in so much that some women in the middle of their being with Child, have bin Cured of the whores Pox, without harm to their Child.

Chap. 17. *Of Abortion or Miscarriage.*

Abortion or Miscarriage is the bringing forth of an imperfect or unripe Child. And consequently a child dead in the Womb, is not counted an Abortion, till it be excluded. So that whether alive or dead Child be brought fourth, not being ripe, nor having attained to the just term of growth which it ought to have had in the Womb, it is to be termed an Abortion, or Miscarried Child.

The Causes of Abortion are some internal some external. The internal may be reduced to four heads, viz. to the Humors, to the Child, to the Womb, and to the Mothers diseases.

The humors may cause Abortion while they offend in quantity or in quality.

They offend in Quantity either by way of excess or of Defect.

Humors offending by way of excess are seen in a Plethorick or over-full Constitution of Body; for Blood being more plenty full than is requisite to Nourish the Infant in the Womb, flowes into the veines of the Womb, and is excluded by way of the monthly Courses, and brings away the Child with it.

Defect

Defect of Humor fitting to Nouriſh, ſprings from ſuch Cauſes, which are able to draw the Nouriſhment from the Child, as faſting, whether voluntary or forced; as when women with Child loath all kind of Meat, or vomit it up again; a thin diet in acute diſeaſes, immoderate bleeding by the Noſe, Hæmorrhoides, Womb, or by immoderate Phlebotomy. Whereupon *Hippocrates* in Aphor. 34. Sect. 5. If a woman with Child go very much to ſtool, it is to be feared that ſhe will Miſcarry. Hereunto may be referred extream leanneſs of the whol body, wherein there is not Blood enough to nouriſh the Infant. Of which, *Hippocrates* in Aphor. 44. Sect. 5. Speakes thus. *Women with Child being very lean, not by nature, but accident, as famin, long-ſickne ſs &c. they Miſcarry, untill they get their fleſh again.*

In reſpect of the Child, Abortion may happen, if it be over great, ſo that it cannot by reaſon of its bulk be contained in the Womb; hence it falls often out that little Women miſcarry eſpecially if they be married to Men Bigger than ordinary whoſe Children grow very great, and find not in the Womb place large enough to contain them, till they come to their perfect growth. Which made *Hippocartes* ſay in his Book of ſuperfœtation. *If any Woman conceive frequently, and do duly and at a certain period of time Miſcarry, as in her ſecond, third, or fourth month, or later: the narrowneſs of her Womb is in fault, which is not able to contain the Child as it grows great.* Alſo plurality of Children may cauſe abortion, as when two or three or more are contained in the Womb at one time; for then the Womb overloaden excludes the Children before the fit time: which is the cauſe that Women often Miſcarry of twinns. Alſo the dead Child is to be reckoned among the cauſes of Abortion: for as ſoon as the Child is dead; Nature doth forthwith ſet her ſelf to caſt it forth.

Abortion happens in reſpect of the Womb it ſelf, if it be not of largneſs and capacity enough, ſufficiently to widen it ſelf according as the Child grows, as was ſhewed above out of *Hippocrates*. As alſo if there be any thing preternatural in the Womb, as an Inflamation, a Scirrhous Tumor, an Impoſtume and very many diſeaſes beſides. And finally if the Womb be overmoiſt and ſlack, that it cannot contain the Child ſo well as it ought to do.

In reſpect of the Mothers diſeaſes, Abortion comes two waies. Firſt of all, when as her diſeaſes are communicated to the Child, whereby it is killed, or ſo weakened that it cannot receive due nouriſhment nor growth; ſuch as are continual and intermitting feavers, the Whores-Pocks and many ſuch like. Secondly, when the ſaid diſeaſes of the Mother, do cauſe great evacuations or great commotions of the Body, as Large Bleedings, from what part of the Body ſoever, fluxes of the Belly, grievous Swoonings, Falling-ſickneſs, Vomiting, and *Tenesmus* [that is perpetual going to the ſtool and voiding nothing but a little ſlime] which above all other diſeaſes is wont to cauſe Abortion, becauſe by that frequent and almoſt continual endeavour of going to ſtool, which perpetually attends this diſeaſe, the Muſcles of the Belly are perpetually contracted, and do more compreſs the Womb than the ſtreight Gutt upon which the Womb reſts; which continual compreſſion or ſqueezing of the Womb, doth at laſt cauſe Abortion.

External cauſes which further Abortion, do ſome of them kill the Child, others draw away its nouriſhment, and others diſſolve thoſe bands wherewith the Child is faſtened to the Womb.

The Child is killed by greivous commotions of mind, as Anger, ſadneſs, Terror &c. meates earneſtly longed for and not obtained, ſtrong purging Medicaments, ſuch things as provoke the Courſes, ſuch things as drive forth the Child; ſuch things as are reckoned by a ſecret property to deſtroy the Child in the Womb; abominable ſmells, eſpecially the ſtink of a Candle ill put out.

The Child is deprived of its nouriſhment, by the Mothers being famiſhed, and by immoderate loſs of her Blood, eſpecially when the Child is big. As *Hippocrates* teaches in the Aphor. 60 Sect. 5.

The bands which faſten the Child to the Womb are looſed by vehement exerciſe, Danceing, Running, Rideing, or Joking in a Coach or Cart; carrying of an heavy weight, or lifting it from the ground, a violent fall and ſquelch, a Blow upon the Belly that mauls the Child, vehement motion of the Belly by coughing, vomiting, looſneſs, neezing, convulſions, crying out, immoderate or over wanton venereal embraces. And in a word, vehement motion of the Armes, by drawing ſomewhat violently to a Body, by turning a wheel, or doing ſome ſuch work, may exceedingly further Abortion or Miſcarriage.

The Signs of preſent Abortion are manifeſt of themſelves. But ſuch as go before Abortion, and prognoſticate the ſame, are theſe; An unuſual heavineſs of the Loyns and Hips, a loathneſs to ſtir, Appetite gone, ſhivering and ſhaking coming by fits, pain of the head, eſpecially about the Roots of the Eyes; a ſtraitening of the ſides, and of the Belly above the Navel; the flagging or falling, and extenuation of the Dugs, which made *Hippocrates* to ſay in Aphor. 37. Sect. 5. *If the Dugs of a woman with child do ſuddenly grow ſmall, that woman will miſcarry.* For the extenuation of a womans Dugs in ſuch a caſe, doth ſignifie want of blood in thoſe Veins which are common to the womb, and to the Dugs, by means of which defect, the child is in danger to miſcarry. But if Abortion ſhall

be cauſed by ſome external efficient, cauſing violent agitation of the Child in the Womb, and a burſting of the Veſſels, with a pain raiſed in thoſe parts; the Spirits and Blood run ſpeedily to the genital parts, of which the Dugs being deſtitute, grow ſmaller than they were. Furthermore, Plenty of Milk dropping from the Dugs, doth argue a weak Child, and conſequently portends Abortion; according to *Hippocrates* in Aphor. 52. Sect. 5. But if frequent pains, and almoſt continual, do torment the Reins and Loyns, reaching towards the Share as far as *Os ſacrum*, with a certain endeavor of going out of the Womb, it is a certain ſign of a woman that will ſhortly miſcarry. For thoſe parts do ſignifie that the Membranes and Ligaments wherewith the child is faſtened to the womb are ſtretched and torn in ſunder. And if ſo be that pure Blood, or ſuch as is wheyiſh, or water flowing from the Womb, do follow the foreſaid pains and endeavors of coming out; it ſhews that Abortion is hard at hand, and that the Veſſels and Membranes of the Womb are broken, and the mouth of the Womb open. At the ſame time, the ſituation or poſture of the Child is changed; for whereas it lay high and poſſeſſed the middle of the Womans Belly like a Sugar-loof bearing out; it is now gathered, round like a Foot-ball, and rolled down towards the Water gate. Alſo oftentimes there follow grievous Symptomes, as ſhiverings, tremblings, Palpitations of the Heart, Swoonings, and abundant Bleeding.

Hereunto may be added what *Hippocrates* teacheth us in the ſecond Book of Popular Sickneſſes, Text 17. That if after violent external cauſes, ſuch as are a blow, a fall, and ſuch like, vehement pain, and perturbation ariſe in a Woman with Child, ſhe ſuddenly (or at moſt the ſame day) miſcarries; but if the external cauſe were weak, the Abortion may be differred till the third day, which being once over, there is no longer danger of Abortion, becauſe ſuch wounds and hurts, are wont to grow well again upon the third, or at moſt, the fourth day, or very much to be mitigated and aſſwaged; whereupon the Child is again confirmed in the Womb and retained. Which Precept is of great moment in the Practice of Phyſick, that women with child being hurt by ſome external accident, ſhould keep their bed for three daies or longer, and uſe ſuch Remedies as prevent Abortion.

The Prognoſticks of Abortion may be divers, after this manner:

Women are more endangered by Abortion, than by due and timely Child-birth, becauſe it is more violent, and unſeaſonable; for as in ripe Fruit, the Stalks are looſened from the Boughs, and the Fruit falls of it ſelf; ſo in a Natural Birth, the Veſſels and Ligaments wherewith the Child is tied to the Womb, are looſened and untied as it were of their own accord, which in caſe of Abortion muſt needs be violently broken aſunder.

Very many women become Barren by their Miſcarriages by reaſon of thoſe exceeding rendings & tearings which do wholly overthrow the diſpoſitions of the Womb.

Much bleeding accompanied with fainting, raving, and convulſions, is wont to cauſe death; and *Aretæus* teſtifies he never ſaw any eſcape, who in the time of their Abortion, or afterwards, had Convulſion fits.

Inflamation of the Womb cauſed by Abortion, is for the moſt part deadly; for Blood flowing to the Womb in great quantity, is not purged out, but putrefies therein, and regurgitates or flows back into the upper parts; whence ariſe burning Feavers, pantings of the Heart, Heart-burning, and other Symptomes enumerated before.

Abortion is more dangerous in a woman that never bore Child before, becauſe being unaccuſtomed to Pains, and having thoſe Paſſages more ſtrait, ſhe is longer and more vehemently tormented.

Women very lean or very fat, are more endangered by Miſcarriage; the former, becauſe of their weakneſs; the latter, becauſe of the narrowneſs of thoſe Paſſages by which the Child muſt come forth.

Abortion is more dangerous in the ſixth, ſeventh, and eight months, becauſe the Child being the greater, is excluded with the more pain and difficulty.

Women which have a more looſe and moiſt womb than ordinary, do miſcarry commonly without danger, eſpecially in the firſt month; becauſe thoſe parts in ſuch women, do eaſily give way, whence their pain and trouble is the leſs.

Hippocrates in the ſecond Book of Popular Sickneſſes, affirms, That to miſcarry of a male Conception of three-ſcore daies old, helps a Woman whoſe Courſes are ſtopped, by ſtopping of Courſes, he underſtands only their imminution, when women are not ſufficiently, or conveniently purged, at their monthly ſeaſons; for by ſuch an Abortion or Miſcarriage as aforeſaid, thoſe ſtopped paſſages are opened, and the Blood is drawn towards the womb, which came thither but ſlowly in former times. Our ordinary women ſeem to have taken notice, of the truth of this ſaying of *Hippocrates*. who touching an Abortion of a few months, are wont to ſay by way of proverb, *A miſcarrying woman is half with child again.*

The Cure of Abortion conſiſts in Preſervation, for that which is paſt cannot be helped. But all the Symptomes which follow Abortion, are the ſame which accompany women duly brought to bed.

The

The Preſervation from Abortion hath two principal Points or Heads: The one concerns the woman before ſhe is with child: The other when ſhe is with child.

Before the woman is with child, all evil diſpoſitions of body which are wont to cauſe Abortion, muſt be removed: as fulneſs of blood, badneſs of Humors, and peculiar Diſeaſes of the womb, viz. Diſtempers, Swellings, Ulcers, and ſuch like.

Fulneſs of Blood opens the Veins of the womb, or ſtrangles the Infant while it is in the womb. This if it be a pure and ſimple Plenitude, may be cured by Blood-letting, ſuch as ſhall anſwer the quantity of blood ſuper-abounding.

But badneſs of Humors, is either chollerick and ſharp, ſo as to open the Orifices of the Veins, or by provoking Nature, to ſtir up the expulſive faculty, whereby the child comes to be expelled with thoſe evil humors; or by reaſon of plenty of Excrements heaped together in the firſt Region, and diſtending the Belly, it ſuffocates the child; or it vitiates the blood in the whol habit of the Body, rendring it unfit to nouriſh the child, or it fills the Veſſels of the womb which retain the child, full of ſlime and ſnot.

This Badneſs of Humors may likewiſe be holpen by blood-letting, but it muſt be in a leſſer quantity, ſeeing the principal ſcope of the Cure, is by frequent Purgations, to take away the ſuperfluous Excrements of the Body. And in the ſpaces between Purge and Purge, ſuch things muſt be uſed, as help the diſtemper of the Bowels, mitigate the ſharpneſs of Humors if there be any, or thicken the ſaid Humors, in caſe they be too thin. Or if flegmatick Humors are too rife, they muſt be diſcuſſed by Sweat-drivers, Pils-drivers, and other Remedies. Howbeit we muſt diligently obſerve, that whatever ill humor abounds, Iſſues are wonderful profitable to prevent Abortion: of which *Zacutus Luſitanus* gives a ſpecial note, in theſe words: *By moſt happy Experiments I have obſerved, That frequent Abortion cauſed by corrupted Humors which flow from the whol Body to the Womb, and by their evil diſpoſition or abundance do kill the child, is hereby as by a moſt preſent help prevented. Many women did miſcarry upon this very account, among which ſome having often times brought forth a Child of ſeven months or four months growth, but torn and putrefied, could by no other means be freed from ſo great a Calamity, ſave by Iſſues made in their Arms and Thighs, which were alwaies made at the beginning of the fluxion; by which means they went out their time, and brought forth Children healthy, and not defiled with any Infection.*

The peculiar Diſeaſes of the Womb, as over great Moiſture, Swellings, Ulcers, and ſuch like muſt be cured by their proper Remedies deſcribed in the Chapters which treat of them.

In women with Child, if the ſame Cauſes be preſent as in other women, the difficulty is yet greater, becauſe big-bellied women cannot ſo eaſily bear all kind of Remedies. Yet, leſt being deſtitute of all help, they ſhould remain in extream danger of Miſcarriage and Death, ſome kind of Remedies are to be uſed.

In caſe therefore the Patient be too full of blood, ſhe muſt have a Vein opened, though with child, eſpecially in the firſt months; and that the ſecond and third time, if need be. Alwaies remembring that there never be much blood taken away at a time. Of which kind of bleeding we have diſcourſed more at large, in the foregoing Cure.

And when there is an abundance of ſome very bad Humors, gentle Purgations muſt be reiterated, eſpecially in the middle months of a womans being with Child. And if a moiſt, rheumatick, ſnotty, or windy diſtemper do annoy the Patient, we may ſometimes proceed to a Sudorifick Diet, at leaſt a gentle one, in the ſtronger ſort of women.

Mean while, in the whol courſe of being with child, aſtringent and ſtrengthening Medicaments are to be uſed, ſuch as have a vertue to hinder Abortion. Many of which have been deſcribed in our Chapter of immoderate flux of Courſes; whereunto theſe following may profitably be added.

Take of *Kermes, and Tormentil Roots, of each three drams: Maſtich one dram and an half. Make all into a Pouder, of which give the Patient half a dram at certain diſtances of time, or as much as may be taken up upon the point of a knife.* Or,

Take *red Coral two drams: Kermes berries, Date Stones, of each one dram: Shavings of Ivory half a dram: Pearls not bored through, a ſcruple. Make of all a Pouder.*

Or let her ſwallow every day certain grains of Maſtich in the morning.

Our ordinary women do frequently uſe Plantane Seed, which they take in the morning about the quantity of half a dram, with Wine and Water or in an Egg, or Broth, or by it ſelf, almoſt every day, the whol time of their being with Child, and that not in vain.

To the ſame purpoſe very effectual Electuaries are compounded, according to this following Example:

Take *Conſerve of Roſes two ounces: Citron peels candied ſix drams: Myrobalans candied, Pulp of Dates, of each half an ounce: Coral prepared, Pearls prepared, and Shavings of Ivory, of each a dram. With Syrup of Quinces, make all into an Opiate, of which let the Patient take often the quantity of a Cheſtnut.*

If a Liquid form ſhall be more deſired, a Decoction of Tormentil Roots, ſweetened with Conſerve of Roſes, may profitably be given.

The following Lozenges are very good; for they ſtrengthen, and do by little and little free the Body from Excrements, though ſomtimes they do not viſibly purge.

Take *Mace, the three ſorts of Sanders, Rhubarb, Senna, Corals, Pearls, of each a ſcruple: Sugar diſſolved in Roſe-water, four ounces. Make all into Lozenges, weighing three drams apiece. Let her take one twice a week by it ſelf, or diſſolved in a little Broth.*

Outwardly Oyntments and Plaiſters are to be applied, made after this manner:

Take *Ship-pitch half an ounce: Frankincenſe an ounce: Maſtich half an ounce: Dragons Blood and red Roſes, of each two drams. Make all into a Cerate or Plaiſter.* Or,

Take *Oyl of Myrtles, and Maſtich, of each an ounce: red Sanders and yellow, Hypociſtis, Acacia, of each half an ounce: Spodium, red Roſes, of each two drams: Bole Armoniack, Terra Sigillata, Shavings of Ivory, of each two ſcruples: Turpentine waſhed in Plantane Water an ounce: Wax as much as ſhall ſuffice. Make all into a Cerate or Plaiſter; ſpread it upon a Cloth, and apply it to the Reins.*

Plaiſters are compounded of the Maſs of *Emplaſtrum pro Matrice*, and *Emplaſtrum contra Ruptu-ram*, to be applied to the Region of the Share, and of the Loyns. Or after this manner following:

Take of *the Maſs or Rowl of* Emplaſtrum pro Matrice *three ounces: Biſtort Roots, Acacia, Hypociſtis, Pomegranate peels, of each half an ounce: Ladanum ſix drams. Moiſten and ſoften them with Juyce of Quinces, and make a Rowl of Plaiſter for the uſe aforeſaid.*

Concerning Plaiſters it is to be obſerved, That they muſt not be worn long together, but taken off ever and anon; otherwiſe, if they ſtick too long upon the Back, they do ſo heat the Kidneys, that the poor women are ſomtimes troubled with ſharpneſs of Urine, or do ſomtimes piſs Sand, Stones, yea and Blood it ſelf.

Neither muſt we omit ſuch things which are accounted by a ſecret property of their Nature to retain a Child in the womb; as an Ægle-ſtone worn about the Neck, a Load-ſtone applied to the Navel, Corals, Jaſpers, Smaragds, Bones found in the Hearts of Stags, and ſuch like, worn under the Arm-pits, or hanged about the Neck.

Zacutus Luſitanus in Obſ. 152. of the Second Book of wonderful Cures, commends a Girdle made of the Hide of a Sea-horſe; and if that be not to be had, he ſaith a Wolfs Skin may profitably be uſed inſtead thereof.

And that the ſucceſs of theſe Medicaments may be happy, the Patient muſt be enjoyned to reſt and keep her ſelf as quiet as poſſibly ſhe can, both in her Body and Mind; alſo to abſtain from Genial Embracements, which do vehemently towze and diſquiet the Womb. For while the Womb opens it ſelf to comprehend the Mans Sperm, with which it is exceedingly delighted, it drives forwards the lately conceived Child, not yet throughly faſtened in the womb.

But if notwithſtanding the Medicines aforeſaid, by reaſon of the vehemency of the Cauſe, whether it be internal or external, the Patient be ready to Miſcarry, we muſt apply our ſelves to do the beſt we can, with theſe following Remedies. And in the firſt place, ſo ſoon as pains and throws ſhall be perceived in the lower part of the Patients Belly towards her Share, in her Loyns, and about the *Oſ ſacrum*, we muſt ſeek to allay and ſtop them, both by things given in, and outwardly applied, according to the variety of Cauſes. For if Abortion be provoked by Crudities and Winds (which is moſt uſual when it begins from an Internal Cauſe) a Pouder muſt be given, compounded of *Aromaticum Roſatum*, and Coriander Seeds: Yea, we may give of the *Aqua Imperialis*, if the quantity of flegm and wind be very great.

At the ſame time let Carminative, or Fart-forcing Medicaments be applied below the Patients Navel: ſuch are, bags of Annis ſeed, Fennel ſeed, Fœnugreek ſeed, Flowers of Chamomel, Elder, Roſemary, and Stœchados mingled together; Or a Roſe Cake fried in a Pan with rich Canary, and ſprinkled with Pouder of Nutmeg and Coriander, or the Caul of a Wether newly killed, or his Lungs laid on warm.

If with theſe means the pains ceaſe not, let a Clyſter be caſt in, made of Wine and Oyl, wherein two drams of *Philonium Romanum* may be diſſolved, or Narcoticks may be given inwardly in a ſmaller Doſe, to allay the violence of Humors and Winds, as we are wont to do in pains of the Chollick.

But if by reaſon of contumacious pains that will not be aſſwaged, or of the violence of ſome external cauſe, blood begin to come away, Revelling Medicines are to be applied, to withdraw the courſe of the blood from the Womb: ſuch are, Rubbings of the uper parts and painful bindings; alſo Cupping-Glaſſes faſtened to the Shoulder-blades, under the Dugs, and under the ſhort Ribs on both ſides. Yea, and if the Woman be ful of Blood, it will not be amiſs to take ſome blood from her, both when ſhe begins to void blood, and eſpecially before it begins to come; and the blood muſt be taken away at ſeveral times, a little at once.

And

And if all this will not ſuffice, but the Flux of blood continues, we muſt proceed to aſtringent and thickening Diet, and Medicaments; and ſo the Pouders and Electuaries formerly deſcribed, may be adminiſtred. Alſo Juyce of Plantane new drawn, and Syrup of Poppies to the quantity of an ounce, with Pouder of Bole-Armoniack, or Dragons-blood.

Alſo outwardly may be uſed Fomentations binding and ſtrengthening, made of Pomegranate peels, Cypreſs Nuts, Acorn Cups, Balauſtians, Grape-ſtones, and ſuch like things boyled in Smiths water, and red Wine.

Or a little Bag full of red Roſe Leaves and Balauſtians, may be boyled and applied hot to the Patients Belly.

Hereunto may be added the foreſaid Plaiſters and Cerecloaths: Or for to cauſe the more aſtriction, make a Cataplaſm of aſtringent Pouders, with Turpentine, and the whites of Eggs, which muſt be ſpread upon Tow, or courſe Flax, and applied to the Navel and the Reins warm. The Tow which ſhall be applied to the Navel, muſt be moiſtened with Wine; that which is to be applied to the Kidneys, in Vinegar.

The two following Medicaments are accounted for Secrets, and it is beleeved they will certainly hold the Child in the Womb, if they be uſed before it be looſened from the Wombs Veſſels.

Take *twelve Leaves of Gold: Spodium a dram: the Cocks Treading of three Eggs that are not addle. Mix all very well, till the Gold be broken into ſmal Atomes. Afterwards diſſolve them in a draught of white Wine, and give it to drink three mornings together.*

At the ſame time let the following Cataplaſm be laid on.

Take *male Frankincenſe poudered two ounces: five whites of Eggs: Let them be ſtirred about together over hot coals, alwaies ſtirring them that they may not clodder together: add Turpentine to make them ſtick. Then ſpread it upon Parcels of Tow, which lay upon her Navel as hot as ſhe can poſſibly endure them, twice a day, morning and evening, on the three daies aforeſaid.*

Chap. 18. *Of Hard Child-birth.*

HArd Travel in Child-bearing, is ſuch as keeps not the due and ordinary Laws of Nature, taking up longer time than ordinary, and accompanied with more vehement pains than are uſual, and other more grievous Symptomes.

Divers cauſes hereof may be aſſigned both internal and external. The internal depend either of the Mother, of the Womb, or of the Child.

In reſpect of the Mother, Travel with child may become ſore and hard, by the weakneſs of her Body, either Natural, or in regard of Age, as in very yong and very antient women, or in regard of Diſeaſes wherewith the woman was troubled during the time of her going with Child, or is ſtill troubled. Hereunto alſo Leanneſs, and over great drineſs of the whol body, may be added; as alſo over fatneſs, and groſsneſs compreſſing and ſtraitening the paſſages of the womb; ill ſhape of ſuch bones as border upon, and embrace the womb, as in ſuch as limp, wind ſtretching the Guts; ſtone or preternatural tumor poſſeſſing the bladder, and preſſing the Womb; and the ill conſtitution of the Lungs, and other parts ſerving for Reſpiration, becauſe holding the Breath is very neceſſary to exclude the Child.

In reſpect of the Womb, divers Diſeaſes thereof may cauſe a ſore Labor, as Swellings, Ulcers, Obſtructions, Aſtrictions, Stoppages ariſing from preternatural Cauſes.

In reſpect of the Child, Hard Travel is cauſed, when there is ſome fault therein, in reſpect of its ſubſtance, its quantity, its figure, and certain things thereunto belonging.

The Child is faulty in regard of Subſtance, when it is dead or putrefied, or ſome waies infected, or weakened with ſome Diſeaſe, ſo that it hath no ability to contribute to its own excluſion.

In regard of Quantity likewiſe, the Child doth not further its own Birth, which is either diſcrete or ſevered quantity, or concrete and joyned; the former is called Number, the latter Magnitude. In regard therefore of continued quantity, the child is faulty, if the Body or Head of it be over great; which makes the Birth thereof become difficult and laborſom; in regard of the disjoyned quantity of the child or burden, Labor becomes difficult, as when there are more than one in the womb; ſo the Birth of Twins is more painful than of a ſingle Child, for the moſt part.

In reſpect of the Figure, or Scituation of the Child in the Womb difficult Travel happens many waies; as when the Child endeavors to come forth with its feet or its hands foremoſt, or puts out one hand only, or one foot; or when it endeavors to come forth doubled, with its breech, or its belly foremoſt.

In

In regard of the Childs Adjuncts or certain things belonging to the Child, difficulty of Travail happens, when those membranes which encloſe the Child are more thin than ordinary ſo that they come to break, ſooner than they ſhould; whence followed an over quick effuſion of the waters conteined therein, whereupon the mouth of the Womb remaines dry at the time of the excluſion of the Infant; or where the foreſaid Membranes, are more thick and compact than ordinary, by which means, the Child is hardly able to breake them.

External Cauſes depend upon things neceſſary and things contingent, the things neceſſary are ſuch as Phyſitians commonly call *res non naturales*, things not natural. So a cold and dry air, and the Northern-wind are very hurtfull to women in travail, becauſe they ſtraiten the whol Body, drive the Blood and ſpirits inwards, and prove very deſtructive to the Infant coming forth of ſo warm a place as the Womb. Alſo air more hot than ordinary diſſipates the ſpirits and exhauſts the ſtrength both of Mother and Child, eaſily introduceing a feaveriſh Inflammation into a Body repleniſhed with ill humors, and exagitated.

Meates raw and hard to digeſt, or of an aſtringent quality, taken in a large Quantity before the time of travail, may render the ſame laborious, the ſtomach being weakened and the common paſſages ſtopped, which in this caſe ought to be very free and open.

Sleepyneſs and Sottiſheſs do ſlacken the endeavours both of the Mother and the Child, and ſhew nature to be weak.

Unſeaſonable ſtirring of the woman doth much delay the Birth of the Child, whenas ſhe refuſes to ſtand, to walk, lie down, or to ſit upon the Midwifes ſtoole, as need ſhall require; or when ſhe is unduely agitated to and fro; whence it comes to paſs that the Child cannot iſſue in a fitting poſture, or looſes the good poſture it had, by reaſon of the Mothers undue and diſorderly moveing her ſelf.

The retention of Excrements at the time of Travail, as of Urin diſtending the Bladder of hard excrements in the ſtreight Gutt; and hemorrhoids much Swelled, do ſtraiten the neck of the Womb, and divert nature from her endeavour of expelling the Child.

And in a word, vehement Paſſions of mind, as Fear, Sadneſs, Anger, may very much encreaſe the difficulty of Child birth.

To things contingent are referred Blowes, Falls, wounds, which may very much hinder the Birth: hereunto likewiſe appertain the parties aſſiſtant in time of travail to help the labouring woman, viz. ſtrong women and maid ſervants, which may lift her up and ſupport her when ſhe is in her labours, and eſpecially an expert Midwife, which ought to mannage the whol Buſineſs. For if the Midwife err in her office, it is wont to cauſe difficulty of Birth. For ſometimes the Midwifes do over ſoon exhort the Childing woman, to hold their breath and to ſtrain themſelves to exclude their Child, while the bands which faſten the Child to the Womb, are as yet unlooſed; by which means, the ſtrength of the woman is waſted before hand, which ſhould have bin reſerved to the juſt time of her travail. Yea and the truth is, while the Midwifes do overſoon perſwade the Childing women, that the time of their travail is at hand, they bend all their ſtrength to exclude the Child, and oftentimes violently break thoſe bands with which the Child is faſtened, and caſt themſelves into no ſmall Jeopardy.

Hard Travail is known both by the Childing woman, and by the Aſſiſtants, but eſpecially by the Midwife. And in the firſt place, if the woman continue a longer time than ordinary in her Labors, as two, three, four or more daies whereas a truly natural Child-birth ought to be accompliſhed within the ſpace of 24. Houres. Again, it is a Sign of an hard Labor, if the womans paines be weak, and are long before they return, and if her paines are more about her Back than Privities. And the Cauſes of hard travail, are known by relation of the Childing woman, and are for the moſt part evidently to be ſeen. So the weakneſs of the woman, her over leanneſs, or over fatneſs, is perceived by the habit of her Body. Diſeaſes of the Womb are known by their proper Signes. The Childs weakneſs is known by its weak and ſlow moving it ſelf. But the Signes of a dead Child ſhall be declared in the next Chapter. The greatneſs of the Child may be gathered from the ſtature of the Parents, eſpecially when a big-Bodyed man is matched with a little woman. But when there are none of theſe Signes, and the woman labours ſtoutly, and the Child ſtirrs and makes its way ſufficiently, and yet the travail is hard and painful; it is a token that the ſecundine or After-birth is ſtronger than ordinary, and can hardly be broken, which conjecture is more probable, if no water or moiſture come from the woman dureing her Labors. The diſorderly poſture of the Child is perceived by the Midwife, and the other Cauſes are viſible to the Eye, as we ſaid before.

As for the Prognoſtick. Hard-Travail, is of it ſelf dangerous in which ſometimes the Mother, ſometimes the Child and ſometimes both do looſe their lives.

If a woman be four daies in Labor, its hardly poſſible the Child ſhould live.

Sleepy diſeaſes and convulſions which befall a woman in Travail are for the moſt part deadly.

Sneezing which befalls a woman in ſore Travail is good. Out of *Hippocrates* in his Aphoriſmes.

To

To cure difficulty in Child-birth firſt all cauſes which may delay the birth, are as much as may be, to be removed. And afterwards, ſuch Medicines as further the Birth are Methodically to be adminiſtred.

And in the firſt place it is common among the women to give a groaning wife a ſpoonfull or two of Cinnamon Water. Or Cinnamon it ſelf in Pouder with a little Saffron may be given, or half a dram of *Confectio Alkermes* may be drunk in a little Broath. Alſo Saffron alone being given ten graines in every Meis of Broath the woman takes, or every hour being taken in a little Wine is very good Or.

Take *Oyl of ſweet Almonds and White Wine of each two ounces. Saffron and Cinnamon of each twelve graines Confectio Alkermes half a dram. Syrup of Maiden Hair one ounce and an half. Mix all and make thereof a potion.*

If this ſhall not ſuffice, but that ſtronger things, muſt be uſed, the following potion will be moſt effectual, which I have had frequent experience of.

Take *Dictamnus Cretenſis, both the Birthworts, and Trochiſes or Cakes of Myrrh of each half a ſcruple. Saffron and Cinnamon of each twelve grains. Confectio Alkermes half a dram: Cinnamon Water half an ounce, Orange-flower and Mugwort Water of each an ounce and an half: Make all into a potion.*

Among the more effectual ſort of Medicaments are numbred Oyl of Amber, Oyl of Cinnamon and extract of Saffron, which do in a little quantity work much. viz. Extract of Saffron to five or ſix grains, Oyl of Cinnamon to four or five Drops; Oyl of Amber to twelve or fifteen Drops, in VVine, Broth or other Liquor.

Sneezing haſtens the Birth, or *Hippocrates* in the Aphor. 35. Sect. 5. Sneezing which happens to a woman in ſore Travail is good. Sneezing may be provoked by the following Pouder.

Take *White Hellebore half a dram. Long Pepper one ſcurple. Caſtoreum five grains. Make all into a Pouder, and blow thereof into her Noſtrills the quantity of a Peaſe.*

The ſame *Hippocrates* prescribes another Remedy in the firſt Book of womens diſeaſes, which is omitted by all authors almoſt. And that is the opening of one of the lower veines of the Body, which he propounds in theſe words *But if* (ſaith he) *a Big-bellied woman be ſo ſtopped that ſhe cannot bring forth, but continues divers daies in her pains: if ſhe be a young woman, vigorous and full of Blood, her Ancle veines muſt be opened, and Blood taken away, according as her ſtength will bear,* Although this remedy be never uſed by our Practitioners, and it ſeems much to be feared, becauſe in Travail nothing is ſo needful as ſtrength, which may be weakened by Blood-letting: Yet if difficult Travail do ariſe from fullneis of Blood, which *Hippocrates* doth inſinuate in thoſe words, where he ſaies *If the woman be young and in the prime of her ſtrength, and very full of Blood*; there is no queſtion, but bleeding may be very profitable, becauſe the Veines being very full of Blood, are wont to make al other inward paſſages of the Body more ſtrait. Whence it comes to paſs, that in pains of the Stone in the kidneys, the like Blood-letting doth often work wonders, and facilitate the expulſion of Stones conteined both in the kidneys and Ureters.

Alſo hard Travail may be holpen not only by thoſe inward Medicines preſcribed, but likewiſe by outward

Let the Midwife therefore frequently anoint the Womb of the Childing woman with Oyls of Lillies, ſweet Almonds, Lin-Seed, and ſuch like.

Alſo let her belly be fomented on the nether parts with an emollient Decoction of Marſh-mallow and Lilly Roots, Leaves of Mallows, Violets, Mugwort, Seeds of Line and Fenugreek, with the flowers, of Chamomel and Melilot.

Let ſharp Clyſters be adminiſtred, by the provokeing virtue of which the expulſive faculty of the womb may be likewiſe rouſed up; and the Gutts being emptied will afford larger ſpace for the womb.

Let her Navel be anointed with Oyl of Amber. Some commend the Gaul of an Hen applyed to the ſame part.

Alſo ſuch things may be uſed which are thought by a peculiar property to help the Birth: as Ægle-Stone, Load-Stone, Storax, and the reſt being faſtened to the Hipps.

Hartmannus Commends the Eyes of an Hare taken in the month of *March*: which are carefully to be taken out and dried entire with Pepper. Let one of theſe with Pepper be ſo tied to her Belly, that the Sight of the Eye may touch her belly: and it will bring forth the Child, be it alive or dead. Which being done take away the Eye leaſt it bring forth the Womb it ſelf. He ſaies likewiſe that it is good to bring out the Mole.

Heed is likewiſe to be taken that the woman carry no Precious Stones about her, either in rings or otherwiſe, but let her lay them al away: for many of them are conceived by a peculiar property to retain the Child in the womb.

If the Child ſeem to be weak, it muſt be refreſhed, both with ſtrengthening things given to the Mother, as warm wine, Confectio Alkermes, Cinnamon Water; and alſo with things outwardly

applied

applied, as with a Cruſt of Bread, or a Roſe Cake ſtrewed with Pouder of Nutmegs, Cinnamon, Cloves, Kermes Berries, and ſprinkled with *Aqua Imperialis* or with warm Wine. Or with a peice of Wether-Mutton a little broiled upon a Gridiron, and ſprinkled with Water of Roſes or of Orange-flowers; with the call of a wether newly kil'd, not yet cold, and ſuch like.

If the Child begin to come forth in a diſorderly manner, as by putting out one Foot, one Hand, or any other way; the Mid-wife muſt no wayes receive it on that manner, but thruſt it into the Womb again, and compoſe it to a right and natural poſture or form of egreſs. Which muſt be done by laying the Childing woman on her Back in the Bed, with her Head ſomwhat low and her Buttocks high: and then gently preſſing her Belly towards the ſhort Ribs, and thruſting the Child into the Womb. Afterward let the Midwife endeavour to put the Child into a right poſture for coming out, by an artificial Hand procuring that the Child turn its face towards the Mothers Back, and its Buttocks and Thighes let her lift up towards the Mothers navel, and ſo haſten the ſame unto a natural manner of coming forth.

When all Hope of the Childs coming forth is paſt, or when the Mother is almoſt dead, ſome Authors proceed to the Cæſarean Section [that is to cut the Child out of the Womb, as *Cæſar* was cut out] of which *Franciſcus Roſſetus* hath Printed a moſt elegant Treatiſe; in which by many reaſons and examples he endeavours to ſhew, that ſuch a thing may be ſomtimes done with good ſucceſs. Howbeit, ſeeing this Operation is very dangerous and terrible, it ought ſeldom or never to be practiſed by a diſcreet Phyſitian, that would preſerve his own reputation.

Chap. 19. *Of A Dead Child.*

IN ſore Travel of Child-birth by reaſon of great and long Labour, the Child is oftentimes killed; and ſomtimes before a womans pains come upon her, the Child happens to die through ſome preternaturall accidents, ſuch as thoſe which are wont to cauſe Abortion; and if it hath not attained to the due time of natural Birth it cauſes Abortion, but if it have, it cauſes an hard and ſore Travel, Becauſe in a due and naturall Birth, both the Mother and the Child ought to join their Forces, to bring it from the Dark Dungeon to the Liberty of Day.

All ſuch things therefore which cauſe difficult Child-birth being in a greater and more grievous degree, are of power to kill the Child. But eſpecially the Child is wont to be kild, if it come in ſo untoward and prepoſterous a figure, that it can by no means be brought forth in that manner neither can the Midwife or Chyrurgion draw it forth, or reduce it to a better Poſture. For while ſticking thus in the mouth of the Womb, it fruſtrates all the endeavours of the Mother ſtraining her ſelf to exclude it: it comes to paſs, that in thoſe ſtrainings, various motions and compreſſions, ſomtimes both Mother and Child, ſomtimes the Mother alone and ſomtimes the Child alone doth die. It is to be admired which *Fabricius Hildanus* writes, touching two women which died through hard Labour, in whom their Wombes were found broken aſunder and the Heads of the Infants in their Mothers Bellies. By which we may gather, how ſtrongly a luſty Child doth labour to work it ſelf out of the Mothers Womb.

A Dead Child is known, when the motion thereof ceaſeth, which either the Mother did feel, or the Midwife perceive by her hand laid on, or other warm and ſtrengthening things which were wont to awaken and rouſe up the powers thereof when they were in a ſlumber or ſtupified. Alſo the Mother find a greater ſenſe of weight, with which and pain of the Belly they are troubled: when they turn from one ſide to another they perceive the Child to roul from one ſide to another like a Stone. The lower part of their Belly feels very cold, the native heat being extinguiſhed and thoſe ſpirits diſſipated, which were formerly in the Child; their Eyes become hollow and troubled: their face and Lips are pale; their extream parts appear cold and of a Leaden-colour: their Duggs become ſlap and flaggy, and at length, when the Child rots, ſtinking moiſtures flow from the Womb, like water and blood: their belly is blown up with vapours aſending thereunto: a filthy ſmell, and a ſtinking Breath comes both out of the Mouthes of ſuch women, and from their whol bodies. If the After-Birth be excluded before the Child, it is a certain token that the Child is dead in the Womb.

As to the Prognoſtick. A Child dead in the Womb is a very exceeding dangerous thing, and if it be not timely voided forth it is wont to cauſe Feavers, Faintings, Dead-ſleeps, Convulſions and death it ſelf.

Yet ſomtimes a Child dead in the Womb may be kept a long time, as appears by many ſtories related by divers Authors, which *Schenkius* hath collected in great number as rare Caſes, and *Sennertus* hath tranſcribed out of him, touching many Women which have voided the Bones of Children dead and putrefied in the womb, by their Water-gate, their Dung-gate, and by a Swelling that broke in their Belly.

I have

I have ſeen one Woman which voided all the bones of her child by her Navel, and her Navel growing afterwards whol again, ſhe recovered her perfect health.

The Cure conſiſts wholly in the Excluſion or Extraction of the Child; for ſeeing great danger of life attends the Mother ſo long as the dead Child is in her Womb, as ſoon as ever by the foregoing ſigns, we certainly collect the Child is dead, we muſt make haſt, to force it out. Which is done by the ſame Remedies which were formerly propounded to haſten the Birth. But among them we muſt chuſe out the moſt ſtrong and effectual, whereunto ſome other things may be added which are yet ſtronger, after this manner:

Take *Leaves of Savin dried, round Birth-wort Roots, Troches of Mirrh, and Caſtoreum, of each one dram: Cinnamon half a dram: Saffron a ſcruple. Mix all into a Pouder. The Doſe is a dram in Savin Water.* Or,

Take *Dictamnus Creticus, Savin, Borax, of each a dram: Mirrh, Aſarum Roots, Cinnamon, Saffron, of each half a dram. Mix and make all into a Pouder. The Doſe is a dram in the foreſaid, or ſuch like Liquor.*

In the mean time, let the Fomentations aforeſaid be applied to the Privities, the Share, and ſpace between the Water and the Dung-Gate; adding Briony Roots, Roots of wild Cucumer, Florentine Orice, round Birthwort, called *Ariſtolochia rotunda*, and Broom-flowers.

After Fomentation, anoint the ſaid Parts with *Unguentum de Arthanita*, or with this following:

Take *Ariſtolochia rotunda, or round Birthwort, Coloquintida, and Agarick, of each one dram: Gum Ammoniack diſſolved in Wine and Bulls Gall, of each two drams: With Oleum Cherinum, as much as ſhall ſuffice. Make all into an Oyntment.*

Alſo let this Peſſary be put up into the Womb:

Take *Ariſtolochia rotunda, Orice Root, Black Hellebore, Coloquintida, Mirrh, of each one dram: Galbanum, Opopanax, of each half a dram: With Ox Gall, make all into a Peſſary.* Or this:

Take *Ammoniacum, Opopanax, Caſtorium, Sagapenum, black Hellebore, wild Vine, round Birthwort, Pulp of Coloquintida, Scammony, of each one ſcruple: Euphorbium one dram: With Juyce of Rue, Bindweed, wild Cucumer, and an Oxes Gaul, make all into a Peſſary.*

Zacutus Luſitanus in Obſ. 154. of the Second Book of his ſtrange and Admirable Cures, doth teſtifie, that a dead Child in the ninth months growth, producing many Symptomes in the Mother, was driven out by this Peſſary, and by help of an Oyly Bath, wherein was mixed the Decoction of ſuch Herbs as do open and widen the Paſſages of the Body.

A Fumigation of Galbanum, or an Aſſes Hoof, may be received by a Funnel into the Womb.

If the Matter hang long, it will be good, the woman being ſufficiently ſtrong, to give her a purging Medicine; whereby evil Humors, which in this caſe are eaſily collected, may be evacuated, and the dead Child conſequently caſt forth.

Angelus Sala, in his Book which he calls *Triumphus Emeticorum* (that is, the Triumph of Vomits) doth witneſs, That in this caſe he had often with happy ſucceſs given four or five grains of *Mercurius vitæ*, which doth moſt powerfully expel the dead Child, and excel all other Medicines in that point. Which notwithſtanding, in regard of its vehement working, requires great Caution and Diſcretion in the Phyſitian that would uſe it.

If after Medicines long tried, the dead Child cannot be ejected, we muſt implore the Chyrurgions aid. Who may pull it out, either by Inſtruments, as *Paulus Æginera* deſcribes the manner, or only help of the hand, as is taught by *Carolus Stephanus, Bauhine*, and others; all which are diligently tranſcribed by *Schenkius* and *Sennertus*.

Chap. 20. *Of the After-birth retained.*

IN a Natural Birth, commonly the Secundine is excluded preſently after the Child, yet ſometimes it is retained in the Womb, by which means the Mother is in great Danger of her life.

The internal Cauſes of this retention are, the over thickneſs of thoſe coats, and their too great compactneſs, by which means they cling more faſt to the ſides of the Womb: their being ſwelled through confluence of humors, which is ſtirred up in a laborious Travel, weakneſs of the Mother cauſed by hard Labor, ſo that ſhe wants ſtrength to exclude the After-Birth; and the ſhutting up of the Mouth of the womb, after the Child is come away. But the external cauſes are, the Cold Air, by force whereof the Secundine is repelled and the Wombs mouth ſtopped; Certain ſmells by which the Womb may be enticed upwards or agitated; ſome greivous paſſion of mind, as fear, or ſuddain

or frowardneſs of the Childing woman, which will not abide in ſuch a poſture nor uſe ſuch endeavours as are neceſſary to this work; the over great weight of the Infant, by which the Navil-ſtring is broak unawards and the ſecundine is left within; and the Error of an unexperienced Midwife, which cuts the Navil-ſtrings too ſoon, or holds them not faſt in her left Hand; as ſhe ought to do, for if ſhe let them go, they are drawn back into the Womb, and there lie hid with the After-Birth, which they ought to have holpen to pull out.

The Tokens of a Secundine retained are needleſs, its apparant of it ſelf; yet ſomtimes a bit thereof is ſevered from the whol and retained, which is not ſo eaſie to be known; yet it may be known, becauſe the Womb after the Birth, doth yet labor to caſt ſomwhat forth, although thoſe endeavors are not ſo great as formerly; there is perceived in the womb, a ſence of pain and heat, and after certain daies, a filthy and carrion-like ſmel exhales from the Womb.

The Retention of the Secundine is a very dangerous thing, and if it continue ſome daies in the womb, it acquires a filthy putrefaction, whence ariſeth an acute Feaver, aptneſs to vomit, fainting, difficulty of breathing, a Diaphoretick Sweat, Coldneſs of the extream parts, Hyſterical Fits, Fits of Falling-ſickneſs, and at laſt death it ſelf.

Hippocrates in the Second Book of Popular Sickneſſes, by the example of a certain Carriers Wife, doth hint unto us, That it is good in this caſe, when corrupt blood doth ſuddenly come from the womb in large quantities, for it is hopeful, that thoſe Membranes being rotted and waſted, will flow forth upon the ſixth or ſeventh day.

The After-birth retained, is expelled by the ſame Remedies which were propounded to drive out the dead Child, whereunto we may add ſome appropriated or ſpecifick Medicaments, mentioned by Authors.

Geſnerus and *Augenius*, do very much commend the ſtones of a gelded Horſe, cut in pieces and dried in an Oven. The Pouder whereof is given, as much as can be taken up between three fingers, with the Broth of a Fullet: which Medicine, if need be, muſt be twice or thrice reiterated.

Rulandus gave thirty drops of Oyl of Juniper with happy ſucceſs.

Some adviſe the Childing Woman to hold an Onion hard between her Teeth, and ſqueeze it there, ſwallowing down the Juyce; and ſhe is to bite it ſo three or four times, ſtill ſucking out the Juyce, and ſwallowing the ſame; and at laſt to drink a draught of warm Wine upon it, which preſently helps her.

Foreſtus makes relation of a certain Midwife, which received this following Secret from a Jewiſh Phyſitian. Shee took the green Tops of Lovage, ſhe ſtamped them, and ſtrained out the Juyce with the beſt Rhenish Wine, and gave a draught of it to the Patient.

Angelus Sala commends *Mercurius vitæ* in this Caſe, as well as in the Expulſion of a dead Child.

Hereunto add, Sneezings, Fumigations, Fomentations, Liniments, and other Medicines both inward and outward formerly deſcribed in the caſe of a dead Child.

The following Decoction uſed by a Country woman of ours, hath done wonders.

Take *Vinegar of Roſes eight or ten pints: Bay Leaves, and Bay Berries, of each three handfuls: one Roſe Cake cut in bits. Boyl all together, and let her Hips and Legs be a long time together bathed, from her groyns down to her feet. Upon the uſe hereof, the Womb hath opened of its own accord, and the After-birth fallen away. To this Decoction may fitly be added, of Myrrh, and of the two Birthworts, of each one ounce.*

And among other helps, the hand of a skilful Chyrurgion can do much, being put into the womb, before the Inflamation or Inflation be augmented. For he laying hold of the After-births, and gently turning them this way and that way, may draw them out, and free the woman from ſo many Symptomes, and tireſom Medicines.

If the Secundine can by no means be perſwaded forth, but ſtick ſtrongly to the womb, and there putrefie, ſuppurating things are to be put into the womb, cleanſing things being mingled with them, that as much as is putrefied, may be by little and little brought forth. To which intent *Rondeletius* commends *Unguentum Baſilicum*, eſpecially if it be diſſolved in the following Decoction.

Take *Leaves of Mallows with their Roots, three handfuls: Roots of the two Ariſtolochia's, or Birthworts, of each ſix drams: Lin-ſeed, and Fœnugreek ſeed, of each half an ounce: Violet Leaves one handful: Flowers of Chamomel, and the ſmaller Centaury, of each half a handful. Boyl all in Water, mixing therewith (if there need great ſuppuration, or reduction to Matter) a little Oyl; but if there be more need of deterſion, or cleanſing, add a little* Unguentum Ægyptiacum.

CHAP.

Chap. 21. *Of Immoderate Flux of the* Loches, *or Child-bed Purgations.*

THe Immoderate Flux of Child-bed Purgations called from the Greek, *Loches*, is not to be eſtimated from the quantity, or the time of continuance; becauſe that in divers Natures, Ages, and Courſes of Life, it is very different; but from the ill-bearing of the woman and her weakneſs therefrom ariſing.

The Cauſes of this immoderate Flux, are the over wide opening of the Veſſels, or their rending in hard Travel, or the violent drawing forth of the After-birth; or a more than ordinary quantity of blood, which hath been collected in the Veins of the Womb, during the whol courſe of the Womans being with Child; or the thinneſs and ſharpneſs of the ſaid Blood, which doth too much open the Mouthes of the Veins, and provoke Nature to Excretion.

Immoderate flux of the Child-bed Purgations is known, as hath been ſaid, from the ſtrength of the woman which is dejected through the exhauſtion of her ſpirits that iſſue with the blood; alſo the blood is clotted, and the Patient loaths all meat, is pained under her ſhort Ribs, feels a diſtention of her Belly; her Pulſe is weak and frequent, her ſight is dimmed, ſhe hath noiſe in her Ears, is ſubject to Swooning and Convulſions.

As all great Fluxes of Blood are dangerous, becauſe blood is the Treaſure of our Life, ſo immoderate flux of the Child-bed Purgations is more dangerous than the reſt, becauſe of the travel which goes before, and weakens the Patient. But the danger is more or leſs, according to the greater or leſs quantity of the blood which comes away, and as the Symptomes are more light or grievous which attend the ſame; which made *Hippocrates* to ſay, in the 55. Aphoriſm of the 5ſt Section. *If Convulſion or Swooning betides a Woman upon her Feminine Purgations, it's a ſhrewd ſign.*

The Cure of an Immoderate flux of Blood, conſiſts in one only Point, viz. The ſtoppage of the ſaid flux. Yet extraordinary care is to be taken, leſt that be kept within, which by theſe Purgations was wont to be carried away, and to prove the cauſe of grievous Infirmities. And therefore if the flux do not extreamly urge, we muſt begin with lighter Medicaments, proceeding by little and little if need ſhall require, to ſuch as are ſtronger.

And in the firſt place, The violent Motion of the Blood is to be bridled by an incraſſating or thickening Diet, as by Panadoes, Gruels, Rice, Starch, with Calves-foot Broths, Pears, and Quinces boyled, roſted Fleſh ſprinkled with juyce of Pome-granates.

Let her have pretty plenty of Meat, but not at once, but divers times one after another. For by this means the Heat and Spirit which in the Womb do aſſiſt to the Expulſion, are called away to the Stomach, and by that means the Patients ſtrength is reſtored.

Let her Drink be Water that hath had Iron quenched in it, or Gold, or in which a little Maſtich hath been boyled. Then ſuch things are to be uſed as do revel the Blood into the ſuperior parts, as rubbings and bindings of the upper parts, Cupping-glaſſes faſtened under the ſhort Ribs on either ſide.

It is good likewiſe to bath the Patients hands in hot Wine, in which *Confectio Alkermes*, or Venice Treacle hath been diſſolved.

Alſo let her Belly be moderately ſwathed with a Rowlet or Swath-band; becauſe hereby the Veſſels of Blood will be preſſed together, and the immoderate flux hindered.

Let Linnen Cloths be applied to her Loyns moiſtened with a mixture of Water and Vinegar, by which the blood contained in the *Vena Cava*, is tempered, and the motion thereof hindered.

If the flux be very immoderate, and weaken the Patient, ſo that there is danger of Death, we muſt have ſpeedy recourſe to ſtronger Remedies: Among the reſt, this following Potion hath commonly good ſucceſs.

Take Waters of Plantane, Orange flowers, and Roſes, of each one ounce: Syrup of Corals, or where it is wanting, of red Roſes one ounce: Sal Prunella one dram: Dragons-blood ten grains. Make all into a Potion.

If the flux do yet continue, a Pouder, or an Electuary for divers Doſes, may be preſcribed after this manner:

Take Blood-ſtone four ſcruples: Pouder of Bole-Armoniack, red Coral, prepared Pearls, of each one dram: Seeds of Plantane, Coriander prepared, and grains of Sumach, of each two ſcruples: Mix all, and make them into a moſt fine Pouder, of which let her take one dram with the Decoction of Knotgraſs and Syrup of Quinces.

Take *Conſerves of Roſes and of Comfrey Roots of each one ounce: Bole-Armoniack, Troches de Carabe and prepared coral of each one dram: with ſyrup of coral or of dried red Roſes make all into an Electuary, of which let her take the Quantity of a Cheſtnut, drinking a little of her ordinary drink after it.*

Alſo a fomentation and an Oyntment will profitably be applied outwardly, made after this manner.

Take *Topps of the red Maſtich or Lentiſch, Plantane, Cypreſs, Olive, and Solomons Seal of each one handfull: Red Roſe Leaves two pugills: Myrtle Berries one ounce and an half: Cypreſs-Nuts, ſix: Peels of Pomgranates two pugils: Boyl all in Steel-quenched Water and aſtringent harſh red Wine, and with the ſtrained Liquour bath the Privie Parts, very lukewarm, and almoſt coldiſh.*

Take *of the Counteſſes Oyntment or* Unguentum Comitiſſæ *two ounces: Juyce of Plantane one ounce: worke them together into one Oyntment, to be uſed after the fomentation.*

Alſo an Injection may be made of the juyce of Plantane into the Womb, commended by *Galen* in the fifth book of his Method, or of the Decoction of the foreſaid fomentation.

Other remedies not helping, to open a vein in the Arm is a preſent Cure, if the Blood be drawn out in diſtant ſpaces of time; for experience hath taught, that many women given over as incurable have by this means recovered.

And finally, the diſeaſe ſtill remaining, all Medicines preſcribed for the immoderate flux of the monthly courſes, may be uſed in this Caſe likewiſe.

And among the Medicines for immoderate Courſes, Cataplaſmes were propounded to be applied to the ſhare, and Loines; unto which the following Cataplaſm or pultis may be added, very good for all immoderate fluxes of Blood, but eſpecial for theſe Child-bed Purgations.

Take *Pure Soot from the Chimney not mixt with Dirt eight ounces: work it luſtily with the ſtrongeſt Vineger, and make a pultis to be applied to the Reines of the Back.*

And it is here ſpecially to be noted touching ſleep; that while the Blood flowes plentifully, the woman muſt not be ſuffered to ſleep, for many by that means are taken away, becauſe the natural heat retiring inward, cauſes the flux to be greater. And if ſleep in ſuch a caſe cannot be avoided, ſome muſt be alwaies by of the ſervants to feel her pulſe and mark how ſhe fetches her Breath.

In a word, if clotters of Blood do ſettle in the Womb, and cauſe a pain and ſtretching therein; endeavour muſt be uſed ſpeedily to bring it out, leaſt coming to putrefy, they tranſmit filthy vapours to the Brain and Heart and cauſe a feaver. Therefore the Childing woman, if ſtrong enough, ought to walk gently, or ſtand bolt upright for ſome time together, or to ſit upon the groaning Chair, as if ſhe had luſt to ſtool. And if this ſuffice not, the clotters are to be diſſolved with a warm Decoction of French Barly and a little Oxymel or honey of Roſes injected into the Womb. But here we muſt go warily to work leaſt while we bring out the clotters, the flux of Blood be afreſh provoked.

Chap. 22. *Of Suppreſſion of Child-bed Purgations.*

THe good and happy ſucceſs of Child-bearing doth eſpecially depend upon the convenient and orderly flux of the Loches or Child-bed Purgations; ſeeing the Impurities which have bin collected in the veins of the Womb, during the nine months time of the womans Belly-baring, are wont to be avoided by theſe evacuations; but if they be ſuppreſſed wholly or diminiſhed, infinite Dangers and Calamities ariſe thereby viz. acute Feavers, Phrenzies, Madneſs, Melancholies, Quinzies, Pleurnies, Inflammations of the Lungs and other ſwellings, which are for the moſt part malignant.

The Cauſe of this ſupreſſion or imminution are, the thickneſs of the Blood, narrowneſs or obſtruction of the veſſels, which hinders the free egreſs of the Blood; cold air heedleſly received into the Womb, which cloſes the Orifice of the veſſells, taking cold at the feet, drinking of ſmall cold Drink, fear, Affrightment, ſadneſs and other Paſſions of the mind, which withdraw the Courſe of the Blood from the Womb.

This ſuppreſſion is manifeſt of it ſelf, and the diminution thereof is not to be judged by the Quntity which comes away, becauſe ſome women have more ſuperfluous Blood and ſome leſs. But the perfect knowledg thereof is gathered from the ſupervenient Symptoms ſuch as are a ſwelling of the Belly, a pain poſſeſſing the nethermoſt part of the Belly the Loines and Groines; redneſs of face, difficulty of breathing, perturbation of the Eyes, ſhivering fits, Feavers, Fainting fits, and other Symptomes related before.

The Prognoſtick is drawn out of the Symptomes propounded as ſupervenient to this Diſeaſe, for they being for the moſt part dangerous, the cauſe from which they ſpring muſt needs be very dangerous likewiſe.

Childing

Childing women are freed from the foreſaid danger, if ſome other evacuation happen which may at leaſt in ſome meaſure ſupply the defect of theſe purgations, as Bleeding at the Noſe or by the hemorrhoid veins: plenty of Urine with a ſooty ſetling, or plentiful ſweating. Or if after ſome daies Lead-colored, black, and ſtinking matter begin to flow forth. But it is to be feared, leſt by the corrupt blood, ulcers ſhould be bred in the womb.

The whol Cure of this Malady, conſiſts in the provocation of theſe Purgations, which muſt be endeavored by ſuch Medicines as provoke the Courſe of the Blood downwards, and open the Veſſels of the Womb.

And in the firſt place, Emollient, Purging, and Opening Clyſters are to be adminiſtred, made after this manner:

Take *Roots of Marſh-mallows, and Water-lillies, of each one ounce: the long and round Birthwort, of each three drams: Leaves of Mallows, Marſh-mallows, Pellitory, Mercury, of each one handful: Line ſeed, and Fenugreek ſeed, of each half an ounce: Flowers of Chamomel and Elder, of each two pugils: Boyl all to a pint. In the ſtrained Liquor diſſolve, Oyl of Dill, and Lillies, of each one ounce:* Hiera ſimplex, *half an ounce:* Unguentum de Arthanita *one dram. Mix all into a Clyſter.*

Let her Thighs be rubbed downwards; let the Toes of her Feet be tied till they ake again; let divers Cupping-Glaſſes be fixed to her Groyns and Hips, and let ſome of them be ſcarrified.

If theſe means ſuffice not, open the Veins about the Knees, or of both the Thighs; or the Hemorrhoid Veins, if Nature ſeem to incline that way.

If a Feaver be cauſed by ſuppreſſion of theſe Purgations, a Vein muſt be opened in the Arm, as ſhall be ſaid in the Diseases of Women in Child-bed.

This following Fomentation may be applied to her Belly beneath the Navel, and to the Privy Parts.

Take *Roots of Marſh-mallows, Lillies, Briony, Angelica, and Birthwort, round and long, of each an ounce: Leaves of Mercury, Mugwort, Penyroyal, Savine, Calaminth, of each one handful: Line-ſeeds, and Fenugreek ſeeds, of each an ounce: Flowers of Chamomel, Melilot, Elder, Tanſie, of each a pugil. Beat them and cut them according to art, and put them into two bags, which boyl in Fountain Water, and apply by courſe one after another.*

After Fomentation anoint the foreſaid Parts with Oyl of Lilies, Sweet Almonds, and Seſamum, adding thereto a little Saffron.

Hereunto may be added ſuch Peſſaries and Fumigations as have been ſet down in our Chapter of Suppreſſion of the Courſes, beginning with the moſt gentle.

Let her drink a Decoction of opening Roots, Cinnamon, and red Vetches with a little Saffron. Or,

Take *Opening Roots, of each two drams: Leaves of Bettony, Endive, Maiden-hair, of each a handful: Schœnanth one pugil: Annis ſeed, and Fennel ſeed, of each one ſcruple: red Vetches a ſpoonful: Boyl all to a pint and an half. To the ſtrained Liquor ad Cinnamon Water two drams: Syrup of the five opening Roots three ounces. Let her take four ounces twice a day.*

Before the Feaver be encreaſed, we may ſometimes give Troches of Mirth one dram, with white Wine or Fennel water.

Foreſtus uſeth the following Decoction though there be a Feaver.

Take *French Barley one handful. Liquoris ſcraped half an ounce:* Schœnanth *one dram and an half. Boyl all to a pint, for three Doſes.*

For the weaker he cauſeth one dram of Schœnanth to be boyled in Chicken Broth, which he gives the Patient to drink.

Alſo a Purgation may be convenient, ſeven or nine daies after ſhe is delivered, of the Infuſion of Rhubarb, Agarick, or Senna, or with a Laxative Broth made of opening Herbs and Roots with Senna; or with an ounce and an half of Manna diſſolved in Broth.

Chap. 23. *Of Gripings after Child-bearing.*

GRipings do ſo frequently betide Women in Child-bed, that very few Women are free from them. But they are not wont to ſeek to the Phyſitian for theſe Pains, becauſe within two or three daies they go away. But if they happen more ſharp, and of longer durance than ordinary, they are forced to ſend for the Phyſitian, who before he preſcribe any thing, muſt conſider the Cauſes.

The chief Cauſes of Gripings and Pains after Child-birth, are the plenty of Blood, its thickneſs, ſharpneſs, and narrowneſs of the Veſſels. For the Veins of the VVomb, having for nine months forborn their uſual evacuation of blood, and the blood being gathered in great quantity, and by its retention

retention becoming thick and ſharp; while it goes through the narrow paſſages, it cauſeth pain, which return by fits, as often as the womb endeavors a new expulſion of blood; which being over, they ceaſe till ſuch time as other blood doth ſeek its way forth.

Sometimes theſe gripings are cauſed by Winds, or by Cold received into the Womb, but not ſo often.

Theſe Pains are differenced from others which are wont to afflict the Belly, by their continuance, and by the diſtances of holding up, which they obſerve according to diſtant fits of the bloods iſſuing forth: and the women themſelves can eaſily diſtinguiſh theſe pains from all others.

Thick blood is known by clottering, but the thin blood by its tenuity, freſh color, or yellowiſh.

If the Pain ſpring from wind, it is more wandring, being ſometime in one part of the Belly, and ſometimes in another; neither doth it obſerve the diſtances in which the Blood iſſues. If cold Air have entred the Womb, it may be known by a relation of what hath been acted about the ſick woman.

Theſe pains are not dangerous, but for the moſt part exceeding troubleſom: therefore muſt be removed or mitigated as ſoon as may be.

The Cure of theſe Gripings ought to be directed to theſe ends; viz. That the Veſſels of the Womb be made wider, the Blood thinner, and its ſharpneſs mitigated. All which may be accompliſhed by theſe following Medicaments.

And firſt of all, let the Patients Belly be gently ſwathed that her womb may ſettle, and not be moved this way and that way, as often falls out after Child-birth, by reaſon of the ſudden evacuation.

Then give her three ounces of Oyl of ſweet Almonds new drawn, with an ounce and an half of Syrup of Violets, and two ounces of Hippocras.

Let Clyſters be caſt in of Milk and Sugar, with the Yolks of Eggs.

Or they may be made of a Decoction of Chamomel flowers, and Mugwort in Pullet Broth, adding Oyl of Lillies, and the Yolks of Egs.

Anoint her Belly with Carminating or Wind-expelling, and opening Oyls, as Oyl of Dill, Rue, Jaſmine, or with this following, which being of great efficacy, ought to be made in time convenient, and kept in the Apothecaries Shop for ſuch occaſions.

Take *Roots of round Birthwort, Orice, and Peony, of each one ounce: Cypreſs Roots half an ounce: dried Leaves of Mugwort, Feaverfew, Origanum, Calaminth, Penyroyal, Dictamnus Cretenſis, Wormwood, Savin, Rue, Bettony, and Sage, of each one handful: Flowers of Rolemary, Stechados, Lavender, Chamomel, Dill, St. Johns wort, and Elder, of each half a handful: Bay-berries, and Juniper berries, of each half an ounce: Seeds of Cummin, Rue, Piony, Carrots, and Agnus Caſtus, of each three drams: Cloves, Nutmeg, Cinnamon, Ginger, of each two drams: Storax, and Mirrh, of each one ounce. Let all being beaten and cut, be ſteeped in ſix pints of old Oyl, adding a little white Wine. And put them in an Earthen Veſſel cloſe ſtopped, the ſpace of a week; and then boyl them over hot Embers the ſpace of four or five hours; then let the Oyl be ſtrained out, and reſerved for uſe. If the foreſaid Oyl be wanting upon occaſion, let the foreſaid ſimples boyl in equal portions of Oyl and white Wine, till the white Wine be conſumed; then let the Oyl be ſtrained out.*

Alſo a Fomentation may be made of the Decoction of Mugwort, Bawm, Bay-leaves, Calaminth, Carrot ſeed, Cummin and Caraway Seeds, Flowers of Cheiri and Chamomel in Water, white Wine or Milk. Or the following Cataplaſm may be applied.

Take *three or four Onions well boyled in Water; beat them in a Morter, and put thereto Seeds of Line and Cummin beaten, of each one handful: As much Chamomel flowers: Barley Meal as much as ſhall ſuffice to make all into a Puttiſs. And if need be, add a little of the Water wherein the Onions were boyled. Spread it upon a Cloth, and apply it warm to her Navel.*

It is likewiſe profitable to apply the Skin of a weather newly flead off while it is warm, to her Belly. For this kind of warmth is very neer of kin to our Natural heat, concocts and mitigates the cauſe of the pain; alſo it hinders the Skin of the Belly from gathering into wrinkles.

Theſe following Medicines may be given inwardly:

Take *Carrot Seeds poudered one dram: white Wine three ounces: Mix them. Give it warm twice a day.* Or,

Take *Nutmeg, Annis ſeed, Cinnamon, of each one ſcruple: mix them into a Pouder to be taken in white Wine; or give one ſcruple of Oyl of Nutmegs in Broth.* Or,

Take *Date and Peach Kernels, of each half a dram: Nutmegs four ſcruples: Pouder of* Diamargaritum Calidum *two drams: Annis ſeed one dram: Cinnamon two ſcruples: Saffron ten grains: Sugar the weight of all the reſt. Make all into a moſt fine Pouder, whereof give two drams in Wine twice or thrice a day, if the pains are much.*

Foreſtus

Foreſtus gave a Decoction of Chamomel flowers in Beer, or a Decoction of Mugwort and Chamomel in Pullet Broth with good ſucceſs.

It's good preſently after ſhe is brought to bed, to give her the Broth of an old Cock, three daies together early in a morning while ſhe is faſting, with a little Cinnamon and Saffron.

The following Pouder taked preſently after the delivery of a woman, doth wonderfully preſerve her from Gripings; inſomuch that it is thought, If it be given a woman after her firſt Childing, ſhe wil never after in her following Lyings-In, be troubled with theſe Gripes.

Take *the greater Comfry Root dried one dram: Peach Kernels and Nutmeg, of each two ſcruples: Amber half a dram: Amber-greece half a ſcruple. Make all into a Pouder; of which let her take one dram in white Wine, or if ſhe be Feaveriſh, in Broth.*

For her ordinary Drink, let her uſe a Decoction of Mugwort with Cinnamon.

If the Gripings be cauſed by Chollerick and ſharp humors, they are cured much after the ſame manner that the Chollick is cured, when it proceeds from Choller. As for Example:

Take *Syrup of Violets and Borrage, of each one ounce: Mucilage of Quince ſeeds drawn out with Violet Water, half an ounce: Water of Borrage and Scorzonera, of each three ounces. Mix all, make thereof a Julep for two Doſes.* Or,

Take *Oyl of ſweet Almonds two ounces: Syrup of Violets an ounce: Borrage Water half an ounce. Mix all for a draught.*

External Medicines muſt likewiſe be uſed, ſuch as are laxative and emollient, which do likewiſe by one and the ſame labor, eaſe pain.

Oftentimes, after they are brought to bed, women are pained in their Groyn, by reaſon of their wombs being gathered together like a ball in their Groyn. It is cured by applying to their Navel a Plaiſter of Galbanum and Aſſafœtida, in the midſt whereof, ſome grains of Muſk muſt be put.

Chap. 24. *Of Acute Diſeaſes of Women in Child-bed.*

WHat we ſaid before touching the Acute Diſeaſes of women with Child, we may now repeat touching the Acute Diſeaſes of women in Child-bed; viz. That they have the ſame Eſſence, and the ſame Signs, with the like Diſeaſes in women which are not with Child, and in men. So that we ſhal refer the Reader for the Theory of theſe Diſeaſes, to their proper Chapters.

Now theſe Acute Diſeaſes are for the moſt part, continual Feavers, both Eſſential, as *Synochus putrida*, a continual Tertian, and the reſt; and alſo Symptomatical, which accompany inward Inflamations, as the Pleuriſie, Inflamation of the Lungs, Inflamation of the Liver, Phrenzy, and ſuch like.

Yet there is a peculiar ſort of Feaver, which befals almoſt al women in Child-bed, which is called by them the Feaver of their Milk, which is wont to befal them about the third or fourth day after they are brought to bed, when their Milk begins to encreaſe in their Breaſts; and it ariſeth from the reflux of the blood from the womb to the Dugs, and the motion and agitation thereof. Which kind of Feaver is reckoned among the Diary Feavers of the longeſt durance; neither needs it any Medicines, becauſe within three or four daies, viz. about the ninth after her delivery, it is finiſhed by ſwear. It is diſtinguiſhed from putrid Feavers, becauſe commonly it ſeizes the woman about the fourth day, after her being delivered, and her Dugs begin to be filled with Milk, and to be troubled with hardneſs, pain, and heat; with heat and heavineſs in her Back and Shoulders; alſo her Child-bed Purgations flow duly, which ſeldom is ſeen in putrid Feavers.

Now putrid Feavers do befal women in Child-bed from three cauſes, viz. Suppreſſion of their Child-bed Purgations or diminiſhing, by the heaping together of bad Humors during the time of their Belly-bearing, which were agitated by her Labors, or by Errors in their Diet. Some add immoderate flux of the Child-bed Purgations, which is rather a ſign of the ſecret badneſs of Humors cauſing the Feaver, but cannot be it ſelf any cauſe thereof.

In ſuppreſſion of the Child-bed Purgations, the blood and vitious humors which are collected during the whol time of her going with child, do flow back again into the greater Veins, and there putrefie, and ſometimes are carried to the Liver, Spleen, and other parts, in which they raiſe Inflamations; or if they abide in the Veins of the womb, they putrefie, and ſo cauſe a Feaver, in thoſe women which were before in perfect health.

But if (the Child-bed Purgations duly flowing) a feaver ariſe, it comes either from ſuperfluity of Choller, or from errors in Diet. Evil Humors agitated by the Labors and Pains of Travel, do eaſily inflame and putrefie, and ſtir up a feaver. Errors of Diet may happen divers waies: And firſt in point of eating in which women that lie In, are wont to be very faulty, ſtopping themſelves with

plenty

plenty and variety of Dishes, which cannot be by them digested, but causeth putrefaction in their Bodies. Another error is committed when Childing women do unadvisedly expose themselves unto the cold Air, especially while their Milk-feaver is in its vigor, which is wont to be terminated by sweating and transpiration, which is hindered by heedless admission of the cold Air, whence it comes to pass that the Feaver which of it self was void of danger, and would in a few daies have ceased, is changed into a dangerous putrid Feaver.

There is yet another frequent Cause of the Feavers of Childing Women, viz. When the After-births are not wholly cast forth, but some portion remains behind. This happens principally in the Womb-Liver, a part whereof is sometimes annexed to the Womb, and left there, doth putrefie; which makes the Child-bed fluxes to come forth greenish, stinking, and Carrion like; and if within few daies it be not separated from the womb, and excluded, it casts the sick woman into great danger of death, seeing it may mortifie the Womb.

If Clotters of Blood, or any other preternatural thing, shal remain in the Cavity of the womb after Child-bearing, it may thereby be known, because the neck of the womb remains soft and open, neither is the inner Orifice thereof shut, neither is the womb drawn upwards; and whereas, when all goes well after Child-birth, the womb is drawn upwards, and its neck and orifice are quickly shut. An Example hereof is propounded by Dr. *Harvey*, in his Treatise *de Partu*, concerning a woman who having a malignant Feaver, and being very weak miscarried; and after exclusion of a perfect Child, and uncorrupted, yet being very weak, with a creeping Pulse and cold Sweats, she was ready to give up the Ghost. He feeling her womb, perceived the Orifice thereof lax, soft, and very wide; and putting in his fingers, he drew forth a Mole as big as a Gooses Egg, having certain holes in it containing a clammy, black, and stinking putrefied matter, and the woman was soon freed from the foresaid Symptomes, and quickly recovered her health.

It happens likewise in some women that the Orifice of the womb presently after their delivery, is so shut up, that the blood contained within the womb, suddenly clottering and putrefying, causeth most sad Symptomes, and when no Art can bring it forth, present death follows. Yet Dr. *Harvey* relates in the place aforesaid, the History of a woman cured by him of this Disease. The Lips of the Water-gate were swelled, and very hot; the mouth of the womb was hard and close shut: He opened it a little with an Iron Instrument which he forcibly put in, so as it would admit an Injection made by a Syringe; and thereupon, clotted, black, and stinking blood, some pounds in quantity came away, by which means the sick woman had present ease.

The Prognostick of these Feavers herein only differs from the Prognostick of such like Feavers which happen to those that are not in a childing condition; because through the Labors of Child-birth, the strength of the Patient is more dejected; and by reason of the Child-bed Purgations suppressed there is a greater redundancy of Humors in the Veins; and in both respects the Party is in greater danger.

The Decision of that famous Question, Whether the computation of the daies of the womans sickness, ought to be made from the beginning of her Disease, or from the day in which she is delivered of her Child, makes much to cleer the Prognostick of this Disease, especially to foretel the Crisis. Which Question we shal therefore thus briefly determine: If the Birth of the Child were natural, attended with no grievous symptomes, and the Child-bed Purgations were as they should be, and the Feaver come some daies after, the account ought not to be made from the day of the Childs birth, but from the day the Feaver began, which was provoked by some other preternatural Cause, viz. Evil Humors lurking within the Body, or from some external Cause. But if the Child-birth were hard and beside the Course of Nature, and the Feaver arose after three or four daies; we must reckon from the day of the Childs birth; because then the whol order of the Body began to be overthrown, and the Humors to be disturbed, which was followed by the Feaver. So in grievous wounds of the Head especially, though the Feaver come not til after the fourth or fifth day, yet the account is wont to be made from the day of the wound received, because the Humors began then to be in a commotion, and to be disposed to cause a Feaver.

The Cure of these Feavers, differs not from the Cure of other Feavers, unless in point of those great Remedies, Blood-letting, and Purging,; in the administration whereof, there is no smal scruple, which we shal briefly endeavor to remove.

As for letting of Blood in acute Diseases of women in Child-bed, the disagreement of Authors is so great, by reason of the contrary Indications on the one side, and on the other, that we can scarcely find two of the same mind. We shal briefly in these following Theorems or Maxims, propound that Opinion which cometh neerest the Mind of the wisest Authors, and is in the course of Practice most successful.

An Acute Disease befals a Child-bed woman, either in the beginning, or in the middle, or in the end of her Lying In.

If it happen in the beginning, and the woman be plentifully purged, there must be no other evacuation

cuation of blood, than that which is directed by Nature when ſhe rightly and conveniently performs her Operations. But if the Child-bed Purgations are ſuppreſſed, or flow ſparingly, let the interior Veins be opened, and take a good quantity of blood away: becauſe at that time the Child-bed Purgations of blood, ought by the appointment of Nature to be plentiful.

If an Acute Diſeaſe happen in the middle time of her Lying In, two things are to be conſidered. The one is, Whether the Morbifick matter be contained in one particular place, or if it be diſperſed through the Veins? The ſecond, Whether the Woman hath been conveniently purged or not, in regard of quantity? If the Diſeaſe proceed from matter ſcattered abroad, as in Feavers, and the woman hath not been fully purged, the lower Veins ought to be opened: becauſe both the Morbifick Matter wil be diminiſhed, and her Natural flux wil be provoked. But if the woman have been ſufficiently purged, and the Diſeaſe get ground, and the Natural Evacuation have not been ſufficient for the Diſeaſe, the inferior Veins muſt be opened notwithſtanding; and ſo much blood muſt be taken away, that by two Evacuations that may be accompliſhed, which the Diſeaſe requires, according to the Doctrine of *Galen*, in the ninth Book of his Method, Chap. 5.

If the Feaver be very high, and great heat vex the Patient, let that be done which we ſhal preſently declare; which ought to be performed when the Diſeaſe ariſeth of Matter driven into ſome corner, and there putrefying.

In a particular Acute Diſeaſe, as the Pleuriſie, Inflamation of the Lungs, Squinzy, and the like; we muſt mark whether the Fluxion be only beginning, ſo that the Diſeaſe is only ready to ſeize upon the Patient, or is in its beginning, and very little blood be collected in the part. For then the inferior Veins are to be opened, that revulſion may be made to ſuch oppoſite parts as are at greateſt diſtance from the part affected, and by that means that prepoſterous motion of Humors may be ſtopped. But if the fluxion be already in good meaſure begun, and an Inflamation bred which proves very troubleſom, whether the woman be ſufficiently purged, or not, the ſuperior Veins are preſently to be opened right againſt the Part affected, becauſe ſuch an Evacuation draws Blood out of the Part Affected. But if the inferior Veins ſhould be opened, which are neither next the part affected, neither can evacuate therefrom, both the ſtrength of the Patient will be weakened by the evacuation, and that matter which is by Nature driven into a corner, and ſubdued, wil not be thereby diminiſhed. And ſo you muſt either draw all her blood in a manner out of her Veins, to revel the matter of the Diſeaſe from the part affected; or the woman will be killed by the Diſeaſe before ſufficient Revulſion be made. Neither need we fear, leſt by taking blood from the upper Veins, we ſhould draw the Courſe thereof from the womb, becauſe in ſuch caſes the ſuperior parts of the Body do abound with blood. And although much blood be taken away, yet are not the Veins ſo emptied, that they ſhould be forced to draw new blood from other parts. Yet for the greater Caution, it will not be unprofitable before blood be taken from the ſuperior Veins, to cauſe the Thighs to be luſtily rubbed, and preſently after to tie them with bands ſo hard as to pain the woman, which muſt abide ſo bound til the bleeding be over, and a little after they may be looſened; and now and then Cupping-Glaſſes muſt be faſtened to the ſame parts, or at leaſt they muſt be again wel rubbed. So we may procure an evacuation of the Matter offending, and yet preſerve the Natural courſe of the blood towards the Womb.

The ſame courſe is to be taken in vehement and burning Feavers: For although the matter offending be diſperſed through the Body, yet is the burning heat ſo great about the Heart and Bowels, that it cannot be ſo wel extinguiſhed by the opening of a ſmal, and far diſtant Vein, as by the opening of a neerer and greater, ſuch as is the Vein called *Baſilica*.

This Method of Curing may be obſerved not only in Child-bed women, but in other women who are taken with Acute Diſeaſes, and have their monthly Courſes upon them.

If in the end of a Womans Lying-In, an acute Diſeaſe befal her, the ſame Courſe muſt be followed as in the middle, the ſame conditions being obſerved; obſerving this for a Rule, That by how much a woman is further from the beginning of her Lying-In, by ſo much more ſafely may the uper Veins be opened; but the neerer ſhe is to the beginning, yea, even in the middle, we are to open thoſe Veins with the greater premeditation. And if the Diſeaſe be not importunate, nor the ſharpneſs thereof require ſuch a thing, and the Natural Purgation be copious, we muſt wholly abſtain. But if the Purgation be ſcanty, we muſt open the inferior Veins to ſupply that which is wanting in the Evacuation. But if the contrary ſhal happen, let us follow that Rule which we preſcribed to be followed, in the urgency of an acute Diſeaſe.

The uſe of Purging in Childing Women that are held with acute Diſeaſes, ſhal be comprehended in theſe following Maxims.

While the Child-bed Purgations do Naturally flow, a Purge is never to be adminiſtred; for it is to be feared leſt Nature be diverted from her buſineſs.

But if the Child-bed Purgations are not kindly, we muſt conſider whether their fault conſiſt in Quantity, or in Quality.

If they offend in Quantity, ſo as to be too little, ſo that the woman be purged either not at al, or not ſufficiently: After al Remedies fit to procure theſe Purgations have been given in vain, and the Morbifick matter appears digeſted, eight, ten, or twelve daies being paſt ſince ſhe was brought to bed, according to the more or leſs urgency of the Diſeaſe, ſhe may be purged gently, wholly abſtaining from al ſtronger Purgatives.

If other Purgations offend only in Quality, ſo that a white flux, or ſome other unnatural color do proceed from her, the Matter being ripe, ſhe may in the laſt part of her Lying-In, be ſafely purged.

But this muſt evermore be generally obſerved, That by how much the longer a Childing Woman is diſtant from the day of her bringing to bed, by ſo much the more ſafely ſhe may be purged, and contrarywiſe: For Experience hath taught us, That women wanting their Child-bed Purgations, if after the ſeventh or ninth day they are taken with a looſneſs, they commonly ſcape. But if the Looſneſs ſeize upon them upon the firſt daies, viz. on the ſecond, third, or fourth, for the moſt part they die.

And ſo have we finiſhed the Cures of Womens Sickneſſes; all Praiſe and Honor be given to God therefore.

The End of the Fifteenth Book.

THE

THE SIXTEENTH BOOK OF THE PRACTICE OF PHYSICK.

Of Diſeaſes of the Joynts, and Rhewmatick Pain of the whol Body.

The PREFACE.

THough all Diſeaſes of the Joynts depend upon the ſame Cauſes, differing only in reſpect of the place affected, and are wont to be cured with the ſame Medicines; yet is there ſome difference between the Sciatica, or Hip-Gout, and the pains of other Joynts, by reaſon of the ſtructure and largeneſs of thoſe parts, of which the Huckle or Hip-bone, is articulated, and made up; in reſpect of which, it requires ſome diverſity in certain Medicines: therefore it is that I have reſolved to treat of the Sciatica by it ſelf. And becauſe the Rhewmatick pain incident to the whol Body hath great Affinity with the running Gout which afflicts only the Joynts, I have thought good to annex the Explication thereof in this place; ſo that this Book will conſiſt only of three Chapters: Of which, The Firſt will treat of the Pains of the Joynts in General: The Second, of the Pains of the Huckle-bone, called Sciatica: The Third, of thoſe Rhewmatick Pains which ſeize all Parts of the Body.

Chap. I. *Of Pain in the Joynts, called* Arthritis, *or the Gout.*

ARthritis, or the Gout, is a pain in the Joynts which comes for the moſt part by fits, ſtirred up by an Influx of Humors into the ſaid Joynts.

The parts pained are, Membranes, Tendons, Nerves, and al the Nervous parts that are neer the Joynts, which are ſtretched by the Humor which flows into them, or by their ſharpneſs are pricked and twitched: but the Ligaments which ſpring out of the Bones, are void of ſence. Now the Humors which cauſe the Gout, do ſeldom flow into the very Cavities of the Joynts, and that only in an old Gout, and where the Cavities are wider than ordinary, as it happens in an old Sciatica, in which ſomtimes the Thigh-bone fals out of its place, the Ligaments and other parts binding the Joynts together, being looſened, and then the Cavity of the Joynt is filled with a ſnotty kind of flegm, as we ſee in *Hippocrates*, Apor. 59. Sect. 6.

It is wont here to be demanded, why the Humors flowing into Nervous and Membranous Parts, and distending and twitching them, they should not cause a Convulsion. We answer, that the Parts affected in the Gout are chiefly Membranes, which being no instruments of motion, they cannot cause a Convulsion, though never so much stretched or twitched. And although Tendons and Nerves ordained for motion should be likewise pained, yet do they not cause a Convulsion, because to make a Convulsion the Muscles must be drawn back to their Head, and that retraction ought to be made by a contraction of the nerves which are inserted into them; but when they are gone out from the muscles, or are come unto their extremity, though they be distended, yet can they not contract the Muscles.

Authors do commonly make four sorts of Gouts, according to the diversity of the Joynts affected; *Chiragra*, or the Hand-Gout, when the Pain is in the Hands; *Sciatica* and *Ischias* when it is in the *Hip*. *Gonagra* when it is in the knees; and *Podagra* or the Foot-Gout when it is in the Feet. And the Pains of the other Joynts go under the common name of *Arthritis*: though Authors have imposed proper names upon every one of them drawn from the Parts affected; calling the Pain in the Joynts of the Jaw-bone *Syagonagram*; in the Neck *Trachelagram*, in the Back-bone *Rachyagram*; in the Shoulder *Homagram*; in the Elbow *Pechyagram*. But these names have not been entertained by Practitioners. Therefore its sufficient to refer the Pains of those Parts to the general name of *Arthritis*.

There are besides, other differences of the Gout; as that some Gouts are General, occupying all or most of the Joynts of the Body; others particular, residing only in some one Joynt: some are ingrafted and Hæreditary from the Parents, others are adventitious caused by external Causes and Errors in Diet,

Now the Humours which breed the Gout, may have their Course not only into the Joynts but sometimes also into other Parts of the Body as the head, Teeth, Sides, yea and the internal Parts as the Liver and Spleen and stir up divers Pains in these parts, which Pains are not to be termed the Gout, though they are Caused by the same matter which Causes the Gout.

Again all Pains seated in the Joynts merit not the name of Gouts, for sometimes there are Swellings in the Joynts especially in the knees, from which Pains arise, occasioned by thick, flegmatick, and Melancholick humors, which Pains continue very long but are not to be reckoned among the Gouts, but have a distinct nature of their own. Which difference will more clearly appear by the different Characters of the Gout, which we shall describe in our Diagnosis thereof, that is in the Art of discerning the Gout from other Diseases by certain signes and tokens.

The next and immediate Cause of the Gout is a serous or wheyish Humor, either by its quantity stretching those sensible Parts which are about the Joynts, or by its sharpness twitching the same. That this matter is wheyish is hereby known, because thick Humors could not so easily flow into the Joynts, and they would make a more Visible swelling in the Joynts, which is wont to be very little, yea in the beginning there appears no Swelling at all, though there be a most bitter Pain; add that the Tumor which is in the Gout, never comes to suppuration or ripens of matter, which often happens in other thicker Humors, if they have never so little Blood mingled with them, But in the Gout the Blood is drawn to the Joynts, as appeares by the Inflammation of the Parts; yet there never happens any suppuration or growing to a mattery Head, because Serosities or wheyish Humors rule the roast, and they hinder Suppuration.

But this wheyish Humor is seldom pure and sincere, but hath other Humors or their serosities and thinner Parts Joyned with it; whereupon great variety arises, according to the greater or lesser acrimony of the Humors mixed with the wheyish Humor, according to which the Pain is more or less; the Tumors is sometimes notably great and sometimes not visible; some are of a red colour, others yellow or white; in some the malady is soon ended, in others it continues long; sometimes a mighty and fervent heat possesses the Parts, otherwhiles little or none is discerned; sometimes hot things laid on do good, other whiles they do hurt and cold things help. Howbeit, it cannot be denied but that the wheyish Humor may of it self have more or less acrimony, according as it hath more or less Salt mixed with it: for seeing the serous or wheyish Humor, is wont to dissolve and drink up those heterogeneous salts, which are multiplied in the Body by reason of the multiplicity of meats we use (whence it is that all the serum or wheyish Humor in us is salt) according as this Humor is more or less salt, and according as the salts mixed therewith have more or less sharpness, more or less Pain is wont to be caused.

And because in the Gout, as in every Fluxion, four things are considered, the matter flowing, the Part sending that matter, the Part receiving the same, and the waies by which the Fluxion is made; seeing we have spoke of the matter flowing, we are now to speak of the other four.

Touching the Part sending the Humor there is disagreement among Physitians. *Fernelius* would have all the material cause of the Gout (which he takes to be thin and flegmatick) to flow from the Head; not from the brain it self, (whose excrements are either voided by the nostrills, or flowing

through

through the palate, are driven to the mouth, throat, weſand or ſtomach) but from the external Parts of the Head, ſituate without the ſcull. For ſeeing very many veines derived from the external Jugulars do run thither, he ſaies they do there lay down their thin and wheyiſh excrements, and ſeeing the Skin of the Head is thick and compact, and the Humors cannot eaſily breath through the ſame, in proceſs of time they grow there to a quantity, and as he conceives from thence they flow through the ſurface of the Body, under the Skin, into the Joynts. But others do conceive, that the Head is the fountain of the flood of Gouty Humors, but they conceive thoſe Humors flow from the inner Parts of the Head viz. From the Brain. Finally others there be that give ſentence, that theſe faulty Humors do flow from the bowells conteined in the lower belly, namely from the Liver, Splen, Womb and others, and alſo from the whol Body, through the Veins and Arteries into the Joynts. All which Opinions in my Judgment are Partly true and Partly falſe. We Judg they are true in that, they ſay the Humors which cauſe the Gout do flow from the Head by the inward and outward Parts, and from the bowells and the whol Body by the Veins and Arteries: and falſe we ſay they are, becauſe they ſay that only the internal Parts of the Head, or only the external, or only the inferior Bowells do furniſh the Gouty Humor. For ſeeing the whol Body is paſſable to and fro by Humors, all Parts of the Body may ſend their ſuperfluities to the Joynts, if they be diſpoſed to receive them. Now that diſpoſition of the Joynts which makes them fit to receive a Fluxion of Humors (that I may take this occaſion to open the condition of a receiving Part) is their weakneſs, either native from the Parents, or ariſing from other Preternatural Cauſes, which we ſhall ſpeak of by and by. Seeing therefore it is eſtabliſhed by Phyſitians as a moſt ſure maxim, that the ſtronger Parts of the Body empty their excrements into the weaker, we may avouch that all the Parts afore aid may diſcharge their excrements upon the Joynts, if they being weakned, cannot ſufficiently reſiſt the ſame. And that the Opinions aforeſaid may be ſeverally refuted: *Fernelius* indeed doth clearly enough demonſtrate, that Humors collected without the Scul, do flow upon the ſurface of the body, and under the Skin creep into the Joynts, ſeeing ſometimes the Pain begins in the Head, goes thence into the Neck, thence to the ſhoulders, and at length into the Joints. But that Humors do never flow from other places and Parts into the Joynts, he no waies proves, neither is any man able to prove after him. In like manner, they which ſay that ſuch Fluxions come only from the brain, ſeem to contend againſt ſenſe; For ſo much as thoſe Parts which compaſs the Joints about, do receive Veins and arteries, by which blood is brought unto them to nouriſh them withall, why may not alſo the wheyiſh Humor collected in the greater veſſells be carried unto the ſame Parts by the ſame waies? *Galen* hath taught this preciſely, in his Comments upon the Aphor. 10. Sect. 3 where he ſhews, that in the knobbs and Pains of the Joynts the profound Parts of the body are purged, the vicious Humors being driven from the principal Parts of the body into the Circumference. This is ſeen by the Feaver which is oftentimes raiſed in the beginning of the Gout; for it is cauſed by wheyiſh excrements conteined in the Veins, put into a commotion and working, when nature ſees her ſelf to expell the ſame, and ſeeing ſhe cannot drive it all forth, ſhe diſcharges the ſame into the weaker and ignobler Parts. Alſo the third Opinion, which *Sennertus* defends, is Void of reaſon, and is herein faulty, becauſe it denies that Gouty defluxions do ever come from the brain. For ſeeing all Parts of the Body both inward and outward, do receive Fluxions from the Brain, how can the Joynts be free from them? And if Humors cauſing a Catarrh do often flow by the Veins and arteries, whence Rhewmatick Feavers daily ariſe; and the Humors conteined in the Veins and Arteries (as *Sennertus* himſelf affirms) do eaſily flow unto the Joynts, it is a clear demonſtration, that a Fluxion is made from the brain into the Joynts. Alſo plenty ful Piſſing declares that Humors flow from the brain through the Veins, when the ſaid Piſſing is cauſed by ſome commotion of the brain by reaſon of long abiding in the Sun, or in a very cold air; for then the wheyiſh Humors conteined in the brain are agitated by thoſe Procatarctick Cauſes, and driven into the Veins and Arteries, through which they flow unto the Kidney's and the Bladder, and thence comes ſo plentiful making of water.

The next and immediate Internal Cauſe of the Gout hath hitherto bin ſufficiently expounded; now let us proceed to the external and Procatarctick Cauſes or occaſions thereof: which we may for clearneſs ſake diſtinguiſh into three Tribes or Rankes, The firſt Tribe is of them which afford matter convenient to breed the Gout. The ſecond is of thoſe which do weaken and looſen the Joynts. The third is of them which promote the flux of the Morbifick Humor into the Joints.

To the firſt Tribe are referred al things which encreaſe raw and wheyiſh Humors, or any bad Humors whatſoever: as meates of groſs ſubſtance hard to be digeſted, and ſuch as afford many excrements, frequent Gluttony and Drunkenneſs; immoderate Carnal Embracements; which is the reaſon that Gout is called the Daughter of *Bacchus* and *Venus*; Idleneſs and a ſedentary life, and intermiſſion of ſuch exercites as men have been formerly accuſtomed unto; long ſleep and unſeaſonable watching; intermiſſion of ſuch naturall and artificial Evacuations as men have been accuſtomed unto; fear, Sadneſs and continual Care,

To

To the ſecond Tribe are referred vehement motion and Labour; frequent uſe of carnall conjunction, eſpecially of that which is celebrated ſtanding; refrigeration and humectation of the Joints; frequent Bathing; Contuſion, Luxation and Fracture of the Joints.

To the third Tribe are referred, Cold air ſqueezing out the Humors, and Heat melting, diſſolving and agitating the ſaid Humors and opening the ſecret Paſſages; meats of a fervent and tart nature which attenuate the Humors; thin and ſtrong Wine; Immoderate exercife, unbridled Lechery, vehement anger and other immoderate paſſions of the Mind.

The Signs do either foretell the Gout at Hand, or declare the ſame to be preſent.

Signes of the Gout at Hand: a Sence in the Joints more exquiſite and quick than ordinary ſo that the lighteſt thing will hurt them; as for example the hard fitting of a new Shoe, Long walking, a ſmal blow, or a light hitting againſt a ſtone, or ſome other hard thing. A Feaver commonly uſhers in the Gout, which is caused by wheyiſh Humors and others contained in the Veins and arteries, being diſturbed and agitated, whiles nature endeavours to expell them to thoſe leſs noble Parts. But the neerer approach of the Gout, and its beginning as it were, is ſignified by a ſtupidity, and ſence of crawling Pimmes in the Joynts, and a kind of unuſual Heat felt in them.

The Gout is known to be preſent by an actual pain tormenting the Joynts, which commonly is attended with redneſs and ſwelling; which if it appear not at the very firſt; yet is it ſeen preſently after. The pain doth uſually ſeize upon the great Toe, eſpecially on the left foot, and oftentimes it ſpreads it ſelf from thence into other Joynts. The Feaver which comes before the pain, doth ſometimes continue; and ſometimes it goes not before, but comes together with the pain.

The Signs of the Cauſes are likewiſe to be conſidered: For although the Humor cauſing the Gout be principally wheyiſh, yet is it needful to know what other Humors are mixed therewith, that we may fit out Medicines thereunto.

And in the firſt place, Choller abounding with the wheyiſh Humor, is known by a vehement and cutting pain, a ſmal ſwelling, a reddiſh or paliſh color, great heat, and the Feaver intenſe and perſevering in its ſtate or height; thin Urine, yellow and reddiſh; cold things help, and hot things hurt.

Signs of flegm abounding with the Whey, are, a ſoftiſh and ſomwhat looſe ſwelling of the parts affected, which if a man preſs with his finger, there remains a pit; the pain is not ſo great, Urines are thick and troubled; Cold things hurt and hot things help; little or no heat is felt: the color is white, little differing from the Natural color of the part.

Signs of Melancholly abounding are, an obſcure color of the part like Lead, deep pain, a thin and watry Urine, a wearineſs of the whol Body, and the temper thereof inclining to Melancholly.

As for the Prognoſtick. The Gout is no dangerous Diſeaſe, but very troubleſom by the vehemency of pain, and of a very long continuance; ſo that for the moſt part it accompanies a Man during his life, to his old Age; yea, and it doth cauſe ſome to live long, becauſe Nature at certain ſeaſons drives unto the Joynts vitious Humors, which might cauſe other Diſeaſes; and by ſo doing frees the nobler parts of the Body from bad Humors.

Yet doth it often fall out in weak bodies, or ſuch as are decayed with Age, that when Nature can no longer expel ſuch Humors as are collected in the inner parts of the Body, deadly Diſeaſes do thereupon ariſe; as moſt ſharp Feavers, Inflamations of the Bowels, Apoplexies, Convulſion, Phrenzies, Difficulty of Breathing, and inability to breath, unleſs ſitting upright, Pantings of the Heart, and other moſt grievous Infirmities.

Although a Diſpoſition rooted in the Bowels tending to breed Goutiſh Humors, and Natural weakneſs of the Joynts cannot be perfectly taken away; yet may the Invaſions of the Gout be very much retarded, and kept off; ſo that ſome only by abſtaining from Wine, others by uſual Purges frequently repeated, have kept themſelves for many yeers free from the Aſſaults of this Diſeaſe.

Hippocrates in the Second Book of Predictions, affirms, That many Gouty perſons may be cured, diſtinguiſhing them from ſuch as cannot be cured, in theſe words: *Touching the Gout, this I ſay; All that are aged, or have ſtony knots about their Joynts, or live miſerably, being coſtive, cannot be cured by Art of Man that I know of. Such are well cured by a Dyſentery, when it ſeizes upon them; and by other fluxions of Humors to the inferior parts. But he that is yong, and hath no ſtony knots about his Joynts, and lives accurately, being inclined to labor, and having a belly well inclined to ſtool; this man having a skilful Phyſitian may be cured.*

An hereditary Gout may well be accounted incurable.

If the Veins of Gouty perſons do ſwel with black blood, their Gout leaves them; out of *Avicenna*. Becauſe the Humors which were wont to flow into the Joynts, are derived to the external parts of the Skin.

If the Gout, being accuſtomed to return at certain ſeaſons, ſhal not return, it portends grievous, and oftentimes deadly Diſeaſes, unleſs the Morbifick matter by a diligent prevention ſhal be taken away.

way. For if through weakneſs of Nature, the matter which is gathered together within, ſhall not be expelled, it breeds the greateſt and moſt dangerous Diſeaſes imaginable.

Whoſoever they bee that have the Gout within the ſpace of forty daies the Inflammation is allaied, and they are freed. *Hippocrates* in the 49. Aphoriſm of the fifth Book or Section. For in ſuch Parts as have little Natural heat, the matter offending requires a long time before it can be diſcuſt. Howbeit this period of *Hippocrates* is not certain and perpetual; for ſome are healed ſooner, and ſome later; which depends upon the quantity, thickneſs, or rebellion of the Morbifick cauſes; the ſtrength or weakneſs of the Parts affected and the obedience of the Patients in Point of keeping the Diet, and uſing the Medicaments appointed for them.

The Cure of all Gouts conſiſts herein, viz. That the flux of Humors into the Joints may be ſtaied, that which allready is come in and abides in the Joints may be removed, and that the Pain may in the mean while (if it be ſharp) be abated; all which may be performed by the following Medicaments.

And in the firſt place, Letting of Blood will be very convenient, if there be no want of Blood in the Patient, and if flegm do not abound; becauſe the Blood is agitated by the motion of the Humors flowing into the Joints, and does as it were boil, and is by Pain drawn into the Part affected: wherefore it is neceſſary to draw the ſame back, into that Part of the Body which is oppoſite to the Part affected: and therefore if the right Arm be Diſeaſed, a Vein muſt be opened in the left; if the right Foot be Pained a Vein muſt be opened in the right Arm; and if the left Foot in the left Arm. And Blood is to be taken away at the firſt beginning of the Diſeaſe, and as much as needs muſt be taken at one time, if the Patients ſtength will bear it: if not, it muſt be done at ſeverall times, till the plenitude of Blood be ſufficiently diminiſhed.

One thing we muſt allwaies remember, that copious Blood-letting in ſuch as can bear it eaſily, does exceedingly ſhorten the Diſeaſe, if it be done at the beginning of the Diſeaſe, at leaſt by Piece-meal, drawing now a little and then a little.

Alſo Purging muſt be uſed at the beginning of the Diſeaſe, as ſoon as may be: for ſo both that Humor which is influx and is ready to flow, will be drawn from the way to the Joints and be brought into the Gutts. But in this purgation two things are worthy of obſervation, being frequently noted by *Solenander* a famous practitioner.

The firſt is, that this Purgation be not made by ſome mild lenitive Medicaments, whereby the Humors are rather ſtirred than Evacuated, and are precipitated into the Joints, whereupon a more greivous Pain and ſwelling is wont to follow ſuch purges; but with ſome ſtrong purgative, which may force out the ſtirred Humor and turn the cauſe thereof from the Joints. The other is, that the Medicaments being given, the Joints above the Knees and elbows, be Plaſtered with ſome defenſative, by which the Humor which is put in motion by the Medicine may be intercepted, ſo that it may not too much nor too forcibly fall down into the Joints.

To which intent let an Ointment be made of Bole, Pome-Granate Rinds, Balauſtians, Roots of Biſtort and Tormentill, red Roſes with the white of an Egg, and Vinegar; which being ſpread upon ſnipps of cloath as broad as ones Hand and indifferent long, let them be wrapped about the Parts aforeſaid. If theſe ſimples be not to be had at preſent, wet them only with Vinegar and water and let them lie on at leaſt an whol day. If the Fluxion be vehement, uſe a liniment of Bole, Dragons Blood, the white of an Egg and Oyl of Roſes made with Oyl of unripe olives: or at leaſt uſe it without Oyl adding a ſmall quantity of the Oyl aforeſaid or of *Unguentum Comitiſſæ*, leaſt growing dry and hard it cauſe Pain.

And for to procure ſuch a purgation as we have ſpoken of, let the skilful Phyſitian preſcribe a Medicament fitted to the Nature of the Patient and ſuch Humors as are redundant in his Body: or ſome of thoſe Speciſick Purgations which we ſhall propound in our Doctrine of Preſervation from the Gout.

Vomiting is likewiſe profitable in this Caſe, for ſuch as are eaſie to vomit; becauſe it brings out the evil Humors by a ſhorter way, and ſo there is no ſuch fear leaſt they ſhould ruſh into the Part affected. But gentle Vomits are to be uſed, which do only evacuate thoſe Parts which are near the ſtomach. For if they be vehement, and draw Humors out of the Veins, they may precipitate the ſaid Humors unto the Joynts. Then after vomitings, purgation muſt be procured downwards; yea and if one purgation will not ſerve turn, it muſt be repeated.

After ſufficient Purgation, it will be very good to procure ſweat; for ſo the wheyiſh matter will be diſcuſſed by the habit of the Body. But, ſeeing when the Gout gives its firſt Onſet, there happens a kind of boiling and working of the Blood, and commonly there is a Feaver, hot ſudoroſicks will not be convenient, but only ſuch as are temperate; amongſt which *Sennertus* commends Harts-Horn, either crude, or prepared without burning, either alone, or with Carduus Water; as likewiſe *Antimonium Diaphoreticum*. In an old Gout without a Feaver, a Decoction of China Salſa Parilla or Saſſafras may be given, qualified with coolling Herbs, as Cichory, Endive, Sorrel and Borrage.

Borrage. Or after the Sweat is wiped off, it may ſuffice to give the Patient Chicken-Broth, altered with the Herbs aforeſaid.

Martinus Rulandus did uſe this following Sweating Medicine with happy ſucceſs:

Take *Tops of Centaury two handfuls: Aſarum Roots two ounces: Boyl them in ten pints of Water to five pints, and ſtrain the Liquor. Give the Patient eight ounces of this Liquor hot, in the morning ſome daies together; and let him ſweat upon it.*

But *Foreſtus* commends the Roots of the greater Burdock; becauſe it cuts, diſcuſſeth, and provokes both Sweat and Urine. And he reports that a certain Gouty perſon that kept his bed, and could not ſtir a Limb, drank hot Beer in which the great Burdock Root had been boyled; after the drinking whereof, when the Phyſitians could do him no good with all their Medicines, he piſſ'd a great deal of white Matter like Milk, and was freed from his pains.

Hercules Saxonia puts a great many Loaves hot out of the Oven round about the Patients Body, by which means Sweat is plentifully procured, and the pains removed.

Alſo a Decoction of Elder, Bay-leaves, Sage, Roſemary, and ſuch like Herbs wil do much good, the Patient receiving the vapor of this Decoction in a ſweating Tub, which wil make the ſweat to come luſtily.

Alſo the Waters of Natural hot Baths do provoke ſweat, and do readily diſcuſs the Matter contained in the Joynts. And therefore when the ſick are not able to go unto them, their Water is wont to be brought unto them and heated in a Caldron for them to bath in. *Eraſtus* in his 15. Counſel, prefers this above al others, for eaſing the pains, but he boyls ſo much Salt in the Water, as gives it an evidently brackiſh taſt.

In the beginning of the Fluxion of Gouty Humors, in the ſpaces free from Purgations, ſuch things muſt be given as ſtop the Flux, which have been propounded by me in the Cure of an hot Catarrh; eſpecially Juleps of Waters, or Decoctions and Syrups which do cool and thicken.

Yea, and the truth is, We are ſometimes compelled to uſe Narcotick or Stupefactive Medicaments; for they both ſtop the flux of Humors, and they mitigate the rage of the pains. Of theſe ſort of Medicines new Venice Treacle is moſt convenient, which may often be repeated without danger from half a dram to a dram. Unto which may profitably be added, a little Bole-Armoniack to ſtop the flux of Humors. Howbeit, inſtead of Treacle, Laudanum Opiatum, and other Narcoticks, may conveniently be ſubſtituted.

After due Evacuations have been celebrated, and other things given inwardly which reſpect the antecedent Cauſe, we muſt proceed unto local Applications, ſuch as mitigate the pain, and diſcuſs the contingent Cauſe: Which are not preſently to be uſed before the univerſal Remedies aforeſaid have been firſt applied; for otherwiſe they are wont to do more hurt than good. For either the Matter which Nature intended to drive into the Joynts, is driven back into the inner parts of the Body, whereby grievous Symptomes are raiſed; or it is forced into the Joynts, and the pain is exaſperated; or the part is effeminated, and made lax, and ſo the fluxion is encreated.

Which Cautions being commonly neglected, and external things untimely and heedleſly applyed; the Patients receive commonly more hurt than good thereby. And thoſe external Medicines do either reſpect the pain alone, or the Cauſe likewiſe of the pain, viz. The Humor which hath took its courſe into the part, and cauſed both the pain and Swelling.

Such things as mitigate pain, are very neceſſary in this caſe, becauſe the extremity thereof weakens the Patient, and draws the Humors to the parts affected. Furthermore, by the uſe of Anodines, the parts are relaxed, and the Humor which before did flow into the more deep parts about the Joynt, is diffuſed to the more ambient parts and external. Whence it is that the pains of the Gout are moſt vehement before the part ſwels; but after it is ſwollen they are mitigated. Now there are many Anodine, or Pain-charming Medicaments propounded by Authors to be applied to thoſe parts which are troubled with the Gout. But the chief are theſe which follow:

Luke-warm Milk applied to the part affected, by wetting Linnen Cloaths therein, and laying them on, doth aſſwage the pain; as alſo if the part be ſprinkled and bedewed therewith, eſpecially when it comes freſh from the Dug; which *Amatus Luſitanus* doth very much commend, in the 41. Cure of his ſixt Century, in theſe words: *One mightily tormented with the Gout, cauſed a ſhee Goat to be brought into his Chamber, and her Milk to be milked out upon his pained Joynt; by which he perceived the pains evidently leſſened. And there is good reaſon for it: For Milk newly milked, doth aſſwage, mitigate, and leſſen pains. It is a Medicine commonly uſed by the Great Turk: by you who ſeek Profit and Honor, highly to be priged.*

Of Milk likewiſe is made the Cataplaſm of white Bread Crums boyled therein, adding the Yolks of Eggs, and a little Saffron.

Alſo the Leaves of Henbane, or Violets, are boyled in Milk, or in Vinegar and Water, and profitably laid upon the part affected.

Alſo a Cataplaſm is made of the Pap of Marſh-mallow Roots mingled with Milk.

Alſo

Alſo a Cataplaſm is made of the Pulp of Caſſia alone, or mingled with Oyl of Roſes, or the following Ingredients:

Take *Crums of white Bread boyled in Milk, half a pound: Pulp of Caſſia three ounces. Make them into a Pultiß.* Or,

Take *the Pulp of Caſſia four ounces: new Venice Treacle half an ounce: Barley and Oaten meal, of each three ounces: the Crum of white Bread four ounces: Cows Milk two or three pints. Boyl all into the form of a Pultiß, which apply warm to the parts pained. If you ſhall add half an ounce, or an ounce of Vitriol calcined and finely poudered, you will make it far more excellent.*

In the beginning of the Gout, which ſeizes only the great Toe, lay on this following:

Take *two whites of Eggs: a little Salt beaten to Pouder: a few drops of Vinegar of Roſes. Mix all, and apply it upon Tow, or courſe Flax to the part affected.*

Other Cataplaſms are likewiſe made of greateſt efficacy, compounded on this manner:

Take *Water of white Mullein, and of Fern Root and Branch, of each half a pint: calcined Vitriol exquiſitely poudered, one ounce and an half: Meal four ounces: Saffron two drams. Make all into a Pultiß.*

Take *Mallows, leaves and Roots, as much as you pleaſe, Boyl them in a new Earthen Veſſel, with equal parts of Wine and Vinegar, till a third part be conſumed; then ad as much courſe Rye Bran as will make it into a Pultiß; which being well wrought together and ſpread upon a Linnen Cloth, let it be applied to the parts pained, as hot as the Patient can endure it.* Solenander doth exceedingly commend this Pultiſs.

Foreſtus relates that a Cataplaſm made of Duck-weed and Chamomel Flowers boyled in Milk, adding a little Barley Meal, wil do miracles.

Montagnana affirms this following to be moſt excellent in extream pains.

Take *the Yolks of ten Eggs; beat them in a Frying Pan with half a pound of Oyl of Roſes. Let them boyl gently till they grow thick, adding two drams of Saffron; and lay it on hot.*

In the beginning of the Flux, many lay on a Cataplaſm of Salt and Soot, wrought into a Body with whites of Eggs.

Or of two ounces of Chamomel Flowers: red Roſe Leaves one ounce and an half: Mullein flowers half an ounce: Pouder them, and boyl them in ſweet Milk to the ſtiffneſs of a Pultiſs, adding three or four Yolks of Egs.

Or of Barley Meal, and Bean Meal, of each one handful: Flowers of Chamomel and Roſes, of each half a handful: Mullein Water, and Willow Water, or Plantane Water and Wine, of each as much as ſhal ſuffice. Incorporate all together in form of a Pulciſs.

Alſo divers Fomentations may be made to be applied to the place affected, after this manner:

Take *of the Leaves of Mullein ſix pounds: red Wine a Quart. Beat the Leaves and ſteep them in the Wine for three daies. Diſtil them, and bathe and foment the parts affected therewith warm, with Linnen Cloaths dipped therein.* Or,

Take *Flowers of Mullein as much as you pleaſe; fill a glaſs Bottle therewith, and ſtop the mouth, and ſet it in the Sun; for ſo they will turn to Liquor, which being applied to the part affected, with Linnen, mitigates the pain.*

Sal ſaturni, that is, Salt of Lead diſſolved in ſubtil Spirit of Wine, eaſeth pains wonderfully.

Frog-ſpawn-Water ſtilled in *May*, applied to the parts pained, doth wonderfully aſſwage the pains, and tempers the Inflamation and redneſs of the part. Theſe following Simples may profitably be mingled therewith.

Take *Frog-ſpawn-Water, Water of Tapſus Barbatus, or of Mullein, and of Fern, of each one pound and an half. Infuſe therein Lapis tutiæ, and Litharge of Gold, of each two ounces: Vitriol calcined, and Allum, of each one ounce. Foment the pained Parts herewith warm.*

An Infuſion of Litharge made in Vinegar, the Vinegar being a little evaporated, till it grow ſweetiſh, doth much good to an hot Gout.

Oyl of Calves Feet is excellent to allay the pains of the Gout, and it is thus prepared:

Let the Calves Feet be beaten, and the Bones broken, then boyl them all to a Pap. Take the Oyl which ſwims on the top of the Water, mingle it with Aqua vitæ, and Salt, and therewith bath or anoint the parts pained.

Alſo Oyls and Fats are by many uſed. But ſeeing the Inflamation which befals thoſe Members which are troubled with the Gout, doth draw very neer the Nature of an Eryſipelas, or red fiery ſwelling, oftentimes thoſe fat things may do more hurt than good; for by ſtopping the pores, they may keep in the Humor, and ſo encreaſe the pain.

According as *Sennertus* makes relation of a man troubled with the Gout, who found great good by very new Sheeps-milk Cheeſe laid upon the pained part: for as ſoon as the Cheeſe being heated by

the pained part, began to melt and ſhed its Butter, the pains were encreaſed. Yet in ſome Bodies, Oyl of Roſes, and ſuch like, may do good, eſpecially mixed with other Medicaments; becauſe according to the different Natures of Mens Bodies, ſeveral things do good to ſeveral perſons. And therefore we muſt be furniſhed with a mighty company of Medicaments, that upon al occaſions we may have change; becauſe there is ſcarce any one ſo effectual, as to do good to al that are troubled. Take theſe following for an Example or Pattern.

Take *Crum of the whiteſt Manchet half a pound: Boyl it in new Milk to the conſiſtence of a Pultiſs; then ad of the Mucilage of Marſh-mallow ſeeds two ounces: Meal of Line ſeed and Fenugreek ſeed, of each two drams: Flowers of Chamomel, and of Melilot poudered, of each one ounce: Saffron one dram: Oyl of Roſes one ounce:* Mix *all into a Cataplaſm.*

Or to the Cataplaſm of white Bread Crum before deſcribed, Oyl of Roſes may be added.

Alſo Liniments and Oyntments are wont to be made to mitigate pain.

Take *Yolks of Eggs two or three: diſſolve them with Oyl of Roſes, or Violets, or Wine, and apply them luke-warm.*

Balſamum Saturni prepared with Oyl of Roſes or Violets, allaits pain moſt effectually.

Take *Ceruſs two ounces; diſſolve it in Endive Water and a little Vinegar make thereof a Liquid Oyntment.*

Of the ſaid Ceruſs is made a Plaiſter of great efficacy which may be laid on in the beginning of the Diſeaſe, even whiles the Tumor and Inflamation is preſent. Its compoſition is thus.

Take *Common Oyl one pound, Wine a pint and an half: Boyl them till half the Wine be conſumed. Then ad a pound of Ceruſs finely Poudered and two drams of Camphire. Boyl them to the Conſiſtence of an Emplaiſter. When there is great Inflamation, Vinegar muſt be uſed inſtead of Wine. Spread this plaiſter upon Linnen Cloathes that it may the more commodiouſly be wrapped about the Parts affected.*

A Living whelp laid to the pained Part, doth very much aſſwage the pain.

When the pain rages extreamly we may have recourſe to Narcoticks; howbeit they muſt not lie long upon the Part, becauſe they are adverſe unto the naturall heat and to the nerves.

Take *Henbane Leaves two Handfuls: Nightſhade and Houſleek of each one Handful. Garden Poppy-Head one pugil, Mandrak Roots one ounce. Chamomel Flowers and violet Flowers of each one pugil, make a Decoction in Water or Milk with which let the Part be bathed.*

Beat the reſidue after the Liquor is ſtrained out, and add of the Flower of Lin-Seed one ounce and an half. Wheat meal two ounces: Oyl of chamomel three ounces: and make a Pultis. Or,

Take *Spirit of Wine ſomwhat Yellow by infuſion of Saffron four ounces: camphire one ſcruple: Boyl them a little, then diſſolve therein, one dram of Opium: With that Liquor let the pained Part be bathed: It is a ſafe and moſt effectual Medicine.*

Green Tobacco Leaves bearen and laid on do eaſe the Gout, and are ſaid to be of a ſtupefactive Nature.

As for the Efficient Cauſe of the pain, to the Humor flowing into the Part repelling Medicaments muſt be oppoſed; and to that which is allready in, deriving and reſolving Medicaments muſt be applied.

Howbeit repelling Medicines are diſallowed in this Caſe, eſpecially alone and without the commixture of other things. For if they ſhal wholly ſtop the influx of the matter into the Parts affected, it is to be Feared leaſt they retiring to the inward Parts, ſhould cauſe dangerous diſeaſes, unleſs they happen to be tranſlated to ſome other Joynt. Again the Humor which hath already flowed into the Part, is the more driven inward, by which means, the Pains become more violent. But yet, if in the beginning of the Gout there be a great afflux of Humors eſpecially hot ones, which threatens ſharp Pains to follow, it will be convenient in ſome meaſure to repreſs the ſame, by applying repellers, not alone, but mixed with ſuch things as mitigate Pain, after univerſal and ſufficient Evacuations. For then ſuch things as do overmuch relax, do help forward the afflux of Humors. And therefore, we may ad unto the foreſaid cataplaſmes and other remedies Plantane, Lettice, Purſlane, Houſleek and ſuch like as alſo a little Vineger. As for example.

Take *Barley Meal three ounces: Boyl it in Water and Vineger, add two Yolks of Eggs, Saffron twenty grains: Make all into a Pultis.* Or,

Take *Red Roſes an Handful: Barley and Fenugreek Meal of each one ounce: Red Sanders one dram and an half: Chamomel Flowers one pugil: when they are Boyled and beaten, add two Yolks of Eggs, Vineger four ounces: Oyl of Roſes as much as ſhall ſuffice; make all into a Pultis.*

Among remedies which derive the Humor from the Part affected are Horſe-Leeches, after ſufficient Evacuation applied thereunto: for then they do much good, eſpecially when the Veins in the Part affected, do ſeem diſtended and ſwelling with Blood.

Now reſolving Medicaments are wont to be uſed in divers forms as of Waters, Oyls, Unguents, Balſoms, Fomentations, Fumigations, Cataplaſmes, Plaiſters and the like, compounded after this manner.

Take

Take *Vitriol white and green, of each one ounce: camphire two drams: aqua vitæ and white Wine, of each one pint: Mix them and apply them with cloathes dipped in them.* Or,

Slake Lime in Urine, purifie the Liquor and foment the Pained place therewith It is likewise good if it be done with Vineger and Lime.

Martinus Rulandus in the Centuries of his Cures, doth mightily cry up his Gout-quelling Water, but never describes the same. But Libavius, Petreus and others suppose it was thus made.

Take *Fountain Water a Pint, Aqua fortis half an ounce: Sublimate one dram: Boyl them a quarter of an hour. Wet linnen cloaths in this Liquor and apply them luke-warm to the Part affected.*

Quercetanus in his *Pharmacopœia* propounds these following,

Take *Pickle of salt, and the Urin of a Boy of each Equal Parts. Still them and Wet Linnen Cloathes in the Water and apply to the place affected, often changing the cloathes for fresh ones.*

Take *Green Elder Leaves and flowers of each one pound: beat them and steep them in Aqua vitæ for two or three daies: still them in a Glass or Copper vessel, till they be dry.*

Take *Spirit of Wine rectified two pounds: of the finest honey one pound. Distill them in* Balneo Vaporoso: *So you shall still two Liquors; The first is watrish; The second much stronger, and Sulphureous, which you shall keep by it self. To the remaining materialls add an ounce and an half of whol Oriental saffron: Venice turpentine two ounces: Castoreum six drams: Tartar calcined till it be white, half a pound; dissolved salt an ounce: Phlegm of vitriol not separate from its spirit four ounces, Lie made of Vinetree-Ashes two pound: steep them together twenty four hours. Then still them til they become dry: keep the Liquor which comes likewise by it self. To the Dreggs remaining pour on the former Water which you kept: Steep them and still them. Lastly put all the distilled Waters together and distill them in* Balneo Vaporoso.

Quercetanus saies, That this Water is of wondrous efficacy, and that it was communicated unto him by a certain most famous German, as a special guift, affirming, that this was the very Water of *Rulandus*. And he averred that he had seen the rare effects thereof in easing the Pains of the Gout, if Linnen cloathes being moderately warmed and dipped therein, be applied to the Part affected,

The same *Quercetanus* in his Councel touching the Gout, doth brag that he reserves to himself his Gout-quelling Water, as a Master-peice for such an old soldier as himself to boast of which he saies is made of plain Fountaine Water, wherein he doth divers times quench certain Metallick substances, which are wont to be taken inwardly when rightly prepared: whose spirits being impressed into the foresaid Water, do contribute thereunto the power of penetrating unto the Roots of the Disease, and of truly resolving the Tartarous, stony matters, with the salts, which are combined in the Joynts, from whence such intollerable Pains do arise.

Peradventure this that follows it not unlike it, nor a whit inferior in Virtue.

Take *Unslaked Lime four pound: Slak it in River-water as much as you please, and let it stand in a Wine Cellar three daies, that the Salt may be better extracted out of the Chalk or Lime. Afterward let them Boyl a little and strain the Liquor through an Hippocras Bag. In twenty pints; of the strained Liquor, quench seven or nine times: first Plates of steel red hot; & then Plates of Copper red hot; and thirdly to the quantity of ten ounces of Vitriol calcined till it be white; fourthly Antimony melted in a Crucible to half a pound; fifthly Litharge or Ceruse heated in a Crucible, half a pound; white Precipitate once washed and no more one ounce and an half. Brass burnt and finely Poudered, half an ounce: After the quenching of these minerals, let the water stand still in a Wine Cellar, the space of ten daies. Afterward, Boyl it a little, and strain it through an Hippocras Bag. In this Water being hot, doubled cloathes must de dipt and frequently applied to the Gouty Part.*

Among Fomentations easie to make, that is commended, which is made of Salt Ammoniack seven times sublimed, and fidly dissolved in Wine or Water. or of the Urin of a young man in good health, Boyled till half be consumed and laid on with Raggs;

Solenander Writes in his 24. Counsel, Section the 4. That a certain Gouty old man was wont to make himself this Medicine. When the swelling and Pain was great and the place red, he took Salt, the Urin of a Boy and Vinegar. In these being mingled together, he Wet a Linnen cloath and squeesed it and laid it on, this he did divers times and so the Pain was much abated,

As we said before, that Anodine or Pain-quelling Oyls did little good in the Gout, the same must here be said of resolving Oyls, because they close the pores of the skin and so hinder the freedom of transpiration and encrease the heat, neither can they by reason of their clammy substance peirce into the innermost Parts of the Joint, so to temper and resolve the Salt, sharp and Tartarous Humors which lurk in them, Yet if the foresaid Oyls shall be Distilled in a Retort, they will become very fit for this use, because they will be very searching and no waies clammy. Among these the most excellent are Oyl of Cheiry, Saint Johns Wort and of the Yolks of Eggs, which being mixed together,

and ſtilled by a retort, are very profitable to eaſe Pain and to diſcuſs the Cauſe thereof.

Alſo *Mathiolus* his Oyl of Scorpions ſtilled after the manner aforeſaid, is moſt excellent.

Oyl of Wax is likewiſe effectual to the ſame purpoſe.

But Oyl of Mans Bones made after the ſame manner that Oyl of Tiles is made, is preferred before all others, and commended not only by the Chymiſts, but alſo by the Dogmatical Doctors, as *Crato*, *Platerus*, and others. The manner of making it is this: Mans Bones freſh and unbroken are broken and burnt, and caſt into old Oyl: afterward, they being full of the Oyl, are beaten and caſt into a Retort, and ſo by the force of the fire, an Oyl is drawn out.

Where Mans Bones are not to be had, the Bones of other Animals may ſerve the turn.

This following wil alſo be very good:

Take *Maſtich, Frankinſence, Mirrh, Ammoniacum, Opopanax, Bdellium, Mummy, of each two ounces: Vitriol one pound: Honey two pound: Tartar one ounce and an half: Spanish Wine four pound. Diſtil out of all an Oyl, with which let the pained part be anointed with a feather.*

To eaſe the pain, and to reſolve the Matter of the Gout, a Liquor made of Snails is likewiſe commended, which is thus compounded:

Put an handful of Snails into an Hippocras Bag, and caſt upon them an handful of common Salt upon the Salt, a handful of Dwarf-Elder, or Danewort ſeeds very finely poudered: And ſo one after another of Snails, Salt, and Seeds, until you have made four or five Lay's of every one in particular. Let the Bag hang in a moiſt Celler; and after a few daies there will drop a ſlippery Liquor and fat; which ſet in the Sun for four daies, and then ſmear the place affected therewith.

A reſolving Unguent may be made after this manner:

Take *Chamepitys, common Wormwood, and Roſemary tops, of each a handful: Chamomile flowers, Melilot flowers, and Roſe Leaves, of each one pugil: Oyl and Wine, of each half a pound. Let them boyl till the Wine be conſumed: the Liquor being ſtrained, add thereto as much Wax as ſhall ſuffice to make it into an Oyntment. Let the Part affected be anointed herewith warm; and in twenty four hours the Part doth ſwell, and the pain ceaſeth.*

Alſo divers Pultiſſes reſolving and eaſing pain, may be made. The principal are theſe:

Take *Wheaten Bran a pound: Salt one ounce: Soap as much as ſhall ſuffice. Boyl all to a Cataplaſm, or Pultiß.* Or,

Take *Bean Meal half a pound: Boyl it in a ſufficient quantity of Wine, adding thereto a little Aqua vitæ and Butter. Make it into a Pultiß.* Or

The Leaves of Dwarf-Elder, or Tree-Elder being beaten, may be applied; or they may be fryed with Butter in a Frying-Pan like a Pan-cake.

Briony Root bruiſed with Aqua vitæ, is alſo very effectual.

Alſo ſome commend Aron, Cuckoo-pintle, or Prieſts-pintle Roots, being mingled with Cow-dung.

This following is commended by *Solenander*, becauſe it reſolves without any great heating, eaſeth the pain, and ſtrengthens the Joynts. And it may be ſafely applied after the beginning of the fit, about the fift day of the Diſeaſe.

Take *Pouder of red Roſes two ounces: Maſtich one ounce: Camphire half a dram: Barley meal half a pound. Boyl all in white Wine, evermore ſtirring the ſame, till it come to be thick, and lay it on warm.*

Emplaſters are likwiſe wont to be of great uſe in this Caſe. The chief are theſe which follow.

Take Frankincenſe, Mummy, Colophony, of each one ounce: Maſtich, Mirrh, white Coral, *each half an ounce: Mans Fat ſix drams: Gum Ammoniacum, and Bdellium diſſolved in Vinegar, of each three Drams: Turpentine half an ounce: Oyl of Foxes, and of Roſes, of each as much as ſhall ſuffice to make all into a Plaiſter.*

Take *Florentine Orice Roots, and Hermodactils poudered, of each ſix drams:* Emplaſtrum Oxycroceum, & de Mucilaginibus, *of each two ounces: Rozin of Pine one ounce. Melt them together, adding Oyl of worms as much as ſhall ſuffice, and make thereof a Plaiſter.*

Emplaſtrum Diapalma, or *Diacalciteos*, is very much uſed, both alone, or with Camphire added thereunto, after this manner:

Take *of the Rowl of Diapalma Plaiſter half a pound: Camphire two drams. Mix them together, and apply them to the parts affected.*

Or in Form of a Cerecloth.

Take *of the Rowl of Diacalciteos Plaiſter half a pound: Plaiſter of Sulphur an ounce: Storax and Benzoin, of each half an ounce: Tacamahacca two ounces: Oyl of St. Johns wort, of Worms, of each an ounce: Liquid Storax an ounce and an half: New Wax, as much as ſhall ſuffice. Melt all together, and dip your cloth therein, twice or thrice, make it ſmooth and dry, and uſe it for your uſe.*

But yet the ſame Plaiſter mingled with theſe things following, ought to be reckoned amongſt the moſt excellent Medicines for the Gout.

Take *Diacalciteos Plaiſter diſſolved in harſh red Wine, and boyled till the Wine be conſumed, one pound: Myrtles, red Roſes, Maſtich, Tartar of red Wine poudered, of each two drams: Chamepitys, or Ground-pine, and right ſweet Chamomel poudered, of each half a dram. Make of all a Plaiſter, to be applied after the ſwelling is much abated.*

And at laſt, in a very old and ſetled pain, eſpecially from a cold Cauſe, ſome lay Veſicatories to raiſe Bliſters upon the parts affected. *Sennertus* makes mention of them, but ſo as that Anodines be mixed with them. But the moſt wiſe *Varandæus*, my Maſter, did with happy ſucceſs uſe the common Veſicatory Plaiſter, which is kept in our Shops, ſimply, and by it ſelf without any mixture; wherewith he cured a great and rebellious Swelling upon the Knee, when other Phyſitians had in vain uſed many Purgations, a Sudorofick Diet-Drink, and many External Medicines.

In the uſe of all the fore-recited Medicaments, this one thing is diligently to be noted, That we muſt take our hints from ſuch things as we find do help or harm the Patient: foraſmuch as the Natures of Men are divers, their Complexions divers, and divers kinds of Excrements are bred in ſeveral Men, whence it is that the ſame Diſeaſes do extreamly differ in ſeveral perſons: therefore what profits one man, doth another no good at all; which often comes to paſs in curing the Gout. And for this Cauſe, every Practitioner muſt have an abundance of Medicines, that when one hath been applied in vain, he may uſe another and another, making alwaies choyce of ſuch as a rational Method ſhall moſt approve of.

When the Gout becomes ſtony and knotty, it is extreamly hard to cure, eſpecially if it be of long ſtanding. But new knobs may with Emollient and Reſolving Foments, Unguents, aud Plaiſters, be diſſolved. The moſt Specifick or Appropriate, are theſe which follow.

Galen exceedingly commends a Plaiſter compounded of old ſtrong Cheeſe, made into a Plaiſter with the Decoction of a poudered Sows peſtle or Leg.

Others boyl poudered Sows Legs, till they come to a ſlimy ſubſtance or Gelly. Afterwards they mingle therewith two parts of old Cheeſe, pouder of Water-creſſes one part, and ſo make a Plaiſter thereof. Or,

Take *Juyce of Tobacco three ounces: yellow Wax two ounces: Roſin of the Line-tree an ounce and an half: Turpentine one ounce: Oyl of Chamomel as much as ſhall ſuffice. Make all into a ſoft Cerate or Plaiſter.* Or,

Take *of thoſe Eaſtern Berries, which the French call* Coques de Levant, *and Mirrh, of each half a pound. Pouder them, and mix them together with ſtrong Vinegar into the form of a Cataplaſm.*

Gum Ammoniacum diſſolved in Vinegar, doth powerfully ſoften.

Rulandus anoints thoſe hard Swellings in the morning, at noon, and in the Evening with Oyl or Balſom of Sulphur hot, and then he laies on a Plaiſter hot, of *Emplaſtrum Diaſulphuris.*

But this Plaiſter following, is your rare Plaiſter, becauſe beſides eaſing the pain, it draws the gritty, ſtnoy ſubſtance out of the Joynts likewiſe.

Take *Roman Vitriol one pound: Roch Allum half a pound: Salt four ounces. Calcine all theſe together in a Crucible or Earthen pot, letting it to ſteem ſo long till the ſpirits ſhall begin to go away. Which when you perceive by their ſmel to riſe, leave preſently your calcining, and let all cool, and then pouder them.*

Take *of this Pouder, and Barley Meal, of each a like quantity; mingle them with Wine Lees to the form of a Pultiß, which ſpread upon a rag as thick as a knife, and apply to the place affected. When it is dried, diſſolve it again with Lees of Wine, and apply it again, until in the firſt place the pain be diſcuſſed; and in the next place, until all the ſtony ſubſtances be conſumed out of the knobbed and knotted Joynts. In the mean while it fals out often that the Skin will break, which need not affright us; for either afterwards the Ulcers cloſe of their own accord, or at leaſt by laying Wax upon them in manner of a Plaiſter, they are cloſed up, the Joynts having regained their motion with activity.*

Finally, If the Gout be very exceeding old, and perfectly knotted, by the preceding Cure a mitigation of pain is to be hoped, but the ſtony ſubſtances wil hardly give way; therefore with a gentle Cauſtick the Skin is to be opened, and then the ſtones are to be taken away with a drawing Plaiſter of Gums.

The Cure of the Gout when preſent, is performed by the Remedies aforeſaid. But becauſe this Diſeaſe is wont to return by fits, eſpecially in the Spring and Fall, we muſt now ſhew the way to prevent the ſame. Which Prevention ought to aim at the hindering of any Gouty Matter, like to fall into the Joynts, from gathering in the Body; or if any be collected, that it may be carried away.

And

And finally that the Joynts may not be ſo diſpoſed to receive the Humor which flows into them. The collection of Matter will be hindred, by an excellent Diet, and by Medicines rectifying the diſtempers of the Bowels. The Matter collected will be carried away by Evacuating Medicaments. And the Joynts will not ſo eaſily receive if they be fortified with corroborating Medicaments.

As for the Matter of Diet, although in this Caſe it be of very great, yea greateſt moment, yet the Nature of this work will not give me leave to deſcribe the ſame.

I ſhall only ſpeak of the Patients Drink ſo as to ſay, that Wine is extream hurtful to all Goury Perſons, and many have recovered only by abſtaining therefrom. Yet if the Patient in regard of ſome other Infirmity cannot wholly abſtain from Wine, let him drink weak Wine, or well allaied with Water. *Hollerius* inſtead of Wine commends thin Metheglin viz. Of forty or forty eight Parts of Water to one of Honey. Yet this ſuites not with ſuch as abound with bitter-choller and thoſe that are dry and thirſty.

This following Diet drink ſuits all Natures, and hath done much good to very many perſons.

Take *Salſa parilla Roots two ounces: Liquoriſh one ounce: Cinnamon and Annis Seeds half an ounce: Make all into a very fine Pouder. Of this Pouder mix one ſpoonful with ſo much ſmal Beer or ale as the Patient is wont to drink at a Meal. Brew them together out of one Pot into another three or four times. Then ſtrain the Liquor for the Patients ordinary drink. Doing the like for every Meal.*

And as for Evacuations, Bleeding muſt be firſt practiſed eſpecially in the ſpring and fall, in ſuch as abound with Blood and whoſe Blood is wont to work and ferment or be very hot.

But Purgation is not only to be uſed ſpring and fall, but four times in a year, yea and every month in every Cacochimical Body that is which abounds much with evil Humors. To which purpoſe many forms of Purgations are handed to and fro, of a ſpecial property for this Diſeaſe. Theſe that follow are the chief, which are ſo to be uſed by the diſcreet Phyſitian, as that he muſt make many changes, both in reſpect of the materials and the Doſe, according to the various Conſtitutions of the Patients,

Take *Senna cleanſed, Turbith, Hermodactiles and Pouder of a Mans Skull that hath never been in the Earth of each one dram: Diagridium half a dram: Make all into a Pouder of which give one dram: at a time, in Groundpine Water, or in Broth.* Or,

Take *Salſa parilla one ounce: Senna ſix drams: Turbith, Hermodactiles, Jalap, Mechoacan of each half an ounce: Agarick Trochiſcated two drams: Diagridium and Cinnamon of each half a dram: Make all into a Pouder. Steep a dram thereof in white Wine all night, in the Morning let the Patient drink Pouder and Wine.*

Electuarium Caryocoſtinum is by Petrus Bagerus exceedingly commended, and is approved by al Practitioners, and it is deſcribed in the *London Diſpenſatory* in Folio 111. and in that of *Bauderon.* It is given to half an ounce: But in hot Conſtitutions it may do harm.

Rhaſis Commends his Pils ſo far as to ſay, that they can make ſuch as are fain to Ride, to go on Foot again. Thus they are made.

Take *Aloes of the beſt half an ounce: Red Roſes two ſcruples: Hermodactiles white and purged from their outmoſt Skin or ſhel, one dram and an half: Diagridium one dram: With Water of Ground-Pine and honey of Roſes make all into a Maſs of Pils. the doſe one dram.*

Theſe alſo are good which follow.

Take *Aloes, Hermodactiles of each half an ounce: Groundpine, or Chamepitys two drams: Chamædris or Germander, Stœchados of each one dram: Saint Johns Wort Seeds, half a dram: With Veniice Turpentine make a Maſs of Pils, which becauſe they Purge little may be given the oftener.*

Alſo Evacuation by Vomit is very good for Prevention if the Patient can bear it well; which is declared by Altaharavius a famous Phyſitian in theſe words. *A Vomit is better than a purg to Root out ſuch ill Humors of a groſs Nature as are below the Knee even to the Foot; as in the Knee-Gout, Sciatica and ſuch like.*

Now Vomiting may be procured every Month two daies together becauſe the ſecond day drives out the Reliques of the firſt. And ſome have obſerved that vomiting is more ſucceſsful than ordinary when is in a Sign that chews the Cud, ſuch as the Bul & the Goat or Capricorn. It is good to Vomit the Moon after Supper the Patient having eaten divers Meats, Fat, ſharp of Salt or Spice &c. and others in great Quantity, and afterward rubbing his ſtomach and putting his finger into his throat. And if that will not do, he muſt take a Vomit, eſpecially of Aſarum and Broom Boiled together and the Decoction drunk, which are otherwiſe good in the Cure of the Gout,

That Evacuation likewiſe which is made by ſweat, Purges the Blood from wheyiſh excrements, and draws out the antecedent Cauſe of the Gout. To this Purpoſe a Sudorifick Diet drink may be ordered for the Patient Spring and Fall, of a Decoction of Salſaparilla, China, Saſſafras, or of Guaiacum, as the temper of the Patient ſhall adviſe,

But

But ſome late Phyſitians have brought into uſe, a Decoction which carrieth away the Matter meerly by inviſible Tranſpiration through the Pores of the Skin, without any ſweat at all, which hath done a world of good. Its Compoſition and uſe is thus:

Take *Sarſaparilla, Crude Antimony, Nut-ſhels, of each ſix ounces: China Root one ounce: A little Braſil Wood: Water nine pints: Boyl them to four pints and an half. Let the Antimony and Nutſhels be poudered and tied in a cloth, which muſt be ſo hanged in the pot that it touch not the bottom. Let him take a good draught of the ſtrained Liquor, on mornings three hours before dinner; in the afternoon four hours after dinner, and three hours after ſupper, for fifteen daies together. Bleeding and univerſal Purgation being premiſed.*

Of the Grounds remaining in the Strainer with like quantity of Water, may be made a Diet-Drink for ordinary uſe inſtead of Beer. Boyl the Water half away, and ad Coriander and Liquoris as much as ſhall ſuffice to give it a good ſmack.

To prevent the Gout, and to root the ſame out of the Bowels, ſome Practitioners commend the uſe of Gout-quellers given an whol yeer together, whereby they avouch many have been perfectly cured. Among many of their Receipts, this is the Principal.

Take *Salſaparilla four ounces: St. Johns-wort ſeeds, Groundpine, and Germander Leaves, of each three ounces: round Birthwort ſix drams: Angelica three drams: Cinnamon three drams: Cloves four ſcruples: Saffron two ſcruples. Let all be finely poudered and incorporated with Spaniſh Honey clarified as much as ſhall ſuffice. Make all into an Electuary, which let the Patient uſe a yeer together, taking every day in the Spring, Fall, and Winter, one dram and an half; in the Summer only one dram. Let the Patient forbear to take it in the Dog-daies. Let him wholly abſtain from Wine and Lechery.*

Peradventure the Decoction of Germander may be of the Nature of the Gout-quelling Medicaments our Practitioners talk of; which was therefore commended to the Emperor *Charls* the Fifth exceedingly by the Phyſitians of *Genoa*; and *Solenander* doth teſtifie, That very many who drank this Medicine threeſcore daies together, were perfectly cured. The Compoſition of this Decoction is thus:

Take *Germander gathered when it flowers, and well preſerved, one handful: Ripe Wine not very ſtrong, nor very ſmal, three pints: Boyl them in a double veſſel five hours. Let the Patient take a draught of the ſtrained Wine, and compoſe himſelf to ſweat. This is to be done after the Patient hath been purged.*

And it is here to be noted touching thoſe hot Medicines, that they are not only unprofitable for hot Conſtitutions, but they cauſe ſuch Reſolutions of Humors or Joynts, or other inconveniences, as can never be cured, and therefore they muſt be given with great Caution.

Peradventure this following Electuary may be uſed with more ſafety and ſucceſs, which doth purge the Body by little and little from all ſuperfluities without heating the ſame.

Take *Senna half an ounce: Turbith, Hermodactils, of each ſix drams: Lignum Guajacum, Saſſaphras, and Salſaparilla, of each half an ounce: China Roots one ounce and an half: Nephritick Wood two ounces: the three Sanders, of each one ounce: Annis Seed two drams: Honey very well clarified fourteen ounces: make all into an Electuary. The Doſe is one dram every day in the whol yeer, except the Dog-daies.*

Among the common People, ſome hold it for a great Preſervative from the Gout, to ſwallow three Cloves of Garlick whol every morning for a month together. For they heat and ſtrengthen the Stomach, without heating the Liver, or other Bowels; for they are voided forth with the Excrements whol, but boyled and wrapped in clammy Flegm, which they bring from the Stomach and Guts.

In the Gout proceeding of Chollerick Humors, Waters of Medicinal Wels, which are Acid, Vitriolate, and cooling, ſuch as that of *Tunbridg* in *Kent*, Blackbois not far from *Lewes* in *Suſſex*, one in the Pariſh of *Sandherſt* in *Kent*, do very much good. So that by the uſe of ſuch Waters, ſome perſons have been for a long time freed from the Gout.

To the ſame purpoſe *Hippocrates* commends in his Book of Diſeaſes, the uſe of Aſſes Milk, which Experience ſhews hath done good to many Gouty perſons.

And in a word, All things which are good againſt an hot diſtemper of the Liver, and to ſtrengthen that Bowel, wil be good in this Caſe, as they are deſcribed before in the Cure of the hot diſtemper of the Liver.

But if a wheyiſh Humor flowing from the Brain be Cauſe of this Diſeaſe, as moſt commonly falls out, the greateſt care muſt be had of the Brain; viz. That its diſtemper may be corrected, and that the Humors bred therein may be derived and diſcuſſed. To which intents; Iſſues, Veſicatories, Medicines to be drawn up into the Noſe, Maſticatories, Pouders, Spiced Caps, will be very ſerviceable; and other Remedies propounded in the Cure of Diſeaſes of the Brain.

The

The laſt Point of Prevention, is to ſtrengthen the Joynts that they may not ſo eaſily receive the Humor flowing in. Yet it is to be noted, that ſtrengthening Medicaments, are not only but hurtfull alſo, unleſs the antecedent Cauſe, and the Humor ready to flow into the carefully removed by the foreſaid Medicaments. Otherwiſe thoſe ſtrengtheners, either able to hinder the influx of the Humors into the Joynt: or if they do hinder the ſame, the retire to the more noble Parts of the Body and raiſe much worſe Diſeaſes.

Among the principal ſtrengtheners the preſſings of Grapes viz. their Seeds &c. are reckoned diſcuſs the reliques of the Morbifick Matter by their actual heat, and by their aſtringency, much ſtrengthen the Parts. *Duretus* upon *Hollerius* doth thus commend them. *But the uſe of Grape Kernells doth exceedingly profit in the time of Vintage. If the preſſings of the brought out of the Wine Preſs into a Barn and being covered with Blankets do there grow hot them let the Patient thruſt his Feet, Legs, Thighs, Arms, or his whol Body. I have* (ſaith he) *an hundred times, there is no better thing under the Cope of Heaven.*

And *Solenander* in his Counſel 21. Sect. 4. Doth give the foreſaid Medicine this commendation. *But among the beſt and ſafeſt remedies, (which do alſo ſtrengthen the Parts affected, and do the innate heat,) is this to be reckoned, and diligently once every yeer (for oftner it cannot practiced, viz. That in Vintage time, the Feet and hands affected, be whelmed in preſſ Grapes hot from the preſs, or made hot with warm Wine, every Morning for fifteen daies. could name a worthy Perſonage, to whom I have communicated this Medicament, and receiv him a very conſiderable Gratuity; therefore who could not go at all, and by this Medicine and Bleſſing, he was reſtored. And by how much the Grapes are riper, by ſo much the more goo the preſſings do in this Caſe.*

Sulphureous and Nitrous bathes ſuch as the Balerucane in *France*, do not only diſcuſs the of the Gout, by provoking ſweat, as was ſaid before; but alſo by ſtrengthning the Joynts, much conduce to the Prevention thereof; as alſo being uſed by way of Embrocation, that Head being wet therewith or it being pumped upon the Heat, Cotton wet therein be at laſt and made faſt. The mire of the ſaid Bathes applied to the weak Parts, doth likewiſe ſtre them.

Where the benefit of Natural bathes cannot be had, the Feet may be waſhed and other Part mented, with a Decoction of nerve Herbs, ſome aſtringents being added thereto, as Balaust Mirtill. Cypreſs Nutts, Allum, and Salt, with Iron-quenched Water and red Wine.

Alſo Oyntments are commended, being frequently uſed, made after this manner.

Take *Oyl of Mirtles or Roſes two ounces: Salt two drams: Mix them and make a L ment.* Or,

Take *Oyl of unripe Olives Oyl of Maſtick one ounce: Salt fried in a pan two drams: Armoniack three drams: Dragons Blood, Hipociſtis, Frankinſence, Maſtich, of each dram and an half: Let each Particular be firſt finely Poudered by it ſelf, then with the Oyl them into the form of an Oyntment.*

The Plaiſter called Emplaſtrum Diapalma is very good to ſtrengthen the Joynts: and its in all Gouts whatever the Humor be which offends. and *Solenander* writes in Counſel 25. S that he hath known ſome, who had wont to be often troubled with the Gout, and by the con uſe of this Plaiſter, with frequent purges taken at certain diſtances of time, they were freed from Pains for five years together. And this Plaiſter doth not daub and foul, doth not raiſe Itch or ples, nor is it troubleſome by its ſmel or any other evil quality. And it is fitted to the ſhape member. When the Feet are troubled ſhoes are made of thin Leather which being ſmeared w plaiſter are put upon the Feet. The like ſpread with this Plaſter may be applied to the Wri other Parts. But the truth is, the ſame Plaſter boyled in Wine and mingled with Pouder of M Roſes, Tartar, Chamepitis or Groundpine and Chamomel, ſo as we deſcribed before in the Cu is much better for the ſame uſes. And we have ſeen Gouty perſons, who contiually wore Plaiſter upon their Feet and Wriſts, with moſt happy ſucceſs.

Chap. 2. *Of the Hip-Gout, or* Sciatica.

THe Pain of the Sciatica or Hip-Gout, doth herein cheifly differ from other ſorts of the because in thoſe the Pain poſſeſſes only the Joints; but this, it is not only in the Hip, holds the top of the Buttock alſo, the Loins and the *Os ſacrum*, and reaches into the Thig Leg even to the very Foot. Which comes to paſs by reaſon of Nerves ariſing out of the Loi *Os ſacrum*, which are carried unto the Hip, and are from thence derived and ſpread unto the Th Leg and Feet.

The Cauſe of this Pain is the ſame which was propounded in other ſorts of the Gout.

It

The knowledg of this Diſeaſe is taken from the Part affected: from whence it alſo took its name, for the Pain doth eſpecially affect the Region or Part of the Huckle-bone, for it hath this property, that no Humor, nor Inflamation or change of the color appears as is wont to be in other ſigns of the Gout: becauſe the flowing Humors do inſinuate themſelves into more profound or deep Parts, & into ſuch as are larger, and covered with much fleſh, and they are not diffuſed into the ſurface of the body nor the very Skin as in other Gouts.

This peculiar Prediction belongs to the Hip-Gout, that if it continue long it puts the Hip out of Joynt: for a wheyiſh and flegmatick Humor doth inſinuate it ſelf into the Hollow of the Joynt which is very large, and if it bide there long, its thinner Part is diſcuſſed, the thicker remaining, which becomes ſnotty and ſoftens and looſens the bands which knit together the bones which belong unto that Joynt; ſo that the Bone of the Hip falls from its Socker, whence follows Luxation, and thereupon limping or halting, and a Conſumption of the whol Thigh; becauſe the Bone being ſlipt out of its ſeat, doth preſs upon the Muſcles, Veins and Arteries, by which means motion is hindered and Blood and ſpirits cannot conveniently flow into the inferior Parts. The foreſaid Doctrine is confirmed by two Aphoriſmes of *Hippocrates*, viz. The 59. of the 6. Section. Such whoſe Hip after long pains, ſlips out of Joynt and in again, they have Snotty excrements in that Part. and the 60. Aphoriſm of the ſame Section; Such as being troubled with long Pains of the Sciatica, come to have their Hip diſjointed, their Thigh Conſumes and they halt, except they be burnt.

The Cure of the Hip-Pain hath many things common with the other ſorts of Gouts; yet in many things it differs becauſe of the ſtructure and Largneſs of the Joynt; therefore it is to be diſtinguiſhed from the former Gouts, and to be handled in this Chapter by it ſelf.

And in the firſt place a Cliſter or Gentle Purgative being premiſed, the Vein of the Arme on the ſame ſide muſt be opened for revulſion ſake: afterward for derivation ſake, the Vena poplitis muſt be opened about the Knee, or that Vein near the outward Anckle-bone, which is called the Sciatica Vein, becauſe of the great good which the opening therefore is wont to do in this Diſeaſe; which alone being opened doth often heal this Diſeaſe.

It is wont to be opened on the Leg of the ſame ſide the Gout is on, yet hath it done much good being opened on the contrary ſide, and hath been ſeen ſuddenly to take the Pain quite away.

Galen *in his Book of Blood-letting, Section* 18. *I remember* (ſaith he) *that I have Cured divers troubled with the Sciatica in one day, opening a Vein in their Thighs; viz. the Cauſe being, not from cold, but fullneſs of thoſe Veins which are in the Hip; ſo that a Vein opened about the Ham or Knee, is more Proper and commodious in ſuch caſes, than in the Ankles.*

Alſo Blood drawn out of the Hemorrhoids by Leeches, doth wonderfully help thoſe that are Hip-Gouty, becauſe the Blood conteined in the Veins of the Hip is thereby drawn out: for there is the greateſt Content & fellow-feeling that can be between theſe Parts by means of their Veins.

Strong Purgations are proper in this caſe; for lighter purges do rather precipitate the Humors into the Parts affected. And therefore the Arthritical Pouders are moſt convenient, Carpocoſtinum, Pils of Hermodactils and ſuch like. The Chimiſts do ſometimes ſucceſſfully uſe Mercurial and Antimonial purges in ſtrong Bodies.

Mercurius dulcis wich Scammony or other purgatives given frequently, doth powerfully eradicate the Humor cauſing this Hip-Gout.

Many preferr Vomiting Medicaments before purgatives, becauſe they Evacuate the Humors by a place more remote from the Part affected. *Rondeletius* prefers Afarum before other Vomitories.

After ſufficient Purgation, we muſt proceed to local Medicaments. And as for repelling Medicines, they are no waies convenient, becauſe it is to be feared leaſt the Humors be ſo much the more fixed into the Part affected; but at the beginning Reſolving things muſt be applied; firſt milder and leſs hot, leaſt they ſhould attract the Humors more into the Part affected; after ſuch as are more vehement, in this manner.

Take *Briony Roots two pounds: Dwarf-Elder Roots one pound: Juniper Berries half a pound: Leaves of Groundpine, Mint, Marjarom, Sage, Roſemary, flowers of Chamomel and Melilot of each four handfuls: Make a Decoction for a bath to ſit in, which let the Patient ſit in twice a day for two or three daies together. At the beginning the Decoction may be made of Water alone afterward in Water and White Wine.*

With the ſame or like Decoction hot, may the Part Pained be fomented frequently.

Alſo Bags may be prepared of Salt, Millet and Bran fried with rich Canary in a frying Pan and laid on Warm.

Or, Bags very effectual may be made only of Juniper Berries beaten and fried in a Pan as aforeſaid.

Alſo anointings will be convenient of Oyl of Chamomel, Oyl of Dill, Orice, Nard and Rue;

which by relaxing the exterior Parts, will draw the motion of the Humors to themwards, by which means the inner parts wil be leſs affected.

Oyl of Scorpions of *Mathiolus* anointed on, wil be very effectual.

To reſolve more powerfully, The *Aqua Balſami Guidonis*, being anointed on, wil be exceeding good.

Oyntment of Marſh-mallows doth looſen the external parts, and doth gently diſcuſs the Morbifick Matter; therefore towards the beginning, the whol Thigh may be anointed therewith, and the Legg to the Foot by a flaming fire.

In the Progreſs of the Diſeaſe, this following being hotter and ſtronger, may be uſed.

Take *Oyl of Worms, Tiles, Turpentine, of each two ounces: Oyl of Foxes one ounce: Gum Ammoniack, and Sagapenum diſſolved in Aqua vitæ, of each ſix drams: Fat Caſtoreum three drams: Euphorbium two drams: Wax as much as ſhall ſuffice. Make all into an Oyntment.*

Spaniſh Soap, or Caſtle Soap diſſolved in Spirit of Wine, is moſt excellent, ſmeared on by the fires ſide.

Oyl of Tiles or Bricks alone, being anointed hot, after ſix Cupping-Glaſſes have been faſtened upon the pained place, and about the ſame; and after the anointing, the place being covered with very hot Linnen Cloaths, hath in one day cured a very ſtubborn Sciatica.

Lacuna in his Comments upon *Dioſcorides*, doth commend the following Oyntment as wonderful:

Take *the Juyce of the Roots and Leaves of Dwarf-Elder, or Danewort, of each one ounce: Oyl of Chamomel ſix ounces: Boyl them to the conſumption of the Juyces. Then add Wax as much as ſhall ſuffice, and a few drops of Vinegar to make the vertue pierce. Make of all an Oyntment.*

A Cataplaſm of the Herb Iberis, wild Creſſes, or Sciatica Creſſes, is much commended by Authors, becauſe this Herb is very effectual in the Cure of this Diſeaſe. It may be made after this manner:

Take *of wild Creſſes four handfuls: boyl them in Wine, and beat them, adding thereto Meal of Lupines, Vetches, and of Beans, of each three drams: Pouder of dried Rue, Chamomel flowers, and Coſtus Root, of each one dram: Oyl of Turpentine half an ounce: Oyl of Earth-worms as much as ſhal ſuffice. Make all into a Cataplaſm.*

Platerus witneſſeth that it hath done much good, when green Sage hath been put on an hollow hot Tile, and often ſtirred leſt it burn; and thus being half boyled and ſprinkled with Vinegar, and a Cloth put about the Tile, and the ſame put under the Hips, the vapor thereof hath been received into the part affected.

Alſo a Loaf very hot out of the Oven, cut in the middle, ſprinkled with Aqua vitæ, and laid on, wil be very helpful.

To draw the Morbifick Matter outwards, a Cupping-Glaſs is good, four times faſtened upon the higheſt part of the pained place, which appertains to *Os ſacrum*, without Scarrification.

To the ſame intent, eight or ten Leeches faſtened to the part affected do much help, which are allowed and approved of by *Paulus* and *Aurelianus*. And *Zacutus Luſitanus* ſaies that in ten hours ſpace he therewith took away the pain of the Sciatica, which no other Remedies could help.

Plaiſters are likewiſe frequently uſed, and in this Caſe may do much. But in the uſe of them, this is alwaies to be obſerved, as it hath been ſaid generally of the reſt; that at the firſt mild ones be applied, which if they do little good, we may ariſe to more vehement. Which order we will likewiſe obſerve in our ſetting down the making of ſuch Plaiſters.

Take *Pitch uſed in Ships, two ounces: Brimſtone poudered very fine three drams: Maſtich two drams: Turpentine half an ounce. Mix them, and make of all a Plaiſter, adding as much Wax as ſhall be requiſite.*

Take *Ship-Pitch two ounces: Gum-Ammoniack, Bdellium diſſolved in Vinegar, of each one ounce: Live Brimſtone, Turbith, Hermodactils, of each half an ounce: Caſtoreum one dram: Turpentine a little: Wax as much as ſhall ſuffice. Make of all a Plaiſter.*

Take *Gum Ammoniack, and Sagapenum diſſolved in Vinegar, and then thickened again, of each two ounces*: Emplaſtrum Diachylon cum Gummis, *one ounce and an half. Melt all together. Then add Cinnabaris, Cinoper or Minium, and burned Braſs, of each one ounce: Orpment and Verdegreece, of each two drams. Make all into a Maſs or Plaiſter. If it raiſe Bladders, lay a Linnen Cloth between the Plaiſter, and the part affected.*

If the Diſeaſe do pertinaciouſly continue, we muſt proceed to a Veſicatory, which doth draw out the Morbifick Matter, being applied to the part affected. Wherefore a Bliſtering Plaiſter muſt be

be laid on, either alone, or that it may work more gently, with ſome of the foreſaid, mingled in equal proportions, for ſo it may be endured upon the part a longer time. Or this following may be made freſh.

Take *Ship-Pitch, Wax, white Pitch, of each one ounce and an half: Colophonia, Frankincenſe, Maſtich, of each two drams: Euphorbium, Ladanum, Quick Sulphur, Opopanax, Ammoniacum, Bdellium, Galbanum, Sagapenum, of each half an ounce: Storax, and Benjamin, of each two drams: Cantharides three drams: Galangal, Cloves, of each two drams: Liquid Storax, as much as ſhall ſuffice. Make all into a Plaiſter.*

In an old Diſeaſe, an Iſſue in the Leg on the pained ſide, doth derive the Matter away, and ſomtimes cures the Diſeaſe. *Zechius* will have it made in the outſide of the Leg. And if there be ſuſpition of a Catarrh from the Brain, another muſt be made in the hinder part of the Head. For that hath ſomtimes cured an old Sciatica when nothing elſe would do it. And then likewiſe other Remedies, correcting the Brains diſtemper, muſt not be neglected.

Zacutus Luſitanus tels of his making an Iſſue behind the Ears with wonderful ſucceſs, when the Humor came from the Head. Of this he makes a peculiar ſtory, Obſervat. 160. Book 2.

During the whol Courſe of the Cure, frequent Clyſters are to be injected, that part of the Morbifick Matter may be derived unto the Guts. Alſo to diſcuſs the next and immediate Cauſe of the pain, this following hath ſomtimes been uſeful.

Take *Rich Canary half a pint: Walnut Oyl, and Oyl of Rue, of each three ounces: Oyl of Turpentine half an ounce. Mix all, and make thereof a Clyſter, to be caſt in ſo often as the pain ſhal require.*

And this following Clyſter doth wonderfully draw the Humors from the part affected, in regard of its Neighborhood to the Guts.

Take *Pulp of Coloquintida one dram: Lean Bran an handful: white Wine a pint and an half: Boyl all to a pint. Of the ſtrained Liquor make a Clyſter, and let the Patient keep it an hour.*

The Hip-Gout is ſomtimes bred of Choller, and hot Humors, which is known when the pain is very ſharp, and pricks, the pains are greater every other day, the party is lean, the Conſtitution of Body Chollerick, Age youthful, Country and Seaſon hot, the pain is encreaſed by heating things, Chollerick Diſeaſes have preceded, an hot Diet, and vehement Exercite; and then the Medicines muſt be fitted for Choller, and an hot diſtemper. Wherefore, Bleeding is good, Purgations of Choller, ſomtimes Lenitive, ſomtimes ſtrongly purging with Diagredium, that the Morbifick Matter may be brought forth; cooling Juleps, emollient Clyſters cooling, Milk, Bathing, and other Remedies propounded in an hot diſtemper of the Liver. Alwaies being careful to avoid things Opening, and to chuſe rather ſuch as do incraſſate or thicken, ſuch as we propounded for a thin and hot Rhewm.

The Pain being extream, ſome Narcoticks may be given, eſpecially Syrup of Poppies, whereby the pain is allaied, and the flux of Humors ſtopped, by the Humors being thickned.

But *Laudanum Opiatum* is far more powerful, given to the quantity of three or four grains; which alſo diſſolved in a Clyſter of Broth or Milk, uſing a Purging Clyſter before it, doth often take away the pain in a moment.

The external Medicaments muſt be gentler, as Oyl of Lillies, Violets, Chamomel, and ſweet Almonds: Pultiſes, of Lettice, Nightſhade, Endive, Barley Meal, with the foreſaid Oyls; and towards the declining of the Diſeaſe, Fomentations, Liniments, Milder Plaiſters, and leſs Heating.

The Matter cauſing the Sciatica, comes ſomtimes to maturity, ſo as to make an Impoſthume. Which *Hippocrates* ſhews in the third Book of his Epidemicks in the Hiſtory of *Eupolemus*, who had ſuch an Impoſthume, which killed him with a Conſumption. If the Impoſthume be opened, there remains a filthy ill conditioned Ulcer, which likewiſe pines the Patient away. Yet *Zacutus Luſitanus* glories, that he had often cured the Sciatica with an Ulcer, in Obſ. 126. Book 1. Which Obſervation ought to be read and diligently meditated upon.

Chap. 3. *Of Rheumatick Pains of the whol Body.*

AFter Gouty Diſeaſes properly ſo called, it is worth our while to treat of the Rhewmatick Diſeaſe, becauſe of the likeneſs between theſe Diſeaſes, which verily is ſo great, that the generality of Phyſitians, which know not the Nature of this Rhewmatiſm, are wont to call it the univerſal Gout. For in both Diſeaſes the Joynts are pained: but therein is the difference; In that in the Gout, only the Joynts are pained; But in this *Rheumatiſmus*, or Rheumatick Malady, not only the Joynts, but alſo the whol Body, viz. The middle ſpaces between the Joynts, namely, the

Muſcles and their Membranes, and eſpecially the Skins which cover the Bones, and the whol habit of the Body; yea verily, and ſomtimes the inward parts of the Body, as the Stomach, Womb, Lungs, are troubled with this Rheumatick Diſeaſe.

And although the Grecks cal a Catarrh by the name of *Rheuma*; yet this Rheumatiſm we ſpeak of, differs from a Catarrh, being indeed contained under the general term of Flux of Rheum, yet of a different Nature from that kind of Flux which is commonly called a Catarrh, which comes only from the Brain, and troubles no more than one or two parts; whereas this Diſeaſe we treat of, comes from the internal Bowels by the Veins and Arteries, and is ſhed into the whol Body.

This is no new Diſeaſe, yet is it not ſufficiently deſcribed by the Antients. We have a rude Draught thereof in *Hippocrates*, in his Book, *de locis in Homine*: and in *Galen*, Book 1. of the difference of Feavers; and the firſt *de compoſitione Med. ſecundum Genera*. But the moſt notable and cleer place of al, explaining this Diſeaſe, is in the firſt Book of the Differences of Feavers, in Chap. 7. the words are theſe: *Underſtand thou, That the Rheumatick Diſeaſe ſo called, is cauſed by ſome ſuch way as this*; viz. *The whol Body being weak, and the principal Parts thereof, though they have but little blood, yet finding themſelves burdened, they thruſt the ſame and expel it to the fleſhy parts of the Skin.* Whereby it appears that the true Nature of this Rheumatick Diſeaſe, according to *Galens* Doctrine, conſiſts herein; That the whol Body is ſo weak, that when any principal Part is burdened with blood, although it be in no very great quantity, it tranſmits the ſame to the fleſhy parts and habit of the Body.

But that is not ſimply to be underſtood which is ſaid by *Galen*, That the principal Parts being burdened with blood, do thruſt the ſame unto the fleſhy Parts of the Body. For ſo Inflamations and Swellings would ariſe in thoſe parts. Whereas Experience ſhews, that in this Diſeaſe called *Rheumatiſmus*, for the moſt part there appears no Swelling, no Inflamation, no change of color in the parts pained.

The next and immediate Cauſe therefore of this Diſeaſe, is a wheyiſh Humor, which by reaſon of its thinneſs doth not ſwel the parts, and becauſe of the ſubſtance thereof, not apt to turn into Matter or Quittor, it never makes any Impoſthume, but only a certain Inflamatory diſpoſition, ariſing from the fervor of the wheyiſh Humor.

Now the Primary Original of this Diſeaſe ought to be aſcribed to the Liver, which being affected with an hot diſtemper, and being weakened, breeds not blood convenient for to nouriſh, and affects the whol Body with the like weakneſs, whereby it becomes exceedingly diſpoſed to receive all ſuperfluities. And from the ſame Diſtemper and weakneſs of the Liver, great quantities of evil Humors do ariſe, which being long detained in the Veins and Arteries, they become vitiouſly corrupted, and are there diſſolved and turned into the Nature of Whey, and Blood-watry Liquors, and as an heavy burden, are by Nature caſt off into the ignoble Parts, ſhe being not ſtrong enough to drive them out of the whol Body. Now theſe wheyiſh and blood-watry Humors being very ſharp, do prick and cut (as it were) thoſe parts unto which they are carried, from whence pains and torments do ariſe. And although we conceive the Liver to be the primary Cauſe, and Original of this Diſeaſe, yet it is apparent that theſe Humors do ſomtimes flow immediately from the Brain, becauſe the pains do often begin in the Neck, and afterwards do deſcend unto the Shoulders and Arms. But the firſt Generation of theſe ſharp Humors was in the over-heated Liver, which being tranſlated from thence into the Brain, do from thence afterward fal down into the inferior parts.

And although theſe Humors are expelled by the Veins in manner of a Criſis, yet is not their motion ſo ſudden, but is performed by little and little; viz. When thoſe evil Humors and corrupted, do boyl or work in the Veins, and are afterward leiſurely by the Veins expelled and vomited as it were; for which cauſe this motion is wont fitly to be called, the Vomiting of the Veins.

That a ſerous or wheyiſh Humor is the principal Cauſe of theſe pains, many Reaſons do convince. Firſt, becauſe ordinarily they cauſe no ſwelling nor change of color in the part affected; howbeit, ſomtime when the Humor doth much abound, it raiſeth the part into a little, and very red Swelling, which nevertheleſs is eaſily diſcuſſed. Secondly, Becauſe theſe pains are exceeding movable, and do ſeize now this, now that part of the Body, and are ſuddenly gone from one part into another, the former part being quickly wel, and free from al pain; which ſudden mutations cannot come but from an Humor very apt to move, and exceeding thin. Thirdly, Becauſe this Diſeaſe is often terminated by Sweating. Fourthly, Becauſe there appear many tokens of abundant Seroſities in ſuch as are troubled with this Diſeaſe; Thin and abundant Urines beyond the Quantity of what they drink, and abundance of Wheyiſh Humors appearing in the Blood that is taken from them.

And although a wheyiſh Humor be the principal, and moſt frequent Cauſe of theſe Rheumatick Pains, yet probable it is, that wind doth ſomtimes concur in the production of theſe pains. Which we may conjecture by the quick Paſſage of the pain from one place to another, and becauſe there is no weight or heavineſs felt in the parts pained. This is the Opinion of *Avicenna*, who ſeems to deſcribe this Diſeaſe, and to aſſign windy Vapors for the Cauſe thereof: Fen. 1. Book, 3. Tract. 2. Chap. 7.

Chap.7. in theſe words. *In pain Cauſed by winds, the extenſion of the part is encreaſed & the heavineſs diminiſhed ſomtimes it is with pricking, & ſomtimes with Corroſion; and in a flatuous Pain there is no Heavineſs. And ſomtimes there is a Change of the Pain from one place to another.* Theſe are the words of Avicenna: unto which he Joyns theſe following, which ſeem to come nearer the deſcription of this Diſeaſe we treat of. *And the wind is ſomtimes in the Coates and fibres of the Members, as in the Collick from wind; or in the Coats of the Muſcles and under the membranes, and upon the Boner, or in the Circumference of the Muſcles, between the ſoft fleſh and the Skin, or lurking in the Member it ſelf,*

And if any ſhall object, that Diſeaſes ariſing from wind, do not endure ſo long, becauſe windy Vapours are ſoon diſcuſſed. We ſhall anſwer, that a wind contained in the Parts Pained is eaſily diſcuſſed, whence comes often change of Pains from one Part to another; but there is a ſeminary in the Veins from whence winds may perpetually ariſe, & afterwards be carried to the Parts aforeſaid. Now this Seminary of winds is a thick, viſcid Humor and flegmatick, which the Blood taken from them doth often teſtifie to be redundant in ſuch as are troubled with theſe Pains; it being frequently thick and clammy like Glew, in appearance like crude and putrid flegm.

The knowledg of this Diſeaſe may eaſily be learned out of what hath been ſaid: yet ſhall we diſcourſe thereof a little more fully. Firſt therefore, the Parts affected with theſe Pains viz. the Muſcles and their Membrans, and the Membranes which infold the bones, do diſtinguiſh this Diſeaſe from all other. For allthough the Pains of the Lechers Pocks, do poſſeſs both the Joynts and the ſpaces between the Joynts, and ſpecially the membranes covering the bones; yet they differ herein, becauſe they do not ſo univerſally infeſt the whol Body, neither are ſo continual night and day, for they vex the Party only in the nights and very little in the day time; neither do they hinder the Patients from their buſineſs commonly; whereas this Rheumatick Pain, doth Nail them to their Beds, ſo as they can hardly ſtirr themſelves; neither can thoſe that look to them, once ſo much as move without great trouble and encreaſe of their Torments. And finally other ſigns of the Whores Pox have preceded or are preſent, as Gonorrhea, the Whores Boil, Putrefaction of the Privities and ſuch like.

Other ſymptomes alſo there are accompanying this Diſeaſe, which help much to the knowledg thereof. For if you lay your hand upon the Part pained, you feel a kind of ſharpneſs with Heat, commonly there is a Feaver Joyned therewith, but it is very ſmall; and ſome times there is none at all. The Blood which is taken away is evidently corrupted, thick and clammy like glew, and after many times bleeding, it is ful of wheyiſh moiſture, and ſo changed, that it hath not the appearance of Blood. When the Pain is quite gone or intermits there remains no weakneſs in the Part, as is uſuall in the Gout. Purging Medicaments at the beginning do no good, nor things outwardly applied to the Part affected; they do rather augment the Diſeaſe and the Pain: but when the Diſeaſe begins to decline, both are profitable.

As for the Prognoſtick, this Diſeaſe is ſeldom or never deadly, but is verv troubleſome to the Patient by its length: for it continues two or three months, if it be without a Feaver; nay verily; ſomtimes if it be not rightly cured, it continues for a yeer or yeers. *Franciſcus Portus* who in an elegant verſe writ ten Poems of Phyſick ſpeaking of this Diſeaſe relates that he was troubled with this Diſeaſe about two yeers ſpace, which at length he overcame by the earneſt Endeavous of ſix Phyſitians of *Paris*, the moſt famous in their times, viz. *Baſinus*, *Belly-Quercus*, *Sanjacobæus*, *Seguinus* and *Hollerius*.

If this *Rheumatiſſas* do begin with a Feaver, it is wont to be the ſhorter, but it torments the Patient with more direful and cruel Pains: and then it finiſheth within twenty or forty daies, or at leaſt, it is much leſſened.

This Rheumatick Pain coming upon the Neck of other Diſeaſes as an Apoplexy or convulſion, doth make the Caſe leſs Dangerous, the morbifick matter being tranſlated from the internal Parts to the habit of the Body.

Sweates happening in the Declination of the Diſeaſe are good.

Thick and abundant Urins in the Declination, do bring an end to the Diſeaſe.

For the Cure of this Diſeaſe the Morbifick matter muſt be revelled, mitigated and Evacuated, the diſtemper of the Bowells muſt be corrected, and the ſtrength of all the Parts both the ſending and receiving muſt be maintained.

All which may be done by theſe following Remedies

Take *Leaves of Mallows, Violets, Betes, Lettice, Borrage, of each one Handful. Anis-Seeds two drams: Boil all to twelve ounces, in the ſtrained Liquor diſſolve Honey of Violets and Sweet Butter of each two ounces: Make thereof a Cliſter. Give it at a convenient Hour, and repeat every day, or every other day during the whol Courſe of the Diſeaſe.*

When the Cliſter is come away open a Vein in either Arm and take away eight or nine ounces of Blood. It Matters not on which Arm the Vein be at firſt opened, becauſe Blood-letting muſt be often

often repeated and the Veins of both Arms divers times opened. Blood muſt therefore be drawn every day from the beginning of the Diſeaſe til the Diſeaſe come to remit & the Pains to leſſen neither matters it though the Patient be let blood ten or twelve times one after another in ſo many daies becauſe it is a peculiar property of this diſeaſe, that the Patients ſtrength is not diminiſhed by frequent bleeding, as in other Diſeaſes it is wont to fall out. My manner therefore is in theſe Diſeaſes when I appoint Bleeding ſo often, leaſt the freinds and attendants or the Patient ſhould be affrighted with ſo frequent Blood-letting, to add this reſtriction, that Blood-letting be continued every day, til either the Pain be diminiſhed or the Patient much weakened. And ſeeing no weakneſs follows the continual uſe of this Evacuation the Patients do willingly undergo the ſame, and are eaſily perſwaded to repeat the ſame. Now the condition of the Blood is it which makes this eaſie bearance, which in this Diſeaſe comes alwaies away very much corrupted. Experience ſhows how profitable this frequent Blood-letting is; for by the conſtant continuance thereof, the Diſeaſe which is wont (as was ſaid in the Prognoſtick) to be long, is often maſtered in a ſhort time. And experience ſhews that large Bleeding at the Noſe, if it happen to one that hath this Diſeaſe, it perfectly Cures that party, *Hippocrates* ſeem es to hint at this in Aphor 74. Sect. 4. *Thoſe who are likely to have an Impoſtume about their Joynts, are freed from that danger, if they void much thick and white Urin, ſuch as in painfull Feavers, ſome begin to make upon the fourth day: and if withall their Noſe Bleeds, the Diſeaſe will very ſoon break.* For the falling down of Humors into the Joynts tending to an Impoſtume, hath ſome Analagy with this Rheumatick Diſeaſe we treat of. Alſo the ſame *Hippocrates* ſeems to propound a certain adumbration of this Diſeaſe in the ſecond of his Predictories, and aſcribes the cauſe thereof to the ſuppreſſion of ſome uſuall Hemorrhage or Bleeding, in theſe words. *They who have Pains and ſwellings about their Joynts, which are allaied not as the Gout uſes to be, in ſuch you ſhall find their Bowells large, and a white ſettling in their Urin &c.* afterward he adds; now this Diſeaſe beſides thoſe who in their Child-Hood and in their youth have been accuſtomed to Bleed at Noſe, which cuſtome hath left them.

Whiles theſe bleedings are Practiſed, Cliſters (as was before ſaid) muſt be given every day or every other day; alſo Juleps muſt be given, which have power to correct the diſtemper of the Bowells, and to mitigate the Acrimony and agitation of the Humors. To this intent Red poppy water is very profitable in this Diſeaſe it is to be given alone morning and Evening ſix ounces at a time, with Syrup of Lemmons and Pomegranates in form of a Julep; howbeit it is no leſs effectual alone without the Syrups.

For ordinary Drink let the Patient uſe a Ptiſan Drink of Barley, Graſs and Liquoris; or of the Decoction of Sorrel Roots, or of the tincture of Roſes: abſtaining from Wine which is the great *Vehiculum* or Spreader of all Flowing Humors.

Purgation in the Beginning, Augment, and ſtate of this Diſeaſe doth no good at all; nay verily it doth hurt, for it ſets the Humors on running, and encreaſes the Pains; as it is wont to fall out in all Inflammatory diſpoſitions. But in the Declination it is neceſſary and frequently to be Celebrated, and that with gentle Medicaments, that the evil Humors abounding in the whol body may be Evacuated by Degrees. To which purpoſe this following potion may be preſcribed.

Take *Senna and Tamarinds of each half an ounce: Annis Seed and Cream of Tartar, of each one dram: Sorrell Leaves half a Handful. Boyl all to three ounces: In the ſtrained Liquor diſſolve Manna and Syrup of Roſes of each one ounce: Make a potion, to be iterated divers times, as the Phyſitian ſhall think fit.*

If the form of a Bole be more deſireable, it may thus be made;

Take *Caſſia new drawn ſix drams: Catholicum doubled three drams: Rhubarb in Poudr and Cream of Tartar of each one dram; with Sugar make a Bolus.*

If you would purge more effectually add to the potion or the Bole a ſcruple of Jallap.

If theſe Purgations ſhall not ſuffice to eradicate this Diſeaſe (which is often very rebellious) we muſt proceed to ſtronger Purgatives, as *Electuarium Diephoenicon, Diaprunum Solutivum*, and ſuch like provided there be no Feaver. I have allwaies cured this Diſeaſe (when the foreſaid Medicaments could not do it) which *Mercurius Dulcis* ſix times ſublimed, being given divers times to the Quantity of a ſcruple with ten graines of Scammony or Roſin of Jallap. An example of which kind of Cure is to be ſeen in my obſervations, viz. in Obſ. 41. Cent. 3. One only Cliſter of Vomiting Wine Cured this Diſeaſe in a certain Gentle Woman, as you have it in Obſ. 22. of the ſame Century.

Touching Sweat-Drivers, the ſame is to be ſaid which was ſaid of purges; viz. that they in the Beginning, Augment and ſtate, do no good; nay do very much harm; which the common ſort of Practitioners find by experience, who being deluded with the likeneſs of a true Cararrh, and wearied with the ſtubbornneſs of the Diſeaſe, do flie to Sudoroſicks, by which the Diſeaſe is doubled and the Pains encreaſed. But in the Declination, after due Purgations, no Feavers being preſent, they may do much good, and they may be made of a Decoction of China, or Salſa-Parilla; or ſweat

may

may be procured in a Laconick Bath with ſpirit of Wine or ſome appropriate Decoction.

After ſufficient Evacuations; yea rather while they are celebrated, we muſt be careful to ſtrengthen the whol body and the principal Parts thereof; which Indication *Galen* in 1. of the Difference of Feavers Chap. 6. where he expounds the Nature of this Diſeaſe, ſaies, is to be preferred before all others, in theſe words. *Juſtly therefore the aim of a Phyſitian in cureing theſe kind of Patients, is not Evacuation, but Roboration of the whol Body.* Which is not ſo to be underſtood, as if no Evacuation were fit in theſe Caſes (for the ſame *Galen* begins the Cure of this Diſeaſe by Blood-letting) but that we muſt make more and more often uſe of ſtrengtheners, and leſs and ſeldomer uſe of Evacuations. Yet ſure enough it is, that the Parts cannot be ſtrengthened, unleſs the ſuperfluity of Excrements, by which they are burthened be purged out.

Now theſe ſtrengtheners we ſpeak of, muſt be of a cooling Virtue; ſeeing (as was ſaid) the over hot diſtemper of the Liver gives beginning to this Diſeaſe. There is great plenty of ſuch Medicaments in Authours: Of theſe I ſhall propound four, which I account moſt effectuall and leaſt ingrateful to the Patient.

The firſt is the Tincture of Coralls, two ounces of which the ſick may take in a morning, two houres before Meat, every day on which no other Medicaments are adminiſtred.

But becauſe the Tincture of Coralls cannot long be kept, it is reduced into a Syrup for longer keeping, with Sugar, of which two ſpoonfulls may be taken in the morning: but the Efficacy thereof is much leſs, than of the ſimple Tincture.

The ſecond, is the Conſerve of the fruit which grows upon the Roſe-briar or the Eglantine Briar, which is moſt pleaſing to the taſte, cooles the Liver, and by a gentle aſtriction corroborates the ſame. The Patient may take thereof the Quantity of a Cheſtnut, morning and evening.

The third is the Electuary of *Triaſantalon* with a four-fold proportion of Rhubarb, made into Lozenges; two drams whereof the Patient may take every day and drink a little ordinary drink thereupon.

The fourth is A Tincture of Roſes, a Cup whereof the Patient muſt drink, once, twice, thrice a day far form Meals. It is thus made.

Take *Red Roſe Leaves dried one ounce: Water, Blood Warm three Pints: ſpirit of Sulphur or Vitriol one dram and an half: Infuſe them ſix hours: To the ſtrained Liquor ad white Sugar half a pound: keep it in a Glaſs for Uſe*

The foreſaid Remedies or ſome of them muſt be uſed in Courſe one after another, leaſt Nature be too much accuſtomed to one, and ſo the leſs altered thereby,

When the Diſeaſe is Cured, the Patient muſt be cautious for a time leaſt new matter being collected a Relapſe ſhould happen. The Prevention therefore hereof, wil chiefely conſiſt in a ſtate or periodical Purgation, to be iterated once or twice every month; which may fitly be done by this Magiſterial Syrup following, which will do more good by altering and ſtrengthening the Liver than by purging.

Take *Juyces newly preſt and cleared by ſettling, out of Endive, Cichory, Egrimony, Fumitory, Hopps, and Bugloſs three pints: Juyce of Apples that are Odoriferous, as Permaines and Pipins, two pints, Senna ſix drams: Epithimum two ounces: Rhubarb elect, and Agarick newly trochiſcated of each one ounce: Mace and Cloves of each half a dram: Infuſe and Boyl all according to Art, till there remain fifteen ounces of the Liquor, wherein diſſolve of white Sugar the ſame Quantity and make a Syrup perfectly boyled. Of wich let the Patient take two ounces once or twice in a month, with Chick or Veal Broth, qualified with the Leaves of Borrage and Cetrach and Agrimony.*

Allo ſpring and fal 'twil be good to open a Vein.

Futthermore, to temper the fervency of the Liver, a Bath of Luke-warm Water will be good, which muſt be frequently repeated, the whol Summer through: or for more Conveniency a Tub to ſit in may ſuffice.

To the ſame intent Conſerve of Bramble-Roſe or Eglantine Roſe-Berries will be good, of an Electuary of the ſame virtue, and Lozenges made of the Species *Diatrion Santalon*, being frequently uſed.

Hereunto muſt be added a good Diet of Meats affording good Juyce and eaſily digeſted, as Partridges, Capons, Chickens and Pullets; eſpecially broths and the Juyces of fleſh preſſed forth, and ſuch like, all which muſt be taken in no great Quantity, that they may be more eaſily digeſted.

The End of the Sixteenth Book.

THE

THE SEVENTEENTH BOOK OF THE PRACTICE OF PHYSICK.

Of FEAVERS.

The PREFACE.

WE find by many *Authors great Volumns written touching the Theory and Cure of Feavers*; *in which, innumerable Controverſies, and difficult Diſputations are handled. Which as they are in the Schools very uſeful, yea, and neceſſary*; *ſo are they tedious to moſt Phyſitians, who having left the Univerſities, do give themſelves unto the Practice of Phyſick: For they deſire a ſhort and cleer Explication of the Theory of Diſeaſes, which may ſuffice to declare their Nature, Cauſes, and Signs, both Diagnoſtick and Prognoſtick, with their right Method of Curing, which is the only thing they regard. It being my endeavor in this whol Work to ſatisfie their Deſires, I have baniſhed all Controverſies, briefly expounding the deciſion of Queſtions only which ſeem moſt neceſſary for a Practitioner. This we have likewiſe done in our Doctrine of Feavers*; *and letting paſs all tedious Controverſies, which are continually handled in the Schools*, uſque ad Nauſeam; *we have declared only ſuch things as principally regard Practice. And this Book for better Methods ſake, I have diſtributed into three* Sections, *following that General Diviſion of Feavers, into Simple, Putrid, and Peſtilential. So that the firſt Section of this Book ſhall treat of Simple Feavers: The ſecond of Putrid: And the third of Peſtilential.*

SECT. I.

Of Simple Feavers.

The PREFACE.

THat *which we call a Simple Feaver, is ſubdivided into three ſorts*; *of which, one is called* Ephemera; *another* Synochus ſimplex, *or* Imputris; *and another* Hectica. *And therefore we ſhall divide this Section into three Chapters: The firſt of* Febris Ephemera: *The ſecond of* Synochus ſimplex: *The third of* Febris Hectica. *Wherein we ſhall declare their Nature and Cure.*

CHAP.

Chap. 1. *Of the Feaver* Ephemera.

THis Feaver is commonly bred of external Cauſes, and of vehement Motions of Body and Mind, as Anger, Cares, Labor Pain, Watching, and Faſting, by which the Spirits are inflamed; alſo by Sleep and Sorrow, by which the hot Humors and Vapors are kept within the Body. Alſo by being heated with the Sun, Fire, or Stove, by which means, hot air being drawn in with the breath, and received by the Pores of the Body, it doth inflame the Spirits. Alſo by Surfetting, Drunkenneſs, and eſpecially by over large taking in of Meats and Drinks, that are of an hot Nature, as Peppered Meats, and ſtroog Wines, by which more Vapors are raiſed than can exhale. Alſo by Retention of hot Excrements, and that not only of the Dung and Urine, but eſpecially of thoſe Sooty Vapors which are wont to paſs through the Pores of the Skin, if thoſe Pores be ſhut up with cold, an Alluminous Bath, and ſuch like Cauſes.

Alſo this Ephemera Feaver is bred of internal Cauſes, as from a Bubo, and other Swellings of the Thighs or Arms, eſpecially whiles they break; from an hot fiery Swelling of the Extremities of the Body, when hot Matter ſhut up together in one certain place, doth offend the Heart, not by its putrefaction, but heat alone. Alſo by ſome ſmal Obſtruction of the Veſſels, by which means the ſooty exhalations being retained do cauſe a Feaver; as is wont to happen in Diſtillations, when they ariſe in hot Natures, and a thick habit of Body.

This Feaver is known, both when ſome of the Cauſes ſpecified hath gone before; and alſo by a ſwift, frequent, and great Pulſe; breathing frequent and great, Headach and Heat; there is neither cold nor ſhaking, no ſence of wearineſs, nor want of Appetite. Yet may there be ſomtimes a ſhivering or ſhaking fit, namely, when the Feaver is occaſioned by the heat of the Sun, or by cold. Feeling the Patients Hand we find a mild and gentle heat; the Urine is concoct, like that of one in health, unleſs by ſome Obſtruction or Crudity it be changed. It is commonly terminated in the ſpace of twenty four hours, with an eaſie gentle Sweat; yet it reacheth ſomtimes unto the third day, which if it paſs it degenerates into a ſimple Synochus, a Putrid, or an Hectick Feaver.

For the Cure of this Feaver, the Ancients did chiefly uſe a bath of luke-warm Water, which they did alſo frequently uſe in their Health. But ſeeing it is in theſe times out of uſe, neither is it in practice in the Cure of theſe Feavers. Neither is it counted ſafe, in regard of a Plethorick or Cacochymical Conſtitution of Body, Putrefaction, or flux of Rheum, which may be in ſuch bodies, or may be feared wil happen.

But this Feaver is better cured by a Cooling and Moiſtening Diet; as Barley Cream, Cooling Broths, Smal Drink and Sugar, common Ptiſan Drink, or Fountain Water with Syrup of Lemmons, Maiden-hair mixed therewith.

But the Cure admits ſome variation, according to the Nature of the Cauſe. So if it ſpring from the Heat of the Sun or Air, a cooling Diet is good, and the Patient muſt be conveighed into a cool lodging; and Vinegar of Roſes muſt be applied to his Forehead, to the Temples and former part of the Head it ſelf, if there be pain, as commonly there is when the Feaver comes from the heat of the Sun.

If it come from being in the Cold, eſpecially if the Patient being hot with Exerciſe went preſently into the Cold, Sweat muſt be provoked, eſpecially towards the end of the Fit.

If it come from the Skins thickneſs and cloſing up of the pores, the ſame Cure muſt be uſed; and to both theſe Cauſes, ſmal Wine very well allaied with Water may be convenient, becauſe it opens the pores, and helps to ſweat.

If the Diſeaſe was cauſed by Labor, the Patient muſt reſt and be nouriſhed more liberally with Meat of eaſie Digeſtion. If from wearineſs, the Patient muſt be artificially rubbed. Tranquillity of mind, and cheerfulneſs, muſt be oppoſed to Anger; and Choller muſt be tempered with Meat and Drink of a cooling Nature. To Sadneſs, Recreation of the Mind is a Remedy, and the uſe of thin ſmal Wine. If the Feaver was cauſed by watching, let the Patient ſleep by application of things convenient: If by faſting, let the Patient eat cooling Meats of good Juyce: If by over eating or drinking, let the Patient abſtain from Meat and Drink, not omitting ſuch things as ſtrengthen the Stomach, both inwardly given, and outwardly applied: alſo with an Emollient and Laxative Clyſter, part of the Crudities is to be taken away. If Putrefaction be feared, Vomit may be procured, or a Purge given. If the Feaver ariſe of Obſtructions, we muſt conſider whether the Patient be Plethorick or Cacochymical, viz. Whether the whol Maſs of blood be over great, or only ſome bad Humors abound in the blood. If the Patient be too ful of blood, blood-letting muſt be advited; if evil Humors only abound, a Purge muſt be preſcribed. And if the Obſtruction wil not eaſily be removed, this Feaver changeth into ſome of the other ſorts of Feavers, whoſe Cures ſhal be deſcribed in their proper places.

Chap. 2. *Of the Feaver* Synochus Simplex.

THe Cauſes of the Feaver *Ephemera* aforeſaid, if they light upon a Plethorick Body, and thick skinned, they cauſe the Feaver *Synochus Simplex*. Yet may this Feaver ariſe only from abundance of Blood ſtuffing the Veins, and yielding many Vapors more than can breath through the pores of the Skin.

This Feaver is known by a thick and ſwelling habit of Body, the color of the Body and Face is ruddy; the Head is pained with a ſtretching or diſtending kind of pain; the Patient is ſleepy, hath a beating in the Temples, is unquiet, hath a ſtraitneſs in the Cheſt with difficulty of breathing; the Pulſe is great, even, frequent, full; the Veins ſtrut with blood, whence a ſtretching kind of wearineſs doth proceed; the Urine is thick, little differing in color from a Natural Urine, only ſomwhat redder; the heat is to ones hand mild, tempered with a ſteamy Vapor; the Feaver holds an even progreſs, for either it holds one and the ſame tenor, or it leſſens by degrees, or it encreaſeth equally, never remitting or ceaſing. Whence there are reckoned three Differences of this Feaver: For that which continually encreaſeth, is called *Epacmaſtica*; That which continually decreaſeth, is called *Paracmaſtica*; That which keeps one and the ſame tenor, is called *Homotonos*, or *Acmaſtica*. It laſts til the fourth day, and ſometimes til the ſeventh; and then it is terminated by bleeding, or ſweating; and if it be further prolonged, it degenerates into *Synochus Putrida*.

The Cure of this Feaver is performed, by blood-letting, by cooling, and by opening the pores of the Skin. *Galen* in the ninth Book of his Method, Chap. 4. cures this Feaver by two Remedies only; viz. Letting of Blood til the Patient faint away; and by giving a great quantity of Water to the Patient to drink.

Blood-letting is abſolutely neceſſary in this Diſeaſe, becauſe it is bred by fulneſs of blood; and a Vein muſt preſently be opened at what hour ſoever the Phyſitian is called, unleſs the Patients Stomach be ful of Meat, the digeſtion whereof muſt be expected for certain hours. And although Blood muſt be plentifully drawn, and *Galen* reports in the fore-cited place, That he cured the moſt of ſuch as had this Feaver, ſuddenly, by letting them bleed til they fainted away; which bleeding was attended by a looſneſs, vomiting of Choller, and plentiful Sweat. Yet in theſe daies of ours, that ſame large blood-letting is out of date; which is not without danger, ſeeing *Galen* himſelf relates in his Book of Curing by Phlebotomy, Chap. 12. That it befel three Phyſitians, while they were practiſing this large Blood-letting that inſtead of fainting away, their Patients died out-right. It is better therefore at ſeveral times to take away ſo much blood, as the Nature of the Diſeaſe doth neceſſarily require.

Before Blood-letting, if the Patient be Coſtive, or the Guts abound with Crudities, an Emollient and Laxative Clyſter muſt be given.

As for the point of cold Water, *Galen* orders it to be given in ſo great quantity, that the Patient grow pale, tremble, and be cold all over; and ſo he ſaies, it extinguiſheth the fiery heat, it ſtrengthens the ſolid parts, and drives out unprofitable Humors by ſtool, by urine, and by ſweat. But he ſaies there muſt be many Cautions in the uſe thereof; viz. That it be given in the Vigor of the Feaver, the ſigns of Concoction appearing; that the Patient have been uſed to drink cold Water in time of health, have ſtrong bowels, and full of juyce, a fleſhy and wel-ſet Body; have a conſtant and vigorous ſtrength; be not full of thick and clammy Humors, have no tumor in any bowel, nor ſtomach, throat, or ſinews weak. Otherwiſe, if theſe conditions be wanting, it is to be feared leſt the Patient fall into ſhortneſs of breath, Dropſie, Trembling, Convulſion, Lethargy, or ſome other grievous Diſeaſe. This kind of Medicine is likewiſe grown out of date in our times, ſeeing it is hard to obſerve all thoſe conditions, and ſo many dangers attend the undue uſe thereof. For it is better to uſe other more ſafe Medicines which cool the whol Body, and the Blood; as Juleps, and opening Emulſions, Epithems, Liniments, and a Diet altogether cooling. Juleps are made of the Decoction of Barley, or Sorrel, or Cichory; or with Water of Cichory, Endive, Sorrel, Lettice, adding Syrup of Juyce of Cichory, Lemmons, Pomegranates, Vinegar, &c. Whereunto alſo for the greater cooling and opening, may be added ſome drops of Spirit of Vitriol, or Sulphur. If the diſtilled Waters ſeem too crude or raw, let them boyl with a little Species Triaſantalon, or Diamargaritum frigidum.

Emulſions may be made after this manner:

Take *ſweet Almonds blanched and ſteeped in Roſe Water, one ounce: the four greater cool Seeds, and Seeds of white Poppy, of each two drams. Beat them in a Marble Mortar, powring on by little and little, a pint and an half of Barley Water. In the ſtrained Liquor diſſolve Sugar of Roſes three ounces. Make an Emulſion of Almond Milk for three Doſes. Which will be convenient, and is to be preferred before Juleps, if there be want of Reſt.*

Epithems

Epithems to be laid upon the Region of the Heart and Liver may be thus made:

Take *Water of Roſes, Bugloſs, and Lettice, of each three ounces: Vinegar of Roſes one ounce: Pouder of the Electuary Diamargaritum frigidum one dram and an half: Camphire ſix grains. Make an Epithem, lay it upon the Region of the Heart.*

Take *Water of Endive, Cichory, Sorrel, of each four ounces: Vinegar of Roſes an ounce and an half: the three Sanders two drams and an half. Make an Epithem for the Region of the Liver.*

A cooling Ointment may be anointed upon the Liver and Loyns, of Vinegar of Roſes, *Unguentum Roſatum, Unguentum Refrigerans Galeni*, or *Ceratum Santalinum*, waſhed in Vinegar, tempered with Water.

If the Diſeaſe ſeem to lengthen, after bleeding we muſt purge, leſt the wheyiſh and Chollerick Excrements putrefie, and thereby a putrid Feaver ariſe. But we muſt uſe ſuch Medicines as purge without heating and agitation of Humors, as Caſſia, Manna, Syrup of Roſes, Tamarinds, Catholicon, and ſuch like.

Ad hereunto a convenient Diet, viz. Cooling, moiſtening, and thin, of Broths made with cooling Herbs, Prunes, and ſharp Apples boyled, and Panadaes.

Let the Patients Drink be, a Decoction of Barley, Water boyled, and Water with Bread boyled in it, or mixed with Syrups of Maiden-hair, or of Pomegranates.

Chap. 3. *Of an Hectick Feaver.*

AN Hectick Feaver occupies the ſolid Parts of the Body, which conſtitute the Habit thereof, and are commonly called Spermatical, or fleſhy; in regard of which parts it is more fixed and rooted than other Feavers which are in the Spirits, or Humors. For which cauſe it is alſo termed Habitual, becauſe it is become Habitual, and can hardly be removed from its ſubject.

There are many Diviſions of this Feaver. For firſt of all, there is a Primary Hectick, which begins of it ſelf; and another Secondary, which follows other Feavers. Secondly, an Hectick Feaver is ſimple and ſolitary, or joyned with a putrid Feaver. Thirdly, ſome Hecticks begin at the Heart; others from other Parts, as the Lungs, Liver, Spleen, Kidneys, Womb, and other Parts inflamed, ulcerated, corrupted, or poſſeſſed with ſome other grievous Diſeaſe. And this Feaver though it have its habitual ſeat in the Heart, and the whol Body; yet is it commonly termed Symptomatical, becauſe of its firſt Original which it hath from other parts.

Galen makes three Degrees of an Hectick Feaver. The firſt is the very beginning of an Hectick; in which the Body is hardly extenuated; yet the moiſt Humidity of the Body is inflamed, conſumes, and dries. The ſecond comprehends the Augment, and therein is an evident extenuation of the Body, the fleſhy and fat ſubſtance of the Body perishing. The third contains the ſtate of the Diſeaſe, and its laſt age; for it never comes to a declination, becauſe therein, viz. in that degree it is incurable: for then the fibrous and membranous ſubſtance of the Body is conſumed, and the whol Body is ſo extenuated, that the Face of the Patient is like that deſcribed by *Hippocrates*, nothing but skin and bone. This laſt Degree is called *Maraſmus*, or rather *Hectica Maraſmodes*; becauſe in a true *Maraſmus*, cold is joyned with dryneſs.

The Cauſes of an Hectick Feaver are divided into an Internal, and External. To the External are referred, what ever Cauſes may occaſion any of the other Feavers, if the Action of Heating be continual and vehement, or the Patients Body be apt to entertain this kind of Feaver. Such are, the heat of the Sun, or of the Fire, vehement Exerciſe, Meats and Drinks that are heating, immoderate Evacuations, as in a Looſneſs and bloody-flux, vehement paſſions of Mind; and finally, faſting in a Chollerick Body that is hot and dry of Conſtitution; ſeeing *Galen* affirms, that thoſe Phyſitians that were wont to enjoyn their Patients to faſt three daies together, did bring Chollerick Conſtitutions by that means into burning and hectick Feavers.

The Internal Cauſes are, burning and peſtilential Feavers, which do ſpeedily conſume the moiſture of the Heart; alſo a long ſlack Feaver. Alſo ſome peculiar Diſeaſe of any of the bowels, as an Inflamation or Ulcer; or putrefaction of ſome Humor contained therein; or finally, the corruption of the Member it ſelf, which are wont to cauſe a lingring Feaver, and an hectick.

Of theſe Infirmities peculiarly poſſeſſing ſome certain Members of the Body, and cauſing an Hectick, we have Examples manifeſt enough. For, as for what concerns Inflamations, *Galen* ſaith he ſaw a woman that by reaſon of an Inflamation in her Midrif, fel into an Hectick Feaver. And we dayly obſerve in the Conſumption of the Lungs, or *Phthiſis*, a complicated Hectick Feaver. The putrefaction of Humors contained in ſome bowel, fals out in great obſtructions, or cold ſwellings. The corruption of ſome Member is often ſeen in the Lungs; ſomtimes in the Liver, in ſuch men as are given to Wine, and who uſe much hot Spices; for a certain filthy corrupt blood is bred in

their Liver, by which the ſubſtance thereof is corupted. *Fernelius* ſaies, he ſomtimes met with this kind of Feaver, and that it is a ſign thereof, when the Patients extreamly covet Wine; but abominate all kind of Fleſh.

A Simple Hectick Feaver is known, becauſe it is continual, without any fits, allwaies alike, neither encreaſing nor decreaſing, ſave that it is ſomwhat augmented, an hour two or three after Meat. The heat under the ſhort Ribs, is at firſt laying on the hand mild, afterward ſharp, biting and dry. The Pulſe, is little, frequent and quick; the ſick perceive not any Feaver, they are lazy, and loath to ſtir, and when they ſtir it is with Pain, becauſe their ſtrength is in a languiſhing condition. Their arteries are hotter than the Parts circumjacent, which may be preceived by the touch after the Patient hath waſhed in cold Water. The Urin is like that of one in health both in point of color and ſediment. In the progreſs of the Diſeaſe Oyly ſubſtance Swims on the top, and the ſediment is like to Meal, which is a ſign that the ſubſtance of the Body doth melt,

More particularly, we may know not only the ſeveral degrees of an hectick, but foreſee it before it comes after this manner.

An hectick Feaver at hand, is known, if the cauſes have preceded; viz. if there have been a burning Feaver, in a body naturally hot, dry, and of a thin contexture, in an hot ſeaſon of weather, it is to be Feared, the Patient wil fal into an hectick, and ſuch remedies as may prevent the ſame are to be uſed.

The firſt degree of an Hectick Feaver if it be Joyned with a putrid Feaver, is very hardly known: if it be alone, not very eaſily. In the firſt day, there are al the ſignes of *Febris Ephemera*. In the ſecond, the dryneſs is augmented, not the heat. On the third day it repeats not, it is not evidently augmented nor diminiſhed. And at length one hour or two after Meat, the Heat ſeems ſomwhat encreaſed.

In the ſecond degree, the Patient perceives no Feaveriſhneſs, only ſome alterations after Meals. There is a manifeſt dryneſs, a ſmaller and ſwifter Pulſe, with a certain hardneſs.

The ſigns of the third degree are moſt manifeſt; the Eyes are hollow, dry and have dry excrements in them, the bones evidently ſtick out, the lively colour of the Face is extinguiſhed: the whol Skin is dry, the Midrif vehemently contracted, ſo that the Patients ſeem to have no Guts. Their Pulſe is perceived under the ſtomach, in all extenuated perſons.

And becauſe a putrid Feaver is many times coupled with an Hectick, they are both exactly to be diſtinguiſhed, becauſe it is of great moment in regard of the Cure, which in this caſe is very much differing. Now this coupling may be known by Comparing the ſigns of an Hectick propounded, with the ſigns of a putrid Feaver, which ſhall be hereafter deſcribed in their proper place.

The firſt degree of an Hectick Feaver is eaſily Cured, the third is incurable; the ſecond is of a middle Nature, and look how much the nearer it approaches to the firſt or third by ſo much is it eaſier or harder to be Cured. An Hectick Feaver happens moſt commonly from the eighteenth yeer to the thirty five, for in that Age the Heat is moſt intenſe, and ſooneſt conſumes the Body. But they who before this Age or a little after are taken with an Hectick Feaver, do more eaſily eſcape and are ſomtimes Cured perfectly; or by a palliative Cure their life is protracted a long time, eſpecially if they be Women.

For the Cure of this Diſeaſe, we muſt firſt conſider whether it depend upon any Diſeaſe of ſome particular Part or not: for then the Cure muſt be directed to that Diſeaſe: as alſo if it be ſingle or combined or complicated with a putrid Feaver. And in this caſe the putrid Feaver is firſt to be Cured by Bleeding, Purging, and by Opening Medicaments and ſuch as hinder putrefaction: the Hectick Feaver in the mean while not being neglected. But if the Hectick Feaver be ſingle and alone the Cure muſt be effected only with cooling, moiſtening and reſtaurative things; the matter of muſt be taken from Diet and Medicine.

Diet, here, as in all Chronick Diſeaſes, can do much; nay in this Diſeaſe it can do more than all Medicines. Therefore the Patients Diet muſt be by the Phyſitian exactly ordered, viz. That it may be directed ſo as to cool and moiſten the whol Body. If therefore the Air where the Patient is, be moderately cold or temperate, let him uſe the ſame; if not, let it be corrected, ſo as that it may incline to cold and moiſt. For this Reaſon *Galen* in the 10. of his Method Chap. 8. in the Summer when the Air is hot, orders the ſick to abide in a Room under the Ground, that is very cold and blown through with the Wind, open towards the North. By which Remedy alone, we have ſeen a man extreamely conſumed, reſtored within a month. Again the heat of the Air in the Patients Chamber muſt be altered, by cold Water being powred out of one veſſel into another, by the very noiſe whereof Sleep is cauſed; alſo by moiſtening the Pavement often with cold Water Sprinckled thereupon, or by cooling Hearbs, ofttentimes freſh ſtrowed therein: and by forbidding any number of people to come in, which among other things, doth likewiſe heat the Chamber. And *Galen* gives order that when the Air is coldeſt it ſhould be received by the ſick namly by drawing it in by the mouth, becauſe it exceedingly cools the heat of the heart; but it is not good for the Body of the ſick, leaſt it ſtop the pores of the Skin and hinder the breathing forth of excrements.

excrements. But *Galen* affirmes that the breathing in of the cool Air doth the Patients more good, than they can receive hurt, by the ſtopping of their pores, if that ſhould happen: but that may be hindered by warm cloathing of the Body. Yet it is to be obſerved, that if the Hectick Feaver ariſe from an Ulcer in the Lungs; that the cold Air is not good in that reſpect, but rather temperate, a little inclining to heat, and dry. For which Cauſe *Galen* ſent thoſe that had conſumptions of their Lungs to the Mount Tabias where the Air was more dry than ordinary.

The Meates of the Patient muſt be cooling and moiſtening and quickly nourithing, as Chicken-Broaths and Broaths of Hens, Capons, Veal, Kid, Wether Mutton; Yolks of Eggs, with French Barley, Lettice, Purſelane, Endive, Borrage, Sorrel; The fleſh of Calves, Kidds, Piggs, Pheaſants, Partriches, Young Hares and ſuch like. Panadaes, Barly Cream, Water-Gruel, Rice-Pottage, with Sugar and a few Almonds or rather with the greater cooling Seeds. Boyled Meats are fitter than Roaſted which are ſooner Inflamed and turned to Choller; the boyled do more moiſten. But if the Patient be more delighted with Roaſt-Meats; they muſt be very moderately Roaſted, and tempered afterwards with Juyce of Lemmons, Citrons, Orenges, or of unripe Grapes, without Salt.

Fiſhes may be eaten, becauſe they cool and moiſten but ſuch as are taken out of ſtony places are to be preferred, and ſuch as have a tender friable fleſh, haunting the Sea or Pure Waters.

Among fruits, Apples are commended becauſe they breed cold Blood. alſo Pears are convenient, Damask Prunes, and French Prunes boiled in Sugar; alſo Raiſons cleanſed, which being prepared after this following manner, do nouriſh the body without heating.

Take *Raiſons of the Sun cleanſed one pound: Let them be tempered in endive, bugloſs and Roſe-Water and very diligently waſhed, that the Laxative power may be taken away. Afterward let them be lightly boyled in the ſame Waters, adding a little Sugar, wherewith let them be preſerved for uſe: let the Patients take of them in the mornings and allwaies after Meat.*

And becauſe Perſons that are Hectical, have the Feaveriſh heat fixed in the ſolid Parts of their bodies, by which the Nutriment is eaſily and ſuddainly conſumed and diſſipated: therefore Practitioners are wont to preſcribe unto them, Meats ſolid and of a clammy ſubſtance, as the Feet of Living Creatures, The fleſh of Snails, Crabbs, Tortoiſes, and of Froggs. For ſeeing theſe ſorts, of fleſh are moiſt and clammy they eaſily adhere unto ſuch Parts of the body as want nouriſhments neither are they eaſily conſumed by the Feaveriſh heat: and ſo they hinder the drying up of the ſolid Parts of the body. Yet ſome do reject theſe Meats, becauſe hard of digeſtion and troubleſom to the ſtomach. But this difference is thus reconciled. In the beginning of an Hectick, while the digeſtive faculty is yet ſtrong, theſe thick and clammy nutriments are convenient: but in a confirmed Hectick they are not to be given becauſe hard to digeſt. Add hereunto, that they may be ſo prepared and qualified, as that they may eaſily be digeſted; as by being boyled to a gelly, or giving only what is ſtrained out of them being beaten into a maſh. Among other things the land Tortoiſes are mightily praiſed for an Hectick, not only for a ſingle Hectick, but when Joyned with a Conſumption; and they are prepared divers waies. For either they are boyled in Water till they are diſſolved then caſting away the ſhells, the fleſh is ſeparated from the bones and boyled again with Cichory, Sorrel, Borrage, French barley, and prunes in a ſingle Hectick: but in an Hectick of the Lungs it is Boiled with Bramble Leaves, Purſlain, and Plantan. Let the Patient drink the broath and eat the Fleſh twenty daies together. Or the Juyce is preſſed out of the Fleſh being beaten. Or little Loaves are made of the Fleſh of the Tortoiſes boiled in Barley Water, with ſweet Almonds, pine kernells, the cooling Seeds and Sugar. Which are lightly baked in an Oven and are given the Patient at Dinner and Supper. They may be thus made.

Take *of the Fleſh of Land-Tortoiſe Boyled in Barly-Water four ounces: ſweet Almonds ſteeped in Roſe-water ſix ounces: Pine-Kernells ſo ſteeped two ounces, of the four greater cool Seeds, of each one ounce: Annis Seed not Poudered, but lightly baked in an Oven one dram and an half: Cinnamon two drams: Sugar diſſolved in Roſe-Water, to the Quantity of all the reſt. Make thereof little Morſells.*

Inſtead of Tortoiſes the Fleſh of a Capon is uſed and of a Partridg, and March-Pane is made thereof, good to reſtore Hectick Perſons, after this Manner.

Take *Pulpe of a Capon and Boyled Partridg of each three ounces, ſweet Almonds ſteeped in Roſe-Water four ounces: Pine-Kernells one ounce and an half: Seeds of white Poppy two drams: Gum Arabick and Traganth of each one dram and an half: Pearled Sugar Cakes two ounces: with a little Roſe-Water make a March-pane, and gild it with Gold.*

To ſuch as have weak ſtomachs, Gellies, broaths, and Reſtorative ſtilled Waters are given. A Gelly may be made after this Manner.

Take *a choiſe Capon, a Knuckle of Veal, or a Wethers Thigh, two Calves Feet, or ſix Wethers Feet. Boyl all in fountain Water, till it be ſufficiently waſted. Strain and ſqueeſe out the Juyce and Broath and take off the Fat. In the ſtrained Liquor diſſolve a pound of white Sugar, ſix whites of Eggs, a little ſaffron or Cinnamon. Stir them together let them Boyl lightly, and*

ſtrain

their Liver, by which the ſubſtance thereof is corupted. *Fernelius* ſaies, he ſomtimes met with this kind of Feaver, and that it is a ſign thereof, when the Patients extreamly covet Wine; but abominate all kind of Fleſh.

A Simple Hectick Feaver is known, becauſe it is continual, without any fits, allwaies alike, neither encreaſing nor decreaſing, ſave that it is ſomwhat augmented, an hour two or three after Meat. The heat under the ſhort Ribs, is at firſt laying on the hand mild, afterward ſharp, biting and dry. The Pulſe, is little, frequent and quick; the ſick perceive not any Feaver, they are lazy, and loath to ſtir, and when they ſtir it is with Pain, becauſe their ſtrength is in a languiſhing condition. Their arteries are hotter than the Parts circumjacent, which may be preceived by the touch after the Patient hath waſhed in cold Water. The Urin is like that of one in health both in point of color and ſediment. In the progreſs of the Diſeaſe Oyly ſubſtance Swims on the top, and the ſediment is like to Meal, which is a ſign that the ſubſtance of the Body doth melt,

More particularly, we may know not only the ſeveral degrees of an hectick, but foreſee it before it comes after this manner.

An hectick Feaver at hand, is known, if the cauſes have preceded; viz. if there have been a burning Feaver, in a body naturally hot, dry, and of a thin contexture, in an hot ſeaſon of weather, it is to be Feared, the Patient wil fal into an hectick, and ſuch remedies as may prevent the ſame are to be uſed.

The firſt degree of an Hectick Feaver if it be Joyned with a putrid Feaver, is very hardly known: if it be alone, not very eaſily. In the firſt day, there are al the ſignes of *Febris Ephemera*. In the ſecond, the dryneſs is augmented, not the heat. On the third day it repeats not, it is not evidently augmented nor diminiſhed. And at length one hour or two after Meat, the Heat ſeems ſomwhat encreaſed.

In the ſecond degree, the Patient perceives no Feaveriſhneſs, only ſome alterations after Meals. There is a manifeſt dryneſs, a ſmaller and ſwifter Pulſe, with a certain hardneſs.

The ſigns of the third degree are moſt manifeſt; the Eyes are hollow, dry and have dry excrements in them, the bones evidently ſtick out, the lively colour of the Face is extinguiſhed: the whol Skin is dry, the Midrif vehemently contracted, ſo that the Patients ſeem to have no Guts. Their Pulſe is perceived under the ſtomach, in all extenuated perſons.

And becauſe a putrid Feaver is many times coupled with an Hectick, they are both exactly to be diſtinguiſhed, becauſe it is of great moment in regard of the Cure, which in this caſe is very much differing. Now this coupling may be known by Comparing the ſigns of an Hectick propounded, with the ſigns of a putrid Feaver, which ſhall be hereafter deſcribed in their proper place.

The firſt degree of an Hectick Feaver is eaſily Cured, the third is incurable; the ſecond is of a middle Nature, and look how much the nearer it approaches to the firſt or third by ſo much is it eaſier or harder to be Cured. An Hectick Feaver happens moſt commonly from the eighteenth yeer to the thirty five, for in that Age the Heat is moſt intenſe, and ſooneſt conſumes the Body. But they who before this Age or a little after are taken with an Hectick Feaver, do more eaſily eſcape and are ſomtimes Cured perfectly; or by a palliative Cure their life is protracted a long time, eſpecially if they be Women.

For the Cure of this Diſeaſe, we muſt firſt conſider whether it depend upon any Diſeaſe of ſome particular Part or not: for then the Cure muſt be directed to that Diſeaſe: as alſo if it be ſingle or combined or complicated with a putrid Feaver. And in this caſe the putrid Feaver is firſt to be Cured by Bleeding, Purging, and by Opening Medicaments and ſuch as hinder putrefaction: the Hectick Feaver in the mean while not being neglected. But if the Hectick Feaver be ſingle and alone the Cure muſt be effected only with cooling, moiſtening and reſtaurative things; the matter of muſt be taken from Diet and Medicine.

Diet, here, as in all Chronick Diſeaſes, can do much; nay in this Diſeaſe it can do more than all Medicines. Therefore the Patients Diet muſt be by the Phyſitian exactly ordered, viz. That it may be directed to as to cool and moiſten the whol Body. If therefore the Air where the Patient is, be moderately cold or temperate, let him uſe the ſame; if not, let it be corrected, ſo as that it may incline to cold and moiſt. For this Reaſon *Galen* in the 10. of his Method Chap. 8. in the Summer when the Air is hot, orders the ſick to abide in a Room under the Ground, that is very cold and blown through with the Wind, open towards the North. By which Remedy alone, we have ſeen a man extreamely conſumed, reſtored within a month. Again the heat of the Air in the Patients Chamber muſt be altered, by cold Water being powred out of one veſſel into another, by the very noiſe whereof Sleep is cauſed; alſo by moiſtening the Pavement often with cold Water Sprinckled thereupon, or by cooling Hearbs, oftentimes freſh ſtrowed therein: and by forbidding any number of people to come in, which among other things, doth likewiſe heat the Chamber. And *Galen* gives order that when the Air is coldeſt it ſhould be received by the ſick namly by drawing it in by the mouth, becauſe it exceedingly cools the heat of the heart; but it is not good for the Body of the ſick, leaſt it ſtop the pores of the Skin and hinder the breathing forth of excrements.

excrements. But *Galen* affirmes that the breathing in of the cool Air doth the Patients more good, than they can receive hurt, by the ſtopping of their pores, if that ſhould happen: but that may be hindered by warm cloathing of the Body. Yet it is to be obſerved, that if the Hectick Feaver ariſe from an Ulcer in the Lungs; that the cold Air is not good in that reſpect, but rather temperate, a little inclining to heat, and dry. For which Cauſe *Galen* ſent thoſe that had conſumptions of their Lungs to the Mount Tabias where the Air was more dry than ordinary.

The Meates of the Patient muſt be cooling and moiſtening and quickly nourithing, as Chicken-Broaths and Broaths of Hens, Capons, Veal, Kid, Wether Mutton; Yolks of Eggs, with French Barley, Lettice, Purſelane, Endive, Borrage, Sorrel; The fleſh of Calves, Kidds, Piggs, Pheaſants, Partriches, Young Hares and ſuch like. Panadaes, Barly Cream, Water-Gruel, Rice-Pottage, with Sugar and a few Almonds or rather with the greateſt cooling Seeds. Boyled Meats are fitter than Roaſted which are ſooner Inflamed and turned to Choller; the boyled do more moiſten. But if the Patient be more delighted with Roaſt-Meats; they muſt be very moderately Roaſted, and tempered afterwards with Juyce of Lemmons, Cittons, Oranges, or of unripe Grapes, without Salt.

Fiſhes may be eaten, becauſe they cool and moiſten but ſuch as are taken out of ſtony places are to be preferred, and ſuch as have a tender friable fleſh, haunting the Sea or Pure Waters.

Among fruits, Apples are commended becauſe they breed cold Blood. alſo Pears are convenient, Damaſk Prunes, and French Prunes boiled in Sugar; alſo Raiſons cleanſed, which being prepared after this following manner, do nouriſh the body without heating.

Take *Raiſons of the Sun cleanſed one pound: Let them be tempered in endive, bugloſs and Roſe-Water and very diligently waſhed, that the Laxative power may be taken away. Afterward let them be lightly boyled in the ſame Waters, adding a little Sugar, wherewith let them be preſerved for uſe: let the Patients take of them in the mornings and allwaies after Meat.*

And becauſe Perſons that are Hectical, have the Feaveriſh heat fixed in the ſolid Parts of their bodies, by which the Nutriment is eaſily and ſuddainly conſumed and diſſipated: therefore Practitioners are wont to preſcribe unto them, Meats ſolid and of a clammy ſubſtance, as the Feet of Living Creatures, The fleſh of Snails, Crabbs, Tortoiſes, and of Froggs. For ſeeing theſe ſorts, of fleſh are moiſt and clammy they eaſily adhere unto ſuch Parts of the body as want nouriſhments neither are they eaſily conſumed by the Feaveriſh heat: and ſo they hinder the drying up of the ſolid Parts of the body. Yet ſome do reject theſe Meats, becauſe hard of digeſtion and troubleſom to the ſtomach. But this difference is thus reconciled. In the beginning of an Hectick, while the digeſtive faculty is yet ſtrong, theſe thick and clammy nutriments are convenient: but in a confirmed Hectick they are not to be given becauſe hard to digeſt. Add hereunto, that they may be ſo prepared and qualified, as that they may eaſily be digeſted; as by being boyled to a gelly, or giving only what is ſtrained out of them being beaten into a maſh. Among other things the land Tortoiſes are mightily praiſed for an Hectick, not only for a ſingle Hectick, but when Joyned with a Conſumption; and they are prepared divers waies. For either they are boyled in Water till they are diſſolved then caſting away the ſhells, the fleſh is ſeparated from the bones and boyled again with Cichory, Sorrel, Borrage, French barley, and prunes in a ſingle Hectick: but in an Hectick of the Lungs it is Boiled with Bramble Leaves, Purſlain, and Plantan. Let the Patient drink the broath and eat the Fleſh twenty daies together. Or the Juyce is preſſed out of the Fleſh being beaten. Or little Loaves are made of the Fleſh of the Tortoiſes boiled in Barley Water, with ſweet Almonds, pine kernells, the cooling Seeds and Sugar. Which are lightly baked in an Oven and are given the Patient at Dinner and Supper. They may be thus made.

Take *of the Fleſh of Land-Tortoiſe Boyled in Barly-Water four ounces: ſweet Almonds ſteeped in Roſe-water ſix ounces: Pine-Kernells ſo ſteeped two ounces, of the four greater cool Seeds, of each one ounce: Annis Seed not Poudered, but lightly baked in an Oven one dram and an half: Cinnamon two drams: Sugar diſſolved in Roſe-Water, to the Quantity of all the reſt. Make thereof little Morſells.*

Inſtead of Tortoiſes the Fleſh of a Capon is uſed and of a Partridg, and March-Pane is made thereof, good to reſtore Hectick Perſons, after this Manner.

Take *Pulpe of a Capon and Boyled Partridg of each three ounces, ſweet Almonds ſteeped in Roſe-Water four ounces: Pine-Kernells one ounce and an half: Seeds of white Poppy two drams: Gum Arabick and Traganth of each one dram and an half: Pearled Sugar Cakes two ounces: with a little Roſe-Water make a March-pane, and gild it with Gold.*

To ſuch as have weak ſtomachs, Gellies, broaths, and Reſtorative ſtilled Waters are given. A Gelly may be made after this Manner.

Take *a choiſe Capon, a Knuckle of Veal, or a Wethers Thigh, two Calves Feet, or ſix Wethers Feet. Boyl all in fountan Water, till it be ſufficiently waſted. Strain and ſqueeſe out the Juyce and Broath and take off the Fat. In the ſtrained Liquor diſſolve a pound of white Sugar, ſix whites of Eggs, a little ſaffron or Cinnamon. Stir them together let them Boyl lightly, and*

ſtrain

ſtrain them through an Hippocras bag twice or thrice. At length put it into Porrengers, or other Veſſels in which it will become a Gelly. If the taſt of Saffron or Ginnamon be diſpleaſing, or you deſire to have your Gelly more cooling, add inſtead thereof the Juyce of a Lemmon, or of one Citron.

Reſtorative Broths may be made divers waies; this is far the beſt of all, which follows:

Take *a well fleſhed Capon; pull, draw, and cut him in pieces, and take away the fat and skin: add, if you pleaſe, ſome Veal, or Weather Mutton cut into bits, and freed from the Fat. Put them into a ſtone Veſſel well glazed; in which, about the middle, there muſt be a grate of Wood, or other materials, on which the pieces aforeſaid muſt be ſo laied that they may not come at the bottom. Then cover the Pipkin with its cover, and cloſe it up well with paſte, and let it ſtand in boyling* Balneo Mariæ *five hours. There will drop into the bottom a cleer tranſparent Liquor; of which three or four ſpoonfuls, may be given in Broth, or by it ſelf, three or four times in a day.*

Such Diſtillations of Fleſh by Deſcent, are very convenient for Hectical Perſons; but thoſe that are made by Aſcent, although they refreſh the Spirits, yet do they very little nouriſh; neither do they reſtore the ſolid ſubſtance of the Body.

Let the Patients Drink be, Barley Water, either by it ſelf, or with Syrup of Vinegar, or Pomegranates mingled therewith, or Water in which a piece of Bread hath been boyled, ſweetened with a little Sugar. But if the Patients Stomach be very weak, weak Wine wel allaied with Water may be allowed, which helps the concoction and diſtribution of Nouriſhment. *Galen*, Meth. 10. Chap. 5, 6. gives cold Water, with which he boaſts he had ſaved many from the Maraſmus. Howbeit, great Caution is to be uſed in the giving thereof; for when the Body is very much pined away, it is to be feared leſt the ſmal heat of the Patient ſhould be wholly extinguiſhed. And therefore it is only good when an Hectick is feared, or in the beginning thereof, and to ſuch as are accuſtomed thereunto, and while the Body is yet ſufficiently ful of blood.

Motion of the Body is not good, but the Patient muſt be enjoyned to reſt; howbeit before Meat, if ſtrength wil bear it, ſome light exercise wil be good; or inſtead thereof, a few light frictions or rubbings may ſerve turn, eſpecially preſently after ſleep, beginning at the inferior parts of the Body; for they provoke the Humors outward. And the Patient muſt be rubbed no longer than til a light redneſs begin to appear upon the Skin; for to rub longer would dry the Body. Carnal Embracements muſt be above al things avoided, which do very much conſume the ſubſtance of the Body.

Let the Patient ſleep, neither very long, nor very little. For long ſleep encreaſeth the heat of the Bowels, by the retiring of the Natural warmth inwards: too ſhort ſleep dries the body more. But there is leſs inconvenience from ſleeping a little over largely, than too ſcantily, becauſe ſleep doth exceedingly moiſten, which in this Feaver is very much to be deſired. Let the Patient ſleep in a ſoft bed, and that a Flock-bed, not a Feather-bed, and large enough. Let the Patients Linnen be often changed, which muſt be ſprinkled with Roſe-Water before they be put on.

If there be Coſtiveneſs, the Belly muſt be provoked with a Suppoſitory, or a Clyſter of Chicken Broth, with Barley, Mallows, and Violet Leaves boyled in it; adding Caſſia, Honey of Roſes, Butter, and the Yolks of Eggs.

Finally, The Mind muſt be preſerved in peace and cheerfulneſs, avoiding vehement Perturbations, as Anger, Sadneſs, Fear.

As for point of Meditaments fit for Hectick Perſons, they are Internal or External. Among Internal, in the firſt place Purgers muſt be conſidered; and becauſe addition is more neceſſary than detraction in this Diſeaſe, Purgers can hardly be convenient, unleſs a putrid Feaver be joyned with the Hectick. Yet if the firſt Region of the Body ſeem filled with Excrements, becauſe of Crudities ariſing from a weak Stomach, Purgation may ſafely be uſed with Caſſia, Manna, or Syrup of Roſes. May verily, if ſtrength be not deficient, the Infuſion of Rhubarb may be given, with a Decoction of Prunes, Tamarinds, Myrobalans, Buglos, and Violets.

But Altering Medicines may be reduced into the form of Juleps, Broths, and Emulſions, after this manner:

Take *Waters of Endive, Lettice, Sorrel, of each four ounces: Syrup of Violets, Water Lillies, Apples, of each one ounce. Mix all into a Julep for three Doſes, to be taken at ſeveral times in one day, and to be continued for divers daies together.* Or,

Take *whol Barley one pugil: Leaves of Endive, Cichory, Lettice, Pimpernel, of each one handful: Flowers of Borrage, Buglos, Violets, and Water-lillies, of each one Pugil: Damask Prunes three pair: Boyl all to a pint and an half. In the ſtrained Liquor, diſſolve ſimple Syrup of Cichory, and of Water-lillies, of each two ounces. Make of all a Julep for four Doſes.*

Of the ſame Simples with a Chicken or a Pullet, may be made a Broth for the ſame uſe. Or,

Take *Roots of China one dram and an half: Entire Barley two pugils: the four greater cool Seeds half an ounce. Beat all together, and therewith fill the Belly of a Capon, or yong Pullet, and make Broth; to which add Sugar of Roſes half an ounce. Let the Patient take of this broth a long time together. It reſtores fleſh and fatneſs.*

Take

Take *ſweet Almonds blanched and infuſed in cold Water one ounce: the four greater cool Seeds, and of white Poppy ſeeds, of each one dram. Beat all together in a marble mortar, powring on by little and little a pint of barley Water. In the ſtrained Liquor diſſolve Sugar Cakes made with Pearl four ounces. Make hereof an Almond* Milk *for three Doſes.*

If we be minded more powerfully to cool, we muſt add to every Doſe of the Julep or Emulſion, two ſcruples or one dram of Sal prunella.

In the uſe of Refrigerating things, this is to be obſerved, That we uſe not the more powerful all of a ſudden, or frequently; for they might extinguiſh a weak heat. But it is better to cool by little and little, than ſuddenly. And Moiſteners are alwaies ſafer than Coolers, becauſe they exercite their Operations ſlowly.

While the foreſaid Remedies are uſing, we muſt be careful to ſtrengthen the Bowels, by a convenient Opiate, which may be made after this manner:

Take *Conſerve of the flowers of Borrage, Bugloſs, and Violets, of each one ounce: Conſerve of the flowers of Water-lilly half an ounce: Powder of the Electuary* Diamargaritum frigidum *four ſcruples: Shavings of Ivory, Bones found in hearts of Stags, of each half a dram: Pearls prepared, and Coral prepared, of each one ſcruple: three Leaves of Beaten Gold: With Syrup of Apples, make of all an Electuary.*

In extream conſumption of the Fleſh, nouriſhing Clyſters are frequently to be injected, of the Broth of a Chicken, or Weathers Head, with Sugar and the Yolks of Eggs. But their Quantity muſt be ſmal, or elſe compreſſing the Guts, they wil provoke the Expulſive Faculty to drive them out.

But among other Medicines moſt convenient for Hectical Perſons, Milk is a principal one, it being endued with all the qualities which can be deſired in this Diſeaſe, namely, of cooling and moſtening; it nouriſheth much, and is eaſily diſtributed into all parts of the Body. In the uſe whereof, the ſame Cautions muſt be obſerved, which were ſet down in the Cure of a Conſumption.

Among External Remedies, a Bath of freſh Water is principal; for it powerfully cools and moiſtens, and relaxeth the external Parts that they may more readily receive Nourithment. Among the Ancients the uſe of Baths was moſt frequent, and there were four parts of the bathing place: In the firſt ſomwhat warm, they put off their Cloaths: In the ſecond there was a bathing Veſſel of hot Water: In the third a bathing Veſſel of cold Water: In the fourth the Sweatineſs and Moiſture was dried off. *Galen* in 10. Meth. Chap. 19. doth thus moderate the uſe of theſe parts of the Bath; That the Patients ſhould be brought into the firſt part of the Bath, which was heated with the vapor of the bath, that the pores of their bodies might be opened; then being anointed with freſh ſweet Oyl, they were to be plunged in the hot Water to moiſten their bodies; and then they were of a ſudden to be thrown into the cold Water, quickly to be taken out again, and to be dried and anointed with Oyl, that the pores being cloſed, the moiſture may be received from the hot bath, might be retained. But inaſmuch as the Induſtrious Diligence of the Ancients in the uſe of bathing, is long ſince out of uſe; and our Practitioners have likewiſe left this Method of bathing Hectical perſons, which they judg unſafe, ſeeing it is to be feared, leſt by the ſudden receiving of the cold Water, the Patients Body ſhould be hurt, and the Patient not be able to endure the ſudden ſence of contrary qualities. So that our Practitioners do more adviſedly, and more compendiouſly, whiles they conveigh the Patients into a bath of Water moderately hot, in the morning, after a ſtool procured by Nature, or by Art, and two or three hours after they have eaten ſome broth, or milk, or the Yolks of Eggs; wherein they abide ſo long, till it grow luke-warm of it ſelf, and at laſt cold. For ſeeing *Galen* conceives the uſe of a cold bath after an hot to be ſo neceſſary, that without it the hot bath doth no good: the uſe of a cold bath is ſupplied, if the Patients ſtay ſo long in the bath til of it ſelf it grow luke-warm, and cold. But this Caution is to be obſerved, That whereas a three-fold quality may be had in the ſame bath, the Patient muſt abide in the hot a little while, in the luke-warm longer, in the cold leaſt of al.

And although the Ancients were wont to make their baths of ſimple Water; yet is it good to make them more moiſtening by boyling therein Emollient and moiſtening Herbs, as Mallows, Marſh-mallows, Violet Leaves, &c. or with barley and beaten Almonds, eſpecially in the Summer, becauſe a bath of Decoction of Herbs is ſooner corrupted. After bathing, the ſick is ſoftly to be wiped with hot Cloaths: then to be anointed with Oyl of Violets, ſweet Almonds, with freſh Butter; and after ſome time of reſt, let the Patient eat ſome broth, or other food.

A bath of Water and Oyl, is exceedingly cried up by *Zacutus Luſitanus*, in the 35. Obſervation of his third Book of wonderful Cures; wherewith he ſaies a yong woman was cured, whom a bath of ſimple Water and Goats Milk could not help. The reaſon of which great good, he renders to be this; Becauſe a bath made of freſh Water, with ſtore of Oyl in it, doth ſoften the diſtended ſtiff parts, doth moiſten the dry and withered: and by opening the pores obſtructed, and through dryneſs contracted, it draws the Nouriſhment to the outmoſt, and moſt diſtant parts of the body.

When

When the Patient cannot use baths, apply an Epithem to the Heart and Liver, in this manner compounded.

Take *Waters of Roses, Water-lillies, and Purslain, of each three ounces: Juyce of Pome-Granates an ounce: Powder of* Diamargaritum frigidum *two drams: Bones out of the Stags Heart one scruple: Camphire four grains: Make an Epithem for the Heart.*

Take *Waters of Endive, Lettice, Cichory, of each three ounces: Vinegar of Roses one ounce: the three Sanders, of each two scruples: Burnt Ivory one scruple. Make an Epithem to be applied to the Liver.*

Also the Region of the Liver may be anointed with Oyntment of Roses, or *Ceratum Santalinum.* But Oyls and Unguents must be sparingly used, because they may sometimes encrease the Feaver.

Among the Symptomes which are wont to come upon this Disease, the chief is a Looseness, which is wont to bring the Patients to their death. This is to be bridled with a Decoction of French-barley toasted, for their ordinary drink, Syrup of Quinces, dried Roses, Chalybeate Milk, Rice boyled in Milk, and such like.

SECT. II.

Of Putrid Feavers.

The PREFACE.

Putrid Feavers are divided, into Continual, or intermitting. The continual Putrid Feavers are generated when a putrid Vapor, or a preternatural Heat, which ariseth from putrefied Humors, doth perpetually afflict the Heart, and stirs up therein a continual Heat; from whence likewise is perpetually diffused a Feaverish Heat into the whol body. But the intermitting Feavers are caused, when the said Vapors are carried unto the Heart, only at certain distances of time. Continual Feavers are again divided into Essential, and Primary, or Symptomatical. Those are called Essential and Primary, which spring from a putrefaction inflamed in the common Veins, and not in any particular part of the Body. Those are Symptomatical that arise from the putrefaction or suppuration of som particular part inflamed; out of which part by communion of the Vessels, a putrid vapor may continually be carried unto the Heart: Such feavers are seen in the Pleurisie, Inflamation of the Lungs, Inflamation of the Liver, and in the Inflamation of other Internal Parts. Again, the Primary continual Feavers are two-fold; for some are without any Exacerbation or Fits, and remission, but continue alike from the beginning to the end, and are called Sunochi, *or* Continentes. *But others have manifest Exacerbations or fits, and remissions, and are called* Sunecheis, *or* Continuæ, *by the name of the kind. And these again from the difference of their Exacerbations or fits, and remissions, are divided into three sorts. For some are called continual Tertians, which have their Exacerbations or fits every third day; others continual Quotidians that are exasperated every day; others continual Quartans, that are exasperated every fourth day. The intermitting Feavers or Agues, are likewise divided into Tertians, Quotidians, and Quartans, according as their Fits are wont to return every third, every fourth, or every day. There are other Differences of Feavers likewise, which are either Accidental, or arise from the Composition of those aforesaid; all which we shall Particularly and briefly Explain.*

Chap. 1. *Of Continual Putrid Feavers.*

ALthough there are divers sorts of a continual putrid Feaver, yet have I determined to describe the Cure of them all together, because in a manner the same Remedies are suitable to all, of which some differ only in more or less, and are accordingly to be varied; which depends more upon the Judgment of a Physitian, and his Dexterity attained by Practice, than upon particular Precepts, Yet shall I as neer as I can, observe what is peculiar to every sort of Feaver, in its peculiar place.

Feavers Putrid, Continual, and Primary, or Essential, are wont to be bred of the putrefaction of Humors, which are contained in the Veins and greater Arteries: And according to the various Nature of putrefying Humors, several Species do arise.

Synochus

Synochus Putrida is diſtinguiſhed with no fits or exacerbations, but its whol time is taken up as it were with one fit, which reaches from the beginning to the end of the Diſeaſe and of this as of a ſimple Feaver there are made three differences. The firſt whereof is, that which continues all alike during from the beginning to the end. The ſecond is that which encreaſes by degrees. The third is that which decreaſes by little and little. The firſt is named *Acmaſtica* or *Homotones*, and it happens when the whol courſe of the Diſeaſe the manner of putrefaction is one and the ſame. The ſecond is called *Epacmaſtica*, when more putrefies than is diſſipated. The third is called *Paracmaſtica* when leſs putrefies than is diſſipated. Yet although theſe kind of Feavers do perpetually increaſe or decreaſe, or keep the ſame Tenor: yet doth not this hinder but that they have four times, if they terminate in health; but ſome have them longer, others ſhorter, if they be conſidered according to the vehemency of the *Symptomes*. So that which is called *Homotonos*, hath a very breif beginning and Augmentation, but a long ſtate. The Epacmaſtick hath a long augment: the paracmaſtick a long decumation, but the other times do quickly paſs away. Yet we muſt know, that the times of Putrid Feavers are two wayes conſidered; either with reſpect to the Symptomes, or with reſpect of coction and crudity; which two in other Feavers do commonly coincide or happen at one and the ſame time: But in theſe continent Feavers called *Synochoi* it is not ſo. For their times ought not ſo much to be defined by the increaſe and decreaſe of the Symptomes, as by the ſigns of Concoction or non Concoctions, which appear cheifly in the Urines.

Now *Galen* propounds two ſorts of this continent Feaver called *Synochus*: one ſpringing from Blood putrefying, of which he treates in the ſecond of his Method Chap. 7. and 9. as alſo in the 9. of his Method Chap. 3. and 5 another ariſing of choller putrefying in the greater veſſells, of the kind of burning Feavers, which he explaines in his ſecond of the Differences of Feavers and the ſecond of Criſes Chap. 6. The firſt is called *Synochus Sanguinea*; and the other *Synochus Biliosa*. For although the whol Maſs of Humors contained in the Veins do go under the name of blood, yet do we acknowledg four Parts thereof, of which the more temperate is ſpecialy called Blood; the hotter Part Choller; the rawer and colder, flegm; and the thicker and more dreggy Melancholy. So then; if that more temperate Part, which is more eſpecially called Blood, do ſurmount the reſt in quantity, and the whol Maſs putrefy, that Feaver is cauſed which we term *Synochus Sanguinea*. But if the thinner and hotter Part of the Blood, which is of the nature of Yellow Choller, do exceed the reſt, and putrefy, that Feaver is cauſed, which we term *Synochus Biliosa*.

Synochus Putrida is ingendred by the ſame cauſes which are wont to produce the ſimple *Synochus*. And ſo not only the ſhutting the pores of the Skin, but the obſtruction of the veſſells alſo, by reaſon of much Blood and thick and clammy Humors, is wont to cauſe this Feaver. For ſeeing by ſuch like obſtructions the Tranſpiration of Fuliginous Vapours is hindered, putrefaction is bred in the blood redounding within the Veins.

A continual tertian, which every third day doth more afflict the Patient than ordinary, takes its Riſe from bad and Chollerick Blood putrefying in the *Vena Cava*. And the Cauſes thereof are all ſuch things as multiply this Humor in the Body, as an hot and dry diſtemper of the Liver, Meats hot and dry, Youthfull Age; faſting or very ſpare Diet; vehement and frequent exercile; hot and dry conſtitution of the Air; over great watchings and ſuch like.

A continual Quotidian (which the Barbarous writers term *Latica* or lurking, becauſe it hath a certain, hidden and concealed heat) is produced by flegmatick blood putrefying within the Veins; & therefore it hath its exacerbations or fits every day. It is wont to aſſail flegmatick bodies, as of Infants and Children and old men, as alſo of ſuch as are of a fat and corpulent conſtitution given to idleneſs and cramming of bellycheat, and inhabiting moiſt places. This kind of Feaver happens but ſeldom becauſe flegm is hardly putrefied.

A continual Quartan, is that which is exaſperated every fourth day, being Cauſed of Melancholly Blood putrefying in the branches of *Vena Cava*. And all things may Cauſe this Feaver, which are apt to breed Melancholly Blood and to cauſe the ſame to putrefy. Howbeit this kind of Feaver is moſt rarely obſerved.

The accidental differences of Feavers are taken from their evil Symptomes, which are wont to be complicated with the Eſſentiall, and from them they are named. Among theſe are wont to be reckoned *Febris Ardens* that is the Burning Feaver, *Colliquans* the *Melter* or diſſolving Feaver; the Shivering Feaver *Horrifica*, *Aſſodes* the tumbling, toſſing and vomiting Feaver; *Hydros* the ſweating Feaver; *Syncopalis* the ſwouning Feaver *Epiala* the Feaver which makes the Patient hot and cold at one and the ſame time.

Cauſus or *Febris Ardens* the burning Feaver, is properly that, which is perpetually accompanied with theſe two ſymptomes viz. an ardent burning heat, and an unquenchable thirſt though the Patient drink never ſo much. *Galen.* 3. Epidem. Com. 3. text 34. It is divided by the ſame *Galen* in *Com.* 4. *de Vict: Rat:* in *acutis text.* 13. into a Ligitimate or baſtard burning Feaver. The Legitimate or exquiſite burning Feaver is that, which hath the two ſymptomes afore-

foresaid, allwaies, and evidently conjoyned therewith. The bastard, in which those symptomes are less vehement, the thirst less Urgent, and the body not so burning. The Ligitimate is Caused by a Chollerick Humor putrefying within the large Vessels near the heart; the bastard is caused by Choller mingled with Flegm or Salt Flegm putrefying in the Vessels aforesaid. Whence it appeares that a Ligitimate burning Feaver is no other, but a continual *Tertian* Feaver, whose Matter is more sharp and plentiful than ordinary and conteined in the larger Vessels which are neer the Heart; whereas the Matter causing a simple continual Tertian is in Vessels Remoter from the Heart. Again there are two sorts of an exquisite burning Feaver the one from the beginning to the end hath one only accession or fit, which we before named *Synochus Biliosa*, and it is likewise called *Synochus Ardens*; which is caused when the Humor putrefying doth occupy all the Vessels which are most neere the Heart: the other is named *Ardens Periodica* and conteines in it self divers fits or accessions; it is caused by the same Choller conteined in the Vessels neer the Heart, but not in all or not so neer as in *Synochus Ardens*. So that a Continual Tertian, *Synochus Ardens*, and *Ardens Periodica*, do differ one from another, only as the Choller causing them is more or less sharp, plentiful, and neer the Heart.

Febris Colliquans, the Melting Feaver is of the kind of burning Feavers, which in regard of the exceeding heat, doth suddainly melt the Fat, Flesh, and substance of the solid Parts, and sometimes the Blood conteined in the Veins, and dissolve the same, by insensible Transpiration, Sweats, Urines or Stools. It is wont to be caused by a thin, sharp and Chollerick Matter, which is vehemently inflamed, and *Galen* teaches that often times there is adjoyned thereunto a malignant and pestilential Quality. Comment in 3. *Epid. Sect.* 3. *Sent.* 57.

Horrifica Febris, in Greek *Phricodes*, is that Feaver in which the Patient doth often undergo shaking fits, it is caused by a mingled Matter, viz. Partly Chollerick and Partly Flegmatick or wheyish, which being unequally moved is wont to excite those Horrors or Shakings; either because the thin sharp and wheyish Matter, doth twitch and nip as it were the sensible and membranous Parts; or the inflamed Choller doth putrefy and put in motion the crude Humors; or because Nature doth in Vain seek to shake of the crude undigested Humor whereupon the Heat being driven Back to the Centre the Extream Parts of the Body are cold; and afterwards, when the same blazes out again, they grow hot.

Assides Febris, the Feaver so called, is a kind of burning Feaver, in which the sick do tumble and toss and are exceeding unquiet, much oppressed with the disease, being for the most Part subject to stomach sickness and vomiting. Because it is wont to arise from the vexation of the Stomach by sharp and Chollerick Humors, biting the orifice or Coats thereof.

The Feaver *Elodes*, is that in which the Patient prepetually Sweats: and it is caused by a mighty Putrefaction or Maligunty of Humors, dissolving the Substance of the Body.

The Feaver *Syncopalis*, is that in which the Patient often Swoones and Faints away. *Avicenna* makes two sorts hereof, one of thin sharp and Venemous Choller: another of much Flegm, or abundance of crude Humors. The former is called *Syncopalis Minuta*, because it arises from a little Quantity of Humor, but thin and malignant. The latter *Avicenna* doth call *Syncopalis Humorosa vel Repletionalis*, because of a great Quantity of crude and Flegmatick Humors abounding therein and there is also Joyned a weakness of the mouth of the stomach, by which means especially the sick persons come to Swoon so often.

That Feaver is by *Galen* termed *Epiala* 2. *de diff. Feb. cap.* 2. *& Lib. de inæquali intemperie cap.* 8. in which at the same time, through the whol Body in the smallest particles thereof there is felt both cold and heat. For, albeit one and the same Part cannot be the subject of contrary qualities: yet is that which hath been said of this Feaver to be understood of the smallest particles in respect of sense, but not indeed and in truth. *Galen* shewes that this Feaver is caused two waies; the one is by means of Glassy Flegm mingled with bitter Choller and so diffused into the whol body. For Choller causes a sence of heat and the Flegm a sence of cold. The other is by means of Glassy Flegm alone, but partly putrefied and partly void of putrefaction. For, inasmuch as Glassy Flegm is extream cold and clammy, it doth not readily putrefy, nor al at once, but only by peecemeal; so that one portion thereof being putrefied the other remains unputrefied. That Part of the said flegm therefore, which is not putrefied being shed among the sensitive Parts, causes a sence of cold, by reason of the extream coldness thereof; and that which is putrefied causes a sence of heat. And so the whol body at one and the same time feels both cold and heat. *Platerus* also hath invented a way how this Feaver may be bred, viz. when intermitting Feavers, or Agues, do one fal upon the Neck of another the same day in the same Patient, so that the cold fit of the latter Ague begins, ere the hot fit of the former be ended; or else when intermitting Feavers concide with those which are continual, so that the heat of the continual Feaver and the cold of the Intermitting, happen at one and the same time.

There are likewise other accidental differences of continual Feavers, which because they are wont

to

to be reckoned among the Symptomatick Feavers; they ſhal be diſcuſſed forthwith in the Deſcription of the ſaid Symptomatick Feavers.

Now although the Cure of Symptomatick Feavers depend upon the Cure of thoſe Diſeaſes in particular, from whence they ariſe, yet muſt we declare their Nature, leaſt they come to be confounded with Eſſential or Primary Feavers.

Thoſe therefore are called Symptomatical Feavers, which ariſe from the Inflamation and putrefaction of Humors contained in ſome of the Bowels. Of which kind are thoſe Feavers which accompany the Pleuriſy, Inflamation of the Lungs, Frenzy, Squinzy, Inflamation of the Liver, and other Inflamations, Ulcers or Impoſtumes of the internal Parts.

And it is diligently to be obſerved, as a thing of great moment in Practice and by few taken notice of, that al Feavers perpetually which are Joyned with Inflamations of the Parts of the Body, are not Symptomatical; But that ſome of them are eſſential & the foreſaid Inflamations do follow upon them. For it often falles out that Blood corrupted or filled with evil Humors, after it hath raiſed a Feaver, comes to be agitated by Nature and her as hurtful to her expelled to the weaker Parts, or to ſuch as are moſt convenient to receive them: whereupon an Inflamation is cauſed in thoſe Parts, which doth not cauſe the Feaver, but is rather a Conſequent thereof. So we may often ſee in the Courſe of our Practice, the Patients ſick of a continual Feaver, for a day or two before Pain in the ſide and other Signes of a Pleuriſy appears So many on the third or fourth day fal into a Phrenſy; ſo, al Gouty perſons in a manner, before they are troubled with Pain, ſwelling and Inflamation of their Joynts, are wont to have a continual Feaver for a day or two. So they which have the Roſe or Saint *Anthonies* Fire, have a Feaver ſomtime, before the ſwelling break forth. The ſame thing appears by the Urine, which in ſuch Inflamations as theſe, do ſhew manifeſt ſigns of putrefaction in the Veins. For in the beginning they appear crude and undigeſted, and in the progreſs, they ſhew tokens of concoction dayly encreaſing. Alſo Blood is often taken away very corrupt. Which things would not happen if ſuch Feavers were only Symptomatical, ſimply depending upon thoſe Inflamations.

And theſe Feavers whether they be Symptomatical or primary and attended by Inflamations of the Parts, have their accidental differences. For if the Inflamation be of Blood, the Feaver is called *Phlegmonodes*: if it be of Choller, *Typhodes*. And peculiarly an *Erysipelas* or Chollerick Inflamation of the ſtomach and Guts brings the Feavers called *Zipyria*, in which the outward Parts are very cold and the inward Parts burn. For the inward burning doth drew the Blood and ſpirits to the Part inflamed; whereby the heat is ſo encreaſed, that the inward Parts ſeem to be burned with unquenchable thirſt, but the outward are cold, being deſtitute of heat and ſpirit.

Lenta Febris, the ſlow or Lingring Feavers, is wont alſo to be reckoned amongſt Symptomatical Feavers, which ariſes from ſome hidden obſtruction and putrefaction, ſticking ſo cloſe to ſome Bowel and ſo impacted, that the ſubſtance of the Bowel is for the moſt Part Vitiated. And when a portion of the putrid Humor is ſhed into the Veins and mixed with the Blood, it ſtirs up a ſlow Feaver, and ſo mild, that it troubles the Patient with no greivous ſymptom, yea and the Patient is ſcarſe ſenſible of any Feaver. Yet ſome notes of putrefaction appear in the Pulſe and Urin. And ſomtimes this *Febris Lenta* is bred of the putrefaction and corruption of ſome of the bowells; becauſe by the Veins inſerted into that Bowel, putrid and hot Vapors do breath unto the Heart. Such a kind of Feaver is often bred in the Conſumption of the Lungs, which degenerates into an Hectick. It is alſo ſomtimes cauſed when the ſubſtance of the Liver or ſpleen corrupts: or when putrefaction ſettles upon the Meſentery, the Caul or the Pancrea, or other Parts; or alſo ſomtimes when the Child or After-birth are corrupted in the Womb. And hence not only ſlow Feavers, but ſomtimes alſo acute ones do ariſe, according to the different Nature of the putrefactions. And finally, to this kind of ſlow Feavers, thoſe are to be referred, which are found in Cachectical perſons, and in Maids which have the Green-Sickneſs; which *Fernelius* conceives do ariſe from a light putrefaction of wheyiſh flegm ſhed abroad in the Body.

Beſides theſe forenamed differences of continual Feavers, which are moſt frequent, and are commonly ſet down by Authors; there are alſo ſome other, ariſing from peculiar and extraordinary Cauſes, which ſomtimes we meet with in our Practice. The Caſe of a certain Infant may ſerve for example, propounded by *Zechius* in his 46. Counſel. The Infant was ſcarce two yeares old, and had a continual Feaver, with moſt greivous Symptomes viz. Unquietneſs, convulſions, and continual ſtomach Sickneſs encl ning to Vomit; and it was conjectured that there was ſome Malignity adjoyned, becauſe ſuch greivous ſymptomes did not anſwer to that Feaver. For al the external Parts were cold, though the inner Parts were burned with heat, as appeared by the heat about the breſt and under the ſhort Ribs, and alſo from the dryneſs and blackneſs of the Tongue. The Cauſe of which was blood putrifying contained in the ſtomach. For this Infant being tongue-tied, was lately cut by a Chirurgion, in which work ſome Veins or other was opened which ſhed ſome blood into the ſtomach, which putrefying there, by ſending forth hot, putrid, and as it were poiſonous Vapors into the heart and Brain, was the Cauſe of al the ſymptomes aforeſaid. But how,

this cauſe was found out and removed, it is worth the while here to recite, out of the Story of *Zechius*. *So often* (quoth he) *as I diligently conſider with my ſelf, how hard a thing it is to underſtand internal Diſeaſes, and their cauſes, I come eaſily to be of the mind that* Hippocrates *in his ſecond Book of vulgar Diſeaſes, Sect. 4. did not without greateſt premeditation leave in writing; then in the Curing of all hidden Diſeaſes, the Phyſitian muſt diligently enquire the firſt aſſault of the Diſeaſe, that is to ſay, the firſt occaſion of the Patients illneſs. For of that for the moſt part depends the knowledg both of the Cauſe and Cure. See an Example hereof: This Diſeaſe of the Gentlemans Child was very acute, and the Cauſe very hard to find, had not I diligently asked of the Parents touching the conditions of the Child and the Nurſe; who told me that two daies before its being firſt ill, a certain Chyrurgeon had cut the Membrane, whereby the Tongue of it was faſtened to the parts beneath it. And when I again asked them, if preſently after this was done, they had cauſed the Child to be held forward, or if any blood had come out of its mouth; they ſaid no, it was neither ſo held, neither came any blood from the mouth of it. Whereupon I preſently conjectured, that blood was fallen from the place cut into the Stomach, and there putrefied, and was the cauſe of the Diſeaſe, and Symptomes aforeſaid. Neither did my Opinion deceive me; for having given it Oyl of ſweet Almonds to make it vomit, it uttered a conſiderable quantity of clotted blood, and matteriſh. Alſo it voided with a Clyſter many clodders of blood. And preſently, by the bleſſing of God Almighty, the Feaver was abated, and all Symptomes began to ceaſe. Whereupon it fell greedily and luſtily on ſucking its Nurſe, and all the following night it ſlept quietly, and was afterward perfectly well.*

The Diagnoſtick Signs of putrid continual Feavers, do ſome of them ſhew the continuity, others the putrefaction, and the reſt the peculiar differences of them.

The continuity is eaſily known, in that the Feaver is continual, and hath no intermiſſion.

The putrefaction is ſignified by a ſharper heat than ordinary, and more biting, and by a ſharp and biting Sooty vapor, produced by the exhalation of putrid Humors. The pulſe is not only great and frequent, and oftentimes inequal; but it hath this peculiar property, That the Syſtole is quicker than the Diaſtole; becauſe the Expulſion of Sooty Excrements is more neceſſary than refrigeration. The Urins are in the beginning crude, or very little digeſted The Exacerbationsor fits keep their certain times, which yet is not to be underſtood of the Feaver Synochus. A cold ſhaking fit at the beginning of the Diſeaſe. Hereunto are added various Symptomes, commonly accompanying putrid Feavers, as ilneſs of ſtomach, vomiting, heavineſs of the body, pain of the head, raving, giddineſs of the head, hiccoughs, anxiety, heart-burning, thirſt, roughneſs and blackneſs of the tongue, ſtretching of the parts under the ſhort ribs, and the reſt. Before which preceded, wearineſs without labor, purſineſs, troubled ſleeps, watchings, tenſion of the parts under the ſhort ribs, difficult breathing, pain and pulſation of the head, ſtomach-ſickneſs, want of Appetite, plenty of ſtinking Excrements, frequent yawnings and reachings, or ſome of theſe.

But the peculiar Differences of continual putrid Feavers, may be diſcerned by theſe Signs following:

A continual putrid Feaver, called *Synochus putrida*, hath the ſame ſigns which were propounded in *Synocha ſimplici*, but more vehement; for the heat is more ſharp, the watchings, head-ach, thirſt, diſquiet, and other Symptomes are more vehement; alſo the pulſe is unequal, ſo that the Syſtole appears greater than the Diaſtole, the Urines are crude, red, and thick.

The Signs of a Feaver from Choller, are burning pain, a pulſe mighty frequent and ſwift, a ſharp Urine, fiery, in the beginning alwaies crude, without Sediment; Stomach-ſickneſs, Chollerick vomitings and Stools Chollerick, much anxiety, mighty thirſt, bitterneſs of the mouth, drineſs and blackneſs of the tongue, watchings, raving, and ulcerous kind of wearineſs, foregoing, paleneſs of Face, or a citrine Color, youthful Age, temperature hot and dry, Summer ſeaſon, hot and dry Diet, Chollerick Evacuations ſuppreſſed. And a continual Tertian is diſtinguiſhed from a *Synochus biliosa*, or continent Feaver ſpringing of Choller, becauſe it hath Exacerbations or fits every third day, but the *Synochus biliosa*, keeps ſtil one and the ſame tenor.

The Signs of a continual Quotidian are, Heat at firſt rather vaporous than biting, afterwards ſomwhat ſharp, but unequal, becauſe of the thickneſs of the Humor which is difficultly diſſolved; the Urines are at firſt white, watry, troubled; afterward ſomwhat red and thick; the Pulſe is ſeldomer, ſlower, and leſs than in the reſt of theſe Feavers; thirſt little or none; ſeldom ſweat, unleſs there be ſalt flegm; the Face of the Patient is ſomwhat bloat or blown up, lax, flaggy, and as it were Lead colored; Drowzineſs, want of Appetite, flegmatick Excretions, a cold and moiſt Temperament, old Age, Winter Seaſon, Cold and Moiſt Diet, Evacuations ſuppreſt, and a dayly Excretion of the Diſeaſe.

A continual Quartan is known by theſe Signs. The Heat is leſs ſharp than in Feavers of Choller, yet ſharper than in Feavers of Flegm; likewiſe Thirſt greater than in a Quotidian, and leſſer than in a Tertian; a Pulſe in the beginning ſlow, rare, languiſhing; afterward ſtronger, frequenter, and very

very unequal. The Urine in the beginning thin, afterwards various; the body dry and lean, of a tawny or swarthy color; Temperament cold and dry; Age inclining; Autumn of the Yeer, or very changable weather; a life intangled with many Cares and Studies; suppression of the Hemorrhoids, Swelling of the Spleen, and Exacerbation or vehemency more than ordinary of the Feaver every fourth day.

The Signs of a *Causus* or burning Feaver proper to that Disease, were propounded before, viz. a burning heat of the Body, and an unquenchable Thirst. Yet it is to be marked, if any Cough arise, that the Patients Thirst is thereby diminished, viz. by such moisture as is drawn by the Cough out of adjacent parts; howbeit, the Cough is never wholly taken away while the Feaver lasts. The other Signs are all such as we have before shewed, do signifie a Feaver from Choler. Yet the signs which signifie a bastard burning Feaver, are much more remiss than the foresaid.

A melting Feaver is known by a sudden Consumption of the Body, and growing lean; the Eyes are hollow, the Temples fallen, Nose sharp, Stools red, fat, stinking, clammy, corpulent, sincere, chollerick, and frothy; the Urines, fat and Oyly.

The Shivering Feaver, and the tumbling and tolling Feavers are to be known, by what is said of them in their Descriptions.

In the Feaver called *Elodes*, the Skin is ever moist with a clammy moisture, and the heat to feel to, is not very sharp. Malignity is distinguished from the largeness of putrefaction; because in case of malignity, the Urines are in a manner Natural, or appear not much different from the Natural; or somwhat swins in the Urines like a Spiders Web, when the Fat melts; or it with the Urine there comes away somwhat like Vetches or Barley, which signifie a melting of the flesh; or finally, abundance of Urine coming divers daies together, when the blood and humors are melted. Add hereunto an extream decay of strength; a smal contracted Pulse, not very frequent. In great putrefaction the Urines are thick and troubled, the Pulse great, tort, and frequent.

Syncopalis Febris, viz. the Swooning Feaver, is known by fainting fits, and swoonings frequently befalling the sick. And that sort called *Minuta*, is distinguished from that *Humorosa*, because in the former are seen the signs of a Chollerick, in the Latter of a Flegmatick Feaver, as they were lately set down.

The Feaver *Epiala* is known only hereby, That at the same time, heat and cold is felt in the whol Body.

Finally, Symptomatick Feavers, and such as are called *Comitatæ*, are known by what hath been said of them in their Historics, or Descriptions.

Now in every of these sorts of continual putrid Feavers, the Prognostick Signs are to be described, by which their events may be presaged.

And first for *Synochus Putrida*, seeing it is of the kind of acute Feavers, it is not without danger. Yet if signs of Concoction do evidently appear upon the fourth day, and no error be committed, it will terminate towards health the seventh day. But if the Signs of Concoction appear later, it may reach unto the eleventh or fourteenth day. But if no signs of Concoction appear, and the sick have a round swollen Face like a Globe, it signifies the Disease will be long. By how much the Urine is redder at the beginning, other signs corresponding, by so much safer it is, and signifies the Disease wil soon come to an end, if there appear therein signs of Concoction; but with signs of Crudity it threatens death, especially if the party be weak. White Urine is the worst of all, and commonly portends death. Among the Differenees of *Synochus*, *Paracmatica* is more secure, *Acmatica* more dangerous, *Epacmastica* most dangerous of all. Furthermore, an exquisite *Synochus*, and benign rightly Cured, is safe; a bastard one that hath malignity in it, with cruel Symptomes, and strength decayed, is dangerous.

Chollerick Feavers, inasmuch as they are acute, are also dangerous; and that more or less, according to the more or less distemper, vehemence of the Symptomes, and validity of the Patients strength. The distemper is measured not only absolutely by the degree of Heat it feels, but also comparatively, with reference to the Natural Constitution of the sick party; so that look how much the heat is encreased above the Natural temper of the Patient, so much the greater is the danger. So a burning Feaver in an old Man, or in Winter, is for the most part deadly. The vehemence of Symptomes, is considered in actions Animal, Vital, and Natural; in Excrements, qualities changed, and proper adjuncts; whose enumeration requires a work by it self, according as we have expounded them, in the third Section of our *Semiotica*, or Doctrine of Signs, out of *Hippocrates* his Aphorisms, Prognosticks, Predictions, and his Coic Prænotions, which may easily be transferred to this place. And finally, the strength of the Patient must be compared with the vehemence of the Symptomes; For if the strength be lusty, and likely to hold out against the Cruelty of the Adversaries, there is good hope; if not, we may justly fear the Patients death.

A continual Quotidian, is wont to be long by reason of the thickness and contumacy of the Humor; but if divers Evacuations happen in its course, it is wont to be the shorter. We must measure the

danger

danger thereof, by comparing the vehemence of the Symptomes, with the Patients ſtrength. And the cheife care ought to be leaſt it degenerate into a Cachexy or dropſy, by reaſon of the obſtructions of the Liver and ſpleen, which happen in theſe long Feavers.

A Primary continual Quartan is moſt rare, yet ſomtimes an intermittent Feaver or Ague degenerates thereunto, and then for the moſt Part deadly.

The melting, ſhaking, Tumbling, Sweating and Swouning Feavers, ſeeing they borrow their Names from ſuch bad ſymptomes as they are attended with; they are in regard of ſuch ſymptomes extream dangerous, and for the moſt Part is deadly.

Finally, the Prognoſtick of Symptomatick Feavers, is to be gathered from the Excellency of the Parts affected, vehemence of the Symptomes and Validity of the Patients ſtrength.

Now in the Cure of al putrid Feavers, we muſt take our Hints or Indications from the Feaver, from its Cauſe and from the Patients ſtrength. The two former indicate their own ablation or removal; the third, its own Preſervation. Which muſt be done by aſſiſtance of thoſe ordinary Medicinal Utenſils viz. Diet, Manual Operation, and Medicaments.

The Diet in all Chollerick Feavers ought to be cooling and Moiſtening, in flegmatick and Melancholick more warming and attenuating. Let therefore the Air be cold and moiſt, which being drawn in by the Lungs unto the heart, doth exceedingly temper the burning heat thereof. Yet muſt not the Patient be laid bare to the cold Air, becauſe tranſpiration, which is exceeding needful, would by that means be hindered; and the ſooty Vapours and ſweats would be driven back again into the Body. Howbeit the ſick muſt be covered only with light and ſoft Coverings, and not loaded with over many blankets or Rugs. alſo the Feather-bed muſt be taken away and a ſlock-bed put in place, upon which alſo in the extremity of Summer a covering of Leather wil conveniently be laid on. Let the bed be wide, that the ſick may change place therein. Let the Patients Linnen Shifts be often changed contrary to the vulgar opinion; provided they be not newly waſhed, nor ſmel of Soap, and that the Time of the Criſis be not at hand, in which nothing is to be ſtirred, leaſt the motion of Nature be hindred and diſturbed. The Sun-beams are to be kept out of the Patients Chamber, and ſtore of Company is to be avoided. Water is often to be powred out of one Veſſel into another, in the ſick Perſons chamber. The Pavement of the Chamber is to be ſprinkled with Water, Vinegar and Roſe-Water mingled; or with cooling Herbs and flowers; as Vine Leaves, Willow Leaves, Leaves of Water Lillies, Flags; Roſes, and flowers of Violets and of Water Lilly; which muſt be kept at hand in good Quantities in a cool place, and be often freſh ſprinkled and ſtrowed about the Patients Chamber; for when theſe Herbs and flowers are dried, they heat the Chamber. If the Chamber be cold, as in winter, it muſt be a little tempered with a fire avoiding Smoak. Howbeit in flegmatick Feavers the Air muſt be Moderately hot and dry.

As for Point of Nouriſhment, the Diet ought to be thin and ſpare in acute Feavers. And therein the Antients were ſo ſevgrely diligent, as to place the greateſt Part of the Cure in ordering the Diet, enjoyning ſuch as were ſick of a moſt acute Feaver, to keep a moſt thin and ſlender Diet; and giving them nothing but a ptiſan drink of Barley Water, as moſt convenient for perſons in a Feaver; ſeeing it cooles, and Moiſtens; withal extenuating and opening and hindering no Evacuation. And they had two kinds of Ptiſans. One ſimply ſo called, or whol Ptiſan not ſtrained; the other was ſtrained, which we cal Barley Cream. Barley cleanſed of the Husks boyled in fair Water, to a Conſiſtency or Pottage, is the whol Ptiſan; this being ſtrained with preſſing, is called Cream or Juyce of Barley.

But in our Times, at leaſt in our Country, by the refractoryneſs of Women [who fear nothing but that the ſick perſon ſhal be ſtarved, as al their care in a manner is to cram their Children with meat like Pudding Bags, how empty their Brains be of wit, or their Hearts of Grace and wiſdome, matters not] and the Indulgence of Phyſitians [who the beſt of them ſmel too ſtrong of the Mountebank] it is grown into a faſhion in al Feavers, yea the moſt acute and violent, to allow the ſick at al times broaths of the fleſh and Hens Chicken, Capons mutton; and that for the moſt Part they give every third or at moſt every fourth hour. And in the Summer the fleſh of a pullet, kid or Lamb is added to the former Diet. And ſomtimes again broaths are made of nothing but a chick with cooling Herbs, as Lettice, Endive, Sorrel and Purſlan. Or to ordinary broaths is added Juyce of Oranges, Lemmons, or Pome-Granats, when the heat of the Feaver is very great, or the putrefaction very intenſe.

Moreover in Feavers not ſo very acute Panadaes are given twice or thrice in a day made of waſhed bread and broath. Alſo Barley broaths are ſomtimes uſed of the Ptiſan of the Antients being ſtrained, with the broath of the fleſh aforeſaid, and Sugar; or without broath, adding ſweet Almonds. But theſe for the moſt Part do oppreſs the ſtomach, and therefore the uſe of ſimple broaths and Panadaes ſeems more convenient. Howbeit very profitable it it to boyl a little Barley with fleſh and thereof to make broaths.

In

In long Feavers, a fuller Diet is fitting, of the fleſh of Chickens, Veal, Hens and Pullets, Capons, Partridges, Mutton, or of the Juyce preſſed out of them, Gellies made with them, and ſuch like.

Concerning the time of giving the Patients meat, this is principally to be obſerved, that they never eat in the time of the Exacerbation or fit but in the time of the Feaver. But if the Exacerbation be very long, let the Patient eat in the declination thereof.

For drink, the Ptiſan of the later Phyſitians, made of the Decoction of Barley with Liquoris, is uſually given in all Feavers. To which if the Feavers be very burning may be added a little Lettice, Sorrel, Tamarinds. But more ordinarily are added the Roots of Graſs or Sorrel which makes the Water look of an Elegant Colour like Wine. But in long Feavers may be added ſweet fennel Roots, Parſley Roots, Annis Seed, Coriander Seed, or Cinnamon, as oft as the ſtomach through weakneſs is offended with drinking.

Take *of the ordinary Ptiſan-drink of Barley and Liquoris two pints: ſpirit of ſulphur as much as ſhall ſuffice for to make it pleaſantly tart. Harts-Horn burnt till it be white one ounce: Let the Patient uſe it for ordinary drink, ſhaking the Veſſel before it be powred forth.*

Alſo Water that hath had a peice of bread boyled in it either by it ſelf or ſweetned with Sugar is good; or mingled with a little Vineger; or Water alone, boyled to take away the Cruditie; wherewith ſomtimes a little Suger is mixed, and ſomtimes a little of the Juyce of Lemmons, Pomgranats, Barberries, Cherries, or of their Syrups; or as much ſpirit of ſulphur or Vitriol as may ſerve for a great full Acidity; or a little *Sal Prunellæ*, if need be of potent refrigeration.

Water is commended wherein are ſteeped Tamarinds, Berberies, or Prunes.

A Decoction of french Prunes is very pleaſing to the taſt.

Or Barley is boyled with Tamarinds, and towards the End, the broath is Aromatized with yellow Sanders and Cinnamon. Which drink doth not only Quench thirſt, but looſens the belly, and cools and ſtrengthens the Liver.

Take *Sugar eight ounces: Sal Prunellæ one ounce: Make it into a Pouder, to be taken with the Patients ordinary drink. Whereunto if thirſt be extream, the ſpirit of vitriol may be added.*

Touching ſpirit of Vitriol and of Sulphur, this is diligently to be obſerved, that in putrid Feavers the uſe thereof is great, becauſe they have a mighty cooling, opening, and putrefaction quelling faculty; prohibit the Inflamation of the Humors, and quench thirſt. Howbeit in the Pleuriſy, Inflamation of the Lungs, Spitting of blood, Conſumption of the Lungs and other Diſeaſes thereof (unles they ſpring from thick flegm ſtopping the Veſſels thereof) Inflamation of the ſtomach, Dyſentery or bloody flux, Piſſing of blood, Ulcers of the Kidneys and Bladder, they do very much hurt and therefore we muſt abſtain form them.

In Feavers ariſing from very thin and hot Choller, or Joyned with a ſharp thin diſtillation, ſharp things are not convenient; but rather ſuch as gently thicken, as Syrup of Violets, of dried red Roſes, with Barly Water, or Bread boyld-Water, or ſimple Water boyled, or ſmal beer, mixed therewith.

Where thick and clammy humors abound, the Syrup of Vineger will be very profitable. in ſtead of thoſe laſt named.

Alſo ſomtimes Conſerve of Roſes, Violets, or Borrage is wont to be mingled with cleer Water boyled, with Barley Water, and to be ſtrained through an Hippocras bag for ordinary drink, unto which ſome drops of ſpirit of Vitriol may profitably be added. Or a Tincture of Roſes is made after this manner, moſt delightful in colour and in taſt.

Take *Red Roſes one ounce: Bloodwarm Water three pints: ſpirit of ſulphur or Vitriol one dram and an half: Let them ſtand infuſing cold for three or four hours. To the ſtrainings add, white Sugar, four ounces: Roſe-Water half a pint: Make thereof a clear Julep for ordinary drink.*

Alſo Julepus Alexandrinus, is very good, and extream pleaſant. It is thus made.

Take *Fountain Water one pint: Roſewater, Juyce of Lemmons, and white Sugar, of each four ounces: Boyl them over a light fire till you have taken away the Scum.*

As for other things pertaining to Diet, Sleep is extream good and watchings bad. Yet over much Sleep doth overwhelm the natural heat and hinder the Evacuation of excrements. Reſt is neceſſary in acute Feavers; but in long Feavers, light and gentle exerciſe is good. Alſo we muſt endeavor, that nothing be retained which ought naturally to be expelled; howbeit al immoderate Evacuations, which exhauſt the ſtrength, are to be ſtopped; and al vehement Perturbations of mind, muſt be turned out of Doors.

Among manual Operations, Blood-letting holds the cheifeſt place. for it doth not only diminiſh plenitude, whether it be a ſimple fulneſs ſo as to ſtretch the Veſſels, or only a fulneſs with reference to the ſtrength of the Patient; whether it be in the whol body or in ſome Part; but alſo revels the influx of Humors Cauſing obſtructions; cools the whol body and makes it perſpicable; keeps back putrefaction, and furthers the concoction of putrefying Humors. Preſently therefore, and at the beginning

beginning of the Diſeaſe, blood muſt be drawn (unleſs weakneſs hinder, as in the Swooning Feaver, and other like Caſes) and that after the Belly hath been looſened with a Clyſter, or a Suppoſitory. How much blood ſhould be taken, is gathered from the Patients ſtrength, from the greatneſs of the Plethora, Cuſtom of the Patient to bleed or not to bleed, and other circumſtances. The Antients in the *Synochus Putrida*, and the burning Feaver, did let blood til the Patient fainted away. But it is much more ſafe (as we have ſaid in the Cure of a ſimple Synochus) to take away at ſeveral times ſo much as ſhall be ſufficient; then ſuddenly to put the Patient in danger of death. *Avicenna* in a burning Feaver, and in a continual Tertian, doth forbid letting blood, unleſs the Urine be thick and red. For he fears leſt Choller ſhould be the more inflamed, which he ſaith is bridled by Blood. But the wiſer Phyſitians do explode this Opinion of his, ſeeing theſe kind of Feavers are often terminated even by Nature her ſelf, by bleeding at the Noſe; and they do ſometimes cauſe Frenzies, and other Inflamations: and finally, becauſe Blood-letting doth potently refrigerate, doth rather ſtop than further the Ebulition, or boyling and working of the Blood, and Choller comes away as wel as Blood when a Vein is opened; ſo that in that Maſs of Blood, which is in the greater Veins remaining, there is the ſame proportion of blood to Choller which there was before. Nay verily, when a Vein is opened, if the ſick party be any thing luſty, and the blood flow amain, only the putrid Blood which is offenſive to Nature is voided, the purer remaining in the Veins; which few Authors have taken notice of, although it be in the courſe of Practice every where obſervable. For if the Blood flow out of the Vein drop by drop, it is the pureſt Blood, becauſe it comes out of the Vein by its own proper motion. But if it ſpring out with a forceable ſtream, it appears foul and corrupted, Nature expelling the worſer part of the Maſs of Blood. Howbeit Blood is more ſparingly to be taken from ſuch as are of a very Chollerick Conſtitution, in the middle of Summers Heat, and the Dog-Daies, than in other Natures and times. But in Flegmatick and Melanchollick Feavers, Blood muſt be taken away in leſſer quantity: and evermore great regard is to be had to Coindicants, and Contraindicants; foraſmuch as Quotidian Feavers do for the moſt part happen unto Children, or old Perſons in cold Countries and cold Seaſons of the yeer; which conſiderations do leſſen the Quantity of Blood, which otherwiſe the Diſeaſe, or its Cauſe require, ſhould be taken away. When the Feaver is cauſed by over much labor, blood muſt be taken away more ſparingly. If a Feaver happen by over great uſe of Carnal Embracements, Blood-letting is pernicious.

Concerning the time of Blood-letting, it is to be noted, That a Vein muſt not be opened preſently after the Patient hath eaten; but after Digeſtion is paſt, and after the Patient hath been at ſtool. Again, Blood is to be let when the Feaver is moſt remiſs, and not in the vigor thereof, for then Nature is not able to bear both the violence of the Diſeaſe, and the loſs of Blood. As for the repletion of Blood-letting, if the ſame be neceſſary, to cauſe Evacuation, it muſt be repeated the ſame day; if for Revulſions ſake, on another day. For where Evacuation is neceſſary, eſpecially in acute Diſeaſes, the Body muſt be ſuddenly changed into another condition; alſo it often happens, that a Diſeaſe is quickly paſt its firſt time or beginning, ſo that afterward we cannot ſo conveniently open a Vein. But in Revulſion we have reſpect to the motion of the Humors, which is then beſt ordered, when it is done at divers times, ſome ſpace being interpoſed, whereby Nature becomes accuſtomed to a contrary motion. For in the ſpace between Bleedings, the Blood which was ſhed into the parts, regurgitates into the Veins, and by another Blood-letting is profitably drawn forth. We underſtand that Blood-letting muſt be iterated, if that blood which was firſt drawn forth, were very much corrupted; and there is reaſon to think, that there is yet a great quantity thereof abiding in the Veins.

Yea verily, Although the Blood at firſt ſeem pure, and uncorrupted, yet muſt we not deſiſt from taking the ſame away, but continue ſo doing until it appear more impure and corrupted. And truly that Precept delivered by *Hippocrates*, in his 4. *de Victus Rat. in Morbis acutis*, in the Cure of a Pleuriſie, may very profitably be obſerved in acute Feavers, viz. That Blood-letings be ſo long continued, til the blood change color; ſo that if at firſt corrupt blood come away, we muſt let it run till it appear more pure; and on the other ſide, if at the firſt the blood appear laudable, we muſt ſuffer to flow, til that which is impure and corrupted be come away.

Yet is there ſome diverſity to be obſerved in both Caſes. For if at firſt good Blood come away; blood ought to be again taken from the ſame Vein; that putrid blood reſiding in the innermoſt parts of the Body, may the ſooner be drawn forth. But if at firſt corrupt blood be taken away, blood is next time to be taken out of the other Arm, and afterwards out of the former again, and ſo in courſe as oft as need ſhal require.

But if the Symptomes declare, that the Putrefaction is in the inner branch of the *Vena Cava* deſcendent; as heat and pain in the Loyns, redneſs and thickneſs of the Urine: after two or three Blood-lettings in the Arms, it wil be convenient to draw Blood out of the *Vena Saphena*, two or three ſeveral times.

If

If in the latter Blood-lettings, ſome part of the Blood ſeem laudable, and not ſo putrid as before; it's a ſign that Nature doth repair and reſtore new good blood inſtead of the corrupt blood which hath been taken away. Contrarily, If the more is taken away, the worſe it comes, its a ſign the Diſeaſe grows worſe, and that Putrefaction is encreaſed; whence there is reaſon to fear a ſtupefaction of the Internal Parts.

The Vein in the bending of the Arm, or the Baſilica, or the Mediana, is for the moſt part to be opened, in the right Arm moſt commonly, ſomtimes in the left, viz. when more diſtention is felt under the ſhort Ribs on the left, than on the right ſide. Yet ſomtimes a Vein is profitably opened in the Foot, if Revulſion be neceſſary and the Patient weak, the Matter of the Diſeaſe being in the Head, and the ſick perſon moleſted with Head-ach, and want of reſt.

Frictions are ſeldom uſed in putrid Feavers, unleſs it be in the Swooning Feavers; the Cure of which we ſhall ſet down in the Cure of the Symptomes of Putrid Feavers, towards the end of the next Chapter.

But Cupping-Glaſſes are more frequently uſed, as being the Subſtitutes of Blood-letting, in whoſe ſtead they ſerve, when Weakneſs or Age of the Patient will not permit a Vein to be opened.

Medicinal Remedies are comprehended under a double kind; whereof ſome are Evacuative, others Alterative. Under the Evacuative, we comprehend Purgatives, Vomitories, Sudoroficks, and Diureticks. Under the Alterative, we comprehend Coolers, Attenuaters, Cutters, Openers, and Strengtheners. Of all which we ſhal ſet down the Compoſition and uſe in order, according to the uſual Method of Practice.

And that we may begin with Purgatives, its a great Queſtion among Authors, Whether or no they ought to be uſed in the beginning of Feavers? Which Controverſie, omitting all Circumlocutions, is thus determined. In reſpect of the Matter immediately producing a continual putrid Feaver, which is contained in the greater Veins, Purgation is not convenient in the beginning; unleſs the ſaid Matter do heave and work, being ſo ſtirred by Nature, provoked by the ill quality thereof, and endeavoring to expel it, that thereby it becomes more diſpoſed for expulſion, and there be danger by the foreſaid working thereof, leſt it ruſh into ſome noble part; howbeit this ſeldom happening, for the moſt part the Concoction thereof is to be expected, before we undertake to evacuate the ſame by Purging Medicines. But in reſpect of the Matter contained in the firſt Region, if it be very much, and do encreaſe the Feaver, oppreſs Nature, and divert her from concocting of that which is in the Veins; Purgatives may be given the next day after Blood-letting, but they muſt be gentle, ſuch as evacuate only the firſt Region. Now that naughty Humors and Excrementitious do abound in the firſt Region, that is to ſay, in the Stomach, Guts, Meſentery, or about the Midrif, may be known by Stomach-ſickneſs, Bitterneſs of the Mouth, Thirſt, Pain of the Stomach, or ſome other part contained in the lower Belly, Looſneſs of the belly, and other Symptomes; in regard of which Purgation is ſomtimes to be practiſed before Blood-letting. Now the Medicines for this intent, muſt be Caſſia, Manna, Tamarinds, *Catholicum*, *Electuarium lenitivum Diaprunum ſimplex*, *Syrupus Roſaceus*, *de Cichorio cum Rhabarbaro*; which may divers waies be compounded after this manner:

Take *Caſſia newly drawn one ounce: Tamarinds half an ounce. With Sugar make it into a Bolus.* Or,

Take *Catholicum ſix drams: Elect. lenitive, or Diaprunes ſimple, half an ounce: Cream of Tartar one dram. Make all into a Bolus.* Or,

Take *Leaves of Endive, Cichory, Sorrel, of each half a handful: Tamarinds half an ounce: Boyl all to three ounces. In the ſtrained Liquor diſſolve Catholicum half an ounce: Manna and Syrup of Roſes, of each an ounce. Mix all into a Potion.*

If you deſire your Medicine a little ſtronger, you may ad a dram or four ſcruples of Rhubarb infuſed in Endive or Cichory Water with yellow Sanders. Yea, and ſomtimes if the Feaver be not very ſtrong, two or three drams of Senna may be added to the Decoction.

Some reject Rhubarb, becauſe it heats; alſo Manna, and Syrup of Roſes, becauſe being ſweet, they are ſoon turned into Choller. But with cooling Waters or Decoctions Rhubarb being infuſed, or Manna and ſuch like diſſolved, can do no hurt; eſpecially if to the ſaid Decoctions, Tamarinds be added, which are much commended to this intent, or if the Pulp thereof be given diſſolved in the Potion.

Some in Chollerick Feavers do uſe the Whey of Goats Milk, and that very pertinently; for it tempers the heat of the Feaver, evacuates Choller, and ſtrengthens the Bowels. In a Cup of Whey they ſteep all night one dram, or one dram and an half of Rhubarb, or they add two or three ounces of Syrup of Roſes, and ſo give it in the morning; and afterward they give the Patient a quart of Whey more to drink, that all the Whey may not be infected with the taſt of the Medicament.

That kind of Purgation which is practiſed in the beginning of putrid Feavers, the Vulgar Phyſitians call Minorative purgation; and that which is practiſed when the morbifick matter is concocted, they call eradicative purgation: which is alſo convenient in the beginning (as was ſaid) in the Judgment of *Hippocrates*, if the matter be turgent. Now this ſame turgeſcence, and boyling as it were of the matter is known hereby, becauſe the Patient perceives in divers Parts light Pains which ſoon go away and ſhift ſuddenly from place to place; and hath divers collours of the Face and other Parts, ſo that ſomtimes there is a redneſs and then again a paleneſs in ſome Part of the Face. And in a word the Patient is exceedingly tormented with anxiety and unquietneſs, continually tumbling and toſſing.

Howbeit that Rule of *Hippocrates* touching the uſe of Purgation, when the morbifick matter doth ferment and work in the Patients body, is not obſerved in ordinary Practice: but when the Humors appear in their fermentation and Motion, we do more ſafely apply our ſelves to Blood-letting; and by that means we do more readily preſent the ruſhing of the ſtirred Humors into any noble Part, which being agitated by the Purgation may more eaſily flow into the ſaid Parts.

Somtime alſo in the beginning of theſe Feavers Vomit is to be procured, viz. when the Patient is much vexed with illneſs of ſtomach and with vomiting for then Nature endeavours to evacuate the morbifick matter upwards, and the Phyſitian ought to aſſiſt her endeavours. And many times it falls out, that great Quantity of matter is conteined in the ſtomach and Parts thereabout, which muſt be Evacuated as ſoon as poſſible may be, by Vomit; ſeeing no concoction can be expected of ſuch excrementitious matter in ſo great a Quantity; and what ever the Patient eats or drinks is changed into ſuch a like Humor and encreaſes the Matter which is cauſe of the Diſeaſe. For *Fernelius* hath well obſerved in his third Book of the Method of Healing, Chap. 3. that all ſuperfluity of Humors in the ſtomach, ſpleen, Pancreas, Melentery, and the Cavity of the liver, is conveniently emptied out by a Vomit, which ſomtimes will not be removed with Medicines that work downwards, though divers times adminiſtred. And it comes often to paſs, that the Matter being Vomited up, the Feaver is taken away at the firſt, which otherwiſe would have proved long, in caſe that matter had been tranſmitted into the more inner Parts of the body, and very wel mixed with the blood.

Now of the three degrees which we reckon of Vomitories, the mildeſt is to be Choſen, as Barley Water Luke-warm with Oyl of Almonds or common Oyl, or with a little Quantity of white Vinegar. Alſo Syrup of Vineger, or Oxymel ſimple which Chicken broath or a Decoction of Dil Seed, Raddiſh or Orach, whereunto alſo Oyl may be added. All which are to be given to the Quantity of a pint or more; for in a leſs Quantity they abide in the ſtomach. And ſeeing theſe weaker ſorts of Vomits are of little efficacy, we may ſomtimes apply our ſelves to thoſe of the middle Rank; which ſhall be propounded hereafter, in the Cure of a Tertian Ague

And not only in the beginning of the Diſeaſe before Blood-letting, but alſo in the whol Courſe thereof, Clyſters muſt be given every day or every other day, if the Belly be not of it ſelf very free, made of a Decoction of Emollient and refrigerating things, ſuch as French Barley, Prunes, Mallowes, Violet Leaves, Mercury Leaves, Beares-Foot, Orach, Lettice, Endive, Houſeleek, Water-Lillies: diſſolving therein *Catholicum*, *Caſſia*, Diaprunum ſimple, Red-Sugar, Honey of Violets, and Honey of Mercury; Oyl of Water-Lillies, Violets &c. But in a violent hot Feaver, it is better not to add the Oyls, becauſe they are eaſily enflamed.

Obſerve in the firſt place, that not above three or four blades of Houſeleek muſt go into one Clyſter, becauſe it cools moſt potently, and being taken in greater Quantity, may hurt the Guts.

Obſerve ſecondly, that in all Feavers of Choller, Clyſters are not to be injected actually hot, but only Blood-warm.

In Feavers that ſpring from flegm, Decoctions for Clyſters are made of the Emollient Herbs with Annis Seed, Seeds of Fennel and of Carthamus; flowers of Chamomel and Melilote; diſſolving therein Hiera Picra, Diaphœnicum, Honey of Roſes, Honey of Mercury, Oyl of Chamomel, Dil, or common Oyl.

And becauſe, as we noted before, abſolute and perfect Purgation, which they cal Eradicative, is not to be attempted till the Morbifick Cauſe be ripened and digeſted; the Phyſitian from the beginning of the Diſeaſe, after the firſt Blood-letting, and when the paſſages neareſt the ſtomach are cleanſed, ought to uſe ſuch Medicaments as prepare crude Humors for digeſtion and Evacuation, and withal temper the Feaveriſh Heat, hinder Putrefaction, and open obſtructions; ſuch as are Juleps, broaths, Emulſions and other things which ſhal be hereafter deſcribed.

Juleps are compounded in a Chollerick matter offending, of Syrups of Lemmons, Pomegranats, Sowr-Grapes, Vinegar ſimple, of the Juyce of Sorrel of Cichory ſimple, with Waters of Endive, Sorrel, Graſs and Cichory.

Or better, of the Decoction of the Roots of Sorrel and Cichory, of the Leaves of Sorrel, Maiden-Hair,

Hair. Garden Endive, Dandelion, the four cool Seeds, Tamarinds, with the Syrups aforesaid.

And sometimes that we may cool more effectually, a dram of *Sal Prunella* is added, for every Dose of the Julep, or so much spirit of Vitriol or Sulphur, as shall suffice for a moderate sharpness.

Sowr things are never to be omitted in Feavers springing from Choller; because bitter things are sweetened by Sowr and acid things: which if they are Sowr in an high degree, as spirit of Vitriol and of Sulphur, they deface the bitterness even of Aloes and Coloquintida. Now yellow Choller being plundred of its bitterness, is dead. And Harmless.

Juleps also of great Virtue, may be made of Juyces and which are very grateful to the taste, after this manner.

Take *Juyce of Apples that smel sweet, newly drawn out and setled four ounces: Juyce of Lemmons three ounces: Rose-Water two ounces: Juyce of Pomegranats one ounce: finest Sugar half a pound: Make of al a clear Julep for three Doses.*

If very thin Choller and sharp be in motion and cause either a Loosness or some other grievous fluxion; Juleps must be compounded which thicken, of Waters of Lettice, Purslain, Plantan, flowers of Water Lilly, Red Poppy and Violets with the Syrups aforesaid.

Yet we must observe that Syrup of Violets and other of the sweeter sort of Syrups, are not to be given alone; both because they loosen the stomach; as also because, ere they can Pass into the Veins, they are turned into an hot Vapor, which doth afterwards cause thirst to encrease. And therefore there must evermore some Quantity of sharp Syrup be mixed with the sweet Syrups aforesaid, that they may more easily peirce into the Veins, and the better resist the Heat of the Feaver.

In the Progress of the Feaver, when Coction begins to appear, to the foresaid Decoctions must be added Roots of Asparagus and Liquoris; Leaves of Agrimony, Pimpernel, Liverwort and Maiden-Hair.

In Flegmatick and Cronick Feavers, things more cutting, attenuating and opening are prescribed beginning with the more weak, such as are Syrup of Vineger, of Maiden-Hair, Syrupus Bizantinus, with a Decoction of Egrimony, Maiden-Hair, Betony, Liquoris, Raisens. And in the progress of the Feaver unto the former we add Syrup of the opening Roots, Vineger compound, of Hyssop, Oxymel simple, and compound. And to the Decoction we add the five opening Roots, Leaves of Hyssop, Carduus benedictus and (if the matter be very impact, Clammy and roapy) of Germander and Centory. Whereunto if Salt of Tartar and spirit of Vitriol be added, they work more happily.

In Feavers springing from Melancholy, such things are added which do moisten, as Syrup of Violets, of bugloss, of Borrage and Apples, towards the Beginning: and afterwards Fumitory, of Epithymum, of the five opening Roots, Oxymel of Squils; with a Decoction, first of Bugloss, Borrage, Cetrach or wall-fern, Maiden Hair, Fumitory, Hops; and afterward Dodder, Scordium, Centory, Bark of Capers, of the Ash-tree and of Tamarisk.

And finally in bastard Feavers, which arise from the mixture of different evil Humors, the Medicines aforesaid must be mixed together; yet so that such as respect the most predominant Humor be put in the greatest Quantity.

For the more nice and dainty sort of Patients, Medicinal broaths are prescribed instead of Juleps: and also that the sick may not grow weary of the same kind of Medicine too long used; and those broths are made of such of the Roots and Herbs aforesaid as are most pleasant to the taste with a chick, or part of an Hen or Capon: unto which sometimes may be added one dram of *Sal Prunella*, or some drops of spirit of Vitriol, when we would have it more cooling than ordinary.

Howbeit in slow and long lasting Feavers, caused by rebellious obstructions hard to be cleared, Germander though bitter and Cichory, Endive and Dandelyon, though bitter, may be boyled in Broaths; and *Montanus* in his Counsels, doth cry up Cichory and Germander boyled in Broaths as an admirable Remedy for such as have a long Feaver with obstructions.

In Feavers from flegm a Decoction of Chamomel is excellent. *Zacutus Lusitanus.* Observat. 26. in the third Book of his *Praxis admiranda.*

Also emulsions or Almond-Milks are very good in putrid Feavers, and are commonly more pleasing than Juleps. They are most in use when the Feaver is Joyned with a dry distemper of the Bowels, or a thin Catarrh, or an Inflamation of the Lungs and Parts serving to breath withal; or for variety, least the Patient should be over tired with continual use of Juleps. Now the Composition of these emulsions, hath been described in the foregoing cures.

Cold Water given in great Quantity in continual putrid Feavers, was wont to be in use among the antients, and is commended by very many latter Physitians. But as we said the use hereof was dangerous in the simple *Synochus*; so in this Case, we think the discreet Physitian shal do best to forbear the same, for the reasons we delivered, in our Chapter of the simple *Synochus.*

Yet will it be sometimes good, in extream heat of a Feaver to give a good draught of cold Water,

to ten or twelve ounces with a few drops of Spirit of Vitriol: For hereby ſometimes the ſame effects are wrought, which *Galen* attributes to cold Water being drunk, the quantity of three or four pints at a time; When as notwithſtanding there are none of thoſe dangers to be feared, which *Galen* himſelf confeſſeth did ſometimes happen upon the prepoſterous drinking down of ſo great a quantity of cold Water as he adviſeth. For the Spirit of Vitriol cauſeth that the Water breeds no Obſtructions, but rather opens the ſame, quickly piercing and paſſing through the Bowels, not biding in the Hypochondria's as plain and ſingle cold Water is wont to do; but is very like the acid Mineral Fountains and Wells, which though they are drunk in great quantity, do not lie heavy in the parts about the ſhort Ribs, but are quickly piſſed forth, and very good againſt Obſtructions.

To ſtrengthen Nature, which in every violent Feaver is much dejected, Electuaries are good, and ſtrengthening Conſerves and Preſerves, compounded of Conſerve of Roots of Bugloſs, Leaves of Sorrel, Wood-ſorrel, Stalks of Lettice, Flowers of Bugloſs, Borrage, Violet, Cichory, and Roſes, Pulp of Citrons. Whereunto are added the Pouders of Coral, Pearls, Ivory, Harts-horn, *Diamargaritum frigidum*, *Diatriaſantalon*, *Diarrhodon Abbatis*, *Confectio Alkermes*, & *de Hyacintho*; which are commonly after this manner compounded:

Take *Conſerve of Flowers of Borrage, Bugloſs, Roſes, of each an ounce: Confectio Alkermes one dram and an half: Pouder of Diamargaritum frigidum, Ivory, Coral prepared, and Pearls prepared, of each ten grains: Sugar of Roſes, the weight of all the reſt: three Leaves of beaten Gold. Make of all an Electuary covered over with Gold, of which let the Patients take often by it ſelf out of a ſpoon, drinking a little of their ordinary Drink after it, or mingle ſome of it with their ordinary Drink, and with their Broths.*

Take *Conſerve of Cichory, Sorrel, Lettice, and of the ſharp Pulp of a Citron, of each half an ounce: Pouder of yellow Sanders, and of Pearls prepared, of each one ſcruple: Spirit of Vitriol half a ſcruple. With Syrup of Violets make all into an Electuary.*

Take *Conſerve of the Flowers of Bugloſs, Roſes, and Violets, of each one ounce: Waters of Endive, Sorrel, and Borrage, of each three ounces. Mix them together, let them ſtand over the warm Embers and heat; then ſtrain the Liquor through a ſearſe; then add Confectio Alkermes two drams: Pouder of the Electuary Diamargaritum frigidum half a dram: Coral prepared, Pearls prepared, and Shavings of Ivory, of each one ſcruple: Syrup of Lemmons and Pomegranates, of each three ounces. Mix all; give one ſpoonful at a time.*

For the more dainty and nice ſort of People, in great debility of Natural ſtrength, this following Julep very pleaſant to the taſt may be compounded:

Take *Waters of Sorrel, Orange flower, and Roſes, of each one ounce and an half: Syrup of Lemmons and Pomegranates, of each one ounce: Confectio Alkermes one dram: mix them. Let the Patient take thereof frequently in a ſpoon.*

Altering Medicines having been uſed for ſome daies together, and ſuch as prepare bad Humors, when the Feaver begins to decline, we muſt ſet our ſelves to purge out the ſaid Humors, when the ſigns of Concoction do appear, avoiding the Critical daies. And this muſt be done with Medicines a little ſtronger than thoſe which were given at the beginning; of which ſort are, Senna, Rhubarb, Agarick, Catholicum duplex, and ſuch like; whoſe Matter and Doſe muſt by the skilful Phyſitian be accommodated to the Humors offending, and the Nature of the Patient. And ſome Phyſitians are ſo bold as to proceed to Scammoniate Medicaments, as *Diaprunum ſolutivum*, *Diaphœnicon*, *Electuarium de ſucco*, *Roſarum* & *Diacarthamum*. Which notwithſtanding are very ſeldom to be uſed in continual Feavers, becauſe Scammony is wont very much to inflame the Humors, and to cauſe vehement thirſt; and that eſpecially in burning Feavers, in which Scammoniate Medicaments are very hurtful. Yea verily, and Rhubarb it ſelf, although a gentle and moſt excellent Medicament, is by ſome ſuſpected as not ſafe in very Chollerick Feavers, becauſe of its notable heating and drying faculty. Howbeit the hurtful faculty thereof may in great part be corrected, by infuſing the ſame in Cooling Waters, and by mingling therewith a Decoction of Tamarinds and cooling Herbs; and by adding thereto Caſſia, Syrup of Roſes, Syrup of Cichory with Rhubarb, and ſuch like.

If the Feaver do ſtil continue, Purgation muſt be ever and anon repeated, uſing between whiles preparatives & digeſtives, til the whol ſeminary of evil humors be taken away. For otherwiſe, if we ceaſe Purging before the Feaver be perfectly abated and gone; the Patient will be in danger of a Relapſe. Yet this Rule needs ſome reſtriction. For if after many Purgations, a lingring feaver continues, which doth by little and little pine the Patients, and ſeem to caſt them into a Conſumption; it will be the beſt courſe to leave Purging, and ſeek to conquer the Feaver only by Alteratives and Diet. For it ſomtimes falls out, when there is ſome evil diſpoſition of the Bowels, cauſing a protraction of the Feaver, that ſo long as Medicaments are given, ſo long the Diſeaſe continues, becauſe that Nature is weakened. Which afterwards (Purgation being omitted) gathers ſtrength, concocts the Cauſe of the Diſeaſe, and being concocted, expels the ſame.

But if a lingring Feaver arise from Obstructions, as is often seen in Children, frequent and very gentle Purging, which draws away the Humors by little and little, is wont to remove the Disease; especially if the Purgation be compounded with Rhubarb, which both opens obstructions, and strengthens the bowels. The Commendations whereof celebrated by *Montanus* in his tenth Counsel of Feavers, is worthy to be set down in this place. He setting down the Cure of a Boy that had a lingring Feaver arising from Obstructions: *Among other things, I shall commend* (saith he) *one which I have by long Experience found never to fail, viz. That he take every day the Infusion of Rhubarb in Endive Water. For I never knew Feaver from Obstructions, which was not cured by this Medicament, provided it were constantly taken without weariness, or giving over. For I have somtimes seen most gross Humors impacted into the narrow passages of the Body, and such Obstructions, as by reason of the weakness of Natural heat could hardly be removed; cured by Rhubarb. My Course therefore hath been to take one pint of Endive Water, and therein to infuse a dram of Rhubarb tied in a thin piece of Linnen. Of which Infusion, having lightly pressed out the Rhubarb, I give four ounces in the morning; and this is the Dose for Children. Neither do I cease giving this Medicament, until I see the Feaver and Obstructions wholly gone. For they will doubtless be cured, if all other things be rightly ordered, and suitable to the Cure.* So far *Montanus*. But we are wont ordinarily to use a Diet Drink made with Rhubarb, which to such Children as are troubled with a lingring Feaver and Obstructions, I am wont to give for their ordinary Drink with good success. It is thus made: Half a dram or a dram of Rhubarb (according as the Child can endure the taste thereof) grosly poudered and tied in a Rag, is infused in two or three pints of smal Beer or Ale an whol day, cold: Of this the Child drinks for a month together, or longer if the stubbornness of the Disease require the same. Whereunto, if the Feaver be very remiss, and the Child flegmatick, a little Wine, or stronger Beer or Ale may somtimes be added, to quallifie the unpleasing taste of the Rhubarb.

After Purgation of the Morbifick Matter, Nature is for the most part accustomed in the declination of the Disease, to purge away the reliques of the Matter offending by Urine, which we may discern, because the Urines are then more thick, or more plentiful than ordinary; which endeavor of Nature must be assisted by Diuretick Medicaments which are most temperate, such as are Emulsions, and the Openers formerly set down in Juleps or Broths; whereunto, if the Feaver be very gentle, some Roots of Fennel and Parsley, or Leaves of Wormwood, may be added, and that especially in Feavers of Flegm, and continual Quotidians.

But if Nature do expel the Reliques of the Morbifick Matter to the habit of the Body, Sudoroficks are to be used; not those hot ones, which are more properly called Sudoroficks; but others more temperate, which are the same in a manner with the Diureticks, and being of an attenuating faculty, do dispose the Humors in such sort, as Nature may more easily expel them by what place or way soever she is most enclined. Howbeit, to these may be added, Cardius Water, Spirit of Vitriol, and other things which shall be more fully described, when we shall treat of Malignant Feavers.

Besides inward Medicaments, divers things are also outwardly applied, to temperate the Feaverish heat, to confirm the strength of the principal parts, or to open the Pores of the Skin, and draw out the smoaky Vapors, and Feaverish Heat: viz. Epithems, Liniments, and other things to be applied unto the Region of the Heart, Liver, and other parts. Which are invented to mitigate the Heat, and are not to be applied save in the state or declination of the Disease, when the Heat diffuseth it self to the exterior parts; not in the beginning or augment, while it resides yet about the bowels; not yet when the Crisis is at hand.

An Epithem to be applied to the Region of the Heart may be thus compounded.

Take the Waters of Bugloss, Sorrel, Water-lillies, Roses, of each three ounces: Vinegar of Roses, or juyce of Lemmons one ounce: the Powders of Diamargaritum frigidum, and Triasantalon, of each one dram: Camphire and Saffron, of each five grains: mix all. Make hereof an Epithem to applied warm with Scarlet Cloth.

For the more strengthening, and to make it smel the sweeter, ad three ounces of Orange flower Water, and one dram of Confectio Alkermes.

Where we desire yet more potently to strengthen, solid Epithems are applied unto the Heart, made after this, or the like manner:

Take *Conserves of Bugloss and Roses, of each one ounce: Confectio Alkermes two drams: Powder of Diamargaritum frigidum one dram and an half. With juyce of Lemmons, or Rose Water, make a solid Epithem, to be applied after the liquid one aforesaid.*

Or one yet more Cordial, may in form of a Liniment, be thus made:

Take *Confectio Alkermes, and de Hyacintho, of each three drams: Powder of Triasantalon, and Diamargaritum frigidum, of each two drams. With Water of Roses make all into the form of a Liniment or Ointment, wherewith anoint the Region of the Heart.*

Also

Also to strengthen to and drive out the Sooty Vapours and the Feaverish heat, young Pidgeons are very good, being split throughthe Back bone, and applied to the Region of the Heart, which likewise are oftentimes sprinkled with cordial Pouders as Diamargaritum frigidum and Triasantalon. Or before they be applied, the Region of the Heart is smeared with *Confectio Alkermes* and the cordial Liniment aforelaid.

Also to the Liver, Epithems are wont to be applied, which are made commonly after this manner.

Take *Waters of endive, Cichory, Sorrel and Roses of each three ounces: Lettice Water two ounces: Vinegar of Roses half an ounce: Pouder of the Electuary Triasantalon one dram and an half: Spodium half a dram: Camphire ten grains: Make of all an Epithem.*

For to cool more powerfully, an Epithem may sometimes be made of Juyces, after this manner.

Take *Juyce of Cichory and Endive of each half a pound, Juyce of Lettice and Vinegar of Roses of each two ounces: Pouder Triasantalon two drams: Mix all and make thereof an Epithem.*

Now it is very profitable to apply cooling Epithems not only to the Liver, but to the whol Region of the Hypochondriaes; for they do not only further Coction, but also help the distemper of the bowels; and hinder the principal Parts from a deadly Consumption.

The Region of the Liver may likewise be anointed with this following Oyntment, which also may be applied to the Reins and Loins.

Take *Oyntment of Roses one ounce and an half: Ceratum Santalinum one ounce: Juyce of Endive one ounce and an half: Oyl of Roses and Wax, as much as shall suffice, to make a Liniment. Whereunto add a little Vinegar of Roses, at the time of anointing.*

Also cooling things are profitably applied to the stones because of the great consent between them and the principal parts of the body; they therfore being cooled, the heat of the whol body is in great measure extinguished. To which purpose such an Epithem as this following may be made.

Take *Waters of waterlilly, Plantain, Roses, and Cichory of each three ounces. Vineger of Roses one ounce and half. White wine two ounces. Mix all and dip a cloath therein cold, and warp the same about the Stones.*

Also the cooling of the hands and feet doth great good, because of the Consent they have with the whol body, by reason of the Arteries Veins and Nerves, which end in those parts.

Neither need we fear least it should hinder the voidance of excrements by the pores, because they are few that come that way; so that there comes more good than hurt by the cooling of those parts.

The Patients may therefore hold in their hands balls of marble, Ivory, Brass or Lead. Or they may hold their hands in cold Water, with a little Wine and Vineger mingled therewith. To the soales of their Feet may be applied the Leaves of Lettice, of Water Lilly, wet in Water and Vineger. Or to wash both, Hands and Feet, the following Decoction may be provided.

Take Leaves of Lettice, Violets, House-Leek, Purslain; Vine Leaves, and Willow-Leaves of each one handful. Heads or Leaves of Poppy (if the Patient rest not) an handful: Vineger one ounce: white Wine two ounces: Fountain Water as much as shal suffice. Make of al a Decoction. Hereunto may be added, if you please, a little Quantity of Lie, for to strengthen the Joynts. Herewith let the Hands and Arms, the Legs and Thighs of the Patient be washed warm, twice in a day, or once at bed time.

We are furthermore to note, that the Antients frequently used baths of fresh Water to cure putrid Feavers, as we may see in *Galen* in his Book *de Marcore. Cap.* 7. and in the 11. of his Method Chap. 9. and 20. and in his 1. to *Glauco* Chap. 9. and those baths were either cold in a vehement Feaver such as is an exquisite burning Feaver; or Blood warm in the declination of Feavers when the signs of Concoction appeared. But in this Age of ours, these kind of baths cannot be used, without danger, and they are convenient only in one Case; viz. when the Feavers become very lasting and possessing a body hot and dry and lean, seems likely to turn to an Hectick.

And one thing yet more I shal ad for a Conclusion of all, that if the Feaver terminate with some Crisis, the reliques of the Morbifick matter, must be taken away with a Purge; especially if the Crisis were by way of Sweat or bleeding. For by those Evacuations only the thinner portion of the matter is voided forth, but the thicker being left behind, as afresh inflamed and brings the Patient into a Relaps. Only therefore that Critical Evacuation which is wont to proceed by way of Stool, is secure from a Relaps. Yet must we not so confide therein as to abstain utually from al Purgation. For the Parts about the Midriff are yet foul, and do corrupt the nutriment which comes into those Quarters, from whence proceeds either a relapse into the former, or some new Disease. Therefore it is for the best way (as some latter Physitians have observed) by repeating once and again a gentle Purge, so to clense away al the remainders of the morbifick Cause, that all fear of a Relapse and al occasion of another Disease may be taken away.

Chap.

Chap. 2. *Of the Symptomes which accompany Putrid Feavers.*

ALL Authours in a manner who have writ of Feavers, have deſcribed thoſe Symptoms which either accompany or follow upon them, with their Cures at the end of their work, that ſo they might be beſt accommodated to al kinds of Feavers. Which Counſel of theirs though I ſhal not diſallow, yet I have thought it much more commodious for the ſervice of Practitioners, to Joyn them immediately after the Doctrin of putrid Feavers, ſeeing in thoſe kind of Feavers they are wont to be moſt vehement and frequent, and require peculiar Remedies.

So that although very many Symptoms are wont to be Cured by the Remedies aforeſaid, accommodated to the Cauſe and the Diſeaſe: yet very many there are more offenſive than the Diſeaſe it ſelf, which are here breifly to be diſcribed.

Head-ach, Want of Sleep and Ravings, are Cured in a manner with the ſelf ſame remedies viz. Revellers, repellers, derivers, reſolvers and anodines. Revellers are emollient Clyſters and ſuch as are Laxative, Gentle Purgations, Blood-letting, Cupping-Glaſſes, and waſhing the Feet. Repellers are frontals, Vinegars, Roſes, Unguents. Or Liniments; Derivers are opening of the forehead Vein, and Veſicatories. Reſolvers are certain Oyls, and certain Live Creatures applied to the Head, which likewiſe are Anodines. And while the foreſaid Remedies are uſed, Juleps are given and Emulſions, to temper and qualifie hot and ſharp Humors. After all theſe come narcotick Medicines, which are not to be uſed, but upon extream neceſſity when other things wil do no good. The matter of al which Medicaments, is ſet down in our Chapters of the Phrenſy and Head-ach proceeding from an hot Cauſe. But in the adminiſtration of the ſaid Medicaments, one thing muſt be diligently noted, that they be not to be uſed, when the Criſis of the Feaver is near: for they would then diſturb the motion of Nature and hinder the Criſis. Which is to be underſtood as of al the reſt, ſo more eſpecially of the narcoticks.

Againſt want of ſleep and Ravings, a Cataplaſm laid to the Soals of the Feet wil be very good, being made of freſh gourds beaten, the Leaves of the larger Houſe Leek, of Lettice and ſuch like. As alſo to waſh the Feet with a Decoction of refrigerating Herbs. For by this means the Coldneſs is communicated through the Nerves unto the Brain.

Convulſions in Feavers, eſpecially Malignant ones, do ſomtimes happen, by reaſon of Malignant Vapors which vex and fret the Skins which cover the Brain called Meninges. Againſt which convulſion fits we muſt uſe revelling Clyſters and Cupping-Glaſſes; alſo often give in Juleps or broaths Epileptick Pouders and finally anoint the Patients back-bone with Oyl of Chamomel, Violets, Sweet Almonds and of the Jndian Nut.

When profound ſleep happens to ſuch as are in Feavers the ſame Remedies are given which have been deſcribed in the Cure of ſleepy Diſeaſes, only obſerving this one thing; that we give no very hot Medicine inward.

The thirſt of Perſons Feveriſh is cheifly allaied with refrigerating and moiſtening drinks. But if thirſt be ſo Violent that moderate drinking cannot aſſwage it (and to drink over much doth much hurt and oft times endangers the Patients Life) we muſt by other means deceive and aſſwage the ſame.

Firſt therefore, let the Patients draw in the cold Air, and abide in Silence not ſpeaking a word, let them keep their mouths cloſe and breath through their Noſtrils, and give themſelves to ſleep.

Let them waſh their mouths with Barley Water Blood-warm, or with Water wherein hath been boyled Jujubees, Sebeſtens, Prunes, Lettice, Purſlain and ſuch like.

Let them hold in their Mouths a peice of Liquoris Scraped and ſteeped in Vineger and Water, or let them waſh their Mouths with Barley Water either ſimple or with a little Vineger in it, or a little Juyce of Lemons, Pomegranats, or a little ſpirit of Vitriol.

Or let them hold in their mouths the Kernels of Pomegranats, or a Slice of a Citron, or a Lemmon, or an Orange, Steeped in Roſe-Water with Sugar; or Stalks of Lettice, Endive, or Purſlain; Leaves of Sorrel, Bits of a Gourd, Cowcumber or Melon firſt Steeped in cold Water; Or Acid Cherries, or red Currence, or Reſ-berries, or Tamarinds, or a peice of Chryſtal, or the Stones of ſharp Prunes upon which a little of the Pap Hangs, and ſuch like.

Alſo Sugar Diſſolved in Roſe-Water with a little ſpirit of Vitriol, and dried again, is very good to quench thirſt.

If thirſt cannot be taken away with theſe lighter things they muſt be permitted to drink, not in the beginnings of the Exacerbations, or fits nor in the Augment, but very ſpareingly, but in the Vigor and eſpecially when it is towards declining: for then large allowance of drink doth carry the heat outwards;

wards, and ſometimes moves ſweat; eſpecially in the fits of Agues, in the declination of which, it is many times good for the Patient to drink unto ſatiety. Several Materials convenient to make Drinks in theſe kind of Feavers, are ſet down in the foregoing Chapter.

But if thirſt be cauſed by a Chollerick Humor contained in the Stomach, the ſaid Humor muſt be voided by Vomit or Stool. Vomit may be procured, if the Patient be Stomach-ſick, with an ounce and an half of Syrup of Vinegar Simple, with five ounces of Barley Water, or of the Decoction of Rhadiſhes. If that will not do, purge the Patient with a Bolus of one ounce of the pulp of Caſſia, and three drams of the pulp of Tamarinds, or with two ounces of Manna, diſſolved in a Decoction of Prunes or Tamarinds; or the following Potion may be given.

Take *Caſſia new drawn ſix drams: Mucilage of the ſeeds of Flea-bane half an ounce: the Decoction of Barley, Prunes, and Tamarinds, four ounces: Syrup of Roſes one ounce. Mix all into a Potion.*

The Heat, Dryneſs, and Roughneſs of the Tongue and Throat, is cured by divers Remedies, applied to thoſe parts, and contained in the mouth, compounded after this manner:

Take *of the Mucilage of Quince ſeeds one ounce: the ſeeds of Mallows half an ounce: Powder of Diatragacanthum frigidum, and Sugar Candy, of each one dram: white Sugar, as much as ſhall ſuffice. Make of all a Lohoch.* Or,

Take *of the Mucilage of Fleabane ſeeds, or Quince ſeeds extracted with Roſe Water, or Lettice Water half an ounce: Syrup of Violets, Lemmons, or Pomegranates, an ounce and an half: mix them. Let the Patients take now and then a little, and hold it in their mouths.* Or,

Take *Cucumer ſeeds half an ounce: Quince ſeeds two drams: Gum Tragacanth one dram and an half: Beat the ſeeds and diſſolve the Gums in the white of an Egg. Mix all, and make thereof little Cakes, for the Patients to hold in their mouths.* Or,

Take *Seeds of Fleabane, and of Quinces, of each one dram and an half: Gum Tragacanth half a dram: Sugar Candy three drams. With Mucilage of Gum Tragacanth make all into little Cakes. Or with a thin Rag make Nodules, which ſhall be ſteeped in Roſe Water, and held in the Patients Mouth.*

If the roughneſs be very hard to remove, make a Gargariſm of the Decoction of Barley, Roots of Marſh-mallows, Leaves of Lettice, Purſlain, Violet flowers, adding thereto Honey of Roſes, Syrup of Violets, or Sugar Candy, or Oxymel ſimple, and ſuch like.

If filth cleaves to the Tongue, as it moſt times happens, it muſt be oftentimes wiped with a rough Cloth dipped in a mixture of Water and Vinegar. Whereunto alſo ſometimes may be added, the Juyce of Houſleek, and Sal prunella.

If the Heat be more vehement, with great blackneſs of the Tongue, more refrigerating Medicines muſt be mixt with the moiſtening ones, after this manner:

Take *Juyce of Lettice, Houſleek, and Lemmons, of each an ounce: Mucilage of Quince ſeeds and Sugar Candy, of each half an ounce: white Sugar as much as ſhall ſuffice. Make all into a Lohoch.* Or,

Take *Green Houſleek one handful: Vinegar of Roſes three ounces: Barley Water one pint: Boyl all till the third part be waſted away. In the ſtrained Liquor diſſolve of Sal prunella one dram and an half: Allum a ſcruple: Syrup of Violets and Mulberries, of each one ounce: Make of all a Gargariſm. Or Sal prunella alone may be diſſolved in Houſleek Water, and the Tongue and Throat waſhed therewith, which is very good; alſo ſome Portion thereof may be ſwallowed to cool the mouth of the Stomach, when it is likewiſe inflamed.*

Alſo outwardly, let the Neck and Throat be anointed with Oyl of Violets, and freſh butter, waſhed in Roſe Water, with which the Throat being as it were ſcorched and parched, may be moiſtened.

For Cooling, the Oyntment of Roſes, and *Galens* cooling Oyntment may be uſed, with others of like Nature. But the Leaves of Lettice and Purſlain being bruiſed and encloſed between two Linnen Cloths, and ſo applied to the Neck and Throat, are much more effectual. Alſo thoſe kind of Bugs which we call Sows, may be bruiſed and laid on in the ſame manner.

In great Heat of the Breaſt, ſuch as is wont to happen in Feavers, the whol Breaſt muſt be anointed with Oyl of Violets, Water-lillies, and of ſweet Almonds. Yea, and if the Heat be very vehement, Fomentations ought to be applied to the ſaid part made of a Decoction of French barley, Lettice, Water-Lillies, Borrage, Violets, and ſuch like; after which, irrigations ought to be uſed of the Oyls aforeſaid. Seeing that, according to the Preſcript of *Galen* and *Avicenna*, in ſuch like Feavers, great care is to be had of the breaſt, as of the Furnace of Heat. Now theſe kind of Remedies, according to the Rule of *Trallianus*, are ſeldom to be cold, becauſe they drive the Heat inward; nor luke-warm, becauſe they relax; but ſuch things ought to be applied to the breaſt, as are actually hot, and potentially cold.

Pain

Pain in the Loyns is cauſed in Feavers by hot and plentiful blood boyling and working in the *Vena Cava*, and it muſt be eaſed by Emollient Clyſters and Cooling, and Emulſions made of the Cold Seeds, adding Sal Prunella; and by anointing the Loyns with *Galens* Cooling Oyntment, with Juyce of the larger Houſleek, and Camphire, or *Unguentum Populeon*, or Oyl of Roſes, Lillies, and Poppies; or with an Epithem made of Plantane Water, Roſe Water, Vinegar of Roſes, and Camphire; or with a Mixture of Roſe Water, Oyl of Roſes, and Vinegar: all which are to be applied actually cold in the Summer, and a little leſs than blood-warm at other Seaſons of the Yeer.

Diſquietneſs, and tumblings, and toſſings, which are wont to happen in the Feaver *Aſſodes*, and in the Fits of a Tertian Ague, are beſt cured by purging away the Chollerick Humor which vexes and frets upon the Stomach, and other ſenſible parts, and that by Vomit or Stool, according as Nature ſeems more or leſs to affect the one or other way; alſo it may be drawn downwards by Clyſters, and preſently all Art is to be uſed to make the Patient reſt, and cold Drink is given, as alſo cooling Juleps, whereunto ſometimes Syrup of Poppies, or a little Laudanum may profitably be added.

Swooning Fits are wont to happen in thoſe kind of Feavers which are commonly called *Febres Syncopales*, or Swooning Feavers, of which there are two kinds, as was ſaid before; and the one is called *Minuta*, the other *Humoroſa*. The Cure of which Feavers, much differing from the Cure of other Putrid Feavers, we have reſerved unto this place, in regard of the ſaid Symptome of Swooning.

The *Minuta Syncopalis*, which is bred of Chollerick Humors, ſharp and venemous, muſt be cured after this manner. Let the Air be cold and moiſt, and a little aſtringent, that diſſipation of the ſubſtance of the Body, may be thereby prevented. Let the Patients Diet be thin, cooling, and reſtorative, of the Broth of Chickens boyled with Sorrel, Purſlain, &c. To which may be added, Roſe-water, Juyce of Pomegranates, and a little Sugar. Bread ſteeped in the Juyce of Pomegranates, or of Oranges may be given, if a more liberal Diet is to be granted, as alſo Cream of Barley, or Panada's with Juyce of Lemmons or Pomegranates. Alſo Reſtorative Broths of preſſed Fleſh with the foreſaid Juyces. To the ſtronger ſort are given the Yolks of Eggs with Juyce of ſowr Grapes, the Stones of Cocks, the Fleſh of Pullets, Hens, Partridges, qualified with the aforeſaid Juyces.

Let the Patients drink with their Meat, if they have no Inflamation of any bowel, thin Wine not very old, nor yet new and windy; or Beer that is indifferent ſtrong, not new, or very ſtale. When they eat not, or otherwiſe if there be Inflamation, let their Drink be Barley Water, or Water in which a piece of a Loaf hath been boyled, with Syrup of Pomegranates, Lemmons, Citrons, Julep of Roſes, &c.

Sleep is good out of the Paroxyſm, but in the ſame it hurts. And finally, ſpecial Care muſt be taken that nothing provoke the Patient to Anger, Sadneſs, and the like Paſſions.

In the Paroxyſm, Reſolution of the Spirits muſt be prevented by blowing cool Air with Fans upon the Patients, and by ſprinkling them with ſweet ſmelling Waters. Their Face muſt be ſprinkled with cold Water, or Water of Roſes, and Vinegar minled. With which the Stones of Men, and the Dugs of Women muſt be bathed cold.

If Heat and Spirits will not be revoked from the Heart to the outward Parts of the Body, it is to be revelled and forced back by binding of the extream Parts, and by nipping and pinching them; alſo pluck the Patients often by the Noſe, pluck them by their Hair, and call upon them often by their Chriſten Name. Give of the Crum of White-bread ſteeped in the Juyce of Pomegranates, or thin fragrant Wine, tempered with Roſe-Water; and when neceſſity urges, ſome Cinnamon Water mingled with Roſe Water. In the mean ſpace, Reſtorative Broths are not to be omitted, wherewith Confectio Alkermes, and ſuch like may be mingled. Alſo Cordial Potions are often to be given out of a Spoon, made after this manner:

Take *Water of Roſes two ounces: Orange flower Water one ounce: Cinnamon Water half an ounce: Confectio Alkermes one dram: Pearls prepared, and Coral prepared, of each half a ſcruple: Sugar Cakes made with Pearl ſix drams: Mix all, and make thereof a Julep, or Cordial Potion. To theſe may be added the Electuaries, and Conſerves, and Preſerves, deſcribed in the foregoing Chapter.*

Alſo the inner ſide of a Loaf hot out of the Oven ſprinkled with Roſe water and Vinegar, may be applied to the Patients Noſtrils, and Mouth.

To the Heart, Cooling and ſtrengthening Epithems may be applied.

To ſtraiten the Pores, and prevent the Evaporation of the Patients ſtrength and Spirits, wrap them in Linnen ſprinkled with Pouder of Roſes, Balauſtians, and Sanders; or let their ſhifts be ſprinkled with Roſe water, and a little Vinegar.

Let their whol Body, eſpecially the Back be anointed with this following Liniment.

Take *Oyl made of unripe Olives, one ounce and an half: Mirtles, Quinces, and Mucilage of*

Seeds of Flea-bane, of each ſix drams: Gum Arabick diſſolved in Roſe-Water two drams, white Wax as much as ſhal ſuffice make all into a Liniment.

A ſpecial regard is to be had of the ſtomach, becauſe the Humor offending is cheifly there collected. Now the region thereof muſt be anointed with Oyl of Roſes and Quinces: and then alſo may be laid on a Toaſt of Bread, wet in Juyce of Quinces and unripe Pomegranats. Or if it be afflicted with great heat, foment the ſtomach blood-warm, with a Decoction of Purſlain and Roſes, or with Juyce of Night-ſhade, Purſlain, Sowr-Grapes adding thereto Oyl of Roſes and Quinces.

The Swooning Fits being removed and the Patient ſtrengthened, we muſt bend our minds to remove the Feaver and its Cauſe. Which may be done, by Alteratives and Evacuators proper for turning Feavers, which we have deſcribed in their proper place: viz. Where the Cure of burning Feavers is ſet down.

The Cure of the ſecond ſort of Swooning Feavers, which is called *Febris Syncopalis Humoroſa*, which is cauſed by abundance of Flegmatick aud crude Humors, is in a manner contrary to the Cure of the *Minuta* newly deſcribed. For the Air ought to be temperate, inclining to heat, light, pure and dry. Meats, of good Juyce eaſily digeſted, prepared with Hyſſop, Fennel and ſuch like Herbs. Let their drink be thin and not very ſtrong. Let their ſleep and Watchings be Moderate.

But Frictions or artificial Rubbings of the Body, and by *Galen* much extolled in this Caſe. In the 12. Method Cap. 3. They muſt be uſed from the beginning of the Diſeaſe, with Courſe Cloaths, beginning above and ſo Rubbing downwards; firſt on the Thighs and Legs; afterwards on the Arms, ſhoulders and Back. Let the Cloaths with which the Frictions are performed be firſt Smoaked with Storax, *Lignum Aloes*, Frank-Incenſe Cloves &c. When after friction the Limbs are luſtily warm, anoint them with Oyl of Dil, of Chamomel, of Orice, of Caſtus and others of a reſolving Faculty. Such Frictions as theſe are highly commended, becauſe they call the natural Heat and ſpirits together with the Humor offending which did Choak the natural ſtrength, into the outward Parts.

In the fit the Sick-party muſt be rowzed, by pulling the Noſe, Rubbing the Eares, plucking off of Hairs, Loud calling &c. Alſo ſweet Smelling things muſt be Applied to the Mouth and Noſtrils, as Cinnamon and Orange flower Water, Vinegar wherein Cloves have been ſteeped, inſide of a white Loaf dipt in *Hippocras* alone, or Cinnamon Water, or the following cordial Water.

Take *Waters of Bawm, Roſe-Mary and Orange flowers of each one ounce; Cinnamon Water half an Ounce*: Confectio Alkermes *one dram*: *Syrup of preſerved Citron Peels and of Gilly-flowers of each one ounce*: *Mix all into a potion or Julep, which the Patient muſt often take of, by a Spoonful at a time. Alſo Electuaries may be made after this manner.*

Take *Conſerve of flowers of Bugloſs, Roſemary, and of Citron Peels preſerved, of each half an ounce*: *preſerved Nutmeg three drams*: Confectio Alkermes *two drams*: *Species of Diambra and Diamoſchum dulce of each one ſcruple*: *With the Syrup of preſerved Citron Peels, make all into an Electuary.*

Unto the Heart Epithems may be applied and young Pidgeons to the ſtomach and Stones; Fomentations may be applied, and other things adminiſtred, which have been propounded in caſe of decay of ſtrength.

While theſe things are in doing, frictions muſt ever and anon be repeated, which muſt in this Diſeaſe never be omitted.

When the Patient hath a little gathered ſtrength, the Morbifick Matter is to be drawn out by Clyſters and Purgations (in which *Hiera cum Agarico*, in regard of the ſtomach, is very profitable) which ought to be gentle and frequent, yet ſo as fitting Preparatives be adminiſtred between Purge and Purge.

Want of Appetice is common in a Manner to al Feavers: for when the ſtomach is inflamed, thirſt is encreaſed, but Appetite of eating diminiſhed. Yet ſomtimes Appetice is ſo dejected that the Patients can hardly ſup a little broath. Which Loathing of Meat is cauſed by Vicious Humors collected in the ſtomach or ſoaked into the coats thereof; or of corrupt and Malignant Vapors which infeſt the ſtomach. It ought to be Cured by Evacuation of the Morbifick Matter by Vomit or Stool, and firſt with an infuſion of Rhubarb and Tamarinds. But in the declination, if the Feaver be not ſtrong, with *Hiera Picra* diſſolved in a Decoction of Barley, Vetches, Wormwood and other detergent things. Afterwards we muſt uſe Clyſters, which occaſionally do revel from the ſtomach. Alſo acid and refrigerating things are frequently to be given, as Syrup of Lemmons, Pomegranats, ſome Cherries &c. given alone or with cold Water. In the declination or when the Feaver ceaſes, Syrup of Roman Wormwood may profitably be given, either alone or mixed with acid Juyces or Syrups. Let Meats that are grateful be preſented to the ſick. For as *Hippocrates* teaches in Aphor. 38. Sect. 2. The Pleaſanter Meat and drink, though ſomwhat the worſe, is to be preferred before that which is bitter and not ſo pleaſant. Alſo let them eat but little and ſeldom, for much

and

and frequent eating cauſes Want of Appetite even in thoſe which are wel. And let their Meats be ſauced (provided they have no cough) with Juyce of unripe Grapes, Vinegar of Roſes and Juyce of Lemmons. If the ſick do ſo abhorer al Meats that they can take nothing at al, let them have nourithing Clyſters given them twice or thrice in a day; the excrements being firſt avoided by a cleanſing Clyſter. When the Feaver is wholly allaied and gone, if want of Appetite do remain, let the ſick perſon Moderately exerciſe, and uſe Capers, Saxifrage, Olives; let him change place and go into a colder Air. And finally if theſe helps ſuffice not let the Patient uſe Wormwood Wine and pils of *Hiera Picra*, which do powerfully cleanſe away ſuch Humors as are faſt ſticking in the Coats of the ſtomach.

Hiccupings and Vomitings which betide perſons in Feavers are oppoſed by divers Medicaments, the materials whereof are to be ſought for in our cures of thoſe Infirmities of Vomiting & Hiconping & to be Judicially accomodated to ſuch perſons as in Feavers are troubled with thoſe Symptoms. But ſpecial care is to be taken that a critical Vomiting be by no Means ſtopped. Hiccoughing ſomtimes proceeds from immoderate uſe of refrigerating things, as *Lemnius* witneſſes, whoſe words *Schenkius* doth thus relate. *Hiccoughing in Feavers doth ſomtimes follow over abundant uſe of Refrigerating Juleps; and I have ſeen many ſo affected by the unadviſed Raſoneſs of Phyſitians, which Symptom contrary to the expectation of all Men, I Cured by giving the Patient Wine to drink.*

A Looſneſs befalling one that hath a putrid Feaver, if it be critical (that is proceeding from the Conqueſt of Nature over the Morbifick Matter and tending to expel the whol or Part thereof) it muſt not be ſtopped; neither muſt a Symptomatick Looſneſs be preſently ſtopped, at the very firſt, if it do not very much weaken the Patient, leaſt the Vitious Humor do flow back again to ſome principal Parts. When it is ſeaſonable to ſtop it, it muſt be done with a gentle aſtringent Purge, with cleanſing and Corroborating Clyſters; by Medicines taken in and outwardly Applied, which do thicken, ſtrengthen and bind. All which may be taken out of our Cure of a Diarrhœa or Looſneſs: beginning with the gentler and proceeding if need be to the more ſtrong by Degrees.

Sweats if they be not Critical (that is cauſed by Nature expelling the Humor offentive) but Symptomatical [that is, cauſed by the vehemency of that Diſeaſe diſſolving the Body, and hurrying the Humors through the Skin] and doth very much weaken the Patient, they muſt be ſuppreſſed by cooling the Air, with ſprinkling cold Water and the leaves of the Willow and Vine-tree upon the pavement; and if need be by opening the Windows; the Body being cooled and ayred by little and little, the Cloths being light upon the Patient, and a Flock-bed being put inſtead of a Feather-bed: alſo by often ſprinkling the Patients Face with Water and Vinegar mingled together, and finally by the uſe of cooling Aſtringent Medicaments; ſuch as are cooling Epithemes applyed to the Heart, Liver, and whol Belly, and often changed. Oyntments made of Oyl of Roſes, of Mirtles, of Mucilages, and Aſtringent Pouders, are to be anointed upon the whol Body; but eſpecially upon the Backbone. Pouders of Roſes, Balauſtians, Pomegranate rinds, Myrtle, Maſtich, Terra Samia &c. Muſt be ſprinkled upon the Neck, Throat, under the Arm-pits, and in the Groins. Or let the Patient be wrapped in a Linnen Cloth, ſprinkled with a mixture of Vinegar and Water, and the aforeſaid pouders ſtrewed thereon; being in the mean time careful that no Inflamation, or Tumor be in the Parts about the ſhort Ribs: for then we muſt abſtain from Aſtringent things, at leaſt ſuch as are ſtrong. The Sweat muſt nõt be wiped off, but ſuffered to dry about the Pores of the Skin, ſo to ſtop them that more may not follow.

Alſo we muſt give in at the Mouth, Medicaments that thicken and ſtrengthen, as Barley Water boiled with Lettice and cooling Seeds; Reſtorative Broths, with Juyce of Pomegranates, ſowr Grapes, Pouders of Corals, Pearls, ſhavings of Ivory, Sanders, or Baulauſtians. Juleps of the Waters of Roſes, Lettice, Purſlain, with Syrup of Pomegranates, dryed Roſes, or Quinces. Conſerved Electuaries, of Conſerve of Roſes, Corals, Pearls, Terra Sigillata, pouders of Diamargaritum frigidum, and ſuch like.

AN APPENDIX.

In the Cure of moſt acute and pernicious Feavers, one thing is diligently to be noted that ſuch Feavers ſeldom happen without ſome inward and peculiar diſorder and commonly Inflamations of ſome of the inward Bowels as Liver, Spleen &c. So that we muſt evermore be careful of the Parts under the ſhort Ribs, of the Head, the Breaſt, the Womb; Reins and bladder: that by al means poſſible we may hunt out, which of thoſe is much out of order, and as much as may be reſtore the ſame to its Natural Conſtitution.

Chap. 3. *Of a Tertian Ague.*

AN Ague, or Intermittent Tertian Feaver, is cauſed by an Excrementitious Chollerick Humor, contained in the firſt Region of the Body, and there putrefying.

A Tertian Ague is either Legitimate and Exquiſite, or Illegitimate and baſtard.

A Legitimate or Exquiſite Tertian Ague, is terminated in twelve hours, and is cauſed by the putrefaction of Natural Choller. But a baſtard Tertian hath fits that laſt above twelve hours. But if it exceed twenty four hours, it is termed *Tertiana extenſa*, a ſtretched Tertian. And it is cauſed either by Preternatural Coller putrefying, or by Natural Choller mingled with other Humors, eſpecially with flegm.

Alſo Tertian Agues are Simple, or Double, or Triple. A Simple Tertian, is that whoſe Fits come every other day. A Double Tertian is that whoſe Fits come every day. And although herein it differ not from a Quotidian or every day Ague, yet they are known one from the other by their proper Signs, ſhewing the abundance of Flegm or Choller in the Patient; of which Signs in their place. Somtimes notwithſtanding in a double Tertian there are two fits in one day, the other day remaining free; and this ſome latter Phyſitians do call two Tertians, and make it to differ from a double Tertian. Which Diſtinction notwithſtanding is of ſmal moment. A Triple Tertian is when there are three fits in the compaſs of two daies. This is a moſt rare and ſeldom ſeen ſort of Feavers. Yet *Galen* propounds one ſingle Example thereof, and I ſaw another in the yeer 1637. in a certain Gentleman, who once in ſixteen hours had a fit of a Tertian Ague. And all the fits did every one of them terminate in the ſpace of ten or twelve hours, by ſweat. Now theſe divers Paroxyſms are made by a different matter putrefying in different places, ſo that each one hath as it were its peculiar Chimney where it is firſt kindled.

Now the Humors cauſing Tertian Agues, are collected chiefly in the firſt Region of the Body, viz. In the Liver, the bladder of Gall, the Stomach, the Meſentery, the Pancreas, or in the Veins of thoſe Parts.

Their Cauſes, are all ſuch things which ingender Excrementitious Choller, viz. An hot and dry diſtemper of the Spleen, youthful Age, Hot Conſtitution of the Air, Watchings, Cares, Anger, Faſtings, uſe of hot Meats, over much Exerciſe. To theſe are added, for the breeding a baſtard Tertian, ſuch Cauſes as engender Flegm and Melancholly. Hereupon, ſuch as have hot Livers, and by Glutinous and bad Diet, do breed many Crudities, are ſubject to baſtard Tertians, by reaſon of the mixture of Choller with crude Humors. And hence alſo it is, that in Summer time, crude Humors bred through weakneſs of the Natural Heat, by eating of Fruits, and over much drinking, being mixed with Choller, do breed baſtard Tertians.

The Signs to know an Exquiſite Tertian by, are theſe: That this Feaver alwaies begins with great ſhaking Fits, whereas in a Quotidian Feaver or Ague, there is only a light ſhivering or coldneſs. After the cold ſhaking Fit, follows great Heat, ſharp and biting, Intollerable Thirſt, great and frequent breathing, want of Sleep, Head-ach, and ſomtimes Ravings. After the ſhaking fit, ſomtimes there follows a vomiting of Chollerick Humors, or a purging by Stool. The Urine is ſomtimes Yellow, Yellowiſh-Red, or Red. The Fits laſt not above twelve hours, and they are terminated by Sweat. Alſo the Cauſes fore-cited, breeding Choller, have preceded.

In a baſtard Tertian, all the foregoing Signs are more remiſs than they are in an Exquiſite one, but more intenſe than in a Quotidian Ague. And according as there is more or leſs flegm mingled with the Choller, the Fits come neerer to thoſe of an Exquiſite Tertian, or of a Quotidian; but in reſpect of the vehemency of the Symptoms, and the length of the Fit it ſelf. So that the Paroxyſms of a baſtard Tertian may be lengthened out to ſixteen, eighteen, or more hours. Although they may be ſomtimes ſhorter, becauſe of the paucity of the Matter, and be terminated within the ſpace of eight, ten, or twelve hours.

The Prognoſtick of this Diſeaſe, is taken out of *Hippocrates*, in Sect. 4. Aph. 59. *Exquiſite or exact Tertian Agues laſt but for ſeven fits at moſt.* And in Aphor. 43. of the ſame Section, *All Intermitting Feavers are void of danger.* Which is to be underſtood only of ſuch Tertians as are void of all malignity. For there are Malignant and Peſtilent Tertians, which though they have evident Intermiſſions; yet do they often kill the Patients. Furthermore, many things fall upon the Neck of a Tertian, which may breed danger, although the Feaver of it ſelf be not dangerous.

Haly writes, and common Experience ſhews, That if ſuch as are ſick of a Tertian Ague, have Ulcers, Scabs, or Puſtles breaking out in their Lips, it is a token the Ague wil leave them. For it is a kind of Critical Evacuation in thoſe parts.

A Looſneſs

A Looſneſs befalling one that hath a Tertian Ague, the matter being digeſted, ends the Diſeaſe. And this is the way by which alone Nature doth perfectly expel the Cauſe of theſe Feavers. For ſeeing the Original Cauſe of theſe Feavers is contained in the Gall-Bladder, or the Liver, or the Meſentery, and other Parts in the firſt Region of the Body; although that which ſteems and vapors therefrom in every fit, do get into the habit of the Body, and is purged away, either by Sweats, or by inſenſible Tranſpiration, or by Puſhes and Pimples; yet the groſs parts and ſetlings of the Humor abiding in their place, which unleſs by the benefit of Nature, or Medicaments it be purged away by ſtool, it is wont to be the Cauſe either of a long Ague, or of Obſtructions, or of a Relapſe, or of other ſtubborn Diſeaſes.

Agues are wont to be of ſmal durance and little danger, if the habit of the whol Body be good, if the bowels be wel affected, if it be Spring or Summer, if the Patient eat little, and drink ſparingly. And contrarywiſe, they are wont to be long and more rebellious, if there be an evil diſpoſition of the Liver or Spleen. if the Patient abound with flegmatick Humors or Melancholick, if the Winter or Autumn be in their full force, if the Patients do eat much, or by much drinking do oppreſs their Natural Heat.

The Cure, as in other Feavers, is to be directed to the Feaver, its Cauſe, and ſtrength of the Patient. The Feaver calls for Coolers; the Cauſe requires Coolers likewiſe, and withal ſuch things as digeſt and purge the Humor offending; the Patients ſtrength calls for things that corroborate and vigorate the ſame.

And in the firſt place, A Cooling Diet muſt be appointed, and which moiſtens; it muſt be the very ſame in an exquiſite Tertian, which we before preſcribed in our Cure of Continual Feavers. But in a baſtard and ſingle Tertian, a fuller Diet ſomwhat, is to be enjoyned, eſpecially if the Diſeaſe prove to be long; for then ſolid Meats are to be given on the wel-day, and five or ſix hours before the fit. But in a double Tertian, as in an exquiſite Tertian, the Sick muſt be nouriſhed only with broth, and other ſupping things.

This is a moſt pleaſant Drink out of *Foreſtus*, for thoſe which have a third day Ague.

Take *Fountain Water two pints*: *Cinnamon half an ounce*: *Sugar three ounces*: *Let all be ſtrained cold and raw, through an Hippocras Bag.*

The Patient muſt not eat when the Fit is coming, according to that ſaying of *Hippocrates*, in Aphor. 11. Sect. 1. For Nature (as *Galen* ſhews in his Commentary on that place) by Concocting of newly eaten Meat, is called away from Concoction of the Morbifick Humors. Add hereunto, That in the fit of an Ague, the whol body is filled with a filthy vapor, which doth mar, and for the moſt part corrupt that meat which is eaten neer the fit. But if the fit prove ſo long, or the Patients body ſo hot and dry, ſo lean and thinly woven together, with wide pores, that it is ſoon diſſolved and diſſipated, and cannot hold out to the end of the fit; the Patient in ſuch a caſe may be allowed to eat in the fit, and it wil be better to eat when the fit is in the ſtate or height, than at any other time. Howbeit, in the beginning alſo, and in the augmentation, neceſſity compelling, Meat may be given. For ſo *Galen* in the tenth of his Method, Chap. 5. was compelled to give Meat even in the beginning of the fits, unto ſuch as had this kind of Ague, being of a hot and dry temperature, unto whom faſting is extreamly hurtful, leſt they ſhould fall into ſwooning fits. And in imitation of him, *Amatus Luſitanus* in the 68. Cure, of the fourth Century, to one that was full of, and vomited pure Choller, and by that means fell into ſwooning fits, he gave bread dipt in water, and ſprinkled with Juyce of ſowr Grapes in the beginning of the Ague fit; by which means he hindered the aforeſaid Symptomes.

There is one thing yet further to be obſerved both in this, and all other Agues, That the Patient do neither eat, drink, nor ſleep, before the fit. But it wil be good that the Patient go to ſtool, by means of a Clyſter, provided the ſame be adminiſtred before the beginning of the fit.

Having therefore ordered a convenient Diet, we muſt forthwith proceed to evacuate the Morbifick Matter, which ſeeing it ſticks in the firſt Paſſages, it muſt be voided not only by Clyſter, but by Purges and Vomitories.

Clyſters in an exquiſite Tertian, muſt be made of an Emollient and Cooling Decoction, with Caſſia, Catholicum, Diaprunum ſimple, and purgative. But in a baſtard Tertian, let the Decoction be of Emollient and Cutting ſimples, diſſolving therein Diaphœnicon, Honey of Roſes, &c.

Purgative Medicaments in an exquiſite Tertian, muſt be the ſame which have been propounded in continual Feavers. But in a baſtard Tertian, there muſt be added Agarick, Senna, Catholicum, Diaphœnicon, and others, ſuch as the Judicious Phyſitian ſhall conceive moſt ſuitable to the conſtitution of the ſick. And in every ſort of Agues, Cream of Tartar may profitably be added to the Medicaments, becauſe it opens Obſtructions, is potently clenſing, and yet cools withal. Purging Medicines are to be given on the day of Intermiſſion, and that in the morning, as commonly is uſed; if the time of Intermiſſion fall within thoſe hours: if not, the middle ſpace between the two fits muſt be choſen. And at any hour of the day or night, we may give a Purge, provided it be far from the Fit, and the Stomach have digeſted what was laſt eaten.

But

But in a double Tertian, 'tis an hard matter to chooſe a convenient time to give a Purge, becauſe many times, not above three or four hours do fal between two fits. Yea, And ſomtime the fits are ſo long, that the one begins before the other be ended, which makes them be called *Febres Subintrantes*, encroaching or intruding Feavers. For then the ſpeedineſs of the occaſion or opportune time, requires the uttermoſt diligence of the Phyſitian. Now the more commodious hour of giving the Medicine, is thus to be choſen. In a double Tertian not encroaching, the Medicament muſt be given in the end of the Fit, at ſuch a diſtance from the following Fit, that the working of the Phyſick may be over ere the other Fit come. But in an encroaching Ague, when the latter Fit interfers with the former, the Medicament muſt be given in the beginning of the declination, as ſoon as it begins never ſo little to remit. And in both Caſes the Patient muſt drink Broth, three hours after the Medicament is taken; yet ſo, as that there muſt be remaining three hours from the Broth-taking before the next Fit begin. So that the Medicament, is to be given at leaſt ſix hours before the next Fit.

As for Vomits, What was ſaid of them in the Cure of Continual Feavers, may be here very commodionſly applyed; becauſe the abundance of evil Humors conteined in the Stomach, Meſenterie, and Cavity of the Liver, which is wont to cauſe theſe Feavers, is brought away by Vomit; which ſomtimes cannot be moved by purging Medicines given again and again, as *Fernelius* hath well obſerved. And therefore, If in the beginning of the Fit, the Patient be vexed with Vomitings, the Phyſitian ſhall do well to follow that motion of Nature. And ſeeing the gentleſt ſorts of Vomits, will not ordinarily ſerve the turn, we muſt proceed to the middle ſort, ſuch as is eſpecially *Aſarum*, of the pouder whereof, half adram, two ſcruples or one dram, is given in Broth, or ſome other convenient Liquor. Others give the Decoction thereof, which is made of three drams of Aſarum Roots, boiled in Chicken Broth, or in Barley Broth made with Raiſons. The Chymiſts do give white Vitriol prepared, and Salt of Vitriol, and alſo *Aqua Benedicta*, which is made of *Crocus Metallorum*. Which, as other Medicaments made of Antimony, as they do ſomtimes happily rid away ſuch morbifick Matter as is lodged in the firſt paſſages about the Stomach and Meſenterie, &c. So do they require a prudent and ſkilful Phyſitian to adminiſter them; otherwiſe they are like a ſharp Knife in the hand of an Infant, or like a Sword in the hand of a Mad-man.

The firſt paſſages of the Body, or firſt Region thereof, being purged, at leaſt with one Purge, a Vein is to be opened in the Wel-Day. Yea verily, And if the Patient be Plethorick, the Urins red and thick, the Cure is well begun by Blood-letting, for the Purge will afterwards work the better.

If the Blood appear very Hot, Aduſt, or Putrid, Bloodletting muſt be repeated; which yet is left to the Judgment of the Phyſitian, according as he finds the Patients conſtitution.

After Purgation and Phlebotomie, we muſt endevor to prepare the Humors, by Juleps ſuch as were ſet down in the Cure of Continual Feavers; the matter whereof muſt be varied, according as Flegm or Melancholly is mingled with Choller, as was obſerved in the place aforeſaid.

In the mean time, whilſt the Medicines aforeſaid are making, the Feaveriſh heat is to be allaied with cooling Epithems applyed to the heart & Liver, ſuch as were propounded in Continual Feavers, with this Caution, that they be never laid on, but in the height of the Hot-Fit, or rather when it firſt begins to abate.

To the Liver alſo and the Loins, Oyntment of Roſes, or the cooling Oyntment of *Galen* may be applyed.

Alſo Emollient and cooling Clyſters, will be very good at the end of the Fit, as well as in the beginning.

The matter being prepared certain daies, by the uſe of Juleps, Purgation muſt be again uſed, with Senna, Rhubarb, Catholicum, Syrup of Roſes; adding thereto Agarick, if Flegm abound. And And if the Patient be ſtrong; we may add *Diaprunum Solutivum*, *Electuarium de Succo Roſarum*, or *Diaphœnicon*.

The Body being again purged, after the uſe of Juleps, if the Fits return and ſeem longer than they were before, it is a ſign that groſs Humors, and ſuch as ſtick faſt in the Body, do nouriſh the Feaver, and breed Obſtructions: In regard of which, cleanſing, opening and cutting things are to be uſed The Principal of which is Wormwood, which is exceedingly commended by *Galen*. In his 1. Book *ad Glauconem* Chap. 9. and Century, which in regard of the rare vertues it has in curing Agues, is called *Febrifuga*, that is to ſay Ague-Queller. But becauſe theſe Herbs are hot, they may be qualified by the Commixture of cooling things, after this manner.

Take *Roots of Graſs, Cichory, Aſparagus, of each one ounce: Leaves of Agrimony, Sorrel, Cichory, Endive, of each one handful: vulgar Wormwood and Centaury, of each an handful: Boil all to a pint. In the ſtrained Liquor diſſolve three ounces of Syrup of Lemmons. Make all into a Julep for to be taken at three times in the morning.*

The Juleps being finiſhed, a Purgation muſt be again adminiſtred or a Vomitory, if Nature affect to diſcharge her ſelf that way. For then, the ſigns of Concoction appearing, theſe Feavers are ſomtimes.

ſometimes happily Cured by Vomiting. And *Galen* in his firſt Book ad *Glauconem* Chap. 10. Writes that many are Cured of this kind of Ague only by a Vomit yea verily and daily experience ſhews, that *Aqua Benedicta* doth eradicate theſe Feavers or Agues for the moſt Part, unleſs ſome contumacious obſtructions of the Bowels do hinder. Many Experiments hereof are propounded by *Martinus Rulandus* in the Centuries of his Cures. But, it is, as was ſaid before, a vehement Medicament, and not to be given without extream Caution. Some give an ounce of *Aqua Benedicta* with the Infuſion of half an ounce of Senna, and ſo it works more by Stool than by Vomit.

Others uſe Cambogia, others *Mercurius Dulcis* with Scammony. Which Medicaments, ſeeing they do potently Evacuate, do often Pluck theſe kind of Feavers away by the Roots, but they are to be given only to ſuch as are ſtrong of Conſtitution.

To theſe Medicaments exquiſite Tertians and Baſtard ones too, are wont to give place. But if the Agues do yet ſtubbornly reſiſt (as it ofttimes fals out) Solemn Purgation muſt be made with an Apozem to be taken three daies, made of the Materials of the foreſaid Juleps, adding thereto Senna, Rhubarb, Agarick, Syrup of Roſes of Cichory with Rhubarb and ſuch like. Yea verily and althoug the Ague be gone before the uſe of this Apozem, if a Voluntary Looſneſs do not befal the Patient. For the ſolution of an Ague by Sweat or inſenſible Tranſpiration, as not to be truſted unto, gives ſuſpition of a Relapſe; becauſe by them the thinner Part only of the Humor is Evacuated, the thicker being left behind: which can no other wayes be Evacuated, ſave by Stool.

Before the Apozem aforeſaid be uſed, if there be a Diſtenſion in the Parts under the ſhort Ribs, let this following Emollient, attenuating and ſtrengthening fomentation be applied.

Take *Roots of Marſh-Mallows, Graſs and Aſparagus, of each one ounce: Roots of Enula Campana and the middle Bark of Tamarisk of each half an ounce: Leaves of Mallows, Violets, Agrimony, Maiden-Hair and Wormwood, of each an handfull: Lin-Seed and Fœnu-Greek Seed, of each one ounce: Flowers of Chamomel, Melilot, Roſes of each a pugil: Boyl all in three Parts of Water and one of white Wine, put in towards the concluſion, with two ounces of Vinegar: with this Decoction foment the Parts under the ſhort Ribs Morning and Evening, for two daies before the uſe of the Apozem.*

After Fomentation, anoint the ſaid Parts with this following Oyntment.

Take *Oyl of Lillies, Sweet Almonds and Tamarisk of each one ounce: Oyntment of Marſh-Mallows two ounces: and a little Wax. Make all into a Liniment.*

If after al theſe remedies, the ſtubborn Ague do yet lengthen the time and keep its ground; and the Patients Face appear ſwoln, and paliſh, alſo their Legs ſwel towards night: they are to be plied with ſuch Medicines as are commonly preſcribed for obſtructions of the Liver. Among the reſt, *Montanus* doth very much commend the Decoction of Cichory and Germander in Broath; which he ſaies is admirable in long Feavers that are cauſed by obſtructions.

Yet, it is to be noted; that the length of a Tertian Ague is ſome times cauſed by an hot and dry diſtemper of the Liver, whith perpetually produces a Chollerick Humor, the Cauſe of new Fits. Which is often obſerved in many, which being of a dry and meagre conſtitution of body and wholly Chollerick, have had a Tertian Ague three or four months together, eſpecially in the more hot ſeaſon of the yeer, without any tenſion of their Bowels, or any aboundance of Humours. To ſuch as theſe, ſtrong purgers, and ſtrong aperitives or heaters do hurt. But ſuch as theſe are to be plied with a cooling and moiſtening diet, with Juleps and Broaths of the ſame Nature. And the ſuperfluous Humors are to be Purged away by little and little with Emollient and Refrigerating Clyſters, with Caſſia, Tamarinds, Catholicon and Syrup of Roſes. But in this caſe eſpecially great miracles are performed by a bath of Blood-warm Water, which doth extinguiſh the hot and dry diſtemper which is imprinted upon the Bowels. Let the Patient uſe theſe baths, on the Well-day, but without ſweating.

Somtimes alſo the Length of Tertian Agues ariſes from the evil diſpoſition of ſome of the Bowels, eſpecially of the Liver and Mezentery; which cannot be Cured by purgations though never ſo oft repeated, becauſe that evil Quality remaining ſtil in the Liver, cauſes new Morbifick Matter daily to breed, which produces new Fits. Which evil Diſpoſition or Quality of the Bowels, is taken away by Diureticks, Sudoroſicks, and other reſolving Medicaments.

With which faculties theſe following ſimples are endued viz. Wormwood, Centory, Carduus, Roots of Dictamnus, of pimpernel, Tormentil &c. Of which are made Decoctions, Pouders, and ſuch like, which muſt be given for divers daies together before the Fit.

A dram of Uenice Treacle is ordinarily given with white Wine, before the Fit, three times one after another.

Some give a walnut preſerved in Sugar or Honey after the ſame manner.

When the Heat of Uenice Treacle is feared, it is at firſt given by it ſelf, and a draught of Plantain-Water

Water is given after it. My Maſter *Varandæus* did often uſe this as a Specifick Medicine.

A Cup of *Hippocras* given before the Fit wil work the ſame effect, with which pleaſant Medicine many have been Cured.

Yet muſt it carefully be obſerved, that theſe remedies muſt not be given, till the Patient hath been diligently Purged.

Zechius Frequently uſed theſe following Pils, which are moſt effectual for opening Obſtructions, ſtrengthening the Liver, and taking away the diſtempers of the Bowels.

Take *Troches of Rhubarb, of Eupatorium, and of Wormwood, of each half a dram: Powder of Diarrhodon Abbatis one ſcruple: with Syrup of Wormwood make a Maſs of Pils. Of which let the Patient take one dram in the morning three daies together, drinking after them a draught of Broath made with Cichory and Maiden-Hair.*

Montanus was wont to give many daies together a ſcruple of Troches of Rubarb or of Wormwood, with Broath in which Barley, Parſeley Roots, Cichory and Borrage have Boyled.

Let the Region of the Liver be anointed morning and evening before Meals, with a Liniment made of two ounces of *Ceratum Santalinum*, Juyce of Cichory half an ounce: Juyce of Wormwood two drams: and a little Vinegar of Roſes.

In like manner let the Region of the ſtomach be anointed with this Liniment.

Take *Nard Oyl, Oyl of Wormwood and of Quinces of each half an ounce:* Gallia Moſchata *one ſcruple: white Wax as much as ſhall be requiſite. Make al into a Liniment.*

Beſides the Medicaments hitherto propounded, which reſpect a regular and Methodical Cure; there are many other ſpecifick and Empirick Medicaments, both internal and external; both commended by Practitioners, and frequently uſed by the common People; out of the almoſt infinite number whereof I ſhal here ſet down ſuch as are the choiceſt. And among theſe Medicines may be reckoned, ſuch things as were before propounded, to amend the evil Quality of the Liver and Meſentery which is wont to make long Agues: whereunto, theſe things following may profitably be added.

And in the firſt place, Spirit of Sulphur in a Legitimate Tertian, or one very neer Legitimate, after bleeding and Purging, being given with Purſlain Water in the vigor of the Fit, doth powerfully extinguiſh the heat of the Feaver; and if the Humor be thin, drives the ſame out by ſweat, that there remaines no matter for a new Fit, and ſo is the Diſeaſe Somtimes pluckt up by the Roots. It is given from half a ſcruple to a ſcruple, with four ounces of Purſlain Water.

And ſomtime the ſaid ſpirit is mingled with Salt of Wormwood, which is alſo of great Efficacy in the Cure of Agues the Compoſition is thus.

Take *Salt of Wormwood half a dram: Spirit of Sulphur a ſcruple: Carduus Water four ounces: Mix them. Let the Patient take it when the Fit Approaches and he covered with many Cloathes.*

Some Affirm that the Juyce of Plantain Clarified and drunk to the Quantity of four ounces, an hour before the Fit, doth Cure a Tertian Ague. Some give it with Vineger and Saffron after this manner

Take *of the Juyce of Plantain four ounces: Vinegar of Roſes half an ounce: Saffron three grains: Mix them and give the Patient to drink, two hours before the Fit.*

Manardus prefers a Decoction of Chamomel, or the diſtilled Water thereof, to the Quantity of four ounces, two hours before the Fit.

A Medicine commonly uſed, and often ſucceſsful, is, a little Potion made of Roſe-Water, Plantain Water and Aqua Vita of each a ſpoonful; given before the Fit.

Theſe following are outwardly applied.

Take *Leaves of Hyſſop and Tanſie cut ſmal, of each a pugil; Mirrh two drams: Mace, Nutmegs, Cloves and Cinnamon, of each half a dram: Venice Turpentine and Juyce of Tanſey, of each one ounce: Mix all and ſpread them upon a Roſe-Cake, fried in a frying Pan with Canary Wine, which being covered with a Linnen Cloath muſt be applied hot to the Region of the ſtomach, an hour before the Fit.* Or,

Take *Wormwood and Green Mint of each a pound: Cruſt of Bread toaſted and ſteeped in Vinegar half a pound: pulp of Quinces, or Conſerve of Quinces made with Honey two ounces: Maſtich half an ounce: Mace and Nutmeg of each two drams: Let al be beaten and luſtily wrought together, with Oyl of Quinces. Make hereof a Cataplaſm to be applied before the Fit. It provokes ſweat and takes away the Pains of the ſtomach.* Or,

Take *Nutmeg, Cloves, Cinnamon, of each three drams: Mirrh and Ginger of each two drams: Make al into a Powder; mix it with Liquid Pitch and make thereof a Plaiſter for the ſtomach.*

Alſo this following Cataplaſm may profitably be applied to the Liver.

Take *white Sanders and Red of each one dram: Barley Meal two drams: Aloes half an ounce: Flowers of Violets and Roſes dried of each one dram: With Juyce of Wormwood and*

Vinegar

Vinegar make a Cataplasm, to be applied to the Region of the Liver one hour before the Fit.

Neither are those Medicines wholly to be rejected which the common people are wont to apply unto the Wrists of such as have Agues. For not only the Opinion of People is hereby satisfied, who conceive that many are cured with these Remedies; but somwhat they may effect, by communicating their vertues unto the Heart by those notable Arteries which are scituate in the Wrists. The chief of which kind of Medicines are these that follow.

Take *Leaves of Plantane, Celondine the great, of each one handful: Cobwebs, Nettle Seeds, Soot from the Chimney, and common Salt, of each one dram: the strongest Vinegar as much as shall suffice. Make of all a Cataplasm to be applied to the Wrists a little before the fit, and to be repeated fresh three or four times.*

Mous-Ear beaten with Salt and Vinegar, is by some accounted of great efficacy, being applied to the Wrists before the fit.

Of some, the smallest sort of Housleek or Mous-tear is commended, being used after the same manner.

Others commend the Leaves of Shepheards-purse beaten with Salt and Vinegar.

Platerus applies unto the Wrists the inner bark of the Nut-tree steeped in Vinegar; which he saith, had been by him used with success.

Finally, Others apply such things as are apt to blister the Skin, as Garlick, Onions, Crow-foot, and the like; which are less safe than the former, and very troublesom to the Patient.

Chap. 4. *Of a Quotidian Feaver.*

A Quotidian Ague is so called, because its fits do return every day. Wherein it agrees with a double Tertian, and a triple Quartan, but is distinguished from them by signs proper to it self. This Feaver is most rarely seen, so that among six hundred Patients that have Agues which come every day, scarce one of them is troubled with a Quotidian or every day Ague.

This Ague is caused by flegm putrefying in the first Region of the Body: And therefore all such things as multiply flegm in the Body, may cause this Ague, such as are, a cold and moist distemper of the Bowels, old Age, Childs Age, an idle life, Autumn Season, Meats cold and moist, long Sleeps and such like.

The Diagnostick Signs are such as testifie flegm to abound in the Body; as greatness of bulk, softness and fatness, white color, or pale, dull sence, profound sleep, and dreams of Water. Also this Feaver for the most part comes in the night, and that without shaking, only with a coldness or light shivering, because the Morbifick Matter being benign, and not much an Enemy to Nature, doth less provoke her; and therefore the heat is not suddenly drawn inward as in a Tertian Ague, but retires by little and little. The time of Coldness being over, Heat is slowly and unequally kindled, so that the Patient feels sometimes heat, and then cold, and then heat again. Also the heat is mild, and not at all scorching, and thirst little. The Urines are at first white, thin, and undigested; and in the process they appear more thick, and better colored. The Pulse is smal, seldom, and slow. The Parts about the short Ribs do swel, and are commonly puffed up, and distended. The fits do commonly last twelve hours, and do not end but so as to leave some Feaverish heat behind them; because this Feaver is like a fire of green wood, which is both long in kindling, and leaves much smoak behind it. Sometimes the fit is extended to twenty four hours, and it seems to be a continual Feaver.

Now these Signs are very variable, and appear more intense or remiss, according as the flegm is either simple, or mingled with other Humors; and likewise according to the different kind of the flegm which putrefies. So that, according to *Galen* in his Book of Plenitude, Chap. 11. Salt flegm makes the Patients thirsty; acid or sowr flegm makes them hungry; sweet flegm makes them sleepy; tastless flegm makes them without appetite to Meat: and likewise Feavers which are caused by acid or Glassie flegm, are wont to come with a shaking fit.

This Feaver is wont to be perpetually long, because of the thickness and contumacy of the Morbifick Matter, and lasts forty dates, and sometimes three or four months. Neither is it without danger, seeing it may degenerate into a Cachexy, Dropsie, Lethargy, and other grievous Diseases. The longer or shorter durance of this Feaver, is known by the signs of Crudity and Concoction, and also by the Evacuations, which for the most part Nature endeavors by Vomit, Stool, or Sweat: For those Evacuations appearing, shew the Disease shorter: but if Nature endeavor no Evacuation, the Disease will prove the longer.

A Quotidian Ague that comes in the day time, is less dangerous than that which comes a nights, as *Hippocrates* doth teach us in 3. *Epidem. Sect.* 5. T. 64. He calls the former a Diurnal, the latter a Nocturnal. The reason of which Prognostick, is because that the Diurnal have longer fits; for reaching unto night, in which the pores of the Skin are closed, the putrid vapors are kept within, not having

having freedom to breath forth by which means, the fits are lengthened, and as *Hippocrates* himself ſaith, do very often bring the Patient into a Conſumption. Ad hereunto, That ſeeing the Intermiſſion happens in the night, we are forced to give the Patient Meat in the night, which is unſeaſonable, and hinders the Patient from ſleeping; by which means great weakneſs is cauſed, and the Patient is much hurt, and the Functions of the Body quite put out of frame.

The Cure muſt be in a manner the ſame with that which was propounded for a baſtard and lingring Tertian, yet ſo as that among ſuch things as prepare the Humors, and open Obſtructions, we make choyce of ſuch, which have a greater power to attenuate and cut the Humors. Alſo in this Feaver a ſpecial care is to be had of the Stomach, which for the moſt part is grievouſly afflicted; and therefore muſt be recreated with ſtrengthening Medicaments, both given in, and outwardly applied. The Cataplaſm of Mint and Wormwood, propounded in the Cure of a Tertian Ague, is very good in this caſe.

Zacutus Luſitanus propounds two Medicines, with which he glories that he had vanquiſhed moſt ſtubborn Quotidian Agues. The one is a Decoction of Chamomel, made after this manner:

Take *Flowers of Chamomel three pugils: Tops of Roman Wormwood two pugils. Boyl all in three pints of Water to a pint and an half. Add to the ſtrainings four ounces of Sugar. Let the Patient drink five or ſix ounces every morning.*

The other is a Decoction of China and Guajacum drunk twenty five daies together; which though Phyſitians are afraid to uſe in ſuch Feavers as theſe, becauſe of the over-great heating and drying Faculty; yet is it mightily commended by ſuch as have writ whol Books of the Spices and Drugs of *India*. Yet we muſt remember that *Zacutus Luſitanus* practiced Phyſick in a Country cold and moiſt, where theſe Medicines may more ſafely be uſed. And therefore in other Countries that are hotter, they muſt not be given ſave unto very Flegmatick and Cachectical Bodies.

Chap. 5. *Of a Quartan Ague.*

A Quartan Ague is that which hath its Fits returning every fourth day, and it is cauſed by Melancholly putrefying in the firſt Region of the Body.

Now Melancholly is of two ſorts; Natural, and Preternatural. The Natural is bred of the thicker and more earthy part of our Nouriſhment, being cold and dry. The Preternatural, is cauſed by aduſtion of Choller, and is therefore hot and dry. Hence ariſe two ſorts of Quartan Agues; for that which is bred of Natural Melancholly, is called a legitimate Quartan; that which is bred of Preternatural Melancholly, is called a baſtar Quartan. Howbeit, the baſtard Quartan may alſo come of Natural Melancholly, being mingled with ſome portion of Choller.

Again, A Quartan Ague is either Single, Double, or Triple. A Single Quartan is when one Fit alone comes every fourth day. A Double is when two Fits happen upon two daies one immediately after the other, and the third day is free. A Triple Quartan is when the Fits come every day, as they do in a Quotidian, and in a Double Tertian. Now theſe Double and Triple Quartans come of Melancholly putrefying in divers parts of the Body.

The Signs to know this Ague by, are firſt, ſuch things as argue that Melancholly abounds in the Patient. Unto which muſt be added the coming of the Fit upon the fourth day, which is the peculiar ſign. Alſo the form of the fit differing from the fits of other Agues, doth diſcover this Diſeaſe. For it begins with yawning and ſtretchings, together with heavineſs of the whol Body; after which follows cold, and then ſhivering and ſhaking, in which the Patients ſeem to have their bones broken. Alſo the heat is kindled by little and little in a cold and thick Matter. The Pulſe is ſeldomer and ſlower than in other Feavers. The Urines are at firſt white, thin, and watry; but in the progreſs they are more colored, and thicker. Now theſe ſigns appear in a legitimate Quartan. But in a baſtard Quartan, the vehemence of the Symptomes being greater, doth argue the Humor to be thinner and hotter. But a baſtard Quartan is not diſtinguiſhed from a legitimate, herein alone, in that in a baſtard Quartan, the heat, thirſt, watchings, and other Symptoms, are more vehement; but in that the legitimate begins of it ſelf, without any Feaver foregoing; but a baſtard Quartan ſucceeds other Feavers and Agues, by reaſon of the aduſtion of the Humor which cauſed thoſe Diſeaſes, by means of which aduſtion, it degenerates into Preternatural Melancholly.

A Double Quartan is eaſily known by the Courſe of the fits. And a Triple Quartan is diſtinguiſhed from a Double Tertian, and a Quotidian, not only by the Signs of Melancholly abounding, and by the form of the Fits; but alſo becauſe it was firſt a Single, or a Double Quartan before it came to be a Triple Quartan. For very rarely, or never doth a Quartan Ague begin with a Triple; but a Simple or Double Quartan degenerates into a Triple.

As

As for what concerns the Prognoſtick; this kind of Ague is wont to be longeſt of all others; and that which begins in the fal of the leaf continues al Winter commonly, and goeth not away til the Spring come. Yea and ſome Quartans continue a yeer or yeers. Summer Quartans are the ſhorteſt. In al of them we muſt have a continual eye to the ſigns of concoction which ſignifie the ſolution of the diſeaſe to be at hand; and with theſe, for the patient to make black urine is a good token.

A legitimate Qurtan is longer than a baſtard Quaartan becauſe the former proceeds from a thicker, the latter from a thinner Humor

This kind of Ague is wont to be very ſafe from danger, eſpecially the legitimate, being accompanied with no grevious affection of any of the bowels. but the baſtard Quartan is more dangerous. and if the Liver, Spleen, or any other part be greviouſly damnified, it degenerates into a Dropſie,

Aged perſons above ſixty years, being taken with a Quartan Ague, do for the moſt part dy of it: becauſe their naturall heat is too weak to overcom ſo contumacious an Hûmor

An intermiting Quartan, being changed into a continual, is for the moſt part deadly. Becauſe that Feaver whoſe motion was outward, is changed into one whoſe motion is inward. Which moſtly falls out in the Winter, the cold meeting with the humours which were but outward and beating them back into the innermoſt Cloſets of the Body. The which alſo come to paſs by unſeaſonable uſe of ſharp and vehement purges. For thereby of ſimple Quartans, double, triple and continual are generated.

A Quartan Ague coming upon one that hath the falling ſickneſs cures the ſame, according to *Hippocrates* in the 70 Aphoriſm of the 5 Section. *Thoſe that have Quartan Agues are not much troubled with Convulſions. And if haveing firſt Convulſions, a Quartan Ague follows, they are freed from their Convulſions*, Now the reaſon which *Galen* in his comment gives hereof, is; becauſe the thick matter which cauſed the Convulſions is by the long heat of this Ague, attenuated and digeſted. Alſo by the ſhaking of the Body in the cold Fits, the ſaid Humor is more eaſily ejected. we muſt alſo add, that the evil Humors lurkeing in the Brain and other parts, as alſo in the veins, is tranſferred to the Hypochondria and more ignoble parts, where the Melancholly Quartanary Humors are ſeated, and ſo leaves the parts aforeſaid.

A bloody flux coming upon a quartan Ague, tends to health according to *Hippocrates* in the 48 Aphoriſm of the ſixt ſection. *To ſuch as are ſplenetick a Dyſenterie is good.* Now in a quartan Ague, commonly the Spleen is miſaffected, and a melancholy humor is common to a quartan Ague and a miſaffected Spleen. but this muſt be underſtood of a ſhort dyſenterie for a long one is wont to be mortal as we have it in the 43. Aphoriſm of the ſaid ſection. *Such as being troubled with the Spleen have a flux of the Belly with pain, if it turn into a long Dyſenterie or Bloody flux, they fall either into a Dropſie or a Lienterie and dy.*

To bleed at the noſe in a quartan Ague, is a very bad ſign. Becauſe the Humor which cauſes a quartan is too thick and too cold to be voided that way; and becauſe ſuch bleeding is ſymptomatical, and if it continue wil breed a dropſie; it muſt preſently be ſtopped by opening the baſilica vein, out of which the putrid blood may flow, becauſe the pure blood comes from the Noſe

The quartan Ague hath a double cure according to the two kinds thereof. For the remedies uſed in a baſtard quartan, muſt be far different from thoſe which are uſed in a legitimate one.

And that we may begin with a Legitimate quartan; we muſt preſently ſet our ſelves to vanquiſh the cauſe thereof, not regarding the Feaver. And ſeeing the cauſe thereof is an humor cold and dry, thick and earthly; we muſt uſe medicaments that do heat, moiſten, and attenuate. Alſo the Peccant Humor muſt be at ſeaſonable times evacuated which notwithſtanding will require a long time to do; becauſe of the extream contumacy of the Humor and length of the diſeaſe. But before theſe medicines be uſed, we muſt appoint the patient a convenient diet. Let the patient therefore uſe meats of good juyce, eaſy to digeſt, of thin ſubſtance, and moderately heating and moiſtening; as the fleſh of young Animals and mountain Birds, new Egs ſoft boiled, Fiſhes that are taken in ſtony Rivers. In the ſtate of the diſeaſe we may allow the patient Salt Fiſh, Capars and Olives. *Galen* 1. *an Glauco.* Grants likwiſe Peper and Muſtard. Among Herbs Borrage is commended and Bugloſs, Pimpernel and Spinach, Fennell and Perſly Roots, but eſpecailly Turneps, which muſt be firſt boiled in water and afterwads in fat broath which is very good for ſuch as have the quartan. *Crato* in his Councels collected by *Scholtzius* brags that he had cured many of the quartan Ague by the ſecond broath of turneps ſeaſoned with Butter and Sugar. Of fruts, Apples and ſtewed Prunes, Raſons of the ſun, fat Figs, Almonds

monds, Dates, Pine-kernels are good. And finally, to Spice their Meats, let them uſe Cinnamon, Nutmeg, and Saffron.

Let the Patient abſtain from Meats which are thick of ſubſtance and clammy and are long in paſſing through; ſuch as the Fleſh of Swine, Beef, Deer, Hares and Water fowl, from Peaſe and Beans, Colewort, Courſe Branny Bread, Cheeſe, Nuts, Walnuts and Chaſtnuts; from Fleſh much Salted, or dried in the Smoak; from fruits, Raw Herbs, from Vinegar, Verjuice, becauſe they are thought as al other ſowr things to ferment Mellancholy and make it work

Let their drink be ſmal Ale or bear of moderate ſtrength and meanly hopped neither new nor hard, Pure and wel Clarifiedwhite Wine or Clarret that is not ſtrong, with Water in which the Bark of Tamarisk or the Leaves of Egrimony have been ſteeped, or a Decoction of *Salſa Parilla*, or Barley Water that hath Steel quenched in it.

Let them eat ſparingly, no more than may barely preſerve ſtrength; for too larg feeding breeds crudities which makes the Diſeaſe of long continuance. But above al, they muſt be very ſpare in drinking, becauſe nothing makes this Diſeaſe more rebellious and hard to Cure than over much drink and moiſt things, for they fil and Swel the ſpleen. *Crato* forbids al uſe of drink in the fit, which to forbear doth much as he ſaies help the Cure. On the fit-day, the Patient muſt eat ſix hours before the fit comes. And afterward nothing muſt be taken til the fit be over. Long ſleep is good, becauſe it moiſtens, but it muſt be forborn in the beginning of the Fit. On the daies of Intermiſſion light exerciſe before Meat, is good; or in place thereof, frictions of the whol Body, after the Patient hath been at Stool. If thee Patient be coſtive, a Clyſter or Suppoſitory muſt be given. Finally let the Patient be as cheerful as may be and avoid ſadneſs

The Patients Diet being thus ordered; firſt a gentle Purgation muſt be adminiſtred, by a Clyſter and a purging Medicament. the Clyſter may be thus Made.

Take *Roots of Bugloſs two ounces: of the four Emollient Herbs, mercury and beetes of each one handful: Fat Damask Prunes five Pair: of the four larger cool Seeds and Annis Seed of each two drams: Epithymum three drams: Boyl all to a pint and an half: in the ſtrained Liquor diſſolve Catholicum one ounce: Oyl of Violets and Chamomel of each one ounce and an half: Red Sugar one ounce: Make of all a Clyſter, which muſt be given the day before the following Potion, at a ſeaſonable time.*

Take *Senna half an ounce: Annis Seed a dram: Leaves of Borrage and Fumitory of each one handful. Liquoris three drams: Boyl all to three ounces: in the ſtrained Liquor diſſolve Manna and Syrup of Roſes of each one ounce: Make all into a potion.*

Galen in 1. *ad Glauco. Ch*: 11. Bids us give only gentle and benign Medicaments in the beginning of this Ague, otherwiſe, it is to be feared, that if we uſe ſtronger Medicaments, of a ſimple Quartan, we ſhal make a double, a triple or a Continual Feaver.

After the firſt Purge aforſaid, Blood muſt be drawn from the *Baſilica Vena* of the left Arm. Yet, if the Liver be affected, it may be drawn from the right Arm. And their Opinion is Ridiculous, who ſay that we muſt expect Concoction before we let Blood, becauſe then the Blood will be more thin and apt to flow: for it is better digeſted and prepared, if firſt ſome Quantity thereof be taken away. Neither muſt we give eare to them which ſay, that Blood-letting is not to be allowed of in a Quartan Ague, unleſs redundancy of Blood do ſhew it ſelf by the Swelling of the Veins and by other ſigns. For there is evermore at the beginning a Plethora ad Vires viz. Such a fullneſs of Blood as the Strength of the Patient cannot mannage, unleſs a Quartan do follow ſome other long Feaver. But that Precept of *Galen* formerly mentioned in 1. *ad Glauconem*, is worthy of al Commendation, which ſaies that if the Blood which firſt comes away be Black and impure, that then the greater Quantity is to be taken away: but if it be Red and Pure, little muſt be taken, and the Patient muſt not be let Blood any more. The wel daies are fitteſt both for Bleeding and purging. Yet ſome let Blood upon the fit day, five or ſix hours before the Fit. which is not Annis, becauſe the Humors beginning then to be moued, are more eaſily drawn out. *Zacutus Luſitanus* ſaies, that it is very good to let Blood when the *Moon* is in the ful. For then, by reaſon of the *Moons* influence, that earthy Melancholick Humor doth Boyl and become more fluid and Apt to come away with bleeding. And he doth Teſtifie that many have by bleeding at that time been helped, and ſome perfectly cured, who could not by any other means receive Help. But Botallus contrary to the mind of *Galen* and al other Phyſitians, doth aver that frequent Blood-letting doth cure the Quartan Ague, yea when it threatens a Dropſie; and he endeavours to confirm his Opinion by reaſons and examples. Which notwithſtanding is to be rejected as a Paradox, ſeeing the Refrigeration of the whol Body cauſed by much Beeding, makes the Morbifick matter more thick and contumacious.

The flux of the Hemorrhoids, is very good in Quartan Agues, and many are thereby Cured. For ſeeing the Hemorrhoid Veins are branches of the Meſaraick Veins, in which the matter of this Diſeaſe is conteined, when they are opened they Evacuate the immediate cauſe of this Diſeaſe. If

therefore

therefore a flux of the Hemorrhoids happens in ſuch as have been accuſtomed thereunto, it muſt not be ſtopped. If it be too ſparing, it muſt be furthered. As alſo if Nature ſeem to incline that way (which is known by itching of the Fundament, and by ſome drops of blood coming that way) the Blood muſt be made to come by application of Leeches.

But in ſuch as have not been uſed to have their Hemorrhoid Veins opened, after bleeding in the Arm, it is good to let them blood in the Ankle Vein; by which oftentimes the Ague ceaſes; or at leaſt that Bleeding, with other Remedies, will haſten the Cure; eſpecially in Women whoſe Courſes are ſtopt, or flow not ſufficiently.

The opening of the Vein between the little Finger and the Ring Finger, called *Vena Salvatella*, is approved by the Antients, and many later Phyſitians, who ſaid it cures the Quartan Ague. But very many others reject this Conceit, as being founded upon no reaſon, becauſe the foreſaid Vein is a Branch iſſuing from the Arm Veins. Yet being commended by others with many Experiments, I conceive it ought not wholly to be neglected. Some hold, it ought to be opened in the Conjunction of the Moon with the Sun; others when the Moon inclines two hours before the Fit, at three ſeveral times, in three immediately ſucceeding Fits, which in ſome perſons hath happened very well.

After theſe firſt Evacuations, we muſt bend our ſtudy to concoct and prepare the Humors, with certain Juleps, compounded after this, or ſome ſuch manner:

Take *Roots of Aſparagus, Bruſcus, Cichory, Bugloſs ſteeped in white Wine, of each one ounce: Bark of Tamarisk half an ounce: Leaves of Borrage, Bugloſs, Ceterach, Maiden-hair, Fumitory, Germander, Ground-pine, of each one handful: Liquoris one ounce: the three Cordial Flowers, of each one pugil. Boyl all to a pint and an half. In the ſtrained Liquor diſſolve* Syrupus Byzantinus, *and Syrup of Maiden-hair, of each two ounces. Make thereof a Julep to be taken at four times, four mornings together. Which muſt alſo be continued many daies, for the Matter being contumacious, requires long preparation. Or if the Patient be nice, and ſqueezy, Broths muſt be made of part of the foreſaid Simples, chuſing ſuch as are moſt grateful to the taſt, whereunto, as alſo to the Juleps, Cream of Tartar may profitably be added.*

With theſe Preparative Medicaments, between whiles, Purgatives muſt be given; ſo that every third or fourth day the Patient muſt take a Purge, with this Caution, That as long as the Matter is very crude, we uſe mild Purgatives: and when Concoction begins to go well forwards, we muſt then give ſuch Purgers as are a little ſtronger. Now the Materials for theſe Purgations are very well known, ſo we need not reckon them up.

It is ſometimes good to preſcribe an Apozem both Purgative and Preparative, for four or five Doſes, that a good part of the Morbifick Matter may be cleanſed away. Which Apozeme may be made of the Materials of the foreſaid Juleps, adding Purgatives thereunto. But if the thickneſs and contumacy of the Humors, with the cold diſtemper of the Bowels, do ſeem to threaten that the Diſeaſe will be long and bring a Dropſie, we muſt then fly to ſuch Medicaments as do powerfully cut and divide the ſaid Humors; of which this following Apozeme may be compounded.

Take *of the five opening Roots ſteeped in white Wine, of each one ounce: Enula Campana, Gentian, Ariſtolochia, and Aſarum Roots, of each half an ounce: Leaves of Germander, Agrimony, Hops, Borrage, Ceterach, Wormwood, and Centaury, of each one handful: Liquoris, and Raiſons ſtoned, of each one ounce: Senna one ounce and an half: Epithimum one ounce: Agarick newly trochiſcated three ounces: Ginger and Cloves, of each one dram: Boyl all to a pint and an half. In the ſtrained Liquor diſſolve Syrup of Cichory with Rhubarb five ounces: Troches of Capars, and Salt of Wormwood, and of Tamarisk, of each one dram. Make of all an Apozeme, for five Doſes to be taken in the morning.*

In this Chronick and laſting Diſeaſe, an obſtinate Perſeverance is neceſſary, that the perpetual viciſſitude of Medicines may concoct and purge away the Cauſe thereof. For this is in a manner the only Cauſe why many that have Quartan Agues remain uncured, becauſe after the uſe of a few Medicines they grow weary, and wholly reject and diſdain all the reſt.

For a continual Uſe therefore, certain Purgatives are alwaies to be in a readineſs. Which may be made in the form of a Magiſtral Syrup, or of Pils, or in any other form.

A Magiſtral Syrup may be made of the Materials of the Apozeme Aforeſaid, adding a triple quantity of the Purgative Ingredients.

Pils for frequent uſe may be thus compounded:

Take *Aloes diligently ſteeped with the Juyce of Wormwood, half an ounce: Gum Ammoniack diſſolved in Vinegar, and afterward thickened, two drams: choyce Mirrh a dram and an half: Gummy, Turbith, and Agarick newly made into Cakes, of each two drams: Diagridium one dram: Salt of Wormwood and Tamarisk, of each two ſcruples: Saffron half a ſcruple. With Oxymel ſimple, make all into a Maſs of Pill-ſtuff. Let the Doſe be half a dram, or two ſcruples, twice in a week.*

If the Patient be of an hot Conſtitution, theſe following Pills may be uſed.

Take

Take *Polypody of the Oak half an ounce*: *Roots of Aſarum, and ſeeds of Broom, of each one dram*: *Criſtal of Tartar one dram and an half*: *Flowers of Bugloſs and Borrage, of each half a pugil. Boyl all in a ſufficient Quantity of Water, Of the Liquor ſtrained, and very well clarified, take half a pint*: *Juyce of odoriferous Apples very well clarified four ounces. Infuſe therein Senna one ounce*: *Turbith and Agarick, of each three drams*: *Mace, Cloves, Cinnamon, and Epithimum, of each one dram. Let them digeſt together three daies in* Balneo Mariæ, *then ſtrain and preſs them out. And add yet of Extract of Aloes made with Endive and Sorrel Water one ounce*: *Mirrh diſſolved in Wine over the fire and ſtrained two drams*: *Salt of Tartar one dram*: *Let all evaporate and thicken over a gentle fire, adding towards the concluſion, of the Pouders of Diarrhodon Abbatis, and Lætificans Galeni, of each one ſcruple*: *Salt of Wormwood and Tamarisk, of each half a dram*: *Extract of Saffron half a ſcruple. Make a Maſs of Pill-ſtuf for the uſe aforeſaid.*

Alſo a Purging Medicament very familiar, and moſt eaſie to prepare, but very profitable, may be made of three ounces of the Decoction of Wormwood, wherein two drams of Senna hath been infuſed, which muſt be taken now and then.

Theſe Purging Medicines are wont to be given the day before the fit, becauſe the Patients are then ſtronger than at other times. Yet many contend that they ought to be given before the fit, becauſe the matter being agitated by the fit, is made more apt for Expulſion. This Opinion they underprop with the Authority of *Hippocrates* in his Book *de Affectionibus*, who would have a Medicine Purging downwards to be given at the beginning of the Fit. And although in *Galens* Judgment, that is none of *Hippocrates* his writings, but of his Son in Law *Polypus*; yet they conceive it ought not therefore to be of no Authority, ſeeing *Polypus* alſo was a very Learned Man, and frequent Experience confirms this Opinion; as the ſaid Experience is ſet down by *Arculanus*, *Genitilus*, *Amatus Luſitanus*, and others, who have ordered that the Purging Medicament ſhould be given four hours before the Fit. Which practice notwithſtanding, hath need of much warineſs and prudence in the Phyſitian, ſeeing the ſhaking fit intercepts the evacuation, and in the Ague Fit the Humors are moved with a motion quite contrary to that wherewith the Purge doth move them; by which means great diſturbances may fall out in the Patients Body. Wherefore this courſe is not to be followed but in ſtrong Bodies.

The Conſent of Phyſitians is greater and more general touching the giving of Vomits in the beginning of the Ague Fits, becauſe Nature is at that time more prone to that kind of Evacuation. Neither is it to be doubted, that a Vomiring cauſed in the beginning of the Fit, and at the ſame time often repeated, doth make the Diſeaſe gentler and ſhorter. The Materials of Vomitories are ſet down in our Cure of a Tertian. But in a Quartan Ague, Aſarum is preferred before the reſt, one dram being given in Pouder, in white Wine, and three or four times repeated.

In the Intervals of purging, Clyſters muſt frequently be given, which do accuſtom Nature to expel the hurtful Humors into the Guts, and do by little and little bring away ſome of the morbifick matter contained in the Meſeraick Veins.

The Diſeaſe continuing (as for the moſt part it is long and laſting) we muſt ſometimes reſt, and abſtain from Phyſick a month, or thereabouts; that Nature in the mean time may gather ſtrength, be wearied with continual uſe of Medicaments, and may ſet her ſelf to concoct the morbifick matter. And afterward we muſt return to our Preparatives and Purgatives.

Howbeit, in a long Ague, we muſt not alwaies uſe the ſame Medicaments; leſt Nature be over much uſed thereunto, and the Patient become weary of them. Alſo becauſe from more gentle Aperitives and Purgatives, we muſt paſs on to ſuch as are ſtronger. Various ſorts of Purgatives have been already propounded. And theſe following Aperitives beſides the Apozems aforeſaid, and the Juleps, may be uſed in the progreſs of the Diſeaſe, when the Signs of Digeſtion begin to appear.

Take *White Wine three pints*: *Enula Campane Roots three ounces*: *Bark of Capar Roots half an ounce*: *Tops of common Wormwood dried one ounce*: *Infuſe them three daies in* Balneo Mariæ. *Keep all together without ſtraining, and give of this Wine to the Patient two or three ounces in the morning, two hours before meat.* And theſe following Pils may be uſed either alone, or with the ſaid Wine.

Take *Roots of Gentian two drams*: *round Birthwort Roots one dram and an half*: *Mugwort one dram*: *Briony dried three drams*: *Mirrh and Saffron, of each one dram*: *Aſarum Roots two drams*: *Aloes one ounce*: *With Oxymel of Squils make all into a Maſs of Pill-ſtuf. Let a dram be given every day by themſelves, or a little before the taking of the Wine aforeſaid.*

To theſe Pils, Steel prepared may profitably be added, if the Patient be able to walk after the taking of them. For the uſe of Steel in all Chronick Feavers is very profitable, becauſe it potently opens Contumacious Obſtructions, which are wont to foſter thoſe Diſeaſes.

Or

Or to open and ſtrengthen at once, the following Electuary may profitably be preſcribed.

Take *Conſerve of Elecampane Roots, Conſerve of Wormwood, and Maiden-hair, of each one ounce: Preſerved Citron Peels half an ounce: Confectio Alkermes three drams: Preſerved Myrobalans, two: Powder of Diarrhodon Abbatis two drams: Salt of Wormwood and Tamariſk, of each one dram: Saffron two ſcruples. With Syrup of preſerved Citrons, make all into an Opiate: of which let the Patient take the quantity of a Cheſtnut every morning, two hours before meat. Or if in the morning the Patient take ſome other Medicine, then may the Electuary be taken two hours before Supper.*

To the ſame intent is commended as a moſt excellent Remedy, the Extract of Germander mixt with Salt of Tamariſk made into Pils.

Add hereunto, Diſcuſſers, and Diaphoreticks, which are very uſeful to diſcuſs the reliques of the declining Diſeaſe, when ſigns of Concoction appear. For they do not only diſcuſs the ſaid reliques, but they do likewiſe correct that diſtemper which is bred by ſo long a Diſeaſe, and amend the ill habit of the Body; and ſtrengthen the Stomach, Liver, and other Bowels, weakened by the length of the Diſeaſe. Among theſe Medicaments, Venice Treacle challengeth the firſt place, being by older and later Phyſitians commended to this Uſe. It is given one hour before the fit, one dram in weight, with Wine, or in a Decoction of Germander. Or if its heat be feared, it may be given with a Decoction of Agrimony, or with the Juyce or Water of Plantane. This Medicine muſt be repeated before divers Fits one after another. It may alſo be given in the mornings for ſome daies together on the well-daies. But a little before the fit, it operates happily, becauſe it hinders the encreaſe of cold, and doth more commodiouſly diſcuſs the Humor, which is cauſe of the fit, now beginning to work in the Veins, and by this means it diminiſheth the fit, and if the morbifick matter be little, takes it quite away. Here, notwithſtanding, great Caution is to be uſed, leſt Treacle, or other ſuch hot Medicines, ſhould be given when the Humors are yet crude; for they diſſolve the putrid Humors, from whence ariſeth a confuſion in the Body, and an encreaſe of the Ague Fits; ſo that a ſingle Quartan comes to degenerate into a Double, and Triple, yea, into a Continual Feaver. As it happened to *Eudemus* the Peripatetick, as *Galen* relates in *Lib. de Præcog. ad Poſth. Cap.* 2. & 3. in whom was a ſingle Quartan, the Phyſitians of *Rome* having given him Treacle unſeaſonably, was changed into a Triple. Howbeit, afterwards when the Signs of Concoction appeared, *Galen* gave him of the ſame Treacle, and cured him.

Among other Diaphoreticks, ſome commend the Roots of China, and Salſa parilla, whoſe firſt and ſecond Decoction being given twenty daies together, doth ſomtimes cure contumacious Quartans. But they work more effectually, if with the Primary Decoction, Purgatives be mingled.

Other Remedies are alſo given before the Fit, which are accounted ſpecifical, and appropriate to this Ague, and being given towards the declination, they do very often keep back the fits, and cure the Quartan. The chief of this ſort, are theſe which follow:

Take *Green Leaves of Plantane one handful: Green Sorrel half a handful: Vinegar and Treacle, of each three ounces. Diſtil them, and let the Patient take of the diſtilled Liquor three ounces, half an hour before the fit.* Or,

Take *Sugar-candy three drams: Ginger two drams: Camphire one dram. Make all into a Pouder. Give one dram in warm Water.*

Ten Grains of Saffron in pouder, given with white Wine before the fit, doth much weaken the ſame.

Seed of wild Rue given before the Fit in white Wine, cures.

Heurnius aſſures us that with the following Troches, many have been cured, even in the Winter, with once taking.

Take *Seeds of Rue, Parſley, Mirrh, and new Andromachus Treacle, of each one dram: Opium half a ſcruple: Make all up into little Cakes or Troches. And let the Patient take one of thoſe Cakes in Water, before the fit. Narcoticks do indeed much abate the fits; but unleſs the greateſt part of the morbifick Humor have been before abated, and the Obſtructions much leſſened, they may do hurt, becauſe they may retain the vitious Humors in the Body, and breed Obſtructions, and other worſe Diſeaſes. But given in a ſmal quantity, and mingled with things which open and cut, as in theſe Troches, they can do leſs hurt.*

Alſo to reſtrain the Fit, gentle Purgers are profitably given an hour before it comes, which do revel the Humors, more by ſoliciting and provoking Nature, than by their purging. To which intent, ſuch as theſe which follow are preſcribed.

Take *Senna, Polipody of the Oak, Time, Epithimum, of each one dram: Borrage flowers a pugil. Make a Decoction to three ounces. Give it an hour before the Fit.*

Or,

Take *Senna three drams: Turbith one dram: Cinnamon half a dram: Saffron and Ginger,*

of

of each ten grains: Sugar, the weight of all the reſt. Make of all a Pouder, divide it into three parts. Give the Patient one part before the fit, in white Wine.

Quercetanus in his Diſpenſatory, doth exceedingly commend *Camillus* his Pils of Sagapenum; of which he gives only one at the beginning of the fit, for divers daies together; and a little after he anoints their Back-bone with a Liniment compoſed of Treacle, *Aqua vitæ*, Oyl of Bays, or of Spike. And two or three hours after the Pils are taken, he gives Broth with opening Roots, Borrage, Bugloſs, Time, and an odoriferous Apple boyled in it.

Now theſe anointings of the Back-bone, are very good to mitigate the cold fit, and muſt often be uſed, although the foreſaid Pils are not uſed. For they are frequently uſeful, when the ſhakings are vehement and importunate. And theſe Anointings are made, not only with the foreſaid, but with very many other Medicaments; as with Oyl of Dill, Chamomel, Orice, Coſtus, Rue, the Peppers, and other hot things, with *Aqua vitæ*, Treacle, Cloves, Caſtoreum, Muſtard ſeed, Peppers, and other things mixed therewith. Now theſe Liniments are more effectual, if the back-bone be anointed therewith by the fire-ſide, an hour before the coming of the fit; and the ſick party be preſently thereupon conveighed to a hot bed, and hot Tiles ſprinkled with odoriferous Wine, and wrapped in Linnen Cloths, be applied to the Soals of the Feet, and Palms of the Patients Hands.

While the aforeſaid Medicaments are uſed, a ſpecial care muſt be had of the Spleen, becauſe that part is alwaies affected in this Diſeaſe: And therefore thoſe Medicaments which ordinarily are preſcribed for Obſtructions of the Spleen, viz. Fomentations, Liniments, and Plaiſters.

Yea verily, and ſomtimes a Bath of luke-warm Water, after many Evacuations have been celebrated, is good, not only to mollifie the Spleen, but alſo to moiſten the whol body, and to further the Coction of the morbifick matter. The bath may be uſed on the daies of intermiſſion, giving diligent heed that it be no other than luke-warm. For if it ſhould be hotter, it is to be feared, leſt the Humors being thereby diſſolved, ſhould run on a ſudden into divers parts of the Body, and breed dangerous, very dangerous Impoſthumes.

Finally, Such things as are wont to be laid to the Wriſts, are not to be neglected, ſeeing Authors of good account do make ſome reckoning of them. For *Rondeletius* affirms, That he hath uſed this following Medicament, with great ſucceſs.

Take *Leaves of Elder, Sage, Doves-foot, Rue, of each half a handful: Marigolds a third part: a handful of Salt, and a little Wine. Beat all together, and apply to the Wriſts before the Fit.* Crato *applies the Roots of Nettles being beaten and moiſtened or ſteeped in Vinegar, to the Arteries of the Wriſts, and of the Feet.* And Sennertus *relates that a certain Citizen having had a Quartan Ague the whol Autumn and Winter, and at laſt being afflicted with moſt ſharp pains in his left ſhoulder, by the perſwaſion of a certain woman, he applied Cronfoot to his wriſt, which raiſed a Puſh, and freed him both from his pain and Feaver.*

A Baſtard Quartan is cured with the ſame Medicines in a manner, which have been propounded for the Cure of a Tertian; adding to the Decoction of Juleps and Apozems, ſuch things as do peculiarly regard Melancholly aduſt. Whereunto may be added al the more temperate, and leſs heating Medicaments, which have hitherto been propounded for a Legitimate Quartan.

In the beginning therefore it is good to uſe Borrage, Bugloſs, Fumitory, Hops, Sorrel, Cichory, Ceterach, Scolopendria, Agrimony, and Odoriferous Apples. Whoſe Decoctions, diſtilled Waters, and ſomtimes their clarified Juyces may be preſcribed in the form of a Julep, an Apozeme or Magiſtral Syrup.

But in the Progreſs of the Diſeaſe, it will be good to add unto the Simples aforeſaid, the Bark of Capar Roots, of Tamarisk, Enula Campana, Polypodie, and Worm-wood.

While the Patient uſeth theſe Preparatives, Purgatives are frequently to be interpoſed; which are to be given the Day before the Fit, and to be repeated twice a Week. To which Intent Various Forms may be preſcribed. But for ſuch as are Delicate, a Laxative Priſan, *Syrupus de Pomis Saporis*, or the Broth of a Chicken, qualified with Borrage, Bugloſs, Pimpernel, and three drams, or half an ounce of Senna, may profitably be given.

Blood-letting in the beginning muſt not be omitted, and ſo ſuch quantity of blood muſt be taken away, as ſhal correſpond unto the Quantity and Quality of Blood, and to the Age and Conſtitution of the Patient.

If the Diſeaſe prove long, when the fervor of the blood is abated, Vomits may profitably be adminiſtred; eſpecially to ſuch Patients as are troubled with Stomach-ſickneſs and Vomitings in the beginning of their Fits. Among Vomitories good for a Quartan, Afarum (as was ſaid before) is the principal, being given to the quantity of a dram in white Wine, and divers times repeated, if this Diſeaſe ſhal not after once or twice giving, be diſcuſſed.

Hereun-

Hereunto ad fomentations and liniments applied to the parts under the ſhort ribs, to correct the evil diſpoſition of the bowels (which continually affords new matter for the fits) and to ſoften and make thin the faſt, ſetled and impacted Humors: which may be preſcribed after this manner.

Take *Roots of Marſh-mallows, of Lillies, of Enula campana, Barks of capar Roots, and the middle rind of Tamariſk, of each one ounce; Leaves of Mallows, of Marſh-mallows, of Pellitory of the wall, of Borrage, Bugloſs, Pimpernel, Wormwood of each one handfull; Lin-ſeed and Parſly ſeed, of each an half ounce; flowers of Chamomel, Melilot and Dill, of each one pugil: make a decoction in three parts of water, and one of white wine added towards the end. With which decoction foment the Hypochondria, twice a day, far from meals.*

Take *Ointment of Marſh-mallowes, one ounce and an half; Oyl of Lillies, Chamomel, Roſes and Wormwood, of each an half ounce: make al into a Liniment, which muſt be uſed after the fomentation.*

Or Oyls alone may profitably be applied to the ſame Parts, laid on with wool.

And finally a bath of warm water either alone or with emollient and qualifiing things boiled therein, or of Barly and Almonds as is uſual, will be very convenient to cure this diſeaſe. For it corrects the diſtemper of the bowels, rectifies the heat and dryneſs of black Choller, mollifie that which is hard, opens the paſſages and widens them, and digeſts crude Humors. Wherefore the frequent uſe thereof will be moſt convenient, uſing the caution before ſpecified.

Now the operation thereof will be exceedingly advanced, if preparative Medicaments and ſuch as open obſtruction be given to the patient, upon entrance into the bath. Among which the chief is a decoction of Wormwood and Enula Campana, which is exceeding good to digeſt all contumacious Humors. provided the over great heat of the Bowels, do not diſſwade the uſe thereof. In which caſe it may be tempered by the mixture of other things fore recited.

And while theſe things are doing, gentle purgations muſt be repeated, as we adviſed before. And when the diſeaſe doth indeed decline, thoſe ſpecified medicaments propounded in the Legitimate Quartan, may here alſo be brought into uſe.

In the whol courſe of the diſeaſe we muſt be carefull of the Breaſt, leaſt a Conſumption betide the ſame, for the Humor offending in this Diſeaſe is of a corroding quali-

ty

Chap. 6. *Of Compounded or Complicated Feavers, and particularly of a Semi-Tertian.*

GAlen in his ſecond Book *de Criſib.* cap. 7. and 9. and in his ſecond Book *de Differ. Feb.* Cap. 7. and *Aviceu. Fen* 1. *Lib* 4. *Tract* 4. Cap. 16. Do propound many compoſitions of Feavers. Namely when putrid Feavers are compounded with non-putrid, as when an hectick is joyned with a putrid; or of a putrid with a putrid, which is done many wayes viz. Either continuall Feavers being complicated with continuall or intermittent with intermitent, or continuall with intermitent.

The Compoſition of two continual Feavers, is a thing controverted among authors, and a man ſhall hardly obſerve it in the courſe of his practice.

An intermitting Feaver or Ague is complicated with another intermittent, either of the ſame kind, or different: compound intermittents of the ſame kind are a double and triple Tertian, and a double or triple quartan, which have been expounded in their proper places. Of ſeveral kinds are when a tertian is compounded with a Quotidian or quartan; which alſo is very rarely ſeen in Practice.

Intermittents are complicated with continuals two waies viz. An intermittent tertian with a continual Quotidian, or a Quotidian intermittent with a continual tertian. and each of theſe is termed a Semi-tertian, conſtituting Species or ſorts thereof.

Yet that is properly and truly a Semi-tertian which is made of an intermitting Tertian and a continual quotidian: and conſequently is cauſed from choller putrefying without and flegm putrefying within the veſſels. By *Hippocrates* and *Galen* in 1 *Epidem.* it is named *Horrifica*, or the ſhaking Ague becauſe it cauſes the patient to ſhake, not only at the firſt coming of the fit, but in the whol courſ of the diſeaſe and eſpecially in the beginning and augment, two fits being met and joyned in one, viz: Of the tertian and quotidian Ague, with many reduplications, which are nothing elſe but unequal ſhaking and ſhivering motions, returning divers time in one and the

same Ague Fit, by reason of the mutual fight of the two Feavers; in which, if Flegm overcome, there will follow shiverings, and coldness of the extream parts. And then again, when Choller doth vanquish, the Body becomes warm, and the Feaver seems to tend towards the vigor; whenas flegm again getting the better, they are again brought into a cold and shivering condition; and this Contention is wont to last til the Feaver comes to its height. Hence it is that those shaking fits come only every other day, viz. When the fit of the Tertian Ague is upon the Patient, being joyned with the Quotidian.

But while the Quotidian alone is present, there is wont to be no shivering Fit. Yet we must take notice, That there are some Malignant Feavers, which without a commixion of a Tertian and Quotidian, without that same fight of Choller and Flegm, do shake the Patient; in which the Shiverings come from sharp Vapors, and malignant, which do arise out of the corrupt Matter of malignant Feavers, and do beat upon, and pull the sensitive parts, and nip or twitch them as it were.

Now this Semi-Tertian properly so called, is either exquisite, wherein an equal portion of putrefying Choller and Flegm is redundant, such as hath been now described; or it is a bastard Semi-Tertian, which is again two-fold: For either it hath Choller abounding, or Flegm. In the former there are more Symptoms of a Tertian; in the latter of a Quotidian. And so if Choller abound, the whol Feavet is more horrid, and somtimes it hath a shaking fit accompanying the same; also it proves more fervent, and some portion of Choller is voided forth by vomit, stool, or sweat. But when Flegm prevails, a more vehement cold doth possess the extream parts of the Body, and there are few shiverings; and the pulse it more and longer depressed, and the fit is longer before it grow towards its height, and remains in its consistency a long time; yet doth it cause no great thirst, nor burning.

This Feaver is known by what hath been said thereof, being continual, and cold, with many reduplications, and very great Symptomes. Because it comes every other day with a shaking cold fit; but upon the even daies it comes only with a coldness in the extream parts of the Body. The Urines are crude, thin, and without color; somtimes troubled, with no Sediment, or that which bodes no good. The Pulse is frequent and unequal. The Differences are known by the Signs of more or less of Choller and Flegm, propounded.

As for the Prognostick of this Feaver, it is a dangerous Disease, and therein the Stomach and Nervous parts are very much affected. And it is attended with dryness of the Tongue, Thirst, Swooning, Watching, and somtimes with Ravings, and dead Sleeps. *Hippocrates* reckons it among acute Diseases because of the Choller; and among Chronick Diseases because of the Flegm, in 1. Epidem. And *Avicenna* saith, That it lasts somtimes seven months, and somtimes ends in Chronick Disease, and an Hectick.

The Cure of this Feaver is to be taken from what hath been formerly said of the Cure of a Tertian and a Quotidian Ague; and seeing it is continual, it must be handled with the same Method which was set down in the first Chapter of this Section, as common to all putrid continual Feavers. So that when Choller chiefly bears sway, we must use most of those Simples which respect Choller; and when as flegm prevails, we must principally use such things as do prepare and purge that Humor. And finally, When both Humors are equal, the Remedies proper to each must be used in equal proportion likewise.

SECT. III.

Section III.

Of Peſtilential Feavers.

The Preface.

ALL Authors (very neer) who have writ of Feavers, do diſtinguiſh a peſtilential Feaver from a malignant, and doe treat of each of them ſeverally in divers Chapters; ſo that by the name of a peſtilential Feaver they doe underſtand the true Peſtilence or Plague; and by a malignant Feaver, they mean that which is commonly called the ſpotted Feaver, or ſuch a Feaver which though it be epidemical and contagious, yet it is not ſo dangerous but that more live than die of it: whereas the true eſſence of the Plague conſiſts in this that more die thereof than recover. But forasmuch as theſe Feavers differ one from another only according to the greater or leſſer degree of malignity, and muſt be cured with the ſame Medicaments; we have thought it more convenient to include al theſe kind of Feavers in one Chapter, and to handle them all under the name of Peſtilential Feavers. and conſequently this laſt Section ſhall conſiſt of two Chapters, the firſt of which ſhall treat of the Peſtilentiall Feaver; and the later of the Meaſles and ſmall Pox: For ſeeing a Malignant Feaver does allwaies attend them all Authors doe juſtly treat of them in this place.

Chap. 1. *Of a Peſtilential Feaver.*

THat Feaver is termed Peſtilential, which does afflict Nature not only by a bare diſtemper, or by heat ariſing from putrefaction, but alſo with a Malignant and venemous quality. This is wont to be for the moſt part Popular and Epidemical; ſo that many are at the ſame time ſick thereof: yet ſomtimes it is ſporadick or ſingle afflicting but here and there one, which ariſes from evil Humors that have attained a venemous quality.

It is likewiſe Contagious, ſo that it may be caught not only by means of the common Cauſe, Viz. Corruption of the Air or Diet; but alſo by Converſing with thoſe that are ſick.

It is alſo commonly called a Malignant Feaver, whereas many diſeaſes are termed Malignant by reaſon of their evil and cruel ſymptomes in which no venemous quality is found, in which alone the eſſence of a Peſtilential diſeaſe conſiſts.

In what Feaver ſoever therefore, this ſame venemous quality is found, whether it be a diary, an hectick, or a putrid Feaver, it is rightly termed Peſtilentiall: although a diary and hectick are much controverted, touching which conſult the Authors.

Now this ſame venemous quality ariſeth from the corruption of Humors, which conſiſts not in a bare change of the temperament, or in ordinary putrefaction, ſuch as is found in putrid Feavers; but in a deſtruction of the whol Nature and Eſſential ſubſtance of the ſame Humors. As Wine when it is turned an inſipid taſtleſs Liquor, is totally and eſſentially corrupted; but when it becomes vinegar, it is ſaid ſimply to putrefie.

And a Peſtilentiall Feaver differs from the Plague as a ſpecies or ſort differs from the genus or kind, becauſe there may be a Peſtilence without a Feaver, as *Hippocrates* hath taught us in his third Epidem. in many places; and alſo *Galen* in his Expoſition of the ſaid Book. and in his ninth Book, *de Medic. Facultatib. Cap. de Terra Samia.* And this is ſutable to Reaſon; forasmuch as the venemous Quality is not neceſſarily attended with putrefaction, which is the Cauſe of a Feaver. For that ſame venemous qualitie may be produced in the Humors, by a perfect corruption of their ſubſtance, and introduction of a new form, of which that venemous qualitie depends. And certain it is, that ſo oft as a new form is introduced, the former is corrupted; unto which mutations there are requiſite preparatorie alterations, but not putrefaction ſo that Humors may undergo ſuch a corruption without putrefaction; but becauſe the Humors of our body are very liable to putrefaction, they can rarely undergo ſo great a corruption, without the Intervention of putrefaction likewiſe: wherefore thoſe Peſtilences are very rare, which are not accompanied with a Feaver: Yea verily and by an intenſe, profound and fordid (as they are wont to ſay) putrefaction, ſuch a Corruption as that of the Plague is wont to

be raised. So, many Feavers, which at first were not pestilentiall, if by the Ignorance of the Physitian or negligence, the disobedience of the Sick, or the fierceness of externall causes, they have been mis-handled, the putrefaction becomeing more intense, they turn in the end to malignant and Pestilentiall Feavers. And that corruption does often precede Putrefaction is collected from such as are infected with the Plague by contagion; in whom a malignant, and venemous qualitie is first transfus'd, and therewith the Humors are corrupted, which corruption is followed by putrefaction, whence it comes to pas that such as have the Pestilence have sometimes no feaver for the first daies of their ilness; but afterwards the Feaver begins to shew it self, when putrefaction is bred; some such things we see in a part that is affected with a Gangrene, which is first corrupted, and afterwards puertfied.

A pestilentiall Feaver is caused, when the Humors being corrupted and haveing attained a venemous quality, doe come to putrefie: And so it affects the Heart by those two meanes Viz. By a putrid heat and a malignant qualitie.

Now this corruption of Humors, is not alwaies after one sort, but somtimes it is more intense and somtimes less and according to its divers degrees, the venemous qualitie arising therefrom is more or less pernicious; from whence proceeds the greater or less Malignity of Feavers. And hence arose that common distinction of Pestilential Feavers among Physitians, into a Pestilential feaver simply and properly so called and into a Malignant Feaver; calling that a pestilentiall Feaver properly so termed wherein is the true Plague; having this peculiar, note or character, that more die than live and recover; and calling that simply a malignant Feaver which being less pernicious, more live than die of it.

The differences of a Pestilentiall Feaver are taken either from the matter wherein that venemous Quality is produced; or from the place wherein the said matter is contained: and so they follow the difference of putrid Feavers, which in respect of the matter of putrefing are divided into the Feaver *Sunochos*, *Tertiana*, *Quartana*, and *Quotidiana*, according as the matter putrefiing it, Blood, Choller, Melancholy, or Flegm. And in respect of the place wherein the Humors putrefie, they are divided into continuall and intermittent; according as the aforesaid Humors are lodged within or without the veines: even so pestilential Feavers, some are termed Synochi, others Tertians, Quartans or Quotidians; some continuall, others intermittent: although *Hippocrates* hath said in the 43. Aphorism of the 4 Section, That intermitting Feavers are void of danger however they intermit, which only is to be understood of such as are void of all malignitie; for we see almost every year (in our country at least) tertian intermittent Feavers, which being extreamly malignant, doe at the third or fourth fit kill the patients: others which bring them into great danger, especially by the crueltie of the Symptomes.

There are other Differences of a pestilential Feaver taken from the intensnes of their degree or Remissnes; namly, as some are greater, other lesser, some partake of greater malignitie some of lesser. They are said to be simply greater or lesser, according as the Putrefaction is greater or less, or as the preternatural Heat arising therefrom, is more intense or remis; more malignant or benignant, according to the greater or less intension of the venemous quality Hence it comes to pass, that sometimes a pestilentiall Feaver hath extream putrefaction, and malignancy at the highest; and then it is wont to be most fierce, and therein in regard of the malignancy the vital faculty is exceedingly afflicted; and in regard of the extream putrefaction, the other faculties are likewise hurt, and cruell symptoms follow thereupon. But sometimes in this Feaver the putrefaction is very high, and the malignant qualitie remis; and then the Feaver is troublesom by reason of the putrefaction; but the vital faculty is less afflicted. Contrarilie somtimes Putrefaction is little, but the malignant quality intense: and then the Feaver in regard of putrefaction shews no such bad symptoms & seems remis; yet the strength of the patient is more than ordinarily weakned. For somtimes the putrefaction is so remis that it is in a manner none at all; but the malignant quality in a very high degree: and then we have a Feaver, which seems neither to the Patient nor by-standers any thing troublesom; but it seems at first sight mild, as mild can be, when as indeed and intruth it is very mortall; for when the malignant qualitie is increased, the patients strength is dejected, and the Heart wholly overwhelmed: and this kind of Feaver doth not only deceive the Patients and by-standers, but somtimes the Physitians themselves are thereby cheated; whiles there being no sign present either by crudity or pravity of Humors, the Pulse being in a manner in it's natural state, and the heat of the Body at first appearance seeming mild and gentle, it leads unto destruction. Som such thing is likewise wont to happen in the first difference, viz. When it is joyned with the highest degree of malignity: for putrefaction being by convenient medicaments subdued, and the signes of recovery appearing; death notwithstanding somtimes ensues by reason the malignant quality did remaine uncorrected.

And finally the differences of a Pestilent Feaver are taken from its adjuncts, and they are very many

many and moſt evident, for there is no evil ſymptom, nor kind of deadly diſeaſe which is not ſomtimes joyned with this Feaver. The ſymptomes are Head-ach, Watchings, Raveings, Dead ſleepes, Thirſt, Stomach-Sickneſs, and Vomiting, want of Appetite, Swooning, Fainting, Hiccoughing, Unquietneſs, Looſneſs, Sweats and ſuch like, which are common alſo to other kind of Feavers.

But there is one Symptom proper and peculiar to a peſtilential Feaver, which doth not happen in other Feavers; *viz.* Purple Specks, or Spots on the whol Body, but eſpecially in the Loyns, the breaſt and back, like unto Flea-bitings for the moſt part; which the Italian Phyſitians name *Petticulæ* or *Petechiæ*; and theſe Feavers which have theſe Symptoms, are commonly named *Purpuratæ* or *Petechialis*, Purple or Spotted Feavers. For theſe Purple Spots do not appear in all Peſtilential Feavers; but when they appear, they are a moſt certain Sign of a peſtilential Feaver. Now we call them Purple Spots, becauſe they are for the moſt part of a Purple colour. Yet they are many times of a violet colour, Green, blewiſh, or black, and then they are far worſe, and do ſignifie greater Malignity. And although theſe Spots are for the moſt part like Flea-bitings: yet they appear ſomwhat greater: So as to repreſent thoſe black and blew marks which remain after whipping, and then they are worſe. And ſomtimes they are very large, and poſſeſs whol Members, and a great part of the body; *viz.* the Arms, Thighs, and back, and then the parts appear tainted with redneſs; which in few hours oftentimes vaniſheth away, and then returns again, as it were by Fits, whilſt the Feaver undergoes it's Fits, or Exacerbations; wherein the blood boiling, doth ſend forth it's thinner Exhalations to the ſurface of the Skin, by which the Skin is not ſwelled; but only infected with a red Color. Oftentimes notwithſtanding, by theſe Ebullitions, the Skin is in divers parts puffed up with a certain redneſs: and makes certain broad and ſoft tumors in the Skin, which in a few hours vaniſh away, and are commonly called Ebullitions of the blood. In theſe, and the aforeſaid, there is alwaies ſome Malignity, but ſo light, that it threatens no danger; unleſs in the progreſs of the Diſeaſe it prove more intenſe. Now the Spots aforeſaid like to Flea-bitings, do differ from thoſe Puſhes, which are wont alſo ſomtimes to appear in theſe Feavers, and are mentioned by *Hippocrates* in *Epidemiis*, which have an Head, and are a kind of Tumors, which come ſomtimes to Suppuration, or Exulceration. But the Purple Spots, have (as was ſaid) no eminence or Head, and were unknown to the Antients, being deſcribed only by later Phyſitians of after Ages.

As to thoſe Diſeaſes which are joyned to a Peſtilential Feaver, we may affirm what hath been ſaid of the Symptoms; *viz.* that many deadly Diſeaſes are joyned with theſe Feavers; namely, Phrenſies, Squinzies, Pleuriſies, Inflamations of the Lungs, Inflamations of the Liver, bloody Fluxes, and very many more. But the chief Diſeaſes which ſhew themſelves in a Peſtilential Feaver, are two, *viz.* a Peſtilent *Bubo*, and a Carbuncle, which declare the venemous quality to be in the higheſt degree, and are not found but in the true Peſtilence, and are wont commonly to accompany the ſame: So that the common People call them by the very name of the Peſtilence.

The Cauſes of Peſtilential Feavers, are ſome Internal, others External: and the Internal are ſome Immediate, others Mediate.

The Immediate Cauſe of this Diſeaſe, as we hinted before, is a corruption of the Humors, joyned with putrefaction. From the Corruption they acquire an evil and venemous Quality, and from Putrefaction the Feaver is bred.

The Mediate Cauſes are a Plethory, Cacochymie, and Obſtructions. Now we underſtand ſuch a Plethory, or fulneſs of Blood; not as diſtends the Veſſels, but ſuch at leaſt as the ſtrength of the Patient cannot maſter, which not being regulated by Nature, doth eaſily undergo Corruption, and Putrefaction. Now a Cacochymie, or abundance of evil Humors, is eaſily corrupted and putrefied. Finally, Obſtructions are apt to breed all kind of Feavers: foraſmuch as Humors being cloſe ſhut up in an hot and moiſt place, wanting free tranſpiration, do eaſily putrefie. The Internal Mediate Cauſes, are by Authors commonly called *Morbofus Apparatus*, a ſickly Diſpoſition of Body; and the efficacy thereof is ſo great, that it alone is ſomtimes ſufficient to produce a gentle Peſtilential Feaver, ſuch as is commonly called a Malignant Feaver ſimply, or a Purple Feaver, without the Intervention of any External or common Cauſe. For we oft-times ſee, when the year is not Peſtilential, and there is no Epidemical ſickneſs abroad, ſome perſons through the evil Condition of their Humors, fall into ſuch Feavers, which are accompanied with many Symptoms of Malignancy; yea, and with other Purple ſpots.

Concerning the point of Obſtruction, we muſt obſerve, that it doth neceſſarily concur as the principal Cauſe in Malignant Feavers, which proceed from Internal Cauſes, and are not Epidemical: but that Epidemical Feavers, which proceed from a common Cauſe; viz. A Peſtilent conſtitution of the Air, or are gotten by Contagion, have not neceſſarily any Obſtructions for their Cauſe. For the venemous quality is received only by breathing in the corrupt Air, or only by Infection from others, by which venemous Quality the Humors of the Body, declining from their own proper Nature, do of their own accord putrefie. For even as Fruits that will not keep, and other things apt

to corrupt, though they have never ſo much freedom of the Air, yet cannot be preſerved from Corruption: Even ſo the Humors, when they have conceived that pernitious Quality, are apt to Corruption: ſo that though there be no Obſtruction preſent, they neceſſarily fall into a Putrefaction, and a Feaver. Howbeit, Putrefaction being by this means brought into the Humors, when Nature doth no longer rule them, they are wont for the moſt part to breed Obſtructions, whereby the Feaver is augmented; ſo that in theſe Feavers Obſtructions may Concur, which though in the beginning they were not the Cauſe of the Feaver, yet do they follow the ſame, being cheriſhed by the Cauſes of the Feaver, and being infected with Peſtilential Venom.

The External Cauſes of Peſtilential Feavers, are the ſix Non-natural things, which as they are neceſſary, ſo do they neceſſarily alter our bodies: and when they are far departed from their Natural condition, they breed in us Malignant and venemous Qualities. Among theſe, the Air holds the chief place: which as it is a moſt common Cauſe, ſo Diſeaſes that are common doth for the moſt part proceed from ſome fault thereof.

Now the Air becomes vitious and hurtful to men, for the moſt part by a threefold means. Firſt, If it be not blown through with wholſom Winds. Secondly, If it be polluted with the Infection of putrid and ſtinking Exhalations. Thirdly, If by an exceſs or prepoſterous condition of the firſt Qualities, it doth ſo alter Men, that thereby evil and malignant putrefactions of the Humors be ingendred.

The firſt is evident enough. For if the Air be not blown through, and ſtirred with Winds, it is eaſily corrupted. Whence *Hippocrates* in the 3. Epidem. Deſcribing a moſt grievous Peſtilential conſtitution, ſaith; This year had no Winds.

And the Second is moſt effectual and frequent, viz. When Putrid, Filthy, and malignant vapors are mingled with the Air, and do infect the ſame, which is wont to ariſe from divers things, viz. Lakes, Pooles, Fiſh-ponds, and other quiet and ſtill Waters, or ſuch as are full of mud, or wherein Flax, or Hemp have been ſteeped. Or from the ſtink of Privies, Dung-hils, and naſty Allies. Or from the unburied bodies of ſuch as have bin ſlain in battle. Or out of Dens or Caves (wherein the Air having been long ſhut up, hath gained a filthy putrefaction) being opened by an Earth-quake, or ſome other Caſualtie.

But the third Reaſon, which conſiſts in the Exceſs, Inequality, or Prepoſterous condition of the firſt Qualities, may happen divers waies, and eſpecially when there is a great exceſs of Heat and moiſture. For thoſe Qualities, when they are extranious and adventitious, and encreaſed above their Natural condition, they are the principles of putrefactions. Hence a Southern Wind laſting long in the Seaſons of the year, according to *Hippocrates* in Epidem. was the principal cauſe, of all Peſtilential Feavers there deſcribed.

But a dry Conſtitution of the Air, though in the Opinion of *Hippocrates*, it's more wholſom than a moiſt; yet becauſe al exceſs of Qualities, is hurtful to our Nature; certain it is that a very dry Conſtitution of the Air, more than ordinary, doth produce Peſtilential Feavers; eſpecially if it be joyned with Exceſſive Heat. A cleer example wherof we have in *Livy* in the firſt Book of his Hiſtory Decad. 4. viz. How by over great dryneſs, a Peſtilence happened at *Rome*, becauſe there had been little or no Rain that year: neither was there ſcarcity of Water from Heaven alone; but the Earth was ſcarce able to continue her Springs. Now this dry Conſtitution doth therefore Cauſe the Peſtilence, becauſe the Humors being above meaſure burnt & dried up, degenerate into the Matter of Biles, Carbuncles, and conſequently of a Peſtilential Feaver; and being very much thickned, they produce grievous Obſtructions; wherby in a matter otherwiſe wel diſpoſed therunto, Malignant putrefaction is eaſily bred. Add hereunto, That this immoderate drineſs of the air, doth corrupt the Corn, hindring it from attaining its due maturity. For it brings the Corn ſooner out of the Earth, and it gives it at firſt plentiful nouriſhment, and afterward Scanty, whereby the Corn is unequally digeſted, being Burnt without, but within quite Raw; like Fleſh ſcorched with an over violent Fire: and ſo it proves a Cauſe of indigeſtion, and divers Crudities.

It is proved alſo from *Hippocrates*, That immoderate Cold doth produce a Peſtilence 1. Epidem. Sect. 3. tempeſt. 1. where he ſaith. *In the Country of* Thaſus, *a little before the appearance of Arcturus* (a Star or Conſtellation) *and whilſt He appears, the North Wind blowing, there are many and great Rains.* In which places he fetches the Cauſe of a Peſtilential Seaſon, from over great Coldneſs. Alſo we may read in Livy Lib. 5. Decad. 1. That a Peſtilential Seaſon was cauſed by vehement Cold; in theſe Words. *The year was remarkable for a Cold, and Snowy Winter, ſo that the Wayes were ſtopped up, and the River* Tyber *was unnavigable. So ſad a Winter was followed by a grievous and Peſtilential Summer, Mortal to all kind of Living-Creatures; whether it were occaſioned, by the ſudden change of the Air from one extream to another, or by ſome other means.* And the reaſon of this Accident is at hand, viz. That by reaſon the Pores of the Skin are cloſed up by the extream Cold, ſo that the vapors cannot ſteem forth ſo as naturally they ſhould, there follows the greater putrefaction, and more grievous poiſon; whereupon follows more dange-

rous

rous feavers, than in the Summer, in which the condition of the air, although in ſome ſort it gives beginning to the Diſeaſe, yet doth it make the pores and paſſages wider, Through which that which putrified does exhale, and the natural and preternatural evaporations doe readily breath out.

Inequality of the Seaſon is wont alſo to be the Cauſe of this kind of Feavers; viz. when it is ſometimes Hot, ſometimes Cold; ſometimes wet, ſometimes dry in a ſhort time; or when theſe various ſeaſons doe endure longer one after another. As when after long vehement Hot weather, a freezing cold claps in, or after long rains, an extream drought ſteales upon us, or contrary-wiſe. Or when after a prepoſterous faſhion, it is hot in Winter and cold in Summer. Now theſe inequalities of Seaſons may help the production of Peſtilential Feavers; becauſe in them, the humors are exceedingly diſturbed, by which means they arrive unto an evill condition, far from their natural ſtate and fit to produce malignant Diſeaſes eſpecially in thoſe bodies which during the Courſe of the Seaſons aforeſaid, by diſorderly Courſe of Diet and liveing, have contracted either a Plethory a Cacochymy or ſome notable obſtructions.

To this kind of Cauſes may be added the malignant Influence of the Conſtellations, which by changeing the Ayr, are wont diverſly to affect the Bodies of Liveing Creatures. Such they ſay are, the Conjunction of the ſuperior Planets, *Saturn*, *Jupiter*, and *Mars*, in humane Signes, ſuch as *Virgo and Gemini*, and eſpecially when *Mars* is Lord. Which do bring Diſeaſes in otherwiſe then by change of the Ayr, ſo far as to corrupt the Nature and ſubſtance thereof. And that change is wrought two waies; and is by the manifeſt qualities, as when by the Influence of the Stars the ayr is ſo long and ſo far changed by exceſs of the firſt qualities of Heat, Moiſture, Cold and Dryneſs, that at length it's proper Subſtance becomes vitiated the other is by occult qualities, when by the ſecret power of the Stars, without any notable exceſs of the firſt qualities, the ſubſtance of the ayr is ſo changed, that it receives a certain degree of corruption contrary to our Life. Touching the firſt, no man doubts, ſeeing it is clear by Common Conſent of Phyloſophers that inferior Bodies are governed by the Heavenly Conſtellations. And as the alterations of the Ayr, which happen in the four ſeaſons of the yeer, do ariſe from the yeerly motion of the Sun: ſo the great diverſity of yeers, whereby one proves very moiſt, another exceeding dry the Sun holding every yeer the ſame Courſe in the Zodiack; can depend on nothing, but the various aſpects of the Conſtellations. The other way becauſe it is occult, is not ſo freely granted by all. Howbeit by common Conſent of Aſtrologers, it is held for certain, that the Stars do act upon inferior Bodies in a three-fold manner, viz. by their Motion, Light, and Influence The light and heat do alter theſe Sublunary Bodies according to the firſt qualities and eſpecially Heat. But the Influences doe induce both the firſt qualities (for example the cold which *Saturn* cauſes, cannot depend upon his Motion nor his Light) and alſo the hidden and occult ones. For ſeeing Peſtilential Diſeaſes doe oftentimes happen, no great mutation being made in the ayr in regard of the firſt qualities; but when they rage, the ayr appeares exceeding pure, and purer ſometimes, than it is wont to do when there is no peſtilence ſtirring; neither have very hot and moiſt ſeaſons preceded, from which great putrefactions are wont to ariſe, it is to be coniectured, that theſe peſtilential Diſeaſes doe ariſe from ſome malignant Influence of the Stars. Add hereunto, that Peſtilences are wont to rage even in the depth of Winter, which no remarkeable alteration of the firſt qualities hath preceded. For in ſuch a Caſe, theſe diſeaſes are to be attributed to the hidden power of the Starrs which have (as Aſtrologers teach) a power of corrupting the Air, no extraordinary mutation of the firſt qualitie being made therein. And this is that divine principle in diſeaſes, which *Hippocrates* acknowledged, and according to the Expoſition of *Galen* is in the Air, but is produced by the Celeſtial Bodies and hidden cauſes. It is alſo hinted at by the ſame *Hippocrates*, in the ſecond Epidem. Sect. one. When he ſaies. *The time and the Diſeaſes doe anſwer one another, unles ſome innovation happen in the Superior Powers*

Neither does that hinder which is brought as the opinion of *Plato*, out of his Epinomis, that the Courſe of the Heavens and heavenly Bodies have alwayes good influence here below, and from them nothing but preſervation and benefit doe flow. And *Ariſtotle* in the ninth of his *Metaphiſicks* Chap. 10. Saies that in thoſe Bodies which are eternall and æthereal, neither error nor corruption is found. And *Averrhoes* ſaies in his 1 *De Cælo.* cap. 24. The Heavenly Bodies doe containe the Elements, preſerve them, and univerſally are unto them inſtead of a form. whence it's collected, they cannot infect them with a poyſonous and malignant qualitie. Ad hereunto that if peſtilential diſeaſes ſhould be raiſed by influence of the Starrs, they would at one and the ſame time infect the whol World almoſt, ſeeing thoſe iufluxes are univerſal cauſes, and by the circulation of the Heavenly Bodies, doe affect all the quarters of the World. But theſe diſeaſes doe peculiarly invade ſom one Region onely. And finally if the

Stars were said to be malefick and of an evil disposition; God the Author of them would be accounted the cause of Mischief, which is full of Impiety. These objections, I say, doe not a whit prejudice the truth propounded, which may thus be answered. All created substances are considered two waies; either as they are things in being and do concur to the compleating and perfection of the Universe, and in that respect, they are all good: for *to be* and *to be good* are one and the same, neither hath the High God blessed for ever created any thing which ought to be termed evil, simply considered. or they are considered in regard of their operations, and then they may be termed evil, forasmuch as they may damnefie some other things by reason of the antipathy & inbred Enmity of Nature. And although almost innumerable contrarietyes of nature are foundin the world, yet must they al be termed good in respect to God their maker, & in regard of the Univers, whose perfection consists chiefly in variety. Furthermore the operations of things created, may be termed evil two wayes absolutely or simply considered in themselves, or in respect of somwhat else; They are absolutely evil when at all times, in all places and upon all occasions they doe perpetually evil; and in this sense no Creature can be found which is evil; in respect of some other thing, the operations of things may be termed evil, when they hurt one and doe another good; and so there is nothing in the whol universe so hurtful, but that it hath some other ways its uses & benefits, for which it was created: So al poysons, though most hurtful to men or other Animals, yet conveniently us'd they doe a great deal of good to them. And in the Art of Physick there is scarce so deadly a poyson found, but that out of it, by skil of Art, an healthfull medicine may be drawn. And finally the actions of Stars upon these inferior Bodies are considered two waies, either in respect of the whol sublunarie world containing the Elements and al mixed things: and so the action of the Heavens and Stars is simply benign, ingendering, conserveing, vivifieing all things, & doing al other good offices which tend to uphold the univers; & in this sence most true it is, that these inferior Bodies are cherished & susteined by the influence of the Heaven and Hevenly Bodies, or they are considered in respect of the proper nature of this or that Element, or this or that living creature: and then it is no absurditie to say that there are some influences hurtfull to som Element or living Creature in such or such a part so and so affected which depends not of any fault of the stars (for they are of a most perfect nature) but rather of the imperfection of sublunary things which cannot suffer any considerable mutation without the corruption of their proper substance: now these divers natures and qualities of the stars, produced in sublunary Bodies by their divers concourse and influence were ordained by the great Architect of this universe, for the Conservation of the whol world which being made up of so divers and so contrary natures, had need of as great variety in the influence of the Stars, that all things might be preserved, as it were in an even balance out of which diversity of influences notwithstanding, it could hardly come to pass but that som parcel of things so different shou'd sometimes suffer, not in any whol kind or sort (which should tend to the destruction of the universe) but only in some individuals that were less able to resist and for the most part misaffected, and only in some part of the Air more disposed to receive malignant influences. From whence we may conclude, that those corruptions doe chiefly depend upon the defect of sublunary bodies Forasmuch as many places are in the world, where the air is so perfectly constituted and the inhabitants so evenly tempered, that let never so malignant Influences of Starrs showr upon them, yet are they never infected whith other pestilence.

To the same kind of Causes must we refer the Defects and Eclipses of Sun and Moon, unusual Meteors and especially Blazing Stars: which are never wont to appear but that Epidemical and Pestilential Sicknesses, and Divers changes in the World do follow, as is Confirmed by the experiments of many Histories: whence that usually Cited verse of *Claudian* is become as a Proverb.

In Cælo nunquam Spectatum impune Cometam.

A blazing Star does not appear.
But some Beholders plagued are.

A most evident witnes whereof was that hairy Comet which appeared *Anno* 1618. Towards the East on the 27 of *November* and was afterwards seen near upon the whol Moneth of *December*, moving and shining. It's thicker and more solid part being turned towards the Sun, did behold the East, and did far exceed *Venus*, both in the clearnes of its shining, and in its largnes, thickly compacted and conglobated together. The remaining part, being more thin, and less enlightened by the *Sun*, because of its thinnes did move like a fairly spred beard and stretched towards the West. This Comet first appeared under the sign of *Libra* nere the *Æquinoctial Line*; but by a private and peculiar motion of its own, it was carryed from thence, through the feet of *Virgo*, the middle of *Bootes* and the tail of the greater *Bear*. And at length, its light decreasing by little and little and the matter whereof it consisted being dissipated, it vanished betwen the great *Bear* and the *Dragon*.

&

It was carried with the common motion of the Stars from East to West, but it ſeemed to be moved ſomwhat ſwifter than the Stars, for in the firſt Daies of its Apparition, it was wont to riſe a little before five in the morning; and afterwards it roſe about four a Clock and before four, and ſo ſooner and ſooner, till it prevented the Midnight, and Bed-time. And we have reaſon to believe, that this Comet was the Prognoſtick and forerunner of malignant and peſtilential Diſeaſes, and alſo of thoſe Wars, wherewith whole Europe in a manner, hath ſince that time been laid Waſt.

And although the Air be chief among the mediate Cauſes of malignant and peſtilential Feavers: yet ſure enough other non-natural things do concur to their generation, as I ſhall particularly and briefly declare.

The next to air are Aliments, becauſe bad Diet Cauſeth a ſickly diſpoſition of the body, which is an internal efficient, and *Cauſa ſine qua non*, of malignant and Peſtilential Feavers. Whereupon *Galen* in his Book *De Cibis boni et mali Succi*, and in the 1. *de Differ. Feb. Chap.* 3. Does demonſtrate, that from bad and corrupt Diet Peſtilential Diſeaſes do ariſe. Now meats are ſaid to be evil and the Cauſes of thoſe diſeaſes in many reſpects.

And in the firſt place, when the Fruits of the Earth and of Trees, by reaſon of a bad conſtitution of the year *viz.* Over moiſt or over dry, or corrupted by miſts, or ſome tempeſtuous weather, or ſome malignant influence of the ſtars; do, being eaten, produce bad Juices in the body.

Secondly, when there is great Famine and ſcarcity of Corn: From whence came that Proverb *Ho loimos meta limon*, the Plague follows famine. For then the poor common People are forced to fill their bellies with ſuch meats as are cheap and bad, whence ariſes abundance of bad Humors. And which is much worſe, when a plenty preſently followes famine, they do then ſuddenly cram themſelves with much meat, which by the languiſhing heat of their internal parts cannot be well digeſted, and thereupon thoſe meats come to participate of a malignant putrefaction.

Thirdly, When Aliments, which in their own Nature are good do by ſome way or other, gain putrefaction or ſome evil qualitie, ſuch are wheat, barly, beans, and peaſe, and other kind of grain, which being either over long kept, or ill laid up in a moiſt place, or otherwiſe miſaffected, do come to be muſty, or have ſome other putrefactive qualitie. Such is fleſh over long kept, or ſtinking or ſuch as is of beaſts that were not killed, but died of ſome diſeaſe: as *Julius Obſequens* relates, that in the Iſle called *Lipara* when the Sea was made hot, the fires which by meanes of an Earth-quake were forcibly vomited out of the Mount *Ætna*, and had boiled the Fiſhes caſting them upon the ſhoar: the Inhabitants eating greedily of thoſe Fiſhes, a ſore Peſtilence followed.

Neither is there leſs power in drinks, when putrid and corrupted wines or beer or other liquors are drunk; or when water is drunk out of putrid and muddy Lakes, or otherwaies infected. As good Hiſtories do teſtifie that numerous Armies, have been deſtroied by peſtilential Diſeaſes, with drinking ſuch waters.

Theſe non-natural things mentioned *viz.* Ayr and Meates and drinks, have the greateſt force to engender malignant Feavers. but the four remaining *viz.* things voided or retained, Motion and Reſt, Sleep and waking, with Paſſions of the Mind, are of leſs efficacy, and do only concur as adjuvant Cauſes, or ſuch as diſpoſe the body to conceive a malignant putrefaction; as in our expoſition of them ſhal preſently appear.

The retention of Courſes in women, or of ſome other accuſtomed evacuation in Men, as of the Hemorrhoides, bleeding at noſe, and Looſenes, which betides ſome perſons, at certain ſeaſons; when they happen in a peſtilential year, they are wont to produce a malignant diſeaſe. For thoſe things which are wont to be avoided as ſuperfluous and burdenſome to Nature, if they be retained in the body, they do eaſily conceive putrefaction ſo likwiſe over great evacuations either of blood or other humors, do much weaken the Body, and do Cauſe that Natural Heat being weakned, it is ſoon infected by the vitious and peſtilential impurities of the Air.

As for motion and reſt, certain it is, that overmuch Idleneſs is a Cauſe, that Natural heat is not ſufficiently eventilated, and conſequently the Humors conceive putrefaction: ſo over great exerciſe does very much open the pores, and diſſolves the Heat; whereupon the body becoming weak and more apt to take impreſſion, does eaſily receive the Infection.

And too much ſleep, makes many Excrements and fils the body with Humidities, which eaſily putrefie, but too much watching does engender Crudities, and they eaſily putrefie, becauſe Natural Heat cannot wel maſter them: and becauſe by them, many obſtructions are cauſed, by which Tranſpiration is prohibited, and at length putrefaction engendred.

And finaly, paſſions of the Mind, are wont vehemently to exagitate the body and to diſturb the humors: and ſo they much Diſpoſe the body to receive infection; and eſpecially fear and Sadnes which Drawing the vital Spirits inward, do as it were choak and ſmother them, whereby the vigor of the Heart is ſo broken, that it cannot ſufficienly reſiſt the venom and firſt aſſaults of peſtilential Sickneſſes, yea verily and the Humors being ſtirred in the veines and vehemently diſturbed, are thruſt out of their Natural conſtitution, and do conceive a malignant putrefaction. Inſomuch that

ſome

ſome have conceived, that Peſtilential Diſeaſes are bred in Camps and at Sieges of Towns, not ſo much through bad Diet and ſtink of dead Carcaſes, as through Terror, Fear, Anxiety and dread of Death, which do exagitate the Humors, and put them into a tumultuary Combuſtion and Fluctuation.

The Signs of a peſtilential Feaver do ſome of them foretel the diſeaſe when it is coming; others declare it to be preſent; and others witnes where it has bin. All which muſt be ſet down, becauſe the firſt tend to Preſervation, the ſecond to Cure, and the third ſort to be a Caveat to ſuch as are not yet infected.

The Signs which foreſhow a peſtilential Feaver, are taken from three things *viz.* From the the Diſpoſition of the Body, from the Preſence of Cauſes, and from ſome intermediate diſpoſitions.

Thoſe bodies are diſpoſed to receive peſtilential Infection, which have collected evil Juyces through bad diet, and by a prepoſterous uſe of the ſix non-natural things aforeſaid. Or ſuch as being plethorick do gorge themſelves and inordinately and unſeaſonably repleniſh themſelves. Furthermore ſome that are neither plethorick nor cacochymical, do diſpoſe their bodies to the reception of this diſeaſe, while they torment their minds with moſt troubleſome paſſions, or give themſelves immoderately to carnal embracements; for from theſe two Cauſes, the peſtilential feaver is very ordinarily produced, forasmuch as by them corruption is eaſily introduced even amongſt good humors for Paſſions of the Mind do diſtract and draw away the ſpirits, from their proper operations and overmuch Carnal embracement, does weaken al the powers of the body. but, the Spirits being diſtracted, and the vertues weakened, the Humors change their Nature, and grow corrupt.

Finally, thoſe whoſe principal Members are weak, or ſome waies tainted, either from the womb, or by bad diet or any other external Cauſe; which have an hot and moiſt temperature; which have a very thin or very compacted habit of body, are al diſpoſed to peſtilential Feavers, for hot and moiſt bodies are ſubject to putrefaction, thin bodies are liable to al injuries, compacted conſtitutions, have no free tranſpiration.

The preſence of ſuch Cauſes as can breed a peſtilential feaver do portend the ſame: and conſequently il ſeaſons and unnatural temper of the year, Dearth, and Scarcity of Victuals, Wars and other Cauſes, reckoned up before, when they appear, they declare the Plague to be approaching.

Thoſe intermediate diſpoſitions are, when ſuch a diſpoſition of body and the Cauſes aforeſaid being preſent, wee ſee a Man more ſad than ordinary, an unexplicable fear in him without good ground or cauſe, the Colour of the face changed; is not rightly diſpoſed in point of diet; is diſturbed with bad dreames; infeſted with wearines which comes without labor, thirſt, watchings, ſtomach-ſickness; it is eaſily conjectured, that man will have the Peſtilence: for al theſe things do declare, that the humors do attain another nature, and do corrupt. from whence comes a peſtilential Feaver.

Such Signs as declare the Peſtilence to be preſent are exactly to be propounded and therefore al the Heads of Signs muſt be run over, out of which this Diſeaſe may be known. which Heads of ſigns, are taken from the three kinds of ſymptomes, becauſe the ſymptomes are the Effects of Diſeaſes, and Cauſes can no way ſo conveniently be known as by their effects. And therefore, ſome ſignes are taken from the Actions hurt, ſome from Excrements voided, and others from qualities changed. Unto which Heads a fourth muſt be added taken from ſupervenient Infirmites. To the right underſtanding of which, theſe things following muſt be premiſed.

Firſt, we muſt know that the ſame ſigns in a manner doe ſhew a peſtilental Feaver properly ſo called, and a Feaver ſimply malignant, and that the ſignes of the one and the other doe differ only according to more and leſs; ſo that in the peſtilential Feaver the ſymptoms are more, and in the malignant Feaver leſs cruel; yet there are ſome adjuncts more proper to the one than the other which we ſhall declare in their proper place.

Secondly, we muſt note, that there is no true, proper and Pathognomonick ſign of theſe Feavers viz. Such an one as wherever that ſigne is, there is the peſtilence, and where that ſign is not, there is no peſtilence; no not the Bubo or ſwelling in the Groyn nor the Carbuncle; ſeeing that many have them not though they have the plague, and many have Buboes and Carbuncles that have no malignitie in them: neither are thoſe purple ſpots any ſuch pathognomonick ſign, although a malignant Feaver is from them termed the ſpotted Feaver, forasmuch as many have a malignant Feaver without any ſuch ſpots; & thoſe ſpots doe ſometimes appear on women that want, their courſes, and in ſome Children by reaſon of a light ebullition of Blood, without any Feaver, which I have often ſeen in both. Howbeit by a Concurrency and collection of all ſignes and tokens theſe Feavers may certianly be known,

Thirdly, we muſt mark, that al the ſigns which ſhall be propounded, are not found in al ſick perſons of theſe Feavers; but only a part of them, which notwithſtanding will be ſufficient, punctually to diſcover the kind of the diſeaſe. For according to the variety of patients bodies and

& the intention or remiſnes of the diſeaſe, now theſe kind of ſymptomes, & anon thoſe do chiefly ſhew themſelves.

Finally, it muſt be known, that the ſigns of a peſtilential and malignant Feaver (although they are alſo found in other Feavers) yet are made in ſome ſort pathognomonick in this Feaver in a two-fold reſpect. Firſt, becauſe in theſe Feavers, they are ſo conditioned as in other Feavers they are not. For the Head-ach, Ilneſs at Stomach, Vomiting, the manner of the Heat and other ſigns, when they accompanie peſtilential Feavers, they have a peculiar malignant condition whereby they differ from themſelves when they accompanie other ordinarie Feavers; which is wel known to them that are but indifferently exerciſed in the Practice of Phyſick. Secondly, becauſe the ſymptomes do not obſerve the ſame proportion among themſelves in theſe Feavers, which they doe in ordinarie ones. So that the heat being gentle to the touch, the pulſe not much changed, doe ſhew a ſmal Feaver: yet with them is joyned mighty Head-ach, watchings and ſomtimes raveings, and other ſymptoms which are wont to accompanie a burning Feaver. Theſe things being thus premiſed, we ſhal decribe the order of ſigns, beginning from the actions hindered.

Becauſe therefore, the Heart is cheifly afflicted in theſe diſeaſes, by the malignant and venemous quality thereof, therefore its action viz. The Pulſe, is diverſly changed, according to the varietie of times and the divers condition of the diſeaſe. For ſomtimes at the firſt, it is in a manner natural, and very like the pulſe of perſons in health, as *Galen* ſhews in the 3 de preſag. cap. 4. but in the progreſs and augmentation of the diſeaſe, it is little, weak and unequall. Alſo the frequentneſs of the pulſe is alwayes more than the increaſ of heat can require, becauſe the Heart being provoked by the malignant qualitie, doth in that regard diſturb it ſelf more than the neceſſity of eventilation doth require. Likewiſe the ſigns of this Feaver are.

Cardialgia, Heart burning or pain of the mouth of the ſtomach, which *Hippocrates* condemns as a ſign of malignity 1. Progn. in theſe words, Pain of the mouth of the ſtomach, with diſtention of the Hypochondria and Head-ach, are ſigns of maligity.

Somtimes great thirſt, exceeding the meaſure of the Patients heat and ſomtimes want of thirſt, with a vehement Feaver, and dryneſs of the Tongue, for both are ſigns of malignity

Great want of appetite, which make many abhor al kinds of meat, as much as if they were the moſt loathſom medicines. Now this is wont to ariſe from malignant vapors which vex the ſtomach.

Stomach Sickneſs and vomiting ariſing from the ſame Cauſe, eſpecially when it happens in the beginning of the diſeaſe, and is ſo divers that ſome preſently vomit what they eat; other vomits as ſoon as they have taken broath, but they vomit not the broath which they took, but divers kinds of Humors; ſome keep any kind of meat, but vomit their Drinks, Iuleps, Emulſions and whatever drinking matter is given them, preſently; great thirſt notwithſtanding remaining, with dryneſs and blacknes of the tongue.

A frequent and inordinate ſhivering, which comes divers times in a day, ſpringing from ſharp and biting exhalations of an adverſe qualitie to our natures, which are carried unto the ſenſitive parts: which kind of ſhivering does rarely happen in other putred Feavers, becauſe the vapors in them have not the like malignitie. In malignant intermitting tertians, ſomtimes a ſign of malignitie is taken from the ſhaking and the cold. For it ſomtimes happens, that in the beginning of the fit, with a light coldneſs or ſhivering, the heat doth ſo much retire inwards, that the fleſh of the patient is very cold and the face is like that of a dead perſon, and the pulſe ſo little as it it did not beat at al. After which follows an Heat, which neither in the Augment nor in the ſtate, doth to the touch feel great or ſharp; yea and the fleſh of the patient is either lukewarm to feel to, or coldiſh even to the declination. The pulſe, when the heat comes, doth more appear, yet it is ſmall, unequal, frequent and very weak: and many other ſymptomes of a peſtilential Feaver are preſent, which may ſufficiently prove, that there are intermitting malignant Feavers as well as continual; as was hinted before.

Wearyneſs of the whol bodie, Heavineſs, and a breaking as it were of the members appear in the beginning of the diſeaſe, by reaſon of the foreſaid vapors, diſperſed through the whol Body

Paines of the Head, Watchings and Raveings, which al come from the ſame cauſes, viz. from ſharp and venemous vapors; which when they lodg themſelves in the membranes of the Brain, they cauſe head-ach and in as much as they heat and dry the very ſubſtance of the brain, if the alteration be but ſmall, they cauſe watchings, if great they cauſe ravings. And to theſe ſymptomes, beſides Heat and Dryneſs, the venemous quality contributes much, becauſe in the vulgar Feavers ſuch ſymptoms do not happen, unleſs the diſtemper be much more than ordinarie. And paines in this Feaver, have a peculiar property to be very diverſe, & to ſhift places. For ſomtimes only

the fore part of the head, otherwhiles the hinder part, now the forehead, anon the eyebrowes are cut aſunder as it were with pain, and ſometimes other parts as the ſhoulder-blades, the ſides, the back, &c. Somtimes it is fixed in one part, otherwhiles it changeth place and vexes now this, now that part of the body.

In ſome patients drouſie and ſleepie diſpoſitions happen, viz. In ſuch as have their brains ful of flegmatick excrements: which flegmatick excrements, are diſolved by hot vapors aſcending from the inferior parts, and doe hinder the functions of the Brain.

The urin in theſe peſtilential Feavers, is ſometimes like the urin of ſound perſons, namely when the humors doe more offend through a malignant Qualitie, than by putrefaction; & ſomtimes it continues ſo for the firſt days; afterwards it becomes thick & troubled. Somtimes in the ſtate of the diſeaſe, it appears concoct, though the ſick are in a periſhing condition. ſometimes, it is thin and crude, haveing no ſediment, or ſuch a ſediment as is more like an excrement than a ſediment. But moſt commonly it appears thick and troubled, and of an high colour; and hath a thick, red, diſtrubed and ſcattered ſediment. And finaly a evil diſpoſitions of urines, doe happen in this diſeaſe, according to the divers alterations of the putrefieing and corrupted Humors.

Chollerick fluxes of the belly, which either comes of themſelves or through ſome like occaſions by ſome gentle Clyſter or medicament; which bring many to their end, So *Hippocrates* relates in 3. Epidem. In a peſtilencial Conſtitution there deſcribed, that many died of the looſneſs and Bloody-flux: For the Humors being made more furious by the malignant qualitie which is in them, doe exceedingly provoke Nature, ſo that ſhe indeavors to drive them out the neereſt way: Now in theſe Stooles, there is wont to be a mighty ſtink, by reaſon of the extream corruption of the humors.

An abundance of Worms is wont to be avoided in this diſeaſe, eſpecially at the beginning: For the great Putrefaction doth very much diſpoſe the Humors to breed Worms.

Frequent ſweates, ſmall, ſhort and unprofitable doe break forth in the beginning of the diſeaſe.

The Heat is mild and gentle to feel to, ſo that they ſcarſe ſeem to have a Feaver, whereupon *Galen 9. Simp. cap. de Bolo Armen, & Avic. fen 4. lib. 1. cap de febre peſtilenti.* Doe teach that peſtilential Feavers have oftimes a mild and gentle Heat; and the reaſon is, becauſe theſe diſeaſes are rather cauſed by a malignant and venemous quality, than of an ordinarie diſtemper and Putrefaction.

Readneſs of the eyes is often ſeen in peſtilential Feavers, becauſe the membranes of the Brain are in a ſort inflamed by ſharp vapors aſcending into the head, which they eaſily communicate to the *Tunica adnata* or ſkin of the eyes ſo called, which is propagated from the ſaid membranes

Finally, purple ſpots like Flea-bitings, called by later Phyſitians *Peticulos* or *Petechiæ*, are the proper and peculiar Signs of a malignant Feaver. For they are found in no other kind of Feaver; foraſmuch as they do ariſe from a vitious quality of the blood or other humors, joyned with malignity. Yet there do appear in other diſeaſes, ſpots very like unto thoſe aforeſaid, but ſpringing from a far different Cauſe; *viz.* From the over thinnes of the blood, which being exagitated by the heat or the expulſive faculty, does ſprout forth of the Capillary Veins into the Skin. Theſe ſpots, are wont for the moſt part to appear in ſuch as have ſome flux of blood, becauſe the blood in ſuch is more thin and watry: and alſo in ſplenetick perſons, in ſuch as have the Jaundiſe and old obſtructions of the Bowels, and (in a word) in al ſuch, who by reaſon of the weaknes of their Bowels, do breed watry blood and are apt to fal into a Cachexy. For in ſuch perſons, the blood being made thinner than ordinary, ſometimes flows out at the Noſe, ſomtimes at ſome other part, and ſomtimes it comes out of the Capillary Veins into the Skin; where being retained, it loſeth its own coluor, and becomes either blewiſh, or black, or light red, and cauſes great variety of ſpots; which notwithſtanding are very far different from the ſpots of peſtilential feavers, and do argue nothing but the watry thinneſs of the blood and weakneſs of the Liver. Now thoſe ſpots which come out, in Peſtilential feavers, do ariſe from Humors putrefiing and infected with an evil quality. Furthermore, thoſe ſpots do break out ſomtimes critically and ſomtimes Symptomatically. Critically, when as Nature haveing either in Part or in whol overcome the putrefaction and corrected the bad quality, does drive the corrupt humor to the external parts; And then the diſeaſe is evermore abated. Symptomatically when Nature is pricked forward by the quantity or evil quality of the morbifick matter, does tranſmit a portion thereof unto the Skin, before it be concocted, or the evil quality thereof amended. And from thence the Patient receives no Eaſe, but rather, Nature haveing unprofitably wraſtled with the diſeaſe, it is a token rather that ſhee is conquered than conquers.

The Colours of theſe ſpots are divers, and do ſhow the Diverſity of the humors by which they are bred. For the red ſpots are bred of the purer ſort of blood, and the black from chollerick blood more or leſs aduſt. As for the ſtore of theſe ſpots, ſomtime they appear in greater numbers and

ſomtimes

ſomtimes in leſs. They begin to appear ſomtimes on the fourth, fifth, ſeventh, or ninth, or ſome other critical day, if their coming out portend any good; ſomtimes on other daies, when there is little good to be hoped for thereby. Somtimes they are ſeen in al parts of the body, but moſt frequently in the Loynes, breſt and Neck.

Now the Diſeaſes which come, upon a peſtilential feaver for the moſt part are, ſomthing coming out like Pox called *Exanthemata*; Puſhes and Ulcers of the Mouth; Carbuncles; Riſings in the Groyn and behind the Ears.

The Exanthemata aforeſaid, differ from the purple ſpots, becauſe in the ſpots there is only the color chinged, but here is a certain riſing in theſe *Exanthemata* to an head. Somtimes they are like warts, and ſomtimes leſs, reſembling millet ſeed. Somtimes they are red, being cauſed by blood ſomtimes white, proceeding of flegm or Seroſities; yellow from choller; purple from aduſt Choller; blewiſh or black, by reaſon of great burning or Mortification. Some break out Symptomatically, others Critically, others in a middle way. Some dry away, others come to matter, others grow to be ulcerous.

To theſe may be referred puſhes appearing in the Mouth which have al the differences of the forſaid *Exanthemata*, and are ſomtimes ſo malignant, that the ſick can hardly endure to eat and drink. From Children they often Cauſe Death becauſe they wil not endure the pain of eating and drinking. Theſe puſhes do ſomtimes degenerate into Ulcers, which breed very great trouble to the patients, hindering the motion of their tongue and eſpecially their ſwallowing.

But ſomtimes Ulcers are bred in the Mouth immediately without any puſtules or puſhes foregoing which the *Greeks* cal *Aphthæ*: of which there are many ſorts. For ſome are ſuperficial, others profound; ſome clean, others foul; ſome benign, others malignant; ſome with a Cruſt, others without. And the Cruſt is ſomtimes white, ſomtimes yellow, ſomtimes blewiſh or black. Thoſe which are deep, filthy and malignant and that have a black Cruſt, are the moſt dangerous.

Carbuncles and Buboes, are wont to riſe in divers parts of the body, but eſpecialy where the Glandules are; becauſe the expulſive faculty being provoked by a malignant quality does expel the pernicious matter from the internal parts eſpecially the more noble ones to the external: ſo that from the Brain ſhee ſends it to the Glandules or kernels behind the Ears; from the Heart, to the Arm-pits; from the Liver to the Groyns; whence ſwellings under the Ears called *Parotides*, & thoſe in the Groyn called *Buboes*, do ariſe. Which kinds of tumors do cheifly appear in a true peſtilential feaver, eſpecially thoſe in the Groyn, which therefore the common people call the Peſt or Plague. But Carbuncles and *Parotides* or riſings behind the Ears, do alſo break out in malignant Feavers, but in ſuch as are at the top of malignity, and come very neer the Nature of true Peſtilential Feavers.

Signs commemorative, are chiefly in requeſt when Phyſitians are called to view the Corps of the dead, at ſuch times as there is a Plague abroad, or ſome ſuſpition thereof, that it may be known whether the party died of the plague or not.

And firſt of al, in ſuch dead bodies there do ſomtimes appear thoſe ſpots of which we ſpake before and ſomtimes marks, or ſtripes, as it were after whipping: for theſe are the tokens of a Peſtilential diſeaſe and venemous, ſeeing thoſe that are poyſoned have alſo theſe ſigns. And thoſe ſpots do eſpecially denote the Peſtilence, when they are of a lead Color or black. Alſo thoſe *Exanthemata* ſpoken of before, do ſhew the ſame, eſpecially if they have a bad Color: but much more the Buboes, *Parotides* and Carbuncles whereunto may be added ſuch ſigns as have appeared in the Courſe of the diſeaſe: for the recounting of them wil make a certain demonſtration.

The Prognoſtick of Peſtilential Feavers is ſo uncertain, that nothing can be certainly affirmed touching their Event, until certain tokens appear either that Nature or the diſeaſe hath gotten victory; which is not wont to happen, unleſs about the end of the ſtate or the Beginning of the Declination. Where the diſcreet Phyſician ought to delay and ſuſpend his Judgment touching the Iſſue of the diſeaſe in the Beginning and the Augment

Wee muſt nevertheleſs propound the chief tokens out of which we may draw a great Conjecture, whether the diſeaſe wil end in Death or Health, by help whereof we may foreſee, what is to be hoped or feared. yet not being over confident: for Experience hath taught us, that many have eſcaped, with moſt mortal ſigns; and others have periſhed under al the tokens of Recovery. But we ſhal paſs over al ſuch prognoſtick ſigns which are common to al acute diſeaſes, of which *Hippocrates* hath diſcourſed largely in his Prognoſticks, Coick, Predictions, Procheticks, and Epidemicks and likewiſe in his Aphoriſms, which may have a place likewiſe in this diſeaſe. But wee wil propound only ſuch as are proper in a ſpecial manner to peſtilential Feavers, from which a more certain Prediction may be drawn.

Now theſe may be drawn from the ſame fountains from whence wee drew the Diagnoſticks.

Firſt Therefore, in theſe Feavers, if the pulſe keep a tenor and equality, be the Feaver never ſo great, it gives alwaies ſome matter of hopes. Contrarily an inordinate, unequal and contracted pulſe, is dangerous, eſpecially if it appear weak from the Beginning. But thoſe differences of

pulſes

pulſes are not ſo dangerous in malignant Feavers, as in ordinary ones. For although an intermitting pulſe in a young man, be ſo deadly a ſign, that *Galen* teſtifies, though he had ſeen many old folks and children eſcape having an intermittent Pulſe, but never any young Man, yet in malignant Feavers I have known not a few young Men, which had an intermitting pulſe divers daies and yet eſcaped. Pulſes like thoſe of perſons in Health are very dangerous: for they ſignifie that Nature out of weakneſs abſtains from the Concoction of Humors. For where by an evil and pernicious quality, the ſtrength is exceedingly weakened, Nature being weak, does not ſet her ſelf to digeſt the matter, not meddling with the Humor which hath cauſed the diſeaſe: ſo that no endeavor of coction being uſed, no labor follows, and there is either no Feaver, or a very little one. Wee have an example hereof in external tumors, in which ſo long as the Part is almoſt overwhelmed by the plenty or ill condition of the matter, there is neither Pain nor Tenor; but whereas Nature begins to fight againſt the matter and to turn it into quittor then the feaver is much increaſed. Even ſo in malignant feavers, the Patients ſeem ſometimes freed from their feaver, wheras they grow worſe and draw towards death: as we may ſee in *Hippocrates* 3. Epidem. Secti. Ægr. 2. where *Hermocrates* from the twentieth day to the twentyfourth ſeemed to have no Feaver, and yet on the twentyſixth he died.

Raving is very common in this Feaver. neither is it to be feared, if it be leſſened by ſleep, and eſpecially if it vaniſh away with a plentyful ſweat: for tis a ſign that the matter is drawn from the Brain, into the habit of the Body. But a perſevering dorage, is pernicious, becauſe it's a token that it degenerates into a true Phrenzy.

The contractions and hoppings of the Members, which do often happen in this Feaver, are Convulſive motions and very pernicious, and that the more if joyned with raveing, for they ſignifie the brain to be extreamely hurt

Trembling motions of the hands and Tongue are wont to be deadly and are by *Hippocrates* much condemned in the 1. Prognoſt. For they ſhew great weakeneſs, and that Nature is overcome by the diſeaſe.

Deafnes though in the beginnings of occult diſeaſes it be exceeding dangerous, according to the Doctrine of *Hippocrates*; yet if it appear in the State of a diſeaſe it portends health, eſpecially in malignant Feavers. And I have obſerved a thouſand times, that ſuch as being ſick of Peſtilential Feavers, were taken Deaf in the State of the diſeaſe, did al eſcape, though the other ſymptomes were never ſo dangerous; for it is a token that the brain, being ſufficiently ſtrong does thruſt the humors from the internal to the external parts.

Sneezing, according to *Hippocrates*, even in deadly diſeaſes (provided the Lungs be in good Caſe) do give Hope of recovery. But in malignant Feavers, be the ſymptomes otherwiſe never ſo dangerous, they promiſe Recovery.

Frequent Heart-burnings or Hiccoughings, do portend danger, and ſignifie that the ſtomach is grievouſly afflicted by the venemous quality.

Extream averneſs to meat, is very dangerous for it ſignifies the Stomach to be maſtered by the malignant quality of the Humor, and that its temper is wholly overthrown, ſo that it refuſeth and abominates laudable nourihment, which it moſt familiarly affecteth in time of Health.

Suppreſſion of al evacuations in the beginning and augment of the Diſeaſe, is counted a good ſign. For it ſhews that the morbifick matter is not ſo malignant, as to provoke Nature to excretion before the due time but that Nature does yet conquer, and wil in due time expell the matter, provided there be no ſign that the Humor wil ſettle in the Head, Belly or any principal part. But in the ſtate of the diſeaſe for nothing to be evacuated, but for worſer ſigns to appear in ſome principal member; is bad. For it's a ſign the diſeaſe wil either laſt long, or give little hope of Life. For the matter which in divers daies could not be overcome, does bring ſome great dammage in the ſame member, as a phrenzy, Lethargy, and others which ariſe after the eleventh or fourteenth day, which can very hardly be cured by al the Medicines imaginable.

Blood that is drawn by Phlebotomie, if it appear no waies faulty, but pure and according to Nature, tis a dangerous token. For it is a plain argument that there is more of a venemous quality, than of putrefaction; or that putrefaction may lurk in the Veins next the Heart, which cannot be drawn away by Phlebotomy.

From Urines in a Peſtilential Feaver, there is ſcarce any, or a very uncertain prediction to be made. For not only the confuſed, troubled, thinner, and thicker Urines are bad, as in other Feavers: But alſo that Urine which is like the Urine of a healthy Perſon. Yea verily, and many have died, after the Urines have ſhewed ſigns of Concoction, and then became crude again.

Howbeit, Concocted Urines, and which have a laudable *Enorema* continuing many daies; and daily more uniting it ſelf and deſcending by little and little into the bottom of the Urinal, doth perpetualy promiſe certain recovery, even in malignant Feavers. For it cannot be, that a luſty and ſtrong natural Faculty, which diſcovers it ſelf plainly in theſe Urines, ſhould not riſe againſt the malignant Quality, and at length overcome the ſame. And therefore I have oftentimes with great confidence foretold a good event from the ſigns of Concoction perſevering in the Urines

in

in ſuch as have had malignant Feavers, attended with moſt grievous Symptoms, ſo that all the By-ſtanders were in great fear of their Lives.

A Fat and oyly Urine, black or livid, with a black or blewiſh ſettling, doth certainly betoken death.

Very much Urine being made, and no abatement of the Feaver thereupon, is dangerous, becauſe it ſignifies a melting of the Body.

Sweats in this Feaver, although they come well conditioned, and in the Critical day, doth ſeldom perfectly judge the Diſeaſe. And ſomtimes the Feaver is abated by Sweat on the firſt day; and then the Symptoms grow high, and after many Sweats the Patient dies. For plentiful Sweats, not diminiſhing the Diſeaſe, doth ariſe from the melting of the whol Body. Neither muſt we therefore beleeve, that Critical Sweats doth never any good in theſe Feavers. For by how much leſs Venom there is in the Diſeaſe, they do ſo much the more good; as it happens in ordinary Feavers. And we find by Obſervation, that 'tis far the better for the Patients to Sweat often at the beginning of the Diſeaſe (provided they be not worſe after their Sweats) for 'tis a ſign that Nature doth attenuate the Matter by little and little, and expel the ſame by Sweat.

Looſneſs of the Belly is a very uncertain ſign. For oftentimes a Looſneſs at the beginning of the Diſeaſe hath been good, which yet experience ſhews, is ſomtimes a deadly token. Again after ſome Coction, we have ſeen the Patient killed, by a looſneſs, and ſomtimes by the ſame recovered: Yet we muſt thus diſtinguiſh. When a venemous Quality hath the maſtery, the more the Matter goes away by Stool at the beginning of the Diſeaſe, the leſs danger. But when the Diſeaſe ariſes moſt part from putrefaction of the Humors, they are worſe that are looſe, at the beginning of the Diſeaſe.

Purple ſpots, when they are many and large, and of a benign color, and break out Critically, they foretel that Nature wil Conquer. But if they be few, ſmal, & of a bad color, and are Symptomatically put forth, they ſignifie that Nature is never worſted. And further, If they go in again, its the worſt ſign of all; for it ſhews that the morbific Matters reflux into the inward parts.

Ex anthemata, or wheels appearing in divers parts of the Body, are effects of greater malignity than Purple Spots, and conſequently portend greater danger.

Carbuncles and Buboes, or riſings in the Groin and ſome other parts, doth witneſs greateſt malignity, and threaten moſt danger: ſeeing they are wont to follow thoſe Feavers whoſe peculiar Character it is, that more die of them than recover.

Carbuncles & Buboes, by how much they are the further from the Heart, grow faſter and come quicker to ripen, by ſo much the leſs dangerous are they. But if Tumors encreaſe ſuddenly with bad Symptoms, 'tis ill. Carbuncles very great, of a filthy color, with an eating Ulcer, or which turn into a Grangrene, are deadly: as alſo thoſe which are neer the Heart, or riſe upon the Throat Experience hath taught that many Carbuncles are more dangerous than few; and contrarily many Buboes or other riſings are more ſafe, than few. *Perotides* (or riſings behind the Ears) in malignant and Purple Feavers, are in the Augment and ſtate deadly. But if they appear when the Diſeaſe doth never ſo little decline and come to Suppuration, they are a good token.

The Cure of a Peſtilential Feaver is divided into two parts. The firſt contains the preſervation of thoſe that have it not; the ſecond contains the healing of thoſe that have it.

The preſervation from the Peſt conſiſts chiefly in taking away of thoſe Cauſes, which make Bodies fit to rece ive the Peſtilence, and breed it in them. And they are Internal or External; the Internal are a Diſpoſition of the Body apt thereto, a Plethorie, a Cachochimy, and Obſtructions. The External are eſpecially, a vitiated Air, and a wandring Contagion. Bodies diſpoſed to this Diſeaſe, are ſuch as either Naturally or Accidently, are more moiſt than they ought to be; Weak lax and rare, denſe and compact. Moiſt bodies muſt be dryed; drie muſt be preſerved in that temper; the former muſt avoid full diet, much drinking and all moiſt nouriſhments; ſuch as are eſpecially Fruits that wil not keep, Hearbs, Fiſhes, Meats made of milk; the South air, ſuch as comes from lakes, and eſpecially the air of the night, Idlenes, long Sleep, eſpecially Sleeping after dinners, Batheings and whatever elſe can moiſten the Body.

Let weak bodies be ſtrengthened, with a reſtorative diet and with ſtrengthening medicaments. Thoſe of a rare lax and thin conſtitution, need the ſame waies of prevention with the moiſt. But the denſe and compacted conſtitution, becauſe it is moſt of al diſpoſed to a peſtilential diſeaſe muſt more carefully be freed from a plethorie, Cacochymie and from obſtruction; which cauſes, ſeeing in all bodies they may breed this kind of Feaver, as internall cauſes, we muſt perpetually ſtudie their removal.

A Plethory requires Phlebotimy provided nothing do adviſe the contrary, as a very cold or hot ſeaſon of the year, and a peſtilential Conſtitution of the Ayr in which a vein muſt not be open-

ſd, unleſs a *Plethora ad vaſa* do manifeſtly urge the ſame; or ſome uſual evacuations of blood by courſes, hemorrhoids, or noſe-bleeding, have been ſtopped. For the blood being exhauſt the air which is breathed in will more eaſily imprint it's peſtilential qualitie, and in caſe the diſeaſe happen, the Patient will the hardlier eſcape, for being weakened by blood-leting even as they who drink poiſon after blood letting, it penetrates the more and they are with more difficulty recovered. Alſo when we fear poyſon, we let not the patient blood, ſo *Galen Lib. 7. de diff. Feb. Cap.* 4. Where he propoundes a preſervation from a peſtilential Feaver, he preſcribes indeed Purgation and opening of obſtructions; but he makes no mention of Phlebotomy

To Cacochymy we muſt oppoſe purgeing, ſuch as is proper for the humors offending, convenient preparation being premiſed if it ſeem neceſſary: with this caution, that benign medicaments be only uſed, abſtaining from ſuch as have a malignant and deadly qualitie. with which it will be good to mix ſome Bezoarticks and ſuch things as are Alexipharmical.

Obſtructions are cauſed by the multitude of humors their thickneſs and clammineſs. The multitude will be helped by ſuch urin as evacuates the thickneſs; by ſuch as attenuate the clammineſs by things that are abſterſive or clenſing.

In reſpect of externall cauſes, Precaution muſt be made firſt by correcting the exceſſes of the air viz. By cooling that which is too hot, as we taught in continual Feavers; by drying that which is over moiſt, with fires both in ſtreets & in private houſes, and that as much as may be made with ſweet woods as Juniper, Bayes, Roſemary and ſuch like. Secondly by removing al the cauſes above recited which do infect the air. Thirdly by conſuming and diſſipating the infections in the air. which may be don by kindeling of fires, as was ſaid in correcting the moiſture of the air, and the perfumes of ſweet ſmelling and Alexipharmical materials. Alſo by vehement agitation of the ayr, to which end the frequent diſcharging of great Guns will be very effectuall.

But if the ayr ſhal be very much infected, ſo as therefrom a Feaver truly peſtilential ſhal ariſe, the beſt kind of preſervative is to change the air, and they that are forced to continue, or to converſe in places infected and among the ſick: have need of many other cautions and they muſt often uſe Antidotes. All which are at large ſet down by ſuch Authors as have treated expreſly of the Plague, and from thence the reader muſt fetch them; becauſe my deſign is but briefly to touch ſuch things as are requiſite to the cure of the true peſtilence; becauſe few Phyſitians of any note dare hazard themſelves in the cure of the true Plague: & contrarily ſeeing both in *England* & in *France* and whol Europe over; al Phyſitians in a manner have imployed themſelves in the cure of ſpotted and malignant Feavers; I have thought it moſt worth my paines to direct this cure to that kind of peſtilential Feaver, which is ſimplie called malignant and the ſpoted or purple Feaver. Yet ſo that it may ſerve for the cure of the true Plague; ſeeing as we ſaid at the beginning, the ſame Medicines and the ſame Indications, will ſerve for both.

The Cure therefore of thoſe which are actualy ſick muſt be directed unto the Feaver, the putrefaction and the malignant qualitie. The Feavers muſt be oppoſed with Coolers and Moiſteners, the Putrefaction with Evacuators and Alterers. The malignant qualitie with Antidotes. Al which intentions muſt be ſatiſfied by a threefold Medicinal Meanes after the manner following.

The ſame diet muſt be appointed in this Feaver which was appointed in the continual Feavers. Only this one thing muſt be obſerved, that ſharp things muſt be oftener uſed in drinks and broaths as being very fit to reſiſt putrefaction and the malignant quality. Alſo touching drink this muſt be obſerved that the uſe of wine and ſtrong drink is ſomtimes good in this Feaver, becauſe they and eſpecially wine are very cordial and contrary to the malignant quality. Yet many times they do much hurt and encreaſe the heat of the Feaver. Wherefore the prudence of a phyſitian, is in this caſe very neceſſary, that he may contemplate the Nature of the diſeaſe and conſtitution of the patient: for by this meanes he ſhal know whether the uſe of wine or ſtrong drink be ſafe or no For if the Feaver be very ſmal, but the venemous quality very intenſe, and the body of the patient abound with flegm, wine wel allaied with water may be ſafely given and to good purpoſe. But on the other ſide in an high Feaver and a chollerick conſtitution, to give wine or ſtrong drink is pernicious. This I have learned by a multitude of Experiments and eſpecially in the year 1623. When the Purple Feaver was rife at *Montpelier* after the City had bin beſeidged. Which Feaver was ſo malignant, that a third part at leaſt of thoſe which had it died, and it differed from the true Plague only in the point of a Bubo: foraſmuch as not only whelkes and *Exanthemata*, red, blewiſh and black, but alſo Carbuncles and ſwellings behind the eares did often appear. For to ſuch Sick perſons whoſe pulſe was not very quick and like the pulſe of a ſound perſon, their

Tongue

Tongue moiſt and they without thirſt, I gave wine with good ſucceſs; and I was enclined to continue the uſe thereof, by reaſon of the good the patients found thereby, and becauſe by the uſe thereof the Feaver was not at al augmented, neither did any thirſt or drynes of the tongue ariſe thereby. But in ſuch whoſe Feaver was more ſtrong, with thirſt, dryneſs roughneſs or blackneſs of Tongue, I wholly forbad wine, and kept them perpetually to the uſe of cooling and tart drinkes. But it is to be remembred, that in the firſt daies of the diſeaſe wine muſt never be given, leaſt the crude matter be too much agitated, but only about the ſtate, when the ſigns of malignity do begin more and more to ſhew themſelves. Howbeit *Zacutus Luſitanus* in the 93. Obſ. Lib. 1. of his wonderful Cures and Caſes, relates that in a peſtilential Feaver, the patient being extream thirſty, with a dry and black tongue and paſt hope, he gave wine with moſt happy ſucceſs, ſo that the patient was cured therewith alone. But here that ſaying of *Cornelius Celſus* is to the purpoſe, Thoſe which *Reaſon* could not, have many times bin cured with *Raſhneſs*.

Diet being ordered, the cure muſt be begun by blood-letting, a Clyſter being premiſed: for bleeding is very convenient, both in regard of the Greatnes of the diſeaſe, the hot diſtemper and the putrefaction. But in defining the quantity of blood which is to be taken away, prudence is neceſſary, when in regard of the malignant quality, it does no good but hurt; for thereby the vital faculty is exceedingly weakened, and thoſe which are let blood after being poyſoned, are haſtned to their death. Therefore if a malignant and venemous quality be more than the putrefaction, which may eaſily be known by the proper ſigns aforeſaid, little blood muſt be taken away but if putrefaction be more conſiderable than the venemous quality, blood muſt be taken in a greater quantity. And conſequently, if by reaſon of a ſickly Conſtitution of body, and of putrid humors contained in the veins, the malignant Feaver have bin produced chiefly; blood-letting may ſafely be repeated, once, twice or thrice, until the Burthen of vicious humors contained in the veins be diſcharged. And that eſpecially if Inflamation of any of the Bowels be feared, which many times happens in malignant Feavers. Now bleeding muſt be uſed betimes and at the beginning of the diſeaſe for if the diſeaſe ſhal have taken progreſs and the malignity be diffuſed into the whol Maſs of blood; bleeding does not only no good, but very much weakens Nature; ſo that very many Authors hold, that blood muſt not be let after the fourth day is paſt. And truly, foraſmuch as malignant Feavers do at ſeveral times differ much one from another, in regard of the different degree of Malignity; when they begin to be rife once, diligent obſervation muſt be made, what good the Patients receive by bloodletting. For ſome Feavers being of the kind of Synochi, in which there is great putrefaction and little malignity, are much leſſened by Phlebotomy. And others whoſe Nature conſiſts very near wholly in malignity do become more pernicious by blood letting. This appeares in the true Peſt, in which by the experiment of many approved Authors, it is aſſured, that al which were let blood died. So *Wierus* relates in an Epidemical Catarrh which wandred al Europe over in the yeare 1580. in which al in a manner recovered, ſo that ſcarce one of a thouſand died; yet al that were let blood died thereof. Now we muſt diligently obſerve that which *Galen* hath taught us in the 14. Method chap. 10. that in the Cure of Carbuncles it is good to take blood til the Patient faint away, that the boiling blood which cauſes the Carbuncle may be plentifully evacuated. Whenas the ſame *Galen*, *Lib. de Curat. per venæ*, S. Cap. 14. Commands that in Phlegmonous tumors blood be taken away, till the Color Change, unleſs the Patient be weak, or the Phlegmone malignant. Whereby is intimated, that *Galen* admits copious blood-letting in a ſimple Carbuncle that is void of malignity but not in a malignant and Peſtilent one; which agrees to an hair with the former Precept propounded by us.

As concerning the times and intervalls of blood-letting wherein it is to be iterated, this is to be noted: that if the diſeaſe proceed ſlowly, the blood-lettings muſt not be haſtened: for the patients ſtrength is too ſoon weakened; ſo that it cannot hold out, til al the morbifick matter be expelled. According therefore as the diſeaſe is moved; ſo the Phyſitian ought ſooner or later to let the Patient blood.

And there is a great Controverſie, whether Purple ſpots or wheales appear; Phlebotomy is to be uſed. For ſome account it to be an hainous Crime to let blood when the *Exanthemata* appear, becauſe at that time the humors are moved from the Centre to the Circumference, which motion muſt be by al meanes furthered; and by blood-letting the humors are put into a clean contrary motion, and the blood is drawn from the Circumference to the Centre, when as the inner parts being emptied, it muſt needs be that the blood contained in the outward parts, ſhould run inwards again; which *Galen* plainly teacheth in his 9 *Deſanit. Tuend. Cap.* 10. *viz.* That the Blood when a vein is opened, does flow back from the whol bulk of the body into the internal parts. And the ſame *Galen* in his Comment upon the 9 *Epidem.* Does conjecture that *Simon.* of whom *Hippocrates* ſpake haveing broad puſhes came out, had no good from his vomit, becauſe ſuch juyces were thereby to be evacuated, which took their Courſe to the Skin. Howbeit, by the more ſound Advice of Doctors it's concluded, that the Purple ſpots appearing in the beginning of the diſeaſe and on thoſe

dayes

dayes in which a vein is wont to be opened, if blood were not sufficiently taken away before, it must even then be drawn in immoderate quantity; Nether is there any danger to be feared by so doing; seeing that same Eruption of wheals, which comes in the beginning of the disease, is not critical but Symptomatical only, arising from an exceeding ebullition of blood, and from the fervency of malignant and putrefying Humors; and therefore the Motion of Nature cannot be hindered, when there is more to hinder. For in Case the Patients body being Plethorick, the Urine thick and red, you shal not let blood because of the *Exanthemata* or wheales breaking forth; Nature wil scarce be able to Master such a quantity of Humors, and it is to be feared least they should rush into some internal part of the body and breed therein a pernicious inflamation. Howbeit, blood at such a time must be sparingly taken away, not so as the veines may be emptyed, which might cause a retraction of the evil humors inward again but only so as to take away their over great abundance, which being taken away, the veines draw no new blood, but only fal a little together as it were and become a litle loosened so as to purge themselves the better, and consequently to be the better able to rule the remaining blood. And so is the motion and expulsion of Nature furthered which she endeavours towards the Surface of the body, for she being eased of part of her load wherewith she was oppressed, does more easily cast off the remainder, and drive the same out. Which we doe every where behold in our practice, whiles the very same day oftentimes, in which a vein is opened, yea verily sometimes a few hours after, plentiful sweats, critical and healthy doe break forth. And in truth, though nature were so strong that she could sufficiently rule al the redundant blood, seeing that in plethorick bodies the blood is wont to be thick and by these eruptions into the Skin, the thinner part of the blood only is evacuated, and the thicker abiding in the veines does more and more putrefie, and makes the disease much more dangerous. But I hold the most advised Course to be a little after the Blood-letting, to fasten many Cupping glasses, that the motion of the humors to the outward parts, may be hereby the more assisted; of the Administration of which cupping-glasses, we shal speak by and by. Now it must be diligently noted, as we said before, that we observe the time in which the *Exanthemata* do begin to appear. For if it be in the beginning of the disease and before the fourth day, in which time their breaking forth cannot be critical, and no help comes to the patient thereby; but the symptomes do rather grow more vehement, in which regard blood-letting ought by no meanes to be hindred. But if they break forth after the fourth day and that in great quantity, so that the sick party is thereby bettered, and the symptoms lessened; it is much betteer to abstain from blood-letting, and to fix many Cupping-glasses with Scarrification, that the motion of the Humors outwards may thereby be wel furthered.

What wee have hitherto said of blood-letting, is to be understood of opening a vein in the Arm, which does quickly diminish the blood. Howbeit sometimes, tis very profitable to open the inferior veins viz. if the patient be weak, and cannot suffer a reiteration of the former phlebotomy. But this is especially good in women; for it is as *Ribasius* saies Lib. 7. Chap. 10. proper to women and very efficatious, because it imitates the manner of their Natural evacuations. Yea verily & when they want their courses that kind of bleeding is proper for women, because naturally they have much blood in these veines which are nigh the womb. Also it is good for such, in whom we fear a translation of the matter into the brain, which is often wont to happen in these Feavers and to cause a Phrensie. Which may be perceived easily (as we said in the prognostick) by the Urins thin, white, and void of Color; and when the Urins are so, it wil be very good to open the inferior Veines. Also *Oribasius* relates in the forecited place that he was taken with a pestilential Feaver, and having two pound of blood drawn from his inferior veines, he recovered: and al that used the like bleeding, were recovered.

The opening of the Hemorrhoid veines by Horsleeches workes the same effect. For seeing by this meanes the blood is drawn out by little and little, there follows little abatement of strength. Yet is the blood revelled from the inmost bowells, where is wont to be the Heat and the Matter which foments the disease. and this is special good for Melancholick persons, because in such, Nature is wont to evacuate earthly blood, by these waies.

After Sufficient blood-letting, Revulsions must be celebrated by Cupping-glasses, both dry and with Scarrification. Dry ones, when we would only revel: but Scarrified ones when the redundancy of blood is not wholly taken away by blood-letting, which the Patients strength could no longer bear. For, blood is drawn by Cupping with much less expence of strength and besides the venemous spirits lurking within, are thereby drawn to the Surface of the body. But Authors agree not touching the places where Cupping-glasses are to be applied: for some and especialy al Italian Physitians very neer do hold they ought to be applied to the inferior parts viz. to the thighs and buttocks and no where else, that the venemous matter may be drawn from the Heart to the most distant parts: but that they are not good to be fastened to the shoulder blades or the Back, because they draw hurtful humors from other parts towards the Heart. Others are of a contrary opinion, that Cupping-glasses are best to be applied to the shoulders and back, viz. that poisonsom humors and vapors may be drawn from the Centre to the Circumference which motion is most suitable to the

Motion

motion of nature in this diſeaſe: But I am of opinion that Cupping-glaſſes ſhould be faſtened to each and every of the places aforeſaid; and that is is good to ſet them firſt upon the lower parts, that ſom portion of malignity may be drawn back unto the more remote parts: But becauſe the Glaſſes fixed in thoſe parts, cannot ſufficiently draw back the venemous humors and vapors from the heart and its neighboring parts; it is good to faſten them likewiſe to ſuch parts as are neer the heart viz. To the ſhoulders and back. For by this means the motion of nature is very much furthered, ſeeing that experience doth teach that the eruption of the ſpots is commonly in thoſe parts which by frequent fixing of cups is much furthered. Which *Mercatus* hath moſt elegantly delivered in theſe words. *Howbeit in the mean time, while the Body is plied with other medicaments, ſmall cupping-glaſſes muſt either many at once, or a few frequently be applyed. And if the venom of the diſeaſe or the weakneſs of the Patient be much, they may be fixed without any, or with very little ſcarrification. In which kind of uſe and upon that occaſion, it is the beſt courſe to ſcarrify thoſe which are ſet upon the Back over againſt the heart which experience hath taught to be of ſuch moment, that Anxieties & Inequalitie of the Pulſe, and other grevious accidents have thereupon ceaſed. Wherefore we muſt not ceaſe applying of them, until the venemous accidents are mitigated or wholly taken away.*

But the Reaſon urged by thoſe of the former opinion, is of ſmall moment for the fear leſt ill humors ſhould be drawn from other parts unto the Heart. For this reaſon might peraduenter be of ſom force: if they ſhould be uſed at the beginning of the diſeaſe, the whol body being ful of humors. But after an univerſal evacuation ſufficiently procured by blood-leting they can cauſe no ſuch danger; which is made manifeſt by a clear example drawn from a pleuriſie, in whoſe beginning, if the pained ſide ſhould be cupt, doubtleſs it would bring the Humors more and more to the greived part. But when after often blood-letting a cupping-glaſs is fixed upon the pained ſide, it doth not only draw nothing from other parts to the place affected, but that humor which is fixed and wedged into the part is thereby powerfully drawn out, ſo that ofttimes the diſeaſe is thereby perfectly cured. Although in this diſeaſe, there is more danger of drawing Humors to the part affected, becauſe it is in a manner externall and neer the Cupping-glaſs

Zacutus Luſitanus in *Obſerv.* 13. *Lib.* 5. *Praxeos admiranda* doth very much commend cups with ſcarrification, faſtened neer the groins and armpits. for by ſuch cuppingglaſſes ſo fixed the vitious humor is drawn to the ignoble parts and to thoſe common Emunctories, unto which nature is wont to expel the ſame.

Among revulſive remedies, Frictions may very will be reckoned, being often exerciſed upon the extream parts of the Body with a courſ cloth. But that Friction is moſt commended. which is made upon the whol Body with the Liniment of Aetius, which is thus compounded.

Take oyl of ſweet Almonds and fountain water of each three ounces: Sal nitre two drams. Boil them together til the water be conſumed, and with this Oyl warmed, let the patients body be rubbed al over with the hands being dipped therein. *Aetius* doth preſcribe Oyl of Savin, but becauſe it is too hot. Oyl of ſweet Almonds was by *Baptiſta Montanus*, fitly ſubſtituted in its place. This oyntment doth open the pores of the Skin, that nature may more fitly expel the venemous vapors thereby.

Veſicatories do likewiſe powerfully draw out evil and venemous juyces and ſerve for revulſion being applied in divers parts of the body: Commonly they are applyed to the hinder part of the neck; for they do both draw out the matter, and drive it from the head, and ſerve well to cure ſuch ſleepie ſymptoms as are uſual in theſe diſeaſes. But where great malignity doth poſſes the whol Body and grevious ſymptoms afflict the patients, one veſicatory will not ſuffice but more muſt be laid on: *I* am wont when the diſeaſe is very violent to lay them on in five places viz. The Neck, both the Arms on the inſide between the bending of the Arm and the Shoulder, and to both the Thighs, in the ſpace between the Groyn and the Knee, with happy ſucceſs.

The great profit of this Remedy we may learn from *Galen*, who in *Lib* 5. *Method. Cap.* 12. relates, that of a peſtilential Feaver al recovered, who happened to have exulcerations in divers parts of their Bodyes; becauſe the morbifick matter was evacuated by thoſe ulcers. And becauſe the uſe of theſe Veſicatories do often caus the Strangury (for the Cantharides do by a peculiar propertie affect the Bladder) it wil be good when they are applied, to give the Patient emulſion that may temper the acrimony of the urine. This ſymptome may likewiſe be prevented by mingling the poudered Seeds of Ameos with the veſicant plaiſter, which ſeeds have the faculty to keep the Cantharides from hurting the bladder

Amongst Revulsive Medicines may likewise be mustered, the Cataplasm of Radishes commended by *Crato*: The Radish (saies he) because it powerfully drawes the malignity of matter it is good to apply the gross pouder or scrapings thereof to the feet, having first clensed them with salt and vineger. And the following Cataplasm may be better for the same purpose.

Take scrapings of a radish and the two Briony Roots of each two ounces, seeds of Garden Cresses one ounce. Grains of Paradise half an ounce, Sea Salt three drams, Mix al and sprinkle them with the strongest Vineger, and make them up into a body, with a sufficient quantity of soft sope, til it become like a Cataplasm, & apply it warm with tow to the soles of the feet, when the patient is disposed to sleep.

To this Cataplasm may profitably be added leaves of Rue, Nettle, Sage, Scordium, Pidgeons dung, juice of Rue and Vinegar.

A Cataplasm of Snails beaten hath the like Efficacy, and powerfully drawes unto the nether parts hurtful humors and vapors, as *Galen* highly commends the same, for powerfully attracting and dissolving the waters of Hydropic Persons.

These revulsory Remedies have place during the whol Course of the disease after universal evacuations viz. Phleborotomy and Purgation: of the use whereof we are now to speak, that so we may pass from Chyrurgery to Pharmaceutick Remedies.

Now it is much controverted among Practitioners, whether we ought to purge in the beginning of malignant Feavers. Many reject purging at that time, not only because of that wel known precept of *Hippocrates*, that Concocted humors are to be purged, but crude humors not: but also because in this disease the malignant humors are too much exasperated by purgations, and diffuse their malignant quality the more abroad, and by sharpely provoking of Nature, they produce pernicious fluxes whereas otherwise of themselves in these Feavers, melting fluxes do often arise and bring the patients to their long home. But others contend, that sometimes there is such plenty of evil and venemous humors in the first passages, that unless they be first removed by purging, or very much lessened, they infect the rest of the humors, so that Nature cannot master them, however assisted by antidotes and corroborating medicaments.

We conceive this Controversie may be thus composed; viz. that in the beginning of this disease we must abstain from purgations for the reasons fore alleaged; and that the sink of putrid humors which lies in the first passages (which the truth is do very much hinder the Cure) be drawn away rather by frequent Clysters, than purging Medicaments. Howbeit, if their be so great a quantity of il humors in the first Region, that it seemes impossible sufficiently to evacuate the same by Clysters (which chiefly happens, when evil humors abound in the stomach, and then there is great loathing of meate, bitterness in the mouth, stomach sickness and vomiting) or when there are many worms, it is very good in such a Case to draw away the matter by a purging medicament that the morbifick matter contained in the veines, may afterward bee the more easily subdued. Which matter it is that cannot be purged before concoction, and of that must the saying of *Hippocrates* be understood, that onely concocted humors must be purged. But the matter contained in the first region and that mass of excrements may be drawn away without any preparation or concoction premised, and is ordinarily purged out only by Clysters, as we said before. Now those Medicaments which we give to purge the first Region, must be chosen from amongst the most benigne and gentle purgations, avoiding the most vehement, yea and the middle sort too, so that we may safely use Cassia, Manna, Tamarinds, syrup of Roses, and Cichory compound. And it is scarce lawful to arise to Senna and Rhubarb, or at least to mix them with the others in a final quantity, when a great abundance of evil humors do afflict the patient. The former of these Medicaments were propounded in our cure of continual putrid Feavers, and how we should purge in the beginning of them.

But Clysters are to be used, not only in the beginning of the disease, to free the first region from excrements; but they are to be given in the whol Course of the Disease, if the patient be not loosbellied, and that every or every other day. For by those the daily excrements are brought out, and some portion of the Morbifick matter is also by little and little drawn away, Likewise the humors mounting upwards, are brought down to the places more suitable to the intent of Nature. Now these Clysters must be compoled of an emollient and refrigerating decoction, adding gentle laxatives; for sharpe ones and Scammoniated, do over much irritate nature to excretion and often produce pernicious fluxes.

And the truth is tis best in the vigor of the disease to put no purgers into the Clisters, least a Loosenes be caused which is very incident to this disease, so that they are rather to be of the nature of an internal fomentation, then of a laxative Medicine.

But if in the Course of the disease the belly seem to be loose: we must not therefore abstain from Clysters, but we must use such as do moderately deterg and refrigerate, and in Juleps we must dissolve syrup of Pomegranates with pouder of Corral prepared.

While the foresaid Medicines are using, wee must endeavor to correct the Feaverish Heat, Putrefaction and malignant quality, with these following Medicaments.

And

And firſt of al the altering Juleps which were propounded in the Cure of continual putrid Feavers wil be very convenient, of the decoction cheifly of the Rootes of Sorrel, Cichory, Grais, Bugloſs, Sharpe-pointed Dock; the leaves of Endive, Cichory, Sorrel, Pimpernel, Maiden-hair and Tamarinds. Whereunto muſt be added ſuch things as by a Speciſick property do fight againſt the venemous quality, commonly called Alexipharmaca or Antidotes, as rootes of Cinkfoyl, Tormentil, white Thiſtle; leaves of Scordium, Carduus, Scabious, Scorzonera, Meddow-ſweet; Flowers of Marygolds, *Vetonica rubra*; bitts of Lemmons or Citrons and their ſeeds; Skinns of odoriferous apples, Shavings of Harts-horn &c. with the Syrups of Lemmons, Pomgranats, Vinegar, of the juyce of Sorrel &c. and we muſt frequently mix tart things with them ſuch as juyce of Citrons, or of Lemmons, Spirit of ſulphur or of vitriol: for they do mightily reſiſt the putrefaction and the venemous quality.

Touching the Pome-Citron *Athenæus* reports, that once in *Ægypt* certain condemned men were expoſed to death by biting of beaſts, and they were bitten indeed by the Aſpes, but had no harm thereby: becauſe as they were led to execution, a Woman out of Pitty gave them ſome Pome-Citrons to refreſh them & quench their thirſt: which having eaten, they received no hurt by the biting of thoſe venemous Beaſts. Now al parts of the Pome-Citron have an antidotary quality; and therefore it is profitably cut in pieces rind and al, and boiled with Rootes and Herbs aforeſaid to make juleps; and it is likewiſe to good purpoſe ſteeped in ſmal drink which the patient ordinarily uſes, unto which it gives a fragrant ſmel from its rind and a tartnes from its pulp: howbeit the juice only hath a cooling faculty.

The acid ſpirits of ſulphur and vitriol are highly extolled eſpecially by Chymiſt, and their rare vertues approved by long experience have cauſed that long ſince they have bin entertained by Galeniſts, and ordinarily preſcribed. And that it may appear how highly the Chymiſt eſteems of them let it ſuffice to cite the words of *Mindererus* alone in his 18 Book *De Peſtilentia*, where treating of ſpirit of vitriol and ſulphur, and of other Medicaments made of ſulphur: *There is* (he ſaies) *no putrefaction whoſe neck they break not; no infection which they do not overcome; no pravity of Humors but they can conquer. Verily* (to deal clearly) *if I ſhould be forbidden or hindered from the uſe of vitriolated medicaments, I ſhould never come to cure the Plague, or alwaies without my weapons.*

To the ſame Juleps may ſomtimes be added Sal prunella becauſe it powerfully cooles, and extinguiſhes the Feaverith heat; and it hath beſides a kind of diaphoretick faculty, by means whereof it is excellently fitted for malignant Feavers.

In place of Iuleps for the more delicate ſort of Patients, may be ſubſtituted ſomtimes medicated Broaths, made with the Leaves of Borrage, ſorrel, Pimpernel, and other hearbs that are not offenſive to the palate, with Skinns of fragrant apples, with the pulp and juyce of Citrons and a chick; and to them ſal prunella may ſomtimes be added, for to cool more effectually.

Alſo Emulſions may be made of ſweet Almonds, and the greater cool Seeds, with the Decoctions of the Juleps. And for the greater quelling of the venemous Quality, to the aforeſaid Seeds may be added Seeds of Citrons, of Navew or Turnep, and of Carduus Benedictus. And to commend the taſt, the aforeſaid Syrups may be mingled therewith.

Now in the whol Courſe of the Diſeaſe, Antidotes muſt be uſed, not only mingled in Juleps, Broths and Emulſions, as was ſaid before, and ſhal be further declared: But alſo contrived into other forms. And becauſe al are not to be uſed indifferently, nor at all times of the Diſeaſe; that their right Uſe may be wel diſtinguiſhed, they muſt be ſorted into four Tribes. The firſt conteins thoſe, which beſides the Specifical Quality by which they reſiſt poyſon, are cold and dry and moderatly aſtringent; and conſequently they hinder putrefaction, ſtrengthen the Heart, bridle the Venom, that it cannot be ſo eaſily ſpred into the whol Body, and hinder the diſſolution of the parts thereof by a kind of compreſſion; as Bole-Armoniack, Terra Sigillata, Coral, Cinkfoyl Roots, and the Roots of Tormentil. The ſecond Tribe contains ſuch as by their coldneſs and the tenuity of their ſubſtance do reſiſt putrefaction, and reſtrain the venemous Quality; as Juyce of Lemmons, Spirit of Sulphur and of Vitriol, as al acid things, and Vinegar it ſelf. The third comprehends hot & Diaphoretick medicaments, which expel venemous Humors and Vapors from the Heart, and bring them from the Centre to the Circumference; as Angellica, Zedoary, Dictamnus, Meddow-ſweet, Scordium, Carduus, Scabious, Treacle, Mithridate, Treacle water. The fourth contains ſuch as by a Speciſical vertue, without any exceſs of the firſt Qualities, do oppugn the venemous Quality; as Bezoar ſtone, Harts-horn, Unicorns-Horn, Troches of Vipers, and ſuch like.

The Medicines of the Firſt, Second, and Fourth Tribe, do beſt agree in the beginning and the Augment; and thoſe of the Third Tribe in the ſtate and Declination. Now theſe medicaments muſt be exceedingly varied, and diverſly mixed, according to the different degree of malignity or putrefaction; according to the various Intencion or Remiſſion of the Feaver; and according to the divers temperaments, Sex and Age of the Patient; and according to other Circumſtances: the

Determination

determination whereof depends wholly upon the Judgment and Prudence of the Phyſitian, and cannot be determined by any certain Rules. Only one thing I ſhall advice you of, which is very well known, viz. That when there is a vehement burning of the Feaver, we muſt chiefly uſe Refrigerating & cooling things; but the hot and Diaphoretick muſt not be medled with; which notwithſtanding will be very proper, when the Feaver is more remiſs, and the malignant Quality is that which moſt offends. Of theſe Tribes therefore, divers medicaments may be Compounded, according to the judgment of the Phyſitian. But leaſt yong Practitioners ſhould be wholly deſtitute of ſome forms, I ſhal ad a few, in imitation whereof, they may deviſe a thouſand others, as the occaſion of practiſe ſhal require.

Take Roots of Sorrel, Bugloſs and Tormentil of each one ounce. Leaves of Endive, Cichory, Sorrel, Pimpernel, of each one handful. Tamarinds one ounce. Boil al to a pint. In the ſtrained Liquor diſolve ſyrups of Pomegranats and Lemmons of each an ounce and half. Make of al a Julep to be taken at thrice: adding to every doſe a dram of Confection of Hyacinths bezoar-ſtone ſix graines.

This form of a Julep, may do wel in the beginning of the Feaver. But if the Feaver be very high and the Patient of a Chollerick conſtitution, a dram of Sal Prunella may be added to every doſe, or as much ſpirit of vitriol or ſulphur, as may ſuffice to make it moderatly tart, or both of them together. But in a Feaver not very high may be added to the decoction, Rootes of the white-Thiſtle and of Cinkfoyl, Leaves of Scordium and Scabious.

Take ſweet Almonds blanched one ounce: Seeds of Melones, Gourds, Navew, Citrons and Carduus of each two drams: Beat them together in a Marblemorter, pouring on by little and little a pint and half of the aforeſaid Decoction; Syrup of Lemmon three ounces; Sal prunellæ three drams. Make an Emulſion for three Doſes, to be taken twice or thrice in a day.

In the whol courſe of the Diſeaſe, let the Patients uſe in their Broaths the Confection of Hyacinths, or the following pouder, which is not unpleaſant.

Take of prepared Coral, Pearls prepared, ſhavings of Ivory Harts-horn, and Bezoar, of each one ſcruple. Mix them. Make of all a pouder, of which, give half a ſcruple in every meſs of Broath.

The Innovators of this Age, who endeavor to baniſh Gemms, Pearls, Coral, and al Cordial things from the uſe of Phyſick; and cure all Feavers, even thoſe that are malignant, with Blood-letting and meer refrigerating Apozemes; may be convinced with this one Experiment, at leaſt touching Coral and Pearls: which being poudred, if they be infuſed in Vinegar, Juyce of Lemmons, Spirit of Vitriol, or *Aqua fortis*; they take away all the Acrimony of thoſe Liquors. Whence we may gather, that the ſame Medicaments taken into our bodies do ſweeten and molifie the acrimony and malignant quality of humors and reduce them to a moderation. They which have taſted the ſolutions of Pearles and Corals, made in juyce of Lemmons or diſtilled Vineger, do know the truth hereof very wel.

Where the malignant and venemous quality is very rife *Alexipharmaca* or Poiſon-quellers, are to be given in Juleps, broths the ordinary drink of the Patients, and in al they take in, that by a perpetual and inceſſant Conflict, the troubleſom Enemy may be oppoſed.

Bezoar ſtone is given alone to the quantity of five or ſix graines, with water of Mead-ſweet, Scorzonera, Carduus, or ſuch like not only to oppoſe the malignant quality, but alſo to help the Diaphoretick motion; for this ſtone is reputed for a ſweating Medicament, which notwithſtanding many approved Authors doubt of, becauſe they could never ſee any ſenſible effect, by the giving thereof. And truly (to ſpeak out my mind) there can no great Confidence be put in this ſtone; becauſe although we may allow to the true and genuine bezoar ſtone, thoſe faculties which are hereunto aſcribed; yet becauſe the great price thereof cauſes that many Traders take a world of paines to ſophiſticate the ſame, we can now a dayes hardly get any but counterfeit. A clear teſtimony whereof is, that the writers of the Indian Hiſtories, do aver that Bezoar ſtone is very ſcarce and of great price among the Indians themſelves; when we have plenty of them and cheap enough.

More credit ſhould of right be given to that ſame Root, which the Spaniards have in this Age of ours brought out of Italy; which they cal *Contra yerva* which ſignifies the Poiſon-pelting or Antidotary Herb, becaute the pouder thereof is a preſent remedy againſt poiſons, and drives them out of the body by ſweat, or inſenſible tranſpiration. And they Conceive that Plant to be the Common ordinary food, of Thoſe beaſts in which the Bezoar ſtone is found, and that the ſtone hath its vertue primarily from thence. A ſcruple or half a dram of this Root poudered may be given in Carduus matter, or other medicaments.

Mendererus cries up this following pouder.

Take Sugar Candy three drams, white-ginger two drams. Camphire one dram. Make al into a pouder; the doſe one dram in ſome convenient liquor. But the Author doth adviſe that in great paines of the head or ſtomach, Camphire is warily to be uſed; which yet he highly commends in peſtilential diſeaſes; and avouches that ſeaſonably given, it doth more good than the moſt precious bezoardick medicaments. I conceive the pouder is too hot becauſe of the Ginger, and I have

compoſed

Compoſed this following in imitation thereof, Which I have uſed with happy ſucceſs.

Take mineral Bezoar three drams: Sal prunella two drams: Camphire one dram. Make of all a pouder: Give one dram at a time in Carduus water, or ſom other convenient Liquor.

Pouders may likewiſe be made of the fragments of precious ſtones whoſe vertues many deride & others as much admire; ſo that from the times of the Arabian Phyſitians to our days many compoſitions are prepared of them in the ſhops, as *Electuarium de Gemmis, & Confectio de Hyacintho.* But in peſtilential and venemous diſeaſes many have extolled the great vertu of the Smaragd, amongſt the reſt *Avenzoar, Mindererus,* and *Zacutus Luſitanus. Avenzoar 2 Teiſir. tract. 1. Cap. 5.* That himſelf being poyſoned, was thereby cured. *Mindererus Lib. de Peſtilentia Cap. 15.* Relates that to a woman in a Peſtilential Feaver who abhorred al Phyſick, he gave the following Pouder which ſhe might eaſily ſwallow having neither taſt nor ſmel; which when ſhee had taken the conbuſtions of cruel ſymptomes being allaied, and the diſeaſe turning to health, ſhe was cured.

Take of the Smaragd ſtone prepared, Eaſt-india Bezoar, of each ſix grains: Hyacinth prepared three graines, mix them. Make of all a pouder for one Doſe.

And *Zacutus Luſitanus,* relates that a Portugal Gentleman, haveing through poyſon fallen into a looſneſs and a Conſumption, from which no abſterſives, aſtringents or Antidotes could free him; he was cured only by the Smaragd, the pouder whereof to the quantity of twelve graines he tooke every other day in conſerve of quinces, and when he had taken it five times he was cured of his Looſneſs.

The Phyſitians of *Mountpelier,* doe uſe in this Feaver as a moſt profitable Antidote, no ways heating; the Troches of Vipers, which are uſually prepared as an ingredient into Andromachus Treacle, which they give from one ſcruple to half a dram in cordial waters or Juleps.

Yet the fleſh of vipers were better being dried, which hath no venemous quality (as people imagine) but is rather a potent Antidote; which is much abated by boiling; for it is boiled in water to make the troches. So that we ſee greater effects wrought only by the heart and Liver of vipers, being dryed, without any other preparation

The Alexipharmick Medicaments of the third Tribe viz. The Diaphoreticks and ſweaters muſt be given only in the ſtate or declination of the diſeaſe, as was ſaid before. which is to be underſtood, when they are given in a feaver ſimply malignant or ſpotted: for in the true Plague they muſt be uſed at the very beginning, that the venemous qualitie which would quickly kill the Patient may be ſuddenly and potently oppoſed, and the malignant vapors diſcuſſed. Yea verily and in ſimple malignant Feavers, if the venemous quality ſeem to be greater than the putrefaction they are likewiſe to be given at the beginning in ſmall quantity; making choyce of ſuch as are leaſt hot, mixing them with Juleps and other cooling medicines formerly prescribed.

Now of theſe Diaphoretick medicaments there are divers degrees, for ſom are more hot, as Angelica, Zedoary, Dictamnum, Treacle, Mithridate, Treakle water; which are never to be given when the heat of the Feaver is at the higheſt, but only when the ſame is much abated, and when the ſigns of malignity do very much prevail. But others are leſs hot, as Scabious, Carduus Mead-ſweet, Scordium, which may ſafely be given, though the Feaver be in it's height. And theſe diſtinctions are carefully to be obſerved in practice. and as for the formes of particuliar medicaments, every Phyſitian can vary them, according to the different degree of the Feaveriſh Heat and of the Malignitie. But I ſhall here diſcribe ſuch as are moſt effectuall

Take water of Mead-ſweet and Carduus of each two ounces: juice of Lemmons one ounce: old Treakle half a dram, two ſcruples or one dram, according as the fear of heating the Patient is more or leſs. Mix al into a potion. give it warm and cover the patient ſomwhat more than ordinary. if there be great vehemency of ſymptoms, new Treakle wil be more convenient, becauſe of the vigor of the Opium by means of which the vehemency of the ſymptoms will be allaied, and the boyling of the Humors wil be reſtrained: yea and ſomtimes when it ſeems unconvenient to uſe Treakle as in the beginning of the diſeaſe eſpecially, *Laudanum Opiatum* given to two grains & mingled with Antidotes, do much good. For by the Narcotick and congealing power thereof thoſe fervent Spirits ſo vexatious to the Heart, are as it were fixed; and the morbifick matter (which is moſt pernicious while it is in motion) is thereby ſtopped and remains in a manner unmoveable, whence it comes to paſs, that Nature not being provoked by the malignant humors and ſpirits, recollecting her ſtrength, doth more eaſily apply unto her ſelf the vertu of Antidotes

Aqua theriacalis seems fit to be preferred before Treacle it self. For seeing it is exceeding thin and spiritous, it doth more easily and suddenly peirce into and pass through the whol body and Cause sweat. And because there are many descriptions of Treacle water, their dose ought to differ according as they are compounded of Simples more or less healing. I shal in this place propound the chief.

And first of al, the Treacle water of Bauderon is most excellent, because it is exceeding temperate. For there goes no other Liquor thereinto than Vineger and Juyce of Lemmons, by which the hot Ingredients are very much tempered, and therefore it may be given from half an ounce to an ounce in Sudorofick decoctions or waters. And although this is less heating than any of the rest prescribed by divers other Authors; yet have I invented another, easily made, which is more cooling, and does no less oppose the Feaver than the malignant quality, and may consequently be used in the whol course of the disease, at any period thereof. Its composition is as followeth.

Take twelve fresh and juycie Lemmons. Take away the bark or rind and the seeds and press out the Juyce, and ad thereunto the said rindes and seeds; and three pints of juyce of Scordium, juyce of sorrel, of Goates Rue; of scabious, and Carduus, of each one pint. Shavings of Harts-Horn four Ounces. Old Venice Treacle six ounces. Let the rinds of the Lemmons be cutt into thin chips, let the seeds be beaten, and such herbs as have little juyce, let them in the beating be moistened with the juice of Lemnons and let al be distilled in balneo Mariæ. Of the water give one ounce by it self or mixed with other Liquors.

The horter sort of Treacle waters are made with white Wine or with spirit of wine; which must be warily given and in lesser quantity; yet they pierc more than the other and move sweat, and are cheifly used in the true Pestilence. Howbeit in some Cases they may by the prudent Physitian be used. Among the many Descriptions of such Treacle waters, I wil propound in this place, two of the most excellent.

Take roots of Angelica, White-Thistle, Gentian, Tormentil, Zedoary, Harts-Horn, of each one ounce. of the three sanders, of each half an ounce. Treacle three ounces, Camphire a scruple. beat al and steep them three daies together in two Pints of strong white-wine, in a warm place. Then distil Them in Balneo Mariæ, *and keep the water for use, the dose is, from two drams to half an ounce, in refrigerating Juleps, adding spirit of vitriol to correct the Inflamation thereof.*

Take Spirit of Wine, very wel rectified one pint and an half. old Treacle eight ounces. Fleet Mirrh four ounces. Oriental Saffron one ounce. Camphire half an ounce. Infuse al for twenty four hours in Balneo Mariæ. *afterward stil them in the same Bath; and you shal have a very effectual water.*

The Chymists do exceedingly cry up their *Bezoardica Mineralia*, because they are Sudorofick or Diaphoretick at least and yet do not at al heat: which they endeavor to prove by their having no taste, in which regard they are easily taken even by the most nice Patients, that loath unpleasant medicaments. They also commend their Medicine which is called by them *Mixtura Simplex* or *Mixtura Spiritalis*, made of Treacle Water Camphorated, spirit of Vitriol and of Tartar: and they mingle a dram hereof in Juleps and antidotary Potions.

A Physitian that undertakes the Cure of malignant Feavers ought to have divers Antidotes in a readyness, and to change them ever and anon, least nature be too much accustomed to one and the same, and slight the virtue thereof. Also the nature of the venemous quality is not alwayes one and the same but very divers according to the diversity of the patients bodies. So that what hath helpt one, wil do another no good; so that when he hath for some time used one antidote, he must try another and another.

While the foresaid diaphoreticks are using, if we have a Mind at any time to help their Operation, that they may more powerfully bring out the poison into the surface of the Body, some external helpes may be used: viz. Cupping-glasses, both dry and with scarification, many and often set on and Vesicatories, of which we spok before; which are most convenient in the state of the disease and at what time Sudorofick Medicines are given; as also Oyl of Scorpions of Matthiolus, which is much commended by al Practitioners; for it calls forth the poyson residing in the profound parts of the body unto the external parts, And therefore the Emunctories of the body, as the Groines and Arm-pits, with the Pulses of the Temples, Hands and Feet, ought frequently to be anointed with this oyl warm; viz. thrice or four times in a day, or else every third hour. Where this Oyl is not to be had, a Liniment may be made of Treacle dissolved in Juyce of Lemmons, adding a little saffron and Camphire.

If at any time Nature being oppressed with the malignity of the Poyson and overcome, and seem not to act, but as it were to submit her self with hands bound to the mercy of the humor. The strongest diaphoreticks, are then to be given, in a large dose, that the daunted mettle of the heart may be as it were spurred up, And then the strongest sorts of Treacle waters and Bezoardicks which have greatest force to penetrate, must be used: and the addition of Camphire wil much help their penetration and outwardly, at such a time this following fomentation, wil wonderfully assist the operation of

such

ſuch things as are taken in, and wil help to drive out the malignant vapors. For by this Method, many have bin reduced from the Gates of Death.

Take roots of Angelica and Gentian, of each two ounces, Leaves of Bawm, Origanum, Scordium, of each two handfuls. Seeds of Cardius benedictus one ounce. Flowers of Chamomel, Mullein, Melilot, St. Johns wort, Centaurie the leſs, Stachados, Roſemary, Marygold, of each two pugills. Make a decoction of all in water, adding towards the end a little white-wine, wherewith foment the feet, Groins, Armepits, and ſides warm with ſponges.

If drynes of the tongue, thirſt and other ſignes do ſhew that the Feaver doth prevail as much as the malignant quality, we muſt abſtain from the fomentation, and inſtead thereof let a Hen cut down through the Back, or the Lungs or Caul of a Wether new killed, be applied to the patients Belly.

In the whole Courſe of the Care, the greateſt Cure of al muſt be to preſerve the patients ſtrength, which is much dejected by the Venemous quality. It is beſt kept up, firſt by Convenient broths made with a Capon, unto which, when neceſſity urges may be added the diſtilled broaths of fleſh, and eſpecially the *Aqua Caponis* which is made in *Balneo Mariæ per Deſcenſum*, as the common manner is now to make it. Confection of Hyacinths given in broaths, doth repaire the ſtrength, and doth oppugn the malignant quality. In the ſame broaths Gelly of harts-horn, doth ſatiſfie both Endications. If the ſtrength of the Patient be very much decaied; we may make bold with *Confectio Alkermes*, provided the Heat of the Feaver be not very violent. And finally, wine is the moſt cordial thing in the world, of the uſe whereof in this diſeaſe, I ſpake before, treating of the Patients Diet. The only ſmel of wine doth much refreſh the Patients ſtrength, and much more a toaſt dipped in Canary and Roſewater and ſo held to the Noſe.

And in this Caſe alſo *Confectio Alkermes* and *de Hyacintho* are wont to be put into alexipharmical Potions. Or in extream dejection of ſtrength, Potions merely cordial may be thus made.

Take *Orenge-flower water and Roſewater of each one ounce and an half. Confectio Alkermes one dram. Syrup of Apples one ounce. Juyce of Lemmons three drams. Make all into a potion. If the Feaver be not intenſe Cinnamon water may be given to the quantity of one dram or three drams. and ſometimes Amber Grieſe may be added, to the quantity of five Granes or Seven. Neither in extream Weaknes of the Patients muſt we ſo much fear thoſe hot cordials, that we ſhould refuſe to ſave the patient from preſent death, for fear of augmenting the Heat of the Feaver for we muſt alwaies regard that which is moſt preſſing, and when the patient hath a little recovered ſtrength if the hot cordials have made ſome increaſe of Heat, it may afterward be tempered by potent coolers, as Sal Prunella, and Spirit of vitriol, mixed in julaps and ordinary Drink. This Method being obſerved by the diſcreet Phyſitian, in his adminiſtration both of Strengtheners and of hot Antidotes and ſweaters; wil prove happily Succeſsful.*

After theſe things, muſt follow the Application of Epithems and Liveing Creatures to the Region of the Heart; fomentation of the Genitalls with Confectio Alkermes diſſolved in Wine; Bags to be laied upon the ſtomach, and other both internal and external Medicaments, largly by me deſcribed in my Chapter of Weaknes or Decay of ſtrength.

As for Epithems, there is Caution to be uſed in their application, Becauſe very many Authors do wholly reject the uſe of them; becauſe they are wont to be compounded of refrigerating and repelling things; viz. of the waters of cooling herbs and Vinegar, by which the venemous quality is beaten back to the heart, and the tranſpiration thereof, which ought alwaies to be promoted, is hindered. But this reaſon cannot hinder the uſe of Epithemes, ſeeing we may compound them of cordial and diaphoretick waters that have repelling no or aſtringent quality in them, and without Vinegar (which ſome do yet allow) adding cordials thereunto; and by theſe things mingled together, Epithems may be made, not only which ſtrengthen the heart, but alſo open the pores of the skin, that through them the malignant vapors may more eaſily tranſpire. Of ſuch Epithems this may be an example.

Take *waters of ſcabious and Cardius, of each four ounces. Oreng-flower water two ounces. Confectio Alkermes two drams. Powder of Diamargaritum frigidum one dram. Saffron and Camphire of each ſix grains. Make an Epitheme and applie it warm to the Region of the Heart frequenly.*

Take *Confectio Alkermes half an ounce, Powder of Triaſantalon and Diamargaritum frigidum, of each one dram and half, a little Orengflower water. Make of al a Liniment to be applied to the part after aforeſaid the uſe of the foreſaid Epitheme.*

Neither muſt we here omit ſuch Epithemes as are to be applied to the parts under the ſhort ribbs, becauſe of the reaſons of their uſe propounded in the Cure of putrid Feavers, from whence the Materialls muſt alſo be fetcht.

At length whenas the malignant and venemous quality is maſtered by the Remedies aforeſaid

ſaid, and the Feaver abated and the Diſeaſe begins to decline, and the ſigns of Coction do manifeſtly appear; purgation muſt be uſed, which by the experienced Phyſitian may be accomodated to the ſtrength and conſtitution of the Patient. I ſhal here, for the ſake of Beginners propound only one example.

Take Senna half an ounce. Annis ſeed one dram. Leaves of Scabious and Scordium, of each half an handful. Liquoris three drams. Boil all to three ounces. In the ſtrained Liquor diſſolve the infuſion of four ſcruples of Rhubarb Made in bugloſs water with yellow Sanders. Manna and Syrup of Roſes of each one ounce. Make all into a Potion.

And for the moſt part one purge is not ſufficient in the declination of the diſeaſe when the Patient begins to recover health; but purgation muſt oftentimes be repeated twice or three times at convenient diſtances, that the evil humors may be perfectly rooted out. Otherwiſe there wil be danger of a Relapſe, or at leaſt the Patient wil be long in Recovering prfecte health. Becauſe though nature; be ſtrong enough to maſter the reliques of the Morbifick matter yet can ſhe not do it but in a long time and in the mean ſpace the body is long in recovering its former ſtrength.

For the perfect Compleating of this Cure, it remaines onely that we ſpeak ſomething of the Correction of ſuch ſymptomes as happen in this diſeaſe. Now their cure is very near the ſame which hath bin propounded in the ſecond ſection of this Treatiſe Chap. 2. where we delivered the Cure of ſuch ſymptomes as attend putrid Feavers. And the ſymptoms of this Feaver are the ſame in a manner with thoſe of putrid Feavers, the difference being only in degrees of more or leſs; and therefore the ſame Remedies wil ſute with both. Howbeit I ſhal here ſet down ſuch things as have bin frequently tried in the taming of ſuch ſymptomes as attend malignant and Peſtilential Feavers, and which have proved moſt ſucceſsful. And wee ſhal withal declare the Cure of ſuch diſeaſes as do Supervene upon theſe Feavers.

And firſt of al, In Paines of the Head, Want of ſleep, and Raving, at the beginning Revellers of al ſorts muſt be uſed, as opening of the inferior veins and of the Hæmorrhoids; emollient Clyſters, frictions of the nether parts, Cupping-glaſſes, firſt ſet upon the Calves of the Legs, afterwards upon the Back and ſhoulders, both dry and with ſcarification; and Veſicatories, which in a ſimple Delirium or Dotage ariſing from a Chollerick matter, muſt be applied to the Armes and thighes. But if with the Raving there be joyned a dullnes and ſleepynes, a Veſicatory muſt be applied alſo to the Neck; and then Repellers muſt be applied unto the Forehead and *Oxyrrhodines*; of which it is to be noted, that they are not ſo good in malignant as in meer putrid Feavers; becauſe the venemous vapors muſt by al meanes be expelled, and at no hand be kept within the body. And therefore firſt gentle repellers muſt be applied, and if the vehemence of the foreſaid ſymptomes ſhal compel us to fly to the ſtronger, we muſt not uſe them long together.

Among Repellers of the gentler ſort is reckoned that common frontal of the flowers of water Lilly Violets and Roſes, the greater cool ſeeds and Chermes berries, bedewed with the Vapour of vineger, And if that wil not ſuffice, let this following be laid on.

Take Unguentum populeum one ounce, Conſerve of Roſes and violets of each half an ounce. Oyl. of Roſes ſix ounces. Vinegar of Roſes two drams. Mix them all and receive them in tow and put them between two cloaths and apply them to the forehead.

Mean while the Emulſions of the four greater cool ſeeds may be uſed, from which cool and gentle vapors are wont to be carried unto the Brain, which are wont to mitigate the foreſaid ſymptomes. Which if they ſuffice not, narcoticks may be added, which do wonderfully hinder the aſcent of ſharp and malignant Vapors unto the brain, and procure ſleep. Yet they muſt be given in a ſmal quantity, as half an ounce of Syrup of poppies; or if neceſſity compel, two graines of Laudanum opiatum with conſerve of roſes may wel be given; or they may be diſſolved in ſome Julep, or inſtead thereof new Treacle may be given to the Quantity of half a dram. Howbeit theſe narcoticks are ſeldom to be given and in ſmal Quantity, becauſe they Concentre the poyſon, howbeit they are by ſome accounted ſudoroſicks.

After repellers have bin uſed a day or two, we muſt come to derivers, among which is reckoned a veſicatory applied to the Neck of which before, whereunto muſt be added blood-letting from the forehead vein to the quantity of five or ſix ounces: which is very ſucceſsful provided blood was before ſufficiently taken from the veins of the Arm. Alſo horſeleeches may be faſtened behind the Eares. which is a good remedy, but leſs effectual than the former, becauſe by leeches the thinner part only of the blood is drawn away; whereas by the forehead vein ſometimes in a phrenſie more corrupt blood is drawn than by the vein of the Arm. At length, in the ſtare of a Phrenſie, or at the beginning of the declination, reſolvers are to be applied, eſpecially liveing Creatures and their Parts, as the Lunges of a wether which is better than young pidgeons or whelpes, becauſe it doth ſafely encompaſs the whol Head. Now theſe Animals do partly reſolve evil humors contained in the brain, and partly ripen and digeſt them, that Nature may afterward more eaſily expel them. Some do unadviſedly apply them in the beginning of a phrenſie, becauſe by encreaſing the Hear, they encreaſe

the Flux of Humors to the Brain, and encreaſe the Raving.

In the Inflamation, Dryneſs, and Blackneſs of the Tongue, Remedies propounded in the aforeſaid place are convenient; eſpecially ſuch as are compoſed of Water, or the Juyce of Houſleek, and Sal prunellæ. Whereunto this following of *Mindereus* may be added, becauſe Experience hath taught, that it is very effectual.

Take *freſh butter waſhed in Roſe-water, two ounces: Sal prunellæ half a dram. Mix them, and keep the mixture in cold Water. Give the quantity of an Haſtifer or bean, oftentimes in a day, and let the Patients hold it as long in their Mouths, as they can poſſibly. It is a ſign that the Cure goes wel forward, if the black Sootineſs go away, and the dry chopped Tongue begin to grow moiſt, and peelings come away from the Tongue, as if it were flaid, ſo that the ſick Party does cough up the peelings of their Throats. But then their palate is pained, and that very thin Skin wherewith it is covered, can hardly bear any thing in regard of its tenderneſs, but its offended with every light tartneſs, and the leaſt Acrimony imaginable, becauſe the former Inflamation having left it in divers parts Flaid, it muſt be covered with new Skin; and ſo it requires to be perfectly cooled and healed. To this purpoſe the following Gelly wil be moſt convenient.*

Take *Seeds of Flea-bane and Quinces, of each one dram and an half: Gum Tragacanth one dram. With Water of Roſes draw out a liquid Mucilage, whereunto ad the like quantity of Syrup of Violets. Make it in manner of a Gelly; of which let the Patients take often in a Spoon and hold it long in their Mouth.*

Warm Milk does mitigate the pain Cauſed by Gargariſmes, tempers the Inflamation, moiſtens the Tongue and Throat, and attracts the Venom to it.

Theſe following Pills may conveniently be uſed.

Take *Seeds of Cucumbers picked and bruiſed, one ounce: White of an Egg as much as ſhall ſuffice. Make Pills, which let the Patients often hold in their mouths.* Or,

Take Seeds of Gourds and Melones clenſed, and of white Poppy, of each one dram. Liquoris and Gum Tragaganth of each one dram and an half. Beat all to pouder, and with the Mucilage of Quince Seeds drawn with Roſe-water, make Pills to be held in the mouth.

And becauſe this Inflamation, Dryneſs, and Blackneſs of the Tongue, proceeds from the burning that is within. Juleps very Refrigerating are good to cool the ſame; unto which may be added, Sal prunellæ, and Spirit of Vitriol. Alſo they may be mingled with the Patients ordinary drink.

The Cure of extremity of Thirſt was ſufficiently propounded in the aforeſaid place. But in a malignant Feaver, it will be happily extinguiſhed, with theſe two Medicines newly commended, viz. with Sal Prunellæ, and Spirit of Vitriol, taken in Juleps, and in the ordinary drink of the Patient.

Want of Appetite, Stomach-ſickneſs, Vomiting, and Hiccuping, muſt be cured according to the Method delivered in the aforeſaid Chapter. Yet we ſhall ad one thing touching vomiting; that it doth ſomtimes ſo vex thoſe that have malignant Feavers, that they preſently vomit what ever they take, and though they have Thirſt, with Dryneſs and Blackneſs of Tongue; yet can they bear no kind of Liquor or drink: but vomit all their Juleps, Emulſions, Ptiſans, and their ſmal Beer preſently after they have drunk them. This moſt grievous Symptom is ſuddenly cured, as it were by a miracle, with a dram of Salt of Wormwood, given in a ſpoonful of freſh Juyce of Lemmons, as I have learnt by Experience.

A Looſneſs is very frequent in this Diſeaſe, and herein the wiſdom of the Phyſitian is very neceſſary. For if it be unſeaſonably ſtopped, the venemous Matter is kept within. And if it be let alone, it weakens the Patients, and many times brings them to their deaths. In the Cure of this Looſneſs, we muſt therefore thus proceed. If it be ſo moderate that it weaken not the Patient, it muſt not be ſtopt, but only moderated by Strengthening Clyſters, But if it be immoderate, and do very much weaken the Patient, it is wont to be a melting Looſneſs, that Thawes the Patient as it were away, and muſt be boldly ſtopped; which new Treacle to the quantity of half a dram, or Laudanum Opiatum, to the quantity of two or three grains, will effectually perform. Yet I have often ſeen a pernicious Flux which threatned to kill the Patient, ſtopped as it were in a Moment, by giving of powerful Diaphoreticks in a great Doſe; which did expel by the Skin that venemous Matter, which by vexing and grating upon the Guts, and other Bowels, did cauſe ſuch a melting and conſuming Looſneſs.

Worms do very often vex thoſe that have theſe Feavers, and are plentifully bred by the great putrefaction of the Humors. Theſe are conveniently drawn away by ſweet Clyſters, and by potions againſt the Worms; eſpecially ſuch as are made of a Decoction of Scordium. For Scordium is equally good againſt the malignity and the Worms. And to temper the heat thereof, it muſt be boiled with Purſlain, Sorrel, and Harts-horn. Alſo burnt Harts-horn is profitably boiled againſt the

Worms. For *Foreſtus* in the fourth *Obſerv.* of his ſixth Book, that no Remedy did ſo much good to ſuch as having a malignant Feaver were troubled with Worms and a Looſneſs, as burnt Harts-horn given to the quantity of a dram in convenient Juleps.

When the malignant and venemous Quality bears great ſway in theſe Feavers, that they come neer the Nature of the true Peſt; in ſuch Patients there are commonly riſings behind their Ears, and Carbuncles. Wherefore we will here ſubjoyn their Cure.

In the beginning of a Parotis, or Riſing neer the Ear, as ſoon as it begins to appear, the Part recipient muſt be relaxed and widened as it were, and if the ſwelling riſe but ſlowly, the motion of Nature endeavoring to expel the morbifick matter that way muſt be aſſiſted, by applying drawing things to the ſwelling, and by giving Antidotes and Diaphoreticks. To relax the Part, make an Injection of Oyntment of Marſh-mallows, and lay on afterwards moiſt Wool which is greaſie, from the Sheep. Attraction may be cauſed by applying Whelps, or yong Pigeons, by which alſo the pain will be mitigated. Plaiſters made of Leven, Figs, Onions, Doves-dung, adding thereto Butter, Hens-greaſe, freſh Hogs-greaſe, and Oyl of Lillies, or ſweet Almonds. If by theſe Attractives the Part be over-heated, and the pain be too much encreaſed; they may be omitted by fits, laying on in the mean time the Cataplaſm made of the Crum of White-bread; or nointing with the aforeſaid Oyls, being laid on with unwaſht Wool; or with Oyntment of Marſh-mallows, as was ſaid before. And becauſe the part is not ſufficiently capable to receive the morbifick matter; to derive another way a portion thereof, a veſicatory muſt be applied to the hinder part of the Neck, and alſo the Diaphoretick formerly cited muſt frequently be given. The Matter being called forth into the external parts, let Suppuration be endeavored, by laying on a Cataplaſm made of the Roots of Marſh-mallows, and of Lillies, with Figs, Meal of Linſeeds, and the Oyls and ſeveral ſorts of Greaſe aforeſaid. When Suppuration is made, let the Tumor be opened; let the reſt of the Matter be digeſted, by continuing the Cataplaſm, or by laying on a Plaiſter of Diachylon. Let the Ulcer be cleanſed with that common Digeſtive made of Turpentine, Yolks of Egs, and Oyl of Roſes. Let the Ulcer be kept long open with a Tent, that all the Venom of the Diſeaſe may ſufficiently be purged out, and at laſt heal it up and Cicatrize it. Yet this one thing is to be obſerved; That if the Tumor doth ſo encreaſe as to cauſe danger of Suffocation, or Choaking, it muſt be opened before it be perfectly ripe: For ſo ſome portion of the matter being drawn forth, the Tumor will fall ſomwhat, and the danger of Suffocation will be avoided. In like manner, If the malignity be very intenſe, that the Patient ſeems likely to miſcarry before the Tumor be ripe; then alſo it muſt be opened before its due time that the force of the Venom may expire, whence oftentimes the Patient recovers. And upon this Account, in the Peſt the Buboes or ſwellings in the Groin, are wont to be opened, before they come to Suppuration.

Finally, It were a Wickedneſs to paſs over in ſilence a rare Experiment, which happened to me in that ſame Epidemick Feaver, which cruelly raged and ranged at *Montpelier*, in the year 1623. So that neer half of thoſe that were ſick died of the Diſeaſe. But eſpecially, So many as had ſwellings by the Ears (which was wont to happen about the ninth or eleventh day of the Diſeaſe) they al died within two daies after; there preceding or happening at the ſame time Raving, Stupidity, Convulſions, with an unequal, frequent, and very ſmall Pulſe, as it were the creeping Piſmire-Pulſe. And after I had ſeen divers in this condition, who could not be helpt by Antidotes, or by drawing things laid to the ſwelling; muſing with my ſelf if by any means poſſible, they might be delivered from ſo certain deſtruction: I began at laſt to think, that therefore theſe ſwellings proved ſo fatal, becauſe the Part in which they happened was not capable to receive all the Morbifick Matter, which being retained within kills the Patient, and that therefore the work of Nature being only begun in thoſe ſwellings, might be ſupplyed by evacuations, viz. Blood-letting, and purgation; whenas alſo *Galen* in his 3. *de Comp. Medic. Secund. Loca. Cap. de Parotidibus*, In the Cure of theſe ſwellings preſcribes Blood-letting. But this advice was contradicted by the extream weakneſs of the Patients, which was ſo great that they ſeemed to be even now in the pains of death, which alſo it ſelf ſoon followed. But *Galen* in the forecited place, when He preſcribes Blood-letting in the Cure of ſuch Tumors, does propound two conditions, viz. If blood abound, and the ſtrength of the Patient will bear bleeding. Both which Conditions were abſent in theſe Cales, for blood had been before ſufficiently drawn, both by repeated Phlebotomies, and Cupping-glaſſes: Alſo the Patients were extreamly decaied in their ſtrength. Weighing all theſe things with my ſelf, I conceived that golden ſaying of *Cornelius Celſus*, was in this Cale if ever ſeaſonable, viz. *That many things are done rightly in time of eminent danger, which were otherwiſe to be omitted: And that its better to Experiment a doubtful Remedy in one or two perſons, than to leave ſo many perſons to undoubted Deſtruction.* I was alſo encouraged by conceiving, that this great weakneſs of the Patients, was rather from oppreſſion of the Morbifick Matter, than diſſipation or diſſolution of their ſtrength. For therefore their ſtrength did ſuddenly decay, becauſe Nature was not able to caſt off her heavy burthen, and I hoped when that burthen was made lighter, ſhe would be freed. Add hereunto, That bleeding

bleeding might be ſo ordered, that no danger ſhould be feared therfrom, viz. If two or three ounces only were taken away at firſt, for tryall ſake, and if the ſucceſs were good, a greater quantity might be taken away afterward I reſolved therefore upon this courſe. And a Merchant of *Montpelier* named *Bernardier* being the firſt I met with, and a tumor aroſe behind his left ear on the eleventh day of the diſeaſe with ſuch a puls & other ſymptoms as aforeſaid; I preſcribed bleeding to the quantity of three ounces which the Chyrurgion being an Antient and experienced man refuſed to do for fear the patient ſhould dy under his hands; afterwards being emboldened by my preſence & authority, he took away three ounces of Blood, after three or four houres, I viſit my patient again, & find his puls a little ſtronger & not ſo unequal; then I cauſed him to bleed ſix ounces, after which his puls was beter and ſtronger. The Blood was very corrupt: The day following I preſcribed him a Purg of Senna, Rhubarb and ſyrup of Roſes: and ſo the patient was recovered from the jaws of death. And afterwards all the ſick that had riſings behind their ears, firſt I Bled ſeverall times a little at a time, and the day following Purged them: and ſo all of them (to God be the Honor and Praiſe) ſo many as were thus ordered happily recovered; and never any afterwards that had thoſe riſings behind their ears, died in the whol year

Howbeit it is to be noted (which we hinted in the prognoſis) that the ſwelling doth often appear critically and profitably, and thereby the ſick are recovered of their diſeaſes; viz. So oft as they appear in the declination of the diſeaſe, and this is eaſily ſeen by the abatement of the ſymptoms which follow upon the riſings; and ſuch are wont to happen in Feavers of leſs malignity But in the time aforeſaid, ſuch was the malignity of the epidemicall Feaves, that the tumors behind the Ears would often break forth in the ſtate of the diſeaſe and ſymptomatically and deadly; until by the remedies aforeſaid, their diſtructive faculty was taken away.

In a carbuncle ſuperveneing upon a burning Feaver, if before its apparition, Blood were not ſufficiently taken away. If the patient can bear further blood-letting, open that vein which is nigh the carbuncle, that the greater attraction may be made of the venemous matter to the part affected. Afterward let the Tumor be ſcarrified on every ſide round about and that with prety deep gaſhes and foment it a while with warm ſalt water, that the corruption of the blood may be hindered, and the flux thereof promoted. A while after apply a grain of a Cauſtick to the midle of the Puſtle, and upon the whol ſwelling, lay this following Cataplaſm,

Take leaves of Rue, and Scabious bruiſed of each one handfull: three pair of dryed Figs bruyſed; ſharp Leven an ounce; Pepper poudered one dram; two yolkes of Eggs: Mix all into a Cataplaſm, which muſt be applied for two dayes together.

And then lay on this following.

Take Juices of Comphry the greater, Scabious, Marygold, of each one dram; old treacle four ſcruples; Salt one dram; two yolks of Eggs: mix them all and apply it to the tumor.

Alſo at the beginning may be applyed the Cataplaſm *de Arnoglоſſo* deſcribed in the Diſpenſatory of *Banderon*.

But to the *Eſchara* after the application of the Cauſtick, apply *Unguentum Baſilicum*, adding thereto Treakle, Oyl of ſcorpions, and the yolk of an Egg.

When the tumor is grown, leſt the malignant matter ſhould flow back again to the internal parts let the compaſs thereof be anointed, with ointment of Bolus, twice or thrice in a day: And upon the Eſchara or Cruſt, that it's falling off may be haſtened, lay *Unguentum Baſilicum* with butter, and Sows greaſe mixed therewith after the cruſt is com away, let the ulcer be cleanſed with this folowing ointment.

Take juice of Marygolds, wormwood, Scabious, and Smalladg of each one ounce; choyce of Mirrh, Florentine Oris, Aloes, Sarcocolla, of each one dram; Honey of Roſes two ounces: Make of all an ointment, to be uſed till the ſore be perfectly cured

Chap 2. *Of the Meaſles, and ſmall Pox.*

THat Feaver which is commonly attended by the Meaſles and ſmall Pox, may juſtly be reckoned among Malignant and peſtilential Feavers; ſeeing it is Epidemical and contagious, and kills very many children, to whom it commonly happens

What is the difference berween the Meaſles and ſmall Pox, Authors are not yet well agreed. But cuſtom hath obtained that thoſe ſame larger puſtles or Whelks like unto Warts (from whence they

they have their name) should be called in latin *Variola*, in English the small Pox; but those little Pustles and as it were asperities of the Skin with a deep redness like St. Anthonies fire or the rose, which are discussed within five or seven daies without suppuration, are called in latin *Morbilli* and in English Measles. There is also another kind of pustles common to Children, like unto the small Pox in respect of the fashion and size; but herein it differs, in that the small Pox begins with redness and inflamation; but these are white and as it were bladderes full of a wheyish humor, which within three daies break and dry up and are wont to cause no danger, and commonly break forth without a Feaver. It is described by *Vidus Vidius*, in these words; *Som besides the two former sorts do add a third which they call the Crystalls*, For so they term certain Bladdrs full of matter, which shine like Christall, wherewith the Skin is in divers parts diapered; the common people call them *Ravaglione*. unto which all men are not so subject as unto the small Pox and measles, neither are they so greviously afflicted under them. wherefore these bladders ought not to be reckonedas a third sort with the small Pox and Measles

Touching the smal Pocks, and Measles Authors dispute much, and especially whether these be new diseases, or if they were known unto the antients, and what is the next and immediate Cause of them. But since I affect al possible brevity in my Lectures, I have bin wont to omit al controversies, propounding onely the plain and naked decisions of them; and accordingly, I shal breifly unfold what is to be thought of the foregoing questions.

And in the first place I conceive the smal Pocks and Measles to be no new diseases, seeing they rise from a most antient Cause, viz. the impurites of the maternal blood; which when the Arabians observed, they accounted it no new disease. But if they had first come abroad in their times, they would have mentioned their novelty. And although, they were the first that exactly described them; and *Hippocrates* and *Galen* with the rest of the Antients, have scarce mentioned them; we must suppose that therefore the Antients did not write distinctly of them, because they are only accidents of a malignant Feaver and critical eruptions, which do not make a distinct disease by themselves. Or because in Greece through the mildness of the Ayr, these diseases were so light, as not to deserve the Care of a Physitian. Even as in the Western Indies, in regard of the great temperatnes of the Ayr, it was wont to be so light, that it was scarce taken notice of before the coming of the Spaniards into those parts. But a Blackmore which was brought thither, being taken with Pestilential smal Pocks, the malignant and venemous quality being spred by Infection, the disease began so to range and rage, that a great part of the Indians were slain thereby. For whereas before, those impurites of their Mothers blood remaining in them, were wont easily to be discussed, through the Clemency of the Ayr; now when a venemous quality was added to them, they caused grevious Diseases.

Now that the Mothers blood is the true Cause of the Smal Pocks and Measles, is hence cheifly gathered, because among many thousands of Men, it is hard to find one, who once in his Life hath not had these diseases. But a disease common to al Men, must needs depend upon some common cause; such as are the principles of Generation viz. the seed and Mothers blood.

But the seed cannot be the cause of the smal Pocks and Measles, because from it come hereditary diseases, such as last a Mans Life time; it remaines therfore that these diseases spring from the Mothers blood, with which the Child is nourished in the Womb. For therein, be it never so pure, some impurites are found, which communicate their pollution to the parts of the Child; and that pollution of the parts, doth defile the Mass of blood; and being provoked by some occasion, doth make the same to boil, by help whereof, the blood ferments and becomes purified, both it and the parts aforesaid. This the *Arabians* do manifest by a cleer example of Wine, which being powred whiles it is new into a musty or otherwise il-qualited Vessel receives that il quality from the Vessel but when it begins to work and purefie, it clenses both it self and the Vessel. Now this working doth commonly happen to Children; howbeit somtimes to those that are elder and have attained Mans estate, because it is evermore set on work by some external Cause, such as is especially a certain disposition of ayr proportionable to this disease whence it comes to pass that somtimes the smal Pocks, somtimes the Measles are rise, because the Ayr is somtimes enclined to the one and somtimes to the other.

Neither can those impurites of the Mothers blood, infect her and cause in her the same diseases, although *Hippocrates* saies in his Book *de Natura Pueri* that there are three parts of the blood, one most pure, with which the Child is nourished; another impure, wherewith the Mother is nourished; and another, most impurer, which is kept in the Veins of the Womb, the whol time of Going with Child, and after the Birth is purged away in the Childbed purgations. For first, seeing the Mother hath parts more hard and solid, they do not so soon take impretion as the tender and soft body of the Child. Again that most impure part of the blood which is kept in the Veins of the womb and of the After-birth, the whol time of belly-bearing, doth infect the blood in the passage, which is carryed through those parts to Nourish the Child: whence the Child contracts an evil quality, which in its time is the Cause of that ebullition in the blood of the

the Child. But that impureſt part of the blood remaining in the foreſaid places, doth not infect the body of the Mother.

Furthermore, its not to be wondered at, that the breaking out of the ſmal Pocks and Meaſles, is ſomtimes ſo long deferred, as that ſome have them at Mans eſtate. For thoſe impurities do not ſubſtantially remain in the body as many imagine: for they would be corrupted by long ſtay and acquire a moſt grevious putrefaction. But only an evil quality is by them imprinted upon the parts of the Child, which in proceſs of time infecting ſome part of the humors, becomes offenſive to Nature; which then rowling her ſelf, doth drive thoſe infected portions of the humors, into the Skin.

And foraſmuch as in the Maſs of blood a twofold excrement is found, the one thick the other thin: of the thick, the ſmal Pocks are bred, of the thin, the Meaſles. And although the evil and malignant quality be one and the ſame, infecting both excrements: yet becauſe the Nature of the excrements is different, the Analogy of the external Cauſe unto them both is Different. whence it comes to paſs that ſometimes the ſmal Pocks and ſomtimes the Meaſles are Epidemically ſpread abroad.

And although the ſmal Pocks are wont to break forth in the whol body, yet are they wont to appear in greateſt quantity in the face, feet and hands; which is otherwiſe in the purple ſpots of the Purple Feaver, for they appear moſt on the breaſt and back. The Cauſe of which difference is this, that inaſmuch as the ſaml Pocks ariſe from an ebullition of the blood, by help whereof an Excretion is made of the excrements lurking therein, unto the Skin; and the Liver being the Fountain and original of blood, whoſe Emunctories are the Face, Hands, and Feet, whence it comes that ſuch as have hot Livers, have red and rubied faces, and feel intenſe heat in the palmes of their hands and Soals of their feet; it follows that the ſmal Pocks and Meaſles muſt come out there more than any where elſe. Contrarywiſe the purple ſpotts which appear in malignant Feavers, do ariſe principally from the Miſaffection of the Heart, and therfore they break out chiefly in parts near the Heart, and eſpecially about the Loines; becauſe in them the *Vena Cava aſcendens* and the *Arteria aorta* which are annexed unto the Hair, have their Courſe,

Alſo another difference is to be noted between the ſmal Pocks and Purples; becauſe the ſmal Pocks and Meaſles appearing on the third or fourth day from the beginning of the Feaver, are wont to be critical, and for the moſt part void of danger: but the purple ſpots, though they appear on the ſeventh day are commonly Symptomatical, and render the diſeaſe worſe; whenas a man would think it ſhould be otherwiſe, for a diſeaſe is more crude on the fourth than the ſeventh day. But the Cauſe of this difference conſiſts herein; that in the ſmal Pocks and Meaſles the Feaver commonly begins at the higheſt; ſo that not only on the third and fourth day, but alſo on the firſt or ſecond daies, excretions may be in them critical. But malignant Feavers proceed more ſlowly, and their beginning is commonly Extended to the ſeventh day: ſo that Excretions which then happen cannot be critical. Now that the Pox and Meaſles come ſo ſoon to their ſtate and not the malignant Feavers, is hence; becauſe the Pox and Meaſle-Feaver comes from the lighteſt putrefaction, and rather from an Ebullition of the blood than from any intenſe putrefaction of the matter; and therfore Nature by help of Coction makes it to ceaſe before the ſeventh day, becauſe it was a light Feaver and roſe from the ſlighteſt Cauſes. But in malignant Feavers, ſo great and ſordid is the putrefaction that it cannot be corrected in the fourteenth nor ſomtimes in the twentieth day. And therefore the ſpotts breaking out before that time, the diſeaſe is exaſperated; becauſe Nature was forced to expel them, without Concoction and ſymptomatically.

The expulſion therefore of ſmal pox and Meaſles is cauſed, by an Ebullition of the blood: which Ebullition according to *Avicennas doctrine*, is twofold; the one perfective, the other corruptive. The perfective or depurative is that, in which only the impurer and excrementitious parts of the blood, are by Nature purged forth, that the whol maſs may afterward remain pure; and then the ſmal Pocks are innocent, which are cured without any help of Phyſick. But the corruptive is, wherein not onely the excrementitious parts of the blood, but the ſincere blood it ſelf is putrefied whence ariſe dangerous and deadly pox, and according as there is more or leſs putrefaction, in more or fewer parts of the blood, ſo is the danger more or leſs. This corruptive Ebullition doth cheifly happen, when thoſe diſeaſes are epidemical being occaſioned by a malignant Conſtitution of the Air, by which an ebullition of the humors and a malignant putrefaction is cauſed; whence many and dangerous ſmal Pocks are cauſed; which are ſomtimes (according to *Rhaſis*) the Forerunners of the Plague.

Pocks and Meaſles are reckoned among acute diſeaſes becauſe ordinarily they are terminated within the ſpace of fourteen daies. Now ſom do wittily obſerve a double order of times in this diſeaſe viz. the time of ebullition and the time of eruption: the time of ebullition is commonly terminated in four daies; ſo that the firſt day is counted the beginning, the ſecond the Augment, the third the ſtate, and the fourth the declination: for then the Feaver and other ſymptomes are wont to remit.

But the beginning of the Eruption of the Pox is the fourth day it felt, the Augment reaches to

the seventh, the state until the eleventh, the declination unto the fourteenth, at which time the Pocks are dried. Howbeit oftentimes they are not dry until the twentieth day.

Differences of small Pocks and Measles, are taken either from the substance, in regard of which, some are more or less Flegmatick, Bloody, Chollerick, or Melancholick: or from the Quantity, in which regard they are more or less in number; greater or less; profound or Superficial; or from the Quality, in which respect some are red, others white, yellowish, Violet colored, Livid, black, according to the diversity of Humors of which they are compounded; or from the time, in respect whereof some come quickly out, others slowly; some are soon, others late ripe, or dissolved: or from the place, in which respect, some occupy only the Skin. others do seaz upon the internal Parts also, as the Throat, Lungs, Guts, Liver, Spleen, and other bowels.

The Diagnosis respects either the Disease present or at hand. The smal Pocks and Measles, when they are present, are subject to the outward Sences, and need therefore no other signs. But these signs following declare them to be at hand.

Pain in the Head with Pulsation in the Forehead, and Temples; great Sleepiness: Terrors in Sleep; sometimes Ravings, Tremblings, and Convulsions: Sneezings; frequent Yawning; Hoarsness, Cough, Difficulty in breathing. Heat, Redness, and Sence of pricking over the whol body. Pain of the back, which comes sometimes alone, or appearing with few other Symptoms in a Synochus Feaver, it shews the smal Pocks will come out. For seeing through the back are carried the great Vein and Artery, in which the malignant blood boiling, does send forth sharp vapors to the Nerves, and neighboring Membranes; it must needs be, that pains should be felt especially in those parts. Great Anxiety and unquietness. Tears flowing of themselves. Shining before the Eyes, and their Itching, a swelling of the Face with some Redness. A vehemency of the Symptoms at first, so that the Disease seems of a sudden to have attained its vigor.

All which are caused, eather by many and thick vapors sent up by the boiling of the blood, into the Head, Diaphragm, and other parts; or from the Nature of the Pocks themselves, now beginning to invade, the parts; or by a Fluxion caused by heat, which dissolves the Humors in the Brain.

It's of great Moment to foresee the smal Pox; but much more to foretel their event, which the following Prognostick Signs wil declare.

And in the first place those smal Pox are wont to be void of danger, which come out soon and easily, and do quickly ripen.

Inwhich the Feaver is moderate, without great Symptomes, which ceases after they are come out or is very much abated. In which the voyce is free and breathing easie.

Smal Pox, which at first are red, and white, soft, distinct, few, round, pointed, coming only in the Skin and not inwardly, are wont to be safe.

All the Signs aforesaid do signifie the paucity of the Morbifick Matter, it's Obsequiousness, Benignity, and the strength of Nature, lustily expelling.

Contrarywise dangerous and deadly Pox are known, by a great Feaver, which lessens not after they are broak forth; for it signifies the malignant and venemous humors are not sufficienly expelled unto the Skin, but that the greatest part of them remains yet in the Veins. Great anxiety and unquietness; which comes from the same humors boiling in the Veins. Difficulty of breathing, which signifies either pustles or Impostumes in the Lungs; or a Squinsie, or great decay of strength. Great thirst which declares the inward burning; and if with the thirst, shortness of breath be encreased, Death is at hand. A Loosness or bloody Flux, which shews the malignant humors have their recourse inward, which is a course quite contrary to that of Nature and therefore deadly, so that few of those which after the Pox coming out, are taken with such a Loosness do escape.

A Bloodie Urine is a most deadly sign; and likewise if by stool pure and sincere blood be voided. Somtimes also by the Nostrils, Gums, and other parts of the body blood is voided, which are commonly deadly Signs. For they signifie the extream Acrimony and malignity of the blood: which doth vehemently provoke Nature, and compells her to a preposterous excretion thereof.

Also Pox long a coming out are very bad, which signifie the contumacy of the matter, or the weaknes of Nature, Many, Great, Double and united Pox, do shew an overabundant quantity of Morbifick matter, and are bad. So are hard ones, shewing the thickness and incoctibility of the said matter. Also flatt ones which shew the weakness of the expulsive faculty, and they are worse, if they have a black spot in the middles of them, which argues extraordinary malignity. And green, blewish and black which spring from that sort of choller called *Bilis porracea, or Atra* Leeke-green or black Choller are a bad sign.

They are worst of al which when they are come forth do presently vanish, and the tumor of the parts falls: for they signifie the retirement of the Humor inwards; and none of those escape who have the Pox on this manner going in again, but they die commonly within twenty four houres.

They are also dangerous, when spotts like those of the purple or spotted Feaver, are mingled among the pox; especially if those spots be livid or black. For they signifie not only that same light

light putrefaction, which is wont to happen in the ſmall Pox by means of the ebullition of blood: but alſo that intenſe and profound Malignity is peccant; from which much greater danger is threatened to the Patient.

Dung or Urines in this Diſeaſe livid or black, do portend great danger: for they ſignifie that Melancholiy abounds in the Veins, and infects the whol Maſs of Blood.

The cure of the ſmall Pox & Meaſles is performed in the ſatisfaction of four Indications. whereof the firſt conſiſts in the Evacuation of the peccant humors. The ſecond in aſſiſting the motion of nature, or helping to expell the Pox. The third in the oppoſition of the malignant and venemous quality. The fourth in correction of ſymptoms. All which that they may be conveniently effected, firſt a convenient diet muſt be appointed, which muſt be the ſame which was ordered in the cure of putrid Feavers: howbeit ſome things muſt be particularly noted.

Firſt that the patients be kept in a warm room, to the end their pores may be kept open, & the breaking out of the ſmal Pox may there be furthered. therefore they muſt be kept in a Chamber well ſhut, which the cold air muſt in no wiſe enter into. For many Children that had benigne Pox, have been killed by letting in the cold ayr upon them, viz. the morbifick matter being thereby driven back into the inward parts. And for the ſame cauſe they muſt be moderately covered with Cloathes; but ſo that the heat of the air or the weight of the Cloathes may not augment the heat of the Feaver, The foreſaid coverings are wont commonly to be made of red cloaths, becauſe they are thought by ſom Analogy to move the boiling blood to the externall parts. Many are alſo wont to keep an Ewe or Wether in the chamber or on the bed; becauſe thoſe Creatures are eaſily infected and draw the venom to themſelves, by which meanes ſom Eaſe may happen to the ſick perſons.

A decoction of Barly, or of the roots of Sorrel, or of Harts horn is profitably uſed for drink, in the beginning of the diſeaſe eſpecially, and when the Feaver is vehement. But if the Feaver be not very violent, a decoction of Barly and Figs wil be very profitable, viz. Effectually driving the Humors to the Skin; and *Foreſtus* and *Amatus* did continually uſe the ſame with good ſucceſs.

Furthermore. Whereas in the whol Courſe of the Diſeaſe, Sleep ought to be moderate, yet in the Augment when the Pocks break forth, long Sleep is hurtful, and it is better to watch more than ordinary.

That therefore the aforeſaid Jndications may be fulfilled, the Cure muſt be begun by Blood-letting (if Blood in any ſort is redundant, and the Age of the Patient is like to bear it) and a Vein muſt be opened as ſoon as may be. But if the Phyſitian ſhall not be called the firſt day, yet he ſhal do well to take blood before the breaking forth of the Pocks, or while but few are come out; which time is wont commonly to laſt until the fourth day, from the firſt onſet of the Feaver. In which Caſe notwithſtanding, diligent heed is to be taken. For if upon the breaking forth of the Pocks, the Feaver and its Symptoms be abated; it is better to leave the buſineſs to Nature working well, which will ſufficiently expel the whol Morbifick Matter to the Skin. Alſo Blood-letting is not in this caſe neceſſary, ſince experience ſhews, that an infinite company of children haveing gentle Pox, and not Plethorick are happily cured without bleeding. Nay rather in the former caſe ſomtimes blood-letting may do hurt, becauſe the expulſion of the ſmal Pox is cauſed by an ebullition of blood: which ebullition if it be ſmall, it will by blood-letting be leſſened very much, and ſo it will becom inſufficient perfectly to purge the maſs of Blood from it's impurities. Contrarywiſe, if upon the Eruption of the Pox, the Feaver becomes more ſtrong, there be anxiety, difficult breathing, an urin thick and red, and other ſymptoms ſeem greater it's a ſign that naure is oppreſt, with the over great burthen of humors, and that ſhe cannot govern them conveniently; and that therefore Phlebotomy is neceſſary, that a part of the burthen being taken away, nature may be the better able to expel the reſt. In one word, when there is an Ebullition perfective meerly and depuratiue, blood is not to be taken away, but in a corruptive blood-letting is extreamly neceſſary yea even in that which hath leſs malignity in it, whoſe degrees have been ſpecefied before, And ſo neceſſary is blood-letting in dangerous Pox, in which the corruptive Ebullition is wont to happen, that the tender age of infants muſt not hinder it. For it is grown into a cuſtom to let children blood when they are four years old and ſomtimes when they are three. The phyſitians of *Paris* in their tender age and while they ſuck do let children blood. Which yet the tender age of infants doth hardly admit, with that light nouriſhment of milk, and the plentifull efflux of their humors by tranſpiration; neither can this new licence of letting ſuch yong ones blood be juſtified by any countenance from the wiſe Authors of Phyſick.

In prety big children, many times once blood-letting wil not ſerve the turn, but it muſt be repeated

if

if the Feaver remain intense or if Raving or any other grevious Symptome do urge, Yea verily when the Pox are perfectly come out, which for the most part is within nine daies, if the Feaver be very urgent, blood must be again let and the Patients ordered, as those who have a putrid Feaver.

If blood-letting be suspected because of the tenderness of the Childrens Age, or because the fitting season is now past; the superfluous blood may be diminished by Cupping-Glasses with Scarification, applied to the back, shoulders, and thighs, which may also wel be used in the state of the disease, seeing the Motion of Nature from the Centre to the Circumference, is by them promoted. But care must be taken that in young Children the Scarifications be not too deep: for it happens sometimes that an unadvised Surgeon cutts so deep, as to cut asunder some Veins and let out the fervent and boiling blood, so that there is great trouble to stop the same.

Purgation is suspected in this disease; for it makes a motion contrary to that of Nature viz. from the Circumference to the Centre; and to whomsoever, having Pocks, a loosness happens, the Pocks commonly strik in, and the Partie dies, as I said in the Prognostick. Yet observe, that many times purgation is to good purpose practised before the pocks come out, and before the Feaver growes vehement, viz. when the Children are in the Neutral state of Decidence. For then if il humors abound, they are profitably diminished by purging, that Nature may afterward, more Cheerfully set upon the Expulsion of the Remainder. But when the Pox begins to appear, Purging wil be pernicious: And likewise, if there be great malignity abroad, as in an epidemical Constitution, when very many Children dy of that disease; it is better wholly to abstain from Purging; because in diseases which are very malignant and Pestilential, Purgation in the beginning of the Disease, is very hurtful. Now the Purgatives must be compounded of gentle Simples viz. Rhubarb, Callia, Manna, Tamarinds, and Syrup of Roses.

In the Course of the disease, if the belly be hard and bound it may gently be removed, but not provoked; and that by a suppository of honey alone without salt; or with a Clister of Broath or milk, or a decoction of French barley, Raisons and Liquoris with sugar and yolkes of Eggs.

After blood-letting and other evacuations (if necessary) the expulsion of the pox must be helped forward, not only with specifick medicines driving the humors to the Skin, but also with diaphoreticks and Alexipharmicks; especially if the Pox be Epidemical and being very malignant, do threaten great danger.

There is a vulgar Medicine commended by *Rhasis*, *Avicenna* and al the Arabian Physitians to drive out the Pox; which also the greatest part of our later Physitians use, according to the description of Avicenna, which is thus.

Take *Fat figgs seven ounces. Lentills shaled three drams. Lack two drams and an half. Gum traganth and fennel seed, of each two drams. Boil al in a pint and half of fountain water to the third part. Let the patient drink thereof. Rhasis adds Saffron fifteen grains, Raisons five drams, because Saffron opens and corroborates, and the Raisons do strengthen the Liver. And Traganth although it do incrassate and astringe, yet is it therefore mingled with the rest, that it may prohibit the over great ebullition of blood.*

Lentils are by some Neotericks rejected, because they are restrictive and may hinder the coming forth of the Pox. But the Autority of so many and such noble Princes of Physick, must not rashly be rejected; but we must rather determine, that Lentils shaled are with great reason put into this composition; viz. that by their astringent and incrassating faculty, they may bridle the Fervency of the humors and hinder their falling upon any noble part; to which purpose Gum traganth was added, as I hinted before. This is taken out of *Galen*, who in the 1. *De Aliment. Facult. Cap.* 18. Doth teach us that Lentils twice boiled do Strengthen the Natural parts, and by their astriction stop the flux of the belly. The Lentils may therefore be put in or left out according to the Judgment of the Physitian who manages the Cure, as there is more or less necessity of attenuating and driving the humors into the Skin. For if the matter be subtile and the ebullition great, the Lentils may profitably be put in for the Intent aforesaid. But if the matter seem to be thick, so that Nature can but slowly drive it into the Skin then must they be omitted and the Gum traganth; and onely the other attenuating and diaphoretick things used for the drink. By which it appears, that we must not too strictly adhere to the formes of Medicaments propounded by Authors; but that in several occasions they must be variously changed. Let this following Receipt serve for an example, compounded partly of the foresaid simples and partly of others that are diaphoretick and resist malignity; which may much help such as have this disease, in making the Pox to come wel out.

Take *Rootes of Fennel and Sorrel of each one ounce. Harts-horn shavings half an ounce Leaves of Scabious, Scordium, St. Johns-wort of each one Handful. Three pair of fat Figgs. Gum Lack three drams. seeds of Navew or Turnep & Carduus Benedictus of each two drams. Lentils unhusked half an ounce. Gum traganth one dram and an half. Boil al to a pint and half. Of the straining take three ounces. Syrup of Lemmons one ounce. Mix them. make of them a Julep let the Patient drink thereof twice or thrice in a day.*

If

If the Malignity be very great, as commonly it happens in Epidemical smal Pocks, we must chiefly use Antidotes. and consequently al those remedies which we have propounded in malignant Fevers wil be good in this disease, respect being had to the Age and strength of the Patiennt. And among others, Confection of Hyacinth, Bezoar stone, Pouder of Corall, Pearles, Harts-horn; oyl of Scorpions of Matthiolus, must be used frequently, with other things, the manner of whose use may be learnt out of the foregoing chapter.

Neither must such things be omitted as do restore the Patients strength, both inward and outward which may be also learnt out of the foregoing Chapter, and by the prudent Physitian administred in due season.

And it must be heedfully remembred, that such medicaments as drive out the Pox are not to be used in al patients. For somtimes they break forth so violently, that they have need to be restrained for a while. For the great ebullition and immoderate Fervor of blood, if they be not tempered. are wont to destroy the Patients; and therfore, it is good in such a Case to use bridlers and coolers, For example, a Julep many be thus compoled.

Take *Whol barly one pugil. Cinquefoil rootes and Tormentil roots of each one ounce. Leaves of Sorrel, Endive and Wood-sorrel of each one handful. Lentils excorticated half an ounce. Gum traganth one dram. Boil al to a pint. In the straining dissolve four ounces of Syrup of Lemons or Pomegranates. Make of al a Julep for four doses, to be taken twice in a day.*

Amatus Lusitanus in the 18. Cure of the third Centurie propounds an example of such kind of Pox arising from boiling humors and cured only by coolers and thickeners. which example I thought good to cite in this place word for word, that the young beginners may perceive, in what cases the Cure is most to be varied. *The Boy of Altarasius* (saies he) *began to have the smal Pox, some of which did run together, so that in two daies they flaid his Miserable Carcase: for the pustles crept along and did only flay off his Skin; which I have likewise observed in other Children. Against which, I thus set my self to work; First because this matter was too thin, I endeavored to thicken the same, and not only so, but to abate the evil quality of the Liver and internal parts, that no more such thin subtile Humor might be bred.. This I did with refrigerating Medicaments, as Syrup of Roses, of Cichory simple, of Endive and Violets with waters of like Nature mixed with them. He was nointed with Ceratum Santalinum. But the Diet likwise helped much, which was ordered cold and moist. By al which the matter became thicker and the pox began to appear thick and large.*

And for ordinary drink prescribe a decoction of barly and of Sorrel roots. And these remedies must be continued, until the Fervency of the humors shal begin to abate: if Nature seem to want their assistance.

These things might suffice for a direct Cure of the smal Pox. But because they may bring great dammage to divers parts, both internal and external, we must endavour the Prevention and Cure thereof.

The internal parts may especially be preserved with a decoction of Lentils, of Gum Lac and Traganth, described before. For Gum Lack defends the Liver and Spleen, Lentils the Gutts, and Traganth the breast.

But the Lungs are peculiarly preserved by Conserve of Roses and Violets, and Syrup of Violets Jujubees, Myrtils, Dryed Roses, Poppies and also these following LOHOCHS. Se in my Dispensatory (at the begining of the Lohochs) what a Lohock is; and why so called.

Take *Conserve of Roses one ounce and half, juyce of Lentiles thrice boiled six drams. poppie seeds an half dram. Gum traganth one scruple. with Syrupe of dried Roses make all into a Lobech.*

Or this of *Avicenna*, which is commended by *Guainerius* and *Forestus*.

Take *Lentils unshaled and finely poudered three drams. White Poppie seeds one ounce. Conserve of Roses two ounces. Julep of Roses, as much as shal suffice, Mix al into a Lobech.*

Or such a Lohoch as this following may be made only of Syrups.

Take *Syrup of violets, jujubees and dried Roses of each one ounce. Syrup of Poppies half an ounce. Mix them, let the Patient lick thereof often out of a spoon, and swallow it down leisurely.*

But if a flux be at present into the Lungs and cause hoarsnes and suffocation; it must not only be stopped with the foresaid Remedies, but revelled by Cupping-glasses, both dry and Scarified, and by bleeding, if nothing else hinder. Also give the Patients to drink a decoction of Barly, Jujubes and Liquoris, and let them use this following Lohoch.

Take *Seeds of Marsh-mallows, Melons, Cucumers, and white Poppy, of each two drams. Raisons stoned and Jujubes of each four pair. Boile al to a pint. In which dissolve conserve of Roses and Violets of each half an ounce. Pouder of Diatragacanthum frigidum three drams. Sugar Candie and Sugar of Roses, of each as much as shal suffice. Make al into a Lohoch. The Jawes and throat may be fenced against the Pox, before they break out, with this following Gargarism.*

Take *French barly one pugil. Plantane Leaves two handfuls, red Rose Leaves one pugil, Balaustians, seeds of Sumach of each two drams. Boil al in two pints of water to a third parts consumption. In the strained Liquor dissolve Syrup of Mulberries and Pomgranates of each one ounce. Mix al into a Gargarism.*

If the young age of Children cannot admit a Gargle, a Lohoch may be made, of Syrup of Mulberries, Pome-granats, of dried Roses; either alone, or mingled with red Rose and Plantain waters. Which must often be given them in a spoon. Wherewith if the Fluxion cannot be stopped by reason of the abundance of the rhume, so that there is fear of Suffocation impendent; such things must be used, which widen the passages, and help excretion, after this manner.

Take *Mucilage of Fleabane seed and Oyl of sweet Almonds new drawn, of each one ounce and halfe Whitest Sugar two ounces. Mix them. Make of all a Lambitive to be given every hour.*

If by meanes of the Acrimony of the flux, or the Plenty of the smal Pox, an Ulcer be berd in the Jawes or Throat; it must be clensed with barly water and honey of Roses, or with allum water. and if it tend to corruption a little Ægyptiacum Ointment must be mingled therewith.

The gutts wil be preserved by the same remedies which were appointed to preserve the Lungs. But if a present Loosens, or dysenterie be urgent, first detergent and lenitive Remedies must be used and afterwards astringents. And so Clysters must be made of calybeated Milk, of Sugar and yolkes of Eggs: and afterwards of a decoction of barly and red Roses with the yolk of an egg; and last of al, of a decoction of Plantaine, Knot-grass, and Prunella or Self-heal, and other Simples set down in our Cure of the Disentery. And it is to be observed, that a loosnes in children that have Pox, is oftentimes caused by wormes, which lasts dureing the whol disease, whence they are in the danger of Death; because the expulsion of the Pox is therby hindred wholly or lessened. Which is easily known by the thicknes and viscositie of the excrements, and their grey or whitish color: then must be administred such things as kill Worms: and sweet Clysters must be injected.

Somtimes also the kidneys are affected and are exulcerated, whence arises Pissing of Blood. In this Case it is good to give an emulsion of the four greater cool seeds, with trochisics of Alkekengy, de Carabe, and other things set down in our chapters of Pissing of Blood.

Among external parts, the Eyes are most of all to be guarded from the smal Pox. For being endued with a soft and humid substance; the matter of the Pox is easily driven unto them: whence arise grevious calamites and somtimes total Blindnes.

Before the Pox break out therefore, or when they begin to appear, the Eyes must be anointed every hour with Plantane and Rose waters, in which a little saffron is dissolved; or with the following Eye-Salve, which doth more effectually preserve them.

Take *water of Roses and Plantane, of each one ounce and half. Pouder of Sumach seeds two drams. Infuse them a little while hot. then strain the liquor hard out. to the strained liquor ad Camphire ten graines. Saffron five graines. Make all into a Water for the Eyes.*

It wil be yet more effectual, if Instead of the waters, the juices of knot-grass and Sheperds-pouch be mingled with the rest.

And if some Pox begin to Peep out of the Eye it self, pidgeons blood must be often dropt in, that their resolution may be hastened. then also this following Eye-water is to be used.

Take *Red Rose water two ounces. Eye-bright water half an ounce trochisci* albi Rhasis *one dram. Tutty prepared one Scruple. Champhire five graines. Saffron two graines. make al into an Eye-water and wet the Eyes often therewith, with a thin linnen rag.*

But when the Eyes so swel that they cannot be opened, they must often be washed with a decoction of Linseed, Fenugreek seed, Quince seed and Mallow seeds; and to the swelling wil fal and the Eyes open and if when the Eyes are opened, there appear cloudes in them they must be scoured off with Sugar-candie finely powdered.

And finally if the Eyes are ulcerated, they may be cured with this following Eye salve.

Take *Washed Cerus three drams: Sarcocol one dram: Gum traganth one Scruple: Opium two grains: With mucilage of Gum traganth drawn out with Plantane water make all into little cakes or trochisics, which must be dissolved in Womens Milk, or red Rose water, when it is to be used and in all other things proceed, as Practitioners teach at large, in the Cure of Ulcers of the Eyes.*

To preserve the Nostrills, they must often smel to Vinegar. But a Collyrium of juyce of knot-grass, and shepherds pouch, Sumach seeds and camphire formerly praysed, wil work more effectually; let the tent be often moistened therein, and put up into the Nostrills. If notwithstanding, the Pox do grow with in the Nose, they quickly become hard Scabs, which are often to be nointed with Oyl of sweet almonds, that they may the sooner fal off. And finally if an Ulcer happen in the Nose, it must be dressed with a liniment of the Oyl of Eg-yolkes and juyce of Plantane, stirred together in a leaden Mortar.

To

To preſerve the Face, ſome waſh it with Roſe-water and other Aſtringents. Which I cannot approve of: for a great part of the impurities flows unto the Face. For the Skin thereof long looſe and ſoft, is very fit to receive Excrements. Wherefore if thoſe impurities which Nature ſends hither, be repelled, being retained within they may cauſe great hurt; and therefore the motion of Nature is no waies to be hindred. But this ought to be the Phyſitians care, to hinder that the Pocks which break out in the Face, do not leave behind them pits and Scarrs, which doth often deform the Countenance. And this he ſhall in good meaſure perform, if when the Pocks are ripe, and are high and white in the middle (which is wont to fall out upon the ninth day of the Diſeaſe) he cauſe them to be nointed with a Fether twice a day with Oyl of ſweet Almonds, drawn without fire, until the Cruſts fall off, For by this Medicine the Acrimony of Choller is tempered, the ripening of the Pocks is haſtened, and the falling off of the Cruſts furthered; which otherwiſe ſticking faſt, doth exulcerate the Skin more deeply, by reaſon of the Quittor which lies under them. Oyl of Nuts new drawn without fire, mixed well with a like quantity of Roſe-water, till they come to the form of a Liniment, is excellent for the ſame purpoſe.

If by neglecting the Remedies aforeſaid, or through the extream malignity of the Humor, there remain Pits and Pock-holes, all diligence muſt be uſed to repair the ſame. Which notwithſtanding is extream hard to do perfectly; although many have taken great pains thereabout to gratifie Virgins, and other Women, who are exceeding careful to preſerve their Beauties. Among infinite Medicines recorded by Authors to this intent, I ſhall propound the choiſeſt.

And in the firſt place, Oyl of Eg-yolks does nouriſh and engender Skin, and therefore is very convenient to fill the Pock-holes.

Wethers Suet freſh and new, melted and done out with a Fether, is effectual to the ſame purpoſe.

But the filthyneſs of Pock-holes is much amended, if they be waſhed firſt with Yarrow-Water, or Cows-dung-water, diſtilled in *May*, and then anointed with Mans-Greaſe.

Foreſtus does much magnifie this following Oyntment.

Take *Oyls of ſweet Almonds and white Lillies, of each one ounce: Fat of a Capon three drams: Powder of Peony Roots, of Orice and Lytharge of Gold, of each ten grains: Sugar-Candy one ſcruple. Mingle al well in a warm Mortar, ſtrain them through a Cloth, and noint the Pock-holes therewith morning and night. And afterwards let them be well waſhed with Water diſtilled out of Calves-feet: and when that is not at hand, uſe the Water of Yarrow in ſtead thereof.*

Neither muſt I omit that which many Practitioners do teach, viz. That when the Pocks be ripe, they muſt be bored through with a golden or a ſilver Needle, leaſt the Quittor tarrying long in them, ſhould leave holes in the part. Which Practice, is notwithſtanding, now in a manner grown out of uſe, ſince Experience has taught, that the Pocks being bored are longer in healing and doth longer hold their Cruſts, becauſe of the Weakneſs of Natural Heat, cauſed in the Part by boring, whereby more deformed Scars are left behind. And therefore it is better to abſtain from this boring, and to commit the evacuation of the Quittor to Nature alone.

To conclude this Cure, I ſhall ſubjoyn how thoſe diſpoſitions of Itching and Exulceration which happen to perſons that have the ſmall Pocks, may be remedied.

And in the firſt place, When the ſmall Pocks come forth, or when they begin to ripen, ſomtimes an huge pain or Itching does afflict the Patients; eſpecially in the Palms of the Hands and Soales of the Feet, becauſe the thickneſs of the Skin in thoſe parts hinders the Eruption of the Pocks.

Which Symptom you ſhall help, if you cauſe thoſe parts to be held in hot Water, or Foment them a long time with an Emollient Decoction. But when there is great Itching in the Face, which compels the Patients to ſcratch, whence great deformity and foul Scars follow; uſe this following Remedy.

Take *leaves of Pellitory of the Wall one handful: Flowers of Chamomel and Melilote, of each half a pugil. Boil them in a pint of Scabious Water, To the ſtrained Liquor ad three ounces of Honey-ſuckle Water. With this Liquor hot, often let the Itching Pocks be moiſtened, by dipping a thin Rag or Cotton Wool therein, and ſo applying the Liquor gently to them.*

Now the Ulcers which ariſe from deep and malignant Pocks, are to be cured with *Unguentum album Rhaſis*, or with an Oyntment of Lead made after this manner.

Take *Calcined Lead two ounces: Litharge one ounce: Ceruß waſhed and Vinegar, of each half an ounce: Oyl of Roſes three ounces: Honey of Roſes one ounce: Three Yolks of Egs: Myrrh half an ounce: Wax as much as ſhall ſuffice. Make all into an Oyntment.*

FINIS.

Culpepers Large Anatomy fitted for Physick.

Culpepers { Five Hundred, Eighty Nine } Rare Cures.
{ *Observations*, or *Histories*, Of }

FOUR BOOKS

OF THAT

Learned, and Renowned Doctor, *Lazarus Riverius.*

CONTAINING

Five hundred and thirteen Obſervations, or Hiſtories, of Famous and Rare Cures; moſt of which were his own. The other were communicated to him by twenty four ſeveral Famous Phyſitians and Chyrurgions, whoſe names are printed to each of them.

Unto which is added,

A FIFT BOOK,

BEING

Select Medicinal Counſels

OF

John Fernelius, Chief Phyſitian to the King.

All Engliſhed

By *Nicholas Culpeper*, Phyſitian and Aſtrologer.

Theſe Hiſtories and Obſervations are often mentioned, and referred unto, in theſe Seventeen Famous Books of *Riverius*, called,

The Practice of Phyſick.

VIZ.

1. *Of the Diſeaſes of the Head.*
2. *Of the Diſeaſes of the Eyes.*
3. *Of the Diſeaſes of the Eares.*
4. *Of the Diſeaſes of the Noſtrils.*
5. *Of the Diſeaſes of the Tongue.*
6. *Of the Diſeaſes of the Teeth, Gums, &c.*
7. *Of the Diſeaſes of the Breaſt.*
8. *Of the Diſeaſes of the Heart.*
9. *Of the Diſeaſes of the Stomach.*
10. *Of the Diſeaſes of the Inteſtines, or Guts*
11. *Of the Diſeaſes of the Liver.*
12. *Of the Diſeaſes of the Spleen.*
13. *Of the Diſeaſes of the Meſentery, &c.*
14. *Of the Diſeaſes of the Reins, &c.*
15. *Of Womens Diſeaſes.*
16. *Of the Diſeaſes of the Joints, &c.*
17. *Of Feavers, Simple, Putrid, and Peſtilential.*

LONDON:

Printed by *Peter Cole*, Printer and Book-ſeller, at the Sign of the Printing-Preſs in Cornhil, near the Royal Exchange. 1658.

FOUR BOOKS

OF THAT

Learned, and Renowned Doctor, Jacques Ribelis.

CONTAINING

Five hundred and fifteen Observations, or Hiſtories, of Famous and Rare Cures; moſt of which were his own.

The other were communicated to him by twenty four Several Famous Phyſitians and Chyrurgions, whoſe names are prefixed to each of them.

Unto which is added,

A FIFTH BOOK,

Being a

Select Medicinal Counſels

OF

The Renowned, Chief Phyſitian to the King.

All Digeſted

By Nicholas Culpeper, Phyſitian and Aſtrologer.

The Hiſtories and Obſervations are often mentioned and referred unto, in thoſe Seventeen Famous Books of Ribelis, called,

The Practice of Phyſick.

VIZ.

1. Of the Diſeaſes of the Head.
2. Of the Diſeaſes of the Eyes.
3. Of the Diſeaſes of the Ears.
4. Of the Diſeaſes of the Noſe.
5. Of the Diſeaſes of the Tongue.
6. Of the Diſeaſes of the Teeth, Gums, &c.
7. Of the Diſeaſes of the Throat.
8. Of the Diſeaſes of the Breaſt.
9. Of the Diſeaſes of the Stomach.
10. Of the Diſeaſes of the Inteſtines, or Guts.
11. Of the Diſeaſes of the Liver.
12. Of the Diſeaſes of the Spleen.
13. Of the Diſeaſes of the Kidneys, &c.
14. Of the Diſeaſes of the Yard, &c.
15. Of Women's Diſeaſes.
16. Of the Diſeaſes of the Joints, &c.
17. Of Fevers, Simple, Putrid, and Peſtilential.

LONDON:

Printed by Peter Cole, Printer and Book-ſeller, at the Sign of the Printing-Preſs in Cornhill, near the Royal Exchange. 1653.

The Printer to the Reader.

READER,

THY cheerful Acceptance of my former Endeavors in this kind for the good of my Native Country, hath encouraged me, though with great Care, Labor, and Coſt, to preſent thee with the Learned, Judicious, and Worthily renowned Riverius his Works of Phyſick. He is an Author now living, and ſufficiently known: And his Works will ſpeak for themſelves, and praiſe him in the Gates.

And if thou ſhalt ſhew a friendly Countenance to this Worthy ſtranger, who now ſpeaks Engliſh, I ſhal be thereby encouraged by al other means to ſtudy to promote thy good by bringing thee more acquainted with this, and other excellent Authors.

And whereas ſome, either out of envy, or miſ-underſtanding, do condemn Works of this Nature, publiſhed in our Mother Tongue, alleaging chiefly, That ſuch Books encreaſe the number of Empericks; are a hinderance to learned and able Phyſitians; alſo occaſion ſome to hurt themſelves by raſhly practiſing on their own Bodies. I ſhal Anſwer to theſe Objections in order.

Firſt, as for Empericks: Theſe Books, and ſuch as theſe publiſhed in Engliſh, are ſo far from making more Empericks, that they will ſpoil thoſe that are, and make that we ſhal have fewer of them. For an Emperick being one that gives Phyſick (Hab Nab, as we uſe to ſay) relying only on Experience, and what he hath ſeen done before him, not being able to give any reaſon touching the Diſeaſe, its Cauſe, or Cure: Theſe Books wil teach ſuch perſons how to go upon good grounds, and to be able to give a ſolid Reaſon for what they do, and of Empericks, make them Rational Phyſitians, if they be men of good natural parts, though they be ignorant of all Tongues but their Mothers.

As for the hurt which is hereby pretended to be done to learned Phyſitians, it is a meer Imagination, and no learned Phyſitian that bethinks himſelf, wel, wil ſo judg. For the uſe of theſe Books reſpects chiefly the Poor of this Nation, together with Sea-farers, and Soldiers. But for the Rich that have Money to ſpare, and bide at home, no otherwiſe (in point of Practice) than for an honeſt Curioſity; and delightful Speculation. What rich man is there ſo mad, who reading a Chapter in theſe Books, and ſeeing what a world of Conſiderations and Cautions do belong to the knowledg and orderly cure of every Diſeaſe, but will be more fearful than ever he was before to commit himſelf to the Cure of any but a learned Phyſitian. Now it is not by the poor, but by the Rich, that the learned Phyſitian maintains himſelf; the poor are but

a trouble to him, only before ſuch Books as theſe were extant in the Engliſh Tongue, Conſcience (ſomtime) forced the learned Phyſitian to take care of the poor, becauſe the unlearned were wholly unable: Whereas now there may be found Induſtrious men that know no more Languages than their Native one, who may in a rational way contribute to the Neceſsities of the poor. Nay, theſe kind of Books are profitable to the learned Phyſitians; for many of the Gentry, eſpecially of the Ladies and Gentlewoman, viewing the ſtate of their own bodies in ſuch Books as theſe (as in Looking-Glaſſes) wil perceive certain Diſeaſes in themſelves, either now in being, or likely ere long to ſeize upon them, which otherwiſe they would never have ſo much as dream'd of; and thereupon crave the Advice and Aſsiſtance of the learned Phyſitian.

Alſo the Ladies and Gentlewomen being well read in ſuch Books as theſe, will better know how to demean themſelves towards their Husbands, Children, or other Relations and Friends in their reſpective Sickneſs in point of ordering them, and will be more apprehenſive of the Phyſitians Directions, and ſo better able to practice them; alſo more capable of his Reaſons, and Prognoſticks, and ſo more confident and cheerfully obedient. All which will very much advance the Cure, and conſequently the Honor and Gain of the learned Phyſitian: for as Hippocrates notes in his firſt Aphoriſm, It is not enough towards the Cure that the Phyſitian do what is fitting; but the by-ſtanders and friends of the ſick muſt play their part, or all will not be well.

And in the third place, whereas it is objected, That people reading theſe Books, wil practice upon themſelves, and hurt themſelves.

I Anſwer, If they do, they have none to blame but their own folly; for it is not the intent of the publiſhers of theſe Books, that every one that can read Engliſh, ſhould dare to take, of their own Heads, ſuch Medicines as are deſcribed in the ſaid Books. But our intent is, That where in the Country there is no learned Phyſitian at hand; at Sea, in the States and Merchants Ship, where the Chyrurgion is compelled to act both his own, and the Phyſitians part; In Armies and Leguers, &c. an ingenious and diligent Chyrurgion, Apothecary, or any other that hath from his youth been exerciſed in theſe kind of ſtudies, and converſant about the ſick, may attain ſuch a competent knowledg in the Cauſes and Methodical Cure of Diſeaſes, as they may with honor to themſelves, and profit to the ſick (by Gods bleſsing) ſupply the place of a more learned Phyſitian. For the uſe of ſuch perſons, theſe books are intended, and for diligent Midwives; and not that every fool ſhould turn Phyſitian, or that every Reader ſhould tamper with him or her ſelf.

Alſo divers Honorable Ladies and Gentlewomen, that out of a truly Chriſtian

ſtian and Charitable Diſpoſition have not diſdained, but counted it a great Honor to be helpful to the poor in the time of their ſickneſs, may by peruſal of theſe books, and the like, confirm and encreaſe their knowledg, and become honorable Inſtruments in the Hand of God, of much relief and comfort to many poor diſtreſſed Creatures in their reſpective Countries and places of Habitation.

I ſhal ſay no more at preſent, only refer thee to the next pages where thou maieſt read the Names of thoſe Books of Phyſick or Divinity that I have Printed.

From my Printing-houſe in *Leaden-Hall*, September, 2. 1657.

Thy hearty wel-wiſher,
PETER COLE.

The Names of Books printed by Peter Cole, *Printer and Book-ſeller of* London: *and are to be ſold at his Shop, at the ſign of the Printing-preſs in Cornhil, neer the Royal Exchange.*

Twelve new Books in one Volum of Nich. Culpeper, *All called the Idea of Practical Phyſick.*

1 The art to preſerve Health.
2 The preternatural diſorder of mans body, and their Signs.
3 Of Medicaments.
4 Of the art of Healing.
5 Of the general Cure of Diſeaſes.
6 Of External Diſeaſes.
7 Of Feavers.
8 Of Head Diſeaſes.
9 Of middle Belly Diſeaſes.
10 Of Lower belly Diſeaſes.
11 Of Venemous Diſeaſes.
12 Of Childrens Diſeaſes.

Twenty ſeven Books of Nich. Culpeper, *Gent. Student in Phyſick and Aſtrologie, formerly publiſhed.*

The firſt ſeventeen Books. Are al called the *Practice of Phyſick*, Wherein is plainly ſet forth, The *Nature, Cauſe, Differences*, and ſeveral ſorts of *Signs*; Together with the Cure of al Diſeaſes in the Body of Man. Being a Tranſlation of the Works of that Learned and Renowned Doctor, *Lazarus Riverius*, now living; Councellor and Phyſitian to the preſent King of *France*. Above fifteen thouſand of the ſaid Books in Latin have been ſold in a very few Yeers, having been eight times printed, though al the former Impreſſions wanted the Nature, Cauſes, Signs, and Differences of the Diſeaſes, and had only the Medicines for the cure for them; as plainly appears by the Authors Epiſtle.

18. A Sure Guide to Phyſick and Chyrurgery: That is to ſay, The Arts of Healing by Medicine, and Manual Operation. Being an Anatomical Deſcription of the whol body of Man, and its parts, with their Reſpective diſeaſes, demonſtrated from the Fabrick and uſe of the ſaid Parts. In Six Books of *Riolanus*, tranſlated, and adorned with an hundred eighty four Figures cut in Braſs.

19 *Veſlingus Anatomy of the Body of Man*, Wherein is exactly deſcribed, the ſeveral Parts of the Body of Man, illuſtrated with very many larger Braſs Plates than ever was in Engliſh before.

20 A Tranſlation of the *New diſpenſatory*, made by the Colledg of Phyſitians of *London*. Whereunto is added The *Key to* Galens *Method of Phyſick*,

21 The *Engliſh Phyſitian enlarged*. being an Aſtrologo-Phyſical Diſcourſe of the vulgar Herbs of this Nation; wherein is ſhewed how to cure a mans ſelf of moſt Diſeaſes incident to Mans Body, with ſuch things as grow in *England*, and for three pence charge. Alſo in the ſame Book is ſhewed, 1 The time of gathering al Herbs, both Vulgarly and Aſtrologically. 2 The way of drying, and keeping them and their Juyces. 3 The way of making and keeping al manner of uſeful Compounds, made of thoſe Herbs. The way of mixing the Medicines according to the Cauſe, and Mixture of the Diſeaſe, and the part of the Body afflicted.

22 A *Directory for Midwives*, or a *Guide for Women*. Newly enlarged by the Author in every ſheet, and illuſtrated with divers new Plates.

23 *Galens Art of Phyſick*, with a large Comment.

24 A New Method both of ſtudying and practiſing Phyſick.

25 A Treatiſe of the Rickets, being a Diſeaſe ſo common to Children wherein is ſhewed, 1 The Eſſence, 2 The Cauſes, 3 The Signs, 4 The Remedies of the Diſeaſe: Publiſhed in Latin by Dr. *Gliſſon*, Dr. *Bates* and Dr. *Regemorter*, tranſlated into Engliſh, And corrected by *N. Culpeper*.

26 Medicaments for the Poor, Or Phyſick for the Common People.

27 Health for the Rich and Poor, by Dyet without Phyſick.

Mr. Hookers *New Books in three Volums: One in Octavo, and two in Quarto.*

Theſe Eleven New Books of Mr. *Thomas Hooker*, made in *New-England* Are atteſted in an Epiſtle by Mr. *Thomas Goodwin*, and Mr. *Philip Nye*, To be written with the Authors Own hand: None being written by himſelf before. One Volum being a Comment upon Chriſt's laſt Prayer in the Seventeenth of *John*; wherein is opened, The *union* beleevers have with God and Chriſt, and the glorious Priviledges thereof. Beſides many other Goſpel Truths, there is alſo ſhewed.

1 *That the end why the Saints receive al glorious Grace, is, That they may be one, as the Father and Chriſt are one.*
2 *That God the Father loveth the Faithful, as he loveth Jeſus Chriſt.*
3 *That our Savior deſireth to have the Faithful in Heaven with himſelf.*
4 *That the happineſs of our being in Heaven, is to ſee Chriſts Glory.*
5 *That there is much wanting in the knowledg of Gods Love, in the moſt able Saints.*
6 *That the Lord Chriſt lends dayly direction, according to the dayly need of*

of his Servants.

7 *That it is the desire, and endeavor of our Savior, that the dearest of Gods Love, which was bestowed on himself, should be given to his faithful Servants.*

8 *That our Union, and Communion with God in Christ, is the top of our happiness in Heaven.*

The first eight Books: of the Application of Redemption, By the effectual Work of the Word, and Spirit of Christ, for the bringing home of lost Sinners to God. In which (besides many other seasonable, and Soul-searching Truths) there is also largely shewed.

1 *Christ hath purchased al spiritual good for* H I S.

2 *Christ puts al* H I S *into possession of al that good that he hath purchased.*

3 *The Soul must be fitted for Christ before it can receive him: And a powerful Ministry is the ordinary means to prepare the heart for Christ.*

4 *The work of God is free: And the day of Salvation, is while this Life last, and the Gospel continue.*

5 *God cals his Elect at any Age, but the most before old Age.*

6 *The Soul is naturally setled in a sinful security.*

7 *The heart of a Natural man is wholly unwilling to submit to the Word that would sever him from his sins.*

8 *God the Father by a holy kind of violence, plucks* His *out of their corruptions, and draws them to beleeve in Christ.*

The Ninth and Tenth Books of the Application of Redemption by the Effectual Work of the Word, and spirit of Christ, for the bringing home of lost sinners to God. Besides many other seasonable, and Soul-searching Truths, there is also largely shewed.

1 *The heart must be humble and contrite before the Lord wil dwel in it.*

2 *Stubborn, and bloody sinners may be made broken-hearted.*

3 *There must be true sight of sin, before the heart can be broken for it.*

4 *Application of special sins by the Ministry, is a means to bring men to sight of, and sorrow for them.*

5 *Meditation of sin, a special means to break the heart.*

6 *The same word is profitable to some, not to another.*

7 *The Lord sometimes makes the word prevaile most, when its most opposed.*

8 *Sins unrepented of, makes way for piercing Terrors.*

9 *The Truth terrible to a guilty conscience.*

10 *Gross and scandalous sinners, God usually exerciseth with heavy breakings of heart, before they be brought to Christ.*

11 *Sorrow for sin rightly set on, pierceth the heart of the sinner throughly.*

12 *They whose hearts are pierced by the Word, are carried with love and respect to the Ministers of it: And are busie to enquire, and ready to submit to the mind of God.*

13 *Sinners in distress of conscience, are ignorant what they should do.*

14 *A contrite sinner sees a necessity of coming out of his sinful condition.*

15 *There is a secret hope wherewith the Lord supports the hearts of contrite sinners.*

16 *They who are truly pierced for their sins, do prise and covet deliverance from their sins.*

17 *True contrition is accompanied with confession of sin, when God cals thereunto.*

18 *The Soul that is pierced for sin, is carried with a restless dislike against it*

Six Books more of Mr. *Hookers* in two Volums in Quarto, are printing.

Twenty one *several Books of Mr.* William Bridge, *Collected into two Volumns.* Viz.

1 *Scripture Light the most sure Light:* compared with, 1. Revelations & Visions. 2. Natural & Supernatual Dreams. 3 Impressions with, and without Word 4. Light and Law within. 5. Divine Providence. 6. Christian Experience. 7. Humane Reason. 8. Judicial Astrology. Delivered in Sermons, on 2 *Pet.* 1. 19.

2 *Christ in Travel:* Wherein, 1. The Travel of his soul. 2. The first and after effects of his Death, 3. His Assurance of Issue. 4. And his satisfaction therein. Are opened and cleered in Sermons, on *Isa.* 53 11.

3 *A Lifting up for the Cast-down,* in case of, 1. Great sin. 2. Weakness of Grace. 3. Miscarriage of Duties. 4. Want of Assurance, 5. Affliction. 6 Temptation. 7. Dissertion. 8. Unserviceableness. 9, Discouragements from the Condition it self. Delivered in thirteen Sermons, on *Psalm,* 42. 11.

His Four Sermons concerning,

4 Sin against the Holy Ghost.

5 Sins of Infirmitie.

6 The false Apostle tried and discovered

7 The good and means of Establishment

8 The great things Faith can do.

9 The great things Faith can suffer.

10 The Great Gospel Mystery of the Saints Comfort and Holiness, opened and applied from Christs Priestly Office.

11 Satans power to Tempt, and Christs Love to, and Care of his People under Temptation

12 Thankfulness required in every Condition.

13 Grace for Grace.

14 The Spiritual Actings of Faith through Natural Impossibilities.

15 Evangelical Repentance

16 The Spiritual Life, &c.

17 The Woman of Canaan.

18 The Saints Hiding-place, &c.

19 Christs Coming &c.

20 A Vindication of Gospel Ordinances

21 Grace and Love beyond Gifts

Twelve *Books of Mr.* Jeremiah Burroughs *lately published; also the Texts of Scripture upon which they are grounded.*

1 Gospel Reconciliation, Or Christs Trumpet of Peace to the World. Wherein is Opened Gods exceeding willingness to be Reconciled to Man; And Gods sending his Embassadors to that End From. 2 *Cor.* 5. 19, 20, 21.

2 The Rare Jewel of *Christian Contentment,* on *Phil.* 4. 11. Wherein is shewed, 1 What Contentment is. 2 It is an Holy art and Mystery. 3 The Excellencies of it. 4 The Evil of the contrary sin of Murmuring, and the Aggravations of it.

3 *Gospel-Worship,* on *Levit.* 10. 3. Wherein is shewed, 1 The right manner of the Worship of God in General; And particularly, In hearing the Word, Receiving the Lords supper, & prayer.

4 *Gospel-Conversation,* on *Phil.* 1 17 Wherein is shewed, 1 That the Conversations of Beleevers must be above what could be by the Light of Nature. 2 Beyond those that lived under the Law. 3 And turable to what Truths the Gospel holds forth. To which is added, *The Misery of those Men that have their Portion in this Life only,* on *Psal.* 17. 14.

5 A Treatise of *Earthly-mindedness:* Wherein is shewed, 1 What Earthly-mindedness is, 2. The great Evil thereof, on *Phil.* 3. part of the 19. verse. Also to the same Book is joyned, A Treatise of *Heavenly-mindedness, and walking with God,* on *Gen.* 5. 24. and on *Phil.* 3. 20.

6 An *Exposition* on the fourth, fifth, sixth, and seventh Chapters of the Prophesie of *Hosea.*

7 An *Exposition* on the eighth, ninth, and tenth Chapters of *Hosea.*

8 An *Exposition* on the eleventh, twelfth,

twelfth, and thirteenth Chapters of *Hoſea*, being now compleat.

9 The *Evil of Evils*, or the exceeding ſinfulneſs of ſin, on *Job* 16. 21.

10 Precious Faith, on 2 *Pet.* 1. 1.

11 Of Hope, on 1 *John* 3. 3.

12 Of Walking by Faith, on 2 *Cor.* 5. 7.

Mr. *Burroughs* his fifty nine Sermons on *Matth.* 11. 28, 29, 30. Are Printing

A Godly and Fruitful *Expoſition*, on the firſt Epiſtle of *Peter*. By Mr. *John Rogers*, Miniſter of the word of God at *Dedham* in *Eſſex*.

Mr *Rogers* on *Naaman* the Syrian, his Diſeaſe and Cure: Diſcovering the Leproſie of Sin and Self-love; with the Cure, viz. Self-denial and Faith.

Mr. *Rogers* his Treatiſe of Marriage.

The Wonders of the Loadſtone. By *Samuel Ward* of *Ipſwich*.

An *Expoſition* on the Goſpel of the Evangeliſt St. *Matthew*. By Mr. *VVard*.

The Diſcipline of the Church in *New-England*: By the Churches and Synod there.

The *London Diſpenſatory* in Folio, of a large Character in Latine.

The *London Diſpenſatory* in twelves, a ſmal Pocket Book in Latine.

Pious Mans Practice in Parliament time.

Barriffs Military Diſciplin.

The Immortality of Mans Soul.

The Anatomiſt Anatomized.

The Biſhop of *Canterbury's* Speech on the Scaffold.

The King's Speech on the Scaffold.

A Looking-Glaſs for the Anabaptiſts.

Woodwards Sacred Ballance.

Dr. *Owen* againſt Mr. *Barter*.

King *Charls* his Caſe, or an Appeal to al Rational men concerning his tryal.

Mr. *Brightmans* on the Revelation.

Clows Chyrurgery.

Marks of Salvation.

Chriſtians Engagement for the Goſpel, by *John Goodwin*.

Great Church Ordinance of Baptiſm

Mr. *Loves* Caſe, containing his Petitions, Narrative, and Speech.

A Congregational Church is a Catholick Viſible Church. By *Samuel Stone* in New-England.

A Treatiſe of Politick Powers, wherein ſeven Queſtions are anſwered, 1 Whereof Power is made, and for what ordained. 2 Whether Kings and Governors have an Abſolute Power over the People. 3 Whither Kings and Governors be ſubject to the Laws of God, or the Laws of their Country. 4 How far the People are to obey their Governors. 5 Whether al the People have be their Governors. 6 Whether it be Lawful to depoſe an evil Governor. 7 What Confidence is to be given to Princes.

The Compaſſionate Samaritan.

Dr. *Sibbs* on the Philippians.

Vox Pacifica, or a Perſwaſive to Peace.

Dr. *Preſtons* Saints ſubmiſſion, and Satans Overthrow.

A Relation of the Barbadoes.

A Relation of the Repentance and Converſion of the Indians in New-England: by Mr. *Eliot*, and Mr. *Mayhew*.

Six Sermons preached by Dr. *Hill*. Viz.

1 The Beauty and Sweatneſs of an Olive Branch of Peace, and Brotherly Accommodation budding.

2 Truth and Love happily married in the Church of Chriſt.

3 The Spring of ſtrengthening Grace in the Rock of Ages Chriſt Ieſus.

4 The ſtrength of the Saints to make Ieſus Chriſt their ſtrength.

5 The Beſt and Worſt of *Paul*.

6 Gods Eternal preparation for his Dying Saints.

A Commemoration of King *Charls* his Inauguration. In a Sermon, By *William Laud*, then Biſhop of *Canterbury*.

Abrahams Offer, Gods Offering: Being a Sermon by Mr. *Herle*, before the Lord Major of *London*.

Mr. *Spurſtows* Sermon, being a Pattern of Repentance.

Englands Deliverance from the Northern Presbitery, compared with its Deliverance from the Roman Papicy. In a Sermon on the 5 of *Nov.* 1651. before the Parliament. By *Peter Sterry*.

The Way of God with his People in theſe Nations. Opened in a Thankſgiving Sermon, preached on the 5 of *Novemb.* 1646. before the Right Honorable, the High Court of Parliament. By *Peter Sterry*.

Mr. *Sympſons* Sermon at *Weſtminſter*

Mr. *Feaks* Sermon before the Lord Major.

The Beſt and Worſt Magiſtrate. By *Obadiah Sedgwick*. A Sermon.

A Sacred Panegyrick. By *Stephen Marſhal*. A Sermon.

The Craft and Cruelty of the Churches Adverſaries. By *Matthew Newcomin*. A Sermon.

The Magiſtrates Support and Burden. By Mr. *John Cordel*. A Sermon.

Mr. *Owens* ſtedfaſtneſs of the Promiſes. A Sermon.

Mr. *Phillips* Treatiſe of Hell.

——— of Chriſts Genealogy.

The Cauſe of our Diviſions diſcovered, and the Cure propounded.

THE CONTENTS OF THE FOUR BOOKS.

BOOK I.

Obs.		Page
1	Of stoppage of the Urine	1
2	Suppression of the Courses	2
3	The Colick, proceeding from Choler	ibid.
4	Sciatica, or Hip-gout Pains	3
5	The Green-sickness with Cholick pains.	ib.
6	The Jaundies	4
7	A lasting Redness of one Eye.	ibid.
8	Veneral Pains	5
9	The Great Pock	ibid.
10	A Catarrh with other Symptomes	6
11	An Old Head-ach with with other Infirmities	ibid.
12	Colick pains	7
13	Colick pains.	ibid.
14	An Old Head-ach	ibid.
15	Vomiting in a Malignant Feaver	8
16	A Feaver with worms	ibid.
17	The Jaundice	ibid.
18	Of the Jaundice	9
19	Of a Pleurisie, and the Feaver Synochus with putrefaction	ibid.
20	Of a Tertian feaver, or Ague.	10
21	Of the Purple feaver	ibid.
22	Of a Tertian ague	11
23	Of Bleeding at Nose	ibid.
24	Of a Malignant feaver	12
25	Of an old Gonorrhœa	ibid.
26	Of a Tertian ague	ibid.
27	Of a Tertian ague	ibid.
28	Of Worms	13
29	Of a Melignant feaver	ibid.
30	Of Nephritick pains	ibid.
31	Of Arthritick pains	14
32	Of Womb-fits	ibid.
33	Of a Loosness	ibid.
34	Of obstruction of the Liver and Spleen.	ib.
35	Of a beginning Phthisis, or Consumption	15
36	Of an old Gonorrhœa	ibid.
37	A deadly Head-ach	ibid.
38	Of a Scirrhus of the womb	16
39	Of a Quartan ague	17
40	Of another quartan	ibid.
41	Inflamation of the Dugs	ibid.
42	Of a Malignant feaver	ibid.
43	A Malignant feaver, with swelling behind the Ears	18
44	Cholick pains of the Stomach	ibid.
45	Vomiting of blood	ibid.
46	The Whites	20
47	A continual and malignant feaver	21
48	Of an inflamation and impostum of the Kidneys, bleeding at the Nose, a Malignant Feaver, with grievous Symptomes.	22
49	Of the Rhumatick disease	26
50	A swelling of the Spleen	29
51	Of blood Coagulated in the Stomach.	ib.
52	Of Consumption, and weakness of sense in a part	30
53	Of prevention of Abortion	34
54	A Semitertian ague with Head-ach.	ib.
55	Of a Cough and Catarrh in an Infant.	35
56	A Pleurisie	ibid.
57	A Con-	

Obs.		Page
57	*A Continual feaver in a little Girle.*	ib.
58	*The Cholick pain.*	36
59	*Cholick pain*	ibid.
60	*Tissick, Inflamation of the Lungs, and Palpitation of the Heart*	ibid.
61	*Of Symptomes after Abortion*	38
62	*Of Scabbinesse*	ibid.
63	*Belly-ake*	39
64	*Of a liver flux and Dysentery*	ibid.
65	*Of Mother-fits*	ibid.
66	*A Dysentery*	40
67	*Cholick pains*	ibid.
68	*Hardnesse of the Liver with a Cachexy.*	ibid.
69	*A disease resembling the Mother*	41
70	*The Dropsie*	ibid.
71	*Of Smal Pocks and bloody flux*	ibid.
72	*Of a Malignant Pleuresie*	42
73	*Of a Bastard pleuresie*	ibid.
74	*A Palsie and Convulsion, being Hypochondriacal Symptoms*	43
75	*A pain in the side proceeding from worms*	44
76	*A Kings-Evil swelling.*	ibid.
77	*The Veneral pox*	45
78	*Of Veneral Pox*	46
79	*Of a pleurisie degenerating into an Empyema*	ibid.
80	*Child-bed purgations suppresst*	ibid.
81	*Suppression of Urine by reason of a bit of flesh growing in the Yard*	47
82	*Difficulty of breathing*	ibid.
83	*Spitting of blood*	48
84	*A Gangreen*	ibid.
85	*Nephritick pains*	49
86	*A Cholick pain*	ibid.
87	*Of an Ulcer in the Heart*	ibid.
88	*A Dropsie of the Breast*	50
89	*Of Suppression of Urin*	51
90	*Pain of the stomach*	52
91	*Of Worms*	ibid.
92	*An Impostum of the Abdomen*	53
93	*Hard Labor in Child-bed*	54
94	*An immoderate flux of courses, with suffocation of the Womb*	ibid.
95	*The Veneral Disease in a Child*	ibid.
96	*Immoderate flux of child-bed purgations.*	55
97	*A Cancer*	ibid.
98	*Of a flegmatick inflamation of the Lungs*	57
99	*A Consumption beginning*	ibid.
100	*Smal pocks*	ibid.

BOOK II.

Obs.		Page
101	*Cholick pain*	59
102	*Smal pox, and Loosnesse*	ibid.
103	*The After-birth retained*	60
104	*Of a watry Rupture in an Infant.*	ib.
105	*Worms*	61
106	*Pain of the Hemorrhoids*	ibid.
107	*Children dying in the Birth*	ibid.
108	*Of wandering pains about the Chest.*	63
109	*Jaundice in a woman with Child.*	ibid.
110	*Of a Squinsie*	64
111	*Hysterical and Hypochondriacal symptoms*	ibid.
112	*Cholick pain*	ibid.
113	*Pissing of blood*	65
114	*A Caruncle in the Yard*	67
115	*Nephritick pains*	68
116	*Worms*	69
117	*A stretching pain of the Belly*	ibid.
118	*A Malignant feaver*	ibid.
119	*The disease Cholera, proceeding from over violent purgation*	70
120	*A stubborn loosnesse*	ibid.
121	*Head-ach by being in the Sun*	71
122	*An hectick and a putrid feaver together*	ibid.
123	*Fatty substances voided by stool*	72
124	*A Squinsie*	ibid.
125	*Sciatica pain*	ibid.
126	*A Sleepy Disease, Cured with a Sleepy Remedy*	73
127	*Gripings in Children*	74
128	*A fluxion upon the Lungs in an Infant*	ibid.
129	*Suppression of Urine*	ibid.
130	*A Stubborn Gonorrhœa*	75
131	*Of an Histerical Epilepsie*	ibid.
132	*Immoderate flux of the Courses*	ibid.
133	*A Cholerick Cholick*	76
134	*A malignant feaver.*	ibid.
135	*Of a loosnesse*	77
136	*Prognostick of a Dysentery*	ibid.
137	*A Dysentery*	ibid.
138	*Cholick pain*	78
139	*Inflamation of the Testicles*	ibid.
140	*Of an Hepatick flux*	79
141	*Erysipelas*	ibid.
142	*A Tertian Ague with Vomiting and loosnesse in the fit.*	ibid.
143	*Grievous sore Mouths in Children.*	ibid.

THE CONTENTS.

Obſ.		Page
144	*Of a Diſentery*	80
145	*Of the Meazles*	ibid.
146	*A tertian Ague*	ibid.
147	*An Inveterate Diarhœa*	81
148	*A moſt ſtubborne vomiting*	ibid.
149	*A long looſneß with an ulcer of Inteſtinum Rectum*	82
150	*Arthritick pains*	ibd.
151	*Wandering pains*	ibid.
152	*Spitting of blood*	83
153	*A Cancerous Tumor in the Liver, with Sciatica pains*	ibid.
154	*Kings-Evil ſwellings*	84
155	*Inordinate flux of the Courſes with the whites*	ibid.
156	*Grievous and laſting head-ach*	ibid.
157	*A tertian ague*	ibid.
158	*Nephritick pains*	85
159	*A Looſneß*	ibid.
160	*Falling-ſickneß in a child*	ibid.
161	*A beginning Conſumption*	ibid.
162	*A malignant feaver*	86
163	*A pleuriſie*	ibid.
164	*A malignant feaver*	87
165	*The Dropſie*	ibid.
166	*A quartan ague*	88
167	*The Dropſie*	ibid.
168	*An ulcer of the Gums*	89
169	*Puffing up of the whol body of a little Boy*	ibid.
170	*A Veneral pain in one arm*	ibid.
171	*Of a Cholerick cholick*	60
172	*Sciatica pain*	ibid.
173	*A Malignant feaver*	ibid.
174	*Gonorrhœa*	ibid.
175	*Of Empiema*	91
176	*An ulcer with corruption of the bone*	ib.
177	*Difficulty of breathing with a very uneven pulſe*	92
178	*A Conſumption*	93
179	*A Pleuriſie*	ibid.
180	*A Hoarſneß*	ibid.
125	*Inveterate Veneral pox, with an hot and dry, and almoſt black-Cholerick temper.*	94
113	*Suppreſſion of Urin*	65
183	*Feavers of Children*	ibid.
184	*A Dyſentery*	96
185	*Of a dropſie*	ibid.
186	*A Gangreen cauſed by a veſicatory*	97
187	*Of a Malignant feaver*	ibid.
188	*A looſneſs in a Boy*	98
189	*Of a long looſneſs, and a ſtubborn Head-ach*	ibid.
190	*A Catarrhe falling upon the Lungs*	ib.
191	*An old Head-ach proceeding from the Veneral pocks ill-cured*	99
192	*A Pleuriſie*	100
193	*Of a Falling-ſickneſs*	ibid.
194	*A Dropſie*	ibid.
195	*Veneral pox in a little Boy*	101
196	*An Impoſtume by the Back-bone*	ibid.
197	*A Dropſie in a boy ſeven years old*	102
198	*A Baſtard Palſie*	ibid.
199	*Vomiting in a Malignant feaver*	106
200	*A falſe Conception*	ibid.

BOOK III.

201	*Inflamation of the left Teſticle*	110
202	*A Dyſentery*	111
203	*Of Worms*	ibid.
204	*A Dyſentery*	112
205	*A Purge in the Dog-daies*	ibid.
206	*Coſtiveneſs*	113
207	*A pain of the Hæmorrhoides*	ibid.
208	*An aſthma and Dropſie*	114
209	*A Dyſentery*	ibid.
210	*A double Tertian*	ibid.
211	*Another double tertian*	ibid.
212	*Spitting of blood*	ibid.
213	*Wind inſtead of quittor coming out of a tumor*	ibid.
214	*Stingings of Bees*	116
215	*A Catarrhe with Hoarſneſs*	ibid.
216	*A double tertian with a Dropſie*	117
217	*The dropſie in a little boy*	ibid.
218	*A Cancerous ulcer*	118
219	*A wound with a Bruiſe*	ibid.
220	*Of a Simple tertian*	ibid.
221	*Of the Tiſſick*	219
222	*A Cholick pain and Rhumatiſme*	ibid.
223	*A Dropſie*	ibid.
224	*Immoderate flux of blood in a woman with Child, with a dead Child*	221
225	*Of ſore Eyes*	222
226	*The Illiac Paſſion*	ibid.
227	*Unquenchable thirſt*	223
228	*A Catarrh flowing into the Lungs.*	ibid.
229	*Bruiſes.*	ibid.
230	*A ſlow feaver with pains of the Loins and Thighs*	224
231	*A Cough, Shortneſs of breath, and pains of the Shoulders and arms*	ibid.
232	*A Cronick ague, without any certain Courſe, with the Hypochondriacal diſeaſe*	ibid.
233	*Immoderate flux of Courſes, and a dropſie beginning*	225
234	*Toothach and a ſwelling on the upper jaw*	

Obſ.		Page
	Jaw	226
235	*Moſt Rebellious ſore mouths*	ibid.
236	*A Malignant feaver*	ibid.
237	*Head-ach of half the head*	227
238	*A Wound in the Arm hard to cure.*	ibid.
239	*Of a Pleuriſie*	ibid.
240	*Head-ach in a Semitertian ague*	ibid.
241	*A Univerſal Catarrhe on al the joyns*	228
242	*Of Hiccupping*	ibid.
243	*Aneuriſma*	ibid.
244	*Of a Catarrhe falling upon the Lungs*	229
245	*Of a ſpot in the Eye*	ibid.
246	*A Catarrhe with hoarſneſs*	ibid.
247	*Difficulty of breathing with a Cough and hoarſneſs*	230
248	*An old Cholick pain and looſneſs.*	ibid.
249	*A long tertian ague*	231
250	*A quartan ague*	ibid.
251	*A Quartan ague*	ibid.
252	*The Dropſie*	ibid.
253	*An Hectick feaver with fear of a Conſumption*	232
254	*A Quartan ague*	ibid.
255	*A Quartan ague*	ibid.
256	*A Quartan ague*	ibid.
257	*A Quartan ague*	233
258	*A Quartan ague*	ibid.
259	*A Quartan ague*	ibid.
260	*A Quartan ague*	ibid.
261	*A Quartan ague*	ibid.
262	*A Quartan ague*	234
263	*A Baſtard Pleuriſie*	ibid.
264	*A Quartan ague*	235
265	*A Quartan ague*	ibid.
266	*A Quartan ague*	ibid.
267	*A double Tertian*	ibid.
268	*A Quartan ague*	236
269	*A Catarrh with a Cough*	ibid.
270	*A Quartan ague*	ibid.
271	*Obſtruction of the Oeſophagus.*	ibid.
272	*A ſquinſie*	237
273	*Jaundice*	ibid.
274	*A cruel Catarrh with divers Complications of feavers*	ibid.
275	*A long ſwelling of the right Foot.*	238
276	*Meazles*	239
277	*Stone in the Kidney*	ibid.
278	*The Diſeaſe Cholera, in a Melignant Tertian Ague*	ibid.
279	*Suppreſſion of Child-bed Purgations*	240
280	*Night-ſweats*	ibid.
281	*The Whites*	ibid.
282	*Of a Rupture of the belly*	ibid.
283	*An Hyſterical Paſſion*	241
284	*A diſentery*	ibid.
285	*A Scirrhous tumor of the Sweet-bread, with the Hypochondriacal Diſeaſes.*	ibid.
286	*The Dropſie Tympanites*	244
287	*A Quartan ague*	245
288	*An old Vomit*	ibid.
288	*A Tertian ague*	246
289	*Of a tertian Feaver*	ibid.
290	*A Quartan ague*	247
291	*A Quartan ague*	ibid.
292	*A Quartan ague*	ibid.
293	*A Quartan ague*	248
294	*A Quartan ague*	ibid.
295	*A double tertian ague*	ibid.
296	*A Quartan ague*	ibid.
297	*A Quartan ague*	249
298	*A Quartan ague*	ibid.
299	*A Quartan ague*	ibid.
300	*A Quartan ague*	ibid.
	An Appendix, or Additional Diſcourſe touching my Ague-Frighter	251

BOOK IV.

Being Obſervations of ſeveral Famous Phyſitians.

301	*Want of appetite*	254
302	*Cholick pain*	ibid.
303	*A Cholick from the Kidneys affected*	255
304	*A Cholerick looſneſs coming upon agues*	ibid.
305	*Pain of the Hemorrhoids*	ibid.
306	*The Stinging of a Waſp*	256
307	*Puſhes*	ibid.
308	*Convulſion*	ibid.
309	*Red pimples in the face ſtriking in again*	ibid.
310	*The Mother fits*	257
311	*Pains after Child birth*	ibid.
312	*A Medicine for pains cauſed by a Veſicatory*	ibid.
313	*Swelling of the Thigh*	ibid.
314	*Chops in Womans Dugs*	258
315	*The Dropſie*	ibid.
316	*Bleeding*	ibid.
317	*Hiccupping*	ibid.

THE CONTENTS.

Obſ.		Page
318	A flux of blood out of the Ears	358
319	Liſtleſſneſs to carnal conjunction	259
320	Proud fleſh	ibid.
221	Pain of the Pleuriſie	ibid.
322	A prognoſtick touching Wounds	ibid.
323	Over violent working of a purge	260
324	Extream thirſt	ibid.
325	Smal pox	ibid.
326	A deadly prognoſtick	ibid.
327	Night-ſweats	261
328	Bleeding Cauſed by tooth-drawing.	ib.
329	The Pleuriſie	ibid.
330	Menſtrual Blood	ibid.
331	The Running Gout	ibid.
232	Pains of the Womb	262
333	Danger of an over hot Bath	ibid.
334	Pain of the Stomach	ibid.
335	Scabby Legs	ibid.
336	Inflamation of the Mouth Cauſed by Mercurial oyntments	ibid.
337	Pain of the Head	263
338	Bruiſes on the Head	ibid.
339	A tetter with Itch of the whol Body.	ib.
340	Piſſing of wormes	264
341	Fooliſhneſs	ibid.
342	Fierce Diſtillations with Sweat	ibid.
343	Spots in the Eyes	ibid.
344	Stones preternaturally great	ibid.
345	Twins in the Womb	265
346	Blood drawn out actually cold	ibid.
347	The Solvatella opened in a Quartan Ague	ibid.
348	Tetters or Ringworms	ibid.
349	An hard ſwelling of the Spleen	ibid.
350	Convulſion fits in Children	366
351	Swooning upon Blood-Letting	ibid.
352	Sciatica Paine	ibid.
353	Tetters or Ringworms	ibid.
354	To draw Matter out of an Impoſtume.	ib.
355	To aſſwage the pain of tetters	267
356	Summer feavers of Children	ibid.
357	Worms	ibid.
358	Symptomes of the Mother	ibid.
359	An horrible Vomiting	268
360	A Catarrh	ibid.
361	A feaver cauſed by being in the rain.	ib.
362	A prognoſtick of the ſmal pocks	ibid.
363	A prognoſtick from the Conſtitution of the Yard	269
364	A prognoſtick in a continual Feaver.	ib.
365	Rottenneſs of the teeth	ibid.
366	Scabbyneſs with Itching, in a Man of eighty years old	ibid.
367	A Dropſie of the Stomach	270
368	The Iliack Pain, or Miſerere mei.	272
369	The Efficacy of an iſſue	ibid.
370	A tertian ague	ibid.
371	Paine of the Colick	ibid.
372	Battle-bellyed Dropſie	273
373	Of Inflamation of the Teſticles with ſuppreſſion of Urine	ibid.
374	Urine ſtopt	ibid.
375	A Fiſtulous Ulcer	274
376	The after birth retained	ibid.
377	A Salt rheum, with inclination to a Conſumption of the Lungs	275
378	Inflamation of the Eyes	ibid.
379	A malignant feaver	276
380	The Gout	ibid.
381	A ſwelling of the tongue	277
382	A dumb perſon cured by Accident	ibid.
383	Depreſſion of the Skul	278
384	Conſumption of the lungs	ibid.
385	Pricking of a Nerve	ibid.
386	A Quartan ague	279
387	The falling ſickneſs	ibid.
388	A Monſtrous and unwonted Hiccop	280
389	An inflamation in the hinder part of the Brain, with ſymptomes therefrom ariſing	281
390	A lingering diſeaſe proceeding from the Lungs being blaſted, of which a Maid died, never perceiving her ſelf to aile any thing. February. 1643.	282
391	Stones continually voided by ſtoole.	283
392	Stones bred in al parts of the body.	ibid.
393	Stones bred in the ſpleen, vomited out	284
394	A deadly Frigidity of the Tongue	285
395	The falling ſickneſs joyned with a Dead palſie	286
396	Fits of the Mother	ibid.
397	Gouty and Whore Pockie Pains	ibid.
398	A ſwelling and pain in the Knee	287
399	A Dropſie	ibid.
400	Immoderate flux of the Courſes	ibid.
401	The Whites	288
402	Hard ſwelling on the back of the hand	ib.
403	A Beginning Dropſie	ibid.
404	Worms	289
405	Intollerable Head-ach	ibid.
406	A ſtubborne pain of the Head	290
407	A baſtard tertian	ibid.
408	Tooth-ach	ibid.
409	The Whores Pocks	291
410	Warts upon the hands	ibid
411	A bruiſed wound	ibid.
412	The peſtilence	ibid.
413	The Kings evil	292
414	The	

THE CONTENTS.

Obs.		Page
414	*The Dropsie*	292
415	*Fits of the Mother*	ibid.
416	*The bleeding of a Wound*	293
417	*The bleeding of a wounded Artery, cured by binding*	ibid.
418	*An intollerable Pain of the Os Sacrum*	294
419	*The Dropsie*	ibid.
420	*Another dropsie*	ibid
421	*Water in a Childs Head*	295
422	*The dropsie*	ibid.
423	*A certain wound of the head with contusion*	ibid.
424	*An impostume upon the breast-bone.*	ib.
425	*A Hollow winding Ulcer*	ibid.
426	*The sleeping disease in Childrin*	296
427	*Tertian Ague and worms*	ibid.
428	*A Leaden bullet shot into the heel*	ibid.
426	*The skul depressed by a wound*	297
430	*Ruptures*	ibid.
431	*The Tumor* Gangilon *upon the Face*	298
432	*A Tumor called Anchylops*	ibid.
433	*A Deadly Costiveneß*	ibid
434	*A fracture of the skul in the left temple*	ibid.
435	*A Canker*	299
436	*Another Cure of a Canker*	ibid.
437	*A Gangræne in a Womans Privy part*	ibid.
438	*Another Gangræne in the foot*	300
439	*Another Gangræne in the foot*	ibid.
440	*A Wenn*	ibid.
441	*The Leichers pox in a new born Child*	ibid.
442	*Kidnies turned into Quittor*	301
443	*A Spot in the tuncle Cornea*	ibid.
444	*Gutta Serena*	ibid.
445	*Children with crooked Legs*	ibid.
446	*Head-ach called Cephalea, and Hemicrania*	ibid.
447	*Madneß*	302
448	*Stoppage of Urine*	ibid
449	*Warts*	ibid.
450	*Corns on feet or toes*	ibid.
451	*Burnings*	ibid.
452	*The Pistilence*	303
453	*Another Cure of the plague*	ibid.
454	*Gout-pain*	ibid.
455	*Tooth-ach*	ibid.
456	*Whore-masters pox*	304
457	*Stoppage of Urine*	ibid.
458	*Of the internal Hemorrhoids*	ibid.
459	*Universal pains.*	305
460	*A Cancerous swelling of the gums.*	ibid.
461	*A fleshy Excrescence in the throat*	ibid.
462	*Running of the Reines*	ibid.
463	*A great piece of a Sword lies long conseal-ed in a wound, and at last is drawn out*	ibid.
464	*Kings-Evil-swellings upon the fingers*	ibid.
465	*Sight Impaired in an old Man*	ibid.
466	*Whores-Pox in a boy five yearer old.*	ib.
467	*A wound in the Breast*	ibid.
468	*An Impostuume of the Belly*	307
469	*Another Impostume in the belly*	ibid.
570	*A swelling of the Cods*	ibid.
471	*A stone under the tongue*	ibid.
472	*An horne growing in the face*	ibid.
473	*A suppurated Tumor Discust*	308
474	*A Flegmatick tumor*	ibid.
475	*A Wenn*	ibid.
476	*Of the Tumor* Ecchymosis	309
477	*A Carbuncle*	ibid.
478	*A fleshy Excrescence on the Right Leg*	310
479	*A Stone in a Mans Throat*	ibid.
480	*Wound of a Gum*	ibid.
481	*Kings-evil Swellings*	311
482	*Phrensie*	ibid.
483	*Slipping down of the womb*	312
484	*A Tumor caused by ill opening a Vein*	ib.
485	*Pain of the Colick*	ibid
486	*A pleurisie*	ibid.
487	*A Tooth plucht out, and fastened in the Gum again*	313
488	*The Whore-masters Pox*	ibid.
489	*A contused wound in the Eye*	314
490	*An ulcer with rottenneß in the breast bone*	ibid.
491	*Ribbs infected with rottenneß*	315
492	*A fracture of the temple-bone*	ibid.
493	*The Aspera Arteria wounded with gun-shot*	ibid.
494	*An empyema through a wound of the epigastrium*	316
495	*A Gangræne of the Perinæum, Fundament, and Cods*	ibid.
496	*A desperate Rupture cured by cutting.*	ibid.
497	*An impostume of the Loyns reaching unto the Kidneys*	317
498	*A rare kind of Convulsion*	ibid.
499	*An ulcer of the kidnies*	318
500	*A Crooked Back*	ibid.
501	*Inflamation of the Eyes with filth*	ibid.
502	*Falling-sickneß proceeding from the mother*	219

Obſ.		Page
503	A Tertian ague	219
504	A wound in the Cheſt hard to Cure.	ibi.
505	Cholick Pain	ibid.
506	A Dropſie	ibid.
507	An ther dropſie	320
508	Kings-Evil	ibid.
509	Tooth-ach	ibid.
510	The Knoty Gout	321
511	Pain of half the Head	ibid.
512	A Rupture	ibid.
513	A Dropſie with Bladders.	ibid.

The Contentes of *Fernelius* his Counſels.

Counſ.		Page
1	Touching the apoplexy, or falling of the hair of the head	323
2	Of nummedneſs of the joynts	324
3	Of a Cattarrh, with paine of one ſide of the Head, and their cures	325
4	For a noble matron vexed with the tooth-ach, tranſlated out of French	326
5	In a Catarrh and moiſtneſs of the Brain, with a bad diſpoſition of the bowels	ibid.
6	Of a diſtillation into divers parts, with a diſeaſed ſpleen, for a noble Virgin	328
7	Of the Falling-ſickneſs	ibid.
8	For a boy eight years old, long ſince taken with falling-ſickneſs, and loſs of memory and reaſon, in a manner	329
9	For the falling-ſickneſs	330
10	For dimneſs of the eyes, in the Wife of Mſr. de Riou	331
11	For Mſr. Laſtier, almoſt blind with an Obſtruction of his Optick Nerve, being ſixty years old	332
12	The Anſwer of Fernelius to the letters of Mſr. Du Perat, a gentleman of very great Note in the emperors Court, or of Beucherius his Phyſitian.	333
13	Containing the cure of the gout, and all Joynt-paines, for Mſr. Albertus Junior, Marques of Brandenburge	338
14	Concerning extream Purſineſs in a corpulent Man	341
15	Of the prevention and cure of the Gout for Mſr. de Valletot, the Kings Muſitian, tranſlated out of French	342
16	Of trembling of the members	343
17	Of Trembling and Heavineſs	344
18	Of pulſation and hiſſing noiſe al the body over, and of Corpulency.	345
19	Of a Conſumption of the Lungs, for a Citizen of Roan	346
20	The Hiſtory of the diſeaſe written by Mſr. Crab, the Kings Phyſitian, to the Phyſitians of Paris, for the Lady de le Aubeſpine, enclining to a Conſumption	347
21	Touching ſpitting of blood from the Lungs, with a cough. For Mſr. de Baumont fifty years old. Tranſlated from the French	349
22	For Mſr. Sigiſmund, troubled with extream ſhortneſs of breath, called Orthopnæa	350
23	Touching the Aſthma, or Tiſſick, for a Spaniard of Bridges	353
24	Of the Cough	354
25	Of the Palpitation of the Heart	355
26	Nummedneſs or Inſenſibility of the Stomach	356
27	Of a Windy pain in the Stomach	357
28	Touching pain of the Stomach, for Mſr. de Lauzun	ibid.
29	Concerning a Feaver, with grievous Symptoms for the Counteſs of Ales	359
30	Of a Diſtillation and the looſneſs of the Peritonæum, complicated with ſundry Diſeaſes; for a Senator of Burdeaux.	360
31	Touching a Cachexia, or ill habit of body beginning	361
32	Touching a Cachexy, and beginning dropſie, for an Ambian Gentlewoman	362
33	Concerning the dropſie, for an Ambian Gentleman	363
34	For the Chancellor of the Emperor Charles the fift, ſick of a dropſie	ibid.
35	The cure of a Cachexy, or ill habit of the Body	365
36	The cure of a long and often returning feaver for one of the Emperours Court	366
37	Of a painful Ague	367
38	Of a lingring feaver, and divers other diſeaſes. Out of the French	368
39	Of a Quartan ague, for Queen Leonora	369
40	For a Quartan ague intangled with a diſtillation	370
41	For a Quartan ague complicated with a looſneſs	371
42	For a ſwelling of the Spleen	372
43	Of Hypochondriacal Melancholly, for Mſr. de Maligny	ibid.

THE CONTENTS.

Couns.		Page
44	Touching Hypochondriacal Melancholy	375
45	Of a distillation with Melancholy	376
46	Of letting blood in case of Itch	377
47	Containing the Cure of a Cachexia, or Ill-habit of the whol body, for Mſr. Malvenda, Chaplain to the Emperour, Charls the fift	379
48	Touching a Cachexia in one of Burgundy	381
49	For the Cholick and pain in the Back-bone, in behalf of a German Nob'e-man	382
50	To Facilitate Conception, for the wife of the Provoſt of Marienburge. Out of the French	384
51	For a Woman troubled with fits of the Mother	385
52	For a Woman when with Child, an in Child bed, being ſick in her Womb	386
53	Touching a Legitimate Birth	387
54	In the Caſe of Hemorrhoids	378
55	Concerning an Exulceration of the Kidneys, and Urenary Paſſage, with a fleſhy Knob growing therein	389
56	Concerning Mattery urin coming from the Kidneys	390
57	For Pain in the Kidney. Out of the French	ibid.
58	For a Duke of France troubled with the gravil in his Kidneys	391
59	For the Strangury	392
60	For an Ulcer of the Sphincter of the Bladder. Out of the French	393
61	For making of flegmatick Urin	394
62	For unvoluntary letting go of the Urin, Hypochondriacal Melancholy and inflamation of the Leg	395
63	For the Gonorrhœa, and the Gout.	397
64	For a Rupture of the Guts. Out of the French	ibid.
65	For Pains of the Hip, and other Joynts	398
66	For a Scirrhous Tumor	399
67	For the Engliſh Plague, ſweating-ſickneſs; the Counſel of Fernelius, Hoiler us, and Sylvius, for the Engliſh Embaſſador	400
68	Of the Elephantiaſis, or diſeaſe ſo called	402
69	Of the Elephantiaſis beginning	ibid.
70	A Letter from a certain perſon, that with a thin Diet, and a decoction of Guajacum, did cure a Diſeaſe	403
	The Counſel of Johannes Capellanus, Senior, Renowned Phyſitian to the Queen Mother of the moſt Chriſtian King, Francis the Firſt of that Name, King of France.	404
	Counſel for a Gentlemans Son troubled with divers Infirmities	406

Six Counſels of *Simon Petreus*,

1	To Cauſe eaſie diliverance of a Woman in Labour	408
2	Of Mother-fits, to a Phyſitian called Gravellanus	409
3	Concerning Hypochondriacal Melancholy, to a certain Phyſitian	ibid.
4	Concerning a flux of Rhume into the lungs	410
5	Touching an Impoſtume in the Kidneys	411
6	Touching ſwellings which had the appearance of Cancerous Wenns	412
	The Counſel of a certain moſt learned Phyſitian, touching divers infirmities of the Kidneys	414

THE FIRST CENTURY OF THE Medicinal Obſervations, *And Rare Cures, of* LAZARUS RIVERIUS,

Councellor and *Phyſitian* to the King, and Profeſſor of Phyſick in the Univerſity of *Montpelier*.

The 1 Obſervation, or Hiſtory, of Famous and Rare Cures, &c.

Of ſtoppage of the Urine.

MR *Anthony Meſtre*, a Gentleman ſixty yeers Old, of a Sanguine Conſtitution, and a ſtrong habit of Body, having in the Summer travelled by long Journeys, betwixt *Paris* and *Montpelier*, he drank down abundance of Drink, to quench his thirſt, cauſed by the hot weather. And three or four daies after he came to *Montpelier*, he fell into a total ſtoppage of his Urine; for the Cure whereof he ſent for an ancient Phyſitian, who three daies together combated this ſtubborn Diſeaſe with ſundry Remedies, as Clyſters, Fomentations, Baths to ſit in, Liniments and Diureticks. Finally, On the third day, when nothing elſe would do, a Catheter waſt thruſt up into his Bladder, and no Urine came away, whereupon the Phyſitian being terrified, and deſpairing of the Patients Life, deſired to have another called to conſult with. I being ſent for at the Evening of the third day from the firſt ſtoppage of his Urine, and hearing what had been done before: I enquire if the ſick man felt any pain in his Loyns or Share, or had formerly had any fits of the ſtone in the Kidneys. He told me he had no pain in the foreſaid parts, nor had he been ever troubled with Nephritick pains, nor had ever avoided any ſtones or Gravel. All which diligently conſidering, I judged that this ſuppreſſion of Urine depended upon no fault of the Kidneys or Bladder; but rather upon the ſtoppage of the Emulgent Veins, cauſed by a multitude of Humors; for *Galen* in the firſt Book of his Method, Chap. 2. makes a two-fold cauſe of Obſtruction, *viz.* Multitude, and thickneſs of Humors. In reſpect of Multitude, the Veſſels too much filled and diſtended, cannot contract themſelves, ſo as to cauſe Expulſion. Which is Manifeſtly ſeen in the Bladder, which being above meaſure diſtended, by long retention of the Urine, can very hardly void the ſame, becauſe it cannot contract it ſelf. Being ſtedfaſt in this Opinion, I propounded to have a Vein opened, and

ſtore of blood taken from him; which when the former Phyſitian conſented unto, there was a pound of blood taken away. Now ſcarce an hour was paſt, after the blood-letting, when the patint felt the urin flowing down from his kidnies, by the uriters, into his bladder, and ſaid he knew he ſhould quickly make water; & not long after he caled for the chamberpot, which being filled at one piſſing bout, other veſſels were brought, ſo that within an hours ſpace he voided many pints of Urine. And ſo he was perfectly freed; nor would he take the purge preſcribed for him againſt the next day.

For the knowledg and cure of the diſeaſes of the kidnies, reins, & bladder, ſee more in the fourteenth book of my tranſlation of the Practice of Phyſick: and *Riolanus* Anatomy, both of the laſt edition in ingliſh.

The 2 Obſervation, or Hiſtory, of Famous & Rare Cures, &c.

Suppreſſion of the Courſes.

AN Outlandiſh woman of a ſanguine Complection, was troubled with many infirmities, ariſing Cheifly from Suppreſſion of her Courſes; for the Cure whereof, when ſuch Phyſitians as were at hand, had applied many remedies, and the infirmeties proved unconquerable; Councel was asked of the phyſitians of *Montpelier*, by letter. And in the Relation, her ordinary Phyſitians had cheifly obſerved this one thing, which made them exceedingly wonder, and of the reaſon whereof they deſired to be informed; viz. That as often as a veine was opened in her anckle her courſes ſtopt; but when ſhe was let blood in the arme, they flowed more plentifully: which accident ſeemed to contradict the uſual doctrine of phyſitians, which ſaies that the opening of the lower Veins does povoke the flux of the Courſes; but bleeding from the upper veins does ſtop the ſame. To which Doubt, the phyſitians of *Montpelier* made anſwer; that this accident did very wel agree with reaſon, and the doctrine of *Galen*: For ſeeing *that* woman was plethorick, and her courſes ſtopt by reaſon of overgreat plenty of blood, which did ſo diſtend the veſſels of the womb, that they could not ſufficiently be compreſſed; blood being drawn to thoſe veſſels, by the opening of the lower veins, the obſtruction was encreeſed. But when as, blood being drawn from the upper veins, the courſe of the blood was drawn back from the veins of the womb, ſo that their fulneſs and diſtention was leſſened, then they did more eaſily contract themſelves, to performe that natural and ordinary expulſion, which is wont to be performed by the womb, which reaſon was backed by the fore-cited Authority of *Galen*, out of the 10. Book of his method, chap. 2. Where he teaches us, that obſtruction is cauſed, not only by the thickneſs, but plenty of humors alſo. The Phyſitians therefore that were with her were adviſed, that they ſhould abate her ſuperfluity of blood by taking a good quantity from her arme: and that afterward they ſhould draw the blood downwards, by opening the veines of her feet, eſpecially about the time, when ſhe was formerly wont to have her courſes. To which were added other remedies, that provoke the Courſes ſtopt. For womans diſeaſes, ſee *Riolanus*, and the 15. Book of the Practice of Phyſick, and my directory for Midwives.

The 3 Obſervation, or Hiſtory, of Famous & Rare Cures, &c.

The Colick, proceeding from Choler.

THE wife of *Iohn Daumont*, a ſtone-cutter of *Montpelier*, being thirty years of age, was vexed with a chollerick cholick for eight months together, during which time, ſhe uſed divers remedies preſcribed by two ſeveral phyſitians, who had her in hand one after another, but al to no purpoſe. Finally, deſiring my advice, ſhee was cured within five days, with theſe three remedies following.

Take of the ordinary Clyſter-decoction one Pint, Caſſia new drawn, one ounce. Hiera picra half an ounce, Honey of violets an ounce and half, freſh butter two ounces, ſalt half a dram, Mix th em and make of al a clyſter. Let it be given at a ſeaſonable hour.

Take

Take green polypody and Carthamus ſeeds, of each one ounce and halfe; topps of Epithimum, and of dryed time, of each a pugil; annis ſeed, fennel ſeed, Carraway ſeed, and carduus benedictus, of each two drams; Senna cleanſed one ounce and halfe; gummy turbith halfe an ounce. Cinnamon one ounce and half, chryſtal of tartar two ounces, ſalgem half an ounce. Beat al and fil therewith the Belly of an old drawn Cock; and then boyl him and them in three parts of water and one of white wine, til the fleſh of the Cock be parted from his bones. Of this broth let her take ſix ounces or ſeven every day in the morning, continuing the ſame ſeven or eight daies if need require.

Take Conſerve of wormwood and maiden haire, of each half an ounce; Citron peeles preſerved ſix drams, one preſerved myrobalan, confection of alkermes three drames, aperitive Crocus Martis, two drams; pouder of the Electuary of Diarrhodon Abbatis, one dram and an half, ſpikenard, one dram, with Syrupe of preſerved Citron peeles, make al into an Electuary, of which let her take every day, one dram and half, two hours before ſupper, drinking after it a little wine tempered with a good quantity of Cichory water.

Take Aron Roots prepared according to the preſcription of the *Diſpenſatory* of *Quercetanus*, half a dram; the Root of Acorus and Pimpinel, of each two drams; Cinnamon, two ſcruples, Salt of Wormwood, half a dram; Sugar of Roſes to the weight of al the reſt. Make al into a pouder, of which let her take two ounces every day, three hours after Supper, drinking after it a little wine tempered with Cichory water as aforeſaid.

When ſhe had uſed theſe Remedies four daies together and had been afflicted after the ſame manner with pains of the Cholick, which was wont to returne every day once or twice, with moſt bitter torments, perſevering two or three hours together; on the fift day about noone, when the purging broath ſhould have wrought its operation, ſhe was taken with ſo great a Torment, as it ſeemed inſufferable, and ſhe ſaid ſhe had never felt the like; which nevertheleſs went wholly away within the ſpace of an hour, and never returned any more. And ſo the Patient was wholly freed from that cruel Diſeaſe. 'Tis credible that the ſharp and Cholerick matter deeply faſtened in the Coats of the Guts, or of the Peritoneum, and thickned by long abiding there, was attenuated by the Medicaments, and the waies opened by which the matter was voided forth.

For the Cholick, and other Diſeaſes of the Guts. See the tenth Book of the Practice of Phyſick. And *Riolanus*, both of the laſt Edition Engliſhed by me.

The 4 Obſervation, or Hiſtory, of Famous and Rare Cures, &c.

Sciatica, or Hip-gout Pains:

Iohn Ranquier, A Porter of *Monpelier*, in extream cold weather, had been in the water with his Legs, many hours together, whereupon he was taken with a mighty pain in his Huckle-bone, which reached unto his Thigh and Leg; ſo that he could not go at al.

After a Clyſter he was let blood in the Arme of the ſame ſide. The following day he was purged with a very ſtrong purgation: For three daies together following, he took every morning, eight drops of Spirit of Treacle, with Carduus water, and did ſweat plentifully, and ſo al pain was taken away. The manner how to make the Sudorifick ſpirit of Treacle, ſhal be taught in the following Centuries.

The 5 Obſervation, or Hiſtory, of Famous and Rare Cures, &c.

The Green-ſickneſs with Cholick pains:

THe Maid ſervant of Mr. *Peter Deſlours*, an Advocate of *Montpelier*, was troubled with exceeding great obſtructions of her Liver and Spleen, ſo that ſhe was not able, in that regard, to go up a pair of ſtaires, being oppreſſed with extream wearyneſs and ſhortneſs of breath. Moreover ſhe had extream thirſt, her Courſes were ſtopt, her Hypochondrica ſtretcht, and

her whol body was of an ugly colour. But above al ſhe was horribly tormented with Cholick pains, which came by fits, twice or thrice in a day. For the Curing of which Diſeaſes, theſe follow Remedies were uſed.

In the firſt place, becauſe her condition could not bear long taking of Phyſick, I order her only one Flegm purging potion, premiſing blood-letting the day before; and I Cauſed her to take the ſame potion again, three daies after.

Afterwards ſhe took every day in the Morning, half an ounce of Spirit of Tartar, with a Decoction of common Wormwood. After the ſecond taking whereof, the Cholick pains wholly vaniſhed: and continuing this Medicament, ten daies together, ſhe was reſtored to perfect Health.

For Drink ſhe uſed white wine wherein ſteel had been infuſed, which I ordered her to continue for ſome time.

For the Cholick, and Green-ſickneſs. See the tenth, and fourteenth Book of the Practice of Phyſick, and *Riolanus*, both of the laſt Edition, Engliſhed by me.

The 6 Obſervation, or Hiſtory, of Famous and Rare Cures, &c.

The Jaundies.

THe Son of Dr. *Trouſſelleir*, Dr. of the Civil and Canon Laws, dwelling in the Town of *Aymargues*, being fourteen years old, was troubled with a moſt filthy Jaundize, which died his whol Skin as yellow as gold. For whom my ſelf and Dr. *Pachequus*, in conſultation preſcribed theſe following Remedies.

Take Senna clenſed, half an ounce; Anis-ſeed, one dram; tops of Roman wormwood, and leaves of Agrimony, of each half an handful; Lycoris Scraped and ſliced, two drams; broom-flowers and Cichory-flowers, of each half a Pugil. Boyle al to three ounces. In the ſtrained liquor, diſſolve four ſcruples of Rhubarb, infuſed in wormwood water with a little Cinnamon and ſtrained forth, of the Electuary *de Succo* Roſarum [ſee Engliſh *Diſpenſatory*,] two drams; Syrup of Roſes ſolutive, one ounce; make al into a potion, let her take it in the morning, and order her ſelf accordingly.

Take madder Roots half an ounce. Celondine Leaves, one handful. Centory tops, one pugil. Cinnamon half a dram. Saffron half a ſcruple. Infuſe them al night with eight ounces of white wine. To the ſtrained liquor add half an ounce of white Sugar, let her take it in the mornig five daies together, after the potion aforeſaid. And after the uſe of this Remedy, let her take again the purging potion before preſcribed. With theſe Remedies alone ſhe was perfectly Cured.

Of the Jaundice ſee more in the Eleventh Book of the Practice of Phyſick of the laſt Edition Engliſhed by me.

The 7 Obſervation, or Hiſtory, of Famous & Rare Cures, &c.

A laſting Redneſs of one Eye.

A Pretty fair young Damſel, cald *Antoneta de Loiiys*, Eighteen years of Age, for three or four years together had a flux of Rheume into her left Eye, wherewith the whol Eye, Eye-Lids and parts round about, were affected with redneſs and ſwelling. By means whereof her fair Face was deformed. The Diſeaſe was moſt violent in Autumne, and continued al the winter, nor could it be aſſwaged either by blood-letting or purgation with potions and Apozemes, or Veſicatories, and very many other Remedies, which were frequently applied, but al in vaine.

Finally, at the beginning of Autumne, the Diſeaſe returning with like violence as formerly, it was thought fit to uſe more potent Remedies, for the rooting up of this ſtubborn defluxion. And therefore inſtead of the apozeme which ſhe had formerly uſed, I preſcribe opening and Diaphortick,

Diaphortick Pils, of the Salts of Tamarisk and Wormwood, and the Magistery of Tartar, with my Diaphoretick pouder; whereof she took two in the morning three hours before dinner, and as many before Supper, four daies together. On the fift day she took half a dram of universally purging Pils, by which she was excellently Purged, whereupon the redness and Inflamation, began very much to abate. She took again the opening Pils four daies together, and on the fift she was excellently Purged with the universal Pils aforesaid; and a few daies after, the redness of her Eye perfectly vanished, and returned no more. The Basis of the universal Pils aforesaid, you shal find in my Practice of Physick, in the Chapter of the Falling-sickness.

In this Cure, I did not let the Patient Blood though she were of a sanguine Complexion, because she had bled a few daies before, both in her Arme and Ankle Veins. But the Cure being finished I prescribed her a Decoction to move her Courses, because she had them not kindly. Which Decoction was as follows.

Take *Marsh-Mallow and Valerian Roots, of each one ounce; Fenel Roots, Asparagus Roots, and Smallage, of each six drams; Leaves of Betony, Pimpinel, Ceterach, Mugwort, Savin, of each one handful. Boyl al in a Decoction of red Vetches to a fourth part. In the strained Liquor, dissolve three ounces of white Sugar. Let al be made into a Cleare Apozeme, Aromatized with two drams of Cinnamon, and one scruple of Saffron, for four morning doses, to be taken four daies before the coming of her Courses.*

For the Diseases of the Eyes read that matchless piece, the Second Book of the Practice of Physick. And *Riolanus* Anatomy both of the last Edition Englished by me.

The 8 Observation, or History, of Famous and Rare Cures, &c.

Veneral Pains.

A Renowned young man Mr. *N.* being twenty five years Old, Skilful in the Laws and Affaires military, was vexed with veneral pains, which tormented him continually night and day, for four years together, especially in his left Leg, from one end thereof to another. For an whol year he wore *Vigos* Plaster made with Mercury on his said Leg, by the advice of of Chirurgious, on whom he solely depended for Cure. At last by the advice of many Physitians, my self being one, he used a sweating Diet drink twenty daies together, and had many Topick Medicaments applied to his Leg, viz. Fomentations, fumes, Oyntments and and Plaisters: al which did him no good. He never leaves solliciting me alone, that I would do yet somwhat more, to free him from this inveterate Malady. To Satisfie him, therefore, I give him for a month together my antiveneral Medicament made up into pils, of which he took two in the morning, and as many in the afternone, three hours before Dinner and Supper. Every fift day he was purged with the Catholick Pils, and so by little and little the pain went away.

For Venereal pains read my Translation of *Sennertus*, of the French Pocks.

The 9 Observation, or History, of Famous and Rare Cures, &c.

The Great Pocks.

THe famous Man Mr. *N.* being fifty years Old, had been troubled with the whore masters Pox one whol year together, which would not give way to ordinary Remedies: but with the two Remedies aforesaid, viz. The Antivenereal Antidote and the Catholick Pils used, twenty daies together, he was wel recovered.

For the Great Pocks, see my Translation of *Sennertus*, on the French Pocks.

The 10 Obſervation, or Hiſtory, of Famous and Rare Cures, &c.

A Catarrh with other Symptomes.

THe noble Gentleman Mr. *Guilielmus Hebrardus*, Lord of *Miravaulx*, thirty years of Age, of a Flegmaticck and Melancholick Conſtitution, was troubled with a ſtubborn Infirmity attended with many Symptomes; ſuch an extream heavineſs of his whol Body, that he could not ſometimes move himſelf, with ſo extream a weakeneſs, that he was ready to faint away. Alſo in the afternoones, and in the evenings a thin and ſharp fluxion fel down upon his Lunges, which cauſed a verry troubleſome dry cough, which made him exceedingly feare a Conſumption, which rendred him exceeding penſive, ſeeing two of his ſiſters had died of conſumptions, and himſelf had bin troubled with ſpitting of blood. And the worſt of al was, that he would not adviſe with phyſitians, becauſe he loathed al kind of medicaments, ſo as that he vomited them up again. But his Infirmity growing every day worſe and worſe, the worthy gentlewoman his wife ſent for me. Having heard the ſtory of his diſeaſe, I propounded many Remedies ordinarily uſed, which he being not contented with, I promiſe him very wel taſted medicaments, and ſuch as ſhould reſtore him to his former health. He being willing upon this condition to follow my Advice, in the firſt place I preſcribe theſe following broaths.

Take roots of bugloſs and Aſparagus, of each one ounce; Leaves of Agrimony, Burnet, ſcabious and maiden hair, of each one handful; Creame of tartar one drame. Boyl al with a quarter of an old Cock, and make broth, which let him uſe ſix dayes together. With which he was purged downwards twice or thrice a day, and ſaid he found himſelf ſomwhat better. Afterwards, I preſcribe him this following pouder.

Take Salt of tamariske, Magiſtry of tartar, and milk of ſulphur, of each one dram. Mix them into a pouder; of which let him take half a dram every morning, with ſome of the foreſaid broath. Having uſed this Remedy ſix daies together, on the ſeventh he was purged, with this following pouder.

Take Senna and Cream of tartar, of each one ſcruple; diagridium eight grains; Cinnamon four grains: of my ſpecifick cephalik pouder five graines; with this medicament he voided an incredible quantity of flegmatick humors, not only by ſtoole, but alſo by vomic, without any trouble, ſo that the Humors came as it were of themſelves like whites of eggs. Alſo they came out of his brain into his mouth, in ſo great quantity, that it was as much as the patient could do by hauking to bring them al out. Alſo he rendred his Urine, much more plentifully than formerly. The ſame day, he was ſo eaſed and cleared, that he profeſt he was cured. But becauſe his whole Body was filled with abundance of humors, I ordered him to take the foreſaid pouder again for ſix dayes together, and to purge again upon the ſeventh day, which advice he diligently followed, and the ſucceſs was as before: only he voided nothing neer ſo much excrementitious matter as formerly, becauſe it was by the former purgation abated: after his being the ſecond time purged, he went into a bath made of Barley, Almonds, and cool ſeeds, being luke warm, for two dayes together morning and evening, to moyſten his over heated and dryed bowels. After the bath, he uſed the foreſaid pouder, three dayes together; and finally, was again as formerly and perfectly cured.

For the knowledg and Cure of Catarrhs, ſee the firſt book of the practice of phyſick, and *Rioланus* Anatomy of the laſt edition, both engliſhed by me.

The 11 Obſervation, or Hiſtory, of Famous & Rare Cures, &c.

An Old Headach with other Infirmities.

A Choice Virgin, *Margaret De Varanda*, Daughter to the learned man Dr. *David De Varanda*, a moſt Renowned Lawyer, and Profeſſor of the Civel and Canon-Laws, in the Univerſity *of Monpelier*, deceſed; being twenty yeares of age, was troubled with a moſt

ſharp

ſharp Headach, with a ſtretching on her right ſide under the ſhort ribs, belly ach, and other ſymtomes. She uſed every year many remedies, as potions, apozemes, pils, bathes Veſiatories, and many other things; which did her little good, alſo ſhe was not much bettered by the uſe of ſteel, though al theſe ſymptomes depended upon obſtructions, and bad humors quartering in her hipocondria to her Head. Finally, at the beginning of the ſpring, in the yeare 1625. I preſcribe here theſe following Remedies.

Take Conſerve of wormwood and Maiden-hair, of each one ounce. Conſerve of Elecampane rootes half an ounce, ſalt of tamariske, Magiſtry of tartar, and my ſpecifick aperitive pouder, of each half a dram: with ſyrup of Maiden hair, make an Opiate; of which ſhee took two drames every morning, two hours before ſhee did eate.

Every fifth day ſhe was purged with catholick pils [ſuch as our *Extractum Rudii*, or *Extractum Catholicum* in the *London Diſpenſatory*, but not ſo ſtrong] to the Quantity of two ſcruples, and within fifteen daies ſhe was perfectly cured.

For diſeaſes of the head and headach, read the firſt Book of the practice of phyſick, and *Riolanus* Anatomy, and *Johnſtons* Idea of the laſt edition, al engliſhed by me.

The 12 Obſervation, or Hiſtory, of Famous & Rare Cures, &c.

Colick Pains

Stephen de Varanda, Brother of the damſel aforeſaid, eighten years old, was tormented ſome dayes together with moſt greivious collick pains. Coming to ſee him, to abate the moſt violent paine which he was ſcarce able to endure, I preſantly preſcribe him ſix grains *of laudanum opiate*, which in the ſpace of two hours took away al his pain; he ſupt liberally, and ſlept al night, having paſſed many nights before, without any reſt.

The day following he roſe in the morning and went about his ordinary buſineſs, nor would he take the purge which I had preſcribed to remove the cauſe; howbeit his pain returned no more.

The 13 Obſervation, or Hiſtory, of Famous & Rare Cures, &c.

Colick Pains.

THe Renowned Mr. *Stephen Deumoys*, the Kings Councellor in his Court of *Montpelier*, being tormented wich colick paines, and having uſed other remedies in vaine, took half a dram of Pilulæ Catholicæ, wherewith he was excellently wel purged, and perfectly cured of his colick the ſame day.

Thoſe that deſire to know and cure theſe diſeaſes ought to read the Idea of practical phyſick; *Riolanus* Anatomy, and *Riverius* Practice of Phyſick of the laſt Editions, all Engliſhed by me.

The 14 Obſervation, or Hiſtory, of Famous and Rare Cures, &c.

An Old Head-ach.

THe worthy wife of Mr. *William Dortoman* a renowned Advocate, being of a melancholly Conſtitution, was troubled many years together with a moſt grevious head ach, which held her in a manner perpetually; for the cure whereof an almoſt infinite company of medicaments were preſcribed by ſundry phyſitians; which doing no good, ſhe deſired me alſo to preſcribe for her, which I did after this manner.

Take conſerve of wormwood, maiden haire, and Elecampane roots, of each one ounce; ſalt of wormwood and tamarisk, of each one dram. With ſyrup of maidenhair, make al into an

an Electuary. Of which ſhe took two drams every day, two hours before meat.

Every fift day ſhe took two ſcruples of *Pilulæ Catholicæ*, with which Remedies continued ten daies together, her grievous and long laſting pain was Cured.

The 15 Obſervation, or Hiſtory, of Famous and Rare Cures, &c.

Vomiting in a Malignant feaver.

Lawrence Boſch a renowneed Apothecary of *Montpelier*, was grievouſly ſick of the purple Feaver in the month of *December*, 1622. after the ſeige of *Montpelier*, and among other Symptomes, he was extreamly troubled with vomiting up al that ever he drank, as ſoon as ever he had taken it in; Water, Wine, Juleps, Emulſions, he vomited al; Only he retained his broaths. His Feaver had raged for four daies together, with a mighty burning and a thirſt which no drink could quench. His inner parts were ſo dried and burnt, that his Tongue was extream black and parched. Which greivous Symptome, was, by my advice, removed with this eaſie Remedy.

Take *Salt of Wormwood, one ſcruple; freſh Juyce of Lemmons one ſpoonful. They were mingled in the ſpoon and ſo given him. Preſently his vomiting was ſtopped, and afterwards he drank what he pleaſed, and never caſt it up.*

The 16 Obſervation, or Hiſtory, of Famous and Rare Cures, &c.

A feaver with worms.

THe Daughter of *John Nivelle* a Proctor, twelve years old, had a continual Feaver, with a moſt troubleſome flux of the Belly, by which ſhe voided aſh colored Excrements, ſuch as are commonly ſeen to proceed from perſons troubled with worms.

There were preſcribed for her at firſt detergent Clyſters, made of ſweet things; alſo drinks ordinarily given againſt worms, and pouder of Rhubarb, twice repeated, by al which ſhe had no eaſe: nay there her Feaver and looſneſs grew worſe, ſo that they began to fear her death: becauſe ſhe was of a tender Conſtitution, had been long ſick, and was exceeding pale faced. At laſt I preſcribed her this following Julep.

Take *Roots of Sorrel, of Graſs, of Cichory, of each one ounce. Leaves of Endive, Cichory, Sorrel, Porſlane, and St. Johns-wort, of each one handful. Scordium and Roman Wormwood, of each half an handful. Of the three Cordial flowers, of each one pugil. Boyl al in Barley water, til a fourth part remain. In the ſtrained liquor diſſolve four ounces of ſyrup of Lemmons, and ſome drops of ſpirit of Vitriol, to cauſe a gentle Tartneſs. Make of al a Julep for four doſes, to be taken morning and evening.*

In thoſe two daies ſpace, in which ſhe took her Julep, the Feaver and looſneſs went quite away; and ſhe was perfectly Cured. If any wonder this Diſeaſe was Cured with ſo eaſie a Remedy; let him know, that St. Johns-wort, and Scordium, have a wonderful force againſt puttefaction, and prohibit the generation of worms, and kil them when bred. Yea and thoſe Herbs laid up with Cloaths, do hinder the breeding of Moaths: and I can truly witneſs, that I have uſed theſe kind of Juleps, in an almoſt innumerable company of Children troubled with worms, with moſt happy ſucceſs.

For the forementioned Diſeaſe, read the ſevententh Book of the Practice of Phyſick treating of Feavers, And *Riolanus* Anatomy; and *Johnſtons* Idea, of the laſt Edition, Engliſhed by me.

The 17 Obſervation, or Hiſtory, of Famous and Rare Cures, &c.

The Jaundice.

A Student of Chyrurgery who dwelt at that time with Mr. *Thierry Hagnenot*, a moſt renowned Chyrurgeon, who had long Practiſed the Art of Chyrurgery, was ſick of the Jaundice.

I pre-

I preſcribed him a Choler-purging potion, and then the Infuſion for the Jaundice deſcribed in the ſixt obſervation, for five daies together; and in concluſion the Choller-purging potion, again, with which he quickly recovered.

The 18 Obſervation, or Hiſtory, of Famous and Rare Cures, &c.

Of the Jaundice.

THe eldeſt Son of Mr. *Demanſe*, being borne when his mother had a Tertian Ague, had alſo four fits of the ſaid Feaver or Ague preſently after he was born, and afterwards fell into the Jaundice, ſo that his whol body was died al over with a deep yellow, which exceedingly terrified his Parents: now he was only two months old, when I was called to the Cure. I was in great doubt what to do in ſo tender a body. At laſt I preſcribed this following Syrup.

Take Roots of Madder and the larger Celondine of each two ounces: Leaves of Celondine, Centory, and roman Wormwood, of each two handfuls: Cinnamon two drams: Saffron half a dram. Boyl al in Fountain water to a pint. In the the ſtrained liquor diſſolve a pound of Sugar, and boyl it to a Syrup. Of this he took a ſmal ſpoonful every morning for twenty daies together, and was perfectly cured, and is at preſent perfectly wel, honourably ſupplying the place of his deceaſed Father.

The 19 Obſervation, Or Hiſtory, of Famous and Rare Cures, &c.

Of a Pleuriſy, and the Feaver Synochus with putrefaction.

ON *June*, 10. in the yeare 1630. At *Grenoble*, Msr. *De Boiſſuzel*, born of a Noble family, being twenty yeares of Age, of a Sanguine Complexion, about the evening, began to be troubled with a pain in his left ſide without a Feaver. The ſame day a carminative Clyſter was given him, and a diſcuſſive bag was applyed to the pained part. The day following in the morning, he began to be Feveriſh, his pain remaining, which troubled him moſt when he lay on the other ſide. He was Clyſterd again and blooded in his left Arme: and a Julep was given him of red Poppy water, Syrup of Violets, and Sal prunellæ. An emollient and Carminative fomentation was applyed to the pained ſide, and afterward Unguentum Dialthea with diſcuſſive Oyls, His blood appeared exceeding impure; in the afternoons his Feaver was ſtronger than at other times. He was let blood again, alſo his julep and topick remedies were repeated. On the third day in the morning he was again let blood in two porringers, the one of which was corrupt enough, the other more pure; the Julep and topicks were continued. For drink he uſed, from the beginning, a Ptiſan drink of barley and Licoris, and al his food was broaths, which were ſomtimes altered with cooling herbs. The ſame day, after noone his Fever was exaſperated; blood was taken out of the ſame orifice to the Quantity of ſix ounces, which ſeemed pretty good. With the morning blood-letting, the Pain of his ſide went quite away, which was never very vehement, nor had any Cough, Shortneſs of breath, or Spitting of blood joined therewith; which ſhewed that it did proceed either from a light fluxion, or from ſharp vapors, ſeeing alſo that it came before the Feaver. And therefore it was a Primary Feaver, of that kind which we terme *Synochus*, and did not depend upon the Pleuriſie. After his laſt blood-letting, ſeeing he was vexed with a vehement thirſt and burning, I gave him to drink about a pint of cold water, with twenty drops of ſpirit of Sulphur. Preſently he felt a cold; al his belly over was covered with cloaths, & ſwet a little, an hour after. Then he drank broath, and an hour after had a clyſter; which being come away, he fel into a new ſweat, ſo plentiful that he was all over wet therewith; which being wiped off, he ſwet again, but not ſo plentifully, and reſted quietly al the night. On the fourth day in the morning he ſwet again, and his Feaver was in great part abated. So that on the ſeventh day, he was quite freed from his Feaver, and being purged on the eight day, he needed no other Phyſick. In this Cure 'tis obſervable, that by the ſpirit of Sulphur given with water, plentiful ſweats were procured, which I have found by many experiments, having ſeen many tertian

Agues cured with the ſame remedy, being given in the height of the burning fit, and when the patient is moſt thirſty; by which plentiful ſweats were procured, by which not only the fit, but alſo the whol diſeaſe was perfectly terminated. In a leſſer quantity of water, a leſs quantity of ſpirit muſt be given, leaſt the water become too tart.

The 20 Obſervation, or Hiſtory, of Famous and Rare Cures, &c.

Of a Tertian Feaver, or Ague.

MR. *Berardus*, a moſt Famous Apothecary at *Grenoble*, being fifty yeares old, in the month of *July* 1630. was taken with an intermitting tertian Ague, and being twice purged, and twice let blood, and never the better, he took my catholik pils on his wel-day, and the day following had his fit much more gentle. Afterwards before his next fit, he took this ſmal potion following.

Take *Cichory water three ounces, Salt of wormwood half a dram; Spirit of Sulphur twelve drops; mix them. After this potion his fit came no more, but he was plentifully purged by urine.*

At the ſame time *Mſr. de Manijſieu* the Kings Councellor in the Parliament of *Grenoble*, being twenty four yeares of age, after two fits was cured by being once let blood without any other remedy: now his blood was very hot and cholerick.

The 21 Obſervation, or Hiſtory, of Famous and Rare Cures, &c.

Of The Purple Feaver.

ON the 18. of *June*, 1630. I was called to *Grenoble* to *Mſr. de Chapoullay* the Kings Advocate, who had been eight days ſick of a continual Feaver, during which time, he had been thrice let blood, and had taken a purging medicament preſcribed by his ordinary Phyſitian. As ſoon as I ſaw him, I found his pulſe very frequent and unequal, which made me ſuſpect it was a malignant Feaver, and cauſing him to be uncovered, I found his whol body ful of purple ſpots. His urines were ſufficiently good, and ſhewed ſome beginnings of Concoction.

I ordered many Cupping-glaſſes to be applied al along his back-bone, both without and with Scarrification, alſo Epithems, and that he ſhould be anointed with Mathiolus his oyl of Scorpions; alſo I gave him Confectio de Hyacintho in his broaths, and cooling cordial Juleps. For his drink he uſed the vulgar ptiſan, wherein harts horn tied in a Cloath was infuſed.

Theſe remedies he continued to the eleventh day of his ſickneſs, growing in the meane time every day worſe and worſe, till at laſt he was taken with ravings and convulſion fits. On the ſaid eleventh day, he did ſweat lightly, without any advantage. His raving was joyned with a kind of ſtupidity; and therefore a veſicatory was applied to his Neck, and Cupping-glaſſes to his lower parts. Inſtead of the former juleps which were made of cooling and opening roots and herbs, theſe following were preſcribed.

Take *Barly one pugil, Bugloſs roots two ounces; Borrage, Burnet, Scordium, of each one handful. Citron and Sorrel ſeeds of each half an ounce; Tamarinds two ounces; Fowers of borrage, Bugloſs, and Red Roſes, of each one pugil; Dittamus half a pugil. Make a decoction in ſeven pints of water, to a conſumption of the third part. In the ſtrained liquor diſſolve one pound of white Sugar; and make it into a Julep. Of which let him take eight ounces morning and evening, adding to each doſe one dram of Sal prunella, and half a ſcruple of ſpirit of vitriol.*

For his drink he had a tincture of Roſes. In his Broaths he took pouder of Perles, Coral, Ivory, Harts-horn, and Bezoar ſtone. But in the laſt daies when al the ſympcoms grew worſe and worſe, inſtead of the ſaid pouder, I gave him only a ſcruple of Bezoardicum minerale in al his broaths. And becauſe towards evening his Feaver, ravings, and Convulſion were wont to encreaſe upon him, I gave him this follwing pouder.

Take

Take Sal Prunellæ, half a dram. Bezoardicum Mineral, one ſcruple; mix them, and adminiſter them in Cardous water. On the thirteenth day, was this pouder given him, and on the ſame day he began to take the Bezoardicum aforeſaid, in his broaths, and his fit came not that day, but he was better al the night after; after midnight the ſame pouder was given him again. On the fourteenth day, he was a little better, but without any Evacuation. On the fifteenth he was after the ſame manner. On the ſixteenth, there appearing concoction in his Urines, as there had appeared in the whol Courſe of his diſeaſe, the Coction by little and little augmenting, I gave him a purging Medicament, of two drams of Senna, and one dram and an half of Rhubarb, infuſed in a cooling decoction, adding to the ſtrained liquor; manna and Syrup of Roſes, of each one ounce; with which he was gently purged. On the ſame day, very many Puſtles were obſerved to break forth like ſmal Pocks, tending to ſuppuration, in great number about the Veſicatory, alſo ſprinkled up and down upon his back, Loyns, and Buttocks. On the ſeventeenth day the ſaid Puſtles were for the moſt Part broken and began to dry up.

But on the forepart of his Body about the Hypochondria, and Breaſt, very ſmal Pimples came forth, pellucid and Tranſparent, in an almoſt infinit number: the Feaver was very remiſs; and his raving was much abated. On the eighteenth day he ſlept almoſt continually night and day, until the twentieth day. He was purged again on the two and twentieth day, and after that the Feaver went quite away; and within a few daies he perfectly recovered. Two years ago the Lord of *Raſtenclieres* was Cured of a very dangerous purple Feaver, cheifly with this Medicine. I gave him in every draught of his ordinary drink, which was the vulgar priſan, one dram of Sal prunellæ, and ten drops of ſpirit [*Not oyle*] of Virriol; by which the Extream blackneſs and dryneſs of his Tongue, with a mighty thirſt were in a few daies taken away.

Read more of Feavers and Agues in that moſt excellent Book, the Practice of Phyſick, the laſt Book.

The 22 Obſervation, or Hiſtory, of Famous and Rare Cures, &c.

Of a Tertian Ague.

Mr *de Chaune*, on the 18. day of *June*, 1630. was taken at *Grenoble* with a Tertian Ague, and in the ſpace of twelve daies was once purged, and thrice let blood, and had many Juleps, ſo that within the ſaid time he was freed of his Ague. Now this is worth obſervation in the foreſaid Patient, that there never appeared any contents in his Urins, yet their liquor in the declination was good and laudable in its color and ſubſtance. The reaſon whereof was, that the patient had been long troubled with Nephritick Diſeaſes, by which means his Urine was ſtrained, of al its Craſſitudes.

The 23 Obſervation, or Hiſtory, of Famous and Rare Cures, &c.

Of Bleeding at Noſe.

THe ſaid Mr. *de Chaune*, having been long freed from the foreſaid Ague, was taken with ſo violent a bleeding at the Noſe, that he was weakened thereby. For the ſtoppage whereof, many Remedies being uſed, this alone did the Cure, Viz. Vinegar and water frequently ſnuffed up into his Noſtrils, with which the flux of blood was ſuddenly ſtopped. Which flux breaking out again two daies after, he uſed the Vinegar and water after the ſame manner, as before, and it was preſently ſtopped.

The 24 Obſervation, or Hiſtory, of Famous and Rare Cures, &c.

Of a Malignant Feaver.

ON the 19. of *July*, in the year, 1630. I was ſent for to *Grenoble*, to the Son of *Stephen Mercier*, a writing School-maſter, ſixteen years old, ſick of a Malignant Feaver: now he was in the fifth day of his Diſeaſe, being al beſprinkled with violet colord ſpots, with raving, looſneſs and other greivous Symptomes. He had been once let blood, and had uſed no other Remedies. I give him two ſcruples of my Sudorifick pouder with twelve grains of Camphire, in four ounces of Carduus water. Being wel covered, he ſwet plentifully, and was in very good Caſe, his raving ceaſed, and his looſneſs was abated. The day following, his Feaver was ſufficiently ſtrong, without any grievous Symptom: he was let blood, and the ſame day his Feaver went quite away.

The 25 Obſervation, or Hiſtory, of Famous and Rare Cures, &c.

Of an old Gonorrhæa.

Mſr. *Chevilier*, a Citizen of *Grenoble*, being thirty years old, and of a Sanguine Complexion, and troubled with a very old Gonorrhæa, asked my advice on the eleventh of *July*, 1630. I preſcribe him in the firſt place a purgation of one ſcruple, of Mercurius Dulcis, with the ſame quantity of *Pill Cochy*, the day after he was let blood. And after that a Bolus of a dram of pouder of Rhubarbe, and three drams of Terpentine which he took five daies together, and was thereby purged three or four times each day. And finally he uſed this following water eight daies together.

Take *dried Mints three ounces; Lettice, Rue, Agnus Caſtus, each two ounces and an half; Dictamnus Creticus, ten drams; White Sugar two pound. Pouder al, and ad thereto five ounces of Venice Terpentine, and thirty ounces of White Wine, and diſtil them in Balneo Mariæ. Let the Patient take two ſpoonfuls every morning, two hours before meat. And with theſe Remedies he was Cured of this ſtubborne Diſeaſe.*

The 26 Obſervation, or Hiſtory, of Famous and Rare Cures, &c.

Of a Tertian Ague.

ON the 25. of *June*, 1630. at *Grenoble*, I was called to Mſr. *de Poulemies*, thirty years old, a Knight of the order of St. John, being ſick of a Tertian Ague. He was then in his third fit. But before thoſe fits appeared, he had been ſome daies Feaveriſh without any courſe of fits. I preſcribed him againſt the next day, which was his wel-day, a ſcruple of the Calomelanos of May, erne, and five grains of Diagrydium, in the form of Pils, with which he was luſtily purged, and towards the evening he perceived an appetite to eat, which before he had not. On the day of his fit, he took before it came, this following Julep.

Take *Cichory water three ounces; Salt of Wormwood half a dram; Spirit of Sulphur, one ſcruple. Make al into a Julep. This he take two hours before his fit, and being wel covered he ſweat plentifully, and ſo was freed from his* Ague.

The 27 Obſervation, or Hiſtory, of Famous and Rare Cures, &c.

Of a Tertian Ague.

ON the 30. day of June, 1630. I was called to the Lord of *Semiane*, who had a Tertian Ague. He had nine fits before, and by one of the Kings Phyſitians, had been five times

let

let blood, and had taken a Medicine made of the Infuſion of Senna and Caſſia: howbeit his fits grew worſe, and in them one Symptome did moſt of al trouble him, viz. a moſt ſharp Head-Ach, pricking and tearing the half of his Head only, like an Hemicrania. Preſently I judged this pain to proceed from ſharp vapors, ariſing from a Cholerick matter, lodged in his ſtomach, or the neighbouring Parts: and therefore I preſcribed him a purging Medicament of one ounce of Aqua Benedicta with the Infuſion of half an ounce of Senna; which purged him four times by ſtool, and gave him two vomits; at the firſt vomit, he caſt up about a pound of Leek-colored Choler; at the Second a like quantity of Verdigreſe colord Choler; and the following fit, he had no Head-ach at al. Then I gave him temperate opening Juleps and purged him again with Senna, Rhubarb, and Diacatholicum, and he was perfectly Cured.

The 28 Obſervation, or Hiſtory, of Famous and Rare Cures, &c.

Of VVorms.

THe young Son of Msr. *Imbert*, a Merchant of *Grenoble*, being about three years old, was many daies vexed with a looſneſs, and continual Stomach-ſickneſs, with a moſt acute Feaver, which ſeemed to ariſe from worms in his Stomach and Guts. Many Remedies were uſed in vain. And when the Child was in a deſperate condition, I gave him twelve grains of the Calomelanos of Turguetus [Mayerne] and preſently his ſtomach-ſickneſs ceaſed, and he ſlept almoſt al the day; but at night, a greater vomiting and looſneſs hapned than before. Among the ſtools were found a great quantity of bits of worms putrified, he ſlept in the morning and the whol day after, and vomited no more, and within twenty four hours the Feaver left him, and he had no further need of Phyſick.

The 29 Obſervation, or Hiſtory, of Famous and Rare Cures, &c.

Of a Melignant Feaver.

Msr. *De Beauboys*, a young Courtier in the beginning of *July*, 1630. was ſick at *Grenoble* of a Maligtant ſpotted Feaver. I was ſent for on the ninth day of his ſickneſs: he had been eight times let blood, and refuſed al other Remedies; he had a grievous looſneſs, and ſometimes raved. On the tenth day, his Feaver and looſneſs were more intenſe, his pulſe did intermit, he let his Excrements go from him into his bed. On the eleventh day he was in the ſame condition. On the twelfth, he was worſe. On the thirteenth he ſeemed at the laſt caſt, and that the pangs of Death were upon him. I cauſe a Veſicatory to be applied to his Neck, and give him to drink in the morning two ſcruples of my Diaphoretick pouder, twelve grains of Camphire, in Carduus water, and he remained two hours covered, but did not ſweat. In the evening he took the ſame potion again, and being wel covered; he did ſweat plentifully, was much better, al that day took in every draught of broath one ſcruple of Bezoardicum Minerale. A few daies after he perfectly recovered. When his Feaver ceaſed a ſwelling aroſe behind his Eare, exceeding painful, which was diſcuſſed without breaking.

The 30 Obſervation, or Hiſtory, of Famous and Rare Cures, &c.

Of Nephritick pains.

ON the 3. of *July*, in the year 1630. *Peter Berard*, a Famous Apothecary at *Grenoble*, thirty years of Age, was taken with a moſt grievous Nephritick Pain, and preſently he took two Chyſters very laxative of Confectio Hamech, Diaprunum Solutivum, and Terpentine; which giving him no eaſe, he ſent for me. I preſcribe him a third clyſter, emollient and carminative with Diaphœnicon, and Diaprunum ſolutive, of each half an ounce, and four ounces of A-

qua

qua Benedicta. With this Clyſter he was luſtily purged, and his pain quite taken away. For the ſick man perceived the Morbifick matter to be drawn forcibly out of his Loyns and whol belly, without any trouble. At the ſame time fomentations were applied of the forſaid decoction.

The 31 Obſervation, or Hiſtory, of famous and Rare Cures, &c.

Of Arthritick Pains.

ON the 8. *July*, 1630. I was ſent for by Mr. *Perdreau*, Apothecary to the moſt eminent Cardinal *Rachelieu*, lying ſick at *Grenoble* of pains in his Joynts, which tormented his Legs, Arms and other Parts, with ſwelling, Inflamation and a light Feaver. He had been twenty daies troubled with this Diſeaſe, and had been nine times let blood of his own Head, and his blood was ful of wheyiſh moiſture: alſo he had been divers times purged. By my advice there was given him a ſcruple of the Calomelanos of Mayerne, eight grains of Diagrydium, and a clove. He was gently and plentifully purged, and was much better. Afterwards he took morning and evening, a cooling Julep, in the doſe whereof was infuſed three drams of Senna; and half a dram of Coriander ſeed; which he took cold, two daies together. Afterward he took the former pouder with like ſucceſs, and was perfectly Cured.

Read more of the Nine former Obſervations, in the Practice of Phyſick, *Riolanus* Guide to Phyſick, and Chyrurgery, and *Johnſons* Idea, al Engliſhed by me.

The 32 Obſervation, or Hiſtory, of Famous and Rare Cures, &c.

Of Womb-Fits.

IN the month of *Octobe*r, the year 1631. the wife of Mr. *Valmeras*, the Kings Councellor in the Supreme Court of *Subſidies*, was troubled with the Mother, with a vomiting, a looſneſs, and extream weakneſs, ſo that ſhe ſeemed at deaths door. After many remedies uſed, viz. Strengthening fomentations applied to the ſtomach, Chicken applied to the heart, and Epithemes thereto applied, alſo Cupping-Glaſſes fixed upon her Thighes and ſhare, a Chyſter injected, of broath and Treacle; and after ſhe had taken Cinnamon water, at laſt ſhe drank this following potion, which did her abundance of good.

Take *Water of Mugwort, Roſes and Orenge flowers, of each one ounce, Cinnamon water three drams*; Confectio de Hyacintho, *one dram*; *pouder of Diamargaritum Frigidum half a ſcruple*; *Saffron, four grains. Make al into a potion.*

Having taken this potion ſhe vomited no more, and was very wel for two daies, afterwards her diſeaſe came again, and troubled her by fits. But as oft as ſhe took the ſaid potion, al the Sympcoms ceaſed.

The 33 Obſervation, or Hiſtory, of famous and Rare Cures, &c.

Of a Looſneſs.

A Strong man, of a Cholerick temper, a middle Age, was taken with a very Cholerick Looſneſs, with an exceeding great thirſt: being called to him, I preſcribed him Lapis Prunellæ in his ordinary drink, alſo in his Juleps made of Lettice and Purſlane water, which he took thrice a day, and ſo in the ſpace of twenty four hours he recovered.

The 34 Obſervation, or Hiſtory, of famous and Rare Cures, &c.

Of obſtruction of the Liver and Spleen.

A Certain ſtudent, a Polander, by reaſon of unſeaſonable watchings, fel into grievous obſtructions of his Liver and Spleen, which brought him to extream Leanneſs, whereas he

he was before wel fleſht and of a good habit of body. And after he had uſed purging potions, apetitive apozemes, and other Remedies, which did him little good; I preſcribed him theſe following Pils, by the uſe whereof he was reſtored to health in a months ſpace.

Take *of the beſt aloes and gum ammoniac diſſolved in vinegar, and forced through a ſearſe, and thickned again, three drams*; Senna clenſed, *and choiſe mirrh, of each one dram and half*; *ſaffron half a ſcruple*; *with oximel of ſquils make al into a maſs of pil-ſtuf, of which let him take two ſcruples every other day, two houres before dinner.*

The 35 Obſervation, or Hiſtory, of Famous and Rare Cures, &c.

Of a beginning Phthiſis, or Conſumption.

THe Renowned and moſt Beautiful woman, the widow of the Lord *De Ribes*, being twenty five years old, was grievouſly troulbed with a thin ſharpe rheume which fel down upon her breſt, with a dry and almoſt continual cough, Leanneſs, a ſlow feaver, and redneſs of cheeks, which infirmities ſhe had received by infecton from her Husband, who two months before had died of the Tiſſick, ſo that ſhe ſeemed to be poaſting to the ſame diſeaſe.

On the 15. day of the month of *May*, in the year 1629. I preſcribed her a purging potion of ſenna, Manna, and ſyrup of roſes, with a pectoral decoction. The next day I cauſed her to be let blood. Then I ordered her to take, pectoral and cooling broathes for twelve daies together, and in every fourth broath, Sena was boyled to the quantiy of half an ounce.

After her broaths, ſhe uſed a bath of a decoction of barly and ſweet almons. Mean while ſhe took anights one ſpooneful of a ſyrup to ſtay her reume and cough, which was compounded of Syrup of Violets, Jujubes, dried Roſes, and Poppies, of each a like quantity.

With theſe Remedies ſhe grew perfectly wel, nor had ſhe any need of a cauſtick or iſſue, nor of the Aſſes milke, which I had preſcribed for her. Howbeit I perſwaded her to take her purgation twice a day.

The diſeaſes mentioned in the four laſt Obſervations, are more largely treated on in the Practice of Phyſick, *Riolanus*, and *Johnſtons* Idea, engliſhed by me.

The 36 Obſervation, or Hiſtory, of Famous and Rare Cures, &c.

Of an old Gonorrhæa.

Mſr. Q. Dr. of the Civil and Canon Lawes, being for eight monthes troubled with the Gonorrhæa, asked advice of me. In the firſt place I preſcribed him this following Bolus.

Take Venice terpentine three drames, pouder of rhubarbe one dram; Make them into a bolus, which let him take five dayes one after another. After this medicine he was pretty wel, but after ſome dayes the flux returned. Afterwards he uſed the water for a Gonorrhæa, which is diſcribed in the diſpenſatory *of Quercetanus*; at the firſt giving, the flux was wholy ſtopped, and therefore he continued the uſe thereof, only for three or four dayes, and the diſeaſe came no more.

Read for this diſeaſe *Senertus* his moſt excellent Book of the French Pox, engliſhed by me.

The 37 Obſervation, or hiſtory, of Famous and Rare Cures, &c.

A deadly Headach.

ON the 6. day of *April*, 1629. at *Lodona*, I viſited the daughter of *Francis Feron* a Merchant, being ſeven years old, which for two monthes had been troubled with a grievous headach, about her forehead and Eyebrowes, which took her almoſt every hour ſo violently, that ſhe many times deſired that her head might be cut open with a knife. And two dayes before

fore I came to her ſhe had three or foure fits of the falling ſickneſs and foamed. Her ordinary phyſitian had preſcribed her many remedies, eſpecially Purgations by Apozemes, and cupping-glaſſes and veſicatories were applied to her neck; but al in vaine. Being about to conſult touching this caſe, word was brought, that a new fit had killed her, and after her death ſome corrupt matter came out at her noſtriles. Whence might be conjectured, that an Impoſtume was ſecretly lodged in her brain, but the ſame being opened there was nothing found therein ſave a ſerous or wheyiſh humor, ſhed into the ventricles of the Brain.

This Accident brought into my minde the Hiſtory of a certaine Virgin, who being tormented with the like pain for many monthes together, and having tryed many remedies in vain, a Certain Chyrurgion ſhaved al the Hair from her Head, and covered the ſame with a veſicatorie, as if it had bin a Spice-Cap; whereupon bladders being raiſed, a great Quantity of wheyiſh blood flowed out, and ſo ſhe was cured, which Remedy might alſo have helped this girl aforeſaid.

The 38 Obſervation, or hiſtory, of famous and Rare Cures, &c.

A Scirrhus of the womb.

ON the 26. day of *December* 1630. the wife of Mr. *Dugaſt of Bitteren*, twenty years of age, came to *Monpelier* to be cured of an infirmity, with which ſhe was troubled. Now it was a ſcirrhous hard ſwelling of the whole body of her womb, and had been of five months continuance when ſhe brought forth her firſt born ſonn, and unwarily expoſed her ſelf to the cold air; by which meanes the remainders of her Child-bed purgations were ſuppreſſed, and retained in the body of the womb, where they cauſed a tumor, which in tract of time attained to the hardneſs of a Scirrhus. Sometimes ſhe felt pricking paines in the part, whence there was a ſuſpition, leaſt that tumor might have ſome affinity with a cancer. Theſe following Remedies I preſcribed for her.

Take Diacatholicum half an ounce, hiera picra, and diaphenicon, of each one dram and half; rhubarb pouderd one dram; with ſugar make al into a bole. Let her take it in the morning, and order her ſelf accordingly. The day following, let the baſilica vein of her right Arme be opened, and let her bleed eight ounces.

Take rootes of aſparagus, butchers broom, parſly, and briony, of each one ounce. The barkes of Capar roots, and the midle rinde of the tamariske, of each half an ounce. Leaves of Agrimony, Ceterach, Maiden haire, Mugwort, Feverfew, of each one handful. Senna cleanſed and polipody of the Oake, of each one ounce. Epithimum half an Ounce. Agarick newly trochisked, two drams; ginger and cloves of each two ſcruples; Boyl al to a pint, in the ſtrained liquor, diſſolve Syrup of Cichory with rhubarb three ounces; Make of al an Apozeme for three doſes, in three mornings to be taken one after another.

Take Roots of Marſhmallowes, and Lillies, of each two ounces; roots of briony and wild coucumber, of each one ounce. Leaves of mallows and violets, of each two handfuls; Leaves of mugwort, Nep, of each one handful. Fat figgs twelve pair; Line-ſeed and Fenugrick ſeed, of each an ounce. Flowers of camomel and Melilote of each two pugils. Boile al in three parts of water and one of white wine added towards the end, with which the part affected muſt be fomented, morning and evening.

Take Freſh new made butter and hogs greaſe, of each one ounce; oyl of ſweet almons and Lillies, of each two ounces; Mucilage of fenugrick ſeed, drawn with white wine ſix drames, gum amoniacum diſſolved in Vinegar three drames, ſaffron half a dram, wax as much as ſhal ſuffice. Make of al an ointment to be uſed after the fomentation.

Take of the roll of Melilot Plaiſter, and of Plaiſter of mucilages, of each one ounce; Gum Amoniacum diſſolved in vinegar and drawn through a ſearſe, and then thickned, half an ounce; with oyl of lillies make a plaiſter upon leather of a fitting magnitude and ſhape to be applied to the ſaid part, after anointing, and to be renewed every fift day.

Take of the beſt aloes half an ounce. Gum Ammoniacum diſſolved in vinegar, and thickned again two drames. Bdellium and mirrhe of each one dram. Senna cleanſed, and aga

newly trochisked, of each two drams: Fecula bryoniæ one dram. With oxymel of squils, make all into a Mass of Pil-stuf. Of which let her take half a dram, every day in the morning, two hours before meat, for fifteen daies together.

When she had begun the use of these Remedies, an extream fit of cold weather, hindred her continuation thereof, and she returned into her Country; and at her departure, I advised her to renew her use of the foresaid remedies in the spring, and to continue them along time together. To which I added that she should Frequently sit in a bath, should use an emollient Cataplasme, and a diet drink of China roots for her ordinary drink. Al which remedies, being continued for three months together, especially the Fomentations, Ointments and Plasters, with the diet drink aforesaid, she was perfectly cured. And her monthly purgation, which was stopped for eight months together, came again, and kept its natural course, So that after that time she bore children. Read for this, and al other womens diseases that excellent Peece the fifteenth book of the Practice of Physick, englished by me.

The 39 Observation, or History, of Famous and Rare Cures, &c.

Of A quartan Ague.

A Comely Damsel the daughter of *Mr. Desplans*, the Kings Councellor in the supream Court of *Subsidies*, in the month of *November*, in the yeare 1630. was troubled with a double quartan, two months. I prescribe her an infusion of one dram of Senna, in my Fever-conquering-water, which she was to take every day, and at the Fourth taking, her Ague was perfectly taken away, and she was afterward very wel in health.

The 40 Observation, or History, of Famous and Rare Cures, &c.

Of Another quartan.

Mrr. Varandeus, A Canon thirty years old, being sick of a quartan ague, in the month of December 1630. Used the foresaid Remedy every day, and was Cured at the seventh taking.

The 41 Observation, or History, of Famous and Rare Cures, &c.

Inflamation of the Dugs.

About the Beginning of *January* in the yeare 1631. the wife of the renouned *Mrr. de Pecomare*, chief president in the Court of *Subsidies* and of Accounts, being in child-bed, began to her troubled with the Inflamation of her right dug, by reason of a blow which she had there received. Now there was milk therein, which could not be sucked out. On the first day there was an embrocation used thereto of two parts of oyl of Roses, and one part of oyl of unripe Olives. On the second day, and the Following daies, the said Embrocation was continued only to the part pained, and her whol dug anointed twice in a day with ointment of Marshmallows, and within a few daies she was cured, without any other Remedy, Cupping-glasses were Fastened to her shoulder blades, but no vein was opened, because I saw the disease presently discussed.

The 42 Observation, or History, of Famous and Rare Cures, &c.

Of A Malignant Feaver.

IN the month of *April*, in the yeare 1631. A young woman, the widow of *Montaudus*, a

a Citizen of *Montpelier*, was troubled with a malignant Spotted Feaver, and ſhe had ordinary remedies adminiſtred til the eight day, in which I was called, and found the ſick patient extream weak, with a mighty thirſt, dryneſs and blackneſs of tongue, and black Furred humors ſticking to his teeth. Beſides ſundry cordial medicaments, I preſcribed her very cooling juleps, with Sal prunellæ and Spirit of Vitriol. And in her ptiſan which ſhe did ordinarily drink of, ſhe took Sal prunellæ and Spirit of Vitriol. Cooling and moiſtening Fomentations were applied to her breaſt and hypochondria: and within two daies her thirſt and burning vaniſhed. And afterwards with a purgation and other lighter Remedies, ſhe in a few daies recovered.

The 43 Obſervation, or Hiſtory, of Famous and Rare Cuees, &c.

A malignant Feaver, with ſwelling behind the Eares.

IN the yeare 1623. After the ſeidg of *Montpelier*, a very malignant Feaver ranged up and down, of which wel-nigh half that had it, did die. More peculiarly, al that had ſwellings behind their Eares (which was wont to happen about the ninth or eleventh day of the diſeaſe) did die. And having ſeen many of theſe, whom I could not cure with any Antidotes; I began to think that Riſings behind the Eare, are therefore counted a natural ſign, becauſe that part is not large enough to receive the whol morbifick Cauſe, which remaining in the inner parts kills the patient: and that the work of nature muſt be ſupplied and helped. And though the patients had a ſmal, very frequent pulſe, and almoſt ſuch an one as they cal the piſmire-pulſe, ſo that they ſeemed to be at the point of death: yet revolving in my Mind, this ſaying of *Cornelius Celſus*, viz. that many things may wel be practiſed in a dangerous caſe, which were otherwiſe to be let alone, and that it is better to trie a hazardous remedy upon one or two, than to leave ſo many ſick people to certain deſtruction; I ordered them to be let blood by peece-meal (becauſe of their weakneſs) twice or thrice in one day, and the day after I gave them a purgation. By which Method, al that uſed the ſaid Remedies, were happily delivered, nor did any die afterward. The Hiſtory of the firſt patient Cured after this manner, is found deſcribed at large, in the firſt Chapter of the third ſection, of my Method of Cureing Feavers.

Read for theſe Feavers the Practice of Phyſick, *Book* 17. And *Johnſtons* Idea, and *Riolanus* guide to Phyſick and Churgery.

The 44 Obſervation, or Hiſtory, of Famous and Rare Cures, &c.

Cholick pains of the Stomach.

IN the Month of *April* 1631. The wife of *Mr. William Dortoman*, a renowned Advocate of *Montpelier*, was ſuddenly taken with moſt vehement pains, quartering in the region of her ſtomach and Spleen, which could not be abated, either with Fomentations or purgations: but blood being plentifully drawn out of her left Arme, they vaniſhed immediatly.

The 45 Obſervation, or Hiſtory, of Famous and Rare Cures, &c.

Vomiting of Blood

Paul Hilary, a Merchant of *Niſmes*, being afflicted with an abundant vomiting of blood, four or five times in the ſpace of ſixe weeks, for the ſtoppage whereof many remedies were applied, by his ordinary Phyſitians: at laſt the ſymptome returning again and holding longer than ordinary, ſo that he was in extream danger of death, I was called to him on the 28 of *May* 1631. He was 50. yeares old, of a cholerick temperament, and exceeding ready in al his actions; and having been Conſul the yeare before, he had wearied himſelf with exceeding great Labours, both of body and mind: whence much choler was bred, which by aduſtion came neare the nature of black choler, and putting the blood into great Commotion, cauſed

the

the ſame to find an iſſue, to which end the acrimony of the ſaid humor did very much conduce, as being apt to open the veins: as alſo the exceeding thinneſs of the blood by reaſon of abundance of wheyiſh ſubſtance mingled therewith. I conceived that this blood came out of the veins by way of anaſtomoſis, becauſe he vomited it in exceeding great Quantity, being curdled into clodders. Yet between whiles he vomited nothing at al, ſo that for a whole month after his firſt fit, he vomited no blood at al. Adde hereunto that he voided blood by ſtoole alſo, as wel as by vomit; yea and his firſt fit began with voiding blood by ſtool, which ſhewes that the meſaraick veines which end into the gutes were opened by anaſtomoſis.

On the Foreſaid day when I viſited him, the eruption of blood was ſtopped For twenty four hours, howbeit, it ſeemed to be again at hand, as might eaſily be ſeen by the unquietneſs, thirſt, heart-burning, Heat of the midrif, pulſation of the head and the patients Feavers: and therefore, ſeeing it was towards evening, he had only a julep given him of Purſlane and Poſſet-lane water, with ſal prunelle. He ſlept al night Ful of ſlumberings, mutterings and unquietneſs.

On the twenty ninth of the Month of May in the morning, he was let blood out of his left Arme, only the quantity of Foure ounces, becauſe he was ſo troubled with heart-burning and ſo weake, that he thought he ſhould quickly die. His blood was exceeding red, and on a manner turned into ſerum: upon his blood-letting he became ſtronger and was better alſo his urines, which before were like water, became coloured. A detergent Clyſter being given him in the afternoon, he was againe let blood ſeven ounces; the blood was very like the Former, and he was the better after it. The Foreſaid juleps were repeated. For drink he uſed water in which iron had been quenched, with ſyrupe of quinces and ſpirit of vitriol. An aſtringent pouder was put into his broathes, barley-creames and Panadas; alſo a binding and ſtrengthening Electuary was preſcribed, to be taken once a day, towards the Evening. A Fomentation was applied to the Hypochondria of the decoction of Purſlane and Plantane; and other things boyled in Oxycrate or water and vinegar; alſo a cooling aſtringent ointment, was applied to the ſaid parts. His Broaths were made with iroued water. The Following night he ſlept ſufficiently, but his dreames were troubleſome.

On the thirtieth day of the ſame month, his Urines were better coloured, his pulſe better, only his thirſt and pulſation in his head did continue. In the morning was given him a medicament of one dram of poudes of rhubarbe, and two drams of tryphera Perſica, with which he did four or five times void many cholerick and wheyiſh humors, whence he became better, his urines were amended, and he ſleept al night.

On the laſt day of the ſame month, he was wel in the morning, but his Urine had no ſwim, his thirſt contioued, and his pulſation in his head. He had a cooling aſtringent Julep given him to drinke, made of a decoction. His Urines grew paler by little and little, void of Swim, thirſt encreaſed, notwithſtanding his ſharp drinks. Towards evening the feaver was augmented, the patient was very unquiet, and thirſty, alſo he complained of a ſmarty boiling in his ſtomach, whereupon I was exceedingly afraid that his vomiting of blood would returne againe, the cauſe whereof ſeemed to be the tranſlation of choler to thoſe parts, whence it was that the Urines were ſo pale. I Conceived the proxatartick cauſe of this returne to be, either the too frequently giving him over boiled broathes, or the over hot application of the fomentations by the apothecaries unskilfulneſs, which ought to be applied but lukewarme. A token hereof was that the Patient ſaid he felt an heat under his ſhort ribbs preſently upon the firſt application of the Fomentations. To the end therefore to prevent this ſymptome at hand, I cauſed him to be let blood in his left arme eight ounces; which iſſued out with violence. At the ſame time Epithemes were applied of vinegar and water luke-warm, Frictions were uſed and ligatures, a Clyſter was given, and a julep of poſſlane water and red poppy water, with ſyrup of the ſaid red poppy and ſal prunelle. With which remedies whithin two houres he was freed from his Heat and thirſt. He paſſed over the reſt of the night with very little ſleepe, the beating in his Head ſtil remaining.

On the firſt day of *June*, his urines were wel coloured, with an eneorema or ſwim; he took a potion of a decoction of the leaves of Cichory, Sorrel, Poſſlan, with half an ounce of Tamarinds, adding an ounce of ſyrup of pumgranats, a ſcruple of pouder of rubarbe. He was twice purged in the Fore Noon, and voided great Quantity of wheyiſh humors. After the ſecond ſtoole, he was taken with a violent vomiting, and caſt up his broath, which he had took up a little

little before with flegm, but no blood, in the afternoon he had two or three ſtooles of cholleriek Froathy excrements, and ſlept indifferent wel at night.

On the ſecond day of *June* in the morning he ſeemed a little troubled in his diſcourſe; ſo that he could not rightly pronounce his words, nor conveniently deliver his mind in good ſence, which nevertheleſs he was himſelf aware of, and ſaid that his mind was not Free. The pulſation in his Head did continually perſevere, he took the foreſaid medicament of half an ounce of tamarinds, and a ſcruple of rhubarb. And ſeeing the foreſaid diſturbance of his mind continued, two cupping glaſſes were applyed to his ſhoulders, with ſcarification, with which very wheyiſh blood was evacuated, and the ordinary frontal was applied. Within an houre that ſmal Raving went quite away, and the whole dayes ſpace he had Four or Five ſtools which he bare very wel. At night he ſlept quietly, and was thereupon much better.

On the third of *June*, he profeſſed that he Found himſelf very wel, and that the beating of his Head was very much diminiſhed. He took again the Foreſaid Medicament, and was purged as before. Epithemes were dayly applied to his Heart, and Fomentations to his Hypochondria, of Oxicratum or vinegar and water: alſo he took in the evening the aforeſaid Opiate.

On the Fourth of *June* the patient continued in the ſame condition, he took in the morning the Foreſaid opiate, and again in the evening, and in the afternoon Syrup of Corals. But becauſe in his ſpleen an extraordinary hardneſs was perceived, an emollient and aperitive fomentation was applied, as alſo an ointment indued with the ſame vertues.

On the fifth day, he took in the morning of the broath of an old Cock, boyled with temperate aperitive Medicaments, China Root, and Cream of Tartar. An Iſſue was made in his left Leg, and the fomentation and anointing of his Spleen were continued. And now the Remedies uſed to ſtop blood, were by little and little left off, and we proceeded to the uſe of ſuch as were proper for the obſtruction of his Spleen, and againſt his Melancholy Humor. Then he began to uſe ſolid meats with a little thick Wine, when he was free of his Feaver, the Excrements of his belly, and his Urine better digeſted, and his ſleep almoſt continual. The ſwelling in his Spleen appeared ſufficiently great, and therefore I preſcribed him the foreſaid Cock broth for twelve dayes, adding every third day two drams of Senna. Alſo I cauſed him to continue his Fomentation and his emollient and aperitive Liniment for the like ſpace, and after thoſe twelve dayes a bath, after that the waters of Meyne, with iteration of the bath once a week. And finally the magiſtral ſyrup of juices, with the opening opiate.

On the ſixt of *June* he tooke his broath with two drames of ſenna, and was therewith duly purged.

On the ſeventh day I departed; and with the uſe of the Foreſaid remedies, eſpecially the magiſtral ſyrup for a long time together he was cured.

Read more of this in the ninth book of the Practice of Phyſick, and *Johnſtones* Idea, of the laſt editions engliſhed by me.

The 46 Obſervation, or Hiſtorie, of famous and rare Cures, &c.

The Whites.

A Renowned Nun, by reaſon of the hot diſtemper of her liver and kidnies in the beginning of *Auguſt* 1630. was taken with a very plentiful and troubleſome flux of the whites, of which a Chyrurgeon going about to cure her prepoſterouſly, and giving her vehement purgations, the diſeaſe was lengthened out to the winter following, nor did it now ceaſe, but was only diminiſhed, and the ſick patient continued pale and without colour. Now the ſpring Following, her infirmity began by little and little to grow worſe, until the Beginning of the Summer, at which time ſhe had no appetite, and was troubled with a light Feaver, unto which a cough ſometimes was joyned, ſo that it was Feared ſhe would fal into a Conſumption.

I appointed her in the firſt place a gentle purgative of ſenna and rhubarbe, and afterwards to be let blood. And then a laxative puſan for Four daies, then a luke warme bath to temper the Heat of her Liver and kidnies for two dayes Following.

Upon

Upon her bathing, ſhe was taken with a Looſneſs, ſeeming at firſt to do her good, but afterwards ſhe was thereby weakned, ſometimes ſhe had a Feaver, and her ſtomach was void of Appetite. I ordered her to take for five or ſix daies together a ſcruple of Roman Wormwood, an hour before dinner. The firſt day ſhe had many and large ſtools; on the ſecond her looſneſs was wholly ſtopped, and on the other daies her ſtomach was very much ſtrengthened, her Feaver vaniſhed, ſhe became daily better colored, but her want of Appetite did perſevere. I ordered her to continue the uſe of the Rhubarb for twelve daies longer, without the ſyrup, made into a bolus with one dram of Terpentine, to ſtop her whites. And ſo ſhe was freed from all the foreſaid diſtempers and diſorders.

The 47 Obſervation, or Hiſtory, of Famous and Rare Cures, &c.

A continual and malignant feaver.

ON the laſt day of *January* 1629. the moſt reverend Biſhop of *Niſmes*, being fifty yeares old, began to be ſick of a malignant Feaver, which had its exaſperations every day, from eleven in the morning to ſix in the after noon; he was ſtomach-ſick by fits, and troubled with the Hiccup, his urines red and troubled, his excrements liquid, cholerick and few, his want of ſleep perpetual to the ſeventh day. Being firſt taken ill in a ſmal village near the Kings Camp, he preſently betook himſelf to *Belliloca*, where on the ſecond day of his ſickneſs, he was let blood by two Phyſitians, and very corrupt blood came away. This was done after he had taken a Clyſter.

On the third day, he was again let blood, and blood like the former was taken away. In the mean ſpace cooling juleps, and ſuch as reſiſt the venemous quality of the diſeaſe, were adminiſtred. On the ſame day a light ſweat appeared, without any cold ſhaking before the ſame, or any ſhivering, but he was very ſtomach-ſick before his ſweating. On the fourth, fifth, and ſixt daies the like ſweat returned, without any abatement of the Feaver.

About the end of the fifth, drops of blood came out of his noſe. Now I was ſent for on the ſixt day, in which the Feaver appeared vehement with a Great and frequent pulſe, thirſt, tumbling, and other ſymptomes. On the ſame day he was again let blood eight ounces.

About the beginning of the ſeventh day, he was taken with a ſhaking fit for an whol hour, after which he was greivouſly ſtomach-ſick for another houre, at laſt he did ſweat plentifully, which continued al day in a manner; ſo that he was fain to be ſhifted ſeven times. After his ſweating, his Feaver was wholly allayed, and his Urines which were before red and thick, became yellow and wel conditioned.

On the eight and ninth day he had a moderate looſneſs whereby was voided cholerick and phelgmatick matter, whereby he ſeemed reſtored to his former health.

On the tenth day, he was removed to *Niſmes*, becauſe of the unhealthyneſs of *Belliloca*, and becauſe the Plague began there to break forth.

On the twelfth day he was purged with a medicament of Senna, Rhubarb, Manna, and Syrup of Roſes.

On the thirteenth he began to uſe more ſolid meats, in a ſmal quantity, and on the fifteenth, Wine much allaied with water. The ſame day he left his Bed, and dined at the Table, to make it appeare that he was perfectly recovered.

Nevertheleſs he fell into a Relapſe on the ſaid fifteenth day about Midnight, with frequent vomitings, whereby he caſt up a little flegm.

About the beginning of the ſixteenth day, after a Clyſter, he was let blood, and very corrupt blood came from him. Juleps were made of cooling, aperitive and alexipharmical medicaments, Epithemes, anointings with *Matbiolus* his oyl of Scorpions, were applied, and Confectio de Hyacintho was ordered to be given him in his Broaths.

On the ſeventeenth day the Clyſter was repeated & he was again let blood, the blood being like the former. Bezoar ſtone was given him in his Juleps, and ſometimes bezoardicum mineral in his broaths. To take away his Inclination to vomit, ſalt of wormwood was twice given him, not without ſucceſs, and ſtrengthening Fomentations were applied to his ſtomach. An oyntment of Oyl of Nut-megs and of Quinces was applied to the ſame part. In his Julep treacle

treacle water was mixed once or twice, because there was great suspition that there was a touch of the pestilence in this Disease, because of his frequent stomach sickness and Faintings. Spirit of vitriol was given him in his ordinary drink.

On the 18. day, he was taken with a shaking fit, which was followed by a sweat, which continued four or five hours, but the matter was but little that sweat out and he bore it all, was very impatient, Stomach sick, and vomited frequently.

Afterward to stop his stomach-sickness, a dram of Salt of Wormwood was given him, dissolved in Wine, which wrought most happily, so that he was very seldom troubled with any vomiting afterwards. A few houres after, being again taken with a shaking fit, he went twice to stool plentifully, and at last he fel into a sweat, which he could not long bear, by reason of Unquietness; the sweat came slowly away, but it continued many hours.

To assist that motion of Nature there was given him Bezoar stone with broath, and some hours after in more broath there was given him Bezoar Solare, wherewith he did sweat abundantly and easily, and by that means his Feaver was very much abated.

On the 19. his Feaver was much gentler, a Laxative Clyster being given him with three ounces of Aqua Benedicta, with which he had five stooles during that whol daies time, and voided much Choler mingled with Flegm; at night he slept quietly, his Urins were wel colored, with a thin setting. His strength was repaired by Roborating Medicaments.

On the 20. and 21. day, al things were after the same manner: once or twice a day, he voided by stool, Excrements sufficiently thick.

On the 22. he was purged with a Medicament like the former: and he had many stooles of a Cholerick and Flegmatick matter; also he vomited thick Flegm with a little Choler. Afterward he slept pleasantly al night, as also the following day, which was the 23. and then he was quite void of the Feaver; and the Urines appeared better digested.

To expel the Remainders of the Humor on the 24. day he took an opening broath, wherein on the 26. day we boyled half an ounce of Senna with correctives; and therewith he was four times purged: whereupon his Stomach to his Meat was encreased, and his thirst gone; and the opening broaths being continued for certain daies, he was restored to his former Health.

The 48 Observation, or History, of Famous and Rare Cures, &c.

Of an Inflamation and Impostume of the Kidneys, Bleeding at the Nose, a Malignant Feaver, with grievous Symptomes.

ON the 27. day of *March*, in the year, 1629. I was sent for to the most reverend Bishop of *Lodoven*, being fifty years Old, who had been formerly sick of a Malignant Feaver, and had twice relapsed into the same Feaver, and was freed from the said Relapses by divers Critical Evacuations, especially by plentiful bleedings at the Nose, and with very many Remedies prescribed by two Physitians of *Lodoven*, and my self. After he seemed to be recovered many daies together, on the 17. of *March*, about twelve a Clock, he began to be sick, and on the day following was suddenly taken with a sharp, and setled pain about his right Kidney, which was followed by these Symptomes, frequent vomiting and Hiccupping, troubled Urines, sometimes red and watry, sometimes with gravel, partly red, and partly white, sometimes also he complained of a numnedness in his right thigh. On the 22. day, a Feaver seized him, and on the following daies he had shaking fits, twice or thrice a day; after which the Feaver was exasperated for two or three hours.

I coming to him on the 27. day of his Disease with the Physitians aforesaid, we conceived (advising together) that there was a stone in his right Kidney, and that the pain had caused an Inflamation in that part. But because there appeared then little or no pain, we conceived the Inflamation was come to suppuration. We resolved to let him bloud first in his right Arm, afterwards in his Ankle on the same side, and that he should have emollient and cooling Clysters frequently injected, with Julaps, lenitive Emulsions, Epithemes, Fomentations, Liniments, and Cataplasmes. We began with Blood-letting, which was Celebrated on the 27.

day

day aforesaid, in the evening to the quantity of eight ounces. About evening he bled at the Nose the quantity of two pound, and the blood still issued, and he grew weak. Therefore we consulted to stop the bleeding, and ordered him to bleed for revulsions sake, in his right Arm. We gave him Sal Prunellæ dissolved in cold water. An astringent frontal was applied, Vinegar was dropt into his Eare, he took juyce of Nettles, a Cupping-Glass was applied to the Region of his Liver; a Linnen Cloath wet in Vinegar was wrapped cold about his Neck, and his Arms and Legs were tied. Which working no effect, the Patient said he must go to stool, nor could he be perswaded to use the stool in his bed. We told him before hand, that if he rose out of his bed being so weak, he would faint away, howbeit that fainting would be profitable to stop his bleeding. Which happened just in a manner as we had foretold, for after he was up, he fainted away, out of which fainting fit being recovered by giving him wine, and throwing cold water in his Face, he had a plentiful stool, and after he was laid again in his bed, he bled not so violently as before; and after he had rested a while we gave him one dram and an half of Sal Prunellæ dissolved in water, which when he had taken, the Bleeding was quite stopped, and there needed no more Remedies.

The following day, which was the 28 of *March*, he was troubled with a mighty thirst, and certain painful pustles, Caused by adust blood, broke out about his Fore-head, Cheeks, Lips, Tongue, and in the Paleness of his hands, but no shew of any pains in his Kidneys. Only he did exceedingly abhor al meat, so that he would by no means take any broath, much less Juleps and Emulsions. Howbeit he slept, by fits, al the day long, and had two stooles of Cholerick and very stinking Excrements. His Urine had no color, was thin, void of settling, with gravel in the bottome of the Chamber-pot. In the morning we gave him in his drink half a dram of Salt of Perles with Boyled water, and his thirst was much abated. In the afternoon and again in the Evening, we gave him twelve drops of Spirit of Vitriol, with an ounce of Syrup of Maiden-Hair in Boyled water, by which also his Feaver and thirst were much abated. He was frequently anointed on his Loyns, with Populean, *Galens* cooling Oyntment and Oyl of Roses. Three or four spoonfuls of Oyl of Sweet Almonds was mingled with his broaths. The night following, he slept quietly, awaking now and then with mournful groanings, as formerly he was accustomed.

On the 29. day in the morning, he complained of a pain in his right Kidney, which was not very vehement, yet he was not able to lie upon his right side. His Urins were thin, and pale, with gravel, partly red and partly white. He had Pustles about his Mouth which were anointed with new Pomatum, a little Sal Prunellæ being mingled therewith. We prescribed him a Fomentation and a Cataplasm, Emollient and pain asswaging, to be applied to his Kidneys, as also a Julep of a Decoction of cooling Herbs, with Seeds of Lettice and white Poppy, the tops of Mallows and Violet, and Buglos flowers.

About four in the after noon he was taken with a light shivering, which was followed by an Intense Feaver, which lasted for some hours. At ten of the Clock, he tooke a Julep of eight ounces, and slept little al night.

On the 30. day, at three of the Clock in the morning, he was afflicted with a vehement shaking fit, for half an hour, afterwards his Feaver was augmented, the Ulcers of his mouth and Throat were more grievous and painful, for the asswaging whereof Diamorum was used, his thirst was exceeding great, his stooles liquid and very stinking. Having taken some broath, two hours after, a plentiful sweat broke forth in his Head and Neck, with a moisture only in his other parts; in the middle of which he had another stoole, and had to the number of five stooles betwixt that and eight of the Clock. His Urines appeared more digested and colored, having a very smal settling, also his Feaver was abated, but he was exceedingly weakned by his loosness. About four of the Clock he took a Julep, with twenty drops of Spirit of Sulphur, now the Quantity of his Julep was alwaies eight ounces. He slept again til six a clock, and when he awake, he said the Julep had done him much good, and that he felt a coolness al his body over, and indeed his Feaver seemed more remits: having taken some cooling broath he complained of a pain in his pallate, which having viewed, we find it Ulcerated by the heat of the foregoing Feaver. For the asswagement whereof, he used a Decoction of preserved Mulberries: afterwards we prescribed him this following Gargarisme.

Take

Take *Plantane and Meadſweet water, of each four ounces; Roſe-water two ounces; Crude alum two drames. After a gentle boiling, diſſolve therein diamorum and honey of roſes of each one ounce. Make it into a Gargariſme. We alſo ordered his pallate to be often ſmeared with a pencil dipt in honey of roſes. Alſo he frequently waſht his mouth with his ordinary ptiſan drinke, made of barley and Lycoris.*

And from that time he ſlept quietly enough til Midnight; when he was again taken with a ſhaking fit, which laſting two hours, there Followed an accute Feaver, which the day Following, being the laſt of *March*, towards eight a clock, appeared much abated, the urines being alwaies thin and very crude. In the afternoone the Feaver was yet much more remiſs, and he ſeemed to be generally better than on the daies before. Hee had three ſtooles that day, liquid and chollerick. Hee took his juleps twice a day, and Epithemes were Frequently applied.

But the Night Following, about that time when his ſhaking fit was wont to come, he was vexed with a grievous anxiety, and a very troubleſome diſquietneſs, with a looſeneſs, which voided frequently ſmal quantities of cholerick and flegmatick matter. he ſlept not al that night, nor could he endure in his bed. That we might therefore aſſiſt that motion of Nature, which was performed with difficulty and labour, we gave him a purge the firſt of *April* at three a clook in the morning. Mean while the ulcers of his pallate and Mouth, were exceeding troubleſome, and ſmelt like a ſtinking dead carcaſs; the urines continually thin and without colour did affright us: his unquietneſs was abated about nine of the Clock, and he had five ſtooles that day. About evening he was much better, but his Urines were continually white and crude, the ulcers in his mouth did continually trouble him; the puſtles upon his lips and Chin, yea and on a part of his right Cheek, degenerated into a filthy Cruſt, like many ſmal pocks running together into one. Alſo in the middle of his thighes, on the Inſide, there aroſe puſtles like ſmal pocks, diſtinct one from another, and in both his legs as broad as ones hand, which were ſigns of the greateſt malignity and aduſtion poſſible.

On the ſecond of *April*, at one a clock after midnight, his Feaver came again, with a very ſmal ſhivering, after which the heat encreaſed, with unquietneſs much leſs than Formerly. About the End of this fit, he took again his purging medicament, and voided greeniſh choler with plenty of flegme. After noone, his purge left working, and he was quite free of his Feaver, and ſaid he had a ſtomach to eat ſome more ſolid meats. The Ulcerous Scabs of his Chin and cheekes exhaled a ſtinking ſmel.

On the third of *April* after midnight, a Fit of the double tertian returned againe, the ſame hour, like the Former. His urines appeared more coloured, the ulcers of his chin and Cheekes did ſtink ſufficiently. We reſolved to prepare the reliques of the morbifick matter for further purgation, by remedies internal and external. The internal were, aperitive and cooling juleps; the external an Emollient Fomentation, opening and moiſtening, applied to his hipochondria, eſpecially to the region of his Liver, in which there was ſome ſtretching perceived, alſo the Liniment had the ſame vertues. Before noone, his Feaver was abated, but it did not wholly intermit, his urines were wel laudable, with a little ſettling. Between noon and ſix in the evening he had two ſtooles of liquid yellowiſh excrement: to the ulcers of his chin and cheeke was applied, an oyntment of terpentine, the yolkes of Eggs, and honey of roſes. At ſeven a clock in the Evening, his Fit returned with ſhaking, which laſted til midnight, and ended with a double ſweat, which flowed plentifully. Afterwards he had no feaveriſhneſs upon him, the ſtink of his jawes was taken away within twelve hours by the uſe of the foreſaid oyntment, and the ulcers began to ſend forth white and thick quittor. In his Fit we gave him to drink ſyrup of violets with ptiſan and ſpirit of ſulphur.

On the 4 of *April*, when he was free from his Feaver, in the fore noon, the Remedies aforeſaid were repeated, and he ſeemed free from his Feaver all that day. At ſix a clock in the Evening, his Fit returned again with ſhaking, and was much longer than the former Fit.

On the 5 day of *April*, a Clyſter being premiſed, he was let Blood, to abate the Feaver and putrefaction of the Humors, which two things ſeemed to be the cauſe of the encreaſe of the Fit. About five a clock in the Evening, *Crollius* his Feaver medicine was given him, of Salt of Wormwood, Spirit of Sulphur, and Cichory Water, when the ſick man felt his extream parts begin to grow cold. After which, being more than ordinarily covered, and his Members armed with heated Cloaths, the beginning of the Fit was in this manner delayed till

ſeven

ſeven a clock, and the cold Fit continued an hour; afterwards by force of the foreſaid Medicament, he vomited a good quantity of Choler and Flegm; afterward his heat was mild, and without any very great unquietneſs.

On the 6 day of *April*, the Patient complained of a fiery heat in his ſtomach, which by fits did very much vex him. Alſo he complained of a pain in his left ſide under the ſhort Ribs, which when I was about to feel, he could not endure my hand to touch the place, and there ſeemed to be a manifeſt tenſion or ſtretching: for three whol daies together his Urine was not ſaved. But becauſe he was wont to have three or four ſtools a day, we conceived that his Urine went away with his ſtools; but becauſe, beſides the foreſaid ſtools, he had an almoſt continual deſire of going to ſtool, we did very much ſuſpect that ſome grievous Diſeaſe lay hid in his Kidneys, eſpecially ſeeing he was frequently troubled with the Hiccup. Finally, about two a clock he voided into the Chamber-pot, true Quittor, white, ſmooth and even, and no waies ſtinking, to the quantity of three ounces, with very little Urine. Hence it plainly appeared, that there was an Impoſthume in his Kidney, which being kept in, brought grievous Symptomes. Yea verily, and the Patient ſlept all night, and the Feaver was very remiſs until Midnight. A fiery heat did by fits afflict his ſtomach, and an hiccupping did vex him by fits. At midnight the pain and ſwelling of the left Hypochondrium were much abated, ſo that he could endure it to be touched. He voided again ſome Quittor by way of Urine, to the quantity of half an ounce, and no more. He voided Cholerick matter twice or thrice by ſtool, with which we conceived there was mixed ſome purulent matter, though we could not certainly tell. After Midnight his Fit returned, or rather there was an exacerbation, for it came not with any ſhaking or ſhivering, not with a very intenſe Feaver, but rather with an unquietneſs and languiſhing.

On the 7 of *April*, in the morning before day-light, he made water, which was hardly an ounce in quantity, and in the bottom there was a little Quittor ſettled. About ſeven a clock he had a ſmall ſtool, and the half of it was purulent matter: whence it might be conjectured that an Impoſthume was opened in the capacity of his Belly, which purged it ſelf by his Guts; but by reaſon of the mixture of other Excrements, when his ſtools were large it did not ſhew it ſelf. Alſo we conjectured that his Urine with Quittor and Dung, was ſhed into his Guts, or that it was not drawn by his Kidneys, becauſe he piſt little or nothing, and there appeared no fault in his Bladder, or the paſſages thereof. Ad hereunto, that his ſtools were very large, which if they were not drawn away with a Clyſter, he was much worſe. And this very day being unquiet almoſt to deſpairation, until noon, after he had voided his Clyſter, he was in a quiet condition. The intenſe heat continued about his ſtomach, and which is a wonder, he was not troubled with thirſt, cooling Juleps and Emollient were given him, as alſo Emulſions. Sometimes Almond Milk was mingled in his Broaths. For Drink he uſed a Decoction of Barley and Liquoris with Syrup of Violets, mean while he grows every day weaker, and his pulſe becomes more feeble. About five in the Evening, he made a good quantity of water, without trouble, at the bottom whereof was a little Quittor; he reſted exceeding well, and at eight a clock he piſt again, with leſs quantity of Quittor, and his Pulſe ſeemed better. All night he reſted quietly, piſt three times plentifully, and there was alwaies Quittor in the bottom of the pot; and the Exacerbation of his Feaver was very little and ſhort.

On the 8 of *April*, early in the morning, a Julep was given him, and after an hour a Clyſter was adminiſtred, with which he had two plentiful ſtools. In his Broath was diſſolved a Pouder of the cool Seeds with Sugar; ſometimes Almond Milk, ſometimes cooling, and gently clenſing Herbs were boyled therein, his Loyns were anointed with a cooling Oyntment. For Drink he uſed a decoction of barly, Graſs, and Licorice, al which remedies were ordained to clenſe the ulcer already contracted in his Kidny, and to temper the remaining inflamation of thoſe parts. He was much better al that day, and was hardly Feaveriſh. At ſix in the Evening, his fit returned, with a light ſhivering and continued in a manner al night, but not very vehement, his urines were mattery, and he was pained in his Hemorrhoides.

On the 9 day he was purged with a gentle medicament of ſenna, rhubarb and Manna, he was prety wel, but loathed his broathes, and could not eaſily ſwallow, his feaver was very ſmal, but he was weak, he felt a weight as it were, about evening, in his ſtomachs bottom, he was frequently troubled with the Hiccup, as he had been al his ſickneſs along. At night he had no fit nor exacerbation, only a burning in his mouth, which kept him from ſleep,

and conſtrained him to waſh the ſame frequently; dryneſs and aduſtion appeared in his lips, and yet he had no thirſt.

On the 10 day, his mouth was dry, his belly looſe, his Feaver very ſmal, his pulſe languiſhing, his ſtooles very ſtinking, and alwaies when he went to ſtoole, he perceived an ugly taſt in his mouth; his urines were crude, with very little quittor, at night he was better, his fit returned not only a light exacerbation, he had foure cholerick ſtooles, his urines were plentyful and crude, with very little quitor.

On the 11 day in the morning he was better, nothing troubled him but a mighty wearineſs; his looſneſs continued, and his urines as before. In the afternoon, he was yet better, and felt no wearines, his apetite returned, and he ſeemed to be abſolutly in the way of recovery, had but his urines amended that night he was a little unquiet, ſlept not, his feaver was a little more intenſe, he had only one ſtool.

On the 12 day, a ſmal Feaver continued with ſome little wearyneſs about evening, he was free from his Feaver til ten a clock, and then it was lightly exaſperated, and troubled him little; he had no ſtool, his urines as before.

On the 13 day a ſmal Feaver continued, yet he was better.

On the 14 day he was purged, with the foreſaid medicament, but being much troubled with the dryneſs of his mouth, he was compelled frequently to waſh his mouth, a ſlow feaver continued upon him.

On the 15 day he began to eat ſolid meats with apetite, his urines were more colored, but with quittor in the bottom, his ſlow Feaver continued.

On the 16 day in the morning he was wel diſpoſed, his bleeding at noſe returned, which was ſtopped by a ſparing blood-letting: he had three ſtooles that day, having taken a clyſter, his urines and Feaver were the ſame as formerly.

On the 17 day, he did eat his meat with Appetite, his Feaver was leſs, he had only one ſtoole of more ſolid Excrements than formerly, his urines the ſame, he reſted little that night, and his feaver had no exacerbation.

On the 18 day he was better, he eat his meat with great appetite, an horſe-leech was applied to his hemorrhoid vein which continued ſwolne, to draw the blood from his noſe which ſeemed ready to breake forth; much blood and wheyiſh moiſture came away, and he ſlept better the night after.

On the 19 day, he had a ſtomach to his meat, he had a ſmal Feaver in the after noon, his urines pale and thin, without any ſettleing, and void of Quittor.

On the 20 day al things were as the day before.

On the 21 day, I departed; and by little and little he grew afterwards wel, and was in a Few dayes reſtored to his former health, principally by the uſe of whey.

For the Reins and Kidnies, read the fourteenth Book of the Practice of Phyſick, with *Riolanus* Guide to Phyſick and Chyrurgery.

The 59 Obſervation, Or Hiſtory, of Famous and Rare Cures, &c.

Of The Rheumatick Diſeaſe.

A Gentleman of 50 yeares old, of a chollerick conſtitution, having a long time committed many errors in his diet, eſpecially by feaſtings and immoderate and unſeaſonable Excerciſes; began for two years laſt paſt to be tormented with ſundry paines, which ſometimes afflicted his Armes and hands, other whiles his feet, legs, and other parts, and they were never fixt, but ſometimes in one part, ſometimes in another, ſo that to day his right hand, to morrow his left hand would be pained, and a while after, it would leave his hands and go into his feet. And when the pain left the parts, a great weakneſs remained in them, ſo that the patient was compelled to lie by it many dayes together. Nor did theſe paines afflict only his joynts, but alſo the other parts; for ſomtime his Head was pained, otherwhiles his teeth and jawes, ſometime his ſhoulder, otherwhiles his hipochondria; ſo that no part of his body, in a manner was freed from paines. At the bginning of the diſeaſe, the diſtance between his Fits was longer, ſo that being afflicted with his paines fifteen or ſixteen dayes together, he was afterwards free for a month

month or two: but now his free times from pain were much ſhorter, and he could ſcarce enjoy his health eight dayes together. Sometimes he had a light feaver, eſpecially when his paines came, and he was growne extream leane, and weake al his body over. Many remedies were preſcribed by ſuch Phyſitians as were at hand, for the maſtering of this rebellious diſeaſe, eſpecially evaccuating remedies, viz. Blood-letting and purging, but al in vaine; and therefore he conſulted with the Phyſitians of *Montpelier*, who preſcribed him theſe following Remedies.

From the Hiſtory of the Symptoms, with which this worthy Gentleman has been long time afflicted, it may be conjectured, that he is troubled with that diſeaſe which is called the Rheumatick diſtemper, which name we do not uſe according to the vulgar and common ſignification, by which all thoſe diſeaſes are uſually termed, in which ſome matter is transferred from the head to ſome other part, as is uſually conceived in Catarrhs. But properly and peculiarly according to the doctrine of *Hippocrates* in his Book *de Locis in Homine*, and of *Galen* in his firſt Book of the differences of Feavers, aud in his 1. *de Compoſitione Medicamentorum Secundum genera*, we cal that the Rehumatick Diſeaſe, which takes its original from the habitual diſtemper of the whol body which is punctually deſcribed by *Gallen*, in his firſt book of Feavers, Chap. 7. in theſe words. You ſhal underſtand that the Rheumatick diſeaſes ſo called, are cauſed after ſome ſuch manner as this, viz. The whol body being weak, the principal parts, though there be little blood, yet being burthened therewith, they thruſt it into the fleſhy parts of the Skin, ſo far *Galen*. Whence it appeares that the true nature of the Rheumatick diſeaſe does herein conſiſt, that the whol body is habitually ſo weak, that when any principal part thereof happens to be burthened with blood, though it exceed not much in quantity, it tranſmits the ſame into the fleſhy parts beneath the skin, and into the skin it ſelf, and from thence it eaſily ſlips into the joints. Now that principal part which in this diſeaſe, we judg to be moſt offended, is the Liver, which by reaſon of ſome adventitious diſtemper, breeding blood, not ſufficiently fit for nouriſhment, it is wont to afflict the whol body with the like weakneſs and very much to trouble the ſame. Now, this kind of weakneſs has its original from ſome diſtemper, which that we may more accurately find out, we muſt cal to mind that the inbred temper of the parts may be changed four manner of waies. Firſt by defect of the inbred heat and of the humidum radicale. Secondly by the augmentation of ſome of the four qualities, wherein the Temper is conceived to conſiſt. Thirdly from a vitious and maligpant, or venemous quality, introduced into the part. Fourthly when the Vital ſpirit is dulled, diſſipated, diſtracted, or vitiouſly corrupted. Now in this patient of ours, the ſecond Cauſe is cheifly to be blamed, viz. the Heat of the Liver augmented and become preternatural, whence the concoction of that part is depraved, and the blood is made wheyiſh, hot, and unfit for nouriſhment, and for that cauſe is diſtracted into ſeveral parts; which partly by its acrimony it twitches, and cauſes ſundry pains, partly it is turned into wind, and produces other ſymptomes until at laſt its wheyiſh and windy parts, are evacuated by inſenſible tranſpiration, ſweat or urine.

Thoſe moſt excellent Phyſitians could not attain to the cure of this diſeaſe for Two Reaſons, Firſt becauſe (as was ſaid before) the diſtemper which breeds the Rheumatick diſeaſe properly ſo called, is habitual and confirmed; and therefore is hardly changed. Secondly, becauſe they ſeem not to have obſerved that precept propounded by *Galen* in the Cure of this diſeaſe in his firſt book of Feavers Chap. 6. Which is this. The true ſcope therefore in the Cure of theſe diſeaſes, is, not evacuation, but ſtrengthening of the whol body: which words are not to be underſtood, as if no evacuation were requiſite (for the ſame *Galen*, before, begins the cure of this diſeaſe whith bloodletting, and if the excrements alſo were depraved, he gave a purge) but becauſe we muſt work more and more frequently with ſtrengtheners, leſs and more ſparingly with evacuators.

Seeing therefore, an hot diſtemper proceeding from his remarkable and very great Errors in diet, bred cheifly in his Liver, cauſes a weakneſs thereof and of the whol body. We muſt with al our Art oppoſe the ſame, with thoſe remedies as may correct the ſaid diſtemper, and by a ſpecifick property, may ſtrengthen and refreſh the Liver. And becauſe that diſtemper is habitual, it requires a very long uſe of Medicines.

In the Firſt place therefore, among al the Remedies, which Art has been able to find out to cool and ſtrengthen an over heated Liver, Tincture of coralds holds the cheif place; of which

the patient may take two ſpoonfuls, every day, two hours before he eates. The preparation thereof is after this manner.

Take Red Corral groſly poudered *ſix Ounces*; *put it in a round glaſs, and poure thereon juice of Lemmons, til it ſtand four fingers above the Coral (if you have not juice of Lemmons, take juice of Barberies) ſhut the glaſs wel, and ſet it in balneo Mariæ four or five daies together, and ſeparate the tincture from the feces and keep it in a glaſs by it ſelf for your uſe.*

The tincture wil be more pleaſant, if with a like quantity of Sugar Candy, it be reduced into a ſyrup; but it wil be much more ineffectual. It wil be better to ad Sugar to each doſe, when you give it.

For the ſame Intent the Conſerve of Eglantine berries or Hips is much commended. You muſt free the berries from their ſeeds, and then boyle them in water, and paſs the pulpe through a ſearſe, and at laſt boyl it up with ſugar to the Conſiſtency of an Electuary. It is made, juſt as they make marmalade of quinces.

Of this Conſerve he may take every day the quantity of a Walnut, at Morning, Evening, and when he goes into his bed. Alſo he may uſe this following Electuary.

Take *Lozenges made of Trionſantalon with a four fold quantity of Rhubarb, weighing two drams a peice. Let him take every day a lozenge and drink a little of his ordinary drink after it.*

Alſo the Tincture of Roſes wil be very good for the ſame purpoſe, which is made as followeth.

Take *Red Roſes dried one ounce*; *Luke warm water three pints*; *Spirit of Sulphur or of vitriol, one dram and an half: infuſe them together ſix hours, to the Strained liquor ad Sugar half a pound, let him drink a cup thereof at time convenient.*

Theſe four remedies, muſt be continually uſed, in ſuch ſort that, he take one in the morning two houres before meat, another in the evening when he goes to bed, and the day following the other two at the ſame houres, in ſuch ſort frequently changing his medicines, that nature may not be too much accuſtomed to any one of them. And when he cannot have them al at once, let him uſe two or three in the order aforeſaied; yea, he may, at the beginning, if he pleaſe, uſe the foreſaid Remedies thrice a day, viz. Morning, Evening, and two houres before ſupper.

The Tincture of Roſes may be uſed at al times, when he is thirſty, between meals, alſo preſently after the taking of his other medicaments.

Among roborating medicaments, the moſt convenient is Amber-greiſe, which wonderfully refreſhes the ſpirits and native heat, nor does it heat ſo much as is commonly conceived, and it is as it were the balſom of the radical moiſture. He may take eight or ten grains thereof, at a time, with tincture of Coral, in ordinary broath, or in a ſoft Egg.

But becauſe the Diſtemper and weakneſs of the principal parts, is wont to cauſe ſuperfluity of excrements, therefore they muſt be voided, at times, by gentle purgatives, as has been ſaid, which may be effected by a magiſtral Syrup compounded of juices, and which may do more by altering and ſtrengthening the Liver, than by purging.

Take *The juices newly preſt out and clarified by ſettling, of Endive, Cichory, Sorrel, Fumitory, Hops, Agrimony, and Bugloſs, three pints*; *Juice of Fragrant Apples newly preſſed forth, one pint and half*; *Senna clenſed ſix ounces*; *Epithymum two ounces*; *Agrick newly trochisked one ounce*; *Mace and Cloves of each one dram*; *Infuſe and boyl them according to Art, til there be thirty ounces of the liquor left. In which diſſolve the infuſion of one ounce and half of choyce Rhuebarb, made with yellow Sanders in ſome of the juices aforeſaid, by it ſelf and Sugar thirty ounces. Boyl it to a perfect ſyrup wel clarified. Steep it in a glaſs, and give him thereof one ounce and half or two ounces, twice or thrice in a month, with the broath of a chick, altered with endive, Cichory and Sorrel leaves.*

And in the intermediate times, when he ſhal be bound in his body (which muſt alwaies be kept ſoluble) he may take an ounce of the ſame ſyrup, with common broath, an hour before dinner.

Or he may diſſolve the ſaid ſyrup in a decoction of Prunes.

Or in the ſaid decoction inſtead of the ſyrup, may be diſſolved, half an ounce or an ounce of Manna, to be taken an hour before dinner as aforeſaid.

Or in the ſaid decoction of Prunes, there may two drams of Senna be ſometimes boyled.

The

The foreſaid Remedies may be uſed twice a week if his belly be not diſpoſed to ſtool.

Moreover to aſſwage the Heat of his Liver, nothing is more excellent, than a bathe of Lukewarme water, which muſt be moſt frequently uſed the whol Summer long, almoſt every day an houre before ſupper, in manner of a bath to ſit in.

Hereunto ad an excellent diet of meates eaſily digeſted, and of excellent juice, viz. partriches, Capons, Chickens and Pullets, eſpecially broaths, ſtrong-broaths, juice of fleſh preſt out, and ſuch like; al which muſt be taken in an indifferent quantity, that they may be more eaſily digeſted.

For his drink let him uſe a thin infuſion of Rhubarbe, made after his manner.

Take *Rhubarb groſſly pouderded half a dram; fountain water three pints: let them boyl a little and then ſtrain out the Liquor. Let him uſe the ſtrained liquor for his ordinary drink, with a little Claret Wine mixt therewith.*

Somtimes alſo in ſtead of the ſaid Infuſion, he may uſe a Decoction of Cichory Roots with Wine, as has been ſaid.

Let him avoid as much as in him lies al vehement motions, both of mind and body, venery, and other things, which he beleeves have done him much hurt.

If the pain ſhal happen to be ſetled in his Joynts, it may be aſſwaged, and diſſolved by theſe following Remedies.

Take *Pulp of Marſh-Mallow Roots four ounces; New Milk two ounces. Make it like a Liniment and ſmear it upon the pained part,* Or,

Take *of the Roul of Plaiſter Diapalma as much as ſhal ſuffice, ſpred it upon a peice of leather and make a Plaiſter anſwerable to the pained part.*

Read more of this ſubject, in the Idea of Practical Phyſick, with *Riolanus* Guide to Phyſick and Chyrurgery.

The 50 Obſervation, or hiſtory, of famous and Rare Cures, &c.

A Swelling of the Spleen.

THe Siſter of Mſr. *Nicolas*, a Canon of *Montpelier*, twenty years of Age, after a Tertian Ague ill cured, fel into a great ſwelling of the Spleen, which filled al her belly almoſt, with a ſlow Feaver, want of appetite, want of reſt, and other Symptomes.

I preſcribe in the firſt place Blood-letting in her left Arm, after a Clyſter. After that an apperitive Apozem, with Cream of Tartar for twelve daies, and every third day there was infuſed, two drams of Senna, and one ounce of Syrup of Cichory with Rhubarb was added. At the ſame time, there was applied to her Spleen, an Emollient and apperitive Fomentation, morning and evening, and a liniment after the Fomentation. She took alſo in the Evenings, Viz. An hour before Supper of this following Opiate.

Take *Conſerve of the flowers of Tamariſk and Elecampane Roots, of each one ounce. Conſerve of Maiden-hair two ounces. Conſerve of common Wormwood and of preſerved Citron peeles, of each half an ounce, Confectio Alkermes three drams, Salt of Wormwood and Tamariſk of each two drams. Diarrhodon Abbatis one dram. With Syrup of Maiden-hair make al into an Electuary, of which let her take the Quantity of a Chaſt-nut every day in the morning, two hours before meat, and let her drink after it a little wine allaied with water.*

With theſe Remedies ſhe was cured in the Space of fifteen daies.

The 51 Obſervation, or Hiſtory, of Famous and Rare Cures, &c.

Of Blood Coagulated in the Stomach.

THe Brother of Mſr. *Dumoys* the Kings Councellor in the Preſidial Court at *Montpelier*, being fifty years old, after vehement exerciſe in continual hunting, vomited a little blood,

voided also a little by stool. The following daies, he was oppressed with a heavyness in his Stomach and Heart-burning, so that he frequently called for meat, and if he wanted the same smal space, he said his strength failed him. Also he frequently supt off a little Wine. When the Region of his stomach was handled, he felt a pain, his hands were somwhat coldish: and he was a little thirsty. His ordinary Physitian said he was troubled with the Feaver Lipyria, proceeding from the Inflamation of his Stomach. But when I, feeling his pulse, could perceive no Feaver; he said that his weakness hindered the Feaver from showing it self. Now he gathered that Inflamation, from blood before voided, which argued the effusion thereof, into the substance of the stomach; from the pain of the part it self, the coldness of his hands, and his heart burning; whereupon he pronounced boldy, that he would certainly and shortly die. But I judged that al those Symptomes did proceed from blood congealed and corrupted in his stomach; which corrupt blood, as *Galen* tels us, puts on the Nature of Poyson, and thence faintings, or Hart-burnings, coldness of the extream parts, and other Symptomes arise. For I could not think it possible, that an Inflamation of the stomach, should not cause an intense Feaver, and thirst. Moreover, the sick man was delighted by the Application of an hot tile and of hot cloaths upon his stomach, also with the frequent taking of pure Wine unallaied, and with very hot broaths, al which an inflamed stomach could not endure. A Clyster being given him, he voided some clotters of blood therewith. He was let blood, and that which came away was very Flegmatick. After the Emulsion which he took in the evening, by order of his usual Physitian, he was very ill, al the night. But the foresoid Physition would not content himself with such Remedies as dissolved coagulated blood and brought the same away, therefore I who only by occasion had once visited him, left the whol Cure to him. But the day following, no other Remedy being used, he voided by stool, most filthy black matter, and so was freed from al the foresaid Symptomes; which plainly shewed, that the Cause of this Disease was no other than blood congealed in his stomach according to my opinion.

The 52 Observation, or History, of Famous and Rare Cures, &c.

Of Consumption, and weakness of Sense in a Part.

THe most beloved wife, of the excellent Mr. *Paschal* the Kings Councellour, and a Mr. of the Court of Accounts being twenty two years old, of an hot and dry Complexion (as by the readyness of her actions, the sharpness of her wit, her angryness, the largeness of her Veins, her lean Constitution of body, and other signs, might easily be discerned) seven years since began to be troubled with an impairment of her sense of feeling in her left hand, with a leanness of the said part and a Consumption thereof; which appeared first in her Thumb, whose Muscles that make up Venus Mount, were first of al wasted away, and soon after the sense of that part was diminished, and consequently her other fingers, were taken with the same infirmity until at last they had wel nigh lost al feeling, for at present, if a Needle be thrust into her Thumb, it hardly puts her to any pain. Moreover little Bladders did sometimes arise on the tops of her fingers, as if they had been burnt, and some other things appeared in the habit of her body; which shal be mentioned in their place.

This Case is most difficult, most rare, and most intricate, although most excellent Physitians who undertook her Cure, did little doubt thereof, taking that same impairment of the sense of feeling to be the beginning of a Palsie, which opinion of theirs, although it may be confirmed by no smal reasons; yet is it an easie matter to make another judgment of the Nature of this Disease, and to under prop the same with most strong reasonings, viz. That it is a mere Atrophy of the part after which the sense of feeling was impaired by reason of dryness, without any obstruction of the Nerves. I shal produce the arguments on both sides, and leave it free to the reader to choose the founder opinion. And in the Conclusion (which wil be a rare and singular matter) I shal demonstrate, that this Disease is to be cured with the same Remedies, whether it proceed from the one Cause or the other.

In the first place therefore; that this hurt of the sense of feeling, is a kind of Palsie, seems to appear from hence, in that from any other Cause, that sense cannot be in any part diminish-

ed

ed or aboliſhed ſave from the obſtruction of the Nerves, which carry the Animal ſpirits and the ſenſitive and moving faculty to the parts of the Body. In the next place, becauſe this Gentlewoman, had formerly a Tumor in the right ſide of her Neck, and a ringing in her right Ear, alſo a pain about her Neck, which are ſignes of a flux of Humors from the Head.

But on the other ſide, that this Diſeaſe ought not to be referred to the Palſie, but rather to ſome ſort of Atrophy, theſe following reaſons may evince.

Firſt of al, in the palſie, not only ſenſe but alſo motion is hurt, eſpecially when it is an old Confirmed palſey, ſuch as that is which has afflicted the patient for ſeven yeares together; for though ſometimes motion may be hurt, the ſence remaining unhurt, and contrarywiſe, the ſenſe may be ſometimes hurt, and motion not hurt; yet this difference is to be obſerved, which is plainly taught by *Galen* in his firſt Book *De Locis Affectis*, Chap. 6. viz. That in a part Capable of motion, ſence cannot be hurt, without the hurting of motion, whereas motion may be hurt without any harme to ſenſe; for ſence conſiſts moſt what in paſſion, as motion does in action, and ſeeing the ſame animal ſpirit, does carry both ſence and motion through the ſame nerve, though it come in leſs quantity than can ſuffice for motion, yet may it be ſufficient for ſence: but if the obſtruction of the nerve be ſo great, that ſence is hurt, motion muſt needes be hurt much more. How can it then come to paſs, that ſometimes ſence ſhould be hurt and not motion? for this reaſon alone (according to *Galen* in the fore cited place) namely, if thoſe nerves only are affected which are caried into the skin, thoſe being unhurt, which end in the muſcles, ſence wil only be loſt, motion being undamnified, as it happened to *Paxſanias* the Syrian Sophiſter, whoſe hiſtory *Galen* relates in his third book *De Locis Affectis*, Chap. 12 as alſo in the place Forecited; who travelling towards *Rome*, fel out of the Coach, and receiving a blow about the ſeventh vertebra, from whence a ſmal nerve is carried to the skin of the two little Fingers, in thoſe two fingers the ſence of feeling was loſt, their motion remayning entire, becauſe the nerves which were carried to the muſcles of thoſe parts, remained unhurt. Now in the Caſe propounded, it could not be ſo; becauſe if the diſeaſe ariſe from the obſtruction of the nerves, we muſt grant that the nerves which are carried to the muſcles, were greivouſly affected, for extenuation and Conſumption never happens in a palſied part but that the ſaid part is firſt deſtitute of the influx of the animal ſpirit, for the natural faculty, when the animal cannot act, is drawne into conſent, and badly nouriſhing the part, cauſes a conſumption; but ſeeing by the integrity of motion, the integrity of the Nerves is apparent, we muſt conjecture that the foreſaid conſumption, is not cauſed by the palſie; but that rather the impediment of ſence depends upon the want of nouriſhment and dryneſs of the parts. Nor is it true, which was lately aſſerted, that al abatement and loſs of ſence, is a ſort of palſie, for in the diſeaſe called Elephantiaſis, ſence is diminiſhed and aboliſhed, by reaſon of the dryneſs of the parts, cauſed by black choller.

Secondly, from what has been ſaid, another argument may be collected, for leanneſs and want of nouriſhment doe not happen to palſied parts, unleſs the palſied be confirmed. But Authors count the palſie then only beginning, when ſence only is hurt, motion remayning undamnified. Whence it followes neceſſarily, that the foreſaid want of nouriſhment, does not at al proceed from the palſie.

Thirdly, ſeeing they terme this diſeaſe a beginnig palſie, 'tis ſtrange the begining of a diſeaſe ſhould laſt ſeven yeares, and make no further progreſs; and that the fluxion, which poſſeſſed only a nerve or two carried to the skin of the fingers ſhould not ſeize upon the greater nerves cauſing motion, which touched the other; ſo as thereby to ſtop both ſenſe and motion, and to cauſe an abſolute and perfect palſie.

Fourthly, before the ſence of feeling was impaired, there began firſt to ſhew it ſelf a Leanneſs and Conſumption of the muſcles of the thumb, after which followed, an inpairement of the ſence. Therefore the Atrophy of the part depends upon ſome other Cauſe, than upon the palſie, and ſeemes to be the Cauſe of ſence deminiſhed.

Fifthly, thoſe little bladders like burnings, which frequently afflicted the extremeties of her fingers, argues the humor flowing into thoſe parts, to differ much from that which is wont to cauſe the palſie. Which humor truly is ſent from the Liver not only to the fingers, but alſo to the whole half of the body neareſt thereunto, for both the toes of her right foot were

poſſeſſed

poſſeſſed with the ſame bladders, and alſo her right Leg was varigated with Tetters, and her right Arm was ſtreaked with certain rivulets, diſtinct from the ordinary Veins, running a ſtreight Courſe under the Skin, and being colored with a deep red enclining to black and blew; whence clearly appeares, that black Cholerick blood flows into the parts affected, which marring their nouriſhment, cauſed leanneſs and dryneſs; by which dryneſs the ſenſe of feeling was diminiſhed: For the wiſe Maſters of Phyſick, have taught us, that motion is furthered by dryneſs, but ſenſe by moiſture. And therefore when a part is rendred over moiſt, it becomes unfit for motion, and when it becomes over dry, it is unfit for ſenſe. The like Rivulets do alſo appear, in the right Leg of the Patient, like Varices, which evidently declare a fault in the *Liver*.

Finally, ſuch things as help and hurt do more and more declare the Nature of this Diſeaſe, for as hitherto ſhe never uſed convenient Medicaments, ſo by the uſe of baths and other hot things, and Medicaments very ſtrongly reſolving being applied to the part, ſhe was much worſe than before.

Now although this latter opinion, ſeems nearer to truth, yet if any man liſt to favour the former, perſwaded with the laſt reaſon, alleadged in favor thereof, which truly is not to be ſlighted, he may think thus at leaſt, that peradventure ſome deflux of Humor, may affect ſome parcel of the ſpinal marrow, whence the imminution of ſenſe may ariſe; but that the leanneſs and non-nutriment of the part ſprings from hence, is impoſſible, as the reaſons fore alleadged do plainly evince, and at leaſt according to that opinion, we muſt ſay, that the leanneſs and imminution of ſenſe are complicated Diſeaſes, ariſing from different Cauſes. Al which being ſuppoſed, which way ſoever your mind incline, the way of Cure wil be ſtil the ſame, as we promiſed at the beginning.

Proceeding therefore to the Cure from right Indications, we muſt uſe al our endeavour to amend the hot and dry diſtemper of her Liver, which is the original of al her maladies; the Conſumption and non-nutrition of the part muſt be amended, and we muſt procure it to be renouriſhed, from which if the hurt of the ſenſe proceed, when the Cauſe, viz. dryneſs is taken away, it wil ceaſe. But if this hurt of the ſenſe, ſhal be judged to ariſe from ſome harm of the Nerves, and from a fluxion from the brain into the back-bone; yet muſt we not therefore adminiſter heating Remedies, which wil encreaſe the primary Cauſe of the fluxion, namely, the diſtemper of the Liver. Nor muſt hot Medicaments be mixed with coolers, for by them the diſtemper of the Liver wil never be corrected, eſpecially ſeeing in the forms of Remedies, formerly preſcribed according to his indication, hot Medicaments are much more prevalent than the cold. Nor muſt external reſolving medicaments be applied to the part affected; becauſe they wil conſume and dry the ſame much more, and wil no waies ſerve to the Cure of the Diſeaſe; for if there be any obſtruction of the Nerves, it is not in the Hands, but in the original of the Nerves by the Vertebraes, and ſo we muſt imitate *Galen*, who in the *Syrian Pauſanias* aforeſaid, applied thoſe Medicaments with happy ſucceſs to the Vertebra's of his Neck, which other Phyſitians applied to his two ſenceleſs fingers, with no effect.

Yea verily, and thoſe Palſies which happen in hot and dry bodies, may be cured with cooling and moiſtening Remedies only, as *Trallianus* teaches, in his firſt Book, Chap. 16. In theſe words: The efficient Cauſe of the Palſie we may diſcerne for the moſt part to be, a thick, clammy, and cold Humor. We muſt alſo know, that this Diſeaſe proceeds from an hot or dry quality, when an hot diſtemper has too much parched the Humors. And a little after, for if the quality ſhal be only hot and dry, then extenuating and heating Medicaments (for al ſuch conſume the Native moiſture) do more burn the matter, and make it more thick. And in concluſion he adds the Cure by Diet and Medicines, purely cooling and moiſtening; which he averrs to have been taught by experience, ſaying. I verily know one that was Palſied by ſorrow, Care, and faſting; who thereupon taking Hiera, was ſo damnified, that he became wholly unmovable, and was at deaths door, had he not been altered quite contrary, taking nothing but moiſtening things, potions, meats, and other things which brought him to a temper, eſpecially frequent bathings, Oyntments of water and Oyl, change of the Aire into temperate, and al kind of mirth. You may ſee a ſtory not much unlike this in *Foreſtus* his 97. Obſervation, in his firſt Book, of a certaine youth, who in his Legs and Feet was deſtitute of ſenſe and motion, with an extenuation and Atrophy of the ſaid parts. And whereas by the uſe of heating and drying Medicaments preſcribed by other Phyſitians, he grew continually worſe and worſe,

he was in the end Cured by *Foreſtus*, only by giving him in, and applying without, moiſtening Medicaments.

In the firſt place therefore, ſhe muſt keep a cooling and moiſtening Diet. Her meats muſt be of good juyce and eaſie to digeſt, eſpecially the fleſh of young Animals. In her broaths let her uſe cooling Herbes, Borrage, Sorrel, Endive, Lettuce, and Porſlane. Let her abſtain from al fried, Salt, and peppered Meats, from Pulſes, old cheeſe, and other thick and hot meats; let her drink weak Wine, wel allaied with water.

Eſpecially let her avoid paſſions of the mind, and above al, ſadneſs and anger; let her ſleep very long, becauſe nothing moiſtens more than ſleep. Let her be alwaies looſe-bellyed by Nature or by Art.

As ſoone as ſhe is delivered of her great belly, a month after her lying in, let her ſet upon the uſe of theſe following medicaments.

Take *Rootes of Bugloſs, Graſs and Aſparagus, of each half an ounce. Leaves of Endive, Cichory, Sorrel, bugloſs, of each half an handful. Boile them with a chick and make broath, of which let her take every morning for twelve dayes together.*

In every third doſe of broth infuſe al night half an ounce of Senna, and one dram of aniſeed.

After her firſt purging broath, open the baſilica vein of her right Arme, and take away ſeven ounces of blood.

When ſhe has done with her broaths, let her goe into this following Bath.

Take *ſweet almons bruiſed and barly meale, of each one pound and halfe. Boyle them in a bag for a bath, into which being lukewarme let her enter morning and evening, long time from her meales. And let the decoction be renewed every day.*

Take *ointment of Roſes and Ceratum Santalinum, of each one ounce. Juice of Cichory and oyl of Roſes of each half an ounce. Trochiſks of Camphire one ſcruple. White waxe, a little. Make al into an ointment, wherewith let the Region of her liver be anointed when ſhe comes out of the bath and is dryed, and let her continue the uſe of it every day, when ſhe goes into her bed, for a long time together.*

Take *Whey of goats milk, made by boilling of the milk, and wel clarified ſix ounces; juyce of Cichory and fragrant apples, of each one ounce. Let her take it in the forenoon, two hours before dinner, fifteen daies together.*

If the ſeaſon ſhal be too cold to uſe the whey, let her uſe inſtead thereof a decoction of China, made after this manner.

Take *China root cut into thin ſlices one ounce; fountane water ſix pints; juyce of lemmons three ounces; ſteep them together twenty four hours, then boil them in an earthen pot glazed and wel covered, til a third part be waſted away. Straine it through an hippocraſs bag. And let her take ſix or eight ounces of it, every day in the morning.*

Take *of the juyces newly preſſed forth, and clarified by ſettling, of borrage, bugloſs, fumitory, Cichory, and ſorrel, three pints; juyce of Fragrant apples newly preſſed out and clarified two pints and an half; Infuſe therein eight ounces of ſenna, new polypody of the oake, and epethimum, of each two ounces, agarick freſhly trochiſked one ounce; mace and cloves of each one drame. Afterwards boile them to a pint and half. In the ſtrained liquor diſſolve an ounce of rhubarb, infuſed in ſome of the foreſaide juices, and one pound and half of white ſugar. Boil them to a ſyrupe, of which let her take two ounces, in chicken broath altered with the leaves of borrage, bugloſs, fumitory and ſorrel.*

In the intermediate dayes let her take every morning two houres before dinner, an ounce of the opiate made of Eglantine berries wel ripened, duly boiled, and paſſed through a ſearſe, and then reboiled with a ſufficient quantity of ſugar as marmalade is uſually made.

Sometimes let her uſe the Lozenges of Diatrion ſantalon, of which let her take two drames in the morning, inſtead of the foreſaid opiate, drinking a little Cichory water after it.

If by reaſon of the Injuries of the ſeazon, ſhe cannot this autumne exactly uſe al the foreſaid remedies; ſhe muſt repeate them afreſh the follwing ſpring; and then ſhe muſt frequently bathe, and long uſe the whey, for in theſe Remedies lies the cheife force of the Cure.

Finally, the waters of Meyne are very uſeful and moſt excellent for the Cure of this diſeaſe, to which ſhe may goe, about the beginning of the month of *July*, and uſe them a month together.

In the mean while from firſt to laſt; topical medicaments muſt be uſed, and frequently applied to her diſeaſed hand.

Take *oyle of ſweet almonds new drawne without fire two ounces, oyl of chamemel one ounce. Mixe them, anoint the part hot, morning and evening, and then wrap it up in hot linnen cloathes.*

After the foreſaide oile has been uſed for 15 daies together, uſe the Following as long.

Take *oile of puppy-dogs and of earth-wormes, of each two ounces. Oyle of ſweet almonds three ounces, uſe them as before. After that, for as many dayes more, let her uſe this following Liniment.*

Take *Violet* Oyl, *and Olive* Oyl, *of each one ounce and an half; Tarre, two ounces;* Oyl *of ſweet Almonds, one ounce. Make al into a* Liniment.

Finally, if the Diſeaſe ſtubbornly reſiſt the foreſaid Remedies, ſhe muſt uſe this following Decoction.

Take *Roots of Bryony, Lillies, and Marſh-mallows, of each three ounces. Boyle them in the broath made of the Head, Feet, and Guts of a Calf, or weather; and in this Decoction let her plunge her hand and part of her Arm, hot, morning and evening, and hold it therein two hours. And let this be done after the uſe of the bath for ſixteen daies together.*

And to provide againſt that ſuſpition of ſome matter ſettled in the original of the Nerves, ſhe may uſe Oyntments and Liniments that powerfully diſcuſs and reſolve, preſcribed by her able Phyſitians, with them anointing her Back-bone, hot, for ſome daies together. Done at *Montpelier* the 14. of *Auguſt*, 1631.

Read more of this in thoſe excellent Books, *Johnſtons* Idea, and *Riolanus* Guide, &c.

The 53 *Obſervation*, or Hiſtory, *of Famous and* Rare *Cures*, &c.

Of prevention of Abortion.

THe wife of *John Vieules*, a Citizen of *Montpelier*, Miſcarried three times one after another, at ſeveral ſeaſons of her being with Child. And now being two Months gone with Child, ſhe had pains about her Navil and Loyns, which threatened miſcarriage. Another Phyſitian had appointed her two Plaiſters to be applied to her Navil and Loins, made of the roul of Plaiſter for fractures and diſlocations, whereupon ſhe was better for ſome daies, but afterwards the ſame pains returned. I being called, and obſerving that the Woman was young and ſanguine, I cauſe her to be let blood, by which means in a few hours ſhe was freed from her pains and fear of miſcarriage. Her blood was ful of wheyiſh moiſture. Howbeit for preventions ſake, I order her to take a dram of pouder of Rhubarbe in broath, once a week for a month together. Alſo I willed her to anoint her belly and Loins with an aſtringent Oyntment, the day before ſhe purged, and to uſe an aſtringent Electuary the day after, but ſhe did not make uſe of them. Thoſe Symptomes came, at the very time when ſhe was wont to have her monthly purgations, when ſhe was not with Child. Afterwards, when ſhe was in her third Month, the ſame Symptomes returned, and ſhe was preſently freed by blood-letting. Likewiſe, in the fourth, fifth, ſixth, ſeventh and eight Month, the ſame Symptomes periodically returning, ſhe was again let blood, and they ceaſed. The laſt Blood-letting was performed eight daies before the beginning of the Ninth month, with the like good ſucceſs, viz. On the 15. of *January*, 1632. And at the end of the ninth Month, ſhe brought forth a boy, wel fleſht and lively, but ſomwhat pale.

The 54 *Obſervation, or Hiſtory, of Famous and Rare Cures*, &c.

A Semitertian Ague with Head-ach.

ON the 12. of *October*, 1631. I was called to the Lady of *Leſignan* being ſick of a continual Feaver joyned with an Ague, and heavy pain in her Head, alſo a pain in the tendons

dons of her Neck, and a fluxion of Rheum into her right Eye; whence I conjectured that the pain of her Head was Idiopathick, which ſhe had caught by expoſing her ſelf to the cold Air of the Night; her Feaver was ſufficiently ſlow, and flegmatick, without thirſt, I found her in the fourteen day of her Diſeaſe; and ſhe had been once let blood before, and had two purging Medicaments given her, alſo a plentyful ſweat brake forth on the foreſaid fourteenth day, but al did no good; her Feaver was ſtil the ſame, which grew more violent towards evening, with coldneſs of her extream Parts, by which the fits were known. On the fifteen and ſixteen daies ſhe was again let blood; afterward a Medicament was given her and after ſome daies repeated, of the Infuſion of Senna with Creme of Tartar; alſo opening broaths were given, becauſe ſhe refuſed Juleps and other internal Remedies; Fomentations and Oyntments were applied to her Hypochondria, which appeared to be diſtended. Becauſe of her Head-ach, a veſicatory and Plaiſter were applied to the Sutura; theſe things were continued to the twenty ſix day of the Diſeaſe, her Feaver continuing, the Urins being ſomtimes digeſted with a laudable ſwim; ſomtimes crude with a Swim very much divided, and many times of three Urins which were ſaved in the night, the firſt and third were crude, the middle moſt laudable, which threatned that the Diſeaſe would be long. After the foreſaid time, ſeing ſhe refuſed other Remedies, I give her three daies together half a dram of Salt of Tartar, and fifteen drops of ſpirit of Vitriol, in a Decoction of Wormwood, whereupon ſhe grew very wel, and her Feaver was conquered. Howbeit her Urins remained thin, with a ſwim torn as it were in peices: ſhe was purged again, and ſo perfectly recovered.

The 55 Obſervation, or Hiſtory, of Famous and Rare Cures, &c.

Of a Cough and Catarrh in an Infant.

THe ſon of Mſr. *Boirarques*, Controller in the Chamber of Accounts at *Montpelier*, eleven Months old, was ſick of a Catarrhe, with a continual Cough and Feaver, he frequently vomited flegm, he ſucke much, and Piſt little. After many Medicaments uſed to little purpoſe, I ordered them to anoint the Region of his Kidneys with Oyl of Scorpions of *Matthiolus*, thrice a day, whereupon he made Urine more plentifully, and his Catarrhe was abated. For *Mercatus* ſaies in his 8. Book of the Diſeaſes of Children, that Catarrhes happen in Children, ſomtimes by fault and through weakneſs of the Kidneys; when they do not draw the wheyiſh humor, whence it comes to paſs that the ſaid humor being drawn upwards, becomes matter of a Catarrhe. If that Symptome had continued, thoſe remedies had been uſed, which are propounded by the ſaid *Mercatus*, Chap. 13. Where he treates of Urine in Children ſuppreſſed, as Clyſters, opening broaths, &c.

The 56 Obſervation, or Hiſtory, of Famous and Rare Cures, &c.

A pleuriſie.

A Tailor being young and Cholerick, and troubled with a Pleuriſie, after many bloodlettings, and other ordinary remedies, on the fifth day a Feaver violently continuing with a pain in his ſide, he did take a roaſted apple with a dram of Franckincenſe, and drank thereupon four ounces of Carduus water, and afterwards being covered, he ſweat a little, without any diminution of his Feaver, the day following he did ſweat very much twice or thrice, and ſo recovered his Health.

The 57 Obſervation, or Hiſtory, of Famous and Rare Cures, &c.

A Continual Feaver in a little Girle.

IN the year, 1632. In the Month of *January*, the Daughter of Mr. *Darenes* a Lawyer, being ſeven years old was ſick of a continual Feaver, not very vehement, but more violent at cer-

tain times, viz. Towards the evening. The Feaver began with a flegmatick vomiting, which was followed by a looſneſs continuing for a day, by which flegm was likewiſe voided, her breath was ſowr and ſtinking. I preſcribe her a potion of a dram of Rhubarbe, with an ounce of Syrup of Roſes. Before the Medicine was given her, there came another Phyſitian that would have it omitted, and maintained that it was better to let her blood. Howbeit ſhe took the Medicament, which ſhe vomited up ſoon after, with thick and very putrid flegm. Then I preſcribed her a Clyſter with half an ounce of *Diacatholicum*, to be given her about evening, with which and the other Medicament working together, ſhe had five ſtools that night, conſiſting of Flegmatick, Cholerick, and very ſtinking matter. In the morning her Feaver was very ſmal, and at noon, ſhe was free therefrom, and reſtored to her health.

From this Obſervation may be gathered, how much thoſe Phyſitians are miſtaken, who conceive that in al continual Feavers, the Cure muſt be begun with blood-letting. Seeing that many times in Children the ſaid Feavers ariſe from putrid Humors, ſettling in the firſt Region; which are eaſily drawn away by purging. Now in this Girle, her vomiting of flegm, and her looſeneſs, did ſhew the redundancy of ſuch an Humor.

The 58 *Obſervation, or Hiſtory, of Famous and Rare Cures,* &c.

The Cholick pain.

THe Wife of Mr. *Audifret*, a Citizen of *Montpelier*, was troubled with a moſt grievous Cholick pain, the 22. of *January*, 1632. A Carminative and purging Clyſter was adminiſtred in vain. I being called, preſcribe another Clyſter of a Decoction of Emollient and carminative things, made in a like quantity of water and white wine, diſſolving therein one ounce of Catholicum, two ounces of Honey of Roſes, and four ounces of Aqua Benedicta. Preſently after ſhe had taken the Clyſter, the pain ceaſed, ſhe ſlept three hours, was afterward moderately purged, and her pain returned no more.

If you deſire a competent knowledg in the Art of Phyſick, read *Riolanus* Guide to Phyſick and Chyrurgery, with *Johnſtons* Idea of Practical Phyſick, and *Riverius* Practice, Engliſhed by me.

The 59 *Obſervation, or Hiſtory, of Famous and Rare Cures,* &c.

Cholick pain.

ON the 8. of *March*, 1632. Mris. *de Varanda*, being ſixty years of Age, was tormented with moſt grievous pains about the Region of her Loyns, Liver, Stomach and Guts: two Clyſters were given her, with which ſhe was luſtily purged, and a great Cupping-glaſs was faſtened, before and behind, her pains continued very vehement. I being ſent for, give her a dram of the pouder of a Wolfes Guts, in three ounces of wine; her pain preſently ceaſed. And the following day a purging Medicament was given her, to expel the reliques of the Morbifick matter.

The 60 *Obſervation, or Hiſtory, of Famous and Rare Cures, &c.*

Tiſsick, Inflamation of the Lungs, and palpitation of the Heart.

ON the 8. of *April*. 1632. the Widow of Mſr. *de Sejelory*, a Citizen of *Montpelier*, ſtarting out of her bed about midnight, thinly clad, to the window, was preſently taken with great ſhortneſs of breath, like a fit of the Tiſsick, with a Cough, ſpitting of blood, a Feaver, and redneſs of face. I being ſent for, Cauſe a Vein to be opened in her right Arm, and

and eight ounces of blood being taken away, her ſhortneſs of breath preſently ceaſed. Afterwards a laxative Clyſter was injected, and a julep given her, of red poppy water, ſyrup of violets, Sal prunellæ, and Confectio de Hyacintho.

On the ninth day, at ten in the forenoon, I viſit her again, and find her in a Feaver, troubled with a cough and ſpitting of bloody matter; alſo ſhe felt an heavy weight in the middle of her breaſt with an inward burning, and prickings in many parts of her Cheſt. I cauſe her to be let blood in her left Arme, and that the Clyſter and julep ſhould be repeated; to anoint her breaſt with oyl of Violets, and that ſhe lick frequently ſome Syrup of Violets. After the blood-letting, ſhe was preſently eaſed, and that ſence of weight and burning in her Cheſt were abated. At five a clock in the evening, the ſame day, conceiving that vapors aroſe from beneath, and humors into her Cheſt, which that ſhortneſs of breath did ſufficiently declare, I cauſe her to be let blood in the Saphena veine, after which ſhe was alſo better. The night following ſhe tooke the foreſaid julep again; ſhe ſlept but little.

On the tenth day in the morning ſhe was better, her Feaver and other ſymptoms were very remiſs. About the third hour of the evening, ſhe had a coldneſs in her extreame parts, with a light ſweat in her feet, and palmes of her hands, after that an acute Feaver, her pulſe very much expreſſed, and the ſenſe of heavineſs in her Cheſt very much augmented. Dr. *Ranchines* the Chancellor was called to conſultation, who conceived that it was a pleuriſy ariſing from Inflamation of the mediaſtinum. And by common conſent, ſhe was let blood in her right Arme to ſeven ounces, after which alſo ſhe was better, the other medicines were continued, alſo frictions, ligatures, and Cupping-glaſſes were frequently applied to her lower parts.

On the eleventh day which was the third of her ſickneſs, moved with what I had obſerved in another diſeaſe of the ſame patient, in which ſhe was afflicted by turns with a flux of her belly joined with a teneſmus, and a catarrh falling upon her breſt; ſo that as often as her looſneſs ſtopt, ſhe was greivouſly afflicted with her Catarrh; and when her flux returned, her Catarrh preſently ceaſed, the humor falling into her breaſt, being drawn downwards, I conceived that a purge would do her moſt good, which I made after this manner.

Take, *Leaves of Bugloſs and Lettice of each one handful; Tamarinds halfe an ounce; Lycorin three drams, violet flowers one pugil. Boyl al to four ounces. In the ſtrained liquor diſſolve one dram of Rhubarb, infuſed in Bugloſs water with yellow Sanders, Manna, and ſyrup of Roſes of each one ounce. Make al into a potion; which ſhe took in the morning, and voided much flegmatick, wheyiſh, ſharp and ſtinking matter. Nevertheleſs the diſeaſe was more violent towards the evening as formerly; yet her pulſe was not oppreſſed as before, and the weight in her breaſt was leſs. But ſhe felt a pain about her right chanel bone, which encreaſed by handling the ſame; ſhe ſlept little that night, ſhe tooke emulſions frequently.*

The fourth day of her diſeaſe, and the twelth of the month, when as in the morning her Feaver and the pain in her chanel bone continued, Dr. *Ranchinus* was again called to conſult, and beſides the foreſaid ſymptoms, ſhe had a great palpitation of her Heart, which appeared alſo in her right Hypochondrium, alſo in her right ſide, but it laſted not long there. But about her heart it continued and did beat like an hammer, violently. She was again let blood in her right Arme, and an ointment was appointed for the part pained, and remedies to revel the humors to the lower parts. About evening the diſeaſe was again exaſperated, and the palpitation continued. Some houres after ſhe did ſweat a little, al her body over, by which ſhe was a little eaſed. But her palpitation and Feaver continued as before. When we began to ſuſpect that vapours did ariſe from her womb, we preſcribed her a Clyſter for the Mother, Frictions, Ligatures, and Cupping-glaſſes to be applyed to her lower parts. Emplaſtrum Hyſtericum was applied to her Navel, and a julep was given her to aſſiſt her ſweating, of Scabious and Carduus water with Bezoar ſtone, and half an ounce of Orenge flower water in regard of her womb. In the night, ſhe had three large ſtooles, of ſtinking corrupt matter. After midnight ſhe ſlept quietly til morning.

On the fift day of the diſeaſe, I found her in the morninng with a ſmal Feaver, without any oppreſſion in her breaſt, or any pain, and with very little palpitation of heart. About evening ſhe did ſweat a little, and was better afterwards. After ſhe had voided her Clyſter, her Palpitation was augmented, her Feaver became more intenſe, and ſhe was pretty wel in the night.

On the ſixt day, al things were as before, in the evening Cupping-glaſſes were applied with Scarrification, which did her good.

On

On the ſeventh day, her Courſes began to flow plentifully, by which meanes al Symptomes were very much abated.

On the eight day ſhe was better.

On the ninth day ſhe had a light looſneſs joyned with a Teneſmus, by which ſhe voided few flegmatick excrements, and before that looſneſs, ſhe vomited much bitter ſtuffe.

The Humors were prepared with temperate aperitives.

On the tenth day which was the eighteenth day of the month, her looſneſs was leſs, at night it ſtopt quite, ſhe had no Feaver. And after that ſhe plainly amended.

On the 29 of the ſaid month of April, when ſhe felt her ſelf exceeding wel, and was buſie about her houſehold occaſions, as ſhe was ſitting in a Chair, ſhe fell ſuddenly to the ground, and died.

Her body being opened, her Mediaſtinum was found ful of wheyiſh blood, which peradventure, the membrane being broken towards the upper part of the lungs, and preſſing the ſame and the Aſpera Arteria might ſuddenly choak her. Moreover the whol ſubſtance of her Lungs was found ful of a purulent matter, exceeding heavy: alſo her left teſticle was as big as a ſmal Egg, of a blackiſh color, and as it were Gangrenated. Yea and as ſoon as it was opened, there leapt out of the middle of her teſticle, a certain matter like a nut kernel, and very like a putrefied Clotter of blood. We conjectured that to have been the cauſe of her mother fitts, to which ſhe was very much ſubject; yea peradventure the palpitation of her Heart aroſe from thence, viz. from filthy vapors, aſcending from that part.

The 61 Obſervation, or Hiſtory, of Famous and Rare Cures, &c.

Of Symptoms after Abortion.

The renowned wife of Mr. *Deſgardies*, on the twenty eighth of *March* 1632. Suffered Abortion, by which ſhe voided her ſecondines in the firſt place with much blood, whence extream weakneſs brought her in danger of her life. The flux of blood being ſtopped, the day after ſhe voided her child, now it was of four months. And ſhe ſeemed afterward to recover, and was indifferently purged. Howbeit an extreame carrionly ſtink was perceived, in her purgations. On the ſeventh day ſhe was taken with an intenſe Feaver, and voided that ſame fleſhy womb-cake which is called the womb-Liver, very ſtinking, and ful of black blood; whereupon ſhe grew afterwards wel, by little and little.

The ſame happened in *Madam de Larochе*, who the fifteen day of *April* the ſame yeare, having been four months great, and ſuffering abortion, did void her child with the Membranes, and was therefore judged cleare. Yet ſhe afterwards fel into a violent Feaver, with frequent ſhiverings and Faintings. After which ſhe voided moſt ſtinking purgations, with clotters of blood, and bitts of fleſh. On the ſeventh day ſhe voided the foreſaid womb-cake whol, which was extream ſtinking, whereupon ſhe began to be better, and by little a little recovered.

Theſe two ſtories teach us, that the purgations of the womb, when they ſtink like a dead Carcaſs, do for the moſt part ſignifie, that there is ſome part of the ſecondines abiding yet in the womb. See more of this in the Practice of Phyſick of the laſt edition engliſhed by me.

The 62 Obſervation, or Hiſtory, of Famous and Rare Cures, &c.

Of Scabbyneſs.

A Young Man, ſervant to *Mſr. Graſſetus* one of his Majeſties Judges, was tormented with a filthy Scab, with felons frequently breaking forth; of which diſeaſes he could not be freed by blood-letting, and many purges uſed at times, in the ſpace of ſixe months. At laſt there was given him one ſcruple of Mercurius dulcis and halfe a ſcruple of Diagridium, with which being excellently purged, he was in a few daies freed from that filthy ſcab.

The

The 63 Obſveration, or Hiſtory, of Famous and Rare Cures, &c.

Belly-ake.

THe Wife of *Mſr. de la Faverie*, having had the jaundies for a time, of which ſhe was imperfectly cured, ſhe fel into a long laſting tertian Ague, which being ended, a ſlow Feaver remained, with exaſperations every other day, and hardneſs of her Liver. Upon theſe there followed a moſt cruel paine, which did at firſt torment the region of the Liver, and afterwards the whol belly, eſpecially the Region of her womb, her courſes being very little; Clyſters were given her, Fomentations and liniments were applied, with which the paine was very much abated, but eſpecially by giving her half a dram of Sulphur poudered, mixed with one dram of nutmeg; this was given her by another ancient Phyſitian, in my abſence, and he kept it as a ſecret. But the pain was not quite taken away, and it ſoon returned again, with no leſs vehemence, ſo that the patient ſeemed to be now in danger of her life. The foreſaid remedies being repeated in vain, I preſcribed her theſe following pills, the 29. of *July* 1632.

Take *Aloes two ſcruples, Laudanum opiate four grains, diagrydium ſix grains. Make all into ſix pils; which after the patient had ſwallowed at the beginning of the night, ſhe ſlept an houre, and when ſhe waked, ſhe profeſt her pain was quite gone. She ſlept indifferently the reſt of the night, did ſweat much, was very wel in the morning, free from pain and Feaver; ſhe was not at al purged, but in the morning ſhe had a Clyſter, and thereby voided many excrements, which being repeated every morning, three daies together, her pain returned no more.*

The 64 Obſervation, or Hiſtory, of Famous and Rare Cures, &c.

Of A Liver Flux and Dyſentery.

A Certaine Baker having had a bloody flux for two months, fel at laſt into a flux of the Liver, wherewith he voided much watry blood, without other humors, with a Feaver and extream weakneſs, whereupon his Friends judging that he would quickly die, ſent for the Divine and the Scrivener. I being likewiſe ſent for, give him four grains of Laudanum about evening, and within an houre his flux ſtopped, and he went not to ſtoole all that night, until next day at noone, at what time his flux returned, but it was not bloody, but only cholerick; but in the evening there was a little blood mingled therewith. On the ſame day in the morning ſix ounces of blood were taken from him in two veſſels, the laſt of which was hot froathy blood. Cooling aſtringent Juleps were preſcribed him, Epithemes, and a cooling ointment to be applied to his Liver, and the tincture of Roſes for his ordinary drink. Theſe things were adminiſtred on the 14. of *Auguſt*, 1632. The night following was bad enough, and without ſleep, with many Cholerick and ſomtimes bloody ſtooles. But on the fifteen day he took a potion of Rhubarb, Tamarinds and Myrobalans, in a cooling and binding decoction, with which he was much purged al day long, and very much weakned. At the evening, he took the Laudanum again, and preſently his flux was ſtopt, yet he ſlept not al night. In the morning there was preſcribed a binding fomentation, of roots, herbs, and other materialls ſhut in a bag, and boyled in red wine and Vinegar, and ſo applied hot to his whol belly. Alſo a julep of the juice of Porſlane, Plantane and Services; and withal a ſtrengthening and binding pouder, to be uſed in his broaths and panadaes, and in the ſpace of twenty four houres he was perfectly cured.

The 65 Obſervation, or Hiſtory, of Famous and Rare Cures, &c.

Of Mother-fits.

The Wife of *Mſr. Mouretus* a Proctor, was taken the 15 of *Auguſt* 1632. With frequent ſtomach

ſtomach ſickneſs, which made her vomit a little flegm with great ſtraining, paine at her heart, and a fitt of Feaver, which appeared and diſappeared many times in a day. Then her Courſes appeared before their due time. I conceive ſhe is troubled with ſome diſeaſe in her womb and I appoint her an hyſterical Clyſter, a plaiſter of Galbanum, and a ſmal potion of Orenge flower water two ounces, and four grains of Caſtorium. Theſe things did her no good, and beſides her Courſes ſtopt. On the ſecond day, when her ſtomach was ſick I give her a potion of Sal of vitriol, wherewith ſhe vomited an huge quantity of Clammy flegm, with great labor and ſtraining. On the third day I cauſe a vein to be opened in her ankle, which did her much good. But on the fourth day ſhe was troubled with faintings & languiſhings, ſo that ſhe ſaid ſhe perceived the vapors ariſe to her heart. A vein was opened in her other ankle, to no purpoſe. On the fift day this following potion was given her, which is very good for ſuch as are troubled with the mother.

Take *Muſk and Dragons blood of each thirteen grains, Orenge-flower water four ounces. Make them into a potion.*

With this medicine ſhe was very much eaſed, and was better all the day after. But upon the ſixt day, her ſymptoms returned, with which ſhe was alſo very much troubled the ſeventh day. On the eight ſhe took one dram of pilulæ fetidæ, with which ſhe was very wel purged, and was ſo wel afterward, that ſhe needed no more Phyſick.

The 66 Obſervation, or Hiorſtory, of Famous and Rare Cures, &c.

A Dyſentery.

THe young ſon of Msr. *Dorthes*, two yeares old, was troubled with a ſtubborn bloody flux; after many other remedies given in vain, I gave him half a ſcruple of extract of corals, with Plantane water, and the looſneſs was ſtopt the ſame day.

The 67 Obſervation, or Hiſtory, of Famous and Rare Cures, &c.

Cholick pains.

A Certaine Courtier when the King was at *Montpelier*, on the 2 of *October* 1632. Fel into a certain moſt greivous Cholick pain, for the removal whereof, Firſt a Clyſter was given, emollient and purgative, after that a carminating and evacuating Clyſter with terpentine, with which he was eaſed, but the pain returned ſoon after. Finally I cauſe to be diſſolved in a Carminating decoction four ounces of Aqua benedicta, and one ounce of Diaphenicum. With which Clyſter he had four ſtooles, and voided much flegmatick matter, and was perfectly cured.

With the ſame Clyſter Msr. *Verchand*, a Citizen of *Montpelier*, dwelling near St. *Firmins*, was freed two months agoe, from the like paine.

The 68 Obſervation, or Hiſtory, of Famous and Rare Cures, &c.

Hardneſs of the Liver with a Cachexy.

M*Adam de la Faverie* after the diſeaſe fore-deſcribed, obſerve. 63. Was troubled with a Cachexie and palpable hardneſs of her Liver. By the uſe of theſe following Pils for twenty daies together, ſhe was perfectly reſtored to health.

Take, *Calibs prepared with ſulphur, half an ounce; the beſt Aloes, Senna, Agrick Trochiſked, and choyſe Rubarb, of each one dram; pouder of diarrhodon Abbatis half a dram; Saffron half a ſcruple; with Syrup of Roſes ſolutive make a maſs of Pil-ſtuffe. Of which let her take one dram every day in the morning, walking lightly after it, and after three hours let her take ſome broath, wherein the Leaves and Roots of Perſely have been boyled.*

Becauſe

Because these Pils did not purge, there was added twice or thrice four grains of diagridium to one dose.

The 69 Observation, or History, of Famous and Rare Cures, &c.

A Disease resembling the Mother.

THe Wife of Mr. *Salgues*, a Merchant of *Montpelier*, which tormented many daies together with a pain about the Region of her Liver, with a light swouning, and a certain constriction of her jawes, and flegmatick vomitings: her pains returned by fits, and sometimes reached to other parts of her belly. Sometimes she was taken with such fainting fits, that she seemed as though she would presently give up the Ghost. Seeing it was conceived to be the mother which troubled her, fuitable Remedies were used, but al the symptomes did returne afterwards. At last having used bathes, fomentations, and clysters, she voided by stoole a certain flegmatick compact and broad matter like a swatheband, of an hands breadth, and afterwards she had some stooles of slimy matter, and at last was perfectly wel.

If you intend to be skilful in Physick, diligently peruse my guide to Physick and Chyrurgery And the *Idea* of Practical Physick, and *Riverius* Practice: al englished by me. And be sure you don't scratch your head with a pair of fools fingers.

The 70 Observation, or History, of Famous and Rare Cures, &c.

The Dropsie.

A Certaine young man twenty five yeares of Age, being the Cooke of the Marques *De Varenas*, after a continual and intermitting Feaver, fel into a dropsie tympanies, with abundance of water joyned therewith; after many remedies and frequent purgings, by meanes of which he voided much serosity and wind, and his belly grew lesser, which in twenty four hours time returned to its former greatness; at last with these two following remedies used for fifteen dayes together, he was cured.

Take *Eryngos roots, of madder, smalage, and parsly, barke of caper roots, middle rind of the ash tree, and tamariske, of each one ounce; Asarum roots half an ounce; Leaves of agrimony, Ceterach, maidenhair, ground-oake, St. Iohns wort, wormwood, Centory, of each one handful. Carrot seed, and parsly seed of macedonia, of each half an ounce. Boile them in two parts of water and one part of white wine to thirty ounces. In the strained liquor dissolve foure ounces of syrup of Cichory with rhubarbe. Make it into an Apozeme, for four doses to be taken four mornings, adding to every Dose, halfe an ounce of diuretick spirit, and one scruple of spirit of vitriol.*

After the third or fourth dose of the Apozeme, he was purged with six grains of Mercurius Vitæ and ten grains of Scammony, which caused no vomit, only wrought downward.

The other Remedie was a Cataplasme of the rootes of wild cucumber made with pouder of cummin seed. Whose description you have in my practice in the Chapter of a dropsie.

The 71 Observation, or History, of famous and Rare Cures, &c.

Of Smal Pocks and bloody flux.

A Boy five yeares old, the son of Mr. *Limousin* a Baker, being struchen sick of the smal pocks, the third day was taken with a bloody flux, with a frequent desire of going to stool, he voided flegmatick and snotty excrements, with great store of blood. The pocks were smal, white and flat: being called to see him, I præscribe as followes.

Take *red rose leaves one pugil; red sanders half an ounce; Liquoris scraped and whole raisons, of each one ounce: boyle them in the broath of a wethers head. In nine ounces of the strained li-*

quour diſſolve three drams of confectio de hyacintho, Conſerve of roſes forced through a ſearſe halfe an ounce, one egge. Make al into a clyſter and give it oftentimes.

Take waters of ſcabious and carduus, of each one ounce and an half; ſyrupe of dryed roſes one ounce; coral prepared, and perles prepared, of each halfe a ſcruple; Bezoar-ſtone three graines; Confectio De hyacintho half a dram. Make al into a julep which give him twice a day.

Take oyl of Scorpions of Mathiolus half an ounce, anoint his groines and arm-pits therewith frequently.

When he had twice uſed the cliſter, and twice taken the julep, his looſeneſs was quite ſtopped, and the ſmal pocks began to breake out more powerfully, and the diſeaſe was afterward perfectly cured, ſo that he had no further need of my aſſiſtance.

Although the remedies propounded are common: yet this Caſe deſerves obſervation, becauſe of the extraordinary event thereof; of al the children that ever I ſaw in my whole life, that had the ſmal pocks and a bloody flux none ever eſcaped but this: in others the bloody flux was a certain ſign of death, eſpecially when much blood came away.

The 72 Obſervation, or Hiſtory, of famous and Rare Cures, &c.

Of a Malignant pleureſie.

THe Wife of Mſr. *Argelies* of *Frontinia*, about the end of *March* 1633. was troubled with a moſt greivous pleureſie in her right ſide. About the end of the ſeventh day and the beginning of the eight, ſhe was ſuddenly taken with a grievous palpitation of the Heart, ſo that her ordinary Phyſitian ſuppoſed the pangs of death to be upon her, and pronounced openly, that ſhe would ſuddenly die. But I conceived this palpitation to proceed from ſome putrid matter contained in her belly, and ſending vapours upward. The event ſhewed it to be ſo, for after two hours ſhe went twice to ſtool, & voided very ſtinking excrements, & ſo the palpitation ceaſed. Her caſe was counted dangerous, becauſe the diſeaſe would not abate for ſeven dayes together though frequent remedies were uſed, and ſhe did ſeem abated, yet on the eleventh day there was a riſing behind her ear, which ſtruck in again the day following, and on the thirteenth day ſhe died. Whence it was manifeſt, that her diſeaſe was a malignant pleureſie, or rather a malignant feaver attended by a pleureſie.

The 73 Obſervation, or Hiſtory, of Famous and Rare Cures, &c.

Of a Baſtard pleureſie.

ABout the ſame time, the maid-ſervant of Mſr. *Germain*, a Citizen of *Montpelier*, had a pricking pain in her ſide, with a cough and white ſpittings, which nevertheleſs appeared twice or thrice bloody; ſhe could lie beſt on her pained ſide, which was the right. Now ſhe had no feaver, which ſhewed that is was no true pleureſie, ſeeing ſuch an inflamation cannot be without an acute feaver. On the ſeventh day of her ſickneſs, the pain never ceaſing al the while ſhe ſpet blood plentifully for ſome hours, after which followed the flux of her courſes, and after that her diſeaſe was perfectly terminated. I conceived the cauſe of this dieaſe to be a certain ſharp wheyiſh humor, brought into her ſide by the veins which cauſed a pain without inflamation. Which humor being much ſtirred on the ſeventh day, it opened ſome ſmal veins, whence her ſpitting of blood was occaſioned. But nature conquering, and ſending the ſaid wheyiſh humor to the veins of the womb, the diſeaſe was terminated.

THE

The 74 Observation, or History, of famous and Rare Cures, &c.

A palsie and Convulsion, being Hypochondriacal symptomes.

Mr. *Fauquet* a Physitian of *Provins* was troubled the foregoing Autumne with a very long lasting double tertian which lasted to the beginning of winter 1633. He was of a melancholick complexion, being forty yeares old, he had fed in the Lent upon bad diet, also had been troubled with very grievous passions of mind. After Easter he began to be troubled with a Catarrh falling upon his left shoulder blade, where he felt a paine; a few daies after he fel into a painful imminution of motion and sence, in al parts almost, but especially in his Legs and thighes. Moreover painful stretching, happened by fits in the said parts, so that the toes of his feet were contracted, and the muscles neare his groines were stretched like cords. In his upper parts, especially his arms, he could stir himself more freely. But in al parts, his sence was obtuse and dul, so that he affirmed he had little or no feeling in his sole and face. He voided at his mouth, a thin humor, which he said tasted sharp and bitter like vitriol; every day his Feaver was exasperated, and during the exacerbation, the tension of his muscles, his fluxion and other symptomes were encreased, also his breast was very much straitned, so that he seemed to be stifled. At the beginning of his ilnes, he was twice let blood, and twice purged, and went to the Balerucan Baths; where he was four times put into the bath four dayes together, and had his Head washed, to no purpose. Being returned from the Bath, he took my Advice. Now I judged that this disease of his proceeded from a wheyish humor, flowing from his braine, into the marrow of his back, and al the body of the nerves: and that the said wheyish humor was first gathered in his hypochondria, especially in the mesaraick veins, where a great quantity of melancholly humor was contained, bread of foregoing Causes. So that I conceived this Disease of his was an Hypochondriacal affection, whose symptomes were that same palsie and imperfect convulsion, bread of a wheyish humor, fluxt into the foresaid parts. An Argument wherof was both the melancholick constitution of the patient, as also the flowing of such an humor from his Mouth, in great quantity, likewise the Feaver wherewith he was troubled in a manner continually; and as his feaver encreased, all the symptomes encreased; whenas nevertheless a palsie is wont to cure a feaver proceeding from flegme. Now *Sennertus* tels us that such symptomes proceed from a melancholly humor, treating of the hypochondriacal disease, and of the scurvy. This is no palsie properly so called, which is caused by the stoppage of the beginning of the nerves, but abusively so called, being no total privation of sence and motion, by stopping the influx of the animal spirits through the nerves; but rather a depravation of the sensitive motive function, because there is a painful sense.

I prescribed him an Apozeme for many dayes together of temperate aperitives, purging him one day and altering another, and applying an emollient and opening fomentation to his hypochondria; a liniment of the same faculty; also blood-letting after the first dose of the Apozeme, a clyster being premised and a purging medicament. He used for his drinke, the infusion of tamariske barke, Agrimony and Burnet. But the blood which came from him, appearing very ful of bad juyce, he was let blood againe. He found no good by his other medicaments, but seemed to grow worse.

On the 24 of *April*, I visited him againe, and found him very weake, with a continual slow Feaver, which had nevertheless paroxysmes of a tertian ague. In which his Hypochondria were puffed up with winde, by fits, especially his Spleen. Sometimes also by reason of the said wine, his midrife was so compressed, that he would cry out, he was choaked and stifled; and having drunke a cup of water, he belched twice or thrice, and was presently freed from the said suffocation. A fatty substance did swim upon his urines, like Cobwebs, and their sediments were of a mealy substance. Which kind of Urines are deadly, according to *Hippocrates* in the second of his Prognostickes. On his wel day he did spit exceedingly, and felt the humor trickle down between his scul and skin, or the muscles of his face.

On the 29 of *April*, I visited him againe, being at the last cast, his pulse very smal, his

ſpitting ſtaid, and his breath ſtopt. Yet his underſtanding was unhurt. He died the day following in the morning.

If you mean to do good in Phyſick, diligently Peruſe *Riolanus* Anatomy, *Johnſtons* Idea, and *Riverius* Practice, Engliſhed by me. And abhot Idleneſs as I do Pride and Covetouſneſs.

The 75 Obſervation, or Hiſtory, of Famous and Rare Cures, &c.

A pain in the ſide proceeding from worms.

ABout the end of the month of *April*, 1633. the daughter of *Raymund Michael*, of *Frontinia*, being eight years old, began to be troubled with a Feaver and a Cough, after which followed a pain in her ſide, ſo that ſhe was ſuppoſed to have the Pleuriſie. Howbeit, the fift day of her Diſeaſe, ſhe voided three or four worms, by means of a Clyſter; and the daies following ſhe voided more having taken Medicines againſt the wormes and a purge: and ſo ſhe was cured. Whence it appears, that Vapors ariſing from a putrid matter (of which worms are bred) do cauſe pains of the ſide, a Cough, and other Symptomes, which make ſhew of a Pleuriſie, when there is none.

The 76 Obſervation, or Hiſtory, of Famous and Rare Cures, &c.

A Kings-Evil ſwelling.

ON the 6. of *June*, 1633. Mſr. *de Gaian* brought his daughter to me being thirteen years old, of a Sanguine complexion, which appeared by the reddiſh color of her Face, and ſhe had her Courſes ever ſince ſhe was eleven years old. Having for eight moothe together had a certain fluxion upon the right ſide of her Face, a few daies after, it fel into her Neck, ſo that one of the kernels of that part ſeemed to be a little ſwelled. After that time the Tumor grew by little and little, ſo that it was now bigger than a gooſes Egg. She had many Remedies applied by a Phyſitian and Chyrurgeon in that place, for two months together, purges, ſweating Decoctions, a Cauſtick to the nape of her Neck, alſo Remedies applied to the part, firſt reſolvers and Emollients, afterwards ſuppurators and ſtrong drawers, by which no good at al was done; rather the Tumor which before was ſmal, encreaſed greater. Whereupon, I, adviſing with Mſr. *Delort*, Dean of the Univerſity, and Mr. *Thierry Hagenot*, an ancient Chyrurgeon: At firſt we ſent her to the Balerucan baths, that ſhe might uſe them in drink, bathing, and have them powred upon her Head. And afterwards we preſcribed theſe following Medicaments.

Pulvis Arthriticus, to be taken with Ginger, once every week. Blood-letting after the firſt doſe of the pouder.

Fomentation by a ſpunge wet in chalk water, preſſed forth, and tied hard on upon the part, for ten daies together. A Suffumigation of the ſtone Pyrites quenched in moſt ſtrong Vinegar, and the ſmoak received by a Funnel which ſhal cover al the Tumor.

After the Suffumigation the Emplaſter of Vigo with a fourfold quantity of Quick-ſilver, to every ounce of which plaiſter add one dram of Roman Vitriol.

A Diet drink of Salſaparilla, to be uſed a long time, without Wine.

The infuſion for the Branchocele, deſcribed in the *Diſpenſatory* of *Quercetanus*, which muſt be uſed when the moon is in the ful.

The waters of Meyn, drunk for a month together, and applied by way of fomentation to the part, twice a day, and of the ſame water a Diet drink was made.

Her Diet was continually drying.

After

After her return from the waters of Meyn, if the Tumor shal not be discussed, it must be opened with a Caustick.

Those were the Remedies we ordered for her, and she used al of them excepting the waters of Meyn; because when the other things did no good, but the swelling rather encreased, there was no hope from these waters, but we thought best to come to open the Tumor which was done on the 19. of *September*, 1633. And when after a Caustick, incision was made upon the Eschar, a very thin and clear water brake forth, like fountain water, and the Tumor presently fel, and was wel near as flat as the opposite part, which made us wonder, and we judged it worthy of observation. For I suppose no Author ever wrote of any such Tumor proceeding from water, saving the Hydrocele, and Hydrocephalos. Ten or twelve hours after it had been opened she was troubled with an acute Feaver, and a great fluxion happened into the part, with inflamation; on the third day the Feaver ceased, after twice blood-letting and twice purging. A Cataplasme of bread-Crums was applied to the Tumor, which settled a little, and a certain Flegmatick quittor flowed out of it. The thirteenth day after it was opened, the Eschar formerly cut off, went out at the Ulcer, the case remained whol and perfectly Membranous like a Sack, and a few daies after she was Cured.

The 77 Observation, or History, of Famous and Rare Cures, &c.

The Venereal pox.

A Certain young man of a Cholerick and Melancholick Complexion, being infected with the whore-masters Pox, in the month of *June*, 1633. Underwent a sweating Diet, and afterward was anointed with Quick-silver. After the second nointing, when the flux began to proceed wel, he was suddenly taken with a contraction of his Arms and Thighs, with a mighty stretching of his Belly, and suffocation, and suddenly his flux ceased. Vehement frictions were used upon the parts contracted, Aqua Imperialis and Cinnamon water were given him, which did no good. Afterward, we gave him of our Treacle water, drawn with spirit of Wine, with which he was much eased, and a sharp Clyster being administred his fit went away. Two daies after, because he did spit but little, Mercurial Emplasters were applied to his legs, thighs, and Armes, which within twenty four hours, made him spittle abundantly. But the patient fel into such a fit as the former, and being rubbed, and the former water being given him, also a clyster being administred, which he could not void forth again, he was no ways eased by suppositories, but seemed wholly to be choaked. I caused another sharper Clyster to be given him of two ounces of diaphenicon, and as much of Hiera picra, after which he went plentifully to stool, and was freed from his fit. The day following, he fel again, after his spitling, into the same fit, but a more greivous one than any of the former, for it could not be driven away, neither with treacle water, nor with iterated Clysters, which purged him plentifully. Finally, seeing it was my opinion from the first, that these Symptomes proceeded, from a Mass of Excrements in the stomach mounting aloft, which could not be voided at the mouth because of their thickness, or the weakness of the expulsive faculty: and being collected in great quantity, and Malignantly disposed, they vexed the mouth of the stomach, whence those Convulsions arose, by reason of the consent of the Nerves. Also, that from the foresaid matter agitated by heat, many Vapors are raised, which distending the stomach, did compress the midrif, whence followed suffocation and a stretching of the Belly: I judged therefore that his stomach was to be evacuated with a quick and potent Remedy. And to this purpose, I gave him a dram of Salt of Vitriol dissolved in water, with which in the space of a Quarter of an Hour, he voided about two pounds, of a Flegmatick, Clammy and thick Humor, mixed with Melancholly, and was presently freed from his fit; afterwards his fluxing was continued for many daies together, without any other Symptome, and so he was perfectly freed.

The 78 Observation, or History, of Famous and Rare Cures, &c.

Of Veneral Pox.

I have Cured it in many, with a Decoction made of Sudorifick and purgatives, used twenty daies together. If that did not the deed, I proceeded to fruictions with Mercurial Unguents. Many have been Cured in the middle of Winter only with this Decoction, who could not use a sweating Diet by reason of the Inclemency of the Air.

For this Disease, Read *Sennertus*, of the French Pox, Englished be me: And don't trust to a Knavish Author quoted by him which giveth Direction how to lie with the most Pocky Whore, and yet receive no harm.

The 79 Observation, or History, of Famous and Rare Cures, &c.

Of a pleurisie degenerating into an Empyema.

THe Son of Mſr. *de Calvieres*, Judg of Criminal Cases at *Nismes*, being twenty years of Age, about the middle of *May*, 1633. At *Montpelier*, fel into a pleurisie of his left side, with which he was held in such a manner, that he could not lie on either of his sides, but only upon his back. Many Remedies were prescribed for him, by three Physitians in Consultation, and he was let blood ten times, or more; yet his Disease lasted long, though the pain in his side seemed sometimes to cease, and the Patient could turn himself to any side. But his Feaver still continued and the pain of his side returned. His Feaver had lasted to the thirty five day, in which his side was observed somwhat to swel, and was pained when touched, and somwhat red. 'Twas judged, the Pleurisie was turned into an Empyema; and suppurating Cataplasmes were applied, wherewith his side did swel somwhat more, the sixt or seventh day after, when the opening of his side had been too long delayed (which ought to have been done as soon as ever the swelling in his side appeared) the impostume broak inwards. Howbeit the patient did easily Cough up the quittor, which appeared laudable and no waies stinking, and came away in a great quantity daily, at first pure, and afterwards mixed with much flegm. After the Impostume was broken, he could easily lie on either side, his Feaver lasting, whereas before he could not lie on his wel-side, because he felt a mighty weight in his pained side, which sign is observed by *Hippocrates*, in his Prognosticks. Eight daies being past after the breaking of the Impostume, the voidance of quittor ceased, and there came nothing away save flegm. Then he began to feel a weight again, in the same side, so that he could not lie upon his sound side, also some kind of rising did again appear, on the outer part of his side, I conceived a new Collection of Humors was made in his side, and that there was need speedily to open the same, least the matter being again shed into the Chest, should trouble the Lungs afresh, whence there might be danger of a Consumption. But because the other two Physitians with two Chyrurgeons, would not assent unto my judgment, and his Mother made hast to remove him; he was carryed to *Nismes*, where at last the Empyema was opened by a Caustick applied to his side and Quittor did a very long time flow from the Ulcer, and in Conclusion the Patient was perfectly cured.

The 80 Observation, or History, of Famous and Rare Cures, &c.

Child-bed purgations suppreſt.

A Woman of mean rank and quality being eight months gone with child, was taken with a continual Feaver, the 5. of *July*, 1633. On the third day of the Feaver, she miscarried, and her Child-bed Purgations were wholly stopt, purple spots appeared in her whol body, especially about her Neck; her Feaver was violent. I prescribe the opening of her Ankle vein,

and

and juleps compounded of cold aperitives, frictions of the Lower parts, a relaxing fomentation and Liniment to be applied to her ſhare and perinæum. No good ſeemed to come by all I did, rather about the end of the ſecond day after her abortion, her Feaver was very much enraged, ſo that ſhe fell into a raving, and her countenance was very much changed, whereupon every body was convinced that ſhe was in a moſt dangerous condition. Then I cauſe a vein to be opened in her Arm, and blood to be drawn to the quantity of ten ounces, which was very corrupt; it was about five a clock in the evening, and I gave order to let her blood four hours after, viz. About nine of the Clock. I preſcribe her very cooling Juleps of a decoction of Lettuce, Porſlane, Sorrel, with Sal-prunellæ, alſo a cooling and emollient Clyſter, with which Remedies ſhe was ſo amended, that the day following her Feaver appeared very ſmal, her Purgations began to flow, and in a few daies ſhe perfectly recovered, without any other Remedies.

The 81 *Obſervation, or Hiſtory of* Famous *and* Rare Cures, *&c.*

Suppreſsion of Urine by reaſon of a bit of fleſh growing in the Yard.

A Certain Officer belonging to the Senate of *Divion*, being at *Montpeler* about buſineſs, on the ſeventh of *July*, 1633. fell into a total ſuppreſſion of Urine, by a caruncle ſwelled in his yard, through immoderate carnal embracements. A Chyrurgeon whom he at firſt ſent for, putting in a Catheter cauſed a great effuſion of blood, by wounding the part, and yet he voided no urine. The ſick-man was tormented with moſt grievous pains and endeavors to piſs. I being called, ordered him to bleed twelve ounces, becauſe he was of a ſanguine Conſtitution, alſo to have an emollient and cooling Clyſter, and a lukewarm bath to ſit in, a cooling injection, and anointing of his kidneyes, ſhare, and perinæum with a cooling ointment; it was nine a clock in the evening, and I then ordered him to be let blood again about midnight, al which orders were performed. In the morning he was in the ſame condition, endeavored mightily to make water, but could do nothing, except four or five drops at a time. Being ſent for again I preſcribe him a vomit of one dram of Salt of vitriol, by help whereof, he twice vomited many flegmatick Humors; but in the ſecond vomit, he voided an ounce or two of urine, and ſaid that he was eaſed, which had not hapned before. After that, by fits, he piſt ſomwhat more plentifully, ſo that within the ſpace of four or five hours, his bladder was quite emptied. There remained ſome kind of Inflamation of the part affected, which was cured with emulſions with Sal prunellæ in them, with Injections, Clyſters a Bath to ſit in, and Inunctions.

The 82 *Obſervation, or Hiſtory, of* Famous *and* Rare Cures, *&c.*

Difficulty of Breathing.

The Son of Mſr. *Hugo*, a Merchant of *Montpelier*, five years old, having been ill ordered by his Nurſes, among divers ſymptoms, was troubled moſt with this, that when he ran, or uſed any vehement motion, he was troubled with ſhortneſs of breath. Finally, on the third of *July*, being much heated by exerciſe, he fel into a cough with difficulty of breathing, a ſmal Feaver and gentle looſneſs, by which he voided yellow, flegmatick, and ſometimes greeniſh excrements. Yet were theſe ſymptoms ſo light, that his parents had no thoughts of calling a Phyſitian; but an Apothecary applied a veſicatory behind in his neck. I being ſent for on the fift day of his diſeaſe, find the ſame ſymptoms, from whence I conjecture a fluxion upon his Lungs, with danger of an Inflamation, and therefore I order him to be let blood, which was not performed, becauſe the Chyrurgeon could not find the vein: but Cupping-glaſſes with Scarrification were preſently applied, and a pectoral cooling julep was given him. Theſe things were done about noon. But about three in the afternoon, the patient was ſuddenly taken with ſwouning, from which being quickly recovered, his pulſe was afterwards ſmal, languiſhing, frequent

frequent, and like the pulse of dying persons, his belly was very much stretched and pained, he fetchs his breath exstream short, had an unquenchable thirst. Many Remedies were used in this desperate Case, a consultation of Physitians being called, which did no good at al; but the Patient growing still worse and worse, died at midnight. The body being opened, his natural parts seemed in good Case, save that his bladder of Gal was bigger than ordinary, and ful of a blackish Humor. But the left part of his Lungs, did stick so fast to his Midrif, that it could not be parted, from whence, in part, we conceive his shortness of breath proceeded. Also the left Ear of his Heart, was larger than ordinary, and ful of a thick compacted matter, perfectly white, like boyled Lard. Which we conceive to have been the cause of his sudden death, by suffocating the left Ventricle of his heart, and hindring the Ventilation thereof.

For knowledg and Cure of these Diseases, diligently peruse *Riolanus*, *Johnstons* Idea, and my Practice of Physick.

The 83 Observation, or History, of Famous and Rare Cures, &c.

Spitting of Blood:

ON the thirteenth of *August*, 1633. Msr. *Duprat*, a Councellor at *Montpelier*, fel about night into a spitting of froathy blood, with a Cough, and voided a great quantity thereof in the space of a night.

Being called to him on the fourteenth day, in the morning, I order him to be let blood eight ounces, and after that to have a Julep of Plantan water, Syrup of dried Roses and Sal prunellæ, afterward a Clyster was given him, a Cupping-Glass was applied to the Region of his Liver, he used a thickning and astringent Lick-pot. At ten a Clock, he was again let blood to six ounces, also he was ordered to use Syrup of Purslain. In the afternoon, he fel into his spitting of blood again in great quantity, viz. To a pint, his Julep was repeated, water and Vinegar were applied to his Testicles, a cooling Epitheme to his Liver, a couling Liniment to the same part and to his Loyns, a Cupping-Glass was frequently fastened to his Hypochondria; and about evening he was again let blood in his Arm to the Quantity of seven ounces; Juleps were prescribed of the infusion of yarrow, tormentil Roots, and conserve of Roses, described in my practice of Physick, in the Chapter of spitting of blood, which are very efficacious. For drink he used Conserve of Roses, with a Decoction of Barley and Liquoris. At night this following Syrup was prescribed.

Take Syrup of dried Roses, of the Juyce of Porslane and white Poppy, of each one ounce. Mix them. Let him take a spoonful once every two hours, so as that he take the whol three ounces in the compass of that night. This Syrup did him wonderful much good, and the day following (which was the fifteenth) it was repeated again, so as that he was to take one spoonful at longer distances. On the same day in the morning a Vein was opened in his Ham, and a good Quantity of blood taken away, also the other Remedies were continued, and other things added, as an astringent and soddering Electuary; and finally, a Clyster was given him. Al which time, he did not spit very much blood, and the spittle which he coughed up at long distances, was bloody. Howbeit he was troubled with difficulty of breathing and hoarsness. But the following daies, he did spit no more blood, and became perfectly wel.

The 84 Observation, or History, of Famous and Rare Cures, &c.

A Gangrene.

A Certain man of a mean condition, being sick of a continual Feaver, had a Vein opened by an unskilful Chyrurgeon, whereupon his Arm swelled, was inflamed, and at last Gangrenated, so that his whol Arm was of a lead color. But in two places the color was most of al changed, in which he felt not the Scarrifications which were made. Wherefore after many

ny Scarrifications, the ordinary Remedies were applied, which did little good, rather his Arm did grow worſe. I, being at laſt ſent for, order the Scarrified Places to be moiſtened with ſpirit of Sulphur, whereby the mortified fleſh was burnt, and cauterized as it were. Afterwards, I order his whole Arme to be fomented, hot, with ſpirit of wine, wherein Aloes and Myrrh, had been infuſed, afterwards the foreſaid pouders of aloes and Mirrh, were Sprinkled in great quantity al his Arm over, and then were laid upon the pouders, Linnen Cloaths, wet in ſpirit of wine; which medicine being uſed for ſome hours together, his Arm in a Miraculous manner returned to its natural colour, the ſwelling being aſſwaged, and the Gangrene ſtopped, ſo that the day following, the mortified and burnt parts, began to ſeparate from the living fleſh; unto which was applied a digeſtive made of yolks of Egs, Terpentine and Honey, and after perfect ſeparation, the Cure was finiſhed with Epuloticks.

The 85 Obſervation, or hiſtory, of famous and Rare Cures, &c.

Nephritick pains.

ON the 10. of *October*, 1633. the Cook of Mſr. *de Miron*, his Majeſties Lieutenant in *Languedoc*, being many years troubled with pains in his Kidneys, which would not give way to ordinary Remedies; he took a bolus of Diaprunum Solutivum half an ounce: Panacea, one ſcruple. With which he was gently purged, made thick Urines, and was freed from his pain. While the medicine wrought, he felt the matter drawn away from his Reins, without any pain.

The 86 Obſervation, or Hiſtory, of Famous and Rare Cures, &c.

A Cholick pain.

IN the beginning of *November*, 1633. the Lady *de Varanda*, was moſt grievouſly tormented with Cholick pains, and after two Clyſters taken in vain, ſhe drank a dram of the pouder of a wolfes-gut in wine, which was given her the foregoing month for the ſame pain, as may be ſeen in the 59. Obſervation of this Centurie, and preſently her pain went away. Now ten or twelve daies after, though ſhe had been purged with Apozemes, her pain returned more ſharp than formerly; and though two drams of phylonium had been diſſolved in a clyſter, which ſhe took, her pain ceaſed not. The foreſaid pouder was given again, and the pain became leſſer, and within three hours went in a manner quite away. But the day after it returned more bitter than before. Five grains of Laudanum were given her, and her pain was quite taken away, and returned no more.

The 87 Obſervation, or Hiſtory, of famous and Rare Cures, &c.

Of an Ulcer in the Heart.

ON the 23 of *January* 1634. I was called to the daughter of Mſr. N. Fourteen yeares old, who had for many daies before been troubled with a vomiting of flegm, which took her once or twice in a day, eſpecially in the morning, with an Heart-burning which troubled her by fits. Alſo ſhe had a pain on the top of her left ſhoulder blade, and on the top of her arm where it is joyned to her ſhoulder. The night following, which was the fift ſince ſhe was firſt il, ſhe was taken with a Looſneſs, and a feaver, which held her al day. On the ſixt day ſhe took one dram of rhubarbe poudered, with broath, and had many ſtooles; the Feaver continues, in the night ſhe had but two ſtooles, and ſlept two houers. On the ſeventh day her looſneſs continues, but not ſo frequent; ſo that ſhe was let blood four ounces. Theſe two things we alwaies obſerved upon the coming of

her feaver, that her pulſe was in a manner alwaies intermittent; and whereas the foreſaid pain continued evermore fixed in the ſame part, and did not at al reach unto the Cheſt; yet the patient could not lie upon that ſide, viz. her left, but preſently ſhe was taken with the heart-burning and Cough, ſo that ſhe was alwaies forced to lie upon her right ſide. A drie Cough vext her by fits, ſomtimes ſhe voided wind upwards and downwards, and the ſame ſymptomes continue, eſpecially heart-burning by fits, and a pulſe unequally intermitting, little ſleep; ſhe continued the uſe of cordial medicaments internally and externally, alſo worm-killers, and ſuch as ſtrengthened the ſtomach. When her heart-burning did very much trouble her ſhe took a ſcruple of ſalt of wormwood, with a ſpoonful of juyce of Lemmons; after which ſhe was exceeding wel for ſome hours, but her ſymptomes returned, at night her Urines were thick and ſufficiently pale. On the ninth day a Veſicatory was applied to her neck, whereby her cough ceaſed; and before that the pain of her ſhoulder was abated and ſhe could better endure to lie upon her left ſide. The ſame day ſhe took one dram of the Infuſion of rhubarb, with one dram of Hiera picra, and one ounce of ſyrup of Cichory with rhubarb, with which ſhe was very much purged to good purpoſe, and her Looſneſs continued ſome daies, whereupon ſhe ſeemed to be perfectly upon her Recovery; though her pulſe did ſtil intermit, in the third, fourth, or fift pulſation. After that ſhe was riſen out of her bed, the intermiſſion of her pulſe ceaſed, the frequency thereof remaining, and the patient was troubled with a dry cough eſpecially at night, with ſhortneſs of breath. Which ſymptomes continued for a long ſeaſon, and beſides difficulty of Breathing, ſhe had by fits a pricking pain in her ſide, which did more vex her, when ſhe lay on her wel ſide; (her feaver was continually violent) and contrary wiſe her ſhortneſs of breath, was worſe when ſhe lay on her pained ſide. Al which gave great ſuſpition that there was an impoſtume in the left ſide of her Lungs. Finally, on the 34 day of her diſeaſe ſhe was taken ſuddenly with ſpitting of blood, which ſhe voided by coughing to the quantity of eight ounces. Now the blood was thick enough, and not froathy, which the Patient her ſelf ſaid came down from her head, and that before the voidance thereof, ſhe felt a trickling in her throat, alſo ſome blood came away, when ſhe blew her noſe. Howbeit, in the evening, when her ſpitting of blood returned, it was apparent enough that it came from her lungs, for it was altogether Froathy, and it was one pound in quantity. Whereupon ſhe was let blood in the baſilica Vein of her left arm a julep was given her of plantane and red-poppy waters, and *Sal prunellæ*, and ſyrup of dried roſes: ſhe uſed al night long, ſyrup of violets, of dryed roſes, and of poppies mingled together, wherewith her cough was allayed, her voiding of blood hindered, and ſhe ſlept by fits. The day following in the morning, ſhe was again let blood, out of her right Arm, her julep was repeated, and many other remedies uſual in ſpitting of blood, were preſcribed in a conſultation with Mſr. *Ranchinus* the Chancellour, and *Delort* the Dean of the Univerſitie. She did again ſpit blood to the Quantity of eight ounces, about eleven a clock before noon; her medicines were continued, and ſhe was again let blood in her ankle. At four a clock in the Evening, her ſpitting of blood returning in a violent manner, ſhe died ſuddenly. Her Carcas being diſſected, the *Lungs* were found of a white colour, ſticking to the ribs on both ſides, and round about to the midrif; alſo it ſtuck round about to the pericardium or Heart-bag, ſo as to make one continued body therewith. But the Heart was found whole, and near the middle thereof where it looks towards the Midrif, it was eaten and ulcerated, ſo that ſome purrid fleſhy fibres might be pluckt away, with the tops of ones fingers. And it was obſerved, that certain ſmal bits of fleſh, very like thoſe fibres, were ſpit up with the blood ſhe did ſpit. So that, moſt true it is, that this ſick perſon, did ſpit up the ſubſtance of her heart, which is very ſtrange. And whereas in the Heart-bag, a liquor was found, we do ſuppoſe that the matter cauſing this Impoſtume or ulcer, was mingled with the blood, and voided by coughing. Some ſuch ſtories are to be found in *Skenkius* his Obſervations, the ſecond book, where he treats of Tumors and Impoſtumes of the Heart.

The 88 *Obſervation, or Hiſtory, of Famous and Rare Cures, &c.*

A Dropſie of the Breaſt.

THere a rowned wife of the moſt noble Mſr. *De Thomas*, the Kings Counſeller in his Court at *Montpelier*, was troubled five months, with a fluxion of thin humors falling upon her

her Lungs, with a dry cough, Difficulty of breathing, a continual and ſlow Feaver, which was more violent every night, with a ſlight ſhivering, after which follow very plenciful night ſweats, ſo that every night ſhe is forced to ſhift her ſelf, three or four times. For ſome daies the exaſperations of her Feaver came twice a day; after noon, and in the evening: in the day ſhe ſwet not, but alwaies in her ſleep. Alſo from the beginning of the diſeaſe, ſhe had a pain on the left ſide of the Region of her Breaſt, and ſhe could hardly lie on that ſide; ſo that as ſoon as ſhe laid her ſelf on that ſide ſhe was taken with a moſt troubleſom cough and more pain'd than before. Yea and ſometimes by preſſing her ſide with the top of ones fingers, an exceeding great oppreſſion of her Lungs, and difficulty of breathing, did follow thereupon. Whereunto was added, the puffing up of her ſpleen, joined with ſome ſtretching, which is thought to have occaſioned thoſe other diſorders.

Having conſulted with Mſr. *Ranchinus* the Chancellor, it was releaſed that her chief infirmity was in her left ſide, and that it was ſome collection of the humors, which oppreſſed the left ſide of her breaſt. But what kind of matter was collected, could not certainly be known. Howbeit thus much may be avouched, that it is either water or quittor, for the ſigns of both concur, and the like is recorded by *Hippocrates*, where he ſaies, in his ſecond book *de Morbis*, that ſuch as are troubled with a dropſie of the Lungs, are affected juſt as thoſe that have a ſuppuration, only leſs violently and longer. Our opinions did more encline that it was a watry collection, becauſe neither pleuriſie, Inflamation of the Lungs, nor ſpitting of blood had preceded, nor had ſhe ever voided any purulent matter. She died of a conſumption, and gave charge before ſhe died, that her body ſhould not be opened.

The 89 Obſervation, Or Hiſtory, of Famous and Rare Cures, &c.

Of Suppreſſion of Urine.

MR. *Raymund Ratte*, ſixty years of Age, a plethorick perſon, and troubled with the ſtone, who had been accuſtomed without any hurt to void many ſtones at times with his urine; about the end of *January* 1635. after he had voided many ſtones upon occaſſion of immoderate exerciſe, he fell into a total ſuppreſſion of urine, which ſuppreſſion (as was clearly apparent by ſigns) was in his kidneyes, not in his bladder. For three days together he had made no water when I was called to conſult with two ancienter Phyſitians, the one of which was his ordinary Phyſitian, who during the three days aforeſaid, had preſcribed ſundry diureticks, both external and internal, Clyſters, baths to ſit in, potions, and the like. And before that he was called, the patient had been purged with a gentle cathartick. I delivering my opinion in the firſt place, ſaid that the chief cauſe of this diſeaſe, or at leaſt which foments this Symptome, is a mighty plenitude of the veins above the Kidnies, which by reaſon of diſtention, cauſed by plenty of the ſeroſities, retained the ſpace of three daies, cannot eaſily contract themſelves to expel the ſame, whence many times a difficulty of making water does ariſe. Now that there is a great plenitude of ſerous humor, is apparent, both from the plenitude of the patients body, as alſo becauſe he has been uſed to drink much, and when he was in health, he was wont to make three or four pints of water every night. Therfore I judged that diureticks were not to be uſed, which by bringing humors to thoſe paſſages, might encreaſe their diſtenſion. But that rather ſome notable revulſions were to be procured, by blood-letting and purging, and that blood ſhould be taken away, in a good quantity, as ſoon as might be; and that five or ſix hours after a ſtrong phlegm and water purging medicament ſhould be adminiſtred. The other Phyſitians were of the ſame mind, and a pound of blood was taken away before noon, and at evening one dram of the pouder of Diacarthamum without the ſeeds, was given him; which gave him many ſtools, and after four or five ſtools, he began to make water, and made firſt four ounces of blackiſh urine, and a little after a greater quantity of red, and after that cleare as water. He voided abundance of urine in the ſpace of a day, and was cured. Almoſt ſuch another caſe was propounded, in the firſt obſervation of this Century.

The 90 Obſervation, or Hiſtory, of Famous and Rare Cures, &c.

Pain of the Stomach.

ON the 25 of *January* 1635. I was called to a Gold-ſmith of *Montpelier*, who for two months had been troubled with a moſt violent and perpetual pain in his ſtomach, ſo that by the pain and want of reſt, he was grown extream lean. During the ſaid ſpace of time, his ordinary Phyſitian, had preſcribed him twelve or fifteen gentle purgations, and many other remedies both internal and external, not omitting fomentations, Liniments, and ſuch like. At laſt three Phyſitians being called to conſultation, a vomit was preſcribed, of a decoction of radiſh ſeed, orach, &c. Which are commonly preſcribed to cauſe vomit; which having taken he vomited not at al; and having taken the like medicine again, he eaſed his ſtomach and vomited plentifully, whereby his pain was not at al eaſed. Afterwards he was again purged, and a ſweating diet was preſcribed him. Two daies after his purging, before he began the uſe of his ſweating decoction, ſome body put into his Head to ſend for me, which he did about the evening, and told me the Hiſtory of his diſeaſe. And I to ſhew that he might have eaſe, at leaſt for a time preſcribed him for that night five grains of Laudanum, with which his pain was wholly taken away, and he ſlept al night, whereas for three months, he had never ſlept longer than an hour. In the morning he ſaid he was cured. Yet his pain returned, and could no waies be aſſwaged, but by giving him Laudanum divers times, and that for a ſmal while, til at laſt he died of a Conſumption, His body being opened, a mighty Scirrhus was found, which poſſeſſed the whol pancreas and part of the Meſenterie, alſo it went about the pylorus, and the beginning of the Jejunum Inteſtinum; ſo that it did ſo ſtraiten the paſſage from the ſtomach to the gutts, that it was almoſt quite ſhut up, and his ſtomach was found ful of meat and drink. Seeing therefore the nouriſhment could not be diſtributed into the body, he died of a Conſumption. The Scirrhus could not be felt by the hand, becauſe it lay concealed under the ſtomach and Gutts. It made ſo great a pain becauſe it poſſeſſed the Pylorus and the lower part of the ſtomach.

For the diſeaſes in the eight laſt mentioned ſtories, Read the Guide to Phyſick and Chyrurgery, and the Idea of Practical Phyſick, with Riverius *Practice of Phyſick: al engliſhed by me, of the laſt Edition.*

The 91 Obſervation, or Hiſtory, of Famous and Rare Cures, &c.

Of worms.

THe Son of Mſr. *Gerard*, being four years old, began to be ſick, *January* the 25. 1635. of a Feaver proceeding from worms, with a vomiting of leek colored humors, and continual ſtomach-ſickneſs. I preſcribed him an uſual potion againſt worms, to which was added becauſe of the malignity (which was known by the humors voided, and by a kind of ſwelling al his body over) four grains of Bezoar, alſo he had a ſweet clyſter given him. Having taken the potion, he vomited two worms, and voided one by ſtool with the Clyſter. At night he took the potion again, and was next day wel, ſo that his freinds did not deſire he ſhould take any more Phyſick. Two daies after he fel into the ſame diſeaſe and was much more grievouſly tormented than before, with unquietneſs, and continual groaning, even in his ſleep. I preſently preſcribe him a potion, of the infuſion of rhubarb in ſyrup of roſes in porſlane water, with which he had three ſtools of exceeding black excrements; and after his purgation al the ſymptomes remained as alſo his vomiting was encreaſed, ſo that he caſt up al his broaths and whatever he drank; whence it was that the potion formerly given him againſt the worms, had now no effect (though formerly it did him ſo much good) becauſe he vomited it up again. And therefore conſidering that he did not vomit the Confectio de Hyacinctio, which was given him in broath, I gave it him two times more, with an addition of four grains of bezoar, whereupon he vomited no more, ſlept in the night and was much better. Whence I conclude, and think it worthy of obſervation, that Bezoar ſtone is of great efficacy in the

Caſe

Caſe of worms. He took the foreſaid purging potion again, after which he had a critical looſneſs, with which his Diſeaſe was very much abated, and at laſt with ſpecifical Juleps of a decoction of Scordium, and St. Johns wort made with cooling things, it was perfectly cured, he being after his Juleps again purged with Senna, Rhubarb and Syrup of Roſes.

The 92 Obſveration, or Hiſtory, of Famous and Rare Cures, &c.

An Impoſtume of the Abdomen:

ON the 16. day of *February*, 1635. I was called to the Daughter of a Widow, ſometimes the Wife of *John Peire*, a Merchant of *Montpelier*, being fourteen years old, whom I had cured two years before of a beginning Dropſie, ſince which time ſhe had been alwaies ſickly. And now ſhe had been three weeks ſick, without the adviſe of any Phyſician. I found her ſick of a continual Feaver, with a moderate looſneſs, whereby ſhe voided many Flegmatick and crude Excrements. She told me alſo, that her belly did again ſwel, and that ſhe felt therein at times a pricking pain, likewiſe her Legs did ſwel by fits. Preſently I began to think that her Dropſie was returning, which that I might more certainly examine, I put my hand upon her Belly, which as I was about a little to preſs, ſhe would not ſuffer me, complaining that I put her to pain. Whereupon, I ſuppoſing that ſuch kind of pains were not uſual in dropſies, I called for a Candle, and look upon her belly; which I found naturally colored, but raiſed and ſwelled, and that the ſwelling was round about her Navil five fingers in breadth, beyond which Circumference, ſhe might be touched without pain; but where the Tumor was ſhe was much pained if it were never ſo little compreſſed, eſpecially on the left ſide, two fingers from her Navil, where from the beginning of her ſickneſs, ſhe felt at times a pricking pain. Moreover in the Tumor it ſelf I perceived ſome Humor ſlipping to and fro; all which conſidered, I pronounced that an Impoſtume was lurking, between the Peritoneum and the Muſcles of her belly, and that it was already come to ſuppuration; and preſently I cauſed a Chyrurgion to be ſent for, who was of the ſame Opinion. And therefore we reſolved to open the Impoſtum as ſoon as might be, leaſt if it ſhould break into the Cavity of her belly, it might cauſe ſudden death. A Cauſtick was therefore applied to that part, where from the beginning ſhe had felt a pricking pain, and after three hours an Eſchar being raiſed, an inſtrument was forced in two fingers deep, but no matter came forth. But the Chyrugeon durſt not force his lancet any further, leaſt he ſhould make an hole in the Peritoneum, and ſo the matter ſhould flow into the Cavity of her belly. Wherefore he put a tent into the hole, which being drawn out three hours after, a little quittor came away. The day after the tent being drawn out in the morning, a great quantity of quittor came forth, being of a bad color and ſmel. Howbeit the patient grew worſe and worſe, ſo that ſhe died the fift day after the impoſtum was opened. Her body being opened, the Muſcles of her belly in the place ſwelled, were found to be putrified on the left ſide near the Navil, and on the right ſide beneath the Navil, the Guts did ſtick faſt to the Peritoneum, and the parts thereabouts were putrified, the Liver being very yellow, did ſtick on al ſides to the Peritoneum, and the midrif, and was ſo great as to fil half the Cheſt, and to be very near the Heart; al was ful of quittor and Corruption, and ſtunk abominably; moreover ſhe was extream lean al her body over, being conſumed away, by reaſon the Liver was not able to make blood.

And not only Impoſtumes of the belly in a cronick diſeaſe, and a body ill affected are deadly; but thoſe alſo for the moſt part, which follow Feavers, either continual or intermittent; which *Hippocrates* has condemned in his Coack Prognoſticks. And Mr. *Paebecus*, a Phyſician of *Lunella*, my friend, ſaw a yong man that had a tertian ague, whoſe fits exceeded not the number of ſeven; yet an Impoſtum happened about his groin, which being opened ſent forth laudable quittor at the firſt, but in the following daies, there followed bad Symptomes, the quittor ſeemed worſe, and the ſick perſon died on the twenty day: which Impoſtum he might nevertheleſs have judged at the firſt to be mortal, becauſe when it appeared, bad Symptomes appeared with it. Whereas Impoſtumes tending to health ought to bring with them an abatement of Symptomes. If the contrary happen, it ſignifies only a ſettling of the matter into that part, and not a critical expulſion.

The 93 Observation or History, of Famous and Rare Cures, &c.

Hard Labor in Child-bed.

THe wife of the Baron *Daumelas*, general Treasurer of *France*, was three daies in Labor, so that she was at last extreamly weakened; I being sent for, prescribe her this following potion.

Take *Dittamus of* Crete, *the two birth worts, and Trochisks of Myrrh, of each half a scruple; Saffron, and Cinnamon, of each twelve grains: Confection Alkermes, half a dram; Orenge-flower water, and Mugwort water, of each one ounce and an half. Mix them into a potion; which when she had taken, presently her throws came upon her, and a little after she brought forth twins. The same happened to the wife of Mr. Sattrey, when she was brought to bed of her first Child, she being the daughter of Mr.* Boschius, *an Apothecary at* Montpelier.

The 94 Observation, or History, of Famous and Rare Cures, &c.

An immoderate flux of Courses, with suffocation of the womb.

A Maid servant of the Baron of *Castries*, did suffer so plentiful a flood of courses, that she voided four or five pound of blood in the space of two hours, whence followed so grievous an Hysterical fit, that she lay speechless, and as it were dead; though her Eyes remained open, and she made signs with her hand, that she was strangled. Being called to her, I prescribe this following potion, fit both to stop her flux of courses, and to asswage her Womb-sickness.

Take *Waters of Orenge-flowers, of Roses and of plantane, of each one ounce; Dragons-blood, twelve grains; Sal prunella, one dram. Mix them, make them into a potion, which she took again three hours after, having taken some broath between. After the first taking, all the Symptomes were abated, after the Second, they wholly ceased.*

The 95 Observation, or History, of Famous and Rare Cures, &c.

The Veneral Disease in a Child.

THe Son of *Mr.* N. being two years old, was by his Nurse infected with the whores Pox, which first discovered it self in broad red pustles, which were chick upon his peritoneum, after which followed Ulcers in his Buttocks, after that pustles in his Face, and at last ulcers in his Throat and Lips. Also his body daily consumed. Being sent for to him, I prescribed these following Remedies.

Take *Senna clensed, one dram and an half. Choice Rhubarb, and Agarick newly Trochisked, of each two scruples, Cinnamon half a scruple. Infuse them in Carduus water, and in the strained liquor dissolve one ounce of Syrup of roses; make all into a potion, give it in the morning, and let him take it again, once every week.*

In the intermediate daies between his Purges, he used the following Decoction.

Take *Guajacum wood, one ounce; of the bark thereof half an ounce; Fountain water three pints: infuse and boyl them according to Art, til a third part of the liquor be consumed. Let him take four ounces of the strained liquor in the morning, without sweat, by reason of the coldness of the Air, for it was mid winter, also I feared least his tender body should be over dried, for which cause also I allowed him a restorative diet. He did use the same decoction, for his ordinary drink, but allayed with an equal quantity of fair water.*

When

When he had continued theſe Remedies for twenty daies, al the Symptomes vaniſhed and the child was nouriſhed, even while he took his Phyſick, and at laſt grew fat. Now it was in the midſt of winter, and he ſeemed perfectly cured.

Howbeit within a months time, the ſame Symptomes returned, and the child was again grown lean.

We ordered that he ſhould uſe the ſame Remedies again, only we made the Decoction a little ſtronger, by boyling the liquors half away, and we covered him with cloaths that he might ſweat a little. With this cure he was again reſtored to health, in the ſpace of fifteen daies, which nevertheleſs we had continued longer for fear of a relapſe, but that the extream coldneſs of the Winter did hinder us. Having therefore omitted his Medicaments for twenty daies or thereabouts, the ulcers were renewed. And becauſe then the Air was mild enough, it being *February*, and the wind in the South, I ſet afreſh upon the cure, but after a more effectual manner.

In the firſt place I give him eight grains of Mercurius Dulcis, with four grains of Diagridium in broath, with which he was ſtrongly purged by vomit and by ſtool; and every fourth day I gave him this Medicament: and in the intermediate daies he took a Decoction, made after this manner. The foreſaid quantity of the wood and bark of Guajacum, was put into an Alembick, with one pint and an half of water. They infuſed twenty four hours, and were afterwards diſtilled to the half, the Alembick being wel luted. The Liquor which remained in the Alembick was ſtrained and mixed with the diſtilled water which was a little ſharp; and of this mixture he took four ounces in the morning hot, and being wel covered did ſweat luſtily after it. This laſt Method of Cure, was continued twenty daies together, by which his Diſeaſe was quite taken away.

To the Ulcers on his Buttocks was applied an Oyntment, made of Honey of Roſes, Yolks of Egs and terpentine. And the Ulcers in his jaws, were ſoon Cured by Honey of Roſes, made ſharp with ſpirit of vitriol.

The 96 Obſervation, or Hiſtory, of Famous and Rare Cures, &c.

Immoderate flux of Child-bed purgations.

A Certain Woman having miſcarryed, was troubled with an immoderate flux of blood, which did exceedingly weaken her. I order her to be rubbed and tied on the upper parts of her body, Cupping-Glaſſes to be applied under her dugs, Epithemes alſo and young Pidgeons, and her hands to be fomented with hot wine, in which Confectio Alchermes was diſſolved, and to take this following potion.

Take *Water of plantain, Orenge flowers, and Roſes, of each one ounce; Sal prunellæ, one dram; Dragons blood half a ſcruple. Mix them into a potion. Which was preſently given her, before the other Medicaments were provided and within a quarter of an hour, the pains of her belly and loyns ceaſed, and her flux was ſtopped, ſo that ſhe had no need of thoſe other Remedies.*

See my Directory for Midwives, and *Riverius* Practice, and *Riolanus*: al of the laſt Edition, Engliſhed by me.

The 97 Obſervation, or Hiſtory, of Famous and Rare Cures, &c.

A Cancer.

Mr. *Chape*, of *Tholouſe*, of a noble family, Sojourning at *Montpelier*, in the year, 1635. to wards the end of winter, was taken with a final puth on his upper Lip, which turned into a Tumor that covered almoſt all his Lip, and it was hard and livid, with a pricking pain and ſome [illegible]. By the advice of another Phyſitian, he was frequently let blood, and gently purged, with purges made of Senna and Caſſia, cooling Juleps being firſt uſed. And when he had for ſome daies continued theſe Remedies, and the Diſeaſe nevertheleſs grew worſe, leaving

ving his former Phyſitian, he committed himſelf to my Care, the ſecond of *April*, in the year aforeſaid. But I, conſidering the foreſaid ſigns, and that all topick Remedies whatſoever, did exaſperate the malady, and made the pricking and burning pain more vehement: I conceived it was a cancerous Tumor, and although that Diſeaſe be accounted incurable, yet I undertook the Cure thereof, being taught by *Galen* that a Cancer, at firſt, while it is freſh may be cured, as we have it, in the 10. Chap. of his ſecond Book *ad Glauconem*, where ſpeaking of a Cancer, he has theſe words. *I have often Cured this Diſeaſe when it was but beginning, but when it is grown large, it cannot be cured without manual operation*; and a little after: *this diſeaſe I have (as was ſaid) Cured at the beginning, eſpecially when the melancholy humor was not very thick; for then it eaſily gives way to purging Medicaments, by which the Cure is effected*; and it is eaſie to conceive, that theſe purging Medicaments muſt purge black choler. Which muſt be uſed ſo long as til the patient have recovered his former health, uſing in the mean time, ſuch a Diet as may breed very good Humors. And according to the rule of the ſaid *Galen* in the ninth Chapter of his Book *de atra Bile*, and his Comment upon the 47. Aphoriſm of the 5. Section, Thoſe that are troubled with this Diſeaſe, muſt be purged with ſtrong Medicaments. Wherefore I conceived I muſt fly to the uſe of ſtrong Remedies, the chief of which is the Root of black Hellebore, which is moſt effectual to purge Melancholly. Thus therefore I began the Cure.

Take *Roots of Bugloſs and* Cichory, *of each one ounce. Leaves of Agrimony, Borrage, Ceterach and Veronica, of each half an handful. Boyl al with a Chick, and in the ſtrained broath diſſolve one dram of Tartar. Let him take this broath in the morning twelve daies together.*

In every fourth doſe of broath, diſſolve two ounces of the following Syrup.

Take *Of the Juyces newly preſſed forth and clarified by ſettling, of Borrage, Bugloſs, Fumitory, Cichory, three pounds. Juyce of Veronica, and Fragrant Apples, of each a pound. Senna clenſed ſix ounces. Epithymum, two ounces*; Choyce *Rhubarb and Agarick newly Trochisked, of each one ounce*; *Ginger, and cloves, of each one dram. Infuſe them and boyl them according to Art, til there remain fifteen ounces of the ſtrained liquor, in which diſſolve the like quantity of Sugar, and boyl it to a perfect Syrup, for the uſe aforeſaid.*

To the laſt doſe of broath, add four grains of extract of black Hellebore. Let him take it, and order himſelf accordingly.

This purged him very vehemently, both upwards and downwards, but the ſame day the Tumor was much abated and without pain.

After the uſe of his broaths, he uſed a lukewarm bath for three daies together. Horſe Leeches were applied to his Hemorrhoid Veins, an Iſſue made in both his Legs, he drunk Whey boyled with Epithymum for a month, and bathed once every week.

Fifteen daies after he had taken the extract of Hellebore, he took the ſame again, with three drams of Diaprunum Solutivum, the operation whereof was like the former, and the ſame day the Tumor ſeemed to be abated.

Al Topick Medicaments did exaſperate the Tumor, and made the pain more intenſe, ſaving the Oyntment of green Frogs, which is exceedingly lauded by *Aquapendent*, *Chametæus*, and others, and it did very much in this Diſeaſe. So that I conceive the cure thereof to be cheifly attributed to two Remedies, viz. Extract of black Hellebore, and the Oyntment of green Frogs. Yet the magiſtral Syrup did much aſſiſt the cure, which he uſed twice a week.

Within a month after the beginning of the Cure, the Tumor came to ſuppuration and broke of it ſelf, with quitter ſufficiently good. The Oyntment aforeſaid was continually applied to the ulcer, and al over the Tumor, and the Tumor grew leſs and leſs, and was at laſt inſenſibly Evaporated, and the Ulcer was brought to a ſcar.

The Oyntment of green Frogs is thus made.

Take *Green Frogs that live among Trees, or in pure waters, and put them in an Earthen pot ful of ſmal holes in the bottome, and fil their mouths with butter, cover the pot cloſe and*

daub

daub the juncture with clay, and ſet it over another empty pot which muſt be ſet in the ground up to the brim; then make a fire round about fit for diſtillation, and gather the Oyl that drops into the pot in the ground, and mix it with the pouder of Frogs into a Liniment.

The 98 *Obſervation, or Hiſtory, of Famous and Rare Cures, &c.*

Of a flegmatick Inflamation of the Lungs.

Mſr. *Gualtier*, General Treaſurer of the Kings Exchequer, being ſixty years of Age, was troubled with a flegmatick Peripneumonia; which was known by his Cough, difficulty of breathing, Feaver, pain under his right ſhoulder, and redneſs of his cheeks. And becauſe he ſeemed very ful of flegm, of which he had vomited a great quantity; he had a Clyſter given him which wrought three or four times, and was the next day let blood, only once; and a purging Medicament was given him of an infuſion of Rhubarb, with manna and Syrup of Roſes, with which he was excellently purged on the fourth day of his Diſeaſe, which was the 29. of *May*, 1635. and the day following he appeared free from his Feaver and other Symptomes. Whence it appears, that purging is ſomtimes good in a Peripneumonia or Inflamation of the Lungs, though it be for the moſt part Pernicious to Purge before the ſeventh day.

The 99 Obſervation, or Hiſtory, of Famous and Rare Cures, &c.

A Conſumption beginning.

IN the month of *May*, 1635. The Wife of Mſr. *Thomas*, a Councellour in the Exchequer Court, died of a Conſumption, and a month or two after, her maid that had tended her night and day, ſeemed about to fal into the ſame Diſeaſe. For ſhe had a lingring Feaver, with a dry Cough which held her day and night, leanneſs of her whol body, want of Appetite, and want of ſleep. Being ſent for to her, I ordered her to be let blood, and to have an univerſal purgation with an Apozeme, and lukewarm baths, with a thickning courſe of diet, and cooling; al which did no good. At laſt conſidering with my ſelf that her diſeaſe proceeded from a Malignant quality, impreſſed upon her Lungs and heart, by way of Contagion, I preſcribe her a decoction of Guajacum for fifteen daies, without ſweating, and a reſtorative diet. With which Remedy ſhe was perfectly Cured. And her Feaver, Cough, and other Symptomes went quite away.

The 100 Obſervation, or Hiſtory, of Famous and Rare Cures, &c.

Smal pocks.

THe Son of Mſr. *Boudon*, of *Languadoc*, being nine years old, and ſick of a Ferver which ſeemed to threaten the ſmal pocks, was committed to my care, in the month of *June*, 1635.

The firſt day I commanded a Vein to be opened, and ſix ounces of blood to be taken away; and at night as much more to be taken; juleps were preſcribed him, and to be anointed with Oyl of Scorpions, and other ordinary Remedies. On the ſecond and third day he raved a little. The ſmal pocks appear, ſmal, thick ſowen, and flat. They encreaſed by little and little, but very ſlowly, ſo that on the ſixt day his Face ſeemed not at al ſwelled, The Pocks were flat in his Face, and al his body over, and hollow in the middle, yea and ſome of them were black in the middle. His Parents were the more fearful, becauſe they had loſt three Children of the ſame diſeaſe, whoſe Pocks were juſt like theſe of our Patient. I therefore thinking it

beſt to fal to work with the moſt effectual Medicaments, preſcribe him this following Julep.

Take *Carduus water, three ounces*; *Treacle water, three drams*, *Trochiſks of Vipers, one ſcruple*; *Bezoar ſtone, ſix grains. Give it in the evening.*

Young Pigeons were applied to his Heart, and afterwards a Liniment of Treacle, Confectio Alkermes, and Oyl of Scorpions of *Matthiolus*.

In al his broaths a Scruple of Bezoardicum minerale was diſſolved. The day following, which was the ſeventh of the Diſeaſe, he had three ſtools of a matter Sufficiently thick, but of a perfect Lead color. At the ſame time he voided moſt thick Urins, and the breaking out of the Pocks was ſo furthered, that in a daies ſpace, his Face was much ſwollen, and from that time forwards the Pocks grew ſufficiently great. The Bezoardicum Minerale was continued for a day longer, and afterwards Confectio *de Hyacintho*, which was given him at the firſt. Til at laſt the Patient was perfectly freed from that Cruel Diſeaſe.

THE

THE SECOND BOOK OF THE Medicinal Obſervations, AND REMARKABLE CURES, OF LAZARUS RIVERIUS;

Councellor and *Phyſitian* to the King, and Profeſſor of Phyſick in the Univerſity of *Montpelier*.

The 101 *Obſervation, or Hiſtory, of famous and rare Cures, &c.*

Cholick pain.

THE firſt of *July*, 1635, Mr. *Sarret Viſitor*, General of the Salt-pits, being forty years old, was taken with a moſt grievous Cholick pain, which could not be aſſwaged, neither with Laxative and Carminative Clyſters, and Aqua Benedicta; nor with Fomentations and Baths to ſit in, uſed for twenty foun hours. His pain therefore continually raging, I preſcribed theſe following Pills.

Take *of the beſt Aloes one dram; Diagridium eight grains; Laudanum Opiatum* five *grains. Make all into ſix Pills, and let them be gilded.*

He took theſe Pills at Midnight, and at four a clock in the morning his pain was quite gone, and he was purged five times that day, and ſo was perfectly cured.

The 102 *Obſervation, or Hiſtory, of famous and rare Cures, &c.*

Small pox, and Looſneſs.

THe Son of Mſr. *Graſſet*, a Councellor in the Court of Accounts, five years old, was ſick of the ſmal Pox, with a Looſneſs, which continued during the whol courſe of the Diſeaſe. On the ſeventh day of the Diſeaſe, which was the 15. of *Auguſt*, in the year 1635. his Looſ-

neſs was much more violent, his Feaver high, with mighty thirſt; the Pox were flat, becauſe the looſneſs did hinder their riſing. Other Remedies having had al along little effect, I preſcribe him this following julep, reſpecting his Looſneſs and the malignicy of the Diſeaſe.

Take *Roots of Cinquefoil and Tormentil of each one ounce; Scabious and Pimpinel leaves of each one handful; Scordium a pugil; yellow Sanders two drams. Boil al to twelve ounces for three doſes, to be taken twice a day: adding to every doſe half a dram of Confectio de Hyacintho, half a ſcruple of trochisks of vipers, and four grains of Bezoar ſtone.*

After he had taken once of this julep, his looſneſs was abated, the Pox roſe high, and his thirſt was leſſened.

In very many children beſides, the ſame potion did wonderful much good, in ſtopping their Looſneſs, and in raiſing the Pox when they were flat. To it I added, Roſewater and Orenge-flower water, of each half an ounce. It did wonderful much good, where there was no looſneſs the Pox being flat; and thus I compounded it for the moſt part.

Take *Roots of Cinquefoil and Tormentil of each one ounce; Leaves of burnet and Scordium, of each one handful; Yellow ſanders and ſhavings of ivory, of each two drams. Boyl al to twelve ounces. In three drams of the ſtrained liquor diſſolve Orenge-flower water and Roſewater of each half an ounce, trochisks of vipers one ſcruple. Bezoar ſtone four grains, make them into a poſion, give it al at once, twice in a day to ſuch as are big: but to ſucking children give frequently a ſpoonful.*

The 103 *Obſervation, or Hiſtory, of Famous and Rare Cures, &c.*

The After-birth retained.

THe honorable Wife of Mſr. *Graſſet*, Councellor in the Court of Exchequor, in the beginning of *October* 1635. Having miſcarried of a three months conception, and brought forth a very wel ſhaped child; had her after-birth retained. Whereupon ſhe was long troubled with the whites, and perceived a kind of a ſtink in her mouth, which vaniſhed after ſome daies. She voided certain peices of a membranous ſubſtance, but very few and ſmal. Whereupon the women avouching that ſhe had voided her afterbirth, by peecemeale. I was ſtil of a contrary opinion. By little and little ſhe recovered her former health, the white flux ſtil continuing. Howbeit, after two months and an half, ſhe was taken with an immoderate flux of her courſes, with which her after-birth being dried was voided peice after peice. Which is very wel worthy of obſervation, that the after-birth could be ſo long retained in the womb, without greivous detriment to the patient.

The 104 *Obſervation, or Hiſtory, of Famous and Rare Cures, &c.*

Of a watry Rupture in an Infant.

THe Son of Mſr. *de Aumelas*, General Treaſurer of *France*, being eleven months old, had a watry rupture in his right teſticle, with a matter contained in the proper membrane of the teſticle called Darios; ſo that the teſticle ſeemed as big as a ſmal Egg. And this tumor had troubled him from his birth, which they had long laboured to diſcuſs, by applying Cotton-wool ſmoaked with Franckincenſe. At laſt they ſent for me, and I preſcribed a Cataplaſme, in the beginning of *November*, 1635.

Take *Bean-meal half a pound, boyl it in ſtrong rich wine to the conſiſtence of a pultis, then add three drams of oxymel ſimple. Make al into a Cataplaſme or pultis and applie it morning and evening.*

In the ſpace of eight daies, with this only remedy, the tumor was quite diſcuſſed.

The

The 105 *Obſervation*, or Hiſtory, of Famous and Rare Cures, &c.

Worms.

ON the 25 of *November*, 1635. a Boy four yeares old was troubled with worms, that he was tormented with a greivous pain in his belly, with extream weakneſs, ſo that his pulſe could not be perceived in his wriſt, his eyes were hollow and void of ſpirits, juſt like the eyes of dying perſons. He had been ſick three daies, and voided four worms at his mouth, with a vomit of black humors. An Apothecary had given him potions againſt the worms, and a purging potion of Electuary of diacarthamum, and rhubarbe, which wrought not at al. I preſcribe him powerful Remedies againſt the worms, both internal and external, which did no good. The next day he continued in the ſame condition. I order him to take eight grains of Colomelanos of Turquetus, and ſix grains of Scammony, with which he was purged and voided a clammy glewiſh and putrid matter, with two worms. He had two ſtools, was very much eaſed, and within a few daies perfectly recovered.

If thou meaneſt to make a profitable uſe of theſe Hiſtories, reſolve neither to be Fool or Knave, but be ſure you read over with care my Guide to Chyrurgery and Phyſick, The Idea of Practical Phyſick, and *Riverius* Practice: al of the laſt Edition, engliſhed by me.

The 106 Obſervation, or Hiſtory, of Famous and Rare Cures, &c.

Pain of the Hemorrhoids.

THe 21 of *December* 1635, Mr. *John Charanton*, a Citizen of *Montpelier*, having walked on foot to a village two miles from the Citie, thick clad, he was exceedingly heated, by which means his tumors were very much ſtirred, and ſettled to his fundament, whereupon his hemorrhoid veins did exceedingly ſwel, with inflamation and a moſt ſharp pain. Al the following day he was exceedingly tormented, and paſt the night without any ſleep. The day following he rode to town, reſting himſelf upon the ſtirrups with great pain, whereby the tumor was very much irritated. I being called in the afternoon, cauſe him to looſe ſeven ounces of blood; in the morning he had two ſtooles. About evening, becauſe of the vehemency of his pain, he was again let blood. In the evening he took a julep with ſyrup of poppies. And he uſed four times in the night a fumigation of great Houſeleek boiled in white wine; he ſlept by fits, and the tumor was aſſwaged, and the Hemorrhoides abated in their diſtention: and by continual uſe of the ſuffumigation and of pain-aſſwaging liniments, he was quickly Cured.

The 107 Obſervation, or Hiſtory, of famous and Rare Cures, &c.

Children dying in the Birth.

A Dyers wife of *Niſmes*, from the time that ſhe had been married, had three times brought forth a mature Child, in the ninth month; ſhe had the ordinary throwes of women before the birth, without any unuſual trouble ſo that her Labors were not very hard or troubleſom; nor was the woman of an ill Habit of body, nor had ſhe any diſeaſe upon her, or any thing preternatural, in her child-bed pains, the child ſufficiently ſtirred it ſelf in her womb, yet when it came into the world, it was found dead, and this had happened three times. Her Phyſitians after her ſecond birth preſcribed her purgations, and a ſweating diet, alſo ſhe changed her midwife. Yet the third child was found dead, in the ſame manner. The cauſe and cure hereof is demanded. Since no cauſe is related in the Hiſtory, it is exceeding hard to conjecture the ſame. Yet, to ſpeak my opinion; I ſay theſe caſes happened, either through the childs

weakneſs

weakneſs, or the ſtraitneſs of the womb or its neck, in the time of Child-birth. The weakneſs of the child contracted from ſome hidden fault of the ſeed or mothers blood, might cauſe, that when the child did moſt indeavour to make its way in the birth, it might faint away and die, as an eight months birth does for that cauſe neceſſarily periſh, becauſe it made ſome endeavor in the ſeventh month, which if it repeat in the eight, it faints away and dies. If therefore a double endeavour does unavoidably kil any child, a child that is weake may wel periſh by one endeavour. Alſo this weakneſs might cauſe the childs death another way, inaſmuch as being brought into the world, by reaſon of the ſaid weakneſs, it might be unable to endure the air and light, and be killed by them. And finally, it might proceed from the ſtraightneſs of the womb or its Neck, becauſe at the time of birth, it does collect and purſe it ſelf to force out the child; and if the ſaid conſtriction ſhal be too violent it may choak the child. The ſame may happen from the neck of the womb, if it too much contract it ſelf when the child comes into it; for by that ſtraitening of it ſelf it may deſtroy the child. Theſe things thus propounded the remedies are to be directed to two ends, viz. To ſtrengthen the child and to hinder the overgreat conſtriction of the womb.

In the former reſpect, the parents muſt uſe a laudable diet and of good juyce before the Conception; that pure and faultleſs ſeed may be ingendred. Alſo the mother during the whole time of her being with child muſt uſe the like diet, that ſhe may afford good blood to nouriſh the child with. Moreover let her uſe this following pouder twice a week.

Take *Kermes berries, ſhavings of Ivory, Coral, and Pearls prepared, of each one dram; Maſtich half a dram; Manna Chriſti perled two drames; make al into a pouder, whereof let the doſe be a dram; in a ſoft egg, or in broath.*

Let her other whiles inſtead of the pouder uſe this following Opiate.

Take *Conſerve of roſes two ounces; preſerved Citron peels one ounce; myrobalans preſerved, and nutmegs preſerved, of each half an ounce; coral prepared, and perles prepared, of each one dram; ſhavings of Ivory, half a dram; Make al into an opiate, with ſyrup of preſerved Citrons, of which let her take the quantity of a Chaſinut, once or twice in a weeke, inſtead of the foreſaid pouder.*

If at laſt ſhe grow weary of both theſe, let her uſe theſe following Lozenges, which are very pleaſing to the taſte.

Take *Confectio alkermes three drams; amber greiſe one ſcruple; ſugar diſſolved in orenge-flower water, and roſe water four ounces; make al into Lozenges, which ſhe may uſe at any time, when ſhe takes not the former medicaments.*

When ſhe is entring into her ninth month, let theſe following things be applied to her belly, in the morning for the ſpace of half an hour.

Take *generous wine three pints, heat it and diſſolve therein oile of nutmegs half an ounce, pouder of cloves and Kermes berries of each three drams. Mix them, and let a Sponge wet in this Liquor, be applied to her Belly upon her Navil, hot, twice a week.*

Take *nutmeg, mace, cloves, and cinnamon, of each equal portions: mix them with white honey, into the forme of a Liniment, and ſpread them upon a cruſt of toaſted bread, and apply them to the navil, every morning when the fomentation is not uſed.*

Take *Orenge-flower water, and Roſe water, of each three ounces; Cinnamon water one ounce. Mixe them. Let her take one ſpoonful every morning, during the whol ninth month.*

At the time of her labour, give her in every draught of broath half a dram of Alkermes made according to the deſcription of *Meſue*, by reaſon of the doſe of amber; and an houre after every broath, give her a ſpoonful of Cinnamon water.

To her navil apply frequently a peice of hot fleſh half roaſted, and ſprinkled with the pouder of cinnamon, nutmegs, and cloves.

In reſpect of the Straitneſs of her womb or its neck, if ſhe be not with child, let her frequently uſe, when it is not winter, a bath to ſit in, made of an emollient decoction. When ſhe is with child, from the beginning of the ninth month to the day of her deliverance, let the neck of her wombe and the perineum be anointed with Line-ſeed oile drawn without fire. Given at *Montpelier, December 24. 1635.*

THE

The 108 Observation, or History, of Famous and Rare Cures, &c.

Of Wandering Pains about the Chest.

Mſr. *Raymundus Melgoriensis*, fifty yeares of age, of a Sanguine complexion, returning from being a Soldier in *Italy*, he complained of moſt cruel pains, which tormented him every night, after his firſt ſleep; and theſe pains began in his left ſide, and reach withal to the fore and hinder part of his chest, alſo to his left ſide and ſhoulder blades, with ſo much vehemency that he is thereby ſuddenly awaked, and cannot in any poſture find reſt in his Bed, but is compelled to rise. Theſe pains continue to the morning, and then ceaſe. Nor is there any ſhew of them al day long. He began to be vexed with them now two months ſince, and had never uſed any Remedies. Another Phyſitian who had formerly preſcribed for him, conceived that theſe pains proceeded from a thin Catarrh, falling upon thoſe parts in the Evenings, at what time the flegmatick humor is accuſtomed to move. But I conceive theſe pains proceeded from winds, which are raiſed only in the night, by reaſon that the natural heat is then made more intenſe by the Concentration thereof through ſleep. The matter out of which theſe urines are raiſed, is a redundancy of bad and crude humors in the ſtomach, Meſentery, and eſpecially about the Liver. Now theſe Humors were collected in the Camp, through bad diet. Hence alſo the concoction of his ſtomach was weakened, whence it comes to paſs that the cruder part of his meates, infected likewiſe with bad humors, is turned into windes, which run into al places. And when digeſtion is finiſhed, no more of theſe winds are ſent up, and conſequently the pains ceaſe about the morning.

For the Cure of this diſeaſe, I preſcribed in the firſt place an Univerſal Evacuation by Apozemes, and blood-letting, which being finiſhed, I preſcribed him a decoction of China for fifteen dayes with the uſe of which medicaments, the diſeaſe was by little and little diminiſhed, and in a months ſpace cured without any other Medicine.

The 109 Observation, or History, of Famous and Rare Cures, &c.

Jaundies in a woman with Child.

THe honorable wife of Mſr. *De Aumelas*, General Treaſurer of France, about the end of the ſeventh month of her being with child, by ſome houſehold occaſion was vehemently provoked to anger, after which ſhe vomited in the morning, had a pain in her ſtomach, and became ſick of the jaundice. Now this jaundies of hers had two peculiar properties; one, that in her bed the colour of her face and whole body, was of a very remiſs yellow: but when ſhe roſe and ſtirred a little, it began to grow more deeply yellow al of a ſudden. The other is that ſhe was not Coſtive as people ordinarily are in the jaundice, but voided liquid and cholerick ſtools. Her urin was red, but did not color the cloaths put into it. I being her ordinary Phyſitian, cal for Mſr. *Rhanchinus*, to conſult with, that we might conſider about letting her blood; for on the one ſide, the Procatarctick cauſe perſwaded bleeding; for in al Diſeaſes ariſing from Anger, blood letting is extreamly convenient, by reaſon of the extream commotion of blood thereby raiſed. Moreover, thoſe Cholerick Evaporations, ſuddenly ſeizing her, upon a light motion, did argue that her blood was very much exagitated. Nor did this diſeaſe ariſe from the obſtruction of the Choler paſſage (in which caſe *Galen* forbids to let blood, in his book of blood-letting) becauſe then her belly would have been bound, and her ſtools white; but rather from the Liver being inflamed and over heated. On the other ſide, her being now long gone with Child, ſeemed to diſſwade us from blood-letting, and ſeeing the patient by reaſon of her diſeaſe was in danger of death, if it ſhould happen that ſhe die after blood-letting, the fault would be attributed thereunto. For theſe laſt Cauſes, Mſr. *Rhanchinus*, would not conſent that ſhe ſhould be let blood: but it was agreed to give her one dram of Rhubarb in ſubſtance, that the

Choler

Choler might be carried away by little and little by ſtool; which was done. The Rhubarb did little good, and the patient after five or ſix daies miſcarried. Peradventure letting of blood might have prevented the ſame. But the ill conditions of our Women, in aſcribing al bad events to the Remedies uſed, is the Cauſe, that even the more prudent ſort of Phyſitians, do ſomtimes to avoid Calumny, abſtain from the uſe of moſt profitable Remedies.

The 110 *Obſervation, or Hiſtory, of Famous and Rare Cures, &c.*

Of a Squinſie.

ON the 18. of *February*, 1636. a certain young man a digger was troubled with ſo vehement a Squinſie, that he could neither ſpeak nor ſwallow, yet he breathed wel. When I was ſent for he had taken a Clyſter. Whereupon I cauſed him preſently to be let blood ten ounces. Then a Veſicatory was applied to the Nape of his Neck, and Cupping-Glaſſes with Scarrification to his ſhoulder blades. And four hours after his bleeding, he took two ounces of Aqua benedicta, with which he was purged up and down, and after that, he began to ſpeak and ſwallow, and a little while after, did perfectly recover.

The 111 *Obſervation, or Hiſtory, of Famous and Rare Cures, &c.*

Hyſterical and Hypochondrical Symptomes.

ON the 15. of *March*, 1636. the worthy Wife of Mſr. *de Clauſel*, a Councellour in the Court of *Exchequer*, being fifty five years old, of a Flegmatick and Melancholick Complexion, and ſickly, fel by reaſon of long grieving, into divers Symptomes, which vexed her frequently, but eſpecially in the night. She had pains in her whole left ſide, from her Ribs down to her belly, ſo that ſhe could not lie upon that ſide; ſhe had flegmatick and ſowr vomitings, Head-ach, Heart burning, and fainting fits ſo violent, that ſhe thought ſhe ſhould preſently die; ſhe had ſhiverings and tremblings al her Body over, after which ſhe fel into ſweats; her pulſe was very ſmal, languiſhing and weak; ſhe had frequent belchings, by reaſon of abundance of wind breaking out at her mouth. When I was firſt ſent for, I appoint her a Carminative and Laxative Clyſter, a potion of the Waters of Orenge flowers, Roſes, and Cinnamon, bags and Oyl of Nut-megs to be applied to the region of her Stomach, by which ſhe was much eaſed and freed from the foreſaid Symptomes. But becauſe they frequently returned, ſhe was purged twice in four daies. And her Symptomes returning again, I gave her two grains of Laudanum Opiatum, with conſerve of Roſes, in form of a bole, when ſhe went to ſleep, wherewith in an hours ſpace al her Symptomes were quite taken away, and ſhe ſlept quietly, nor did thoſe Symptomes return any more ſo violently, but they were much gentler. Afterwards ſhe was purged twice a week with Specifick pils, with which ſhe grew every day better. And ſo ſhe was at length reſtored to her perfect health.

If thou meaneſt to be helpful to thy ſelf, or they neighbours, beſtow ſo much mony and pains as to peruſe, the Guide to Phyſick and Chyrurgery, The Idea of Practical Phyſick, and *Riverius* Practice, of the laſt Edition, Engliſhed by me.

The 112 *Obſervation, or Hiſtory, of Famous and Rare Cures, &c.*

Cholick pain.

ON the 22 of *March*. 1636. the widow of Mſr. *Dortis*, having been many years troubled with an exceeding hardneſs and diſtention of her whol Belly, whence by fits ſhe was cruelly pained, as it were with the cholick; ſhe was now taken with the ſame pain being much more raging than formerly, about night. An Apothecary being called, gave her two Clyſters to no purpoſe, although they did purge her much. I being called in the morning preſcribe her a

Pil

Pil of five grains of Laudanum, and within an hour the pain quite ceased, and came no more.

At the same time Madam *de Varanda*, Mother of the foresaid Gentlewoman, was then with a true Cholick pain, whereunto she was subject: a Clyster is given by an Apothecary, which not working, I am sent for, and find her crying out by reason of extremity of pain. I prescribe her a Clyster of a pound of emollient Decoction, an ounce of Diaphenicon, and four ounces of Aqua Benedicta, by which her pain was quite allaied, and the patient voided many flegmatick Excrements and much wind.

I my self being a month before vexed with the same pain, and finding little help from an emollient, carminative and Laxative Clyster, was cured with such a Clyster as this, so that as soon as I had received it, all my pain went away, though I did not void the Clyster till two hours after.

The 113 Observation, or History, of Famous and Rare Cures, &c.

Pissing of Blood.

THe renowned Mr. *de Serres*, the Kings Councellor in the Court of Account and Subsidies, and Controller of the *Exchequer*, being fifty years old, of a Cholerick temper and Melancholick, having for many daies together suffered grievous disturbances and sadness in his Mind, and by that means had lost all night sleep; made bloody Urine, which appeared manifestly after he came from Horse Back; and at the same time he was troubled with sharpness of Urine. After which time, as oft as he journeyed on Horseback, he made bloody urine in like manner, and with the like sharpness. Yea verily the foresaid sharpness of his urine, was often wont to torture him, although his urine were no way infected with blood. Also with his urine he voided gravel, which stuck to the sides of the Chamber pot, which he had been accustomed to void for many years. The question therefore now is, upon what near and immediate Cause this pissing of blood depends. And though Pissing of blood in general is wont to arise from many Causes; yet in this present case, two only will come under consideration, viz. A Stone contained in the Kidneys, and by its roughness tearing the final Veins, and drawing Blood from them; or Humors sharp, Salt and Cholerick, opening the mouths of the foresaid veins. Two things especially do seem to declare that it is the former cause, viz. Those sands which the patient has been accustomed for many years to void with his Urin, which any one may judg to spring from some stone lurking in the body: and that some periodical Excretion of blood, happening then only when the patient uses immoderate exercise, and vehemently shakes his Kidneys with riding, whereby the stone comes to bear upon the substance of the Kidney and its final vein. Howbeit these two signs are not sufficient to demonstrate a stone in his Kidney. For the principal signs, and those that perpetually accompany or go before the same, are wholly wanting. The chief of which is a pain in the Loyns, which cannot be absent, if there be a stone, but must of necessity afflict the patient, and return by fits; and it is either grievous and pressing as a weight, when the stone sticks in the substance of the Kidney, or it is pricking and cutting, if it be contained in the Membranous Cavity of the Kidney. Adhereunto that this worthy Gentleman was never in his whol life tormented with Nephritick pains, nor ever voided any stone; whereas nevertheless it can hardly happen, that a disposition to breed stones, which for the most part, is native and Hereditary, should lie idle fifty years together, and break forth into act in that age, without giving any signs or tokens of it self, at the time foregoing; when as the chief conjecture that pissing of blood comes from the stone, use to be taken from this consideration, viz. That the patient had formerly voided stones. Add hereunto that the parents of this Patient, were never observed to be troubled with the stone, which is of no mean moment in this cause. Finally, all other signs that demonstrate a stone in the Kidney, are here wanting, as a numbedness of the thigh on the same side, retraction of the Testicle, stomach sickness and vomiting, gross meats used long time before, and such like.

The two signs propounded to prove that there should be a stone, are thus confuted. Such gravel as truly shews a stone lurking in the body, does settle to the bottom of the pot, and if you rub them between your fingers, they will hardly go to powder. But if the sands stick to

the ſide of the Chamber pot, and are eaſily rubbed into a powder by the fingers (ſuch as is the gravel voided by our patients) they can never be ſigns of the ſtone. For ſuch gravel is not bred in the Reins or bladder, but in the Veins and Liver, by aduſtion of the Humors, whoſe more thicker and more Terreous parts, do reſemble gravel, and are ſeparated into the ſtraw. Which having not been obſerved by few, many are counted to have the ſtone, that were never ſuſpected thereto. And dayly experience teaches us, that many void ſuch kind of gravel from their Child-hood all their life long, who nevertheleſs were never troubled with the ſtone, and who had little reaſon to fear the ſame.

The periodical voiding of blood, happening then only when the patient does vehemently exerciſe himſelf with riding, though it may poſſibly come from a ſtone in the Kidney; yet there is no queſtion but it may alſo proceed, from heat ſtirred up in the Kidneys and the whol maſs of blood, without any preſence of the ſtone. For Cholerick and ſharp humors, or ſuch as are of the Nature of ſalt flegm, being agitated by motion and heat, are ſent unto the Kidneys, being mingled with the ſeroſities of the blood, and opening the ſmal Veins of the Kidneys, they cauſe a flux of blood. And I confidently aver, that this is the Caſe of our preſent patient, ſeeing he is of a Cholerick conſtitution, and his blood attained aduſtion by the paſſion of mind and watching aforeſaid. Alſo the acrimony of thoſe Humors which paſſed through his Kidneys appeared, from the ardor of his urin, which often troubled him, when he made his bloody urine.

That my opinion of mine, is agreeable to the judgment of moſt learned men, is eaſie to ſhew by inſtance of ſundry. It may ſuffice to recite up ſome of them. *Hollerius*, a man exerciſed as much as any in the Practice of Phyſick, in his 52. Chapter of internal Diſeaſes, ſaies, *That ſome perſons void blood by way of Urine, as others do by their noſe, the Hemorroid veins, or by vomit. And experience ſhews that this kind of voidance of blood, does often happen in ſuch as are thereunto diſpoſed, when their bodies are heated with vehement exercise. Wherefore piſſing of blood may happen, and return by fits, when mens bodies are heated with vehement exercise.* Which the ſame Author does more plainly evidence in his comment upon 78. Aphoriſme of the fourth Section. *There are* (quoth he) *ſome, who if they ride hard, or exerciſe themſelves immoderately, their Kidneys are ſo heated, that they piſs blood.* The moſt learned *Montanus*, in his 28. Counſel, propounds the caſe of a certain Hungarian Biſhop, is like the preſent caſe of ours, that I think fit to inſert the ſame word for word. *I conceive* (quoth he) *That this moſt reverend Biſhop, does therefore make bloody and troubled Urine, becauſe a dilatation is made, both in the Cavities of his Kidneys, and in his urinary Veſſels, by reaſon of extream heat raiſed in his back, by reaſon of violent motion, cauſed by the ſtirring of his coach paſſing over rough waies: and by reaſon of great heat following while he walkes up hil in a ſun-ſhine, when the ſun ſhone extream hot. By all which means a great deal of heat was ſtirred in the parts about his Kidneys, that by reaſon of too much dilatation, he voided bloody urine. Whence it is, that ſtil as often as he is wearied, and exerciſes his body, he falls into the ſame Symptoms, viz. Of turbid and bloody urin. For the dilatation is cauſed by motion, which ceaſes upon reſt. Now the burning heat when he voids his urine, and alſo the pain about his Fundament, proceed from the ſame cauſe, viz. From the ſame dregy urin, which has in it ſharp and biting parts, either of choler, aduſt humors, or ſalt flegm, &c. as before.* Now the pain which he feels about his Fundament, is in the muſcles of the Neck of his bladder, which Neck borders upon thoſe parts, and there is good reaſon that the pain ſhould chiefly be felt in that place. So far *Montanus*. From whence it alſo appears, that the ſuſpicion of a ſtone in his bladder, which our patient imagins to himſelf, becauſe of the ardency of his urine and the vexation of his Fundament in voiding; ſeeing thoſe Symptomes may proceed from the ſame Cauſes, which we have ſhewed to be the originall of his bloody Urin. *Horſtius* in the 37. Obſervation of his 1. Book. *A Boy* (quoth he) *eight years old, the Son of Johannes Stuppius, the magnificent Chancellor of a lean habit of body, has no ſtomach to meat, is thirſty and voids bloody urin, without any pain in the Loyns, nor does he feel any trouble in the voidance thereof.* Although bloody urine often happens, as is manifeſt in the ſtone of the Kidneys, in the ulceration of the neighboring parts, and ſuch like diſeaſes; yet this is a rare caſe, becauſe this piſſing of blood, is without pain, whence may be collected, that this bloody excretion, is not cauſed by a ſtone vexing the Kidneys, nor

by any exulceration. It remains therefore, that the Cauſe of your diſeaſe muſt be the acrimony of Cholerick blood and the weakneſs of his kidneys. So far *Hollerius*. Which examples I was willing in this place to ſet down more exactly, that the mind of our worthy patient, might be wholly freed from fear of a ſtone bred in his kidneyes or bladder, with which fear he has been long tormented by reaſon of the opinion of his other Phyſitian.

As for what concerns the Cure, it muſt aime at two things, viz. to temper the acrimony of the Humors, and to ſtrengthen the kidneyes, that they may not ſo eaſily receive ſharp humors flowing in from other parts. This may be effected by a cooling and thickening diet, which the patient has for ſome time begun to uſe, and wherein he muſt perſevere a long time, uſing eſpecially Lettuce, Plantane and porſlane, in his broaths, as alſo meates made of barly, oates, rice, and ſuch like, alſo for his drink, water wherein iron has been quenched, and red wine ſomwhat harſh: ever more abſtaining from vehement motions of body and mind.

And although the renowned patient, is not very ful of blood, yet I judg it profitable for him to bleed ſix or ſeven ounces from his Arme, that the hot diſtemper of the whol maſs of Humors, may the better be corrected. Yea verily, and if the diſeaſe ſhould laſt long, it ſeems good to derive the humors to the lower parts, by opening a vein in his ankle, or the hemorhoid veins.

After which a gentle purgation wil be very convenient, which muſt be repeated at certain times that the humors having recourſe to his Reines, may be voided forth by ſtool; The Compoſition whereof, may be after this manner.

Take *Leaves of Lettice, Porſlane, Plantane, and the tops of Mallows, of each half an handful; Tamarinds half an ounce; Yellow myrobalans one dram; boyl them to ſix ounces. In the ſtrained liquor diſſolve one ounce of Caſſia new drawn. Strain it again, and diſſolve therein one dram and an half of Rhubarb infuſed in lettice water with yellow Sanders, Manna and Syrup of Roſes of each one ounce, mix them and make al into a potion.*

After the firſt purgation, Juleps, Apozems, Broaths, or emulſions, reſpecting the foreſaid Indications, may be accommodated, ſo as the patient can beſt away with. Which being uſed for ſome time; Sheeps milk or goats milk wil be beſt for him. Which is exceedingly commended by *Hippocrates, Avicen*, and latter Phyſitians; and *Foreſtus* brags that therewith alone, he had often cured piſſing of blood. Now, they ad to every doſe a dram of bole armenick; which as it is fit for a violent piſſing of blood; ſo I conceive it is ſeldom to be uſed in this lighter diſeaſe.

And becauſe the patient is of a dry and lean habit of body, and of an hot and dry conſtitution, before and after he uſes the milk, I conceive a bath of Lukewarm water is very good for him, which he muſt uſe al the Summer long, in form of a bath to ſit in.

After his uſe of the Milk, let him uſe the waters of Meyne.

In the intermediate times, if ſharpneſs of urine do ſometimes trouble him, Waters of Marſh-mallow flowers and roſes, with conſerve of Mallow or Marſh-mallow flowers, or emulſions and other things aforeſaid, may be uſed.

And finally, to ſeal up the Cure, a ſtrengthning Opiate, moderately aſtringent and cooling may be uſed. Nor wil it be unprofitable, if the diſeaſe continue, to make an Iſſue in his leg, to draw away by little and little, thoſe ſharp humors, which flow into his Kidneys and urinary paſſages.

Al the time of the Cure, topicks applied to his Reins, wil be very uſeful, and they muſt be cooling and aſtringent.

Take *Unguentum Comitiſſæ, and Refrigerans Galeni, of each two ounces; waſh them wel with Vinegar and water mingled together; and anoint the Loins therewith frequently.*

Alſo a plate of Lead with many holes bored in it may be worne along time, upon his Kidneys.

The 114 *Obſervation, or Hiſtory, of Famous and Rare Cures, &c.*

A Caruncle in the Yard.

THeſe following Remedies were tranſcribed in the Chmaber of Accounts at *Montpelier*, wherewith *Geofrey Giamatus* cured *Charls* the ninth of that name King of *France*, in the

yeare 1584. and had two thouſand Crowns for his Reward.

In the firſt place, Take *Caſſia new drawn half an ounce, Juice of Lycorice one dram Electuary of the Juice of Roſes two drams, water of Hops four ounces: mix them into a potion, to be taken in the morning. Afterwards for ten daies together, let him drink eight ounces of this following decoction, lukewarm.*

Take *Roots of Lycoris ſliced, of Marſh-mallows, ſebeſtens, Raiſons, each one handful; Seeds of Mallows, marſh-mallows, Smallage, Parſley, of each half a dram; Fountain water two pints, boyl them to the half. Of which let him take eight ounces, for ten daies, having firſt taken the potion, or a bolus of Caſſia.*

How to make the firſt ointment.

Take *Oyl of Roſes one pound. Cerus of Venice four ounces. Champhire half an ounce. Tutty prepared with Roſe-water half an ounce. Litturidge of Gold prepared three ounces. Antimony excellently poudered one ounce and half, opium, olibanum, maſtich, aloes hepatica, of each two ſcruples: mix them al and keep them in a leaden boxe.*

How to make the ſecond Oyntment for Conſolidation.

Take *of* Galens *ointment of Roſes new made, and waſhed in roſe water, Unguentum album camphoratum of Rhaſis, of each one ounce; Pomatum made without the pouders half an ounce; mix them together and keep them in a leaden box, for uſe.*

How the Oyntment is to be applied.

Take *a very ſmal candle of white wax covered with a very fine cloath. And to find the place where the Caruncle is, Take a Candle thicker than the former, ſmeared with oyl of ſweet almonds, and put it into his yard. And if you feel a ſtoppage, that you cannot thruſt it further; mark the place in the Candle, and meaſure the length of that part of the candle which went in, then wrap the candle in a peice of thin Linnen, and noint at the end with the ointment, and then put it into the yard, til it reach the bit of fleſh which ſtops the paſſage thereof. And if you find two Carnoſities; then you muſt ſo order your firſt ointment, as that it may touch them both, continuing the ſame for fifteen, or eighteen, or twenty daies, according to the greatneſs of the malady, and according as the Carnoſity, ſhal be found to open and turne to quittor. And when you perceive his urine to come freely and eaſily away, with little quittor therein, then you muſt take away the firſt gray ointment, from the Candle; and anoint the whole candle with the ſecond ointment, continuing the ſame eight or ten daies, til there come no quittor out with the Candle, nor no more pain is perceived in making water, at which time, you muſt abſtaine from the uſe of remedies.*

The 115 Obſervation, or Hiſtory, of Famous and Rare Cures, &c.

Nephritick pains.

THe 18 of *April* 1636. the widow of Mſr. *Dortis*, was tormented with a moſt vhement nephritick paine, which reached al along from her left kidny, according to the courſe of the ureter, as far as to her ſhare, with ſharpneſs of urine & frequent provocations to make water. She received no help from clyſters with Aqua benedicta, nor with Terpentine, nor with Laudanum, nor from mighty vomiting which came of its own accord, nor from baths to ſit in; nor from Laudanum taken inwardly, her cruel pain continuing two daies together. At laſt a vein in her Ankle was opened, and preſently being let blood, her extream pain ceaſed, only a dul pain remained.

The 116 Observation, or History, of Famous and Rare Cures, &c.

VVormes

ON the 8 day of *June* 1636. a Damsel three years old, the daughter of one *Robert* a Baker, was sick of a most accute Feaver, with great Anxiety and weakness. Being called to her about the evening, I judged she was troubled with the worms, and prescribe her in a little potion, of half a dram of Hiera and half an ounce of syrup of roses, with porslane water, which purged her in the night, and thereby she was much eased, the day following, I prescribe these following Juleps.

Take *Leaves of Sorrel, Porslane, and Endive, of each one handful. Tops of hypericon and scordium of each one pugil. Boyl them in a pint of water. In the strained liquor dissolve three ounces of syrup of Lemmons, Make al into a julep. Let her take three ounces morning, and noon, and night. Within two daies she was perfectly cured.*

Three daies after, the daughter of Mr. *Beuf* a Merchant, being six years old, was troubled with the like disease, very grievously, I prescribe her the same Remedies, with the same success; but she had one dram of hiera, and one ounce of syrup of roses in her potion.

The 117 Observation, or History, of Famous and Rare Cures, &c.

A stretching pain of the Belly.

ON the 15 of *June* 1636. *Peter Blanc*, a Citizen of *Montpelier*, had been troubled with an old loosnes, by which he became exceeding weak and lean. At last the 15 of *June* 1636. he perceived an huge rumbling in his belly, after which followed vomiting, and then he was exceedingly troubled with a painful stretching in his belly and a Feaver. He voided nothing at al either by vomit or stool, and he returned his Clysters, as they came, without any mixture of excrement. By order of an unskilful Chyrurgion he tooke a purging medicament, which brought nothing away, but his stretching and pain were thereby much encreased. I being called on the fifth day, find the man very weak, with the face of a dying man, as *Hippocrates* discribes it, and his hands and feet cold, the tokens of death at hand. I was much troubled in my mind to know what disease this was, and could not imagine that it was any other than a mighty inflamation, which with its extream swelling did so presse the Gutts, and so hinder the passage of the excrements. The Body being opened, the thick Guts were found black, half corrupted, and one of them bored through: and in his belly many most stinking humors by which it was manifest, that excrementitious humors which had been used for a long time to flow into the Gutts and to cause a Loosnes; did at last stay so long by reason of the weaknes of the expulsive faculty, as to corrupt the Gutts, and at last by their weight to open that part in which the said humors did abide, it being more putrified, and so to rush violently into the belly. And that Consequently his meats, and part of his Clysters, were passed through that hole, into the Cavity of his Belly.

The 118 Observation, or History, of Famous and Rare Cures, &c.

A malignant Feaver.

ON the 4 of *July*, 1636. *Peter Stelle*, Consul of the Town of *Perois*, being forty years of Age, fel into the disease termed Cholera, which was stopped in the space of twenty foure hours by convenient Remedies. After which followed upon the third day of his illness a large bleeding at the nose, by which he was very much weakned. He was troubled with a mighty thirst

thirſt at the beginning, and with unquietneſs and a burning heat in his midrif. Being called to him, I find his pulſe ſmal and very frequent, with an Hippocratick face, and afterwards viewing the habit of his body, I find it ſprinkled with large black and blew ſpots, whence the extraordinary malignity of the Diſeaſe was apparent, which was the Cauſe of ſo great ſymptomes. Beſides ordinary remedies, and cordial juleps with Sal prunellæ, to be given him thrice a day, I præſcribe him this pouder.

Take Sal prunelle half an ounce, Camphire half a dram. Make them into a pouder. Divide into four parts, and let him take one every third hour. He took his pouder at night, and was much better in the morning. I order him to take the pouder again with other remedies, and the ſame day he was freed from the preſent danger of death, and in a few daies after was perfectly recovered.

If thou wouldeſt fright away all diſeaſes from thy ſelf and freinds, then be ſure thou beeſt a diligent underſtanding Reader of the Guide to Phyſick and Chyrurgery, *Riverius* Practice of Phyſick, and the Idea of Phyſick: All of the laſt Edition, Engliſhed by me.

The 119 Obſervation, or Hiſtory, of famous and Rare Cures, &c.

The diſeaſe Cholera, proceeding from over violent purgation.

A Sword-ſmith at the ſign of the Lillie, being purged by a Barbar with a certain ſtrong pouder, in the extremity of hot weather, and he himſelf being of a very cholerick conſtitution; the night following, he was violently purged, voiding cholerick and watry excrements up and down, with pain in his ſtomach, extream thirſt, and exceeding weakneſs the day after. I being ſent for in the morning, do give him ſix grains of Laudanum, and within a quarter of an hour all the ſymptoms ceaſed. Nevertheleſs, ſtrengthning bags ſteeped in red wine were applied to his ſtomach, and the ſame day he was perfectly cured.

The 120 Obſervation, or Hiſtory of Famous and Rare Cures, &c.

A ſtubborn Looſneſs.

ON the 8 of *September* 1636. Mr. *Peter Hucher*, the Son of the renowned *John Hucher*, in times paſt Chancellor of our Univerſity, after a long tertian Ague, was taken with ſo vehement a Looſneſs, that within three daies, he was extreamly weakned, and in danger of his Life. I being ſent for, præſcribe him in the firſt place one dram of Rhubarb in pouder, with which he was much worſe. The day following when he went to reſt, I gave him a bolus of maſtich and terra ſigillata each half a dram, Laudanum four grains. His looſneſs was ſtopped, but yet he ſlept not; the daies following he went to ſtoole only twice or thrice, and in a few daies after was perfectly well. At the ſame time Mr. *Graſſet*, Preſident of the Court of Accounts, after a long continual feaver joined with ague fits, was taken with a moſt troubleſome looſneſs, with which he was extreamly weakned; I viſited him with another elder Phyſitian; and together we gave him in the firſt place divers ſtrengthners, and after that aſtringents, all in vain. The ancient Phyſitian would never agree to give him Laudanum, and his looſneſs had continued twenty daies, being allwaies alike violent. Alſo I often propounded tincture of Corrals, which by ſtrengthning the Liver does ſtop fluxes, alſo it potently cooles, which was much to be wiſhed in the patient, being of a Cholerick Complection, but it was neglected for divers daies together. At laſt, I daily urging the preparation and adminiſtration thereof, we gave him two ounces thereof, twice a day, for three daies together: wherewith his looſneſs was manifeſtly abated every day, and his excrements appeared digeſted, ſo that in a few daies he was thereby perfectly cured.

Note that he had before twice taken in broath Rhubarb twice infuſed in Cichory water, and dried again, which made him worſe than before.

The 121 Observation, or History, of Famous and Rare Cures, &c.

Head-ach by being in the Sun.

THe 8 of October, 1636. Mr. William Dorioman, a renowned Advocate, being in the town, expoſed himſelf to the Sun about Noon, going on foot to another town a good diſtance off; whereupon he was taken with light fits of a double tertian, which came about the evening, and in his fit he was troubled with an extream Headach, which the firſt three daies, went away with the Ague fit when it was morning. Meane while he was twice let blood, and had one purge given him. Which not withſtanding his Headeach and Ague continued, and after the fourth fit it turned into a continual Feaver: For it cruelly tormented him as wel in the morn-ings as at other times, nor did the feaver ever leave him. Being therefore it was manifeſt that the Headach proceeded from his being in the Sun, it was feared there might be ſome inflamation in his braſn, for remedies had been applied to his forhead and did no good. To remove therefore this grievous ſymptom, I cauſed ſeven ounces of blood to be taken from his forehead veine, whereby his Headach was preſently much abated, and the following fit returned much lighter, with little Head-ach. And the next day in the morning, he felt no pain at al.

The 122 Observation, or History, of famous and Rare Cures, &c.

An hectick and a putrid feaver together.

THe 13 of October 1636. the Daughter of Mr. de Serves Controller in the Court of Accounts fourteen yeares of age, about the End of Summer, was taken with a tertian Ague, which after four fits went away of it ſelf, and ſomtime after returned again; and the fits again ceaſing, a ſmal Feaver held her, with obſtructions in her belly, whereby her courſes were ſtopped; in which condition ſhe continued three months, without taking any thing, being in the Country. In the begining of October, I being ſent for, find her troubled with a lingring Feaver, extream-ly lean, and having a very eager burning heat to feel to, which grew worſe at night; yet ſhe did not perceive her ſelf to be feaveriſh, and through in the night ſhe ſeemed to be burning hot, yet ſhe was not thirſty, which made me conjecture her feaver did turn to an Hectick, and the rather becauſe ſhe grew hoter after her meales, and al along the artery of her Arme, the heat was perceived to be more intenſe, which the very by ſtanders obſerved; and ſome oyly matter did ſwim upon her urines. Seeing therefore, it was apparent that there was a putrid feaver linked with a beginning Hectick, I firſt ſet my ſelf to remove the putrid feaver, and preſently cauſed her to bleed ſeven ounces from the baſilica veln of her right Arme. The day following ſhe was purged with a gentle medicament. The third day ſhe took a cooling and opening ju-lep. The fourth day ſhe was again let blood, for her blood ſeemed very corrupt and aduſt. Her juleps were continued, and an emollient and opening fomentation was applied to the Re-gion of the ſpleen, alſo a liniment of the ſame faculty. The fift day, an emollient and purga-tive Clyſter was given her, by which ſhe was much purged, and her feaver much exaſperated; her pulſe was ſmal and frequent, her heat ſharp and biting; al which continued the whol night and half the day following. The two next daies following, the feaver was remiſs, & the mighty exaſperations thereof were very gentle; the ſwelling of her ſpleen and the reſiſten-cy thereof to the touch, were leſs; alſo the pain which ſhe was woont to feel, when ſhe was touched and preſſed never ſo little upon her ſpleen, was wel neare quite gone. Meane while the fomentations, linaments, and aperitive broths were continued. When thoſe two daies were over, ſhe was purged by a gentle medicament, which brought away much flegmatick matter by vomit, and wrought the oily twice downwards, the ſame day her feaver appeared yet more remiſs. After which her opening broths, fomentations, and liniments, were continued; alſo in every third broth half an ounce of ſenna was infuſed. So, by little and little ſhe re-gained her former Health.

The

The 123 Observation, or History, of Famous and Rare Cures, &c.

Fatty substances voided by stool.

THe little daughter of Mr. *de Rochemore*, named *Lucretia*, being three yeares old, had a continual Feaver proceeding from worms. She voided by stool very crude excrements, and resembling plaister, amongst which were found sometimes certain little green round things like large peale, which being laid upon a trencher and held neare the fire, did melt like butter. Having never seen such like matter before, nor ever read thereof in any Author, I was very doubtful, whence it should have its original. An ancient and experienced Apothecary said that he had observed the like excretions in his own daughter. At last, seeing this matter could not be thought to proceed from the fat or oyly moisture of her body, (for she had no hectick nor melting Feaver) and her excrements appeared very undigested; I conjectured, that this matter proceeded, from the fat eaten with her meat, which she had eaten too plentifully; or from broaths not wel skimmed from the fat; which fat did hurt digestion by relaxing the stomach, and was therein il digested; especially seeing other meats eaten in too great quantity, would remain undigested. This fatness therefore, retained long in the stomach or Guts; received its thickness and green color, from the Heat of her Body.

On the 12 of *October* 1636. this Conjecture of mine was confirmed by another Case of a Man troubled with Hypochondriacal Melancholly, who frequently thought that he had poison given him, which to resist he frequently took great quantities of Oyl. Now he voided such like round pellets, which he melted and kept in a glass. Which matter contained in the glass was like the dregs of oyl, and void of al smel. Whence I conjectured that the oyl taken in so great quantity, could not al be digested by Nature, but that the thicker parts were by long heat more thickned, and wrought into such pellets, which being melted, did resemble dregs of oyl.

The 124 Observation, or History, of Famous and Rare Cures, &c.

A Squinzie.

THe 14 of *October* 1636. a Tailor forty yeares of age was troubled with the squinzie, which hindred his swallowing, and he was let blood, clysters were given him, and a vesicatory applied by an Apothecary: these things doing no good, they send for me. And observing that he was hardly able with al his might to swallow a little broath, taken in a spoon, and that he could not therefore drink a purging potion. I prescribe him two ounces of Aqua benedicta, which purged him frequently by vomit and stool, and the same day he was cured of his Squinzie.

The way to deliver from death is to be wel studied in these Books, viz. the Guide to Physick and Chyrurgery, the Practice of Physick and the Idea of Physick, of the last Editions, Englished by me.

The 125 Observation, or History of famous and Rare Cures, &c.

Sciatica Pain.

ON the 8. of *January* 1637. Mrs. *Grefveille*, Councellor in the supream Court of Accounts, was vexed with a pain in his huckle bone, in the bitterest of the winter: having taken Clysters, and a purging medicine, and a plaister being applied to the part pained, al did no good; at last, his ankle veine on the same side was opened, and within a few hours the pain abated, and afterward went quite away; so that the second day after his blood-letting, he went about his wonted affairs, being able to go about the City on foot.

The

The 116 Obſervation, or Hiſtory, of famous and rare Cures, &c.

A Sleepy Diſeaſe, Cured with a Sleepy Remedy.

THe 22 of *October*, 1636. A certain Virgin of *Melgore*, twenty years old, named *Liquiore*, was troubled with a double Tertian, about the beginning of Autum, for twelve daies together: and was freed therefrom after the uſe of ſome Remedies. She fel again into the fits, which at firſt ſeized her after their wonted manner; but afterwards certain new Symptomes hapned with the fit, viz. Extream ſleep, redneſs of Face, ſticking out of the Eyes, a pricking pain of her left ſide, and extream difficulty in ſwallowing; her meat going to the bottom of her gullet, and to the Orifice of her ſtomach, was ſuddenly caſt up again; and if any thing paſſed in, it was with great trouble. I ſuſpected that a fit of the mother was combined with an Ague, and appointed her Remedies againſt the mother, which notwithſtanding the diſeaſe continued. Some daies after, theſe Symptomes returned without a Feaver, which exceedingly confirmed my opinion; alſo in that the pain in her right ſide, did ſometimes go over into the left; and ſometimes ſhe felt pricking pains in ſeveral parts of her belly, her ſtomach was pained and ſick; and ſometimes ſhe ſeemed to be ſtrangled. I obſerved three things peculiar in this diſeaſe. The firſt was difficulty in ſwallowing, which is not common in fits of the Mother, yet that was not perpetual, but came by fits, for it hindered her from ſwallowing meat or drink for many hours, and then it went quite away, ſo that ſhe ſwallowed even pils in my preſence, without any trouble. The ſecond was, that theſe fits of the mother came every day in the evening, as conſtantly as Ague-fits. The third, that when her pain of the ſtomach and other Symptomes were moſt troubleſome, ſtrengthening and heating bags did encreaſe her Diſeaſe, and brought the Choaking fit upon her. Which being told me, and I being preſent at one of her fits, the Patient complaining of an exceeding pain at her ſtomach, I cauſed a Cruſt of bread toaſted, and moiſtened in hot wine, and ſprinkled with the pouder of Cloves and Nutmegs, to be applied to her ſtomach; which very much encreaſed her ſuffocation, ſo that we were fain to take it away. Then for trial ſake I cauſe a cloath four times doubled, to be wet in Vinegar and water mingled, and to be applied cold to her ſtomach, which being laid on, the ſuffocation and pain of her ſtomach preſently ceaſed. Which experiment was ſeconded by cold water taken at the ſame time, ſome drops whereof ſhe ſwallowed with much ado, felt their coldneſs in her ſtomach, and was preſently releived. Afterwards, I cauſed the cruſt of bread to be laid on again hot, which then ſhe patiently endured. The reaſon whereof I conceive to be, that the vapours being raiſed and troubling her ſtomach, were by hot things put more into motion: but after they had been laid with cold things, the ſtomach being free from the ſaid Vapors, could eaſily endure hot Medicaments. I conceive by the Feaver foregoing ſome ſeed retained, was corrupted, which did produce ſuch Symptomes. Peradventure alſo the relicks of menſtrual blood putrified, might Concur to the production of theſe Symptomes. But the ſaid putrified matter had its motions at ſet times, even as we ſee the matter of inward Impoſtumes, is alſo often moved at ſet times, and preſents fits as it were of a Tertian Ague.

Now before ſhe was taken with her fit, becauſe ſhe could then ſwallow very wel, ſhe took by my advice four little pils made of four grains of Laudanum, and a little after the foreſaid fit came; but after two hours, the Laudanum beginning to work, al Symptomes abated, and ſhe was wel al that night, whereas the foregoing nights ſhe was extreamly tormented. The day after in the morning ſhe took an Hyſterical and purging Apozeme, and continued the uſe thereof three daies together, wherewith the Cure was perfected. I doubted much, when I gave her the Laudanum, becauſe ſhe was wont to fal into a deep ſleep in her fits, which might be encreaſed by the uſe of the Laudanum. But at laſt I reſolved with my ſelf, that the ſaid deep ſleep did ariſe from vapors aſcending plentyfully from the womb into the Head, by prohibiting the aſcent whereof, the ſleepy fit might be hindred. And the Event proved according. Whence this true Concluſion is gathered, which ſeemes at firſt ſight a great Paradox, Viz. That a ſleepy diſeaſe may be ſtopped, by the uſe of Laudanum.

The 127 Obſervation, or Hiſtory, of Famous and Rare Cures, &c.

Gripings in Children.

ON the 12. of *December*, 1636. my little Son *Charles*, being four months old, was taken with a moſt cruel colick pain, which made him cry and roar continually. I gave him half a ſcruple of pouder Diamoſchi Dulcis in milk, whereupon his pain ceaſed for a quarter of an hour, and then it returned as feirce as before. A Clyſter was given him of a Decoction of Anis and Chamæmel, with the yolk of an Eg and Sugar, and therewith the pain was wholly taken away. Eight daies after, he was taken with the ſame pain; he took the ſame pouder and the ſame Clyſter, but al in Vain. At laſt I cauſe a Fomentation to be applied to his whol belly, of Aniſe and Chamæmel boyled in Aqua Vitæ, at the firſt Application whereof the pain went quite away. The day following the pain returned again, which being ſomwhat mitigated by the foreſaid remedies, the day following in the morning, I gave him an ounce of Syrup of Roſes. Which when he had taken, he vomited flegm like the white of an Eg, but voided little or nothing by ſtool, and his gripings returned. He took the Syrup again with infuſion of one dram of Senna, which alſo did little good. At laſt I gave him ten grains of the Earle of Warwicks pouder [or Pulvis Cornachini] in Milk, with which being gently and largely purged, he was perfectly freed from this Diſeaſe.

The 128 Obſervation, or Hiſtory, of Famous and Rare Cures, &c.

A fluxion upon the Lungs in an Infant.

THe 19. of *January*, 1637. My ſaid young ſon *Charles*, a month after his former diſeaſe, fel into a moſt cruel Catarrhe, which did flow down into his breſt, which cauſed him frequently to Cough, and to rattle in his pipes as he breathed. I gave him a purgation of Syrup of Roſes, with an Infuſion of Senna, whereby he vomited flegm, but purged little downwards. Pectoral Syrups were given him; his breaſt was nointed. His diſeaſe continuing, the ſame purgation was given him to ſmal purpoſe. At laſt I gave him ten grains of the Earles pouder in Milk, wherewith he was gently and plentifully purged, and was wel the ſame day.

The 129 Obſervation, or Hiſtory, of Famous and Rare Cures, &c.

Suppreſsion of Urine.

ON the 27. of *January*, 1637. Mſr. *de Labaie*, an Auditor in the Court of Accounts, was two daies troubled with a total ſuppreſſion of urine, with a pain in his left Kidney, and of the Ureter on the ſame ſide. He had taken Clyſters by order of another Phyſitian, and fomentations had been applied to the Region of his ſhare. I was called to conſult with the ſaid Phyſitian, we ordered his Hemorrhoid Veins to be opened (which did then ſwel) by Application of Leeches, an emollient Clyſter was again given him, with half the quantity of Oyls, a Fomentation was applied to his Kidney and Ureter, and afterwards they were anointed, with Oyl of Scorpions and ſweet Almons, alſo a Cataplaſme of the ſtrainings of the emollient Decoction, with onions roaſted in the embers; and at the ſame time, we gave him this julep following.

Take *Juyces of Pellitory of the Wal and Sea-fennel, of each one ounce an and half. Juyce of Lemmons and Oyl of Sweet Almons, of each one ounce. Mix them, make al into a julep. Within an hour after he had taken this julep, he made water abundantly, and was freed, ſeven hours after we began our conſultation, during which ſpace the foreſaid Remedies*

dies

dies were administred. To seal up the Cure, he took the day following, a bole of Cassia, Rhubarb, and cream of Tartar.

The 130 *Observation, or History, of Famous and* Rare Cures, &c.

A Stubborne Gonorrhæa.

THe 6. of *February*, 1637. Mſr. *N.* thirty years old of a Cholerick and Sanguin conſtitution, having had a Gonorrhæa for two months, and the Chyrurgeons had tried many remedies in vain, he did commit himſelf to my Care. In the firſt place I order him to be let blood in his Ankle, and the day after one ſcruple of Mercurius Dulcis, with half a ſcruple of Diagridium in broath; after that a bolus of three drams of Terpentine, and one dram of Rhubarb, for ſix daies together, which did him no good. The purging pouder is repeated, and after that he uſed the following water for twelve daies, which preſently did him good, and he was perfectly cured; it did ſo powerfully cleanſe the internal ulcer, that his urine being poured upon the ground, did infect the ſame with a white color, like diſſolved Chalk.

Take *dried mint three ounces. Seeds of lettuce, Rue, and Agnus Cauſtus, of each two ounces and an half. Florentine Orice Root two ounces; Dittamus of Creete ten drams; Sugar two pound; Pouder them al, add thereunto five ounces of clear Terpentine, and thirty ounces of white Wine, and diſtil them in Balneo Mariæ. Let the Patient take two ſpoonfuls, in the morning two hours before meate, and in the evening four ſpoonfuls after Supper.*

If thou wouldeſt quel al Diſeaſes, read and underſtand *Riverius* Practice, the Idea of Phyſick, The Guide to Phyſick and Chyrurgery, and the *London Diſpenſatory*, al of the laſt Edition, Engliſhed by me.

The 131 *Observation, or History, of Famous and Rare Cures, &c.*

Of an Hiſterical Epilepſie.

THe 17. of *February*, 1637. the Wife of Mſr. *Palemarchus de Sumenes*, was vexed many years with ſundry Hyſterical Diſeaſes, which did imitate the fits of the falling-ſickneſs, ſhe tried many Remedies preſcribed by many Phyſitians but al in vain. At laſt by the advice of a woman, ſhe took the fleſh of a Wolf reduced to pouder, and wore a peice of the ſaid fleſh ſalted, alwaies about her, after which ſhe was perfectly freed from the foreſaid Diſeaſe.

The 132 *Observation, or History, of Famous and Rare Cures, &c.*

Immoderate flux of the Courſes.

ON the 6. of *March*, 1637. among other Remedies preſcribed for the Wife of Mſr. *de Vitrac*, who was brought to deaths door, by an immoderate flux of her Courſes, which hapned after abortion, the following julep did wonderfully help her.

Take *of the flowers of Chamæleon, Spikenard, dragons blood very finely poudered, of each one ſcruple; Plantan and Roſewater, of each one ounce and an half. Make a julep, of which let her take two ſpoonfuls, twice in an hour.*

Alſo extract of coral with Plantain water, did her much good.

The 133 Obſervation, or Hiſtory, of famous and Rare Cures, &c.

A Cholerick Cholick:

THe 18. of *May*, 1637. a certain woman was tormented with cruel pricking pains of the Cholick, al her belly over, wel near. Another ancient Phyſitian had given her ordinary Remedies, hot, wind expelling, and flegm purging, by which ſhe found no eaſe. At laſt, I being called, by the kind of pain, its ſcituation, the hot complexion of the woman, and her very red urines, I conjecture it was a Cholerick Cholick; and I preſcribe her preſently blood-letting, a cooling and Lenitive Clyſter, and a cooling julep, wherewith her pain was very much abated, and ſeeing her blood appeared extream Cholerick and corrupt, ſhe was again let blood the day following, whereupon her pain went quite away. And finally, the Cure was perfected by a Choler purging potion. I preſcribed her at the firſt a bath to ſit in; which ſhe uſed not, becauſe of the great abatement of her pain.

The 134 Obſervation, or Hiſtory, of Famous and Rare Cures, &c.

A Malignant feaver.

ON the 7. of *June*, 1637. Mr. *Patris*, a Councellor, being fifty five years old, was taken with a light coldneſs, and was feaveriſh al night, continuing much after one and the ſame manner; the day after in the morning he was free from his Feaver, and in the evening he was Feaveriſh again, and after the ſame manner his Feaver continued intermitting, until the ſeventh day, and then it was turned to a continual Feaver. Howbeit he was troubled with a frequent coldneſs of his Feet, and Knees, and ſomtimes of his Hands; his Urines were like thoſe of an healthy perſon; howbeit al things grew every day, worſe and worſe, ſo that it was eaſie to ſee, that it was a Malignant Feaver, and it was afterwards manifeſt by the ſpots which came out on the ninth day, alſo by his ravings, and the Convulſive motion of his Hands, with a certain profound ſleepyneſs, and a looſneſs. The ordinary Cure, uſual in ſuch caſes, was adminiſtred. But this is peculiarly obſervable, that he was let blood on the third day, and his blood appeared laudable. On the fifth day he was purged, while it was yet an Ague. On the ſeventh he had a looſneſs, which continuing til the eleventh, hindred any further blood-letting. And ſeeing on the twelfth day the flux ſeemed to be ſtopped, I doubted whether or no I ſhould let him blood, ſeeing the other Evacuation had done no good, and the great weakneſs and danger wherein the patient lay (ſo that his Kindred Lamented for him as one at deaths dore) ſeemed to diſſwade the ſame. Add hereunto, that for the two foregoing daies, many Cupping-Glaſſes were applied with Scarrification, to ſupply the want of blood-letting. At laſt I conceived that it was beſt to let him bleed ſome five ounces by way of Trial, ſo that if he bore it wel, more might be taken away afterward. Blood was taken away, black and corrupt, with the good bearance of the patient; five hours after, the like quantity was taken away, the patient remainning as ſtrong as before. In his cooling Juleps were mingled Scordium and St. Johnswort: wherein Sal Prunella and ſpirit of Vitriol were diſſolved. In al his broaths he took a ſcruple of Bezoardicum Mineral. On the ſame twelfth day at night, he had a plentiful looſneſs, yet the Patient ſeemed to be better after it. Wine was given him to drink very wel tempered with water. He did many times Sneeze in the Courſe of his diſeaſe, which made me Hope he would do wel, although many other Signs did portend his death. The thirteenth and fourteenth daies his looſneſs continued, with extream weakneſs. Chyſters were given him of Milk, wherewith his looſneſs was moderated. A Julep was given him of Orenge-flower and Roſe-water, with Confectio Alkermes and ſome drops of Cinnamon water, of which he took now and then a ſpoonful to ſtrengthen him. His looſneſs being abated, his ſleepyneſs abated on the fifteenth day, and his raving ceaſed. Yet he made little or no Urine, On the ſix-

teenth

teenth day, he was a little better. His Tongue, before dry, appeared moiſt. After which by little and little he grew perfectly wel.

The 135 Obſervation, or Hiſtory, of Famous and Rare Cures, &c.

Of a Looſneſs.

ON the fifteenth of *July*, 1637. Madam *de Groſſet*; being fourſcore years old, but of an exceeding ſtrong body, was taken with a looſneſs and Teneſmus, which made her go many times to ſtool every hour, with moſt grievous gripings. Her ſtools were various, ſomtimes yellow, ſomtimes Leek-green, and ſomtimes black. The ſeminary of the diſeaſe was taken away by four purgations, repeated with ſome diſtance between, of Rhubarb, Parſly infuſed partly in ſubſtance, with Syrup of Roſes. In the intermediate times, clenſing, pain aſſwaging, and ſtrengthening Clyſters were given her, with cooling and thickening juleps and Emulſions.

The 136 Obſervation, or hiſtory, of famous and Rare Cures, &c.

Prognoſtick of a Dyſentery.

IN the month of *July*, 1637. the daughter of Mſr. *Guilliminet*, Secretary of the Parliament of *Languedock*, five years old, being troubled with a Dyſentery, voided divers Excrements, Yellow, green, and ſomtimes black. About the end of her diſeaſe, ſundry ſpots appeared, like flea-bitings in her Face and other parts, and one of her hands was ſwelled with a Flegmatick Tumor; which were certain preſages of death.

At the ſame time the Reverend Father *Guardane*, Provoſt of a Covent of *Franciſcans*, called *Minorites*, being troubled with a Dyſentery, was taken with frequent Hiccupings, which were forerunners of his death.

The 137 Obſervation, or Hiſtory, of famous and rare Cures, &c.

A Dyſentery.

IN *Auguſt*, 1637. the Son of Mſr. *de Mauſſac*, Preſident of the Exchequer Court, being eight years old, had a bloody flux and voided much blood, with green and Leek colord ſtools, and a continual Feaver. On the third day of his Diſeaſe, he took the infuſion of a dram of Rhubarb, made in plantane water with yellow ſanders, in which was diſſolved a ſcruple of the pouder of Rhubarb, and an ounce of Syrup of Roſes. He was very wel purged, voided many Excrements without blood, and was in a manner free from his Feaver, al that day. The day following he voided pure blood, with which were mingled certain drops as it were of Leek colored matter: his ſtools were frequent, with gripings in his belly and a Feaver, which continued til the eight day, though al ordinary Remedies were adminiſtred both internal and external, as alſo ſundry Clyſters. On the ſeventh day, extract of corals was given him three times, a ſcruple at a time, with plantane and Roſe water and Syrup of Quinces; but in vain. At the beginning of the eight day, when both his Feaver and Flux grew worſe and worſe, and he vorded pure blood, he was let blood about Noon, to the quantity of five ounces. At night al things were as formerly. The next day in the morning, I gave him two grains of Laudanum, with extract of Coral, Plantane, and Roſe water, and Syrup of Quinces: his looſneſs was wholly ſtopped for four hours, he ſlept quietly, waking between whiles. After four hours, he went to ſtool again, thrice in two hours, and voided meer blood as before, and vomited up his broath. Whereupon there was more appearance of danger, ſeeing other remedies had done him no good, nor Laudanum it ſelf, which does alwaies help in this Diſeaſe. He did ſneeze

once.

once. His fourth ſtool after the Laudanum, voided more of Excrements without any blood. He Vomited no more. Towards evening he went more frequently to ſtool, yet leſs than before he had taken the Laudanum, nor were they ſo bloody, but did partly conſiſt of Dung. The night following, he ſlept pretty largely by fits, and his ſtools were ſeldomer. In the morning he took a Medicament of one dram of Rhubarb, one ſcruple of Citrine Myrobalans, red ſanders half a ſcruple, infuſed in a decoction of plantain, purſlane, and tamarinds, diſſolving in the ſtrained liquor a ſcruple of powder of Rhubarb, and half an ounce of Syrup of roſes. Which made him void plenty of dung and humors, with very little blood, and ſmal gripings; his Feaver was abated, and the night following he went ſeldomer to ſtool, and ſlept better. The following daies his looſnes continued by fits, without any blood, gripings, or Feaver. Yet he was afterwards vexed with a continual looſneſs, and a lingering Feaver for an whol month together, with a mighty apperite, he had ſtools in the night in his bed, and frequently in the day time, ſo that it ſeemed to incline to an Hectick Feaver. Finally, I gave him two ſcruples of Bole-Armenick with broath, two daies together, and ſo his looſneſs was perfectly Cured.

The 138 *Obſervation, or Hiſtory, of famous and Rare Cures, &c.*

Cholick Pain.

THe 25. of *September*, 1637. The Wife of Mſr. *de Sorret* the Kings Councellour in his Supream Court of Accounts and Subſidies, being with Child in her ninth month, was taken with a moſt grievous Cholick pain, which made her at the firſt vomit al that ſhe took; but ſhe voided nothing by ſtool. She had devoured much fruit, her pain was fixed near her ſhort ribs on the right ſide, ſo that there was fear of her Liver being inflamed, becauſe ſhe had a feaver and was very thirſty. After many Clyſters, Fomentations, and baths to ſit in, ſhe voided downwards liquid and crude Excrements. Howbeit her pain continued. At laſt there was given her a purging Medicament, of half an ounce of Catholicum, infuſed in a decoction of Cichory and Maiden-hair, with a dram of Rhubarb alſo infuſed, and an ounce of manna and as much of Syrup of Roſes: She had ſeven ſtools and her pain was much abated. The day after the pain continued, but more remiſs, a Clyſter was given her, wherewith ſhe had five ſtools, and afterwards voided much Urin, whereupon ſhe was perfectly Cured.

To deliver from the Diſeaſes before mentioned, and to preſerve health, Read with care the Practice of Phyſick, The Idea of Phyſick, *Riolanus*, and the *London Diſpenſatory*, of the laſt Editions, all Engliſhed by me.

The 139 *Obſervation, or Hiſtory, of Famous and Rare Cures, &c.*

Inflamation of the Teſticles.

ON the 20. of *September*, 1637. Mſr. *Texiar*, of *Niſmes*, Doctor of the Canon and Civil Laws, by reaſon of Violent riding, fel into an Inflammation of his right Teſticle, with a large Tumor. He was twice let blood in his Arme, once in his Ankle, a purge was given him. The part was fomented with Roſewater, and a Cataplaſme was laid on of bean meal boyled in Vinegar and water, a fourth part of Vinegar being mixed with three parts of water, which Cataplaſme never failed me in this Diſeaſe. Howbeit, in this patient the skin of his Cod was ſo tender, that the ſharp Vinegar did fetch off the Skin, and he could no longer endure the Cataplaſme. I cauſed the Cataplaſme to be repeated; but to take away the acrimony of the Vinegar, I cauſed it to be boyled with litturidge; and ſo the Cataplaſme did operate excellently, and the Patient was cured of his ſwelling in the ſpace of three daies.

The 140 *Obſervation, or Hiſtory, of Famous and Rare Cures, &c.*

Of an Hepatick flux.

THe 11. of *October*, 1637. The wife of *Peter Banete*, a Baker, after certain fits of a Tertian Ague, fel into a flux of the Liver, whereby al her ſtools became bloody. I being ſent for, preſcribe her preſently two grains of Laudanum, with half a dram of Conſerve of Roſes, and within an hour her flux ſtopped; returning afterwards, ſhe voided only Humors and not blood, and was Cured with other vulgar Remedies.

The 141 *Obſervation, or Hiſtory, of Famous and Rare Cures, &c.*

Eryſipelas.

Mſr. *de Gout*, a Gentleman of *Montpelier*, twenty five years old, was often troubled with a red ſwelling in his Legs; he began to drink his wine much ſtronger than before, and with very little water in it; from which time he has never been troubled with his ſwelling, though it have been four or five years ſince. I conceive the reaſon is this, that his expulſive faculty being ſtrengthened by the Wine, the matter of the ſaid inflamation is expelled, by ſtool, Urins, or inſenſible tranſpiration.

The 142 *Obſervation, or Hiſtory, of Famous and Rare Cures, &c.*

A Tertian Ague with Vomiting and Looſneſs in the fit.

THe 18. of *Auguſt*, 1638. Mſr. *Durant*, a Proctor in the Court at *Montpelier*, fifty years of Age, had five fits of a Tertian Ague, from which he was delivered only by blood-letting. For fifteen daies he was wel, and did Eat ſome ripe fruit. He fel into the ſame Ague again, and in the ſecond fit was vexed with a moſt grievous vomiting and looſneſs, which made him void many Cholerick Excrements upwards and downwards, with extream unquietneſs and debilitation; ſo that his life was now in danger. I preſcribe him the following Julep, with which preſently al his Symptomes were ſtopped, he ſlept two hours, and his fit was terminated by ſweat. And in a few daies he was perfectly wel.

Take *Water of Lettuce, Roſes, and Plantain, of each one ounce; Syrup of Quinces, one ounce. Confectio de Hyacintho, one dram; Laudanum Opiatum, two grains. Mix them into a Julep and let him take it preſently.*

The 143 *Obſervation, or Hiſtory, of Famous and Rare Cures, &c.*

Grievous ſore Mouths in Children.

THe 4. of *Septemper*, 1638. My Son *Stephen*, being four Years old, had a moſt ſore fluxion upon his Tongue and Jawes, ſo that they were ful of infinite Ulcers, and they whitiſh, and very painful, with great Inflamation. He could take neither meat nor broath, nor ſuck milk. And he cryed day and night, could not ſleep, was lean and almoſt conſumed. Among remedies, Honey of Roſes, with Spirit of Vitriol, did him no good. He had a large looſneſs with which he voided leek-colored Choler. A Veſicatory did him much good. But his paine and cryings continued, and the Patient continually voided ſerous and ſharp Humors by his mouth, the heat and Inflamation drawing the Humors more and more.

At

At laſt I gave him one grain of Laudanum with broath, and therewith his pain was aſſwaged, a ſhort ſleep Cauſed, which continued afterward moderate, and came at its hours. After which he grew better, and the flux of humors running out of his mouth was wholly ſtopped. Howbeit the day following he had a purging medicament given him, which did him likewiſe much good.

The 144 *Obſervation, or Hiſtory, of Famous and Rare Cures, &c.*

Of a Diſentery.

IOan *de Paraviſol*, eighteen yeares of age, was troubled with a moſt greivous Dyſentery, with an acute Feaver. For ſeven dayes ſhe was in the hands of another elder phyſitian, who did preſcribe her nothing elſe but detergent Clyſters and rhubarb, whereby her Feaver was encreaſed, and her diſentery became worſe. He being abſent, I was ſent for, and gave her firſt three grains of Laudanum, with which her fluxe was much abated that very night, and ſhe ſlept three or four hours. In the morning I let her blood, and the blood came away exceeding hot. Then I gave her one ſcruple of extract of Coral, with plantane water, twice in a day, but without any profit. For ſhe had a moſt bitter night, both in reſpect of her Feaver, and of the flux which was bloody, and had been ſtopped ſome time by the uſe of Laudanum. The next day in the morning, I give her Laudanum again, and the flux was ſtopped; at evening a vein is opened again. The Excretion of blood was in leſs quantity, but ſhe voided leeke-coloured choler very corroſive, her Feaver and thirſt being very violent. For her thirſt, I preſcribed her juleps, of a decoction of porſlane and plantan with Sal Prunellæ, which did her much good; howbeit her diſeaſe continued ſtil. At laſt there was given her in the morning, roſewater with common oyl; at noon a decoction of the Guts of a wether boiled much away with the pouder of Actes berries. The patient was thereby much holpen. And the day following thoſe three remedies being once againe repeated, ſhe attained her health.

The 145 *Obſervation, or Hiſtory, of Famous and Rare Cures, &c.*

Of the Meazles.

THe 28 of *Septem.* 1638. The nurſe of my ſon *Stephen*, by name *Claudia*, was taken with the Meazles, wherewith her whole body was covered, with an intenſe Feaver. Whereunto was added a moſt greivous ſymprom, viz. a thin fluxion falling upon her lungs, which cauſed her frequently to cough, and was in danger to choake her, with a mighty hoarſeneſs. A veſicatory was applied to her neck, and two grains of Laudanum were given her, with conſerve of roſes. Her fluxion was ſtopt al night. The day after it returned again, and laudanum was given her again with like effect, whereupon in a few dayes ſhe recovered, her hoarſneſs abiding a long time after.

The 146 *Obſervation, or Hiſtory, of Famous and Rare Cures, &c.*

A tertian Ague.

IN the yeare, 1638. very long tertian agues were riſe in Autumne, from which many were delivered, by taking after frequent blood-lettings and purgations, one dram of treacle with plantane water for three dayes together. In ſuch as I feared its heat moſt, I gave it after ſupper. But one took treacle without my advice while his diſeaſe was yet crude, with red urines, and his Feaver was increaſed. Wherewith the experiment of *Galen* was confirmed which is recorded in his book *de Precog. ad Poſthumum*, Chap. 2. and 3. touching *Eudemus* the Peripateric, to whom while his diſeaſe was yet crude, the Phyſitians of *Rome* gave treacle, and his ſimple Quartan was by that meanes turned into a triple. But with the ſame Treacle given by *Galen*, when the ſignes of concoction appeared, he was happily cured.

THE

The 147 *Obſervation, or Hiſtory of Famous and Rare Cures, &c.*

An Inveterate Diarrhea.

THe 15. of *Octob.* 1638. a Gentelman thirty yeares of Age, came to *Montpelier* to take advice about a Looſneſs that had troubled him eight years together, which made him go to ſtool five or ſix times in a day and night, voiding excrements partly cholerick and partly flegmatick. He fel into this ſickneſs by bad diet, which he was forced to uſe many yeares together, following the Camp. It did not much weaken him, yea rather he was ruddy of countenance, eſpecially about his cheekes. I ſent him to the bathes of *Baleruca*, the water whereof he drank ſix daies together, and his looſneſs was quite ſtopped, ſo that for eight dayes after he had left taking the water, he never roſe in the night, whereas before he was wont to riſe twice or thrice every night. I preſcribed him many other uſual remedies to ſtrengthen his natural parts, which he ſaid he would make uſe of in his own Country.

The 148 *Obſervation, or Hiſtory, of Famous and Rare Cures, &c.*

A moſt ſtubborne Vomiting.

ON the 15. of *Octob.* 1638. Mſr. *Enguarran*, Canon of the Cathedral Church at *Montpelier*, of a melancholick and aduſt temperament, fel into a moſt ſtuborn Vomiting without any manifeſt cauſe, wherewith he voided with much ſtraining, flegmatick, clammy, and mucilaginous excrements; alſo he belched up much wind after he had taken any broath. Many medicaments were uſed by other Phyſicians in vain, for two monthes together. At firſt he took pils of hiera for many dayes together; afterwards he was purged with a decoction of Senna and an infuſion of rhubarbe, and afterwards with apozemes, in the uſe whereof he was not able to continue. Afterwards milk was given him becauſe they ſuſpected he had an ulcer in his ſtomach, alſo frequently he took treacle, for feare he might have bin poyſoned, and many fomentations and unguents were applied. I being called find his Hipochondria very much diſtended, eſpecially his left, his pulſe ſtrong enough, though he was weake enough in reſpect of his animal faculties. I conceived the humors flowed out of his hipochondria, and that this vomiting was a ſpice of the Hypochondriacal Diſeaſe. At evening, two grains of laudanum were given him, and al night he vomited not, but reſted quietly. The day following he was let blood, which was ointed by his other phyſicians, and ſix ounces of blood was taken away, which was very aduſt; he vomited twice or thrice that day, a Cliſter was caſt in about the evening; alſo I preſcribed an emollient and opening fomentation, to be applied to his Hypochondria, and a Liniment with the ſame Vertues. The third day he took this pouder.

Take *Rhubarb one dram*; *Myrobalans Citrine one ſcruple*; *Spodium and Maſtick of each ſix grains*: *make them into a pouder, give it in the morning with broath. He vomited up his medicament, and would take no more. After a month he died, and his body being opened, his Epiploon or cal was found thick, red, ſcirrous and contracted, ſo that it reſembled the Liver at firſt ſight, and was as thick as it; his ſtomach was black and blew, thin at the bottom, and in the upper part ſcirrhous; his guts black and blew. His ſpleen was in good Caſe. Melancholly humors were heaped up in the Cal, and from thence flowed back into the ſtomach.*

The 149 Obſervation, or Hiſtory, of Famous and Rare Cures, &c.

A long Looſneſs with an ulcer of Inteſtinum Rectum.

ON the ſecond of *Novemb.* 1638. Mſr. *Ludowick Maſſanes*, being vexed two months with a double tertian, with a looſneſs partly of dung, partly of Humors, and partly of blood, whereby he had eight or ten ſtooles in a day. At laſt he was freed from his ague fits, his Looſneſs abiding, whereby a paine was raiſed in his right or ſtreight gut, a little above his fundament, alwaies vexing him, even when he went not to ſtool. Sometimes he voided laudable dung, ſometimes a reddiſh matter, reſembling the colour of the liver, and ſometimes mixed with quittor. I conjectured by reaſon of his long looſneſs, that there was an ulcer about the internal hemorrhoides. He did loath in a maner al medicaments. And therefore I adviſed him to uſe the bath waters for three dayes together. The firſt day, his appetite, long ſince dejected, was preſantly reſtored, and conſequently the pain of his fundament quite vaniſhed, an indifferent Looſneſs remaining, whereby he had two ſtooles in the night, and as many in the day, and his excrements were ſoft, but wel digeſted; whereupon he grew every day better, ſo that after fifteen daies taking the waters again, he was perfectly Cured. Yet he received a fumigation from a decoction of tapius barbatus, through a groaning chaire, with which his looſneſs was mightily ſtopped, though he uſed it but twice. The Effect thereof was ſenſible.

The 150 Obſervation, or Hiſtory, of Famous and Rare Cures, &c.

Arthritick pains.

ON the twelft of *November* 1638. Mſr. *Monret* of *Montpelier*, was vexed with arthritick paines, which afflicted divers parts, and rambled through al the jointes. He had bin troubled an whole month with this diſeaſe, and was many times purged, blood-letting being alſo not omitted. At laſt he uſed this following Diet-drink.

Take *Salſaparilla one ounce, ſhavings of Guajacum two drams, water as much as ſhal ſuffice. Let them boil til a third part be conſumed, ſtrain out the liquour, adding thereto a little Cinamon.*

After he had uſed this diet drink eight daies together, he began to void with his urines, a flegmatick matter, which ſtuck to the botom of the Chamber-pot, and at the ſame time he found great eaſe of his paines, until he was perfectly cured, that flegmatick matter iſſuing forth for many daies together.

The 151 Obſervation, or Hiſtory, of Famous and Rare Cures, &c.

Wandering pains.

ON The 13 of *Novemb.* 1638. Mſr. *Gaillard* was ſuddenly taken with moſt greivous, wandering paines, tormenting ſometimes his thighes, other whiles his knees, legs, or feet, or Loins. Another phyſitian was called, and took away five porrengers of blood within an hours ſpace, and his pain not abating he gives him a pil of laudanum, whereby the pains were pacified that night, and til next day at noon. In the afternoon the pains returned as bad as ever. I being called, the other phyſitian being abſent, preſcribe him a bolus of half an ounce of diapruinum ſolutivum, and one ſcruple of jallap, to be taken at night, which he muſt otherwiſe paſs without ſleep and in moſt greivous pains. He was purged ten times to good purpoſe, for the pains were very much abated, and conſeqently in a ſhort time quite diſcuſſed. He was a man of fifty years old of a black cholerick temperament, toſſed with many paſſions of mind, by reaſon

reaſon of his being Conſul that yeare. And therefore I did conjecture that thoſe pains proceeded from a very thin and ſharp wheyiſh matter, which was carried this way and that way in a kind of furious motion; and that therefore it was ſoon to be drawn forth by a purging Medicament.

If thou wouldeſt be a helpful friend to man-kind, be a diligent reader of *Riverius* Practice of Phyſick, and the Idea of Phyſick, and the beſt way to Phyſick and Chyrurgery, and the *London* Diſpenſatory; al of the laſt edition engliſhed by me.

The 152 Obſervation, or Hiſtory, of Famous and Rare Cures, &c.

Spitting of Blood.

ON the tenth of *Decemb.* 1638. the wife of Mſr. *Capon*, Auditer in the Court of Accounts, fifty yeares of age, after midnight was taken with a plenteful ſpitting of blood, which ſhe brought up by coughing, and perceived it to be very ſalt. It continued til morning returning by fits; at what time I being called, preſently cauſe her to bleed ſeven ounces from her Arme, and after two hours to bleed as much more. After each blood-letting ſhe took a julep, of plantane and Lettice waters, with ſix drams of ſyrup of violers, and two drams of ſyrup of poppy. I cauſed frictions and ligatures to be made upon her legs, and cupping-glaſſes to be frequently applied under her ſhort ribbs; and a thickning and aſtringent lick-pot. At night ſhe took a tyrup compounded of equal parts of ſyrup of violets, dried roſes, and Poppies, viz. a ſpoonful when ſhe lies down to ſleep, the other after midnight; and her ſpitting of blood returned no more.

The 153 Obſervation, or Hiſtory, of Famous and Rare Cures, &c.

A Cancerous Tumor in the Liver, with Sciatica pains.

ON the 17 of *Decem.* 1638. the widdow of *Peter Aubert*, a Merchant of *Montpelier*, lay ſick many monthes, being troubled with a continual Feaver; ſhe had moſt cruel paines in her left huckle bone, which reached to the further end of her foot. Moreover a tumor was diſcerned in her belly, towards her navel, enclining to the right hand, and that hard, ſo that it was counted ſcirrhous, and was placed among the muſcles of the Epigaſtrium, becauſe it was felt immediatly under the skin, and was not painful but being touched. Sometimes biting paines did occupy her left ſhoulder, and her ſide it ſelf ſo as to counterfet the pleureſie. We imagined thoſe pains did come from a moſt ſharp ſerous matter, which was bred in her liver being exceeding hot. The blood which was taken away was moſt fervent, and black and blew: ſhe never felt any eaſe ſave by Laudanum; by meanes whereof her pains were eaſed. When the paine in her hip grew worſe, and a tumor appeared in the part though not different in colour, alſo the part being compreſſed did ake much; as alſo the patient perceived cutting pains in the ſame part by fits; chyrurgeons were called, who affirmed conſtantly, that there lay hid a deep Impoſtume; and ſo after conſultation, the part was opened with a ſmal inciſion knife, and a cauſtick, no quittor came forth. Fifteen daies after the opening, her belly before ſwelled, was now more ſwelled, and ſhe became hydropick, and at laſt died ſuffocated. Her body being opened, her liver was found ful of ſcirrhous tumors and for the moſt part ſuppurated; in the extremety whereof, there were two cancerous tumors, ſticking out as far as her navil, and equalling a mans fiſt in greatneſs, touching one another in a manner, which cauſed that ſwelling in her belly aforeſaid; neither were they thought to be in her liver, becauſe they were not in the natural place of her liver, yea the liver was felt at a diſtance from thoſe tumors, but hard and painful; becauſe the foreſaid tumors, were more prominent, than the reſt of the ſubſtance of the Liver. Her whole Liver did weigh twenty pound, and more. Her hip was cut up as far as to the bone in the place of the opening, and certain ſmal glandules were found ſuppurated, which contained congealed Quittor, ſo that it could not flow out.

The 154 *Obſervation, or Hiſtory, of famous and Rare Cures, &c.*

Kings evil ſwellings.

ON the 8 of *January* 1639. a certain maiden of *Niſmes*, being eighteen years old, was troubled with Kings evil ſwellings in her Neck, which were ſupputated by many remedies a long time applied, and afterwards conſolidated. Howbeit a part of the tumors remained exceeding hard, which could not be diſſolved, no not with Emplaſtrum de Vigo, Roman Vitriol, and Gum ammoniacum diſſolved and thickned again, of each an equal quantity with as much terpentine as ſhould ſuffice: with which Plaiſters thoſe tumors were perfectly diſſolved in a months ſpace. Convenient diet being in the meane while uſed, and convenient evacuations ſometimes made uſe of.

The 155 *Obſervation, or hiſtory, of famous and* Rare Cures, &c

Inordinate Flux of the Courſes with the whites.

ON the 15 of *January*, 1639. the Wife of Mr. *de Rignac*, Proctor General of the Court of Exchequer, having a fat, burly, and flegmatick body, after abortions ſhe was troubled, with an inordinate flux of Courſes, and with the Whites. She was happily cured, with blood-letting, purgation, a diet drink of Salſa, and a fine pouder of Frankincenſe, Maſtich, Sandarach, Amber, Borax, Benjamin, Cloves, Nutmeg, and Red-Roſes, received by a funnel, morning and evening a long time together.

The 156 *Obſervation, or hiſtory, of famous and* Rare Cures, &c.

Grievous and laſting head-ache.

ON the 29 of *March*, 1639. A woman of *Frontinia*, being forty years of Age, of a black-cholerick temper, having ſuffered Abortion, afterwards ſhe wanted her Courſes, whereupon a moſt greivous Head-ach afflicted her for four months together, blood-lettings doing her no good, nor Leechesapplied to her forehead and temples, and other Remedies. I being ſent for appoint her temporal Artery to be opened, which was excellently performed, nor did the blood come out leaping by reaſon of the ſmalneſs of the Artery, and the thickneſs of the blood, but drop by drop; there was taken away to the Quantity of five ounces, red and florid, both externally and internally. The Orifice was ſtopped, with a plaiſter of maſtich only, with a ſimple ligature, and after that another ligature which is wont to be made in wounds of the Head, having continued ſticking on five hours. She was freed from the paine of her Head, and was troubled therewith no more.

The 157 *Obſervation, or hiſtory, of famous and rare* Cures &c.

A tertian *A*gue.

THe 14 of *July* 1639. Mr *de Vandiere*, a Student of Phyſick, after five fits of a tertian Ague, having been twice let blood and once purged, took at the beginning of his fit a good doſe of Aqua benedicta, his fit was ſtopped, as alſo the working of the medicine for two hours, afterwards he vomited five times or ſix without trouble, becauſe in every vomit he took four or five ounces of ordinary peaſe-broath. The fit was ſhorter than ordinary, and at the end thereof he had divers ſtooles, and was perfectly cured.

The

The 158 Obſervation, or Hiſtory, of Famous and Rare Cures, &c.

Nephritick Pains.

THe 22 of *July* 1639. I was troubled with a Cholik pain, which extreamly tormented me in the bottom of my belly, and about my right kidny. After two clyſters, the pain of my belly ceaſed. The pain of my kidney continued, which reached al along the ureter, with a pulling back of my left teſticle, ſo that it was a true nephritick pain. It was diſſolved with an hot bath, becauſe when the bath was luke warm, it increaſed the pain. The pain came again, and was removed by application of Cupping glaſſes to the part. The day after it returned again, and went away again upon application of the Cupping-glaſſes; ſoon after I took a bolus of Caſſia, Catholicon, Rhubarb, and Cream of Tartar; the pain returned no more. I conceived this Nephritick pain was cauſed by wind, ſeeing with diſcuſſive remedies, viz. an hot bath and Cupping-glaſſes, it was aſſwaged, and no obſtructive matter, as ſtone, gravel, or flegm was by me voided in my urines, after the ſolution of the diſeaſe, in the diſeaſe it ſelf, or at any time before. Nor is it impoſſible that the ſame kind of winds, which inſinuate themſelves between the coates of the Guts, may be transferred into the Kidneys and ureters, and cauſe grievous diſtenſions in thoſe parts: ſeeing that winds are wont to be conveighed into al parts of the body ſomtimes, and in them to raiſe either pains or palpitations. Yea and very many think that the moſt vehement pains of the teeth are cauſed by winds, ſhut up in the veſſells which creep about the roots of the teeth. My conjecture was ſtrengthened, becauſe when my purge did work, the winds were ſenſibly carried from my Loines to my belly with a gentle noiſe, which was eaſily heard by the by-ſtanders.

The 159 Obſervation, or Hiſtory, of Famous and Rare Cures, &c.

A Looſneſs

A few daies after the diſeaſe aforeſaid, I was taken with a cholerick looſneſs, ſo ful of acrimony that it did corrode my fundament, and cauſed ſharpneſs of urine, a portion of the matter being tranſlated to the Urines. A dyſentery was at hand. Having entred into a lukewarm bath to ſit in, I was preſently cured.

The 160 Obſervation, or Hiſtory, of famous and Rare Cures, &c.

Falling-ſickneſs in a child.

A Boy three yeares old, had a fit of the Falling-ſickneſs, from which he was freed with the ſmoak of Tobacco; which a ſervant drew out of a pipe, and blew into the open mouth of the boy; the boy fel a vomiting, and the fit ceaſed.

The 161 Obſervation, or Hiſtory of Famous and Rare Cures, &c.

A beginning Conſumption.

THe 15 of *October* 1639. The Son of Mr. *Le Sage*, of *Montpeler*, being twenty yeares old, for two months had been troubled with a deflux of rheume into his Lungs, with a cough, ſhortneſs of breath, and a ſlow Feaver, ſo that he ſeemed to be fallen into a Conſumption. I preſcribe him blood-letting, a purge of manna, medicated broaths, and other ordinary remedies: But the cheife were a Cauſtick to each Arm-pit, which does moſt potently derive fluxions to the Breaſt and humors therein contained, and herewith he was reſtored, in a months ſpace.

The

The 162 Observation, or History, of Famous and Rare Cures, &c.

A Malignant feaver.

THe 18 of *October*, 1639. *John Vezian*, a Perfumer in *Montpelier*, being twenty four years of Age; was troubled with a malignant Fever, by means whereof, about the eleventh day of the diſeaſe he fell into a Raving fit, and a few dayes after into trembling and Convulſive motions of his Nerves, which are wont to attend a deadly phrenzy; he continued Raving near a month together; his convulſions laſted twelve daies, and at laſt he eſcaped, after the uſe of many Remedies. Thoſe that did moſt good were, the opening a vein in his forehead, and Juleps made of four ounces of Carduus water, three drams of treacle water, two ſcruples of Bezoardicum minerale, and twelve grains of Camphire. Which Julep he took five times.

The eighth of *December*, 1639. *Peter Randon*, a Stone-cutter, thirty years of Age, was taken with the like diſeaſe, which ſeemed very Gentle til the ſeventh day, whereon he began to rave. On the elventh day the vein of his forehead was opened, the day after he took the foreſaid juleps twice, and the day following once, and with them, al the malignity was diſcuſſed.

The 163 Observation, or History, of Famous and Rare Cures, &c.

A Pleuriſie

THe 15 of *December*, 1639. The Wife of Mr. *Clauſelius*, Councellor in the Court of Accounts, Subſidies, and Exchequer, twenty years old, fell into a pleuriſie in her left ſide, the ſame day in which her Courſes began to appear, which nevertheleſs were wel-neare ſuppreſſed; ſeeming very ſmal quantity of reddiſh matter only was voided, both nothing appeared having the Color of blood. I beeing ſent for in the morning before day-light, was ſomwhat in doubt, whether or no her ankle vein ſhould not be opened, to aſſiſt the motion of Nature. But becauſe the pain of her ſide was very urgent, and nothing worth ſpeaking of was voided by her womb, I thought it better to open a vein in her Arme on the ſame ſide, which proved ſucceſsful; for the pain of her ſide was very much abated. Preſently after blood-letting I cauſed her thighs to be rubbed, and her legs to be tied, and Cupping-glaſſes to be applied to her thighs to help forward her menſtrual purgation. After noon her Ankle vein was opened, Fomentations applied to her ſides, and liniments, alſo a clyſter was given her between her two blood-lettings. Juleps were appointed with Sal prunellæ; on the ſecond and third day of the month they did continue a little, but in a very ſmal quantity. Yet becauſe the ſickneſs was not urgent, we left the buſineſs to nature, eſpecially ſeeing ſhe did ſpit freely and plentifully, by which much flegm was voided, colored with a light reddiſh color. On the fourth day, when her courſes had quite left her, and her diſeaſe was not abated, ſhe was again let blood in the morning, to the quantity of nine ounces, and after dinner again, the quantity of ſix ounces. The fift time ſhe was again let blood to eight ounces in the morning, which blood was like the former, viz. very flegmatick, the woman being nevertheleſs leane and of a cholerick Conſtitution. At the bottom of the porringer it appeared aduſt. The ſame day in the after noon, ſhe was again let blood to ſix ounces, and the blood appeared red in the top, which appeared white before. Hence I gathered that ſhe had been ſufficiently let blood, ſeeing blood had been taken away, til the color thereof was changed, according to the precept of *Hippocrates*; and the patient was ſomwhat better, and ſlept three or four houres in the night, whereas ſhe could never ſleep before during her Illneſs. Howbeit in her emulſions, two drams of ſyrup of Poppy, were commixed, her emulſions continued with Sal prunellæ, and a Cataplaſme applied to her ſide of the materials of the fomentation, with flower of Linſeed, oyl of Lillies, oyl of ſweet almonds, freſh new made butter and Safron. The fixt day ſhe took a roaſted apple, into which had been put a dram of Frankincenſe poudered, and drunk four ounces of Carduus water after it, and covering her body more than ordinary, to provoke her to ſweat. At nine a clock in the morning this medicament was given her, ſhe did not ſweat, but her [illegible] appeared for three or four hours more tainted with blood, and came

came up more easily. About two a clock in the afternoon, her spittle appeared no longer red, but altogether white, her Feaver was more remiss, and the pain of her side was quite allayd, so that she could lie without pain on which side she pleased. Emulsions were continued, to temper the Feaver of her blood. On the seventh day, her menstrual purgations broke forth plentifully, and continued for four daies together, by which meanes her Feaver was very much lessened, and the pain of her side wholly taken away. On the twelft day she was purged with a medicament of half an ounce of Senna, one dram of Rhubarb, manna and syrup of Roses of each one ounce. The purgation did luck wel, and the patient was perfectly cured.

At the same time a certain Countery woman was troubled with the same disease, after the seventh blood-letting, her disease was abated; on the twelth day she was purged with the like Medicament, whereby she was much eased, and the disease began to decline a few daies afterward.

The knowledg and Cure of Most diseases in man are to be had from these Books, The Practice of Physick, the Idea of Physick, The guide to physick and Chyrurgery, and the the London dispensatory, of the last Editions, Englished by me.

The 164 Observation, or History, of Famous and Rare Cures, &c.

A malignant Feaver.

ONn the 11 of *January* 1640. a Woman fifty years old, named *Martina*, a broker for oyl, was taken with a malignant Feaver, with broad violet spots, about her shoulders and neck in smal Quantity. I was called on the sixt day of the disease, her pulse was low and languid, she was very sleepy, and her disease accompanied with a dead sleepiness. She was twice let blood; I appoint her an emolient and laxitive clyster, a vesicatory to her neck, cooling juleps, with antidotes. On the seventh day al things were worse. On the eighth day, being sent for again, I prescribe her a diaphoretick potion of two scruples of bezoardicum minerale, and twelve grains of camphire, with carduus water, which was three times repeated. After it was first given, a diaphoretick fomentation was added, to be applied to her whol belly and breast with spunges, after she had took the potion; and her pulse became stronger and more ordinate. Being called again after two daies, I find the signs of malignity as yet strong, whereby she was in extream danger. I appoint her juleps of a decoction of Cinquefoil, White thistle, Buglos, Scordium Leaves, Sorrel, &c. to be taken morning and evening; and four vesicatories to be applied to her Armes and thighs. On the eleventh day a rising appeared behind her eare, which was brought to suppuration by topick medicaments, and at last the sick woman was restored to her former Health.

The 165 Observation, or History, of Famous and Rare Cures, &c.

The Dropsie.

THe 8 of *November* 1640. the Maid-servant of Mst. *de Cros* his Wife, a famous Advocate, after a tertitian ague fel into the dropsy, because she had in her fits drunk abundance of water. I prescribe her the Infusion of Senna with Salt of Tartar for twelve daies, after which she was somwhat better. Afterward this following Apozem was given her.

Take *Elecampane roots, roots of Gentian, Valerian, our orice, and long birthwort, of each one ounce. Barke of Capar roots, middle rind of Ashe and Tamarisk, of each half an ounce. Leaves of Agrimony, the two wormwoods, ground oake and Centory, of each one handful. Licoris scraped and Raisons stoned, of each one ounce. Senna one ounce. Turbith and Agrick, of each half an ounce; Dwarf elder seeds, three drams. Ginger and cloves of each one ounce. Boyl all to twelve ounces. In the strained liquor dissolve syrup of Cichory with Rhubarb four ounces. Make an Apozem for four morning doses.*

With this Apozem she voided al the Hydropical humors by stool and urine, and was perfectly cured.

It

It did not a little help forward the Cure, that while she was using a fume to discuss the Tumor of her Legs, she burnt both her Legs, whence followed Ulcers, from which much water flowed during the use of the Apozemes.

The 166 Observation, or History, of Famous and Rare Cures, &c.

A Quartan Ague.

ON the 15. of *October*, 1640. the Son of Mſr. *Roche*, twelve years old, was freed from a Quartan Ague, by an Infusion of Senna and Cream of Tartar, which he took for seven daies together.

On the 14. of *November*, Mſr. *Pelisserius*, thirty years Old, had a Quartan Ague for three months; in the beginning of *November*, after the use of an aperitive apozeme, which he took a little before four daies together, purgatives being also mingled therewith. At last I prescribe him an Infusion of Senna with Salt of Tartar, for fifteen daies. And at the twelve time taking, the Ague fit ceased and came no more. Now he is of a Melancholick temper, hard to work on, a strong tal man. At first there was infused half an ounce of Senna with a dram of Tartar Christalized, in ten ounces of water: Wherewith he was purged only once a day. After some daies I put in four scruples of the Tartar, and he was purged twice in a day.

After the use of this Medicament, though he was free from his Ague-fits, I prescribed him a strengthening and opening Electuary for twelve daies. By the use whereof his Face was restored to its ancient Comelyness.

The 167 Observation, or History, of Famous and Rare Cures, &c.

The Dropsie.

ON the 20. of *February*, 1641. The Widdow of *Paul du Cras*, a Citryzen of *Montpelier*, sixty years old, was taken with a Dropsie and shortness of Breath, so that her whole Belly, Thighs, and Legs were swollen very much. She was al her life time of a very Fat and Phlegmatick habit of body. I prescribed her after some other Remedies, a Decoction of Guajacum, with Senna, Agarick, Turpet, and Hermodactyls, to be used for fifteen daies together.

Afterwards, with these two following Remedies continued for a month, she was perfectly Cured.

Take *Roots of Elecampane, Smallage, Fenel, and Orice dried, of each one dram and half. Roots of Valerian, Gentian, Acarum, Squil, of each one ounce. The middle bark of Elder, and Sassafras wood of each six drams. Leaves of Wormwood, Agrimony, Ground Oake, Maiden Hair dried, of each two drams. Tops of Centory, and broom flowers, of each one dram. Seeds of Persley, Amdos and Dill, of each one dram and an half. Cinnamon, two drams. Bruise and shake them together, and infuse them in four pints of white Wine certain daies. And let her take two or three ounces of this Wine, every day in the morning, two hours before meat.*

Every fourth or fift day, let her take a dose of this following pouder.

Take *Senna clensed, Gummy turbith, Hermodactils, Dwarfe-Elder-seed, Roots of Jallap and Mechoacan of each one ounce. Cream of Tartar two drams. Cambogia half a dram. Pouder Diambre a Dirrhodon Abbatis, and sweet Fennel seed, of each a scruple. Sugar Candy three drams. Make all into a pouder, two drams whereof must be infused all night in four ounces of the foresaid Wine. Let her drink the Wine and pouder together in the morning.*

The 168 Observation, or History, of Famous and Rare Cures, &c.

An Ulcer of the Gums.

ON the 23. of *February*, 1641. the Daughter of Mſr. *de Raſtenclieres*, being 18. year old, having endured for two years together ſtubborn Ulcers of her Gums, in her lower Jaw-bone, at the Roots of her three former Teeth which are called Cutters, ſo that her Teeth were looſe, and were bare of fleſh to the very ſoles: She could not be freed from this Diſeaſe, without much pains and many Remedies; becauſe it depended upon an hot and dry diſtemper of the Spleen, and conſequently upon a black Cholerick Conſtitution. When ſhe had been a year Cured, there aroſe a puſh in the ſame place, but a little lower, viz. By the jaw-bone, and in that part where the lower Lip begins to be ſeparated from the Jaw-bone. After four or five months, uſing no Remedy, the puſtle broke, and an Ulcer remained, with part of the jaw-bone bare, appearing to the lookers on perfectly bare as broad as half a mans Nail

After blood-letting and purgation, the Ulcer was perfectly healed within fifteen daies ſpace, with this following Balſome.

Take *Choice Myrrh, and Sugar Candy, of each a like Quantity, ponder them, and fil therewith the whites of Egs hard boyled, and cut aſunder in the middle: tie them wel with thrids and hang them on ſticks laid croſs a Glaſs or Baſin, and ſet them in a Cellar. From them wil drop a liquor or Balſom, with which let the part be anointed oft times in a day.*

The 169 Obſervation, or Hiſtory, of Famous and Rare Cures, &c.

Puffing up of the whol Body of a little Boy.

THe 3. of *June*, 1641. The Son of one *Robe*, a Citizen of *Montpelier*, 18. Months old, was blown up ſuddenly al his body over with a Feaver; and another Son of the ſame family died of the ſame diſeaſe. I preſcribed him ſundry Remedies for ten or twelve daies, viz. A purge, Clyſters, Aperitive Juleps, a Vehicatory, Oyntments. At laſt I preſcribe a Syrup of the Decoction of Egrimony, Roman and common Wormwood, and Centory, to be taken out of a ſpoon, twice in a day; and within three daies he was wel, a looſneſs following, with plenty of Urine

The 170 Obſervation, or Hiſtory, of Famous and Rare Cures, &c.

A Venereal pain in one Arme.

THe 15. of *June*, 1641, an outlandiſh Gentleman, thirty years old, had two years before been infected with the Venerial Pocks, by means of which being ill cured, there did remain a pain in his left Arm, al along wel near, which was worſt at night, and it ſeemed to be about the Perioſteum or Membrane which covers the bones. I preſcribe him an univerſal purgation and to be let blood twice. After that a ſweating diet for twelve daies, in the morning he took the decoction to ſweat, and at evening his Arm was held over the ſteam of a decoction of Guajacum and Cephalick Herbs made in water and white Wine, which was ſprinkled upon hot ſtints, and thereby much ſweat came from his Arm. After the ſweat there was applied the Plaiſter of Vigo with a fourfold quantity of Mercury. When his ſweating drink was done, the ſume was continued for five daies, every morning and evening; and afterwards that Plaiſter was applied, which is preſcribed for the Sciatica, made of Orpment, Verdegreiſe, &c. which raiſed puſtles and little Ulcers, in thoſe places where the greateſt pain was wont to be, and ſo he was perfectly Cured.

The 171 Obſervation, or Hiſtory, of Famous and Rare Cures, &c.

Of a Cholerick Cholick.

A Certain Religious perſon, was ſubject to a long and ſtubborn Cholerick Cholick, which went and came frequently. Some body did counſel him, to take in the morning, a peice of freſh butter and to drink a little Wine upon it. By this Remedy continued a long time together, he was perfectly Cured of the ſaid pain, and never troubled therewith any more.

The 172 Obſervation, or Hiſtory, of Famous and Rare Cures, &c.

Sciatica pain.

THe Son of Mſr. *Paſcheque*, the Phyſician of *Lunelle*, my very dear friend, was taken with a pain in his Huckle bone. After which followed a kind of nummedneſs of his Arms, nor could he wel uſe his Fingers, alſo he could not eaſily fetch his wind. All theſe Symptomes came from one and the ſame diſeaſe, by reaſon of the fourth Muſcle of the Cheſt, which ariſes from the Os Sacrum, and the inner Os Ilij, and climbing up by the vertebraes of the Loins, does cleave to the ten firſt Ribs, and is inſerted into the ſeventh vertebra of the Neck; ſo that it is no wonder, if when this Muſcle is affected in its beginning, with ſwelling, pain, or any wearyneſs which is tenſive, ulcerous, or Phlegmonous; that then the parts ſhould be affected, unto which it is faſtened. Seeing therefore it ſerves to reſpiration, that comes to be hurt, when this Muſcle is diſeaſed in its original: and ſeeing it is inſerted into the vertebraes of the Neck, from which the Nerves of the Arms do ſpring, it is rational that the actions of the Arms and Fingers ſhould alſo be hindred. Theſe things are more largely explained by *Sanctorius*, in the 20. Chapter, of his Second Book, *De Vitandis Erroribus*.

The 173 Obſervation, or Hiſtory, of Famous and Rare Cures, &c.

A Malignant feaver.

THe 26. of *October*, 1641. The Daughter of Mſr. *Conte*, a Merchant of *Montpelier*, twenty years old, was taken with a Malignant Feaver, which proceeded ſo far, notwithſtanding ordinary Remedies; that about the eleventh day of her Diſeaſe, ſhe fel into Raving by fits, and contractions of her Nerves, which appeared chiefly in her Wriſts; unto which were added fainting fits ſometimes, and very black furredneſs ſticking to her Teeth. Her Tongue was rough, black, and burnt. In this Dangerous condition beſides Epithems, young Pidgeons, and other ſtrengthening things internal and external; I preſcribed theſe following Remedies, which are wont to be of greateſt Efficacy in theſe diſeaſes, viz. Five Veſicatories, to be applied to her Neck, Arms, and Thighs. Juleps of three ounces of Carduus water, three drams of *Bauderon* his Treacle water, two ſcruples of Bezoardicum minerale, and ſix grains of Camphire; which Juleps ſhe took two daies morning and evening. Alſo a ſcruple of the ſaid Bezoardicum Minerale, was given her in every doſe of broath. With theſe Remedies, ſhe was in a few daies freed from this grievous Diſeaſe.

The 174 Obſervation, or Hiſtory, of Famous and Rare Cures, &c.

Gonorrhæa.

A Man fourty years old from an impure bedfellow, Caught the Gonorrhæa, for whom I appointed at firſt a bolus of one ounce of Caſſia, Rhubarb poudered, and Cream of Tartar,

tar, of each one dram. The day following I would have had him let blood in the foot, but he refuſed. Emulſions were preſcribed him, for three or four dayes, wherewith the accrimony of his Urine was tempered, the flux continuing after the ſame manner. Afterwards he uſed a laxative ptiſan for ſeven dayes together, made after this manner.

Take *Tamarinds two ounces; Fountain water foure pints, boile them to three pints. In the ſtrained liquor being cold, ſteep al night Senna, Coriander ſeed, Liquoris, and red roſes of each two drams. Let him take a draught in the morning an hour before meat. With this, his flux was very much abated; for the total removing whereof, I preſcribed this following Bolus.*

Take *Venice terpentine three drams; Rhubarb poudered one dram; make a bolus, which let him take every morning five daies together.*

Then he uſed this following water for ſeven dayes.

Take *Dried Mints three ounces, ſeeds of Lettice, Rue, and Agnus Caſtus, of each two ounces and an half. Orice root two ounces. Dittamus ten drams, the beſt ſugar two pounds. Pouder al, and ad thereto five ounces of Venice Turpentine, ſtrong white wine thirty ounces. Mixe them and diſtil them in Balneo. Let him take two ſpoonfuls in the morning, two hours before meat. Thus was this gonorrhea cured. Yet becauſe a little moiſture did frequently appeare on the top of his yard, as is wont for the moſt part to happen, in the end of a Gonorrhea; perfectly to ſtop and drie the ſame up, I appointed theſe following pils.*

Take *Gum arabick, Tragant, amber, Mummy, Bole Armenic, of each one dram; pouder them, and with ſyrup of dried Roſes, make a Maß of Pil-ſtuf. Of which let him take one ſcruple every morning, two hours before meat, for eight or nine daies together. And ſo his flux was perfectly ſtopped.*

The 175 Obſervation, or Hiſtory, of Famous and Rare Cures, &c.

Of Empiema.

THe Son of Mſr. *Plantade*, a Councellour in the Court of Accounts, Subſidies, and the Exchequer, being five years old, had a continual Feaver for about two months together, with a frequent and troubleſome Cough; ſo that he was thought to incline to a conſumption. At laſt, Phyſitians being called to conſult, they were informed that he complained of a pain in his left ſide, eſpecially if he were handled thereabouts. Alſo it was related that when his feaver began, he felt ſome paine in that ſide, which ceaſed within a few dayes; and therefore his ordinary Phyſitian judged that it was no pluriſie that troubled him. It was ſuſpected that ſome Empiema lay hidden in that part, and the better to manifeſt the matter, it was reſolved to apply an Emollient and drawing Cataplaſme for ſome daies; after three dayes uſage wherof a certain riſing began to appeare in the part, and an obſcure rowling to and fro of ſome humor was perceived. The Phyſitians being again called to conſult, no man doubted but that it was an Empiema: and being opened, good ſtore of Quittor came forth, and the evacuation thereof was continued for two months, til al the matter was voided forth, and the patient was at laſt reſtored to his former Health.

The 176 Obſervation, or Hiſtory, of Famous and Rare Cures, &c.

An ulcer with Corruption of the Bone.

A Boy 15 yeares old, had an ulcer a long time upon the uper part of his foot, between the Inſtep and toes, which a skilful Chyrurgeon that had him a whol year in hand could not cure. Another younger Chyrurgeon to whom the patient was afterward comitted, having widened the ulcer and perceiving that there was a corruption in the Bones, he applied pulvis Caragmaticus, to take away the ſaid corruption, but in vain. Afterwards he askt my adviſe, I bid him applie ſome pouder of Euphorbium with lint; many ſmal ſplints of bones came out;

the second day he laid on the Linen bolster alone, the third day he applied the same pouder again and more splinters of bones came out, so that the bone appeared at last clean and free from rottenness, and the ulcer was afterwards in a short time cured.

The 177 Observation, or History, of Famous and Rare Cures, &c.

Difficulty of breathing with a very uneven pulse.

THe most excelent Lady, *Madam de la Roquette*, sixty years of Age, being very fat and burly, living a sedentary life, very religious and given to dayly prayers, began fifteen years since to be troubled with shortness of breath, which increased by little and little, so that now she could not go up stairs, without resting at every third or fourth step. About the begining of January 1642. being upon a journy, when the wind was south and the weather rainy, she was suddenly taken with a Catarrh, falling partly upon her lungs and partly upon her jaw-boner. Whereupon her shortness of breath encreased, her right cheek was swelled, and her jawes were so straitned, that she could take in no meat, but only broath she could sip a little. She had been accustomed to be troubled at times for many years together, with a red swelling of her left leg, which was wont often to be exulcerated, and before the coming of this Catarrh, she had the said swelling, with large exulceration. I being called to her on the eight day of her disease, I find her pulse very uneven, and intermitting after every third or fourth stroake, with a very great difficulty of breathing. Which made me conjecture, that the disease was grievous, not only in her lungs, but also in her heart, or the vessels neerest the same, and I foretold that she should die. Which prognostication was rendered thereby more certain, because the ulcer aforesaid in her Leg, was al of a sudden dryed up, according to that saying of *Hyppocrates* in the 25 Aphorisme of the 6 section; for an Erysipelatous swelling to strike in, is a bad signe. Moreover the swelling on her cheek being in a few dayes resolved, her jawes remained shut nevertheless, and it was apparent, that the closure of her jawes, did proceed from a convulsion of the muscles which should move the same. On the 15 day of her disease in the mornings, her right eye was observed to be shut, the other being open, which hapened by reason of the palsie in her eyelid, which threatned somewhat worse to follow, which accordingly hapened the same day in the after noone, viz. her left side became paralytical. And three dayes after, her strength decaying by little and little, she died.

In the whole Course of her disease no Cough did follow her shortness of breath, nor any rattleing of her pipes, unless it were one day before her death. Her body being opened, her spleen was found putrefied, so that being lightly pressed it would breake in pieces. The substance of her Lungs was of a black and blew colour, and ful of a watery humor, and one lap thereof, on the left side, was ful of putrid and mattery flegme. The right ventricle of her Heart, had no membrane in the inside, was putrid and exulcerated; so that if you toucht the fleshy fibres thereof with your fingers tops, they would crumble to pieces. The right Eare of the Heart seemed bigger than ordinary, and was filled up with a certaine fleshy substance, partly red, and partly black, like congealed blood, which nevertheless could not be broken asunder with ones hand. These two diseases, viz. Of the Eare and the Ventricle of the Heart, I conceive to have been the Cause of so much inequallity and intermission of her pulse, whiles the Heart seeking to shake that off which troubled it, was excercised with sundry motions, whence followed the interruption and interception of the natural pulse; but that her difficulty of breathing sprung from the stoppage of her lungs is manifest enough.

It was my hap to see the like inequality of pulse, in two other sick persons, one of which was the son of Mr. *Hugo*, a Merchant of *Montpelier*, five yeares old, who being long vexed with such an inequallity of pulse, at last died. In his opened body, there appeared nothing preternatural, but the right Eare of his heart, which was much greater than ordinary, and was ful of a certain hard congealed flegmatick substance, like a great nut, which hindered the free motion of the heart and caused the foresaid Inequallity. The like pulses appeared in the daughter of Mr. C. 20. years of age in whose opened body, an ulcer was found in the very heart, whereby wel neare halfe the substance thereof was consumed. The History of these Cases are described, in the former observations.

THE

The 178 Obſervation, or Hiſtory, of famous and Rare Cures, &c.

A Conſumption.

THe daughter of Msr. *Salomon*, a Citizen of *Montpelier*, about twenty five years old, being of a very choſerick complexion, was troubled ſome months together, with a greivous defluction of rhume falling down upon her Lungs, with a troubleſom cough night and day, want of ſleep, pain in her breaſt, a ſlough Feaver, coſtiveneſs, and Leanneſs of her whol body; ſo that ſhe ſeemed to be abſolutely in a Conſumption, kept her bed many daies, and made haſt unto the Grave. I being called, and obſerving the very hot diſtemper of her bowels, and the perpetual coſtiveneſs of her belly, which was very troubleſom, premiſing a Clyſter, I cauſe her to bleed ſeven ounces. And ſoon after I cauſe two cauſticks to be applied between her ſhoulders, neare her back bone. I preſcribe her a laxative ptiſan, to be uſed five daies together, which was thus made.

Take, Tamarinds one ounce and half; Fountain water three pints. Boyl them to a quart. In the ſtrained Liquor being cold, infuſe al night, Senna, Coriander Seeds, and Licorice bruiſed, of each two drams, Red Roſe leaves, one dram. Let her take a Cup of the ſtrained liquor every morning, an hour before meat.

With theſe few Remedies ſhe was ſo recovered, that after fifteen daies, ſhe roſe out of her bed, and begun to go about her uſual work. Yet her coſtiveneſs and want of ſleep continued, againſt which I preſcribe, firſt a bolus of one dram of Conſerve of Roſes and a grain of Laudanum. Wherewith ſhe ſlept four or five hours, and after that whol nights together, for the moſt part, without any other help. Then I ordered her to take the foreſaid laxative ptiſan again, for ſome daies together. The ſpring following, having uſed Aſſes Milk for a moneh together, ſhe was perfectly cured.

The 179 Obſervation, or Hiſtory, of Famous and Rare Cures, &c.

A Pleuriſy

THe fourth of *April* 1642. The Son of Msr. *Roche*, a Citizen of *Montpelier*, twelve years old, was ſick of a Pleuriſie, in his right ſide; he was five times let blood, and other ordinary remedies were adminiſtered to the ſeventh day. The feaver was violent, with great unquieteneſs, and the pain did very much trouble him. On the ſeventh day half a dram of chimny-foot poudred was given him in Carduus water; within two hours after, al the ſymptomes were very much abated, and the patient was much better, and afterwards by little and little recovered

The 180 Obſervation, or Hiſtory, of Famous and Rare Cures, &c.

A hoarſneſs.

THe daughter of Msr. *Viventius* of *Lunelle*, being twenty years old, expoſing her ſelf to the cold Aire, fell into a grievous hoarſneſs, ſo that ſhe could hardly ſpeak a word, ſhe had no cough, no ſhortneſs of breath, nor any catarrh that appeared. The diſeaſe continued for ſix months; many remedies were uſed, but in vain. At laſt while ſhe was aſleep, an indifferent quantity of watry ſubſtance ran out at her ear, and ſhe began to ſpeak freely, and with a clear voice. Whence maybe conjectured, that the foreſaid humor being collected in her brain did poſſeſs that branch of the Nerves, which is caried from the fift conjugation unto the muſcles of the Larynx, whereby the voice is formed and ſo thoſe muſcles became as it were palſied.

Four months after, another Virgin of *Lunelle*, named *Rudaude*, being troubled with the ſame diſeaſe eight months together, deſired my advice. Being moved by the foreſaid example;

I conceived

I conceived that al the ſcope of the Cure was to be directed to the evacuation or diſcuſſion of the wheyiſh or flegmatick matter collected in her brain. And having premiſed Blood-letting and Purging, I preſcribe her a decoction of Guajacum and Salſaparilla, with Senna, Agrick, Turbith and Hermodactilylis to be taken twenty daies together, with a diet drink of Salſaparilla, and a drying diet. Afterwards I ſent her to the *Balerucan* baths, where ſhe did ſweat for three daies, and her diſeaſe was perfectly cured.

The 125 *Obſervation, or Hiſtory of famous and Rare Cures*, &c.

Inveterate Veneral Pox, with an hot and dry, and almoſt Black-cholerick temper.

A Certaine Gentleman thirty five years old, of the temperament aforeſaid, being for two years troubled with the veneral Pox, had filthy ulcers in his palate, upper lip, and about the root of his Noſe. At firſt, he was handled with ſweating and fluxing, whereby he ſeemed to be cured; but a few daies after, the ulcers break out afreſh, and the patient is as bad as before. The Cure was again begun with ſweatings and Mercurial ointments, after which he was worſe. The third time the Cure was undertaken in a manner quite contrary to the former, by coolers and moiſteners, quite omitting ſuch things as are proper for the pox; but al did no good. At laſt coming to *Montpelier* and imploring the advice of three phyſitians, he received theſe following directions. viz. that Indication being taken both from the hot and dry diſtemper of his Bowels, and from the veneral diſeaſe, he ſhould uſe theſe Remedies following.

First, An emollient Clyſter.
Secondly, A cooling and purging potion.
Thirdly, Blood-letting to nine ounces.
Fourthly, A cooling and purging Apozem.
Fiftly, A Lukewram bath for two daies.
At the coming forth from the ſecond bath the hemroids were to be provoked.

Afterwards a liberal and temperate diet-drink was preſcribed him of Salſaparilla and guajacum, adding at the end of the decoction, Cichory, Endive, and Tamarinds, let him uſe it five daies, and ſweat very gently.

Meane while let him have a drink of Salſaperilla for his ordinary uſe, and keep a liberal and not a drying diet.

After the uſe of the ſudorifick decoction for five daies, let him take the foreſaid purging potion again.

For two daies following let him uſe the bath again.

Afterwards let him again uſe the ſudorifick decoctions for five daies, made only of the forſaid ſudorificks, without the addition of herbs and tamarinds. And let ſweat be provoked by the vapors of ſpirit of wine, impregnated with tincture of Guajacum.

After he has ſwet again for five daies, let him be again purged with the foreſaid potion. And after that let him bathe for two daies together.

Then let him ſweat again for five daies with a decoction of Guajacum alone, and when the five daies are paſt, let him take the purging potion again, and then let him uſe a lukewarm bath for two daies together.

Let him continue this Method til the Ulcers ſhal be healed up. And that their Cure may be the better forwarded, let him uſe theſe following topical remedies.

First let a Gargariſme be made of a decoction of Guajacum, adding the roots of great comfry, and round birthwort, Leaves of Agrimony, Vinca pervinca, prunella, mouſeare, betony, of each one handful. Tops of St. Johns wort, and red roſes, of each one pugil. Diſſolving therein afterwards Honey of Roſes.

Let his external ulcers be cured, firſt by an infuſion of Litteridge made of vinegar. And if when the Cruſts are taken off, they ſeem very foul, let the following ointment be uſed.

Take *Oyl of Roſes one ounce and half, juice of Plantane and nightſhade, of each one ounce. Boyl al to the Conſumption of the juices, afterwards ad of lead burnt and waſhed*

ſix

ſix drams ; White wax, as much as will ſuffice. Make all into an Ointment.

If the Gargariſme ſhal ſeem too il taſted, it may be made without birthwort root, and the quantity of honey may be augmented ; or ſugar of roſes may be put in, in ſtead of Honey.

The ulcers being cured, let him uſe yet a month or two the foreſaid diet-drink.

At the end of the ſaid diet-drink, let him again purge and bathe. And let him take cooling broaths for ten daies together, wherein let one dram of Salprunellæ, and half a dram of Cream of tartar be diſſolved, with three drams of fine ſugar.

When he ſhal begin to take his broaths, let a cauſtick be applied to both his legs.

Finally, to confirme the Cure, let him uſe for ſome time together, an opiate compounded of ſudorificks and purgatives, whoſe deſcription may be ſeen in the Diſpenſatory of *Renodæus*.

The 113 *Obſervation, or Hiſtory, of Famous and Rare Cures, &c.*

Suppreſſion of Urine.

A Certain man ſeventy yeares of Age, having rid ſome miles upon a trotting horſe, fell into a ſuppreſſion of urine, ſo that he could hardly make any water, and that only drop by drop. By another phyſitian, he had firſt a Clyſter given him, then was let blood, and ſate in a bathe. Alſo ſome diuritick potions were given him. But finding no eaſe, and ſending for me, I obſerve a ſtretching and hardneſs in the Region of his bladder, with pain which was only felt by preſſing the ſame. Moreover the patient had pains in his Back, Shoulders and Breaſt, ſo that he could hardly ſtir himſelf. It was a ſoutherne and rainy ſeaſon. I conjecture that al theſe ſymptomes proceeded from a Catarrh flowing out of his Head, and that the flowing humor had invaded the body of the bladder and bred ſome tumor therein, by which the ſphincter of the bladder was compreſſed, and the paſſage of the ſaid bladder made ſtrait. Therefore to direct and evacuate the humor flowing in, I preſcribe him a temperate purging Apozem for three daies, a veſicatory to be applied to the hind part of his neck, and an emollient fomentation and a little reſolving, to be applied to the Region of his bladder, and a liniment endued with the ſame vertues. By the uſe of the Apozem his Urines came away every day better and better, ſo that three daies being paſt, he made water much more eaſily and freely. Afterwards I appointed him a bolus of terpentine and lycorice pouder for three daies together, a fomentation and clyſter, made of a decoction emollient and more reſolving ; and a cataplaſme of the reſidence of the decoction, with bean-meal, fenugreek, oyl of dil and chamemel. With theſe remedies he was reſtored to his former health.

The 183 *Obſervation, or Hiſtory, of Famous and Rare Cures, &c.*

Feavers of Children.

THe Son of Msr. *Paul*, a Citizen of *Montpelier*, three yeares old, was taken with a moſt accute Feaver, which ſoon came to its Height : he had a perpetual unquenchable thirſt, which continued from firſt to laſt, and within five daies he died. His hands and feet were oftentimes cold, and at the laſt continued ſo, ſo that the diſeaſe reſembled the Feaver lipyria. His body being opened, no Inflamation appeared in his ſtomach, Gutts, or any other part, of which there was great ſuſpition by reaſon of the foreſaid ſymptoms. And ſeeing there appeared no Cauſe of ſo great ſymptomes, and al the bowels were wel conſtituted ; I ſuppoſed thoſe ſymptoms proceeded, from a malignant and venemous quality, viz. from the ſmal pox, which were then rife, which this child was not able to thruſt forth by reaſon of its native weakneſs, and the vehemency of the venom. This hapned, about the beginning of *July*, Anno 1642.

At the ſame time two little Girles of eight months old, began to be ſick of a frequent Looſneſs, wherewith Leek-colored and verdigreiſe colored choler were voided, with a moſt intenſe Feaver. I preſcribed them both clyſters of broath, the yolk of an egg, & Confectio de Hyacintho ; a liniment for their bellies, of ointment of Roſes, Comitiſſe, and oyl of quinces ; for their Hearts, cooling and ſtrengthening Epithems, and Juleps of Plantane water, Porſlaine water, Syrup,

Syrup of quinces, Confectio de hyacintho, and Lapis prunellæ. Which they took frequently out of a ſpoon, and within two daies the Feaver was much abated, and almoſt extinguiſhed, and the looſneſs very much abated. The Nurſe was ordered to uſe a cooling diet.

The 184 *Obſervation, or Hiſtory, of Famous and Rare Cures,* etc.

A Dyſentery.

ON the 3. of *Auguſt*, 1642. my wife fel into a grievous Dyſentery, in the afternoon, having taken the day before a gentle Medicament; now this Diſeaſe was at that time very rife. At bed time, I gave her two grains of Laudanum, in conſerve of Roſes; the day after at two a clock after dinner, the Diſeaſe continuing, I gave her two grains more of Laudanum. Her looſneſs continued, without blood, which continued five or ſix daies, not very troubleſom. And at laſt with a Medicament of Infuſion of Rhubarb and Myrobalans, with pouder of Rhubarb and Syrup of Roſes, it was quite cured.

The 185 *Obſervation, or hiſtory, of famous and* Rare Cures, etc.

Of a Dropſie.

IOhn Haguenore, a Chyrurgion about twenty ſeven years of Age, was troubled with the Rhumatick Diſeaſe, with pains al his body over, proceeding from a hot diſtemper of his Liver; which Diſeaſe continuing four or five months, brought him to an extream leanneſs, with a continual ſlow Feaver. At laſt, notwithſtanding divers Remedies adminiſtred to overcome ſo great a Diſeaſe, he fel into a dropſie, which was partly aſcites, and partly tympanites, by which his belly was ſwelled to a great Bulk. After many Medicines tried in vain, and many conſultations to no effect, when he ſeemed wholly deſperate, he was commited to my care alone. He was extream lean, ſo that his Muſcles were wholly conſumed, as in an Hectick Feaver of the third degree. I conceived the very ſubſtance of his Liver was extreamly decaied, ſo that it was impoſſible to reſtore the ſame. Wherefore premiſing a prognoſtick to that effect, I ſet upon the cure for experience ſake, on the fourth day of *Auguſt*, 1642. And in the firſt place I gave him univerſal purging Pills with one ſcruple of Calomelanos of Turquetus. He had ſix ſtooles, and bore it wel, and voided many Wheyiſh and Phlegmatick Excrements.

The following day, he began the uſe of theſe following Apozemes.

Take Roots of aſparagus, Butchers-broom, and Elecampane, of each one ounce. The middle bark of Aſhe and Tamariſk, of each half an ounce; Roots of Valerian, round birth-wort, and Aſarum, of each two drams. Leaves of Cichory, Agrimory, Ceterach and Maiden-hair, of each one handful; of the two Wormwoods, Ground Oake, and Centory, of each half an handful. Boyl them to a pint, and in the ſtrained liquor diſſolve Syrup of Maiden-hair, three ounces. Make of al an Apozem for three morning doſes, adding to every doſe one dram of Diuretick Salt, and thiry drops of Diuretick ſpirit. This be continued for ſix daies, and voided twice or thrice a day flegmatick and Wheyiſh Excrements. On the ſeventh day he took again the foreſaid Pills, with the ſame effect. Afterward he continued his Apozems for fifteen daies, and the ſwelling of his whol Belly was abated, for he went to ſtool every day four or five times, voiding flegmatick and Wheyiſh Excrements, and plenty of Urine. He continued extream lean and without any appetite. I preſcribe him a pouder of one dram of vitriolum martis, and two drams of pouder of Ivory, he took at firſt one ſcruple in the morning with panada; and at the ſame time he took morning and evening two ſpoonfuls of Tincture of Roſes. Theſe were continued only for two days. But becauſe his Belly was yet ſomwhat ſwollen and he voided Flegmatick and very crude matter by ſtool; he returned to his opening julets which were made of a Decoction of temperate opening Herbs and Roots, the ſalt and ſpirit aforeſaid being added, becauſe from the long uſe of the foreſaid Decoction, I feared he ſhould be too much dried. He took the ſaid Julep in the evening, without the Salt and Spirit, but with juyce of Lemmons to quench his thirſt. He voided

as

as before flegmatick and watry excrements. To his evening julep was sometimes added one ounce of tincture of Corals, to strengthen and coole his Liver. These things being continued for twelve daies together, his belly was quite fallen, and the skin of his whol body felt softer; his muscles began to be filled, and his whol habit of body to be nourished, his appetite was good, and his stomach did wel digest. At last to strengthen his bowells, and gently to provoke his expulsive faculty, which remained sluggish, every day he took half a dram of Rhubarb, made into a bolus with syrup of Roman Wormwood. This bolus he took for five daies together. Afterwards he abstained from al remedies, for as many daies more. Afterwards to recover him out of his leanness, he used a bath of Barly and Almonds, which was repeated once every week. And when he had abstained a month together from purging, he began to be tormented with pains in his limbs, yet not very violent, which continuing many daies, he sent for me again: and I told him the fluxion of humors must be taken away by purging. He said, that his former pains, in the begining of his disease, were much encreased by purgation. Which was the reason, that I would not give him any vulgar purgation, but the foresaid pils he took, and they gently purged him, and his pains were taken quite away. He was perfectly cured of his dropsie, but being very careless in his diet, and did eat ever and anon meats bad for him, he fell into a tertian Ague, of which being by some remedies cured, after fifteen daies he fel into it again; and so he lived four or five months, his tertian ague fits ever and anon returning, by his new extravagancies of diet; til at last he died, having nevertheless lived six months before, even to his dying day, free from the dropsie.

The 186 Observation, or History, of Famous and Rare Cures, &c.

A Gangreen caused by a vesicatory.

IN the month of *Auguſt*, 1642 the daughter of Msr. *Bon*, a Councellor of the Exchequer Court, being two years and an half old, troubled with a malignant Feaver, was plied with sundry remedies, and among the rest a vesicatory being appointed, the Apothecary made it of the comon vesicatory Plaister of the shops, and to make it the stronger, sprinkled a great deal of pouder of Cantharides upon it, whereupon the skin was burnt, and the day following, al the part covered with the vesicatory, appeared Gangrenated. For the Cure whereof, scarrifications being made, it was fomented with Aqua vitæ, and then a liniment applied, made of Unguentum Egyptiacum dissolved in Aqua vitæ. Within three daies, the Eschar was separated, and the remaining ulcer cured, with this following ointment.

Take the kidny suet of an oxe one ounce. Lythartidge prepared, and minium, of each one scruple. Oyl of roses, as much as wil suffice. Make of al an ointment.

The 187 Observation, or History, of Famous and Rare Cures, &c.

Of a Malignant feaver.

I *Obn Richards* a Citizen of *Montpelier*, having been afflicted with a malignant Feaver, for six weeks together, was so extreamly weakned, that he seemed to be neare his grave coming then first to him, and hearing that he had been little purged, al his disease long, I conceived that his strength was overpowred with the burthen of humors, but so weak withal that he could hardly beare purging. Therefore I undertook to purge him by degrees, and prescribed him a potion of the Infusion of one scruple of Senna in Cichory water, and half a scruple of Cream of tartar, adding one ounce of Syrup of roses. This potion he took three daies one after another, and had two stools every day, his strength was a little encreased; on the fourth day he took an ounce of Syrup of Roman wormwood. On the fift day I gave him the infusion of a dram of Senna, which being continued for two daies, he was gently purged to good purpose. Whereupon he began to be better, recovered by little and little, repeating his purgations at certain times. Some time after he fel into a relapse, and sent for no physician, til he was at last cast, and so he died. This one thing only is worthy of note in this Observation; that a purging

ging Medicament may be given in the greateſt extremity of weakneſs, provided it be preſcribed in a very ſmal doſe.

The 188 *Obſervation, or Hiſtory, of Famous and Rare Cures, &c.*

A Looſneſs in a Boy.

THe Son of Mſr. *Audeſſan*, Councellor in the Curt of Accounts, being four years old, was troubled with a long Looſneſs, want of Appetite, and weakneſs. The original of this Looſneſs was from bad Diet, for they crammed him with much meat, and ſometimes gave him pure wine to drink; whereby his Natural heat was ſo waſted, that his nouriſhment was converted into crude and Flegmatick Excrements; for his ſtools were in a manner nothing but mere Flegm, when I firſt viſited him; whereas before they had been yellow, Green, verdigreiſe coloured, and bloody, as I was informed. Having ordered his Diet, I preſcribe him a Medicament of Syrup of Cichory with Rhubarb one ounce, and half a dram of Rhubarb to be taken three daies together: after that two ſpoonfuls of tincture of corals, to be taken morning and evening; within five daies he was better, and the remedies being continued, he recovered in a few daies.

The 189 *Obſervation, or Hiſtory, of Famous and Rare Cures, &c.*

Of a long Looſneſs, and a ſtubborne Head-ach.

ON the 7. of *October*, 1642, I was called to *Lodova*, to Mſr. *Fleury*, Treaſurer of the Exchequer, fourſcore years of Age, being troubled with a looſneſs of two Months continuance, with which he voided many Wheyiſh and crude Excrements, but eſpecially his looſneſs troubled him in the night, by which and other ſignes, it ſeemed that the influx of Humor was chiefly from his brain. Moreover he was troubled with a cruel pain in his Head, on the left ſide thereof, from the Crown of his Head to his Eare and Temples on the ſame ſide, which pain when he lay upon the part affected, was manifeſtly pultative. I ſetting my ſelf to the Cure, in the firſt place, becauſe of his Looſneſs, I preſcribe him this potion.

Take *Choyce Rhubarb, one dram. Citrine Myrobalans, half a dram. Yellow ſanders, half a ſcruple; infuſe them in Plantane water, and in the ſtrained liquor diſſolve half a dram of Rhubarb poudered, Syrup of Roſes, half an ounce: make them into a potion. After the taking whereof he had three ſtools in the day time, and only two the night after, whereas before he was wont to go to ſtool five or ſix times a night.*

The following day, the ſame Laxative potion was given him, adding the infuſion of one dram of *Senna*. He had five or ſix ſtools in the day, and none at al in the night, and ſo his looſneſs was quite Cured.

On the third day, to take away his long and pulſing Head-ach, when many other Remedies had been tried in vain, I cauſed the Artery of his Temple to be opened, whereby three ounces of blood were taken away, and upon the Orifice was applied a Plaiſter of Franckincenſe, Maſtich, Bole-Armenick, Hares Hairs, and the white of an Egg with good Ligature: and the ſame day, the pain was quite taken away.

The 190 *Obſervation, or Hiſtory, of Famous and Rare Cures, &c.*

A Catarrhe falling upon the Lungs.

ABout the End of *October*, 1642. I fel into a grievous Catarrhe by being in the Sun, which falling upon my Lungs, made me ſhort winded and wheeze. I was let blood, and then purged for two daies together, with a Laxative Ptiſan, abſtaining from Wine, and keeping a very

very ſlender Diet: by which means my Wheezing ceaſed, and my ſhortneſs of breath was much abated. But there followed in their ſtead a very troubleſome Cough, which having continued two daies, in the morning I put a bit of Tobacco into my mouth, having firſt lightly ground it with my Teeth, which when I had kept half an hour upon my Tongue, my Head began to be a little dizzy, and my Stomach ſomwhat ſick, after which followed a ſmal vomit of Wheyiſh matter, which had a bitter farwel with it. The Dizzyneſs of my Head continued for two hours, and my Cough was ſtayed til evening, when it began a little to trouble me by fits. About Supper time, a pain aroſe in my Head, with a certain heat, eſpecially on the left ſide; after Supper, which was plentyful enough, my Head-ach was much worſe, and was accompanied with a troubleſome Stomach-ſickneſs which having continued for an hour, and my Head-ach grew worſe and worſe, thruſting my finger down my throat I caſt up al my Supper with much flegm, whereupon my Head-ach was abated, and ſoon after I betake me to my bed, where falling aſleep, I paſt the night quietly, and was the following day, quite freed from my Cough and Catarrhe.

The 191 *Obſervation, or Hiſtory, of Famous and Rare Cures, &c.*

An Old Head-ach proceeding from the Veneral pocks ill-Cured.

A Certain man infected with the Lues Venerea, was Cured by a Sudorifick Diet, and a Mercurial Oyntment, whereupon he ſeemed for a certain time to be Cured; but afterwards the ſame diſeaſe returned again, and he was again Cured with a Sudorifick Decoction, taken for ſome daies together, and then with a fume of Cinnabar, ſo that the Cure ſeemed perfectly accompliſhed. Yet he began afterwards to be troubled with a grievous Head-ach, on the left ſide of his Head, which upon the change of Seaſons, and eſpecially at the beginning of Autumne, did grievouſly torment him, and remained like a Nail evermore fixed in the ſame place. And when he had tried many Evacuating, revelling, deriving, and anodyne Medicaments in vain, he came to me. And I was of Opinion that this grievous Head-ach, was from the Relicks of Lues Venerea not perfectly Cured. Yet that the next and immediate Cauſe thereof, or at leaſt which fomented and encreaſed the pain was, beſides the Veneral Venom, a ſharp and biting Humor, flowing to that part of the Head; or the mercury it ſelf collected in that part, or a rottenneſs contracted in the Skul. Which two laſt Cauſes, though not frequent, yet do ſometimes happen, as appears from many Hiſtories reported by Authors.

Now that reſpect may be had to al theſe Cauſes, In the firſt place I preſcribed an univerſal Evacuation, by bloodletting, and Purgation, by Apozemes for four daies.

After that a Sudorifick Diet drink, of a Decoction of Guajacum, and Salſaparilla, for thirty, or fourty daies, reſpect being had to the temperament, for if it be hotter than ordinary (for I could not ſee the man, only my advice was deſired upon a Relation of the Caſe in writing, where the Complexion of the Patient was not expreſſed) it may be corrected with baths and cooling broaths. For many times a Lues Venerea that could not be Cured with Mercury, has been Cured by a long uſe of Decoctions. And if the Head-ach ariſe only from Virulent Humors which Vellicate the Membranes, it may be Cured only with a longer uſe of the Diet drink.

And if that ſame Head-ach, ſhal not give way to the Decoction long uſed, it muſt be conſidered if ſome mercury be not collected in the part, which may be known by putting a little pellet made of Leafe Gold rould up, into his left Noſtril as far as can be, and pulling it out after it has been in ſome time; for if it come out Wheyiſh tis a ſign there is Mercury. The ſame may be experimented alſo, by covering a Cephalick Plaiſter with Leaves of Gold, and putting it upon the part pained; for if the Gold turne white, 'tis a ſign there is ſome Mercury in the part, which may be drawn forth, by little and little, if a thin plate of Gold be continually worn upon the pained place, and a ſolid pellet of Gold, be frequently thruſt up into the Noſe.

If this Remedy do not remove the pain, the part muſt be opened, the ſcull being boared with a Trepan. For many times the Scul is gnawn by ſharp and virulent Humors, and it is corrupted, the Skin remaining intire. And although the rottenneſs appear not, yet the Trepan does many times help by bringing forth a Virulent matter, which is collected upon the Coats of the Brain.

The 192 *Obſervation, or Hiſtory, of Famous and Rare Cures, &c.*

A Pleuriſie.

THe Daughter of Mſr. *Divoul*, a Citizen of *Montpelier*, of a Sanguin Complexion, twenty years of Age, was troubled with a grievous Pleuriſie of her left ſide, in the beginning of *March*, 1643. On the ſecond day of her diſeaſe, a Vein was opened on the ſame ſide, and eight ounces of blood drawn away. The day following when the Chyrurgeon would have let her blood again, he could not find the Vein; becauſe the Virgin was very Fat, and the Vein lay buried in the depth of her Arme, ſo that becauſe the vein appeared better in her right Arme, he was forced to open the ſame, and drew thereout eight ounces of blood. Nevertheleſs, this blood-letting did no good. Seeing therefore the Pleuriſie was very urgent, they ſent for me, and when I ſaw there was great need to let her blood again; becauſe ſhe was almoſt choaked, and had a very high Feaver; I cauſed them to ſend for other Chyrurgions, that one or other of them might open the Vein; having therefore ſent for one of the Skilfulleſt, adviſed him if he could open the Vein, he ſhould make a large orifice and take away good ſtore of blood at once, ſeeing it was ſo hard a matter to repeat Phlebotomy in this patient. He did as I wil him, and tooke away about fourteen ounces of blood, whereby the Patient was much eaſed, and not at al weakned. Four or five hours after, blood was again let to ten ounces. Which ſhe eaſily bore, and the day following was perfectly freed from her Pleuriſie and Feaver.

The 193 *Obſervation, or Hiſtory, of Famous and Rare Cures, &c.*

Of a falling-ſickneſs.

THe Son of Mſr. *Roche*, a Cittizen of *Montpelier*, being twelve years old, was for ſome months tormented with fits of the Falling-ſickneſs; which came at firſt, only once a week and afterwards every day. He was purged once or twice, alſo let blood, and had an Iſſue in his Arme many years. Being ſent for, I preſcribe him an Apozeme of Cephalicks and ſpecifical Remedies againſt the Epilepſie, with purgatives, for four doſes. Then an Iſſue is made in his coronal ſuture, and with theſe two remedies he was freed from his diſeaſe.

This boy was of an hot and Cholerick conſtitution, and very ready in his actions, which bred a conjecture, that this diſeaſe did ariſe from filthy Vapors, which by this emiſſary might be Diſcuſſed.

The 194 *Obſervation, or Hiſtory, of famous and rare Cures, &c.*

A Dropſie.

THe Daughter of Mſr. *Patris*, Counſellor in the Court *Præſidiary*, ſix years old, and ſick of a Dropſie, was cured with theſe following remedies, in the month of *March*, the year 1643.

Firſt a Clyſter was adminiſtred, which was thus made.

Take *Pulp of Coloquintida, one dram; courſe bran an handful, boyl them in white Wine to nine ounces, make a Clyſter; which brought away Flegmatick and wheyiſh Excrements withou*t

without trouble, and was continued for three daies. At the ſame time there was applied to her whol Belly a Cataplaſme of the Roots of Wild Coucummer, made with comin ſeed and Honey, the diſcription whereof you have in my Practice of Phyſick. Now when her belly began to aſſwage, and ſhe would not take internal Remedies, the clyſter was repeated three or four times, every other day, and the Cataplaſme was continued. From whence followed a greater diminution of her belly. At laſt I preſcribed her a purging pouder of Senna, Turbith, and other things, the deſcription whereof, is in my Practice, whoſe doſe was one dram, and ſhe was therewith but little purged, ſeeing ſhe vomited up the Medicament; and her Belly did yet appear ſwolne. Afterwards I preſcribe her Juleps, of aperitive Roots and Herbs, with Salt and diuretick ſpirit, for four doſes, with the uſe whereof ſhe made greater quantity of Urin, but her belly continued ſtil ſwollen. Afterwards I appoint her a pouder of Calomelanos of Turquetus, twelve grains, Scammony eight grains, and jallap, fifteen grains. Which ſhe took in broath and was ſeven times purged, and voided much wheyiſh Humor and flegm by ſtool, whereby the ſwelling of her belly was half in half abated, in the ſpace of twenty four hours. The foreſaid Julep was repeated for three daies; and the fourth day ſhe took the foreſaid pouder again, with the ſame ſucceſs; and when her belly was very much fallen, ſo that ſhe began to get out of her bed, and to have a good Stomach to her meate, ſhe took no more Phyſick, and ſo by little and little perfectly recovered.

The 195 Obſervation, or Hiſtory, of Famous and Rare Cures, &c.

Venereal Pox in a little Boy.

A Little boy thirty months old, being ſick of the Veneral Pox, with a filthy Scab al over his body, which he had caught of his Nurſe, he was Cured with theſe following Remedies.

Take *Shavings of Lignum Guajacum, two ounces. Fountain water two pound. Infuſe them twenty four hours, then boyl them til a third part be conſumed. Take three ounces of the ſtrained Liquor and give it the Child in the morning two hours before meat, covering his body a little warmer than ordinary, and continue this courſe twenty daies.*

Take *Scammony poudered ſix grains; Calomelanos five grains. Mix them into a very fine pouder, and give it him in a ſpoonful or two of Sugared Panada, and let him drink a little broath after it. Continue this Remedy every fift day, encreaſing the doſe of both the Meditaments according to their operation.*

Take *the matter of the foreſaid Decoction, Fountain water three pints, make hereof a Diet drink for his ordinary drink, adding ſugar and Lycorice as much as ſhal ſuffice for to gratifie the Palate. Theſe Remedies being continued for a Monih together, he was well Recovered.*

The 196 Obſervation, or Hiſtory, of Famous and Rare Cures, &c.

An Impoſtume by the Back-bone.

SInce the time that I have Practiſed Phyſick, it has been my hap to ſee five Impoſtums upon the Back near the Back-bone, which were bred of a cold matter, collected by little and little without pain, or inflamation, and the color of the part being no waies changed. The Tumors were ſoft, like an Oedema, as big commonly as a mans fiſt. Howbeit, when they were opened, Laudable matter flowed out of them. The three firſt killed the Patients, in the ſpace of three or four months, Whenas the Ulcer remaining after the Impoſtume opened, became very hollow and winding, and a greater quantity of Quittor came thereout every day; whereupon the whol body was exhauſted, and turned into an Atrophia, though the Cure of the Ulcers was by many Remedies endeavoured. The fourth was cured by great inciſions made in the back. By which al the Cavities were laid open; and afterward with Fomentations of Aqua Catapultarum, and other Topicks, the Ulcers were Cured, and in the mean time the antecedent Cauſe

was

was provided againſt by frequent evacuations, and the uſe of a ſweating decoction. Finally, the fiſt was cured without inciſion, only it was laid wide open with a potential cautery, and then the ulcer was cleanſed with injections of the Decoctum catapultarum, and a fomentation of the ſame, and by ſtrong compreſſion of the part, with ſwathbands and bolſters; and by continual application of very aſtringent medicamens round about the ulcer. And in the mean while the antecedent cauſe was provided againſt, with the foreſaid Remedies.

The 197 *Obſervation, or hiſtory, of famous and* Rare Cures, &c.

A Dropſie in a boy ſeven yeares old.

THe Son of Mſr. *Saget*, a Citizen of *Montpelier*, was troubled with grievous obſtructions, whereby his belly was mightily ſwelled, ſo that he was now become hydropical. Being called to him the 28 of *April* 1643. I preſcribe theſe following Remedies.

Take *Senna cleanſed two drams; anis ſeed and Cream of tartar, of each one dram; Roman Wormwood one pugil. Boile them to two ounces, in the ſtrained liquour diſſolve of the Electuary of Diacarthamum one dram and half; ſyrup of roſes half an ounce: make all into a potion. Let him take it in the morning and be ordered accordingly.*

Take *Roots of Smallage, Perſeley and Aſparagus, of each half an ounce. Leaves of Agrimony, Maidenhair, Ceterach, and Hyſop, of each half an handful; polipody of the oak, and Carthamus ſeeds, of each two drams. Seeds of Smallage and Parſly of each one dram; Cream of tartar two ſcruples. Boile them with the fourth part of an old cock, in the ſtrained liquor diſſolve ſalt of wormwood and tamariſk, of each one ſcruple. Make a broath, of which let him take every morning for twelve dayes.*

In every third doſe of broath infuſe two drams of Senna al night. Let him take it, and be ordered accordingly.

Take *Oyle of Capars and Tamariſk, of each two ounces; juice of dwarf elder and wild Cowcummers, of each an ounce and half; Boile them to a conſumption of the juyces: in the ſtrayned liquour diſſolve ſeeds of Agnus Caſtus, and parſly of macedonia finely poudered, of each half a dram; oyl of nutmegs half an ounce. Wax as much as ſhal ſuffice to make a liniment. Let his belly be therewith ſmeared hot, as he goes into his bed.*

Let him uſe for his ordinary drink an infuſion of ſteel and rhubarb, in manner of a diet-drink.

With theſe remedies the ſwelling of his belly was leſſened, but not quite taken away, therefore I was fain to proceed to theſe medicines following, which in three weeks ſpace, quite cured the diſeaſe.

Take *Conſerve of the flowers of tamariſk, and maidenhair, of each one ounce and half. Confectio alkermes three drams, ſalt of wormwood and tamariſk of each one dram. Ivory poudered and Diarhodon Abbatis, of each two ſcruples; with ſyrup of Maidenhair, make all into an opiate, of which let him take the Quantity of a Chaſt-nut every morning, two hours before meat, and drink after it a little wine tempered with water.*

Take *Calomelanos eight grains, diagredium ſeven grains, two leaves of gold: make all into a pouder, and give it him once a week with two ſpoonfuls of ſugared panada, and let him drink a little broath after it.*

The 198 *Obſervation, or Hiſtory, of famous and rare Cures, &c.*

A Baſtard palſie.

AN honeſt woman of *Aix*, about 50. yeares old, having ſuffered abortion, and living yet by it, was at firſt troubled with a nummedneſs about her belly, which ſhe eaſily perceived by putting her hand upon her belly. After the abortion ſome months, ſhe proved with child, and during the courſe of her Impregnation, the ſaid nummedneſs ſeized alſo upon her thighes and leggs, and a far worſe ſymptome was added thereto, viz. an inability to ſtir them.

After ſhe was brought to bed, many purging and ſweating medicines were uſed, and many other heating and drying Remedies, without any effect. So that ſhe had been now two yeares troubled

troubled with this greivous Infirmity. In the parts aforeſaid, the ſenſe of feeling was not quite taken away, but only impaired; but al motion was quite loſt. Yet there is this one thing peculiar and very wel worth obſervation; That when her legs are drawn forth by her ſervants, or are any other waies ſtirred, preſently they become ſtif and convulſed, in manner of a tetanus. To which is added a certain Convulſive motion like that of perſons which have the falling-ſickneſs, which is wont alſo frequently to take her of it ſelf by fits. And when ſhe is taken with theſe ſymptomes, ſhe perceives a kind of motion in her hipochondria, moreover ſhe is frequently afflicted with wandering pains, poſſeſſing divers parts, but eſpecially her Cheſt; ſo that ſomtimes the fore part, other whiles the hinder-part; now the right, anon the left part of her cheſt, is vexed with theſe running paines. This is the Hiſtory of the diſeaſe, related by the Patient her ſelf, who returning from the bathes which ſhe had uſed in vain, deſired my advice the foruth of *July*. 1643.

I could indeed have wiſhed, that the diſeaſe had been more exactly deſcribed, by thoſe skilful Phyſitians who had her under cure, to the end that the nature of ſo moſt intricate and difficult a diſeaſe might be the better known, and the Cure more ſollidly undertaken, by a diligent meditation upon al the Circumſtances thereof. Yet ſhal I not forbeare, (to ſatiſfie the deſire of the patient) to ſhew my opinion, ſubmitting the ſame to the judgement of thoſe moſt expert Phyſitians, who are able to obſerve al the particularities of the diſeaſe, and perfectly to ſee into the nature thereof.

I conceive therefore, that this diſeaſe is no true palſie ariſing from a flegmatick humor, looſning and reſolving the Nerves; but that it is rather a mixt diſeaſe conſiſting partly of a baſtard palſie, and partly of a convulſion. Now theſe baſtard palſies, compounded with diſtentions and convulſions of the nerves, are in thoſe inferior parts often produced, by chollerick, melancholick, or wheyiſh Humors contained in the Hypochondria, or other parts of the lower belly, and tranſlated into the back-bone; from which ſeeing the nerves ariſe, which bring motion and ſence into the parts, as alſo into the muſcles and skin of the belly; it is no wonder, that the animal actions of thoſe parts are very much hurt. This may be confirmed by a larger diſcourſe, the Judgment of Authors, and by experience, but unto ſuch learned men it may ſuffice, to declare a few things, which make this conjecture of mine ſufficiently probable.

In the firſt place therefore it muſt be taken as a certaine and unqueſtionable truth; that al privation of ſence and motion does not draw its original from the flegmatick humor; but that it proceeds ſomtimes from an hot and dry diſtemper, and humors following ſuch a Conſtitution. This may be confirmed by the opinion of *Trallianus* alone, who in the 16. Chap. of his 1. book, alleadges ſuch a Cauſe, and confirmes it with a cleare example in theſe words. *I knew, truly, a man that was palſied through ſorrow, much care and faſting, and having taken Hiera picra, he became ſo bad, that he could not ſtir at al, and was neare to death; unleſs he had been altered to the contrary, both with al kinds of moiſtening things, and potions and meates, and other things that might reduce him to a right temper, eſpecially with baths and frequent nointings with water and oile, with mutation of the air to a temperate, and al kind of cheerfulneſs.* A ſtory not much unlike to this may be ſeene in *Foreſtus* his 97 obſervation of his 10. Book, of a Certain young man who being deprived of motion from his thighs to his feet, with an extenuation and non-nutrition of the ſaid parts, and growing continually worſe and worſe by the uſe of hot and drying medicaments preſcribed by other Phyſitians, at laſt he was cured by *Foreſtus*, only with moiſtening medicaments, which were partly taken in, and partly applied externally.

Moreover it is a thing long ſince obſerved amongſt Practitioners, that there is a chollerick colick, which does frequently degenerate into a palſie, and that ſuch a palſie ſprings from choler no man doubts.

And finally, That from a melancholick and wheyiſh Humor, Symptomes are produced very like the palſie and convulſion, is every where related by ſuch Authors as have written of the Scurvy and the hypochondriacal diſeaſe, as you may ſee in *Sennertus*, where he explaines the ſymptoms of the foreſaid diſeaſes, in his Book of the Scurvy, and of the hypochondriacal diſeaſe.

Now that thoſe Impairments of ſence and motion which afflict this honeſt woman, do proceed from aduſt and hot humors, wee may in the firſt place conjecture from ſuch things as help and hurt; for ſeeing ſhe received no good by heating and drying medicaments, but was alwaies

waies worſe after them, it follows that they were no waies contrary to the diſeaſe. And this was the only way, whereby *Trallianus* and *Foreſtus*, in the foreſaid Hiſtories came to the knowledg of a palſie proceeding from an hot and dry diſtemper.

Secondly, That this patient has a dry diſtemper, may be hence collected, in that Cauſticks applied to divers parts, and Iſſues made thereby, afforded very little humor, and were quickly dried up.

Thirdly, Palſies which proceed from flegm, draw their original from the brain, as the fountain of that humor; and thoſe parts which are near the Head, are commonly firſt and moſt of all hurt. Whereas in the patient, there are no ſigns of any humor flowing from the head, nor is there any hurt in her upper parts, ſo that her Armes, hands, and other upper parts, do perfectly perfotme their Actions.

Fourthly, the firſt Inſult of the diſeaſe, did cauſe a dulneſs of the ſenſe of feeling in her belly, and the Muſcles of the Abdomen, which ſhews that the nerves which ſpring out of the back bone, through the vertebraes of the Loines were firſt hurt; and that afterwards the diſeaſe was propagated to the nerves which ariſe from Os Sacrum, and creep along to the thighs and leggs. Whence may be gathered, that the humor offending, was transferred from the parts contained in the lower belly unto thoſe nerves, juſt as in a palſie following after the cholick, ſuch a like tranſlation is wont to happen.

Fifthly, pains afflicting divers parts, eſpecially about the breaſt, and thoſe ſo flitting, do argue that ſharp and biting vapors, are carryed from the Hypochondria into thoſe parts; as like pains in ſuch as are troubled with hypochondriacal Melancholy, do moſt frequently happen.

Sixthly, as often as this Patients feet & legs are ſtirred, a ſtretching and trembling motion does preſently ariſe, which argues that the matter impacted into the nerves is thin and movable, and conſequently put into agitation by the leaſt ſtirring, by that means cauſing tenſions and vibrations of the Nerves.

Seventhly, when the Convulſions ſeize upon this woman, a certain motion goes before in her bowels, which ſhe plainly perceives; which motion proceeds from the foreſaid matter, begining to work and ſtir it ſelf, or from vapors raiſed out of the ſaid matter by its commotion; as in a Sympathetick Epilepſie, ariſing from the inferior parts, ſuch Commotions are perceived in the Belly, when the fit is about to come.

Finally, this diſeaſe began to ſhew it ſelf after the patient had miſcarried, and took its increaſe during the time of her afterwards being with child; which ſignifies that bad humors collected in the veins of the womb, not ſufficiently voided by the monthly purgations, did fal into thoſe nervy parts, and did at laſt cauſe theſe Impediments of ſenſe and Motion.

Theſe things thus laid down, Let us come to the Cure, which muſt be directed to theſe Indications, viz. That the hot and dry diſtemper of her Bowels be corrected; that the melancholick and burnt humors (which I take to be the cheife cauſe of theſe ſymptoms) be prepared and evacuated, the obſtructed paſſages be opened, and the cheife bowels producing theſe humors be ſtrengthened. I ſhal breifly propound ſuch materials as are fit to ſatisfy theſe Indications, and thoſe the choyceſt, premiſing this prognoſtick, That diſeaſes proceeding from melancholly, are of al others moſt hard to cure, and if they ſeize upon the nerves, they are yet harder to cure; and confirmed old diſeaſes of the nerves, are incurable; whence it follows, that this caſe propounded, is hardly vanquiſhable by remedies, and that there is little hope of the Cure. I adviſe nevertheleſs that this Cure ſhould be undertaken, ſeeing many things daily fal out beſides hope, and many diſeaſes are cured, which were accounted deſperate.

In the firſt place therefore, her diet muſt be of meats of good juice and eaſie digeſtion, ſomwhat cooling, and very moiſtening. Of which kind are the fleſh of young beaſts, and new ſoft eggs, as the principal. The other particularites of her diet, are left to the preſcription of her ordinary Phyſitians.

The reſt of the Cure muſt be begun with a laxative Clyſter, after which muſt follow the next day, blood-letting in her left arme to eight ounces. And if the blood be corrupt, or infected with any bad quality, ſhe muſt be let blood again, the next day, out of her other arme in like quantity. After bleeding let her fal to the uſe of theſe following broathes.

Take Roots of Bugloſs and Aſparagus, of each one ounce; Leaves of Agrimony, Ceterach, Maiden hair and Cichory, of each one handful. Boyl them in Cock-broath, and diſſolve therein one dram of Cream of tartar. Let her take hereof for twelve daies together.

In

In every fourth broath infuse al night three drams of Senna, one dram of Anis-seed, in the strained liquor dissolve an ounce and half of choyce Manna. Let her take it and be ordered accordingly.

Her broaths being ended, let her use a bathe to sit in Lukewarme, of a decoction of Barly and sweet Almonds: let her sit in it twice a day for three daies together, far from mealetimes.

The day after her last use of the Baths, let the vein of her left ankle be opened, and take away six ounces of blood.

Afterwards let her drink whey of Goats-milk for fifteen or twenty daies, taking at first one cup, afterwards two or three, as her stomach can beare, for the more she shal drink, the more good it wil do her. Now the whey must be made presently before she takes it, of milk newly milked, by boyling the same one walm, and as soon as it begins to boyl, thereinto sprinkling a little quantity of juice of Lemmons or vinegar, and presently removing it from the fire, for presently the whey wil be separated from the cheesie substance, which is made exceeding cleare by straining and clarifying the same with the white of an egg; and may be drunk in great quantity without offending the stomach, so that it is by many drunk after the rate of Mineral waters, with great profit.

Every fourth or fift day let two ounces of manna be dissolved in her first cup of whey.

During the rest of the Summer, let the bathe to sit in be repeated, once or twice in a week, that her hypochondria may be moistened, and the acrimony of the offensive humor tempered.

If she be not of her self loos-bellyed, let her take a Clyster every other day.

Take, Conserve of Eglantine berries, four ounces; Conserve of the flowers of Borrage, Violets, and tamarisk, of each two ounces. Conserve of the Roots of Elecampane, and Citron peeles preserved, of each half an ounce. Ivory shavings two drams. Salt of wormwood and tamarisk, of each one dram and half. Two preserved myrobalans, Confectio Alkermes half an ounce, with syrup of Maidenhaire make an Opiate, of which let her take the quantity of a Chesnut every morning, two hours before meat, and drink a little wine allayed with water after it.

And because the disease is very stubborn, & cannot be vanquished, unless by remedies very long continued; in Autmne, the cure must be begun again, beginning with a clyster, then letting blood, after which the following Apozem shal be used twelve daies together.

Take, Roots of Asparagus, Butchers-broom, and Buglos, of each one ounce. Roots of Enula compane, bark of Caper roots, middle rind of the Ashe, and tamarisk, of each half an ounce. Leaves of Agrimony, borrage, burner, cichory, ceterach, maidenhaire, of each one handful. Fragrant apples, ripe and cut into bits, number two. Flowers of Borrage, Violets and tamarisk, of each one pugil. Boyl them to a pint for three doses, adding to each dose one dram of Christial of tartar, Salt of wormwood and Tamarisk, of each one scruple, Syrup of Maidenhaire an ounce. Let her take it for twelve daies, in the morning, three hours before meat, renewing the decoction every third day.

In every fourth dose, infuse al night three drams of Senna, Anis-seed one dram. In strained liquor dissolve two ounces of Choise Manna. Let her take it and order her self accordingly.

After the Apozems, let her again use the bath to sit in according to the foresaid directions.

The day after her last use of the bath, let her Fundament be chafed with a course cloathe, and fasten two horse-leeches, to those parts that swel most, and draw away five or six ounces of blood.

The next day make Issues in both her Leggs on the inner side, and keep them open a long time.

Take, *of Juices newly pressed forth, and clarified over a gentle fire, of borrage, buglos, Fumitory, Cichory, and Endive three pints. Juice of fragrant apples newly pressed out and clarified two pound. Senna six ounces, Epithymum three ounces, Agrick newly troched and choyce Rhubarb, of each one ounce and half. Mace and cloves of each one dram. Infuse them and boyl them according to art, til there remain fifteen ounces. And therin dissolve fifteen ounces of Sugar. Make al into a syrup perfectly boyled, of which let her take two ounces twice or thrice in a month in Chicken broath boild with Leaves of Borrage, Buglos, Agrimony, and Pimpinel.*

Let her continue the uſe of the foreſaid opiate on al ſuch daies, as are free from the uſe of the other Medicaments.

The 199 Obſervation, or hiſtory, of famous and Rare Cures, &c.

Vomiting in a Malignant feaver.

THe Chamber-maide of Madam *de Rozeb*, called *Laprune*, being ſick of a Malignant Feaver, on the tenth day of the Diſeaſe, was taken with ſuch a troubleſome vomiting, that ſhe caſt up al her broaths and drink; and when ſhe had been three daies troubled in that manner, the Phyſitian that had care of her, by my advice gave her one ſcruple of Salt of wormwood, with a ſpoonful of Juyce of Lemmons; and her vomiting was ſuddenly ſtopt, and afterwards ſhe kept al that ever ſhe took. Three daies after, the ſame vomiting returned, and was cured by the ſame Medicine.

Some daies after, the ſame Medicament was by the ſame Phyſitian given to two Children, troubled with the ſame Symptome, and it cured them.

The 200 Obſervation, or Hiſtory, of Famous and Rare Cures, &c.

A falſe Conception.

A Woman of *Giniaca*, fourty five years old, came to *Montpelier*, to ask advice concerning a diſeaſe ſhe had. She told us that being never married, ſhe had to do with a young man, conceived, and thereupon loſt her ſtomach, was pale al her body over, longed for certain meats, with other ſigns of being with Child.

Fourty daies after her conception, ſhe perceived a kind of Palpication about her right Hypochondrium, and from that time ſhe began to be better, and her appetite was reſtored. Her belly grew daily bigger, her dugs did ſwel, and at laſt milk began to breed in them, viz. In the fourth month in her left dug, and that was reddiſh, and afterward there came milk into her right dug which was white.

In the fourth month ſhe had her courſes plentyfully three daies together, whereupon the ſwelling of her belly abated. But it began afterwards by little and little to riſe again. Her Courſes came every month, as they uſed before ſhe conceived. She perceived a motion in her belly, like that of an infant in the womb.

The ninth month ſhe had the pains of a Woman in Travail, ſo that the midwife was ſent for, and al the by-ſtanders looked when ſhe ſhould be delivered. Howbeit thoſe pains ceaſed after twenty four hours, and nothing came from her.

From that time her courſes have come ordinarily, until the thirteenth month, wherein ſhe again ſuffered the pains of Child-birth without any effect. And after that her courſes came no more, the bigineſs of her Belly continued, with motions at times, as it were of a live Child. And now thirty two months are paſt ſince the time ſhe firſt conceived, neither is the ſwelling of her belly exceeding great, for it hardly equals that of a Woman ſix months gone with child. Two riſings appear ſenſibly diſtinct, ſo that a ſpace appears between them: which Tumors encline to her Hypochondria, when the Woman lies. But when ſhe is upright, they reſemble the true form of a woman with child, being in the middle of her belly: being compreſſed they give place, and then returne again. They are often moved with a motion of their own like a Child in the Womb.

The ſwelling of her breaſts is long ſince gone, and they are very ſoft and flaggy, out of which very little drops of green milk is preſſed forth.

All the time of her being great, ſhe kept her ſelf ſhut up in the Houſe, tormenting her ſelf with griefe and faſtings, becauſe ſhe had conceived out of the lawful ſtate of Wedlock.

This

This is a most rare case and involved with most intricate Labyrinths of difficulties, out of which notwithstanding we shal endeavour to free our selves, by the thred of reason and conjecture.

And first, That it is a true conception may be argued from her loss of appetite, the milk in her breasts, and the motion of the child it self, to which nothing seems wanting except the ordinary time of bringing forth: which some may say was therefore retarded in the Woman, because long fastings, and the flux of her courses, had defrauded the child of its due nourishment, whereby the child could not so soon grow to perfection, and thereupon did stay longer than ordinary in the womb. Howbeit it is agreed upon by Physitians, Philosophers, and Lawyers, by whom this Controversie has been oft disputed, that the last term of a childs being in the womb cannot be extended beyond the eleventh month. Nor let any man say that between the natural & ordinary time of bringing forth, some rare and extraordinary cases may happen, as we have with us a late History of Madam *de Cardet*, who affirmed that she bore a child in her womb first fifteen months, afterwards a year, two, and three, of which matter are extant two councels one contrary to another, of very learned men, *Hercherus* and *Varandæus* on the one part, and *Saporta* with *Pradillæus* on the other. Also in *Schenkius* certain Histories are propounded, of infants born two years in the womb, who began to speak and go, as soon as they were borne. For I avouch that these are no *Histories* but fables; which is easily to confirme by reading them; for as for what concernes Madam *de Cardet*, by the reasons propounded by *Saporta* and *Pradillæus*, in their Counsel, it is abundantly proved that she was melancholick, and disturbed in her imagination; which not only her frequent belchings, Palpitations of heart, Vapors rising to her head and Face, and other things did witness, but especially, in that she her self said, that she heard the Child Cry in her Womb; which any novice in Physick, knows to be an impossible thing. And those things which hapned since that time, sufficiently shew that her mind was disturbed. For the same Lady, being yet alive, saies she has been with Child now two and twenty years, which assertion of her, takes al the Credit away from her other Speeches. But the Histories collected by *Schenkius*, are thereby convinced of falsity, in that they affirme Children new born, to have begun presently to speak; but every man knows that to speak comes by discipline and teaching. As true as the rest, is that which *Avicenna* saies was told him by a faithful Woman; for he professes himself only an Ear, not an Eye witness. Seeing therefore it does not appear by any true story that such cases have happened, and in this case of ours the conception moved about the fortyeth day, whereas a true child stirs not til the third or fourth month, it is better to affirme, that this woman of ours had no true child in her Womb. For fasting and menstrual purgations are so far from retarding the child, that they rather hasten the same, as *Hippocrates*, tels us, that a Woman with child by blood-letting, comes to miscarry. We must therefore say, that there was in the womb of this woman somwhat preternatural, viz. Either water, Wine, a Mole, or a Monster. That it was water no man will say; that it was wind we have more reason to think, for it manytimes fals out, that wind shut up in the womb, makes a motion like that of an infant, and does a long time counterfeit a true being with child. But that this was not wind, two things evince; one, that it could not be so long kept in the womb, but it would have been at one time or another either evacuated, or dissipated; the other, that the milk in her dugs did witness somthing greater than wind to be in her womb. Now the safest way, is to say that it was a Mole; both because the frequency of moles makes it no wonder; and also because the signs propounded do seem to answer very wel to a Mole, viz. A panting motion at the fortieth day, raw milk in the dugs, flux of courses in time of Gravidation, also the milk vanishing after the ninth month, and the falling of her dugs, to which may be added, the hardness of the Tumor of her belly, which by pressing changed its place, and then returned again. And although *Hippocrates* saies, in his first Book *de Morbis Mulierum*, that the conception of a Mole does not bring milk into the dugs: that is to be understood of true and perfect milk, and not of crude and flashy, which is usually seen in such cases. And because two distinct Tumors were felt, 'tis likely there were moles in her womb.

A man might be indeed, Satisfied with what has been ſaid, unleſs ſome things ſtood in the way, from whence the extraordinary difficulty at firſt expreſſed, does ariſe. For in the firſt place, according to the doctrine of *Hippocrates*, a mole has no motion of its own, but is only moved by the wombes motion, and if any motion appeare to ſuch as feel the ſame, it is only a panting motion. But in this woman a greater motion is perceived, very like the motions of a true child, which is eaſily diſcerned by the by-ſtanders. Secondly a mole tumbles from one ſide to another, like a ſtone, with a ſenſe of weight and heavyneſs; in this woman there was no ſuch thing. Thirdly, in a mole the belly is widened equally in al dimenſions, whereas in a true child, it is raiſed up towards the navil, and ſtraitned on both ſides, ſuch as is the belly of this woman. Fourthly a mole ſinks towards the ſhare and Groins; in this woman the tumor is in her Hypochondria. Finally, a mole is continually encreaſed, and in the ſpace of near upon three yeares, it would have attained an huge bulk. But in this caſe, the tumor of the belly is very little, reſembling that of a woman five or ſix monthes gone with child, nor is it grown any bigger in a long time. In the Concurrence of ſo many difficulties though I thought better to inſiſt upon the generation of a mole, as a thing more frequent. Yet we ſhould better ſatisfie al the phænomena, if we durſt to ſay, that ſome monſter lies lurking in the womb of this woman, which being grown to its determinate magnitude, does encreaſe no more, but is only nouriſhed like a child, whence it comes to paſs that neither the womb is more widened, nor does the Conception die for want of nouriſhment. For ſo Hiſtories tel us, that ſome women have brought forth Serpents, Moles, Frogs, Mice, Birds, and other Animals. Yea verily, and in *Opulca* and *Lombardie*, many Authors relate, that ſuch Animals are frequently bred in women, and therefore thoſe kind of Animals are termed the *Lombards* Brethren; *Gardonius Tornamira*, and other barbarous Phyſitians, term them *Arpa* or *Arpia*, becauſe this kind of monſter has for the moſt part many feet, which in that barbarous language they term Arpas. This being, I ſay, ſuppoſed, we may ſatisfie al the phænomena. For at the begining of ſuch a gravidation, al the true ſignes of a woman with child might appeare, viz. milk in the dugs, a motion like that of a true infant, which might appeare on the fortieth day, becauſe ſuch a kind of Creature as we ſpeake of, might be ſooner ſhaped than a true child; moreover, the animal being perfected, the belly increaſes no more, yet it provokes not Nature to expel it, becauſe it lives only by tranſpiration, and is cheriſhed by the warmth of the womb. Now that there are two of theſe Animals, may be conjectured, becauſe two diſtinct bodies are felt in the womb. Through ſuch conjectures as theſe, the mind may rove at uncertainties, til the excluſion of the Conception what ever it be, ſhal make it viſible to the Eye-ſight. Which excluſion (which is al I ſhal ſay of the Cure) I would not further by art, leaſt the woman ſhould come in ſome hazard of her life; but it is beſt to wait ſo long, til either nature of her own accord caſt off the burthen, or that her belly ſwel yet bigger, which notwithſtanding I muſt avouch, from the foundations before laid downe, wil never be. Some yeares after it was told me that this woman was delivered, but how, or of what, I could never fiſh out, becauſe ſhe ſtudiouſly concealed the ſame.

It wil not a little conduce to the illuſtration of this ſtory, to relate another caſe told me by an ancient midwife touching a woman of *Montpelier*; who firſt of al miſt her Courſes, afterward loſt her appetite, and fel to long for ſome certain meats, but ſhe ſpecially deſired to eat oyſters and ſuch like ſhel-fiſh, wherewith ſhe could never be ſatisfied. After the ſecond month of her being great, ſhe perceived the conception ſtir in her womb, and ſo it continued the following dayes and months; which nevertheleſs appeared ſtrange to her and other women, ſeeing a child in the womb is not uſed to ſtir before the third month. After the ſeventh month milk appeared in her dugs, but of a bad greeniſh colour. Her delivery was delayed to the end of the tenth month. At what time having her paines upon her ſhe ſent for the midwife and continued in thoſe paines three whole dayes together. And herein her pains were different from the ordinary paines of women in travel, becauſe ſhe ſaid ſhe felt her belly to be prickt and cut, and her womb to be torn. And ſo fierce was that pricking pain, that ſhe was compelled to cry out exceedingly. At laſt after many throwes, ſhe brought forth a certain Animal or Monſter, not unlike a Toad, but it had more than twenty feet round about its body. Being received out of the womans womb into the midwifes lap, it ſkipt from thence into the floor, and ran a good pace, and at laſt got under the bed; whence being drawn, it was ſuddenly carried away and buried in the wine ſeller, to cover the womans reproach. It had at the

End

end of its feet sharp claws, whence doubtless those pricking and cutting paines did proceed, which the childing woman felt. For the membranes being broken which contained the Animal in the time of Gestation; it seeking its way out, did teare the inner membrane of the womb, with its nailes, and caused those extream paines. Although these kind of monsters have sundry formes and figures, because they are bred by chance and fortune, and the mistake of Nature, yet those which are frequently bred in *Apulia*, and are termed the Lombards brethren, do for the most part come neare this now described, as may seem by the relation of those Authors that have written thereof.

THE THIRD BOOK

OF THE Medicinal Observations AND REMARKABLE CURES OF LAZARUS RIVERIUS,

Counsellor and Physitian to the King, and Professor of Physick in the famous University of Montpelier.

THE

THE THIRD BOOK OF THE Medicinal Observations, AND REMARKABLE CURES, OF LAZARUS RIVERIUS;

Councellor and *Physitian* to the King, and Professor of Physick in the University of *Montpelier*.

The 201 *Observation, or History, of Famous and Rare Cures, &c.*

Inflamation of the left Testicle.

M*r*. *B.* a Merchant of *Montpelier*, having contracted a Gonorrhœa by lying with a polluted bed-fellow, advised with a Chyrurgeon, who let him blood in the foot, gave him a bolus of Cassia, and the day following a bolus of Terpentine, and other Remedis afterwards, wherewith the Gonorrhœa was stopped; whereupon the influent matter being translated another way, a swelling and inflamation arose in his stone, so that in two daies 'twas grown as great as a Mans Fist. At last he came to me on the 8. of *July*, 1643. I cause him to bleed again in his Foot, I prescribe him emulsions, and a Cataplasme of Bean-meale boyled, in water and Vinegar mingled together. These Remedies being used two daies together did no good, the Tumor and pain of his Testicle continuing not without a Feaver. I desired to see the Cataplasme, which the Chyrurgeon had made too hard, and therefore it did not allay the inflamation for want of Vinegar, and it did heat the part, by reason of its over great solidity. I order him to be let blood in his Arme, and his Testicle to be fomented with Rose water, and the same Cataplasme to be repeated with equal parts of water and Vinegar, and that he should use the emulsions again made of a cooling decoction; al which were made by the Apothecary according to Art, the next day he was better, his Feaver and inflamation were abated, the Tumor remaining in the same condition as formerly, I prescribe him a purgation, of Senna, Rhubarb, Manna, and Syrup of Roses; he was wel purged, the Feaver quite gone, and

the inflamation much abated; but his Testicle did continue swelled. He is again let blood in his Arme; and a Cataplasme is made of beanr Meal boyled in pure vinegar. The Tumor was thereby very much abated, but the sharpnes of the vinegar did make his Cods smart; to remedy that, I cause the vinegar to be first boyled with litturidg, for so the sharpnes of the vinegar is quite taken away; and therewith a Cataplasme was again made with beam meal; it luckt very wel, and within four or five daies, the Tumor was so abated, that the testicle affected, was hardly bigger than that which was wel.

The 202 *Observation, or History, of Famous and Rare Cures, &c.*

A Dysentery.

MAdam *Luquissa*, Sister to the Baron *de la Roquette*, was taken with a grievous dysentery the 14. of *July*, 1634. the weather being extream hot. I was called to her on the third day of her disease, I prescribe her a detergent clyster, and to be let blood. On the fourth day she was purged with one dram and an half of Rhubarb, and half a dram of Myrobalans, infused in plantan water, dissolving therein one scruple of pouder of Rhubarb, and one ounce of Syrup of Roses. she had two stools of Excrementitious humors; but in her other stools which were many, she voided a snotty kind of matter drenched in blood. At night I give her two grains of Laudanum, whereby her gripings were somwhat abated, and her stools were not so frequent, also by short fits she slept a little, whereas in the foregoing nights she had not slept at all. On the fift day, her gripings were the same, her stools frequent, and bloody. Clysters of milk and Yolkes of Eggs were frequently administred. In the evening she took again three grains of Laudanum with conserve of Roses, and her pains presently ceased, and she went to stool only once in an hour, and slept between whiles. On the sixt day in the morning, her stools were yet more frequent, with extream pains. She was again let blood, and three hours after she took broath of a weathers Guts, with a dram of the pouder of Actes berries. Her pains were quite abated and gone, and her stools were much seldomer, but presently after blood-letting, her whol belly was anointed with a mixture of Oyl of Roses, vinegar, and Rose-water, to allay the inflamation of her guts, which was known by the Feaver, and because any light touch upon her belly was painful; and with this remedy she was much eased. In the evening a Clyster was given her of milk and three ounces of Juyce of Plantane, to asswage the Inflamation of her Guts aforesaid; for I conceived that it was a matter of very great moment, in so extream hot and soultry weather, to direct the Cure chiefly to the asswaging of the Inflamation of those parts, because the greatest danger uses to spring therefrom: for commonly those that die of a Dysentery, are brought to their end by a Gangrene of the Guts, which is easily caused by the continual flowing in of bad humors into the Guts, inflamed and ulcerated. Also at night I gave her a julep of Plantane water, with a dram of the pouder of Actes berries. Al night long she slept not, and went frequently to stool, but without pain. The seventh day, the frequency of her stools continued, but without pain; her Clysters were continued. On the eight day she took a dram of Rhubarb poudered in broath, after which her stools were not so frequent. Afterwards for three daies together she took in the morning a decoction of Myrobalans, wherewith she was perfectly cured. The decoction was thus made.

Take Myrobalans Chebulan, one ounce; Citrine Myrobalans, half an ounce; Corants, two ounces. Boyl them in a Quart of water, to the Consumption of a third part. Clarifie the liquor and Aromatize it with two drams of Cinnamon; let her take it in four doses, morning and evening.

The 203 *Observation, or History, of Famous and Rare Cures, &c.*

Of Wroms.

MSr. *de Saint Andre*, a Gentleman of sixty years old, was troubled many daies with a Dysentery, and afterwards with a Tertian Ague. And at last when he seemed to recover, his

his pulſe was found to intermit, for three or four daies, with anguiſh of mind, and weakneſs. The cauſe of this intermitting pulſe could not be diſcovered neither by his ordinary Phyſitian, nor by my ſelf, in conſultation with him. But it did diſcover it ſelf, being a worme, as thick as a mans finger, and half as long as ones Arme; which being voided, his pulſe became orderly, and the patient who was an outlandiſh man returned into his own Country.

The 204 Obſervation, or Hiſtory, of Famous and Rare Cures, &c.

A Dyſentery.

THe ſecond of *Auguſt* 1643. my ſon Charls being ſeven years old, was taken with a dyſentery by reaſon of a ſudden coldneſs of weather which then happened. He voided much flegm mixt with blood, but without any pain or Feaver. On the ſecond day he was as before. On the third, he was taken with a feaver, his ſtools not ſo large, but more frequent, of a leek color and with gripings; clyſters of milk were given him, and blood taken away to the quantity of ſix ounces. At night the flux being violent, I gave him half a grain of Laudanum; his flux was a little abated, ſo that he went ſeldomer to ſtoole, and with leſs pain. On the fourth day I give him a potion of one dram of Rhubarb infuſed in plantane water, with a ſcruple of pouder of Rhubarb, and one ounce of ſyrup of roſes: his feaver being very remiſs, he voided much flegm and choler many times, with amendment; but the night following he was vexed with moſt grievous gripings, and thoſe in a manner continual, with a perpetual but vain deſire of going to ſtool. I give him about midnight one grain of Laudanum, whereby the gripings were allaid, and the Looſneſs abated, ſo that he went to ſtool but once in an hour. His drink was continually a decoction of Ivory, with conſerve of roſes mingled therein, wherewith I did ſomtimes mix a ſcruple of Sal prunellæ, this was inſtead of Juleps which he obſtinately refuſed to take. On the fift day his ſtools were ſeldomer, ſo that ſometimes he had not one ſtoole in the ſpace of two or three hours, and Flegmatick and Cholerick humors were voided without blood, or any Feaver. The ſixth and ſeventh daies, he was after the ſame manner. On the eight day he took a dram of rhubarbe in broath, and voided much excrementitious matter at times. On the ninth day his ſtools were more ſeldom and thicker, he had a ſtomach to his meat, and the daies following without any other remedies, bleſſed and praiſed be God, he was reſtored to perfect Health.

The 205 Obſervation, or Hiſtory, of Famous and Rare Cures, &c.

A Purge in the Dog-daies.

ANno 1643. in the Heat of the Dog-daies, about the beginning of Auguſt, three little boys of two or three yeares old, were by Phyſitians that had the Care of them purged with gentle purgations, and died the ſame day in convulſion fits. Two of theſe were troubled with a Catarrhe falling upon their breaſt, the third with a dyſentery. Other children alſo by meanes of Catarrhs, fell into convulſions at the ſame time, and died the ſame day. Now theſe Epileptick convulſions are cauſed by the humors melted through heat of the Aire. Hence it is apparent, that we muſt be exceeding wary how we purge our Patients in the dog-daies, according to the precept of *Hippocrates*.

The

The 206 Obſervation, or Hiſtory, of Famous and Rare Cures, &c.

Coſtiveneſs.

A Certain Dominican Fryar of a Melancholy temper, was ſo coſtive, that he went not to ſtool ſomtimes for ſix or ſeven daies together. Which inconvenience he did remedy, by taking two hours before dinner ſtewed prunes and their Syrup, to which he added a quantity of wine allayed with water, the half of which he took before his prunes, and the other half after them; and ſo his belly was more conveniently looſned and more effectually, than it had wont to be when he did only eat the prunes. He alſo ſomtimes helpt himſelf by taking the quantity of a walnut of new butter, and drinking upon it a draught of wine and water mingled.

The 207 Obſervation, or Hiſtory, of Famous and Rare Cures, &c.

A Pain of the hæmorrhoides.

THe ſame Fryer on the fift of *Auguſt* 1643. was taken with a moſt grievous pain and remarkable ſwelling of the Hemorrhoides, with inflamation. I being ſent for, order him to bleed in his left Arme, a Clyſter being premiſed; and after that a pain aſſwaging fomentation, with a Cataplaſme of Crums of bread, which he could not endure by reaſon of the moſt exquiſite ſenſe of that part. The ſecond day I cauſed him to bleed again, from his right Arme; he took emollient juleps, and ſomwhat laxative, that his body might be kept open, for the hardneſs of his dung was wont extreamly to encreaſe his pain. Now the Juleps were made after this manner.

Take, *Leaves of* Lettice, *bugloſs, and the tops of Mallows, of each one handful; Lycorice Scraped, and Raiſons ſtoned, of each half an ounce. Flowers of Bugloſs, Borage, and Violets, of each one pugil, boyl them to eight ounces. In the ſtrained liquor infuſe one ounce of Caſſia new drawn, let them be again ſtrained and clarified, adding thereto an ounce of Syrup of violets, let him take it twice in a day.*

To the part it ſelf this following Ointment was applied.

Take *Oyl of Roſes and Violets, of each one ounce; ointment of Populeon half an ounce: make a Liniment hereof.*

And becauſe the tumor and pain did continue, two leeches were applied, and four ounces of blood taken away, and the tenſion and Inflamation were ſomwhat abated. And afterwards this following fumigation was preſcribed.

Take *Great Houſeleek an handful, white Wine a quart. Boyl them, and let him receive the ſteame of this decoction through a groaning chaire. And then let this following ointment be applied to the part.*

Take, *Ointment of Roſes one ounce, crude Mercury two drams, mix them into an ointment.*

And although Mercury have a mighty faculty to ſoften and diſcuſs a tumor, yet the Hardneſs abode in the part. And therefore two remedies were preſcribed to mollify and diſcuſs the tumor. The firſt was the fume of Vinegar in which burning flints were quenched, which *Galen* ſaies will mollify ſcirrhous tumors; the next was this following Liniment, to be applied after the ſuffumigation.

Take *Oyl of Bitter Almonds two ounces, Bdellium and liquid ſtorax, of each two drams. Make them into a* Liniment.

With theſe, the pain and ſwelling were daily much diminiſhed; whereinto alſo a decoction of millefolium was much ſubſervient, which he took two daies together for his ordinary drink, with a little wine mingled with it.

And becauſe he was continually coſtive, to looſen his belly, and withal leiſurely to remove the antecedent Cauſe, theſe following pills were preſcribed.

Take *Of the Maſs of Pil de Bdellio two drams, ſenna clenſed, choiſe Rhubarb, and Agarick newly trochirked, of each one dram. With ſyrup of Roſes ſolutive make al into a maſs of pils, of which let him take a dram every day in the mornting, til the maſs ſhal be ſpent. And theſe being continued certaine daies, he perfectly recovered. The ſumigation of Vinegar was very effectual in diſcuſſing the tumor.*

The 208 *Obſervation, or Hiſtory, of Famous and Rare Cures,* &c.

An *A*ſthma and Dropſie.

A Poore old man being troubled many yeares with the Tiſſick, became Hydropical, and becauſe he could not be plied with much phyſick, a Clyſter is preſcribed him of an handful of bran and one dram of coloquintida, boiled in white wine, with which he voided many flegmatick and wheyiſh excrements. The ſame Remedy he repeated every third day, and once in a week took half an ounce of Diacarthamum in broath, and within a month his dropſie was cured. But becauſe his Tiſſick could not be cured by reaſon of his old Age, and the patient only required ſome Remedy to uſe in the fit, and thereby to free him from choaking, and ſomwhat abate the extremity of his ſhort windedneſs. This following was preſcribed him.

Take, *Cinnamon water two ounces, oxymel of ſquils one ounce, mix them. Let him take ſome in a ſpoon during his fit.*

With this medicine he voided much thick and clammy flegm, and was ſoon freed from his fit which did threaten abſolutely to ſtrangle him.

The 209 *Obſervation, or Hiſtory, of Famous and Rare Cures, &c.*

A Dyſentery

A Young man twenty yeares of Age, born about the end of *Auguſt*, 1643. was troubled with a dyſentery twelve daies together; which he took no medicine for, until being brought into the Hoſpital, he took by order of the Phyſitian thereof, one dram of Salt of vitriol, diſſolved in water. He vomited much flegmatick and cholerick matter, and ſo the humor flowing into his Gutts was revelled, and he cured by this only medicament.

The 210 *Obſervation, or Hiſtory, of Famous and Rare Cures, &c.*

A double Tertian.

A Certain young man called *James du Rand*, being ſeventeen yeares old, in the month of *September* 1643. was ſick of a double tertian, and had paſt over eight fits ere he took any phyſick: he was let blood, a Clyſter being firſt given him, and the day after he took ten grains of Cambogia, prepared with ſpirit of wine and Sulphur. He was not purged, only was a little ſtomach ſick, without vomiting. The fit came ſooner that day, yet was ſhorter than before, and he never had more, but was perfectly cured.

The 211 *Obſervation, or Hiſtory, of Famous and Rare Cures, &c.*

Another double Tertian.

P*Eter Alegre* twenty yeares old, had a double tertian ſix weeks, in which time he was divers times let blood and took purging medicaments. At laſt he took a bolus of ten grains of red Precipitate made without corroſives, and a like quantity of Scammony, made up with conſerve of roſes. He was troubled with a gentle Looſneſs eight or ten daies before the taking of this

this medicament, which he had not told his Phyſitian: howbeit ſuch was the operation of the medicament, that it purged not, the Looſneſs was ſtopt, and the Ague fits went quite away.

At the ſame time another troubled with the ſame kind of Ague, did take the ſame medicament, and was thereby ten times purged, being ſtomach-ſick between whiles, and he was cured of his Ague fits.

The 212 Obſervation, or Hiſtory, of Famous and Rare Cures, &c.

Spitting of Blood.

A Soldie named *Beaulaguet*, being thirty yeares old, of temperament cholerick and Sanguine, fell eight months ſince into a voiding of blood, at his mouth, which at firſt he caſt up by vomiting to the quantity of eight pints, from which he was freed, by frequent blood-letting. But the ſame vomiting of blood came afterwards again, though in leſſer quantity, and now by fits he did ſpit bloody ſpittle, and ſometimes pure and meer blood. For whom theſe following remedies were preſcribed, in the beginning of *Auguſt*, 1643.

After a Clyſter, open the baſilica veine of his left Arme, and let out ſix or ſeven ounces of blood.

The day after open the ankle veine of his left foot, and take as much blood as before.

Take *Leaves of Plantane one handful. Tamarinds half an ounce. Boyl them to ſix ounces. In the ſtrained Liquor, infuſe one dram of Choyce Rhubarb, Citrine Myrobalans half a dram. Yellow Sanders half a ſcruple. In the ſtrained liquor diſſolve manna and ſyrup of Roſes, of each one ounce, Pouder of Rhubarb one ſcruple. Make of al a potion, which give him the day after his laſt blood-letting, and let him be ordered accordingly.*

The day after his purgation apply two Cauſticks behind his neck, between the third and fourth vertebraes.

Take, *Roots of Snake-weed, Tormentil, and Comfery, of each one ounce. Leaves of Plantane, Burnet, Mouſe eare, Vinca-pervinca, of each one handful; Red Sanders two drams. Boyl them to one pint and half. In the ſtrained liquor diſſolve four ounces of ſyrup of dried roſes. Make a Julep for four morning doſes, adding to each doſe one ſcruple of Salprunellæ.*

The juleps being ended, the foreſaid purging potion muſt be repeated, adding one ſcruple of pouder of jallap, and infuſing al the Rhubarb.

Take *Comfry roots one ounce. Leaves of plantane, Burnet, Bugle, Prunella and Mouſeeare of each half an handful, boyl them in the broath of a weathers neck, and let him take the ſtrainings in the morning, twelve daies together.*

After every fourth broath, let him take the purging potion aforeſaid.

His broaths being ended, let him uſe this following opiate.

Take, *Conſerve of Roſes and Comfry roots, of each one ounce. Trochiſks of Amber and Terra ſigillata, of each half a dram; Coral prepared, pearls prepared, and Blood-ſtone, of each one dram. Gum Arabick and Tragant, of each one ſcruple: with ſyrup of dried roſes make al into an opiate, of which let him take the quantity of an hazel nut, two hours before meat, drink a little of his ordinary drink after it, which muſt be priſan made of a Decoction of barly and Licorice, or water in which Iron has been quenched, and wherein burnet and Mouſ-eare have been ſteeped.*

In the beginning of Autumn, let him uſe for fifteen daies Goates milk or Sheeps milk, highly chalybeated.

As ſoon as he had ſet upon the uſe of theſe remedies, his ſpitting of blood ceaſed, and never appeared al the time he uſed them, nor ever afterwards.

The 213 Obſervation, or Hiſtory, of Famous and Rare Cures, &c.

Wind inſtead of quittor coming out of a tumor.

A Woman thirty yeares of Age, had a ſwelling for eight months in the lower part of her thigh,

and on her Knee; it was not red, but did pain her, so that she halted. Many discussing remedies being applied, the Tumor remained as it was. At last in two places, Viz. On the inside and the outside, there appeared a remarkable rising, and round about it softness and fluctuation; so that al conceived there was quittor within; a potential caustick was applied to the most swelling part, which was the outer: afterward the Eschar being cut with a Pen-knife, and the Tumor opened, there came out a certain wind, and nothing else. The like story there is in *Zacutus Lusitanus*, in the first book of his admirable Practice, Observation the 163. where from *Galen*, and *Avicenna*, he teaches, that such Tumors as these in the Knee are many times opened by Physitians, supposing there is quittor concealed within, whereas nothing comes out but a windy spirit.

The 214 Observation, or History, of Famous and Rare Cures, &c.

Stingings of Bees.

A Merchant of *Montpelier*, named *Claparede*, fifty years old, going early in the morning out of the City, and intending to travail, when he was a mile on his way, a swarme of bees flying in the Air suddenly assaulted him, and fixed al over his Face and Neck a thousand stings. Whereupon he was forthwith grievously pained, which made him presently turn home again. Being called to him, I find the man extreamly out of patience by reason of the pain, that he could hardly contain himself in his bed, his Face did swel and was red al over. I presently cause the places stung to be smeared with Treacle, which not restraining the extremity of the pain; I order him a fomentation of the same Treacle, dissolved in Aqua Vitæ, wherewith the pains were somwhat mitigated, and the swelling of his Face abated. Afterwards to the places most pained, bruised Onyons were applied in manner of a Cataplasme, and after that they were anointed with *Matthiolus* his Oyl of Scorpious. The extremity of the pain caused us many times to change our Medicines, which being continued for two hours, and a cordial and antidotary potion being given him, the pains ceased in al parts almost. But there abode yet a most acute pain in the Gristle of his left Eare, which could not be allaied with the foresaid Remedies. Considering with my self that not only Bees applied to the part, do not attract the poyson, and asswage pain, but also other kind of flies, I conceived that Cantharides might do good for a double reason: first because they are a sort of flies, and then because they had a mighty drawing faculty. And because the Vesicatory Plaister kept in shops, has store of Cantharides in it; I lay a Plaister made thereof to his Eare, which in a quartor of an hour took the pain quite away. No bladders being raised, because it lay on so smal a time.

The 215 Observation, or History, of Famous and Rare Cures, &c.

A Catarrhe with Hoarsness.

About the end of *October*, 1643. When the Southwinds began first to blow, I was troubled with a Catarrhe falling upon my breast, which made me exceeding Hoarse, and almost speechless; which to remedy, I purge my self with a Laxative Ptison, which I take twice a day two daies together. This cured my Hoarseness, and in the day time I seemed to be free from the Catarrhe, but in the night about midnight the defluxion encreased, and caused perpetual coughing, so that I was fain to rise from my bed. For the Cure whereof, I lost ten ounces of blood; yet the night following, the same Cough returned, which could no other waies be stopped, but by rising out of my bed. The day after my blood-letting, I seemed freed from the Catarrhe, but at midnight my Cough came again; which effectually to allay, I took presently three grains of Laudanum, and going to bed again half an hour after, I past the rest of the night without Cough or defluxion, in a most sweet sleep; and the following nights neither Cough nor Catarrhe appeared any more. When the disease was most troublesome, I abstained

abſtained from wine, uſing for my drink a Ptiſan made of Lycorice and Coriander ſeed.

The 216 Obſervation, or Hiſtory, of famous and Rare Cures, &c.

A double Tertian with a Dropſie.

Anthony Sany, of *Montpelier*, being about fourty years of Age, a poor mean man, in the month of *September*, 1643. Was taken with a moſt vehement double Tertian, which he indured an whol month without any Phyſick, keeping a bad diet; whereupon firſt his ſpleen did ſwel, and contract a ſcirrhous hardneſs, and at laſt he grew Hydropical. Being in this condition, he ſent firſt for the Phyſitian of the Hoſpital, who firſt preſcribed him a purging potion, afterwards to be let blood, and after that an Apozeme, cooling, opening and purging, for three doſes; and withal an Emollient and aperitive Fomentation for the Region of his ſpleen, and to be again let blood after the uſe of the Apozems. When theſe things did no good, he gave him by my advice a Bolus of twelve grains of Mercurius Vitæ corrected, and working only downwards, in conſerve of Roſes; he had two ſtools without any ſtomach-ſickneſs or vomiting, and the day following his fit was milder and ſhorter, which before was wont to be moſt vehement. Two daies after, the ſame Medicament was given him again, which voided by ſtool, very much black, Leek colored, and ſtinking Excrements, and his fit much abated. After two daies were over, he took a third doſe of the ſame Medicament, and no Evacuation did follow; but his fits came no more: and from that time forward he was quite freed of his Tertian Ague. Howbeit the Dropſie remained, and the ſwelling of his Spleen, and an exceeding pain in the ſame part, for the Cure of which diſeaſes he had given him a Bolus of a ſcruple of Calomelanos of Turquetus, and ten grains of Diagridium with conſerve of Roſes; which remedy was uſed for ſix daies together, whereby he was purged downwards twice or thrice every day without trouble. And after the fourth time taking, the ſwelling of his belly did ſeem abated, the hardneſs and ſtretchedneſs of his Spleen diſcuſſed, ſo that he ſeemed perfectly cured. But for the more ſureties ſake, the Medicine was continued yet two daies more, and afterwards he was left only to kitchin Phyſick to repair his ſtrength, ſeeing no preternatural diſorder was found remaining in his body. But the ſo ſudden reſolution of the Tumor of his belly, and of the tenſion and pain of his Spleen, makes a conjecture that abundance of wind was contained in the patients belly, which was ſoon diſcuſſed, the waies and paſſages of the natural parts being laid open.

The 217 Obſervation, or Hiſtory, of Famous and Rare Cures, &c.

The Dropſie in a little Boy.

THe Son of Mſr. *Chaugerius*, A Proctor in the Court of Accounts, ſix years old, at the beginning of Summer, 1643. began to be afflicted with a troubleſome pain in the Region of his Spleen, which did reach unto his Navel. After which followed a ſwelling of his belly encreaſing by little and little, with leanneſs of his whol body. Which becauſe they were not very troubleſome, his parents neglected to get him Cured, til the end of *October*, when they came to aske my advice. I preſcribe in the firſt place a purging potion, afterwards opening broaths, for twelve daies, adding to every third broath two drams of Senna, and one ounce of Syrup of Cichory with Rhubarb. At the ſame time his whol belly was anointed with an opening Oyntment, and he uſed for his ordinary drink a diet drink of Rhubarb infuſed in chalybeat water. Theſe things being diligently uſed did no good. And therefore betaking my ſelf to more powerful Remedies. I preſcribe him an opening and ſtrengthening Opiate, to be uſed every day, alſo a purgation of Jallap and Scammony, each ten grains, Calomelanos of Turquetus, twelve grains, reduced to the form of a Bolus, with Conſerve of Roſes. At the firſt giving, there

there were but ſix grains of Scammony, and Jallap, but becauſe the Medicine gave him but two ſtools, ten grains of each were uſed in the ſecond doſe, with which the patient had four ſtools without any trouble, and the next day in the morning he went once to ſtool; and in his ſtools was found a bladder of water as big as a wallnut, to which did cleave a ſufficient quantity of thick and viſcid flegme. Every third day theſe purgations were uſed, and five times repeated, and the patient was much more lively, but becauſe of the froſt, theſe purgations were omitted for ſome time. After two months, his Navil opened of its own accord and a great deal of quittor came forth, whereupon the patient died. The pains which appeared at the beginning of the diſeaſe, might argue an impoſtume, if they had been obſerved by an attent Phyſitian, but becauſe none was then called, and his Mother made no mention of that pain in her firſt relation of the diſeaſe, and the Tumor had poſſeſſed his whol belly, it was ſuppoſed to be a vulgar Dropſie.

The 218 *Obſervation, or Hiſtory, of famous and rare Cures, &c.*

A Cancerous Ulcer.

THe Mother of *Peter Renaldas*, a Chyrurgeon of *Montpelier*, being ſixty years old, had an Ulcer in her left Leg, as big as the Palme of a mans hand, black and blew, and Malignant, having very hard fleſh, and quite void of ſenſe, ſo that ſhe felt not when it was cut; which did proceed from black Choler burning the ſubſtance of the part. Now it was in the Month of *October*, 1643. when the weather was very cold, ſo that baths to ſit in being otherwiſe very neceſſary to correct the diſtemper of her bowels, could not be uſed. And therefore I ordered her only to keep a cooling and moiſtening Diet, for many daies together uſing cooling and moiſtening broaths, and to be purged once in a week with a Laxative Ptiſan. And ſhe applied to the part, red Precipitate to conſume the dead fleſh, and a deep Eſchar being made, the Emplaiſtrum Stipticum Crollii, was applied to the ulcer, by help whereof, within one moneths time, the ulcer was filled with fleſh, and cloſed up with a Scar.

The 219 *Obſervation, or Hiſtory, of Famous and Rare Cures, &c.*

A wound with a Bruiſe.

A Prieſt ſeventy years old, wel in ſtrength, received a wound with a bruiſe, whereupon he was tormented with a bitter pain, and the part was very black and blew. He was preſantly let blood, and *Emplaſtrum de Cumino* was laid on, the day after a gentle purge was given him. The pain continued, and therefore the part was frequently anointed with Oyl of Wax warm, the foreſaid Plaiſter being laid thereupon, and ſo in the ſpace of twenty four hours, al the pain was taken away, and the old color reſtored to the part.

The 220 *Obſervation, or Hiſtory, of Famous and Rare Cures, &c.*

Of a Simple tertian.

A Young man twenty five years old troubled with a Simple Tertian, about the end of *September*, 1643. Was cured by theſe following Remedies. Firſt a purge was given him. The Second day he was let blood. The third day was given him red Præcipitate, Prepared without corroſives, with Scammony, ten grains of each. He voided much Cholerick and Leek colored Excrements, by two vomits and as many ſtools. The Diſeaſe continuing the ſame doſe of both was given him, he was purged after the ſame manner, and the Ague came no more.

The

The 221 Obſervation, or Hiſtory, of Famous and Rare Cures, &c.

Of the Tiſsick.

A Man ſeventy years old, having been many years Tiſſical, was at laſt brought to that extremity, that he could hardly draw his breath, no not when he held his head upright; he was alwaies gaping and wheezing, nor could any way reſt, but that he ſeemed preſently that he ſhould be choakt. By the uſe of theſe following Remedies, his Wheezing ceaſed, he fetcht his breath more eaſily, and was much eaſed.

Take *Cinnamon water two ounces. Oxymel of Squils, one ounce. Mix them, let him take hereof out of a ſpoon frequently.*

Take *Elecampane Roots preſerved three drams; Sugar Candy, half an ounce. Syrup of Hyſſop two ounces; Gum Ammoniack diſſolved in Aqua Vitæ, half a dram. Mix them into a Lohoch, of which let him take one ſpoonful morning and evening, licking it in by little and little.*

The 222 Obſervation, or Hiſtory, of Famous and Rare Cures, &c.

A Cholick pain and Rhumatiſme.

ON the 19. of *December*, 1643. The moſt renowned Matron, the Wife to Mſr. *de la Roche*, Councellor in the ſupreame Court of Accounts, Subſidies, and the Exchequer, at *Montpelier*, was taken with a moſt cruel Cholick pain, whereby the whol Region of her Loyns and of her belly beneath her Navel, was vehemently tormented. Now ſhe had been troubled two monthes with the rheumatick diſeaſe, which had gone over wel near al the parts of her body, one after another, cauſing pain in the ſaid parts, nor was ſhe yet free from the ſaid pains. For the vanquiſhing whereof, blood had frequently been taken away, both from the upper and lower parts; clyſters were frequently injected, but few purges, and thoſe gentle were given her, becauſe the patient being dainty and tender could not otherwiſe bear them. For the removal of this grievous pain I preſcribe her a clyſter of an emollient and carminative decoction, in which were diſſolved double Cathollicon one ounce, diaphœnicon half an ounce, aqua benedicta four ounces. Within half an hour after ſhe had taken the clyſter, ſhe voided half a baſen ful of thick and viſcous flegm, and half an hour after that ſhe voided as much more of like flegm; and an hour after that ſhe vomited the ſame kind of flegm, only in leſs quantity and mingled with yellow choler. She had two ſtools, and three hours after her receiving the Clyſter ſhe was perfectly freed from her pain. The night following ſhe ſlept excellent wel, and the foreſaid rheumatick pain s quite ceaſed.

The 223 Obſervation, or Hiſtory, of Famous and Rare Cures, &c.

A Dropſie.

James Mignot a baker of *Montpelier*, being 35. years old, having in the month of *Auguſt* 1643. been troubled ſomtime with a double tertian Ague, by careleſneſs in his diet, he fel into a continual Feaver, which having held him twenty daies, turned again into a double tertian, which laſted an whole month; and becauſe he uſed little or no phyſick, and drank abundantly, he fel at laſt into the dropſie Aſcites, wherewith he had been held two months when I was cald to him, and then his belly was mightily ſwelled, as alſo his thighs, legs, and Cod; and his whol body was ſo weakened that he was fain continually to keep his bed. I ſet upon his Cure after this manner.

The

The firſt day which was the 27. of *November*, I gave him a purging medicament of Senna, Agarick, Manna, and ſyrup of roſes, whereby he was moderatly purged. On the 28. he was let blood eight ounces from his right Arme, and his blood was ful of wheyiſh liquor. On the 29. he took a bolus of twenty four grains of Calomelanos, and a ſcruple of jallap, made up with conſerve of roſes; wherewith he had five ſtools of thick and black excrements, after which he voided ſtore of wheyiſh humors, his thighs and legs were much abated, and his cod was not above half ſo big as before. On the firſt of *December* the ſame medicament was iterated with the ſame operation. On the ſecond of *December* he took it again, and the operation was as before, but ſomwhat leſſer: the ſwelling of his thighs, legs, and cods, was quite downe: but his belly continued as before. The third day of the ſame month a clyſter was caſt into his guts, of the decoction of one dram and half of coloquintida, and an handful of bran, boyled in white wine. He kept it not long, yet had two ſufficient ſtools. The fourth day of the ſame month, the ſame clyſter was repeated of one dram of Coloquintida, to which was added one ounce of common oyl, that it might not too much provoke the expulſive faculty he kept it longer, but had only two ſtools. On the fift of *December* he took a water-purging pouder, and was plentifully purged, voided much black excrement, ſuch as he had alſo voided with his clyſters. The pouder was made after this manner.

Take *Senna cleanſed, gummy turbith, Hermodactils, dwarf-elder ſeed, jallap, mechoacan, of each one dram. Cream of tartar two drams. Gambogia half a dram, Species Diambræ, Diarrhodon Abbatis, and ſweet fennel ſeed, of each one ſcruple. Sugar Candy three drams. Make of al a pouder, of which infuſe two drams al night in foure ounces of white wine. Let him in the morning drink of the wine and the pouder.*

The ſixt day of the ſame month he took this following julep.

Take *Roots of ſmallage, parſly, Elecampane, of each one ounce; the middle bark of aſh and tamriſk, of each half an ounce; roots of Aſarum three drams; Leaves of Agrymony, Ceterach, Maiden-hair, Cichory, Ground oak, Centory, and wormwood, of each one handful. Anis-ſeed and parſly ſeed, of each three drames; flowers of Broom and Elder, of each one pugil. Boyl them to fifteen ounces. In the ſtrained liquor diſſolve four ounces of ſyrup of violets, make a julep, for foure morning doſes, adding to each doſe one dram of diuretick ſalt, and half a dram of diuritck ſpirit. At the firſt giving of the julep no ſenſible effect appeared. But at the ſecond taking, his urines were more plentiful than formerly.*

After the ſecond doſe of his julep, viz. the eight day of *December*, the water purging pouder was again given him, which wrought mightily. On the ninth and tenth of the ſame month his julep was repeated, and his belly appeared ſofter and ſmaller: he walkt almoſt al day up and down in his chamber. On the twelfth, thirteenth, fourteenth, and fifteenth daies, his appetitive julep was repeated, and his urines were more plentiful, and his belly grew daily leſs, ſo that now he ſeemed perfectly to recover, and to need no ſtrong medicaments. And therefore I enjoyned him only to keep an exact diet, and to uſe as his ordinary drink Chalibiated white-wine, with his accuſtomed ptiſan which he had uſed from the beginning of his diſeaſe, being made of a decoction of Agrimony, Ceterach, maidenhaire, and the middle rinds of the tamariſk. Having given him this order, I ſaw him no more in five or ſix dayes time, which being paſt, he told me he was ſtil extreame thirſty, as he had been al the time of his diſeaſe. I adviſe him for the quenching of his thirſt, to diſſolve in three pints of his ordinary ptiſan, half an ounce of the pureſt ſalt peter, and uſe the ſame for his ordinary drink, with the chalybeate wine aforeſaid. Which being continued for five or ſix daies, his thirſt went quite away, and his urines thereby became much more plentiful. So that continuing the ſame for ten or twelve daies the remainder of the ſwelling of his belly was wholly diſcuſſed, and the ſick man (God be bleſſed and Praiſed) recovered his former health. Howbeit I adviſed him, that he ſhould yet uſe his Chalibeat wine for a long time in his drink, and that he ſhould take two ounces thereof every morning. Theſe things were done two yeares agoe, and he has ſince that time lived luſty and ſtrong, and is at this preſent in very good Health.

THE

The 227 Observation, or History of famous and Rare Cures, &c.

Unquenchable thirst.

ON the 17 of *February*, 1644. I was called to *Lodovamper*, the most illstrious Bishop of *Lodona*, being sixty years old, of a sanguine complexion. He having been for some daies troubled with arthritick pains, of a sudden the pains were much diminished, and at the same time a Feaver seized him with an unquenchable thirst, so that having drunk two good draughts of water, it was no waies abated. I conceived that these symptoms did proceed from the retention of those humors, which were before carried to the joints, for they being restrained in the inner parts of the body, caused that Feaver and thirst; whereby he was in great danger of death, for persons troubled with the running gout are wont commonly to die in their old age, when the expulsive faculty being weakned, cannot sufficiently expel superfluous humors into the joints, so that they being retained in the bowels do cause grievous, and for the most part deadly diseases. For the cure of these diseases, I appointed a cooling and laxative clyster to be given him twice in a day, for two daies together, and in every draught of his ordinary drink, which was a decoction of barly and grass, I dissolved one dram of Sal prunellæ, and eleven drops of spirit of Vitriol. With these remedies, in the space of two daies, that mighty thirst was extinguished, and the Feaver very much abated. And in a few daies after, with gentle purgations, and cooling broaths used at times, he was perfectly recovered.

The 228 Observation, or History, of Famous and Rare Cures, &c.

A Catarrh flowing into the Lungs.

AT the end of *February* 1644. I was afflicted with a most grievous catarrh falling upon my Lungs, whereupon a vehement cough troubled me night and day, with shortness of breath, so that I could not lie in my bed. For the cure whereof I was four times let blood, and purged as many times in the space of fifteen daies; also Cupping-Glasses were applied, and a vificatory with many thickning medicaments against the cough. I had also a smal feaver which threatned an inflamation of my Lungs. Although I am wont twice or thrice in a yeare to be troubled with these Catarrhes, yet I never had any so long and stubborn, so that I much feared, it would turn to a consumption; seeing al remedies wrought no effect, which at other times did me good. Supposing therefore, that I must make use of some effectual medicine to pul up the roots of the defluxion, I took twenty grains of Calomelanos, and ten grains of jallap. With which remedy, I voided by stool much flegmatick and cholerick matter, such as my other purgations did not bring away, and I voided much Flegm at my mouth by coughing and spitting, which evacuation continuing two daies together, my catarrh ceased, and my cough went quite away, and so I was freed (by the goodnes of God) from that grievous disease.

The 229 Observation, or History, of Famous and Rare Cures, &c.

Bruises.

A Certain young man fell from an high place, & al his members were bruised, so that he seemed to be at deaths door. His Father took honey combes with the hony in them, and boiled them in wine to the consistence of an ointment, which he spred upon the skin of a weather newly killed, and therein wrapped the patient. Which being repeated for three daies together he was perfectly cured.

In particular contusions this ointment is spread upon a Linnen cloath and applied, and presently works the Cure.

The 230 *Obſervation, or hiſtory, of famous and Rare Cures, &c.*

A ſlow feaver with pains of the Loins and thighs.

THe Son of *Jacob de Ladeveſe*, a Citizen of *Montpelier*, ſeven years old, was troubled for ſome months with a ſlow Feaver, whereby his body was much fallen away, and it was attended with pains in his Loyns and thighs. He uſed many medicaments, but in vain. Being called to him *April* the 19. 1644. I preſcribed him a bolus of Calomelanos ten grains, and Diagrydium five grains, with conſerve of Roſes. Which he took the twentieth day, was twice gently purged, and better after it. On the twenty one day, of the ſame month, he took twelve grains of Calomelanos, and ſix grains of digridium, was twice gently purged, and much better after it. On the twenty two day he took the ſame doſe with the ſame operation, and was perfectly cured.

The 231 *Obſervation, or Hiſtory, of Famous and Rare Cures, &c.*

A Cough, Shortneſs of breath, and pains of the Shoulders and Arms.

THe Wife of *Peter Florens* an Husband-man, named *Vavareſſe*, was troubled eight months with pains of her Shoulders and Armes, with ſtraitneſs of her breaſt, cough, and difficulty of breathing; ſhe voided by coughing much flegmatick and watry matter. She had taken many potions and apozems, preſcribed by another Phyſitian, and all to no purpoſe. At laſt ſhe implores my help on the eighteenth of *April*, 1644. and I gave her twenty grains of Calomelanos, and ten grains of diargydium with conſerve of Roſes. Two hours after ſhe had taken the medicine, ſhe did ſweat twice plentifully, and after that had three large ſtools, and the day after ſhe ſaid ſhe was perfectly cured. Howbeit, three daies after I cauſe her to take the ſame medicine again, wherewith ſhe had four ſtools, and from that time was perfectly freed from the foreſaid ſymptoms.

The 232 *Obſervation, or hiſtory, of famous and* Rare Cures, &c.

A Cronick ague, without any certain Courſe, with the hypochondriacal diſeaſe.

THe tenth of *June* 1644. when I was at *Grenoble*, Mſr. *de Sancto Martino de Vercors*, thirty yeares of Age, came to me, deſiring to be cured of a moſt ſtubborn diſeaſe. He was troubled three years with ague fits, which came twice or thrice in the month, without any certain courſe, ſo that the fit came ſometimes after ten, otherwhiles after twelve or fifteen daies. It began with a light ſhivering, which a great heat followed, with grievous pains of his thighs. It laſted fifteen, twenty, and twenty four hours, and went not away but after plentiful ſweating and making water. In the ſpaces between the fits, he performed al the functions of his body very wel, ſave that he was bound in his belly, and voided his excrements with very much straining, which were clammy and like wax. This diſeaſe took its original from a continual Feaver, which he had three years before in the Camp in *Italy*, not being duly purged at the end thereof. So that the reliques of the diſeaſe, reſting cheifly in the Meſentery, became thick, and bred ſtubborn obſtructions. By which the paſſage of the humors being hindred, it made a diſeaſe like the Hypochondriacal paſſion, and in the hot complexion of the patient raiſed theſe kinds of Feavers. Which kind of Feavers, did ſpring from a collection of

wheyiſh

Wheyish Humors working and putrefying, which being voided by sweat and urin the Feavers ceased. Now the pains of his Thighs did arise from thick Vapors, translated from the Hypochondria to those parts. He used many Remedies, for the space of those three years, prescribed by skilful Physitians. I set upon the Cure after this manner.

Take *Senna clensed two drams, Fountain water eight ounces, Salt of Tartar, one dram; Spirit of Sulphure, thirty drops: infuse them cold al night. Let him take the strained liquor in the morning, and order himself accordingly.*

The day following let the Basilica Vein of his left Arm be opened, and take away nine ounces of blood.

After blood-letting, let the Infusion of Senna be repeated for three daies.

During the use of these Remedies, let his belly be Fomented with an Emollient and aperitive decoction, in the morning, an hour before he takes the infusion; and in the evening an hour before Supper.

After the Fomentation, let the same parts be anointed with an Emollient and aperitive Oyntment.

Then let him use Chalybeat Pils for fifteen daies.

At the same time presently after his Pills, let him take the infusion of one dram of Senna, made with Salt of Tartar, and Spirit of Sulphur.

During the use of the Pils, let the Fomentation and Oyntment be continued morning and evening.

In the middle, and at the end of his Pills, let him use a Luke-warm Bath for two daies together.

With these things he seemed to be perfectly Cured, for neither did his Ague fits return, nor did his Excrements retain that same Wax-like consistency any longer. Howbeit to make the cure more compleat, I sent him to the Medicinal waters, to take them fifteen daies together. I prescribed him for that summer a magistral Syrup to be taken twice in a month, and a strengthening and opening Electuary to be frequently used. And in Autumn, I ordered him after purging and blood-letting, to repeat his Chalybeat Pills for twelve daies, with a Fomentation and Liniment. After that, to take his usual aperitive and purging Pills, twice or thrice a month, al winter long. And finally, to continue his Opiate on the intermediate daies. The latter Remedies, viz. The Syrup, Pills, and Opiate, he did not use, because he was by operation of the former, freed from that stubborn Disease.

The 233 *Observation, or history, of famous and* Rare Cures, &c.

Immoderate flux of Courses, and a Dropsie beginning.

THe honored Wife of the renowned Msr. *de Burcin*, President of the Senate of *Grenoble*, for seven months had a continual flux of her Courses, whereby she fel into a Cachexy, and the beginning of a Dropsie, with extream weakness. I was called to her, the 12. of *May*, 1644. She said Physick did her hurt, because purgations augmented her flux, and so did al things prescribed to open obstructions. But I did prescribe her a purge of the Decoction of Plantane and Myrobalans, wherein half a dram of Rhubarbe was dissolved; she was gently purged by this Medicament, used for three daies together, and the flux also of her courses was almost stopped, also her perpetual thirst, was very much diminished. But to open Obstructions, and to bring away the whol surplusage of Humors, these following pils were prescribed.

Take *Chalybs prepared with Sulphur, one ounce; Senna, Rhubarb, and Agarick Trochished, of each one dram; Species of Diarrhodon Abbatis, half a dram. With Oxymel simple make a mass of pils, of which let her take one dram, three hours before meat, walking upon it.*

These pills being continued fifteen daies together, she was freed from the immoderate flux of her Courses, and from the Cachexia. And to strengthen her Liver, she used conserve of Roman Wormwood many daies together. And four or five daies before the coming of her courses, least they should flow immoderately, whence she might happen to be exceedingly weakned,

ned, ſhe took in the morning eight grains of Spiknard, with fifteen grains of Crocus Martis aſtringent, made into pills, with Conſerve of Roman Wormwood, and ſo the immoderate flux of her Courſes was ſtopped.

The 234 Obſervation, or Hiſtory, of Famous and Rare Cures, &c.

Tooth-ach and a ſwelling on the upper Jaw.

THe 15. of *Auguſt*, 1644. I was taken with a pain in my teeth which was followed by a Tumor on my upper Jaw, on the left ſide, with Inflamation and great pain. After blood-letting from the ſame ſide, I apply to the part, al day long, a Cataplaſme of Crums of bread, which I renewed every third hour, and before the Application, I nointed the part with Roſe water wherein Sal Saturni had been diſſolved. The following night, when the pain continued, I took three grains of Laudanum, whence I ſlept quietly, whereas I had not ſlept the night before, and my pain was allaied, and the fluxion ſtopped; and the Tumor appeared next day in the morning, much leſſened, and in the ſpace of that day it was for the moſt part diſcuſſed.

The 235 Obſervation, or Hiſtory, of famous and Rare Cures, &c.

Moſt Rebellious ſore Mouths.

A Certain Woman was troubled with moſt rebellious ſores in her mouth, which could not be Cured, neither by blood-lettings, many purgations, cooling juleps, nor anointing with ſpirit of Sulphur. She ſlept not anights, and could hardly eat any meat, becauſe al parts of her mouth were ful of little Ulcers. She took at night three grains of Laudanum, and continued the ſame remedy for three daies, and ſo the ſharp fluxion which fel into the parts of her mouth was ſtopped, and conſequently the ulcers of her mouth were in a few daies thorowly Cured.

The 236 Obſervation, or Hiſtory, of famous and Rare Cures, &c.

A Malignant feaver.

ON the 14. of *Auguſt*, my wives maid, began to be ſick of a Malignant Feaver, which brought her to ravings and convulſions. And becauſe ſhe was poor, and loath to be at charges, ſhe was cured with little Phyſick, after this manner.

She was four times let blood, Cupping-Glaſſes were frequently applied, moiſt and dry; her drink was a Decoction of Sorrel Roots, wherein I diſſolved twice a day, one dram of Sal-Prunellæ, and fifteen drops of Spirit of Sulphur. She took frequently in her broaths one ſcruple of Bezoardicum Minerale. On the eleventh day of the piſeaſe, I gave her two drams of Spirit of Soot, in Carduus water, and ſhe did ſweat a little; on the twelve day I gave her three drams of the ſame ſpirit, with the ſame water, and ſhe did ſweat plentifully; and the ſame day the Feaver abated, the ravings and Convulſive motions ceaſed, and ſhe was wel within a few daies after.

The 244 Obſervation, or Hiſtory, of Famous and Rare Cures, &c.

Of a Catarrhe falling upon the Lungs.

THe 14. of *October*, 1644. The South winds having blowed for an whol month together, that hot and moiſt ſeaſon was changed into a cold and dry, viz. The North wind blowing, by means whereof, though for two dai[illegible] immediately preceeding, I had been purged by a Laxative ptiſan and manna, a Deflux of Rheum fell upon my Lungs, which cauſed me to cough, fetch my wind ſhort, and to Wheeze a little. For two daies it did not much moleſt me, ſo that I went about the City nevertheleſs. The third day, my diſeaſe growing worſe, I took an ounce of Manna amd four grains of the Roſin of Jalap, with which I was but little purged, and therefore I took the ſame night ſome Laxative ptiſan with Manna, and was plentyfully purged in the Courſe of that night. On the fourth day I dined lightly, and five hours after dinner, I took the ſame Laxative ptiſan, and it wrought pretty well upon me that night. On the fift day, at bed time, my Catarrhe being not yet gone though much abated, I took three grains of Laudanum, preſantly my Catarrhe ceaſed, and I ſlept quietly al that night. Yet, becauſe on the ſixth day in the morning, a ſmal Wheezing might be heard in my breſt, with a light ſhortneſs of breath, I was reſolved to waſt away thoſe reliques by faſting. Wherefore keeping in my bed al that day, I took only one meſs of bredath at dinner time, and ſome Barley-broath at Supper time, I ſlept quietly al night, and my Catarrhe was quite diſcuſſed. Howbeit, a ſlight pain aroſe on my right Jaw-bone, which was quite taken away, by a flux of blood out of the Gum where the Tooth was Rotten: now there came away drop by drop, about three ounces of blood mingled with flegm.

The 245 Obſervation, or Hiſtory, of Famous and Rare Cures, &c.

Of a Spot in the Eye.

THe Daughter of Mſr. *de Merviel*, eight years old, having long had ſore Eyes, a very thick ſpot was left in her Eyes, which poſſeſt the middle of the Iris. Which was conſumed with Roſewater, wherein Sal Armoniack was diſſolved in ſuch quantity, as that it did a little ſmite the Tongue, and it was kept two or three daies in a Copper Veſſel, til it got a blew color.

The 246 Obſervation, or Hiſtory, of Famous and Rare Cures, &c.

A Catarrhe with hoarſneſs.

ON the 7. of *November*, 1644. The Southwind blowing, I was taken with a Catarrhe, and an Hoarſneſs. The ſecond day I kept my bed, and took nothing al day but two meſſes of barley broath at Dinner and Supper time. The third day I took a Laxative ptiſan, with an ounce of Manna. The fourth day I reſted, and my Hoarſneſs was very much abated. On the fift I had a dry Cough, which made me open a Vein. On the ſixth my Cough continued, therefore I took twenty grains of Calomelanos, and eight grains of Roſin of Jalap. The Medicament wrought not al day, only towards night it gave me two very ſmal ſtools. Howbeit my Cough was quite diſcuſſed.

The 247 Obſervation, or Hiſtory, of Famous and Rare Cures, &c.

Difficulty of Breathing with a Cough and hoarſneſs.

THe Wife of Mſr. *Dortoman*, a renowned Advocate, was troubled with a Cough, Hoarſneſs, and difficulty in fetching breath for twenty daies together: in the Courſe whereof, ſhe was thrice purged, with an infuſion of Senna and an ounce of manna. Being called to her in the beginning of *December*, 1644. I preſcribed her to be let blood, nine ounces; her blood was very corrupt, then ſhe uſed ſeven daies together pectoral broaths, in the firſt and laſt whereof, Senna was infuſed and Manna diſſolved. Nevertheleſs a Cough and ſhortneſs of breath, though not ſo violent as before, continued; becauſe her Lungs were weak and her Brain very moiſt. In which reſpect the by-ſtanders propounded the uſe of a Sudorifick Decoction, which I ſaid I did not diſlike, but that we would firſt try one Remedy more, moſt effectual to Root up ſtubborn fluxes. Wherefore I preſcribe her twenty grains of Calomelan, and ten grains of Roſin of Jalap, with which Medicine, ſhe was ſeven times purged, and quite freed from her defluxion, ſo that ſhe needed no more Phyſick.

The 248 Obſervation, or hiſtory, of Famous and Rare Cures, &c.

An old Cholick Pain and Looſneſs.

Antonia de Paraviſol, an Honeſt Virgin twenty five years of Age, was troubled eight months together with a pain in her Belly not unlike the Cholick, accompanied with a Looſneſs, with which ſhe voided a Flegmatick and Cholerick matter, as alſo ſome quittoſh ſtuf. She had taken very little Phyſick, til brought to the laſt caſt and ſuppoſing her ſelf to be at deaths door, ſhe implores my Aſſiſtance. I preſcribe in the firſt place to aſſwage the pain which was cruel and continual, three grains of Laudanum, with one dram of conſerve of Roſes, whereby her pain was ſtopped, at leaſt for a time, and her Looſneſs abated. Afterwards to aſſwage the ſaid pain, to open obſtructions and cure that ſtretching of her Belly, which might be perceived by the Hand, as alſo to abate her Looſneſs, I preſcribed the Medicaments following.

Take *Roots of Marſh-mallow, two ounces; Leaves of Mallows, Pellitary of the Wall, Violets, of each two handfuls. Seeds of Line and Fenugreek, of each one ounce; Flowers of Chamemel and Melilote, of each two pugils. Make of al a Decoction, wherewith let the pained place be fomented, morning and evening.*

Take *Oyntment of Altbea, two ounces; Oyl of Chamemel, and Lillies, of each one ounce. Make a Liniment, and therewith anoint the ſaid part after Fomentation.*

Take *Roots of Graſs, aſparagus, butchers Broom, of each two ounces. Leaves of Egrimony, Burnet, Mouſe-Ear, and Plantain, of each one handful. Tamarinds, one ounce; Crude Tartar, half an ounce. Citrine Myrobalans, two drams. Boyl them to one pinte. Make an Apozeme for three morning doſes, adding to each doſe half a dram of Rhubarb, and an ounce of Syrup of dried Roſes.*

With theſe Remedies her pain was ſo abated and her Looſneſs, that ſhe ſuppoſed ſhe was well-nigh perfectly Cured; but after fifteen daies the Symptomes returned with the ſame vehemency. Being called again, I preſcribe as follows.

Take *Rhubarb poudered, one dram; conſerve of Roſes three drams. Mix them into a Bolus; Let her take it in the morning, and order her ſelf accordingly.*

Take *Terpentin waſht in Plantain water three drams; Rhubarb poudered, half a dram. Make them into a Bolus. Let her take it three mornings together, after the uſe of the former.*

With theſe two ſlight Remedies ſhe was perfectly Cured.

The

The 249 Obſervation, or Hiſtory, of Famous and Rare Cures, &c.

A Long tertian Ague.

A Girle ten years old having had a Tertian Ague three months together in the Hoſpital, after many Remedies tried in vain, took the 8. of *January*, 1645. twelve grains of my Feaver-frighter, it being her wel day: ſhe had five ſtools, her fit came that day, out of its uſual courſe; the next day there was no appearance of the Ague, nor ever after. I ſhal ſay more touching this Feaver-frighter, at the end of this Century.

The 250 Obſervation, or Hiſtory, of famous and rare Cures, &c.

A Quartan Ague.

A Woman fourty years old, lying ſick in the Hoſpital, had been troubled four months with a Quartan Ague. On the 10. of *January*, 1645. She took twenty grains of my Feaver Frighter, had ſix ſtools, and the next day inſtead of her fit, ſhe had certain pains and diſquietneſſes, without any ſhaking or coldneſs foregoing, and without ſenſible heat. On the day of the following fit, the ſame unquietneſſes returned, without any fit. The day after ſhe was purged with a Medicament of half an ounce of Senna, three drams of Diaphenicon, and one ounce of Syrup of Roſes: it gave her ſeven ſtools, and after that ſhe neither had Ague fit, nor any unquietneſs.

The 251 Obſervation, or Hiſtory, of Famous and Rare Cures, &c.

A Quartan Ague.

THe Wife of *Lewis Lauter* a Tailor, twenty three years old, dwelling near the laten gate, and having been troubled with a double Quartan Ague, five months, came to me the twenty ſeven of *January*, 1645. to whom I give on the twenty eight day, twenty grains of my Feaver-frighter, or Ague-Chaſer, in the morning, ſeeing the firſt fit was expected about the evening, ſhe had ſix ſtools, and vomited once about noon, three hours after ſhe had taken breath, and when ſhe began to dine. At night the fit came again without cold, but the heat was longer than ordinary. The Second fit came not the day after, nor any more ever after.

The 252 Obſervation, or Hiſtory, of famous and Rare Cures, &c.

The Dropſie.

A Beggar-man called *Rafeau*, was troubled with a Dropſie three Months, whereby his belly grew exceeding big, and becauſe his poverty would not afford him Phyſick, he uſed for a month together by the advice of a Countrey Woman, a Decoction of the Roots of Knee Holme or Butchers broom, and was purged twice or thrice with an infuſion of Senna, and with theſe Remedies alone was perfectly Cured.

The 253 Obſervation, or Hiſtory, of famous and Rare Cures, &c.

An Hectick feaver with fear of a Conſumption.

THe Daughter of Mſr. *Paſchal*, four years old, had for ſix months together an Hectick Feaver, with a Cough and ſpittle ſomwhat rotten, whereupon ſhe was deemed to be in a Conſumption, and at laſt given over by her ordinary Phyſitian, who openly profeſſed that it was an Hectick in the third degree. Her Mother in this deſperate caſe, made her keep a thin Diet, whereas before ſhe did Eat ſolid meats, for ſhe took nothing but broaths al the day long, and at night ſome barley Cream. And twice a week ſhe gave her the infuſion of two drams of Senna in a Decoction of Cichory and Bugloſs made with Annis-ſeed, into which Decoction being hot, the Senna was put, and continued therein al night without any other heat. With this plain way of Cure ſhe was reſtored in a months ſpace.

The 254 Obſervation, or hiſtory, of famous and Rare Cures, etc.

A Quartan Ague.

THe Mother in Law of Mſr. *Athanaſius*, Superviſor of the Salt pits, fifty two years old, had a Quartain Ague ſix months together, and on the 5. of *February*, 1645. ſhe took twenty grains of my Ague-frighter, had two ſtools, and twice vomited bitter gear after her broath. It was the day before her fit, which returned the next day, at the accuſtomed hour, in the ſame form and duration. But the next fit day, there was no appearance of the Ague, nor ever after.

If thou intendeſt to be able to know and Cure al diſeaſes, read the Idea of Practical Phyſick, *Riolanus* Guide to Phyſick and Chyrurgery. And my Practice of Phyſick.

The 255 Obſervation, or Hiſtory, of Famous and Rare Cures, &c.

A Quartan ague.

Ludovica Bevonſe, forty five Years old, dwelling near Holy-croſs Church, and troubled with a quartan Ague four months together, took on 8. of *February*, 1645. twenty grains of my Ague-chaſer, the day before her fit, which firſt made her vomit much very bitter Choller, three hours after the taking of the Medicine; and after her vomiting ſhe took broath, which a little after ſhe vomited up again with Choler not ſo bitter as the former; and half an hour after ſhe voided by ſtool ſtore of Humors, having only one ſtool. The day following ſhe had a Fit like the former; and from that time forward the Ague left her.

The 256 Obſervation, or hiſtory, of famous and Rare Cures, &c.

A Quartan ague.

THe Daughter of Mſr. *de Boirargues*, Controller of the Court of Accounts, Subſidies, and Exchequer, fifteen years old, having had a quartan Ague three months together; after many Remedies tried in vain, ſhe took the 9. of *February*, 1645. twenty grains of my Ague-frighter, the day before her Fit; ſhe had ſix ſtools: the day after her fit came three hours later than ordinary, and was much ſhorter than formerly. The ſecond Fit came not, but inſtead thereof ſhe had ſome diſquietneſs. The third Fit came again, but very little. The fourth was greater. She took the Medicine again the day before the fift Fit, which came ſomwhat leſs than uſual, and after that ſhe never had it again.

The

The 257 Obſervation, or hiſtory, of famous and rare Cures, &c.

A Quartan ague.

Jane Guillarde, a woman of forty years old, being troubled with a Quartan Ague ſix months, on the 15. of *February*, took twenty grains of my Ague-Frighter, the day before her Fit. She had ſix ſtools, and did not vomit. The day after, her Fit came, but was ſhorter by half; but ſhe never had it more.

The 258 Obſervation, or Hiſtory, of Famous and Rare Cures, &c.

A Quartan Ague.

A Woman fifty years old, named *Motona*, Living near the Church-Wel, had a moſt vehement Quartain Ague, ſeven Months together. The 17. of *February*, 1645. She took twenty four Grains of my Ague-frighter, had three ſtools, and vomited once exceeding bitter Choler; her fits continued, but were much more gentle. After the third fit was paſt ſince ſhe took the Medicament, ſhe took thirty grains more of the ſame, and had twelve ſtools, and vomited twice leek-colored Choler mixt with Flegm, and was perfectly freed from her fits.

The 259 Obſervation, or Hiſtory, of Famous and Rare Cures, &c.

A Quartan ague.

Andrea Delona, a maid of 13. years old, the daughter of *James Delon*, Gardener to the Friars Minorites, having had a quartan ague four months, took on the ſeventeenth of *Februa.* 1645. twenty grains of my Ague-frighter. She vomited twice, but had no ſtool. Her fits continued as before. After the third fit, viz. the three and twentieth day of the ſame month ſhe took twenty four grains of my Ague-frighter; it purged her five times by ſtool, but not at al by vomit, and ſo her diſeaſe was quite cured, ſhe never having any fit afterwards.

The 260 Obſervation, or Hiſtory, of Famous and Rare Cures, &c.

A Quartan ague.

Mary Delona, ſiſter of the foreſaid maid, being eleven years old, had the ſame ague as long; ſhe took the ſeventeenth of *Feb.* 1645. ſixteen grains of my Ague-frighter, had three ſtooles the ſame day, and two the day after, and was perfectly cured.

The 261 Obſervation, or Hiſtory, of Famous and Rare Cures, &c.

A Quartan ague.

THe 2. of *March*, 1645. *Antony Bayle*, a man of 50. years old, dwelling neare St. *Anns* Church, and having had a quartan ague five months, took twenty grains of my ague-frighter, had three ſtools without any vomiting or ſtomach ſickneſs, and without any trouble. The day following her fit came but half ſo big as formerly, and after that ſhe never had it more.

The

The 262 Observation, or History of Famous and Rare Cures, &c.

A Quartan Ague.

THe moſt renowned Mr. *de Leſpine*, Councellor in the ſupream Court of Accounts, Subſidies, and Exchequer, having had a quartan Ague ſeven months; having tryed many remedies in vain, and being fallen into a cachectick diſpoſition, which made him tear a dropſie, becauſe in his fits he had drunk abundantly, and would drink ſix or ſeven pints of water; took on the eighth of *March* 1645. twenty grains of my ague frighter, wherewith he was purged at leaſt twelve times in twenty four hours, and he vomited three or four times: all which he did endure without trouble. On the ninth day of the ſame month, the fit which had wont to return about noon, came not til ſeven in the evening without cold, and with leſs heat intenſively, but more extenſively. The tenth day which followed the fit he was wel. On the eleventh day in the morning he was taken with an extream pain, very like the colick, which poſſeſſed his left hypochondrium, with bleeding at the note, whereby he voided about four ounces of blood. The pain being ſometimes more intenſe, other whiles more remiſs continued al day, with a continual deſire of going to ſtool. Howbeit now and then he voided ſome evil humors; about evening, he had a troubleſome provocation to make water, and his urine ſcalded him at the end of making the ſame. On the twelfth day, he was wel al day long, and his fit which was then expected returned not. On the thirteenth day he made many urines extream black like ink, with a thick and very black ſediment. On the 14. day a pain in his left hypochondrium came again, coming by fits. It became more intenſe the fifteenth day, and then it was plain to diſcern, that the pain was in his ſpleen, by reaſon of the ſwelling out and puffing up of that part, which did not before appear. Fomentations were applied to the part affected, and clyſters were injected, whereupon followed a gentle Looſneſs, the waies being opened, and the matter made thin, which being retained did cauſe the pain. On the ſixteenth day he took an infuſion of two drams of Senna, with a ſcruple of ſalt of tartar. He had three ſtools: but taking the ſame again the next day, he had five ſtools and was thereupon better. Howbeit the daies following he had ſome ſhiverings, viz. on thoſe daies in which his fits were uſed to come til on the third fit-day, he had a perfect fit, but lighter than the former. He took again the Infuſion of Senna two daies together, wherewith he was indifferently purged, and yet his fit came like the former fits. On the firſt of *April* he took my feaver frighter again in the ſame quantity as before, he had three large ſtools, but never a vomit. On the ſecond day a fit came like the former. On the fifth day of the ſame month, the expected fit came not. On the eight he had again a very ſmal fit. On the eleventh he had a fit ſtronger than the former, ſo that the feaver ſeemed to return to its former ſtate. Therefore on the fifteenth day he took my ague-frighter again, the doſe being doubled, which purged him abundantly two daies together, and from that time forwards his fits never returned.

The 263 Observation, or History, of famous and Rare Cures, &c.

A Baſtard pleuriſie.

ON the eighth day of *March*, 1645. the wind ſuddenly paſſing out of the South into the North, and making the weather very cold, I begun to be pained in the mornings with a moſt grievous pain in my left ſide and my breaſt, from whence extream ſhortneſs of breath did ariſe. Which I preſently endeavoured to diſcuſs with hot fomentations, though a feaver began to ſhew it ſelf, which was nevertheleſs very ſmal. The fomentations made my pain more violent, whereupon I ſend for the Chyrurgion, and take away ten ounces of blood from my arme on the ſame ſide, the blood ſeeming to be very hot. Two hours after blood-letting, and an hour after I had ſupped ſome broath, I received a Clyſter. After I had taken broath the ſecond time, I was again let blood to twelve ounces. For though the pain ſeemed to ariſe chiefly from wind; yet I feared leaſt the grievouſneſs of the pain ſhould draw a fluxion to the part, which the year before had been twice diſeaſed with a true pleuriſie. Herewith the pain was

ſomwhat

what abated. Yet because it continued, the day following I took another Clyster, made of an emollient decoction, with an ounce of diaphenicon, and four ounces of Aqua benedicta, by which my belly was plentifully loosened, and I had one vomit; also while I was vomiting, the wind contained in the parts about my chest was suddenly expelled, so that after my vomiting, I felt my self perfectly freed from the pain of my side and Breast, and had no need of other remedies.

The 264 Observation, or History, of famous and Rare Cures, &c.

A Quartan ague.

ON the twelfth of *March*. 1645. *John Rey* a Lantern maker, dwelling in *Lapeyre* street, and troubled six months with a Quartan Ague; took twenty grains of my Ague-frighter, and was therwith twice purged by stool, and vomited many wheyish and cholerick excrements. The day following, which was the thirteenth of the same month, his fit came at the wonted hour, but less than formerly. On the sixteenth day, instead of a fit he had a small Heat without any cold. On the nineteenth day when his fit was expected there was no appearance of it, and from that time forward he had it no more.

The 265 Observation, or history, of Famous and Rare Cures, &c.

A Quartan ague.

ON the 17. of *March*, 1645. a Woman of forty years old, named *Mary Courbiague*, dwelling against the House of the Lord of *Argencour*, a poor body, and keeping an exceeding bad diet, and frequently drinking store of wine, had been two years troubled with a Quartan ague; she took twenty grains of my Ague-driver, being no way prepared thereunto, for she would take no preparatives, only she was let blood a few daies before. She had twenty stooles, because her body was very impure, and she vomited twice or thrice; the day after she had a light fit, and never any more.

The 266 Observation, or history, of famous and rare Cures, &c.

A Quartan Ague.

THe same day viz. the 17. of *March*, a woman forty years of age, called *Tonette Boxsiere*, the widow of *John Alquier* a Taylor, dwelling near the foresaid *Mary*, and having been troubled seven months with a quartan Ague, took twenty grains of my ague-frighter, was seven times purged by stool, vomited four times, and the day after in the morning she had three large stools more. The same day her fit which was to come at three in the afternoon, came after midnight, but with a Light cold and a light Heat, three or four hours, whereas before the fit was wont to continue most violent, for fourteen hours together. And after that she had no more fits.

The 267 Observation, or History, of famous and Rare Cures, &c.

A double Tertian.

PEter *Palat*, 15. years old, lying at the sign of the silver Eagle, being troubled forty daies with a double tertian, after blood-letting and purgation divers times repeated, and many juleps given him, by order of another Physitian; he took the eighteenth of *March*, 1645. Fourteen grains of my Feaver-frighter, was purged six times by stool. He took the medicine

at

at four a clock in the morning, notwithſtanding his fit was to come at eight; at which time it came after the old manner, but he never had fit after that.

The 268 Obſervation, or Hiſtory, of Famous and Rare Cures, &c.

A Quartan ague.

THE moſt noble prince *Janethinus Doria* of *Genoa*, Admiral of the Spaniſh Fleet, his Gally being by tempeſt Caſt upon the ſhoares of *Catalaunia*, he was taken by our ſoldiers and brought into the Caſtle of *Montpelier*, where abiding two years, the ſummer laſt paſt he fel into a tertian Ague, which held him four months, ſometimes in manner of a ſymple tertian, other whiles like a double tertian, notwithſtanding al the Remedies preſcribed by his ordinary phyſicians, and others called to conſult with him, amongſt whom I was ſomtimes called. At laſt the winter coming in, his tertian ague turned into a quartan; for three months together, two phyſicians one after another did their beſt endeavour to cure the ſame. At laſt the diſeaſe continuing, he implored my help, and I gave him on the 17. of *March*. 1645. twenty grains of my feaver-frighter. Three hours after he had taken the medicaments he twice vomited wheyiſh humors, and went not to ſtool al day. About midnight he had one plentiful ſtool, and the next day two. The ſame day his fit was expected at ſix in the Evening, but it came not then, nor ever afterwards, and he attained thereupon his perfect health.

The 269 Obſervation, or Hiſtory, of Famous and Rare Cures, &c.

A Catarrh with a Cough.

THe 4. of *April* 1645. whenas by reaſon of a long Catarrh, I was vexed with a troubleſom cough, which was moſt violent in the night, and I purged divers times to no purpoſe. I took three grains of Laudanum, which allayed my cough. But it returned two daies after, through injury of Air, which was one day very hot, and another day upon the blowing of the north-wind very cold. On the eight day of the ſame month I took two grains of Laudanum, and my cough went quite away.

The 270 Obſervation, or hiſtory, of Famous and Rare Cures, &c.

A Quartan ague.

Mr. *Pichory*, a Councellor in the Court of Accounts, Subſidies, and Exchequer, was freed from a quartan Ague by a very rare chance. Having had a Vein opened, a little after the Orifice was cloſed, and his Arm bound up, little drops of tranſparent water began to flow out of the wound, which ſoaked through the Rowler, and made him often to change his ſhirts. The ſaid flux continued for many daies, till the Quartan Ague was quite gone. It is obſervable, that many years after he died of a Dropſie.

For the Knowledg and Cure of all Agues or Feavers, read my Practical Phyſick; and the Idea.

The 271 Obſervation, or Hiſtory, of Famous and Rare Cures, &c.

Obſtruction of the Oeſophagus.

A Certain hunger-ſtarved Countryman, eating of a boiled hogs-foot, ſwallowed a great piece thereof, in the middle of which there lay a bone covered with fleſh. Which by reaſon of its

its greatneſs and clamyneſs ſtuck in his gullet, and was glewed thereunto, ſo that neither vomiting nor ſupping down of any liquor could remove it. For two dayes he remained in this condition, in ſo great extremity, that he ſeemed ready to give up the ghoſt. A certain Chyrurgion doubled the end of a piece of wire like a fiſh-hook, and thruſting it far down his throat, with the Hook he took hold of the piece of fleſh, and by main force pulled it out.

The 272 Obſervation, or hiſtorie, of famous and rare Cures, &c.

A Squinſie.

A Man being taken with a true ſquinſie, had the top of his throat ſo ſhut up by the inflamation that he could ſwallow nothing. And while Remedies might be uſed, to reſtore his ſtrength, that he might be able to bear plentiful bleedings and other Remedies, a Catheter was put into his throat, and a Syringe joyned to the Catheter, by which meanes they ſquirted broaths into his throat, which went down into his ſtomach, as alſo other remedies, by help whereof he was delivered from death.

The 273 Obſervation, or Hiſtory, of Famous and Rare Cures, &c.

Jaundize.

A Jeſuite was troubled with the Jaundice and a weakneſs of ſtomach, by reaſon of Choler flowing back thereinto, whereupon he frequently vomited. The Colledg Apothecary gave him three ounces of juice of Fumitory. At the firſt giving the vomiting was ſtaid, and the Remedy being continued for ſome daies, the jaundies was quite cured. This jaundice was cauſed by an hot diſtemper of the Liver, joined with obſtruction of the choler-paſſage. Now fumitory is very good in both Caſes, whoſe vertues are much more potent in the juice, than in Decoction.

The 274 Obſervation, or Hiſtory, of Famous *and Rare Cures, &c.*

A Cruel Catarrh with divers Complications of Feavers.

THe firſt of *May* 1645. I was called to the Lady of *Beaufort*, lying ſick at her mother Madam *du Pelous* Houſe in the Caſtle of *Bayart*, not far from *Rhodanus*. She was thirty five yeares old, of a ſanguine complexion. For an whole month ſhe had been troubled with a cruel Catarrh, with a continual Feaver, to which were added fits of an ague, which came twice a day, viz. at ten in the morning, and ſix in the evening. With theſe a moſt vexatious cough did trouble her night and day, with which ſhe brought up abundance of crude flegm, and could take no reſt. In a months time ſhe had been five times let blood by order of Dr. *Chaumel*, her ordinary and moſt expert phyſitian; ſhe had been thrice purged, and many other remedies had been uſed, of which one did her the moſt good, viz. a bolus of three grains of Laudanum, with conſerve of Roſes, which for twelve hours did quite ſtop her Catarrh, and cough, and ſhe ſaid ſhe was cured, by reaſon of the great eaſe ſhe found. As ſoon as I ſaw her, in conſultation with two other Phyſitians, I judged her diſeaſe to be a continual Feaver, complicated with two double tertians. As for remedies, that ſhe was to be let blood in her left arme, ſeeing ſhe had a pricking pain in her left ſide, with a very ſtrong Feaver, blackneſs of her tongue, and a continual Cough. On the firſt therefore of *May*, about evening ſhe loſt nine ounces of blood, and a cooling and thickning julep was given her. She paſſed the night with ſomwhat leſs trouble, the next day in the morning which was the ſecond of *May*, ſeeing the Feaver continued yet ſtrong ſhe was again let blood eight ounces, whereupon her feaver was abated, and the pain of her ſide went away. About evening the ſame day, ſhe complained of a pain in her right ſide,

which growing ſtil greater and greater, was very ſore about nine a clock at night, wherefore we were compelled the ſame hour to let her blood in her Arme on the ſame ſide, whereupon her pain was abated, and in the Courſe of that night went quite away, howbeit the night was troubleſom, void of ſleep, and ſhe did cough almoſt continually. Her Ague fits went quite away; one after a purging medicament, the day before I came to her; the other by reaſon of her former blood-letting: but her continual feaver ſtuck by her, after the ſame manner as formerly. On the third day of the ſame month, ſeeing her cough and Feaver were vehement, we gave her before noon, half the foreſaid bolus made of three grains of Laudanum, which was ready made, which within an hour did ſtop her cough quite, and ſhe was in a good condition til midnight; howbeit her cough returned by fits, wherewith ſhe voided thick, clammy, and very putrid flegm; ſo that much of her ſpittle was yellow and green, the Feaver continuing very violent. And becauſe in the evening, the Cough did exceedingly trouble her, and ſhe was extream unquiet, the other half of the bolus was given her, wherewith ſhe paſt the night quietly, but ſlept very little. On the fourth day in the morning, her cough returned, but it was very free, and ſhe brought up much putrid matter, ſome of which was a little ſprinkled with blood. After two hours, her cough ceaſed till noon, and then it came again bad enough, and when it had held her a great while, and much afflicted her, and her ſpittle appeared more crude, ſo that it ſeemed to come from a new defluxion, the halfe of another bolus made of three grains of Laudanum was given her, with which her cough was again allaied. Her belly was looſe in the morning, and ſhe had two ſtools of many cholerick and greeniſh excrements, whereas before her body was alwaies bound, and Clyſters wrought very little. About evening a Clyſter was given her of a decoction of half an ounce of Senna, with Catholicon and diaphenicon, of each one ounce; which gave her four ſtools, and in her laſt ſtool ſhe voided much flegm of a greeniſh color, like that ſhe was wont to bring up by coughing. After ſhe had voided her Clyſter, ſhe ſlept quietly three hours, and ſaid ſhe had not ſlept ſo ſweetly al the time of her ſickneſs. At ſeven clock in the night her cough being ſomwhat returned, ſhe took a fourth part of the foreſaid bole, which did not contain half a graine of Laudanum, yet it ſtopt her cough, and ſhe reſted quietly that night. On the fift day in the morning, ſhee took a purging medicament of half a dram of Senna infuſed in a pectoral Decoction; wherein being ſtrained, two ounces of Manna were diſſolved. And the ſame day I left her, having ſeriouſly debated with her ordinary Phyſitian, couching what was afterward to be done, and committed the ſame to writing. Wherewith, in the ſpace of twenty daies after my departure, ſhe was reſtored to her former health. The cheiſe of thoſe remedies were pectoral broaths, continual blood-letting, and purgation repeated. But the Bolus of Laudanum bore away the Baies, which being given her many daies in a ſmal doſe, al the ſymptomes, were thereby allaied.

The 275 *Obſervation, or Hiſtory, of Famous and Rare Cures, &c.*

A long ſwelling of the right Foot.

A Noble Matron, Wife of the moſt noble Msr. *de Langon*, fifty yeares of Age, had a flegmatick tumor with extreame pain in her right foot, the original whereof was thus. Travailing upon a time on horſe back, the Horſe ſhe rode on fel upon the ground, and in his fal tumbled on the right foot of the ſaid Matron, and by the blow her heel was depreſſed, and thruſt from the inſide of her foot outwards. Whence grievous pains followed, ſo that ſhe could not ſtir. Many Chyrurgions and Empricks had divers times vexed her, nor could the diſlocated bone be any waies reſtored to its place, whereupon ſhe was continually tormented with pains, inability to go, and a flegmatick tumor in her ſaid foot. She had been four months in theſe ſtraites when I viſited her, which was the twentieth of *May*, 1645. Diligently viewing and conſidering the part affected, I find a ſmal diſlocation remaining, which had contracted a Callus, and was therefore incurable. I found that the cheiſe pain was in the hollow of her foot, not in the part diſlocated, becauſe the nerves in that place, were filled with humors. And therefore to cure the ſame, the flux of humors to the weak part was to be ſtopped; the humor al-

ready

ready in the ſaid part was to be diſcuſſed, and the part it ſelf to be ſtrengthened. Al which was accompliſhed in eight daies ſpace by theſe following Remdies.

Take *Salſa parilla four ounces. Fountain water four pints; infuſe them twenty four houres, and then let them boyl til half be conſumed, adding towards the end Senna one ounce, turbith and Hermodactils of each two drams. Let her take half a pint of the ſtrained liquor, in the morning eight daies together.*

Take *Oyl of wax one ounce. Noint the part affected therewith morning and evening: and then app'y this following plaiſter.*

Take, *Of the Maſs of Diapalma plaiſter diſſolved in harſh red wine, til the wine be conſumed, half a pound. Red roſes, Myrtles, Maſtich and Tartar of Red wine, of each one dram. Groundpin and Chamemel ponderd, of each two ſcruples, make al into a Maſs, and thereof ſpread plaiſters, and lay them al over her whol foot, after nointing. With theſe things the ſwelling and pain were taken away, only ſhe was forced to halt, becauſe of the diſlocation of the Bone.*

The 276 Obſervation, or Hiſtory, of Famous and Rare Cures, &c.

Meazles.

THe foreſaid Matron, Madam *de Langon*, was taken with a continual Feaver, with a Cough and Hoarſneſs, the 26 of *June* 1645. For three daies together, the ſymptomes were not very urgent; and therefore ſhe paſt that time, without any uſe of Phyſick. On the fourth day her Feaver becoming more violent, ſhe was let blood, and a cooling Julep was given her. The ſame day, her whol body was covered with meazles. I being called the fift day, I appoint her towards the Evening a julep of equal parts of Meadow-ſweet water, and of Carduus water, with twenty grains of Bezoardicum minerale. Two hours after ſhe had taken her julep, ſhe did ſwear abundantly; after her ſweat ſhe had a large ſtool. The day after in the morning, the ſame julep was repeated, and ſhe did ſweat more plentyfully after two hours, and her feaver went quite away, and the Meazles were al wel near diſcuſſed.

The 277 Obſervation, or Hiſtory, of Famous and Rare Cures, &c.

Stone in the Kidney.

A Certain Man fifty years of Age, being very much ſubject to pains in his kidneyes, took for twelve daies a decoction of the Root of Aſſes Thiſtle and Lycorice, wherewith he voided many ſtones and much gravel, and was afterwards, many years free from his Infirmity. There was half an ounce of the Thiſtle root, and two drams of Liquoris in every doſe.

The 278 Obſervation, or Hiſtory, of Famous and Rare Cures, &c.

The Diſeaſe Cholera, in a Malignant tertian Ague.

A Certain young man, of a Cholerick Conſtitution, in the middle of the Summer, fel into a tertian Ague, which in the two firſt fits ſeemed pretty gentle, but in the third fit, ſo great was the malignity and fierceneſs of the Cholerick humor, that a vomit and frequent loofneſs being thereby raiſed, with mighty weakneſs, the patient was in extream danger of his life. Being ſent for I preſently preſcribe him a clyſter of broath, with three drams of Confection Alkermes, and a dram of new Treacle, wherewith his vomiting and loofneſs were preſently ſtopped. And becauſe in theſe malignant Feavers, thoſe carnel ſymptomes are wont to return every fit, kil the patient in the ſecond or third fit; for prevention thereof, I ordered him a thick-

ning diet, and to take four grains of Laudanum two hours before his fit; and ſo the foreſaid ſymptomes did not return, the fit was light; and the Cure was finiſhed with cooling, thickning, and antidotary julepa.

The 279 Obſervation, or Hiſtory, of Famous and Rare Cures, &c.

Suppreſsion of Childbed Purgations

A Certain curious woman, three dayes after ſhe was brought to bed, deſiring to help the overwidneſs of her genital parts, applied thereto aſtringent medicaments, whereby her Child-bed purgations were ſtopped, and blood was ſo multiplyed in her womb, that preſſing upon her rectum inteſtinum, and the neck of her bladder, it hindred al evacuations, and her belly was ſwelled like a bottle. Being called to her, firſt I cauſe a Catheter to be thruſt into her bladder, and ſhe voided abundance of urine, after that I preſcribe her a ſharp peſſary to be put into the neck of her womb, wherewith her purgations came away plentifully; and laſtly ſhe had a laxative Clyſter, wherewith ſhe voided much dung; and ſo al her paſſages were opened.

For al Womens diſeaſes carefully peruſe *Johnſtons* Idea, and ſpecial *Riverius* on that ſubject in Engliſh.

The 280 Obſervation, or Hiſtory of Famous and Rare Cures, &c.

Night-ſweats.

A Man forty yeares of age, of a melancholick complexion, was a long time troubled with night ſweats, which did continue four or five daies, and then ceaſed. And they returned twice or thrice a month. It was ſufficently apparent, that theſe ſweats did proceed from abundance of ſeroſity, which was collected between whiles, and by nature afterwards expelled in forme of ſweat. Wherefore being poor and not able to take much Phyſick, I advized him to take twice a month Jallap and Cream of Tartar, of each half a dram. Which having continued for the ſpace of three months, he was freed from his tedious infirmity.

The 281 Obſervation, or Hiſtory of famous and Rare Cures, &c.

The Whites.

A Woman forty yeares of Age, long troubled with the whites, after many remedies uſed in vain, was perfectly cured with a Laxative Ptiſan, which ſhe drank of every day for a Month together. This was the Compoſition of the ſaid Ptiſan.

Take Senna one dram; Coriander Seeds prepared and Lycorice one dram and an half of each. Fountan water in which three drams of Tamarinds, and a dram of Lentisk wood have been boyled, one Cup. Infuſe them cold al night, and in the morning let her drink the ſtrained liquor, two hours before meat.

The 282 Obſervation, or Hiſtory, of Famous and Rare Cures, &c.

Of a Rupture of the Belly.

A Man fifty years of Age, had a moſt grievous Rupture in his Belly for four daies together, which could by no means be holpen. Being called to him, I find his pulſe very languiſhing, with coldneſs in his Hands and Feet. Alſo the part affected was very cold to feel to, ſo that I feared its Mortification. Among other Remedies I preſcribe a Fomentation of hot Aqua Vitæ,

Vitæ, to be applied to his Groin, which being continued for two hours, his Gut was gently reſtored to its place, and the Patient freed from eminent deſtruction.

The 283 *Obſervation, or Hiſtory, of Famous and Rare Cures, &c.*

An hyſterical Paſsion.

A Woman twenty years of Age, of a Cholerick Complexion, being troubled with Hyſterical fits, and having a ruddy Face: a Clyſter being given her of Water and Vinegar, ſhe was preſently freed, and needed no other Remedies.

The 284 *Obſervation, or Hiſtory, of Famous and Rare Cures, &c.*

A Diſentery.

A Certain man troubled with a Dyſentery, and refuſing al other Remedies, uſed only a decoction of Burnet made with water and butter, of which he drank a porrenger ful at morning and Night, and was Cured within three daies. Burnet is exceeding powerful to purifie the Blood, and has a light aſtriction with it; and therefore 'tis no wonder if it help the bloody flux.

The 285 *Obſervation, or Hiſtory, of Famous and Rare Cures, &c.*

A Scirrhous tumor of the Sweet-bread, with the hypochondriacal Diſeaſe.

THe moſt illuſtrious Mſr. *Audeyer*, Preſident of the Senate of *Grenoble*, being fifty ſeven years old, was tormented with moſt grievous and Contumacious Infirmities; the Nature whereof, that it may be more exactly diſcovered, I muſt ſet down a bed-role of thoſe Infirmities, briefly, with which he has conflicted, now this twenty years.

And in the firſt place, it muſt be known, that he is of a Melancholick and Cholerick complexion, of a thin and lean habit of body. And the firſt begining of his Maladies was Arthritick pains, which began to infeſt him by fits ſince the year, 1622. And after them followed, certain light fits of the falling-ſickneſs; which did firſt invade him about the year, 1626. and returned by fits, and within the ſpace of two years, they quite left him. At the ſame time his arthritick pains returned upon him again, which ſtirred not al the time he was ſubject to fits of the Falling-ſickneſs.

Now theſe Arthritick pains did vex him twice or thrice every year, ſo that ſometimes for two or three months he was naild to his bed, with very little help from divers Remedies which were uſed: eſpecially obſerving, that he had little good by often bleeding, rather that his pains were thereby alwaies made more ſharp.

But after that for eight years together, viz. from the year 1631. to the year 1639. he had been exerciſed with theſe pains by fits, he afterwards fel into more grievous infirmities, by reaſon of extream grief taken at the death of a noble Court Lady nearly allied to him in the bands of affinity and friendſhip, and very uſeful to him in his affaires. Whereby he was firſt taken with an involuntary motion of his Eye-lids, which continues to this very day, whereby his Eyes by fits are ſometimes opened, and then ſhut again; ſo that it is as it were a certain trembling of thoſe parts,

parts, with which trembling his hands and feet are many times taken, though very lightly.

At the ſame time he was vexed with pains in his joynts for the ſpace of three months, ſo that he was not able to walk for ſix months after. And being then at *Paris*, he uſed the Villecomitan waters by the advice of Dr. *Delormeus*, a renowned Phyſitian, which did exceedingly cool his ſtomach; and after that a very troubleſome and ſcabby itch did moleſt his whole body, which was preſently cured by an oyntment (of Mercury I Suppoſe) applied to his wriſts and the ſoles of his feet, by advice of Dr. *Labtoſſe* a Phyſitian of *Paris*; after which anointing there followed a mighty looſneſs for twenty dayes together with moſt greivous gripings of his belly; ſo that ſometimes he had a ſhew of the bloody flux. The weakneſs in the meantime of his feet and legs continuing, made him unable to go for an whol year. And at the ſame time his mind was both exceedingly buſied both in peruſing books and papers; and much agitated and toſſed with extream paſſions, and extraordinary ſadneſs at the il ſucceſs of his buſineſs, which may juſtly be thought to have occaſioned the following infirmities.

In the year 1640. he fel into a grievous ſhortneſs of breath and ſtraitneſs in his breaſt, with a certain pain in the region of his ſtomach; which ſymptomes did exceedingly trouble him for fifteen dayes together, and afterwards were much abated, but after ſome ſpace of time they ſeemed to gather new ſtrength, ſo that to this very day he is troubled with them, ſometimes more, and ſometimes leſs.

For the quelling of this ſtubborn diſeaſe, various medicaments have been by Sundry phyſitians preſcribed for four yeares together; various purgations, by Apozemes, potions, ſyrups laxative priſans, and the like. To which were added frequent blood-lettings, iſſues, Veſicatories, opening of the hemorrhoid veins, baths to ſit in, phyſical broaths, chlybeated whey, milk, ſulphurous mineral waters, as thoſe of *Borbon* and *Digne*; alſo vitriolated waters, as thoſe of *Orleance*; roborating and aperitive opiates, pectoral Syrups, and many other things, which being uſed at ſundry times in the ſpace of four years, did ſometimes much, otherwhiles little eaſe the patient. But his habitual diſeaſe did ſtil keep its courſe, and the illuſtrious patient is ſtil troubled with the ſame infirmities.

And I being called to viſit him about the beginning of *May*, 1644. I conceived the cure was to be directed to thoſe two remarkable ſymptoms fore recited, viz. the ſtraightneſs of his breaſt, and his difficulty of breathing, whoſe cauſes are firſt to be conſidered, wherein the greateſt difficulty, with extream obſcurity ſeem to lie. For that ſame ſhortneſs of breath, does not ſeem to be any true Aſthma or Tiſſick, nor to proceed from any defluxion out of his head into his Lungs, though ſome excellent phyſitians did go about to cure him as one aſthmatical; for he has no cough, no wheezing, nor does he ſpit up any flegmatick humor. Secondly, his difficulty of breathing, is in a moment ſtirred up by the procatarctick cauſes, and goes away in a moment; ſo that if he move himſelf a little more vehemently than ordinary, or is never ſo little angry, preſently he is troubled with ſhortneſs of breath, and by and by he attains his freedom of breath again. Thirdly, though he is chiefly troubled with this ſymptom in the evenings and nights, ſo that he is fain to ſit upright in his bed til midnight; yet as ſoon as he begins to fal aſleepe, his ſhortneſs of breath quite vaniſhes, and he laies his head down upon the pillow, and ſleeps the reſt of the night ſo quietly, and breaths ſo freely, that it is eaſie to ſee that there is a diſeaſe in his Lungs.

The Immediate Cauſe therefore of this ſhortneſs of breath, muſt be ſought elſewhere, viz. in his Belly, the Parts wherein contained, being troubled with greivous diſeaſes, contain in them the original of al his infirmities.

This is in the firſt place demonſtrated, by that ſenſe of pain and ſtraitneſs, of which our noble patient perpetually complaines, and ſhewes the ſeat thereof to be under his midrif, and about the region of his ſtomach: and as often as he is troubled with ſhortneſs of breath; that ſame pain, ſtraightneſs and oppreſſion (as he calls it) is ſtil encreaſed; and when the ſaid oppreſſion incteaſes, the ſhortneſs of breath comes: ſo that it is manifeſt that the one depends upon the other. And I, diligently enquiring into the cauſe of that pain, ſtraitneſs, or oppreſſion, and feeling the region of his ſtomach; I found it pliable enough, as long as I held my hand lightly upon it, but preſſing my hand harder, I perceived a certain hardneſs and Reſiſtency deep under the bottom of his ſtomach, which I conceived to be in the Pancreas or ſweetbread, which I conceive was ſwelled with an hard and ſcirrhous tumor, and ſeeing the pancreas is placed under the diaphragma, it is no wonder that it being ſwoln, ſhould compreſs that part which

which chiefly ſerves for reſpiration, and hinder the free motion thereof. Yet verily this cauſe found out by feeling, does not quite ſatisfie our doubt, for if the ſhortneſs of breath ſhould wholly depend thereupon, it ſhould be perpetual, and not come by fits, nor ſhould it be ſo eaſily cauſed by external occaſions, as commotion of the Body or mind. This reaſon verily, is ſo convincing, that ſome other cauſe muſt be joyned hereunto, viz. ſome thin matter, which is ſoon moved and ſoon quieted. Now what that matter ſhould be, and what ſeat it ſhould preciſely poſſeſſe, is not eaſily determinable. Yet I may with thoſe moſt excellent phyſitians who undertook the cure of the patient, aſſert the moſt probable reaſon to be, certain vapours and winds ariſing from his Spleen and ſtomach. Now this Commotion of winds and vapours in his ſtomach, is hereby eaſily diſcerned, in that the noble Patient, is wont to be more grievouſly troubled with the foreſaid ſymptoms, after his meales. For from hard and laborious digeſtion in a weak ſtomach, many winds are bred, which diſtending the ſtomach, compreſs the Pancreas and Midrif, whereupon greater ſhortneſs of breath is wont to ariſe, ſome hours after his Meals. Moreover, in the greateſt changes of the Aire, when the wind ſhifts from north to ſouth, the foreſaid ſymptoms are moſt troubleſome, becauſe by ſuch a mutation of the air rheumatiſmes are cauſed, which at other times were wont to cauſe paines in the joynts; and doe now flow into the inner parts, weakened by long diſtempers and obſtructions, and exagirate the bad humors in them contained; or becauſe by the moiſtneſs of the air, the humors are puffed up, and as it were fermented; whence a vapor ariſes, which ſeizing upon the diaphragma and Lungs, beeds a ſtraightneſs in the breaſt, and a difficulty in breathing.

If theſe Symptoms may be referred to any kind of diſeaſe, I conceive they belong to that ſort of melancholly, which is termed hypochondriacal; ſeeing they had their firſt original from a grievous and long ſadneſs, in a body hot and dry, whence aroſe a great maſs of melancholly humors, which bred ſtubborn obſtructions in his Hypochondria. Yea verily, and although the Scurvy which is frequent in northern Countries, is not uſual in this of ours; Yet this Diſeaſe ſeems to approach unto the nature of the Scurvy, ſeeing the two ſymptoms aforeſaid, viz. ſtraitneſs of the breaſt, and ſhortneſs of breath, are moſt frequent Symptomes of that diſeaſe, as *Severinus Eugalenus* has noted in very many obſervations; in whoſe Country that diſeaſe is moſt frequent: and in imitation of him *Daniel Sennertus* in his Book of the ſcurvy, Chap. 4. where he propounds the ſigns of that diſeaſe, and in the 9. Article of the ſaid chap. does ſo deſcribe theſe two ſymptomes, that he ſeemes to deſcribe the condition of our illuſtrious patient to an hair.

And although (as has been ſaid) the Diſeaſe called the Scurvy, is not uſual, and hardly ſeen in theſe Countries of ours; yet I, to neglect nothing in the Cure of ſo great a Diſeaſe, preſently uſed the ſpecifical Remedies belonging to that Diſeaſe, mixed with others, that were good to open obſtructions, and correct and expell melancholly humors. And therefore, in the firſt place, I gave him the juyces of Water-creſſes, Brook-lime, and Fumitory, for many dayes together, mixing therewith Salt of Tartar, and Spirit of Vitriol, alſo frequently infuſing a little Senna; and ſo thick, clammy, and tartarous Humors, were purged out by little and little. And ſomtimes I mixed the foreſaid juyces with Decoctions of Elecampane, Bark of Tamarisk, Leaves of Ægrimony, Wormwood, and Burnet. By which Remedies continued from the 7. of *May*, to the 28. thereof, our Patient ſeemed much holpen. And the weather happening upon that day to turn from dry and clear, into thick and rainy, by reaſon of South winds, the foreſaid Symptomes came all afreſh, which continuing to the third day of *June*, by two blood-lettings a little at a time, they were much abated. From that time forward he uſed Salt of Steel or Vitriol, for a whol month together, which is of admirable force to open obſtructions, ſtrengthen the Bowels, and to correct their hot diſtemper. Howbeit ſomtimes, viz. every third or fourth day, I gave him ſmal purges, of Senna infuſed in the foreſaid Decoctions, and ſomtimes chalybeate pills; and I gave him chalybeate water to drink ordinarily with thin ſmal wine. Which being continued (as was ſaid) for a month together, the noble Patient was brought into a much better condition, ſo that he which before could not travel either on Horſ-back, or in a Coach, without great trouble, could now endure a Coach running apace, and an Horſe on a faſt amble. Moreover, the vigor of his whol Body, and the color of his Face, were much reſtored. And this is eſpecially worth obſervation, that the noble patient was very much hurt by baths to ſit in, and tomentations applied to the Region of his Belly, and brought into an extream ſhortneſs of Breath: ſo that we were fain wholly to abſtain from the uſe of them, although very neceſſary for this Cure.

Theſe

Theſe things were done the fourth of *July*, at what time I procured leave of the moſt illuſtrious Preſident to depart, and returned to *Montpelier*, leaving him written Directions for what was afterwards to be done.

After my departure, through the whol courſe of Autumn and the Winter following, he uſed the foreſaid Remedies by courſe, and at fitting diſtances of time, by order of the moſt renowned Dr. *John Matthew*, his ordinary Phyſitian, viz. the Salt of Steel, Pills of Steel, and an infuſion of Senna made with the foreſaid Decoction, with Salt of Tartar, and Spirit of Vitriol; to which was added a ſtrengthening Opiate, and Aperitive, preſcribed by me before my departure. And whenas after ſome months, there was a great abatement of ſymptomes, I adviſed him by Letters, to try the Fomentation and bath to ſit in; for it was to be hoped, that the morbifick cauſes being very much diminiſhed, there would happen leſs commotion of humors, which did hinder the uſe of the ſaid Remedies. The matter ſucceeded according to our wiſh, and he bore the Fomentation without any trouble, which did him much good. And the Spring following, he uſed not only the fomentations, but alſo the baths to ſit in, and diligently continued the foreſaid Remedies, ſome others being thereunto added, with which at laſt (bleſſed and praiſed be God) he was brought to a ſtate of perfect Health.

The 286 *Obſervation, or Hiſtory, of Famous and Rare Cures, &c.*

The Dropſie Tympanites.

THe moſt renowned Matron, the Wife of Dr. *de Guere*, Doctor of the Civil and Cannon Laws, thirty years of age, of a Cholerick Conſtitution, was troubled for ten months with a ſufficiently great tumor in her belly, joyned with great ſtretching, ſo that it was juſt of the nature of a Dropſie Tympanites. The firſt Original of this Diſeaſe was chiefly aſcribed to the Patients going into a cold bath, being troubled with the whites: whereby they were ſtopped. To which were added divers errors in Diet. She uſed many Remedies during the time aforeſaid preſcribed by moſt skilful Phyſitians, viz. Potions, Apozemes, and Aperitive and Diuretical Juleps, Opiates ſtrengthening the Liver, and many other things, to no purpoſe. At laſt about the end of *May*, in the Year 1645. ſhe did commit her ſelf to my Care, whom I undertook with theſe following Remedies:

Take *Roots of Aſparagus, Knee-holme, and Cichory, of each half an ounce; Roots of Elecampane and Parſley, of each two drams; Leaves of Agrimony, Ceterach, Maiden-hair, of each half an handful; of the two Wormwoods, of each half a Pugil. Boyl them to ſix drams, in the ſtrained liquor infuſe al night cold Senna, one dram; Diuretick Salt, one dram; Diuretick Spirit, thirty drops. Let her take it in the morning ſix daies together, and order her helf accordingly. She had four or five ſtools every day, and voided a clammy matter Aſh-colored. After the ſecond doſe ſhe was let blood eight ounces. At the end of her Apozemes, ſhe took pills of Calomelan, twenty grains, and as much Diagridium, which gave her ſeven ſtools: and the day following the Tumor of her belly ſeemed abated, which yet began about evening to be puffed up again. The Tumor ſettling, as I felt her Hypochondria, I perceived a very great and painful ſtretching about the Region of her ſtomach, in which reſpect I preſcribed (with continuation of the Juleps) an Emollient fomentation, and aperitive, to be applied every day to the whol Region of her Hypochondria, for alſo no ſmal tenſion was likewiſe perceived, in her right Hypochondrium. Which being uſed four daies together, her monthly Courſes appeared, which had been wanting for ſome months before. And becauſe they flowed but ſlowly, after three daies, the fomentations, and the Apozems leaving out the Senna, were uſed again. By which a moderate quantity of her courſes was procured, and from that time forward, the Tumor of her belly ſeemed wholly diſcuſſed. Howbeit, to ratifie the cure, I preſcribed her the uſual aperitive and Laxative pils, to be ſwallowed twice or thrice a month, as alſo a ſtrengthening opiate and aperitive, to uſed every day for an whol month.*

The

The 287 Obſervation, or Hiſtory, of Famous and Rare Cures, &c.

A Quartan Ague.

John Goſſel, of Lorrain, a Maſter of Arts, dwelling at that time in Dauphine, near a Town called Revel, with a Gentleman whoſe Sons he inſtructed, came to me the 15. of June, 1645. that I might help him, having been ſick of a Quartan Ague for an whol year. Now examining his Hypochondria, I find an exceeding great tenſion and ſtretching, with hardneſs in the Region of his Liver and Spleen; which ſuppoſing to be the Cauſe of the ſtubbornneſs and long-laſting of the Diſeaſe, I thought beſt to remove the ſame, with an aperitive and Laxative Apozeme (blood-letting being premiſed) as alſo with Emollient and aperitive fomentations: and with pils prepared with ſteel. All which things, I ordered him to continue for twenty daies together. Then I gave him a doſe of my Feaver-Frighter, to be taken after the foreſaid Remedies; and becauſe he could not conveniently make uſe of the Apothecaries, which were ſufficiently far from his Habitation; and could hardly bear the charge of Remedies, omitting al the other things, he preſently took my Feaver-frighter: which purged him plentifully. The firſt fit after the taking of this Medicament was half as little again as the former, and the ſecond leſs than that. And ſo the fits growing inſenſibly leſs and leſs, after the fift fit, he was quite freed from his Quartan Ague; of which he informed me by letters, adding that he was infeſted with a Cough which remained after his Feaver. To Whom I wrote back, that he ſhould uſe the Remedies preſcribed by me before, for the opening of the Obſtructions in his two Hypochondria, which I beleeved did remain and cauſe that ſame dry Cough.

The 288 Obſervation, or Hiſtory, of Famous and Rare Cures, &c.

An old Vomit.

The Wife of Doctor *Antony de Maniſſy*, a Phyſitian and Doctor, of the Univerſity of *Valentia*, being twenty four years old, was troubled three years together, with a vexatious vomiting, with a pain in the Loyns reaching to the Region of the Spleen. Now ſhe vomited after every meal, almoſt al her meat and drink mingled with Clammy flegm: whereby ſhe became extream lean. Moreover ſhe had certain Ague-fits as it were twice or thrice in a month, which continued twelve or fifteen daies together. Many Phyſitians that had conſulted about her, did ſuppoſe that theſe Symptoms proceeded from a ſtone in the Kidneys fixed in their ſubſtance, and others ſaid they were Obſtructions and Hyſterical infirmities that were the Cauſe. In reference to al which, ſundry Remedies were uſed to no purpoſe. Til at laſt ſhe came to ſuch a Leanneſs joyned with a ſlow Feaver, that every one thought ſhe would die of an Hectick. But I being deſired by her Husband to preſcribe her ſome Remedies, I conceived the chief original of her malady to lie in the Spleen, which was both obſtructed, and diſtempered with an hot and dry diſtemper. In reſpect of which, ſparing blood-letting being premiſed, I did preſcribe theſe following Remedies.

Take *Roots of Cichory, Aſparagus, Butchers broom, and Bugloſs, of each half an ounce; Leaves of Agrimony, Ceterach, Maiden-hair, and burnet, of each one ſcruple and an half. boyl them with a Chick. In the ſtrained broath diſſolve Cream of Tartar one dram. Make a broath, which let her take in the mornings for ſixteen daies together.*

In every fourth broath infuſe al night cleanſed Senna, three drams, Annis-ſeed one dram. Let her take it, and be ordered ſuitably.

Take *Barley and ſweet Almonds, of each one pound; let them be bruiſed and boyled for a Bath to ſit in, whereinto let her enter warm, twice a day for three daies, after the uſe of the Broaths.*

Take *Steel prepared with Sulphur, one ounce. Aloes, Senna, Rhubarb, Agarick new-*

ly Trochisked, of each two drams; pouder of Diarrhodon Abbatis, half a dram; Saffron ten grains. With Oxymel simple make a mass; of which let her take a dram every morning three hours before meat, and walk upon it. And this let her do for fifteen daies together.

The use of the pils being ended, let the bath be repeated for four daies.

These Remedies used in order, she was freed from the foresaid Infirmities, and restored to perfect Health.

The 288 Observation, or History, of famous and rare Cures, &c.

A Tertian ague.

THe Maid servant of Mſr. *de Sautereau*, a Senator of *Grenoble*, being thirty years of Age, was held of an intermitting Tertian Ague, and she had suffered fifteen fits thereof, in the Course of which, she was twice let blood; and a purge was twice given her, and many cooling Juleps were prescribed and aperitive, by the ordinary Physitian; who after the fifteenth fit gave him twenty grains of my ague-frighter on his wel day, which was the twenty five of *June*, 645. She was five times purged by stool, gently and without trouble. The day after, her fit came much stronger. And from time forward, she never had fit more.

The 289 Observation, or History, of Famous and Rare Cures, &c.

Of a tertian feaver.

Mſr. *de Pourroy*, President of the Senate of *Grenoble*, fifty years of Age; had endured twenty fits of a Tertian Ague, when I was called to him. He was twice let blood; many cooling Juleps were given him: and the Aqua-Benedicta of *Rulandus*, was twice given him to drink, whereby he voided great store of Choler and flegm by stool. I being sent for in the twenty one fit, find it very intense, exceedingly afflicting the patient for twenty four hours together, with extream thirst and great unquietness, which is in conclusion discussed by sweats breaking forth at the end of the fit. His Urins were red, and as it were flaming, having no signs of concoction. Therefore I cause him to bleed a good Quantity: I prescribe him very cooling Juleps: and to take juyce of Lemmons in his ordinary ptisan: and spirit of vitriol in the said ptisan, at the time of the fit. By which means, in two daies space, the red color of his Urin was much abated, and a light swim appeared therein. Nevertheless, the two and twentieth fit was as long as the former, but with less unquietness, which was much tempered by moist Epithemes applied to the Region of his heart. The day following, I gave him twenty five grains of my Ague-frighter, which wrought not all day, save that he had one stool at three a Clock in the afternoon, and voided a pretty quantity of Cholerick matter. But the next day at eight in the morning he had another stool, much larger, by which he voided Cholerick and wheyish excrements. At nine a Clock his fit returned, and was shorter, lasting but eight hours. After the fit, he had three stools. This fit hapned the last day of *July*, 1645. The 1. of *August*, he had no fit, because it was his wel-day. And on the second, when his fit was expected, he had none, so that he seemed cured. Howbeit on the third day, which was his wel-day, a new fit came. The day following, which was the fourth of that month, he was let blood, his Urins appearing still red, and after noon, another fit came: so that his simple Tertian decayed to be turned into a double one. On the fift day of the same month, a fit came like the former. Here those that were censorious, had great occasion to insult, because with my Ague-frighter, I had turned a simple Tertian into a double one. But upon the sixt day I gave him again thirty three grains of my Ague-frighter, which gave him six stools, and he voided many wheyish, Cholerick and Flegmatick Excrements. His fit came at the same hour, but somwhat weaker than before. After his fit he had three or four stools more, and the next day in the morning three or four more. And his fit returned not then, nor the daies following; and within

within a few daies after he returned to his ordinary Employments. And he continued in this Condition for twenty four daies, in which time he committed many Errors in diet, which cast him into a Relapse. And therefore on the thirty day of the same month, he was taken with a new fit, at two in the afternoon, which held him ten hours. On the last day of the month another fit came, at four a Clock in the Evening, but much lighter than the former. On the 1. of *September*, at ten in the morning, a fit returned like the former. I conceived, that these fits did proceed from ill humors newly collected by his bad Diet, which were lightly putrified, the Putrefaction not being firmly fixed in the parts, nor strongly fermented, and that therefore they might be voided by easier Remedies, without making use of my Feaver-frighter. I did therefore prescribe him a purging Medicament of an Infusion of three drams of Senna, in a Decoction of Tamarinds, Cichory, and Agrimony, with anniseed and mineral Chrystal, of each one dram. Adding to the strained liquor Manna and Syrup of Roses, of each one ounce; Jalap one scruple. He was very wel purged, and the following fit was less. For two daies following he took opening and Laxative broaths, and so he was perfectly freed from his Fits, and observing a better Diet, he was reduced to perfect health, which he happily enjoyes to this very day.

The 290 *Observation, or history, of famous and* Rare Cures, &c.

A Quartan ague.

A Young Fryar of the order of Recollects at *Grenoble*, named *Theotimus*, fel into a Quartan Ague towards the end of *July*, 1645. He had had five Fits, when I was called to him. He had been let blood, but took no Physick. He took on the 7. of *August*, thirty grains of my Feaver-frighter, the day before his Fit. He was much purged by stool, and somwhat by Vomit. His Fit came the next day, much less than formerly: and after that no more.

The 291 *Observation, or History, of Famous and* Rare Cures, &c.

A Quartan ague.

A Friar of the same Covent, named *Pascalius*, had undergone ten Fits of a Quartan, when I visited him: and I gave him twenty three grains of my Ague-frighter on the 25. of *October*, the foresaid year: he had eight stools, and two Vomits, and his Disease was quite Cured thereby.

The 292 *Observation; or* History, *of Famous and Rare* Cures, &c.

A Quartan ague.

THe Wife of the most renowned Mſr. *de Chappaulay*, the Kings advocate in the Exchequer at *Grenoble*, fifty years of Age, had been sick of a Quartan Ague Five weeks, so grievously, that she continually kept her bed, and did eat nothing but broaths, for she was alwaies in a Feaver. On the 1. of *September*, she took sixteen grains of my Feaver-frighter, had six stools very gentle, and two more the next day; and her Fit which was to returne after noon, was delayed to seven a Clock in the Evening, and was much more remiss. But the following daies it came no more. And when she began to feed her self, and used solid meats, she did eat unripe Grapes every meal, whereupon she fel again into a Quartan Ague, which became double and trebble, I being returned to *Montpelier*. Now it hapned that in *December*, the same year, I was again sent for to *Grenoble*, and then visiting her, I find her grievously oppressed with a Tripple Quartan. Wherefore I gave her twenty grains of my Ague-frighter; which gave her seven stools, and two vomits. Her Ague returned not that day, nor two daies following.

following. But on the 23. day, having eaten a liberal Dinner, she was taken with a long Fit. For which cause, she took the day following, a like quantity of my Ague-frighter; and five stools, never a vomit, and was thereby freed from her Ague.

The 293 Observation, or History, of Famous and Rare Cures, &c.

A Quartan Ague.

A Woman fifty years of Age, in the Hospital at *Grenoble*, was afflicted with a Quartan Ague an whol Year together. On the 5. of *September*, 1645. she took twenty grains of my Ague-frighter, and was plentifully purged by stool, and once by vomit; seven houres after she had taken the Medicament. The next day her fit came four houres later, and less than formerly. And after that she had no more Fits.

The 294 Observation, or History, of Famous and Rare Cures, &c.

A Quartan Ague.

THe Maid servant of the Wife of Mr. *de Serviers*, President in the Chamber of Accounts at *Grenoble*; was troubled with a Quartan Ague five weeks. The 6. of *September*, 1645. she took sixteen grains of my Ague-frighter, the day before her Fit, and was thereby much purged, only downwards. On the second day her Fit returned without cold, later than the former, and continued longer. And the six following daies it returned not, and in that condition she remained an whol month. But using a carelets Diet, after the manner of Maids, she relapsed into her Quartan Ague; which turned first to a double, then to a triple Quartan, after my departure. And I returning to *Grenoble* in the month of *Decemb.* I gave her twenty grains of my Ague-frighter, on the 23. of the same month, it being a cold frosty season. In the morning she vomited a clammy and glewish matter in great quantity; and in the evening she was plentifully purged by stool, and so was quite freed of her Quartan Ague.

The 295 Observation, or History, of Famous and Rare Cures, &c.

A Double Tertian Ague.

PEter *Faiole*, a Procter in the Senate of *Grenoble*, and one of the Consuls for that Year, being forty years old, had a double Tertian twenty five daies; during which time, he used store of vulgar Remedies by advice of another Physician. I being called the 25. of *August*, 1645. find him confined to his bed, eating nothing but Broaths, and dayly afflicted with grievous Fits. And I gave him sixteen grains of my Ague-frighter, which gently purged him by stool, and he was quite freed from his Ague-Fits.

The 296 Observation, or History, of Famous and Rare Cures, &c.

A Quartan Ague.

GAbriel *Pyot*, the Servant of Mr. *Marcha*, a Citizen of *Montpelier*, being twenty four years old, and three months troubled with a Quartan Ague, during which time he used no Remedy; took of my Ague-frighter twenty four grains, on the 10. of *November*, 1645. which was his well day. He was seven times purged that day, without any vomiting, Stomach-sickness, or trouble: and the day following he had no stools. His Fit which was expected at five in the evening, came not til three a clock next morning; his second Fit which was wont to come in the evenings, came not at all; and from that time forward, he had no more Fits.

The

The 297 Obſervation, or Hiſtory, of Famous and Rare Cures, &c.

A Quartan ague.

THe Wife of *John Alles*, a Chyrurgeon of *Montfrine*, thirty years of Age, had a Quartan Ague four months together; and when I paſſed through that Town about the end of *October*, 1645. I was deſired by her Husband, that I ſhould preſcribe ſomwhat for her Cure. I find the woman very pale and lean, not having had her Courſes ſince the beginning of her ſickneſs; and feeling her Hypochondria, I find her Spleen very hard, and in a manner Scirrhous. And therefore I judged her Quartan Ague could not be cured till thoſe grievous obſtructions were firſt removed. I therefore did firſt preſcribe her a purging potion, and the day after to be let blood. Afterwards, I gave her pills of Steel, Aloes, Gum Ammoniacum, and other things, to be taken for fifteen daies together; and an emollient Fomentation and aperitive, to be applied to her Hypochondria every day during the uſe of the Pills. Which Remedies being diligently uſed, the ſtretching of her left Hypochondrium was very much abated, but her Ague-Fits kept their former courſe; I gave her therefore twenty grains of my Ague-Frighter, and after that ſhe never had Fit more.

The 298 Obſervation, or Hiſtory, of Famous and Rare Cures, &c.

A Quartan ague.

AN ingenuous yong man, *Michael Pineau*, a Student of Phyſick, having been four months troubled with a Tertian Ague, fell at laſt into a Quartan, which had troubled him ſix weeks when he came to deſire my help. I gave him therefore twenty grains of my Ague-Frighter, on the 29. of *November*, 1645. That day he had only two ſtools, and that about evening. The day following, which was his Fit-day, he had ten ſtools, and two vomits, viz. at the hours of Dinner and Supper; and with his meat he voided Cholerick humors, and had no Fit that day, nor any time afterwards.

The 299 Obſervation, or Hiſtory, of Famous and Rare Cures, &c.

A Quartan ague.

A Damſel named *Joan Brunet*, ten years of age, having had a Quartan Ague four months, took ſixteen grains of my Feaver-Frighter, on the 29. of *November*, 1645. She was purged five times by ſtool, without any trouble; the day following her Fit returned after its wonted manner; but after that it never came more.

The 300 Obſervation, or hiſtory, of Famous and Rare Cures, &c.

A Quartan ague.

BEcauſe all my Cures of Quartan Agues propounded under divers Titles, would exceed the Limits of this Book; therefore I have comprehended theſe following under one and the ſame Title, that I may continue the Series of my Cures to this very day, when this is printed. Alſo that what I ſhall hereafter ſay of my Ague-frighter, may be more evident and illuſtrious.

When I travelled from *Grenoble* to *Montpelier*, in *October* 1645. paſſing through *Valentia* a certain In-keeper meets me, named *Claudius Bouden*, having had a Quartan Ague three months; againſt which he had uſed no Phyſick, ſave being once let blood. I preſcribe him firſt a purging

a purging potion to evacuate the ill humors reſiding in the firſt paſſages, which might reſiſt the Operation of my Ague-Frighter; of an Infuſion of half an ounce of Senna, three drams of Diaphenicon, and an ounce of Syrup of Roſes, to be taken the day after his Fit, by which he was ſufficiently purged. The day after he took twenty grains of my Ague-Frighter, was thrice purged by ſtool, without trouble; and that only about the Evening. The day after, his Fit returned, much longer than formerly; but after that he had no more.

In the ſame Journy paſſing through a Town called *le Bourg Sainet Audiol*, Mr. *Henry Chays* a very skilful Chyrurgeon, deſired me to give him a doſe of my Ague-Frighter, for a poor woman long troubled with a Quartan Ague: I ſatisfied his deſire, and he afterwards told me, the woman was thereby cured of her Quartan Ague.

John Ridelet, a Proctor in the Senate at *Grenoble*, Fifty four Years of Age, was troubled three months with a Quartan Ague, which was a double Quartan, and a terrible one; ſo that he kept his Bed, and fed only upon Broaths. He was extream Lean; alſo his Face, Feet, and Legs, were troubled with flegmatick ſwellings, ſo that he ſeemed haſtening into a Dropſie. After many Remedies tried in vain, he implores my help on the 23. of *December*, 1645. it being in the extremity of cold and froſt. But I finding him in an exceeding bad condition, refuſe to give him of my Medicament, becauſe I would not have it diſgraced. Howbeit, overcome at laſt with the entreaties of his Wife and Brother, I give him twenty grains on the 24. of the ſame month. He had ſeven ſtools, without trouble; at firſt he voided cholerick Excrements, and afterwards much Flegm. On the 25. he voided again the ſame kind of matter. His Fits continued. On the 27. day he took twenty four grains of my Medicine, and had ſix ſtools without any trouble. The day following he had a light Fit. And after that his Quartan Fits never returned, at leaſt during the ſeven daies I ſtaied at *Grenoble*, nor could I yet ever hear what became of him after my return; for the Dropſie hanging over his Head, did portend great danger of Death.

Claudius Mouſſeau, a Baker of *Grenoble*, at the ſign of the Sword-Royal, being forty years old, had a double Quartan four months: he took twenty grains of my Medicine the 25. of *December*, 1645. when the weather was cold and froſty. He had four very gentle ſtools. On the 24 and 25 dayes he had his fits again. On the 26 day he took thirty two grains of my medicine. He had only two large ſtools; and never had fit after.

Michael Gounſelin a ſmith of *Grenoble*, having had a Quartan Ague four months, took thirty two grains of my medicine on the 26. of *Decemb.* 1645. the weather extream cold: he had ſeven ſtools and two vomits. The following day his Fit returned more intenſe than the former. On the 29 day of the ſame month, he took the ſame Remedy, was ſix times purged by ſtool without any vomit, and he never had Fit after.

Martin Lebreton of *Paris*, Organiſt of the Church of St. *Lewes*, which belongs to the Jeſuits, 20 yeares old, troubled with a quartan ague foure months together, having took nothing al that time, the third of *Feb.* 1646. he took twenty grains of my Feaver-Frighter; which purged him plentifully, only downwards; the day following, he had a very light fit, but none after that.

The Maid ſervant of the wife of the moſt noble Mſr *Mareſchal* De Le *Hoſpital*, named *Barbe Lepeſe*, being eight months troubled with a double quartan; took twenty grains of my ague frighter the twenty fifth of *Feb.* 1646. being her wel day: ſhe was purged by ſtool. The day following ſhe was purged after the ſame manner and meaſure. Her fit which was expected at five a clock in the Evening, came at nine in the morning, like the former, and after that ſhe never had fit more, but was quite freed from that ſtuborn double Quartan.

The Foot-boy of Mſr. the Count of *Larochegujon*, eighteen years old, had a quartan ague four months, he deſired my help the 27 of *Feb.* 1646. And becauſe he had a long time took no phyſick, and kept a Lenten diet; I thought good to prepare his body by a moderate bloodletting and gentle purgation of an infuſion of three drams of Senna with half a dram of ſalt of tartar, wherewith he was gently purged. On the ſecond of *March* he took twenty grains of my feaver-frighter, it being his fit day, and the fit not to come til ſix in the evening. He had eight ſtools, no vomit. His fit came at two in the afternoon, more violent than formerly. On the fift day of the ſame month, the fit came again at two a clock and was like the former. On the Seventh day, he took the ſame doſe of my ague-frighter, which wrought as before. Yet the fit came as formerly, and he had three more fits one after another, uſing no remedy. Yet he

he began to get flesh, the colour of his face was more fresh, and he had a better stomach to his Meat. After those three first, the day before the fourth, he took twenty one grains of my feaver-frighter, which gave him six stools. The fit came the day after somewhat weaker; and after that time he never had fit more.

An Appendix, or Additional Discourse touching my Ague-Frighter.

HItherto a Quartan Ague has been counted incurable in the Beginning, Augment, and State: because the morbifick matter is at those times not sufficiently digested and prepared, so as to be brought away by purgations; and al that endeavour to bring it away by strong purgatives, of a simple Quartan, they many times make a double or a triple, and sometimes a continual, whereby the patients are brought in extream danger of death. Hence it is that the more discreet sort of Physicians, use to advise such as have Quartan Agues to a long Patience, and put them off til the Spring season, whose temper is most accommodate to concoct and purge out the humor offending: but the winters cold is so contrary thereunto, that during the same a Quartan is judged to be wholly uncurable. Because the tartarious and melancholly humors are more condensed, and as it were congealed; also the passages of the body as wel sensible as insensible, are shut up, so that al hope of Evacuation or Transpiration, is thus taken away. Yea verily and the stubbornnes of the morbifick matter is sometimes so great, that many Quartan Agues have been by most learned Physicians set upon in a due method in the spring and summer time, with al possible variety of vulgar Medicaments, and yet they have frustrated al their endeavours, and continued an whole year, yea sometimes two and three years together.

The Premises notwithstanding, long use and continual exercise, is wont to encrease Art very much, and the new Inventions of later Physicians, have advanced the art of physick received from the Ancients, unto a more sublime degree of Dignity. In whose foot steps treading, having for the space of thirty seven yeares, in which I have practised physick, been diligently painful in searching into the most hidden secrets of nature, although communally talking (besides visiting the sick) with Lectures, Disputations, and other Academical Exercises, I did oftentimes for a long while, seriously consider with my self, if by any means possible this stubborn and long lasting sickness, might in a short time be overcom and mastered. And though this seemed a very hard Task, and almost impossible to be accomplished, yet (by Gods blessing to whom be honor and glory) I obtained my desire. For at length by long meditation, elaboration, by adding, detracting, diminishing, and many waies preparing sundry materials, I found out the true and specifick Remedy of a Quartan Ague, which pluckes it up by the Roots. I wil not say, it is an infallible medicine, least I should speak like a Mountebank. But with a good conscience say, that I never yet gave this Medicament, but it took away the fits at least at the third times taking. Howbeit in some persons, either through errors of diet, or by reason of some Reliques of the morbifick matter remaining within the body, there has happened a relapse, which has been for the most part removed, by some light vulgar purgation.

It is fourteen Months since I have begun to use this Medicament, which I had meditated in my mind many years together. And I have committed to writing the names of the most that have hitherto taken it, with the stories of their Diseases. In whom Quartan Agues have been Cured, in the beginning, Augment, and State; yea and in the midle of winter, when al was frozen.

The Vertues of this Medicament are such, that it oppugnes the Melancholy Humor by its Specifick quality, and hinders the Fermentation thereof which causes the Fit, extinguishes the bad Qualities thereof, and changes the whol Nature thereof. And so al those Tumults which that fierce Humor is wont to raise in the body of man are presently appeased, that humor being made weak and impotent like water. For even as Vinegar, the salt of Tartar, or of

Saturn

Saturn, being mixed with it, does suddenly lose all its sharpness and strength, and becomes like water: so the Melancholick Humor, when it meets with its Specifick Remedy, is after a manner extinguished, and loses all power of acting and resisting. So that, for the most part, by once giving thereof, a Quartan Ague is chased away, and seldom needs it be given twice, and very seldom the third time. Whereas otherwise, the matter being rebellious, not tamed beforehand, it cannot be stirred in the least, by an hundred Medicaments. Whereupon the Physicians, being many times vexed with the stubbornness thereof are forced to give over the Cure. And although this Remedy be peculiarly ordained to Cure the Quartan Ague, yet it does in one day drive away Tertian Agues, by reason of the Analogy they have with Quartans (for long Tertian Agues do commonly turn to Quartans) as appears by the Cures of many Tertian Agues, before set down; and therefore I have given it the General name of Ague-queller, or Ague-Frighter.

I think not fit as yet to set down the exact and plain description of this Remedy, til its vertues shal by some more years Observations be made manifest. In the mean time, to satisfie the Curious Searchers into Nature so far as to give them an occasion of Enquiry, I shal here propound a faithful and sincere description thereof, howbeit somwhat obscure, and covered as it were with a thin Vail or Curtain, which the Sons of Art being industrious, may without very great pains draw aside. This precious Medicine therefore is compounded of a threefold Hercules, by twelve Labours brought to the highest degree of Nobility and excellency: unto which a fourth Champion is added, to accomplish the work. It may be given to Children the quantity of ten, twelve, and fifteen grains. To grown persons from twenty grains to thirty and fourty. It works gently being given in due dose, nor does it disturb the body more than vulgar Medicines made of Senna and Rhubarb. Yet it works sometimes by vomit, if the Morbifick matter some part of it, quarter about the stomach. For this is its peculiar Quality, that it goes directly to the Morbifick matter wheresoever it lies lurking, valiantly assails, stoutly cudgels, and at last vanquishes the same. The Histories lately described, do plainly witness the same. For in some persons, finding the passages open, and the matter not very plentyful, it performs its work without any trouble, and with a little purging; as in the Prince *Doria*, and some others before recited. But in others who had used no Physick al the time of their Disease, and had gorged themselves with bad Diet, finding a Multitude of bad Humors, the passages close shut up, and extream Crudity, it could not overcome the Disease without some disturbance and labour of the Patient; as it hapned in certain poor common people, upon whom this Medicament was first experimented. And so much shal suffice to have said touching my Ague-Frighter, or Ague-Queller.

OBSER-

THE FOURTH BOOK OF Medicinal Obſervations, AND REMARKABLE CURES, OF Several Famous Phyſitians.

The Preface to the Reader.

ALL Phyſitians who are diligent and accurate in the mannaging of their Practice, do often meet with many things moſt worthy of Obſervation; which notwithſtanding being for the moſt part neglected, do unhappily periſh, and become a Sacrifice to Oblivion. And as for ſuch things as ſome do regiſter in their private Note-books, they are reſerved indeed for their own private uſe, but are not in the leaſt profitable to the publick. I do therefore make it my requeſt to all induſtrious Profeſſors of this Art, that if they are deſirous of the publick Good, and have already collected ſo many remarkable Obſervations as may make a conſiderable Volumn, that they would be pleaſed to print them: But if they ſhall be too few to fill a Book, that they would vouchſafe liberally to communicate the ſame unto me, who will print them under their Names, with my fourth Book, which (God granting life) I ſhall ſhortly publiſh: as they may ſee I have done in the following Obſervations communicated by others: which I gathered here and there from my

friends, and have publiſhed every mans Obſervations under his proper Name. Amongſt which, many things may be found more excellent than any thing in my Obſervations; by which it is apparent, that any man may advance the Dignity of the Art of Curing by this kind of writing, and gain himſelf ſome Reputation thereby.

Furthermore, I deſire the gentle Reader to take notice, that I have cauſed theſe Obſervations to be printed in the ſame order that I received them; that no man may complain I have not marſhalled them according as the preheminency of one above another might ſeem to require.

Obſervations communicated by Mſr. *Petrus Pachequus*, a famous Phyſitian at *Lunell*, my moſt ancient Friend.

The 301 *Obſervation, or Hiſtory, of Famous and Rare Cures, &c.*

VVant of Appetite.

A Soldier much vexed with a Cronick Ague, beginning now to be much eaſed in reſpect of the Fits, which were not ſo cruel as formerly, did humbly beſeech me that I would recover his Appetite, which was wholly loſt, otherwiſe he muſt of neceſſity die in the ſpace of three or four daies. I preſcribe him a Potion of half an ounce of Diaphenicon, with a decoction of common Wormwood and Egrimony; afterward I ſharpened his Appetite with theſe following Remedies, as with a whet-ſtone.

Take *Leaves of Agrimony, Common Wormwood, Centory the leſs, of each half a handful: make of all a Decoction. Take half a pint of the ſtraining with a little Sugar. I ordered the Patient to drink of this Decoction nine daies together: but after five dayes were paſt, he came unto me, earneſtly intreating, that I would abate his Dog-like ravenous hunger, cauſed by my medicine: which I did by cauſing him to abſtain from the foreſaid Drink, and adviſing him to eat Butter and fat meats, and to drink ſtrong Wine. I can teſtifie that many by this Medicine have fallen into the like ravenous Hunger.*

The 302 *Obſervation, or Hiſtory, of Famous and Rare Cures, &c.*

Cholick pain.

MOnſſir, the Preſident of *Rupemore*, an ancient Man, being tormented three whol daies with a grievous Chollick; when no Anodynes would eaſe his pain, having taken one dram of the Pouder of a Wolfs Guts, he was cured as it were by a Charm. Alſo a Prieſt very ſubject to this Diſeaſe. And a Widdow dwelling at *Montpelier*,

Montpelier, which had been cruelly tormented twenty seven dayes together. And finally, a thousand more whom for brevities sake I pass over without taking any clyster or purging medicine which makes the admiration greater.

The 303 *Observation, or history, of famous and* Rare Cures, &c.

A Cholick from the kidneys affected.

A Certain widdow being vexed with a colick pain, and that proceeding from the Reins, implored my help when I was at the Sesilucan baths, to ease her pain. Which I did in a moment. For I bad her immediatly to goe into the bath, and presently her pain was taken away; And I admyred that so suddenly it was eased without any Clister or purging medicament.

The 304 *Observation, or* History *of* Famous *and* Rare *Cures*, &c.

A Cholerick Looseness coming upon Agues.

SUch as are troubled with cholerick and malignant Agues, especially with a double tertian, by reason of an abundance of a raging chollerick humor, doe fal into the disease named Cholera, upon the return of their fits, the violence whereof if you do not asswage, with such medicaments as I shal by and by set down, the patients wil die within the space of two or three Fits. Mr. *Labrundus*, a very learned Man having one of these Agues, could hardly be recovered out of his Fit, which was attended with the disease Cholera, being as cold as a stone, his pulse exceeding smal and almost deficient, with hollow eyes and other horrible symptomes. At length after a multitude of medicines, which many so affected would not use, but bid the world adiew, he was recovered out of the jawes of death. I to prevent the tempestuous storm of the next Fit which should come the morrow after, ordered that the patient should be refreshed with thick Panadaes and jellies, that a bridle might thereby be cast upon the humors, which would rage the day following. I appointed Epithemes and Opiates of Conserve of Roses, Buglos, Borrage, preserved myrobalans and perles; and three hours before the Fit, I caused this wonder working Clyster to be given him, without which, if I mistake not, my friend had gone to the pot.

Take *Red rose leaves one handful, boil them in the Broath of a weathers head and feet. In a pint of the strained liquor dissolve two drams of new Venice Treacle, and one yolke of an Egg. Make of al a Clyster. This Clyster be kept until the returne of his Fit, which brought the cholerick flux with it, but much less than formerly. By this Method, I cured many desperatly sick of this disease.*

The 305 *Observation, or history, of famous and* Rare *Cures*, &c.

Pain of the Hemorrhoids.

MAny in this hot Season of the Year are troubled with inward and blind hemorrhoids, which cause extream pain. Likewise by reason of the excrements being hardened and kept in by reason of their swelling which closes up the gut, most cruel pain is caused. The ordinary sort of Physitians give Cassia to loosen the belly in this Case, but they do il questionless in so doing. For seeing the veins are most of al puffed up in the fundament, by reason of their natural softness, and are alwaies ready to receive blood; it comes to pass, that by the use of cassia, they are so far mollified, that afterward they more easily entertain superfluous blood, and consequently augment the disease. But I learned of a beggar woman, to infuse Yarrow in boyling water, and to give the said infusion to drink for a month together, and al of this disease were so cured. The Lady *due-Masia*, and the wife of *Crancerius* a Chyrurgion, troubled with the hemorrhoids were cured with this Medicine. At last I found this very Medicine in *Arnoldus de Villa Nova*,

in his chapter of the pain of the Hemorrhoids. The ſelf ſame remedy, is good alſo againſt the extraordinary afflux of the Hemorrhoids, if we will beleeve the foreſaid *Arnoldus*, and there is reaſon alſo for it.

The 306 Obſervation, or Hiſtory, of famous and Rare Cures, &c.

The Stinging of a *Waſp.*

A Waſp having ſtung my hand, it pained me ſo cruelly that I was not able to indure it. I laid on Venice Treacle and the pain was gone in a moment. But when three hours after I threw away the treacle, a moſt cruel pain returned, as bad as at firſt, which was allayed by applying the ſame Medicine again, and keeping it on all the day.

The 307 Obſervation, or hiſtory, of famous and Rare Cures, &c.

Puſhes.

WHen I could not by any Medicines heal certain Epinyctides, or Puſhes, which ariſe in the night ſpringing from black choler, by a womans advice they were anointed with oyl of juniper berries, and the patient thereupon ſlept quietly, whereas he had lain ſleepleſs before, and was perfectly cured.

The 308 Obſervation, or hiſtory, of Famous and Rare Cures, &c.

Convulſion.

A Young man had a convulſion ſo that he could not bend his back-bone. By help of this following medicament he could preſently walk nimbly.

Take *of rank butter, and old lard, of each three ounces; Bdellium, amoniacum, of each half an ounce; Myrrhe, Caſtoreum, of each three drams. Flowers of ſtœchados and roſemary, of each one pugil. Nutmeg and cloves of each one dram, a young Kittling or little Cat unbowelled and ſtripped and cut in peices. Stopp the belly of a gooſe with theſe things, and ſew it up and roaſt it on a ſpet: and the firſt liquour that drops, caſt away, the next ſave in a dripping-pan half full of vinegar, to anoint the cramped or convulſed Back. This is a divine Medicine.*

The 309 Obſervation, or Hiſtory, of famous and Rare Cures, &c.

Red pimples in the face ſtriking in again.

A Certain Carmelite Frier, a civil and wel mannered perſon, but disfigured with great high red pimples, thick ſpred al over his face, came to viſit me, whom at the firſt ſight I knew not: becauſe the foreſaid puſtles were of themſelves without any help of art gone away, and his face become ſmooth. I told him he would ſuddainly fal into a moſt grievious diſeaſe; nor was I miſtaken in my conjecture, for within fifteen dayes, he fel into a continual feaver, of which he died.

The 310 Observation, or History, of Famous and Rare Cures, &c.

The Mother fits.

A Certain Damsel being marrigable, was vexed with wandring convulsive motions, by which, and by certain pains in her womb, I conjectured that she was troubled with suffocations caused by vapors ariling from the womb. With this following Medicament I Cured her in a Moment.

Take *Assa Fetida, two drams; Castoreum, Fœcula, Bryonie, of each a dram; Rue-Seeds, one scruple; Saffron, an half scruple; Laudanum of Paracelsus, eight grains; (which Laudanum I therefore added, both by the advice of* Hippocrates, *who prescribes the juyce of sleeping Poppy in fits of the Mother in his second Book of Womens Diseases, page 237. about the end, in the Edition of* Foesius; *as also that I might temper and moderate the other Medicaments with the* Laudanum*) with Syrup of Mug-wort make a Mass of Pils, of which let her take one dram.*

The 311 Observation, or historie, of famous and rare Cures, &c.

Pains after Child-birth.

A Drunken Gossip was after she was brought to bed vexed with most cruel pains, which after other Remedies, were cured with this following.

Take *Galbanum, Assa Fetida, of each one ounce, Spread therewith a round Plaister and put four grains of Musk in the middle, and lay it on a little below the Navil. Her Womb which was contracted like a Globe in her Groin, returned to its proper place, and the pains ceased.*

The 312 Observation, or History, of famous and Rare Cures, &c.

A Medicine for pains caused by a Vesicatory.

Mr. *Amalricus*, being troubled with a sleepy Disease, when he was rowzed and came to himself, he complained exceedingly of the pain which was caused by a vesicatory which had been applied: and when I could not give him ease by any anodine Medicament; Madam *Ranchina*, my wives sister asswaged the same only with Water and Oyl mingled together. I cured one woman that was grievously tormented, with the burning of a Vesicatory, with this Medicine, and al others vexed with the like Calamity.

Take *of the second green bark of an Elder Tree bough, scraped off with a Pen-knife, one handful. Boyl it in sweet Oyl with a little Water, until the water be consumed; to the scrapings adde a little Wax: and make al into an Oyntment, which asswages al pains caused by Vesicatories. This is a Divine Remedy.*

The 313 Observation, or History, of Famous and Rare Cures, &c.

Swelling of the thigh.

THe Wife of Mr. *Justamondus*, had a swelling in her Thigh, which threatned a Gangreen, her Native heat in that part being by this time suffocated and over whelmed. After she was let blood I gave her an ounce of Syrup *de Spina Cervina*, in a Decoction of red vetches, and the day following, her Thigh asswaged pretty wel. And this I observed in many other Women, whom I observed to be more liable to swellings of the Legs than men, because

the

the Womb is the Common ſhore of the Body, into which Superfluous Humors are collected, and the womb disburthens it ſelf into the nighbouring Hipps.

The 314 *Obſervation, or hiſtory, of famous and* Rare Cures, etc.

Chops in Womens Duggs.

MY Wife was much vexed with Chops and Clefts in her Dugs, which I could by no means heal: a tattered old Woman quickly cured her, with Oyl of Nuts newly drawn, which ſhe anointed upon the Clefts, and ſtrewed Sugar finely poudered thereupon. The Ballom of Sugar works the ſame effect: as I have tried an hundred times.

The 315 *Obſervation, or Hiſtory, of famous and Rare Cures, &c.*

The Dropſie.

A Prieſt named *Sabardetus*, having vomited eighteen ounces of blood, fel into the Dropſie Aſcites, that is the bottle belly Dropſie: from which I had Cured him with an infuſion of Rhubarb in fair water, which he drank for his ordinary drink: but when he fel to pleaſe his Palate, and had forgot his former Calamity, the Dropſie returned and killed him.

The 316 *Obſervation, or Hiſtory, of Famous and Rare Cures, &c.*

Bleeding:

A Countrey Man being almoſt dead with bleeding at his noſe, ſent for me: but when nothing would help, I dropped a little Vinegar of Roſes, into that Ear which was next the Noſtril out of which the blood came, and his bleeding preſently ceaſed. I learned this of Mr. *Pontaudus*, who ſaw this remedy uſed by a Dutch Phyſitian. I have read it in *Scribonius Largus*, in the Chapter of Bleeding.

The 317 *Obſervation, or* Hiſtory, *of famous and rare Cures, &c.*

Hiccupping.

CAptain *Dumaſius*, having a Tertian Ague, and taking Syrup of Poppies in the middle of his fit, was vexed with ſuch a troubleſome Hiccuping, as almoſt kild him. And when neither Aloes often taken, nor other Remedies could cure this Diſeaſe, at length by our patients own adviſe I ſent him to the Baths of *Baleruca*, to ſeek water; which having plentyfully drank of, as the manner in thoſe Baths is, he was quickly Cured, thoſe Humors being diſſolved and waſhed away, which the Syrup of Poppy had riveted as it were into the Coats of the Stomach.

The 318 *Obſervation, or Hiſtory, of Famous and Rare Cures, &c.*

A flux of Blood out of the Ears.

I Saw *Brouſolus Giniacenſis*, who fel from Horſ-back upon the ſtones, on his right Ear, out of which flowed three pounds of Blood. Alſo I have ſeen very many others who by a fal

have

have bled plentyfully at their Ears, and escaped with their lives. But as many as I have seen void quittor or bloody matter out of their Ears after a fal, they al died upon it.

The 319 Observation, or History, of Famous and Rare Cures, &c.

Liftleſſneſs to Carnal Conjunction.

A Woman very desirous of Children, but having no appetite to Carnal Embracements, entreated me that I would kindle in her the desires of the flesh, which were (as she said) Mortified in her. I did what she requested with this following Opiat.

Take *Conserve of Eringos Root, and of the Male Satyrion, of each one ounce. Orenge Rinds preserved in Honey six drams. One preserved Wal-nut. Confectio Alhermes, an half ounce. Amber Greese, flying Pismires, of each one scruple; Mosch, six grains. With Syrup of preserved Citrons, make al into an Electuary. Of which let her take before a light Supper the Quantity of a smal Chest-Nut, drinking a little Hippocras after it. The Woman confessed that she felt wonderful pleasure, after the use of this Electuary. There is nothing in the world more effectual in these cases, than to anoint the Region of the Womb, with Oyl of flying Pismires, which is made after this manner.*

Take *of Flying Pismires, two ounces; infuse them in Oyl fourty daies together in the hot Sun of the Dog-daies.*

The 320 Observation, or History, of Famous and Rare Cures, &c.

Proud fleſh.

I Had an Ulcer which secretly lurked under the Nail of my great Toe; that I might come to Cure this Ulcer, I bad the Chyrurgeon to Cut the Nail just over the Ulcer, and make an hole, that so Medicines might be applied: but proud flesh grew up, which after I had often taken away, it stil grew again. Wherefore after I had long used burnt Alum, I determined to try a new Medicine. Wherefore I applied red precipatate wel washed, and no waies painful, to eat out the proud flesh, which it quickly did, and it grew up no more.

The 321 Observation, or history, of famous and rare Cures, &c.

Pain of the Pleuriſie.

A Damsel of a Constitution mingled with black Choler, was tormented with a most grievous pain in her side, which had brought her to the Gates of death, from whence I reduced her by this following medicament.

Take *Oyl of Sweet Almonds, two ounces; Laudanum Paracelsi, three grains: A little after she had taken this, her pain ceased, and she was better.*

The 322 Observation, or History, of famous and Rare Cures, &c.

A Prognoſtick touching Wounds.

IN the Seige of *Montpelier*, many wounded Soldiers, especially such as were wounded in their hands, were within a few daies taken with Convulsions of their temperal Muscles, and I observed that al of them died. A certain Captain in that bloody battail at *Calvisson*, between the Marshal *du Trec*, and the Duke of *Roban*, was wounded in his Thigh, and the wound reached as deep as the Periostium, a Convulsion followed in the parts near his Thighs, and arose by little and little to his temple Muscles, and kild him. They that are taken with this Convulsion,

ſion, cannot open their mouths. At the beginning of the Convulſion they ſpeak readily, and know not that they are ſo near to their long home.

The 323 Obſervation, or Hiſtory, of famous and Rare Cures, &c.

Over-violent working of a Purge.

THe Baron of *Calviſſon*, after he had taken the pouder of Diacarthamus againſt my mind, he had an hundred ſtools. I Cured him after this manner.

Firſt we made him a Cliſter of a Decoction of Red Roſes and Chamemel flowers, with a little Sugar of Roſes, and the Yolk of an Eg. Afterwards we gave him this following Clyſter.

Take *Capon broath one pint. Sugar of Roſes one ounce. Laudanum of Paracelſus five grains; the Yolk of one Eg. This preſently ſtopt the violence of the Purge. Inſtead of the Laudanum, a dram and half of Venice Treacle may be added.*

The 324 Obſervation, or hiſtory, of famous and rare Cures, &c.

Extream thirſt.

MSr. *Viventius* being ſick of a Feaver, was tormented with ſo extream thirſt, that he imagined himſelf to be one of the water bearers of *Paris*, that carry water about the Citty, and cryed night and day water, water, who wants water? but his thirſt which no other means could ſtop, was aſſwaged with one dram and an half of Sal Prunellæ, which he drank diſſolved in fair water. Alſo my *Simeon*, having taken ſome Syrup *de Spina Carvina*, was almoſt killed with thirſt: and took a dram of Sal Prunellæ, and his thirſt preſently ceaſed.

The 325 Obſervation, or hiſtory, of Famous and Rare Cures, &c.

Smal pocks.

I Saw the Son of Mſr. *Martinetus*, ſick of the ſmal Pocks with laudable ſigns; for after the coming out of the Pocks the Feaver abaced, he fetcht his breath freely, and he had no looſeneſs, the Pox were high enough, his ſleep was moderate, he took what was given him without offence: howbeit, al on a ſuddain without any manifeſt Cauſe, the Pocks ſtrook in again, and he died thereupon. I have ſeen the like befal many which had the ſame Diſeaſe, and I foretold that they could not eſcape death.

The 326 Obſervation, or Hiſtory, of Famous and Rare Cures, &c.

A Deadly prognoſtick.

THe Son of Mſr. *Engarranus*, being ſick of a Feaver could not ſwallow, but voided what he drunk through his Noſtrils, the muſcles of his *Oeſaphagus*, being (as I conceive) taken with the palſie. He died. Furthermore, whereas he was not favoured like his Mother during his health, yet before his death he was countenanced ſo like his Mother that al wondered at it. Alſo a voyce of mine, not at all like his Mother, a little before his death reſembled his Mother, as if he had been her picture. And al ſick perſons that have voided their drink out of their Noſtrils, or who were like their great Granſires, their great Grandfathers, or Grandames, or their Parents, in the time of their ſickneſs, they al died; which is a wonderful thing.

THE

The 327 *Obſervation, or Hiſtory of Famous and Rare Cures, &c.*

Night-ſweats.

THe Wife of Mſr. *de Ladeveſe*, every night after ſhe recovered of a Feaver, was wont to ſweat. I preſcribed her a cooling Julep of the waters of Cichory and Bugloſs, and the Syrup of Apples, and ſhe did ſweat no more. Whence I gather, that for people to ſweat in their ſleep, is not alwaies a ſign of Abundance of Humors, but ſomtime of heat; for healthy perſons of an hot Complexion are wont to ſweat in the night. Add hereto, that the foreſaid Gentlewoman was cured of her ſweating without any Evacuation either Natural or Artificial.

The 328 *Obſervation, or Hiſtory, of Famous and Rare Cures, &c.*

Bleeding Cauſed by tooth-drawing.

MAdam *Viventia*, having drawn one of her Teeth, ſo plenyful a flux of blood followed, that ſhe was at Deaths door, al Remedies being applied in Vain. I being ſent for, cauſed a great Rupture-Plaiſter ſhould be laid upon her Temple on the ſame ſide out of which her tooth had been drawn. Alſo I cauſed a little burnt Vitriol poudered with a little Cotton-wool to be put into the hole out of which her Tooth was drawn, which ſhe kept in with her finger. Theſe things being done, within an hour the blood was ſtopt.

The 329 *Obſervation, or Hiſtory of famous and Rare Cures, &c.*

The Pleuriſie.

ALL that have the Pleuriſie and vomit at the beginning of the diſeaſe do recover, as I have obſerved in an infinite company of patients: the ſide being eaſed of the Humors caſt up by vomit.

The 330 *Obſervation, or Hiſtory, of Famous and Rare Cures, &c.*

Menſtrual Blood:

THe menſtrual blood of Women, eſpecially ſuch as are in good health, does ſmel like a Mary-gold flower. Which makes me conjucture that Mary-gold flowers do povoke the Courſes through ſimilitude of ſubſtance.

The 331 *Obſervation, or Hiſtory, of Famous and Rare Cures, &c.*

The Running Gout.

MAdam *de Cottereau*, being troubled with an Univerſal Gout, ſo that no part of her body was free, was cured with Crocus Metallorum: notwithſtanding what *Hippocrates* relates touching fourty daies.

The 332 *Obſervation, or Hiſtory, of Famous and Rare Cures, &c.*

Pains of the Womb.

I Have ſeen many Women tormented with pains of the womb, who found little eaſe by our Laudanum. But having taken a dram of Antidotum Aſyncritum [deſcribed in the Pharmacopœia of *Renodæus*] they were preſently freed from their pain. Which I have much admired, neither do thou Count it a ſlight matter.

The 333 *Obſervation, or Hiſtory, of Famous and Rare Cures, &c.*

Danger of an over hot Bath.

A Very honeſt woman coming out of a Bath hotter than ordinary, fel into ſo great an inflamation of her whol body, that ſhe could not reſt a minute by reaſon of pains and Anxieties. And after al cooling Medicines both inward and outward had been uſed in Vain, a Bath of nothing but Luke-warm water, freed her from al her pains: whereby my mind was freed of a great deal of Care.

The 334 *Obſervation, or Hiſtory, of Famous and Rare Cures, &c.*

Pain of the Stomach.

CHolerick, Lean, Red-hair'd perſons, of a thin habit of body are in the begining of the Summer troubled with pains of the ſtomach; becauſe the mouth of their Stomach being extream ſenſible, is corroded with Cholerick Humors, which were formerly bridled by the temper of the winter and ſpring. The Cure is, to purge them with Rhubarb, and then to give them twice or thrice, in the morning, three or four grains of the Laudanum of *Paracelſus*. Doubtleſs it is better with them, when the mouth of their Stomach is not ſo ſenſible.

The 335 *Obſervation, or Hiſtory, of Famous and Rare Cures, &c.*

Scabby Legs.

TO Cure that great Scabbyneſs which after long ſickneſſes, eſpecially the Quartan Ague, breaks out upon the Leggs, having cruel pains attending the ſame, I have not found any thing among al the Medicines which we uſe, more effectual, than this following Oyntment.

Take *Unguentum Baſilicum, four ounces. Terpentine, two ounces; Oyl of Roſes, three ounces and an half; three Yolks of Egs; a little Wax. Make of al an Oyntment and anoint the Scabby places therewith.*

The 336 *Obſervation, or Hiſtory, of Famous and Rare Cures, &c.*

Inflamation of the Mouth Cauſed by Mercurial oyntments.

TO ſuch as are fluxed by being anointed with Oyntments made of Quick-ſilver, an Inflamation and exulceration of their mouth is wont to happen, ſomtimes exceeding hard to Cure, I having cauſed one to be anointed, his mouth was ſo inflamed, that he was almoſt deſparate, which

which inflamation, al other Medicines being tried in vain, was healed only with Chicken broath made without ſo much as any Herbs in it. I ſuppoſe the virulency of the Quick-ſilver was mitigated by the benigne and debonaire ſubſtance of the Chicken.

The 337 *Obſervation, or Hiſtory, of Famous and Rare Cures,* etc.

Pain of the Head.

AFter a pain in the one half of my head of fourteen years continuance, it happened that a Vein opened in my upper Lip, out of which every month four or five pound of blood very hot and Salt Iſſued. I freed my ſelf from this troubleſome accident, by opening a vein twice every month in that Arme which was juſt oppoſite to my bleeding Lip; and blood being liberally taken away my Head-ach ceaſed.

The 338 *Obſervation, or Hiſtory, of Famous and rare Cures,* etc.

Bruiſes on the Head.

A Maid twenty years of Age, received a blow with a ſtone a little above her Forehead, and went for al that about her uſual buſineſs. Howbeit three daies after ſhe complained of a dul pain in her head, ſhe became ſleepy, and was a little Feaveriſh. Upon the ſeventeenth day certain Convulſive motions appear; upon the twenty an Impoſtume breaking, and greeniſh quittor coming out of her Noſtrils, ſhe died. Mr. *Viventius*, fel backwards, he remained ſome daies intent upon his buſineſs; afterward he began to Rave, to deſire fire, ſaying that he was cold; to be ſleepy. He had a bad night, ever and a non putting his hand unto his Head. Upon the eleventh day, the Impoſtume broke, and he voided purulent quittor out of his mouth, and died preſently. A Nephew of mine having received a bruiſe on his Head, became ſad and camplained a little of Head-ach. A month after he fel into a Feaver with drowſineſs and Head-ach: he Roſe ever and anon and Cryed out. On the ſeventh day of his Feaver, he voided corrupt matter from his Noſe and preſently died.

The 339 *Obſervation, or Hiſtory, of Famous and Rare Cures,* &c.

A tetter with Itch of the whol Body.

A Certain Fiſh-wife was vexed with a Cruel Tetter al over her body, with ſo great an Itch, that ſhe continually clawed her ſelf, and could not reſt a moment. In the morning, by reaſon of her continual ſcratching, there was found in her bed, three or four handfuls of Scales like unto the ſcales of fiſhes. I having ordered her Diet to be Chicken, Kids fleſh, and barley broaths; firſt of al preſcribed her a bole of Caſſia, afterwards I cauſed the Baſilica Vein of both her Arms to be opened, alſo a vein in her forehead and in each Ankle, that I might draw out the corrupted blood from al parts of her Body. Which being done I ordered her to uſe this following magiſtral Syrup for thirty daies together.

Take *of Senna, Polypody green, of each four ounces; Epithymum, an ounce and an half. Choice Rhubarb, one ounce. Annis Seeds, three drams; Yellow ſanders, one dram and an half. Infuſe them al night in juyce of Apples cleared by ſettling. Afterward boyl them according to Art, adding as much Sugar as wil ſuffice to make al into a perfect Syrup. The firſt and ſecond time ſhe took two ounces, or two and an half, of this Syrup in whey; afterward ſhe took two ſpoonfuls every morning; and ſo her body was kept open, and the Morbifick matter was leiſurely evacuated. Somtime ſhe took Lozenges of Diarrhodon Abbatis in the morning, after her ſyrup. She uſed Chicken broath many daies together, wherewith the*

force of the Melancholick Humor was much abated. At laſt I ſent her to the water of Meyne, with the cooling quality whereof her inflamed Liver being brought into temper, ſhe perfectly recovered; and required no more of my advice for fifteen years after. Her Husband had died of the Leproſie.

The 340 *Obſervation, or Hiſtory, of* Famous *and* Rare *Cures, &c.*

Piſsing of worms.

A Young Man that was tormented with pain in his Kidneys, voided with his Urin very many worms, black, as long and thick as an Ordinary needle, horned, of crumbly ſubſtance; two of which worms, if you remember, I ſent to you.

The 341 *Obſervation, or Hiſtory, of* Famous *and* Rare *Cures, &c.*

Fooliſhneſs.

Mſr. N. N. after long uſing of Red Poppy water became fooliſh, and at length died. His Scul being opened, I found the Cavities of his Brain ful of a black Humor like Ink, extream ſtinking.

The 342 *Obſervation, or Hiſtory, of Famous and Rare Cures, &c.*

Fierce Diſtillations with Sweat.

I Have ſeen many troubled with cruel Diſtillations, who did ſweat ſo exceedingly, that it brought them into an extream weakneſs, which I thus ſuppreſſed.

Take *Frankincenſe, Maſtick, red Sanders, Kermes Berries, red Roſe leaves, of each one ounce. Make them into a pouder, wherewith let the patients Head-Cloaths be Smoaked.*

The 343 *Obſervation, or hiſtory, of* Famous *and* Rare *Cures, &c.*

Spots in the Eyes.

WAter of Honey does moſt certainly take away ſpotts out of the Eyes. But if the Eye be pained withal, the pain muſt firſt be aſſwaged before this water be uſed, for it wil cauſe pain. Be ſure to remember that.

The 344 *Obſervation, or Hiſtory, of Famous and Rare Cures, &c.*

Stones preternaturally great.

Mſr. N. N. had naturally very great Stones, ſo that they were far bigger than thoſe of a ſtone-Horſe. He never had Child. I ſuppoſe becauſe he wanted tools fit for that work. After a fal from an Horſe his Cod ſwelled like a great Bal; the ſwelling came to ſuppuration, and great quantity of quittor came away. The ulcer being perfectly clenſed, there fel away pieces of his ſtones which were ſtones indeed, hard as flints, and flew in pieces being ſtruck with an Hammer, as other Stones are wont to do. The Functions of his Body and mind were little altered. At laſt, when a few daies were over a gentle Feaver laid hold upon him, with Anxiety and thirſt, which a little after grew grater: the pulſe on that ſide on which his ſtone was diſeaſed, was much leſſened, before any change could be felt on the other Arm. There followed a deep redneſs in his Face; alſo red pimples in his whol body, which quickly brought death. This ſtory, is indeed very wel worth Obſervation.

The

The 345 *Obſervation, or Hiſtory, of Famous and Rare Cures, &c.*

Twins in the womb.

I Have foretold that my Wife and many other women would bring forth twinns, their Mothers having had twins. Their Great Bellies were troubleſome more than ordinary. Their wombs ſwelled mightily. And their Legs and Feet were in a ſhort time puffed up. The Child moved very little in the laſt months, becauſe it was ſo ſtraitned of Roome, by reaſon its fellow took up half the place. I ſeldome failed in my Prediction.

The 346 *Obſervation, or Hiſtory, of Famous and Rare Cures, &c.*

Blood drawn out actually cold.

I Saw a woman extream angry by Nature, who being ſick of a Feaver, was let blood in my preſence. And when the blood upon the opening of the vein ſpirted upon me, I felt it actually cold, like Ice or Snow. She died within five daies after her Blood-letting.

The 347 *Obſervation, or Hiſtory, of Famous and Rare Cures, &c.*

The Salvatella opened in a Quartan Ague.

TO open the Salvatella vein [which is between the Ring-finger, and the little Finger] is very good in a Quartan Ague. Madam *Troſſella*, having a Quartan Ague, her Salvatella being opened an hour before the fit, ſhe confeſſed her fit was much abated; the next time it was opened, her fit was as good as nothing, after the third opening, her fits quite left her.

The 348 *Obſervation, or Hiſtory, of Famous and Rare Cures, &c.*

Tetters or Ringworms.

MAdam *de Caſtelan*, was troubled with a foul and fierce Tetter or Ring-worm on both her Hands, which vexed her extreamly. She refuſed the uſe of bleeding, purging, and al other Remedies. In a few daies I Cured her after this manner.

Take *Oyntment of Roſes, three ounces. White precipitate, three drams. Mix them and therewith ſmear the parts affected.*

The foreſaid Gentlewoman told me that with this Oyntment ſhe cured a Matron of great quality in *Provence*, troubled with the ſame Diſeaſe.

The 349 *Obſervation, or Hiſtory, of Famous and Rare Cures, &c.*

An hard ſwelling of the Spleen.

AN old Woman troubled with a Scirrhus, or hard ſwelling in her Spleen, beſeeched me to give her ſome eaſe, for ſhe knew ſhe could not eſcape Death. I gave her a pill made of four grains of Laudanum, by which al the troubleſome Symptomes were mitigated, eſpecially ſhortneſs of breath, which had much oppreſſed her, which made me wonder.

The

The 350 *Obſervation, or Hiſtory, of Famous and Rare Cures, &c.*

Convulſion fits in Children.

ALL Children in a manner that are coſtive and bound in their bellies, are ſubject to the Convulſion fits, as I learn out of *Hippocrates*, and by Experience. My Son *Charles* his boy who was perpetually coſtive, died of the Convulſion fits.

The 351 *Obſervation, or Hiſtory, of* Famous *and* Rare Cures, &c.

Swooning upon Blood-letting.

MAny endure wel enough the opening of a vein and the effuſion of their blood, but when their Arm is untied and the Orifice ſtopped, they faint away. You may prevent this accident by giving the patient a meſs of good ſtrengthening Broath, a little before the opening of the Vein, which I have many times experimented.

The 352 *Obſervation, or hiſtorie, of famous and rare* Cures, &c.

Sciatica Pain.

MAny there are who are troubled with very ſharp pains of the Sciatica, they being of a Cholerick temper and it being Summer. Such perſons I do not torment with hot Medicines, but I open a Vein; and after a purging Clyſter, I give them another Clyſter made of broath with Laudanum in it. So I cured your *James*, that witty ſcoffing Companion.

The 353 *Obſervation, or Hiſtory, of famous and Rare Cures, &c.*

Tetters or Ringworms.

A Boy ten years old was vexed with a Tetter; which did ſweat forth a blood watry matter. The wind coming North, that filthy matter was ſuppreſſed, and turned to his Lungs, and cauſed an Horrible ſhortneſs of Breath; which ceaſed ſo ſoon as the wind turned South again.

The 354 *Obſervation, or Hiſtory, of* Famous *and Rare Cures, &c.*

To draw Matter out of an *Impoſtume*.

A Soldier being wounded in the Breaſt, bled not at al for ſeven daies together. With the adviſe of a Chyrurgeon we applied a plaiſter to the wound which drew forth an abundance of matter. *Sigillorius* had alſo a Tumor which came to ſuppuration: but being not wel opened nor in ſeaſon, he was in danger of his Life, the matter being concentrated and kept in, which I drew forth with help of this following Plaiſter.

Take *Rozin of the Pine-tree new, clear, and ſweet ſmelling, one pound. Oyl of Baies and Terpentine, of each two ounces; Gum Elemni, four ounces. The Rozin and Gum muſt firſt abide in the pan til they are mixed, afterward add the Terpentine and the Oyl, and let al boyl together again, then ſtrain them through a Courſe Cloath. Spread a part hereof upon leather. Make a Plaiſter and lay it upon the wound. Renew it in the winter only once a day, but in the Summer twice in a day, and you ſhal ſee wonders. Neither do I think there*

is

is any thing more certain in al my Obſervations, as you may learn out of Pareus, *his* 10. *Book Chap.* 30, *Touching wounds in the Breaſt and Cheſt. Now the foreſaid Plaiſter muſt have two or three long ſlits in it in the middle, that the matter which is drawn may flow out eaſily.*

The 355 *Obſervation, or Hiſtory, of Famous and Rare Cures, &c.*

To aſſwage the pain of tetters.

A Mettleſome Woman troubled with a cruel Tetter with extream pain, al other Remedies being tried in Vain, was wonderfully eaſed with this following Pultis.

Take *ſix Rotten apples, draw them into pulp through an hair ſearſe, and add thereto Oyl of Roſes, two ounces; a little Breaſt Milk, and make a Cataplaſme, and lay it upon the part pained. I have found by long experience that rotten Apples do more aſſwage pain, than roaſted or Boyled ones, which alwaies retain ſomwhat of the fire in them.*

The 356 *Obſervation, or Hiſtory, of famous and rare Cures, &c.*

Summer feavers of Children.

IN the Months of *July, Auguſt,* and *September,* a great number of ſucking Children die, which our Women ſay were troubled with the Worms. But I avouch that their Death is Cauſed by the ſharpneſs of their Nurſes Milk, wherewith their Stomach is inflamed, for their Hands and Feet are cold, they are extream thirſty, very unquiet, apt to vomit, and have a looſneſs, as my ſelf can witneſs. Wherefore they muſt be let blood, and then this following Cataplaſme muſt be applied to their Stomach.

Take *Barley Meal, one pound; Crummy part of white bread, four ounces; Boyl them gently in Goats Milk, adding afterwards, Juyce of Night-ſhade, one ounce. Oyl of Roſes as much as ſhal ſuffice. Mix al into a Cataplaſme to mitigate the pain of Inflamation. We muſt alſo change the Nurſe, and give the ſick Child the Mucilage of Flea-wort ſeeds in a ſpoon with a little Sugar of Roſes. Alſo Chicken broaths qualified with Purſlane, Sorrel, or Lettuce. Alſo we muſt apply Pidgeons or the like Creatures cut down the back, to draw forth the raging heat of their ſtomach.*

The 357 *Obſervation, or* Hiſtory, *of* Famous *and Rare* Cures, &c.

VVorms.

OUr Women are of Opinion that al Children have worms; but when they void none, the women ſay the Worms are turned into putrid Excrements. And it is wel ſaid. For ſeeing Worms put into a Glaſs and covered with warm dung do ſoon turn into a paſt: why may not the ſame thing happen in our bodies, whoſe heat reſembles that of hot dung, the Worms being killed by bitter Medicaments? This ſeems to me very rational.

The 358 *Obſervation, or Hiſtory, of Famous and* Rare Cures, &c.

Symptomes of the Mother.

A Melancholick Woman ſubject to fits of the Mother, did once a day void a great Quantity of Urin, crude and without any color: which being voided a world of Symptomes preſently followed, coming as it were out of the Trojan Horſe: to tel the Cauſe whereof I count it extream difficult. For ſometimes ſhe had a pain in her Head, ſometimes her Heart panted, ſometimes

times ſhe ſwooned away, ſomtimes ſhe was ſtomach ſick, ſomtimes ſhe did ſweat in her Neck and Forehead, ſomtimes ſhe ſhivered al her body over. But whence come al theſe Symptoms? I conceive verily they ought to be referred to the Womb, which is the ſink of Womens bodies. For ſeeing the foreſaid Symptomes came not til ſhe had voided her Urin, I am of this Opinion, that her bladder being ful and reſting upon her womb, did with its Bulk keep the Womb faſt and cloſe. Whereupon the impurities and vapors contained in the Cavity of the Womb, could not freely play their Reax in other parts of the body; but when the Urin was voided, thoſe putrid Humors became free, and cauſed thoſe Various accidents.

The 359 Obſervation, or hiſtory, of famous and Rare Cures, &c.

An Horrible Vomiting.

A Maid of twenty five years old, complained of a pain in her Spleen, which was very inward; after which followed a Scirrhus or hard ſwelling. She vomited every day at ſeveral times twenty or twenty two pound of a greeniſh Humor. In *November*, ſhe fel into a terrible Dropſie, and the ſixteen day of *January*, ſhe died. I ſaw a Country-man who vomited almoſt every day, but at ſeveral times, twenty, twenty five, or thirty pounds of that greeniſh Humor, who was Cured by the uſe of ſteel, and he is perfectly wel at this very day. Which verily is worth the marking.

The 360 Obſervation, or Hiſtory, of famous and Rare Cures, &c.

A Catarrhe.

NOthing does more ſtop a Catarrhe or flux of Rheum, than this following Cataplaſme of *Rulandus*.

Take *ſtrong Leven, two ounces. Amber powdered, two drams. Make hereof a Cataplaſme, and apply it to the Crown of the Head, after the Hair is firſt ſhaven away.*

The 361 Obſervation, or hiſtory, of famous and Rare Cures, &c.

A feaver cauſed by being in the rain.

MAny wet with Rain become ſick, and very often they fal into a continual Feaver, the tranſpiration of Excrements through the pores of their Skin, being hindred, which is very apt to breed Feavers. After blood-letting, I have found nothing better than to open the pores again, with a ſweating Decoction.

Take *Salſaparilla, one ounce; Cardnus ſeeds, half an ounce; Scabious, Marygolds, of each half an handful. Make a Decoction of al together, and let the ſtrained liquor be drunk hot, with a little white Wine, or a few drops of Treacle water mingled therewith. I have ſeen many Phyſitians, who never thought of Sudorificks in this caſe, yet when they ſaw the Effects of my ſweating drink, they could not but commend the ſame.*

The 362 Obſervation, or hiſtory, of Famous and Rare Cures, &c.

A prognoſtick of the ſmal pocks.

AS many as I have ſeen ſick of the ſmal Pocks or Meazles, having their belly diſtended and making a Noyſe, with unquietneſs, tumbling and toſing, I Obſerved that they al died within few daies, eſpecially if pain were joyned with thoſe other Symptomes.

The

The 363 Obſervation, or hiſtory, of famous and Rare Cures, etc.

A prognoſtick from the Conſtitution of the Yard.

IN the yeare 1640. in the Month of *October*. upon the twelfth, thirteenth, fourteenth, and fifteenth dayes, ſo great a cold happened, that al our brooks and Rivers were frozen with Ice In *February*. following Pains in the ſides were very rife, of which many dyed.

The 364 Obſervation, or Hiſtory, of famous and Rare Cures, &c.

A Prognoſtick in a continual feaver.

I Have ſeen an infinite number of Patients, who being ſick of Feavers ſlept not at al, yet remained quiet, without complainings and never ſpeaking unleſs they were ſpoken to, and asked a queſtion. And if you went about to feel their pulſe, they would pul back their trembling and, as if they were afraid of their life. I have obſerved, that al ſuch Perſons bad the world adiew.

The 365 Obſervation, or Hiſtory, of Famous and Rare Cures, &c.

Rottenneſs of the Teeth:

I Have ſeen many in this Climate tormented with Tooth-ach, by reaſon of rotten and hollow teeth. I am wont to fil the hollow teeth with terpentine, and to burn the tooth with a red hot iron, which ſucceeds very happily.

An Obſervation communicated from Mſr. *Dabadi*, a moſt Famous Phyſitian at *Tholous*.

The 366 Obſervation, or Hiſtory, of Famous and Rare Cures, &c.

Scabbyneſs with Itching, in a Man of eighty years old.

THe moſt illuſtrious Senator and Dean Mſr. *de Mauſſac*, being neare the age of four ſcore and four yeares, naturally of a conſtitution mixt of blood and choller, in which choler prevailed, moderatly fleſhy and of a propper ſtature, and wel ſhaped Body, with a nimble induſtrious wit, and a rare faculty to debate Caſes of Law, not ordinary for one of his years: In former times he enjoyed his health very wel, finding no alteration from the weather whither hot or cold. Yet in the ſpace of five years, three times he ſuffered ſome abatement of health by reaſon of Indigeſtion of his meat, not that his ſtomach languiſhed through age, nor through any fault in his diet. He was not given to feaſting, nor to pleaſe his palate; yet he delighted in ſallates and fruites that wil not laſt; which though they ſeem familiar to our natures, and eaſie of digeſtion; yet can they hardly be converted into good blood, whereupon bad humors are collected, which putrefiyng upon any ſlight occaſion, doe often breed malignant feavers, as *Galen* hints in his ſecond Book of the faculty of meates. And this I obſerve to have happened to this venerable old man, firſt in *May*, the yeare after about autumn, and laſtly; but worſt of al, about the time in which the Pleiades are wont to diſappear;

whereupon he ſel into an accute feaver, which every other day had ſome exacerbation, after the Inſult whereof he vouded upward and downward an excrementitious flegmatick humor, which was at laſt mingled with choller, with great unquietnels and heart-burning, which are ſigns of at leaſt a baſtard Cholera; out of which dangerous condition he eſcaped upon the ſeventh day, nature driving out the reliques of the morbifick Matter to the skin, whereupon aroſe a filthy itch al his body over, but eſpecially in his legs and chiefly in the left leg, where aroſe a red fiery ſwelling, the matter whereof being in a manner diſcuſſed, there remained an inflamatory diſpoſition like the ſhingles or St. Anthonies fire, with painful itching, often provoking him to ſcratch, ſpringing from a mingled ichorous matter, ſalt, ſharp and pricking, which was ſhed abroad through both his leggs; ariſing from a mingled Cacochymia and Cachexia, which is familiar to old men; and it was ſo much the worſe becauſe both his legs did a little ſwel, which ſhewed great weakneſs of his Liver and other Bowels, which being weakned (eſpecially his liver) with the foregoing heat of the feaver, it was much to be doubted, whether (in ſo great age eſpecially) they could be reſtored to their ancient good Condition.

We began the cure with a vomit, he being enclined thereunto, that we might empty the evil humor floating in his ſtomach: Then we purged him downwards with a gentle purge. But when the Diſeaſe would not give way, we began to think of opening a vein, about which we were divided in our Opinions: his old Age and a Cachexia begun, which was cleare from his extreame itching and the ſwelling of his legs and feet, pleaded againſt blood-letting. Howbeit his feaver growning more intenſe, he was let blood, and not without cauſe; ſeeing that it is better to run a hazard, than certainly to periſh. Bad blood came away, he bore it wel, and had his Criſis on the ſeventh day, the reliques of the morbifick matter being driven out into the habit of his body and to his legs. After ſome dayes we thought fit again to purge out the il humors that were gathering head afreſh, that we might more ſafely uſe a bath of freſh water, To procure tranſpiration, to temper the heat and acrimony of the humors and vapours, alſo to open the skin & let them forth. After the bath had been uſed divers days, his itch became more troubleſome than before, the il humors being drawn from the Centry to the Circumference, which had not been ſufficiently purged forth. Wherefore becauſe our Patient refuſed to take any more purges I reſolved to draw the humors away by little and little with a gentle Lenitive, and to try what aſſes Milk would doe, which *Hippocrates* ſometimes uſed inſtead of a Linitive and purging Medicament, as may be ſeen in the fourth Book *de Diæta Acutorum*. And the event was according to my deſire, for having a whole month together drunk of the Aſſes milk, his belly of it ſelf very dry and coſtive was looſened, and he vouded abundance of excrementitious humors, in the place of which good humors bred; and the dregs of his groſs humors being attenuated, his hemorrhoid veins opened, by the flux whereof he was reſtored to his former Health; yea, and became more luſty. I ſay nothing of the ſtrengthening things we gave him, nor of the oyntments and other outward applications to mitigate the itch, and when the fervor of the ſhingles was abated, to diſcuſs the remaining morbifick matter; al which did much good to our Patient, by the bleſſing of Almighty God, the giver of Health, and al good things beſide.

An Obſervation communicated by Mſr. *Antonius Jodon*, a Renowned Phyſitian at *Autiſſiodore*.

The 367 *Obſervation, or Hiſtory, of Famous and Rare Cures*, &c.

A Dropſie of the Stomach.

IN the year 1620. a Woman ſomwhat tal of ſtature forty eight yeares old, named *Joane Delier*, wife of a Citizen of this City, beleeved that ſhe was with child, her belly growing ſtil bigger and bigger. But when ſhe knew the time of childbearing was paſt, ſhe went to a phyſitian who preſently told her ſhe was fallen into a dropſie. Medicines being taken

taken in vein; the ſwelling of her belly continuing three years together, (ſhe ſtil following her ordinary Employments) it grew at length ſo great, that ſhe was ſcarce able to beare ſo great a Burthen. At laſt ſhe fel into a continual feaver, with ſhorter breath than before, and an unquenchable thirſt, together with much tumbling and unquietneſs. Within the ſeventh day ſhe died. Whoſe body becauſe it could not be incloſed in a Coffin, becauſe of the extream greatneſs of her belly, in al parts thereof; being deſired of her Parents, I cut her belly, and ſo great a quantity of wheyiſh liquour came out, that it weighed above nintie pound weight. At laſt there came a thick and troubled humor, which was the ground & ſettlings of the wheyish excrement. Which being done, and ſpunges put into the holes, which we had cut to let out the hydropick Humor; we proceeded in an orderly way to diſſect her whole belly, and when we looked for the peritonæum that we might diſſect the ſame, a ſtrange thing to ſay, but more ſtrange to ſee, this Membrain whoſe office it is to cover the natural parts, did ſo ſtrongly cleave to the forepart of the ſtomach, that it could not be parted without breaking or cutting. Yea and we found our ſtopple which we had left in the wound ſlipt into the cavity of the ſtomach. Before the cutting up whereof, we did conſider a while its unuſual greatneſs and its two orifices, the Stomachus and Pylorus having both the ſame ſituation, and touching one the other, the Cal poſſeſſing the uper Region; the Liver found enough, which yet the twelling ſtomach did bear up, the Heart (with the Midrif between) bearing heavy thereupon, had ſet its print upon it, as if it had been upon waxe. No wonder ſhe was ſo troubled with ſhortneſs of wind for two yeares ſpace. The reſt of her inwards, as the ſpleen, kidnies, Guts, Meſentery, Gal-Bladder, Piſs-Bladder, and womb, were ſound, and little altered by the Heat of her feaver. Theſe things thus obſerved, we drew forth that mighty ſtomach with the Gullet and Gut Duodenum; and being cut open through the middle it was above a *Paris*-Ell broad; in the lower part thereof we obſerved a ſerous Mudder being the remainder of the ſettlings of the foreſaid hydropick humor. Al the fibres of the inner membrane were far ſeparated one from another. There was no fault in either of its orifices, ſave that in the Middle of the pilorus in its uppermoſt part, there hung a Bladder half a finger long, and a little thicker than a mans thumb, ful of tranſparent water, and entring almoſt into the cavity of the Duodenum Gut. We obſerved alſo the inner membrain of the ſtomach, ſtudded as it were with many little water bladderkies, part whole, and part eaten aſunder. And theſe are things (if I miſtake not) never obſerved before by any mortal man, I am ſure I never read or heard the like. Now when I conſidered ſeriouſly with my ſelf what ſhould be the cauſe of ſo unwonted a diſeaſe as this, being a dropſie proceeding from the ſtomach; I could lay the fault no where elſe, but in an habitual cold and moiſt diſtemper of the whole ſtomach, which when it drew nouriſhment from the trunk of Vena Porta by the Ramus gaſtricus, and other branches, by reaſon of its diſtemper it turned, the ſaid nouriſhment into a wheyiſh excrement, juſt as the liver does, when a dropſie is cauſed thereby. And the ſaid cold and moiſt diſtemper of the ſtomach came by much drinking of cold water, eating of raw fruit, and other ſuch like cauſes. And for as much as by reaſon of the great looſneſs of the fibres of the ſtomach, and the perverſe figure of that part, the lower orifice was ſituate juſt even with with the upper, the meates did eaſily paſs from one unto the other, ſo that they were not drowned in that vaſt whorlepit of Seroſities, but were in ſome meaſure Chylified in the gut Duodenum; for al grant that the Guts can make chyle, and nature when neceſſity compels, may render their chylifactive power more effectual than ordinary. Now the ſtomach did not expel the water by thoſe open paſſages, becauſe its fibres were reſolved and deprived of their activity by the plenty of moiſture wherewith they were ſoaked.

Obſervations communicated by Mſr. *Francis Chomel,* the Renowned Phyſitian of the *Annonæenſians.*

The 368 *Obſervation, or* Hiſtory, *of* Famous and Rare Cures, &c.

The Iliack Paſsion, or Miſerere mei.

A Certain Man being five dayes troubled with the Iliack paſſion, ſo that he Vomited up his dung, and many medicines being tryed in vain, he took an ounce of quickſilver Killed with Brimſtone, encloſed in a little bal of wax. Preſently after he had taken it in, fomentations were continually applied and clyſters frequently injected. After ſome hours, little bits of wax were ſeen in a Clyſter which came from him, which was a token that the paſſage was open, ſo that a purge being given him, he was perfectly cured of his diſeaſe.

The 369 *Obſervation, or* Hiſtory, *of famous and rare Cures,* &c.

The Efficacy of an iſſue.

A Certain Man long time afflicted with pain in his Loines, when nothing would help him, at length he died. Among other Remedies, a little before his death an iſſue was made in his thigh, four fingers above his knee, out of which when the cruſt fel off there flowed a kind of bloody waterish ſubſtance, about the quantity of half an ounce; but afterwards there came out of the iſſue every day an ounce of true and wel conditioned matter or quitor, or more. The Chyrurgeon wondered and could not deviſe whence that matter came. The Man being dead & his body opened, his Lungs were found ful of matter, which was the chief cauſe of his death. And in his loins a great impoſtume was found, from whence that continual and ſtubborn pain proceeded. And from the ſaid impoſtume unto the iſſue was found a gutter or little Conduit pipe, by which ſome part of the Quittor flowed from the ſaid Impoſtume out at the iſſue. By which we may gather what induſtery nature is wont to uſe in expelling morbifick Cauſes, who framed that ſame conduit pipe to purge the Impoſtume in the Loines by the iſſue; howbeit ſhe could not bring to paſs what ſhe intended, being overcome by the greatneſs of the Diſeaſe.

The 370 *Obſervation, or Hiſtory, of Famous and Rare Cures,* &c.

A Tertian Ague.

THe ſaid Mſr. *Chomel* told me, that he was wont to Cure all tertians in a manner, by giving the patient an hour before the fit a good draught of the Decoction of Chamemel and Cream of Tartar, and preſently after the medicine was taken, letting the patient blood. If he have no decoction ready, he is wont to give the patient a draught of cold water, and the ſame effect for the moſt part followes. He conceives that the water, by meanes of the blood-letting is drawn into the Veines, and that it does temper the morbifick matter, and keep it from fermenting or working, by which meanes the fit is hindred.

The 371 *Obſervation, or hiſtory, of famous and* Rare Cures, &c.

Pain of the Colick.

A Young Maiden of the age of fourteen years, was vexed with a moſt cruel pain of the colick, with a ſwelling of her belly, which could not be mitigated neither by clyſters, nor purging

ging potions, nor by potions to kil worms; only it was allayed by a lukewarm bath; but when ſhe came out of the bath, it returned, & within twenty days brought her to her grave. Two dayes together immediatly before her death, ſhe voided a great Quantity of exceeding black blood by ſtool. Her body being opened, much glaſſie flegme was found ſticking to the outer coat of her guts, and during the whol length of the guts, it was diſperſed here and there in bits of different greatneſs, ſo that ſome were as big as beans, others no bigger than hafel Nuts. In her veines and in the Ventricles of her Heart, we found no blood at al, Becauſe Nature with al her might had driven it into the Guts, where it turned black, as al blood out of the veins is wont to doe, and before her death was voided forth. Where we are to obſerve the ſeat of the Matter which cauſed this colick pain, which is not ſpoken of by Authors, viz. the outward ſurface of the guts.

Obſervations received from Mſr. *John Marſin* a Skilful Apamienſian Phyſitian.

The 372 Obſervation, or Hiſtory, of Famous and Rare Cures, etc.

Bottle-bellyed Dropſie.

IN the Yeare 1642. in the month of *October*, I was ſent for unto a boy of 14. years old, who after the ſmal pocks had been troubled with the dropſie for a month together; he had no feaver, yet was ſo weake, that he was fain to keep his bed. I preſcribed forthwith an Aperitive and water purging Apozem, the ſame which is deſcribed in the Practice of Dr. *Riverius*, in his chapter of the dropſie. And after the uſe of the Apozeme, I ordered him to be ſmoaked, as it were in a ſtove, with aperitive and diſcuſſing materials, for three dayes together, once in a day. Whereupon he was perfectly wel.

The 373 Obſervation, or Hiſtory of Famous and Rare Cures, &c.

Inflamation of the Teſticles with ſuppreſsion of Urine.

THe ſame yeare, in the month of *Decem*. I viſited a Man fifty yeares old troubled with an inflamation of his right teſticle, and with ſuppreſſion of his Urine. I preſcribe him a clyſter, partly emollient and laxative, partly expelling wind; and when that was come away, I cauſe him to bleed eight ounces from the vena baſilica of his right arme. I cauſed his reins to be anointed with oyl of ſcorpions of *Matthiolus*, and after he was anointed I cauſe a pan-cake made of onions cut in ſmal bits, and egs beaten together, with Hogs Greaſe, to be applied to the ſame part. And the day after I gave him a bolus of Caſſia, Diaphenicon and poudred rhubarb. Hereupon he piſt luſtily. And for his inflamed teſticle we made a Cataplaſme or pultis of bean meal boyled in vinegar and water unto a juſt Conſiſtence. Which medicine being applied three dayes together unto the part affected he was reſtored to his former health.

The 374 Obſervation, or hiſtory, of famous and Rare Cures, &c.

Urine ſtopt.

THe Same yeare and month, I met with a woman forty yeares old fat and wel fleſhed, troubled with a ſtoppage of her urine. Shee had a feaver but not very ſtrong; and her urine which ſhe made in very ſmal Quantity, was very red, with a great pain about the reines of her

Back

back: finally ſhe vomited ever and anon by fits. Many emollient, Laxative, and wind-expelling Clyſters were given her, but in vain; ſhe was twice let blood, viz. in her arm and in her foot. Alſo fomentations and ointments were applied, as in ſuch caſes is uſual. A bole was given her, made of caſſia, Diaphenicon and rhubarb, but all in vain. At laſt I applied the pancack commended in the former obſervation, to her reins; with the which ſhe ſlept quietly, piſt plentifully, and found her ſelf very wel. The like ſucceſs befel me, in another patient, who having an acute feaver, without any pain of the Reines, and yet was not able to make water: the foreſaid pancak being applied, he piſt afterwards, and his Feaver being chaſed away, became perfectly wel.

The 375 Obſervation, or Hiſtory, of Famous and Rare Cures, &c.

A Fiſtulous Ulcer.

IN the Month of *January*, *Anno* 1643. Mſr. *Ferries*, a Varilienſian, being fifty five years old, of a very Cholerick Complexion, and one that had wearied himſelf with many Cares and Labors, deſired me to undertake to cure him. He had been troubled for four years paſt with divers pains in his Breaſt, cauſed by Humors falling down from his Head into the outward parts of his Cheſt. He had about the Bone called *Clavicula*, a ſwelling as big as a Hens Egg: but, which was worſe, there appeared a tumor on the right ſide of *Os Pubis*, as big as a couple of Gooſe Eggs, out of which being opened there had flowed for ſome months together, well-conditioned matter or quittor: there was a deep Ulcer, almoſt half a Foot deep: for the healing whereof, many Medicines were tried, but all in vain; ſo that every one feared it would prove a Fiſtula. I ſet upon the Cure after this manner:

I preſcribed firſt of all a purging Potion, which was made to purge partly flegm, and partly Choler. Then I cauſed him to be let blood. Then I gave him Apozemes made of temperate Aperitives, Wound-herbs, and Purgatives. When he had done with them, he took of this following Decoction, twice a day for twelve daies together.

Take *Barley entire one pugill*; *the Leaves of Scabious, Sanicle, Mouſ-ear, Vinca pervinca, Agrimony, and Pimpernell, of each one handful. Seeds of St. Johns wort, and Cardus Benedictus, of each two drams: Of the three cordial Flowers, of each a pugil. Boyl all in weak Hydromel,* [*that is, Honey and Water boyled together, the Honey being in ſmall quantity*] *unto one pound and half. Of the ſtrained Liquor let him take ſix ounces morning and evening.*

In the mean while, Injections were made dayly into the Ulcer of the ſame Decoction. But when all would not do, but that all the foreſaid Infirmities continued: I preſcribed him a ſweating Diet Drink for twenty five dayes together, made of a Decoction of Salſa parilla, and Guajacum, of each a like quantity. Of the remaining materials a Diet-drink was made for his ordinary drink. And every ſixt day of his Diet, he took a purging Medicament. Towards the end of the diet-drink, the Ulcer ſeeming to remain much as it was at firſt, I cauſed the Chyrurgeon to put a ſtick into the wound, and cut the Skin and Fleſh which was above it, being about a Fingers breadth deep, with an Inciſion Knife, that the Cavity thereof being opened, we might more eaſily apply convenient Medicines. The event did anſwer according to my wiſh, for that ſame ſpongy proud fleſh being conſumed, the Ulcer was in a ſhort time healed up, and the patient freed both from the pains he felt, and from the fears he had conceived of a Fiſtula. To perfect and ſeal up the Cure, I ordered an Iſſue to be made in his left Arm, and that it ſhould be kept open for a long time.

The 376 Obſervation, or Hiſtory, of Famous and Rare Cures, &c.

The After-birth retained.

AT the ſame time, Madam *de Ruffia*, being aged thirty five years, of a Sanguine Complexion, having brought forth a Child with much pain and Labor, had her After-birth remaining

ning within her Womb. We could not feel any pulſe that ſhe had, her Face was like a dead Bodies Face, ſo that all ſeemed paſt hope. When I came to her, a certain Chyrurgeon had given order, that ſome of her Hair ſhould be cut off and burnt, and the aſhes given her in a cup of Wine: which being done, her After-birth came very happily away. Howbeit, her Childbed purgations were ſtopped, which caſt her into a Feaver. The day after I cauſed her to bleed eight ounces in her right Foot (for her Pulſe was ſtrong and full) and the day following, becauſe ſhe was Coſtive, I ordered that ſhe ſhould take this following Clyſter.

Take *Mallows, Violet Leaves, Pellitory, and Mercury Leaves, of each one handfull. Flowers of Chamemel and Melilot, of each one pugil. Annis ſeed, and Fennel ſeed, of each half an ounce. Boyl all in the Broath of a Calves Head to a pound. In the ſtrained Liquor diſſolve Syrup of Violets, and Red Sugar, of each one ounce, and give it for a Clyſter.*

When the Clyſter was come away, ſhe had a Vein opened in her left Foot, and bled ſeven ounces. By this means her Feaver was abated, her ſleep returned, which formerly ſhe was wholly deprived of, and by little and little, without any more ado by way of Phyſick, ſhe grew well.

The 377 Obſervation, or Hiſtory, of Famous and rare Cures, &c.

A Salt rhewm, with inclination to a Conſumption of the Lungs.

IN *October*, 1643. I was called unto a ſick man forty years of Age, of a Cholerick Complexion, and of a lean and meagre Body. He was troubled with a ſalt and ſharp Rhewm, falling from his Head upon his Lungs, four years together; he had a very dry Cough, and obſtructions in the parts under his ſhort Ribs, on both ſides, with a ſlow continual Feaver. Ad hereunto an Inflamation, which appeared by a pain about his Breaſt-bone, and the Vertebraes of his Back.

I ordered him in the firſt place a purge made of Rhubarb, Tamarinds, Senna, Manna, and Syrup of Roſes, but in little Quantities. Then I cauſed ſeven ounces of blood to be taken from his right Arm. Afterward I made him take Broaths made of temperate Aperitives, for twelve daies together, ſteeping all night in every third Broath, half an ounce of Senna, and diſſolving therein an ounce of Manna. When he had done with his Broaths, he went into a lukewarm particular Bath made of a Decoction of Barley and ſweet Almonds, twice a day, three dayes together. At the beginning of the Cure, I cauſed two Iſſues to be made between his Shoulder-blades, two fingers breadth diſtant from the Back bone, on either ſide thereof: and I give order that once a week a Cupping glaſs ſhould be faſtened upon the Iſſues. Which Remedy prevailed ſo much in this Patient, by reaſon of the ſeroſities, which in great quantity were drawn away every time the Cups were faſtened, that I attribute the whol Cure in a manner thereunto.

The 378 Obſervation, or Hiſtory, of Famous and Rare Cures, &c.

Inflamation of the Eyes.

A Certain Man of thirty years old, of a Sanguine Complexion, but of a very moiſt Rheumatick Brain, was long troubled with an Inflamation, which did poſſeſs both that Coat of the Eye which is called *Tunica adnata*, and both the Eye-lids. The Diſeaſe was not continual, but came by Fits. Many Medicines had formerly been uſed, but all in vain. At laſt I preſcribed two Iſſues between his Shoulder-blades, and cauſed a Cupping-Glaſs large enough to cover them both to be applied, ſo often as the Rhewm was more than ordinary. Which being done, his Eyes became perfectly well. This following Oyntment did not a little further the Cure, which he uſed at the beginning, as ſoon as his body had been purged, and a Vein opened.

Take

Take *Verdigreece twelve grains; Camphire, and Lapis Calaminaris, of each half an ounce; Tutty prepared, half a dram; fresh butter washed in Rose-water, two ounces. Mix all into an Oyntmint.*

The 379 Observation, or History, of famous and Rare Cures, &c.

A Malignant feaver.

IN the Month of *May*, 1644. a Woman of thirty years old, desired me to take her into Cure. She had been sick two daies of a malignant Feaver, with a pain in her Head, continual unquietness, extream thirst, and certain blewish Spots about her breast and back. Thrice in two daies I caused her to bleed eight ounces at each time, and because she abhorred all inward Medicines, I bethought my self of some that might be outwardly applied. On the fift day of her Disease, I caused a Cataplasm of Snails beaten with their shells into a mass, to be applied with Tow upon the Soals of her Feet. This Medicine was applied about three a clock in the afternoon; and when it began to draw towards night, the sick Woman began to feel a certain grievous and troublesom pain, in both her Thighs and Legs, which continued till midnight, so fierce, that she alwaies made her complaint, desiring the Cataplasm might be taken from her Feet. And at midnight she swet all over her body, with such a filthy stinking smell, that she her self could hardly endure the same. Having shifted her Linnen, the Cataplasms were taken from her Feet, which did so stink as that they had almost poisoned the By-standers. In the morning I find the Woman cheerfull, her Feaver and other Symptomes being very much abated. And I conceiving that she was past all danger, I thought good to do no more to her, only I prescribed her a purge, which notwithstanding through extream self-willedness, she refused to take; howbeit, a little after, she perfectly recovered.

The 380 Observation, or history, of famous and rare Cures, &c.

The Gout.

IN the Month of *February*, 1645. a Gentleman of a Sanguine Complexion, fat, and well fleshed, was for three daies troubled with the Gout in his Knees. As soon as I visited him, I order him to bleed a pound of blood: which appearing very impure, the day following I caused him to bleed as much more, whereby the Patient found himself much relieved, the blood being as bad as the former. Then I caused him to bleed the third time ten ounces; and the day following I gave him a purge made of Senna and Rhubarb in a convenient Decoction, with Diaphenicon, and Syrup of Roses, after which he was perfectly well.

The like success befell me in two other Patients, which were of the same temper and corpulency, in whom blood-letting three or four times repeated at the beginning of the Cure, wholly took away the Disease, the part being fomented with Vinegar and Water mingled together, and afterwards anointed with Oyl of Roses.

Obſervations received from Mſr. *Des Grands Prez*, a moſt Expert Phyſitian of *Grenoble*.

The 381 *Obſervation, or Hiſtory, of Famous and Rare Cures*, &c.

A Swelling of the tongue.

A Certain Perſon infected with the Whore-maſters Pox, was cured with Mercurial Fricti̇ons, which by order of the Apothecary, being uſed more frequently, and longer than the Phyſitian had preſcribed; the extream violence of the Flux, had ſo ſwelled his Tongue, that it hung out of his mouth the breath of four Fingers. Which to Remedy, the Phyſitian would preſcribe nothing, taking it hainouſly that the Order by him preſcribed had been neglected and exceeded. Whereupon the Patient continued in this miſerable condition for the ſpace of four months, and his Tongue being altered by the air was grown three fingers thick. I being ſent for, after blood-letting, waſhing of the part affected, and a Seton faſtened in his Neck, order a Pouder to be applied to his Tongue, made of Pepper, Ginger, Muſtard ſeed, and parched Salt. With the uſe whereof his Tongue began to grow ſoft, and to move it ſelf the firſt day, The third day I order them to waſh it oftentimes in Aqua vitæ very well rectified; ſo that upon the fourth day it appeared much ſofter, and might be thruſt into his mouth, howbeit it would come out again preſently. But afterward perceiving certain Ulcers in the lower part of his Tongue near the Veins called *Ranulæ*, which proceeded from the grating of the Teeth whereupon it reſted; I cauſed the ſaid Ulcers to be waſhed with the white water made of white precipitate, and I ordered deep Scarifications to be made about the foreſaid Veins. By which means, within few daies the Tumor was wholly diſcuſt, and the Tongue brought to abide within its proper Quarters.

The 382 *Obſervation, or Hiſtory, of famous and* Rare *Cures*, &c.

A dumb perſon Cured by Accident.

A Certain Beggar was entertained in way of Hoſpitality by a wealthy Farmer, in whoſe Houſe he remained certain daies by reaſon of a dumb and Deaf boy he had brought with him, who was the ſame night taken with a continual Feaver. At length the Beggar being out of patience and deſpairing of his recovery, he ſlipt privately away and left the ſick boy behind him, who recovering his wonted health, was by the Farmer ſet firſt to look to his Lambs, and after that to keep his Sheep and Wethers, which ſervice he performed excellent wel. Now it fel out ſome years after, that being at Dice, he was ſtruck over the pate with a thick cudgel, and the hinder part of his Scul was broken into many peices. Howbeit by the induſtry of a Skilful Chyrurgeon he was Cured of that very Dangerous hurt. And as he grew wel his ſenſe of hearing began to come to him, and he began to mutter and babble ſome words, til that at laſt he attained to hear and ſpeak perfectly; in which condition he lived to the fourty five year of his Age, ſerving as Vine-Dreſſer, to Mſr. *Pajanus*, Proctor of *Grenoble*; and it is ſcarce two years ſince he died.

The 383 *Obſervation, or Hiſtory, of famous and Rare Cures, &c.*

Depreſsion of the Skul.

IN many a Depreſſion of the Skul has been cured, a Cupping-glaſs (after once or twice blood-letting) being faſtned upon the depreſſion with much flame; and ſomtimes Inciſion is added with many Scarifications, and ſomtimes without them. Among the reſt, I ſhal inſtance in one remarkable patient, named *Arthaudus*, a Procter of *Grenoble*. This man being upon a far Journey, met his enemy and was ſtruck on the *Os Parietal Siniſtrum*, with which blow he was ſtruck to the ground, and left for dead. Being carried thence into a neighbour Village, two Chyrurgeons did undertake to cure him, who uſed only blood-letting and Cupping-glaſſes, without any regard of his wound, becauſe they could perceive no maniſeſt ſolution of continuity. I being ſent for, find the man wallowing in blood, which came out of his mouth and noſtrils, with ſtomach ſickneſs, and almoſt perpetual vomiting, hardly knowing them that were about him. Speaking with great difficulty, and not ſo much as opening his Eyes. Having viewed his whol Head, when I did but touch his Skul where it was dented in, never ſo little, with the top of my finger, preſently he began to be ſtomach ſick. Which having obſerved, I ordered the Chyrurgeon to ſhave that part, and apply a great Cupping-Glaſs thereunto, with much flame, which though it reſted upon the ſound and ſolid parts, did ſo much pain the patient, that not being able to ſpeak, he ſhrunk down muttering into his bed. But after the Cupping-Glaſs was removed, and inciſion made upon the part affected, and the Cupping-glaſs again ſet on, he was ſo far from being pained, that he perceived great comfort thereby: and thereupon began to ſpeak to me, and knew al the By-ſtanders. And though ſeven or eight ounces of Blood were drawn away by the Cupping-Glaſs; I ordered nevertheleſs, that the next day he ſhould be again let blood. And thus the ſick man, a few daies after, recovered his perfect health.

The 384 *Obſervation, or hiſtory, of famous and rare* Cures, &c.

Conſumption of the Lungs.

THe third Son of the Lord *de Periſſol*, Preſident in the Parliament of *Grenoble*, being fourteen years of Age, was brought from *Geneva* to *Grenoble*, in the eight month of his diſeaſe, being conſumed with Leanneſs and Conſumption of the Lungs, with a very great Looſneſs, ſo that I foretold his Father he would ſhortly die, becauſe of an ulcer of his lungs, which he coughed up bit after bit, and thoſe bits being laid upon the hot coales, they ſtunk extreamly. Alſo his breath ſmelt ſo ſtrong, that it did not only infect the ſick mans Chamber, but was ſmelt al the ſtaires over, by thoſe that lodged near. All which conſidered, I ſaid I could appoint him no other Medicine than a Womans Milk, which he muſt ſuck from the Dugs of an healthy wel diſpoſed Nurſe. Which putting in Practice the next day, the patient was ſomthing better the day after, and within two months he was perfectly thereby recovered. This Diſeaſe aroſe from a pleuriſie ill cured, which was changed into an Empyema, and the Empyema into a Conſumption of the Lungs. This very Medicine I have experimented in many other perſons, in my ſelf and Son, and two Gentlemen who did ſpit blood in great Quantity.

The 385 *Obſervation, or hiſtory, of* Famous *and Rare Cures, &c.*

Pricking of a Nerve.

A Certain Merchant of *Grenoble*, ſmiting upon a table with his Hand doubled in, ſtruck a Needle into it, which ſtuck in a clue of thred. For two daies together he felt no inconvenience thereby, but the third day ſo great pain aroſe in the part, continuing for divers daies

daies following that it could not be aſſwaged, either with blood-letting, Fomentations, Cataplaſmes, or Anodynes. Obſerving the contumacy of this pain, I queſtion the Chyrurgeon whether he did ever know that this patient was troubled with the Whoremaſters Pocks; he told me, that three years ago indeed, he was troubled with the Gonorrhæa and Putrifaction of his Yard, but was perfectly Cured thereof. Forthwith I preſcribed him a Suffumigation of Vermilion, Storax, Benjamin, Franckincenſe and Henbane ſeeds, mixed with Terpentine; wherewith only his hand was Smoaked, and preſently he was better, and the Medicine being continued a few daies, he was perfectly Cured.

The 386 *Obſervation, or Hiſtory, of Famous and Rare Cures, &c.*

A Quartan Ague.

I Have cured many of the Quartan Ague, whoſe happy cure, after Univerſal Medicines, I have chiefly attributed to *Oleum Magnificum*, Oyl of the Load-ſtone, which has no viſible or other wiſe ſenſible operation. I give two or three drops thereof in a ſpoonful of Wine, at the beginning of the fit. And thereof I make my *Pilulæ Febrifugæ*, or Ague Quelling Pills.

The 387 *Obſervation, or Hiſtory, of Famous and Rare Cures, &c.*

The falling ſickneſs.

I Have often tried, and can prove the ſame by many witneſſes, that Peony gathered under its proper Conſtellation, viz. When the Moon is deſcendent in the ſign of *Aries*, does remove the Falling-ſickneſs only by external Application. And I cauſed a certain Virgin of eighteen years of Age, who had been troubled with this Diſeaſe from her Child-hood, and had dayly fits, being in the Hoſpital to wear it about her Neck and Arms. After which ſhe was perfectly cured. Hence it is apparent, of what Conſequence Aſtrology is, in the Practice of Phyſick.

Obſervations communicated by *D^r Henricus Rufus*, Practitioner among the *Sammarcelinenſians*.

To Mr. Dr. Lazarus Riverius, *Councellour and Phyſitian to the King, and worthy Profeſſor of Phyſick in the Univerſity of* Montpelier.

Henricus Rufus *ſendeth Greeting.*

SInce the time that you (moſt worthy Profeſſor) have ſhined as a new ſtar in this Province, no wonder it is that all Eyes are intent upon you, and ſeeing that by your light you do exceedingly refreſh and cheer us, it is fit that we ſhould extol and praiſe you, being made happy by your influence. For he that does not know your Vertues and worthy Life, has at leaſt heard of you and wiſhed that he might be better acquainted. I will not inſiſt upon the Gifts of your mind, and the excellency of your diſcourſe ſweetned with Learning. So many people at the Grenoble, and every where in the Delphynate you have recovered from the Jaws of Death, cannot, nor ought not to conceal your praiſes; only there is one thing that does afflict and make us miſerable, viz. That the Narbonenſian Province, *and* Montpelier, *will not let us longer enjoy your preſence. Howbeit, no place can wholly want you (renowned Doctor and Profeſſor) for beſides what was ſaid before, your moſt accurate Practice of*

Phyſick which you have publiſhed, does comfort us in your abſence, and gives this advantage to the Common-wealth of Phyſitians, that we can have your advice though your ſelf be abſent: And yet, this is not the end of your Labors; for in the middeſt of ſo many weighty Emp'oyments which take you up in the Univerſity of Montpelier, *and the importunities of ſo many ſick perſons, which ſeek unto you for health, you are buſily compoſing another Book of your Obſervations, not regarding your health, nor diminiſhing your ſtudies, that you may add Luſtre to the Art of Phyſick. Which though of your ſelf you could ſufficiently accompliſh; yet it is your deſire to adjoyn the Obſervations of divers Friends: neither have you diſdained to deſire my poor Obſervations, who was once your Scholar, and do account it my Glory to have learnt the Rudiments of Phyſick from your Mouth. I have yeilded to your command, though not ignorant that I bring water to the Sea. If you ſhal read them, and find ſome things therein not conveniently expreſſed, I am wel content (worthy Sir.) that they ſhould be corrected by you, to whom I have vowed eternal ſervice and Veneration. Farewel, and live long, to bleſs me, and the whol Tribe of Phyſitians.*

From my poor Study,
the Ides of *July*, 1645.

The 388 *Obſervation, or Hiſtory, of Famous and Rare Cures, &c.*

A Monſtrous and unwonted Hiccup.

Anno 1634. in the Month of *December*, A Tailor of fifty years old, by reaſon of faſting, cold, and journeying, fel into the feaver Ephemera, which within twenty four hours was diſcuſſed by plentyful ſweat: ſo that the following day, he continued free from his Feaver and Head-ach untill eight a clock; howbeit he had no Appetite to mear, and was very ſleepy and ſluggiſh. But upon the eighth day in the morning, he was again ſeized by the Feaver without any ſhaking; and a while after, towards the evening, he was tormented with a moſt grievous Hiccup, the noiſe whereof was heard four Houſes off in the Neighbor-Row, and eaſily in the ſtreet without any truce or intermiſſion. In the mean time, he was not very thirſty, and well in his wits, but very impatient of ſo cruel a Symptome. At eleven a clock with coughing he vomited a crude matter, not unlike corrupted fleſh, which the by-ſtanders took to be a piece of Marmalade of Quinces, which the Patient had eaten not long before. But the day following, he caſt up a bit of the ſame color and greatneſs, viz. red, and as big as a Hazel Nut; which I cauſed firſt to be waſhed in water, and then laid upon the coals, whereupon loſing its red color, which it left in the water, and ſtinking extreamly in the broiling, it appeared to be (as I formerly gueſſed by the ſtory) a piece of fleſh with the Membranes, eaten off from the Oeſophagus, or upper Orifice of the ſtomach, by an Ulcer which lay concealed in the ſaid Oeſophagus. Whether that Ulcer was bred all on a ſudden, taking its riſe the firſt day in which the man was taken with the Feaver Ephemera; or whether it was contracted long time before, is uncertain. Yet it is likely that it began not ſo ſoon: firſt, becauſe no Inflamation or other tumor had gone before, which is commonly attended by an Ulcer: Again, becauſe that for many years he had been vexed with a light Cough, which brought up nothing viſible. So that the Diſeaſe, which had long ſince rooted it ſelf under the firſt Coat of the Oeſophagus or Stomach, being produced by thoſe external cauſes fore-recited, did all on a ſudden diſcover it ſelf. Now the Symptome was continual by reaſon of the Ulcer, whereof he died upon the fourteenth day, raving: For the Hiccupping would remit nothing of its fierceneſs, neither with Blood-letting, Cupping, Deterſive Medicaments, Digeſtives, nor Purgers, amongſt which Hiera is very much commended.

The 389 Obſervation, or Hiſtory, of famous and Rare Cures, &c.

An inflamation in the hinder part of the Brain, with Symptoms therefrom ariſing.

THe moſt noble and illuſtrious young Gentleman, *Monſeiur de Larthaudiere*, thirty ſeven Years of Age, fell in the Dog-dayes into a moſt grievous and ſharp pain of his Head, which troubled him moſt in the hinder part, and towards the left ſide. He had an obſcure and very light Feaver, his Senses were viperous, eſpecially his Taſt; howbeit he was mighty thirſty, and could take no reſt. His Forehead was not at all hot, his Head but little, he felt no pain though his Head were hard touched; laying our hands, one to his Forehead, the other to the hinder part of his Head, we perceived his Brain to be ſhaken and pulled, within his Skull, and his whol Head did involuntarily ſhake this way and that way, his Urines were at firſt thick and white. Which things having obſerved, fearing there was a Flegmone or Eryſipelas in his Brain, I ordered him to bleed; firſt from the Cepialica, or head Vein, then from the Mediana, two pounds of blood. The following daies becauſe the pain raged terribly, we cauſed him at ſeveral times to bleed two pound more in the other Arm. On the fift day we purged him; on the ſixt we drew half a pound of blood, with Cupping Glaſſes faſtened to his Shoulders. In the mean while, his head was ſhaven, and bathed with Vinegar of Roſes, and we omitted nothing which might revell, derive, or repell any kind of humors from the brain. On the fourth day of the diſeaſe, there brake forth a ſmal tumor on the right ſide of his Tongue, which we found to be hard, hollow, and ulcerated without feeling, and indeed no other than a Cancer. On the ſeventh day towards the evening, he raved a little, and ſoon after he began to ſweat, firſt in his Face, and then plentifully over his whol Body, ſo that we hoped there would be a true and perfect Criſis: his Sweat was wiped off, his Linnen changed, and he did ſweat again abundantly. And now he began to complain of the Cloaths, crying out that he was ſmothered, which being removed, and the Sweat wiped off as before, we found him almoſt quite ſpent, and perpetually raving. His ſtrength, which was very firm before the Sweat, we perceived to be wholly weakened, and in this condition he continued all night untill nine a clock in the morning of the eighth day. He raved and talked exceedingly, being forgetful of all that had happened, or had been done about him, during his whol Diſeaſe. About ten of the Clock he ſeemed to come to himſelf, and to remember ſome things, and ſo we ſhould have had ſome hope of him, but that his Convulſive Pulſe, and the trembling of his Limbs, did declare his Brain to be extreamly diſordered. Soon after he piſt plentifully, and his Urine was red, and ſhined like fire. About the ſame time as the day before, towards the evening, he raved again, which was ſo much the worſe, becauſe, having recovered ſtrength, he became phrantick, and drove all the by-ſtanders from him with great terror. At nine a clock in the morning, he came to himſelf again, and continued ſo until the evening, about which time, a ſwelling roſe in his Neck, as big as an indifferent Apple, not painful, nor different in color from the reſt of his Skin, nevertheleſs he continued raving with a Convulſive trembling of his Hands. On the tenth day all things continued alike. Towards the end of the eleventh day, he died with Convulſions. And becauſe he was one of an illuſtrious Family, and much eſteemed by his Friends, and died ſo unexpectedly, his death not being foreſeen til the ſeventh day, nor foretold, it was thought convenient to open his Body, that the cauſe of his death might be manifeſted to his Friends. The other parts of his body were found in a good condition, all ſave his brain: For his Skul being opened, great plenty of very black blood, but thin, flowed preſently forth, before the coats of his brain were opened, and ere the bone was well ſawn aſunder, it came out by the Saw; which blood being ſhed between the Skul and the Coats of the Brain, was gueſt to be two pounds or more. When the Coats of the brain were diſcovered, we found them diapred al over with little Veins, which ſwelled with black aduſt blood. And in the hinder part for the depth of two fingers, and the length of four, where the Torcular or Brain-tunnel is ſaid to be ſcituate, there was not only blackneſs, but the Membranes were of a bright red color, and periſhed with a Gangrene: into which part, when I cauſed a Pen-knife to be thruſt, preſently

there

there came forth five or ſix ounces of a purulent matter or quittor, which ſtunk. Afterward the Chirurgeons making deeper inciſion, al the Baſis of the brain very neare, eſpecially the Cerebellum, and that part of the Marrow of the back, which is contained in the uppermoſt Vertebraes, & upon which the ſwelling did ariſe, were found likewiſe ſphacelated & mortified. And the coats of the Brain were on the left ſide eaten throughwith ulcers, through which tis probable the blood had iſſued out, which was found immediately under the skul. By the narration of al wch it is eaſie to infer, that the cauſe of that ſame ſharp pain, want of ſleep, Ravings, and Convulſions; was the ſolution of Continuity, in the hinderpart of the Brain called Cerebellum, or the Little Brain. Now two cauſes there were of the Solution of its Continuity, an Ulcer, and an Inflamation. The Ulcer being the principal cauſe, which was contracted ſome months ſince, by meanes related to me but not to be publiſhed, produced that litle ulcer in his tongue, and made the brain weak and ſubject to be inflamed. Now the Cholerick Inflamation was augmented, by the patients youthful age, his temper being ſanguin mixed with choler, and by the hotneſs of the weather: but certain external Cauſes did eſpecially further the ſame, viz. ſwimming in cold water, in the open air, after he had been heated by biding in the ſun and by being chafed with anger. But the Cauſes, why ſo obſcure a feaver ſhould be attended with ſo many terrible Symptoms, were theſe. The firſt was becauſe his brain was only affected, and al other parts of his body ſound. Secondly, becauſe the brain has of it ſelf but little feelling, and is of a cold and moiſt temper. The third and moſt remarkable was, becauſe the Brain is far diſtant from the Heart, and therefore the ſpirits which paſs to and fro in the brain, being once gotten into thoſe labyrinthian conetxtures of veſſels in the Brain can hardly return unto the Heart, and conſequently do not communicate thereunto the contagion of the part affected.

The 390 Obſervation, or Hiſtory, of Famous and Rare Cures, &c.

A lingering diſeaſe proceeding from the Lungs being blaſted, of which a Maid died, never perceiving her ſelf to ail any thing. *February.* 1643.

A Virgin of good Parentage, being over fourteen yeares of age (as many ſuppoſed) was taken away by death. Two yeares before, ſhee was given to ſighing ſhe loved ſolitarineſs, and her face and whole body was pale and white. Two months before, when I viſited her brother, who was alſo waſted with a lingering diſeaſe, her mother deſired me to feel her pulſe, whether ſhe were feaveriſh. I obſerved her pulſe langiſhing and unequal, but without any feveriſh heat; wherefore, after I had a while conſidered her pale countenance, and queſtioned her age, it came into my mind that her courſes were about to come, which being by reaſon of the narrowneſs of the veines and other paſſages hindered, nature indeavoured to make way for them, whereupon the blood was by them infected, and ſtirred up thoſe light ſymptomes, as often happens to virgins of the ſame Age, and her Mother and Kinſwomen were of the ſame mind. Whereupon theſe things being done and laid upon the by, I departed, reſolving to inquire further into the matter, if her ilneſs continued, or the ſymptomes ſhould grow worſe. But theſe promiſes on both ſides, being either neglected or forgotten, two monthes after I was called in good earneſt to the maid; I find her diſeaſe much more grievous, as being accompanied with want of appetite and a continual Feaver, and intended or encreaſed towards night, without any burning biting heat, or other ſenſible Symptom or token; ſhe was very much weakened, the circumference of her noſtrils did widen themſelves as ſhe breathed, and yet ſhe had no great difficulty in ſetching her breath, no thirſt, no redneſs in her Cheeks, no want of ſleep; as ſhe lay in her bed, ſhe coughed a little without ſpitting. Her heart, being moved more frequently and ſtrongly ſtil towards the evening, was perceived to pant by laying on of a bodies hand, ſhe her ſelf not perceiving the ſame; her urines were thick, white, fatty, with broken a Eneorema or ſwim of the ſame Condition. She never raved, ſhe never loſt nights ſleep, no not ſo much as the laſt night, in which quietly and without any pangs or ſtrugling, ſhe changed her life for a better. Wherefore becauſe of her unexpected Death in reſpect of her parents, and becauſe thirteen more of the ſame Generation had died either before, or at the time they became marriagable, it was thought convenient by her friends to open her. And in the

the firſt place, her body being uncovored, we ſaw both her ſides, from her arme pits to the laſt baſtard Ribbs, ſpotted with reddiſh black and blew ſpots like ſtripes. Her Bowels contained in the Belly were ſound, only her liver was a little more black than ordinary, and her ſtomach very ſmal and coloured with choler green as Leekes. When we came unto her cheſt, from the Cavities thereof being diſſected, there iſſued an abundance of venemous ſtinking water, to the Quantity of four pints. 'Tis wonder that it had not cauſed great difficulty of Breathing, while ſhe lived, or that it had not been perceived to fluctuate by the ear. Her lungs we found blaſted; alſo in their edges round about, we ſaw every where whitiſh ſpecks, which did break with the lighteſt touch, and quittor with corrupt humor came forth of them. Yea, and the infection had dyed al the veſſels and cavities of the Lungs with a light red colour. The Membran Pleura and the intercoſtal muſcles were tainted with a greeniſh colour; the Midrif was wel, but the Pericardium or Heart-Bag by reaſon of neighbourhood, was withered, putrified, and dryed up. The Heart and brain were ſound. Al things being conſidered, it was determined and reſolved, that this infection, had its original from the parents, either from the ſeed or blood. The examples of her brothers prove the thing. And if this diſeaſe in the virgin had come from any external cauſe, ſome part only of her lungs would have been diſeaſed, & not the whol body of them. For ſhe had not offended in her Diet, and courſe of Life: alſo her quiet death did teſtifie, that the corruption in the ſubſtance and temperament of thoſe parts was made by little and little, and came not by a violent cauſe. And again, foraſmuch as ſhe had no cough, it is thereby apparent, that no flux or collection of Humors did corrupt her Lungs. Furthermore, as no man doubts but that ſuch Diſeaſes are propagated from the Parents to the Children; ſo it cannot be denied, but that they may eaſily be communicated; and we ordinarily find, that in Families infected with ſuch Diſeaſes, many are taken with the ſame Diſeaſe, either all together, or one after another; yea, and ſomtimes they are tranſmitted unto the fift or ſixt Generation, and infect other perſons that converſe with them.

The 391 *Obſervation, or Hiſtory of Famous and Rare Cures, &c.*

Stones continually voided by ſtoole.

I Knew a Gentleman, who ſo often as he went to ſtool voided with his Excrements ſtones of an uneven, Pointed ſuperficies, of an aſhe-colour, for many yeares together, not unlike in color and ſubſtance to them which come through the ureters from the Kidnies. Theſe ſtones, both with their bulk and ſharpneſs doe vexe his fundament in their tranſition; ſo that there is no doubt to be made of the ſtones, or of their perpetual Generation.

The 392 *Obſervation, or Hiſtory, of Famous and Rare Cures, &c.*

Stones bred in al parts of the body.

I Knew another honeſt Man who dwelt in the Houſe of Mſr. *de Leyſſins* the Kings Councellor in the Supream Court of the *Delphinate*, being his Secretary and Clerk of the market, who could ſhow great and little ſtones in any part of his body; I have often ſeen and touched ſuch ſtones upon his fleſh, muſcles, Membraines, nerves, bones, indifferently: ſo that his eares nole, dugs, eye browes, were not without them; for they bunch out viſibly and appear moveable to thoſe that touch them; and if in one part they come to be diſſolved, they grow in another, and they daily encreaſe both in number and magnitude. The ſame perſon is alſo nepthritick, and once when I viſited him, he ſhewed me upon the whirl-bone of his right knee, a notable tumor, ful of divers ſuch like ſtones diſtinct one from another, which were as in a bag and rattled when they were ſtirred. Some months after I came to him again, and he told me the ſame tumor was become ſoft and ſmooth. I bared both his knees, felt the ſwellings and perceived indeed that they contained an humor in them: and inciſion being made, preſently there came forth three or four ounces of very white wel-digeſted matter and thick, ſuch as I have often

ten ſeen to come from thoſe kind of tumors which are called *Steatomata*, that is, Tumors ful of matter like tallow or congealed fat. In his left knee, becauſe I felt certain firm ſtones yet remaining, though with ſoft matter between, I did not open the tumor, waiting til they were fully diſſolved.

The 393 *Obſervation, or Hiſtory of famous and Rare Cures*, &c.

Stones bred in the ſpleen, vomited out.

I was cruelly troubled four yeares together with the ſtone in my kidnies, without any ſenſible hot diſtemper of my kidnies or Liver, from which I was freed by little and little, by Gods bleſſing upon the uſe of the vitriolated Aureilian waters. But I had ſcarce left voiding of ſtones and gravil, when I was taken with moſt cruel pains in my left ſide, about the ſpleen. The pain took up but a ſmal compaſs, not reaching ſo far as my navil or belly, only my left kidney did ſympathiſe by fits, and the left ſide of my ſtomach, eſpecially when I was diſpoſed to vomit. This Diſeaſe after ten dayes began to breake away, touching which I obſerved, that I was neither bound in my body, as is uſual in the colick paines, neither was my urine ſtopt, which happens in the ſtone of the Kidney: but contrary wiſe I voided abundance of urine, in which you would have ſaid there had been the pouder of tiles or bricks diſſolved, which quickly ſunk to the bottom of the chamberpot: yet that ſame thick ſettling was not rough or gritty, nor any waits ſtoniſh, but it was quickly, upon the leaſt agitation mingled with the urine like chalk. I was vexed with the like fit, three or four times, in the begining of the winter uſing to mitigate the grievoutneſs of the pain, ſuch remedies as are wont to be adminiſtred commonly for the pain of the Colick, only I omited bathing, which I formerly found did me much hurt. And ſeeing among other ſymptomes, frequent and painful vomitings did cheifly afflict me, before which I was troubled with anxiety and grievous heart-burning: it came into my mind to make diligent enquiry what the conditions of that matter were, which I vomited up in ſuch abundance, even when my ſtomach was empty. As for color it was of a dark red, in conſiſtence like a pultis, thick and clammy, and I found many little ſtones therein of an aſh-colour ſomewhat yellowiſh, ſuch as formerly I had voided by urine, and that not once only, but as often as I vomited with great ſtraining and pain; or as often as the foreſaid pain returned. This laſt yeare 1645. the pains grew milder by little apd little, my kidny pained me but little, but my ſpleen and the left ſide of my ſtomach pained me more than that, according to the old manner, but that the fits came not ſo often. By which I perceived, that the Seminary or Mine of theſe ſtones was firſt and laſt in my ſpleen, and in the veſſels thereof, and that by the *Vas Breve* (which by the Medicinal waters and by vomiting, was made wide and open) it ſent part of its ſtones with abundance of black choler into my ſtomach, which at firſt were carried only to my kidnies.

Obſervations communicated by Dr. *Simeon Jacoz*, a moſt Expert Coſtenſian Phyſitian.

To the moſt renowned Mſr. Doctor *Lazarus Riverius* Councellour and Phyſitian to the King, and his Majeſties worthy Profeſſor in the moſt Famous Univerſity of *Montpelior*.

WHat you lately deſired, or rather Commanded me to doe (moſt renowned Profeſſor) I doe now willingly performe, and preſent unto you the firſt fruits of my Practice of Phyſick, or rather the fruit of your own Learning, which none can ſo juſtly challenge, as he that took ſo much Care to manure the ſame. My poor Obſervations

do

doe returne unto you as unto their ſpring, which it is your pleaſure to joyne with the Obſervations and experiments of your ſelf, and other excellent Worthies of our Art. They are yours, becauſe I am ſo; to you they are dew, becauſe you are firſt Author of them, under whoſe conduct I firſt ſet ſail in the Sea of Phyſick: by whoſe Guidance I have luckily run the Apolinary Race, and then quietly reſted my ſelf in the quiet ſtation of your family, in which as you have ſowed in me the firſt ſeeds of practical phyſick both publickly and privatly, and cherriſhed the ſame, ſo do you now make it your glory, when they are coming abroad into the world, to defend them from the danger of Calumny wherewnto they are liable; for ſeeing ſo many difficulties do for the moſt part accompany, and ſo great dangers follow our firſt endeavors, I ſhould never have dared to have let theſe firſt fruits of my Practice to ſee the light, were they not to come forth under the Happy Conduct of your Name, and had I not your ſelf both for Captain and companion in my journey. Whom becauſe the cure of diſeaſes has made famous, uſe has made expert, and experience has made you happy and fortunate in Practice; whom Diſeaſes fear as their Enemy, Men Love as the recoverer of their health, and Death hates as his Conquerer. It ſhal never grieve me to march into the Feild under ſo great a Commander, who has evermore been freindly unto me both in publick and private occaſions, and in the middeſt of innumerable aſſaults of adverſe fortune, has born up and cheered my mind with his dayly converſe: who being exceeding careful of my Learning, has continually watered my Wits with the fruitful ſtreams of his Doctrin, and opened a way for greater things, which peradventure riper age, and more advantagious opportunity may hereafter bring forth.

If *Fates* give Leave, It *Phœbus* when I pray
To bleſs my Studies, *He Amen* ſhal ſay.

In the mean time Fare you wel, and long may you ſhine like a new Apollo *upon the Famous Univerſity, and whol* France. *Many and happy years may you live; which is the ardent prayer of him, who is yours moſt devoted.*

Dated the 6. of the
Ides of *October*,
Anno 1645.

SIMEON JACOZ,
Dr. of Phyſick
of *Montpelier*.

The 394 *Obſervation, or hiſtory, of famous and* Rare Cures, &c.

A deadly frigidity of the tongue.

A Young man of *Montpelier*, of twenty years old, by name *Ludovicus de Camp*, was in the month of *June*, 1643. troubled with a long Looſneſs, and was at laſt brought into the City Hoſpital, being by the Governours of the City committed to my Care. After divers Remedies adminiſtred convenient for one in his condition for fifteen daies together and al in vain, the Diſeaſe continued in the ſame condition as at firſt, with very great weakneſs; yet his apperite was pretty good and his thirſt not very great. And in this condition he lived ſix or ſeven daies longer, after which, I found his Tongue moiſt enough, and having its Natural color, but it felt cold, without any coldneſs of his Hands or Feet; ſo that nothing ſeemed to trouble him but his Looſneſs, with which he was much weakned, yet I thought he would die in a ſhort time, yet he lived four daies with an actual coldneſs of his Tongue.

Another of the ſame Age in the ſame Hoſpital had many Ulcers in both his Legs, and a Fiſtulous Ulcer in his left Groin, and being ſuddenly fallen away in his fleſh he waſted to the grave. Howbeit, he continued in that condition two months or more, growing ſtil leanner and leanner, and at laſt his Tongue became actually cold as in the former example, which calling to mind, I foretold that he would die within a ſhort time, as it fel out twenty four hours after.

Another named *John Aventurier*, fifteen years old in the ſame Hoſpital was ſick of a bloody flux; and within ſix daies ſpace his fleſh was waſted away, his Tongue being actually cold, without any great coldneſs of his Hands or Feet, and the next day he died. From which

examples we may gather, that coldneſs of the Tongue is to be reckoned among the tokens of Death.

The 395 *Obſervation, or hiſtory, of Famous and Rare Cures,* &c.

The falling-ſickneſs joyned with a Dead Palſie.

A Girle named *Catherine Bognole*, ten years of Age, of a flegmatick Conſtitution, and of a broad wel ſet body, was troubled five or ſix months with the Falling-ſickneſs, the fits coming almoſt every day, yea ſometimes twice or thrice in a day; to which was added a privation of motion and ſenſe in her right Arm. This Girle being brought into our Hoſpital in the month of *December*, 1643. I preſcribed her in the firſt place a potion purging flegm with a Cephalick Decoction, which after ſome daies was repeated, and ſhe uſed between whiles preparatives and ſpecifick Medicaments, but without profit. At length I gave her about two drams of *Montagnana* his Opiate four or five daies together, which being over, ſhe began to ſtir her fingers, and ſoon after her whol Arm, and ſhe was not ſo frequently taken with fits of the Falling-ſickneſs; ſo that within twenty daies (ſhe taking every morning of the foreſaid opiate) ſhe was perfectly cured of both Diſeaſes. The Opiate was made as followeth.

Take *Roots of Male peony, Stœcados, Coſtus, of each ten drams. Agarick, five ounces. Pellitory of Spain, Carway ſeeds, Annis ſeed, Aſſa Fœtida, and Ariſtolochia Rotunda, of each two drams and half; juyce of Squils and Choyce Honey, of each one pound and two ounces. Let the Juyce of Squils and the Honey boyl together over a gentle fire, unto a good conſiſtence, then ad the powders and make al into an Electuary. Let the doſe be two drams every morning three hours before Meat.*

The 396 Obſervation, or hiſtory, of famous and Rare Cures, &c.

Fits of the Mother.

A Woman of *Montpelier*, threeſcore years old, had Fits of the Mother twenty four hours, with pain of her Head and her Belly, eſpecially over againſt her Spleen. She was ful of Unquietneſs, could not ſleep, and was very thirſty. And becauſe ſhe would admit neither of Clyſters nor Cupping-Glaſſes, ſhe was content only with a Plaiſter of Galbanum applied to her Navil. I adviſed her when ſhe was a thirſt to drink a Cup of water tempered with vinegar, which ſhe did three or four times, and within a few hours ſhe recovered and was free from her fits. Another Woman I freed from fits of the Mother, only with a Clyſter of Vinegar and water, which ſhe kept two hours.

The 397 *Obſervation, or Hiſtory, of famous and Rare Cures,* &c.

Gouty and Whore Pocky Pains.

A Young Man of twenty five years of Age, named *Matthew Farlet*, for two months was troubled with moſt cruel pains of his joynts, eſpecially in his Knee, with a ſwelling which had the ſame color with the other parts, and felt no pain when it was touched, but had a deep inward pain; the like he had in his Shoulders, Arms, Hands, and Fingers, which were more ſharp in the nights, tormenting the patient and forcing him to keep his bed. After I had Phyſicked his whol body by Aporzemes and Blood-letting often repeated, he felt ſome eaſe, and eſpecially by the uſe of Jalap, ſo that he was now able to go. Yet there remained a pain (though not ſo grievous) in his Knee, Arm, and Shoulder-blades, which came ſtil in the night: whereupon I conjectured that it was a Pocky pain; the rather becauſe two years before he had been troubled with the Gonorrhœa; which being cured ſooner than

than was fitting, he ſaid he felt no pain from that time. He being brought at laſt unto the Hoſpital, becauſe he was a Forreigner; I gave him for ſeven daies together Mercurius Dulcis with Conſerve of Roſes, the firſt day one ſcruple; the ſecond, third, and fourth, half a dram; the fifth, ſixth, and ſeventh, two ſcruples. It cauſed a light Salivation, an hour or two after the taking, which continued til dinner time; it gave him two ſtools a day, without any griping or ſickneſs of Stomach. The Mercurius Dulcis was ſix times ſublimed. On the eight day he took a pouder of Senna, Cream of Tartar, and Jalap, which purged him very wel. And ſo his pain went quite away.

The 398 *Obſervation, or Hiſtory, of Famous and Rare Cures, &c.*

A ſwelling and pain in the Knee.

ANother young Man, twenty two years old, in the ſame Hoſpital of *Montpelier*, had a ſwelling in his left Knee, with a pain which came by fits, which had ſucceded a Rheumatiſm, and had vexed him four or five Months. After univerſal Evacuations he took in the ſame time, Mercurius dulcis according to the Method aforeſaid, for ſeven daies with a light Salivation every morning after the taking of the Pouder. But upon the ſeventh day he was extreamly fluxed, and the Roof of his mouth and jaws were ulcerated, his Teeth looſe and ready to drop out of his Head; flegm continually flowed out of his mouth which ſtunk ſo that himſelf could not endure it, and he ſlept neither night nor day. After four daies time, I thought it time to ſtop the flux. Wherefore I preſcribed him a Laxative ptiſan, to be taken twice a day for two daies together, and ſo the Humors changed their courſe downward, the ſwelling went away, the pain ceaſed, and the patient began to go without any help, and without any more Phyſick, after fifteen daies, he returned ſafe and ſound into his own Country.

The 399 *Obſervation, or Hiſtory, of Famous and Rare Cures, &c.*

A Dropſie.

A Country fellow thirty years old having had the Dropſie three Months, was brought about the end of *January*, 1644. Into the Hoſpital; and a few daies after died. His body being opened, an huge Quantity of water came away; we found his liver in a very good condition: but his Spleen ſo corrupted, that the whol ſubſtance thereof was like melted pitch. Whence it is apparent that every ſort of Dropſie, is not alwaies cauſed by extream weakneſs or diſtemper of the Liver.

The 400 *Obſervation, or Hiſtory, of Famous and Rare Cures, &c.*

Immoderate flux of the Courſes.

A Country Woman, thirty years of Age in the Month of *June*, 1644. was troubled with immoderate flux of her Courſes, and ſhe was exceedingly weakned by reaſon of continual loſs of blood for divers daies together, ſo that ſhe gave her ſelf over for a loſt Woman. It being my hap to be rambling in the Country as I recreated my ſelf with Hunting, becauſe Medicines were not there to be had, and her purſe could not reach to the price of them, I gave her preſently, about ſix in the evening five or ſix ounces of the juyce of Nettles, and I ordered to lay upon her belly below her Navel a Cataplaſme or pultis made with the ſame juyce and Wheat flower. About Midnight I gave order to repeat both the Medicines, which being done, the Woman was better in the Morning, her flux of blood ſtopped, and by little and little ſhe grew perfectly wel without the help of any other Remedy.

The 401 *Obſervation, or Hiſtory, of* Famous *and* Rare *Cures, &c.*

The Whites.

A Coſtenſian Woman fourty years old was troubled ſeven months with the Whites being of a Wheyiſh Nature, whom I cured within five weeks, by giving her every eight daies eight grains of the Rozin of Jalap; the ſeroſities being purged away, upon which the Diſeale depended. And then I took away al occaſion of Relapſe, by this following Opiate.

Take *old Conſerve of Roſes, two ounces, conſerve of Roman Wormwood one ounce. The powders Trion ſantalon, and Aromaticum Roſatum, of each one dram. Red Coral prepared, half a dram; Old Venice Treacle, two drams; with Syrup of dried Roſes, make al into an Electuary. Of this ſhe took the Quantity of an Haſel Nut every night, when ſhe lay down to ſleep for a long time together.*

The 402 *Obſervation, or Hiſtory, of* Famous *and* Rare *Cures, &c.*

Hard ſwelling on the Back of the Hand.

A Coſtenſian Maiden of twenty years old, had a Scirrhous Tumor on the back of her hand, which was diſcuſſed by my advice; for a leaden plate ſmeared with Quick-ſilver, was laid upon the ſwelling and worn there eight daies, and ſo the Tumor went away and came no more.

The 403 *Obſervation, or Hiſtory, of* Famous *and* Rare *Cures, &c.*

A Beginning Dropſie.

A Woman twenty five years old named *Damiana Gulon*, who was my Neice, was troubled two years with ſuppreſſion of her Courſes, by reaſon of an heedleſs Courſe of Life, and becauſe of errors committed in her Childing (for ſhe had come too ſoon into the cold Air) with want of ſleep, want of Appetite, ſluggiſhneſs, and loathneſs to ſtir, difficulty of breathing, ſwelling and hardneſs of Spleen, and falling away of her whol Body; ſo that it ſeemed ſhe would ſoon fal into the Conſumption or Dropſie. She had uſed divers Medicines for almoſt an whol year, preſcribed by moſt skilful Phyſitians according to the Rules of Art. But her Diſeaſe getting head, and al Remedies being uſed in vain, her Legs began to ſwel, and alſo her belly though in much meaſure puffed up with wind. Al the Symptoms grew dayly worſe and worſe, and at laſt the Region of her Stomach was raiſed up into a Tranſparent ſwelling. Being thus afflicted and caſt down, ſhe came to me, and with the following Medicines ſhe was cured in the Month of *September*, 1644.

Firſt of al ſhe took four daies together a Laxative ptiſan of the Infuſion of two drams of Senna, with half a dram of Sal Prunellæ, and fifteen drops of Oyl of Sulphure per Campanam. Then ſhe fel upon the uſe of theſe following broaths.

Take *Sparagus Roots, Graſs and Cichory Roots, of each half an ounce; China Roots cut in ſlices, one dram. Leaves of Egrimony, Ceterach, Bugloſs, and Cichory, of each half an handful; Cryſtal of Tartar, two ſcruples. Boyl al with a Quarter of an old Cock. In the ſtrained broath diſſolve, Salt of Wormwood and of Tamariſk, of each one ſcruple. Sugar of Roſes, two drams. Let her take of this broath every morning three hours before meat, for twelve daies together.*

Her broaths being ended, ſhe took again the Laxative Ptiſan aforeſaid for three daies. And then ſhe uſed this following Electuary, whole wonderful Effects, I have often times beheld.

Take *Conſerve of the flowers of Tamariſk and Maiden Hair, of each an ounce and an half.*

Conſerve

Conſerve of Elecampane Roots, ſix drams. Steel prepared with Sulphure, an ounce; Salt of Tamariſk, one dram. Spirit of Sulphure per Campanam, ten grains. With ſyrup of preſerved Citron peels. Make of al an Electuary, of which let her take every morning two or three drams; for fifteen or twenty daies together, and walk upon it.

She drank water of the Infuſion of ſteel, with a little red wine mingled therewith.

She had two Iſſues made at the beginning in both her Legs, and they were alwaies kept open til ſhe was perfectly cured. She preſently began to mend, after the uſe of the foreſaid Medicaments; for her belly fel by little and little, ſhe gained her ſtomach and the freſh color of her Face, with her natural ſleep; and the hardneſs on her left ſide was ſoftened, and ſhe recovered the benefit of her Courſes.

The 404 Obſervation, or Hiſtory, of Famous and Rare Cures, &c.

VVorms.

A Boy four years old much ſubject to worms, in the month of *September*, 1644. was troubled with want of appetite, ſtomach ſickneſs, itching of his Noſe, thirſt, big-belly, with gripings in his guts and a Feaver: ſo that it was apparent, al things conſidered, that he had Worms. I gave him twelve grains of Mercurius Dulcis, ſix times ſublimated, with five grains of Diagridium. Two hours after he had taken the Medicine, he voided about twenty worms in a knot, by ſtool, and al the foreſaid Symptomes departed, and the boy became perfectly well.

The 405 Obſervation, or Hiſtory, of Famous and Rare Cures, &c.

Intollerable Head-ach.

A Certain Man, fifty years of Age, lean, and of a thin texture, exceeding prone to Anger, was troubled about two years with an extream ſharp pain of his head, on the right ſide thereof, from the top of his head to his temple on the ſame ſide, which pain as oft as it returned (which was three or four times a year) it forced him to keep his bed, and did ſo torment him that it brought him almoſt to deſparation: but without any Feaver, thirſt, or inflamation, only there was a great pulſation of the Artery of that temple. Being called to him in the month of *September*, *Anno* 1644. I order him to be let blood, giving him firſt a Clyſter, to cleanſe away the Impurities of the firſt Region. Then I gave him a Medicine to purge Choler, which was repeated after a few daies, and he took in the mean ſpace juleps to refrigerate and prepare the Cholerick Humor. Afterward repelling Medicaments and Vinegar of Roſes were applied to his head, and revulſions were made with Cupping-glaſſes, with, and without Scarification, and his extream parts were rubbed. He was again let blood, and yet his pain went not away. It returned in the beginning of the ſpring *Anno* 1645. I gave him firſt an Emollient cooling Clyſter, then a medicine purging Choler, and ſo I come to open the Artery in his temple, which was performed by reaſon of the urgency of his pain, and there came five ounces of blood leaping out. And then applying lint wet in cold water and binding it on, as is the practice in ordinary blood-letting, his pain ceaſed within half an hour, which formerly was wont to torment him many daies together, and it returned no more from that time forward.

There might have been applied for more ſureties ſake, *Galens* Plaiſter of Frankincenſe, maſtick, Bole-Armeniack, and the wool of an Hair, with the white of an Eg, and a good Ligature; but we found no need thereof.

The

The 406 Obſervation, or Hiſtory, of Famous and Rare Cures, etc.

A ſtubborne pain of the Head.

A Woman of *Coſta* fifty years old, too much noted and over famous, was troubled in the month of *October*, the year 1644. with difficulty of breathing, and a moſt cruel pain of her Head, which came and went by fits, and troubled her moſt in the night, and ſeeing that it would not be removed by purging and ſtrengthening Medicaments applied a month together; I ſuſpected that it was a Pocky pain. And this ſuſpition of mine was ſtrengthened by the wearyneſs which ſhe felt, which came of it ſelf, without labor, by her lazyneſs and loathneſs to ſtir, and becauſe ſomtimes ſhe was thick of hearing, and had a Ringing in her Ears. The digeſtion of her ſtomach and Liver was weakned, ſhe was pained and tormented very much in the former part of both her Legs, eſpecially in the night: alſo beſides the courſe of life which ſhe had formerly lived, the year before ſhe had often uſed a Sudorifick Diet, frictions with Mercurial Oyntments and mercurial Pills. Wherefore the ſeaſon of the year being extream cold, and the condition of the patient would not bear the uſe of Antiveneral medicaments; I bethought my ſelf how to remove the pain of her Head, which becauſe it came and went, I conceived that it was cauſed by the malignant quality of the Quick-ſilver aſſailing and moleſting the brain, and I was not miſtaken in my conjecture, for a piece of Gold being wrapped up and thruſt into each Niſtril and kept there ſome hours, and then taken out, they were both colored white at the ends with the Quick-ſilver, and being put a little into the fire they recovered their former color. Another piece of Gold which ſhe held four or five hours in her mouth, was taken out white, and being put in hot coals, the Quick-ſilver vapored away. And with this Remedy often repeated, that moſt cruel pain of her Head was taken away wholly, Howbeit a little heavyneſs remained. And the Woman ſeemed to be better many daies together, ſo that ſhe roſe out of her bed, could eat her meat wel, and profeſſed that ſhe was cured; the ſhortneſs of her breath ſtil remaining, and the pain of her Legs alwaies returning in the nights. But fifteen daies after, ſhe was taken with a continual Feaver and died.

The 407 Obſervation, or Hiſtory, of Famous and Rare Cures, &c.

A baſtard tertian.

A Certain Man of *Coſta*, twenty ſeven years of Age of an excellent Habit and complexion of Body, about the beginning of *September*, 1644. was taken with a baſtard Tertian, which having continued an whol month, and Medicines preſcribed by another Phyſitian according to the Rules of Art, being uſed in vain: he took by my advice a vomit of one dram of Salt of Vitriol diſſolved in water, which cauſed him to vomit three or four times, and his Ague returned no more.

The 408 Obſervation, or Hiſtory, of Famous and rare Cures, &c.

Tooth-ach.

IN the begining of *February*, 1645. I was taken with a frequent and troubleſome ſpitting, with moſt cruel pain of my Teeth, which at length brought a Feaver, which after I had taken a Clyſter, and was let blood, went away, only my Tooth-ach remained and a continual ſpawling of thin wheyiſh matter: the excretion of which continuing, there aroſe wandring pains in divers parts of my body, holding ſomtimes one, and then another part, which I judging to proceed from a Melancholick ſeroſity, I took eight grains of Rozin of Jalap, with which being very wel and gently purged, I voided in great Quantity the ſuperfluous ſeroſity,

in

in ſeven ſtools, and the day following I found my ſelf free from the foreſaid pains and troubleſome ſpittings. But in the Month of *April*, the pain of my Teeth returned with the ſpitting, which went away within twenty four hours, upon my taking the foreſaid Medicine.

The 409 *Obſervation, or hiſtory, of famous and rare Cures, &c.*

The VVhores Pocks.

IN the month of *May*, 1645. two Girls, the eldeſt of which was ſcarſe five years old, the yonger three years old, were troubled with the Lechers Pox for five months together, which they had gotten by contagion; they had many Ulcers in their mouths and Privities, with puſtles and a filthy Scab al their bodies over. A skilful Chyrurgeon had given them a Decoction of Guajacum for a month together, but in vain. I being ſent for, cured the ſaid Girls within the ſpace of fifteen daies with white Mercury Precipitate, giving every day to the elder ſix grains, to the younger four, yet ſometimes augmenting both the doſes, according to the operation, which was ſuch, that each of them had three or four ſtools a day. They never vomited, neither were they fluxed. But they perſiſted al the while in the uſe of their Diet drink of Lignum Guajacum.

The 410 *Obſervation, or Hiſtory of Famous and Rare Cures, &c.*

VVarts upon the Hands.

A Man had many warts upon the fingers of his Hands, which he cured by my advice, by nointing them four or five ſeveral times with the milk of a fig-tree. The ſame cure was performed, and that much more effectually upon a certain Country man, by ſmearing the warts with ſpirit of Sulphur per Campanam divers daies together, and by applying the ſame like a Fomentation.

The 411 *Obſervation, or hiſtory, of famous and* Rare Cures, &c.

A bruiſed wound.

A Certain Captain liſting ſoldiers in the City for Mſr. *de Ville*, in the beginning of *May*, 1645. fel from the top of a pair of ſtairs upon an hogſhead that ſtood at the bottom, and was bruiſed and wounded in his right ſide upon his ſhort Ribs; ſo that much blood came away, and he was perpetually tormented with a moſt cruel pain in the bruiſed part, ſo that he could hardly move himſelf, or ſpeak, breath, or cough, but he was forced to cry out with pain. I being called to him, cauſe a vein preſently to be opened on the Arm of the ſame ſide, and a Plaiſter of Cummin-ſeed to be applied to the parts pained; which having been on twelve hours, and once renewed in that time, the pain was much leſſened, the black and blew color gone, he breathed more freely, and the day following he began to riſe out of his bed, and ſo after one day more, the pain went quite away.

The 412 *Obſervation, or Hiſtory, of Famous and Rare Cures, &c.*

The Peſtilence.

IN the time of the Plague, which in the years 1628. and 1629. did rage in a manner al *France* over: a man of *Coſta* conceiving himſelf to be taken with the Plague, becauſe of a ſudden heavineſs and pain of his Head, and party colored vomitings, preſently applied Cantharides

with

with Leven and Vinegar behind his Ears, and to other Emunctories, and kept his bed. After four and twenty hours he had a riſing behind his Ear, out of which continually flowed a ſharp ſerous humor, and the like by other Emunctories; whereupon the diſeaſe was leſs grievous and dangerous, and he recovered ſome daies after, and never had it again, though he converſt dayly with ſuch as had the Plague, and miniſtred unto them. The ſame Mans wife a while after finding her ſelf ill, was cured in the ſame manner, which Remedy they had learnt of others, who had practiced it themſelves with good ſucceſs.

The ſame Year, the Wife of *N. Micha* of *Coſta*, conceiving that her eldeſt Daughter about twelve Years of age, was taken with the Plague; for being an ingenious Woman ſhe conjectured ſo much, by her horrible look, her Feaver, Heat, Headach, and Stomach-ſickneſs: ſhe thruſt a Feather ſmeared with Oyl down her Throat, which made her vomit firſt wheyiſh Liquor, then a yellow Excrement, and at laſt green as Leeks in a great quantity, like half boyled Herbs. Then ſhe laid her in the bed, gave her a draught of broath, and diſpoſed her to reſt. Some hours after the Girl aroſe cheerful, and was troubled no more with any peſtilential Symptome, though ſhe often converſt with ſuch as had the Plague. Eight dayes after, her two yonger brothers, and her little Siſter, were taken with the ſame, yea, and more grievous Symptomes, whom their Mother in the ſame manner procuring vomit, which brought up the like humors, ſaved from the Suburbs of Death.

The 413 *Obſervation, or Hiſtory, of famous and Rare Cures, &c.*

The Kings Evil.

OUR Neighbor *James Gorroz*, his Girl, four years old, had Swellings of the Kings Evil about her Neck and Ears, very high. Sombody adviſed her Parents to let her grow Louſie, til the Lice ſhould make al her Head ſore and run; by which means the morbifick matter, *viz.* a flegmatick humor, was convemently purged out ſome months together in great quantity, and ſo ſhe was at laſt cured of her Swellings, without any other Medicine.

The 414 *Obſervation, or Hiſtory, of Famous and Rare Cures, &c.*

The Dropſie.

A Woman thirty years old, troubled with the Dropſie Anaſarca, by the advice of another Woman, and of an Ancient Apothecary, abſtained from all manner of drink almoſt an whol year; and ſo at length ſhe was cured, without any more to do. By whoſe example, a Country man her Neighbor, troubled with the ſame Diſeaſe, was cured after the ſame manner in the ſpace of four Months. Another Hydropick perſon was cured by an Apothecary, who applied many Veſicatories to divers parts of his Body.

The 415 *Obſervation, or Hiſtory, of Famous and Rare Cures, &c.*

Fits of the Mother.

THe Renowned Lady, *Madam de Popiam* in *Occitania*, being much ſubject to Fits of the Mother, uſed divers Medicines for many years together, but al in vain. At laſt, by the uſe of the following Pouder, ſhe was freed from them for fifteen years together. She took about one dram thereof in Wine, or in a Water Cake, twice or thrice in a week, or oftener, if the fits did much trouble her. She uſes this Pouder likewiſe againſt al Poyſons, the Plague, Agues, and want of Appetite, with moſt happy ſucceſs, as I have often ſeen. The Pouder is thus made.

Take *Roots of Gentian, white Dittamus, Tormentil, Pellitory of Spain, Rhaponticum,* Biſtort,

Biſtort, round Birthwort, white Thiſtle, Bay-berries, Angelica, Maſterwort, Coriander ſeeds prepared, Annis ſeeds, Juniper berries, Maſtich, Bole Armeniac, Terra ſigillata, of each three ounces and an half. Oriental Saffron two drams and an Half. Mix them, and make of all a very fine Pouder.

Obſervations communicated by Mſr. *Samuel Formius*, a moſt Experienced Chyrurgeon of *Montpelier*, having practiſed the Art fifty Years.

The 416 *Obſervation, or Hiſtory, of Famous and Rare Cures, &c.*

The Bleeding of a Wound.

IN the Year, 1593. a certain Soldier having received a Wound in his Arm, with which his *Radius* and *Cubitus* were cut croſs-waies, ſo great effuſion of blood happened, that after divers aſtringent things had been applied, and the uſe of Cauſticks and Eſcharoticks, the blood would notwithſtanding flow by fits; ſo that the Phyſicians and Chyrurgeons had thoughts to cut his Arm quite off. But I, to whom the Cure was committed, rouled a Linnen Cloth into the form of a Cylinder, or Garden Rowling ſtone, four fingers breadth in length, and as thick as a mans Thumb, which I thruſt perpendicular down-right into the Wound, filling the bye ſpaces with little bolſters; and becauſe the end of my Rowl came an inch above the ſurface of his Arm, I laid four bolſters which came as high as the Rowl, and kept it faſt, and upon the Rowl I laid a fift bolſter four ſquare, and at laſt ſwathed al faſt. And from that time the blood came no more; now I did not open the Wound for four or five daies, until the fleſh which was bred within, might ſtop the orifice of the Veins.

The 417 *Obſervation, or Hiſtory, of famous and Rare Cures, &c.*

The bleeding of a wounded Artery, cured by binding.

A Young man of *Montpelier*, named *N. Peyre*, had received a Wound in a ſingle Combat, in the fore part of his Arm, near his Arm-pit, by which the axillary Vein and Artery were cut, whence ſo great bleeding aroſe, that I judged it could no waies be ſtopped with aſtringents, I preſently betook my ſelf to make a Ligature, which I happily performed after this manner. I thruſt a crooked Needle into the ſound fleſh above the Wound, ſo that it went unto the bone, and compaſſed the foreſaid Vein and Artery, beginning at the inferior part, where the *Muſculus Extenſor Longus* was transfixed, and the Needle where it came out pierced through the *Muſculus Biceps*; in the eye of the Needle there was a four-fold thred, with which the Vein and Artery were compaſſed within; then having laid a Rowl or Cylindre made of Linnen Cloth upon the Skin, between the two ends of the Thred, I tied the Thred cloſe upon the Cylindre or Rowle, which I did to keep the Skin and Veſſels from being broken or cut aſunder by the Thred; and thus the Vein and Artery aforeſaid were ſo tied, that the blood iſſued no more. After ten or eleven dayes, when the Wound ſeemed to be cloſed up, I cut off the Thred, and the Patient was cured. In the mean ſpace, after the foreſaid Ligature was made, to aſſwage the pain cauſed thereby, and to cure the Inflamation which followed the pain, he was frequently blooded, and Vinegar and Roſe-water were applied to the part, and other Medicines to aſſwage pain, and ſtop the Inflamation.

The 418 *Obſervation, or Hiſtory, of Famous and Rare Cures, &c.*

An intollerable Pain of the *Os Sacrum.*

A Certain poor Cobler about forty years old, had a moſt cruel pain in the lower part of *Os Sacrum*, for two months together, which was ſo vehement, that the man fell mad upon it. Divers Remedies univerſal and particular, were uſed in vain. At laſt, being ſent for, I applied two Cupping-Glaſſes, one to the part pained, the other a little lower, viz. upon his buttock, with deep Scarrifications, out of which much blood came, the which being wiped off, I ſet the Cups on again upon the ſcarrified places, and a good quantity of blood came away again. The Man ſeemed free from his pain; nevertheleſs the day following, I applied a large Cauſtick to the pained place, above the Scarrifications, and kept it on four and twenty hours; ſo that there was a deep *Eſchara*, which reached to the bone. Which being come away, the Ulcer was healed up, and the Patient freed from his great Miſery.

The 419 *Obſervation, or Hiſtory, of Famous and rare Cures,* etc.

The Dropſie.

THe foreſaid Cobler, two years after the foreſaid Cure fell into the Dropſie Aſcites, which being troubled with for ſix months together, ſo that his Navil ſtuck out as big as an Hens Egg: an apertion was made in the middle of his ſwollen Navil, and the water drawn out by little and little, a pipe made of Tinn being put into the hole; in the end whereof there was a broad plate, that it might not ſink into his belly, having holes bored through, that it might be tied. Afterwards it was ſtopped up, and ſo he was cured.

In this kind of Operation obſerve, that Hydropical Perſons muſt not be opened, unleſs their Navil ſtart out, and ſo nature ſeem to affect that way to diſcharge her ſelf. For al that are opened, their Navils not ſwelling as aforeſaid, die upon it. Now this ſtarting of the Navil may be procured by Art, applying frequently upon the ſame, Cupping-Glaſſes without Scarrification, but with much flame; alſo by applying Emollient and Attractive Fomentations, which being uſed about the ſpace of eight dayes, wil raiſe the Navil into a ſwelling, upon which the Orifice may be made.

The 420 *Obſervation, or Hiſtory, of famous and rare Cures, &c.*

Another Dropſie.

A Certain poor Woman, twenty five years old, was troubled with the Dropſie. An old woman adviſed her to take the bones of any Beaſt which had lain drying in the Sun, and beat them to pouder, and take a dram thereof every day for a month in white Wine mingled with the juyce of Parſley. The Juyce was thus extracted. She took an handful of Parſley, and wrapped it in a Linnen Cloth, and roaſted it under the hot aſhes, and then ſhe beat it in a marble Morter, powring on by little and little as much white wine as would ſuffice. She preſſed out the juyce and wine together to the quantity of two or three ounces, in which ſhe diſſolved the poudered bones, and drank it every morning for a Month, at the end of which ſhe was perfectly cured.

The

The 421 Obſervation, or hiſtory, of famous and Rare Cures, etc.

VVater in a Childs Head.

AN Infant newly born was troubled with the Hydrocephalos or Water-Head, the whole Head being Swoln with a great dilatation of the ſuture. I cured this diſeaſe without any phyſick or other Remedy, ſaving *Guido* his Swathe, made in form of a Cucupha or ſpice-cap, wherewith the whol head of the infant was covered, the two ends being tied up into knots. Every day the ſwathe was renewed, and ſo within fifteen or twenty dayes the tumor wholly vaniſhed.

The 422 Obſervation, or Hiſtory, of famous and Rare Cures, &c.

The Dropſie.

I Have been told by credible perſons, that two hydropical women were cured by cutting the nailes of their toes ſo cloſe that ſome part of the fleſh was cut away with them, and ſome blood came away, whereupon followed a dropping of wheyiſh excrements for many dayes together, and ſo by little and little the hydropical humor was drawn forth.

The 423 Obſervation, or Hiſtory, of Famous and Rare Cures, &c.

A certain wound of the head with Contuſion.

A Certain woman by the fal of a beam upon the top of her Head, received a grievous wound with contuſion, whereupon, there appeared a Bag in the nether part upon the *Os parietal*, four fingers bredth in greatneſs, I would have opened the ſaid bag or Impoſtume, in the ſloping part thereof, which the patient obſtinately refuſed. Wherefore I put the foreſaid ſwath or cap upon the impoſtume with a thick emplaſtred bolſter that it might ſtick, whereupon the matter was preſſed unto the wound, which was on the top of her head, and afterward Glutination, whereupon a perfect Cure happily followed.

The 424 Obſervation, or Hiſtory, of Famous and Rare Cures, &c.

An Impoſtume upon the Breaſt-bone.

A Certain Student of Phyſick had one of theſe red hot ſwellings called, Phlegmone of a very great bigneſs upon his breaſt-bone, as big as the palm of a mans hand, which coming to ſuppurate, through the unskilfulneſs of another Chyrurgeon the Impoſtume was opened in the upper part. I being called would have opened it again in the nether part, which the patient would by no meanes hear of, wherefore I applyed a thick implaiſtered bolſter and ſweathed it faſt on, by which meanes the matter was al forced to the part opened and ſo expelled; and by this meanes the wound was healed.

The 425 Obſervation, or hiſtorie, of famous and rare Cures, &c.

A Hollow winding Ulcer.

A Youth eighteen yeares old had four monthes an hollow winding ulcer in his right thigh between his groine and huckle; the orifice was uppermoſt, and the cavity went downward

ward to the midle of his thigh. He would not ſuffer it to be opened beneath, which ſeemed neceſſary to be done. I being compelled thereunto, after detergent injections oft times repeated, applyed a very thick bolſter emplaſtered that it might ſtick cloſe; and twathing it in a ſpiral wreathed fathion, from the nether part to the upper, which was kept open: the ſaid winding hollow ulcer was healled up in a months ſpace.

The 426 Obſervation, or Hiſtory, of Famous and Rare Cures, &c.

The Sleeping Diſeaſe in Children.

THe Daughter of Mſr. *Ludovicus*, a Citizen of *Montpelier*, eight yeares old, was taken with the Coma or ſleepy Evil, which *Avicen* termes Subeth, with frequent convulſions, to whom the Phyſitians had given many Medicines and applyed divers Remedies, viz. Clyſters, frictions, Cupping-glaſſes, Veſicatories, sneezing pouder, &c. I gave her one dram of white vitriol in broath, whereupon ſhe vomited, and was preſently cured.

The Son of a certain Gardener five or ſix yeares old, was taken with the ſame diſeaſe, to whom I gave half an ounce of the *Aqua benedicta Rulandi*, which purged him up and down, and cured him.

The Daughter of Mſr. *de la Croix*, a Merchant, being a yeare old and troubled with the ſame diſeaſe, without convulſion fits, took of juyce of onions and ordinary oyl, of each one ſpoonful mingled together, wherewith ſhe vomited, and was wel.

The daughter of Mſr. *Morand* a Goldſmith, foure years old, troubled with the ſame diſeaſe, was cured with the ſame medicine.

The 427 Obſervation, or Hiſtory, of Famous and Rare Cures, &c.

Tertian Ague and wormes.

A Citizen of *Montpelier* thirty yeares old troubled with a tertian Ague, took an ounce of Aqua Benedicta, and was cured of his Ague, and with the working of the medicine he voided a broad worm ſeven foot long.

The 428 Obſervation, or Hiſtory, of Famous and Rare Cures, &c.

A Leaden Bullet ſhot into the Heele.

A Certain ſoldier was wounded in his Leg, which wound deſcended downwards as far as his heel, into the ſubſtance whereof the bullet was faſtened, and there it ſtuck. The Ulcer was not cured, but became fiſtulous, and continued in that maner ſeven yeares together. At laſt he committed himſelf to my care. I putting a probe into the ulcer felt the bullet in the very cavity of the bone. Then meaſuring the place with my probe, which went into the ulcer ſix fingers deep, over againſt the place where the bullet lay, I applied a great Cauſtick, which becauſe it did not pierce ſo far as the bone, I applied another which wrought to the heel-bone, which being barred, I opened his heel with my trepan, where I find the bullet ſecretly enclоſed, and draw it out, and in a ſhort while after the ulcer was healed up.

The

The 429 *Obſervation, or Hiſtory, of famous and Rare Cures, &c.*

The Skul depreſſed by a wound.

THe Daughter of Mſr. *Strinc*, Citizen of *Montpelier*, eighteen monthes old, fel down the ſtaires, and hitting her head againſt the ſtones, her skul was bowed in between the ſagital and Coronal ſuture, the quantity of half a nut. Being called to ſee her, I cut off her hair and applie a cupping-Glaſs without ſcarrification to the depreſſed part, and afterward applied it again with ſcarrification. Afterwards I applied a cataplaſme made of bran bread, wine, and Roſes, which I repeated twice a day, five or ſix dayes together, reiterating the application of my Cupping-Glaſs without ſcarification before every application of the Cataplaſme, and at laſt for four or five dayes applying the Cataplaſme alone without ſcarification. The tumor raiſed by the Cupping-Glaſs was diſcuſſed, and the depreſſion or dent was taken away, ſo that the bone returned to its natural place and convexity.

The 430 *Obſervation, or Hiſtory, of Famous and Rare Cures, &c.*

Ruptures.

I Have cured many burſten men and women, in ſome of whome the gut had been fallen without the peritonæum for three or four dayes together: ſo that they were fallen into the iliack paſſion commonly called *Miſereri mei*: which Cure I performed after this manner. I place a table or a planke of ſufficient breadth by the Patients bed in ſuch a manner, that one end leanes upon the ſide of the Bed, and the other end reſts upon the floore. Then I place the ſick perſon upon the ſaid plank with pillowes under him or her, in ſuch a poſture that the head of the patient lies next the ground and the feet next the bed ſide. Then I foment the part a long time with cloathes foure times double ſteeped in cold water, in the meane while gently touching the ſame with my fingers, and having continued this fomentation, for half an hour, I applie a many times doubled cloath ſhaped like a Triangle wet in cold water upon the place, making a containing ligature thereupon; and thus within a few hours for the moſt part, the Gut is of it ſelf reſtored to its place. But if after the firſt Fomentation and the Application of the Cloath thereupon the Gut be not reſtored to its place, I Reiterate the ſame operation twice in a day, and upon the ſecond or third Repetition the Diſeaſe is cured.

In ſome patients being called late, when the Gut was inflamed, ſo that in regard of its ſwelling, it could not return back again by the ſtraight hole in the Peritonæum, I have by widening the ſaid hole by inciſion, ſaved three patients from a ſpeedy Death. Which operation I doe thus performe. Firſt I place the patient as aforeſaid, and withal I bind him hand and foot that he may not be able to ſtir while I am in my work. Then I draw a tranſverſe line with ink above the Line of the ſtrangling of the Gut where the rupture of the Peritonæum is. Then I draw another line perpendicularly cutting the foreſaid line at the place of the ſtrangulation and in the mideſt thereof: then I draw the skin too on both ſides with my two fingers in a tranſverſe Line, and I cut it with my Inciſion knife perpendicularly, ſo that the length of the Inciſion is as much as two fingers bredth. Then I lift up the muſcles which cover the rupture, by little and little with certain hooks, and I ſeperate them with a pen-knife until the production of the peritonæum lie open to the ſight. And then it is lifted up with an hook, and cut with the foreſaid pen-knife, and ſo the Gut is put into its place again. But if the Gut be ſo ſwelled with wind or inflamation, that it cannot be thruſt back into the abdomen, the Apertion already made may be enlarged, by putting into the wound ſuch a fathioned Catherer as they uſe to cut the ſtone upon, and by clipping the abdomen thereupon with Siſſors, either in the upper or lower part as the Chyrurgeon ſhal think moſt convenient.

In this operation I noted one thing wel worth obſervation in a certain woman whom I cured by the meanes aforeſaid, viz. that her belly being opened, the gut which had fallen out of the

Peritonæum

Peritonæum thirteen years together, cauſing a perpetual Tumor in her Groyn, appeared covered with a fleſhy kind of ſwath band, which compaſſed the ſaid Gut, and continually growing in the inferior part by the Rupture, did ſo ſtraiten the Gut in that part, that the Excrements could not find paſſage through the ſame, whereupon the Woman fel into the Iliack paſſion, which was the Cauſe that I took her in Hand.

The 431 *Obſervation, or Hiſtory, of Famous and Rare Cures, &c.*

The tumor *Ganglion* upon the Face.

A Certain young Woman had one of thoſe Tumors called *Ganglion* in her Face, as big as a Cherry, beneath her Eye, upon the Bone called *Zygoma*; which was Diſcuſt within a month, by applying thereunto a plate of lead ſmeared with Quick-ſilver and ſtuck upon a Plaiſter that it might be kept on. The plate with the Plaiſter were laid upon the Tumor and a bolſter thereupon, and then I tied them to with ſuch a ſwath-band as *Galen* calls *Semipbalera.*

The 432 *Obſervation, or Hiſtory, of Famous and Rare Cures, &c.*

A Tumor called Anchylops.

A Woman forty years of Age had a Tumor in the Larger corner of her Eye, which Tumor is called Anchilops: I took it away, by applying a ſmal Cauſtick, and the coat being fallen away, I cured the Ulcer with a little red Precipitate and burnt Allum, two parts of precipitate I mixed with a third part of burnt Allum, which I made up with a little Unguentum Aureum, and applied it to the Ulcer til there came a new Eſchar as big as a Vetch, which being fallen away, the bone appeared bare, which appearing untainted, I preſently took a Courſe to fil up the Ulcer with fleſh, laying on old worn rags and changing them twice a day, and ſo the diſeaſe was perfectly Cured.

The 433 *Obſervation, or Hiſtory, of Famous and Rare Cures, &c.*

A deadly Coſtiveneſs.

A Certain Taylor for a month or longer had never gone to ſtool, and having took many Clyſters and purging potions in vain, at laſt he died. His body being opened, al his Guts were found ſtuffed with Dung partly, and partly with meat and drink like puddings. The cauſe whereof was judged to be, that the Guts had wholly loſt their expulſive faculty.

The 434 *Obſervation, or Hiſtory, of Famous and Rare Cures, etc.*

A fracture of the ſkul in the left temple.

A Certain Woman was wounded in her left Temple with a ſtone, who preſently upon the wound received, came into the Hands of a young Chyrurgeon, who being terrified with the grievouſneſs of the wound, called me to his aſſiſtance. I perceiving there was a fracture, and judging it neceſſary to uſe my Trepan, I confidently made a Croſs-faſhion'd inciſion upon the Crotaphita, by which means the bone was diſcovered and the fracture found, in which a bit of the ſkul as big as an almond ſhel was wholly ſeparated, depreſſed as low as the Dura Mater, and ſeen lurking under the Skul. But with the Trepan wel applied, that portion of the Skul was drawn out, and the wound happily cured, neither did there happen any grievous ſymtome upon the Inciſion of the Crotaphita.

The

The 435 *Obſervation, or hiſtory, of famous and* Rare Cures, &c.

A Canker.

A Certain Woman fifty years of Age had a Canker in her left Dug, which began to ulcerate: a young Chyrurgeon a forreigner applied the following Medicament.

Take *Aqua fortis, one ounce*; *Crude Sublimate, four ounces*; *Sal Ammoniack, two ounces*; *Arſenick, one dram*; *put al into an Alembick and ſtil them til they become dry, adding as much diſtilled Vinegar as anſwers the weight of the pouders. Stil the Vinegar again, til the matter come to be as thick as paſt.*

Firſt he carefully waſhed the Canker with hot wine, with Cloaths dipped therein, and rubbed it luſtily, to ſtirr up the Humors in the part. Then he ſpread of the paſt upon a bolſter ſix times ſmaller than the ſwelling, which he left upon the part twenty four hours, and there was made an Eſchar ſix times greater than the bolſter, ſo that it did eat the Canker wholly away, and when the Eſchar fel off, the Ulcer was filled with fleſh and then cloſed up. And in caſe the foreſaid Eſchar had not taken away the whol Tumor, but that ſome Roots thereof had remained, thoſe he would have conſumed with the pouder of red precipitate and burnt Alum wel mixed.

And to fil the ulcer with fleſh he uſed only lint of old rags.

This is worth Obſervation, that when the Paſt was laid on, a Feaver was preſently raiſed, with vomiting and a looſneſs, and much provocation of Urin, which ſymptoms continued two or three daies, Nature being vexed and provoked with the deſtructive quality of a Venemous Medicament.

With the ſame Medicine a Canker was cured upon a Soldiers Noſe end, which had eat away the tip of his Noſe.

The 436 *Obſervation, or* Hiſtory, *of famous and rare Cures*, &c.

Another Cure of a Canker.

A Certain old Woman had a Canker in her left Dug, which ſhe had born thirteen years together. Wherein little Cancerous Tumors grew out, which pained her more than the great one upon which they grew, becauſe they were ulcerated. Theſe little Tumors were taken away by frequent Application of Waters of red Poppy, plantain, and Roſes, mixed with Honey of Roſes at firſt, but afterwards the waters were uſed alone. And in another Woman that had a cancerous Ulcer in her breaſt, the ſame Medicine cured the Ulcer quite, and cloſed it up.

The 437 *Obſervation, or Hiſtory, of* Famous *and* Rare Cures, &c.

A Gangræne in a womans Privy part.

A Woman thirty years of Age by reaſon of Sore Travil in her Child bearing and rending of the Lips of her Privity, contracted a great ſwelling in the right Lip, by reaſon of the Concourſe of blood into that part, which when ſhe had neglected for three or four daies, at length a Gangræne was introduced into the part. I being thereupon ſent for, I made large and deep inciſion in the inner part of the Water-Gate, and then I put my hand into thoſe inciſions and drew forth clotters of blood to the quantity of a pound and an half. Afterward I waſhed the part very wel with Wine, Salt, Honey, and Vinegar mixed together and made very hot, and I Fomented the ſame with Linnen Cloaths; then I made new Inciſions, and waſhed and Fomented them. Afterwards I cut away certain portions of the inner coat which were putrified, and again fel to fomenting; and I perſiſted without intermiſſion with ſuch like inciſions and Fomentations, until no ſtink appeared in the part, and that al the corrupted portions were taken

taken away. And afterward, the foreſaid Fomentations were continued day and night, for two orthree daies together, after which I mixed Unguentum Ægyptiacum, and Aureum, and applied to the part; and finally the Ulcer was cloſed up with Aqua Vulneraria.

By the ſame Method a Citizen of *Montpelier*, was Cured of a Gangræne in his Teſticle.

The 438 *Obſervation, or Hiſtory, of Famous and Rare Cures, &c.*

Another Gangræne in the Foot.

A Gentlewoman through a long ſickneſs, contracted a Gangræne in her Foot, which being only in its beginning, was perfectly cured by continually Fomenting the ſame with a Vulnerary Decoction made of round Birthwort Roots, Rhapontícum, Zedoary, Myrrh, Aloes, and white Wine, unto which, after boyling and ſtraining, was added Aqua Vitæ with Camphire diſſolved therein.

The 439 *Obſervation, or Hiſtory, of Famous and Rare Cures, &c.*

Another Gangræne in the Foot.

A Certain Gentleman had a Gangræne in his Leg, which was gone ſo far, that the Phyſitians and Chyrurgeons had reſolved to cut his Leg off, which they deferring to do til the next day, when they were gone there came an Emperick, who undertook to cure the Gangræne, whereupon the patient ſubmitted to his Cure, and he Fomented the part al night with water in which lime and chalk had been boyled, and in the morning the Gangræne appeared wholly taken away.

The 440 *Obſervation, or Hiſtory, of Famous and Rare Cures, &c.*

A *Wenn.*

THe Son of Mſr. *Malafoſſe*, a Merchant of *Montpelier*, had a great Wen as big as a large fiſt, under his ſhoulder blade near his Back-bone, which was cured by the following Method. I made me an inſtrument of hard wood like the ſtone with which painters grind their colors upon a Marble; with which I did rub and grind upon the Wenn half an hour at a time twice a day: then I laid on an Emollient and ſuppurating plaiſter very hot, which I kept on for four or five daies; and the Wenn came to ſuppuration, and being opened the matter or quittor came forth being liquid, and afterwards al the ſubſtance contained in the Wenn was turned into matter and Evacuated, and the Ulcer was healed up. The foreſaid grinding and rubbing with the wooden Inſtrument ſerves to break the bag in which the Wenn is contained, and by that means alſo the matter contained in the Wenn is attenuated and divided into ſmal particles, that it may the ſooner come to digeſtion. Inſtead of a Cataplaſme, an hot loaf newly taken out of the Oven and cut aſunder in the middeſt may profitably be applied.

This kind of Cure wrought the ſame effect in many other patients.

The 441 *Obſervation, or Hiſtory, of famous and Rare Cures, &c.*

The Letchers pox in a new born Child.

A Woman infected with the Whore-maſters Pox brought forth a Man-child with Puſtles and Ulcers in divers parts of his body, who was cured with white precipitate given in the quantity of two or three gains with Sugar and Milk, every day or every other day for a month together. He began to take it upon the fifteen day after he was born.

The

The 442 Obſervation, or hiſtory, of famous and rare Cures, &c.

Kidneys turned into Quittor.

A Maid of eighteen years old did a long time void Urines with Quittor or matter in them, having a continual flow and Hectick Feaver, and at length ſhe died. Her body being opened her Kidneys were found wholly changed into Quittor, ſo that the Coats of the Kidneys were wholly filled with purulent matter, there appearing not ſo much as any reliques of the fleſh of the Kidneys.

The 443 Obſervation, or hiſtory, of Famous and Rare Cures, &c.

A Spot in the tunicle Cornea.

A poor Woman had a ſpot in her Eye, whom I adviſed to drop twice a day one drop of juyce of Rue into her Eye: which when ſhe had practiſed a good while together, the ſpot was quite taken away.

The 444 Obſervation, or Hiſtory of Famous and Rare Cures, &c.

Gutta Serena.

A young Woman was taken with the *Gutta Serena* [that is, a kind of blindneſs in which no fault can be ſeen in the Eyes] with which ſhe was ſo grieved, that ſhe was reſolved to ſtarve her ſelf to Death. Yet her Husband and others that were about her did compel her by force to take down a little broath or Wine, but it was very little which ſhe would take, rejecting all kind of nutriment as much as in her lay. She continued in this condition an whol year, and was made extream lean, her natural heat for want of food devouring the ſubſtantial moiſture of her body: and therewith al the Humors likewiſe of her body were conſumed, and that among the reſt which had Cauſed her Blindneſs; and ſo ſhe recovered her ſight, and was by little and little brought up again by a reſtorative Diet.

The 445 Obſervation, or Hiſtory, of Famous and Rare Cures, &c.

Children with crooked Legs.

MAny times, Children when they are two years old, and begin to go, prove Crook-legged, whereat their Mothers being troubled do ask adviſe of Chyrurgeons, which commonly endeavour with divers engions and deviſes to ſtrengthen their Legs and Thighs. But al is for the moſt part labour loſt, becauſe ordinarily, about the third or fourth year of their Age, their Bones and Muſcles grow naturally ſtronger, and the parts returne unto their naturtal Rectitude.

The 446 Obſervation, or hiſtory, of famous and rare Cures, &c.

Head-ach called Cephalæa, and Hemicrania.

IN the *Hemicrania*, when one half of the Head akes by reaſon of an hot Cauſe, and in that kind of pain which *Gordonius* does term *Clavus* or the Nail, which is a pain fixed in the Temples, the opening of an Artery does wondertully help, which I have ſafely performed in many.

many. I bind down the Orifice with a ſingle bolſter made of a doubled clout, and wet in cold water as in the caſe of Ordinary Phlebotomy, which I ſwathe with ſuch a Swath-band as *Galen* calls the Hare without Ears, and the blood never breaks forth afterward. Alſo I have ſeen a laſting Cephalæa, or univerſal Headach, cured in the Hoſpital by applying a potencial Cauſtick unto the temporal Artery. For the Eſchar being come away, which was cauſed by the potencial Cauſtick applied upon the Veins and Arteries, no flux of blood follows; becauſe provident Nature while ſhe endeavours to ſeparate the Eſchar, does without breed new fleſh, wherewith the mouths of the Veſſels are cloſed up. And whereas it is objected, that great bleedings in wounds which are ſtopped by actual Caueries or Corroſives, are oftentimes renewed, when the Eſchar comes away. I anſwer, That thoſe Eſchars are thinner, and fal away ſooner, and therefore there is not in the mean ſpace time enough to breed new fleſh; but ſuch Eſchars as are made by a potential Cautery, are more thick and ſolid, and are long before they come away, ſo that there is time enough for new fleſh to breed and ſtop up the Veins.

The 447 Obſervation, or Hiſtory, of Famous and Rare Cures, &c.

Madneſs.

THere was a certain yong Man mad, and for his Cure the moſt effectual Remedies were put in practice, ſo far as to come to the uſe of Antimony, the Trepan, and the opening of the Arteries of his Temples. And when all did no good, I adviſed that he ſhould be gueldded; which being done, all ſymptomes were abated, and his fury ceaſed quite; yet ſo as that he continued in a melancholy dotage, his madneſs being changed into Melancholy.

The 448 Obſervation, or Hiſtory, of Famous and rare Cures, &c.

Stoppage of Urine.

I Have made tryal of an effectual Medicine for ſtoppage of the Urine in three Patients. It is made of the brain of a Mag-pie dried and drank in white wine. Within an hour it makes the Patient to piſs.

The 449 Obſervation, or Hiſtory, of Famous and Rare Cures, &c.

VVarts.

WIthin ſeven or eight daies they are cured with Purſlane bruiſed and rubbed upon them, and then applied as a Pultiſs, renewing the ſame twice a day.

The 450 Obſervation, or hiſtory, of Famous and Rare Cures, &c.

Corns on feet or toes.

CUt the Corns when the Moon is in the wain, firſt waſhing the feet a pretty while in hot water. Then apply Ivy leaves bruiſed, and renew the ſame every day morning and evening: within fifteen daies the Corns are drawn out; by which we learn, that there is in Ivy a moſt potent attractive Faculty.

The 451 Obſervation, or Hiſtory, of Famous and Rare Cures, &c.

Burnings.

THE ſaid Ivy helps Burnings, if the Leaves thereof be boyled in water, and ſo applied.

The

The 452 *Obſervation, or Hiſtory, of famous and Rare Cures, &c.*

The Peſtilence.

WHen there was a moſt cruel Peſtilence at *Montpelier*, in the Year 1630. when they were infected with the Plague, they ſent to me to know what they ſhould do. I remembring that I had read in *Pareus* that the pickle of thoſe little Fiſh called Anchoves, had helped ſome of the plague, I adviſed them to take thereof. One Patient drank a porrenger ful by it ſelf, another took of it mingled with Urine, and both were cured; for there followed vehement evacuation both by vomit and ſtool.

The 453 *Obſervation, or hiſtory, of famous and rare Cures*, etc.

Another Cure of the Plague.

IN the ſame time of Peſtilence, three perſons in one Family, viz. the Husband, his Wife, and her Siſter, were infected, and they drank their own Dung diſſolved in their own Urine and ſtrained through a Cloth, whereupon they purged and vomited moſt violently, and were all three recovered. We read a ſtory ſomwhat like this in *Zacutus Luſitanus*, his 89. Obſerv. of his third Book, where he relates, That in the Weſtern Indies there is a little Beaſt like a Lizzard, frequently to be found in the Fields called *Garit*; the biting whereof is deadly without hope, unleſs the bitten perſon do take in mans Dung. Howbeit, 'tis wel enough known, that many are holpen of the plague, by other kind of Vomits.

The 454 *Obſervation, or Hiſtory of famous and* Rare *Cures*, &c.

Gout-pain

IS quickly eaſed, by fomenting the part pained with the water of Aſhen Leaves ſtilled in a Lead or Peuter ſtill, ſuch as the common People ſtill Roſes in.

The 455 *Obſervation, or Hiſtory, of famous and* Rare *Cures*, &c.

Tooth-ach.

I Have freed an infinite company of People from the Tooth-ach by putting a little Cotton wool wet in Oyl of Box wood, into their hollow Teeth. This Oyl is drawn in a Retort with a reverberating Heat, firſt infuſing the Duſt thereof in white wine twenty four hours, and then ſtilling all together. Firſt there comes away an acid water, which does good in the Toothach only by waſhing the Teeth therewith; after that comes the Oyl, which is to be diligently preſerved.

I have alſo happily uſed this following Medicament.

Take *Seeds of Plantane two drams; of Tormentil three drams; Henbane ſeed four ſcruples. Let all be dried and finely powdered, adding thereto one grain of Opium. Bind the Powder up in little Nodules, which muſt be macerated in the following Decoction.*

Take *Elder Flowers one handful; Red Roſes two pugils: boyl them in Vinegar, and reſerve the ſtrained Liquor for the uſe aforeſaid.*

Theſe Nodules being ſteeped in the ſaid Decoction, are held and gently preſſed between the Teeth, and within a while much moiſture flows out of their mouth, and the pain is taken away.

The 456 Obſervation, or Hiſtory, of Famous and Rare Cures, &c.

VVhore-maſters Pox.

HEnry the Third, of that Name, King of *France*, was troubled with the Whore-maſters Pox, and could not be cured by his ordinary Phyſitians. He was informed that *Vena* who practiſed Phyſick at that time in *Paris*, did cure many of this Diſeaſe with a peculier Medicine which he had learned of a Turk: whereupon he commanded him to be ſent for, and he was by him cured. Now the Medicine he uſed was this:

Take *of the Roots of the great Burdock cut in thin ſlices, eight ounces; white Wine, and Spring water, of each two pound. Let them boyl together till half the Liquor be conſumed, adding towards the end, an ounce, or an ounce and half of Senna, according to the Patients diſpoſition. Let the Patient take half a pint of the ſtrained Liquor, and procure ſweat by laying hot flints tied up in Cloaths, one neer the ſoals of his Feet, by each Leg one, by each Thigh one, and by each Shoulder one, and being cloſe covered. Let him ſweat plentifully an hour and half together; and about evening he will have a ſtool or two.*

This Medicine was uſed (univerſal Remedies being premiſed) for the ſpace of fifteen or twenty dayes, and in the mean time inſtead of ordinary Drink, he uſed a decoction of China, or Sarſa Parilla, with a ſuitable diet.

After the uſe of theſe Medicaments, he took every day in the morning, the decoction of Burdock Root, without the Senna, and without any obſervance for a month or forty daies.

The 457 Obſervation, or hiſtory, of famous and rare Cures, etc.

Stoppage of Urine.

AN Apothecary of *Paris*, named *Lafoxilliére*, being troubled with a ſtoppage of his Urine, after many Medicines for four dayes together, taken in vain, he made himſelf this following Medicament, which made him piſs, and cured him.

Take *White Canary Wine four ounces; Juyce of Lemmons one ounce; Spirit of Turpentine two drams. Mix all into a potion.*

The 458 Obſervation, or Hiſtory, of famous and rare Cures, etc.

Of the internal Hemorrhoids.

THe ſaid Apothecary *Lafoxilliere*, did happily cure the internal Hemorrhoids, by injecting with a Syringe in the firſt place this following Decoction.

Take *of the middle bark of an Elm-tree two ounces; of the Root of Tapſus barbatus half an ounce. River water four pints. Boyl all to the conſumption of half the water; and ſtrain out the Liquor for the uſe aforeſaid.*

After the Injection, let a Pill made of Crude Antimony, and Lituridg of Gold, finely poudered, and mixed with Oyntment of Roſes, be put into the Fundament.

The Pill being put into the Fundament, let the compaſs thereof be anointed with this following Oyntment.

Take *Juyce of the greater Houſleek, Plantane, Tapſus barbatus, and Nightſhade, of each four ounces; Hogs Greaſe one pound. Boyl all till the Juyces are conſumed, ſtrain it through a Linnen Cloth; and when it is cold, add thereto the pouder of Gray-fiſh, or River-Crabs dried in an Oven, half an ounce; Tapſus barbatus in pouder, and the pouder of Periwinkle ſhells, of each two drams. Make all into an Oyntment. Continue theſe Medicines morning and evening for eight dayes together.*

The

The 459 *Obſervation, or Hiſtory, of famous and Rare Cures, &c.*

Univerſal pains.

A certain man forty years old, was tormented with univerſal pains, which could not be allayed by many Medicines preſcribed by Phyſitians. At laſt by the advice of a ſilly woman, his whol body was covered with Alder Leaves tied up in two great ſacks, and heared in the Bakers Oven after the Bread was drawn, which made him ſwear plentifully. And with this Medicine thrice repeated, he was perfectly cured of his pains.

The 460 *Obſervation, or Hiſtory, of Famous and Rare Cures, &c.*

A cancerous ſwelling of the Gums.

A certain Maid twenty five years old had an hard ſwelling in her upper gum over the dog tooth as big as half a nut, which was twice cut away with an inciſion knife, and then ſeared with a red hot Iron, and ſtil it came again. And after the ſecond operation the ulcer and tumor remaining, ſhe was by me perfectly cured by applying red precipitate mixed with burnt Allum, with which I beſprinkled ſome lint wet with ſpittle, or I mingled it with Unguentum Apoſtolorum, and being applied freſh every day, within ſix weeks, it was wel cured, and the tumor being wholly eaten away by the corroſive Medicament, new fleſh was procured by application of Linc ſcraped from Cloth, applying to the naked bone *Guido* his Pulvis catagmaticus; and ſo the ulcer was healed up, and brought to a ſcar.

The 461 *Obſervation, or Hiſtory, of Famous and Rare Cures, &c.*

A fleſhy Excreſcence in the throat.

A certain Tailor of *Montpelier*, eating of fiſh had a large bone ſtuck in his throat, and as he pulled it out he rent his throat, whereupon in proceſs of time there aroſe a piece of fleſh in his throat neare the pallate of his mouth or Uvula, bigger than a nut: to the Cure whereof he called an Emperick, who by an actual cautery frequently applied, conſumed the ſwelling: but the ulcer being not perfectly healed up, the ſwelling returned, and he called another Emperick, who by frequent application of oyl of vitriol conſumed the tumor, and brought it to a perfect ſcar.

The 462 *Obſervation, or Hiſtory of Famous and Rare Cures, &c.*

Running of the Reins.

With Conſerve of the fruit of bruſcus or butchers-broom given the Quantity of two drams or half an Ounce for ſome dayes together, I have cured divers Gonorrhœa's.
Water ſtilled out of the ſaid fruit, works the ſame effect.

The 463 *Obſervation, or Hiſtorie, of Famous and Rare Cures, etc.*

A great piece of a Sword lies long concealed in a wound, and at laſt is drawn out.

Mſr. *de Suellies* in a ſingle combate received a wound in his ſhoulder above the ſhoulder blade, which went in at the upper part, and came out at the nether part, and

and there remained a peice of a ſword therein a foot long; which the Chyrurgeon not knowing he healed up the wound, the ſwords end remaining within, concealed between the ſhoulder blade, and the muſcles which cover the ſame. In this condition he remained whol ſeven years together, oftentimes feeling pains in that part. At length Nature driving the iron towards the upper part where the Scar of the wound was, a certain riſing appeared, with pain, whereunto a cauſtick being applied and the Scar opened, the end of the iron appeared, which with the Inſtrument called a Cranes-bil was taken hold of, and eaſily plucked out al over rufty.

The 464 Obſervation, or Hiſtory, of Famous and Rare Cures, &c.

Kings-Evil-ſwellings upon the fingers.

THe Daughter of Mſr. *Duſeigneur* a Goldſmith, ten yeares old, had hard Kings-evil-ſwellings on three of her fingers, which were cured by the ſmoake of vinegar poured upon red hot flints continued morning and evening for a month together; which remedy is highly extolled by *Galen* to diſcuss hard tumors.

The 465 Obſervation, or hiſtory, of Famous and Rare Cures, &c.

Sight Impaired in an old Man.

A Certain old man by reaſon of a defluxion of rheume falling into his eyes, had his ſight ſo far weakened, that he could not goe without one to guide him. Of which diſeaſe he was cured and his ſight reſtored, by putting into his eyes every night when he went to bed, five or ſix of the ſeeds of Clary, which drew the flegmatick humors out of his Eyes and clenſed the tunicle or coat called Cornea.

The 466 Obſervation, or hiſtory, of famous and Rare Cures, &c.

VVhores-Pox in a boy five yeares old.

I Cured it by giving him every day for twenty dayes together four granis of white precipiate in panada. It wrought only downwards, and never fluxt him at al.

Obſervations communicated by Mſr. *Peter Eſtanove*, a skilful Chyrurgeon of *Montpelier*.

The 467 Obſervation, or Hiſtory, of Famous and Rare Cures, &c.

A wound in the Breaſt.

A Certain Souldier was thruſt with a ſpeare into the forepart of his Cheſt, ſo that the wound peirced into the cavity thereof. Within two houts after he was wounded, the whole Bulk of his body together with his cods was blowne up like a bag-pipe; howbeit the ſaid ſwelling was eaſily cured, with torrified Bran put into divers bags, and ſo applied hot.

The

The 468 Obſervation, or Hiſtory, of Famous and Rare Cures, &c.

An Impoſtume of the Belly.

A certain boy having his belly ſwelled, was thought to have the dropſie; and when his navil extreamly ſtarted out, it was at laſt opened, and there Iſſued eight or ten pound of wel digeſted matter or Quittor, and ſo he was perfectly cured. Young Artiſts may do wel to take notice, that in children ſuch Impoſtumes of the belly are often ingendred, which appear like a dropſie which if they be ſeaſonably opened by a skilful Chyrurgeon, the patients are commonly freed from death, which would otherwiſe certainly follow.

The 469 Obſervation, or Hiſtory, of Famous and Rare Cures, &c.

Another Impoſtume in the belly.

A certain young Maiden had a ſwelling in her belly eight months together, with continual pains, which brought her to extream Leanneſs: and every one judged it was the dropſie. I being ſent for to her, dilligently marking the condition of her belly, I perceived that there was an impoſtume lay concealed between the muſcles of her belly, above the navil; which I opened with a potential Cauſtick, whereout iſſued fifteen or twenty pound of wel conditioned quittor or matter in the compaſs of certain daies; and ſo the patient was perfectly cured.

The 470 Obſervation, or Hiſtory, of Famous and Rare Cures, &c.

A Swelling of the Cods.

A Servant of Mſr. *Ricard*, Councellor to his Majeſty in his ſupream Court of Accounts, having received a kick of an horſe in the lower part of his belly, in the ſpace of four hours there aroſe a ſwelling in his Cod, as big as a childs head and of a black and blew colour. Which after bloodletting, was within the ſpace of ten dayes diſcuſſed with a cataplaſme or Pultis of Barley and Beane Meal, Cummin-ſeeds, Flowers of Chamemel, melilot and roſes, poudered and boyled with Oxymel.

A Man that was wounded with a ſword in his Loines, had the like ſwelling, which was cured after the ſame manner, and in the ſame ſpace of time.

The 471 Obſervation, or Hiſtory, of Famous and Rare Cures, &c.

A ſtone under the tongue.

A Man forty yeares old was troubled with grievous and frequent defluxions of rheume into his jawes and the almonds of his eares. At laſt it was perceived that there grew a ſtone under his tongue, which was eaſily drawn out, and from that time forward the patient was no more troubled with thoſe defluxions.

The 472 Obſervation, or Hiſtory, of Famous and Rare Cures, &c.

An Horn growing in the face.

A Certain old woman had growing upon the Bone Zygoma or Cheek-bal under her eye an hard body two fingers breadth long, juſt like an horn both in matter and ſhape, being broad at the Baſis or bottom and ſharp or pointed at the top, which in proceſs of time fel off, by its own accord, and a Cancer aroſe in its place.

OBSER-

Obſervations communicated by Mſr. *Denis Pomaret*, a Skilful Chyrurgeon of *Montpelier*.

The 473 *Obſervation, or Hiſtory, of Famous and* Rare *Cures*, etc.

A ſuppurated Tumor Diſcuſt.

Mary Pomaret, my Daughter, being eight years old, had a ſmal Tumor proceeding of blood and flegm, on the outſide of her nether Jaw, on the right ſide of her Face, which came to ſuppuration. But I fearing that her Face would be blemiſhed by the Scar; before I would open the Impoſtum, I reſolved to try if I could diſcuſs the ſame, leaning upon the Authority of *Guido*, who in his General Diſcourſe of Impoſtums, ſaies that ſuppurated impoſtums are ſometimes cured by diſcuſſion: which is alſo confirmed by a ſolemn experiment of *Pareus*, who avers that he cured a ſuppurated Impoſtume, with crude Mercury mingled with Diapalma Plaiſter, which diſcuſſed the ſame. In imitation of whom I mingled one dram of the ſaid Mercury, with an ounce of Diapalma Plaiſter, and laid it upon the ſuppurated Tumor, which within four daies ſpace was perfectly diſcuſſed.

For to diſcuſs ſuppurated matter, theſe following Conditions are requiſite. 1. That the matter be little in Quantity. 2. That it be thin and wheyiſh. 3. That it be in the Skin and ſurface of the Body, and not in any deep part. 4. That it be in a ſtrong youthful body, and ſoft fleſhed. 5. That it be in the Summer Seaſon of the year.

The 474 *Obſervation, or hiſtory, of famous and* Rare *Cures*, &c.

A Flegmatick tumor.

MY ſaid Daughter had an œdematous or flegmatick tumor, crude and not come to ſuppuration, upon the Region of her Loyns, as big as the Palm of ones hand, which was diſcuſt within a few daies, by the foreſaid Plaiſter.

The 475 *Obſervation, or Hiſtory, of famous and Rare Cures*, &c.

A VVenn.

A Capuchine Fryer of the Covent at *Montpelier*, twenty five years old, had a Wenn upon his Knee, which he had carryed about a long time, ſo that at laſt it was grown extream ſoft, in which reſpect I adviſed him that it ſhould be opened, becauſe the matter contained within, ſeemed wel digeſted. But he refuſed, ſaying, he had ſeen juſt ſuch Wens diſcuſſed, with the Leaves of Sorrel wrapped in a wet paper and roaſted in the Embers, which was afterward incorporated with ſifted aſhes into the form of a pultis. This Medicine he applied divers daies warm, and the Tumor vaniſhed wholly away; which I exceedingly admired, and have ſince that time cured two ſuch Wenns in the ſame part with the ſame Medicine. *John Guerinus*, ſixty years old was troubled with one of thoſe Wenns, and the Wife of *Timothy Coula* a Carpenter of *Montpelier* had the other.

The 476 Obſervation, or Hiſtory, of Famous and Rare Cures, etc.

Of the Tumor *Ecchymoſis.*

THe Wife of *Petrus Laiardus*, a Merchant of *Montpelier*, fifty years old, fel down the ſtairs, and received a bruiſed wound upon her Head, ſo that there aroſe a Tumor cauſed by the blood which was ſhed out of the Veſſels, which kind of Tumor is called Ecchymoſis, as big as an Hens Eg. After the firſt Application of a white of an Egg mixed with Oyl of Roſes and after blood letting, I began to think of opening the Tumor with my inciſion Knife or bringing the ſame to ſuppuration; according to that of *Hippocrates*, in the 20. Aphoriſme of his 5. Section, If blood be preternaturally ſhed into the belly, it muſt needs ſuppurate. Hereunto concurred the ſtore of matter, the Age of the Patient, the hardneſs of the Skin of the head, and the winter ſeaſon of the year. But becauſe the Patient would not hear of Inciſion, and I deſired to avoid the pains and other trouble which would come by ſuppuration, I reſolved to try a few daies if I could diſcuſs the Tumor, though I had very ſmal Hopes. Now I went this way to work. Firſt I fomented the part affected twice a day with hot water, half an hour at a time. After the Fomentation, I ſhaved the part with my Razor againſt the Hair, that the pores might be the more opened. And that al filth ſticking to the part might be wel clenſed away; and at laſt I applied Oyl of Lillies and Chamemel, of each a like quantity, laying thereupon Cotton wool perfumed with the Smoak of Aromatick pouders and wel heated, and ſo the ſwelling was perfectly diſcuſſed.

The 477 Obſervation, or hiſtory, of famous and Rare Cures, etc.

A Carbuncle.

TOuching Carbuncles, I have noted two things worthy of Obſervation, the one is, that though Carbuncles are wont alwaies to have a Feaver accompanying them, by reaſon of the great Inflamation which we ſee in them, as *Galen* teaches in his ſecond Book *ad Glauconem*, in theſe Words. *Whenever blood very hot and thick ſhal ſuddenly flow into any part, it burns the ſame and cauſes an Ulcer with a Cruſt; and the parts round about are thereby brought into a burning Inflamation, and vexed with grievous pain.* Howbeit ſince the time that I have addicted my ſelf to Chyrurgery, it has been my hap to ſee three Carbuncles, which have run through their times without any Feaver, and whithout any other grievous Symptome, ſo that the patients continually followed their Employments, one was in the Cheek, the other in the Neck, and the third under the lower Eye-lid of the left Eye. Al which were cured with the ſame medicines, wherewith we are wont to cure potential Cauteries, viz. Such as procure the falling of the Eſchar.

My other Obſervation touching Carbuncles is, That in that moſt cruel Peſtilence which raged at *Montpelier*, in the years 1620. and 1639. there appeared Carbuncles attended with quite different ſigns from thoſe deſcribed by *Galen*, *Guido*, and late Writers. Which was the Cauſe that very many Phyſitians and Chyrurgeons, yea of the moſt skilful did at firſt Erre in their Diagnoſis of theſe Carbuncles. Now the different ſigns appearing in them were, weakneſs, final pulſe, the part on which the Carbuncle roſe did not ſwel, A little inflamation incompaſſed the Puſtle, the extream ſoftneſs of the Eſchar arguing putrefaction rather than aduſtion, freeneſs of motion in the part affected and no perception of heavyneſs, which in vulgar Carbuncles is ſo great, that the part ſeems tied in bands.

The 478 *Observation, or History, of famous and Rare Cures, &c.*

A fleshy Excrescence on the Right Leg.

A Young man named *Claparede*, had a fleshy Excrescence, which the Greeks cal *Sarcoma*, in the inner side of his right Leg, four fingers above the Ankle, of the shape of a rowling Pin or Cylindre; the length of it was four fingers breadth, and it was as thick as the Arm of a new born Infant. This Tumor was nourished by an Artery which was carried unto the Basis thereof, which being very broad could not be bound. If the patient happened at any time to hit the Tumor with his other Leg, it would fal to a bleeding as to endanger his Life. Mr. *Samuel Formius*, an old skilful Chyrurgeon was called to consult with me, and it was resolved upon between us to take away the Tumor by the Roots, and to avoid effusion of blood, we sought the *Arteria Poplitea*, which when we had groaped out, in the upper and inner part of the Leg, we made a bolster hard and compact of linnen Cloaths closely folded together in the shape of a Cylindre or rowling Pin, which being wet with the juyce of nettles and smeared with the common Astringent Medicine, we laid upon the Artery al along according to the length thereof, swathing it very many times about with a fillet or swathband very fast. Then we applied other Bolsters unto the whol Leg and the extremity of the Thigh smeared with the foresaid Astringent, and swathed very close and strait. Also actual cauteries were had in a readyness, to stop the flux of blood, in case, notwithstanding the foresaid ligatures, it should break violently forth. Al things being thus in a readiness, I took hold of the tumor with my left hand and drew it outwards, and with my incision Knife in my right hand, I cut it out by the Roots, without any profusion of arterial blood. Soon after I applied an Astringent Plaister to the wound, which was left sticking twenty four houts after. Which being taken off there followed no bleeding at al, nor at any time afterward. And because some superfluous and unsound flesh remained upon the part, it was consumed away by gentle Corrosives. The ulcer yielded wel conditioned matter, and at last by detergents, Epuloticks, and such things as bring the Scar together, it was perfectly cured.

The 479 *Observation, or historie, of famous and rare* Cures, &c.

A Stone in a Mans Throat.

A Priest sixty years old, of a sanguine complexion, was oftentimes troubled with an Inflamation of his Throat, especially when he strained himself more than ordinary in singing; which inflamation was cured with blood-letting and a Gargarisme of Vinegar and Water mixed together. In the last coming of the said Inflamation while I was busily viewing the part affected, I saw an extraneous matter fastened to his Throat, near the end of the lower jaw-bone of the right Cheek, like a Musket buller, which I easily drew out, and having carefully washed it, I found it to be no other than an hard and compacted stone, shaped like a wild pear, the Tail whereof had been fastened in the Muscles called *Masseteres*, or the Champers. There remained a found mattering ulcer, which was cleansed with Honey and Wine, and healed up.

The 480 *Observation, or History, of* Famous *and* Rare *Cures, &c.*

Wound of a Gum.

Mr. *de Roques Junior*, surnamed the Knight, at the siege of *Salsa*, was Wounded with a shot, in the upper and middle part of his breast bone, which was carryed Obliquely unto his Back, and went out six fingers breadth distant from the Back-bone. Presently after he was wounded he perceived most sharp pricking pains in the *Oesophagus*, or mouth of his Stomach, as if there were thorns sticking there, and because he was choaked with blood, he endeavoured

endeavored ſtrongly to caſt it out; and at laſt after many and frequent ſtrainings, and much voidance of blood, wherewith many baſins were filled, the pricking pain of the Oeſophagus wholly ceaſed. After many daies, the patient going to ſtool, found the like pricking pains in his Fundament, which he had felt in his Stomach, and feeling with his finger what the matter was, he found a ſolid pricking ſubſtance; which by little and little he drew out, and preſently voided another like the former. Now theſe were two thin fragments of a bone broad and flat like the Leaves of a Tree, on the one ſide ſmooth, on the other ſide rough; and the ends were ſharp and cutting like the edg of a Knife. It was judged that the bullet had razed off theſe two fragments from his breaſt bone, and violently driven them into his Oeſophagus; whence aroſe that pricking pain of that part, ſo long as the ſaid fragments remained faſtened in the part. But after many ſtrainings to vomit, they being removed and thruſt into the Stomach, the pricking pain ceaſed; but after ſome daies, thoſe fragments ſlipping into the Guts, the ſame pain aroſe in the Fundament. Theſe fragments were as broad as ones little finger, but longer than the ſame.

The 481 *Obſervation, or hiſtory, of famous and Rare Cures,* &c.

Kings-evil Swellings.

A Certain Country woman, having very many Kings-evil ſwellings in her Neck and Head, coming to me ſhewed me two Ulcers upon the *Os Petroſum*, and two ſoft tumors in her Head, one upon the right bone of the *Sinciput*, and the other upon the *Os Occipitis*, being diſtant three fingers breadth one from another. I opened the Ulcer by Inciſion, and found the Os Petroſum beginning to periſh. And becauſe I feared ſome ſuch thing lay hid under the foreſaid tumors, I thought good to open them with a potential Cauſtick; which being done, and the Eſchars removed, under both the Tumors (ſtrange to tell) the Skull was perforated, as if it had been done with a Trepan, and the holes were as big as Farthings, by means of which, the motion of the brain might eaſily be diſcerned in its Coats, upon which ſome purulent matter floated; and I could not find any the leaſt bit of a bone. Some daies after the poor miſerable Patient, weary of ſo many ſores and ſufferings, threw her ſelf Head-long into a pit of water, and drowned her ſelf.

Here is to be noted the wonderful malignity and ſharpneſs of that humor which cauſes the Kings Evil, which is able to melt and diſſolve bones.

The 482 *Obſervation, or Hiſtory, of Famous and Rare Cures,* &c.

Phrenſie.

A Certain Husband-man named *Poulet*, by reaſon of a burning Feaver, fel into a Phrenſie, and continually raving without ſleep, he cried out that he was damned, and that he deſired to die. Now I cured him by this policy. I contented and told him that I would kil him, and divers Horſ-leeches being faſtened upon his forehead, and blood running down from the wounds which they had made; I ſhewed him my Razor, wherewith I told him I would cut his throat, and ever and anon with the haft of the ſaid Razor I ſcrape his throat very hard; and in the mean while the Razor is al bloodied with the blood that came from his Forehead. Whereupon ſhewing him the bloody Razor, I told him that he was kill'd, and preſently I cover his Face with Linnen Cloaths, and ſhut the windows, ſo that no light could be ſeen in the Chamber. He ſuppoſing himſelf to be dead, never ſtirs, and a while after is taken with a deep ſleep, and ſo is freed from his Phrenzy.

The 483 *Obſervation, or Hiſtory, of Famous and rare* Cures, &c.

Slipping down of the womb.

A Certain woman troubled with falling down of her womb, with great force crowded into her womb a round piece of wax as big as an hand-ball; which ſhe carried ten years in her womb, never troubled with that Diſeaſe. Which I found after her death by diſſecting her body, ſhe dying of a continual Feaver; for I found the foreſaid ball in her womb, and her Siſter affirmed that it was thruſt in more than ten Years ago, and had abode there ever ſince.

The 484 *Obſervation, or Hiſtory, of Famous and Rare Cures, &c.*

A Tumor cauſed by ill opening a Vein.

AN honeſt Virgin named *Magaret Varſaline*, of *Villa Nova*, being let blood by an unskilful Chyrurgeon, had an Aneuriſma happened unto her, by reaſon of an Artery opened with the Vein, which having Reſolving Medicines applied unto it from the beginning, grew to a great bigneſs. Advice being taken, it was reſolved that the Tumor ſhould be opened, the Artery being firſt tied in the upper part, to which opinion the Patient would not conſent. But leaving her former Chyrurgeon, ſhe came to me, and entreated me to try the Cure with outward Applications. I, endeavoring to ſatisfie her, do apply bolſters to the part, wet with an aſtringent Decoction, and bind them cloſe down. Which being continued for ten or twelve daies, the ſwelling was much abated. Afterwards the Patient returned to *Villa Nova*, where uſing no Medicines, and ſtirring her Arm with divers works, ſhe raiſed the ſwelling again to a great height, with great pain, watching, unquietneſs, feaver, headach, thirſt, and other Symptomes. For which cauſe ſhe ſent for me, and Mir. *Formius*, an Ancient Chyrurgeon. We conceived it beſt to open the Tumor, the Artery being firſt bound with ſtrong bolſters, as we did in the Operation upon *Claparedus* aforeſaid, but the Patient would by no means hear of it. After twelve daies the Tumor opened of it ſelf in the ſame place where the Vein had been opened; and by the hole, which was but ſmal, there came out thin black blood, which did not ſtink; and the following daies there iſſued matter or quittor wel conditioned, but in ſmal quantity, and at laſt the Ulcer was brought unto a Cicatice or Scar, and the Patient perfectly healed. Only this inconvenience remained, that ſhe was not able to ſtretch her Arm forth, but was fain to carry it half bent.

The 485 *Obſervation, or Hiſtory, of Famous and Rare Cures, &c.*

Pain of the Colick.

THe Wife of Mſr. *Sartreus*, Councellor to his Majeſty in the Court of Accounts, Subſidies, and the Exchequer, had a grievous pain in her belly for a month together, and having uſed many Medicaments in vain. At laſt I applied a great Cupping-Glaſs to her Navil, wherewith ſix or ſeven ounces of wheyiſh Humor were evacuated, and the Patient freed from her pains.

The 486 *Obſervation, or Hiſtory, of Famous and Rare Cures, &c.*

A Pleureſie.

THe Footman of Mſr. *Demanſe*, General Treaſurer of *France*, being very hot with running, and al wet with ſweat, drank plentifully of cold water, and a little after he was taken

ken with a grievous pain in his ſide, with ſuch difficulty of breathing that he ſeemed to be choaked. I being preſently ſent for, let him blood in a large quantity, and as the blood iſſued out, the difficulty of breathing, and the pain of his ſide, were by little and little abated, and when the blood-letting was finiſhed, both the ſymptoms perfectly ceaſed, and the ſick perſon was wholly cured.

The 487 *Obſervation, or Hiſtory, of* Famous and Rare *Cures, &c.*

A Tooth pluckt out, and faſtened in the Gum again.

A Certain Virgin dwelling in a Neighboring Village, being tormented with the Toothach, which ſhe thought was cauſed by one of her Grinders which was rotten, ſhe ſends for a Chyrurgeon to draw her Tooth. He plucks out the next Tooth being ſound, and ſuddenly perceiving his Errot, draws out the rotten Tooth: and ſoon after having waſhed the hole of the former Tooth with Wine, he thruſt in the ſound Tooth again; and preſcribed an aſtringent Gargariſm of red Roſes, Balauſtians, Pomgranate Rinds, Lentisk wood, and Allum boyled in water and harſh red Wine, which the Patient often uſed. And he bad her for certain dayes to uſe only ſupping meats, and to abſtain from all chewing. And to the Tooth which had been pulled out, was faſtened in its place again.

The 488 *Obſervation, or* Hiſtory, *of* Famous and Rare *Cures, &c.*

The Whore-maſters Pox.

CHyrurgeons are wont ſomtimes to err in the Cure of the Lechers Pox, when after the ordinary Remedies conveniently practiced, they imagine the Patients are not perfectly cured, becauſe ſome Symptomes attending the ſaid pox, do as yet appear, whereupon they do ſomtimes caſt their Patients into freſh torments, and at laſt force them Headlong into an Atrophy or a Conſumption. Whereas thoſe Symptomes are wont to go away of themſelves after a ſhort time, or elſe are cured with ſome light Topick Medicines outwardly applied.

While I was at *Paris* with Mr. *Helot*, a very skilful Chyrurgeon, a Gentleman of *Paris*, of a Melancholick Conſtitution offered himſelf to be cured, who beſides pains in the Night and other Symptoms of the Whore-maſters pox, had a ſwelling in his Neck bred of flegm and melancholy. After he had been anointed with Mercury, he was abundantly fluxed, and all tokens of the ſaid pox were wholly taken away, excepting only the Tumor, of which two third parts were diſcuſſed. The patient thought that he was not cured becauſe of the Tumor remaining. But another Elder Chyrurgeon being called, perſwaded him that he was cured; and *Vigo* his Plaiſter with the Mercury quadruplicated being laid on, it was diſcuſſed in the ſpace of a month.

Another Gentleman committed to my care, after that I had fluxed him, thought that he was not cured, becauſe there remained an Ulcer in his Neck, and in the Region of his Oeſophagus. Howbeit this Ulcer was cured with ordinary Remedies, in a month, without any Medicine proper to the Whores pox.

I had another in hand, who among other Symptomes had a great pain in his Shin-bone. He was of a Cholerick Complexion, and had been four times ſmeared with Mercurial Unguents; which had brought him extream lean. He uſed a moiſtening Diet for a month together. Afterwards he was ſmeared all over with the Mercurial Unction, and with this friction alone his pain was taken away. He was fluxed, and voided for a months ſpace that way, Humors thin, yellow, and very ſtinking, for a month together, afterward for fifteen dates he voided thick flegm. Which Evacuation continuing too long, I was forced to expoſe him to the open Air, that it might be ſtopped the ſooner. At laſt, Inciſion was made upon the place where the pain had formerly been, and corruption was found in the bone, which was taken away by an Actual Cautery, and Pulvis Caragmaticus, and the Patient perfectly Cured.

The

The laſt Example ſhall be of a certain Knight, who was cured of the Whore-maſters pox, by the ordinary Method. Yet there remained extream pains in all his Joynts, that he could not move his Limbs without crying out. Mſr. *Delort*, the Kings Profeſſor at *Montpelier*, and very wel exerciſed in the practice of Phyſick, diligently enquiring into the cauſe of theſe pains, conceived that they came not from the Letchers pox; but rather from a dry diſtemper, poſſeſſing the Ligaments conjoyning the bones, and the Nervous parts annexed to them. And taking his Indication from the ſaid diſtemper, he preſcribed him a moiſtening diet, and bathing, by the continual uſe of which, he was perfectly cured.

Obſervations communicated by Mſr. *Oſias Aimar*, a Famous Chyrurgeon of *Grenoble*.

The 489 *Obſervation, or Hiſtory, of famous and rare Cures*, &c.

A contuſed wound in the Eye.

THe moſt renowned Mſr. the Lord of *Servien*, who is at this preſent, Plenipotentiary Ambaſſador at *Munſter* about making of peace, many years ſince in a Tennis-Court at *Paris*, was wounded in his left Eye with a Tennis ball, whereupon grievous pains aroſe. The Learned and Experienced Chyrurgeons of *Paris*, uſed al Medicines and Remedies which ſeemed neceſſary for the Cure of this Accident according to the Rules of Art; and among other things when they perceived an *Ecchymoſis*, or ſwelling upon the *Conjuctiva*, they endeavored by light Scarrifications to draw away the extravaſated blood. Howbeit, the pain continued as it was. He therefore, finding himſelf to grow worſe and worſe, reſolved to come to *Grenoble*, that he might ſubmit himſelf to my Care. And I, by many blood-lettings, Cupping-Glaſſes, and many Topical Medicines applied to the part affected, endeavored to qualifie and mitigate the Diſeaſe. But when al would do no good, I perſwaded him at laſt, to ſuffer one to look into his Eye, which before he would never grant, becauſe of the Extream pain, which the light coming into his Eye, did put him unto. Having therefore opened his Eye, I ſaw a white ſubſtance covering the whol ſight of his Eye, which I conceived to be that which Authors call *Hypopion*, and judged that it ought to be opened, to evacuate the matter contained therein, which cauſed continual pains. Having therefore made a light Inciſion, a ſmal clot of blood came out, which outwardly was white, and within red. Which being gone, all the pain ceaſed forthwith, and within a few daies the Patient began to endure the light, and ſhortly after was reſtored to perfect Health.

The 490 *Obſervation, or hiſtory, of Famous and Rare Cures*, &c.

An ulcer with rottenneſs in the Breaſt-bone

Mſr. *Speaute*, General Treaſurer of *France*, had a ſcirrhous or hard ſenſleſs tumor on his Breaſt-bone, which after a year was paſt did open of it ſelf. I ſearching the ulcer, found the bones underneath periſhed, unto which I applyed many actual Cauteries, and at laſt with detergents and Epuloticks I brought the Ulcer to a ſcar, not omitting univerſal Medicines reſpecting the antecedent Cauſe.

The

The 491 Obſervation, or Hiſtory, of famous and Rare Cures, &c.

Ribbs infected with Rottenneſs.

A Certain Matron forty years of Age, being vexed with a vehement pain on her left ſide, with a ſlow Feaver and extenuation of her whole body; after that for a year together ſhe had tried many remedies to no purpoſe, in a village where ſhe dwelt, twelve miles diſtant from *Grenoble* at laſt he came to *Greenoble* & committed her ſelf to my care. I preſently examining the pain'd ſide, find there an Impoſtume ſuppurated, & having made a large inciſion croſswiſe, I drew out two porringers full of very uneven and moſt ſtinking matter. The which being evacuated, I found three ribbs much corrupted at the ends, viz. the fourth, fifth, and ſixth Ribs, reckoning from the loweſt to the higheſt. I was compelled to cut off thoſe ribs the length of three fingers breadth, applying afterwards to their extremities an actual Cautery. Here the Providence of Nature was admirable, for ſhe lined and armed the pleura or membrane compaſſing the ribs, underneath thoſe ribs infected with rottenneſs, with much fleſh, to Roborate the ſame, and ſo to ſupply the defect of the ribbs. This Matron by a reſtorative Diet, and the uſe of Milk, was afterward reduced to perfect health.

Mſr. *de Peſſin*, Captain of a band of Souldiers, had for a long time a ſcirrhous or hard ſenſeleſs tumor in his left ſide upon the true Ribbs, viz. the fifth, ſixt, and ſeventh. A certain Chyrurgeon opened the tumor with an actual Cautery, out of which there came very little matter, and there remained very greivous pains in the part; which compelled him living in the country to come to *Grenoble* and emplore my help. I found the ulcer as big as the palm of ones hand, and the ribs underneath infected more than half their length with rottenneſs. Premiſing therefore univerſal Medicaments, I cut off the extremities of the ribbs the Quantity of four fingers breadth, applying afterward an actual Cautery to their extremities. Finally with Catagmatacal pouders, I procured a ſeparation of the burned parts, and with detergent and incarnating Medicines I did heal up the ulcer, and bring it to a ſcar.

The 492 Obſervation, or Hiſtory, of Famous and Rare Cures, &c.

A Fracture of the temple-Bone.

A Man forty yeares old was wounded on his right temple, and the bone beneath received a great fracture. Being called unto him, and finding that it was neceſſary to uſe the trepan, I made a Croſs-faſhioned Inciſion upon the temporal Muſcles, without any ſupervenient Symptome, although Authors do much fear the wounding of thoſe muſcles, as being of moſt dangerous conſequence. I applied my trepan, replaced the depreſſed bones, and all things being rightly adminiſtred, the patient was happily reduced to his former health.

The 493 Obſervation, or Hiſtory, of Famous and Rare Cures, &c.

The aſpera Arteria wounded with gun-ſhot.

THe Maid-ſervant of Mſr. *de Viviers*, his Majeſties Secretary in the Parliament of *Grenoble*, was wounded with a Piſtol charged with three ſmal bullets, in her throat under the Larynx, and the three bullets ſhe voided at her mouth, out of three holes in her Aſpera Arteria or wind-pipe, the wind came out with a noiſe and hiſſing. And although that cartilaginous and griſtley part does heale with great difficulty: yet dilligent care being taken thoſe wounds were perfectly healed up.

The

The 494 *Observation, or History, of Famous and Rare Cures, &c.*

An Empyema through a wound of the Epigastrium.

AN Occitanian Gentleman was at *Grenoble* wounded with a dagger in his Belly above his Navil, the wound growing into the cavity of his Belly, without hurting his Guts or his stomach. In short time this wound was healed up. Howbeit two months after he comes to me oppressed with a great shortness of breath, and with sense of weight in his breast and a continual stink in his mouth. These symptomes caused great suspition of Quittor or purulent matter collected in his Chest. But I looking for the scar of his former wound, and finding it in the upper part of his Belly, I admired how a wound inflicted in the Belly, could cause a collection of matter in the Chest. At last enquiring in what posture the Patient was when he was wounded; he said he was then upon a pair of stairs in a certain house, & he that wounded him stood upon a lower stair, & so struck the dagger into his Belly. Whereby I came to conjecture, that the wound taking its passage from beneath upwards had pierced the midriff, and had come into the cavity of the Chest, by which meanes matter might easily proceed from the blood shed out of the veines of the wounded diaphragma or midrif. I opened his side between the fourth and fifth true ribs, reckoned from the lowest upward, four fingers breadth from the back-bone. A portion being made there came out white Quittor very stinking: at the first bout I took away three portingers, the day after as much more, and so by little and little al the purrulent matter being voided the Patient within two months was perfectly cured.

The 495 *Observation, or History, of Famous and Rare Cures, &c.*

A Gangræne of the Perinæum, Fundament, and Cods.

Mr. *Pourroy*, Master of the Chamber of Accounts at *Grenoble*, sixty yeares of age, had a swelling in Perinæo [that is, the space between the Cods and fundament] which an Apothecary only had in Cure. A Gangræne invaded those parts, to the Cure whereto I being called, I find that it possessed the Cods, the Perinæum, and the fundament. Presently I made many Scarifications, and those pretty deep, And I often wash the parts with vinegar, salt, aquavitæ, unguentum Ægyptiacum, and mercury sublimate mixed together. Howbeit these things did not hinder the progress of the Gangræne, so that I was forced to have recourse to actual Cauteries, by help whereof the gangrene was stopped. So great a stink came from those parts that it poysoned the by-standers. A great Quantity of corrupted flesh fel away. The urethra was wholly detected, and had two holes eaten through it, by which the urine came out. Nevertheless al those parts are united, incarnated, and happily healed up.

The 496 *Observation, or History, of Famous and Rare Cures, &c.*

A desperate Rupture cured by Cutting.

A Certain Proctor of *Grenoble* named *Baro*, by reason of the slipping of his gut into his Cod, fel into the illiack passion, because his gut was filled with dung, which being very much hardened did hinder the reposition of his Gut. After many remedies practiced nine dayes together, al in vain, I am called to consultation with Mrs. *de Ville-neuve*, and *Duvins*, renowned Physicians. Delivering my opinion, I said that the part was to be opened til we came to the production of the peritoneum, which did choak the Gut, howbeit it was to be Feared least the Gut by reason of the long continuance of the disease were gangrenated: and yet it was good to follow the saying of *Celcus*, viz. that it is better to use an hazardus remedy, than

than to leave the patient to a certain deſtruction. The renowed Phyſitians were of the ſame mind. Wherefore having placed the patient in a convenient ſcituation, I made an inciſion in his Groyn, til I came to the Peritonæum, being very careful not to hurt the Gut. Afterward I thruſt a ſilver Pipe round on the one ſide, and hollow on the other, into the production of the Peritonæum, and upon the Cavity of the Pipe, I opened the ſaid production, ſo wide as that I might reſtore the diſlodged Gut. Then I thruſt the Gut gently into the belly, ſowed up the production, and the wounds of the other parts I perfectly healed with the Suture Gaſtrorapha and Conglutinating Medicines.

The 497 *Obſervation, or Hiſtory, of Famous and Rare Cures, &c.*

An Impoſtume of the Loyns reaching unto the Kidneys.

A Gentleman of *Grenoble*, had a Tumor in the Region of his right Kidney, which came to ſuppuration, and it being opened a great quantity of Wheyiſh matter Iſſued forth. Some daies after there came out of the ulcer two ſtones as big as Almonds. Which made me to admire. But marking the deepneſs of the Ulcer which reached four fingers breadth, and ſeeing other ſtones as big as beans come forth of the Ulcer; I was made to beleeve that thoſe ſtones came from the Kidney which was likewiſe Ulcerated. This was more credible, becauſe there flowed continually out of the Ulcer a great quantity of Wheyiſh Excrements, infecting the Cloaths within a few hours, with ſo much moiſture, as if they had been ſoaked in the water. Alſo purulent matter came ſometime away with his Urin, at the Yard. This accident happened ten years ago; and the Ulcer came to be a Fiſtula, which oftentimes is ſhut up three or four months together, and then it is opened again and ſends forth a certain bloody matter, and then it ſhuts again of it ſelf. The Patient lives very conveniently in that condition, and freely performs al the ordinary actions of a Man.

The 498 *Obſervation, or Hiſtory, of Famous and Rare Cures, etc.*

A rare kind of Convulſion.

Mſr. *de Bollon*, a Soldier, by the bullet of a piece of Ordinance was wounded in his right Arm, and the bullet took his whol Arm away, only that part next his ſhoulder was left as much as four fingers breadth. His Arm being cured and the wound perfectly healed up, he was taken with a kind of Convulſion, which drew his head backwards towards the right ſide. And it frequently agitated his Jaws; ſo that he was fain to have linnen Cloth alwaies between his Teeth, which ever and anon he was wont to bite and grind with his teeth. He called many Conſultations of Phyſitians and Chyrurgeons, who al were of opinion, that in the extremity of the bone which was taken away by the bullet, there was ſome ſharp point, which pricked ſome Nerve and cauſed this Convulſion; and that therefore the extremity of the bone muſt be again opened and diligently made ſmooth and even. This work being diligently performed, did no good, but the patient was vexed after the ſame manner, which took from him al hope of Cure. By great hap I met him, and he told me his trouble: it came into my mind that ſome hidden venom of the Whores-pocks, might peradventure cauſe this Accident. And I asked him preſently, whether or no when he was wounded he had any Whores pock Diſeaſe upon him, or whether he had formerly had any? He anſwered, that a little before he was wounded, he had been troubled with a grievous Gonorrhea, which notwithſtanding had been perfectly Cured. This encreaſed my conjecture, ſo that I adviſed the Patient to try ſuch Medicines as are given againſt the Pocks: whereunto, being very deſirous of help, he willingly ſubmitted. Premiſing therefore Univerſal purgation, and a Sudorifick Diet drink, I rubbed him with Mercurial Unguents, by which he was fluxed; and after the third day of his fluxing was over, thoſe contractions and Convulſions ceaſed, and he was never troubled with them again.

Obſervations which I Learned here and there by accident.

The 499 Obſervation, or Hiſtory, of Famous and Rare Cures, &c.

An Ulcer of the Kidneys.

I Have been told that an Emperick cured an Ulcer of the Kidneys, only by anointings with a Mercurial Unguent.

The 500 Obſervation, or hiſtory, of famous and rare Cures, &c.

A Crooked Back.

Mſr. *Franciſ Ranchinus*, Chancellor of the Faculty of Phyſick at *Montpelier*, told me the manner how he cured a Luxation or disjoynting of the Back-bone, of the moſt renowned Lady, Madam *de Montmorancie*, which proceeded from a Catarrhe falling from the brain upon the Back-bone, by which two of the Vertebræ in the middle of the Back-bone were disjoynted. He therefore, after univerſal Remedies, to reduce the Vertebræ, firſt he made uſe of a preſs, ſuch as Barbers uſe to preſs their Trimming Linnen. Which did much good, for he put one board to her breaſt the other to her back, and ſo ſhe was preſſed by little and little, the little bolſters of Linnen being put between the wood and her body. But this Remedy was found inconvenient, for by preſſing of her breaſt it made her have a difficulty in her breathing. At laſt he uſed ſuch an Inſtrument as they have in Coaches or Waggons to lift them up, when they ſtick faſt in an hollow way, and is called in French a *Cric*, to the circular end whereof he faſtened a piece of wood which was to be ſet to the diſlocated Vertebra, a little pillow being between. The other end of this inſtrument was ſet againſt the Wal, and then the patient was held faſt by her ſhoulder blades, and the Inſtrument gently forced, til ſhe could no longer endure the Pain, and then they ceaſed. And this was done twice a day, and ſo by little and little the ſaid Luxation was perfectly Cured.

The 501 Obſervation, or Hiſtory, of Famous and Rare Cures, etc.

Inflamation of the Eyes with filth.

A Child new born was troubled with redneſs of the Eyes, and much filth which came from them like Quittor; the Diſeaſe continued three months, and many Oyntments and Eye-Salves were applied which did no good. At laſt by preſcription of a Certain Phyſitian, Cotton wool was every night laid upon each Eye, being firſt diligently dried over the coals, and well teazed and pulled aſunder with the fingers, and afterward each Eye was covered with a little Cotton in manner of a Bolſter, which was ſwathed down. In the Morning the Cotton Wool was taken off much fouled with the foreſaid matter. This Remedy being continued divers nights together, the Infant was perfectly Cured.

The 502 Obſervation, or Hiſtory, of famous and Rare Cures, &c.

Falling-ſickneſs proceeding from the Mother.

THe Wife of Mſr. *Polemarchus de Sumenes*, was many years together vexed with many Symptoms of the Mother, which reſembled fits of the Falling-ſickneſs; ſhe tried many Medicines preſcribed by many Phyſitians, but al in vain. At laſt by the adviſe of a Woman, ſhe took the fleſh of a Wolf reduced into pouder, and wore a piece of the ſame fleſh ſalted, continually about her; after which ſhe was perpetually freed from the ſaid Symptoms.

The 503 Obſervation, or Hiſtory of Famous and Rare Cures, &c.

A Tertian ague.

A Certain Emperick Cured many of the Tertian Ague, by once purging them with a gentle purge, and afterward letting them blood in the beginning of their fit. The fit was reſtrained and appeared very little, and afterward returned no more.

The 504 Obſervation, or Hiſtory, of Famous and Rare Cures, &c.

A wound in the Cheſt hard to Cure.

Mſr. *Henry Bachaman*, an expert Phyſitian of *Avinion*, told me that the Son of Mſr. *Dorſan*, twenty years old received a wound in his Cheſt, penetrating into the Cavity thereof, which could not be Cured by many and divers Remedies applied thereunto, and continued three or four months, whereby the patient was much emaciated and brought unto a Conſumption. At laſt he adviſed him to ſuck the Milk of a Woman out of her Breaſt, and injections were made of the ſaid milk into the wound, and with this only Remedy, he was healed of his wound, and brought from the Leanneſs into a good habit of body.

The 505 Obſervation, or hiſtory, of famous and rare Cures, &c.

Cholick Pain.

A Certain Citizen of *Narbon*, told me he had been ſubject to pains of the Cholick many years together, which was wont often to torment him, and that he was freed from the ſaid Diſeaſe, with the following Remedy, taken only once, ſo that he never fel into the ſame any more, and that many others had been freed from the ſame Diſeaſe to whom he had communicated the ſaid Remedy. Now this Medicine is the Cork ſtopple of an Hogs-head of Wine, which has been many years ſo employed, and conſequently is wel drencht with Wine, it muſt be burnt to aſhes, and a dram of the Aſhes taken with white Wine, when the pain is Urgent.

The 506 Obſervation, or hiſtory, of famous and Rare Cures, &c.

A Dropſie.

A Certain Credible perſon told me that he had ſeen many Cured of the Dropſie Aſcites, or Bottle-belly Dropſie, by this following Medicine.

The Whiteſt flints muſt be gathered, which are found about the Brooks and running Waters, and being broken are tranſparent like Chryſtal, theſe being heated red hot were quenched

in White Wine: the Patients took a Cup of this Wine every morning til they were Cured, which was performed in a Months ſpace.

The Salt of ſuch flints Calcined, will, if I miſtake not, work more happily.

The Salt of thoſe Bugs called *Millipedes*, and in Engliſh Sows, is happily uſed by a Famous Phyſitian in this Cure, which he mixes with juleps and other aperient Remedies, purging them firſt with the juyce of our Country Orice, which if the Patient caſt up, he takes him to be paſt Cure.

The 507 *Obſervation, or Hiſtory, of Famous and rare Cures,* etc.

Another Dropſie.

ANother Dropſied perſon was cured only with the uſe of Sal Prunellæ in his ordinary drink for a month together, in which ſpace al the water in his Belly was Evacuated.

I conceive this Cure happened not only by reaſon of the Diuretick Vertue of the Sal Prunellæ, but becauſe the Dropſie was cauſed by an hot diſtemper of the Liver, which was extinguiſhed by the Sal Prunellæ, being a moſt potent Cooler.

Another Hydropick perſon was cured with a Decoction of the Topps of Oaken boughs, a Cup whereof he drank fifteen daies together.

The 508 *Obſervation, or hiſtory, of famous and* Rare *Cures,* &c.

Kings-Evil.

A Bretagner named *Daniel*, thirty years of Age, a Country man of a wel fleſhed and ſtrong body, had Kings-evil ſwellings many years together, both about his Neck and under either Arm-hole, who being hated by al his friends and acquaintance becauſe of that loathſome Diſeaſe, betook himſelf to the Hoſpital of Charity in *Paris*, as unto the true temple to *Æſculapius*, perſwaded that he ſhould there find a certain cure for his Malady, neither was he deceived by his Hope, for he was forthwith viſited by the moſt Illuſtrious Mr. *Gabriel Hardvinus*, of St. *Jacques*, ordinary Phyſician of that Hoſpital, who premiſing univerſal Remedies, applied a Cataplaſme of the Leaves of wild Cowcumber called *Cucumis aſininus*, upon the ſwelled parts, and preſcribing him a thin Diet and gently drying, the day following he ordered for him this following Opiate.

Take *Turbith, Hermodactyls, of each two ounces. Of the Roots of both ſorts of Scrophularia or Pile-wort, one ounce. Roots of the greater Angelica, two drams. Senna, half an ounce. Scammony unprepared, four ſcruples. Make al into a pouder and mixe them with Syrup of Damask Roſes into an Electuary. Let the doſe be two drams, adding to every doſe Mercurius dulcis, twenty grains. The which being taken every other day fifteen times, and the Cataplaſme being continually renewed, al the Knobs and ſwellings went away, without any inciſion or Eradication, ſo that he ſent the Man home ſafe and ſound in the year* 1641. *This I had from Mſr.* de Leſeq; *Dr. of Phyſick at* Montpelier, *ſomtime a Scholer of the foreſaid Phyſitian Mſr.* de St. Jacques.

The 509 *Obſervation, or Hiſtory, of famous and rare Cures,* &c.

Tooth-ach.

Mſr. *Leſeq*, the Dr. of Phyſick aforeſaid told me that he had ſeen the Tooth-Ach Cured with Salt of Aſh wood, with which a Womans Thimble or ſome ſuch tool is filled and applied to the Artery of the Temple where the pulſation is felt: and within a ſhort time it makes a Knot in the Artery whereby the flux is intercepted.

The

The 510 *Obſervation, or Hiſtory, of* Famous and Rare Cures, &c.

The Knotty Gout.

Mſr. *Chomel*, the *Annonæenſian* Phyſitian, writ me word that he lately ſaw a Goury perſon ful of Ulcers in divers of his joynts, out of which more than two hundred ſtones had come, bigger than peaſe, and ſo hard, that an Hammer would not break them. And which is ſtrange to ſay, the Quittor, Sanious and Wheyiſh matter which did flow unto the Ulcers, after a little abidance in the part, did preſently unite it ſelf, and grow into the hardneſs of a ſtone. He obſerved likewiſe this rarity in that Patient, that ſuch outward applications as did good to one part, did hurt another, and contrarywiſe.

The 511 *Obſervation, or Hiſtory, of* Famous and Rare Cures, &c.

Pain of half the Head.

Mſr. *Genton*, the younger, told me that he had been troubled with a pain poſſeſſing the half of his Head for many years together, and after many Medicines tried in vain, he was Cured by the ſmoak of Amber, which he received in at his mouth and Noſtrils for half an hour together, when the pain was upon him.

The 512 *Obſervation, or Hiſtory, of* Famous and rare Cures, &c.

A Rupture.

THe ſame perſon related that he was troubled with a Rupture in his belly for many years together, and was cured by three Plaiſters given him by a certain Emperick, each of which he bad him wear nine daies with a truſs: they were al made of the ſame material and very ſtinking: and when they were taken off, al the matter was conſumed, ſave that upon the leather appeared a little pouder, like to poudered Glaſs. By the uſe of the firſt Plaiſter no Effect appeared; after the ſecond was laid on, the Urins came plentifully, and of divers colors, ſomtimes green, ſomtimes black, and ſomtimes with pain. After the twenty ſeven day, the three Plaiſters being conſumed, the parts ſeemed withered and lean, ſo that al the fleſh and Fat, ſeemed quite conſumed. By reaſon of the ſtink I conceive this Plaiſter was made of Galbanum, which having an exceeding faculty to attenuate, was able to diſſolve and liquifie the Humors which fel into the part affected, and were perhaps congealed about the ſame, ſo that Nature might afterwards void them, partly by Urin, and partly by Tranſpiration.

The 513 *Obſervation, or Hiſtory, of Famous and Rare Cures, &c.*

A Dropſie with Bladders.

A Certain Countrey Man being Hydropick, had an Impoſtume aroſe on the right ſide of his Belly, which being opened, there came out na almoſt infinite number of little Bladders ful of water, more than two hundred were reckoned, and that for the ſpace of many daies together. And ſo he became perfectly Cured. By this Obſervation that Hiſtory related by *Schenchius*, is confirmed, of a certain Hydropical perſon, whoſe body being opened after his Death, his belly was found ful of bladders of water, ſticking to the Peritonæum, and other parts.

F I N I S.

SELECT MEDICINAL COUNSELS,

Of the Renowned

JOHANNES FERNELIUS,

Doctor of Phyſick in the Univerſity of *Paris*; Chief Phyſitian to the Kings Majeſty.

Being *Pick'd* and *Choſen* out of *Four Hundred Conſultations* and *Advices* for Sick People; of which, theſe are the Flower and Cream.

The I. Counſel.

Touching the Alopecia, *or falling off of the Hair of the Head.*

The Diſeaſe is propounded to Fernelius, *by another Phyſitian in behalf of his Patient, an Out-landiſh Perſon.*

A Young Man well fleſht, and exceeding Healthy, twenty Years of Age, has often complained to me, that ever ſince he was an Infant, his Head has been apt to be deformed by bald patches where the Hair is fallen off: Having purged his Body, I applied ſuch Remedies, as I found commended by the Ancients to cauſe Hair to grow; but al to no purpoſe. If you (Sir) have by long Experience, found any thing very effectual in this Caſe, I earneſtly beſeech you again and again to communicate the ſame to me. Farewel, and have me ſtill in your Love, as formerly.

The Anſwer of Doctor Fernelius.

The truth is, theſe bald patches when they are not contracted by any ſickneſs, nor through fault of any Humor, but from the firſt riſe and ſeed, they hardly admit any Cure. For the faults of the Seed and Nature can hardly be corrected by any Art. But if there be any Cure, I ſuppoſe this muſt be it. Let us not meddle with purging, nor bleeding, thereby to diſturb his

his Body, seeing no Humor is cause of the falling of the Hair. But because the bald parts seem over dry, it is good to loosen the skin with emollient Fomentations, and to draw the moisture from the neighboring parts thereunto, that there may be fit matter sufficient to make the hairs. First of al therefore, let the Fomentations be made of Marsh-mallow Roots, and Lilly Roots, of Mallows, Violets, Pellitory of the wall, Annis seed, Lin-seed and Fenugreek. Afterward, when the part shal seem softer, some Fomentation will be good that may draw in the matter, made of Sage, Betony, Stechados, Maidenhair, Southernwood, Nettle seed, and Mustard seed, boyled in water, and a fourth part of white Wine. Presently after the Fomentation, the bald places are to be anointed with Bears Grease, which questionless is of very great vertue. When fifteen daies are over, let his Head be rubbed morning and evening with bruised Onions, til it become very red, and then smear Honey thereon in place of a Catapla sm. If during this course, the Hair break not out, in the last place must be applied an Oyntment of Thapsia, and Bears Grease, which as it has a mighty name in the writings of the Ancients, so have I found it most efficacious in such cases. Now the true Thapsia is here with us commonly to be had, a dram whereof will be sufficient to mix to an ounce of the Grease. It by vertue hereof. If this make not the Hair to come, the Case is in a manner desperate.

The II. Counsel.

Of Nummedness of the Joynts.

BY the long Bed roll of Symptomes wherewith this Gentleman out Patient is troubled, I conceive there are two chief causes to which they may be referred. The one is an hot distemper of the Liver and Kidneys, whereby the whol mass of blood is also heated, and the whol body lean and fallen away; by the adustion whereof the Patient seems inclined to Melancholy. The other is a weakness of the Brain, Nerves, and Joynts, with a cold distemper, by which there is a great encrease of flegmatick Excrements, which flow from the brain into sundry parts, and moisten the processes of the Nerves. Hence arises a nummedness which possesses almost al his Joynts, flowing into, and assailing sometimes one part, then another. Which is not a little furthered by anointings with Quick-silver, long since immoderately used, whose nature is to cool the Brain and Nerves, and weaken the Joynts. These, truly, are the Rudiments of grievous Diseases to follow, as of the Gout or Palsey, or other Diseases of the Head, portended by the swellings and inconstant motions of his Eyes. For the prevention of all which, after a gentle purgation of Rhubarb, Sena, and Diacatholicon, I conceive it will be good to let him blood in the middle Vein of his left Arm; or if you would rather have him bleed in the right Arm, it matters not much. And then his Diet is to be ordered, which ought to be in a manner temperate, so as not to cool or heat, nor moisten or dry overmuch. And herein a chief Care is to be had of his Wine, that it be very weak, and well tempered with Water, lest it offend by its heat, or work too much upon the Brain and Nerves, by its vapor and exhalation. For I have known many fall into a nummedness of their whol bodies, only by the immoderate use of strong and unmixt Wine, wherewith the Skin only seemed to be affected, without any fear of a palsey. Also his whol body must be rubbed every morning; and his Head must be dryed with bags of Salt, Millet, bran, Annis seed, Fennel seed, and Bay-berries roasted or fried. And then flegm must be brought away through his Nostrils, either by Sneezing pouders, or Errhines, that is to say, Liquors to be snuffed up into his Nose: to which purpose also it will be good for him to lie upon his belly, and to avoid lying upon his back, which causes Humors to flow into his Joynts and Nerves. A moderate exercise of al parts of his body alike, will be good before meat: as that which strengthens the Nerves Muscles, and Joynts, and frees them from Excrements. After meals, it will be good to repress the vapors of his meat, with Coriander seed, or some convenient pouder. And besides al these things which consist chiefly in matter of Diet, it will be necessary frequently to move his belly, sometimes with a Clyster which has a little Hiera picra in it, sometimes with a convenient Syrup, or Pills. Let the Decoction of the Syrup be made with such things as are proper for the Liver, Brain, and Nerves, wherein Senna, Agarick, and Rubarb, must be infused, each in its convenient Dose. Let his pils be made of

Aloes

Aloes waſhed in the Juyce of Endive, with Agarick and Rhubarb. Every eighth day let him take the one or the other, but moſt frequently the Syrup, which wil be beſt for him. In the intermediate daies, give him ſome Methridate with Conſerve of bugloſs, or of Acorus, or make him a peculiar Electuary of the ſpecies of trion ſantalon and diamargariton. When fifteen or twenty dayes are over, a drie bath wil be very convenient, made of a decoction of roots or herbs, good for the brain and nerves, that in the ſweats cauſed thereby, ſuperfluities may be voided and his nerves and joynts ſtrengthened. And before theſe ſweatings, if the diſeaſe be rebellious, and ſeem not ſufficiently abated, by iterated purgations; the Patient muſt keep houſe about eight daies, and uſe a thin diet with a decoction of Lignum Sanctum, ſweating twice every day: after which notwithſtanding the foreſaid vaporary or dry baths may profitably be uſed.

The *III* Councel.

Of a Cattarrhe, with pain of one ſide of the Head, and their cures.

AS near as I can gather by your Letters, thoſe flegmatick tumors, which now for theſe many years have quartered upon your face and Cheeks, do ariſe from a diſtillation flowing from the top of your head into the ſaid parts: and becauſe the catarrh falls ſo frequently into the ſame place, 'tis like the place itſelf has ſome infirmity which intices the fluxion to it. But there can thence be no certainty gathered, unleſs the ſeat and ſort of the diſeaſe be firſt throughly konwn. But that ſame Hemicrania or pain of half the Head, touching which your laſt letter deſires advice, is a diſtinct and different diſeaſe, which requires a peculier method of Cure. For the immediate cauſe thereof, is a vapour which ariſing from choller flowing out of the Liver into the ſtomach, does ſmite and twitch the membranes of the Brain, yeilding matter peradventure to the diſtillation. That ſame catarrh with which by its oft returning you are ſo grievouſly afflicted, muſt be ſtopped with one dram of the Maſs of *Pilulæ ſine Quibus* (which are moſt proper both for your Age and Temperament) eſpecially if for eight or ten dayes laſt paſt, you have taken no medicine againſt the Catarrh. The next day after bags as hot as can be endured muſt be applied to the crown of your head being ſhaven morning and evening before ſupper: which may draw the matter out from thee in moſt parts and reſolve the ſame, and they muſt abide on for the ſpace of half an hour, or thereabouts, and be continued for certain daies, til the fluxion be ſtopt. Moreover an aſtringent plaiſter to ſtop the paſſages, muſt be applied to the temples, or to thoſe parts through which the humor goes; which muſt be renewed every other day, and not taken away til the fluxion ceaſe. And if it ſhal no longer run down by the mouth and cheek-bone; yet that the gums and inner parts of the mouth may not ſo eaſily receive the fluid humor, let them be waſhed three or four times a day, with an aſtringent and ſtrengthening Gargariſme. And becauſe al the matter of the catarrh is not ſo ſoon dried up, ſome portion of this gargariſm muſt be drawn by little and little through the mouth & noſtrils, through which the cavity of the brain may be purged, morning & evening before ſupper. Keep in the meane while a fitting diet; live frugally, uſe meates of good juyce, and thin wine very wel allayed with water, partly becauſe of the cold diſtemper of your brain, and partly becauſe of the hot diſtemper of your Liver. Abſtain from immoderate drinking, broaths and other moiſt meats; the wind, the cold, and the raine; excerciſe your ſelf moderatly in the morning, long before dinner. When you go to bed cauſe your Arms, Back, Thighs, and legs to be rubbed downwards. Let your belly be alwaies ſoluble, either of its own accord, or by artificial meanes, as clyſters, or ſuppoſitories, leaſt your body abound with excrements.

Here are the diſcriptions of your medicamens.

Take *Of the Maſs of* Pilulæ ſine Quibus *two ſcruples*; *of Pils of Agarick one ſcruple. Worke them together anew with ſyrup of ſtœchados, and forme ſeven pils.*

Make the uſual bags of annis-ſeed, fennel-ſeed and bay-berries each two drams; of milet half a pound. Common ſalt ſix drams Apply them to the crown of the Head.

Alſo, Take *Unguentum deſiccativum rubeum half a dram*; *maſtich poudered one dram: Make them into a plaiſter and apply it to the temple of the pained ſide.*

Item, Take *Sage one handful, maſtick bruiſed half a dram, Harts-horn three drames*

Boyl them in wine and water, of each a ſufficient quantity. Then ſtrain it, and let him therewith waſh his mouth and Gums, three or four times in a day.

Make him the ordinary head-purge.

Give him the ordinary Clyſter.

The IV. Conſel.

For a noble Matron vexed with the Tooth-ach, tranſlated out of French.

THat ſame Tooth-ach, which does ſo extreamly torment you, ariſes from a cold diſtillation, which falls from the left ſide of your head, into the Jaw-bone of the ſame ſide, and the nerves of the teeth, and ſometimes as far as the ſhoulder blades. To prevent the ſame, firſt the flux of rheum muſt be ſtopped, and the cauſe thereof totally removed. And that may be done by theſe pils taken once a month; or with this potion, if it be ſummer, or the ſeaſon hot. The day following your firſt purgation, your head being ſhaven muſt be rubbed with theſe ſeeds incloſed in a doubled cloth, which muſt be done the ſpace of fourteen or fifteen days; Which being over, your body muſt be purged as before. Then the day after, your Head, the left ſide eſpecially, muſt be fomented with a little Aqua vitæ, every morning, the hair being ſprinkled after the fomentation, with the following pouder. Mean while care muſt be had of your teeth, which being wiped three or four times a day, long from your meales, hold in your mouth and chew this maſticatory, which is to draw down the rheum from the whol body of your brain, but eſpecially out of its ventricles by the funnel into your mouth and pallat. Moreover let your gums be waſhed oft every day with this decoction. Meane while uſe meats of a good juyce, and live ſoberly; drink not between meales. At meales drink moderatly; abſtain from moiſt things; keep the cold from your Head, Teeth, and feet. The Remedies hereunder preſcribed, muſt be long and diligently continued, becauſe the diſeaſe is Inveterate.

Take *Of the Maſs of pil cochy, and de Agarico, and Aſſajenth, of each one ſcruple. Make ſeven pills.*

Take *Of the waters of Sage and Betony, and white wine, of each one ounce. In which infuſe of choice rhubarb, agarick trochisked, of each one dram. In the expreſſion diſſolve diaphœnicon two drams; Syrup of maiden-hair half an ounce. Make al into a purging potion.*

Take *Millet one pound; common ſalt half a pound; anis ſeed and fennel-ſeed, of each two drams, Bay-berries bruiſed one ounce. Make al into a very fine pouder; ſprinkle it on her ſhaven Head.*

Take *Pellitory of Spain, Staphyſacre, Ginger, Cardamoms, Styrax calamita, of each half an ounce. Make a moſt ſubtil fine pouder, for the uſe aforeſaid.*

Take *Maſtich one ounce; Pellitory of Spain half an ounce; Cubebs two drams. Incorporate them in a ſolid forme with Honey of roſemary flowers: and make a Maſticatory.*

Take *Of ſmal ſage one handful; myrtle leaves half an hand-ful; Maſtich bruiſed half an ounce. Boyl them in fountain water, and white wine, of each half a pint.*

Strain them, and reſerve them in a vial for to waſh her mouth.

The V. Counſel.

In a Catarhe and moiſtneſs of the Brain, with a bad Diſpoſition of the Bowells.

THe Brain being naturally cold and weak, is over whelmed with great Incomes of excrements, which, their natural courſe being ſtopped, they ruſh into ſundry parts preternaturally. Into the optick Nerves where by the dimneſs of the patients ſight they threaten blindneſs; into the jawes and teeth, whereupon they often cauſe pains, as alſo thoſe which fal upon

the

the Neck and Shoulder-blade. Alſo a portion of the ſaid Excrement, remaining within, brings Ringing in the Ears, and heavineſs of the Head, and Renders al the functions of the Brain lazy. There are alſo other Symptoms, proceeding from fault of the Liver and nutritive parts; Heart-pain or heart-burning, and frequent inclination to vomit, a filthy color of the Face and whol body, largeneſs of the belly, a bloat and ſomwhat ſwoln habit of the Feet, Face, and whol body, which foreſhews a Cachexy. None of which Symptoms, can come without the obſtruction and impurity of the Bowels.

To help al theſe infirmities together, a ſlender Diet muſt be preſcribed, twenty or thirty daies together, in which the patient muſt drink nothing but a Decoction of Guajacum, and that ſimple, and not very ſtrong of the wood; but of another ſtronger Decoction he muſt take at five a clock in the morning, and at four in the after noon, ſo that he muſt dine at nine a clock in the morning, and Sup at ſeven at night. And then his meat muſt be ſparing, dry, and of good juyce. His drinks therefore ſhal be thus ordered: his ſtrong Decoction after our uſual form of a ſimple Decoction; the more dilute Decoction he ſhal uſe for his ordinary drink at meals, and to quench thirſt at other times. This kind of Diet, though it attenuate the Humors and digeſt a portion thereof into ſweats, yet can it not perfect the Cure, nor reſtore health, but other Remedies muſt be uſed in this order.

Take *Betony, Sage, Hops, of each one handful. Cordial flowers, of each one pugil; Senna Leaves, three drams. Make a decoction for one doſe; in the ſtrained Liquor, infuſe Choice Rhubarb, four ſcruples. Agarick Trochisked, one dram; Cinnamon half a dram.*

In the ſtrained Liquor diſſolve half a dram of White Sugar, and make a potion: let him take it when he begins his Diet drinks, and repeat it once in eight daies.

If at any time it work but faintly one dram of Diaphœnicon may be added.

In the intermediate daies if he ſhal be at any time coſtive, he muſt have an Emollient Clyſter. As ſoon as ever ſweat ſhal begin to break out, every morning his ſhaven Head ſhal be rubbed with theſe bags very hot.

Let the common bags be applied exceeding hot in his ſweat.

Item, Take *Nigella Romana, Styrax Calamitæ, Benzoin, of each three drams; Mace, Cloves, of each one dram. Make al into a groſs pouder for a fume, let him uſe it twice a day, after his Head is wiped and dryed. Alſo dayly in the morning, and before Supper, let him uſe the common Head purgers,* [Maſticatories ſo called, it ſeems.] *which if they ſhal not bring away Rheum enough, half a dram of the Root of Artanita may be added. Let him perſiſt in the uſe of theſe things til he be perfectly wel. And leaſt for time to come through Intemperence, or Careleſſneſs he ſhould fal into the like Diſeaſes, every month at leaſt, his Body muſt be purged, with this Syrup which I have fitted for al theſe Infirmities.*

Take *Roots of Smallage, Parſly, Fennell, and Capars, of each half a dram; of Endive, Maiden-hair, Egrimony, Dodder, Ceterach, Betony, Sage, Stechados, Marjerom, of each an handful; Cordial flowers, Epithymum, of each one pugil. Make a decoction to twenty drams. In the ſtrained Liquor infuſe four drams of Senna; White Agarick, two drams; Gummy Turbith ſix drams; Ginger two drams; Choice Cinnamon, half a dram.*

Let them Boyl a little after they have infuſed, and preſs out the Liquor, and diſſolve therein one pound of White Sugar. Make a Syrup perfectly boyled, not Clarified. Let him uſe it once or twice in a month.

The VI. Counſel.

Of a diſtillation into divers parts, with a diſeaſed Spleen, for a noble Virgin.

THere are in this Virgin evident tokens of a Diſtillation, which fals from her Head, eſpecially the left ſide thereof, into her ſide, Lungs, and Neck behind her Ears, and into her left ſhoulder blade, and into ſundry inferior parts, with wheezing, and ſhortneſs of breath, which is a beginning of the Tiſſick. Hereunto is added the pain of her ſtomach, which ſeems to proceed rather from ſome fault of the Spleen than of it ſelf. For I have a great ſuſpition of that bowel, though peradventure it may communicate its illneſs to the Liver, and be the original of the infirmity of the left ſide of her Head. Her left Hypochondrium muſt therefore be obſerved and felt.

The Cure of theſe intertwiſted Diſeaſes muſt be endeavoured by frequent Evacuations, which muſt ſomtimes be accommodated to the Head, ſomtimes to the bowels. In the laſt quarter of the Moon, before her Head-ach comes, let her purge with theſe Pils.

Take *of the maſs of Pill Cochy, one ſcruple; of Pills ſince Quibus, two ſcruples. Make five Pills.*

For three or four daies after, her Head muſt be rubbed in the morning, with bags of Miller, Salt, Annis, and Fennel-ſeed, fried in a frying pan. Then alſo the Rheum ſhal be drawn out at her mouth and Noſtrils, to remove the threatning diſtillation. And afterwards her Head muſt be dried and ſtrengthened chiefly by outward Applications, and Fumes: and that Humor which is already lodged in her Lungs muſt be fetcht out by pectoral Medicaments, but eſpecially with Syrup of Hiſſop and Maiden-hair, ſomtimes by way of a lick-pot, other whiles as a Julep being mingled with convenient Liquor, that ſo ſome conſideration may be had of moving her Courſes. Alſo other Syrups pectoral may be prepared, which among other things ſhal contain the Roots of Elecampane, Polypody, Colts-foot, Scabious, Hyſſop, Savory, with Dates, Figs and Raiſons.

The Narration of the foregoing Diſeaſe written by Claudius Melinus, *deſiring the advice of* Fernelius.

A Virgin three and twenty years of Age, low of ſtature, of a compact and thick habit of Body, is vexed with theſe Symptomes. For this five or ſix years, three or four daies before the laſt quarter of the Moon, ſhe has an huge pain in her Head, both before and behind, but chiefly on the left ſide. She feels alſo a very great pain in her Stomach, when ſhe eats but a little more than ordinary, or when ſhe eats cold meats, vulgar Herbs, and moiſt meats. She Wheezes in drawing her breath, and is ſhort winded in cold and moiſt weather. She is pained all her body over, but eſpecially that part which reaches from the lower part of her left ſhoulder-blade to the top of her left Dug. She is vexed for want of reſt, nor does the morning bring her to ſleep. She had once the palme of her hand al ſcabbed. Her body is bound, and her purgations monthly do not keep a conſtant Courſe. For ſometimes they come not til three months are over, and ſomtimes after ſix weeks, and that ſparingly.

The VII. Counſel.

Of the Falling-ſickneſs.

AS Lawyers from the Knowledg of the Fact, underſtand what is Law and right in the Caſe; ſo muſt we fetch the whol way of our Cure from the right knowleg of the Diſeaſe.

Not long ſince I was told of a kind of fainting, expreſſed by uncertain ſigns common to other Diſeaſes:

Diſeaſes: which I conceived to intimate a Syncope or ſwouning. But you avouch by undoubted ſigns and inform me, that the Diſeaſe is the Falling-ſickneſs, ariſing not properly from the Brain, but by Sympathy with the Stomach, and that it has its certain times of coming, and that they are commonly in the Wain of the Moon. Things being thus, the Cure muſt be thus undertaken. Six or ſeven daies before the coming of her fit, ſhe muſt have a Cliyſter, which beſides other convenient things, muſt have in it half an ounce of *Hiera Picra*, and half an ounce of Diaphænicon. The very ſame day let her feed very ſparingly with a thin Diet, and prepare the Humor to be purged, with Oxymel ſimple or Compound.

The day after purge her with the Infuſion of Rhubarb and Agarick, of each one dram: in which two drams of Hiera Diacolocynthidos, muſt be mixed. Or if that Medicine be not to be had with you; diſſolve therein of Heria ſimple and Diaphænicon, of each one dram and an half. But you indeed your ſelf conſidering the ſtrength of your patient, and greatneſs of the Diſeaſe, may better Determine of the Quantity of the Medicaments.

The Third day let her ceaſe from al Evacuation and other Medicaments, unleſs peradventure you may think fit to give her a dram of the beſt Mithridate.

On the fourth day, vomit her, which is moſt efficacious, and moſt proper in theſe Diſeaſes, and in reſpect of the waies to be purged, the Humors having a long time ſtuck faſt in the ſtomach and neighbouring patts.

Now that wil be moſt effectual, if made of two ſcruples or one dram of Azarum Roots, diſſolved in Hydromel, or a Decoction of Raiſons, with a little Cinnamon and Syrup of Violets.

The following daies til the ſuſpected time of the fit be over, give her every morning four ſcruples of this Opiate.

Take *Conſerves of Roſemary, and Betony flowers, of each one ounce. Old Mithridate, two drams and an half. Venice Treacle, four ſcruples. Miſſleto of the Oak, Peony ſeeds, Mans Skul poudered, of each two ſcruples. Mix them. Let her take it by it ſelf, or in Betony water. If you can get male Peony, you ſhal find nothing better, either the ſeed or the Root gathered in the Wane of the Moon, one dram in weight. And al theſe things muſt not be once only uſed, but three or four times, near the time of the fit.*

The VIII. Counſel.

For a Boy eight years old, long ſince taken with Falling-ſickneſs, and loſs of Memory and Reaſon, in a manner.

TAke *Leaves of Betony, Roſemary, Marjerom, Stechados, Sage, of each one handful. Of the Cordial flowers, each a pugil. Boyl al in two pints of Water. In the ſtrained Liquor ſteep all night Epithymum, two drams. Senna, four ounces; Ginger two drams. Choice Cinnamon four drams. In the moring; Boyl them a little and preſs out the Liquor, wherein diſſolve of the beſt Honey and whiteſt Sugar, of each half a pound. Make al into a Syrup indifferently boyled, that is to an indifferent height. Let him take once in a week one ounce and an half; with the Water wherein Betony has been boyled.*

Item, Take *Conſerve of Bugloſs and Roſemary flowers, each one ounce. The beſt Mithridate and Treacle, of each half a dram. Seeds and Roots of male peony, Miſſleto of the Oake, Mans Skul, Harts-horn poudered, of each two drams. Mix al into an Electuary with a Sufficent Quantity of Syrup of Violets. Let him take one dram or four ſcruples, three or four mornings together after his purgation, three or four hours before Dinner. Let him drink no Wine at al, and let his drink be ſimple water, in which Harts horn has boyled with a little Ginger. Let him abſtain from fruits, eſpecially ſuch as wil not keep, from milk and al made thereof, from Beans, and Peaſe, and fiſhes.*

The

The XI. Counſel.

For the Falling-ſickneſs.

THis moſt grievous Diſeaſe of the Falling-ſickneſs ariſing from a ſtrong and inveterate cauſe in an impure and now ill habited body, wil hardly admit of any Cure. Moreover the patient is ſo weak, that no part is freed from diſorder excepting the Lungs. His Head is vexed with pain, ſwimming, Melancholy, and the Falling ſickneſs, his Bowels are exceeding impure, by which means the reſt of the Body is infected, his Urins are thick and gravelly, arguing an obſtruction and heavineſs in his Kidneys. Nor is his old pain in his Thigh as yet gone.

In ſo great a Concourſe of Diſeaſes the Cure muſt begin with purging, which becauſe it can ſcarſe ſafely be performed by purgatives, we muſt endeavour to do it rather by a thin drying Diet with Guajacum. Let him therefore firſt be purged, either with the Syrup, which I formerly preſcribed him, or by a Medicine of the Infuſion of Rhu barb and Agarick, with two drams of Diaphænicon.

The third or ſecond day after let him begin his thin Diet, in which let him feed ſparingly only on roaſt meats: and let him drink a ſimple Decoction of Guajacum wood without the bark, that he may the better accuſtome himſelf to it. Let him ſup at ſeven in the evening; and at five or ſix in the morning, and again at four in the afternoon, let him drink a Cup of pure and ſtrong Decoction, made of the Wood and bark of Guajacum, and of Polypody, with Sage, Betony, and Stæchados: and this in the firſt daies ſhal be inſtead of a Preparatory Apozeme, nor let him be forced to ſweat.

When ſix or ſeven daies are over, and the Humors thus prepared and ſtirred, let him be purged again, with the former, or ſome like Medicament, or to which Senna and Epithymum are added.

And then let him begin to ſweat with the Decoction aforeſaid, that the inner parts of his belly being Evacuated, the upper parts may conſequently be disburdened of Superfluities.

When the ſweat ſhal liberally Evacuate and purifie his Body, ſo that it ſhal become extenuated and leaner, it wil be time to uſe Topical Medicaments.

And then attenuating and diſſipating fomentations muſt be applied to his Thigh, which was the firſt cauſe of al his weakneſs, and after the fomentations a Cataplaſme muſt be applied, of the crude Roots of Briony and wild Cucumber, with Muſtard ſeed and the pulp of Figs, mingled together in a convenient proportion, which though I ſhould expreſs to a Novice, I need not to you. If theſe things ſhal ſeem to you not to have done enough towards the Cure, at laſt a Phænigmus muſt be applied of Leaven and Cantharides, til the Roots of the Diſeaſe be plucked up. For you ſhal do more by theſe ſtrong drawers, than with a very long ulcer or Iſſue, which only receives the Humors, but does not draw them.

And then you muſt alſo open the Hæmorrhoid Veins, either with the Juyce of Mercury Leaves, or of Figs: or with a ſuppoſitory of Hiera ſimple, with the Root of round birthwort, but ſo as an Emollient Fomentation be premiſed. Or if they cannot be ſufficiently opened or wil not run, it wil be good to open the Vena Saphæna in his left Foot, and to let him bleed as his ſtrength wil bear.

While you apply theſe Topicks to the Cure of his Thigh, you may likewiſe ſet about the Application of Topicks to his Head. And in the firſt place Errhina, which may ſtrongly draw ſnivel out of his Brain. Then uſe frictions of his Head, with bags made of diſcuſſing Seeds, millet, and Salt, fried. After which his Head being ſhorn to the Skin, lay on a Plaiſter of Roots of Florentine Orice, with Hermodactils and Muſtard-ſeed: which being poudered muſt be made up with Melilote Plaiſter, and a ſufficient quantity of Tupentine. And afterward uſe a ſtronger, if need require, and to the ſame purpoſe Cupping-Glaſſes, ſometimes without, ſometimes with Scarrification, may be faſtened to the hinder part of his Head. And you muſt perſiſt in the uſe of theſe things, with the foreſaid Diet of Guajacum, til both the inward

inward and outward parts of his Body ſhal appear ſufficiently cleanſed from bad Humors.

Setons in the Hinder part of his Head, Iſſues in the coronal Suture, have not that drawing Faculty, as I ſaid before, nor can they as I find by experience perform, that which the other Remedies are able to do, and they many times moſt miſerably torment the Patients to no purpoſe.

When the whol body and al its parts have been thus provided for, if any ſuſpition of the Falling ſickneſs ſhal ſeem to remain, thoſe Medicaments may ſeaſonably be uſed, which are reported by their whol ſubſtance and hidden properties to cure the ſaid Diſeaſe.

The X. Counſel.

For dimneſs of the Eyes, in the Wife of Mſr. de Riou.

THe dimneſs of both the Eyes, and blindneſs thereby threatned, both by reaſon of the remaining Ophthalmia in the right Eye, and that which has ſince ſeized upon the left, have their firſt efficient Cauſe in the Brain. For therein ſtore of Excrementitious Flegm is wont to be bred and ſtored up, and that by reaſon of the cold and moiſt diſtemper of the ſick Gentle-Woman, and by her immoderate way of living. For as that is the chief cauſe of the Gout, when it goes into the hinder parts; ſo when it flows into the former parts, and through the optick Nerves, it breeds in the Eyes ſuch Symptoms as theſe hindring the ſight. For the dilatation of the pupil alone without the cauſe aforeſaid, is not ſufficient to produce blindneſs.

And here I am at a ſtand, doubting where this obſtructing Humor, which is the *Cauſa continens*, and immediate procurer of this Diſeaſe, is lodged: Whether in the Optick Nerve, or under the inner parts of the Pupil, in manner of a ſuffuſion, or whether it be powred out externally upon the Cornea of the pupil, in form of an Albugo. For theſe things are diligently to be conſidered and diſtinguiſhed, without which the Cure, if any be to be hoped, cannot be performed. And therefore I deſire to be diligently by you certified touching the premiſes. If nothing can be perceived in the Eye before the pupil, the cauſe is in the Optick Nerve, which is perhaps obſtructed: for there is no ſuſpition that the Faculty of ſeeing is hurt, or that part of the Brain wherein it is lodged.

If any obſcure thing be ſeen before the pupil, it muſt be conſidered, whether it lie deep under the Coats, or outwardly about the Tunica Cornea: the former is a Suffuſion, the latter an Albugo.

But in the mean while, til we ſhal be certified of theſe things, a general Cure is to be begun, which is alike common to al theſe infirmities. Firſt a drying and attenuating Diet muſt be injoyned, ſo that ſhe Eat no moiſt, ſupping or liquid meats, but only roaſt and dry, and that very ſparingly, only ſo as to preſerve her ſtrength. Let her abſtain from wine, twenty or thirty daies: and let her drink be a decoction of Lignum Vitæ without any other addition. And if with another ſtronger and ſharper decoction, at five in the morning and four in the afternoon, you ſhal endeavour to bring ſweat out of her whol Body, eſpecially out of her head, you ſhal do much towards the Cure.

On the third or fourth day of this Diet, when the Humors ſhal appear to be in agitation, ſhe muſt be purged with pilulæ Lucis, and Sine quibus, or by any other that you have found by experience more agreeable to her body.

Theſe pils muſt be repeated every eight or tenth day, nor muſt ſhe ſweat on that day.

In the intervenient daies, if ſhe be Coſtive let her have an Emollient Clyſter.

Every morning, chiefly towards the End of her ſweat, her head being ſhaven or polled, bags muſt be applied, of miller, Salt, Annis, and Fennel ſeeds, and bayberries, fried, which being in bed let her endure on as hot as may be, for the ſpace of half an hour, that by them the clammy Humor of her Head may be drawn forth, and the brain, the fountain of al her Infirmity, may be ſtrengthened more than the other parts. For in this Caſe the bags are more effectual,

effectual, than either plaisters, or Sinaphysmes though, never so hot.

The Bag being taken away cover her head with dry tow, which must be smoaked with storax, Benjamin, cloves, and such like, a little before dinner and supper. And at the same time flegm must be drawn out of her Head, by chewing Masticatories made of mastick and pellitory of Spain: or by a Gargarisme made of some convenient decoction, dissolve in a pint whereof a dram of pellitory poudered. These things must be constantly used in the mean while, til I can more certainly know what the disease of her eye is, whether an Albugo, a suffusion, or an obstruction of the optick Nerve. For the weakness cannot spring, from want of spirits, or dissipation of her natural strength.

Which when we shal understand, we shal endeavor our utmost to effect the Cure.

The XI. Counsel.

For Msr. Lastier, *almost blind with an Obstruction of his Optick Nerve, being sixty years old.*

THis same Hinderance or depravation of sight, which threatens either a suffusion or blindness has for its Cause, not only a thick vapour, but also a thick and clammy humor, which slipping out of the brain into the optick nerve, does not yet fil the whole capacity of the nerve. This humor if it shal sal before the chrystaline humor and the pupil, it wil cause a suffusion: but if continuing where it is, it encrease and grow thick together, it wil cause only a blindness wherein nothing can be seen amiss in his Eyes. And therefore we must hinder any more matter from flowing thither afresh, and that by a good diet, which may moderately nourish his body, but not moisten the same, nor fil it with excrements.

Twice, or once at least in a month, he must purge with pils *sine quibus*, and *Lucis magores*: and in the intermediate daies, if he be bound, with pils of Aloes.

His Head must be every morning dried with fomentations of salt, milet, and discussing seeds Fried.

Frictions also must be used towards the hinder parts of his head, downwards, which wil be very profitable.

Flegm must be frequently drawn out of his Head by Apophlegmatismes; Errhines are not so safe, Sneezing-pouders stark naught, because they turn the Course of the Humors to the place affected.

By these therefore, and such like means, his head wil gather few excrements, and they wil be brought away for the most part through the natural passages.

The other intention of the cure is, that the humor which has long since gotten into the optick nerve, may either wholly, or as much as is possible, be drawn out, and brought back to the original of the fluxion. Which though it be an hard and very difficult task, yet we must try nevertheless, what we can do.

Therefore we must often apply Cupping-glasses, especally the day after his purgation, and some daies after that, to the Hind part of his Head, on each side, at the original of his neck, without scarification.

He must be ordered to lie on his back; and so lying it wil be good sometime to shake his Head gently, that the fast sticking humor may be removed out of its place.

I like not of those setons as they cal them of the Hinder-part of the Head and neck, having observed that they do little good, and many times great hurt.

But Experience has taught me that the most effectual and safe Revulsion, is from the optick nerve into that Cavity, which is in the root of the Ear, and in the Connexion of the jaw-bone behind the lowest part of the Ear. For through that runs a branch of the jugular Vein, which enters the optick Nerves on both sides, and accompanies them as far as to the eyes. Thereupon therfore a smal plaister must be applyed as big as a Mans nail, either of that sort which consists of an equal portion of black soap and common salt beaten.

Or of that which consists of mustard seed and cantharides, of each one dram. Strong leaven

one

one ounce. But these things must be prudently used, and with the greatest Art Imaginable. But if it be feared that the humor to be revelled, is not sufficiently inclined to move, it must be prepared with a remollient and attenuating fomentation, of a decoction of marsh-mallowes, Vervain, Eyebright, Rew, fennel, and fenugrick seeds.

With the vapour of this decoction applyed with a soft and tender spunge his eyes must be fomented about the Evening, especially whilst the plaisters stick under his ears, that it may at least by its warmness soften and make thin the peccant humor.

But it will be in vaine to use eye-salves, because their Vertue cannot penetrate to the place affected.

Nevertheless he may profitably eat fennel seeds oftentimes, or after meals take a pouder made of coriander, annis-seed, Fennel seed, Eyebright, Liquoris, and Cinnamon: for the vapour and steame of those things is carried out of the mouth and stomach, to the fore part of the Eyes.

I know some will in this case command and commend exceedingly the decoction of Guajacum, which nevertheless without the Remedies aforesaid, will be in vain, and do no good at al.

The XII Counsel:

The Answer of Fernelius *to the Letters of Msr.* Du Perat, *a Gentleman of very great Note in the Emperors Court, or of* Beucherius *his Physitian.*

YOur Letter to *J. Silvius*, most learned *Beucherius*, did sufficiently acquaint me with your remarkable Learning, and now at last I am confirmed in the opinion thereof by your Letter to my self, wherein also you declare your ingenuous and extraordinary affection to me. Least therefore you should have any suspition of my writings or prescriptions as not safe enough, I have, not perfunctorily, but very diligently read over & perused your former Letter to *J. Sylvius*, wherein there being many things with prolinity of words obscurely delivered, you seemed to discourse not onely of the gout in the feet, but sometimes also of other Joint-pains, whose original you attributed sometimes to the brain, sometimes to the veins, of which it you now doubt when you aske my advice, doe you not seem to give me also an occasion of doubting? But, if so be we are now both of a mind, that these pains spring from rheum, and that it fals down form the Head into the joynts, the Gentleman need not doubt or make any scruple to follow that method of cure, which you long since did usefully prescribe, and which in my letters I have very much commended, and imitated exactly, though with other kind of Medicaments, as every one has his own way of practise, and every one is commonly wont most of all to commend those things, which he himself has happily experimented. Howbeit, I make no question, but those things which you have prescribed wil do good, if the patient persevere in the use of them. But I come now to your Queries.

If the Gentleman shal resolve to use the decoction of Lignum Vitæ, it can do no hurt, in the winter, sometimes, but not alwaies to mingle therewith a like or less quantity of weak wine. And here I desire you to take notice that there are many kinds of this wood, or at least many degrees: nor must you use that, which makes a sweetish decoction like whey, but that which is aromatical, the decoction whereof tickles the pallat and throat with its biting acrimony. When he shal take that second and medicated potion of Lignum Vitæ, if he swear, let him keep house that day, and not commit himself to the coldness of the Aire, least his skin being open and loose, the cold get in, and smite and vex his nerves. When his fit begins, and he feels the first grudgings of pain, he must be exquisitely purged, not expecting any concoction. For the humor when it flows into the joynts, is thin and watery, which is easily purged out. But when it has quartered sometime in the joint, it grows thick, and wil hardly follow the medicament; nor is it those humors, which *Hippocrates* bids us not to purge before they be concocted. These are perhaps those things, which you (most learned Sir) do admire as paradoxes, which you desire me to explain, and to answer your arguments to the contrary. And though few physitians are wont to render a reason of what they say or advize: yet because you desire the same, after so ingenuous and fair a man-

ner, least I should seem to have spoken rashly and at adventure, I shal briefly explain my self in this case, which nevertheless would require a large discourse. Now I shal insist upon al your objections, not intending to teach and inform you, but to answer to your questions. In the first place therefore, you say the cause of a cold gout, is thick and clammy flegm. And that, I say, being simply and absolutely understood, is false; for at first it is thin and watery, such as sometimes runs out a mans nose by cold-taking; nor being thickned would it easily fal down and slide into the joynts, and external parts of the body, but would stick by the way. But, indeed, in tract of time, by force of heat, it wil become thick in the joints, and as *Galen* saies by you cited, cannot be resolved but in a long time. And at length, if it be let alone, it grows into an incurable stony hardness, of which the Poet.

Solvere nodosam nescit Medicina podagram.

When Gouty Humors into stones convert,
They jeere the Doctors, and despise their Art.

You must therfore distinguish the times of diseases unless you wil make Authors contradict themselves. Of the differences of this flegme, I have written according to the judgment of best physitians, in my first book of the natural part of medicine. Afterwards, not allowing that the brain is the spring of this disease, you aske me why every internal cause which moves a catarrh, does not produce the gout? You should likewise have asked, why every distilation from the the brain does not cause a Cough? You know (worthy sir) that every distillation holds not one and the same course, also several humors encline several waies. And as some parts are weaker and looser than others: so the humors accordingly run this way or that way into this or that part. Moreover you tel me, there is no passage betwixt the brain and feet, by which the humor might fal thither; and the more to prove what you would have, you gather, that it can neither come in by the Spinal marrow, nor by the nerves. Which I confess, truly, and I cannot beleeve any one is so simple, as to think of such passages. Yet you say the brain may communicate its Excrement to the Veins: seeing you are very skilful in Anatomy, I would have you shew me the way by which the Excrement can go back out of the Ventricles of the Brain (which *Galen* in his book *de usu partium*, tells us were made to receive Excrements) into the Veins. Can the Excrement return upwards from those inmost Ventricles into the Veins again? But if it sometimes fal into the Stomach, and obstruct the Liver, that is nothing to our purpose. I conceive there is no need of these waies or passages, for a distillation in the Joynts, but that some come out of the Ventricles of the brain, others out of the external parts, and slip down even by the Neck and Shoulders, which gaining the parts under the Skin which are loose, and being for the most part thin, it slips along leisurely without sence of pain, till it stop in the solid and more compacted Joynt, and abide there, whose Ligaments, Tendons, and Membranes, it stretches, not without pain. This I perswade my self to be the cause of the cold Gout, which being ill explained, most Physitians have left it as incurable. But the Authority of the Ancients shal never fright me from making Inquisition, neither in these, nor in any other Operations of Art, though I have not hitherto neglected any, no not the least Writer: yet I find by experience I have profited more by my own Inventions than by them. And now I return to you, where you endeavor to perswade me, that these flegmatick Excrements, do fal out of the Veins; and therein (you bid me be plain) you are many waies over-teen. For you never saw any such Flegm drawn out of the Veins by Medicaments, but what ever flegm is brought away by purgers, it comes al either from the Brain, or the Stomach, or the Guts, and it causes the Cholick: nor does that which in the Cholick, or in Feavers is vomited, come out of the Veins into the Belly, but was collected in these places. You are also mistaken when you say, that you have seen much thick flegm, and not unlike that which is bred in the Stomach, come out of a Vein with the blood, in phlebotomy. For that same whitish matter which is sometimes seen to float in the Chyrurgeons porrengers, and grows together by vertue of the fibres, is called blood, flegmatick blood, and such as abounds in Leucophlegmatick bodies. I verily, among vulgar Errors, do reckon this for a most grievous one, that usual Feavers, and whatever other Diseases, they make al faults of the Humors to be in the Veins, and that there can be no place found in the body for bad Humors besides; and when

we

we diſcourſe of Humors, they never think of Superfluous Humors, but underſtand al, only of theſe Humors mixed with the blood in the Veins. But of theſe things I ſhal find a time to ſpeak more largely. And as for thoſe other things you ſay, how that out of the Veins Mouths, many matters iſſue, either into the Skin or other outward parts of the Body which are weak, which cauſe the Scab, the Itch, puſtles, Inflamations, and ſomtimes hot Gouts: al this with you I acknowledg and confeſs.

Of Joynt Pains, for the ſame Mſr. du Perat.

What I am able to underſtand touching the Diſeaſe of the ſick Gentleman and its cauſe, and concerning the prevention and Cure thereof, is as follows. The Age of the Patient, being ſixty years, his temperament cold, the habit of his body corpulent, plenty of clammy and thick flegm, in his brain, ſtomach and Guts; finally, many other ſigns, which I have collected up and down out of the writings of others, do demonſtrate that this joynt-pain we ſpeak of proceeds from a cold diſtillation, rather than a hot, which the Nature and long-laſting of the pain does confirm: but into what joynts the Humor chiefly fals, is not expreſſed. Though the knowledg thereof, is of no ſmal moment towards the Cure. Nor do I find that any notice is taken, whence that cold and flegmatick diſtillation does fal into the joynts, which notwithſtanding is the chief point of the Cure, to which al the Counſel of the Phyſitian is to be directed. I verily can never beleeve, either that the thick flegm which is purged away by ſtool, or that which flows into the joynts, can come out of the Veins. For both theſe Humors are ſincere and Excrementitious, ſuch as is no where contained in the Veins, but the former, which comes out of the ſtomach, and Guts, is bred there by the Nature of the Place: and the latter fals into the joynts from the Brain and the whol Head, whoſe proper Excrement nevertheleſs it is. Theſe things being thus declared, I haſten to the Cure. As ſoon therefore as the patient ſhal be freed from his preſent pain, or at leaſt two or three months during the time of his Health let him accuſtom himſelf to this Diet. Let him feed on meats of good juyce, Capons, Pidgeons, Partridges, ſmal Birds, young Hares or Leverets, Veal, Mutton, and ſuch like, alwaies roaſt, never boyled, and avoid al ſuppings and al fiſhes, and cheeſe, Peaſe, Beans, and al fruits, eſpecially ſummer fruit that wil not keep. He may conclude his meals with raiſons of the Sun, or Marmalade of quinces. For thus by a dry and moderatly warm Diet, we muſt take care that little or no flegm breed in his body. And to that end, it wil be alſo good, to take an hour or two before meals, one lozenge of Aromaticum Rotatum according to the deſcription of *Gabriel*, or a little preſerved Ginger: let him take heed of hotter Medicaments, ſuch as diatrion pipereon, Diagalanga, Diacalamintha, and ſuch like: for they hurt by their heat, nor can they correct the Errors of his Diet. But after meals, let him ſuppreſs the Vapors of his ſtomach with this pouder.

Take *Coriander ſeed prepared two drams; choice Guajacum, one dram; choice Oriental pearl one ſcruple; Sugar of Roſes, two ounces. Make al into a pouder, let him take a ſpoonful after his meat. Let him eat twice a day, and that very ſparingly, and at ſuch diſtances of time as may ſuffice for perfect concoction. For it will be good for him, ſomtimes to endure hunger, for the digeſtion of crudities. Let his drink be white wine or pale claret; each moderately allaied with water. Smal beer is good for one draught, but let him not drink thereof immoderately, and alſo al water, if it be ſeaſoned with much ſpice, leaſt he increaſe ſerous Humors, which he is apt to breed. He muſt drink ſparingly, not above thirty ounces in a day. And if he delight to have ſome other kind of drink; that is fitteſt of al for him which is made of Lignum Vitæ, and cuts Flegm, makes it thin, and ſcours it off the parts; and it opens obſtructions better than any thing elſe, and digeſts them in the remoteſt parts; it dries up and conſumes many crude and Superfluous matters, to which the force of other Medicaments cannot pierce, ſo that it is much conducing to the health of this Patient. Moreover he may drink as much as he wil of this drink. Now it may be made very grateful after this manner.*

Take *Chips or ſhavings of Lignum Vitæ half a pound. Infuſe it in ſix pints of luke warm water twenty four hours. Then boyl it to three pints putting in towards the concluſion, raiſons ſtoned two ounces; Choice Cinnamon three drams; Cloves, one dram; ſtrain out the Liquior. Let him uſe it at meat inſtead of wine, or at leaſt for his firſt draught, in place of beer.*

When his Belly is costive, let him use a suppository or an emollient Clyster. Also it will be good to give him this Clyster twice a week, which scours off thick flegm, and draws it forth by stool.

Take Roots of Marshmallows and Elecampane, and Polypody of the Oak, of each half an ounce: Century, Wormwood, Rue, Chamomel flowers, and Melilote flowers, of each one handful: make a decoction to a pint: In the strained liquor dissolve Hiera Picra simple, and Turpentine, of each half an ounce: Honey of Roses and of Rosemary, of each one ounce: Oyl of Rue and Chamomel, of each half an ounce: make of all a Clyster, give it him after he has been at stool.

Every fifteenth day let all the rest of his body be purged, but especially his brain and joynts, with this easie and gentle Medicament:

Take Water of Sage and Hyssop, each an ounce: infuse herein two drams of Agarick newly trochisted: in the strained liquor dissolve choice Rhubarb duly infused, four scruples, with half a dram of the best Cinnamon: Electuary of Carthamus two drams, Syrup of Stœchados, half an ounce: make al into a Potion.

But if he shall be better pleased with Pills, these truly are good and fit:

Take the mass of Pill sine quibus, and Cochie, of each half a dram: with syrup of Stœchados make six Pills.

Now this course of life is not burthensome, and such as he cannot endure a long season, but yet very profitable and fit for him. Howbeit, if the Patient be willing to be ordered; and would for the time to come be safely cured of this joynt disease, 'tis necessary he undergo greater matters, so as quite to change his old and vicious habit of body, which gradually and without trouble, thus he may effect: Having finished his first Month in the diet aforesaid, in the Month following which is next the Fit, let him wholly abstain from Wine, and instead thereof drink the decoction of *Lignum vitæ* aforesaid, keeping (during the said time) somwhat a thinner and more exquisite diet, though of the same kinds of meat before mentioned: Then let another more Medicinal drink be made, which may more potently digest and consume the already prepared humors, which let him use as a Medicament in the morning, and before supper. And let it be made after this manner:

Take Lignum vitæ, or Guajacum, half a pound; of the bark thereof two ounces: infuse them two dayes in six pints of lukewarm water, then boyl them to two pints; towards the end putting in of true Acorus root, and Elecampane root, and Polypody of the Oak, of each half an ounce: Smal Sage, Stœchados, Betony and Rosemary flowers, of each a pugil: Galangal three drams, Cloves and Mace, of each one dram: make a strained drink as is fitting. Let him take three ounces for a dose, in the morning at five a clock, and three hours before supper, lying on his bed wel covered with cloaths, so as he may sweat; for thus, whatsoever vicious humor is spread abroad among his Nerves and Joynts, it wil be by little and little digested and consumed.

And because the Brain is the fountain and original of this distillation, it is fit to apply more Remedies to that part, than to any other. Having therefore his sweat wiped off, let his head and neck be soon after warmed with these *Bags*, whose vertue is to dissolve the Reliques of the noxious humor, and to strengthen the brain.

Take leaves of Sage, Marjoram, Stœchados, of each one pugil: Annis-seed, Fennel-seed, and Fenegreek, of each an ounce: Milet one pound: common salt half a pound: Fry al in a frying-pan, put them into two little bags, apply them to the fore-part of his head and neck hot, and let them lie on till they wax cold, and repeat them warm oftentimes, if you shal think fit.

These things being acted, move him to sneez; also with Errhins and Apophlegmatisms let the flegm be drawn out of his brain, through his mouth and nostrils: with the continual use hereof of these Medicaments, the fountain of the disease must be exhausted till it be drawn quite dry. About the end of the month, when by diet, sweat, purging, apophlegmatisms, and bags, his brain shall be now sufficiently dried and strengthened, and there shall no sign appear of the dominion of Flegm; then verily, al his limbs, nerves, and joynts, must be strengthened and made firm, that they may not hereafter so easily admit the defluxe of humors, to which purpose a bath is effectual, which is made with a decoction of Roses, Balaustians, Sage, Stœchados, and Myrtle, adding a good quantity of Allum; in which (being blood warm) let

him

him ſit a good while faſting, ſo as neither heat nor ſweat may be cauſed thereby; but that only his looſer joynts may be thereby ſtrengthened, and let him do this three or four dayes one after another; after which he may ſafely return by little and little to his uſual free courſe of diet, which nevertheleſs muſt come as near as poſſible to this here preſcribed: Let his head be rubbed every morning with the Bags, and let the flegm be daily drawn out at his mouth and noſtrils: Finally, Let him altogether avoid lying on his back, and rather lie on his belly; for lying on his back makes the excrements flow into his neck and joynts; but lying on his breaſt will make them encline towards his noſtrils and mouth. Moderate exerciſe is good in an open and dry air. Hard fridions of his limbs, will be very good for him when he is newly awaked.

Theſe things being obſerved, I am confident the Patient wil be cured of this diſeaſe. But in caſe, omitting ſomewhat or other, he happen to be again taken, when his Fit begins let him be exquiſitly purged with a good ſtrong Medicament: For when a gentle Purge is given, it exagitates the humors, and yet it purges not, and conſequently augments the diſtillation and the pains, and oftentimes makes them twice as great as before, which makes many afraid and to forbear to purge, at the beginning of the pain. And therefore to the Medicament before preſcribed, for a dram of Diacarthamum put in two drams, or ſo much as the diſcretion of his Phyſitian preſent ſhal think fit: with this alone I have often cured beginning pains. And ſoon after the Purgation, let dry fridions be uſed on his head and neck, and that with the Bags preſcribed, very hot; that by theſe the remainders of the diſtillation may be ſtopped, and digeſted, leſt it fal into the joynts. But if ſo be nevertheleſs the fluxion of humors continues and poſſeſſes the joynts, and at the beginning of the pain redneſs and heat appear (ſuch as is attendant ſometimes at the beginning of a cold Gout, whereby many are deceived) firſt you muſt apply things moderately cold, then pain-aſſwagers, laſtly digeſters. Cold things I ſay, which do not drive the humors inward, but ſtop them when they are in motion, and extinguiſh the Heat. Of this ſort is the Mucilage of Quince ſeeds, extracted with Nightſhade water, with which being warm, let the pained part be bathed, and let it be covered with cloaths dipped therein. If this do not ſufficiently mitigate the pain, ad an eighth part of Vinegar; and if ſo, the pain grow not milder, ad a little Camphire, or a little white Trochisks of *Rhaſis*.

Let him then abſtain from Oyls, Oyntments and fat things whatever, becauſe the pains are inflamed and doubled by hot things. When by help of the premiſes, the vehemence of the pain, and al the ardour, ſhal be exciguiſhed: theſe and ſuch like Anodines, wil be convenient as follow.

Take *Oyl of Lillies, and Chamomel, Mucilage of Fleawort extracted in Sage Water, of each one ounce: Saffron ten grains: Wax a little. Make all into a Liniment, wherewith to anoint the pains, twice or thrice in a day.*

After the Anointing, apply this following Cataplaſm.

Take *Crums of white Bread, ſteeped in new Milk, one pound: Saffron twenty grains: Chamomel Flowers, and Melilot Flowers poudered, Meal of Lin-ſeed, and Fenugreek, of each half an ounce: Oyl of Lillies, a ſmal quantity: Make all into a Cataplaſm.*

There are many things of this kind, as the pulp of Caſſia Fiſtula, Cows dung applied, or Water diſtilled therefrom, Oyntment of the Juyce of Dwarf Elder; and innumerable other things, which the vehemency of pain, and neceſſity has found out. Many torment themſelves, and cudgel their brains to find out new Medicaments. Yet verily, I conceive the Gout is more eaſily and ſafely cured by a good Method, than by multitude of Medicaments. The pains being ended, or moſt what abated, the reſt of the Humor, is to be digeſted, leſt in the Joynt it grow into a ſtony kind of hardneſs.

Take *Pine-tree Gum, Tar, Emplaſtrum Oxycroceum, of each one ounce: Live Brimſtone, Hermodactyls poudered, of each half an ounce: Oyl of Turpentine as much as will ſuffice. Make all into a Plaiſter according to Art.* Apply it after the anointing.

The

The *XIII.* Counſel.

Containing the Cure of the Gout, and all Joynt-pains, for Msr. Albertus *Junior, Marques of* Brandenburge.

AS ſoon as ever any man is taken with pains in his Joynts, he muſt abate half of his ordinary Diet, both in Meat and Drink, and he muſt be enjoyned to follow a thinner and purer Diet, that the immoderate bulk of his body and Humors, may be abated; he muſt drink no Wine, the heat and vaporous faculty whereof, provokes the defluxion of Rhewm, and exaſperate the pains. His drink muſt be ſmal beer, or Water ſweetned with Sugar, or ſome other Liquor that without any harm doing may pleaſe his pallate. Al Salt and ſpiced meats muſt be avoided, and ſuch things which trouble the Head, as Garlick, Onions, Water-creſſes, Muſtard; eſpecially when the pains are moſt raging. He muſt uſe little ſupping meats or broaths, and eat roaſt meat rather than boyl'd, that his Body may by all poſſible means be dryed, and a good quantity of Humors conſumed. Theſe therefore are the chief, and moſt obſervable Rules of Diet, which his ordinary Phyſitian may unfold more at large. And becauſe ſo cruel a Diſeaſe cannot be put to flight only by diet, theſe Medicaments muſt be added, whereby I am wont quickly to put an end to theſe pains. As ſoon as the pain ſhal ſeize upon him, if his belly be bound, it muſt be ſoftened with a Clyſter, which muſt have in it Hiera picra ſimple, or Diaphœnicon, with other things uſual in ſuch caſes. The day after, his body muſt be purged with a ſtrong purgation, or elſe it will rather ſtir than evacuate the Humors, and ſo encreaſe the defluxion; alſo it muſt be ſtrong that it may draw the Humors out of the ſtrongeſt and remoteſt parts: Now ſuch a purge, I commonly preſcribe after this manner.

Take *of the ſtilled waters of Sage and Bettony, and of white wine, of each one ounce. Infuſe therein of the beſt Rhubarb, and Agaric newly Trochisked, of each four ſcruples. In the ſtrained Liquor diſſolve Electuarium Diacharthami, two drams; Syrup of Violets or Maiden-Hair, half an ounce. Make al into a potion, and let him take it in the morning four hours before dinner.*

This Electuary of Diacarthamum by reaſon of the Hermodactils and Turbith, is proper for the Gout: whoſe doſe muſt be fitted to the nature and ſtrength of the Patient. No preparation is to be premiſed before the purge, becauſe the Humor being at firſt, thin, wateriſh, and fluid, does eaſily follow the drawing of the Medicament. If one purge ſhal ſeem not to have drawn away a ſufficient quantity of the Humor, and the pains continue as before, or by means of a new fluxion are grown worſe, you muſt purge him the ſecond time with a purge like the former, yea, and the third time if occaſion require: but interpoſing ſome daies of reſt betwixt purge and purge, that the patient may not thereby be weakned: which muſt be left to the judgment of an experienced Phyſitian. Now the pains muſt even before purging, at the very beginning be aſſwaged, with this following Medicament, which by gentle cooling reſtraines the influxion, and yet does not drive the Humors more into the joynt.

Take *of the ſtilled waters of Nightſhade, and plantain, of each three ounces: ſteep therein, Marſh-Mallow ſeed and Quince ſeed, of each half an ounce. Make a Mucilage, and ſpread it luke warm on clean Linnen cloth, or upon tow, and apply it, renewing the ſame as ſoon as it begins to grow dry, that the part may alwaies be moiſt, til al the redneſs, heat, and pain, be taken away.*

This is a moſt effectual Medicament in the Feet and Hand Gout. If the Inflamation ſeem to be great, add an ounce of Vinegar. In the other joynts, when a more grievous pain ſhal ariſe, as in the Elbow, the Knee, and Hip, that the force of this Medicament may pierce the deeper, add Camphire, eight grains. When the pains begin, neither Oyls, nor Fats, nor Mineral or Metallick Medicaments do any good, but are found exceeding hurtful in many reſpects. When the heat and redneſs being extinguiſhed, the extremity of the pain ſhal abate, the remainders thereof wil be chaſed away with this following Oyntment.

Take *Mucilage of the Seeds of Line and Fœnugreek extracted in Sage water three ounces. Oyl of Worms, of Chamomel and Lillies, of each one onuce. Fox and Gooſe greaſe, of each*

half

half an ounce. Hermodactyls finely poudered, two ounces. Marrow of an Hart, or of a Calf, and Wax, as much as ſhal ſuffice. Make an Oyntment and anoint therewith the pained and ſwolne part, twice or thrice a day, and wrap warm Linnen about it.

Alſo it will be good to apply this Plaiſter to the part affected, preſently after it is anointed.

Take of *the Oyntment preſcribed, five ounces: Round Birthwort root, Frankincenſe, Myrrh, Galbanum, Opopanax, of each half an ounce: Turpentine three drams; Wax as much as ſhal ſuffice: make all in Plaiſter rowls.*

If the matter of the pain be ſo tenacious, that theſe Remedies cannot mollifie nor root it up, apply this Plaiſter at laſt:

Take *Pine tree-gum one ounce: black Pitch two ounces; Wax one ounce: old Axungia one ounce: Hermodactyls poudered, and live Brimſtone, of each ſix drams; make a Plaiſter, which muſt dayly be renewed and continued til al the ſwelling ſeem to be taken away, and til the joynt may be freely moved.*

But if the perfect Cure be neglected, ſomewhat will be left in the joynt it ſelf, which at laſt hardening, will grow into a ſtony ſubſtance, and quite take away the motion thereof.

This is a certain and very ſafe way to Cure Joynt-pains when they are freſh, which if rightly adminiſtred wil never fail thee; nor need you ſeek far & near for other empirical Medicaments, wherewith we are often deluded. For the Cure of this Diſeaſe muſt be accompliſhed by Art and Method, and not by empirical Receits. Howbeit you muſt obſerve and be very circumſpect in this Cure, that when a new humor and a new defluxion ſhall ariſe, the Patient be ſtil purged afreſh.

But for to Cure ſuch as cannot go by reaſon of an old Gout, and whoſe feet are contracted and weakened as to going, if the infirmity be not exceeding old, it may be Cured after this manner:

Every morning let the Patients feet be held in this decoction, as hot as it can be ſuffered, about an hour.

Take *Juniper berries, Elecampane roots, and marſh-mallow roots, of each two ounces: leaves of Lawrel, Myrtle, Sage, Betony, Stœchados, Origanum, Calamint, Marjoram, Rosmary flowers, of each one handful: Line-ſeed, and Fœnugreek-ſeed, of each one ounce: Boyl al in a clear Lye made of Vine-branch aſhes, in ſuch a quantity as may ſerve to cover the feet. If you would have this more effectual, add one pound of common ſalt.*

Afterward, the Patients feet being wiped, let them be anointed with this Oyl.

Take *Roots of Pelitory of Spain, Ginger, Nutmegs, Cloves bruiſed, of each two drams: Flowers of Sage, Hyſſop, Roſemary, Stœchados, ſpikenard, of each one dram, or half a dram: Round Birthwort Roots, and Hermodactyls poudered, of each one ounce. All being mingled together, pour on a pint of Aqua Vitæ, and let them ſteep an whole day; then add Turpentine one pound and an half: put al in a Glaſs Alembick: diſtil them with a ſlow Fire: Keep the water and Oyl apart for the uſe aforeſaid.*

The Patients feet therefore being wiped, let them be aneared with this Oyntment and Oyl, and wrapped in Linnen clouts: Then let the Patient lie down wel covered. Apply to the ſoles of his Feet red hot ſtones quenched in Wine, and let them be til the ſweat ſtarves out on his Legs and Feet. And when the Patient ariſes, let him al the reſt of the day and the night following, arm himſelf wel againſt the cold: and thus his feet will obtain a free motion. And theſe are the Remedies wherewith the Gout, and other pains of the Joynts, may be ſoon allayed and driven away.

Now I ſhal briefly ſhow how they may be prevented.

How to prevent the Gout, or other pain in the Joynts.

When the Pains being ceaſed, and his feet ſtrengthened, the Patient ſhal feel himſelf reſtored to his health; for a month or two, before the uſual pains return, he muſt uſe ſuch Remedies as may prevent the ſame: And to that end, if his body be impure and ful of ſuperfluous humors, he muſt uſe the more ſparing Diet, and it muſt be drying and attenuating. He muſt drink no Wine, if his age, and the weakneſs of his ſtomach will permit the forbearance, and he muſt

muſt ſo order the matter, that his body being disburthened of part of the bad humours, may grow lean.

And ſeeing Diet alone cannot do that ſufficiently, he muſt be purged every ſeventh or eighth day, ſometimes by ſuch a like Potion as was before deſcribed, and ſometimes with Pils of Agarick, and Cochia. In the dayes intervenient, he muſt uſe Clyſters, if he be coſtive.

After the ſecond or third Purgation, if the Body ſhal be ſufficiently purged, it wil be ſeaſonable to move ſweat, either with Guajacum, or any other Heaters; that the Humors wherewith the Nerves and Joynts are preternaturally ſoaked, may be attenuated, and ſo perfectly diſcuſſed.

Then alſo muſt ſuch Remedies be applied to the Head, as exhauſt the whole fountain of this Infirmity, wherefore the ſweat being wiped off, every day, if you pleaſe, before ſupper, his head being ſhaven, apply theſe pouders very hot, that they may diſcuſs the humors, and by drying, confirm and ſtrengthen the brain.

Take *leaves of Sage, Marjoram, ſtœchados, of each half an handful: ſeeds of Annis, Fennel, and Cummin, of each two ounces: bay-berries bruiſed half an ounce: Milet one pound: common ſalt half a pound: Fry al in a frying-pan, put them in bags, which may be applied exceeding hot to the Head and Neck, til they grow cold of their own accord.*

Then cover his head with cloaths which muſt be ſmoaked with this Fume,

Take *Nigella Romana, Storax, Benzoin, Amber, Maſtick, of each half an ounce: Cloves two drams: make al into a groſs pouder to ſmoak his head-cloathes.*

If haply under the skin of his head ſome humor be manifeſtly diſcerned, his head muſt be often waſhed and fomented with a Lye, wherein the Cephalick, or Head-herbs, have been boyled.

And if neither, ſo the ſuperfluous humors of the head ſhal be dried up, let his head be ſhaven, and thereon let this Plaiſter be laid, which is of great force to diſcuſs.

Take *Pulp of Figs, old Leaven, of each two ounces: muſtardſeed bruiſed three ounces: emplaiſter of Mucilages four ounces: ſoften and incorporate them: adding a little Turpentine if need be. With this Plaiſter let his head be covered, and let it lie on, til it have evacuated al the ſuperfluous humor: ſtronger Plaiſters cannot ſo ſafely be uſed; we muſt therefore content our ſelves with this.*

The fountain of the diſeaſe being drawn dry, and the head quite freed from excrements, and ſtrengthned, for the laſt part of the Cure, all his limbs and looſe joynts muſt be knit and ſtrengthned by ſuch a bath as this that follows:

Take *leaves of Myrtles, Balauſtians, red Roſes, Plantane, Vervain, Bay-berries, Origanum, Calamint, Penny-royal, Time, Sage, Roſemary flowers, of each two handfuls: Juniper berries four ounces: Roch Allum four pound: boyl al in a ſufficient quantity of water for a bath, and let him bide therein two or three hours (but let him not be forced to ſweat) that his limbs and joynts may be better ſtrengthned: and let him uſe it three or four dayes one after another, in the morning, faſting.*

This excellent way of Cure, does ſo pluck up both the cauſes of the Gout and joynt-pains, as well that which cauſes the excrement, as the joynts weakneſs it ſelf, that the patient is thereby made perfectly ſound and whole. But yet he muſt not be ſo confident of the Cure, as to take liberty to return to a temperate courſe of diet. But keeping ever after a more moderate diet, every Spring and Fall let him take a Purge a little before the uſual time of his fits. And for three dayes after let him waſh his head with the formerly preſcribed lye. Alſo let him uſe the Bath, unleſs he be very much averſe therefrom, as counting it troubleſome. This is a ſure and no wayes deceitful Cure, which every Phyſitian can accommodate to any kind of Gout or joynt-pain. And I ſhould have illuſtrated the ſame with many other preſcriptions, and thoſe very effectual, in caſe the particular ſpecies or ſort of the Diſeaſe had been expreſſed unto me, by its proper ſigns, and ſymptoms.

The

The *XIV.* Counsel.

Concerning extream Pursineſs in a Corpulent Man.

The Diſeaſe is propounded by Dr. Melinus, *to Dr.* Fernelius, *for* Mſr. de Boiſ-dauphin.

Claudius Lavallenſis, whom you are acquainted with, is now the ninth month here as Ambaſſador for the moſt Chriſtian King, and at laſt is fallen into a Diſeaſe, which he cals an heavineſs or purſineſs of his body; but I cal it a Plenitude or Plethora of Humors more than his ſtrength can bear. Moreover, he has now already had twice a Looſneſs, by which 'tis probable he voided ſuch Humors as did burthen him, ſeeing he bore it well certain daies together, and was better after it. Now the Excrements which Nature freely expelled, were brown for the moſt part, and very ſtinking, uneven, and among the reſt, a little flegmatick, clammy matter. He aſſiſted the voluntary flux of his belly, by a dram of Senna, ſteeped in the broath of ſtewed Prunes, and preſſed out. And therefore, ſeeing he is perſwaded that he needs purging, and does ſufficiently conſide in me, and the Practitioners of this place; he referral to you and your Authority, of whom he is very confidently opinionated. Two things chiefly argue a Plethora, or Plenitude *ad Vices*, the Heavineſs of his Body, and becauſe he finds much good by light purgations now and then uſed.

The Anſwer of Doctor Fernelius.

With ſuch faithfulneſs and diligence I ſee the Infirmity of your Lord, Mſr. *de Boiſdauphine*, expreſſed in your Letter, that you do as it were ſet before my Eyes, and reduce into my Memory, how I have my ſelf found the ſame, when I have been with him. A Corpulent habit and vaſt bulk of Body, becauſe it cannot be maintained ſave by liberal and ful diet, cauſes ſtore of Excrements; now eſpecially, his Age inclining, he living a ſedentary life without Labor or Action, the Air being cold, and the Soil moiſt. And though my Lord Embaſſador ſeem full of cold and flegmatick Excrements, yet he has withal good ſtore of Choler, which I ſometime remember did of it ſelf come away by ſtool with violence, and every day give him three Stools at leaſt, keeping his body alwaies very ſoluble. Now in caſe abundance of ſuperfluous Humors are grown up in his body beſides his Nature and Cuſtom; what wonder is it, if his body being weighed down with the bulk thereof, is become heavy, and unfit to perform its wonted functions? Now leaſt hereafter any worſe thing ſhould happen, we muſt endeavor, that look what ſuperfluity of humors, a thin and ſpare diet has not been able to rid away, it may be purged forth by phyſick: ſeeing we find, that the Looſneſs of his belly, whether coming by Nature, or procured by Art, does him much good: but it muſt be done leiſurely, and by little and little, becauſe gentle things do move him, and ſeeing it is in no wiſe ſafe, violently to ſhake ſo great a confluence of Humors, leſt we bring an old houſe upon our heads: The moſt convenient purgation therefore wil be by pils of Rhubarb, and Aloes, of each two drams; Agarick a dram; Cinnamon and yellow Sanders, of each half a dram, made up with Syrup of Cichory. And thus he ſhal uſe theſe Pils. Firſt let him take a ſcruple in the morning, an houir, or an hour and half before dinner. And two or three daies after, let him take half a dram, or two ſcruples, two hours before dinner. And thus muſt this purgation be often repeated, at ſhort diſtances of time, ſtil encreaſing the quantity, and continuing the ſame, till it appears that all the bad Humors are purged out, and he have recovered his former health and ſtrength of body.

The *XV.* Counſel.

Of the prevention and Cure of the Gout, for Msr. de Valletot, *the Kings Muſitian, tranſlated out of Frenth.*

THat you may (Sir) rightly preſerve your health and prevent thoſe pains, which are wont to afflict your feet, knees, limbs, and other joynts. Firſt you muſt purge four or five times in a year; viz. After Eaſter, and about the month of *Auguſt*, with the under written potion. But after the feaſt of al Saints, and about Candlemas, with the pils likewiſe under-written. And if need be, the day before you muſt take an emollient and preparatory Clyſter. And four or five dayes after your purgation, or longer, if you pleaſe, it wil be good to rub and dry your head, with a bag ful of ſeeds, under-written, exceeding hot. And when theſe dayes are over, it wil be good, eſpecially in the Summer, to waſh your head with a lie made of convenient herbs hereafter let down, and after to dry the ſame very wel with hot cloathes. Moreover, ſix or eight dayes after your purgation, it wil be good to dry and ſtrengthen your brain, towards night or when you goe to bed, to uſe the fumigation here deſcribed. But to the Medicaments preſcribed, one principal thing muſt be added, viz. Your courſe of diet. Wherein five points are cheifly to be obſerved. Firſt, That you eat not nor drink two much of any meat or drink whatſoever. Secondly, That you muſt not uſe ſtrong and vaporous wine, but ſuch as is very wel allayed with water. Thirdly, That you abſtain from ſleeping in the day-time, and that in the night you lye not on your back, but upon one ſide. Fourthly, That every morning you diligently combe your head, and void al the excrements of your brain, and endeavour to go to ſtool. Fifthly, That you uſe moderate exerciſe, and keep your head mean while from cold. If happily the remedies preſcribed ſhal not hinder, but that a new addition ſhal be made of pain or defluxion, at the firſt groveling of the pain you muſt apply the oyntment here deſcribed, eſpecially if it be joyned with redneſs, ſwelling, and heat. And if this oyntment ſhal not ſuffice, another muſt be added. The heat being extinguiſhed, and the pain much what aſſwaged, the plaiſter following muſt be applyed to the ſame part, which muſt be ſo often renewed, either every day, or every other day, that no ſwelling, redneſs, nor Inflamation may remain.

The Solutive Potion.

Take Waters of Betony, Sage, and white wine, each one ounce. Infuſe in them rhubarb four ſcruples, Agarick one dram; cinnamon ten graines. In the ſtrained liquor diſſolve one dram and half, or two drams of diacarthamum. Syrup of ſtachados ſix drams. Make al into a potion. Take it in the morning.

The Doſe of Pils.

Take of the maſs of Pil Cochiæ, and of Agrick pils, each one ſcruple; of Alephangine pils one ſcruple; ſyrup of violets as much as ſhal ſuffice. Make five pints; let him take them at three of the clock in the morning.

For the Bag.

Take Annis-ſeed, fennel-ſeed, Cummin-ſeed, and bayberies, each two ounces. Millet one pound, Common-ſalt half a pound. Beat them, and fry them, and put them in bags made of thin wove cloth, for the uſe aforeſaid.

The Fume.

Take Nigella Romana, Styrax, Benzoin, Ambar, of each half an ounce. Let them be dry and groſly poudered, and ſo put into a Box, for a fume pouder. Or a Cucupha, or quilted cap may be made therewith to weare upon the patients Head.

The

The firſt Oyntment or Smear.

Tke *Waters of night-ſhade and plantane, each half a pound. Vinegar two ounces. Infuſe therein ſeeds of Quinces, and flea wort, of each half an ounce: extract a mucilage over the warm embers, and therewith lukewarm foment the pained part, with linnen cloathes.*

The ſecond Ointment, truly ſo called.

Take *Oyntment of populeon three ounces; Dialthæa one ounce and half; let them be incorporated together to anoint the pained part, after the fomentation aforeſaid.*

The Plaiſter.

Take *Florentine Orice root, Hermodactils poudered, of each ſix drams. Emplaſtrum oxycroceum, and de Mucilaginibus, of each two ounces. Pine-tree gum one ounce. Soften them with a ſufficient Quantity of oyl of worms, and make a plaiſter-rowle, ſpread ſome upon leather for the pained places.*

Diet-Drink.

If he cannot be perfectly cured with theſe remedies, it wil be good for him to abſtain from wine, and to drink twice a day the former decoction of Lignum vitæ with the bark, which has been by Mſr. *Fernelius* formerly deſcribed.

The XVI. Counſel.

Of trembling of the members.

YOU (moſt learned *Orpheus*) out of your own Ingenuity and candor, do adorn me with ſuch praiſes, as I am loth to acknowledg, or raſhly entertain. But in that, out of the honeſty and ſincerity which becomes a Chriſtian, and a Phyloſepher, you bear a loving affection towards me; I give you al poſſible thanks, and ſhal be ready upon al occaſions to requite your love, if by any means I may aſſiſt you by my endeavors or Countenance. And that I may now ſatisfie you as to the buſineſs in hand; that ſame trembling which you propoſe, in the ſtrongeſt age of a man, cannot ſpring but from very grievous and preternatural cauſes. And becauſe I do not underſtand that the patients brain is remarkably affected, nor that flegm does any where abound, there muſt be ſome extraordinary cauſe of this ſymptome. Conſidering the patients by-paſt life, and the conſtitution of his body, I am with you induced to think, that his nerves and ſollid parts, are weakened by immoderate uſe of ſtrong unmixt Wine, and of Venery, and that they are now become ſo feeble that they connot performe their natural and wonted office; neither being able firmly to move, nor to hold the joynts ſtedfaſt. Hence is trembling cauſed, which is then moſt urgent, when the patient is put in fear, either by the preſence of great perſons, or upon ſome other occaſion as is uſual.

And ſeeing that this trembling has its original, rather from the dryneſs than repletion of the nerves, it wil hardly admit of cure, even as a convulſion ſpringing from emptineſs. Yet if you are minded to make trial, you muſt endeavour the Cure, neither by purgations, or immoderate evacuations, but by the contrary Cauſes, and a good courſe of diet. But nevertheleſs if you ſhal perceive any crudity to ſtand in the way, that may ſafely be removed, either with a clyſter, or with a potion of rhubarb and agarick, you may do it.

Yea, and if alſo you ſhal think fit to purge pure choller, which adounding about the the midrife, is many times obſerved to ruſh into the nerves of the ſpinal marrow; and ſometimes to cauſe trembling, other whiles nummedneſs and palſie: the ſelf-ſame, or ſome ſuch potion ſhould be repeated, every tenth day. Alſo he ſhould be prepared two or three dayes before his purging, by apozemes: and in the intervenient dayes, if he be bound, he muſt have a clyſter, with a good deal of Hiera ſimple, and Honey of roſemary.

This Method of Cure is to be continued, to the thirtieth or fortieth day, or at least till his tremblings do begin to go away. At which time he must wholly forbear Wine, the only abstinence whereof, has cured these Diseases. And let his Drink be, either Barley Water, or ordinary Prisan, in which Cinnamon or Nutmeg are steeped; or a dilute Decoction of Guajacum, which they call a *Bochet*; or Metheglin wherein Sage has been steeped. Let him use Meat of good juyce, and sparingly, sometimes roast, sometimes boil'd, that it may neither altogether dry, nor over-much moisten. When by means of good Diet, and the foresaid Medicaments, his Body shall seem not so much to tremble, and the Humor wil be prepared, and the Antecedent cause evacuated; then it will be good to use baths, wherein Cephalick Roots and Herbs are boiled, or vaporaries thereof compoled, wherein for some daies together, in the morning his body is to be rubbed, til the sweat runs down. And when he is dried, let him be laid in a warm chamber, wherein al his Back-bone must be anointed with this Oyl:

Take *Stœchados, Rosemary flowers, Sage, Marjoram, Primroses, of each one handful*; *Bay-berries, and Juniper berries, of each half an ounce*; *Nutmeg, Ginger, Cloves, Pellitory of Spain, of each three ounces. All being bruised, sprinkle thereupon a pint of Aqua vitæ. Then pour thereon common Oyl a pint and half. Let them boyl together over a gentle fire, till all the water be drunk up. Press out the Oyl, and reserve it for the use aforesaid.* And never leave this course, til his trembling be quite gone.

If haply during the Cure, any suspition of a Distillation shal arise, which may concur to foment the trembling; it, also, must be dried, with Milet, and other fried seeds, and with a fumigation. Or if it prove very troublesom, it may fitly be derived by Errhines, or Nose-liquors.

The *XVII.* Counsel.

Of Trembling and Heavineſs.

A Letter of the Provoſt of Pertica, *propounding the Caſe.*
Translated out of the French.

From the Year, one thousand, five hundred, and fifty, I began to feel a great illneſs, with a trembling of all my Members, especially after meat and sleep. A pain goes from the middle of my Hip, directly to the brain, comprehending all the right side of my back-bone, and reaching into my Arm on the same side; and all my members remain heavy, so as not to be moved, and to desire nothing but sleep, especially after meals. And I feel through the whol habit of my body, a certain fluxion under my skin of waters, which sometimes make a tumult like a swift torrent; and sometimes they run slowly, so that you would say it were only the elevation of a thick vapor, through the Nervous parts, as far as to my Gums. Now my Head is frequently vexed with coldneſs, as also other outward parts of my body: nor can I long stand upright, nor endure to lie still; and the right side of my body seems absolutely fallen away, and pined.

The Answer of Dr. Fernelius, *to the foresaid Letter.*

A Frequent distillation falling upon the Muscles, Nerves, and Membranes, especially on the right side, is one, if not the only cause, of al those Symproms, which are at large declared in your Letter, as of heaviness and pain, which is my your back, Arms, Hands, and right Hip: whereunto is added a weakness of your Body, by reason of the ill Constitution of your Stomach and bowels. For they are obstructed and impure, nor do they conveniently nourish the body; and the Causes are, frustration of Concoction, and the Head especially, but the whol body withal, clouded with Vapors, and wonderfully burthened. In this variety and contrariety of Infirmities, a light and gentle Cure must be undertaken, which may cleanse the Head and Nerves, as little offending the Stomach and Bowels as may be. In the first place therefore the whol body must be purged with this following Syrup, twice a month, which is compounded with respect to al the premises.

Take

Take *a Syrup made of Head, Liver, and Spleen-reſpecting ingredients, with three ounces of Senna, and two drams of Agarick.*

Five or ſix daies together after purging, take faſting, at leaſt two hours before meat, one of the following Lozinges.

Take *pouder of Diamargaritum frigidum, and Electuarium lætificans Galeni, of each half a dram: ſhavings of Ivory and Harts-horn, and choice Cinnamon, of each a ſcruple: white Sugar diſſolved in Roſe water three ounces. Make an Electuary in Tables or Lozinges weighing three drams apeice.*

Alſo theſe dry Remedies following, are to be uſed to purge and ſtrengthen your Head.

Flegm muſt be drawn out at your Noſtrils by the Juyce of Marjoram and Betes, or ſome ſtrong Sneezer.

Your Head muſt be dried and ſtrengthned by the ordinary Bags. And as for the coolneſs and weakneſs of your Nerves, if any thing help you, it muſt be a decoction of Guajacum, uſed at meals inſtead of Wine, in the morning to ſweat upon: which ſweating if your ſtrength wil not bear, at leaſt your whol Body muſt be rubbed, ſoon after ſleep, pretty hard, with hot and dry linnen cloaths; and afterward, with moderate exerciſe, let al your Joynts be long warmed and ſtrengthened. And after you have been purged two or three times by the Syrup, if your Joynts prove not ſufficiently firm and ſtrong, uſe dry Baths, or bath-ſtoves, which have a mighty faculty to dry and ſtrengthen the Nerves. They muſt be made after this mannner.

Take *Juniper berries, Roots of Acorus, and Elecampane, of each two ounces: Sage, Betony, Marjoram, Stœchados, Bayes, Wormwood, Origanum, Calamint, Rue, Chamemel, Melilote, Dill, of each a handfull: Annis-ſeed, Fennel-ſeed, of each half an ounce: Boyl all in water and white Wine. Pour the decoction on a hot Tile, and receive the vapor in an Hogshead, or other covered bathing veſſell til your Body grow hot and the ſweat run out. If you cannot eaſily endure the ſtove: at leaſt lie in your bed in the morning very wel covered, and let hot ſtones extinguiſhed in the foreſaid decoction, be laid to the ſoles of your feet. And thus as you lie, you may gently ſweat, and let the ſweat be wiped off.*

And this courſe muſt be continued, til al your Nerves be ſufficiently firm and ſtrong. As to diet eat but twice a day, and that ſparingly, that your weak bowels may not be overwhelmed. Let your meats be of good juyce, and eaſie of digeſtion, ſuch as al men are wont to commend.

Eat no fiſh, or very little, but no beans or peaſe, or the like. Abſtain alſo from Fruits and herbs that are raw; from all ſuppings and broaths, and from al thoſe things, which overmuch fil and moiſten the Body. Uſe Wine that is neither very vaporous nor ſtrong, but thin and plentfully allaied with pure water, leaſt it trouble the Brain and Nerves. Abſtain from all other drink, and uſe *that* ſoberly and ſparingly. Becauſe nothing does more cool and moiſten the Nerves and oppreſs the whol Body with heavineſs, than overmuch pouring in of drink. You muſt ſleep long after meales, and avoid Noon-day Sleeps.

The *XVIII.* Counſel.

Of pulſation and hiſſing noiſe al the body over, and of Corpulency.

A Senator of *Carnote*, fleſhy and ful of blood, being thirty four years old, having a great Burgomaſters belly ſticking out, as he was lying in his bed, thought he heard a certain hiſſing noiſe, and pulſation as it were, which being evenly ſpread al his body over, did not reſt peculiarly in any one part, nor could be perceived by the touch, but only was heard both by the patient and thoſe that were with him, if they diligently liſtned. Now though this man was not troubled with any pain, nor any horrible ſymptome appeared, yet he was afraid leaſt he ſhould die ſuddenly. This Symptom as we have it declared unto us, is a vehement pulſation of al the Arteries, which is moſt of al, obſcurely heard, about the Head and Temples, as he lies in bed. And it proceeds from plenty of ſpirit and hot blood, which growing hot without putrefaction and working, ſtretches the veins, and fills the Arteries with thin and vaporous

vaporous blood, causing a sence of that same swelling, great and vehement pulsation. An argument hereof is, that if his blood either by intemperate diet, or immoderate exercise, or the fire, be a little heated and stirred; these symptomes of his are exasperated and grow worse. And therefore this is only the effect of abundance of Heat of blood, nor does it argue any more greivous evil to lurk within, nor does it threaten any worse evil, provided timely remedies be applyed. The first and cheifest way of prevention and cure does consist in point of diet. And the sick Gentleman must use very little wine, and that must be such as is weak, and wel allayed, that it may retain very little taft of wine, He must eat boyled flesh rather than roast, and dip both in juice of sour Grapes or Vinegar, or juice of Sorrel, or of Lemmons, or Pumgranates. He may profitably eat Fish, especially if they be of hard and solid substance: yet let him eat thereof, but sparingly and frugally. Sometimes especially on Fish daies, let him sup with barly Cream. Let him shun al salt and peppered meats, or otherwise spiced, and sharp, as Garlick, Onions, Mustard, Water-Cresses. Also vehement exercise of his body must be avoided, and over heating the same, also wrathfullness, and sadness; finally, al disturbances and over much intention of the mind. If by this course of Living, in the space of about twenty daies the trouble shal not cease, the weather being warm he may take some physick: and in the first place give him an emollient Clyster, the day after, purge his body with this medicament, which is also accommodated to the pain in the kidny.

Take *Pulp of Cassia six Drams*, *Diaprune Laxative one dram and half*; *Rhubarb poudered one dram*. *With Sugar make a bolus.*

On the third day, open the inner vein of his left Arm, and take away blood as his strength will beare, to ten or twelve ounces. The following daies, give him in the morning one dose of syrup of Cichory simple, and syrup of vinegar simple: out of a double quantity of water wherin Cichory and Sorrel Roots have been boyled. Moreover, let the prescribed course of life be continued, til that same vhement pulsation be quite gone, and the danger of fullness be avoided. And also nothing wil be more useful for the health of his body, than long to hold that same cooling order of diet prescribed.

The *XIX.* Counsel.

Of a Consumption of the Lungs, for a Citizen of Roan.

THe disease described is the Consumption, caused, not only by a distillation, but through fault of the Lungs, which have been long time apparently oppressed with shortness of breath, and are now so weakned that their proper substance, does not only consume, but corrupt and rot. An argument whereof is, a soft and flegmatick swelling of his foot and thighs. Moreover his now spitting of Quittor and purulent matter, argues the Consumption to be confirmed. And therefore the disease is now become uncurable, nor is there any hope. Howbeit, the life of the Patient must be lengthened as long as by Art is possible, by gentle and debonair Medicaments, which may mitigate the disease without weakening the Patient. And therefore abstain from any further blood-letting. And in case blood happen at length to break out again, it will be better suppressed, by a dram of choyce Rhubarb poudered.

Or if it shal any waies seem fit to purge, it wil be sufficient to give him Cassia Fistula, or an Infusion of Rhubarb. And his spitting must be furthered with Lenitives and Detersives, which do not vehemently open, such as Jujubes, Sebestens, Figs, Raisons, Polypody, Coltsfoor, Pimpinel, Hysop, with good store of Sugar, made up in manner of a Lick-pot. Also Electuarium resumptivum wil be good, and Unguentum resumptivum, wherewith his whol body must be anointed, evening and morning. So also in the beginning of the Spring, he must use Asses Milk, artificially prepared, which must be given him in the morning when his stomach is empty, four hours at least before meat: or if he cannot easily have the use thereof, Barley Cream, and Sugar of Roses, must in like manner be given him at the same hour. I doubt not but the rest of his Diet has been prescribed, according to the Rules of Art. Let him use meat easily to be digested, a little at a time, and often. Least he over-whelm his weak Nature, and encrease Crudities, which are the Cause of the Flegmatick Swelling.

The

The *XX.* Counſel.

The Hiſtory of the Diſeaſe written by Mſr. Crab, *the Kings Phyſitian, to the Phyſitians of* Paris, *for the Lady* De le Aubeſpine, *enclining to a Conſumption.*

THis moſt noble Lady had been now ſix months with child, ſtil ſubject to defluxions from her Head into her Breaſt: whenas after a long ſtay in the Sun, and acrimony of blood contracted by paſſions of mind, ſhe fel into a ſpitting of blood, which was much in quantity, hot, and of a flouriſhing colour, al which ſigns, ſhew, that it came from no other part ſave the Lungs, and rather by opening the mouth of a veſſel, than by breaking the ſame, or fretting it in ſunder, as things going before and following after do perſwade us. Now this ſymptom ceaſing, only by medicaments and thoſe but few, which did abate the fervencie of blood, and furniſhed with an aſtringent and ſoddering faculty, the phyſitian who was with her thought fit to abſtain from blood-letting, and other ſtronger Remedies accomodated to her diſeaſe, til being brought to bed, ſhe might more eaſily beare them through increaſe of ſtrength. But a Feaver ariſing after ſhe was delivered, which after a cholerick and putrid looſneſs, without any other phyſick, ſave an apozem to move her purgations, went away; ſhe complained of a pain in the right ſide of her Cheſt, and how ſhe could not endure to lie on that ſide of her body, with ſhortneſs of breath, and a ſence of weight if ſhe lay on the other ſide. But a few daies after, ſhe, after a little coughing, fel to ſpit blood again, and that frequently; wherefore finding her in good ſtrength, we thought fit to proceed to the cheifeſt and beſt remedies of that diſeaſe. This Method therefore we reſolved exactly to follow. Having clenſed her belly with a gentle Glyſter, out of the inner veine of her right Arme we tooke three ounces of blood. The day after we did let her blood again. And becauſe by both the bleedings thick ſlimy and half putrefied blood was voided, the ſame day, ſome houres after, we drew ſome out of the ſame vein: which Finding to be purer and more ſincere, we thought fit to ſtop it.

After Blood-letting we purged her, having Firſt given her a julep. Now her purgation was exceeding gentle, of a dram and half of Rhubarb in the infuſion, with half a dram thereof in pouder, and half an ounce of ſyrup of dried roſes. After purging we ſet our ſelves to ſtrengthen her brain, and to draw the vapors through the ſutures of the Skul, applying to the coronal ſuture, emplaſtrum ex Ammoniaco, and Pidgeons dung.

In the meane while, we did not neglect the part affected. In the firſt place therefore, we preſcribed a Clyſter, and ſtoppers of blood. And ſuch things as might heal the wound if any were, and that the thin and ſharp defluxion being thickned, might ſtop. Among which kind of Medicaments is the ſolid electuary of Terra Lemnia, and Bole-Armeniack, red Coral and Blood-ſtone, conſerve of roſes and ſyrup of poppy being added, with ſpecies of Diatragacanthum frigidum, rejecting the hot ſpecies of diapenidium as unfit in this Caſe. But that the humor allready in her Lungs, might more eaſily be purged out, preſcribed an attenuating and deterſive Cheſt-ſyrup, which might move ſpittle. Alſo a March pain made of new pine-kernels and almonds with Sugar and roſe water made up with an infuſion of gum tragant, torrel ſeed, plantain ſeed, and porſlain ſeed; which March-pain beſides that it makes one eaſily expectorate, by its aſtringency it likewiſe glues and Sodders. We added that which every body commends, the uſe of Aſſes milk, with pouder of ſugar of Roſes.

So that now we doubt not but that this noble Lady does recover by the uſe of the preſcribed remedies, nor do we fear any miſchance as long as ſhe wil follow good advice, and ſhal not neglect that courſe of diet, which ſhe hath hitherto obſerved. But in caſe by external Injuries, or ſome vehement motion of mind, a ſtrong and loud contentious ſpeaking, or untimely watchings, the diſeaſe ſhal return upon her, we adviſed her to uſe the ſame Remedies. But for prevention of this evil, we account moderate blood-letting and purging with an Infuſion of Rhubarbe, when the Spring enters, and in Autumne, to be the moſt ſpeedy and convenient Remedies in the the world, and we do exceedingly commend the ſame.

The

The Answer of Fernelius.

Hot and fresh-colour'd blood many times by fits brought up with coughing, is indeed rightly judged to come from the Lungs. But because the most noble Lady our Patient, has a soft and tender body and weak Lungs, and has been long time subject to a distillation and cough, it is very much to be feared, that a vein is not only opened, but fretted asunder (for I find no reason to think that it hath been opened by violence) yea, and seeing upon the last voidance from that part, an evident pain arose in her right side, with shortness of breath and a sharp cough, also with a certain pain of heaviness and weight, especially when she lies on the contrary side, unless she had then a true pleurisie, we have great reason to suspect, both that her Lungs are ulcerated, and that there is such a collection of matter as threatens an Impostume. Howbeit the Remedies of Art have been so accurately and diligently applied to these evils, that the sick Gentlewoman seems now to be in a good and safe condition, without any danger of a Relapse: which is to me the best and most acceptable news in the world. And therefore I conceive she ought to persist in the use of these Remedies, by help whereof she has recovered, and especially of the Milk and Barley Cream. But nevertheless, because these kind of maladies are wont to be most dangerous and deceitful, and commonly to lie long hid, under a counterfeit appearance of health, til at one time or other upon some light or no occasion, they gather Head afresh; wary observation must be made, whether any of the old malignity remain in her Breast or no, and whether she is not sometimes vexed with her cough, or troubled with a lingring Feaver, or shortness of breath. For if these things be observed, it may haply seem fit beside her morning milk, and course of diet prescribed, to give her such things as are gently lenitive, and mildly purge and strengthen the Lungs.

The disease before described, brought the Lady de l' Aubespine *to her death. For she was consumed with a lingring Feaver, the pain of her side came again, and spitting of blood, with greater shortness of breath. Her body being dissected, her Lungs were found putrified, cleaving to her Ribs, with sundry Ulcers.*

A Writing of Mr. Fernelius, *when he was to Reason with other Court Physitians, about the Sickness of* Madam de l' Aubespine, *when she came first to this City.*

When she was with child in her sixt Month, without any violence betiding her, without any distillation or foregoing cough, she began of a sudden to bring up from her breast, and spit out blood, with wheezing, but no great straining. At the same time she began also to bleed at the nose, and sometimes the blood would run back into her throat, whereas during this time of her being with child she had not before bled at the nose, though her veins did swel with fulness, and formerly she was alwaies wont to bleed, when she was great. When five daies were over, her spitting of blood stopt and went away, yet a dry cough continued without wheezing or rattling, without any difficulty in breathing in her child-bed, little or no purgations brake forth, which were afterward provoked with Syrup of Hyssop. The fift day after she was brought to bed, a most burning Feaver held her for two daies, by force whereof a light pain was raised in her right side. After this a lingring Feaver held her, scarce discernable, and a settling into her right side. A few daies after, a grievous distillation fel into her right shoulder, and into her shoulder-blade, and into that part of her side, which before had troubled her. Being the third time let blood after a purge: the pain of her shoulder and shoulder-blade, ceased. But it continued in her other side as it does stil. After which she alwaies found it troublesome to lie on her right side, and was short breathed, though she voided no blood. By all which it may appear, that the first eruption of blood, came neither from the breaking nor fretting of a vein, but only a Vein was opened through immoderate plenty of blood. And that was only in the right side of her Lungs, from which she felt blood to drop, when she lay on her right side. After which came the distillation, which falling on her right side, caused that pain; so that there is a conjunction of two diseases, the one in her Lungs, the other in her right side. And besides these diseases, her Liver is also over hot and obstructed, with a light pain and hardness, and her right Kidney is sometimes afflicted with Nephritick pains.

THE

The XXI. Counſel.

Touching ſpitting of blood from the Lungs with a cough. For Mſr. de Baumont *fifty yeares old. Tranſlated from the French,*

THat you may receive ſome eaſe of your ſhortneſs of breath, and that it may be hereafter prevented, leaſt you fal into a Cough and ſpitting of blood, and that in ſo great quantity as lately happened: you muſt uſe al diligence in ſhunning vehement exerciſe, great heat, wrath, and other perturbations of mind. Alſo you muſt abſtain from ſtrong wines, and hot meates, ſalted or ſpiced, and al other occaſions, which may over-ſtir or heat your body. Nor muſt you eat or drink liberally. Moreover four times in a year, when the ſeaſon is moſt convenient and on ſome fitting daies, your body muſt be purged with the underwritten bolus, and it wil be good to take conſerve of roſes frequently, when you are going to bed. But if your ſpitting of blood ſhould happen to returne; it wil be convenient after a gentle lenitive to open the baſilica Vein in your Arme, which is beſt for the fluxion into your ſide. And the day after to drinke a little potion with roſted rhubarbe in it. And frequently to uſe every hour, a familiar opiate ſuch as was long ſince preſcribed for you, til the ſpitting of bood ceaſe. And in the mean ſpace to abſtain from wine, and quench your thirſt, with the Julep of roſes, or with ſyrup of myrtles, or of porſlane.

The Bolus.

Take *Pulp of Caſſia new drawn ſix drams. Rhubarb poudered one dram and half. Electuary of Diatragacanthum frigidum or white ſugar, as much as ſhal ſuffice. Make al into a bolus.*

The Potion.

Take *Rhubarb toaſted one dram and half. Syrup of dryed roſes ſix drams. Plantan water four ounces. Mix them into a potion.*

The Opiate.

Take *Conſerve of dried roſes one ounce. Bole-Armonick three drams. Terra Sigillata two drams; red coral, amber, harts-horn burnt, of each half a dram. Syrup of myrtles as much as ſhal ſuffice. Make al into the forme of an Opiate, or of a Lick-pot.*

Alſo for Prevention, though you void no blood, you muſt often take of this Electuary,

Take *Conſerve of roſes and comfrey, of each half an ounce. Trochiſks of amber and of Terra Sigillata, of each one ſcruple. Red coral, choice pearl, of each half a ſcruple; Sugar of roſes, as much as wil ſuffice. Make al into an Electuary. Let him take a ſpoonful, an hour before meales.*

If blood ſhal breake out again, the uſe of Bole-Armenick, wil be very profitable. And afterwards, when it is ſuppreſſed, your Lungs muſt be ſtrengthened, gently purged, and cleanſed with this following Syrup.

Take *Stoned Raiſons one ounce; Polipody of the oake, ſcraped Liquorin, of each two drams: Colts-Foot, Scabious, pimpinella, Knot-Graſs, of each one handful. Seeds of Marſh-mallowes and of cotton, each one dram. Make a decoction to a pint, in the ſtrained liquor diſſolve nine ounces of white ſugar. Make it into a ſyrup of an indifferent body. Let him uſe it every hour and at all times out of a ſpoon, without any waters. It ſtrengthens and cleanſes the Lungs.*

For another in the same Disease.

Against his thirst, let him use the julep of roses, with four times as much boiled water mingled with it, or Syrup of Juniper, myrtles, and purslane, after the same manner.

Also, *Take Of the powder of Electuarium Diatragacanthi frigidi, one dram and half; Yellow sanders Harts-horn, of each two scruples; Choice rhubarb two drams, white Sugar dissolved in rose water, three ounces and an half; Make all into Lozenges or tables. Let him take one of them, one houre before supper.*

Also, *Pils of Rhubarb are good, and a fumigation when he goes to bed. Likewise Conserve of Comfrey and Roses, each one ounce. Trochisks of bole, half an ounce; Syrup of myrtles as much as shall suffice. Make all into an opiate.*

The XXII. Counsel

For Mr. Sigismund, troubled with extream shortness of breath, called Orthopnæa.

UNderstanding by your Letters (most renowned *Sigismund*) that you earnestly desire the recovery of your health, and that you place great confidence in me to that end; I find my self vehemently allured and provoked, according to my slender Learning and experience in the Art of physick, to endeavour all I can to help you. I account it verily a miserable and sad condition, for a man truly ingenuous in his manners, and of remarkable learning, most apt for employment in the Common-wealth, in the prime of his youth, to be so tormented and insnared by the cruelty of one disease, as that he is thereby taken off from all excellent Employments whatsoever. I have therefore sought out, and devised for you a very easie method of Cure, and a few remedies, which by Gods blessing may deliver you from this grievous bondage, and that sweetly and gently, according to your desire, without any offence, either of your brain or Lungs. The Disease propounded, is that which we cal Orthopnæa, returning at certain seasons, the distances whereof I wish I had been acquainted with under this disease, the Lung-pipes are already somewhat obstructed, with thick and clammy flegm, wherewith the very substance also of the Lungs seemes to be stuffed in some Measure. And as often as any new distillation from your Head fals thereon, it doubles the obstruction, fils the windpipes, stops the breath, and makes very great shortness of wind, which persists so long, til the newly fallen fluxion is either dissipated, or concocted and spit up. There are therfore two principal scopes of the cure: one that the distillation may be driven from the lungs; the other that the lungs may be freed from that wherewith they are already stuffed. To attain the former, our cheif care must be to diminish the matter of the distillation, and to endeavour that hereafter, as little as may be come in the place thereof. Now this may be done, if a thin, Sparing, drying diet be observed, and you eat but twice a day, not of suppings, broaths, and such like liquid meates, but of dry and solid things, most commonly of roast flesh, such as is of good juyce, and easie of digestion. You must abstaine from all fruites, excepting from raisons, figs, prunes, and almons. Let your drink be white wine or thin claret, not too strong nor Vaporous, and sufficiently allayed with water that it may not flie into the Head, and fil the same. Never eate so, as to satisfie your self; drink very exceeding sparingly and oftentimes endure thirst; that by this course of diet, all superabundant humors may be drawn out, and your whole body grow lean, and your head it self, the fountain of this evil, become dry. You must by little and little accompany your self to these rules, wherein the chief force as wel of cureing as preventing the Orthopnæa is placed. It wil be exceedingly conducing to your health, to continue and most punctually to observe the same al your life. Nothing is so grievous and molestful, which custome wil not render easie. And because diet alone, though punctual enough, can hardly draw out al the impurity of a body which has been now a long time crazy, purgation must also sometimes be used; especially at the Beginnings of the four quarters of the year. It may be in the beginning of winter and spring, with pils of Agarick and pils cochy; but about the beginning of Summer and Autumne, by such a like potion as this.

Take

Take *Sage and betony water, and white wine, of each one ounce; infuſe therein choice rhubarb, Agarick trochiſked, of each four ſcruples; in the expreſſed liquour diſſolve diacarthamum two drams; Syrup of Hiſop half an ounce; Make al into a potion; Let him take it in a choſen day and hour.*

If the time of the future fit be certain and fixt, the purge is to be taken eight or ten daies before. Or if peradventure it ſet upon a man on a ſudden; at the very beginning of the fit he muſt be ſtrongly purged, that the matter which flowes in may be rooted out, before it faſten it ſelf into the Lungs, and if one purge cannot do the deed, another muſt alſo be given, til the whol defluxion be rooted up and ſtopped. Every morning your head muſt be dried and rubbed, either with rough Linnen Cloaths, or ſomtimes with ſuch bags as follow.

Take *Aniſeed, Fenel and Cumin ſeed, of each two ounces. Bayberries bruiſed one ounce. Milet one pound. Common ſalt half a pound. Frie them in a frying pan; then put them preſently in a bag, wherewith your Head muſt be rubbed hot.*

After the rubbing of your head, let flegm and ſnevil be every morning drawn out of your noſtrils, and with the vulgar and common medicaments uſed to that end. Somtimes you muſt move ſneezing, that a revulſion to your noſtrils may be made of ſuch humors as are wont to fal into your throat, and Lungs. You muſt uſe moderate recreation, eſpecially in the morning, and before ſupper, or at leaſt, inſtead of exercise, hard and rough frictions of your body are to be uſed. Let afternoons ſleep be avoided, and ſleep but little in the night. Lie never on your back, but only on one ſide that the excrements of your brain, fal not into your throat and wind pipes, but may run to your noſtrils. Shun the Aire when it is moiſt and cold, cloath your head wel in the winter, that it may not feel the Injuries of cold. Alſo your head may be ſmoaked with odoriferous materials, hot, drie, and ſtrengthening, as Nigella Romana, Storax, Benzoin, Ambar and Roſes. Theſe few precepts therefore of regulating your ſelf, muſt be obſerved after your cure, al your life long, that you may not ſo eaſily ſlip into this diſeaſe again, whereunto you have been accuſtomed. And now I come to the proper and peculiar Cure, which by the help of medicaments may remedy the vitious conſtitution of your body. To this Intent you muſt chuſe a time between your fits when being delivered from one, you did not feare to fal immediately into another: and this time of cure ought to be about thirty daies. In the firſt place therefore, the former courſe of life being undertaken and punctually obſerved, your belly muſt be looſned with a Clyſter, of an emollient Decoction, with Hierapicra ſimple, and diaphenicon, each one ounce. Honey of roſes and roſemary, of each one ounce. Oyle of Anis-ſeed three ounces. The day after purge with that potion, which I before deſcribed. After that, the remaining humors muſt be purged, with this Apozem.

Take *Polypody of the Oake, Carthamus ſeeds, Roots of Elecampane and Fennel, Raiſons cleanſed, of each half an ounce. Savin, Betony, Stechados, Hyſſop, Savory, Coltsfoot, Time, of each one handful. Seeds of Annis, Marſh-mallows, and cotton, and of Lycorice, each two drams. Make an apozem for four doſes, clarified and aromatized, with a dram of choice cinnamon. Let him take it twice a day, two hours before meals.*

This Apozem muſt be continued five or ſix daies, and the mean time if your belly be bound, looſen it with a Clyſter. And at laſt purge again, either by a potion, or by pils. Now ſuch a potion as this wil be exceeding good being fitted both for the head and lungs.

Take *Polypody of the Oake, Carthamus ſeed, Elecampane roots, cleanſed raiſons, Senna, of each three drams. Make a decoction for one doſe, in the ſtrained liquor infuſe agrick trochisked one dram and half. In the expreſſion diſſolve diaphenicon two drams. Syrup of hyſſop half an ounce. Make it into a potion, take it faſting, four hours before meat.*

When by theſe medicaments, and a ſparing courſe of diet, he ſhal appear ſufficiently emptied; remedies proper to the head may be then ſeaſonably applied. Being therefore polled to the skin, every morning and an hour before ſupper, it muſt be rubbed with ſuch bags as I formerly deſcribed exceeding hot, and they muſt be endured til your whol head feel hot: and then if it may not ſeem troubleſom, it wil be very good for you to uſe the decoction of Guajacum for eight daies. And that is to be took in the morning, and three hours before ſupper; and when by force thereof you find your ſelf to ſweat, then the bags very hot may moſt ſeaſonably be applied to your Head. Your ſweat being wiped off, before you take meat, let the ſnevil and theume be drawn out of your head after this manner.

Take *Sage, Betony, Marjoram green, of each an handful; Orice root an ounce; beat them together, and at last pour on white Wine and Hydromel of each two ounces.* Squeeze out the Juyce, snuf it up into your Nostrils, having first blowed your Nose, and if this shall not draw enough, make use of this more potent Errhine following.

Cut two peices of the root of Bindweed like two plugs or stopples, two fingers broad in length, steep them in Aqua vitæ, and put them into your Nostrils, first into the right, and then into the left, and suffer them there to abide til the Rheume run down abundantly on either side.

Also sneezing may likewise be provoked, by the violent motion whereof, the excrements of your brain may be derived into your Nostrils, and all the evacuation of your Head drawn that way. To which intent neither Cupping-glasses nor Apophlegmatisms wil much avail: for the former do very little purge the Brain, and the use of the latter is not very safe, because they bring the Rheume into the Throat, from whence it should rather be revelled. When for the space of about eight daies your Brain shall be sufficiently purged, shave your Head, and lay on this plaister, which powerfully stops and dissipates all fluxions.

Take *fat Figs and sharp Leven, of each half a pound; seeds of Agnus Castus, and Water-cresses bruised, of each one ounce; Mustard seed bruised two ounces; of the plaister of Mucilages, four ounces: soften and incorporate them, adding Oleum irinum as much as shall suffice. Spread hereof a plaister upon leather and lay it all over your Head, and let it be renewed every morning.*

It will by little and little draw al the moisture out of your Head, which neither Cantharides applied to the Hinder-head, nor an Issue made in the fore part of the Head at the lunure, nor letting blood in the Fore-head Vein, can effect. While you wear this plaister, the Cure may be directed to the latter scope or Intention, and the stoppage of your Lungs opened by this Apozeme.

Take *roots of Elecampane, Polipody of the Oak, Carthamus seeds, cleansed Raisons, of each half an ounce; Hyssop, Savory, Time, of each one handful; Senna one dram and half. Make a decoction to half a pint, adding towards the End Agarick trochicked half an ounce: Orice root of Florence three drams. In the strained liquor dissolve white Sugar, the best honey, of each one ounce. Make an Apozeme of three doses. Let him take it every other day, four hours before dinner.*

When you have tooke the Apozeme, take off the Plaister, and keep your Head very warm, and let the rest of the Cure consist in the use of those things which smooth and comfort the Breast and Lungs: such as is this Cough-syrup following.

Take *Jujubees, Sebestens, fat Figs, five of each: Polipody of the Oak, Carthamus seeds, Raisons stoned, Elecampane roote, of each half an ounce: Origanum, Calamint, Hyssop, Savory, Time, of each one handful: Seeds of Marsh-mallows and cotton, of each three drams. Make a decoction in Hydromel to a pint. Make a Syrup perfectly boiled, clarified, and aromatized with Guajacum and Florentine orice Root, of each two drams. Use it often in a spoon, licking, and swallowing it down by little and little.*

For the same intent and purpose, this following Wine is excellently good, and profitable, which being taken in the morning, does also strengthen all the faculties of the body.

Take *the best white Wine, Hydromel perfectly boiled, of each one pound: Infuse therein, Elecampane root, and Polipody of the Oak cut smal, of each two drams: Let them so stand, and after twenty four hours, let him take every day four or five ounces, at least three hours before Dinner.*

This Course of Cure, though easie, nor intangled with difficult and burthensome Medicaments, wil yet be sufficient to chase away this stubborn Disease. But if nevertheless any shadow thereof shal happen to return, at the very beginning, you must strongly purge with the foresaid Medicaments, and in the very fit the bags must be applyed very hot to your Head, and lick Oximel Squiliticum, and sometimes a little Aqua Vitæ: for this readily helps, especially if your purge have brought away good store of watry and serous excrements. And because stubborn and long lasting maladies, can be hardly universally and suddenly rooted up, if any thing shal remain after the Cure, let it be by little and little taken away, with the good Diet before prescribed, and such purgations as are accommodated to the several seasons of the year. These things verily wil hinder you from easily relapsing into your former Infirmities, as commonly it happens.

THE

The *XXIII.* Counsel.

Touching the Asthma, *or Tisick, for a Spaniard of* Bridges.

This old *Asthma*, as it is represented to me, proceeds from two causes; the one is a pertinacious obstruction of the Lungs and Wind-pipes, caused by degrees through flowing in of Rheum, which is now so hardened, that the greatest part thereof resembles hail or pretty hard cheese; another Cause is a distillation from the Brain, falling plentifully at certain periods upon the Lungs, by which the straitness of the Lungs is for the most part obstructed, and then respiration is rendred exceeding difficult, and a true Asthma, or it may be an Orthopnæa happens, which continues two or three daies, til a portion of the distillation be voided by cough and spitting. The Prevention therefore of the Fit, and the Cure of the whol Disease consists in these things following. The third or fourth day preceding the suspected Fit, we must purge him with a good strong purge, which may evacuate all the humor which causes the fluxion out of the Brain, and other parts; such as this following.

Take *Sage and Colts-foot Water, and white Wine, of each one ounce. Infuse therein choice Rhubarb four scruples: Agarick trochisked one dram, Cinnamon half a dram, in the liquor squeezed out, dissolve a dram, or two drams of diaphenicon, and half an ounce of Syrup of Hysop. Make all into a Potion, give it on a day and hour convenient.*

The day following, derive the excrements of the Brain through the Nostrils, with this Errhine, or Nose-liquor.

Take *Betony, Sage, Marjoram, of each one ounce: Orice root half an ounce. Beat all together. Then pour thereon four ounces of white Wine, squeeze out the juyce, and make an Errhine, or Caput-purgium.*

Let him use it in the morning and before supper, and let him so accustom himself, to derive the flegm of his Brain, through his Nostrils by frequent and continual errhines. To bring it by Apophlegmatisms through his palate is not safe, because that way is near to his Throat, by which the fluxion and distillation fals into the Lungs. Nor can Setons, so called, or Ulcers raised in any part, though they flow never so long, bring any useful derivation (for so I have known many deluded) but the most effectual, and most profitable one, is that which is made the natural way, and according to the custom of Nature, by the nostrils. At the same time, his Head being also shaven, or close shorn, must dayly be rubbed with such things as dry, and dissipate cold excrements, and corroborate the brain it self, that it may not hereafter breed so many excrements.

Now it may be done after this manner:

Take *Sage, Betony, Stœchados, Rosemary flowers, of each one handfull: Juniper berries two ounces: Seeds of Annis, Cummin, bay-berries bruised, of each an ounce: Millet one pound: Common Salt half a pound. Fry all in a frying pan, and then put them in a bag, which must every morning be applied hot to his Head.*

If after three or four daies, the signs of a distillation shal appear, or the sick Person shal not be sufficiently purged, give him the same purge again. And if neither by these Remedies, the fit can be kept off, but that it wil return as formerly, or more weak; give him in the Fit it self Syrup of Hysop, or Oxymel of Squils, or Conserve of Elecampane. Anoint his Breast with Oyl of Lillies, of sweet Almonds, and Dil, with a Mucilage of Fœnugreek, extracted in Scabious water. And let his Head be rubbed, and his neck, with the bags prescribed, very hot. Give him very sharp Clysters, with a thin and attenuating Diet. We conceive 'tis best for him to abstain hereafter from blood-letting; for though it sometimes help the Symptome, yet it is a very great Enemy to the Cause, and the cold distillation. These therefore are the chief Remedies, wherewith we help the Head, as being the Fountain that sends forth the Humor. And that the other Cause of the evil may be removed, which is rooted in the Lungs; when the Patient shal be free from his Fit, let him mollifie the thick flegm of his Lungs, and cut, and scour the same away, with this Syrup:

Take

Take *Marsh-mallows, Elecampane, Polipodie of the Oak, Carthamus seeds, Raisons stoned, of each half an ounce. Jujubes, Sebestens, fat figs, of each five in number. Hyssop, Savory, Origanum, Calamint, Pimpinel, Coltsfoot, Maiden hair, Scabious, of each one handful; Seeds of Marsh-mallows, Mallows, Cotton, Lycoris shaved, of each two drams: boyl them al to fifteen Ounces. In the strained liquor dissolve fifteen ounces of white sugar, make a syrup perfectly boyled. Let him take it every hour out of a spoon in manner of a lick pot without waters.*

The humors being prepared, let him every fift or sixt day, gently purge them forth, with this other syrup.

Take *of the decoction of the foresaid syrup, fifteen ounces; wherein infuse Senna, Agrick, each three ounces; white Ginger one dram. Orice roots of Florence, half an Ounce. Then Boyl them a little and strain out the Liquor, wherein dissolve fifteen ounces of white sugar, and make al into a syrup perfectly boyled. Let him take two ounces for a dose in Barley water.*

Also during the whol time of cure he must keep a convenient diet, wherein al such things must be avoided as breed a thick juice, as oxe flesh and swines flesh: the feet and remote parts of animals, and in a manner al Fishes and Cheese. Al windy things, as Beans and Pease, much use of of herbs, crude fruits, such especially as wil not keep, such things which treasure up watery humors, and the matter of the distillation, as cheifly immoderate drinking, much and frequent supping; so that by al means the body may be made dry and less excrementitious. He must therefore use fleshes of good juice, and they roasted, rather than boild: must drink very sparingly, and abstain from water, because it breeds crudities and cold humors, and fastens the humors which are setled in the lungs and other parts; he must resume the use of wine which he had omitted, and use that sort which is least vaporous, and does not trouble the head, and allay it wel with water. Other things which may be desired as to point of diet, may easily be collected, from what has been said, which must al encline rather to heat than to cold, unless there be great suspition of a hot Liver. When the patient shal have diligently continued in the use of what has been prescribed for forty or sixty daies together, and rid away the grosser part of the morbifick matter; that the remaining root may be quite plucked up, it wil be very profitable to put him upon a diet drink of Lignum Sanctum, but let it be made after this manner.

Take *Shavings of Guajacum or Lignum Sanctum half a pound. Bark of the same two ounces. Infuse them twenty four hours in six pints of water, then make a decoction to two pints, adding towards the end Betony, Sage, Marjorom, Stœchados, of each one handful. Polipodie of the Oak, Raisons stoned, of each half an ounce. Straine out the liquor. Let him take five ounces for a dose blood-warm, at five a clock in the morning, and at four in the afternoon, wel covered in his bed: and let him eat three hours after.*

Also, Take *Shavings of Guajacum half a pound, Infuse them twelve hours in ten pints of water. Then make a decoction to five pounds; strain out the Liquor, let him use it at his meals, and when he is thirsty, instead of wine. When he shal use this course of diet, he must be purged every fift or sixt day, with the syrup aforesaid, and that day abstain from the foresaid drink. Also as he lies in bed, he must have the hot bagg applied to his head, that he may procure Heat if not sweat in that part. Also he must frequently use the Nose-liquors or Errhines.*

The *XXIV.* Councel.

Of the Cough.

THis frequent and molestful Cough, which brings up thick putrid, stinking, and oftentimes bloody matter, and is attended by a non-nutrition and falling away of the body, argues a grievous disease of the Lungs, viz. either an impostume, or an ulcer, which brings a man to a true phthisis or Consumption of the Lungs; in which respect, the Issue of this disease, is not only doubtful, but ful of feare and danger, which can be by no Art avoided. Seeing, he has been divers times let blood, I conceive 'tis best to abstain from phleborotomy hereafter

after, leaſt his languiſhing ſtrength be too much abated. When his ſpitting of blood ſhal prove more immoderate than ordinary, it muſt be ſtayed by a potion, of four ſcruples of choice Rhubarb, half an ounce of ſyrup of dried roſes, with three ounces of Lambes-tongue-plantaine water: and the ſaid potion wil be much more effectual if the Rhubarb be toſted. Other aſtringents of Bole Armeniac, and Coral, and Bloodſtone, and ſuch like, are not now uſeful; but al endeavor muſt be uſed, that his ſpittle and flegm may come up moſt eaſily, with ſyrups and other Cough-medicines, very ſmooth and gentle, and with meates and al matter of diet, of like nature. For al ſharp, ſalt, biting things, are to be avoided, and whatever lie tickling, or through its acrimonious quality may exaſperate his Cough: alſo wrathfulneſs, loud ſpeaking and outcries, with immoderate exercile, becauſe theſe are the things which tear aſunde the Lungs, and rub open the ulcer.

The XXV. Counſel.

Of the Palpitation of the Heart.

THis palpiration of the Heart (as it is largely, plainly, and faithfully deſcribed) ſprings not from over great ſtore of Blood; not from a watry humor preternaturally ſhut up in the Pericardium or Heart bag, not from any ſmal bunch growing thereto, or any other of thoſe cauſes celebrated by the Ancients, which preſs the Heart by their weight; but from a diſeaſe in the left hypochondrium, out of which I have for the moſt part perceived this diſeaſe to proceed. For there lies both the ſpleen, and the ſweet-bread under the bottom of the ſtomach, and other neighboring parts are ful of naughty humors, not ſimply melancholick, which is as it were the dreggs of the blood, but rather black cholerick; which have grown together by little and little; of yellow choler aduſt, and caſt into thoſe parts: which as often as by Anger, Exerciſe, ſtrong wine, or hot meats, it comes to be ſtirred, it breaths out an ugly and melancholick ſpirit, which entering into the Arteries (of which there are many al the ſpleen over) it eaſily creeps into the neighbouring Heart. The heart being vexed and provoked by the malignity thereof, endeavors by palpitation to caſt from it ſelf that which is hurtful and troubleſom, even as the brain does in the falling-ſickneſs. Part of the vapor being carried higher into the Brain, breeds watchings, dreams, frightments with Hobgoblins, ful of feare and ſorrow, as if there were ſome admixture of Melancholy: and the truth is, this diſeaſe, which is the original of al the evil which the patient complains of, is very like that which cauſes hypochondriacal melancholy. For Crudity of ſtomach, ſour belchings, abundance of winds breaking out above and beneath, rumblings of the belly, and ſuch like ſymptoms, which do moſt of al ſhew themſelves in the patient when he eates any hot meats, are in no wiſe cauſed by a primary fault in his ſtomach; but by conſent, and through plenty of black choler aboundidg in the left hypochondrium, and about the ſtomach; in which parts, peradventure a man may feel, ſomwhat contracted or bent hard, painful, or pulſative. Hence alſo did precede that ſame great extenuation of body, long feaver, lingring, continual, and like an Hectick. But the ſureſt ſigne of al is, that al the ſymptomes grow milder and the patient is much bettered by medicaments purging burnt choler, by looſneſſes, and breaking out of the Hemorrhoides. That therefore by imitation of theſe the reſt of the cure may be compleated, I advize that he uſe frequent and gentle purges, ſuch as the ſyrup now preſcribed. To which nevertheleſs ſomtimes a dram of Rhubarb may be mixed: and that ſame purgation, which he is ordered to take twice a week, wil be more effectual and profitable if he ſhal take it two dayes together one after another; if his ſtrength permit, he may take it oftener; but if not, when he is coſtive let him at leaſt uſe a lenitive clyſter. The day after his purgation, four or five hours before meat, you muſt give him one dram of old Mithridate, mingled with a like portion of conſerve of Bugloſs. And that the Evacuation of the hurtful humor may proceed the better, it wil be good (eſpecially if any ſuch thing ſhal be found there as aforeſaid) to foment the left hypochondrium, every morning, and perhaps before ſupper alſo, with this preparatory decoction.

Take *Roots of Althea, Lillies, Fennel, Capars, of each one ounce. Mallows, Violets, Ceterach, Wormwood, Mints, Melilote, Chamemel, Dil-tops, each one handful. Seeds of Anis, Line, Fenugreek, each half-an ounce. Cyperus, Calamus aromaticus, each two drams. Make of al a little bag; boyl it in a ſufficient quantity of water, wherein*

let

let a new and ſoft ſponge be ſteeped, to foment his left hypochondrium. If the place being wiped be afterward ſmeared with this following Liniment, it wil alſo not a little help.

Take *Oyl of Violets, Lillies, and Chamomel, waſht in Vinegar, of each half an ounce, Mucilage of Fleawort ſeed, and Fenugreek extract in Bugloſs water, one ounce. Wax a little quantity, make al into a Liniment.*

Moreover he muſt continue that Electuary, which he has already happily experimented, to mollify the ſymptomes of choler; and that only on thoſe daies, in which he neither takes ſyrup nor mithridate. And for the ſame purpoſe, and to quench his thirſt (if he have any) this ſyrup may be made, which wil alſo be exceeding good, as often as either ſwouning, or palpitation of Heart troubles him. Now it muſt be mingled with three or four times ſo much diſtilled water.

Take *Juices of Bugloſs, Borrage, and Sorrel, of Lemmons and Pomgranates, of each three ounces; white ſugar ſixteen ounces. Make a ſyrup, boyled to an indifferent height, over a gentle fire, and aromatized with two drams of yellow ſaunders.*

As to matter of diet, the patient muſt be warned, to be very ſpare in the uſe of wine, which muſt be neither vaporous nor generous, and allaied with much water wherein Bugloſs flowers have been ſteeped. He muſt wholly abſtain from things ſalted, peppered, muſtard, garlick, Onions, and from al hot meat: alſo from Milk and al things made thereof, and what ever meats are ſoon corrupted. Suppings are eſpecially good of the broath of good juiced fleſh, which muſt be altered with Bugloſs, Borrage, Lettice and Sorrel. He ſhal ſometimes ſup with Almond milk made of barley creame, and tweened with ſugar without drinking any wine before or after. For by this means the Humors become mild and gentle, and good juyce comes in place.

The *XXVI* Counſel.

Nummedneſs or Inſenſibility of the Stomach.

THe cheif ſymptomes whereof this patient complains, are weakneſs of body, and inſenſibilty of ſtomach. Moreover, this weakneſs muſt needs have its cauſe in ſome principal bowel: and that ſame bowel wherein that cauſe quarters, is the ſtomach, by fault whereof, the body is not nouriſhed. For that ſame nummedneſs or Inſenſibility, whereby the goodneſs and comfortableneſs of the meat is not perceived, ſhews that the ſtomach is grievouſly diſordered; and that either by thick, clammy and vicious flegm, ſticking to thoſe inner coates or from a cold diſtemper, whereby the ſence thereof is laid aſleep as it were and dulled, and the latter opinion is the more probable. For when as the ſtomach is ſcoured many times with accommodated medicaments, and perfectly cleanſed, and yet its natural ſence is not reſtored, but the ſame diſpoſition remains, and preſently the ſame plenty of flegmatick humors grow there again, it muſt of neceſſity be concluded, that it is benummed, by a cold diſtemper; by which the greateſt part even of good meat, is turned into a clammy, roaping, and very crude humor.

The Cure.

Let his diet be hot and dry, wherein let him abſtain from ſuppings, and al boyled and moiſt meats and barly broaths; yea and from Gellies too; alſo from al fruits, excepting Raiſons of the Sun. Let him uſe the fleſh of little birds, Partridges, and Capons cut into bits, out of a preſerve or ſawce which has a little cinnamon and nutmeg, and let al be roaſted. And if he cannot bear theſe ſolid meats, let him take the juice ſqueezed out of roaſted Capons. Let his wine be ſtrong, that it may warm his ſtomach. Let him uſe no other purging medicament but aloes; and of that let him take half a dram with ſyrup of wormwood, reduced into three pils, an houre before meat, twice a week. In the daies between, let him take a clyſter, which beſides other things, has ſix drams of Hiera ſimple. Alſo on ſuch daies as he ſhal not uſe his pils, let him take the quantity of a nutmeg of green ginger, in the morning, and an hour before ſupper.

Item

Item. Take *Wormwood, Mints, Red Roſes, of each one handfull: Calamus Aromaticus, Cyperus, and Ceterach, of each two drams. Boyl them in water, adding in concluſion half ſo much white Wine.*

Foment his Stomach herewith, morning and evening with a new Spunge. Alſo noint the Region of his Stomach with Oyl ot Nutmegs: and then apply a convenient Plaiſter. And if theſe things ſhal not do the deed, apply to the Region of his Stomach, a cloth dipt in ſpirit of Wine, and heated: for that is judged the moſt excellent Medicament in a Nummedneſs and Palſey.

The *XXVII.* Counſel.

Of a Windy pain in the Stomach.

THis vehement pain of the Stomach coming by fits, proceeds from much wind, which when the pain is going away, does wont to break out with belchings. Now crudity ingenders this wind, which the Stomach plentifully gathers in time, and which ſomtimes it caſts out by vomit. But the weakneſs of the Stomach alone, is not the total cauſe thereof. But the Cauſe is to be ſought higher in the Liver, for it is both wholly diſtempered, and much obſtructed, and has a Vein broken or eaten aſunder, out of which blood came in times paſt, and not many daies ſince, and was voided by vomit. By which Cauſes al digeſtion is corrupted, and many Diſeaſes uſually threatned to the Stomach and whol body. But this Diſeaſe, if it be not diligently cured, is the fore-runner of a Dropſie, or Cachexy, or ſome more grievous Diſeaſe. Many Remedies may, truly, be propounded againſt Crudity, which nevertheleſs I dare not allow in this Caſe for fear of hurting the Liver. For neither ſtrong Openers, nor Deterſives, nor Medicaments of Hiera, or of Aloes, are fitting in this caſe, becauſe they grate upon the Veins, and open their Mouths; out of which afterwards the blood iſſues. Therefore, I conceive no Medicament ſafer than Rhubarb, which purges both crude flegm and choler, opens Obſtructions, and ſtops the blood, if every third or fourth day, half a dram, or two ſcruples thereof be given, reduced into moſt fine pouder, in white Wine, or Plantane Water: or in form of Pils two hours before meat. No purgation wil be found ſafer, and more efficacious for to prevent the pain. It wil alſo ſomtimes be good to ſoften his belly with a Clyſter. Alſo this following Electuary, wil wonderfully ſtrengthen the Stomach, and the good digeſtion of the Liver.

Take *Red Roſes, yellow Sanders, Cinnamon of the beſt, of each four ſcruples: Choice Pearls, Red Coral, Harts-horn, of each one ſcruple: Sugar diſſolved in Roſe water, four ounces. Make all into Lozenges, weighing two drams apiece.* Let him take one in the morning, another in the evening before Supper.

If peradventure his pains ſhal return more violent, they muſt be aſſwaged with a Fomentation of Roſes, Balauſtians, Mints, Wormwood, Chamomel, and Annis ſeed, boiled in Water and white wine. Other Medicaments muſt not be uſed, unleſs great neceſſity require, for fear of thoſe things formerly expreſſed. Among other things pertaining to his courſe of Life, let him ſhun labor and immoderate Exerciſe, whether by running or hard riding; let him ſhun baths, liberal and over much eating, and drinking of wine: alſo al meats very hot and biting.

The *XXVIII.* Counſel.

Touching pain of the Stomach, for Mſr. De Lauzun.

THat Symptome which moſt of al troubles the Patient, is a long laſting pain of the Stomach, more frequent and tedious in Summer than in winter. Searching out the Cauſe hereof, beſides thoſe things, which I am informed as touching the ſigns, I obſerved with my hand a mighty hardneſs, ſpread out from the bottom of the Stomach to both Hypochondria. Suſpecting this to be the cauſe of the pain, I thought good to try what matter it was that cauſed this tumor: and having given, after a Clyſter, a Medicament only of Rhubarb, the ſtools

came away firſt thick, reſembling pitch; then like diſſolved Caſſia; afterwards red, very like to thick and dreggy blood: which when they had continued of their own accord, two or three daies, it was by the Judgment of al concluded, that they were not melancholick, but bloody dejections proceeding from ſcorched and burnt blood, which eating aſunder, or opening a Vein, was fallen into the hollow part of the Liver, and the Pancre. or Sweet-bread. This blood congealing without the Veins, and putrefying, has cauſed both the tumor and the pain, the fainting Fits, and the lingring Feaver, and other Symptoms. Nor verily, can I after diligent Inquiſition, find any other cauſe of theſe pains and ſymptomes. That ſame black and burnt blood being voided, the pains abate by little and little, and the Gentleman ſeemed without pain, above twenty or thirty daies. But happening to exerciſe himſelf more vehemently than ordinary, and to grow extream angry, ſoon after he began to be vexed with new pains, like the former. And then giving him another Medicament to purge, the like black Stools came away, reſembling burnt blood, which ceaſing, his pains ceaſed likewiſe. Hence the Cauſe of the pain was evidently known, and it was apparent, that blood came by little and little out of ſome Vein, eſpecially when the Patient was heated, or fel into any vehement perturbations of body and mind; which being gathered together into ſome certain place, and clottering and putrefying, by its malignant ſubſtance and vapor, it cauſed al theſe Symptoms; to which cauſe alſo ſtore of winds is added, being ſhed forth into ſundry parts of the body. This Diſeaſe, if it be not timely cured, threatens ſudden death, or the Dropſie. The beſt way of prevention is, for the Gentleman to abſtain from al thoſe things, which make the blood hot or thin, or which violently move the ſame, or by any means make it break out of the Veins. Such are, Vehement and unſeaſonable exerciſe of the body, anger, wrath, fear, and other diſturbances of the mind: thin and ſtrong wine, muſtard, ſalt things, and al things which are peppered, and al Sawces made thereof. Alſo heating the body, either by extream heat of weather, or by the fire, or baths, or by any great commotion. He muſt therefore abſtain altogether from al theſe things, that very little or no blood may hereafter be ſhed out of the veins. But if al this wil not ſerve to prevent the Diſeaſe, ſo that ſome Rudiments of the Swelling and pain may hereafter appear, as it were in a ſet courſe or period of time; then al ſpeedy help muſt be applied: Firſt with an Emolient Clyſter, and then with a purge of Rhubarb only, or ſometimes Senna added thereto. Let him abſtain from Agarick, and eſpecially from aloes, or Hiera Picra, that they may not open the mouths of the Veins. To which Remedies if the Diſeaſe give not way, a Vein muſt be opened in the inmoſt part of his Arm, and that for revulſions ſake, yea, and though the Diſeaſe ſhould not trouble him, it would be good, twice every year to open a Vein, at the beginning of the ſpring and Autumne, to abate the boyling fervency of the blood. To the ſame purpoſe alſo thoſe Syrups are good which we have preſcribed, of the juyces of Endive, plantane, Knot-graſs, Roſes, Sorrel, and ſour Grapes: or if a more effectual ſtopping of blood be requiſite, give him that pouder which I preſcribed in form of an Electuary, and theſe things are good to reſiſt the cauſe. But the grievouſneſs of the pain we muſt leniſie and aſſwage with a Clyſter, which wil draw away the winds, which I know are ſomtimes mingled with the principal Diſeaſe. Sometimes we muſt foment his ſtomach with ſuch things, which both ſtrengthen and expel wind; and ſomtimes anoint it with an Oyntment of the ſame faculty. The matter or Compoſition whereof, I ſhal not at preſent ſet down, becauſe it is by it ſelf largely elſewhere declared.

The

The XXIX. Counſel.

Concerning a Feaver, with grievous Symptomes for the Counteſs of Ales.

A Letter of Her Phyſitian in ordinary.

I Hear (moſt learned Sirs) that the noble Counteſs of *Ales*, being troubled with a vehement and long Diſeaſe, was Cured by your care and diligence. Now the Diſeaſe was a continual Feaver, which growing ſomwhat gentler on the thirtieth day, became afterwards more violent, with unquietneſs, watchings, looſneſs, raving, ſhortneſs of breath, want of appetite, and thirſt, in a thin body, which you did not only overcome, but the whol conſtitution of her body, was made much better than it had been before her ſickneſs. For her ſtomach had ſwelled two years before with winds, and with a certain wheyiſh moiſture, diſtending the coats thereof, which brought a Diſeaſe, by fits very much reſembling the Palpitation of the Heart. Her Womb was grown cold and hard, and her hope of Iſſue very little; but with juleps, and gentle Medicaments, pouders, fomentations, liniments, as ſetting al right again within, you have ſo ordered, the matter, that her womb preſently conceived. And I doubt not but ſhe might have been an happy Mother of a perfect Iſſue, if ſhe had kept her ſelf quiet, and ſtudied by a more plentiful kind of diet to encreaſe and reſtore her ſtrength. But, ſhe being more intent to certain controverſies ſprung up about her eſtate, than mindful either of her ſelf or her Child; ſhe fel into that Charybdis which *Hippocrates*, has preſaged to thin bodied women with Child. *Whatſoever Women, quoth he, preternaturally Extenuated do conceive with Child, they ſuffer abortion before they can recover their wonted Fleſh.* For it was in the ſixt month after her Conception, when reſolving to return home, ſhe travelled every day twenty miles, til ſhe was received into her Siſters Houſe at *Albigniac*. In which place, preſently, either ſmitten with the Heat of the Sun, or of the Journey, or wearyed with the ſhaking of her Horſelitter; ſhe began to loath al kind of meat, to vomit up what ſhe had eaten, to be vexed with a pain in her kidneys and hips, and to be frighted with fear of an Abortion. Al which being by our aſſiſtance allaied, ſhe fel again into a continual Tertian ague: the Exacerbation whereof every third day, did laſt above twelve hours. On the ſixt day, being frighted with the vehemency of the Symptoms, which afflicted her in the Exacerbation, we took away three ounces of blood, after which al Symptoms were better and milder: but ſhe voided her Child on the ſeventh day, with three little round bals Crooked beneath, as big as a mans fiſt. Hereupon the continual Tertian turned into an Intermittent; which again ſome daies after became a double Tertian, for the cure whereof, after light purgations, we took away four ounces of blood. At length I obſerved a ſwelling beneath the Skin of her Legs and Face: yea, and when we ſaid that her belly was alſo ſwelled, the ſick Lady told us, that ſhe had ſuffered abortion two years before, and that ſhe had the ſame Symptoms thereupon. The ſwelling encreaſed by degrees. Alſo a looſneſs followed the ſame. At laſt the looſneſs being ſtopt, there remained a Tranſparent Tumor which would ſound like a drum; and therefore I am very much afraid, leaſt her ſtrength ſuddainly failing, ſhe chance to drop away.

The Anſwer of Mſr. Fernelius, *and Mſr.* Du Mouceau.

Seeing (moſt learned Sir) the moſt illuſtrious Counteſs of *Ales* was a little while ſince afflicted with many and moſt grievous maladies, and now having ſuffered abortion, and overcome ſo Manifold a feaver, and her looſneſs being ſtopped, and other Symptomes repreſſed, there ſeems now to remain only a ſuſpition of the Dropſie: if her ſtrength fail not, we hardly think ſhe is in ſo much danger of death. For ſhe has been long ago ſubject to this Diſeaſe, from which ſhe has been delivered ſomtimes without any help only by the benefit of Nature; and other whiles by the directions of Art and ſome ſlight Medicaments. We conceive, her womb is not the cauſe of the ſwelling, nor that the light Errors of her Childing

did give begining to ſo grievous a Diſeaſe: but the faults chiefly of the Liver, and then of the Spleen. For in thoſe bowels we long ago obſerved hard Tumors, that reſiſted the Touch of ones hand, which our Medicines had not perfectly cured, at what time ſhe conceived with Child: and it is alſo credible, that in the time of her being with child, they did not a little encreaſe, and being by degrees augmented and filled with Humors, they were the cauſe both of thoſe various Feavers, and of this Dropſie. And this truly the pain of her right Hypochondricum does conſtantly ſhew, which we hear to be ſo grievous, that ſhe cannot endure the leaſt touch of a finger. And therefore we conceive that in the firſt place al the Cure is to be directed to this bowel, and that gently, and by degrees, that not the leaſt violence may be offered to her natural ſtrength. For theſe bowels being opened, and their Diſeaſes cured, we hope al the Tumor of her Belly wil be abated. And becauſe you being moſt expert in practice, cannot be ignorant of the kinds of Remedies, wherewith the premiſes may be accompliſhed, yet we have preſcribed certain forms to the Apothecary, which he may alter by your direction as you ſhal judg the Nature of the Diſeaſe, and patients ſtrength do require.

Take *Endive Water, three ounces; White Wine, one ounce and an half. Infuſe therein choice Rhubarb, half an ounce; choice Cinnamon, two drams; In the expreſſion diſſolve Syrup of the juyce of Cichory, half a pound. Let her take it at four times, every third or fourth day a doſe.*

Take *of the Electuary Trionſantalon, the Rhubarb being encreaſed fourfold, two ounces. Let her take thereof ſomtime, inſtead of the former Syrup.* Item,

Take *Ivory, one dram; pouder of the Electuary of Cubebs, half a dram; of Trionſantalon, Diarbodon Abbatis, and Diamargaritum Frigidum, each one ſcruple. White Sugar diſſolved in wormwood water, three ounces. Make al into Lozenges weighing three drams apiece. Let her uſe them in the intermediate daies.*

The XXX. Counſel.

Of a Diſtillation and the Looſneſs of the Peritonæum, complicated with ſundry Diſeaſes; for a Senator of Burdeaux.

Diſeaſes quite different and disjoyned one from another, are met in a body long time ill diſpoſed. One is a diſtillation from a cold and Excrementitious head, ſomtimes into the Jaw-bones, the Neck, and Shoulder-blades: otherwhiles into the Lungs, and lower parts, with a cough and ſhortneſs of breath, which portends a Tiſſick. Another is a Nephritick pain, vexing by fits, proceeding from gravel or a ſmal ſtone; although at preſent I ſee no ſign of a ſtone bred, & ſticking in the left kidney, which either alters and twitches the kidney, or foreſhewes Nephritick pains at hand. The third Diſeaſe is an over great looſneſs of the Peritonæum, in the right groin, or a tearing the ſame in ſunder by force of Coughing, which threatens a Rupture of the Guts. That evil habit of body, which you gather from its ſwelling, and dul color, has its original from the Impurity and obſtruction of the Liver and Spleen.

Now Diſeaſes ſo variouſly implicated, cannot be cured without very great art and diligence. In the firſt place a Diet muſt be uſed of very good juyce, and the patient muſt eat Capars, young Hares, Partridges, ſmal birds, veal, and ſomtimes Mutton, and al theſe rather roſted than boyled. Suppings, broaths, and much drinking muſt be avoided; alſo the eating of figs, and ſuch things as are of bad juyce; fulneſs, ſurfetting, and over much crudity. And his Diet muſt be very ſpare and drying, that by conſuming the ſuperfluous moiſture, his body may be dried and leſs ſubject to diſtillations, Cachexy, and other Diſeaſes. To this end alſo, moderate exerciſes wil conduce: leaſt his body growing dul by eaſe and idleneſs, ſhould be oppreſſed with plenty of ſuperfluous Humor. The uſe alſo of Medicaments is neceſſary, both to cure and prevent the foreſaid infirmities. And twice a month his body muſt be purged with this Syrup, which is accommodated to the Head, Liver, and Lungs.

Take

Take *Roots of Cichory, ſorrel, butchers-broom, Aſparagus, and parſley, each half an ounce. Agrimony, Endive, Dodder, Ceterach, Betony, Stœchados, Hyſſop, Colts-foot, Burnet, ſaxafrage, each one handful. Seeds of Endive, Dodder, Marſh-mallowes, and Muſk millions, alſo liquoris ſhaven, each two drams. Make a decoction in a ſufficient quantity of watter, for four doſes, to be taken as ſhal be ſaid.*

When there ſhal be more need of purging, and the diſtillation ſhal appeare over violent, or the body too heavy, if a ſlender diet wil not help, ad to the firſt doſe two drams of Diaphenicon. That matter which is already got into the Lungs, muſt be waſhed out and ſcoured away, in the intermediate dayes free from purging, by the frequent uſe of this following ſyrup, which is alſo very good for the Kidnies.

Take *Roots of Elecampain, polypody of the Oake, ſeeds of carthamus, Raiſons of the Sun, each half an ounce; Jujubes, Sebeſtens, Fat Figs, four of each; Hyſſop, ſavory, Colts-Foot, Betony, Saxifrage, of each one handful; Seeds of Marſh-Mallows, and Cotton, and ſhaved liquoris, each three drams; Make a decoction to a pint and half. In the ſtrained liquor diſſolve nine ounces of white ſugar, and four ounces of the beſt Honey. Make of al a ſyrup wel boiled, and Aromatized with Florentine orice, and Cinnamon, each two drams.*

Let him take thereof frequently in a ſpoon, in manner of a Lick-Pot, and ſometimes mingled with barly water.

Item, Take *Of the pouder of Electuary Diatragacanthum Frigidum, Diaireos ſimple, each two drams; Aromaticum Roſatum one dram and half; Seeds of Parſly of Macedonia, Saxifrage, and Baſil, each half a dram; white Sugar diſſolved in pellitory water four ounces. Make all into Lozenges or tables, of two drams weight apiece. Let him ſometimes eat a Lozenge in place of the Syrup far from meales.*

Now his looſe Groin, muſt as he lies on his back, be fomented with ſuch a decoction as this.

Take *Piſidia, Balauſtians, Cypreſs nuts, Galls, each an ounce. Allum three ounces. Boyl them in bean-water for a fomentation. Then lay on the Rupture plaiſter mixed with the former pouders.*

Such ſmaller matters as I mention not, may be gathered out of the Counſells and Writings of others.

The XXXI. Counſel.

Touching a Cachexia, or ill habit of Body beginning.

SEeing not onely the Head or womb alone, but al the body beſides, is grievouſly affected, badly nouriſhed, dead and ugly colored, al the joynts are looſe and languiſhing, and not able to perform their office, & the patient is exceeding weak, frequently fainting away, with ſhortneſs of breath, eſpecially when her body is more than ordinarily ſtirred: the ſick gentlewoman ſeems to be affected as thoſe are, that are going into a Cachexy, or are leucophlegmatick. And therfore the cauſe of al theſe infirmities muſt be ſought, not in her head or womb, but in the principal bowels, eſpecially in the natural, as the ſtomach, liver, ſpleen, & adjacent parts, by whoſe help the whole body is wont to be nouriſhed. Theſe therefore are very impure and ful of ſuperfluous humors; by whoſe ilneſs and impurity, al meat be it never ſo good, is corrupted, whereby this variety of ſymptoms is cauſed. In ſo great Impurity of the bowels, obſtructions are much to be ſuſpected, and obſervation muſt be made, whether her midrif or parts about her belly, be not ſwoln, pained, or hard. Unſeaſonable and immoderate eating of milk and fruites, was the occaſion of al theſe maladies: nor can either her Head or womb be rightly cured, before care be taken of her bowels, being the fountain and fomenters of their Infirmities. This diligent method of cure muſt therefore be cheifly followed, after which we may ſeek to help the parts and ſymptomes, if they ſhal not be ſufficiently abated.

Take *Roots of Cichory, parſly, Fennel, and capars, polypody of the Oake, Carthamus ſeeds, each half an ounce. Hyſſop, white Hore-hound, Origanum, Agrimony, Ceterach, Dodder, Maiden-haire, each one handful. Seeds of anis, fennel, Endive, Muſk-millions,*

each

each one dram; Make a decoction to fifeeen ounces. In the ſtrained Liquor infuſe al night four ounces of ſenna, white agarick two ounces. Epithymum half an ounce. Ginger two drams. Let them boyl a little in the morning, and preſs out the liquor, and diſſolve therein one pound of white Sugar; make of al a ſyrup, indifferently boiled, not clarified. Let her take every fift or ſixt day two ounces, with a like quantity of barley water or white wine.

To this doſe 'twil be good to ad ſometimes one dram of choice rhubarb. If at any time on the dayes betwixt the takings of the ſyrup, ſhe be coſtive, let her take of theſe following pils.

Take *Of the beſt aloes, pouder of Hiera picra ſimple, choice rhubarbe, agarick trochisked, each one dram; with ſyrup of wormwood, make them into a maſs. Let her take two or three pints at a time an hour before meat.*

When ſhe uſes neither the ſyrup nor the pills; a decoction, or wine of Roman wormwood wil be good, mingled with a decoction of Cichory. Or if ſhe loath that, ſhe may uſe this Electuary, which is both ſtrengthening and preparative.

Take *pouder of the Electuary of Aromaticum roſatum, and diamargaritum frigidum, each two drams. Ivory and Harts-horn, each one dram; white Sugar diſſolved in Roſe-water three ounces. Make al up into Lozenges weighing three drams apeice.*

Let her take one in the morning, and another an hour before ſupper. Let her ſtomach and parts about her midrif be fomented with the oyntment.

Take *Oyl of nutmegs, oyl of mints, oyl of wormwood, and oyl of bitter Almonds, each half an ounce. A little wax. Make a Liniment.*

Anoynt the parts aforeſaid, in the morning, and before ſupper, and lay on a cloath quilted with cotton wooll.

Let Her diet be of good juyce, attenuating, moderately heating, and not very ful, leaſt her weak faculties be over whelmed with plenty thereof. And therefore ſhe muſt abſtain from much ſuppings, and moiſt meates, becauſe they fil too much, breed crudities, and hinder the Cure. But above al ſhe muſt abſtain from overmuch drink: and if thirſt trouble her, it muſt be artificially deluded, becauſe it is not true and natural, but counterfet. Let her eate twice or thrice aday, and little at a time, no more than ſhe can eaſily digeſt. The Event wil ſhew what is afterward to be done.

The *XXXII.* Counſel.

Touching a Cachexy, and beginning Dropſie, for an Ambian Gentlewoman.

THis Gentlewomans diſeaſe, ariſing from ſlight beginnings, is by little and little grown to a Chachexy, and a dropſie, wherein her belly is not very big, but the greateſt ſwelling is in her feet and legs: yet that ſame old and ſtif hardneſs of her liver which now is neare to a ſcirrhus, is very conſiderable, with ſtomach-ſickneſs, vomiting, want of appetite, and unquenchable thirſt. For theſe things argue that ſome part of the humor is putrified in that bowel. Since therfore by fault & corruption of theſaid humor, her ſtomach is defiled, that muſt be in the firſt place cleanſed, that the foreſaid ſymptomes may abate. She muſt be often purged with a medicament made of rhubarb, ſenna, & Agarick, which muſt be ſteeped in a convenient decoction, adding ahe ſyrup of damask roſes. And ſhe muſt take ſuch a like potion every 8 or 10 day. And that ſhe may not think it a trouble to take the ſame potion ſo often, a laxative ſyrup may be compounded for the ſame purpoſe, wherin ſomtimes the juyce of damask roſes may be mingled, or the juyce of dwarf elder, clarified by ſettling, eſpecially when we would purge the watry humor. But I conceive we ought to abſtain from the juyce of Iris or Gladiolus, becauſe it is exceeding biting, and oftentimes exulcerates the inner parts. And withal in the intermediate daies, when ſhe ſhal be bound in her body, a ſtool may be moved not only by a clyſter, but alſo by pils of aloes and rhubarb; or ſometimes with a ſyrup, made after this manner.

Take *Syrup of the juyce of Cichory, and of damaske Roſes, of each three ounces; choice rhubarbe infuſed in borehound, or fennel water ſix drams. Mix them. Let her take an ounce hereof every other day.*

In

In this Cure the chiefeſt care is to be taken of her diſordered Liver. Fomentations, ointments, plaiſters, which ſoften the hardneſs of the Liver, muſt be repeated as often as may be, the ſtrength thereof being ſtil preſerved. Make her an Electuary of the pouder of Diacubebs, and Trionſantalon with Ivory. The ſwelling of her Legs and Feet proceeding from flegm, muſt be diſcuſſed with whey and Lie, boyled with the Roots of Dwarf-Elder, Elecampane, Roſemary, Marjoram, Time, Laurel, Origanum, and ſuch like things. If the ſwelling of her Belly ſeem to fal into her Legs and Feet, eſpecially after walking; it were good to raiſe bladders, in the moſt ſwoln places, with leven, pulp of figs, and a little Cantharides, which being opened, al the Humor which ſwels the belly, has been ſeen to come out that way. Let her Diet be ſparing and dry, and let her drink very little.

The *XXXIII.* Counſel.

Concerning the Dropſie, for an Ambian Gentleman.

TOuching the Conſtitution of the Gentleman our patient, I told you before, that he was troubled not only with a Cachexy, but the beginning of a Dropſie: whereby both his belly was inmeaſurably ſwelled and ſtretched, and his Face bloated and diſcolored. The beginning of the Miſcheife was from his Liver, with which the Spleen does confederate. For both thoſe bowels are found to be ſwoln, ſtif, and hard, and to make ſhew, not only of an obſtruction, but of a Scirrhus.

I endeavouring the Cure of theſe maladies, ordered him to keep a moderate and dry courſe of Diet; I gave him a purge; I ſtrengthned his Bowels with an Electuary which moderately opened; and having uſed theſe things only four daies, he ſeemed ſo much holpen, that he took himſelf to be already cured. But verily, that which cauſes and foments his Malady, lurks ſtil within, viz. a Scirrhus of both the Bowels, which I would thus Cure. Every tenth or twelfth day, you ſhal purge him with a Medicament that brings away choler, Melancholy, flegm, & watry humors. And if in the interim he be bound, give him a Clyſter; alſo in the ſaid interim you ſhal endeavor to open obſtructions, both by Apozemes, and alſo by aperitive and deterſive Syrups; and with Oyntments externally applied, you ſhal ſoften his liver and ſpleen, being ſtil careful to preſerve their ſtrength. Following this Method of Cure thus generally propounded, you wil reſtore the ſick Gentleman to his former health, whom therefore I leave to your Care and Ordering.

The *XXXIV.* Counſel.

For the Chancellor of the Emperor Charles *the Fift, ſick of a Dropſie.*

THe Patient having naturally a very hot Liver, by continual working of his mind, by cares, watchings, and immoderate labors, and peradventure by ſome diſorders in his Diet and courſe of life, he has added an acquired diſtemper to that which was natural. And theſe Cauſes getting head, it is come to paſs, that the Liver being ſo hot, is become as it were roaſted, and hot Choler does after a more inſolent manner abound. Hence comes that ſame violent burning Feaver: and after that, wandring uncertain Feavers, and an Eryſipelas with thirſt, watchings, unquietneſs, and other furious Symptoms of Choler, which upon every light occaſion have vexed the patient. And theſe things happened then chiefly, when only a diſtemper, and the fervency of Choler did urge. But afterwards the miſchief grew higher. For the liver has been long obſtructed, with the redundancy of Choler and other Humors, and at laſt is hardned with a Scirrhus. Moreover, the proper ſubſtance thereof is depraved, and the inbred heat much waſted. For the token of its obſtruction, is the laſting of the Diſeaſe, and the pale and whitiſh Excrements of the belly. And the ſign of a Scirrhus, is, that he can lie longer, eaſier, and with leſs trouble on his right ſide, than his left: for on this ſide, the Liver lying, does by its bulk preſs and ſtifle the ſtomach as it were, & hinders the motion of the Precordia or Midrif, and the fetching of breath. If there be no reſiſtance to the touch, but al his belly ſeems

ſoft,

soft, the Cause is a watry Humor shed out under the Peritonæum, and placed before the Liver, which makes that a Man cannot feel his Liver. Moreover, that the substance of the Liver is weakened, and its natural heat wasted and dulled, so that it is now no longer fit to nourish the Body, the Atrophy or non-nourishment of the Limbs and whol body is a sign, so that the whol body does as it were melt away. Also the Crudities long since observed, frequent weakness and decay of strength, old pains of his Feet; after that, swellings, of his Legs first, and then of his Thighs, caused by flegm; a Collection of waters about his belly, which argues not only a cachexy, but a true Dropsie, and of that sort which is termed Ascites.

This truly is the end of al these infirmities, towards which they long ago conspired, and which might have been foreseen, by many things preceding long ago. Now therefore there is an evident Dropsie, which though it do not much distend his belly, yet seeing it is not bred by immoderate use of cold drink, nor by any effusion of blood, or fault of the Spleen; but has gone further, having so grievous a Cause as I said before, and that so manifold, contracted by little and little a long time in the Liver, and deeply rooted, it wil very hardly be rooted out. Truly, when I consider with my self so long a series of causes, and the continuation of so many effects, which have introduced both a leanness and consumption of the body, a feeble pulse, and great weakness, if I shal not judg the Case desperate, yet I dare hardly promise a perfect cure, thinking it sufficient, if some of the infirmities be removed, and others asswaged, that life may be as much as possible prolonged, and with as little Tediousness as can be to the patient. Which how it may be effected, I shal here set down. The Cure, such as can be hoped, must be performed two waies, viz. By removing the cause, namely the Diseases of the Liver, and by purging out the water. The greatest care is to be had of the cause, which alone may at last bring the patient to his end, and in the last place we must look to the water. For though al the water should be drawn away, yet more wil breed, as long as the cause continues. Now the Remedies to both intents shal be thus ordered. If his strength wil bear it, he must be frequently purged with one dram of Rhubarb steeped in Horehound or Fennel Water, with half a scruple of Cinnamon, adding thereto Sugar, or Syrup of Cichory. For so Choler being voided by little and little, without weakning the patient, his thirst wil not only be asswaged, and his Stomach-sickness taken away, and appetite provoked, but his Liver also being strengthened, wil breed less water. Nor would I venture to give him any stronger purge, in regard of his so great weakness. In the intermediate daies, if his belly be bound, give him a convenient Clyster. If peradventure abundance of water shal stretch his belly, it may twice a month be purged forth with a convenient Medicament. And in this case, we must not allow the juyce of Iris, because it burns the throat and gullet, nor yet wild Cucumer nor Chamelæa, because it offers violence to the body. I commend Danewort or Dwarf-Elder, the juyce whereof gently purges water, without offence. Beat an ounce and half in a Morter, and pour on Wine or barley water, and then strain it and give it him, when he has no looseness. His faculties and bowels wil be strengthened by the frequent use of an Electuary made of the pouder of the Electuary of Cubebs, Trionsantalon, and Ivory, with Sugar dissolved in Horehound water. I would not burthen the sick Gentleman wasted by his Disease and old Age, nor oppress his wearyed faculties: only I would refer the greatest part of the Cure to a good Diet, which is of greatest moment, in this case. Let his meat be flesh of good juyce, easily digested, for the most part roasted, never boyled, or very seldom. Let him abstain from supping meates, and al moist things: yet I allow him sauces to provoke his Appetite. It is good for him to eat frequently a little at a time, three or four times a day, that his weak faculties may not be over burthened, and his meat wel digested. Let him drink exceeding sparingly, that for want of drink the parts being dried, the Reins may exhaust the superfluous waters; and the matter of bowels themselves not being hindred by impertinent Humors, may purge, amend, and strengthen it self. Let his drink be, not pure Wine, which most order in these cases, but such as is wel allayed with water, which may both soon asswage his thirst, and temper the Heat of his Liver. And if his Age and stomach did not advise the contrary, I should bid him drink cold water, which does asswage thirst, and resist the Cause, better than Wine, and yet it does not more encrease watery Humors. For it is an extream hard thing in so mighty thirst, to content himself with little drink. But he must endeavour with al his might to do it, as a thing which has cured many:

many: uſe and cuſtome wil make it eaſie to him. For when he forbears drink, yet his mouth may be moiſtened, by Humors drawn from other parts. Howbeit a very fit Remedy may be provided for this Inconvenience, if maſtich or any thing of like faculty, be continually chewed; for it wil draw much water to the mouth, not out of the Head alone, as ſome think, but out of the Stomach and belly: and ſo it wil be good in many reſpects. Some like of vomits to this Intent. Theſe I conceive to be the chief Heads of this Cure, to which much may be added by thoſe learned Phyſitians to whom the whol Care of his perſon is committed. I can hope for no good from the Lucenſian waters, becauſe they are nde remarkable for any ſenſible qualities, nor have any taſt but that of our ordinary waters. Some have gone to thoſe waters, and others have had them brought to them, but to no purpoſe; though they have drunk ſeven or ten pints in an hour, and ſwet upon it, and diligently obſerved al the Rules preſcribed, by the magneſiers of thoſe Baths.

The *XXXV.* Counſel.

The Cure of a Cachexy, or ill habit of the Body.

ALL the Symptomes are deſcribed, do appertain to the obſtruction of the Liver and Spleen, with their hardneſs or ſtretching, with whom the ſtomach does neceſſarily conſent. For, ſo great is the impurity of the bowels and bordering parts, that al digeſtion being hindred and depraved, the whol body is become foul, and being over whelmed as it were, with bad Humors, it is fallen into a kind of Cachexia, or evil habit. The ſame impurity of the bowels is cauſe of Inflation or puffing up, Suffocation, Stomach-ſickneſs, and wandring winds, with rumbling and ſundry pains. Finally, it is the cauſe of faintings and decay of ſtrength, and it makes the patient ſo frequently deſire meat: for he endeavours to prevent the fainting fit at hand, by quelling the acrimony of the Humor by the debonaire quality of the meat. 'Tis hard to cure theſe old infirmities, unleſs the patient punctually follow the Phyſitians advice. In the firſt place he muſt live very ſparingly, eat only three times a day at juſt diſtances, and meat of thin and good juyce. He muſt abſtain from ſuppings and broaths, al liquid things, and immoderate drinking, becauſe the natural heat is over whelmed with plenty of moiſture, and the concoction hindred. He muſt chooſe a thin and dry Diet; thin Wine and wel watered, moderate excerciſe, and ſomtimes ſtrong, as his ability of body can bear. Moreover, his obſtructions muſt be removed by Medicaments, and al the bad Humor, muſt by little and little be drawn away into his belly, and that by way of Epicraſis, after this manner. Let him have an Apozeme for three doſes. Then let him take of Pilula de Tribus. In the intermediate daies when he ſhal not purge, his Stomach and Guts muſt be ſtrengthened, with this Electuary.

Take *Shavings of Ivory and Hearts-horn, of each two ſcruples. Choice Cinnamon, choice Perles, pouder of Aromaticum Roſatum, and Trionſantalon, of each one ſcruple: with four ounces of white Sugar, make an Electuary. Every morning and an hour before ſupper, let him foment his Stomach, and parts about his Midrif, with this Liniment.*

Take *Mucilage of Fenugreek ſeed, extract in Endive water, one ounce. Oyl of Wormwood, Roſes, Mints, and Capars, of each half an ounce. Mace, Cloves, Red-roſes poudered, of each one ſcruple. A little wax. Make al into a liniment. Now theſe gentle purgations muſt be given him ever and anon, and continued til al the Tumor, and reſiſtency be taken away, and til al the Symptomes be aſſwaged, which I cannot hope before two months be over.*

The XXXVI. Counsel.

The Cure of a long and often returning Feaver for one of the Emperours Court.

THis plain and distinct Enumeration of al the signs and symptomes, observed in this sick Gentleman, has set before mine eyes the very expres Nature of the disease, and al its causes both internal and external. His forme, figure, habitude, and whol constitution of body, and the Integrity of his functions, both natural and animal, do shew a laudable natural temperament: but in that the largeness of his veins argue that it enclines a little to heat, this is happned by course of time and his Age, which by little and little has made his body hotter. And now at last, the heat has exceeded the bounds of Nature; by reason of great perturbations of mind, watchings, cares, troubles, which this Gentleman has undergone in the mannagement of great Affaires. From these and the like evident causes, his Liver is inflamed, and enclined to breed much choler; which being augmented in tract of time and coming to work and boyl, is the efficient cause of all the symptomes described. This, even in his health time, causes sudden and vehement Passions of mind, and frequent Wrathfullness. The same is the cause, why his belly being bound, his head is offended with a sharp vapour, and the rest of his body not having the benefit of transpiration, is somtimes hot; and somtimes cold, and the palms of his hands, and soles of his feet are burning hot, which is also a signe of an hot Liver. And therefore choler so much abounding in the by-past yeares, has caused that the whol body as it were melting, is fallen into a certaine leanness, and also that choler not being timely purged, but kept in, and now and then putrefying, has many times caused cholerick Feavers: and that much more often in his latter yeares, wherein a greater quantity thereof has been collected, and when his body has been so disposed and prepared, that upon the lightest occasions of heat, cold, Labor, Passions of Mind, and diet, it is wont to fal into these kind of Feavers: which is an argument truly of the inner Cause abounding, so as to be burthensome and very troublesome to nature. Moreover, the sort of Feaver, and the manner of its Invasion, do demonstrate and expres the inner Cause for shaking at the first, a biting heat, redness and Inflamation of his face, with a light raving, a quick pulse, and respiration quick likewise, urine red, and thick cholerick stooles towards the end of the disease, are al signs of superabundance of yellow choler, which by permistion makes the blood most thin and Fervent.

And therefore both the Feaver, and the cause of al the symptoms related, can be referred to nothing else but to the exuperance of choler, and the immoderate heat of the Liver. And thereto belongs the Cure of the Erysipelas, and al fluxions which fal into his thighs: because the Erysipelas presently follows the feaver, as a certain Indication thereof, since it arises from the same humor that causes the feaver. But if so be any œdematous or flegmatick tumor of the feet shal seem to have discussed the Erysipelas, though he was wont to have it during his Health, and was thought to be familiar; yet ought it to be suspected, and we should feare least it be the forerunner of a Cachexy shortly to follow. For commonly the Liver being obstructed with much thick choler, does contract obscure rudiments of a scirrhus, while by degrees and insensibly they gather Head, they cast a man headlong into a Cachexia and dropsy. And though these frequent returns of Feavers and defluxions into his thighs are inveterate, and the Age of the Patient does now decline. Yet he that shal take time and diligence, he may in that so lusty and vigorous old age of the patient, promise either a perfect cure, or very great ease: especially, if nothing shal be perceived hard, nor resisting the touch in the right Hypochondrium, nor any trouble shal be perceived when he lies thereon. Now the scope of the Cure must be, to open the obstructions of the Liver, to purge out the superabundant choler thereof, by degrees, and to coole and strengthen the bowel it self. Which things he that shal seasonably performe, he shal verily take away al the Cause of the Feaver, draw drie the fountain of defluxions, and lengthen the patients life yet many yeares. In the first place therefore give him a purge of the infusion of two drams of Rhubarb, rightly prepared, whereby al that superfluity of crude and half-putrid humors. Fluctuating in the stomach, and about the veins of

the

the Meſentery, may either be expelled or corrected. In the next place the obſtructions of the Liver and Spleen muſt be removed by theſe remedies, which whiles they extenuate and open, they do withal draw the matter of the obſtruction into the belly, by little and little. Such an one is ſyrup of Cichory compound, which for a doſe may have two ſcruples of Rhubarb. This muſt be given every other day, or every third day, three hours before meat, without any obſervance. If you ſhal intermit too long, al our labor wil be in vain, nor ſhal we attain the effect we expected. For ſo by frequent purging, the waies being opened and looſened, nature wil be gradually accuſtomed to carry the choler into his belly. A ſyrup againſt burnt choler.

Take *roots of Cichory, Sorrel, Graſs, Aſparagus, each half an ounce. Agrimony, Ceterach, Dodder, Hopps, Adianthum, Maidenhaire, of each one handful. Senna leaves clenſed three ounces. Make a decoction to half a pound. In the ſtrained liquor, diſſolve clarified juices of bugloſs, Borrage, Fumitory and Sorrel, each one ounce and half. White Sugar one pound. Make of al a ſyrup perfectly boyled. And when it is boyled ad to it the expreſſion of ſix drams of Rhubarb infuſed in Endive water, with two drams of choyce Cinnamon. Let him take twice a week one ounce and an half, or two ounces, for a doſe; with barly or baum water, without any obſervance of keeping within, &c.*

On the intermediate days let him be kept looſe, with a Clyſter. Againſt the crudity of flegm, which ſomtimes happens in the winter.

Take *Choyce Rhubarb one dram and half. Of the beſt aloes, hiera picra ſimple, agrick newly prepared, each one dram: with ſyrup of wormwood make al into a maſs.*

Theſe kinds of purgation wil leiſurely void al ſuperfluity of choler by ſtool, not ſufferiug the Feaver to be kindled, nor the fluxion to fal down into his thighs; nor wil they weaken, but rather ſtrengthen his natural faculties and powers, while they eaſe nature of the burthen of hurtful humors. In the remnant of this ſummer, while the humors of the body are fluent by reaſon of the heat, and melted as it were, you muſt ſet upon the cure. The other ſcope of the cure, wil be to cool, and to ſtrengthen the whol body: and that muſt be done by courſe of diet rather than by medicaments. Let the patients diet be therefore ſpare, at the beginning of the cure, which may moderately cool and moiſten: Hens-broath boyled with Lettice, Sorrel, juice of unripe Grapes, or verjuice, Bugloſs, borrage. Let him dip his roaſted meats in a cooling ſawce, as juice of ſorrel, ſour juice of Grapes, juice of pomgranates, Citrons, or Orenges. Let him avoid ſalt things, things peppered and ſpiced, which burn the Liver and humors; al ſugared things which moſt readily turne to choler: Garlick, leeks, onions, muſtard, watercreſſes, and al things of like nature. Let him alſo avoid ſtrong wines, and let him mix water with weaker wines, not fearing the weakneſs of his ſtomach. Beer is ſomtimes good, but it muſt not be too ſtark and hard, nor too thick and new. His body being made purer by phyſick, his meat may be encreaſed in quantity, keeping the ſame quality. Twenty daies being ſpent in the Cure, let him drink in the morning barly broth duly prepared; and after it let him ſleep if he can, and continue the uſe thereof two or three months, or if he wil al his life long, after the example of thoſe, who are wont to uſe this, much to the advantage of their Health. I conceive nothing is to be applied to his thighs, except waters or juices of night-ſhade, Plantain, and Roſes, with an eight part of Vinegar, provided as much as may be that he do not let them hang down.

The *XXXVII.* Counſel.

Of a painful Ague.

THe ſick Woman mentioned in the Letter, being afflicted by a grievous Ague, with frequent vomitings, with Faintings, & an exceeding weakneſs of her whol body, but eſpecially of her bowels, becauſe ſhe has neglected al uſe of phyſick, and not timely uſed ſuch medicaments as were advized her, is juſtly fallen into moſt cruel pains of her belly, with which ſhe has been long and vehemently tormented. For the morbifick Cauſe of the Feaver, out of the Bowels (where the root of al agues Lies) is fallen into the ſpace between the membranes of the Belly and Peritonæum, and ſo finiſhing the Ague, has brought theſe pains. And when afterward

it could not fal out of theſe membranes, nor could find any ready paſſage, whereby it might ſlip into the belly, becoming as it were furious, it takes at length its courſe another way, and ſo leapes over into the head, and limbs of the body, where alſo it moves new torments. 'Tis to be feared, leaſt at laſt occupying the Nerves, and the tendons, it ſhould breed a kind of palſie, which *Paulus* ſaies, is bred of the colick pain, and of which I have obſerved many things in my writings. Theſe verily are of al diſeaſes the moſt grievous, which are wont to happen after Agues neglected, or il cured. But we muſt now come to the remedy. And though purgations wil not now do ſo much good as formerly they might have done, yet they muſt be preſcribed, and thoſe ſufficiently ſtrong, that they may revel the noxious humor out of the extream and upper parts, into the belly: or if the woman wil not take the ſtronger, give her at leaſt ſuch weak ones as ſhe has been accuſtomed unto, frequently repeating them. After purgations pain aſſwaging ointments muſt be applied, and diſſcuſſers to the pained part, which may be made of oyl of worms, Oleum Irinum, and Oyl of Turpentine, adding ſuch things as are good for the palſy; alſo bathes wil be good, wherein are boyled Cephalick herbes, but much more dry baths or Vaporaries, if the ſtrength of the Patient can beare them. Moreover, a moſt ſtubborne diſeaſe in a diſobedient patient, does commonly portend a doubtful, or bad Concluſion.

The XXXVIII. Counſel.

Of a Lingring Feaver, and divers other Diſeaſes. Out of the French.

THat I may returne a wel grounded Anſwer, to thoſe queſtions ſent me touching a lingring Feaver, twil be worth the labor to enquire the true cauſe and original thereof: which ſeeing it has followed other intermitting and uncertain Feavers, I am of opinion that the root thereof lies either in the kidneys, or in ſome bad quality of the Liver or ſpleen: for it is ſymptomatical, and therefore to judge diſtinctly thereof, we muſt conſider the urines. For if they be thick, groſs, white, matteriſh; or if formerly they have been bloody, it is a ſign that ſome Impoſtume or ulcer lurks in the kidneys.

But if there be no diſorder in them, we muſt ſeek the cauſe, in the Liver and ſpleen. For I cannot think that theſe infirmities are the conſequences of the colick or nephritick pain, wherewith the patient has been troubled. His thirſt, and deſire to drink wine rather than beer, his loathing of meat, eſpecially that which is moſt ſtrong and nouriſhing, belching, rumbling in his guts, wind, noiſe of his ſtomach, and abſurd digeſtion thereof, and ſwowning fits, do argue that the fault is in and from the ſtomach, both by its own proper Infirmity, and its vicinity and ſympathy with the Liver and ſpleen. Nor muſt we regard a defluxion ſo much (if any do fal upon the ſtomach) for a Catarrh alone, does not bring forth ſo cruel accidents. The remedies both for the Feaver and other diſeaſes, muſt be gentle and gradual, the Age of the patient and his weakneſs, with the length of the diſeaſe muſt be conſidered. Every other day therefore, if his belly be bound, give him this following Clyſter.

Take *Marſh-mallow roots one ounce. Chamemel flowers, Melilote, Dil, Wormwood, courſe bran, each one handful. Annis-ſeed and Fennel ſeed, each two drams. Make a decoction. In a pint of the ſtrained liquor diſſolve two ounces of honey of roſes, Common oyl three ounces. Make a Clyſter. If it ſhal not ſufficiently purge thick and clammy flegm, ad biera ſimple five drams, or an ounce.*

Let him take weekly of this following ſyrup, that his ſtomach may be by degrees ſcoured, and thoſe other parts which foment this diſeaſe. And in caſe he ſhal uſe it more often, it wil do him the more good, for it does in no wiſe weaken, yea verily it luſtily ſtrengthens.

Take *Roots of ſorrel, Cichory, Graſs, Parſly, and polypody of the oake, each half an ounce: Agrimony, Ceterach, Dodder, each one handful. Sena two ounces. Make a decoction to half a pound: in the ſtrained liquor diſſolve a pound of white ſugar. Make al into a ſyrup perfectly boyled, whereto as it boyls ad, the expreſſion of two drams of choyce Rhubarb, infuſed in white wine, with one ounce of pickt Cinnamon.*

Let him take one ounce and half for a doſe with barly water, in the morning, three hours and

and no more before meat. Sometimes inſtead of the ſyrup, he may uſe theſe following pils.

Take *Of the beſt aloes, of choyſe Rhubarb, of hiera picra ſimple, each one dram. Agrick prepared half a dram. Soften them with ſyrup of wormwood, and make them into a Maſs.*

Let him take a dram in five pils, in the morning four hours before dinner. In the intermediate daies, to ſtrengthen his ſtomach and vigorate his bowels, it wil be good for him to take liberally of this following Conſerve.

Take *Citron peeles preſerved one ounce. Preſerved myrobalans, conſerve of roſes, each half an ounce. Pouder of aromaticum roſatum ten grains, choyce cinnamon, yellow Sanders, ivory, Harts-horne, each one ſcruple. Sugar of roſes, as much as ſhal ſuffice. Make al into an Electuary or Preſerve, covered with Gold. Let him take a ſpoonful in the morning, and an hour before ſupper.*

To quench his thirſt let him drink of ſuch a Julep as this.

Take *Roſewater, half a pint. Juice of Pomgranates three ounces, Of Lemmons two ounces. White ſugar eight ounces.* Mix *all into a julep. Let him uſe it in his thirſt, far from meal times, with three or four times ſo much boyled water. Nor let him pleaſe himſelf with other drink, or give himſelf to a plentyful uſe of water, vulgar ptiſan, or beer: but let him content himſelf with the foreſaid julep, or with ſyrup of pomgranates, or the juice of citrons, Orenges, both at, and betwixt meales.*

But if he ſhal be taken with fainting fits, 'twil be much better to give him what has been before preſcribed, than to give him wine. Yet he may at his meales, taſt a little, ſo as no thirſt may thereby follow. But, to aſſiſt his ſtomach buſied in the digeſtion of meat, it wil be good to give him a plain diet, and a little at a time. And if his meat be ſolid, let it be ſprinkled with the foreſaid juices. Nor let a cooling diet fright you, for this mans Infirmities wil better beare cooling than hot things.

The XXXIX. Counſel.

Of a Quartan Ague, for Queen Leonora.

FRom her tender years and firſt childhood the patient has been found to be ſubject to the Tiſſick, becauſe when the Aire is moiſt, and there is a new Moon, a new diſtillation does more vehemently vex her. She has been often taken with great and dangerous fits of the mother; wherein both her underſtanding and al her ſences periſh; and by vehemency of the ſuffocation, the ſmal veines of her neck, eyes, and Face, do gape, ſo that red ſpots do long after remain in thoſe parts. But ſhe is eſpecially troubled with thoſe numorous obſtructions of the Liver, by meanes of which ſhe has often fallen into long feavers, and many times into a very ſtubborn jaundice. Her conſtitution being as aforeſaid, ſhe paſt over al the laſt year in Idleneſs, abating nothing of her diet, which was wont to be exceeding plentiful. Hence comes a large Harveſt of crude humors and al kind of excrements, and obſtructions doubled, which have cauſed at length, that ſhe has not her Courſes nor Hæmorrhoides ſo largely, nor in ſo due ſeaſon as formerly. By which means, her whol body began at laſt to grow Heavy; and fifteene dayes before ſhe was taken with this diſeaſe, ſhe was troubled with a ſtrange kind of wearyneſs, comming of its own accord. Withal, ſhe perceives her appetite dejected, though with divers ſauces, and delicate provocatives of appetite, ſhe endeavoured to quicken the ſame, that ſhe might live as intemperately as formerly ſhe had done. Hereupon the quartan ague ſeized her, on the ſecond of *September*, of it ſelf, without any other diſeaſe foregoing: but with ſo ſmal and obſcure beginnings that hardly any body could perceive the ſame. The Second fit, gave manifeſt proof of an ague, wherein al kinds of vomiting appeared: and then we began to prepare the humors of her body, both with ſyrups, and clyſters, and a ſpare diet. Howbeit, the third fit, was much more vehement than the former, both in point of cold, vomiting, and choaking (by reaſon of the tiſſick mingling therewith) and tumbling and toſſing of her whole body, and thirſt. And therefore, in the middle

ſpace

ſpace between the fits, we purged her gently, as alſo on the day, after which was her beſt day And although ſhe had every way plentiful evaccuation of flegm and choller, cauſed by art and nature; yet her ague manifeſtly encreaſed, and had a fourth, fift, and ſixt fit exceeding ſharp and laſting, ſo that now no wellneſs or intermiſſion can be diſcerned. For no ſweat has broke out to finiſh the fit. Seeing therefore it partakes of a continual feaver as wel as of a Quartan Ague, leaſt it ſhould degenerate into a worſer Kind, we thought it good to open the baſilica Vein of her left arme, out of which eight ounces of corrupt blood were taken, which did her much good, and ſhe bore it wel. For beſides the ſuſpition of a continual feaver, the ſuppreſſion of her Courſes and hæmorrhoides, did perſwade us to let her blood, with her intemperate diet, idle life, redneſs of face, and huge ſwelling, fulneſs of veins, by means whereof, her noſe did frequently bleed. After that ſhe had been let blood, her body ſeemed to be more ſtrong, her ague perfectly intermitting; but the fits were wel-nigh as vehement as before, with loathing of meat, ſtomach-ſickneſs, vomiting and bitterneſs of her mouth. Which ſymptomes, when they would no be tamed, either by diet, ſyrups, more clyſters, we thought good to purge her the ſecond time, after a new fit. After which, the other fits following were more gentle, and they grew leſſer and leſſer gradually, ſo that ſhe was not troubled either with cold or hot fits; and therefore in the whole month of *October*, we plyed her only with a convenient diet and emollient clyſters; ſave that once when ſhe had a grievous illneſs in her ſtomach, we boyled ſome ſena in her broath, and a few daies before for a light cough proceeding from a diſtillation, we gave her Syrup of jujubes. Whatever hereafter ſhal ſeem requiſit for the remainder of the Cure, thoſe that have the Care of her, may in imitation hereof, of themſelves prudently determine.

The XL. Counſel.

For a Quartan Ague intangled with a Diſtillation.

SEEing the worthy Gentleman our patient had been long vexed with many and ſundry infirmities, and with a perpetual diſtillation for the moſt part, I conceived that I was to bend my Care not only to the quartan Ague, wherewith he is troubled, but alſo to other intangled diſeaſes, becauſe while they were preſent, the Quartan ague could hardly be cured, and if it were, yet would the patient be ſtil liable to many Infirmities whereof to Complain. Having therefore, with al my might, diligently conſidered al things, I conceive the Cure ought not to be deferred, but diligently to be undertaken, ſuch a cure I mean, as both by medicaments and diet, ſhal cure the old Infirmities, and change his preſent il conſtitution of body.

Let his Diet be very dry and attenuating, and moderatly hot, that it may correct this cold and ſnotty habit. Let him abſtain from al ſuppings, al liquid things, boyled fleſh, fiſh, cheeſe, fruites, and immoderate drink. Let him feed on fleſhes of good juyce, and al roaſted, or ſeldom boyled, which if he pleaſe he may dip in ſawces, of peper, ginger, cinnamon, nutmeg, and ſometimes Muſtard. Let his Wine be rich and not vaporous, white pale claret, thin, not over much allaied with water, and let him drinke thereof ſparingly at meales. Let him exerciſe in the mornings, and let his exerciſe be much and ſtrong, til his body grow hot or begin to be weary, and let him diligently avoid cold-taking. When he wakes from ſleep, let him be rubbed a long time together with dry and courſe cloathes, or ſometimes with a dry hand. Let him frequently uſe gentle medicaments, ſuch as draw away raw and hurtful humors, by little and little without violence. Let him frequently take clyſters, with hiera picra ſimple and diaphenicon, of each ſix drams; Honey of roſemary two ownces; oyl of rue, and of dil, each one ounce and half, mixed up with an emollient decoction, every ſixt or eight day. The day before his fit, give him pils, made of hiera picra ſimple, rhubarb, aloes, and agarick, which muſt be made up, each a like Quantity, with ſyrup of wormwood, and let him take one dram for a doſe, or four ſcruples. Sometimes inſtead of the pils, let him be purged with this ſyrup.

Take *roots of Smallage, Parſly, Fennel, and Cappars, Polypody of the oake, Carthamus ſeed, each half an ounce. Agrimony, Betony, Hiſſop, Origanum, Hops, Ceterach, Thyme,*

Thyme, Epithymum, each one handful. Seeds of Annis, Fennel, and Muſkmillions, of each one dram and half. Make a decoction to fifteen ounces. Infuſe therein, al night, Senna four ounces. White Agrick two ounces: Ginger two drams, let them boyl a little in the morning, and ſtrain out the liquor, and therein diſſolve white ſugar a pound. Make al into a wel boyld ſyrup, not clarified. Let him take two ounces for a doſe, with borrage or ſome other convenient water. It is good ſometimes to diſſolve therein the expreſſion of a dram of choice rhubarb infuſed in white wine, that by little and little al kinds of humors may be ſeparated and vorded forth.

Thus therefore their uſe is to be continued every other day, that hardly a day ſhal paſs, but that the day before he took a clyſter, ſome of the ſyrup, or ſome pils. The ſick Gentleman muſt not be much wearied with preparitive ſyrups but every preparation muſt be endeavoured, by a duly ordered diet. And becauſe ſometimes he is forced to drink in his fits, inſtead of priſan, or barley water, or other cooling drink, which renders the humors more compact, you muſt give him *Galens* Oxymel ſimple, or ſyrup of vinegar mixt with good ſtore of water: But 'tis good for him to drink as little as may be, which makes al diſeaſes ſhorter; but to drink plentifully, buſies nature, and cals her from the digeſtion of the humors.

The XLI. Counſel.

For a Quartan Ague complicated with a Looſneſs.

THis Quartan Ague cannot be ſimple, nor have its Original only from melancholy juyce, but from a mixture alſo of yellow Choler, which being burnt, affords matter thereunto. By the ſuperabundance thereof vomitings were at firſt raiſed, and when al the Humor could not be purged that way, at length it broke into the belly, bread a Diarrhœa rightly ſo called, which threatens either a Tenetmus, or a Dyſentery. It is accompanied with Appetite dejected, weakneſs, and great falling away of the body; all which are ſigns and ſymptoms of raging yellow Choler. And becauſe al theſe threaten greater danger to the ſick Gentleman, than his Quartan Ague, we ſhal in the firſt place, and moſtly, ſet our ſelves againſt them, not neglecting the Feaver in the mean time. The Looſneſs therefore muſt be ſtopped, not with ſuch things as wholly bind and ſtop, leſt by that means his Ague encreaſe; but with ſuch as help the hot diſtemper of the Liver, and withal reſtore his Appetite and ſtrength. The Pain-aſſwaging Clyſters preſcribed, which wil keep off the bloody flux, muſt be frequently injected; to which your Learned ſelf may ad Mucilage of Quince ſeeds, or Starch, or bean meal, as need ſhal be. When he thirſts betwixt meals, Syrup of Lemmons, and Oxyſaccharum ſimplex, wil be good for him; Syrup of ſowr Grapes, and ſuch like, mingled with a good quantity of water. Sometimes the inſide of a Pomegranate, or Juyce of Citrons, or a Quince Juyce; wherein, or in Verjuyce, or Wine of ſowr Grapes, he may dip his meat, or it may be ſteeped therein, that by theſe things, and a convenient cooling Diet, and moiſtning, the fervency of Choler may be abated, and the diſtemper of the Liver corrected ſo as to preſerve the ſtrength thereof. Almond Milk made with barley water, and Sugar of Roſes, every day in the morning, at leaſt four hours before the ordinary hour of dinner, is exceeding effectual. Externally apply to his Liver, either a cooling and ſtrengthening Epithem, or Ceratum ſantalinum, and let him wear it a long time. Beſides theſe, if his ſtrength permit, give him a little Rhubarb at convenient diſtances: and I would rather he ſhould take a dram thereof in ſubſtance, than the Infuſion. If having uſed theſe Remedies about fifteen daies together, the ſymptomes are not ſufficiently tamed, you muſt forbid him al uſe of Wine, and give him any other drink rather. For I have this Year experimented, that many cannot be freed from ſuch like ſymptomes, and the Quartan Ague, til they leave wine: and they were ſtronger with the uſe of water, than when they drank wine.

The

The XLII. Counsel.

For a Swelling of the Spleen.

THe Symptoms related declare, that the Patients Spleen has been long affected, though perhaps neither swelling or pain were perceived. But that pain also of the shoulder is the fruit of a diseased Spleen, which distending and plucking asunder the Membranes, is often found to bring such a pain; even as when the Liver is inflamed, the pain reaches to the Jugulum. The Disease of her womb seems to have risen from the Impurity of the Spleen, which has by little and little discharged it self into that part, but so that the womb it self is at last infected, and the Humor by its Acrimony, has burnt the neck thereof, and of the bladder. Which is the cause that she cannot admit the carnal imbracements of a man. And therefore that Impurity of the Spleen collected by little and little, and at length purrefying, is grown hot, and has bred the tumor and symptoms aforesaid. Now this tumor, though it be troublesom by its heat, yet is it no Phlegmone, much less an Imposthume, because this bowel is not liable to such kind of swellings. Moreover, this Tumor can by no other means be taken away, than by stool; and that way it may be derived by a Syrup, which consists of buglos, burrage, Fumitory, tops of Hops, &c. with Senna and Rhubarb.

The intermediate daies let her belly be Loosned with a Clyster, of an Emollient Decoction, half an ounce of Diacatholicon, and three ounces of Honey.

To mollifie the Tumor, make an Emollient Fomentation, and corroborating, of *Mallows, Violets, Pellitory of the wall, some Hop-tops, Cappar roots, Red Roses, betony. Let them boyl in water, and ad a little Vinegar.*

Also a Liniment may be made of the same vertue.

Suppurators must not be applied, because al Impostumes in the Liver and Spleen are deadly. Let her drink no wine. Let her use Syrup of Vinegar, and Syrup of Maidenhair.

The XLIII. Counsel.

Of Hypochondriacal Melancholly, for Mſr. de Maligny.

I Hear that the most Illustrious, and Prudent Mſr. *de Maligny*, is besieged with many and sundry Symptomes, and those grievous and dreadful; but al which concur in the signification of one, and the self same Disease. For, though the said Symptoms have more vehemently raged a few daies since, by reason of the exceeding heat of Summer; yet they seem to have now a long time had some Rudiments and Foundations. Sadness and Fear without occasion, which have frequently troubled the Gentleman, Solitariness, deep and serious Cogitation, troublesom sleeping, molested with Apparitions, and sundry Frightments, do al proclaim Melancholy, not that primary sort, which comes through fault of the brain alone; but that other which proceeds from the Hypochondria, or parts about the Midrif and short Ribs, and is therfore called Hypochondriacal. For a manifest sign therof, we have, in that swelling, which is observed about his Spleen, and Pancreas or Sweet bread. Nor do I conceive the continent Cause thereof to be Natural Melancholy, which is the dregs of blood; but another adust sort, which is bred of yellow Choler over burned, and which we by a peculiar name, term *Bilis atra*, black Choler. For this having been now a long time by little and little heaped up in the Hypochondria, is for the most part perceived to boil and work thereabouts, and then it sends from out it self malignant vapors, which being forced against the Midrif, do in a manner stop and hinder the breath. If they go into the Heart, they cause strong palpitation, and sometimes Syncope: if they hap to go into the brain, they produce Dotages next to Madness, and they joyned with a certain fear and sadness. For which causes, the sick Gentleman, being as it were danted in his mind, is very much afraid of himself, and can hardly be raised into any good

good hope of Health. The Cauſe therefore of his palpitation of heart, and fainting fits, is not in his Heart or Pericardium, but only in his Hypochondria or Præcordia, out of which the filthy vapor, carried up through manifold Arteries gets into the Heart; and produces theſe bad Symptomes common in a manner to al Hypochondriacal perſons. Yea, and moreover, if you diligently feel his left Hypochondrium, where it inclines to the Navil, you ſhal, I conceive, find much ſuch a palpitation there, as is in his Heart: for they both ariſe from one and the ſame Cauſe. Moreover, flatulent belchings, rumblings in the belly, ſtomach-ſickneſs, frequent ſpittings, and other ſigns of a crude Stomach, are common to al Hypochondriacal perſons, and proceed from the Nature and condition of black Choler.

Now the evident and foregoing cauſes, are theſe: This renowned Gentleman being naturally very Cholerick, hath by Cares, deep Thoughts, hot Diet, and Intemperance therein, heaped up a great quantity of yellow Choler, which alſo once put him into a kind of Jaundice. At laſt, not being timely purged out, and the foreſaid cauſes continuing, it turned into black Choler, which is now the continent and immediate cauſe of al the foreſaid Symptomes. Touching the Prognoſtick, I may ſay thus much; That though this Diſeaſe be grievous in reſpect of the Swouning fits, and other Symptomes, and ful of terror, yet wil it admit cure, rather conſidering the Age and ſtrength of this Gentleman: eſpecially if he follow and obey the Counſels of his Phyſitians: for otherwiſe, if he continue the ſame, he wil either die of a ſwouning fit, or through weakneſs, or he wil be taken mad, with that kind of madneſs we cal *Mania*; or if he avoid theſe evils, he wil hardly at length eſcape the inconveniencies of a Dropſie. His Infirmities are many and different, but becauſe the whol Cure of al, does chiefly conſiſt in two things; the firſt, and chiefeſt whereof is, that the inward cauſe, which as we have ſaid, is black Choler, be quite rooted out; the other, that the ſwouning fits, and other grievous accidents, be ſo long kept off, til the Cure be performed. The Cauſe aforeſaid, though it ſo much abound, that it overwhelms the patient in a manner, yet ſeeing his Natural forces do extreamly languiſh, and are oppreſſed by the cruelty of the ſymptoms, it ought to be drawn away leiſurely, and by little and little, and with ſuch moderation, as his weakneſs may eaſily bear: to which intent, ſuch an Apozeme as this, wil be convenient.

Take *Roots of Bugloſs, Sorrel, and Cichory, of each half an ounce: Agrimony, Dodder, Ceterach, of each one handful: Senna one ounce and half. Make a Decoction to a pint, adding towards the end, of the three Cordial flowers, of each one pugil. In the ſtrained Liquor infuſe choice Rhubarb three drams: Cinnamon four ſcruples. Preſs out the Liquor again, and diſſolve therein two ounces of Syrup of Violets. Make it an Apozeme not clarified, in three Doſes. Let him take it every other day, in the morning, four hours at leaſt before meat.*

The uſe of this ſweet and gentle Apozeme, wil be exceeding ſafe, nor muſt he take any ſtronger Medicament, but continue in the uſe hereof, for without offence, it wil take away al the Cauſe of his Infirmity, and by little and little, reſtore his ſtrength. Having finiſhed this Apozeme, let the Gentleman reſt four daies, only a light detertive Clyſter being injected, if peradventure he be bound in his body. But afterwards let him take again the ſaid Apozeme, having alwaies regard to the ſtrength, and wel bearance of the Patient.

On the daies intermediate, when the Patient is not purged, give him a Syrup to prepare the Humors, and allay the Symptoms, made after this manner.

Take *of the clarified Juyces, of Bugloſs, Borrage, Sorrel, Fumitory, ſweet ſmelling Apples, and Pomegranates, of each two ounces: white Sugar half a pound. Make a Syrup indifferently boyled. Let him take twice a day two ounces at a time, with a like quantity of barley water, at leaſt two hours before dinner.*

And theſe two Medicaments ſhal be interchangably taken; one, one day; and the other the next. And in the interval (which I told you muſt be four or ſix dayes) let him uſe this Confection twice a day, which wil recreate his Faculties, and abate the acrimony of the Humors, and the violence of the Symptoms.

Take *Conſerve of bugloſs one ounce: Conſerve of Roſes, Citron peels preſerved, of each half an ounce: Ivory one dram: Harts-horn, Harts-heart-bone, choice Guajacum, of each half a dram: Oriental Pearls, Lignum Aloes, of each one ſcruple: Red Coral, Criſtal fine poudered, of each ten grains: White Sugar as much as ſhall ſuffice. Make all into a Confection covered with Gold. Let him take a ſpoonful an hour and half before meat, and*

drink a little tempered Wine after it. To this may sometimes be added a smal quantity of Confectio Alkermes; though the use thereof, as of all other hot things, is in this Disease, if in any, much to be feared. For nothing does so much exasperate this Disease, as the use of hot meats and medicaments. And therefore we must content our selves (as I said before) with these Remedies, nor can we pass over to hotter or stronger without mischief, or at least dammage.

Now the use of those four aforesaid Remedies, must be continued, viz. Of the Apozeme, the Syrup, the Clyster, and the Preserve, just as I have before expressed, til the Patient find himself perfectly cured.

I must speak also of Bleeding. It wil be exceeding good to open a Vein, if it be done seasonably, and conveniently. For much blood is contained and imprisoned in the Veins, being very hot and burned (though the Urins seem to tel another tale) which requires to be cooled and sobed: nor have the Ancients devised any thing more wholsom, than this Remedy of Phlebotomy. And therefore after the third purgation by his Apozeme, if his strength seems sufficiently recreated and constant, let him blood boldly out of the middle, or inmost Vein of his Arm, and that to the quantity of eight or ten ounces, unless he faint away, which seldom happens. For, more frequently, the Natural strength is found to grow vigorous and lusty, upon discharge of the burthen of blood.

How to asswage the symptoms.

In very deed and in truth, al symptomes cease, when the disease shal be throughly cured. But nevertheless, if during the time of the Cure, they shal vehemently rage, they must be pacified with a peculiar remedy, especially his palpitation of Heart and his fainting fits. As often therefore, as either of these shal happen, rub his belly, loins, and thighes downwards, that a revulsion may be made of the vapour creeping upwards. Also let a large cupping-glass be fixed to the lower part of his belly without scarrification. Let his belly be provoked with a suppository if it be bound. And Apply to his Heart and left Hypochondrium this following Epitheme.

Take *Distilled waters of Plantane, Roses, Purslane, Bugloss, Baume, Carduus, Vinegar, each two ounces. In these dissolve, of the three sanders, of red roses poudered, of amber, each three drams; Trochisks of camphire, half an ounce; Make an Epithem, and apply it blood-warm.*

Let him take inwardly, the juice of a sowr pumgranate, which is a most speedy remedy in these fits. In want thereof, use the juyce of a citorn, or a Quince, or of barberies. For by these the biting quallity, and also the malignity of the humor is blunted, whereas contrariwise, 'tis provoked and exasperated with hot things; and if in the fit, there wil be leisure to give him some of the Confection, aforesaid, it wil do him much Good.

His Diet.

A good course of diet is of no mean force, both to cure the disease and asswage the symtpomes, without which, scarcely any thing worth speaking of, can be effected in this disease. He must wholly abstain even by the counsel of *Galen* from al hot an fervent qualitied meats as most adverse to him; seeing they both encrease the fomenting cause of al the mischief and malady, and exasperate and provoke the symptomes. He must therefore eate cold and moist meates though the crudity of his stomach, seemes to perswade the contrary, as Veal, Kids flesh, Capons, Chickens, and young Pigeons; and these boyled with lettice, Purslane, Sorrel, and Borrage, rather than roasted; or if haply he shal delight to eate these meats roasted, or Partriges, or little birds roasted, let him dip them in some cooling and astringent juices, as of sorrel, sowr grapes, Pomgranates, or quinces, or also Vinegar. For by these, the humor is dulled, and the swowning fits kept off, as they are by sugared things exasperated. He must abstain from salt and aromatick things, let his bread be neither salted nor too much fermented. Let his wine be pale red, somwhat cast, & moderately astringent, that it may strengthen the mouth of his stomach, & drive away his fainting fits; and let it be allaied with good store of water, least it provoke vapours. Let him shun al rich, white, thin, vaporous wine, as most hurtful for him. Yea verily, if he

he would be perſwaded once to leave the uſe of al wine, and to drink inſtead thereof, either juyce of pomgranates mingled with water, or a decoction of barberies, or of ſowr cherries dried (which moſt people keep for other uſes) nothing would conduce more to the Cure. And even by this one Remedy alone, many have recovered. And above al things, he muſt drink ſparingly, becauſe too much fluctuation of humors, and rumblings of the belly, and winds, and ſpittings, and crudities are encreaſed by overmuch drinking. Let him content himſelf, with two ſpare meales in a day, viz. one at nine in the morning, the other at four in the afternoon. And at midnight, it wil be very good for him to drink almon milk made with barly water, becauſe it exceedingly bridles the fury of the Vapours and Humors. And in the hours betwixt thoſe two meales, let him neither eate nor drink, but attend the uſe of ſuch medicaments as have been before deſcribed. Let him ſhun al diſturbance of body and of mind, as anger, warth, cares, troubleſome cogitations, alſo ſtrong motions of body, ſuch as cauſe panting of the heart. Let him not ſo much as riſe to ſtool, but uſe a bed-pan, &c. Cool air is better for him than extream hot, and the northern winds are better than the ſouthern. Nor muſt the patient be kept in a cloſe ſmothering chamber, but in one that is aery, with the windowes many times ſet open to pureſie the ſame. Towards the end of the Cure, when the Gentleman ſhal begin to walk abroad, a bath of ſweet freſh water wil be exceeding good, not to provoke ſweat, but to the intent that his body now long time heated and dryed, may thereby be cooled and moiſtened. Theſe are the chief precepts belonging to the whol Cure. In imitation whereof, may eaſily be underſtood, what is to be done, in caſe any thing elſe happen in the mean while.

The *XLIV.* Counſel.

Touching Hypochondriacal Melancholy.

THis Symptome, as the ſtory is related, is hypocondriacal melancholy, which has long taken root, in that age that is moſt ſubject thereunto. Now it ariſes from burnt choler, which by little and little has a long time been collected in the patients Hypochondria, or parts about the ſmal ribs and midrif: and which nature has failed timely to void by ſtool, or vomit. The which does ſo offend the ſtomachs digeſtion, that it turns the greateſt part of what is eaten, into winds, which do much weary the patient both with belchings, and ſtretchings. But withal, from the ſaid aduſt and ſcorched humor, there frequently ariſes a vapor like a miſt, and creeps up into the brain, cauſing feare, penſiveneſs, and ſundry frightments with apparitions of Hobgoblins, &c. and when it takes its courſe into the whol body, it cauſes many pains, which nevertheleſs are ſoon allaied. The Cure of the diſeaſe, which is now to follow, muſt be thus performed.

Take, *Bugloſs, Borrage, Baume, Betony, Burnet, Hops, Dodder, Ceterach, Endive, each one handful. Roots of Cichory, Polypody of the Oak, Raiſons of the ſun ſtoned, each one ounce. Of the four cooling ſeeds, each one dram. Of the cordial flowers and Epithymum, each one dram. Make a decoction to fifteen ounces. In the ſtrained liquor, infuſe three ounces of Senna, two ounces of Agrick, two drams of Ginger. Boyl them a little and make an expreſſion, or ſqueezing out of the Liquor, and therein diſſolve one pound of white Sugar. Make a ſyrup perfectly boyled, not clarified, let him take every ſixt day two ounces, for a doſe in barly water.*

It wil be good of the ſelf ſame ingredients to make a ſyrup which is not purgative: which let him uſe every morning faſting to prepare the humor. But if at any times his body ſhal be bound in the intermediate days, between his purgings; it may be looſened with this Clyſter.

Take *Mallows, Violet leaves, Pellitory of the wal, Marſh-mallows, root and branch, Chamemel, melilote, dil, Worm-wood, Origanum, each one handful. Seeds of Annis and Line, each one ounce. Make a decoction to a pint. In the ſtrained liquor diſſolve ſix drams of Catholicon, honey of roſes, & of roſemary flowers, each one ounce. Common oyl three ounces. Make a* Clyſter.

His body being thus gently purged four or five times, let him continue the use of this following Conserve.

Take *Conserve of Bugloss and violets, each one ounce. Pouder of Electuarium lætificans Galeni, one scruple; Shavings of Ivory and Harts-horn, each two scruples. Choyce pearls half a dram. White Sugar as much as shal suffice. Make of al a confection, let him take a spoonful in the morning, and another an hour before supper.*

When the disease shal seem now a little to incline, & al the symptoms shal appear more mild, but especially towards the end of winter, baths of good sweet water, such as may be drunk, wil be exceeding useful, wherein let him sit a long time fasting, and continue them about ten or twelve daies. And let them be used at such a time as they may not provoke any manifest sweat nor heat: nor may exagitate the body, but only cool and moisten the same. Meane while, daily fictions of his whole body wil be useful, and that then especially when the fits shal urge. Let his diet be wholly moistening and cooling: wherein let him altogether abstain from hot things, but especially from strong and unmixed wine: for he must drink his wine very much allayed with water, and that sparingly, because much fluctuation encreases winds and belchings. Suppings wil be good, wherein cooling herbes have been boyled. Also barley Creame is convenient, and al kind of meates, which are of like faculty: let him wholly abstain from cares and businesse: Keep him from seriousnes, exhilarate him with jests, and hunting, and taking the fresh Aire.

The XLV. Counsel.

Of a distillation with Melancholy.

THis Gentleman is frequently troubled with a distilation, sometimes into his Neck, otherwhiles into his shoulders and Armes, somtimes into the hinder part of his back; but he is troubled with a more grievous symptom than al these, which is hypochondriacal melancholy. For since the time he has been freed from the quartan Ague, he was taken with a pain in his left Hypochondrium, and has ever since been so tormented with a disease in his spleen, that he was never able to lie upon his left side: and from hence the Concoction of his stomach is offended by way of contagion. His appetite has been long time much dejected. He is much troubled with belchings, and much spittle comes out of his throat into his mouth. Hence also fancies, and dreadful dreames; also feare and sadnes, and a certain clownish kind of bashfulnes, alwaies apt to blush, and false and absurd imaginations of sad and sorrowful things.

The Cure,

Take *roots of Grass, Parsly, Fennel, Smallage, each half an ounce. Bugloss, Borrage, Hops, Agrimony, Ceterach, Dodder, Adianthum, Maiden-hair, Hyssop, Origanum, each one handful. Seeds of Endive, Dodder, and Musk-melons, Liquoris shaved, each two drams. Cordial flowers, Epithymum, each one pugil. Make a decoction to fifteen ounces. In the strained liquor, infuse al night leaves of Senna clensed four ounces, white agrick two ounces. Turbith bruised half an ounce. Ginger two drams. Let them boyl a little in the morning, and make an expression, wherein dissolve one pound of Sugar. Make a syrup perfectly boyled. Let him take once a week two ounces in water wherein Bugloss has been boyled.*

And once a month, especially when the Moon is in the last quarter to purge away the matter of the distillation, ad to the foresaid dose, diaphenicon one dram and half. In the daies between, you shal strengthen al the principal parts especially the spleen, with this Electuary.

Take *Pouder of the Electuary Lætificans Galeni, shavings of Ivory, each one dram, pouder of Diamargaritum frigidum, and Trion Santalon each half a dram. White Sugar dissolved in Bugloss water four ounces. Make al into lozenges of three drams apiece.*

Take *Oyl of Lillies, and of Cappars, Mucilage of Marsh-mallows drawn in bugloss water, each six drams. Wax a little.* Make *them into a Liniment.*

Item. Take *Gum ammoniacum dissolved in strong vinegar one ounce. Arthanita and orice*

orice roots, each half an ounce. Plaiſter de Mucilaginibus, and de Melilot, each one ounce. Make al into a plaiſter for his Spleen.

If the diſeaſe ſhal ſtubbornly continue, the inner veine of his left Arme muſt be opened, the next ſpring, if nothing diſſwade. His diet muſt be ordered of good and thin juice, which ſhal incline ſomwhat to coldneſs. For al hot things, are therefore moſt contrary, becauſe they whet this ſame black choler bred of yellow choler over ſcorched, they ſet an edg upon it, and by encreaſing the ſame alſo, do raiſe more grievous ſymptomes. Let him therefore avoid al ſalt things, and peppered things, and muſtard, and ſtrong wine, and unmixed wine: And let him chuſe things of a contrary nature to theſe.

The *XLVI.* Counſel:

Of letting Blood in caſe of the Itch.

The Letter of Mſr. Melinus *a Phyſitian, to* Mſr. Fernelius, *propounding the Queſtion.*

I Am not ignorant of the multitude of your Employments and troubles. For al that are troubled with any very grievous diſeaſe, do flie to you for help, as to an *Æſculapius*, or Terrene Deity: which thing would peradventure have ſcared another man from writing to you. But I who know the Fruitfulneſs of your wit, and how eaſy a thing it is for you to anſwer any queſtion propounded in the Art of Healing, do know alſo, That ſame gentleneſs of your manners; which gives eaſie acceſs to all in a manner: and therefore I would not ſuffer my ſelf to be longer vexed with that ſcruple, whereof I informed you in my laſt Letters. Which it wil be more eaſy for you to take out of my mind, than offer it to me to be taken out: which now I entreat you again and again, that you wil be pleaſed to do. The former Winter I fel into an ulcerous wearineſs, which came of it ſelf, which practitioners (if I miſtake not) do cal *Pruritus*. A while after I diſburthened my Liver and ſpleen with a gentle purge. Since that time, puſhes have riſen in ſundry parts, very dry, and ſticking very cloſe, which being ſcratched off, black and thick blood came out. At laſt a furunculus or felon riſing upon the lower part of my right Leg, as alſo an Herpes, or tetter, I was provoked in my mind to uſe ſtronger remedies. Whereupon I open a veine, and take away about three ounces of blood, and after the uſe of whey, prunes, tamarinds, and ſuch like things, I purged twice or thrice luſtily, with Catholicon, Senna, Confection Hamech, ſometimes adding Rhubarb. By which meanes and a few topicks, I was cured. Yet about eight daies after, the former bloodletting, I again opened my baſilica veine, and took away about two ounces of blood. But the Chyrurgeon which *Claudius Lavallus* Embaſſador from the moſt Chriſtian King, had ſent for to pleaſure me, and the Phyſitians, were of opinion, that I ſhould loſe much blood. Their reaſon was this: my blood is very bad, and my age and ſtrength are in their prime, or not much declined: moreover they daily uſed ſuch a kind of blood-letting, and that with good ſucceſs. But I following the Mind of *Galen* in his fourth Book of preſervation of Health, where he diſcourſes of Ulcerous wearineſs coming of its own accord, of the Itch and Scabbineſs; I maintained that I was to loſe very little or no blood at al; and that for revulſion ſake rather than evacuation. For thus he ſaies. *When there is a coming ſhort of blood, or a proceeding beyond the ſame, a man may boldly let blood*: which place of *Galen* I thus interpret, when the blood by under or over boyling is either crude or cholerick, then there is no danger in large evacuation thereof. But there were none of thoſe ſigns in my urine, which *Galen* a little before ſaid were arguments of crudity. Moreover, the laſt winter foregoing, I did eat for the moſt part only once a day: therefore that ſmal crudity, could not perſwade me to draw much blood. Moreover my blood is not cholerick, or defiled with black choler: which is argued both by my temper and Age which is now declining, and the color of my whol body which is yellowiſh lead-colored; alſo my by-paſt labors, cares, and long ſtudies, and therefore I ought not to bleed. For *Galen* alſo preſently adds to the ſpeech foregoing; *Where there is more we muſt act more warily; where there is very much, in ſuch we muſt not let blood at al.* And by and by after, he ſaies like-wiſe: *It is good alſo to view the quantity: as for examples ſake; if there be little*

good

good blood, and of the reſt of the Juyces very much; verily, in ſuch perſons, we muſt abſtain from blood-letting. But if other Humors are little in quantity, and blood plentiful, we may boldly let blood. This ſaying of *Galen*, has wonderfully afflicted me, to this very day. For when blood comes away impure, thick, black, or otherwaies faulty, moſt Phyſitians and Chyrurgeons are wont to take away a great quantity: but when it is pure and florid, they ſpare it: unleſs there be over plenitude in the Veins, becauſe dayly experience does ſhew 'tis good to let blood in that caſe. And therefore either there is now another way of curing an Ulcerous wearineſs coming of its own accord, than there was in the daies of *Galen* (which indeed is true, if we conſider what *Galen* has written of indifferent friction, that which is ſtow, and that which is interrupted with pauſes, alſo of baths, anointings with Oyl, and other things of that Nature.) Or elſe men that are ſeated far from the Æquinoctial Circle can endure more blood-letting, than thoſe that inhabit nearer the ſame.

But I am not ignorant that you are wholly taken up with ſundry and weighty imployments: but I know withal, that if you pleaſe to beſtow a quarter of an hour upon me, you may without any trouble to your ſelf, free me from this trouble, and explain this doubtful Queſtion.

The Anſwer of Mſr. Fernelius, *to the Queſtion propounded.*

You are fallen accidentally into a ſubtile and hard doubt, which has tortured wel-nigh al Practitioners underſtandings. Now this is ſtarted out of the writings of *Galen*, whereof there is ſo great variety, and in them ſo little conſtancy, and for the moſt part ſo many diſcords, that hardly any man has yet been able to underſtand his mind in this point. But neither he himſelf, if I am able to judg of the queſtion in hand, had ever any ſetled and reſolved judgment in his mind: as being a Man that ſpent al his life in ſtudy and Meditations, rather than in finding the right method of practice and exerciſing the ſame. I ſhal not here play the interpreter, nor endeavour to reconcile the ſayings of this Author, which are diametrically oppoſite one to another: but what I have rooted in my mind by long experience, I ſhal at your requeſt briefly open in a few propoſitions, which wil take this ſcruple quite out of your mind. Al plenitude of the Veſſels, is to be cured with blood-letting. For a plethora which is properly ſo called, is only cured by this remedy: but an impure, conſiſting of much bad Humor, though it may be after ſome ſort abated by purgation, yet can it not be ſafely nor ſpeedily done. But immediately upon the opening of a vein, the dangers attending by reaſon of plenitude, are preſently avoided, without any dammage to the ſtrength of the Patient. And therefore as oft as you meet with a wel conſtituted body, with large veins ſwelling with much blood, you may boldly open a vein: and if the blood ſhal ſeem pure, take away the greater quantity, but if it be impure take away the leſs, letting that out at ſeveral times rather than at once. A dangerous plenitude being removed, the reſt of the impurity and Cacochymie may be taken away by purging. But when there is a ſmal quantity of impure Humor in the veins, which they cal *Cachochymia ſine plenitudine*, a Cacochymick or badneſs of humors, without their aboundance, it requires not blood-letting, but purging. For the latter takes away the offending bad Humor; but the former removes not only the bad humor, but al humors alike, and takes away plenitude where there was none, to the great decay of the patients ſtrength. But then does blood-letting moſt harm, when badneſs of juyce is contracted (as for the moſt part it is) through fault of the Spleen or Liver, as in the jaundice, a Cachexia, a Leucophlegmatia. For blood being taken away, though impure, yet there comes impurer in the place by much. This I ſuppoſe is enough to anſwer your queſtion, which point nevertheleſs I have debated more largely in a work of mine. Al that you bring out of *Galens* fourth Book *de ſanitate Tuenda*, is agreeable to what I have ſaid. Thoſe opinions that differ, do build upon that which *Galen* ſaies, in his third Book *de Locis affectis*, of the parts affected. How that in Melancholy the middle vein in the left Arm is to be opened, and that good ſtore of blood muſt be let out, if it be black and thick, but it muſt be ſpared and ſtopped if it be pure and thin, and that which he ſaies in the 11. of his Method, that it is exceeding wholſom in al Feavers cauſed by a putrefied humor to let blood. And becauſe in the firſt Book of the Art of Phyſick to *Glauco*, he permits blood-letting in a quartan Ague; and in this Book of blood-letting he cures Diſeaſes

ariſing

ariſing from a Cacochymia as wel as thoſe which ſpring from fullneſs, by blood-letting. But I have confuted theſe things, and eſtabliſhed the former opinion, in a little Book which I cal, *de Vacuandi Ratione*. I cannot enlarge, being variouſly taken up with buſineſs.

The XLVII. Counſel.

Containing the Cure of a Cachexia, or Ill-habit of the whol Body, for Mſr. Malvenda, *Chaplain to the Emperour,* Charls *the fift.*

THere is a very great mixture of the Symptoms propounded, yet ſuch is their order and connexion, that I conceive they are al in a manner derived out of one and the ſame fountain. The heavineſs of his Head, the noiſe in his right Eare, ſuffuſions and darkneſs of his Eyes, and a Vertigo or diſſineſs and ſwiming of his head beginning; an unability to ſit conſtantly at his Study, are al ſigns and ſymptomes of an Head and brain ill-affected. And the perſeverance of the ſymptoms, and continuance of the whol Diſeaſe, do argue that in this Gentleman, it is not only by ſympathy and conſent of the lower parts, that his Head is affected, but by a diſeaſe proper thereunto, and bred immediately therein: ſeeing it muſt needs be, that the Head ſhould in time be altered by the habit and humor of the lower parts, and partake of their faults. But nevertheleſs, hard and ſlow digeſtion, frequent making of water, ſtomach-ſickneſs, light fainting fits, do belong, and are to be referred to the ſtomach rather; and eſpecially the upper mouth thereof; wherein ſome ſence alſo of pain is perceived, if one touch the ſame. Whence it is (doubtleſs) manifeſt, that the coats thereof are ſtuffed with many, and thoſe naughty Humors. There are alſo no few ſigns of an il conſtituted Liver, which being exceeding hot, has been many years diſpoſed to breed Choler. Which ſomtimes breaks out with vomiting, and cauſes fainting fits; and getting into the mouth, it commonly cauſes bitterneſs: and the ſame humor being ſomtimes kept in, and putrefying, it has cauſed ſuch Feavers as we have heard. By abundance of the ſaid Choler growing thick, and of Crudities, his Liver was firſt obſtructed; and at laſt al the ſubſtance thereof ſoaked with bad humors, and raiſed into a tumor, and if it continue ſo long without Remedy, it wil turn to a Scirrhus.

I make the Liver, therefore, to be the firſt Fountain of his Malady, out of which being ful, the naughty humor redounds into the Spleen, Sweat-bread, Meſentery, and Stomach, and other neighboring parts, whoſe ſwelling, which may be felt with the hand, is hereby known to proceed from plenty of humors, becauſe he is very much purged by ſtool, with a very ſmal Medicine. Now theſe parts being thus diſpoſed, ſeeing not only the Head, but al the reſt of the body, is in a languiſhing and ſickly condition; a Cachexy wil come at laſt, and after it a Dropſie, if you take not diligent heed. Theſe are the Evils which I foreſee; but which may be nevertheleſs prevented, as al the Diſeaſes already bred may admit of Cure in time. Now a gentle and light Cure muſt be applied, that by little and little, and with much time and leiſure, it may pluck up what has been long in rooting. Alſo exceeding great Care muſt be had of his Diet, and meats muſt be choſen of good juyce, ſuch as have few Excrements, and do not much fill, but may in ſmal quantity preſerve the Body in ſtrength, that by their uſe Nature may not be diſtracted, and called away from her concoction of bad humors. Let him eat there ſuch fleſhes as are tender and ſoft, as thoſe of young Beaſts, and of Birds, which haunt the Mountains and Thickets, and not the Waters. Let them al be roaſted rather than boyled, and ſauced with Capars, or ſuch like ſawce. Let him refrain broaths and ſuppings, and whatever things fill much. Alſo fiſhes, unleſs thoſe of firm fleſh; and yet their hard Roes will do no hurt. Al Fruits are bad, ſaving Dates, Almonds, and Marmalade of Quinces: theſe he may uſe to ſhut up his Meals. Let him drink wine that is white, ſweet, and not harſh, ſuch as is your Rheniſh wine, that is neither pitched nor brim-ſtoned. His wine muſt be allayed with much pure water, that in a ſmal quantity it may aſſwage his thirſt, and not encreaſe the Heat of his Liver. It wil be ſufficient for him to eate twice a day, but in ſuch rule and meaſure, that neither the meat burthen his ſtomach by the weight, nor his drink cauſe fluctuation

and

and belchings. For this Counsel wil preserve his strength, and neither encrease it, nor the bulk of his body, but rather extenuate the same, that so a portion of the vitious Humor may be withal exhausted, and the ramainder prepared for future Evacuation. And 'twil be therefore good for him to endure hunger and thirst, and to omit suppers. Morning frictions and moderate exercises, when he is fasting, wil be good, which also spend somwhat of the body, and provoke the Natural heat to action. Let him sleep moderately, long after meat. This course of life must exactly be followed, and to an hair, til his body be perfectly cured. And if he shal accustome himself thereto longer, his health wil be more firm and constant. Now the cure which is to be performed by medicaments must be thus ordered. Let him frequently take Clysters, which in an Emollient and detersive Decoction, shal have half an ounce of Diacatholicon, with a fit portion of Honey and Sugar. Also the self same day let him begin with his Clysters, and the fore going order of life. The day after, the crude and superfluous Humors, which fluctuate, in the stomach, first passages, and belly, shal be purged with this following Medicament.

Take the expression of two drams and an half of choice Rhubarb, infused in Ciehory water and white Wine, with half a dram of choice Cinnamon. Therein dissolve Syrup of mints, half an ounce. Make of al, a dose. Give it at six a clock in the morning. The daies following the rest of the Humors must be concocted and prepared, and that by an electuary rather than by a Syrup, or an Apozeme. In Imitation of *Galen*, who in such Diseases as these, and in the winter, gave pouders rather than Liquours.

Take Shavings of Ivory poudered; Aromaticum Rosatum, of each two scruples. Pouder of Triosantalon, and of the Electuary Lætificans Galeni, of each half a dram. White Sugar dissolved in four ounces of Rose water. Make al into Tables or Lozenges weighing three drams apiece. Let him take one in the morning, and one before Supper, and continue the use thereof long, if not interrupted with other Medicines. And in case somtimes, he shal be forced to drink betwixt meals, thereby to quench his thirst, seeing neither water, nor prisan, nor beer is good for him; nothing is more excellent than Oxymel, either made by *Galens* prescription, or of a Decoction of Parsly and Fennel Roots, and a little Hyssop. After eight daies use of this course of life and of these preparatives; purge him gently the second time, with the following Syrup, which we have thus accommodated to that purpose.

Take Roots of Cichory, Sorrel, Grass, Parsley, Fennel, Cappars, Polypody of the Oake, Carthamus Seeds, Raisions clensed, of each half an ounce. White Hore-hound, Agrimony, Ceterach, Maiden-hair, Bugloss, Borrage, of each one handful. Annis-seed, Endive, Seed of Dodder and Musk-Melons, of each two drams. The three Cordial flowers, of each one pugil. Make a Decoction to fifteen ounces. In the strained liquor infuse four ounces of Senna, white agarick, two ounces, white Ginger two scruples. Choice Cinnamon half an ounce. After a smal boyling, press al the Liquor out. Wherein dissolve fifteen ounces of white Sugar. Make a Syrup perfectly boyled, adding at the end of boyling, the expression of an ounce of choice Rhubarb, only infused in Endive water and white Wine. Let him take one ounce and an half at a time in barley water.

With this Syrup he must purge every eighth day, augmenting or diminishing the dose, as need shal require. In the intermediate daies, if peradventure his belly shal be costive, 'twil be better to move the same with these pils than a Clyster.

Take the best Aloes, choice Rhubarb, of each two drams. Aromaticum rosatum pouder one scruple: with Syrup of Mints make al into a soft Mass. Let him take two pils, an hour before meat.

After he has been purged the second or third time, for the more effectual preparation of the rest of the Humors, which are wont to be both more earthy and more stubborn than ordinary; besides the electuary and Diet aforesaid, First a fomentation wil be good, which Molifies those, which wil soften, melt, and make fluid the said Humors, and by al means possible open the obstructions of the Bowels, preserving their strength. Now it shal be made after this manner.

Take Roots of Marsh-mallowes, Cichory, Elecampane sliced, of each half an ounce. Red-Roses, Balaustians, Agrimony, Mints, Wormwood, Chamomel flowers, Dil, each one handful and an half. Annis-seed Lineseed, and Fenugreek seed, of each half an ounce. Squinanth. Cyperus, Calamus Aromaticus, of each three drams. Make of al a little bag, and

boyl

boyl it in a pint of water, adding towards the end white wine two pints. Make a fomentation thereof for his ſtomach and Hypochondria, to be applyed in the morning and before ſupper with bread and new ſpunges, ſqueezed out, and heated three or four times over.

His belly being liquid, clean, and dry, this plaiſter wil be good to lay on.

Take *Ointment of Marſh-mallows two ounces; Ceratum Santalinum, and Ceratum ſtomachicum, each one ounce and half. Mix them together, and ſpread thereof a plaiſter on leather. Apply it after fomentation is over.*

The *XLVIII.* Counſel.

Touching a Chachexia in one of Burgundy.

BLear eyednes, dullneſs of ſmelling, ſtore of ſpittle and flegm proceeding from the mouth, ſwelling of the Legs towards night, are ſigns of extream Crudity abounding in the whol body. Which being accompanied with the Livers heat; as appears by the heat of the patients hands and feet: it argues a cachexy very near at hand, and peradventure a dropſie alſo; which having ſo manifeſt rudiments and beginnings in this flouriſhing age, when he comes to decline and grow old they wil bring him to his end: they muſt therefore be oppoſed with al poſſible care and diligence. And in the firſt place let his Diet be pure, and let him abſtain from Inwards, and Tripes, and Feet of Beaſts; and from much Fiſh, and Cheeſe, and all clammy roaping meats; and for about two months let him uſe no ſupping things. Let him avoid glutting himſelf, nor let him eat ſo greedily as he has been accuſtomed. He muſt by al means live more temperately, and pine himſelf, whatever come of it, and omit his ſuppers. And let his wine be little and temper'd wel with water, and let him commonly uſe ſuch as is white and thin. Let him uſe frequent and ſtrong exercile: which if he cannot perform, let him ſupply the defect therof with a thin diet. Nor can diſeaſes which have been long a gathering in the body be cured by diet alone, unleſs the uſe of ſome gentle medicaments be added. Now theſe following wil be moſt fitting for his condition.

Take *roots of Smallage, Parſly, Fennel, Cappars, Polypody of the Oak, Carthamus ſeeds, Rayſons, each half an handful. Hyſſop, Origanum, Calamint, Maiden-haire both the kinds, each one handful. Ceterach, Hops, each one pugil. Seeds of Annis, Endive, Dodder, and Melons, and Liquoris ſhaven, each two drams. Senna four ounces, Agrick two ounces, Ginger one dram. Choice cinnamon half an ounce. Boyl them a little, then preſs forth the Liquor, and in the ſame diſſolve fifteen ounces of Sugar. Make al into a ſyrup perfectly boyled. Let him take once a week two ounces, mixed with a little white wine.*

In the interceeding daies, when haply his belly ſhal be bound, both to looſen the ſame, and to purge and ſtrengthen his ſtomach, let him uſe theſe pils.

Take *the beſt Aloes two drams. Choice Rhubarb one dram. Aromaticum roſatum halfe a dram. Syrup of Wormwood as much as ſhal ſuffice. Make al into a ſoft Maſs. Let him take two pils thereof or four at a time, one houre before ſupper without Cuſtody or obſervance to keep houſe, &c.*

On the daies in which he purges not, an hour and an half before meat let him take a table or Lozenge of Aromaticum roſatum, both to reſiſt crudities and help the digeſtion of his meat. For the fretting or eating that is in his lower gum, which is laſt of al deſcribed, mix, Ginger pouder one ſcruple. Burnt Allum one dram; Honey of roſes one ounce; Herewith, as with a liniment rub his gum very hard, twice or thrice a day.

The *XLIX.* Counsel.

For the Cholick and Pain in the Back-bone, in behalfe of a German Noble-man.

AS these pains are most grievous, and hard to cure, which do so cruelly torment this renowned Gentleman: so I perceive there is doubting touching their cause, and the place affected, about which the renowned Physitians cannot agree. For though the pains are spred far and neare, yet we must think there is some primary and peculiar seat thereof, whereout it breaks into other parts. This controverted question, being thereto intreated, I shal briefly discuss, that the seat of the pain being known, some proper remedies may be fitted and applied thereto. In the first place therefore, his Urines being good both in substance and color, and like to such as are natural (save that by continual lying of the patient they are somwhat yellowish) without any gravil or flegm, does shew that the Cause of the pain, does neither belong to the ureters, nor the kidneys. Nor verily has the pain propounded the appearance of a Nephritick pain, nor was it ever known that a pain continued in the kidneys three yeares together, without the coming away of any matter. Nor can this pain be any waies referred to the spleen, Liver, or Mesentery, because these parts have little or no sence, and that very dul. But as touching the Guts, whose sense is very great, I see some reason to doubt, especially because in the left Hypochondrium by the Gut Colon, a croaking noise is heard, as also in the whol belly; and because the pain is unsettled, running sometimes into the right, otherwhiles into the left side, and because it gets sometimes into the right stone, and for that the belly seems much blown up and distended. And al these symptomes grow worse when his belly is bound. Contrary wise, when the wind breaks out, or he goes to stool, his belly falls, pain ceases, til new wind be raised. These are (I confess) cleare arguments of a certain pain arising from winds shut up, and imprisoned in his guts, which has both a fomenting and peculiar cause there, viz. thick, clammy, snotty flegm, sticking close to the Guts, especially the Cæcum and Colon, such as has been often observed in this patient, to come from his belly, either by it self or with the excrements. Being therefore by these reasons induced, I cannot but confess that one Cause of these pains is thick and clammy flegm sticking fast to the thick Gutts. But this, verily, I count the slighter and smaller cause, and only concomitant and attendant on a greater. For as this pain is of many sorts intangled, so is the seat and cause thereof manifold. For besides that pain which is like the Cholick, and comes from wind and flegm in the Gutts, another and more principal springs from the part of the Back which is next the Heart, and from the loines, out of which, it is both diffused into the Muscles of the Epigastrium or part of the belly above the Navil, and there is no smal suspition that it reaches as far as the vertebræ of the back-bone. From this so great variety of causes, I conceive the difficulty of the cure has arisen. And therefore the pain which goes along his back and Loines, and reaching from thence for the most part into the sides, and also into the fore parts of the belly, and straitly binding the whol body as it were with a girdle, does shew that al these parts are beset with the pain, & that the pain of the belly is the cause why it cannot be contracted & straitned so as to exclude the excrements. Moreover, credible it is that the cause of so far spred pains, has been some cold distillation, which if not out of the Brain, yet at least out of the head has fallen down into the Muscles of the back and Loines: And at first on the left side; afterwards on the right. Hereupon it crept afterward by reason of the continuation of parts into the Muscles and Membranes of the Abdomen. Peradventure some part thereof, has also insinuated it self between the spondyles or vertebræ of the back, as commonly it happens, when these Infirmities last long. Yet I must here advise you in regard of the premises to see and consider, whether or no the spina be in situation and figure according to nature or no? whether he can freely bend himself this way and that way, and whether the parts on each side the back bone, do feel any pain, when they are touched or prest some what hard? For I have had no smal suspition that his back-bone has been either dislocated or otherwise hurt, since the Gentleman our patient, upon the strong bounding of his Horse, felt his back-bone bent violently backwards, and prickt with a vehement pricking which strooke through his whol body.

The

The Prognoſtick.

Seeing there are two pains complicated, having different cauſes and ſeats, one belonging to the guts, which may be termed the collick, the other to the back-bone and Loyns: the removal of the former may, truly, be hoped, eſpecially if it be ſingle, without any Infection of the Guts themſelves. And that the greateſt of its cauſe may be the better eſtimated, I would have the whole region of his Belly felt, whether or no there is any preternatural hardneſs therin, remembring what I have ſeen and written, viz. How that many times in the guts thick and clammy flegme does grow together and harden, into the ſhape of a gut, and ſhut up the paſſage to the winds and dung. The Cure of the latter pain is more hard, and the event thereof is doubtful, eſpecially if by long continuance, it ſhal drive it ſelf deeper into the back-bone. Yet it wil do wel to endeavour the Cure of both, and to omit nothing which according to rules of art, may rationally be thought helpful.

The Cure.

In purging out theſe grievous pains, diet is of no leſs moment than phyſick; becauſe that it conſumes many ſuperfluities, which wil hardly give way to medicaments. Let therefore his diet be of good juyce, drying and attenuating, very ſpare; let him eat the fleſh of Capons, Pigions, Turtles, Partriges, little Birds, young Leverets, and ſuch like, and theſe roaſted rather than boiled. Alſo ſawces wil do wel, eſpecially with nutmeg, ginger, and a little pepper in them. Wine though it be thought to help by its heat; yet becauſe with its Vapor and thinneſs it ſmites the brain and Nerves, we muſt count it moſt hurtful in this caſe. That which is reddiſh, and lightly aſtringent, muſt be choſen rather than that which is white, and it muſt be allaied with much boyled water, wherein ſage has been ſteeped. If the gentleman our patient, is ſo coragious, that he wil perform al that has been ſaid touching diet by undergoing a Courſe with Guajacum, I have great hopes *that* would much further the Cure, and bring it to perfection. Yet are not ſweats preſently to be provoked, but a ſtronger decoction muſt be given in the morning and three hours before ſupper, inſtead of an attenuating Apozeme, and another ſmal one he muſt uſe at meals inſtead of wine. If in the progreſs of the Cure ſweat ſhal readily flow out, you muſt let it have its courſe, and gently provoke the ſame, and wipe it wel off. Every ſeventh or eighth day, ſetting aſide the Guajacum, he muſt take ſuch a like purge as this.

Take *Stœchados, Betony, Sage, Roſemary, Epithimum, each one pugil; Polipody of the Oake, leaves of ſenna cleanſed, each three drams. Make one decoction for a doſe. In the ſtrained liquor infuſe agarick trochiſked one dram and half. In the expreſſion diſſolve diaphenicon or diacarthamum one ounce*; Syrup *of Hyſop, half an ounce. Make of al a potion; give it in the morning four hours before meat.*

Al theſe things are Univerſals, nor muſt any evacuation be indeavoured by blood-letting, as which wil be in this caſe very hurtful. But the chief cure wil lie in topicks. And in the firſt place, to root up the colick pain, every day three hours after dinner, a clyſter muſt be adminiſtred, made after this form.

Take *Flowers of Chamomel Melilot, Dil, Rue, Origanum, Wormwood, Centory, each one handful; Anis-ſeed, Fennel-ſeed, Bay-berries bruiſed, each two ounces; Make a decoction; and in a pint of the ſtrained Liquor, diſſolve hiera ſimple, Honey of Roſes and Hony of Roſemary flowers, each one ounce. Oyl of Dil three ounces. Make a Clyſter, give it as has been ſaid. Sometimes inſtead of hiera ſimple you may diſſolve therein Hiera diacolocynthidos.*

And thus by way of exchange, the uſe of Clyſters muſt be augmented and continued, til the groſs phlegm of the Guts be quite purged away, which is the material cauſe of the colick, and til this paine falling down upon the belly and guts, ſhal manifeſtly abate. And when the guts ſhal be ſufficiently purged; that the vitious quallity which has been long contracted in them may be removed, and ſtrength reſtored, let injections be frequently made, of a pint and half of ſome generous red, or other aſtringent wine, and that without any water in it, and blood-warm. Wherein ſomtimes two drams of caſtor may be diſſolved, & afterwards they may be made pure,

and without Castor. Let these kind of Injections be long continued, for they wil do no hurt at al though they should continue in the guts, and not come away. By these remedies therfore I hope, that al the cause of the former pain wil be taken away. In this time of Cure, if pains or other Symptoms shal more vehemently be troublesome, let them be asswaged with such fomentations and other remedies, as have formerly been successfully used to that end. The cure of the latter pain, may then be successfully undertaken with topicks, when the former shal begin to asswage. Let stil continuing the diet with guajacum; for nothing hinders, but that the cure of both the paines may be undertaken and endeavoured at the same time. In the first place therefore, the sweat being wiped off, which now towards the end of the diet with Guajacum, wil breake forth; every morning, the whole region of his back-bone, his back, and Loins, must be fomented and anoynted with these remedies, which may cut and attenuate the impacted and deeply rooted morbifick matter, and by any meanes prepare the same. Make therefore a fomentation, of a decoction of Elecampane roots, of juneper berries, and Stoechados, of leaves of Betony, Sage, Laurel, Rue, Marjoram, Rosemary, Origanum, Calamint, Centory the less, al which must be boyled in simple water, adding towards the end three or four ounces of white wine. Apply it to his back-bone exceeding hot, with a piece of cloth or a long spunge, which must be steeped in the said decoction and squeezed out, and when by frequent repetition thereof, the place shal be wel heated, wipe it dry and anoynt it with this Oyntment.

Take Flowers of Stoechados, Rosemary, Lavender, and sweet Marjoram, each one handful. Saffron one dram. Bay-berries bruised one ounce. Pellitory of Spain, Ginger, Nutmegs, Cloves, Castoreum, each three drams. Reduce al to pouder. Mix them and poure on eight ounces of the best aqua vitæ rectified shining transparent Turpentine one pound. Put al up in a Glass allembick, and make a distillation with a slow fire. First receive the water, then the oyl, and keep it by it self for the use aforesaid.

If the use of a fomentation be not easie, and it cannot al reach the pained parts, change it into a bath to sit in, made of a like decoction, into which al the affected parts may be plunged. When by continuation of the foment and Unguent, in the mornings and before supper, for about five or six dayes, the humor should be thought sufficiently attenuated, six Cupping-glasses of a middle size on each side al along his back-bone, to the end of his loines, without any scarrification: or six great horns, which are frequently used among the Germans, that by their help, the humor or any other matter, may be forcibly pluck'd up from the lower parts and brought into the skins top. Let not these remedies be anoynted, til the pain of his back and loynes appeare to be mitigated, and al their motion be more free and Expedite. Or if peradventure, their continuance be molestful and grievous, let a resolving or discussing plaister be provided, such as may be made of the grounds of the former distillation to which gum ammoniacum and wax must be added, and incorporated in such a dose and quantity, as may seem requisite to the form of a Ceratum. These are therefore the remedies, by the administration and Methodical continuation whereof, the perfect Cure of both the pains may be hoped for, unless peradventure either his Back-bone be dislocated, or the pained parts at last corrupted by continuance of the disease. For when these things are so, there is none, or very little hope of health.

The *L.* Counsel.

To Facilitate Conception, for the wife of the Provost of Mariemburge. *Out of the French.*

THat I may propound a remedie for al these maladies declared by you to me; to the end you may obtain your wished desire, I have prescribed a syrup purgative compounded with extraordinary Art, which you are to use eight daies before the time of the breaking out of your courses, every other day, in three doses, two ounces or four silver spoon fuls at a time, in a like quantity of barly water, or allayed white wine, four hours before meat. And in the meane time you must keep house, and live soberly and temperately. And you must expect

the

the breaking out of your courſes, and uſe no other means, ſave that you may with white wine and water, or the uſe of ſome other opening drink, provoke the ſaid Courſes. When they are come and over, you muſt have this confection which I ſend you in a readyneſs, and take thereof four mornings together the quantity of a Cheſnut, four hours before dinner, and drink a little white Wine allaied with water after it. Which done, and having taken another doſe when you go to bed, you muſt receive into your womb the ſmoak of a pouder which I have ſent you, which you muſt caſt upon burning coals, and ſit over it, ſo covered that it may go up into your body as much as may be.

And theſe things being done, you muſt abſtain from all other Remedies, til the end of the Month: and then repeating the former Courſe, a little before the time of your expected courſes, you muſt uſe the Syrup and Electuary aforeſaid after the ſame manner, and ſo you ſhal continue doing, for four months together, from the end of winter to the beginning of the ſpring. But if you ſhal not obtain your deſired end, if you wil certifie me touching the ſtate of your body, I wil ſend you another kind of Counſel, which ſhal be moſt convenient for that ſeaſon. Let your Diet in the mean while be dry and of good juyce. If in the Intermediate daies, your belly ſhal be bound, or your ſtomach ſomtimes oppreſſed, it wil be good to uſe pils of Rhubarb, Agarick, and Aloes.

The Apozeme.

Take *Sage, Marjoram, Nep, Baum, Feaverfew, of each half an handful; Senna one ounce and an half. Boyl al to half a pint, adding towards the end, Agarick, half an ounce; choice Rhubarb three drams, Cinnamon two drams. In the expreſſed liquor diſſolve Syrup of Maiden-hair, one ounce and an half. Make a clarified Apozeme; indifferently boyled.*

The Fume pouder.

Take *Nigella, half an ounce. Storax, Benjamin, Florentine Orice, of each three drams. Cloves, Maſtich, of each two drams. Mix them.*

The Electuary.

Take *Eringos Roots, one ounce. Seeds of Nape, Onions, and Bulbus, of each three drams. Pellitory Root, half a dram. Ginger one dram and an half. Roots of Biſtort or Snake weed. The Reins and Tailes of the Scincus, of each half an ounce. Syrup of Mug-wort or de Artemiſia, as much as ſhal ſuffice. Make al up into an Opiate or Electuary.*

The LI. Counſel.

For a Woman troubled with fits of the Mother.

A Woman of ful and ripe Age, had for many years been without the company of a Man: by which means it came to paſs, that her ſeed being collected and retained beſides the courſe of Nature, did putrefie, yea and attained a Maligant quality, ſuch as both the courſes retained, and any other Humors putrefying in the womb are wont to acquire. Whereupon, filthy and Malignant Vapors being raiſed into the upper parts, cauſed gripings and rumbling noiſes in her belly, with pain, after that, ſubverſions of her ſtomach, belchings, Hiccupings, and ſundry vomitings. But when they oppreſs her midrif and Lungs, her breath is ſhort, with wheezings and rottling; or if the ſaid Vapors ſmite her Heart, ſhe fals into palpitations of the heart, or ſwowning fits. But if the Vapor creep up into her brain and mind, ſomtimes it cauſes fits of the Falling-ſickneſs, otherwhiles raving, ſomtimes darkneſs of her Eyes, and interception of her other ſenſes, and otherwhiles other Symptomes of her animal faculties ſeize upon her.

Take

Take Hyssop, Horehound, Nep, Baum, Saint Johns-wort, Betony, Mugwort, Feaver-few, of each one handful; Roots of madder, and of Peony, Misseltoe of the Oak, polypody of the Oake, Carthamus seeds, each half an ounce. Flowers of Rose-mary, Sacbados, of each two pugils. Seeds of Peony and Lovage, of each one ounce. Parsnep seed two drams. Senna three ounces. Make a Decoction to nine ounces, adding towards the end, Agarick, one ounce and an half; Ginger one Scruple. In the strained liquor poured out, dissolve nine ounces of Sugar. Make it into a Syrup, duly boyled, and when it is boyled, add the expression of half an ounce of choice Rhubarb, infused in Betony water. With spicknard and Cinnamon, of each one scruple. Let her take thereof every third or fourth day.

In the intermediate daies, let her use a Decoction of Lignum Sanctum, and use her self to it by little and little. And at first let her use at meales a Decoction made only of three or four ounces of the wood, to four ounces of water. You may boyl Raisons of the Sun there if you please, with Sugar and Cinnamon. When three daies are over, give her a stronger Decoction morning and Evening, two hours before Supper, with some of the ingredients of the Syrup Boyled therein. Let her Diet be indifferent, of a middling Nature. Apply great Cupping-Glasses without Scarrification to the inside of her Thighs. It wil be good likewise to Rub her Thighs and Legs to draw the course of the Vapors downwards. Make fomentations and Vaporations of some of those things in the Syrup, adding penyroyal, Origanum, Calamint, Rue, and Sabine. Make pessaries of Hiera Picra, and juyce of Mercury leaves. A little Cochy pils may be added or Bindweed Roots, or wild Cucumer, that by them the filthy superfluities of her womb that cleave fast thereto, may be drawn away. If these things shal not succeed according to our desire, let an expert Midwife at the coming of the fit put her Finger noynted with Oleum nardinum or Muscellinum into the Neck of her Womb, that either by tickling the same, she may provoke the putrified sperm to come out, or may extend the Neck, which in the fit (as *Galen* saies) is very much drawn upwards. If you would purge her womb more forcibly, when her fit is over make injections of a Decoction of those Herbs which I mentioned in the fomentation, adding Agrimony, Wormwood, or also a little Aloes. And to prevent the fits before they come, give her a potion of waters of Nep, Bawm, & Cichory, sweetned with Sugar and Cinnamon, or a dram of parsnep seed, she may take in the said waters, or in Feaver few water. And seeing the greatest part of her fits come from her womb, make a Cataplasme of Ferne, Lovage, Worm-wood and Hyssop, boyled and steeped in equal portions of red wine and water, wherewith her whol belly may be covered, or 'twil be better to go round about her, and to bind it fast on, that it may repress the ascent of Vapors. Sweet smels must be applied to her privy part, and stinking to her Nostrils.

The LII. Counsel.

For a Woman when with Child, and in Child-bed, being sick in her Womb.

A Woman of an indifferent fleshy habit of Body, of a middle Age, having an hot Liver, a cold stomach, is wont to be taken with fits of the Mother, privation of sence, and convulsion as it were, together with pains of the Cholick. She was likewise troubled with a Semi-Tertian Ague two months when she was with Child. At last she was brought to bed. She could not go to stool, without the help of Art: also great store of flegm came away with her stools, and sometimes of it self: She did not sweat, nor voided any Excrements of her Brain, nor did any thing come away in her Urins. The question therefore is, what Cure is to be used, that she may not again be troubled with those Chollick and Womb pains.

The

The Anſwer of Mſr. Fernelius.

It muſt needs be a very great cauſe, which vexes the Patient with ſo many and ſuch grievous Symptomes; and I judg it to be twofold. The former is in the firſt Region of her body, Viz. In her ſtomach, Guts, Meſentery, and hollow part of her Liver. For theſe parts are filled and obſtructed with thick Excrementitious flegm, which is the cauſe of her ſo long coſtiveneſs. For ſomtimes it grows together in the Guts, eſpecially in the Colon, out of which we ſee it ſomtimes drawn, by force of a biting Clyſter. Hence therefore proceed the Cholick pains, which poſſeſs the whol Region of her belly. The other cauſe is in the beat of her Liver. For it breeds much Choler: which becauſe it cannot be voided forth by the natural paſſages, becauſe of obſtructions, it flows with the blood into the whol body. And that ſome of it is ſhed into the ſtomach, appears by her vomitings, in which bitter and Cholerick Excrements do ſomtimes come away after the Flegmatick. This Choler in a flegmatick body breeds a Semi-tertian Ague, which ending by ſweat, leaves behind it Ulcerous or Flegmonous wearineſs. For the blood of her great or leſſer Veins, which are in the habit of her Body, is not at al purged, but is defiled with flegmatick Choler, which is the Cauſe of theſe wearyneſſes.

The Intention of the Cure, is to purge her body of theſe Excrements. You muſt therefore prepare the flegm with Oxymel wherein Hyſſop, &c. is boyled, with an eight part of Vinegar and a fourth part of Honey. Alſo apply an extenuating and emollient fomentation to her Belly. Let her take every day a ſharp Clyſter, wherein diſſolve Hiera Diacolocynthidos and Diaphœnicon, each half an ounce, with honey. Somtimes give her a gentler Clyſter, to ſoften the dung and to make her Guts ſlippery. Once in a week give her a potion, made of Rhubarb, Hiera ſimple, and Diaphœnicon. For Diaphœnicon is neceſſary to bring away thick and tough flegm, and without it, Rhubarb wil not avail. Let her uſe at meals thin Wine allayed with water, and betwixt meals a Decoction of Guajacum, or Wormwood, with Wine and Water. When her firſt Region ſhal be cleared, the ſecond and third muſt alſo be freed, with Remedies not much unlike the former. Howbeit, I do not think it neceſſary to revel the humors out of the habit of her Body into her belly, but that this Region is to be clenſed by ſweating, with a ſtrong Decoction of Guajacum, or other mixt Remedies. Let her Diet be dry and extenuating, wherein let her abſtain from al moiſt things. Her whol body being wel clenſed, her womb wil be cured. But if nevertheleſs ſomwhat ſhal ſeem to remain therein, it may be removed, either by a ſuffumigation, a peſſary, or other things accommodated to that end.

The *LIII.* Counſel.

Touching a Legitimate Birth.

COncerning a Child born on the two hundred and ſecond day after Marriage, ſeeing it was perfectly ſhaped, and likely enough to live, a doubt and queſtion has been raiſed; Whether or no it were not conceived before the time of Marriage, and ſo had fulfilled the compleat time of nine months? Secondly, Whether a Child born within ſuch a compaſs of daies, is to be judged a ſeven months birth, and of a juſt and good Age?

To the former Queſtion, Mſr. Fernelius *anſwers.*

That the Age of a new born Child cannot by any ſigns or tokens, certainly be known; and Abortive Children which come before their time, are ſomtimes to be ſeen compleatly formed and perfect; other whiles they have no Hairs, Nails, Lips, nor Eye-brows, their Ears being hardly ſeparate from their Heads. Whereas I have likewiſe ſeen an Abortive Birth, forty daies old, as big as half a Finger, with al its Members diſtinct; and ſomtimes I have ſeen one in the third month, repreſent a rude and undigeſted Lump; the Cauſe whereof is, the variety of the ſeed, and the ſtrength or weakneſs of the Formative Faculty which is therein.

The

To the latter Question he Answers.

That a Child born in the two hundred and second day, is to be counted a seven months Birth. For *Hippocrates*, and the Ancient Greeks, both Phylosophers and Physitians, who diligently searched into this matter, were unacquainted with the Roman Months; for they measured them, as the Hebrews did by the course of the Moon: and a month consists of twenty nine dayes and an half, which is the ordinary space betwixt two Moons. According to this Computation of the Year, which must be principally and punctually observed, in the going of a Woman with Child, in the Decretory, or Judicatory daies; in a word, in al Medicinal Observations, this Child, touching which the Question is moved, was born on the twenty fist day compleat, of the seventh month. Nor is it necessary (that it might be counted a seven months Birth) for it to abide in the Mothers Womb seven months compleat: and seven daies over or under break no squares, in this way of Account. For so *Ptolomæus*, and other most renowned Astrologers, have delivered in their Writings, viz. That the forces of the Stars which govern us, do not consist in a moment, but are contained within these Limits, and therein have power to work their Effects. And that a Child born in the seventh month wil live, besides that it is celebrated by the Authority of *Hippocrates*, and al Physitians, I have likewise by long Experience observed the same to be true. The Reason whereof must be demanded of the Astrologers, who place the first month of Conception under the Dominion of *Saturn*, and the seventh under the power of the *Moon*, which bestows life and strength upon all Living Creatures.

The *LIV.* Counsel.

In the Case of Hæmorrhoids.

THose Hæmorrhoids by you described, which flow without pain, are blind and inward: and I conceive none of them is to be seen outwardly. And they, seeing they have been very long accustomed, viz. twelve years, to flow liberally, they ought not by any means to be quite stopped, least those Inconveniencies should follow, which *Hippocrates* mentions and fears. But seeing at this time their immoderate running does weaken the body, and very much cool the Patients Liver, by which means the Jaundice, and perhaps a Chachexia, does now appear, and shew it self at hand: it seems not only profitable, but very necessary to stop them. Yet so that every third or fourth month, somwhat may be suffered to run.

They may profitably be stopped in this Constitution of our Patient to me described, not by revulsion with blood-letting from the Arm, or by Cupping Glasses fixed to the Hypochondria; not with Pouders, Electuaries, or Potions which are astringent; but with these very light Remedies, which wil do the deed, I question not. And therefore, if any Purgation shal seem necessary, none wil be fitting but what shal be made of Rhubarb.

Take *Waters of Roses, and Lambs-tongue Plantane, of each one ounce. Infuse therein four scruples of Rhubarb, one scrupie of choice Cinnamon. In the strained Liquor dissolve choice Rhubarb poudered, two scruples; Syrup of dried Roses half an ounce. Make a Dose.*

Take *Plantane, Knot-grass, Red Roses, Balaustians, of each one pugil. Make a Decoction in Milk. In the strained Liquor dissolve Bole-Armeniack, Bean meal, of each one ounce and an half. Make a Clyster in form of a Pultis, which he must keep a long time: and it must be repeated, twice, thrice, or four times, if the first shall not sufficiently stop the Flux.* If you would have it more compounded, ad thereto Dragons blood.

Also 'twil be good externally to apply a Cataplasm to his Fundament, of the best Bole-Armeniack, which must be dissolved in Vinegar, with Lambs-tongue Plantane, and the white of an Egg; or in juyce of Plantane and Knot-grass. Which things wil be likewise good in a Clyster.

In

In courſe of Diet, 'twil be good to avoid ſtrong Wine, and very thin; and al meats that inflame the blood. He muſt eat ſparingly, leſt his ſtrength now much impaired, ſhould be oppreſſed with too much food, and that blood encreaſe not too faſt upon him. He muſt avoid vehement Exerciſe, Anger, Sadneſs, and Sorrow, and whatever things inflame and agitate his blood and ſpirits.

The LV. Counſel.

Concerning an Exulceration of the Kidneys, and Urinary Paſſage, with a fleſhy Knob growing therein.

THis Gentleman is troubled with two Diſeaſes, which are very near of kin one to another: The one is an Exulceration of his Kidney; the other is a light Exulceration of his Yard or Urinary Paſſage, with a fleſhy Knob growing thereto. That one, or both his Kidneys are exulcerated, is known by his Urine, which is white, thick, and matteriſh, in which the matter or quittor is ſeen to ſettle in the bottom. Alſo becauſe the laſt Summer, after vehement Exerciſes and Labors, he voided bloody Urines. For then the Ulcer was bred, and that (as I conjecture) by a ſtone fretting his Kidney, which a few months before, grew in his Kidney. Now the Ulcer being grown fouler, inſtead of blood, there comes quittor. The ſigns of the Ulceration of his Urinary paſſage, are, that ſame heat and ſharpneſs which vexes him when he makes water, and in that many months before he had been vexed with the foul and virulent Gonorrhea, which is wont to exulcerate this paſſage. And that to the Ulcer ill cured there grows a fleſhy Knob, is known by the difficulty of his making water, which comes away in a ſtream no bigger than a very ſmal thred, and becauſe ſomtimes his Urine is quite ſuppreſſed. To cure theſe intangled Diſeaſes perfectly, is no eaſie matter. An Ulcer of the Kidney does hardly ever heal, becauſe it is a Spermatick part: and the Fleſhy Knobs which grow in thoſe parts, are with great difficulty, and very hardly cured. Yet ſomtimes a Purgation does good, either of Caſſia alone, or ſomtimes with an addition of Rhubarb. The day after, two drams of waſhed Turp entine wil be good. Alſo to ſup in the morning, a Decoction of Marſh-mallow Roots, and Red Vetches, with Honey or Butter, wil cleanſe the Ulcer in his Kidney. Hydromel ſimple wil do the ſame, if either he drink it to quench his thirſt, or take a draught at the beginning of his meals inſtead of Beer. I do not approve of more vehement Remedies. The fleſhy Knob muſt be rooted up, by frequently thruſting in a Catheter, that by the roughneſs thereof, ſome portion of the ſaid Knob may be gradually worn off: for this kind of Cure is ſhort and ready. Which nevertheleſs, if the Patient cannot endure, a Wax Candle muſt be thruſt in, which wil dilate the paſſage, and flatten the Knob. And it may ſomtimes be ſmeared with a pouder, which wil both conſume the Knob, and ſodder up the Ulcer; ſuch as is this following.

Take *Cuttle bone, Tutty prepared, of each two drams: burnt Harts-horn, waſh'd Aloes, of each one dram: burnt Allum half a dram. Make them into a pouder. Let him uſe it dry, or mixt into the form of an Oyntment, with Honey of Roſes.*

Alſo frequent Injections will be good, of compounded and diſtilled Allum Water: ſuch as is uſual in this caſe.

Take *Crude Allum two ounces: Juyce of Plantane and Purſlane, of each a pint: Roſe and Plantane Water, of each three ounces: beat all together with the whites of three Egs. Put them in a Glaſs Alembick, and diſtill them with a ſlow fire.*

In theſe contumacious Diſeaſes, there needs great Diligence, Conſtancy of Mind, and length of time.

The *LVI.* Counſel.

Concerning Mattery Urine coming from the Kidneys.

THat Urine which we perceived to be made thick and white, is truly mattery: For upon ſetling, white, ſmooth, and even quittor, is ſeen in the bottom of the Urinal; which is a ſign of an Impoſthume, or an Ulcer. Which nevertheleſs is neither in the Yard, nor in the Bladder, nor in the Ureters. But ſeeing it is without any ſence of pain, we thereby gather that it is in the Kidneys alone. And from them pretty large ſtones, and bloody Urine have often proceeded, which did then declare that an Ulcer was cauſed by the grating of ſtones upon the Kidney. And now that which comes away, is ſordid and purulent. A perfect Cure is hardly to be hoped for, and diligent heed muſt be taken, that the quittor be not ſtopt nor kept in; for by that means redounding and flowing back into other parts, it becomes the Cauſe of grievous Symptomes. The beſt way will be gently to purge the Ulcer, and to procure a continual and free paſſage for the quittor. Let him therefore abſtain from al vehement motion of his Body, and exerciſe; from ſalt, hot, and biting things, leſt the Ulcer be exaſperated. It wil be good for him to uſe Hydromel for his Drink, eſpecially to make his firſt draught thereof, and ſometimes inſtead thereof, a Decoction of Barley wil be good. Afterwards let him uſe theſe following Medicaments.

Take *The Pulp of caſſia fiſtulæ ten drams, with ſugar or Electuarium diatragacanthi frigidum, make it into a bolus. Let him take it on a choſen day, two hours before dinner.* Or thus.

Take *Pulp of caſſia new drawn ſix drams; pouder of rhubarb one dram; With ſugar make them into a bolus.*

Item, Take *cleare Venis turpentine two drams and half. Waſh it in water of roſes or of winter cherries. Let him take it the day after his purgation, out of a ſpoon, with ſyrup of Maidenhair.*

When his belly is bound, or his kidnies burthened, on other dayes give him this clyſter.

Take *Of the foure emollient herbs, chamæmel, melilote, and Dill, each one handful. Seeds of anis, Line and Fenſgreek, each half a dram. Make a decoction in to a pint. In the ſtrained liquor diſſolve Hiera picra ſimple and diacatholicon, each five drams. Honey of roſes, red ſugar, each one ounce. Oyle of violets three ounces.* Make al into a *Clyſter.*

When the Moon is in the wane, three or four mornings together, let him take of this Decoction.

Take *Red vetches three ounces; marſh-mallow roots one ounce. Tops of coleworts one handful. Boyl al to half a pint. In the ſtrained liquor diſſolve two ounces of the beſt clarified hony. Let him ſup it up.*

The *LVII.* Counſel.

For Pain in the Kidney. Out of the French.

THat you may prevent the Pain of your kidnies to which you have been long ſubject: in the firſt place you muſt avoid al groſs and obſtructing meates, from ſwines-fleſh, Beef, and Veniſon, eſpecially when they are ſalted. Alſo from al fiſh that have no ſcales, and which breed in muddy waters; from beanes and peaſe and al cruſts, dough-baked bread, Cheeſe, and al raw fruites; alſo from black and thick wine, and that which is rough or ſweet. But you may eate of light meates, and ſuch as are eaſie of digeſtion, as the fleſh of yong creatures roſt or boyled. Let roots of parſly or Fennel, be boyled in your broathes. Alſo ſometimes, but ſeldomer, they may be made with Cappars, Aſparagus, and hops. Alſo you may uſe ſallets of burnet, ſaxifrage, garden Swines-creſſes, and other like herbs, wel ſeaſoned with oyl and vinegar. Drink white wine rather than Clarer, eſpecially which is high colored, not ſtrong,

but

but thin and weak, and indifferently allayed with water; not neglecting the Care of your whole body. Eat and drink ſoberly: for fullnes is dangerous, in this and other diſeases. It wil be ſufficient to eat thrice a day. And at breakfaſt it wil be good to eare oftentimes new butter with bread untoaſted or toaſted, and to ſprinkle ſugar upon it, and drink white wine after it. If you can ſometimes ſwallow certain bits of unſalted butter, they wil help both your belly and kidnies. Alſo broaths made of the foreſaid roots wil be good; nor wil it hurt you, an hour after ſome ſuch kind of food, to exerciſe your ſelf moderately, for the ſpace of an hour, and to do ſo likewiſe before and after ſupper. 'Tis not good to ſleep in the day time, nor in the night to lie on your back, nor heat them internally or externally, either with bedcloathes, or the fire.

But beſides theſe rules, ſome particular medicaments wil be good, and in the firſt place I have preſcribed a pouder, a ſpoonful whereof is to be taken two hours before broath, either alone, or in white wine, and that once a week, eſpecially when you are coſtive. But there is nothing wil do you more eminent ſervice, than if ſix dayes before the laſt Quarter of the moon, you ſhal take this Clyſter.

Take *Roots of Marſh-mallows one ounce; Roots of Elecampane half an ounce. Mallows Violet leaves, pellitory of the wal, betes, Mercury leaves, each one handful. Flowers of Chamomel, Melilote, tops of Dil, each one pugil. Seeds of Anis, Fenel, Carway, and Cumin, each three drams. Make of al a decoction. In a pint of the ſtrained liquor diſſolve biera ſimple ſix drams; diaphœnicon three drams. Honey of roſes two ounces. Oyl of chamomel and Dil, each one ounce and half. Make of al a clyſter. Take it in the morning, when you riſe from bed, on the day aforeſaid.*

The day following, a purging Potion wil be good, made after this manner.

Take *Pellitory Water two ounces: Infuſe therein choice Rhubarb three ſcruples: beſt Cinnamon half a dram. In the Liquor ſqueezed out, diſſolve the Expreſſion of two ſcrupies of Agarick trochisked, in Betony Water infuſed: Diaphœnicon one dram: Syrup of Maiden-hair half an ounce. Make all into a Potion for a Doſe.*

The day following, take a Clyſter. And the daies being over, wherein you are to reſt; on the fourth, fift, and ſixt daies, which wil be the three laſt of the Moons courſe, you ſhal take every morning three or four hours before meat, one dram of the Mas of Pills, which I have preſcribed for you, made up into five pils. Or if the bitterneſs be not too troubleſom, diſſolve it in white Wine; nor need you keep your bed therefore.

Take *Choice Gentian Root one ounce; reduce it into very fine pouder; of which, with Syrup of Maiden-hair, make a ſoft maſs of Pill-ſtuff. Wrap it up in Leather, and keep it in a box for the uſe aforeſaid.*

Theſe three daies being over, which are the laſt of the ſix aforeſaid, it wil not be amiſs, if you pleaſe, to make a Decoction of Vetches, and Marſh-mallows, which I formerly advised, and to drink it four or five daies together. In the mean ſpace you muſt keep an exact courſe of Diet, according to what has been formerly ſaid, and al the foregoing Remedies muſt be repeated neer the ends of three months one after another, if you look for a perfect and compleat Cure.

The *LVIII.* Counſel.

For a Duke of France *troubled with the gravil in his Kidneyes.*

THe voiding of Gravil in Urine, and the beginning of the ſtone in the kidneyes, in a conſtitution of body very cholerick, and the blood whereof being thick and earthy, is for the moſt part over ſcorched; ought thus to be prevented; ſeeing thick and clammy blood is the matter that breeds the Gravil, and the heat of the Liver and Kidneys is the efficient cauſe by burning the ſaid blood and ſo turning the ſame into Gravel and Stones. He muſt keep a cool and moiſt diet, which does withal ſcour and moderately extenuate, without manifeſt heat. The fleſh of Chickens, Pigeons and Veal, boyled with lettice, Marſh-mallows, Mallows, or French-barley, and the broath thereof taken in the morning is exceeding good, and ſometimes barly cream with Sugar. And at other times he may eat fleſh roaſted or boyled, and ſteeped

or dipped in the juice of Lemons; which if it be not to be had, juice of ſour grapes, or of Sorrel, and ſometimes vinegar may ſupply its place. Let his wine be thin and weak and very wel tempred with water. For many profeſs they have been cured of theſe Infirmities, by abſtaining from wine and drinking only water. To rub the back and Loins in the morning, alſo ſtrong exerciſe, and riding on a trotting horſe, diſlodges the Gravil and Stones, and ſuffers them not to grow together in the kidneyes. Howbeit, inaſmuch as diet alone cannot ſufficiently prevent this diſeaſe, ſomtimes he muſt alſo take phyſick, which being moderate in heat and dryneſs, may bring away the morbifick cauſe by ſtool, and temper the heat of the kidneyes, and bring away the Gravel by urine, with eaſe. Now they muſt be compounded after this manner.

Take *Roots of Butchers-broom, Aſparagus, Graſs, Marſh-mallows and Parſly, each half an ounce. Clary, Betony, Burnet, Saxifrage, Pellitory, Maidenhair, each one handful. Seeds of Baſil, Parſly of Macedonia, Gromwel, Broom, Burdock, Mountain Oſier, Liquoris ſhaven, each two drams. Raiſons ſtoned, polypody of the oake, each one ounce. Make a decoction to fifteen ounces. In the ſtrained liquor infuſe, new cordial flowers, each two pugils, Senna leaves three ounces, agrick two ounces, White ginger two ſcruples. Let them boyl a little, and then preſs out the Liquor, and diſſolve therein one pound of white Sugar. Make al into a ſyrup perfectly boyled. Let him take every tenth day one ounce for a doſe with barly water, or a decoction of Annis-ſeed.*

Of the ſame ſimples, the purgers being left our, make another ſyrup, which he muſt take in the mornings of the intermediate days mingled with barly water, to purge his kidneys. I allow not the uſe of Turpentine, becauſe of the heat of the patients liver, whereby it wil be eaſily inflamed. If haply he ſhal loath the frequent uſe of the ſyrup, inſtead thereof let him uſe this Electuary.

Take *of the four great cool ſeeds cleanſed, Liquoris ſhaven, each one ſcruple. Seeds of burnet, baſil, Parſly of Macedonia, Nutmeg, each half a dram. Aromaticum roſatum two ſcruples. White Sugar diſſolved in winter cherry water three ounces. Make al into Lozenges or tables, weighing three drams apeice. Let him take one in the morning, three hours before meat, and drink after it a little tempered wine.*

Let his Kidneys in the ſummer time be cooled with this fomentation.

Take *ſtilled waters of Lettice, Water-lillies, and Roſes, each three ounces. Vinegar two ounces; Mix them. Foment his kidneys therewith morning and evening blood-warm.*

In the winter this following Liniment wil be more convenient.

Take *Oyl of Violets, water-lillies, and roſes, waſhed in vinegar and roſewater, each one ounce. Mucilage of Marſhmallows drawn in pellitory water, ſix drams. A little wax. Make a Liniment to ſmeare his kidneys morning and evening.*

If peradventure his kidney-pains ſhal returne, give him ſuch a clyſter, as that by me preſcribed. Which being come away, apply a fomentation to the part pained, of the decoction of the bags preſcribed. And if this ſhal not do the deed, apply a large cupping-glaſs to the part pained, without ſcarification. And if neither by this means the pain grows mild, let fitting Cataplaſmes follow, and bathes to ſit in, whoſe power to aſſwage pains is moſt effectual.

The *LIX.* Counſel

For the Strangury.

THis ſame Strangury wherein the Patients Urine is ſaid to come away troubled and impure, with very great pain, whether the ſetlings at laſt be matteriſh, or ſnotty and flegmatick, is neither cauſed by the Crudity of the Stomach, nor by that flegm, which has been wont to fal into his Joynts. For ſo thick a redundance of Excrement could never flow from the upper parts through the Kidneys (being ſound) into the Urinary Paſſages. Seeing therefore his Kidneys are not known to be as yet diſeaſed, it muſt of neceſſity be, that this impure matter comes either out of the Bladder, or out of the Yard and Spermatick Veſſels; and that conſequently, either there is a ſtone in the Bladder, or an Ulcer in the Yard, and the Neck of the Bladder. And becauſe theſe Infirmities have ſome ſigns common to one as wel as another, we

muſt

muſt ſeek for proper ſignes to diſtinguiſh them by: nor muſt any peculiar cure be undertaken, til it be certainly known which of theſe Diſeaſes it is. And therefore we muſt obſerve whether the patient feel any ſence of weight in his Perinæum or ſpace betwixt his Cods and Fundament, which troubles him in his going? Whether he be not ſometimes pained in his Fundament, with a deſire to make water and go to ſtool? Whether his Urin come away in a ful ſtream? Whether it be not ſtopped in the middle of its courſe? For theſe are ſure ſigns of a ſtone, eſpecially if the patient have been at any time troubled with a pain in his Kidneys. But if none of theſe ſignes have appeared, you muſt ask him, Whether or no there comes not filthy ſtuf ſomtimes from his Yard without ſenſe, and when he makes not water? If before or after the ſwelling of his Teſticle, the ſick-man have been at any time infected with the virulent Gonorrhæa? Whether his water come away in a ful ſtream, or like a ſmal thred as it were? If in the erection of his Yard, or when it is handled, either any pain or Tumor is perceived; for then is a filthy and Fiſtulous Ulcer in the Neck of the Bladder, or in the paſſage of the Yard it ſelf. And that the conjecture which is taken from theſe ſigns, may be ſearched out and confirmed by the Judgment of ſence, a Catheter muſt be gently thruſt in, that ſo the immediate and continent cauſe may be more certainly known.

The place affected being at length known, and the proper original of his Malady, peculiar Remedies muſt be accomodated thereunto, and ſuch, as 'tis hoped, wil do him good. And if any demur ſhal happen, his pain in making water, muſt be aſſwaged with an emollient fomentation, or ſuch as ſhal aſſwage pain, applied to his privy parts, and ſomtimes with a fomentation of lukewarm Milk. Alſo with an Oyntment, which is of the ſame faculty, the part muſt be lenified, and by an injection of the Mucilage of ſeeds of Fleawort and of Quinces, drawn in Plantain water. Alſo the Actimony of his Urine muſt be mitigated, with Syrup of violets, of Marſh-mallows, of Lemmons, or other cooler, and with wine very much allayed, if the ſtrength of his Stomach wil bear it.

The LX. Counſel.

For an Ulcer of the Sphincter of the Bladder. Out of the French.

THat we may apply Remedies to an inveterate Ulcer, and which has contracted a Callus, which by certain ſigns, and by the catheter, is found to be in the bladder of the Patient, without any fleſhy Knob: in the firſt place the part underwritten muſt be three or four times a day fomented with Mollifying and pain aſſwaging fomentations.

Take *Roots of Marſh-mallowes, and lillies ſliced, of each two ounces. Mallows, Violets, Pellitory, Water-creſſes, Origanum, Calamint, Wormwood, Flowers of Chamomel, and Melilote, of each one handful. Line-ſeed, and Fenugreek ſeed, of each one ounce. Put them in a bag, and boyl it in water and white wine. Foment therewith his Yard and Perinæum, three or four times a day. After this fomentation has been continued five or ſix daies, omit the ſame two daies, and then purge his Body with Caſſia and Rhubarb after this manner.*

Take *Caſſia Fiſtula new pulped, ſix drams; Rhubarb very fine poudered, four ſcruples; with Species of Electuary of Diatragacanthum, make al into a Bolus. The day after his purgation let him take Venice Turpentine thus prepared.*

Take *clear Venice Turpentine, waſht in Roſe and Pellitory water, two drams. Then he muſt returne to his former fomentations for three or four daies, or til the foreſaid Ulcer be ſoftened and aſſwaged.*

Then with a ſmal ſyringe this Decoction underwritten muſt be ſquirted in, to the part affected, three or four times a day.

Take *Red-roſe leaves, Plantan, Barley, Wormwood, of each one handful. Centory the leſs, half an handful. Make a Decoction to a pint. Diſſolve therein Aloes, two drams; Myrrh, one dram; Ariſtolochia, half a dram. Make of al an Injection.*

The Ulcer being by this means wel ſcoured and clenſed, that it may be more and more dried, make an Injection of an Aluminous water made after this manner.

Take

Take *Raw Alum four ounces; juyce of Plantane and Purſlane, of each eight ounces; ſtir them al together and diſſolve them with the whites of three raw Eggs; and then put them in a Glaſs Limbeck, and ſtil them.*

And that the Ulcer may afterwards be covered with a ſcar, and cloathed with Skin, this laſt injection muſt be uſed.

Take *Plantane water, one pound. Diſſolve therein the white Trochisks of Rhaſis with Camphire half an ounce. Make thereof an injection.*

Or inſtead of Trockisks, make it after this manner.

Take *Litteridg of Gold, Ceruß, Bole-Armeniack, of each two ounces; with the Plantane water make an injection.*

In his Diet he muſt abſtain from ſalt and ſpiced meats, ſtrong Wines, and other things which make the blood thin. In their ſtead let him uſe cooling broaths, Prunes, and other meats which engender moderate blood. Sometimes betwixt meals and during the time of his Cure, it wil be good to drink one draught of Hydromel wel boyled, or of Barley Water.

The LXI. Counſel.

For making of flegmatick Urine.

A Certain man did render thick Urine and troubled, wherein there ſetled flegm thick and clammy. He was troubled with extream pain and Heat while he made water. His maſter thought, it was becauſe he had a ſtone in his bladder, but the Chyrurgeons uſing their Inſtrument did not perceive any ſtone. It did therefore follow that it proceeded from the weakneſs of his bladder. For the Cure whereof theſe following Remedies were preſcribed.

Take *Polypody of the Oake, an ounce; Roots of Ruſcus, or Butchers Broom, Aſparagus, Graß, and Fennel, of each half an ounce; Agrimony, Ceterach, Dodder, Pimpinel, Betony, Clary, Saxifrage, Wallrue, Maiden-hair, of each one handful. Seeds of Aniſe, Melons, Burbock, Parſly of Macedonia, Liquoris ſhaved, of each two drams. Make a Decoction to twenty ounces. In the ſtrained Liquor infuſe four ounces of pickt Senna, white Agarick, two ounces; Gummy Turbith, half an ounce; Ginger, two drams. Boyl them a little together, and ſtraine and ſqueeze out the Liquor, and therein diſſolve white Sugar, one pound. Make a Syrup prefectly boyled. Let him take every tenth or fifteenth day, an ounce and an half, or two ounces; for a doſe, with a little portion of Pellitory water.* Alſo,

Take *the beſt Aloes, half an ounce; choice Rhubarb, two drams and an half; Agarick, trochisked four ſcruples; Pouder of the Dukes Electuary two ſcruples. Make of al a ſoft maß with Syrup of Marſh-mallows. Let him take one dram at a time in five pils, without obſervance of keeping Chamber, &c.*

On other daies, when either his belly is bound, or flegm troubles him.

Take *the four greater Cool ſeeds, Seeds of Baſil, Burnet, Saxifrage, Parſly of Macedonia, of each one dram. Choice Cinnamon, Nutmeg, of each half a dram. Diarrhodon Abbatis, one dram. White Sugar diſſolved in Pellitory and Clary water, ſix ounces; make of al Lozenges, or tables, weighing three drams apiece. Let him take one in the morning, at leaſt three hours before meat, on the daies in which he takes neither Syrups nor Pils.* Item.

Take *Roots of Marſh-mallowes, Elecampane, Juniper berries, of each one ounce. Centory, Origanum, Wormwood, Chamomel, Melilote, Dill, of each one handful. Seeds of Annis, Fennel, and Fenugreek, of each half an ounce. Make of all a bag. Let it boyl in a ſufficient quantity of Water, putting thereto in concluſion a quarter as much white Wine. Foment therewith being hot, his ſhare, Privities, and Perinæum.*

If this be not enough, let the Flegm be made thin and melted. Of the ſame Ingredients a Bath may be made to ſit in, wherein being hot, let him ſit up to the Navil.

The

The LXII. Counſel.

For unvoluntary letting go of the Urine, Hypochondriacal Melancholy, and Inflamation of the Leg.

THe Diſeaſe which has been largely and clearly unfolded, although by a various mixture and unuſual concourſe of Symptomes, it ſeems to be very obſcure and new; yet if we ſhal more deeply ſearch into the force and Nature of the ſigns, both wil become apparent, and the cauſe of the Diſeaſe wil be found by compariſon of other Diſeaſes. The Cauſe of theſe Symptomes is not one ſimple Diſeaſe, but comparing and weighing their Natures, we ſhal find three Diſeaſes intertwiſted. The one is an inflamation of the Legs returning by fits. For redneſs and heat are ſigns of an inflamation, which they term *Phlogoſis*. Yet it cannot be counted an Eryſipelas, ſeeing it does not poſſeſs the Skin alone, but the fleſh under the ſame, and the whol part ſwels into a great bulk. It remains therefore that it is a Flegmonous inflamation of the Legs. The immediate and continent cauſe whereof is thin and fervent blood, which offends the part not only by its redneſs and heat, but alſo by its immoderate quantity. Which being not confined to one place, it does not cauſe that ſort of Phlegmon, which at laſt ends in an Impoſtume; but being equally diffuſed al the Legs over; it cauſes a Phlegmonous Tumor, which Continues ſo long, til that fervor of the blood being repreſſed, it is al either manifeſtly or inſenſibly diſſipated and exhaled. Now this blood flowes down from the whol body, but eſpecially from the Bowels, and out of al the Veſſels, wherein at certain periods of time it is wont to be collected and to ſuperabound, and that by means of the natural conſtitution of the patient. For ſeeing both his temperament and habit of Body, his Diet and courſe of Life, do argue him to be ſanguine and apt to breed much blood, it happens at certain ſet times, that his whol body is ſurcharged with blood. Which becoming troubleſome and burthenſome to Nature, it is either by Nature driven, or fals of its own accord, out of the veins into the Legs, being by ſome means or other become weak. Even as in thoſe that are of like Conſtitution, it breaks out in ſome at the Noſe, and in others by the Hemorrhoid veins, and in others by other waies. And the very truth is, unleſs in this Gentleman the Patient, this ſuperfluity of blood did fal into his Legs, he would be in danger, either of ſudden choaking, or of the breaking of a vein: ſeeing we ſomtimes hear of great quantities of blood vomited up, nor without the opening or breaking of a vein, which comes either from the Liver or other neighbouring parts and places into the Stomach. Now that this flux of blood into his Legs, comes from the whol body and al the veins thereof, it plainly appears by ſuch things as we are informed do happen at the beginning of the fit; viz. heavineſs of his whol body, a diſtending wearineſs, ſhortneſs of breath, Head-ach, working and burning of the inward parts, Anxity of Mind; al which are Symptomes of ſuperaboundance of het blood.

The other Diſeaſe which troubles the ſick Gentleman, is Melancholy, the Companion of Inflamation, and that kind of Melancholly, as I conceive, which we cal Hypochondriacal. For the pain which is wont to ſettle on his left ſide, under the ſhort Ribs, and the Palpitation of thoſe parts reaching as high as his left pap, Anxity of mind, Sadneſs, Solitude, variety of troubleſome dreams, duſneſs of underſtanding in adminiſtration of affaires, and in diſcourſing, with weakneſs of memory: are ſigns which cannot be referred to any thing but black Choler, whoſe vapors gliding into the Heart and Brain, are wont to cauſe ſuch Symptoms as theſe and far worſe. Seeing a very great heat of his inner bowels and Humors, has continued ſo many Years; it can hardly be, but that a very great quantity of yellow Choler is burnt and turned into black choler, which being ſent into the Spleen its proper receptacle, it ſhews the force of its Malignity.

His third Diſeaſe is the involuntary going away of his water, which happens commonly in his ſleep, ſo that he never perceives it. Nor is this any effect of the Inflamation or Infirmities aforeſaid, nor need he to fear hereafter ſuch a painful making of water, as has formerly tormented him: but the cauſe of this paſſing away of his water, is the hurting of the

Sphincter

Sphincter Muſcle, which cloſes the Neck of the Bladder: for by putting in of the Catheter, it is ſtretched and torne, by which occaſion, alſo much blood came away. And being thus hurt, it cannot perform its office of ſhuting the bladder. And ſo much for the knowledg of his Diſeaſes, and their cauſes. The premiſes therefore conſidered, a perfect cure may be hoped for of all theſe Diſeaſes, provided the patient in this flouriſhing age wherein he is, and in the height of his ſtrength be ſo diligent as is requiſite.

The Method of Cure.

The laſt Diſeaſe of Involuntary making water becauſe it is very ſingle, and he voides no filthy matter with his Urine, it may be Cured only by aſtringents and ſtrengthening things. Such are the fomentation of his Privities with roſes, Balauſtians, Plantane, Pomgranate peels, and ſuch like things, boyled in ſmiths-forge water. And alſo Plaiſters of the ſaid materials, and of metallick ſimples, as Litharidge and Alum, Bole-Armeniack, and Maſtich, made up with Myrtle Oyl, and Vinegar. And if theſe things externally applied, do not help, they muſt be injected with a Syringe, that they may touch the part affected. For ſo their uſe wil be found much more effectual.

The other two Infirmities becauſe they are in ſome ſort complicated, and the one is the effect of the other, there is in a manner one and the ſame Cure for both. That ſame inflamation of his Legs coming by fits, may poſſibly be hindred and cured, only by obſerving a good Diet and courſe of living. But the Melancholy infirmity requires ſome Cure. Therefore, to puriſie his blood and whol body, every fift or ſixt day purge him with a Syrup made of juyce of Bugloſs, Borrage, Fumitory, Hops, Sorrel, and ſuch like, adding to every pound of the juyces four ounces of Senna, and half an ounce of Cinnamon, and a pound of Sugar. The doſe whereof muſt be two ounces tempered with Whey. If he ſhal be much troubled with Melancholy Symptomes, give him on the daies between his purging, the like Syrup made without the Senna. Alſo preſcribe him an Electuary of the *Species Lætificans Galeni*, *Diambra* et *de Gemmis*, made into Lozenges with Sugar diſſolved in Buglois water. Uſe no ſtronger purge, nor open hereafter any Vein, unleſs ſome greater neceſſity ſhal happen. But the Hemorrhoide Veins may ſafely and very profitably be opened, if they happen to ſwel, or are fuller than ordinary, and apparent in any meaſure; and that either with a Lancet or Leeches, or Medicaments. Add hereunto ſuch a Diet as may breed good, thin, moderately cold and moiſt juyce, namely ſuch as al men commend in the caſe of Hypochondriacal Melancholy. Now the cure of the Inflamation of his Leg returning by fits, does chiefly herein conſiſt, viz. That he live ſparingly, and with a thin Diet, pine himſelf with hunger and thirſt, and keep his blood and Humors in a moderate quantity, ſo as not to burthen and trouble Nature. Let him therefore uſe meats of good juyce, cold and moiſt, and of indifferent Nature, and let him eat leſs by half than he has been accuſtomed to do. Let him (if the ſtrength of his ſtomach wil give leave) abſtain from Wine two or three months. And inſtead thereof let him drink either ſmal beer, or water ſeaſoned with Cinnamon, or a Decoction of Guajacum. If alſo he procure himſelf to ſweat, and make his body more open, I conceive it wil do him very much good. In the whol courſe of his life, let him ſhun ſtrong wine, ſurfetting and ful feeding. For al the hope of his cure does conſiſt in a cooling and ſpare Diet. I do not approve of their judgment that would have him drink Aſſes milk, becauſe milk in an hot and Cholerick conſtitution is ſoon corrupted, nor does the patient fal away in his fleſh. Much leſs do I like of the uſe of Baths; becauſe they by melting and diſſolving the Humors cauſe fluxions: now his body is afflicted with divers defluxions already. Now that the Humors may not hereafter ſo readily fal into his Legs, it wil be good to ſwath them very cloſe with ſwath-bands, or with ſtockins which are with us made of dogs leather for the ſame purpoſe.

The

The LXIII. Counsel.

For the Gonorrhœa, and the Gout.

THis Gentleman is troubled with two diseases, the Joynt pain, and the Gonorrhœa. The latter is newly befallen him, being onlie of three months durance, without sharpness of urine, without any ulcer or difficulty in pissing. The former is more old, which did this year grievously trouble him, and six yeares since gave a testimony of its Intentions to visit him. 'Tis a wonder truely, that this pain at the very first coming should seize all his Joynts alike, and leave behind it stony knobs in his fingers, hand, wrist, and other places. This is a signe of a most grievous Gout to come, which wil in a few yeares catch the whol man and bind him with fetters and manacles, unless it be in good time prevented. Which he foreseeing and fearing, does implore help, which because I cannot afford him, in this my wandering and unsetled condition of following the Court, I thought fit to commit him to your care, that you may in his Cure follow that way and method which you have sometimes seen me use. And that you may in like manner accommodate your cure to the virulent Gonorrhœa; in the first place you shal give him a clyster, which shal have in it hiera simple, and diaphenicon, each half an ounce; honey of roses and rosemary, each one ounce, &c. The Day after purge him with a medicament of rhubarb and agarick, each foure scruples, infused in waters of hatany, endive, and white wine, each one ounce. In the strained liquor, dissolve electuary of diacarthamus one dram & half; syrup of maidenhair half an ounce. The third day give him two drams and an half of Turpentine, with syrup of maden-hair out of a spoon, four houres before meat. The fourth day let him rest. On the fift day, he must begin the diet with Guajacum; and he must have a double decoction, the one strong of half a pound of the wood and two ounces of the bark, adding about the end of the decoction, Elecampane, polipody of the oak, and Carthamus seeds, each one ounce. And let him use it twice a day, three or four hours before meat. The other must be weaker, made only of the wood, which he must use at meales instead of wine. His diet must be in the mean time spare, attenuating and drying. If his belly be costive, provoke it with a clyster. On the seventh or eighth day, let him be purged again with such a like medicament. After his purgation first of al apply topick medicines to his head, as little bagges of seeds which may more effectually provoke the sweat. And when the sweat is wiped off, let him use every day errhines, first weaker, then stronger. When the humors of his head shal seeme for the most part dissipated, you shal apply such medicaments to his neck and back-bone, which I know you have copies of, written down. And for the stony knobs on his Joynts, certain plaisters which you may remember I prescribed at large for Mr. *de Chauvigne*. When by the continuance of these remedies, you have quite cured al the joynt paines and the knobs, and pluckt up the disease by the roots; in the last place his joynts must be strengthened with medicines provided to that end: of which likewise you have good store. But before the cure come to that forwardnes, I hope I shal see you again. If by these remedies the gonorrhœa shal not be quite rooted up, such things must be conveyed into his yard as wil dry up the reliques thereof. The materials whereof, if need shal be, I wil hereafter set down more at large. Mean while, during the cure, the immoderate heat and working of his kidnies, may be represt by anoynting the same with oyl of lillies, and roses, washed in plantane water, or with oxymel, rose water, plantane and night shade waters, each two ounces; Vinegar one ounce. Wherein also if necessity require, dissolve two drams of trochisks of camphire.

The *LXIV.* Counsel.

For a Rupture of the Guts. Out of the French.

TO cure the disease propounded; first the patient must keep his bed at least twenty daies together, and lie upon his back, and stretch or stir his body very little, especially his legs,

nor vex his mind with wrath, or other passions, nor laugh or cough. In the mean while he must live soberly and temperately, with meates neither windy nor moist; and endeavour that his belly be neither swoln nor dryed, and to have every day a stool by nature or by art with a glyster or suppository. First let his body be purged with the medicament here underwritten: which also may be repeated after fifteen or sixteen dayes are over.

Take *Of the four emollient Herbs, origanum, calamint, Wormwood, Chamomel, Melilote, Dil, each one handful. Seeds of annis, Fennel, each half an ounce. Honey of roses, and rosemary, each one ounce. Oyl of rue and dil, each one ounce and half. Make of al a Clyster.* Item.

Take *Great and middle comfry, roots of Osmund royal, each half an handful. Leaves of senna clensed three drams. Make a decoction for one dose; in the strained liquor dissolve choice rhubarb poudred one dram and half, Syrup of dryed roses six drams. Make al into a potion.*

On the first four daies of the Cure, let the tumor be fomented, as hot as he can endure, with a spunge indifferently moistened with this following decoction: and five or six times as hot as he can suffer he must cover the pained part lying on his back and bind it with a bolster and cloather between, with swath-bands, viz. in the morning, and at one a clock in the afternoon. Let the fomentation be this that followes.

Take *Roots of marsh-mallowes, dwarf elder, and fresh orice, each two ounces. Mallows, Violets, Pellitory, water-cresses, Wormwood, Origanum, Calamint, Centory, each one handful. Seeds of Fennel, Line, and fenugreek, each one ounce. Make of al a decoction in water sufficient to make a fomentation.*

After four dayes you shal again foment his rupture with the bath which I have given you wet with red wine and heated over the fire. And after eight daies more dip the second bag in a Lie made of smyths-forge water and oake ashes. After which bags applied twice a day, the bolsters and swathes must be again used. Which things being performed, he may for two months abstain from other remedies, excepting a truss fitted to his rupture. Also let him forbeare al straining himself either on horse-back or on foot. On the fourteenth day of the Cure he shal take a quantity of this following pouder out of a spoon, in the morning, and eveing an houre before supper, and continue the use til he be perfectly cured.

Take *of the myrobalans Indian, and Chebulan, each one dram and half. Water Cresses, Porslan, Plantane, Sumach, each half a dram. Red coral, bloodstone, amber, each one scruple. Choice cinnamon foure scruples. Sugar of roses four Ounces. Make al into a pouder.*

The LXV. Counsel.

For Pains of the Hip, and other Joynts.

THis young maid is troubled with many and grievous infirmities, of al which there is one original and one fountain springing from her Head. An old œdematous swelling, which she was troubled with in her younger yeares, and frequent and unseasonable washing of her Head, have left a cold distemper and weakenes thereof, which perpetually gathers plenty of cold excrements. By these meanes a cold flegmatick humor was collected and abounded of old, and fel into the kernels of her Neck like the kings evil, and not many yeares since rushing into the right side of her body, it besieged the joynts of her neck, shoulder, Hip, thigh and leg. Nor does it trouble only the external parts of her body, but it has lately set upon the inner parts so great a defluxion falling upon her lungs, as caused not only a cough, but wheezing and a troublesome shortnes of breath, whence it is apparent, that the cause of al her troubles is a cold and flegmatick humor, which occupies wel neere al the parts of her body; and that the first original thereof is from her head. Unless her strength be much decayed, some hope there is of cure, especially now in the flowre of her age, and the approach of the spring. Many things have been by rules of art prescribed for her, wherewith she has been eased, but by reason of the length and stubbornes of the disease she

can

can as yet receive no perfect Cure: and that makes me ſuſpect the fountain of her diſeaſe is not yet drawn dry. But that there is a frequent defluxion of rhume, both into her lungs and joynts from her head, which nouriſhes this long infirmity.

The cheif ſcope of the Cure muſt be, to cleanſe the Head of excrements, or that ſuch as cannot be hindered from breeding, may be derived through the noſtrils, or digeſted by the power of topicks. Wherefore every tenth or twelfth day according to her ſtrength, purge her with a potion or pils, which may be able ſtrongly to draw from the diſtant parts of the body. Her hair being cut off, every morning and an houre before ſupper, fry in a frying-pan ſeeds of aniſe, fenel, carway, cumin, bay beries, millet, and ſalt, and put them in a little bag, and lay it on her head as hot as ſhe can endure it, until the heat pierce inward, or the ſweat run down her face. When it is taken off cover her head with tow heated and ſmoaked, with a perfume by you preſcribed. After this apophlegmatiſmes wil be uſeful and errhines, at firſt ſuch as are mild, and without hellebore. And that her body may not be too much ſhaken by the violence of sneezing 'twil be ſufficient to add to three ounces of juyce of Betony or ſweet Marjoram, two drams of orice, and a dram of root of bindweed. Let al her neck be compaſſed with a plaiſter three fingers broad, which is made of two ounces of maſtich, and one ounce and half of the plaiſter againſt ruptures. Let her by any means forbear lying on her back, but lying on her belly is good for her, becauſe it enclines the rhume to her noſtrils. Let her diet be drying and extenuating, avoiding al ſuppings, fiſh, and imoderate drinking; let her eat roaſted fleſh, drink very ſparingly, and endure thirſt. The uſe of al theſe remedies muſt be ſo long continued til the head of the patient be freed from heavineſs and pain, and may be on al ſides handled, without trouble to her. And when about twenty dayes are over that both the reliques of the diſtillation and the humors, which have fallen both into her joynts and Lungs, may be attenuated and diſſipated, it is good to order her a drier drink of guajacum, which does much leſs weaken the body, and is ſafer than an hot houſe. Now let the decoction be ſtrong, and boyl towards the end therein, polipody, ſeeds of Carthamus, Sage and Hyſſop; and 'twil be very good for her, if by Vertue of the ſaid decoction ſhe may be made to ſweat in the morning and before ſupper. While this is in doing, ſhe muſt nevertheleſs perſiſt in the uſe of thoſe remedies now deſcribed. She muſt be nouriſhed with a pretty ful diet, leſt her ſtrength by time and labor come to faile her. If the paines of her joynts ſhal not be aſſwaged by the foreſaid meanes; finde out in her hip, the part where her greateſt pain is, and faſten there an indifferent great Cupping-glaſs, without ſcarrification, being repeated three or four times at convenient diſtances, til the pain go away. For it plucks out the pain more ſtrongly than any plaiſter. And for her knee make vaporaties of wine or vinegar, putting therein a peice of a milſtone red hot; or with baths of the Lie of Vine branches, wherein are boyled roots of Acorus, and Elecampane, Polipody, Bayes, Time, Stœchados, Sage, Betony, Marjoram. The ſtoppage of her Lungs, wil be opened by oxymel Scyliticum, Oxymel ſimple, ſyrup of Hyſſop, or any other compounded of cough medicines, inſtead of a Lick pot.

The *LXVI.* Counſel.

For a Scirrhous Tumor.

YOur Judgment truly, agrees very wel with the relation you make of the Caſe. For if at firſt there was vehement pain, without redneſs, without any pulſation or heat; and now the pain being gone the tumor is increaſed, it muſt needs be, either that an œdematous tumor is turned into an abſolute ſcirrhus, or if the tumor be not very hard and reſiſting, that the fleſh has grown above meaſure, the membrane of the muſcles being broaken, and ſo there is become a Sarcoma or fleſhy tumor ſo called, void of pain. Howbeit the former opinion is more probable.

Seeing the patient has received no good by theſe excellent remedies which have been applyed, I conceive her body muſt be extenuated, and thoſe vitious humors diſſipated by a decoction of Lignum vitæ: which ſhe muſt be conſtrained to uſe with a thin and dry dier, for at leaſt twenty daies. Every eighth day ſhe muſt be purged with a medicament made of Senna, Agrick,

diaphenicon, that it may draw out the groſs humors already prepared: nor muſt ſhe ſweat that day. On other daies when her ſweat is wiped off, you muſt apply the plaiſter of *Phylagrius*, or *Emplaſtrum filij Zachariæ*: for they are both very fitting to mollify and diſcuſs hard Tumors. Theſe things being continued, and not helping, apply this moſt effectual Cataplaſme or pultis.

Take *Roots of Bryony, wild Cucumer, orice, St. Maries ſeale, raw, each two ounces. Roots of Marſh-mallows, of Lillies roaſted under the coals, each three ounces. Seeds of muſtard, Nettles, Water-creſſes, each one ounce. Beat them al together, adding freſh Gooſe-greaſe eight ounces. Oyl of ſweet almonds as much as ſhal ſuffice. Make al into a Cataplaſme.*

The *LXVII.* Counſel:

For the *Engliſh Plague, or ſweating-ſickneſs*; *the Counſel of* Fernelius, Hollerius, *and* Sylvius, *for the* Engliſh *Embaſſador.*

THe Engliſh Plague, which has been known but of late yeares, is of al other the moſt acute. It has got its name of the ſweating ſickneſs from its moſt remarkable ſymptom; and whether it proceed from corruption of the ſpirits, or humors, or both, it is doubtleſs an epidemical diſeaſe: and the conſtitution of the Aire being corrupted, either by winds, or exhalations out of the earth, or ſome other venemous infectious cauſe, it exerciſes its cruelty moſt of al (as other peſtilences do) and moſt dangerouſly, upon bodies that are moiſt and excrementious. If therefore you would either hinder the reception of that venemous quality of the Aire, (which were moſt to be wiſhed) or drive it away when received; you muſt diligently reſiſt both the external cauſe, viz. The contraction and commiſtion of corrupted aire, and the preparation of the body whereby it is apt to receive the ſame. You ſhal hinder corrupted and peſtilent Air, and ſuch as is vitiated in its whol ſubſtance from being received into your body, if you keep your ſelf far diſtant from al ſuch places where the Aire is infected. Or if buſineſs do require your Lordſhips preſence in ſuch places; the Aire muſt be ſtirred and agitated with fans, and driven from you, or corrected with ſuch things as hinder putrefaction: and the Aire which is not as yet putrified, muſt be by the ſaid things preſerved, ſuch are, fire in your chamber, and the whol houſe beſides, yea, and round about the ſame, of dry woods, and odoriferous plants, as Sage, Roſemary, Juniper, Bays, Marjarom, Leaves of dried Time, Flowers, Seeds Berries, Cloves, Nigella romana, the ſeed and root of pæony, eſpecially the male, Schenanth, Lignum aloes, Storax, and juice of Angelica, and trochiſks, made of theſe things, to perfume, adding thereto alſo Ambar-greece, if you pleaſe, and muſk, and other Alexipharmaca. And be careful that this aire ſo ſtudiouſly prepared be not defiled by mens breaths, leſt there happen to be ſome among them that are infected with this diſeaſe.

Moreover, you ſhal defend your body, being of conſtitution ſomwhat hot and moiſt, from the infection, and render the ſame inconquerable, if you keep it free from putrid excrements, or ſuch as are ready to receive putrefaction, and make it wholly perſpicable, the pores thereof being kept open. Both which may be effected by a few evacuations, and a fitting courſe of diet. Now the Evacuations ſhal be ſuch as theſe. Alwaies the firſt day, before you go out of *Paris*, take Pulp of Caſſia new drawn ſix drams, choyce Rhubarb not very fine poudered one dram and half. Cinnamon ſix grains. Take it in the morning, three hours before meat with ſugar or bugloſs water. The day after about ſix a clock in the morning take away about ſix ounces of blood, from your baſilica veine, or if you diſlike blood-letting, diminiſh your blood by a ſpare diet. And ſeeing our bodies are apt even of Meats not offending in quantity nor quality, to breed ſomtimes ſuperfluity of excrements, 'twil be healthful for you, once or twice in a week to ſwallow an hour or two before meat, two or three of theſe pils.

Take *Choyce aloes half an ounce; the beſt Myrrh two drams; Safron ten grains, Dittamus leaves, the roots of falſe dittamus, wild Betony, Tormentil, Bole-Armeniack, Terra lemniæ, each half a dram; with freſh oyl of ſweet Almonds drawn without fire, and with ſyrup of Lemmons, make al into a ſoft maſs, rowle it in Leather.*

And

And although theſe purges do alſo ad ſtrength to our principal parts, wherein are our cheife faculties, whole action is our life: yet muſt they be armed as it were with their proper Antidotes, that they may give no place to this malignant contagion of the aire. And ſuch are theſe two moſt excellent ones, invented and approved by reaſon and experience.

Take, *Conſerve of Bugloſs*, Borrage, *Cichory*, *Maiden haire*, *each two ounces*. *Conſerve of Roſes*, *Citron peeles preſerved*, *each one ounce and half*; *Leaves of true dittamus*, *roots of falſe dittamus*, *of wild betony*, *and Tormentil*, *each two drams*. *Seeds of Cardus*, *of Citrons*, *of Sorrel*, *each three drams*. *Zedoary Gentian*, *each half an ounce*, *old Mithridate*, *Treacle*, *each three ounces*. *Pouder of Diamargartium fridgidum*, *de Gemmis*, *Diarbodon Abbatis*, *and Trionſantalon*, *each half an ounce*; *liquor of the decoction of two capons*, *altered with Sorrel*, *Porſlane*, *Scabious*, Bugloſs, *borrage*, *Marygolds*, *ten pints*, *with thirty leaves of the fineſt Gold*. *Diſtil it artificially in a glaſs Alembeck over the embers*, *and keep it in a Glaſs*. *Take thereof every morning two hours before dinner*, *with Sugar and Cinnamon*. *And if you be taken with the ſickneſs*, *you muſt have twice or thrice in the fit two or three ounces at a time*, *warmed a little*. *In the morning your body being diſburthened*, *exerciſe al the parts thereof with gentle motions*, *after which if gentle ſweat follow*, *wipe it off with ſoft cloathes*.

And when the heat of your body is over, eat meate eaſy of digeſtion, but a little more ſparingly than ordinary. Such meats are Thruſhes, Quailes, Partriges, ſmal birds, fed Capons, Hens, Pheaſants, Leverets, Rabbits, Kids, Roaſted rather than boyled, with juice of ſoure Grapes, or juice of Sorrel, Lemmons, Orenges, with plain Vinegar, or Vinegar of Roſes. Or if you deſire to eate of theſe, or ſuch like meats boyled, let them be qualified with Porſlane, Borrage and Bugloſs, and let them be eaten with the foreſaid ſpices, but ſo ſparingly, that you muſt riſe from table with your belly but half ful. If you deſire to eate fiſh, let them be ſuch as after boyling have their ſubſtance ſhort, dry, and crumbling, with plenty whereof your Country of *England* is richly furniſhed. Let your wine be in the ſummer of indifferent ſtrength, in color either white or fity; in the winter ſtronger and redder, provided it be not too vaporous or hot, or need much tempering with water, which we allow not, becauſe it moiſtens too much, nor yet your Country beer, which engenders a thick and melancholick juice, be it made how it can. Nor do we approve of your Ale which is like your beer, nor of milk, which is too apt to be corrupted; nor of whey of milk turned and mingled with white wine. Cheeſe, though it be good in as much as drying, yet becauſe old cheeſe is hot, and new is cold and crude, and apt to obſtruct, it muſt be forborne, eſpecially the frequent and large feeding thereon. Al ſummer frutes diſpoſe the body to putrifaction, Dates and Raiſons we permit, nay, we enjoyne the eating of them, alſo dried Figs, becauſe they ſcoure the bowels, open obſtructions, and reſiſt poyſon, ſweet Almonds, Cappars, &c. preſerved Citron peels, Conſerve of Roſes, of borrage, of bugloſs, of Milk-waſt, of Scabious, of Cichory, Tormentil roots, wild bettony, and the like, we highly eſteem, and would have them frequently uſed, at al hours in a manner, either before or after meats; unleſs they bind the belly too much. You may ſometimes take two hours before break-faſt, the quantity of an hazel-nut of this mixture.

Take *Conſerve of Roſes*, *borrage*, *bugloſs*, *Citron peel preſerved*, *each one ounce*. *Treacle of Venice*, *or old Mithridate three drams*. *Bole armeniack*, *Terra lemnia Sigillata*, *each two drams*. *Make al into an opiate*, *after a ſmal quantity whereof*, *let him drink two ounces of diſtilled wine*.

You may alſo take a quantity of the phyloſophical Egg, which moſt Phyſitians have deſcribed. If the plague ſhal ſeize upon you unawars, it wil wonderfully ſtrengthen your nature, in the ſweat it ſelf, to drink ſome of your diſtilled water, and to take of your Electuary twice or thrice, and to ſuch a peice of bread ſteeped in wine allaied with Bugloſs water: and this recreates our principal parts themſelves, which are the cauſes of our faculties, and the faculties themſelves which govern our bodies, and ſooner dries the peſtilent conſumptive venome out of our ſaid bodies. And therefore it makes the fit ſafe and ſhort, and frees the body from thoſe cruel ſymptomes, which are wont to attend this diſeaſe.

The LXVIII. Counſel.

Of the Elephantiaſis, or Diſeaſe ſo called.

SEEing the learned Phyſitians do not agree as concerning the ſymptomes appearing in the face of *John Rocquiret*, ſome ſaying that he looks horribly, has Lyons eyes, eyebrows without haire, a thin beard, ſwollen noſtrils, and deformed with many puſhes within and without, with an ulcer beginning; and that his breath is ſhort, his almonds of his Eares ulcerated, with an hoarſe and obſcure voice. And others ſay that ſome of theſe tokens are not to be ſeen, and that the puſhes, if any be, are red. It muſt of neceſſity be, that the ſigns about which the renowned Phyſitians are at variance, are very obſcure and deſerving little credit, nor muſt we from them conclude any man to have the morbus Elephantiaſis, or diſeaſe ſo called; nor if al the tokens mentioned did appeare muſt we therefore judge that it is therefore the begining of the Elephants-Mange or Elephantiaſis; eſpecially ſeeing his body is wel nouriſhed, and there is no numneſs, ſwelling, or coldneſs of his feet or hands, which is wont preſently at the very beginning to accompany the Elephantiaſis. Nor in caſe there were the beginning of that diſeaſe, ought the patient to be therefore ſhut up from the ſociety of Men, ſeeing neither his body as yet, nor breath do ſtink, nor is there any ſuch contagion as may infect his neighbors. Thus therefore we underwritten Doctors of Phyſick do judg of this matter in controverſie, viz. that *John Roquiret* having a ſuffuſion of thick and melancholick blood through his skin, and deformed with dark red puſhes, is not yet to be reckoned amongſt ſuch as have the Elephantiaſis or Elephants-manginеſs, nor is to be ſhut up from the ſociety of Men.

But if hereafter no courſe of diet or Phyſick can overcome the diſeaſe, ſo that it ſhal grow worſe, and afford more evident ſigns and tokens, it wil be then time enough juſtly to determin what is fit to be done in this caſe. The Cure muſt be undertaken in the ſpring. Let his diet be cooling and moiſtening. Let him every week be purged with an Apozem. Let him drink no wine. Let him avoid al hot and venemous medicaments, both purging and Ancidotary, ſuch as ſcammoniated Medicaments, Mithridate, Venice Treacle, &c. which are ſo far from helping the diſeaſe, that they burn the humors, and double the ſame.

The LXIX. Counſel

Of the Elephantiaſis beginning.

The Diſeaſe propounded.

A Gentleman of fifty yeares of Age, of a fleſhy, but ilfavoured habit of body, ſomthing like that of thoſe which have the jaundice, his face of a blewiſh red, ful of thick and black blood, wherein ſomtimes aroſe black or livid ſpots, as alſo in the reſt of his body, having little or no fence in them. Howbeit this Gentleman is not troubled with thirſt, loathing of meat, or any other more grievous ſymptomes. He has taken a thouſand potions, and has exhauſted his body by ſweating in hot baths, to the prejudice of his Health. For he feares he ſhal have the Elephantiaſis, or Elephants-manginеſs, whereof this ſeems the beginning.

Mſr. Fernelius *wrote back theſe Remedies*

Take *Roots of Sorrel, ſharp pointed dock, and Elecampane, Polypody of the Oake, Seeds of Carthamus, Raiſons ſtoned, of each half an ounce. Endive, Cichory, Plantane, Bugloſs, Borrage, Hops, Fumitory, Dodder, Ceterach, Chamædrys or ground Oake, Ground pine, of each one handful; Violet flowers two pugils. Make a Decoction to ſixteen ounces. In the ſtrained liquor ſteep al night Epithymum, half an ounce. Senna five drams; Agarick two ounces; Ginger, two drams. In the morning let them boyl a little and make an expreſſion of the Liquor, and therein diſſolve, of the clarified juyces of Fumitory and Plantane, of each three drams. White Sugar one pound and an half. Make of al a Syrup perfectly boyled. Let him take two ounces, or two and an half at a time, in Whey, every fift or ſixt day.*

Take *Conſerve of Bugloſs and Borrage flowers, of each two drams; ſhavings of Ivory and Harts-Horn, of each a ſcruple. Old Mithridate, two drams. Mix them for two doſes after his purging, three hours before meat.*

After the third or fourth purging, open the inner vein of his left Arm, and take away ten ounces of blood. Afterwards, if poſſible by any means, open his Hemorrhoid veins: firſt with emollient and altering fomentations, afterwards with ſuppoſitories of Hiera ſimple with juyce of Mercury or with Gall: or if they be conſpicuous outwardly and ſwollen, apply Leeches to them. That by this means the black and Melancholy blood may flow out.

When therefore his body ſhal be diligently prepared and evacuated, the uſe of bathing wil be exceeding profitable in ſweet potable water, continued many daies together, in the morning faſting. But ſo that the Baths be not hot to cauſe ſweat, but only lukewarm, to moiſten his Body.

He muſt keep a cooling and moiſtening Diet; barley cream wil be very good for him in a morning, eſpecally when there is no need of Medicaments. Broaths alſo made of Chicken, Veal, or mutton, with bugloſs, borrge, Sorrel, Lettice and Plantane. If he leave off Wine in the Summer, it wil be exceeding wholſome for him to drink inſtead thereof Barley water, or any other drink prepared for him; If any parts in the Skin appear black, or black and blew, void of ſenſe, fix Cupping-Glaſſes thereupon and make Scarrification, and that a good depth. That the blood may flow out, and the ſence be recalled.

The *LXX.* Counſel.

A Letter from a certain perſon, that with a thin Diet, and a Decoction of Guajacum, did cure a Diſeaſe.

MY Diet was very ſpare, conſiſting of Raiſons and Dates, and I ſo abſtained from wine, that I cannot endure the ſmel of it, my belly is in good caſe as to going to ſtool. My morning potion makes me ſweat indifferently, mine evening potion makes me not ſweat at al. I have no ſhortneſs of breath, but my old pain alwaies ſticks in my breaſt. And within this ſix daies I have felt a new pain over againſt the old, between my ſhoulder-blades, which herein differs from the old pain, in that the new one is felt by touching, the old one only upon vehement motion. Since yeſterday I have been twice as bad as formerly; My ſtomach (which has been alwaies naturally weak) doth continually paine me, yet without loathing of my meat, &c.

To the premiſes, Mſr. Fernelius *thus anſwers.*

You do, truly, exceeding wel, and take a very good courſe to vanquiſh this long laſting and rebellious Diſeaſe; howbeit, I fear leſt your ſtrength wil at laſt fail you, by reaſon of your ſo thin a Diet: you muſt ſee to preſerve them, and ſuſtain them with a little more liberal

ral allowance, that they may hold out til the end of the Cure. I perceive you have new pains riſen; but that is the Nature of the potion, that if any Humor did lurke ſilently in the body, it wil at the firſt bring it to light, and many times exaſperates the pains, which do afterwards end. And whereas a new pain vexes your Stomach it comes from the ſame cauſe; for vicious Humors being ſtirred in the bowels, they break out preſently into the ſtomach: and therefore I thought fit by any means to purge them with an accommodate Medicament, the deſcription whereof I have ſent you. The day wherein you take it abſtain from your other potion, and afterward uſe it more liberally, that you ſweat luſtily from al parts. And if the ſweats wil not be otherwiſe provoked, lay ſome hot thing to the *Soles* of your Feet.

The Counſel of *Johannes Capellanus* Senior, Renowned Phyſitian to the *Queen* Mother of the moſt Chriſtian King, *Francis* the Firſt of that Name, King of *France*.

THe Peſtilence is an aery Veſome, or the Air poyſoned by admixture of putrid Vapors, and qualified with a diſpoſition moſt pernicions to mankind. For the Air thus affected, through neceſſity of reſpiration, does firſt enter into the receptacles of the Heart, and by and by the infection is by the Arteries ſpred into the whol body. So that both the Heart the Fountain of Life, and the ſpirit the next Organ of the Soul, being by this cruel contagion rendred unfit for the functions of Life, a man muſt needs ſoon come to his end, if ſpeedy remedies be not applied. And that we may prevent ſo ſudden a miſchief, we ſhal firſt ſpeak of the point of Diet; and then I ſhal preſcribe medicaments, both for prevention and Cure.

Seeing this Infection of the Air proceeds from watry vapors mingled and confounded therewith; ſuch an Air muſt be choſen, as is far from lakes and pooles, which for want of motion do putrifie. Let the windows be ſet open to the Eaſt and North. For thoſe are dry quarters, and none of thoſe humidities come from them which moiſten and infeſt the Air. The North-wind is eſpecially good, which is therefore cald the broom of Heaven, becauſe it cooles and tempers the boyling Air, and corrects the putrifaction thereof. You muſt uſe the wholſomeſt water you can get. Let your meat and drink be temperate, not only in quality, but in quantity alſo, ſo as they may not collect ſuperfluous Humors, and may be hard to be corrupted. Such are al meats that are not of an immoderate or bad juyce; ſome tart things, as Citrons, Barberries, Raſpberries, ſour Grapes-liquor, and Vinegar, wherewith your other meats are to be ſawced. Let your Wine be allayed with water, wherein red hot Gold has been quenched. For there is a ſingular Sympathy and conſent betwixt Gold and Wine, and betwixt Wine and the vital ſpirit. Alſo avoid ſleeping in the day time which hinders the body from perſpiration. Grievous, ſad, and troubleſome perturbations of the mind muſt be abandoned, which deſtroy the natural ſtate of our Temperament. For the mind moves the bodies bulk, as the Intelligences move the heavenly bodies, not only with local motion, but alſo with the motion of alteration, by the ſpirit its Organ. Alſo vehement exerciſes do the ſame, and weaken the forces of the body, and render them weak for action. But moderate exerciſes, do empty the habit of the whol body of Excrements, ſtrengthen all the Members, and make the faculties of the Body more chearful, in the performance of their Functions.

As for Medicinal Remedies to prevent the Plague, when you awake from ſleep, perfume your Chamber with Frankincenſe, juniper Berries, Citron Peels dried, or leaves of Gold. For a perfume made with theſe things, does not only purge the Air, but alſo your cloaths

and

and garments, do thereby carry away a quality in them, contrary to the infection. Let your mouth and hands be waſhed with water and a little vinegar mingled with it. It is good to carry ſuch things about one, as have an antipathy againſt al deadly venomes, as the Garnet or a kind of Carbuncle ſo called, which though it be of ſmal price, is counted to be of greateſt virtue among precious ſtones, having an eſpecial friendſhip to the heart, as the Smaragd to the brain, the Saphire to the Liver, Coral to the ſtomach. Alſo an Hyacinth is carried and worn in a ring to the ſame purpoſe, and held in the mouth. Some alſo hang quick-ſilver about their Neck, which is contrary to other Poyſons, by a hidden and peculiar Antipathy. Shut a bit of Spunge wet in vinegar in a box with holes, and ſmel frequently thereunto. Hold a piece of dried pomegranate rind in your mouth, or a leaf thereof and of baies. Alſo Zedoary, which *Galen* and *Paulus* do term *Arnabo*. For al theſe things by an occult propriety and certain inviſible rates, do drive away peſtilent Aire; even as *Palma Chriſti*, drives away the viper Dracontius, Polemonium drives away the Scorpion, the herb Looſe-ſtrife kils Serpents, and drives away flies. If your belly be not looſe of its own accord, ſo that you go not to ſtool al the day, an hour before Supper ſwallow one of theſe pils following.

Take *Aloes, two drams*; *Rhubarb and Agarick, of each one ſcruple*; *Ginger and Cinnamon, of each ten grains*; *with Juyce of Citrons or vinegar make al into a maß of Pil-ſtuf.*

Aloes preſerves bodies both dead and living from corruption: Rhubarb draws away flegm, Choler, and Melancholy, and Agarick does the ſame. Cinnamon reſiſts Poyſon, Ginger ſtrengthens the Bowels, and quickens the ſluggiſh Lazyneſs of the purgers.

When you are to go out in the morning, take the quantity of a Wal-Nut of this following Electuary.

Take *Bole-Armeniack waſht in Scabious Water, one ounce*; *Conſerve of Water Lillies and Bugloß flowers, of each two ounces*; *Citron Peels preſerved, and Conſerve of red roſes, of each one ounce*; *Cinnamon, one dram*; *Citron ſeed, Pearls, Red-Coral, of each one dram*; *Ambar, two ſcruples*; *Camphire one ſcruple. Mix them with the Juyce of a Citron or a Pomegranate into an Electuary.*

Bole-Armeniack, is a peculiar Remedy for the plague, which is alſo a preſent help for the Lungs any way oppreſſed. The Arabians ſince *Galens* time have found by long experience that water Lillies are wonderfully good for the plague. Bugloſs is a friend to the ſpirits ſo far, that wine in which it is ſteeped drives away ſadneſs and Cheeres the drooping ſoul. The Peels of Citrons ſtrengthen the ſtomach, and their juyce extinguiſhes the Feaver and removes putrefaction from the blood. Pearls clear the Eye-ſight, and diſſipate ſooty vapors. Ambar is good for infirmities of the brain, heart, and breaſt. Camphire does that in the body of man, which Boreas or the North wind does in the viſible world. For it purges and cleanſes the Aire of our Bodies, and extinguiſhes the Peſtilential Fervor and heat of the ſpirits. To conclude al in a word, thoſe things that are good to uſe in the plague time, muſt have in them theſe three faculties, viz. They muſt help putrefaction, ſtrengthen the ſpirits, and when they are diſſolved and diſſipated, collect and reſtore them; and laſtly they muſt have a Bezoartick or antidotary faculty, or a certain Antipathy whereby they reſiſt venome. And therefore as much as may be we muſt ſearch out Medicaments that have theſe faculties. Moreover care muſt be taken to purge out thoſe humors which are apt to receive the peſtilential Infection.

And to that end three or four of theſe Pils are to be ſwallowed, which are by *Paulus Ægineta* cited from *Ruffus*.

Take *Ammoniack Gum, two drams*; *Myrrh, Aloes, of each one dram. Make them with Honey into a Maß. Ammoniacum and Myrrh do further the bringing up of Flegm, and help the faults of the Cheſt, which part is moſt ſubject to Peſtilential injuries*; *and they do cauſe the breath to come and go eaſily.*

There is alſo an Herb called Myrrhis, Mock-cheveril or ſweet Cicely. which thoſe that drink in Wine, are thereby preſerved from the Plague, in their ſtead, theſe Pils following may be uſed.

Take *Aloes, two drams*; *Rhubarb, Agarick, of each half a dram*; *Maſtich, one ſcruple*;

Zedoary, Ginger, of each ten grains; with Juyce or Syrup of the juyce of Citrons make al into a Maſs.

Maſtich ſtrengthens the ſtomach, which has great affinity and Sympathy with the Heart.

As ſoon as ever a Man is taken with the Plague, becauſe of the ſudden danger (ſeeing it kills the patient in a dates time) you muſt make more ſpeed in application of Remedies. Open therefore a Vein in the Arm (provided there be no ſwelling in the groins or neighboring parts) ſo as the parties age, ſtrength, and habit of body wil permit, taking more or leſs blood. For by this means in the Veins primarily and in the Arteries by conſent and communication the boyling of the blood is prohibited, or allayed, and the Peſtilent Vapor is by the ſame means averted from the heart. Blood being taken away, let him take of the foreſaid Antidote double the quantity preſcribed for preſervation, adding four grains of Camphire: and becauſe the ſickneſs commonly rages in the ſummer time, you muſt in that hot ſeaſon add the more Camphire. And that the reſt of the Humors beſides blood, which are ſettled in the ſtomach, Guts, and firſt paſſages, may be voided forth, give him ſome Pils of the ſecond Compoſition, two hours before ſupper, if the vein was opened in the morning; or next morning if he was let blood in the Evening. And if the Patient wil not away with Pils, give him this that follows.

Take *Rhubarb four ſcruples: Agarick two ſcruples: a few grains of Ginger: Mix them with half an ounce of Conſerve of Bugloſs, and a little Oxymel.*

But if he deſire a potion, diſſolve the ſaid things in a Decoction of Tamarinds, which cools, quenches thirſt, takes away loathing of meat, breaks the acrimony of choler, and reſiſts putrefaction. Nor muſt the Belly be purged with ſharper Medicaments, leſt the peſtiferous venom ſhould be drawn back to the bowels, from whence Nature endeavors to Alienate, drive, and force the ſame away. And when ſhe drives the venemous Humor into the outer parts, or parts near the principal, ſhe muſt be aſſiſted by Art. For ſo, the Phyſick and Nature mutually aſſiſting one the other muſt needs drive out the Morbifick cauſe. To which intent Cupping-Glaſſes with deep Scarrification are good, alſo burning, diſſection, Cauſticks. If the Patient be burned with a Feaver and tormented with thirſt, he muſt not be kept too much from drink. But let his drink be ſuch, as is very cooling, apt to quench thirſt, and reſiſt putrefaction, as Oxymel made with Sugar and allaied with much fair water, or Syrup of the Juyce of Citrons, or Barberries, or of ſour Grapes. And if the infected Humor ſhal have recourſe to the ſtomach, ſo as to incline to vomiting, you muſt provoke the Patient to vomit, with juyce of Reddiſhes and Oxymel. For the Radiſh reſiſts al Poyſons. This ſubject would require a larger diſcourſe: but my intent is not to ſet down al that may be ſaid, but ſuch things only as are moſt worthy to be known.

Counſel for a Gentlemans Son troubled with divers Infirmities.

A Certain boy ſix years old, born in Britain, is taken with a continual Feaver accompanied with Eruptions into the Skin. They were very many, and his whol Body, yea the inſide of his mouth ſeems to be but one continued Scab. His Eyes are very much ſwelled, and do ſtick out as it were: and at laſt his right Eye has quite loſt its ſight, and the ſight of his left Eye is become more dul, as if it were troubled with a ſuffuſion. This dulneſs ſeems to depend upon ſome obſtruction of the Optick Nerve, ſome ſuffuſion which is yet but weak, being joyned thereto. Somtimes his Ear did run with a Sanious and quittoriſh matter, and the paſſage of an Humor from the Ears to the Nerves of the Eyes is eaſie.

The Obſtruction hints the uſe of opening, and deobſtructive medicines.

If there be a ſuffuſion; the Humor which is gathering or gathered in the Cornea Tunica, or Chryſtalline Humor, muſt be diſſolved and diſcuſſed.

For prevention, the Remedies are, Diet, Vacuation, Diverſion, ſtrengthening the parts affected.

After

After meales let him take a pouder of Coriander comfits, ſugar of Roſes, Pearls, and a little Cinnamon.

Take *Seeds of annis, fennel, cinnamon, each one dram. Coriander ſeeds prepared two ounces. Sugar of Roſes half a pound. Eye-bright two drams. Make all into a pouder.*

In the morning when he riſes let him take of this following pouder.

Take *Seeds of Fennel, annis, and eye-bright, each one dram. Cinnamon two ſcruples. Nutmeg, Maſtick, each half a dram. Sugar three ounces. Make a pouder to be uſed by it ſelf, or with fennel water.*

He muſt uſe often rather than ſtrong medicines, becauſe of his tender age.

Apophlegmatiſmes are good for him, but not Errhines; and grains of maſtick ſhut up in raiſons of the Sun.

Smal pils of rhubarb and agarick are commended.

When the ſpring approaches, make a ſyrup thereof adding Head and Eye ſimples.

To apply a Cauſtick to his left Arme wil be good and to the hindermoſt part of his head.

Manardus advites a third iſſue in the confines of the formoſt ſutures, made with an actual Cautery of gold or iron.

For the ſtoppage of the optick nerve and dimneſs of ſight, nothing is better than a Lie of the aſhes of vine branches, wherein cephalick herbs and ſenna have been ſteeped.

Theſe things ſtrengthen the brain and Eyes, viz. Myrobalans chebulan preſerved, eaten in the morning, and the ſtones held in the mouth, Nutmeg, Comfits of Fennel-ſeed, Eye-bright frequently chewed, Fennel-ſeed ſteeped in Vinegar and then dryed. Ad Cinnamon and ſugar, and a very uſeful pouder may be made of the ſaid ſimples. The ſight of green things, eſpecially the ſmaragd ſtone, Blew colour refreſhes the wearyed eye. Contrariwiſe, the eyes are hurt by ſuffering, New-wine, Beans and peale, and ſuch like, Coleworts, Raddiſh, Garlick, Leeks, and other ſuch things, Great fiſhes, the ſight of bright things ſwiftly moved. Some youth with a ſweet breath having wel waſht his mouth in water wherein fennel ſeed and nutmeg have been ſteeped an hour, muſt breath into the Lads eye. Alſo he may lick his Eye, having firſt chewed ſeeds of fennel or eye-bright.

The Gals of Beaſts are commended, eſpecially of fiſhes, & principally of a skat or thorn-back: of land fourfooted beaſts, the gals of Lambs, Swine, and Kids which are not paſt ſucking.

Fomentations are not much approved, becauſe they draw more humors than they digeſt, unleſs both the body and brain, be firſt diligently purged. In ſuffuſions not yet inveterate, this water does wonders.

Take *Juice of Fennel half a pound; juyce of clary and celondine, each an ounce. Green eye-bright two handfuls. Vervaine, Marjoram, each one handful. Syrup of roſes four ounces. The beſt honey half a pound, Tutty prepared, Lignum aloes, each two drams.*

Put al into an alembick, and ſtil them with a ſlow fire; with the water waſh the eye, and drop a little gently thereinto. And though his age be very tender: yet the decoction of guajacum cannot but be good in a very weake decoction, with Liquoris, raiſons, and fennel ſeed.

This counſel was given by *Tagaultius, Sylvius, Alkakia and Flexellius*, Famous Phyſitians, when *Fernelius* was living.

Six Counsels of *Simon Petreus*, a most renowned Physitian of *Paris*.

The first Counsel.

To Cause easie deliverance of a Woman in Labour.

IT is hard to judge of the causes of that good womans difficult labour, concerning whom you write to me. For besides that the causes of hard labor are sometimes manifest, as the over largeness of the Child, and the narrowness of the wombs neck, and the weakness both of the child and Mother: they are sometimes so hidden and obscure, that the best Physitian cannot find them out. And sometimes it happens through a peculiar nature of the womb, that the child is not therein rightly situate, though the woman hath not transgressed in external things, as to straitlacing of her self, violent motion of mind or body and such like. And when I seriously meditate of the causes of that same hard labour wherewith this gentlewoman is troubled, I find it to be a peculiar nature of her womb, whence it comes to pass, that when by the mixture of both seeds the child is shaped, it comes to have a depraved situation. For your letters to me do not mention any external or internal manifest causes, which might bring this hard labour; unless peradventure we should blame the weakness of the child, whereby it is not able to assist the labours of the mother to bring it forth. And there is, truly, some reason to conjecture the weakness thereof: seeing you signifie in your letters, that her womb settles downwards, now when she is gone but four months and an half, at which time the child is not so great as to be a burthen to her. But whence this weakness of the Child should arise, I cannot easily judge, not being by you acquainted with the manners or course of life of this good gentlewoman, whereof when you shal certifie me, I shal send you more certain advice touching this business. The premises considered I conceive this gentlewoman should be advised to use such remedies as may strengthen her womb, and hinder it from settling downwards. To which purpose it wil be good to apply *Emplastrum pro Matrice* to her loines.

Moreover her belly must be borne up, and her womb strengthened by convenient swath bands fitly and duly applyed by skilful Midwives. And that the womb may bear upwards, she must use cordial lozenges, with ambar greece, Civit, bistort rootes and coral in them. Also tie about her neck a nodule which may touch her stomach, made of pouder of sanders, saffron, ambergreece, & civit, by the pleasing vapor whereof the womb may be allured upwards. And when the womb shal be stronger, and not settle so much downwards, I do very much approve the Expression of two drams of choice rhubarb, infused in rosewater, adding half an ounce of sugar of roses; which she may repeate once or twice, if she find good by it, especially in her fift and sixt months. Touching blood-letting I cannot certainly tel what to advise, her womb being so weak, and falling so much downwards. Yet if there appear the signs of blood abounding, you may take away two smal poringers. As to the latter end of your letter, wherein you desire of me such remedies as may cause easie Labor, then when nature shal set her self to exclude the Child. I have alwaies judged that emollient clysters are of great force; and then certain Liniments and softening oyls, to noint her belly and loyns. To the same intent, a syrup made of Cinnamon, Saffron, and pouder of date-stones, with trochisks of mirrh is very effectual. *Galen* commends Castorium in this case, which is able to bring away the dead child. The Ancients have commended the stone Æetites, or Ægle stone, to facilitate womens labours, being applied to their thigh; and to hinder abortion, being applyed above the Navil.

The

The ſecond Counſel.

Of Mother-fits, to a Phyſitian called Gravellanus.

I Received your letter (Moſt Learned *Gravellanus*) whereby you have acquainted me with a moſt grievous Symptom, wherewith your brothers wife is vexed, viz. Suffocation of the womb, whereof your ſelf, this preſent month of *January*, have been an obſervant Eye-witneſs, after which a trembling of her head, and ſomthing like the falling ſickneſs did follow. Which Diſeaſe, though you have adminiſtred fitting remedies, has not yet quite left her, but is wont to trouble her by fits at uncertain diſtances of time. Now you conceive the original of this diſeaſe, is to be referred to her womb, in the cavity whereof, ſome portion of corrupt ſeed being retained, does ſend ugly vapours into the uper parts, wch according to the variety of parts by them afflicted, are wont to cauſe various ſymptomes. For when through the arteries they ruſh into the Heart and Lungs, they cauſe ceaſing of the pulſe, and of reſpiration; if they poſſeſs the Coates of the brain, they cauſe convulſions, ſuch as you have ſeen in this patient. I approve of this judgment of yours, touching this grievous ſymptom; but I conceive withal, that the depraved quality of melancholly juyce wherewith ſhe abounds, is a concomitant Cauſe. For her womb and ſpleen are confederate to do her miſchief. And therefore if you would cure her, you muſt bend your Care to both thoſe parts. And in my former Letter, I briefly ſhewed how to correct and tame the malignity of the Melancholly juyce: I ſhal now only ſet down what may tend to free her womb from this ſymprom. And therefore as oft as this fit ſhal ſeize upon her, repeat thoſe remedies which you have uſed, and then apply Cupping-glaſſes to her thighs. Let the midwife put her hand anoynted with butter and a little civit into the neck of her womb, and rub the ſame, that it being provoked by that titillation, may caſt forth the corrupt ſeed: this is the advice of *Matthæus de gradibus*, a good Author. Moreover, lay to her navil a plaiſter of Treacle and Methridate, with a little civit. Give her ſharp clyſters made of ſimples reſpecting the womb. Open the ſaphæna vein after her feet have been waſhed in an hot decoction.

And when this paroxyſme or fit is over, that it may not come again, her whol body muſt be cured by purgation, and ſuch remedies as I have deſcribed as prevalent againſt the melancholly juyce. Sweet ſmelling things muſt be conveyed into the Neck of her womb, eſpecially in the fit, which may provoke the womb to expel the ſeed; nor muſt cordials to recreate her ſpirits be forgotten or neglected.

I do very much approve of bathe to ſit in, made of ſoftening ſeeds and herbs, and ſuch as reſpect the womb; that the paſſages thereof may be drawn back.

Theſe are the things (friend *Gravellanus*) which I conceive fit to drive away this ſymptom. If any new accident ſhal happen, as ſoon as you acquaint me therewith, I ſhal write to you again.

The third Counſel.

Concerning Hypochondriacal Melancholy, to a certain Phyſitian.

THis honored Gentleman, of whoſe Nature, and ſundry ſymptomes, wherewith he is wont to be tormented, you have accurately written to me; ſeems to me troubled with hypochondriacal melancholly, which I conceive is quartered not only in his Hypochondria, but in his veins in general. And it is to be feared, leaſt that at laſt, it turne to a more grievous ſort of Melancholly, of which he had ſome rudiments, about twenty years ſince, as I am informed by you. I conceive the cauſe of this rooted diſeaſe to be not only an hot diſtemper, but a certain cachexy or evil habit of his Liver, whereby out of meats of good juyce, it breeds bad, cholerick and melancholick humors, by which hypochondriacal melancholy is fomented, and thoſe ſymptoms raiſed, whereof he complains, as that inward bone-pain of his whol body, but eſpecially of his legs, which after his firſt ſleep, he perceives to be extreamly cold unleſs peradventure, wheyih tumors from his head where they abound, do flow into his legs, and cauſe that ſenſe of coldneſs. The premiſes conſidered, and the whol Order of his body (as

you

you wil judg) being weakened by this Contagion: he must at the beginning of the spring be diligently plied with those kind of remedies which are by you described, avoiding strong and drying medicaments. Let him therefore frequently use two kinds of clysters, the one of which must be purging of an emollient and carminative decoction, wherein diacatholicon may be dissolved. The other must be fatty and oyly to moisten and slipper his gutts, without any purgative in it. Then let him take Diacatholicon and pulp of cassia, each half an ounce. And when with this medicament his stomach is wel purged: make Apozems of a decoction of simples proper to the spleen and liver, with violets and hops. And when he has used the said decoction for four or five dayes together, after eight days the weather being temperate, give him two drams of Rhubarbs infusion, with an ounce of syrup of violets. Concerning blood-letting, this is my judgment: I do not approve thereof, in this very leane and thin habit of body, nor at this season. But if in *April*, his urines argue any inward heat, then it wil be seasonable to let him blood, provided you take away but one smal Chyrurgeons porrenger.

After his body has been prepared by these remedies and wel purged, the use of Asses milk wil be good for him, observing such rules as a Skilful Physitian ought to observe. In the use whereof he must so long continue, til he find himself holpen thereby. And when he shal begin to loathe the same, give him then cooling broaths, made of Veale or Chicken. And when the Aire is temperate, and in the summer time, I very much allow your judgment, touching the frequent use of fresh water bathes, provided that sweat be not thereby caused. Nor must he omit the use of syrup of sweet apples, Bugloss, and Borrage, which he must use this Summer if his stomach wil beare them; as also the syrup of Apples of King *Sapor*, may be prescribed when the weather is temperate. And because there is evermore joined with the melancholy juice a malignant quality, which bears a deadly feud to the vital spirit and noble parts of our body, they must be armed against the same with cordial lozenges and electuaries, in the prescription whereof, you must have respect to the stomach, which seems in this patient very weak, and distended with many winds, for the dissipation whereof you shal prescribe some convenient pouder for him to take after meales, such as is that vulgarly used, made of common dredge pouder, with coral, roasted bread, and Sugar of roses. Let his diet be of good juice, such as can hardly be used in this time of Lent, unless he eate eggs soft boyled, and pikes with other fishes that haunt stone places of Rivers. When Lent is over, he may freely use such meats as are fit to breed good juice. As for the cold which he feels a nights, after his first sleep he wil easily avoid the same, if he shal cause two large stone bottles to be filled with boyling water and wrapped up in linnen cloaths, and laid at his feet in the bed. For by this means, the heat wil come into his legs and dissipate the cold. And if this remedy shal not turne the cold, a liniment may be made of hogs grease, washed in Sage water, and mixed with oleum Irinum and aqua vitæ, wherewith his legs must be anointed and covered with cotton wool.

The fourth Counsel.

Concerning a Flux of Rhume into the Lungs.

BY the relation of a most skilful Physitian, I understand that a gentlewoman of about six and thirty yeares old, who has bore many children, has this three yeares been troubled with a fluxion of Rheume into her Lungs, which causes her to cough, and is like sometimes to choak her, especially then when her courses begin to flow; which fluxion, though it have continued long, yet there appeare as yet no signs of her Lungs being corrupted, especially seeing she is not at al fallen away in her body, nor is there any appearance of a Feaver, nor is the strength of the natural faculty wanting in digestion and other actions thereof. But it is now to be feared, lest humor putrifying, or becoming more sharp, should exulcerate the Lungs. And that is most of al troublesom, that she feels a perpetual coldness in her head, of which she vehemently complains. For to stop this defluxion, most learned physitians have appointed very many medicaments; whereby they have provided both for the health of her whol body, as also of the parts affected, her head and Lungs; howbeit there is as yet no good done, the same symptomes continuing, which did before trouble her: and therefore she desires remedies from me, to stop that old defluxion of Rheum into her Lungs, and to free her from these inconveniencies, she is subject unto. Which that I may do it more conveniently, we must consider

the

the cauſe thereof, that the ſame being known, may by convenient remedies be oppoſed. I conceive the principal cauſe thereof to be a cold and moiſt diſtemper of the brain, which as wel from the reliques of its aliment, as from the vapors ariſing out of the parts beneath into the head, does breed many wheyiſh humors, which by the ſtrength of the Brain, are driven out into the Lungs. This cauſe is peradventure aſſiſted by a diſtemper of the Liver being ſomwhat over hot, eſpecially in a body not enjoying the benefit of tranſpiration, ſuch as is the body of a very fat woman. And ſeeing the Lungs have along time received this defluxion, they are now thereby filled, and ſo a period-holding tiſlick is cauſed by fits, which come at uncertain diſtances of time. And that I may give advice for the old infirmity, al our endeavor ought I conceive to aim, that in the firſt place, the humor collected in the head may be hindred from falling into the Lungs; and ſecondly, that what is already collected in the Lungs, may by convenient remedies be wel brought up by coughing and ſpitting. Both theſe intentions may be performed, if her whol body be purged this fal of the Leafe with ſuch pils as are good for the Head, viz. Aggregative pils, and ſine quibus, agrick being added to them: which let her take twice a month, after her firſt ſleep. But before the uſe of the pils, her body muſt be purged with a decoction, of Sena, made in a pectoral decoction wherein agrick and rhubarb muſt be infuſed, and an ounce of ſyrup of roſes added to the ſtrained liquor. To theſe may be added the frequent uſe of clyſters; and her body being purged open the baſilica veine of her right Arm, and take away two ſmal porringers of blood. Let her head which ſends the defluxion into her Lungs be cured with a cephalick fomentation, made of a Lie of Vine branches, wherein orice root of Florence, calamus aromoticus, Schenanth, betony, marjoram, ſage, with Senna leaves have been boyled, adding at the end of the decoction a fourth part of red wine. With this her head muſt be fomented, in the morning, for the ſpace of an hour, and then being dried it muſt be anointed with Nard oyl and chymical oyl of Turpentine, with a little Aqua vitæ, a long time together, laying cotton wool thereon, filled with pouder of Florentine orice, Marjoram, and Sage. Which if it do no good, and the coldneſs continue, provide her a plaiſter de Betonica of the larger compoſition, adding thereto Benjamin, Storax, pitch, and hot cephalick pouders, as of orice root, Cypreſs root, Marjoram, with a little Turpentine, to lay to her head, the hair being firſt ſhaven off. From theſe we muſt come to cauteries, which muſt be applyed to the top of her head, avoiding the ſutures. Let her in the winter continue her Cucufa and head coverings, which have been ordered by faithful Phyſicians. Let her noſtrils continue open; and if they hap to be ſtopped, ſhe muſt firſt uſe light Errhines or noſe-liquors, then more ſtrong ones, which are to be refuſed in this ſort of diſeaſe.

To ſtrengthen her head, make an opiate, of conſerve of roſemary flowers, treacle, mithridate, preſerved citron-pills, preſerved Nutmegs; mixt with conſerve of Colts-foot, and borrage, and al made up with ſyrup of ſtæchados into the forme of an Electuary.

And her Lungs in whoſe windpipes very much flegm is contained, muſt be cured with pectoral or cough decoctions, made of the roots of Elecampane, Florentine orice, dragon, with betony, Hyſſop, Savory, and other Cough medicaments invented by skilful Phyſicians.

Alſo a Lohock ſhal be provided of the root of Arum or Cucko-pintle, and of Dragon roaſted under the embers, whereunto being beaten, the pulpe of ſebeſtens, jujubes, raiſons of the Sun, with Diatragacanthum frigidum muſt be mixed, al being made up into a Lick-por, with ſyrup of Maiden-haire, which let her frequently take from a liquoris ſtick. The pouder of Fox lungs may be added thereto. It wil alſo be good for her with open mouth to ſuck in the ſteame of a pectoral decoction. The Other formes of cough-medicaments preſcribed by her very learned Phyſicians, I exceedingly approve of.

The fift Counſel.

Touching an Impoſtume in the kidney.

BLoody Urines coming away with certain ſcrapings or ſmal fragments, do ſhew that this good woman is diſeaſed in her kidney, of the pain whereof ſhe complains in her Loins; ſo that I much feare an Impoſtume in her kidney, eſpecially ſince ſhe has voided Flegmatick urines, or rather ſuch as have a ſhew of quittor in them, the whol body disburthening it ſelf into

into the weak kidny. Which mischeif, unless timely prevented, 'tis to be feared, least it bring her at last into a consumption. Now the way to prevent the same, is to give her frequently emolient clysters, and then boles of the pulpe of Cassia fistula, sometimes alone, and sometimes with rhubarb. Afterwards, when the hot weather shal be abated, open the basilica veine of her Arme on the pained side. And when by these remedies her whol body shal be provided for; we must then think of clensing and strengthening her kidneys. To clense her kidneyes, in the first place almond milk made with barly and liquoris wil be good, and after that the use of the hydromel made with a large proportion of water, when the wether shal be temperate; an opiate of conserve of violets and roses, with Electuarium diatragacanthum fridgidum, pine apple kernels hulled and steeped in rose water, al made up with syrup of Marsh mallows. To the same intent broaths are good, made of cooling herbs, as lettruce, porslane, violet leaves, Marsh-mallows; also barley broaths taken in the morning. The last shal be Asses milk, which she must use a month or two in the morning, sweetned with Sugar of roses. Her kidneyes being scoured she must use the Trochischi Gordonij with diatragacanthum frigidum, dissolved in hydromel. Her kidneys must be strengthened with unguentum rosatum. In September, when the aire is temperate, let her use a decoction of China with raisons and liquoris, that the humors which flow from her whol body into her troubled kidney, may take their course another way. The course of life and diet prescribed by her learned and skilful physitian must be diligently observed by her. In mentioning the Remedies to clense her kidney, I have overpassed the use of Venice Turpentine, which wonderfully helps to scoure the kidneys, being taken with diatragacanthum fridgidum.

The sixt Counsel.

Touching swellings which had the apperance of Cancerous Wenns.

SEEing these two tumors, which appeare at the brink of her left Arme-pit, have the shew of certain Cancerous Wenns, as you have informed me by your Letters, I conceive you ought to deal very gently with them; nor must you use strong softners or digesters, least they grow worse, but gentle ones, such as is an ointment made of a little diacalciteos dissolved in juice of Plantane and Nightshade, al beaten together in a leaden morter. Nor must you desist from that medicine til you see what good it can do.

Howbeit the use of external remedies wil be then more convenient, when you have provided for the good condition of the whol body of this ingenuous damosel, which because it is tender and dry, as I understand by her Father, it must be gently handled. And therefore it must be purged with Cassia Fistula, Diacatholicon, or King *Sapors* syrup newly made, half the Saffron being left out. Which let her take twice or thrice in a month, with whey wherein Epithymum and fumitory have been infused. And because her nature seems inclined to breed melancholick juice, even of the best meats, through fault of her Livers distemper: we must fight against that juice with a syrup made of juice of buglos, Borage, Baume, Endive, sweet prunes, whereof let her take amornings with boyled water. To the same intent Asses milk wil be good, which let her use every morning with a little sugar. At the approach of spring and Fal, her body being purged, let her left basilica or median veine be opened, and take two smal porringers of blood. Finally, make an Issue in her left Arme, neare the muscle Deltois. This summer time let her frequently use a bathe of sweet fresh water, to correct the drines of her body. Moreover let an opiate be made for her of Conserve of violets, Lillies, Roses, Buglos, Borrage, Citron peel, Confectio alkermes, that by the use thereof the malignant force of the melancholy juice may be amended and the patients natural strength restored.

Let al her diet and course of life tend to moistnes, and moderately to cool; refusing al meats that breed melancholick juice.

Let her use ptisan instead of wine, or a decoction of corriander with Raisons. And when the heat of the weather shal be more remits, you shal order her wine wel allaid with water, which in this extremity of summers heat I do not allow.

These Counsels, being the Reliques and Monuments of my Father, I have gathered together

and

and treasured up very religiously, and now (most learned Sir) I commit them to your Learning, Fidelity, and Prudence, that with some commendatory mention of him, they may be published unto the world: yet so that you give al men to understand, that they were written by a man much employed, rather for the private benefit of the sick, than to be transmitted to the Memory of Posterity. Farewel.

Your Friend, and most respective Disciple,

SIMON PIETRE.

The Counsel of a certain most Learned Physitian, touching divers infirmities of the Kidneys.

WE have communicated our minds one to another touching persons troubled with the stone, in our former letters; somwhat more briefly than to satisfie either of us. And I have promised that I wil briefly handle some certain heads or points, which though common, are far from vulgar.

They are far I say from vulgar, because I know not what for an opinion has gotten head touching the use of Diureticks and such like things, which *Hercules* himself is not able to pluck up by the Roots. Which work is so much the harder, because some principal Women, and who are highly esteemed by the common People, do Magnifie their Diuretick pouders and simples, and offer them to the Diseased freely of their own accord, so that it seems now to have the force of a Law. But as one excellently wel said, *They conceive witty, Rich and wealthy persons, and of aged experience, worthy to be beleeved and trusted, wherein peradventure they are mistaken: but the opinion of the vulgar people can hardly be changed, and thereunto they square al things; both those that judg, and those that follow their fancy.* Wherein consists a great Error, and of very large extent far and wide. But especially in this Disease the foresaid Error holds. Which nevertheless is a Disease of so great consequence, that 'tis reputed the Cross and torment of Men; and wherein many times the Industry of the Physitian languishing and becoming quite mute, we see in him rather a stupid blockishness, than the new invention of a profitable Remedy. And yet who does not profess the Art of driving out Gravel, and of wasting the stone. No old wife but has in her Desks and Boxes, stone-breaking and stone-forcing pouders. Yet there is nothing wherein the common people are more blind and Ignorant, and wherein the Industry of the Physitian grows cold. But if possible, let us become wiser than others. Now certain Heads there are to be by us debated. 1. Whether the vulgar use of Diureticks be safe or not? 2. What that same mevil and flegm is, which grows in the bladder of those troubled with the stone, and which they void? 3. Whether it be safe to scoure that flegm away by stone-breakers, or it be not better to let it alone? 4. Whether it is best to temper the sharpness of Urine or not, seeing Acrimonious Urine has certain faculties of its own; for it is of a scouring power? 5. We are to enquire what means that of *Hippocrates*, *apalunai cai Malacunai*, to make tender, and to soften? Whether it be not only intended before the use of Hellebore, to avoid Convulsions: and contrariwise whether it be not dangerous to soften and weaken the body of the Kidneys, with fomentations? 6. The last question is touching the consent of the Kidneys with the upper or lower parts: Why the left Kidneys do not so usually ake as the right? why there is not in like measure an equall Sympathy of the Kidneys with the upper as with the lower parts, seeing they lie in the middle of the Body? And first as touching the diureticks or Urine forcing Medicines. *Galen* confutes their opinion, who give hot and biting things promiscuously to all persons troubled with the stone. For the body is to be considered, and the matter it self, and the efficient cause. If the body be very fat, intemperate, given to Gluttony, a man must deal otherwise, than he would do, if his Patients body were lean, Cholerick, ful of hot and dry Heat. For a gross and fat

body, fasting, and the use of attenuating things is good: but to an hot and Cholerick person fasting is not good, nay it is dangerous, as causing more matter to be heaped up. And the use of Diureticks is very good in the others, but in these latter dangerous. And the same Author distinguishing Arthritick and Diuretick Medicaments; will have them to be Diureticks, which are of forcible heat and Acrimony, and they do dissolve, melt and separate. And both of them do the same thing to persons that have the stone as to persons Diseased in their Lungs, and therefore they are forbidden to them both. But in the Diseases of the Lungs, because while they melt and separate the serous or wheyish substance they render that which remains more stif and hard to be brought up. Secondly, when Milk provokers are distinguished from such things as move the Courses, the latter must be more biting and hotter, because the womb draws not to it self: contrariwise milk provokers ought to be less hot, because both blood of it self goes to the dugs and is drawn thither: and why then do we use things so hot and biting to purge the Kidneys, seeing they have a most strong attractive faculty? It is one thing to be absolutely Diuretick, another to have the power of moving Urin, another to have the power to wast and wear the stone, or to cut the matter. Such as cut stoney collections, though they cut, yet ought they not to be very hot. For too much heat contracts and renders the stone hard and compact by drying it, but does not cut the same, nor divide it. And therefore those things which dry not and moderately heat, do breed milk; such things as heat more, and dry not very much, provoke the Courses: and both provoke urin: as also such things as heat and dry: and they are termed Diureticks, not because they alone move Urins, but because they move nothing but Urins, neither Milk nor Courses. But sometimes Diureticks are to be used, other whiles Ureticks: and these latter when we would lenifie, moisten, and dissolve the body of the stone, but not to melt and dissolve it by taking away the thinner part, and rendring the thicker more stubborn and rebellious to work upon. For things that moisten and cool, and withal in some measure move Urine, because they correct the dryness, they remove the occasion of more contumacious concretion or growing together of the stony matter. The Author of the Book of Kidney diseases, who ever he were, wasts the stone with things of a luke warm temper. *For hot Urine-provokers harden the stone, but lukewarm things by little and little diminish the same, and make it not harder. For seeing the stone is gathered and compacted by over much heat, lukewarm things are good, as being contrary to those things which did breed the stone. But Diuretick and very hot things do make the stone harder. But when there is as yet no stone, or it is not great, yet obstruction is caused by gravel, and by thick and clammy Juyces, then you may safly administer hot things, and such as open obstructions.* Which is the Counsel of *Galen* when he explains those two words, *Leptunai*, and *Hapalunai*, to attenuate and to soften, so as *Leptunai* to attenuate is to be referred to the Humors, *Hapalunai* to soften, is to be referred to the solid Members. Although saies he we do not give Hellebore, it is good that the Humors be thin, and the body of the Kidneys soft, that the Humors may easily pass through them. *For the stone wil never begin to breed if a man shal have his Humors alwaies thin, and the body of his Kidneys soft.* And that I may couclude, it is one thing to consider, the sand it self and gravel to be voided, and Another to consider the stone, which either is made or in making. For the gravel and against obstructions, Diureticks, and things somwhat sharp, as the detergents or scourers wil be good: but for the stone in making, such as hinder its encrease, as scour away the adhering gravel, cut and attenuate the glue that sodders the stone. But for the stone already made, such things are good as soften and have a certain lukewarm faculty, especially that the sharp, biting, and dry heat may be tempered, which is the compacter and baker of the stone. If the Law of Contrariety is to be observed, a Physitian must oppose what is thick by such things as attenuate, what is hard by things that soften, what is clammy and tough, by things which divide and cut. Now openers and Diaphoreticks have mixt forces; for openers have a mixture of the powers of things which divide and make thin, and Diaphoretick of the powers of attenuaters, aperitives, and detergents; for so the waies being opened, and the humor attenuated, that wil be scoured off which was faulty, and forced into the Skin, to be driven out by sweat and exhalation. And now for that same snevil or Flegmatick matter which grows together in the bladders of such as are troubled with the stone, whence comes a Flegmatick snottie Urine. And Mſr. *Fernelius*, reckons, that such an Urine proceeds either from an Ulcer, or a stone contained in the bladder. It resembles starch

which

which women uſe about their Cloaths, or rather the mucilage drawn out of ſeeds infuſed in lukewarm water. 'Tis incredible what a deal of this mucilage is voided by one that has a ſtone in his bladder. Nor ceaſes it to breed in a bladder with a ſtone, til the ſtone be taken out. But when the ſtone is taken away, its no longer voided. The Cauſe whereof, is known to few, and requires more time and leiſure to ſpeake of. It is bred alſo in thoſe who have had a malignant gonorrhea, whence breeds the fleſhy knob in the pits-pipe. For while that which is thin is voided forth, and the thick ſettles to the bottom, and nature becauſe of its thickneſs and the ſtraitneſs of the paſſages cannot ſoften it; hence, ſometimes a ſtone is bred. Sometimes the Urine is ſtopped; Hence the whole bladder almoſt is ſometimes taken up, whiles it ſticks to the wals of the bladder and there encreaſes: hence the patients have a continual provocation to make water, and many are brought to their laſt end. The Queſtion is, whether it be ſafe to ſcour off and cleanſe away the foreſaid flegmatick ſnevel by the uſe of detergent or ſcouring medicaments? For in the firſt place according to *Hippocrates* it is as it were a glew whereby the gravel is combind and united into the forme of a ſtone. Moreover it ſuppreſſes the Urine; and thirdly it fils ſomtimes by its abundance, the whol bladder, whence neceſſarily death muſt follow.

Now ſometimes it is convenient to cleanſe the ſame away, and ſomtimes the ſnevil is ſerviceable to aſſwage the pain. For it daubs and covers the ſtone with its clammineſs, whence its roughneſs is made ſmooth, and cauſes leſs trouble. Alſo it blunts the ſharp corners of the ſtone, by daubing and clamming the ſame. And therefore it makes the patients life more ſweet and eaſeful. And haply (if my conjecture may find place) Nature by an inconſiderate and fortuitous prudence, doth ſuggeſt this ſlimy matter, that the ſtone may be made thereby leſs offenſive. Nor is there any need to ſcoure away this flegm and mucilage, which would otherwiſe mitigate the patients pains. For as long as it is not in ſo great quantity, as to fil the cavity of the bladder, ſo much profit comes thereby, that the ſtone being daubed therewith, becomes familiar to the bladder, and by that meanes much leſs pains doe happen in makeing water. As touching the urin, whether or no it ought to be lenified, and tempered, may be reaſonably queſtioned: for what need have we to ſeeke detergents and ſcourers from abroad, when we have an equivalent remedy at home. For the urine does purge, ſcour and waſh away. Yea and ſome ſtone-cutters after they have taken out the ſtone, doe judiciouſly forbeare to put any detergent and purging medicaments into the ulcer, becauſe the urine coming that way, doth by its cleanſing faculty ſupply their place. And when in perſons ſubject to the ſtone, the Urine is tempered to avoid pain, it loſes ſo much of its cleanſing faculty. But I leave this to the conſideration of others. 'Tis now time to come to the laſt Queſtions. Concerning the proper ſenſe of the words *Apalumai* and *Leptunein*, I have already ſpoke, occaſionally. *Hippocrates* ſeems to require a certain ſoftening of the kidneys when they are too hard, and an exact attenuation or thin making of the humors, but that principally becauſe he ſpeaks of an heleborate medicament, which is uſeful in young bodies and old diſeaſes, which cannot be ſtired without a Lever. Now this ſoftning of the more ſolid bodies, therefore procured, that the patient may not incur the hazard of ſuffocation, and that there may be no great occaſion of a convulſion. But *Galen* does more largely extend the ſenſe of thoſe words of *Hippocrates*. And though we uſe no hellebore, yet he thinkes the more ſollid body of the kidneys ought to be looſened and mollified. But in fomentations, bathing, and ſoftening, great caution muſt be uſed, for three inconveniencies follow. In the firſt place frequent fomentations effeminate the fleſh: alſo, by cauſing weakneſs, it weakens the expulſive facculty eſpecially, ſo that it cannot ſo wel quit it ſelf of what is moleſtful. Thirdly, though I grant there may be great occaſions to uſe theſe medicaments; yet when the body of the kidnies is made effeminate and ſoft, they become more apt to receive excrements from the whol body, whence a relaps is occaſioned. But the phyſitian muſt uſe ſuch care and providence, that when there is uſe of baths and fomentations, before he diſmiſs the patient, he may again ſtrengthen the parts, which have been for a time looſened, and ſoftened: leaſt (as *Galen* ſpeakes) they be brought to a rheumatick diſpoſition, which is nothing but a facility and proneneſs to receive excrements, flowing thereto from the whole body. But how far the uſe of theſe ſofteners muſt extend, it belongs to the prudent and diſcreet phyſitian to conſider. Moreover, the laſt queſtion, has a certain latitude. For the matter propounded, is the conſent of the kidnies, with the upper and lower parts. Why the left parts, when the left kidney is troubled, are more vexed, than the right parts are, when the right Kidney is diſeaſed? Whether the upper and lower parts do equally ſympathize with the

diseased kidney seeing it is seated in the middest betwixt both. And in the first place when parts are diseased, it is very good to know, whether they are affected of themselves, or by sympathy with some other parts. And *Hippocrates* did not impertinently at first admonish, that the differences of the pains in the sides or brest, and other parts was to be observed, as in some the parts behind the midrif and the shoulderblades are pained; in others the thigh is nummed; yea and in the same part, there is a difference of the paines, for one pain is dul, the other sharp, in which case the prudent consideration of the Physitian is desired. For the comon people and some unskilful physitians, do frequently by mistake attribute the cause of the pain to a catarrh, when it wholly belongs to the kidneyes, and al the cure is to be applyed to them. And therefore *Hippocrates*, an excellent Teacher, thus writes; *Those who being diseased in their kidnies, have paines about the muscles of their back-bone; if they arise about the external parts, expect an impostume outwards, &c.* Whereupon, the most learned *Arculanus*, among signes of an impostume in the kidnies, especially in the coates of the said kidnies, reckons a difficulty in bending of the back, a troublesome cough, and that the patient cannot easily stand or go upright. And yet many so affected, have been by physitians cured as if they were troubled with a Catarrhe, whereby they have lost al their labour. And amongst the rest diligent attention ought to be given to what *Hippocrates* writes, touching the sundry sorts of diseases which molest the kidneys. In explicating whereof, he writes that among other concomitant signs of diseases in the Kidneys, are pains in the brest and thighs. Yea verily many have been cured for the Pleurisie, whenas the cheif cause of the disease was the Kidney, either having a stone in it, or otherwise diseased. *Hippocrates* celebrates two humors as chief causes of kidney diseases, viz. flegm, and choller. And it is to be observed, that great care be had, least the greatnes of the kidney deceive us, especially such a greatnes as som long & hidden disease has caused. For a physitian is often thereby deceived, beleeving that it is a tumor in the spleen, and that those paines which arise often under the bastard ribs, are from the spleen, whereas they proceed wholly from the growth of the kidney. For dissection alone after the patients death declares, that which the Prudence of Physitians could not attain unto. And therefore in the same part there are sundry sorts of pain. In the Kidney an heavy pain, and two waies heavy; for that is truly heavy which carries with it a sence of heavyness, and *bareia odune*, an heavy pain, is *Oxeia*, a sharp pain. For both these paines happen. The truly heavy, if the stone lie in the substance of the Kidnies, also if the substance of the kidneys be inflamed. An acute paine, when other parts than the substance of the kidnes are pained, as the Coat incompassing the kidnies (and it may be pained by a stone contained in the substance of the kidnies by distention, in case the sollid substance of the Kidnies be distended) the inner cavity of the Kidney, the Veins and arteries which are terminated into the Cavity of the kidnies, and the originals of the Ureters. This is the true Judgment of *Galen* concerning the causes of pain in the kidnie. Concerning which three occasional questions may be asked. First, Whether the kidney may be inflamed, without inflamation of other parts? viz. The veins and Arteries, because he saies there is an heavy pain, that is with a sence of heavines joyned therto, when the substance of the kidnies is inflamed, which would not happen if the veines and arteries were inflamed: for the pain would then be accute or sharp. Secondly, Whether or no when the veins and Arteries are inflamed the pain is accute? For it seems not. Thirdly, Whether or no to make an acute pain, it be necessary that al the foresaid parts be affected together at one and the same time? viz. the inner cavity of the kidney, the mouth of the Ureters, the Veines, Arteries, and also the coat it self; or that they be affected severally? of which I shal dispute no more in this place, but leave this scruple in the minds of the readers. I come now to the nummedness.

There was long since a prime Physitian (as a mans reason and understanding is apt to mistake) who applyed remedies to one that had a numness in his leg, as fearing that he would fal into the palsie; until a more quick-sited Physitian, declared the numness to be no beginning of the palsie, but a signe of a disease in the kidney of the same side. And at last the truth was discovered. I see *Galen* and the Author of the book of kidny diseases, doe a little vary, for thus saies *Galen*. A numness is caused in the thigh by reason of the conjunction of the vessels resting upon the back, viz. The vena cava, and the great Artery with the Kidnies and the thighs: for they shoot very large into the Kidneys, but into the loines they are not inserted large. But those who conceive the kidneyes are coupled to the thighs by the Urinary passages, or membrains, or nerves, or the peritonæum, are unskilful in Anatomy.

This

This is the opinion of the other Author; when the ſtone is bred in the kidneys; that veine is affected which deſcends unto the thighs: for they are both from one branch of the vena cava, which nature has diſtributed to the lower parts. Now the vein which goes into the thighs being filled, the nerve or muſcle is compreſſed, whereupon the animal ſpirit does not paſs unto the thigh. Here mention is made of the Nerves, but in the other not. And one thing is to be noted, which the ſame Author obſerves, viz. That in the diſturbance cauſed by a ſtone in the kidney, one or other of the teſticles is drawn back, according as the right or left kidney is affected. And how that comes to paſs, they ſhew from Anatomy. It remaines that we reaſon about the ſubverſion of the ſtomach, and difficulty of breathing. The kidneys (ſaies he) are placed beſides the back-bone, behind the guts and ſtomach. Therefore a certain violent diſtention being made in the kidneys, by the mutuall ties, the diſeaſe paſſes to the guts and ſtomach, and thence the diſorder aſcending the ſtomach is made ſick. And how happens that ſame painful diſtention, ſeeing the kidneys by reaſon of their ſolidity are not ſtretched. For there is a certain contrary endeavor, when the veſſells are ſtretched, and the body of the kidneys by reaſon of their ſolidity does not give way. Alſo they conceive, that a certain ſhortneſs of breath ariſes, by reaſon of the midrif, which in its lower part is furniſht with the peritonæum, a coate which appertains unto the kidneys, and above with a membrane, which is ſtrecht out before the ribs. In that the midrif ſuffers with the kiddneys, being an Inſtrument of free breathing, it is a cauſe of ſhortneſs of breath. But certaine Anatomiſts (as nature ſports her ſelf with variety in ſeveral bodies) while they diligently follow the propagation of the nerves, have found a remarkable part of thoſe nerves ariſing from the ſixt pair, inſerted into the kidneys: which part paſſes through the middle of the Midrif, and reaches as far as to the Claviculæ or Chanel-bones. Hence ariſes difficulty of breathing, and a ſort of orthopnæa. Whereupon a perſon of quality being troubled with a diſeaſe in his kidneys and having withal the Orthopnæa, moſt men accuſed an hidden diſeaſe of his Lungs: others of more underſtanding, judged all came from his kidneyes, and that there was no fault in his Lungs. They let themſelves to cure his Kidneyes, and he recovered. And true is that ſaying of *Hippocrates* Touching moſt hard and un-apparent diſeaſes, opinion judges rather than Art. As for the conſent of upper and lower parts, let us hear only *Arculanous*: There are other ſymptomes when the right kidney is diſeaſed, others when the left. When the right is troubled the liver is affected and the upper parts rather than any others: if the left, the evil is communicated rather to the lower parts. Is this true? Do they differ in ſituation? Or are they equally placed betwixt the upper and lower parts? The Anatomiſts muſt reſolve us in this particular. I ſhall ſpeak of one thing by the way which ſome have obſerved. When there is a like cauſe of paine in both kidneys, more and greater troubles ariſe from the left kidney diſeaſed, than from the right, becauſe as they ſay, the gut colon where it touches the left kidney, is much narrower than where it touches the right kidney. Of which conſult Anatomy. And becauſe leſs ſerious and ſporting matters are ſomtimes to be joined to ſerious; that the leſs ſerious may ſomwhat lighten the labor taken to underſtand the more ſerious, I will alledg one thing from *Hippocrates*, which ſeems in ſome ſort to be reckoned among miracles. A certane Man named *Moſchus* was exceedingly given to breed ſtones; a little ſwelling broke out upon his upper eye-lid, which was the occaſion of the breaking away of his lower diſeaſes. From this place it ſeems the ſwelling which roſe on the eye-lid, a part far diſtant from the kidneys, did cure the man of the ſtone. Which is a kind of a monſtrous thing. One Interpreter refers the cauſe thereof to the Brain, from whence he draws a certain original of ſtones; becauſe the brain affords a cold matter, which is the cauſe of the ſtones growing and being congealed together. Which matter when it drives not downwards, it breeds ſomthing reſembling ſtones in the eyelids or other bordering parts. And he brings an example from his own Father: who being troubled with the ſtrangury and ſtone, cauſing himſelf to vomit, and diligently purging his brain, he was freed from thoſe troubles. I do not condemne the opinions of others: every mans judgment is his own, and free. And it is better to invent ſome reaſon or other, than paſs over an Authors text unexpounded. But I expect ſome others will give light to that obſcure place, with more accurate judgment. But to diſcourſe overlong and over accurately to an Artiſt, were to bring Owls too *Athens*, or Coals to *New-caſtle*, according to the Proverb. *Farewel.*

F I N I S.



OF THE FRENCH POX.

CHAP. I.

Of the Name and original of the Veneral Diſeaſe.

AMongſt contagious diſeaſes, next to the Peſtilence, and Leproſy of Arabians, the French Pox doth challenge the firſt place; but it is called by ſeveral names: the moſt common name is the French Pox, which was therefore impoſed, becauſe it firſt of al in Europe appeared amongſt the French. For in the yeare of our Lord 1493. and 1494. When *Charls* the Eighth, King of *France*, warred with King *Alphonſus* at *Naples*, this diſeaſe firſt appeared and began to rage in the Camps of the French, and therefore by the *Italians* was firſt of al named the French diſeaſe. For whereas *Antonius Benivenius de abdit. morb. cauſ. cap.* 1. relates that it happened in the year of our Lord 1496. that doubtleſs is thus to be underſtood, That now this diſeaſe did no longer contain it ſelf in *Italy*, but as he ſpeaks, had almoſt ſpread over al Europe, and began to diffuſe it ſelf abroad through the reſt of its provinces; for al other Authors agree in this, that this diſeaſe did firſt of al appeare at the foreſaid time in the French Camp at *Naples*, and there was called the French diſeaſe. But the French that they may remove this diſgrace from themſelves, and retort the injury upon the Italian, cal it the Italian, and Neapolitan diſeaſe, becauſe it was firſt known in *Italy* at *Naples*. Others becauſe it was brought by the Spaniards into the Fench Camp, cal it the Spaniſh diſeaſe, and others the Indian, for the writers of the Indies do report that in that part of *America*, whoſe longitude ends towards the North, and which they cal *Florida*, this diſeaſe many ages ago was epidemical; and they write that it did generally invade, and ſuddenly ſeize on many without any manifeſt cauſe, without contagion, and eſpecially if any one had copularion with a woman in the time of her Courſes. *Fracaſtorius* cals it Syphilis, ſome the gout of the privities, ſome the great Pox, becauſe puſtles and ſwellings do every where break forth like thoſe of the ſmal Pox. Moſt men now adays without any injury or diſgrace to any Nation, do cal it the Veneral diſeaſe, becauſe it is chiefly contracted by a contagion from Venery, and lying with unwholſome bodies.

The Names of the french diſeaſe.

The French Diſeaſe.
The Italian.
The Neapolitan.
The Spaniſh
The Indian.

Syphilis.
Pudendagra.
The great Pox.

But Authors are wont here to make this Quærie, Whether that diſeaſe ſprung up at *Naples* about the yeare 1494. were a new diſeaſe, or whether it were known to the Ancients? *Franciſcus Valleſius.* 1. *Epidem. com.* 1. And *Hieron Ruſnerus de Scorbuto exercit.* 1. and the ſome other moderns, are of opinion this diſeaſe was unknown to the ancients, and they think that *Hippocrates* did not ſhadow it

The Veneral Diſeaſe: Whether it be a new Diſeaſe.

 out

out by his pencil, but ſet it forth to the life in 3 Epid. Sect. 3. (they are the words of *Reuſner*) whenas he reckons up there divers ſymptomes, which are ſeen in the veneral diſeaſe; as impoſthumations and ſuppurations of the fleſh, the lying bare of the nerves and bones, and great fallings forth, fluxions collected not like unto matter, but far worſe, a baldneſs of the head and chin, with and without a Feaver, St. Anthonies fire with ſmal Ulcers and inflamation, filthy and putrid fluxes, pains of the limbs, ſwellings about the jaws, inflamations of the tongue, impoſtumations, about the teeth, ſtammering, corrupt, and perplext ſpeech, enterings into conſumptions, burning Feavers, and which is worſt of al, ulcers about the pubes and privities.

But *Hippocrates* in that place never ſo much as dream'd of the Veneral diſeaſe, but deſcribes a moſt grievous peſtilence, according to the judgment of *Galen* and al interpreters, and the evidence of the Hiſtory it ſelf witneſſing the ſame. For that diſeaſe for the moſt part invaded with a Feaver, which is not ſo in the Veneral diſeaſe and was epidemical, whenas the Veneral diſeaſe is diſſeminated only by contagion, and no other way, and the method of curing that diſeaſe was far different from the cure of the veneral.

Dodoneus alſo hath obſerv'd upon the alleaged place of *Benivenius*, that a long time agoe ſome men have contracted ſome hurts from uncleane and filthy women, as *Guilielmus Saliceus*, *Gordonius*, and *Valleſcus de Taranta*, do teſtify, the laſt of which lived in the year 1418. but *Saliceus* flouriſht in the yeare 1270. *Gordonius* in the time between them both. Nay holy writ doth teſteſy that he that followeth harlots, ſhal have wormes and moths for his reward: but I do not think that thoſe diſeaſes were the ſame with the Veneral diſeaſe of this time which firſt of al appeared at the aforeſaid time in *Italy* in the Camp of the French. Therefore though *Paracelſus*, *lib. de tumorib. et ulcer. morb. Gal. cap.* 3. Writes that this hapned in the yeare 1478. and *lib.* 1. *de cauſa luis Gal. cap.* 3. In the yeare 1480. yet he differs from the relations of al others, ſince al agree in this, that this diſeaſe was not known in Europe, before the yeare of our Lord 1493. although it were endemious in the weſt *Indies* a long while before, and was brought by the Spaniards out of *India* into *Italy*. For when *Chriſtopher Columbus* in the yeare 1492. in the month of *September* undertook his firſt voyage into the weſt Indies, and ſpent almoſt two years in that expedition, he returned into *Spain* in the yeare 1494. whoſe Souldiers being infected with that diſeaſe in *India*, and afterwards ſerving in the *Italian* expedition, did ſow amongſt them this diſeaſe. For as *Gabriel Falopius* writes of this buſineſs *de morb. Gal. lib.* 1. (Who reports his Father was in that warre) whenas the Spaniards by reaſon of the dearenes of proviſin did drive out the unſerviceable multitude, the French did privately entertain their harlots, being allured by their beauty, and ſo infected with their contagion contracted this diſeaſe, which afterwards was firſt of al ſpred through their camps, & hence throughout Europe.

The Original of the Veneral diſeaſe.

Yet in ſome Countries it hath and doth yet ſpred more frequently, in others 'tis more rare, to enquire into the cauſe whereof, it being a thing hateful we ſhal forbeare; yet this I think is certain, that there are fewer ſick of this diſeaſe in *Germany*, than in ſome other Countries. *Gabriel Fallopius* makes mention *de morb. Gal. cap.* 76. Of *Jacob Carpus*, who was the firſt almoſt that uſed the way of cure by unction of Quickſilver, who by this cure alone grew ſo rich, that he left beſides Silver, 40000. Golden * Scutatoes. And *Capivaccius* reports in *tract: de lue Vener. cap.* 12. In fine, that he hath gotten by the cure of the French Pox only above 18000 Crowns of Gold. And *L. Septal. l.* 7. *animad: n.* 186. writes that at *Millaine* in *Brolius Hoſpital*, there is oftentimes cured ſeventy in the ſpring only, and at other ſeaſons alwaies two hundred. But I confeſs ingeniouſly, that within theſe 34 yeares which I have practiſed at *Witeberge*, and by Gods bleſſing I do it not without profit, that I have not gained by the cure of this diſeaſe ſo many crowns,

* *A Coin.*

Crownes, as *Capivaccius* hath got thouſands of them, by reaſon of the fewneſs of them that are ſick of this diſeaſe in this place.

Yet others differ concerning its original, and think that this diſeaſe was not only diſſeminated by contagion from the Spaniards, but think it was contracted by the fault of the Ayr, as epidemick diſeaſes are; when as many every where in diverſe countries began to be ſick of this diſeaſe without any contagion; of which hereafter.

Chap. II.

A Hiſtory of the Veneral Diſeaſe.

BUt concerning the original of this diſeaſe we ſhal ſpeak more hereafter when we ſhal treat of its cauſes: now let us enquire into its nature, which that it may ſucceed more happily, and that it may appeare, where lyes the controverſy, I wil firſt propound its deſcription and hiſtory out of creditable Authors which then lived eſpecially *Hieron Fracaſtorius*, and *Anton. Benivenius*. When this diſeaſe was firſt made known, there roſe puſtles of divers kinds in the genital parts, ſomtimes alſo the head, principally in the hairy part, ſomtimes alſo the forehead, neck, breaſt, duggs, armes, and other parts, and from thence did ſpred over the whol body, in ſome indeed they were flat and low, but rough on their ſurface, when the ſcales were fallen off, of a color ſomwhat red, and the fleſh under them appeared callous; in others they were like to warts, of a round figure, which grew to the magnitude of an acorn cuppe whoſe figure alſo they reſembled, and from theſe the lighter ſcales falling off did hang forth a more ruddy fleſh, from wch did flow forth a virulent ichor and of a ſtrong ſmel; but ſome were taken with larger puſtles, which did not ſwel above the skin, which had thicker ſcales, from which alſo did flow a more plentiful virulent matter, and the ſcales being caſt, the fleſh appeared more dark and ſomwhat livid. Some having white ſcales taken off, there remained ſomwhat like unto a skar, from which blood ſometimes flowing, did ſhew the difficulty of the cure, and it repreſented the likeneſs of a dry ſcabb, a diſeaſe worſe than al the reſt. For though it did corrode leſs, yet for ſpreading it was worſe than the reſt, and was diffuſed into divers places. Beſides thoſe external puſtles there did riſe others in internal places, as in the mouth, jawes, noſe, and the obſcene parts, which turned to malignant and creeping ulcers which eat away the parts under them, and in ſome eat up the Noſe, in others the lipps, in others conſumed the Uvula, and perforated the palate, which cauſed their voice to be hoarſe; neither did this evil ſpare the bones, but cauſed rottenneſs in them, whence ſome had their skul, others other bones ful of holes. Neither did thoſe puſtles and ſigns of the diſeaſe appear only in the external parts obvious to the eye, but it was obſerved in ſome, that thoſe puſtles & filthy ulcers had poſſeſt their very bowels. They that had this evil about their upper parts, had vitious diſtillations, which did ſomtimes eat their palate, ſomtimes the jaws and tonſills, in ſome their noſe, and in others their eyes. Furthermore for the moſt part certain gummoſities grew on their limbs in great deformity. For oftentimes they were prominent the bigneſs of an egg, oftentimes the ſize of a Loaſe, which being opened, there appeared a white mucilaginous mucous: that tenacious callus, happened moſt of al in the Arms and Thighs, in ſome it was exulcerated, ſomtimes it continued whole until their death. There came alſo cruel pains with exceeding torment, which were exaſperated towards night: but thoſe pains did ſhew themſelves about that part of the bones where is no fleſh in the Leggs, ſhoulder-blade, about the collar-bone, in the ſhoulders, head, about the forehead and temples, ſomtimes alſo in the breaſt bone, but not in the very joints, but about the muſcles and nerves. In which caſe notwithſtanding there was great variety. For ſome had pains without puſtles, ſome puſtles without pain, the greateſt part was affected with both, and truly thoſe pains ſomtimes went before the puſtles,

ſomtimes followed, and ſometimes roſe together with them: in the interim al parts languiſhed, the body pined away, the appetite was dejected, watchings, ſadneſs, and continual anger, and deſire of repoſe poſſeſt them; ſometimes a ſmal Feavor accompanied them, but ſeldome: their blood, if a Vein were opened, was mucous, and corrupt, their urine thick, fat, and ſomwhat red without a Feavor, they went hardly to ſtool, and the excrements were mucous and dry. The ſhedding of the Hair is frequent in this Diſeaſe, eſpecially in the Head, about the Temples, and the hinder part, alſo of the eybrows, and of the Beard in men; oftentimes alſo Buboes break forth in the groin, therefore called Veneral and Gallical, which ſometimes vaniſh again, ſomtimes grow hard, ſomtimes ſuppurate; there riſe alſo in the privities of Women knobs, and in men in their Arſe-hole, beſides ſomtimes there happen chops and cleſts in the hands and feet, and the thick Skin in the palme of the hands departs from the skin under it; ſometimes alſo the nails fal off: At laſt there happens ſometimes, that in men a virulent matter flowes through their yard, in women through their privities, which flux of virulent matter is commonly called the Gallical or virulent running of the reins, although indeed it is not ſeed, by which flux of the yard, the inward paſſage is exulcerated, and certain caruncles do grow in the urinary paſſage, whence they piſſe hot, and there is cauſed a dropping of the urine with pain. And this was the face of that diſeaſe at its firſt riſe, wch as *Hieron Fracaſtorius* relates, ſince that time ſeems to be alered. For almoſt twenty yeares after its original there began to appear fewer puſtles, but more gumoſeties, and the puſtles became dryer, and the paines more cruel. Six yeares after again there was another change, for now there were very few puſtles ſeen, and almoſt no pains, or much gentler, but many gumoſeties, and which ſeemed wonderful in al, the ſhedding of the haire made men almoſt ridiculous, ſome appearing without beard, ſome without hair on their eyebrowes, others with bald pates, from which change *Fracaſtorius* had good hopes, and did think that the old age of this diſeaſe was now entring, and that ere long it would come to paſs, that it could not propigate it ſelf by contagion, becauſe the matter grew dayly thicker, in which both fewer, and weaker ſeminaries are produced: but his hopes did much deceive him, and this diſeaſe laſt even in theſe times, nay as ſome think, 'tis wel nigh worſe than it was of old.

CHAP. III.

Of the Nature of the Veneral Diſeaſe.

SInce then ſo great a Hodge-podge of diſeaſes and Symptoms appear in this affect, we muſt diligently enquire what the nature of it is, of which divers Authors have their divers opinions, and as *Epiphanius Ferdinandus* writes of this buſineſs, in *Hiſt. Med. Hiſt.* 17. the Authors which have writ of this Diſeaſe, although they amount to the number of eighty (and perhaps more) are al almoſt differing concerning the Eſſence of this Diſeaſe, and every one defines it at his own pleaſure; for whenas this Diſeaſe was unknown to the Ancients, nor deſcribed by them, nor they had not, as is uſually wont to be, the opinions of the Ancients to inſiſt upon, every Modern uſing his own liberty hath propoſed his own Opinion. Truly I think this is not doubted, that 'tis a Contagious, Malignant and Venenate Affect; neither doth it ſeem to want any great pains to prove it, for it appears ſufficiently by this, that in ſo ſmal a quantity of matter, by which this Diſeaſe is contracted by contagion, there is ſo great force and power of action, as no firſt quality, or the temperament made up of the firſt qualities can have; and the variety of Diſeaſes and Symptomes in this evill is ſo great, that it cannot be reduced to any manifeſt cauſe; therefore as in peſtilent conſtitutions, ſuch as that Attick one was in *Thucidides*, and that which *Hippocrates* hath deſcribed, 3. *Epid.* there was ſo great a multitude of evils, that they were forced to fly to occult qualities and a venenate cauſe; ſo alſo, there being ſo great a filth of diſeaſes and ſymptomes in the Venerous Diſeaſe,

The Veneral diſeas, is from an occult quality.

Diſeaſe, that the original of them all cannot be refer'd to any manifeſt quality, here alſo we fly to a malignant and occult quality.

But although theſe things be thus, yet Authors differ ſtil of this, whether that malignity conſiſt only in the cauſe, or whether there be alſo ſome malignant Diſeaſe preſent. *Capivaccius, de Morb. Gal. Cap.* 1. thinks this affect not to be the Diſeaſe, but the cauſe, while he defines the Veneral Diſeaſe, that it is an excrement wholly preternatural, able to hurt man many waies, produced out of humane ſubſtance by its like. *What it is.* *Capivaccius opinion*

Thus alſo *Hercules Saxonia, de lue Vener. Cap.* 1. writes, that the Veneral Diſeaſe is the Cauſe, not the Diſeaſe nor the Symptome, therefore, becauſe it can exiſt out of mans body in Linnen, or other ſuch kind of vertues, beſides in the ſweat, Seed, and Blood, being ſeperated from the body; but within mans Body it infects and poſſeſſes alſo thoſe parts which are not living, and are not ſubject to Diſeaſes, viz. the humors and ſpirits. *Hercules Saxony.*

Aurelius Minadous de virulentia Vener. holds that 'tis neither the diſeaſe, nor the cauſe, nor the ſymptom; nor the diſeaſe for this cauſe *cap.* 17. becauſe 'tis neither a diſtemper, nor evil Compoſition, nor a ſolution of unity: but he denies it to be the cauſe of the Diſeaſe, *Cap.* 9. ſince that is properly the preternatural, the cauſe between which and the Action there fals a medium, viz. the diſeaſe whenas the diſeaſe is that which doth next of al hurt the Action, but the cauſe doth hurt it by intervention of the Diſeaſe; but between the Veneral virulency and the action hurt he thinks there fals no medium, but that of it ſelf by its own ſtrength doth primarily and immediately vitiate and hurt the operations; but that the Veneral virulency doth of it ſelf and primarily hurt the operations, he thinks this is conſeſt amongſt Phyſitians, and therefore deems it to be preſuppoſed, and unleſs this virulency did of it ſelf and primarily hurt the operations, ſo many Phyſitians would not have labored in ſearching out its nature. He proves it is no Symptome, *Cap.* 18. beauſe it is no action hurt, nor quality changed, nor excrement altered. That it is no action hurt, he proves by this, becauſe the veneral virulency it ſelf is that which hurts the actions; neither is it any quality changed, becauſe the qualities changed do follow the actions hurt, and beſides ſo many diſeaſes are ſeen in this virulency which are not Symptomes. But *Aurelius Minadous* himſelf, when he had rejected al the opinions & definitions of others, at length he fits himſelf to make a perfect definition and to explain the nature of this evil. But firſt of al Chap. 16. he preſuppoſes this as the ground of his opinion, viz. that the French Diſeaſe ought not to be defined by a quality, but rather by the name of a body, for this reaſon, becauſe it paſſeth from one body to another, which is the propriety of bodies not of qualities, and becauſe it toucheth other bodies, for none but bodies can touch, and be toucht again, as *Lucretius* hath it. Again, if it were a quality, it were either manifeſt, or occult, no manifeſt one, as he proves rightly by many Arguments; but that it is no occult quality he brings no ſpecial Argument, but repeats the general one, becauſe 'tis moved from place to place, and toucheth other bodies. *Aurelius Minadous.*

This preſuppoſed, afterwards Chap. 30. he affirmes the Veneral virulency to be ſomwhat corporeal internal, and truly a ſpirit or a vapor, for this reaſon, becauſe 'tis carried, commuicated, and participated in a very ſhort ſpace of time. Yet he holds it to be ſuch a vapor which is endewed with an occult quality and vertue from its whol ſubſtance, or the whol mode of its nature, by reaſon of which quality it cannot only infect any humors of the body, but alſo al parts of the body, and corrupt them & turn them to its own likeneſs: but that this evil conſiſts in a ſpiritual ſubſtance, he further proves, becauſe ſome are infected not only by the act of Venery, but alſo by a Kiſs, or the uſe of garments: next of al, becauſe ſome have felt no other hurt from this evil, than only the falling of their hair, becauſe the roots of the hairs were gnawed off by the acrid vapors. Thirdly, becauſe ſome only by vehement exerciſe have diſcuſſed this virulency. Yet he denies that vapor or ſpirit to be properly an excrement, Chap. 20. whenas that is properly an excrement, which redounds from nouriſhment, & which is caſt off from another: although he grants there that

that is commonly called an excrement, whatſoever is ſuperfluous in the body, whether it be a ſpirit, or humor, or ſome other ſolid body, whether it be uſual, or unuſual, whether according to nature or preternatural; furthermore he holds this vapor to be wandring, thin, and viſcid, Chap. 21. and to be raiſed from a ſpirituous, humorous, ſolid ſubſtance: but he proves Chap. 22. by many Arguments that this vapor is contrary and preternatural by its whole ſubſtance, of which we ſhal ſpeak hereafter; and at laſt Chap. 27. he defines the Veneral virulency, that it is a vapor by its whol ſubſtance inimicous to the natural faculty, working by degrees. And that he might unfold his mind more clearly, and not leave the Reader doubtful, to what kind of things preternatural this virulency ought to be referred, whenas he had ſaid before, that it was neither the Diſeaſe, nor the cauſe, nor the Symptome, yet it primarily hurt the actions; at length Chap. 28. he holds that 'tis an externall error, and he endeavors to prove it by this Sylogiſme, whatſoever doth primarily hurt the operation, and is not of the conſtitution of the body, is an external error, but the Veneral virulency doth primarily hurt the operation, and is not of the conſtitution of the body, therefore 'tis an external error.

Some that they may briefly quit themſelves, and hold with al men, ſay that this diſeaſe is a heap of al evils, Diſeases and ſymptomes.

The Veneral diſeaſe depends on an occult quality.

That we may clear our ſelves out of this difficult controverſy, firſt of al 'tis already proved, and ſhal be proved more at large hereafter, that they are in the right, who do here admit of an occult quality, and a power depending on the whole ſubſtance, as they commonly ſpeak; neither can they hold any other waies, Since 'tis without doubt, that 'tis a contagious and malignant diſeaſe while it is ſuch. It performes two things, to wit, it alters the body by which it is received and changeth it to its owne ſimilitude, and indeed it alters it not by the firſt qualities: as ſhal be ſaid by and by, ſince it is not expeld by the firſt qualities; neither is that change alwaies with putrefaction, whenas putretaction is not induced but by a long time, but this change is made in a moment as it were; neither is it an aduſtion as *John Baptiſta Montanus*, and ſome others do hold, whenas there is not alwaies a hot & dry diſtemper preſent, neither is it cured by cooling and moiſtening things, and oftentimes there is a ſordid putrefaction, in which there is no exuſtion.

'Tis a diſeaſe.

But whereas they hold this malignity is only in that matter ſeated without the living parts, and that there is no ſuch diſeaſe preſent, in this they erre very much. Indeed we willingly grant, that that contagious inquination, ſent forth from the body infected with the veneral diſeaſe, may adhere to the garments; neither do we deny this, that the humors in our body may be tainted with the ſame, yet in the interim it doth ſcarce follow, that the living parts remain free and ſound; for as in a putrid feaver, though the humors and ſpirits do firſt grow hot by the feaveriſh heat, yet afterwards the living parts are ſeized on by the ſame diſtemper, ſo though the humors in the Veneral diſeaſe are firſt infected by that occult malignity, yet there is no cauſe why the ſame fault may not be communicated to the living parts.

Not hot and dry.

But though ſome do acknowledg that this cauſe cannot be idle, yet whenas they know nothing beyond the manifeſt and firſt qualities, they endeavour to reduce alſo the effects of the veneral virulency to manifeſt cauſes. *John Baptiſta Montanus* as was ſaid even now, thinks the eſſence of this evil conſiſts in a hot and dry diſtemper, but the cure tels otherwiſe, whenas 'tis cured by hot and dry Medicines, as by the Decoction of Guajacum and the like: beſides, becauſe there is a great putrefaction in the Humors, which doth not proceed from a hot and dry diſtemper.

Not cold and dry.

Nicolaus Maſſa de Morb. Galli. Cap. 5. ſaith it is a coldneſs of the Liver, declining to a little drineſs with an occult quality: but as concerning the occult quality he writes truly, but that it is no cold diſtemper, the effect doth teach us, as the Ulcers, rottenneſs of the bones, and the like; and what other diſtemper ſoever they alleage. Yet they produce nothing agreeable to the Diſeaſes and Symptomes,

Symptomes, which appear in this Diſeaſe, nor to the Cure.

Therefore when as the action of the veneral virulency can be referred to no manifeſt quality. We may wel ſay that by that is induced an occult quality: For firſt of al every efficient cauſe is ſaid to be a cauſe from the nature of its efficiency, and therefore this malignant quality doth not only alter and change the humors, but alſo the living parts into its likeneſs: again, though the morbifick cauſe be taken away, and this diſeaſe ſeem now to be overcome, yet unleſs that malignant diſpoſition be deſtroyed the man recovers not his perfect health. For it hath been obſerved that the Veneral Diſeaſe hath ſomtimes growa freſh after thirty years paſt, which doubtleſs happened not becauſe the Vitious Humors lay ſo long hid in the body (for theſe would have ſooner diſcovered themſelves by their ſigns) but becauſe that malignant diſpoſition impreſt on the body was actually there, which afterwards, by degrees produced vitious humors, and corrupted, and ſo broke forth into act; and *Trincavellius*, *Lib.* 11. *de curand. rat. particul. affect. cap.* 11. reports, that a certain Woman brought forth a Child ſick of the French Diſeaſe, and every where ful of crufty Ulcers, whenas ſhe her ſelf never had any ſign of that Diſeaſe contracted, but was alwaies wholly wel, and on the contrary it may happen, that one may have a French Ulcer, which yet, when that Malignity is diſtroyed, is no longer rightly ſaid to be Gallical, but is cured by vulgar Medicines as other Ulcers. *But occult.*

Al which being thus, we conceive the the Veneral Diſeaſe, doth not only exiſt in the Humors, but alſo in the living parts, and that it doth conſiſt not only in the change of the firſt qualities, but alſo there is an occult malignant quality imprinted on the parts, and therefore the veneral Diſeaſe is to be referred to diſeaſes, and thoſe of occult qualities. Which are called by *Fernelius* diſeaſes of the whol ſubſtance, but not on every part rightly explained, as we have ſaid before, the which if *Capivaccius*, and *Saxonia* had known, the one would not have deſined this evil by the excrement, nor the other by the cauſe. if the ſame alſo had been known to *Aurelius Minadous*, he would not have endeavoured to maintain that this evil was no Diſeaſe, but an external error. For whereas he endeavors to prove that the veneral Diſeaſe is not a Diſeaſe of the ſimilar parts, becauſe it is not a diſtemper, nor an evil compoſition, nor a ſolution of unity, in this proof he labors to no purpoſe, for al this we willingly grant; but this he ought to prove, that there is no other kind of Diſeaſe in the ſimilar parts beſides the diſtemper of the firſt qualities; but that there are ſuch diſeaſes, which *Fernelius* calls of the whol ſubſtance, we more rightly, of occult qualities, is ſufficiently proved above, *part* 1. and this very Diſeaſe, as all other venenate Diſeaſes do ſhew, that it can be referred to no other kind than to malignant qualities; & this follows from *Minadous* his own ſuppoſition, and confeſſion, which he hath *Cap.* 20. where he writes, that the Veneral virulency hath power not only to infect al Humors, but al parts of the body, and to corrupt and convert them to its own ſimilitude. The ſame *Minadous* if he had known theſe Diſeaſes, had not taken ſo much pains, to what kind of preternatural things the veneral virulency ought to be referred. For firſt of al there was no need of excluding from the number of cauſes, thoſe vitious Humors, which are found in the bodies ſick of the veneral Diſeaſe, and have power to alter and change the Humors themſelves and parts of the body. For whereas he ſaith, that is properly the cauſe, between which and the action hurt the diſeaſe doth interceed, that is true of the next cauſe, but the antecedent cauſes alſo may do hurt, as they have the Nature of a vitious object, and external Error: and in this very Diſeaſe whiles the virulent Humors do imprint a malignant quality on he parts, between them and the action hurt that Malignant diſpoſition and occult quality doth interceds. Therefore whereas he thinks that Humor or venenate vapour in the veneral diſeaſe, doth imediately hurt the action, 'cis falſe, unleſs that humor have the nature of an external error. For al hurt actions in the Veneral diſeaſe do happen, whiles between them and the humor, or malignant vapor, *An examination of Aurelius Minadous opinion.*

vapor, a midling diſeaſe doth intercede, to wit, that of occult qualities.

The Veneral diſeaſe is not a Body.

But whereas he denies the Veneral virulency to be a quality, and holds it to be a body, firſt of al he confounds the cauſe and the diſeaſe, next of al he doth not diſtinguiſh between the quality and its ſubject. For whiles we ſay the Veneral evil, we underſtand either the diſeaſe it ſelf, or its cauſe: if the diſeaſe, that is a quality, as al diſeaſes are, to wit a preternatural diſpoſition of the parts, and indeed an occult and malignant quality: but if the veneral evil be taken for the cauſe, either with without, being communicated doth induce this diſeaſe; or which is in the body, which raiſeth divers diſeaſes and ſymptomes, and can infect others, we grant that cauſe may be called a body. But we muſt take notice, that thoſe humors or vapors are not ſaid to be cauſes, as they are bodies, but as they have an occult and malignant quality, which *Minadous* himſelf cannot deny, while *Cap.* 20. he writes, That that vapor or ſpirit, which he cals the veneral virulency, is endewed with an occult quality and vertue, depending on its whole ſubſtance, by which it is able not only to infect any humors of the body, but al its parts, and to corrupt and convert them to its own ſimilitude. For what ſimilitude is that I pray, to which the Veneral virulency converts not only the humors, but alſo the parts of the body, unleſs it be that occult quality with which that vapor is endewed?

Whereas laſt of al, *Cap.* 38. he refers the Veneral virulency to external error, becauſe it primarily hurts the operation, and is not of the conſtitution of the body. But before denied it to be either the diſeaſe, or cauſe of the diſeaſe, or ſymptome, in vain doth he multiply things, preternatural; for there are not more preternatural things, than the diſeaſe, cauſe, and ſymptome; and the Veneral virulency, as he deſcribes it, doth wholy belong to the cauſes two manner of waies, for either it induceth the like diſpoſition into the parts of the body, or it raiſeth other diſeaſes while it eats and exulcerates the parts. But whenas he ſaith the Veneral diſeaſe taken for the cauſe, is a vapor or a ſpirit, that is rightly to be underſtood; for indeed it can no way be denied, that it is a humor alſo, whenas in copulation 'tis rubbed againſt the body, and ſticks in the cloaths: yet ſuch is its nature, as 'tis alſo of other contagious humors, that though it be reſolved into vapors and the leaſt bodies, yet every one of them contains its whole eſſence, and hath power to affect others: and this thing may be declared by muſk, caſtor, and the like. For thoſe things, though they be bodies, and humorous too, yet are ſuch, that though they be reſolved into the leaſt bodies, nevertheleſs they retain their ful ſtrength. After the ſame manner it is in the Veneral diſeaſe, and other contagious diſeaſes, in which though the malignant and contagious humor, be reſolved into the leaſt bodies, yet every one of them obtaines the ſame eſſence, and vertue, and power to infect others. But whereas he thinks that humor and vapor is not to be called the cauſe, but an external error, in that alſo he is miſtaken: for an external error belongs unto the cauſes, from whence the Symptomes ariſing from an external error, are called the ſymptomes of the cauſe; where this alſo is to be obſerved, that Phyſitians do not vouchſafe the name of the cauſe to the next cauſe only, but alſo to the antecedent, which do not yet effect the diſeaſe: therefore there is bad nouriſhment by reaſon of vitious humors, although they have not yet imprinted a diſtemper, and vitious diſpoſition on the parts: but whereas he denies the Veneral virulency, conſidered as a vapor to be the cauſe, becauſe it hurts the actions not by the mediation of a diſeaſe, but next of al, and imediately, he preſuppoſeth that which is not yet granted, and ſo begs the queſtion: for this ſpirit or vapor hurts the very conſtitution of the ſimilar part, and imprinteth on it a malignant quality; the which he himſelf cannot deny, whiles *Cap.* 23. he holds, that by this diſeaſe of venery many actions are hurt, but not al in al people; but the hurt of the natural faculty is common to al, and that there is none, that is poſſeſt with this diſeaſe who is not troubled with ſome fault in his natural actions, and hence proceeds al that filth of excrements, and the gummoſities ariſing from thence, tumors, puſtles,

Whether it be a Vapor or a ſpirit.

by

pains, running of the reins, ulcers, rottenneſs, and ſuch like evils; and that the Veneral virulency hath a peculiar enmity, and diſcord with the natural faculty, and is inimicous to it by its whol kind, that is, by its form, by its ſpecifick faculty, by its whole ſubſtance, and occult propriety: but he further deſcribes the enmity againſt the natural faculty, that it is by its nature deſtructive to the natural ſpirit, that the Veneral virulency hath unſpeakable qualities, hindering the generation of the natural ſpirits, and thoſe not manifeſt, but occult. But whenas there is required to a natural action, the ſoul, the temperament, and the innate heat, or the implanted ſpirit, and the influent heat, he further concludes rightly, that the ſoul is not hurt, as that which can no waies ſuffer, nor the manifeſt temperament, as was proved hitherto, but chiefly the implanted ſpirit or the innate heat: al which whenas they are ſo rightly ſpoke, and the Veneral virulency is an enemy to the implanted ſpirit, and truely not by manifeſt qualities, but by its form, by its ſpecifick faculty, by an occult propriety, by which it indeavours to change not only the humors, but alſo the living parts, and the implanted heat in them into its own ſimilitude, certainly the like malignant quality, is induced into the parts: which vitious & malignant quality, what other thing I pray is it, than an occult & malignant diſeaſe?

The Veneral evil is an occult & venenate Diſeaſe.

Al which being thus, we rightly conclude, the Veneral evil is an occult and venenate diſeaſe; for it is induced by cauſes of that kind, and immediately exerciſeth ſuch effects which cannot be referred to any manifeſt diſtemper, but onely to an occult quality; neither is it cured by medicines that work by manifeſt qualities, & correct known diſtempers, but by proper and ſpecificks, which al Phyſitians at this day, and eſpecially thoſe who lived at the beginning of this diſeaſe have teſtified, and to their own and patients damage have found it true. For when they followed the common way of cure, and could do no good for the cure of this diſeaſe, they began to be deſpiſed by many, til the Spaniſh Phyſitians ſhewed them medicaments brought out of the *Indies*, and bold Chyrurgeons ventered upon Quick-Silver.

What is the ſubject of the Veneral Diſeaſe.

But that al this may be made cleare, we muſt enquire what is the ſubject to this diſeaſe, concerning which phyſitians do differ. Some have thought the privities are firſt infected: for by theſe parts for the moſt part, this evil is contracted by impure copulation, and the footſteps of this diſeaſe, unleſs it be perfectly cured, do chiefly appear about the privities; the nut is eaſily excoriated in venery, the fleſh oftentimes remaines callous for a long time, with a running of the reines, and breaking forth of buboes in the groin. But though it cannot be denied, that oftentimes the original of this evil is from the privities, and doth chiefly diſcover it ſelf in that place. Yet that doth not happen alwaies, but the ſame diſeaſe may be contracted by kiſſing, ſwear, embraces, veſtures, nay infants alſo may be infected by the milk they ſuck from their nurſe, & they that are infected after this manner, have not this diſeaſe appearing in their privities.

Not the Privities.

Some, as *Leonicenus* do hold, ſay that the skin is the ſubject of this evil, as in the ſcab, retter, and the like affects: but the skin alone is not alwaies affected, but other parts alſo, the privities, the jawes, the bones which become rotten, nay ſometimes alſo the internal parts. *Hercules Saxonia de lue Vener. Cap.* 3. maintains a threefold ſubject; one in the beginning; another in the middle; another in the diſeaſe confirmed: in the beginning he holds that the natural ſpirit is affected or the vaporous part of the maſs of blood, then the juyces and excrementitious humors, at laſt the alimentary humors, but in proceſs of the diſeaſe, aduſt humors; and the parts affected are the ſtomach & liver, & thence chylification & ſangification are hurt; but when the evil is old, flegmatick humors are the ſubject of it, & the parts affected are ſimelar, bones, nerves, membranous bodies: but we willingly grant, that as the diſeaſe is new, or old, ſo and alſo ſometimes more, ſometimes fewer parts are poſſeſt and corrupted; as we deny not this neither, that the excrementitious humors are eaſier corrupted than the alimentary, whenas nature doth alwaies more defend the profitable humors, than the excrementitious, into which without any difference this evil doth eaſily almoſt diffuſe it ſelf, but indeed the queſtion is not here, what may be infected by that virulency; but this is the Querie, what is the ſubject of this diſeaſe, which we have

Not the skin.

demonſtrated to be; for as in putrid feavers the ſpirits and humors wax hot, yet are not the ſubject of the feaver; ſo alſo though a malignant quality from the Veneral virulency be imprinted on the humors; yet they are not the ſubject of the diſeaſe, but only the living parts, and which of them is the ſubject of this diſeaſe is the queſtion: and whiles that he ſomtimes holds the Liver and ſtomach, ſometimes the ſimilar parts to be the ſubject of this diſeaſe, in that he is wavering, for whether the diſeaſe be new or old, the ſubject is the ſame.

Not the ſpermatical parts.

There were ſome others alſo, who held thoſe parts we cal ſpermatical, the nervous and membranous, were the ſubject of this diſeaſe; but not only the membranous and nervous parts, but alſo the fleſhy parts are affected in this diſeaſe.

Whether the liver.

Others hold the Liver to be the chiefe ſubject of this diſeaſe, and this opinion is moſt conſonant to truth, but when as many other parts are affected, 'tis conveniently to be explained, as ſhal be ſaid by and by.

Whether al the parts.

Aurelius Minadous de virul. Vener. Cap. 34. firſt of al preſuppoſeth this, that there is no peculiar member in our body, which is alwaies affected in the Veneral virulency, which is true in its way, whiles ſomtimes this, ſomtimes that part is affected; next of al he holds that this viulency is chiefly an adverſary to the natural actions, or rather to their faculties, which natural power when as it is in al parts the veneral virulency is not an enemy to one part in ſpeice, but to al, in which that power is. In the third place he adds this, That that natural vertue implanted in the natural parts, doth performe its operations without any influx, and that there is no natural faculty influent, as there is an animal influent; ſecondly he confutes them in particular, who hold the Liver to be the firſt and perpetual ſubject of this diſeaſe, for it may come to paſs ſaith he that one after an impure copulation may preſently ſuffer an exulceration in his privities, whom certainly no body wil deny to be infected with the Veneral diſeaſe, whenas yet in him the Liver is not affected: and the ſame reaſon is for other parts, which are firſt affected by contagion; nay he holds, that one external part being infected, the humors in the body may be infected without any hurt of the Liver. In the interim he cannot deny this, that this evil doth moſt properly and chiefly appear, when the Liver is affected, when as the operations of the Liver are neceſſary to the whol body. The ſame Author *Cap.* 4. endeavors to prove, that the Liver is not the ſubject of the Veneral diſeaſe, whenas the face ſaith he is the index and trueſt glaſs of the internal affects of the body, yet eſpecially the affects of the Liver doe appear in it; therefore if the Liver were perpetually affected in the Veneral diſeaſe, alſo the color of the face ſhould alwaies appeare vitious, the which we have found falſe by experience; for we have ſeen both men and women infected with this diſeaſe, who notwithſtanding have had a freſh color in their face, and the evil hath been in their privities: again he thinks, that by carnal copulation the privites may firſt of al be affected, and from thence the evil may creep through the veins, and by the ſpirits, to the other parts of the body, and as one part is more apt and diſpoſed than another to receive the infection, ſo ſomtimes this, ſomtimes that is infected, but not alwaies the Liver.

The Authors opinion.

That we may cleare our ſelves of this controverſy, firſt of al we muſt enquire from the actions hurt what part is affected, and what faculty is oppreſt; but though divers actions hurt that part in the veneral diſeaſe, yet al of them cannot bring us to the knowledg of the firſt and proper ſubject. It happens indeed ſomtimes, that there are pains felt in the head about the muſcles and bones, but that is not alwaies. Somtimes alſo the hurt happens in the external and internal ſences, but this alſo is ſeldom: ſomtimes putrid vapors are inflamed, and hence a Feaver is raiſed, which ſome cal a French Feaver, but this alſo happens ſeldom. In like manner 'tis in other diſeaſes and ſymptomes. One action is hurt which is common to al that are ſick of the veneral diſeaſe, viz. nutrition is corrupted; hence we ſee that in thoſe who are poſſeſt with this diſeaſe, the color of their body is changed and ſulled, and ſometimes turns black, ſomtimes of a lead color, ſomtimes livid. There ariſe every where in their body divers kinds of ſwellings and bunchings out, alſo ulcers, the bones rotten, the hairs fal off, al which proceed from corrupt nutrition. From which we conclude that the

the veneral diſeaſe is primarily an enemy to the natural faculty: but 'tis no wonder that this poyſon is only an enemy to the natural faculty, whenas there are other poyſons, which are inimicous to other faculties: thus the poyſon of the peſtilence and many others are enemies to the heart, cantharides to the bladder, mad nightſhade and opium to the animal faculty. *The Veneral diſeaſe is an enemy to the natural faculty.*

Whence that we may briefly conclude the buſineſs, this evil indeed may be contracted by one member, yet if it be ſpread into more from that one, that comes to paſs becauſe the Liver is infected: yet becauſe this poyſon hath principally an enmity with the natural faculty, and the fountaine of that, or chiefe ſeat is the Liver, that alſo is primarily infected with this virulency, and through that the reſt of the parts contract this evil. Therefore whereas *Minadous* objecteth, the color of the face is ſometimes freſh, therefore the evil is not yet communicated to the Liver, but ſtil ſticks in the privities which were firſt of al infected, and the force of this virulence is ſometimes greater, ſometimes leſs; from whence alſo 'tis ſometimes ſooner, ſometimes later communicated to the Liver. Beſides, this evil conſiſts not in the firſt qualities, but in occult, whence 'tis no wonder, that that malignity may conſiſt in the blood, which to the appearance is good; but al thoſe things wil be yet made clearer by the diſcovery of the cauſes.

Chap. IV.

Of the Cauſes.

BUt concerning the cauſes of this diſeaſe, two things are to be explained, the firſt is how at this day the Veneral diſeaſe is contracted; the other is, what was its original when it firſt appeared. At this day indeed I think this evil is no otherwiſe contracted, than by contagion, and that 'tis manifeſt that every Veneral pox is not contagious. *Hercules Saxonia, lib. de lue Vener. cap.* 3. Holds that every Veneral pox is not contagious, and that which is old and confirmed is for the moſt part leſs contagious, than that which is new, and of a middle age, and that which diſcovers it ſelf by knobs, is not contagious; and he endeavors to prove it, firſt of al by reaſon, becauſe the contagion is placed in a hot and movable excrement, but when nothing breaths forth from the part affected, which can be communicated to another, the diſeaſe then is not contagious, and therefore becauſe in the knobs there is no ſuch excrement contained, or if it be contained, it is not carried to the genicals, therefore that diſeaſe ſhal not be contagious; next of al by experience, for he writes that a certain noble man of *Padua*, who had uſed Guajacum almoſt twenty times, and was thrice anointed with quickſilver, yet could never be cured, and though he lay with Virgins yet he never infected them: and out of *Antonius Muſa* he relates of one, who had a wife poſſeſt with the Veneral diſeaſe about her breaſt, yet he never contracted the diſeaſe. *The Veneral diſeaſe is contracted only by contagion.* *Whether it be alwaies contagious?*

But here we cannot aſſent to *Saxiona*, but we hold that every Veneral diſeaſe is in its manner contagious; but whereas he objects againſt us experience, it doth not follow, that if one ſick of the Veneral diſeaſe doth not actually infect another; that the diſeaſe it ſelf is not contagious; for that an effect may follow, there is neceſſary both an agent, and a diſpoſition required in the patient. Hence we ſee that many do converſe with thoſe ſick of the Plague, and are not infected, yet we muſt not conclude from thence, that that Plague was not contagious: & *Gabriel Fallopius de morb. Galli. Cap.* 22. makes mention of twelve Schollars, that had to do with one whore, yet of al them, three only were infected. And *Saxonia* himſelf affords an anſwer to this argument, while he writes, That this diſeaſe is not contagious if nothing breath forth from the part affected, which may be communicated to another, the which may happen in the knobs and calloſities; or if any thing do breath forth, and be not received by another. Therefore though

one have an ulcer in his head, or a knob in his thigh, but the Genital parts be found, 'tis not necessary he infect her he lyes with. But whereas he teacheth that the inveterate Veneral disease is less contagious, than the new, or middle aged it may in its manner be granted; and from that very thing we may collect, that the Veneral disease is not only the cause, but also the disease. For when as this disease is communicated by the cause or contagion, it may come to pass, that the cause may be for the most part taken away, which doubtless happned in him who so often used the decoction of Guajacum, and was thrice anointed; and such men indeed, if the disease be stil upon them, but the corrupt humors being for the most part emptied by sweaters and unctions, they are not so contagious, as those, who were lately infected with this out of whom those malignant humors have not yet been emptied.

Therefore we conclude, though for certaine reasons, those who are sick of this disease do not alwaies infect others; yet at this day there is no man taken with this evil, but who hath been infected by contagion from another, and so this evil at this day is propagated only by contagion.

The first original of the veneral Disease.

But how, and from what causes this Disease was raised, when it first appeared in Europe, Authors are diverse in their opinions; and whenas they themselves, who lived about the rise of this disease, could not agree in this business, by much less shal we which are now removed above an age from that time, be able to reconcile them; therefore we shal only reckon up their opinions. The most learned *Leonicenus*, and *Fracastorius*, and certain others, were of this opinion. That this disease at its first rise was epidemical, and proceeded from a common cause, when at its first beginning, boyes, men, old folks, Girles, women, were infected, and as *Hieron. Fracastrius* writes *de morb. Gallic. cap.* 7. Though the greatest part of mankind hath contracted this disease by contagion, it hath been observed, that a number of others infected by themselves without any contagion, have suffred this disease. Besides *Fracastorius* thinks it impossible, that in so smal a time, contagion which of it self is slow, nor is not easily received, could spread it self over so many lands, being first brought by one fleet of the Spaniards, when it is plain that either at the same time, or very neere it was seen in *Spain* and *France*, in *Italy* and *Germany*, and almost al *Scythia*; which if it be so, there is no reason, why we should not grant this disease to have been first of al epidemical: yet this makes me doubtful because that no German Physician, nor of the neighboring places, hath taken notice, that this disease was knowen in Germany about that time. In which it appeared in *Italy*, when notwithstanding they have most diligently described, the English sweating disease, the disease in *Hungary*, and the like diseases newly sprung up.

Whether it were first of al an epidemical disease.

But what was the cause of that epidemious disease, if it were such a one, those Authors themselves do differ in opinion; indeed they agree in this. That it had its original from the fault of the ayre, but whence the ayre contracted that fault, therein they differ. Some were of opinion, That this disease had its original, from the great inundation of Tiber, and other Rivers, which hapned in the time of *Adrian* the sixt, Pope of *Rome*: for the Summer following they think by that corruption and filth left by the waters, the ayre was infected with putrefaction, and thence this disease did proceed. But truly this evil cannot be imputed to that inundation of waters, since that happned chiefly at *Rome*, but this disease first appeared at *Naples*: besides, those inundations of waters are wont rather to cause pestilent diseases, and there has often happned such inundations before, yet such a disease was never caus'd by them before. Others do more probably (if this disease were at first epidemious) refer the cause to the Stars. And *Fracastorius* writes concerning this business, *lib.* 2. *de morb. contag. cap.* 12. That it ought not to seem wonderful, that new and unusual diseases do appeare at certain times, and he proves it by examples and histories of divers diseases; and to pass by others, in the memory of our Grandfather that malignant Feaver raged, which is commonly known by the name of the English sweat, the like of which we have not read in any History before, wherefore he thinks it is not strange, if also the French disease not known before through many ages in our Orb, did now first of al break forth. And there wil come (saith he) other

new

new and unuſual ſickneſſes, when time ſhal bring them; as there was the thing our amongſt the Ancients, which afterwards was ſeen no more. This ſame diſeaſe wil dye and be extinguiſht, and by and by again wil be renewed, and ſeen again by our Nephews, even as in former Ages, it is to be beleeved, it was ſeen by our Anceſtrors, for which there are no ſmal ſigns yet evident. A certain Barber a friend of mine, had a book of certain experiments, very ancient, amongſt which was written one amongſt the reſt, whoſe title was, For the thick ſcabb, which happens with the paines of the joints; he therefore when the diſeaſe was very freſh at firſt, remembring this medicine, asked counſel of ſome Phyſicians, whether he might uſe that medicine in that new contagion, which he thought was ſignified by that thick ſcabb: but the Phyſitians viewing the medicine, ſharply forbad him, becauſe it conſiſted of quickſilver and ſulphur. Happy man if he had not conſulted with thoſe phyſitians, being like to be very rich with an incredible gaine; but he obeyed them, nor durſt not make tryal of his medicine, which at laſt he did try, and finding it to be excellent good, he was very ſorry, that he had uſed it too late, the profit being now carried away by others. Thus far *Fracaſtorius*.

But he refers the cauſe of this diſeaſe newly ſprung up, to the conjunction of *Saturn*, *Mars*, and *Jupiter*, which hapned at that time. Others hold that in the yeare, 1483. In the Ides of October at two of the clock after noon, That there was a conjunction made of *Mars*, *Jupiter*, the *Sun*, and *Mercury* in *Libra* in the eight houſe, which is the houſe of Sickneſs, and that *Jupiter* was burnt; and furthermore the ſame yeare on the Calends of November in the ſame houſe and ſigne, there was a conjunction made of *Mars* and *Venus*, alſo of *Jupiter* and *Venus*. Others as *Nicolaus Maſſa de morb. Galic. cap.* 6. refer that diſeaſe to the conjunction of *Saturn*, *Mars*, and *Venus*, which happened in *Scorpio* about the rife of this diſeaſe. But as it is not impoſſible, for certain configurations of the Stars to induce certain diſeaſes, ſo no man is able eaſily to render the ſpecifick cauſe of this diſeaſe, if it were epidemious. Truly al the effects of the Stars are good and benigne, and nothing evil in it ſelf doth proceed from them; yet by accident it may come to paſs, whiles they alter the ayre & the bodies of men after this or that manner, that they may produce evil diſeaſes, whenas in their way they are Authors of the generation and corruption of natural things, but that they could produce this diſeaſe in ſpecie, I think is not yet explained; and *Fracaſtorius* had hopes indeed, that this diſeaſe was in its old age in his time, and that in a little while after it would ceaſe in the alleaged place; as alſo in his *Syphilis*, in theſe Verſes.

For when the Fates ſhal pleaſe again, you'l ſee
Ere long, that in dark night 'twil buried be.

But his hopes hath deceived him, whenas now it hath laſted above a hundred and forty yeares, and hath bated nothing of its cruelty, as moſt are of opinion.

Others on the contrary think this diſeaſe was not epidemious, but ſporadical and contagious; and firſt of al this perſwades many, becauſe it hath laſted even unto theſe times, whenas epidemious diſeaſes, which have been raiſed by the influx of the Stars, have ceaſed a little while after. And therefore they do not think this diſeaſe ought to be accounted for epidemical, whenas it hath already laſted above 140. years; unleſs perhaps this reaſon may be given for the continuance of this diſeaſe, becauſe the infection of this diſeaſe is not ſhunned, as that of the peſtilence. For if the Plague begin to ſpread any where, al people, as much as they are able, and 'tis poſſible for them, do fly from the converſation of the ſick, and reject al infected houſehold ſtuff; nay in *Italy*, if the Plague begin to ſpread in *Germany*, or other neighbouring Countries, they ſtop up al publique waies, and deny al ſtrangers that are ſuſpected, any admittance into *Italy*; But many men knowingly and willingly have to do with ſuſpected Harlots, and publique Stews full of infected whores are tolerated; therefore if the ſame diligence and curioſity, which is uſed in ſome places in the time of the peſtilence to exclude the infected and ſuſpected perſons, from the ſociety of others, were made uſe of to reſtrain that rambling whoring;

perhaps

perhaps this diſeaſe alſo though it be contagious, might be rooted out.

How the Veneral diſeaſe was brought into Europe.

Yet the ſame men who think this diſeaſe is not epidemous, but ſporadical, and contagious, are againe divided into divers opinions concerning its original: For ſome were of that opinion, that firſt of al it had its riſe at *Valentia*, in *Hiſpania Tarraconenſi*, where one ſick of an Elephantiaſis, bought a night's lodging of a noble Whore for fifty peices of Gold, and infected her; and thence it came to paſs, that others who had to do with her were infected, and ſo in a ſhort time this evil was diſſeminated amongſt a many. But the Idea of an Elephantiaſis is one, and of the Veneral diſeaſe another, and therefore one ſick of an Elephantiaſis could not raiſe this diſeaſe.

Others think this diſeaſe was firſt brought out of *India* by the Spaniards into the French Army at *Naples*, who maintaine that this diſeaſe was epidemical in *India*, of which we ſpake before, *Cap.* 1. But for what reaſon 'tis epidemious in ſome Countries in *India*, whether by the fault of the aire, or water, or proviſion, is not yet explained by Hiſtorians.

Leonhardus Fioravanti his opinion of the Veneral diſeaſe.

Leonhardus Fioravanti, a famous Empirick in his time in *Italy*, hath a peculiar opinion of the original of this diſeaſe, which I have met with'n no other writer. For he in his book written in the Italian Tongue, which is entituled, *Capricci Medicinali di M. Leonardo Fioravanti, Libri tre*, writes thus of the original of this diſeaſe, both amongſt the Indians, and in the French Army at *Naples*, *lib.* 1 *Cap.* 26. When ſaith he, there was War between the French and Spaniard at *Naples*, and there was great want of proviſion, eſpecially of fleſh, thoſe evil imployed merchants who brought victuals to the Camp, had privately prepared the Carkaſſes of dead ſouldiers into divers kinds of meates and diſhes, and ſold them every where about to the army, which fleſh, whanas they had eat of it a long time ignorantly, moſt of them were taken with this diſeaſe, and became ful of puſtles and paines, and many alſo had their hair fal off; and he writes, that he knowes the buſineſs was ſo, from one *Paſchalis Gibilottus*, a Neapolitan, an old man, of ninety eight yeares of age, who hath told him, that at that time when *John* the Son of *Renatus*, Duke *Andegavenſis* waged war againſt *Alphonſus* King of *Naples*, about the yeare 1456. that he hath often heard from his father, who was ſuch a Merchant in the Army of King *Alphonſus*, that in want and ſcarcity of victuals the Souldiers on both ſides by eating of mans fleſh, which they fed on for a long time, contracted this diſeaſe, and the ſame *Fioravanti*, adds, that he might be the more certain of this buſineſs, he bred up a Sow in his houſe, and added to al her meat ſomewhat of hogs fleſh, and that within few dayes her briſtles and hairs fel off, and ſhe became ful of puſtles; then, that he fed a dog for two months only with dogs fleſh, which afterwards became ful of pains and puſtles, and loſt his hair. From which experiments he concludes, that every living creature if it be nouriſht with the fleſh of its own ſpecies wil be taken with this diſeaſe, which at this day is called the French: and he thinks this is the very cauſe, that this diſeaſe is epidemious in the *Indies*, becauſe there are thoſe man-eaters, which do feed on mans fleſh.

But truly I do wonder that ſo many Italians and French, who have writ of this diſeaſe have made no mention of this cauſe, neither does the relation of that old *Neapolitan* ſeem to fit with the time. For that diſeaſe was not known in the year 1456. at which time *John* the Son of *Renatus*, *Duke Andegavenſis*, waged War againſt *Alphonſus* King of *Naples*, but in the War which *Charles* the eight King of *France*, waged with *Alphonſus* King of *Naples* about the yeare 1493 or 94 then grant it be, that if a creature nouriſht with the fleſh of thoſe of its own kind, be taken with puſtles and pains, and ſuffer the falling off of the hair, yet the queſtion ſtil would be, whether that diſeaſe be the very Veneral diſeaſe, and ſuch as may be transfered by contagion to others, and eſpecially by Venery. For the eſſence of the veneral diſeaſe doth not conſiſt in puſtles, and the failling of the hair, but in an occult malignity, by which alſo its ulcers do differ from other ulcers. Yet it is eaſy for any one to make tryal, of that which *Fioravanti* experienced. And if the

buſineſs

buſineſs ſhould be confirmed by experience, that if an animal nouriſht with the fleſh of its kind, do contract this diſeaſe, thence a reaſon may be rendered, why this diſeaſe is endemious to the people of *India*, to wit, becauſe its inhabitants do feed on mens fleſh: although here we meet with a doubt, for al the people of *India* are not men-eaters, and therefore we muſt enquire out of the Hiſtories of the *Indies*, whether this diſeaſe be endemious amongſt the men-eaters only, or amongſt the other people of the *Indies* alſo.

Andreas Cæſalpinus, *lib. 4. de morb. Cap.* 3. writes that he hath another Hiſtory of the original of this diſeaſe, delivered by them who were preſent, to wit, from an Aretine ſoldier, who ſerved in that war; he related that there is a town in the *Veſuvian* Mount which is called *Suma*, where there is plenty of generous wine which is called Caudy wine, which was privately left by the Spaniards in the night, when the French had beſieged it, but they infected their wine by the mixture of blood which they drew from them which were ſick in the hoſpital of St. *Lazarus*; and the French men entering in, when they had filled themſelves with that wine, began to be ſick of diſeaſes and ſymptomes, like unto the Elephantiaſis. But if this were true, rather the Elephantiaſis than the veneral diſeaſe had been thus raiſed. *Andreas Cæſalpinus.*

Aurelius Minadous de Virul. Vener. Cap. 30. propounds a peculiar opinion, & holds that this virulency did firſt break forth from the moſt filthy wombs, of moſt impure Harlots, and for this cauſe, becauſe no body that hath lived cleanly, or that hath converſed with a cleane woman, is taken with this evil: but he thinks this evil proceeded firſt, when women were made very unclean, when they had received a various mixture of ſeeds. For as ſaith he one ſort of meat, is the cauſe of health in a good ſtomach, but variety of meats doth oppreſs the ſtomach, and breeds an acid and nidorous crudity, and every where heaps up excrements; ſo one ſeed only is familier and wholſome for one womb, and cauſeth fruitfulneſs, on the contrary the multitude and variety of ſeeds, doth ſo affect the womb, that by its corruption it produceth bad, nay the worſt of excrements, and from that ſordid ſubſtance there is a corruption hard to be explained, or putrefaction which doth generate ſuch venenate excrements. But when as he might eaſily underſtand, that thoſe rambling luſts were in uſe not only in the war at *Naples*, but long before when there was publique Brothel Houſes at *Rome*, and yet there was no ſuch diſeaſe raiſed; he would have his opinion to be underſtood not of any women, but only of the *Indian*. For they by the mediation of the Heaven, Air, Waters, and thoſe places, by their peculiar form of feeding did contract this poyſon, which afterwards by *Columbus*, and the Spaniſh Army was diſſeminated in *France*, and hence through the whole world. But though it muſt not be denied, that the conſtitution of bodies is divers in divers Countries, and I remember that I have read in the Hiſtories of Navigation, That when certain people of *Europe*, had found certain Ethiopian laſſes playing on the ſea ſhore, and had layn with them, preſantly ſome of them died; yet how the buſineſs is in *America*, is worthy of further inquiſition: and if there be any ſuch fault in thoſe women, 'tis probable that comes to paſs, not ſo much from the commiſtion of divers ſeeds, but rather as many Authors report, from this, That if any one have to do with a woman in *India* whiles ſhe hath her courſes, he his taken with that diſeaſe; for that whenas 'tis every where unwholſome, and therefore alſo was peculiarly and ſeverely forbidden the Jewes by God in holy Writ, may in a ſpecial manner be hurtful in the Indies. *Aurelius Minadous.*

Therefore letting theſe paſs, let us hold faſt this, which is granted by al, that this diſeaſe at this day is no otherwiſe contracted, but by contagion, and chiefly by lying with thoſe that are infected, whence deſervedly doth *Gabriel Fallopius de morb. Gallic. Cap.* 13. Wittily deride thoſe women, who when they were ſick of the Veneral diſeaſe, nevertheleſs did boſt themſelves to be chaſt, and ſaid they contracted this diſeaſe by ſprinkling themſelves with the holy water which was infected. *The Veneral diſeaſe is contracted only by contagion.*

But this contagion, by which only now adayes, we ſay this diſeaſe is diſſeminated, is received divers waies. For ſometimes 'tis transferred with the ſeed and menſtruous *How many waies the contagion may be contracted.*

Somtimes 'tis Hæreditary.

ſtruous blood from the Parents to the Child, and the Diſeaſe becomes Hæreditary; for when the blood, out of which the Seed is generated, is infected and vitious, the like Diſeaſed ſeed is generated, alſo the Mothers blood being impure, with which the Child is nouriſht, it Pollutes that, which pollution afterwards in thoſe brought into the World doth ſooner or later ſhew it ſelf, according to the greater or leſſer ſtrength of that virulency: which manner of original of this Diſeaſe, if any one wil deny to be properly by contagion, becauſe it is not by the contract of two bodies, viz. a ſound and a ſick, he may for al me; yet let him know this, that then that malignity in the body of the infant is not generated, but from the infected parents by the ſeed, or the Mothers blood is communicated to the off-ſpring.

But by thoſe that are born into the world, the ſame evil may be contracted two waies: the firſt is, when with the nouriſhment and milk, the evil is communicated to infants by impure Nurſes; which way indeed is the powerfulleſt of al: for whenas the milk they ſuck is changed into blood, and that is the nouriſhment of the whol body, the poyſon this way is diſperſed into the whol body, and inſinuates it ſelf moſt intimately with it, and therefore thoſe that are this way infected, are ſeldome cured, and not without a great deal of Difficulty.

The other way is by contagion ſo called properly, and in ſpecy; where firſt of al 'tis enquired, whether there be any contagion in the Veneral Diſeaſe at a diſtance, ſo that if one do neither touch with his body one infected, nor the fuel which conteins in it the contagion, yet nevertheleſs may be infected with the Veneral Diſeaſe; truly there is no example given of this cauſe, but what *Manardus* teacheth, Lib. 7. Epiſ. 3. and alſo ſome others affirme that there is a French Ophthalmy: but when as this Diſeaſe of the Eyes in other caſes is oftentimes contagious, it is no wonder, if one converſing with a ſick man that is troubled with a French Ophthalmy, and earneſtly look upon his Eyes, that he alſo may contract ſuch an Ophthalmy. Yet this cannot be granted, that as the Plague may be transferred by the Air to others in diſtant places, ſo alſo the Veneral Diſeaſe may be communicated; for dayly experience doth Teſtefie, that Phyſitians and many others, do familiarly converſe with thoſe infected with this evil, yet are not infected by them.

Whether it can infect at a diſtance.

Therefore this evil is chiefly contracted by contact, and truely moſt frequently by whoriſh Copulation, when that virulence is communicated to the naked genital parts being ſoft, and porous, from the genitals of the other infected perſon; after which manner this Diſeaſe was firſt brought out of the *Indies*, by the Spaniſh Souldiers infected by the *Indian* Women which were ſick of this Diſeaſe, into *Italy*, and diſſeminated through the French Camp, and hence ſpred throughout all Europe, as we ſaid before according to the opinion of many Phyſitians. And though ſome as we ſaid even now, who have been infected with this Diſeaſe, endeavour to renounce the Cauſe of it; yet many if they live not chaſtly, yet they live cloſely, and *Gabriel Fallopius*, not without a Cauſe *de Morb. Gall. cap.* 10. ſcoffs at certain chaſt Matrons, as they boaſted themſelves to be, who ſaid they contracted this Diſeaſe by ſprinkling them with holy water which was polluted; he that beleeves this, let him beleeve that too, which *Averroes* writes, 2. *collect. cap.* 10. that a woman was got with Child in a bath, from ſome ſeed which wicked men had ſpent there: or with *Valleſius* let him correct the Aphoriſme, 36. Sect. 6. becauſe many Monks have been ſick of the Gout before the uſe of Venery.

How the Veneral diſeaſe may be contracted.

How men are infected by women in Copulation.

And truly men contract this evil from Women that are infected, becauſe in the act by reaſon of the concourſe of ſpirits, and the motion, the Womb being heated, Vapors are raiſed from the Malignant Humors in the womb, which are ſuckt in by the mans yard being of a porous conſtitution, and are received into the veins. But the man being infected, may infect a ſound woman, either by his yard, if that be infected and exulcerated, or by his ſeed, although his yard be not ulcerated, or both waies: for though the ſeed in men is not always wholly corrupt, whenas we ſee many men infected with this diſeaſe do get children; yet it is altered & infected, from whence not only

How Women by men.

the

the Iſſue contracts this evil, but alſo a Woman may be infected by it.

But though this evil be moſt frequently contracted by whorish Copulation, yet by contagion it may be derived to others, other manner of waies, viz. by ſweat, if any one ſleep in the ſame bed with one infected with the Veneral Diſeaſe, and be wet with his ſweat; then by the filth and Excrements, or that flowing from Ulcers, and ſticking on the Linnen, bed, or ſhirt, and garments, if any one lie in them, or put them on. The ſame Diſeaſe alſo may be communicated by ſlaver or ſpittle, ſo lovers are infected with the Kiſſes of Whores ſick of this Diſeaſe, and infants by their Nurſes, or if any one drink out of a Cup, or ſup out of the ſpoon, which one ſick of this Diſeaſe did uſe a little before; beſides, infants may be infected another way, to wit if, they touch the breſts of an impure Nurſe with their mouth, and that for a double reaſon, either becauſe they ſuck the infected and corrupted milk, of which I ſpake before; or becauſe the breaſts and nibbles of the Nurſe are exulcerated: on the contrary, Nurſes may be infected from infected infants, eſpecially if they be troubled with Malignant puſtles, or ſome Ulcer in the mouth; for the Nepples of their breaſts whiles they are ſuckt by the Infant, grow hot, and their pores are more opened, whereupon they ealier receive in that virulence. *Other waies of contagion*

But no body is eaſily infected by the breath, as was ſaid before, and without danger we may be converſant in the ſame chamber with thoſe that are infected; neither are thoſe Chyrurgions and Phyſitians which cure the veneral Diſeaſe, and dayly converſe with the ſick, any way infected; and if this Diſeaſe were contagious by breathing and at a diſtance, the whol world would ere now have been French, and the Diſeaſe would be more than Epidemious, as one writes; yet if any one ſleep in bed with one infected, that he do receive his breath very neer, I wil not promiſe him free from this evil; whenas I know, Wives that have been infected by their Husbands ſick of the Phthiſick, and afterwards died of it.

This contagion after 'tis received into the body, ſtaies not in thoſe parts in which it was firſt received, but after the manner of other poyſons, penetrates into the innermoſt parts of the body: and truely oftentimes diſcovers it ſelf preſently, within a few daies, ſomtimes lies hid a long while. And *Fernelius* writes, *de abdit. rer. Cauſ.* Lib. 2. *c.* 14. That it doth ſomtimes returne and revive after thirty years paſt, and for ſo long ſpace the fewel of the diſeaſe does lie hid as dormant, and nevertheleſs they who think themſelves free from al hurt, and that they are perfectly ſound, do corrupt thoſe with whom they lie, and beget an Iſſue poſſeſt with that Diſeaſe. The ſame is witneſſed by *John Philippus Ingraſſias.* And *Hercules Saxonia de lue Vener. cap.* 11. relates that he cured an Illuſtriſſimo, who had knobs of the French Diſeaſe came out upon him, five and twenty years after he had taken the Diſeaſe. *How the Veneral virulency doth penetrate into the body.*

But what parts this virulency doth principally aſſault, we ſaid formerly Authors did diſagree, where we treated of its ſubject; many indeed do hold, that this virulency is chiefly an adverſary to the Membranes, becauſe the pains do moſt of a ariſe about the Perioſtia, and external parts, where are many Membranes, in the head, Legs, Arms, breaſt-bone, and in them the perioſtium being eaten off, are raiſed knobs. But not only the Membranous parts are affected, but others alſo, as the Buboes, Tumors, Ulcers in divers parts, rottenneſs of the bones, falling of the hair, running of the Reins do teſtefie. And therefore we muſt enquire for a more common ſubject, which we ſaid above was the Liver, and the ſimilar parts dedicated to nutrition, and that have conſent with the liver; for after the contagion hath pierced as far as the Liver (though in the interim it may corrupt the parts neer unto that, by which the Contagion was received) and hath imprinted a Malignant diſpoſition on that, Sanguification is hurt, and a Malignant quality is imprinted on that blood, which is generated in the Liver, and ſo with the blood are generated Malignant Humors, which whenas they are troubleſome to Nature, they are thruſt forth to the Circumference of the body, and ſo *What parts are chiefly affected.*

not only pains are raiſed in the Membranes, but divers Diſeaſes and Symptomes alſo in other parts; and whereas the bones are not free, but they are oftentimes affected with rottenneſs, it is no wonder that the neighbouring perioſtia are affected, and moſt cruel pains raiſed.

The manner of the generation of the veneral diſeaſe.

From al which it doth eaſily appear, what is the manner of the generation of this Diſeaſe, to wit, When the contagion of this Diſeaſe is communicated from one ſick of the Veneral Diſeaſe, either by the ſeed and blood of the parents, or by the ſucking of infected milk, or by Copulation, or by ſpittle, or by meat and drink, or by garments and Linnen, to any part of a ſound body, firſt of al the part which receives the contagion is affected and hurt, hence through that, the evil creeps into the Veins, and by them penetrates to the Liver, which when it hath put on an evil diſpoſition, and contracted a Malignant Diſeaſe, it generates vitious blood, containing in it the Seeds of the veneral Diſeaſe, which whenas it is an enemy to the body, by the expulſive faculty 'tis driven from the more noble parts to the Circumference of the body. And from thence the nouriſhment in the whol body is hurt, from whence are raiſed ſpots, Tumors, and divers bunchings out, Ulcers, falling of the hair, pains, and other evils

The definition of the veneral diſeaſe.

At length out of al thoſe things which have been ſaid hitherto of the Nature and cauſes of the veneral diſeaſe, we make this definition of this Diſeaſe. The veneral evil is an occult Diſeaſe, and peculiarly Malignant, taken by infection, and is infectious, chiefly an enemy to the Liver and nutritive faculty, and therefore nutrition being hurt in the whol body, it raiſeth divers Diſeaſes and Symptomes.

CHAP. V.

Of the Differences of it.

The Differences.

BY ſome indeed there are reckoned up very many Differences of this Diſeaſe, and by *Braſſavola*, 234. but many of them unprofitable; the moſt neceſſary and profitable are theſe.

First of al, as concerning the very eſſence of the Diſeaſe whenas that is unknown, from that of it ſelf, we can raiſe no difference: yet becauſe its activity depends on that eſſence and occult quality, theſe differences are fetcht from thence, becauſe the activity of this diſeaſe is ſomtimes greater, ſomtimes leſs. And Phyſitians have obſerved, that ſomtimes after unwholſome Copulation, the French Symptoms have preſently come upon men, but ſomewhat gentle, and a little while after have ceaſed again, without the adminiſtration of any remedy; but ſomtimes moſt grievous Symptoms have preſenly come on them, and the evil hath been rebellious, and could by no means or very difficultly be cured. And the writers of this diſeaſe report, That this Diſeaſe when it firſt appeared, had far more grievous Symptomes, than now it hath: but what was the Cauſe of this buſineſs, is not ſo clear. That might happen firſt of al, from the diſpoſition of the bodies that were infected. For whenas it appeared firſt in the Camps at Naples, and there was a great ſcarcity of proviſion, and a famine, doubtleſs in thoſe bodies alſo, there was proviſion of evil Humors for Diſeaſes, on which when this contagion fel, there it took ſtrength and increaſed: beſides this might make ſomwhat to that buſineſs, that in the beginning, the cure of this Diſeaſe was not ſufficiently known, whence it came to paſs, that this malignity alwaies grew worſe. This happens alſo in the Plague, of which the more there die, the poyſon alwaies grows the more vehement. For the malignity is fermented as it were, and exalted in the bodies of the ſick, unleſs it be oppoſed and overcome by Alexipharmacal means.

At its firſt riſe this diſeaſe was more grievous.

Secondly,

Secondly, its Differences are taken from the cauſes and manner of contagion while ſomtimes the Veneral Diſeaſe is hæreditary, and is derived with the ſeed and blood from the parents to the Iſſue: but ſomtimes after the birth, is communicated by Copulation, Kiſſing, Milk, Garments, and the like.

Thirdly, the third Difference is taken from the Diſeaſes and Symptoms ſupervenient, that this Diſeaſe is ſomtimes with Buboes, ſomtimes with running of the Reins, ſomtimes with falling of the hair, ſomtimes with pains of the joynts, ſomtimes wich other Symptomes; neither do the Symptomes which follow it, and ſhal afterwards be reckoned up amongſt the ſigns, alwaies appear the ſame in al people: and *Euſtachius Rudius* writes, *Lib. 5. de Morb. occult. Cap. 9.* That he hath obſerved a thouſand times, that many young men have on the ſame day copulated with one and the ſame whore, and yet notwithſtanding one hath been taken with the running of the Reins, another with a Bubo, another with rottenneſs, another with pain in the Head, another with falling of the hair, and another with another different preternatural affect; which doubtleſs happens, by reaſon of the various indiſpoſition of bodies, and weakneſs of parts, and variety of Humors. For weak parts do more eaſily receive vitious Humors, than the ſtrong. And one body is more clean, another more foul, and abounds with theſe, or thoſe Humors, which when they are corrupted by the venenate Humor, do cauſe theſe or thoſe Diſeaſes and Symptomes: therefore if we ſhould number up the Differences according to the variety of Diſeaſes, and Symptomes, which are ſomtimes joyned together and complicated, ſomtimes Fewer, ſomtimes more, we might make very many indeed, of which as was ſaid even now, *Braſſavola* reckons up 234. more Nicely than profitably.

Fourthly, the fourth Difference is from the time, that this Diſeaſe is ſomtimes new, ſomtimes inveterate, one in the beginning, another in the augment, another in the ſtate, and another in the declination.

Out of which, and eſpecially from the Difference of time, and the variety of Diſeaſes, and Symptomes that accompany this Diſeaſe, *Julianus Palmarius*, doth commodiouſly conſtitute four dergees of this Diſeaſe, *de lue Vener. Lib. 1. cap. 4.* The Firſt and lighteſt degree is, when only the hairs of the Head and beard do by little and little fal off, without any other hurt of the body. The Second degree is worſe, when the whol Skin is ſpread over with many ſpots not bunching out, and thoſe ſomtimes ſmal, like to a lentil ſpeck; ſomtimes much broader, and both, ſomtimes red, ſomtimes yellow. The Third degree is yet more grievous, when not only ſpots but true puſtles and bunches break forth, firſt of al indeed about the forehead, and Temples, and behind the Ears, then every where in the Head, and at length in the reſt of the body. The Fourth degree is, when now the Diſeaſe being inveterate, it aſſaults and corrupts the ſolid parts, the bones, Ligaments, Membranes, and Nerves. In which there are collected many thick, glutinous, and maligne Excrements, which when they reſt about the tendons, or the Perioſtia, and prick and pul the Membranes from the bones, there are wont to be cauſed implacable pains, growing worſe towards the night, from which Excrements alſo by degrees do grow hard knobs, with far greater torment which are equally hard as the bones. Which if they be fixt in the bones, they do ſo enlarge and diſtend them, that the bones oftentimes become of a monſtrous bulk and figure: moreover that malignity and Acrimony doth by degrees eat away, and with rottenneſs conſume the bones, and for the moſt part not hurting the Skin that lies over them: and *Palmarius* writes there, that he hath ſeen many in whom the Pericranium, and the Skul under it, hath been found wholly eaten away with putrefaction, and conſumed with rottenneſs as far as the dura mater, the Skin of the Head not being hurt at al, without any Feaver, and

Degrees of the veneral diſeaſe.

without vomiting, of which one or two have been seen living without a Skul. Of which by and by shal be said more in the Diagnostick and Prognostick signs.

CHAP. VI.

Of the Diagnostick Signs.

BUt though out of those things which have been spoken before of the History of this Disease, the Diagnostick signs of this Disease might easily be fetcht, yet in this place the same are to be propounded in specy. But first of al, we must remember this, those signs as *Galen* teacheth, 1. Aphor. 17. and else where, which ought certainly to denote a Disease, which are commonly called Pathognomonical, ought to be not only proper but inseparable, so that where they are, there is the Disease, and they being taken away the Disease is removed. But though as in many other diseases, so in the Veneral, there is not one sign, by which the Disease may be known, yet a concourse of signs, may do the same. Yet what that concourse is in the Veneral Disease, is not easie to define: whenas in this Disease there is a great Accumulation of Symptoms and Diseases, and therefore this Disease hath affinity with other Diseases. Which thing doth cause, as was said before, that many when they saw almost the same concourse of signs, in that Epidemious disease, which *Hippocrates* propounds, the 3. *Epid.* they thought the Veneral Disease was described there, and others referred it to the Elephantiasis, but the reason why it is hard to define the concourse of signs in this Disease, is this, because the Liver and nutritive faculty of the whol body is chiefly hurt. For when the heart or brain is hurt, their hurt actions do easily appear, being such as are simple, and restrained to few parts. But when as the Liver affords nourishment for the whol body, from thence if nourishment be hurt, do happen divers Diseases and Symptomes; for though the nutriment of the whol body be one, that is blood, yet almost an innumerable variety presents it self in every part, according to the variety of the parts which are nourisht, whenas 'tis necessary that every part do peculiarly assimilate its nourishment; yet if we consider the precedent causes, those things which are present, and what things are helpful, what hurtful, or the Remedies, neither can this Disease lie undiscovered.

The diagnostick signs of the cause.

As concerning the causes, first of al if the parents be, or have been sick of this disease, and some signs in the infant present themselves, which argue the Veneral disease, there is scarce any reason to doubt of the Disease. In like manner 'tis, if an infant have sucked a nurse sick of this disease.

But if any one born of sound Parents, and nourisht by the milk of a sound Nurse, yet have diseases and some Symptoms, which give suspition of this Disease, we must diligently enquire, whether he hath had to do with infected persons; which if he confess, the case is plain, and there need no further doubt of the species of the Disease; but if, as it often fals out, one to preserve his Honor and reputation, deny that he hath acted any such thing, then we must enquire into the condition and course of the life past, of the husband or wife, if the party be married. For from these things sometimes we have no slight conjectures of the infection. But if there be no ground for such a conjecture, we must further enquire, whether he hath slept in the same bed with one infected with that Disease, or hath used his garments. But if out of al these there can be had no firme conjecture of this Disease, the present state of the patient is diligently to be considered, which indeed is one in the beginning of the Disease, another in the increase, and another when 'tis inveterate; whence also the signs of this Disease, beginning, encreasing, inveterate, are wont commonly to be delivered. And truely to know this Disease when 'tis Inveterate, is not very difficult, as

shal

ſhal be ſaid by and by: but whiles it yet lies, and is in the firſt blade, then to know it, is not ſo eaſie. For as plants and trees when they are at ful growth, are known by the vulgar, but to know them at their firſt appearance, is the part only of an artiſt and good herbariſt. So alſo this Diſeaſe, when it diſcovers it ſelf by diverſe Diſeaſes, and Symptomes, 'tis known even by the vulgar, but when it lirks in obſcurity, 'tis not diſcovered but by experienced Phyſitians.

The ſigns of the veneral diſeaſe in its beginning.

Yet there are ſome ſigns, which may diſcover this Diſeaſe, even at the firſt beginning; the firſt is, that they who are taken with this Diſeaſe do preſently (without the appearance of any ſigns of a Feaver imminent) perceive a kind of weatineſs and heavineſs in their whol body, and ſomtimes a drowſineſs after ſleep. There is a vehement and wandering pain, which is felt ſomtimes in the Head, ſomtimes in the Muſcles, ſomtimes about the joynts, and this pain is more troubleſome towards night than at other times of the day. The freſh color of the Face is changed ſtrangely, and ſome write, that there is a Livid circle appears under their Eyes, ſuch as we uſually ſee in Women that have their Courſes: there is added to theſe a ſadneſs, fear, and thoſe that before were merry and jeſting, become ſad and penſive without any cauſe. All which ſigns are of greater force if the ſigns of the Veneral Diſeaſe did go before, and vaniſh without any convenient, and ſufficient means. And truely if this evil be contracted by Copulation, and hath not yet plainly poſſeſt the Liver, but ſticks yet in the Privities, then chiefly this Veneral Diſeaſe at its beginning, diſcovers it ſelf by the running of the Reins, Ulcers in the Privities, and buboes, for when that Malignant vapor, is firſt of al communicated to the Teſticles and genital veſſels, the ſeed is corrupted, and the generation of ſeed is depraved in the genital veſſels: whence inſtead of good ſeed there is generated a ſtinking and corrupt Humor, which doth irritate Nature to expulſion. From whence alſo the Gonorrhæa, although improperly ſo called, is eaſily diſtinguiſhed from that running of the Reins which is not French, becauſe this gallical is joyned with a great heat, and pain, ſomtimes alſo with an Inflamation of the Teſticles, and Veſſels reſembling a varix; the matter which is caſt forth is far different from ſeed, viz. Yellow, green, Acrid, corroding the glans; neither doth it yeild to thoſe Remedies, with which a true Gonorrhæa is cured. Next of all there appeare puſtles in the Privities about the bigneſs of a grain of Millet, and ſomtimes they compaſs the whol Ring, which when they are broken, there remain white Ulcers which in proceſs of the Diſeaſe grow deep and callous, of divers colors, and with pain joyned with them. Thirdly, alſo Buboes ſhow forth themſelves in this Diſeaſe; for though ſomtimes the Buboes do precede an Eryſipelas or a Roſe, yet then there went before thoſe cauſes which do effect a Roſe, as fear, frights, anger, and the bubo is extended towards the Thighs, as it were by a red line, and a little after the Eryſipelas breaking forth, it vaniſheth; but if the Bubo be Veneral, 'tis not extended according to the longitude of the Thigh, but rather obliquely, and imitates the ſituation of the ſpermatick Veſſels. For in unwholſome Copulation the ſeminal veſſels are eaſily firſt of al infected, which whence they have their Original from the Vena Cava not far from the Liver it ſelf, that virulency is eaſily communicated to the Liver, which being affected drives it back again by the ſame waies from it ſelf, from whence are cauſed both the Buboes, and the running of the Reins. And thus theſe two Diſeaſes are for the moſt part complicated, and being Joyned are a ſure ſign of the veneral Diſeaſe, and one failing, the other is of force; but if this evil be contracted without whorifh Copulation, and if by kiſſing, there are Ulcers raiſed about the mouth, if by giving ſuck to an infected infant, there are inflamations about the breaſts, puſtles, and clefts; if from Garments and common lying together, there are puſtles every where raiſed in the Skin.

But

The signs of this diſeaſe increaſing.

But if the evil do now increaſe, and grow more grievous, and the virulency it ſelf be already communicated to the Liver, and thence the nutrition in the whol body be depraved, diſeaſes and ſymptomes of al kinds, ſuch as were reckoned up before, *cap.* 2. in the hiſtory of this diſeaſe, do ariſe, which indeed though ſingly by themſelves they afford not a proper and inſeparable ſigne of this diſeaſe, yet if they be taken together, and their peculiar condition be diligently conſidered, they may clearly enough detect this evil. For there is ſcarce another diſeaſe, in which there is a concourſe of al theſe, nay there are many of them ſo proper to the Venral diſeaſe, that they are found in no other diſeaſe after that manner. How the buboes which are ſeen in the beginning, and ſometimes in the increaſe of this diſeaſe, may be diſtinguiſht from other buboes, was ſaid even now; the veneral puſtles are ſome of them cruſty, others without a cruſt, the cruſty are chiefly the ſigns of this diſeaſe, and ſometimes they are eminent, that in the head and forehead they reſemble the horns of a Ram, under which ſomtimes is contained matter. Somtimes none, and they appeare in the face, head, beard, whol body, but eſpecially about the privities and hips. And *Fallopius* writes that theſe kinds of Veneral tumors, may be diſtinguiſhed from thoſe which are not Veneral after this manner; That the Veneral if they be rubbed and the skin taken off, three daies after they appear unchanged, but benign puſtles if they be rubbed, are increated by the attraction of blood, and that good, and alimentary. So the the tumors which are commonly called Gummoſities, if they be joined with a ſwelling, or do firmly adhare to the parts void of fleſh, and the bones, eſpecially if they be in the head, forehead, in the fore part of the Leggs, are a moſt certain ſigne of the Veneral diſeaſe: for the Veneral matter hath an eating virulency even in a craſs humor, and joined with paine, the like of which is not in other tumors, which do proceed from a thick matter. But though ulcers do happen alſo in many other diſeaſes; yet if they riſe chiefly in the yard, and eſpecially on the foreskin, and about the nut, and towards the end of the yard, or alſo in the mouth and palate, the uvula or jawes, and thoſe to putrid and ſtinking, and there was no inflamation of thoſe parts precedent, nor ſigns of the ſcurvy, they are alſo ſigns of the French Diſeaſe; alſo the falling of the hair cauſeth no light evidence of the diſeaſe; for if after childhood, no other diſeaſe foregoing, which is wont to be accompanied with the ſhedding of the hair, the hairs of the head, and eſpeciaſly of the beard and eye-brows fal off, and alſo there appear ulcerous puſtles, or a filthy Scab, this is altogether a ſure ſigne of the French Diſeaſe. In like manner Chapps and clefts in the Palms of the hands, and ſoles of the feet, if no other cauſe preceded, are an undoubted ſign of this evil, ſo alſo thoſe bunches ſomtimes low and broad, ſomtimes ſomwhat long, and thoſe excreſcencies which they call ficus, condylomata, and cruſts, if they appeare in the privy parts, or about the Arſe-hole, do ſurely enough diſcover this diſeaſe; pains of the head, although they happen in many other diſeaſes, yet if their bunchings out, and gummoſities in the skin, if there was a Gonorrhea and it be ſtopped, if a bubo and it be vaniſht, thoſe alſo are ſure ſigns enough of this diſeaſe; paines alſo in other parts may likewiſe diſcover this diſeaſe, for if the paine be not in the very joints, but in that part which is in the middle of the bones, and neer to the Joints, as upon the skin, or upon the ſhoulder bone, which is between the head and the joint of the elbow, and they be moſt cruel and ſharp, and are exaſperated towards the evening and night, they are alſo ſure ſignes of this diſeaſe. There is familiar alſo with this diſeaſe, ſuch a diſtillation, by which there is emptied by the mouth, and noſe, much flegm and watriſh matter, by which the parts through which they paſs are exulcerated; but in the firſt place the ſure ſigne of this diſeaſe is that French Gonorrhea, of which was ſpoken before. Laſt of al this alſo is a ſure ſigne of this diſeaſe, if the aforementioned diſeases and ſymptomes be not taken away, or made more gentle, by medicines that do work by manifeſt qualities, applyed according to art, but rather do grow worſe, but are mitigated by thoſe proper and ſpecifick remedies.

Leaſt

Laſt of al, if this evil be inveterate, diſeaſes and ſymptomes of al kinds may happen, callous, fiſtulous, and cancerous ulcers, knobs in divers parts of the body, rottenneſs of the bones in the Leggs, Armes, eſpecially in the Skul, the bone of the Palate and Noſe, a Hectick Feaver, Conſumption, Pthiſick, evil habit of the body, Falling-ſickneſs, falling of their teeth, Deafneſs, Blindneſs. *Vidus Vidus, lib. 2. de curat. membrat. cap.* 18. reports that he ſaw at *Barciconia* a Spaniſh Souldier, who by the French Pox ſuffered a rottenneſs of Skul, and afterwards fel into an epilepſy, that filth diſtilling from his rotten skul, and pricking the membranes of his brain, from which notwithſtanding he was freed by cauterizing his Skul with a hot Iron; and *Foreſtus lib. 7. Obſervat. 9. in ſchol.* relates of one infected with the French Pox, though he ſeemed to be wel cured, yet was afflicted with a long and continual paine of his head, which could be cured by no remedies, til at laſt his Skul being opened, there was found under it, upon the dura mater ſo nwhat black like a wevil, which worme wh en it was taken away, that pain ceaſed, nor returned no more. And *Johannes Schenckius ex* D. *Georg. Garneci obſervat.* relates of one ſick of the French Pox, that was il cured, who was taken with a great inflamation in his palate, in the five-like bone, in his uvula, and al the neighbouring parts, which preſently turned to a Gangrene, and that to a cancer, that every day he voided ſomwhat, of thoſe corrupt and putrefied parts, and the uvula, and next parts, being firſt of al caſt forth, at laſt he ſpit through his mouth his very brain with a moſt noyſome ſtink. And *Felix Platerus, lib. 1. obſervat.* makes mention of an Abbot who by the French Pox was made blind, deaf, and dumb, who could no otherwiſe underſtand and perceive the meaning of others, but if they with their finger or a peice of wood drew letters, expreſſing ſome ſentence upon his bare arme, from al which ſingly perceived he made a word, and from many words a ſentence: God the juſt Judg doth ſomtimes puniſh wandring luſt, with ſo grievous and horrid a puniſhment. *Signs of an inveterate Pox.*

As concerning the differences of this virulency, although its formal eſſence be unknown, yet there is a certain difference. According to its manner of acting and its vehemency, which is known from its effects; for ſomtimes more, ſomtimes fewer: ſomtimes the contagion and active power is great, ſometimes leſs: and *Euſtachius Rudius* reports *de morb. occult. lib.* 5. *cap.* 10. that he knew ſome whores infected with ſo powerful a French Poyſon, that al who had to do with them were not only preſently infected with the ſame evil, but were wholly poſſeſt with moſt grievous ſymptomes, which could not be removed nor mitigated, by any remedies, or art, nay ſome of them not long after died. But we know the vehemency of this evil, if as was ſaid even now, ſome be preſently infected, if the pain be moſt cruel, if the eroſion pierce to the bones, if many putrid and ſtinking excrements proceed every where from the body. For by how much the evils are the more, and more grievous, by ſo much the power of this virulency is the greater. *Signs of the differences.*

CHAP. *VII.*

Of Prognoſticks.

BUt that we may know, what hopes there is concerning the event of this diſeaſe, we muſt enquire whether the diſeaſe is like to be ſhort, or long, whether eaſy or hard to be cured, and at laſt what end it ſhal have.

But firſt of al concerning this diſeaſe, 'tis wont to be queſtioned amongſt ſome Phyſitians in general, whether it ſhal once have an end? *Fracaſtorius* indeed did hope for it, as was ſaid before, and thought, that even in his time this diſeaſe grew aged and that a little while after it would wholly die, chiefly for this reaſon, becauſe he thought it was epidemious, and took its original from the Starrs, which impreſſions of heaven do not laſt alwaies, but in proceſs of time are changed, and becauſe he *Whether this diſeaſe ſhal ceaſe.*

ſaw this diſeaſe did grow more mild. For as *Jul. Palmarius* writes of this ſubject *lib.* 1. *de lue Vener. Cap.* 5. it was reported, that this diſeaſe at its firſt rife was ſo filthy, that that which reigns now is ſcarce thought to be of the ſame kind; for there were innumerable ulcers, rough and ſtanding out, in the figure and bulk of an acorn, a filthy humor flowing from them, and ſuch a ſtink exhaling that his noſe that it reached, was beleeved preſently to be infected. The colour of the puſtles was between black and green, as much tormenting the ſick with the ſight of them, as with their pain. Therefore al people did ſhun the ſight of them, and ſo abſtain from touching them, as in no diſeaſe beſides. But *Fracaſtorius* his hopes deceived him, for as yet we do not ſee this diſeaſe grow old, much leſs ceaſe, and though the filthineſs of the ulcers and puſtles be more tolerable, yet in pains and torments it is grown more cruel, as the ſame *Palmarius* writes. It is more likely, that as long as thoſe copulations and converſings with infected people, and wandering luſts ſhal indure, ſo long alſo this diſeaſe wil laſt, and be propagated by contagion. For ſuch is the nature of this poyſon that it doth not ſuddenly kil a man, in the interim thoſe who are ſick of that diſeaſe, are infectious thoſe waies, of which we ſpake before. Whenas therefore there are every where many, who are poluted with that diſeaſe, and others converſe with them, there is yet no hopes that this diſeaſe ſhould ceaſe ere long, whenas the effect doth not ceaſe, unleſs the cauſe be taken away. Neither is that reaſon firm enough, which ſome who are of a contrary opinion do alledg; for they ſay whenas this diſeaſe is a contagion preternatural and violent, it muſt neceſſarily have an end, whenas thoſe things which are preternatural and violent have not perpetual cauſes, and therefore muſt needs ceaſe to be; but the anſwer is eaſie; nothing indeed that is preternatural and violent, is of it ſelf perpetual, yet if the cauſe be perpetual, that alſo may be perpetual. Therefore though as the plague is ſometimes extirguiſhed, ſo this diſeaſe alſo might be, if the ſame diligence were uſed, which is in preventing and curing the plague, as was ſaid before: yet becauſe there are alwaies men, who are ſick of this diſeaſe, and can infect others, and others do not abſtain from their ſociety, even this diſeaſe ſhal continue ſo long, as that contagion ſhal laſt. And therefore *Euſtachius Rudius* rightly of this ſubject, *Lib.* 5. *de Morb. occult. Cap.* 11. writes, if there were one prince of the whol world, or one conſpiracy of many of them againſt this diſeaſe, by the help of phyſitians this diſeaſe might be wholly rooted out; viz. if they who are ſick of this diſeaſe, were al committed to phyſitians to be cured, in the interim were removed from the ſociety of other men, and the ſame were done with the infected with this diſeaſe, as is wont to be with thoſe infected with the plague or leproſie, there were hopes this diſeaſe might be extirpated; & for this cauſe too, becauſe the Veneral diſeaſe is not contagious at a diſtance as the plague is, but for the moſt part is communicated by copulation, ſomtimes by kiſſing and garments. But here is no diligence uſed, and as the ſame *Rudius* ſaith, Theeves, robbers, and murderers, and other wicked perſons are ſharply puniſhed, but publique whores ful of this diſeaſe, and who daily deſtroy more than a thouſand men, & polute whol Families and Cities, are cheriſht, ſmoothed up with flateries, and kept gallantly. But leaving theſe, let us ſee what may be foretold of every particular diſeaſed patient.

Prognoſticks.

1. The Veneral diſeaſe for the moſt part of it ſelf, is a diſeaſe of long continuance, for this reaſon, Becauſe the liver principally, and the nutritive faculty is infected in it. But *Galen* teaches rightly, 5. *de lo. affect. Cap.* 2. That of diſeaſes of the heart al people die moſt ſpeedily, of affects of the brain more ſlowly, but the life is longer protracted when the natural actions are hurt; and though the veneral diſeaſe be alſo malignant, and is not undeſervedly reckoned amongſt poyſons in its kind, yet its power in acting is far ſlower, than that of other poyſons: yet the vehemency or weakneſs of this poyſon in this or that body, and the diſpoſition of the body, may make ſomewhat to the length or ſhortneſs of this diſeaſe; for if the poyſon be more vehement, the diſeaſe is the more dangerous, as ſhal be ſaid by and by: if alſo the body before did abound with viticus humors, the evil is

increaſed,

increaſed, and made longer: and indeed ſometimes the ſtubbornneſs of this diſeaſe is ſuch, that though it ſeem ſometimes to be wholly extinct, yet it hath been obſerved that it hath ſometimes grown freſh againe after many, nay, thirty years, as was ſaid before.

2. But whether this diſeaſe wil be hard or eaſie to cure in any patient, muſt be judged from the greatneſs of the diſeaſe, and ſtrength of the patient, as in other diſeaſes. Firſt of al, as concerning the nature of the diſeaſe it ſelf, though this diſeaſe be far more gentle, than other venenate diſeaſes, yet becauſe it is not of the number of them which depend on manifeſt diſtempers, but malignant and contagious, it may infect al the humors in the whole body, nay it may pollute al the Similar parts, and hence it is hard to be cured.

3. Yet this diſeaſe when 'tis new is eaſier to cure, than when 'tis inveterate; for in that new malignant quality, it only affects thoſe parts, by which 'tis propagated and for the moſt part the privities, but in the inveterate diſeaſe, that very malignant quality is imprinted alſo on the liver, and from the liver again is communicated to the blood, and by the blood to al ſimilar parts; for it is falſe, as appeares out of thoſe things which have been formerly ſaid of the nature of this diſeaſe, that the liver here is hurt in ſanguification, by no diſeaſe, but only by reaſon of an evil object, which mixt with the blood and other humors, does pollute them, deprave and make them vitious, and convert them into its own nature: indeed 'tis not to be denied, that vitious humors alſo do corrupt the good, in the interim from good chyle alſo in a liver evil diſpoſed is generated bad blood, which appears even from this, that through every part the nutrition a little while after is infected through the whol body, which could not be, unleſs the liver were hurt.

4. *Epiph. Ferdinandus* writes, Hiſt. 17. That he hath learned by experience, and that other phyſitians have obſerved the ſame, that thoſe who being once cured are again infected with this diſeaſe, are either never, or with a great deal of difficulty recovered.

5. Although the nature of this virulency doth not conſiſt in any manifeſt diſtemper, yet if it light on a body hot and dry, and eſpecially endewed with a hot diſtemper of the liver, 'tis more difficultly cured. For whenas pock-wood, Sarſaparilla, and the like, are hot and dry, that hot and dry diſtemper is increaſed, and ſo, though this very diſeaſe be not increaſed, yet another damage is brought upon the body, and whenas thoſe proper medicines cannot ſafely be adminiſtred, unleſs the body before were very wel purged, by theſe means 'tis heated and dryed the more.

6. For the ſame cauſe, a hot and dry ſeaſon of the yeare, as that of the ſummer is, is not ſo fit for the cure of this diſeaſe, whenas the ſtrength is then Exhauſted.

7. If alſo the ſtrength be feeble, that it cannot undergoe thoſe ſtrong medicines which are neceſſary, or if the ſick, out of cuſtom or peeviſhneſs, wil not admit of neceſſary medicaments, 'tis made hard to cure.

8. If alſo a feaver, or conſumption, or other grievous ſymptom, or diſeaſe be joyned, which may hinder the cure, the diſeaſe cannot eaſily be removed, as was ſaid even now, of a hot diſtemper of the liver, and of the whol body.

9. If there appeare in the joynts, callous, Schirrous, and hard tumors, and thoſe commonly called gummoſities, the evil is hard to be cured, and is not rooted out, by moſt powerful remedies: for ſuch tumors never appear, unleſs the evil be inveterate, and hath taken deep root, moſt of which are fixt in the bones under them.

10. Buboes in the groins if they be hard, and are not eaſily ſuppurated, and thoſe which ſometimes break forth, ſometimes vaniſh, are hard of cure, becauſe they ſignifie a ſtubborn matter, and a weakeneſs of nature in expelling it: but if they be eaſily ſuppurated, and the ſtrength be firm, and eſpecially the liver ſtrong, they are ar-

guments of a more benigne Diſeaſe and matter; and ſuch Buboes, if they be kept open along while, may bring perfect health.

11. A roughnes of the jaws which is attended with hoarſneſs, or an obſcure, or no voice, do ſhew the evil to be antient and ſtubborn, and which wil ſcarce be cured.

12. Ulcers that are new in the Yard are eaſily Cured, but in the Arſehole, or about it, made difficultly, for they ſhew the evil is now inveterate: and ſuch Ulcers are continually moiſtned by the Excrements, and Medicines cannot conveniently enough be applied to them.

13. Ulcers alſo in the joynts and other parts are moſt hard to cure, becauſe they ſignifie an evil now inveterate, and which hath invaded the whole body.

14. Ulcers in the mouth and jaws are not eaſily cured, becauſe alſo they argue the evil to be ancient, neither can convenient Medicines be applied to them, and they are continually moiſtned, by the Excrements falling from the brain.

15. If the bones of the noſe be eaten, and there be alſo a ſlow Feaver, it ſignifies an evil incurable, whenas now the diſeaſe is communicated to the brain it ſelf, or its Membranes.

16. Bunchings cut in this diſeaſe, eſpecially the broader, are not eaſily cured, and they argue an evil hard to be cured.

17. The colour of the Skin depraved, and the falling of the hair, if convenient means be applied, are not very hard to cure.

18. Pains eſpecially in the Head, and upon the Shins, are oftentimes very ſtubborn, that they yeild to no Remedies, or at leaſt not under a long time.

19. Vertigoes and falling ſickneſſes are moſt grievous and pertinacious, for they ſhew that the Veneral Virulency, hath now poſſeſt the brain it ſelf.

20. Diſtillations alſo are laſting, becauſe they alſo happen, only when the evil is inveterate, and the brain is affected; the which are more dangerous and grievous, if they fal on the breaſt and Lungs, and exulcerate them.

21. Alſo the noiſe in the Ears is for the moſt part laſting, and ſcarcely removed, whenas there are divers windings in the Eares, and their expulſive faculty is weak, neither can medicines penetrate thither.

22. The running of the Reins alſo for the moſt part is laſting, or if it be ſtopt grievous evils are wont to follow, and moſt heavy pains of the Head and Joynts.

23. But chiefly the Nature of the Contagion it ſelf, from which the ſick contracted the diſeaſe, doth manifeſt the force and greatnes of the diſeaſe; for this poyſon hath ſomtimes a greater, ſomtimes a leſs activity, and Phyſitians do relate who have often had ſuch Patients in cure, that ſomtimes of ten ſtrong yong men, who have had to do with the ſame Whore, not one of them hath ſcaped, therefore if it be known, from what he or ſhe, this evil was contracted, the Phyſitian may the eaſier judg of the event of the diſeaſe.

24. Other things being alike, this evil is eaſieſt cured, which is contracted by Whoriſh Copulation, but that is harder to Cure, which the Infant hath ſucked in with the milk, whenas the virulency goes into the ſtomach with the milk, and hence in the Liver there is generated a virulent blood, which afterwards runs through the whol body, and Pollutes that. But the Hereditary evil is hardeſt of al to Cure, and that which is communicated from infected Parents, with the Seed and blood.

25. As for the parts affected, if the Liver only be affected, the evil is the eaſier Cured, whenas it hath a ſtrong expulſive faculty, and Medicaments can eaſily penetrate unto it: but the Spleen, Kidneys, Womb, and external joynts are not ſo eaſily Cured, but hardeſt of all the Brain, and the Lungs, becauſe they have a weaker expulſive faculty, and Medicaments do not eaſily penetrate thither.

26. From al which 'tis eaſily collected, what wil be the event of the Diſeaſe, for by

by how much the more, and more grievous diſeaſes and Symptomes are joyned with the Veneral diſeaſe, by ſo much the more the ſick are indangered; by how much the fewer, and lighter, by ſo much the leſs: and thoſe chiefly die, who to their putrid and Malignant Veneral Diſeaſe, have ſupervenient thoſe Feavers they call Gallical; for the Veneral Virulency whiles it corrupts the Humors, and induceth a Malignant quality into them, makes the Feaver worſe, and alſo debilitates the innate heat, whence neither the Feaver, nor that Malignant diſeaſe can be overcome by Nature.

27. Very many alſo die of a waſting of the body, and a hectick Feaver, or rather a ſlow, and putrid one: for both the Veneral virulency it ſelf, and the pains, watchings, and other ſymptomes do debilitate the innate heat, hurt nutrition, whence follows a waſting of the whol body, to which is joyned a ſlow putrid Feaver raiſed from the evil Humors.

28. Sanguification alſo being hurt, ſome die of a Dropſie.

29. Many alſo die by reaſon of Catarrhes, falling down on the jaws and Lungs, hindering and taking away their breath; or the Veſſels of the Lungs being eaten by a ſharp Catarrhe, and firſt of al ſpitting of blood being raiſed, then a Phthiſick, they die.

30. Somtimes the Veſſels being eaten in two by the acrimony of the Humors, and Vomiting of blood cauſed, the ſick die by too great a Flux to the ſtool, or by the Womb.

CHAP. VIII.

Of Prevention.

WHenas 'tis ſafer to prevent a Diſeaſe, than to cure it, ſome Phyſitians endeavor to teach, by what means one may keep himſelf clear, though he have had to do with an infected Woman. Of which buſineſs *Fallopius* treats in the whol Chapter, 89. *de Morb. Galli.* and he writes that he ſhould ſeem to have done nothing unleſs he teach, how one ſeeing a handſome Woman, and lying with her though ſhe be infected, may be preſerved from the French Diſeaſe: and he cals the immortal God to witneſs, that he hath made tryal of it in ten thouſand men, and none of them was infected: and he propounds there two medicaments, by which the Contagion received may preſently be drawn forth, diſſipated, or dryed up. *Hercules Saxonia*, propounds the ſame, *de lue Vener. cap.* 16. and does very much commend them, and as *Aurelius Minadous* ſpeaks of this buſineſs, many confide that being guarded with thoſe Medicines as with a buckler, they may enter the moſt infected whores, and freely ramble al the world over. *Euſtachius Rudius*, alſo propoſes the like Medicaments, *Lib.* 5. *de morb. occult. cap.* 13. But indeed I do not beleeve, that thoſe things can be taught with a good conſcience, by which ſo many men are encouraged to luſt, whom perhaps the fear of this Diſeaſe might have frighted from it; and therefore we wil ſay nothing of theſe Medicines; but *Aurelius Minadous* thinks they themſelves are deceived, that teach ſuch things, *Cap.* 31. *de Virulentia Venerea.* Where he overthrows *Fallopius* foundation, who thinks that this Diſeaſe is only communicated by the leaſt purulent bodies, which if they be wiped away, extracted, diſſipated, this Diſeaſe may be turned off, and he teacheth that the Contagion doth not only enter by the external parts of the Privities, but alſo chiefly by the internal, and runs through the Body, and that the infected Vapors, and ſpirits do paſs through the internal poroſities, and are admitted by the Veins; and therefore no man can promiſe himſelf health and ſafety from waſhing, which only reaches to the external parts, nor from other Medicaments outwardly applied, neither can ſuch external Medicaments take away the Pollution conceived within. The ſafeſt way therefore to avoid this Diſeaſe is to abſtain from whores, and to *Prevention*

remember that Whoremongers and Adulterers the Lord wil judg, who yet is wont alſo to puniſh them in this Life, with that moſt filthy Diſeaſe.

Yet *Jul. Galmarius*, hath another way of prevention of this Diſeaſe, to wit, by internal Medicaments, and he writes that he hath found out an antidote or a Mullet, by the uſe of which mens bodies are rendered ſafe againſt this Diſeaſe, yet he entreats and conjures al Phyſitians and Chyrurgeons, that they do not communicate and make known that Medicine in obedience to luſtful people, and that they make not themſelves foſterers of luſts, but to them only who muſt neceſſarily converſe with thoſe that are ſuſpected or defiled. But he deſcribes that Antidote, *Lib.* 1. *cap.* 8. and this is it.

Take *of the Amulet for the Pox, and of old Mithridate, by* Galens *deſcription, of each ſix drams; Conſerve of the flowers of Bugloſs, of broom, of Roſemany, of each three drams; mix them, give one dram, or a dram and an half, or two drams at the moſt, in the morning two hours before meat, eight or ten daies together.*

But if any one ſuſpect himſelf to be infected, he admoniſheth that he earneſtly uſe a greater care for prevention: therefore let him take of the Alexipharmacal Medicine even now deſcribed, ſwallowing a dram, or a dram and an half in the morning and before ſupper, for eight or ten daies together, whoſe Vertue that it may reach the eaſier to the more remote parts, when they have ſwallowed it, 'tis expedient they drink preſently after it ſomwhat of this Julep, by which as its vehicle it may be carried into every part.

Take *of the water of bleſſed thiſtle, burnet, Devils-bit, of each two ounces, of Syrup of the juyce of Sorrel, of Lemmons, of each an ounce and an half. Make a Julep for two doſes, to be drank preſently after the taking of a dram and an half of the Amulet, in the morning, and two hours before ſupper.*

But whenas al thoſe ſimple Medicaments, which are in that Antidote, are not proper to this Veneral Diſeaſe, we muſt conſult with experience, whether their vertue be ſo great, as *Palmarius* cries it up for.

CHAP. IX.

Of Indications.

Indications THoſe Indications which are in other diſeaſes, are found alſo in this; to wit, That which is taken from the Diſeaſe, called in ſpecy Curative: That which the cauſe doth afford, Preſervatory, whether alſo are referred urgent Symptomes; and laſt of al the Vital, for they deſervedly challenge a place in this diſeaſe, yet in the explaining of them Authors vary much, and as every one thinks of the Nature of this Diſeaſe, ſo alſo he teacheth concerning its indication and cure. We inſiſting on thoſe things which we have formerly prepoſed of the Nature of this Diſeaſe, and have ſtrongly proved, think thus of indications in this Diſeaſe.

Firſt of al, whenas this Diſeaſe is occult, and Malignant, chief enemy to the Liver and nutritive faculty, therefore it affords a kind of genercial indication, but no ſpecifical and profitable one can be had from thence, and therefore only experience, which hath found out Medicines working by an occult quality, hath adminiſtred profitable Medicines in this Diſeaſe: and unleſs the Spaniards had received from the Indians ſuch Medicaments, as Lignum Sanctum, Sarſaparilla, China Root; and the boldneſs of Chyrurgions, and eſpecially *Jacob Carpus*, had not fallen upon the uſe of Mercury, either by chance or by argumentation, whiles they read that *Avicen*, *Meſue*, and *Theodoricus*, made uſe of quickſilver, in certain puſtles, and a cruſty Scab, perhaps even to this day the true Remedies of this Diſeaſe would lie hid. But though the Remedies of this diſeaſe, were not found out ſo much by indication, as by experience; yet a Method in curing of it is not wholly excluded, but hath its

place

place alſo, whenas 'tis neceſſary that thoſe Medicaments found out by experience be rightly applied; and beſides alſo Tumors, Ulcers, and the like Diſeaſes ſpringing from the corruption of Humors, have their Method, by which they are cured. Yet in this caſe we muſt have a care, that we do not look more on the manifeſt qualities, and known diſeaſes, than on the occult Nature of the diſeaſe, in which buſineſs notwithſtanding many do fail, who are tedious in curing of divers diſtempers, preparing the Humors, and directing their cure to theſe or thoſe diſeaſes. Whenas yet 'tis plain by experience, that in a hot, and in a dry diſtemper, and in an exuſtion of the Humors, as they ſpeak, and in a Conſumption it ſelf, we do moſt happily uſe pockwood, and the like hot and dry things, and the Malignity being overcome, the reſt do eaſily vaniſh.

Secondly, as concerning indication preſervatory, here we muſt chiefly have reſpect unto that Malignity and virulency imprinted on the Humors, and that is to be deſtroyed by proper and Alexipharmacal Medicines. Yet if there be any other faults in the Humors, it wil not be unprofitable alſo to mend them. And whenas the body is either burthened with a Plenitude, or abounds with vitious Humors, the malignity is the eaſier diſſeminated into it, and there is more plentiful matter prepared for putrefaction, and the force of the Alexipharmacal means is dulled, it is expedient to empty either the ſuperfluous blood, or the vitious Humors, that the other Medicines afterwards may be adminiſtred more ſafely, more commodiouſly, and with greater benefit. *Preſervatory.*

Thirdly, the Diſeaſe and various Symptomes, which ſupervene to the principal diſeaſe, and ariſe from the corruption of Humors, are al to be removed in their proper manner. *Curative.*

Fourthly, the ſtrength is to be preſerved, for as no other diſeaſe can be cured, unleſs there be ſtrength of body, ſo nor this; and al attempts are in vain, unleſs at leaſtwiſe we have Nature willing. *Vital.*

And ſo there are four things chiefly to be done in this diſeaſe: Firſt of al, if blood abound, that muſt be diminiſhe, and if any vitious Humors abound, they are to be prepared and emptied, and if there be any manifeſt diſeaſes, which may be an impediment to the proper Cure, as obſtructions and the like, they muſt firſt of all be taken away. Secondly, the Malignity and virulency as wel that inherent in the humors, as that imprinted on the parts, and principally the Liver, is to be deſtroied by the proper Alexipharmaca of this diſeaſe. Thirdly, the ſtrength is to be preſerved and confirmed, and firſt of al chiefe care is to be had of the Liver, which ſuffers in this diſeaſe. Fourthly, the diſeaſes and Symptomes which are wont to be joyned to this diſeaſe are to be taken away. *Four things to be done in the Cure of the Veneral diſeaſe.*

Here we muſt clear a controverſie, to wit, Whether this diſeaſe may be cured without ſweating? Some are of this opinion, That this diſeaſe may be taken away, though ſweat be not provoked: And firſt of al they prove it thus, Becauſe this evil conſiſts in a certain hidden quality which cannot be taken away but by alteration of the body, whenas contraries are cured by contraries: but that alteration may be affected by the proper vertue of antidotes and decoctions adminiſtred, without ſweating. Next of al they alledge experience, by which it is evident, that by the taking of ſuch Medicaments, ſome have recovered without ſweating. Thirdly, they urge this, That thoſe that drink the decoction of the wood are ſomtimes happily emptied by nature, by urine, by the ſtool, and not alwaies by ſweats. *Whether the cure may be perfected without ſweating.*

Aurelius Minadous, contends againſt theſe, *de Virulen. Vener. Cap.* 39. And firſt of al he writes that he never obſerved, that Phyſitians commanded the decoction to be taken without ſweating, to which al Alexipharmacal things of their own Nature do incline men, neither is the matter it ſelf unfit to be expeld this way, being Vaporous and halituous: neither was there ever any one, who did throughly and wholly overcome this diſeaſe without the help of ſome ſweating, eſpecially if it were inveterate; but why he holds thus, he brings this reaſon, That in his opinion, the eſſence of this evil doth not conſiſt in a quality, but in the body affected

affected with an evil quality: and therefore he holds, as a quality doth indicate alteration, ſo a body indicates Evacuation, which though it may be many waies, yet moſt commodiouſly by ſweating: whenas this very thing is a Vaporous body, and is moſt rightly and eaſily diſcuſſed by ſweat; and he adds this, whenas there is a great quantity of Excrements abounding in thoſe bodies infected with this diſeaſe, not only in one part, but al over the body; but ſweat is an univerſal Evacuation, they are moſt commodiouſly emptied by ſweating: and he holds that ſweats do very much profit the Liver eſpecially. For whenas that is the Forge of Humors, which are carried through the whol body, and they are purged by the benefit of ſweat, and freed from al defilements, alſo the Liver polluted may be this way cleanſed, and though Nature ſomtimes do empty the virulent humors by ſome other part, as by ſtool, or by Urine, and then her endeavor is not to be hindered, but to be helped forward; yet he holds that without ſweating the whol body cannot be freed from that Diſeaſe, and he thinks that ſweat only can empty from al places both internal, and external, quickly, ſafely, and pleaſantly.

The deciſion But neither of theſe opinions doth fully reach the Truth, and both delivers an imperfect Cure. For whenas the Curative indication ſo called in general, is twofold; the one preſervative, which is taken from the cauſe; the other in ſpecy called Curative, which is taken from the Diſeaſe; they who think this diſeaſe may be cured without ſweat, becauſe it conſiſts in a certain hidden and Malignant quality, think right concerning the curative indication, whenas that malignant quality cannot be taken away by ſweating, or other Evacuations, but by proper Alexipharmaca, yet they neglect the preſervative indication, and the cauſe: for whenas it is certain, that in the Veneral diſeaſe, there is not only a vitious diſpoſition, and Malignant, in the parts, eſpecially the Liver, but that al the Humors of the Body are corrupted; there is required then an Evacuation of them, which is moſt commodiouſly done by ſweating, as *Minadous* rightly proves. For though ſomthing be diſcuſſed inſenſibly, yet that inſenſible Evacuation is not ſufficient, and 'tis too ſlow. But *Aurelius Minadous*, thinks wel concerning the taking away of the Cauſe, and the Evacuation of vitious Humors, which is moſt rightly done by ſweating; but he neglects the diſeaſe it ſelf, or that Malignant quality, imprinted not only on the Humors, but alſo on the Living parts: from which it appears, which is diligently to be taken notice of, that the diſpute of occult diſeaſes, is not amongſt thoſe which *Galen* calls Logical, but does conceive the very eſſence of theſe diſeaſes, and that the ignorance of the occult diſeaſes, doth not only breed Errors in theory, but alſo in practice. Therefore though we do grant, that the Evacuation of Humors is wel ordered by ſweating, yet Alexipharmaca are neceſſary alſo, againſt that malignant diſpoſition in the parts, eſpecially in the Liver, and *Fernelius*, whom *Palmarius* follows, for this very cauſe do add peculiar Alexipharmaca, as ſhal be ſaid, that that Malignant diſpoſition may be pulled up by the Routs. For though al the vitious Humors be emptied, and al other diſeaſes and Symptomes do ceaſe after their emptying; yet unleſs that Malignant diſpoſition be taken out of the parts, the evil grows freſh again, and oftentimes a long while after. And this I think is the cauſe, that not only the decoction of Pockwood, Sarſaparilla, and the like, is given in the morning to provoke ſweat, but alſo without ſweating is taken as common drink; for the very ſame proper Medicines, which do deſtroy the occult cauſe and malignity in the humors, and do empty the vitious humors by ſweat, are able alſo to Eradicate the diſpoſition imprinted in the parts.

Laſt, of al this muſt not be paſt over, that the indications propoſed before, are not neceſſary to be obſerved in every French diſeaſe, but only in that, which hath almoſt invaded the whol body, and eſpecially hath poſſeſſed the Liver. But if the evil be new, there is no need either to let blood, or to give purges, whenas the fault is not yet communicated to the humors, but it is enough to wipe off, or cal forth the contagion received, which alſo is ſufficient in the ſcab newly contracted by contagion, where yet we muſt obſerve, whether thoſe puſtles, and French rottenneſs, as they

they cal it, do immediately proceed from contagion, and whoriſh copulation, for then external medicines do ſuffice, or whether they do ariſe from the Liver now affected, for then there is need of evacuations and alexipharmaca.

Chap. X.

Of the Cure. And firſt of bleeding.

FIrſt of al therefore as concerning indication preſervative, or the removing of the cauſes, and bleeding at the beginning; truly the cauſe of this diſeaſe properly and next of al is not taken away by letting of blood; yet if blood do abound in the body, and that eſpecially be too hot, the proper remedies of this diſeaſe, which are hot and dry, cannot be ſafely adminiſtred unleſs the abounding blood be firſt diminiſhed.

And truly if the virulent matter have no peculiar motion to any part, the baſilick veine may firſt of al be opened: but if the matter have motion to ſome particular part, as to the groin, and nature thruſt forth a bubo, bleeding is warily to be uſed: for if the bubo tend to ſuppuration, we muſt not let blood, and eſpecially in the Arme, leſt nature be troubled in her expulſion, and the matter be recalled to the inward parts. And it hath been obſerved, that many from the bubo opened, and the matter a long while emptied by it, have become perfectly ſound; on the contrary from unſeaſonable bleeding, the evil hath been prolonged; therefore in bleeding we muſt attend the motion of nature, and when the tumor doth not afford hopes of ſuppuration, a veine muſt be opened in the lower parts, for ſo the the matter is retracted towards the lower parts, and by reaſon of the efflux of hot blood, 'tis afterwards more eaſily ſuppurated. After the ſame manner a veine is to be opened in the yard, if there be rottenneſs in the privities, or a running of the Reines, and wholly if the parts below the Liver be affected: but if the matter ruſh to the head, and there cauſe moſt vehement pains, filthy ulcers, falling of the haire, the cephalick veine in the Arme is moſt commonly opened.

The other precepts which are propounded in general concerning the right adminiſtration in bleeding, are here alſo to be obſerved; which whenas they are not proper to this affect, we ſhal no further propoſe them here.

If the ſtrength wil not beare bleeding, inſtead thereof the hemorhoidal veines of the Arſe, may be opened, or Cupping-glaſſes be applied in convenient places.

Chap. XI

Of the preparation, and purging of vitious humors.

NExt of al if the body be cacochymical, the vitious humors muſt be emptied and prepared with convenient medicaments; whenas in an impure body alexipharmacal meanes, and proper remedies of this diſeaſe, do profit little, nay they may bring hurt, and though that diſeaſe be overcome, may render the body obnoxious to other diſeaſes. For vitious humors collected about the bowels cannot al be diſcuſſed and diſſipated by ſweat, but the thinner part being diſcuſſed the thicker is left, and grows dry, and is faſtened in the bowels, and oftentimes contracting an acrimony, doth weaken the ſubſtance of the veſſels: from whence that diſeaſe grows ſometimes more ſtubborn to cure, and there ariſe obſtructions of the Liver and Spleen, and ſchirrous tumors, hypochondriacal diſeaſes, and creeping ulcers. *Preparation and purging of humors.*

Not yet is purging only to be uſed in the beginning, and before the proper cure of the diſeaſe, but alſo the whol time of the cure, if vitious matter be collected again,

'tis

'tis to be emptied by intervals: yet if the evil be now inveterate, and stick principally in the external parts, the vitious matter is not rashly to be recalled to the inward parts by strong purgers, least the *Liver*, Stomach, and other bowels be hurt and weakned, but 'tis to be emptied by convenient places, where nature tends.

But concerning the preparation and purging of humors, though many Authors are large enough, yet whenas those things which are spoke by them, concerning an universal preparation and purging of humors, are not proper to this disease, but are common to al depending on a cacochymy: it seems not worth our labor, to dwel upon those generals, which are already known by the cure of many other diseases. We shal only admonish you of these things; first of al when the disease is new, we must observe, what vitious humors abound in the body, and especially in the second region, and those must be prepared and emptied. But if the evil be now inveterate, because in that for the most part, thick and adust humors are collected, the medicins are first of al to be directed against them. Next of al this is to be observed, that we have respect also to the distemper of the bowels, and if they have contracted any distemper, that must be corrected, and they must be strengthened with proper medicaments. Thirdly, it is necessary, that we alwaies ad somwhat to our preparatives and purgers, which doth resist the Veneral virulency by a specifick faculty; and therefore concerning common purging medicines we wilad nothing, whenas they are every where obvious and known, but this that many physitians do testify, That Mechoacan, to which belongs Jallop, is given not only for its purging faculty with benefit in this disease, but also because 'tis an enemy to this evil by a peculiar power, so that it is numbered by some amongst the antidotes of this disease. Then by the Chymists mercury prepared is chiefly commended for the curing and purging of this disease, of which shal be spoken hereafter in particular.

Chap. XII.

Of the proper remedies and antidotes and alexipharmaca of the Veneral Disease in general.

After the body is emptied in convenient manner, the greatest hopes of this cure is in the proper antidotes of this disease, as from which only perfect health can be hoped for so indeed, that though divers other diseases, arising from the corruption of humors, be often joined with this disease; yet if that malignity be taken away, a little while after either they vanish of their own accord, or are easily cured, but without the help of these remedies, no perfect cure can be hoped for by other medicines, under what name soever: and this too is observed by many that these kind of medicaments though by their manifest qualities they seem to be adversaries to a hot and dry distemper, yet these hot and dry medicaments have been used with most happy success by many, who were endewed with a hot and dry distemper of the Liver, nay of the whol body, and who had a leane habit of body, nay we e almost plainly consumptive, from which very thing appeares, that in this disease, we ought rather to take care of the occult malignity, than of the manifest distemper. And therefore as soon as the body is in some sort prepared and emptied, we must maturely hasten to those Alexipharmaca of the Veneral disease.

Alexipharmaca of the Veneral disease are necessary.

But though some Physitians would advance and extol the vertues of those medicaments which shal preferrly be reckoned up, whiles they hold, that the decoction of Juniper wood, of the Olive tree, Box, Beech, and other trees may performe the same, as the decoction of Guajacum, so that a most slender course of dyet be used, as is wont to be observed with the decoction of Pock-wood: yet experience hath long since taught that that is false: for though it be certain that by a most slender diet some symptomes of this disease do grow more gentle, yet unless proper remedies be administred, a little while after the disease is seen to grow fresh again, and

returne

return more cruel: for ſuch medicines indeed with a ſlender diet, may conſume the vitious humors, but they cannot overcome the malignity: as therefore this diſeaſe is occult, and is not known but by its effects, ſo alſo the remedies which cure this diſeaſe, are not found out by reaſon, but only by experience.

But what thoſe medicaments are, Phyſitians again do not fully agree. Many put their greateſt hopes in Quickſilver, and think that the only and proper Alexipharmacum of the Veneral diſeaſe; others do wholy reject it, of which buſineſs ſhal be ſpoke hereafter. Others, and moſt men indeed, undertake the cure of this diſeaſe with the uſe of Guajacum, Sarſaparilla, China root, Saſſafras wood; and others doubt of theſe very things, nay ſome deny that this diſeaſe can be overcome by the uſe of Guajacum only and the like, and therefore they think their vertue ought to be quickned and increaſed by the mixture of other things. *Jul. Palmarius lib. de lue Vener. cap.* 13. diſtinguiſheth and thinks that Guajacum is not of ſo great force that that alone can wholy extinguiſh the root, and al the deadlineſs of the veneral poyſon; neither that it is ſo weak, that it can do nothing without the help and conjunction of other things; he writes indeed that by the uſe of that alone, the humors being conſumed, al the ſymptomes of the diſeaſe wil at length be allaied, and wholly lie hid, but yet the virulent taint of the diſeaſe, which is already in the ſolid parts, is not overcome, and wholy extinguiſhed in moſt people by that remedy; but that the deadlineſs of the latent poyſon be wholy extinguiſht, and that the return of the diſeaſe be prevented, he thinks other alexipharmaca ought to be adminiſtred, which opinion doubtleſs he received from his Maſter *Fernelius*, for he writes that he, as in *lib.* 1. *de. lue Vener. cap.* 7. did firſt dare to promiſe a perfect cure of the French Diſeaſe without the uſe of Quick-ſilver, and that he took care for the Compoſition of many Alexipharmaca at his Houſe, which he gave againſt this poyſon with Guajacum, and ſomtimes without it, and as he writes in the alleaged *Cap.* 7. two of theſe medicines which he found to be moſt excellent and efficacious, he by the addition of other medicines hath reduced into one, which hitherto never failed any man. *What they are.*

But whenas theſe medicaments are compounded of common Alexpharmaca not proper to this diſeaſe, we ſhal not propoſe them in the firſt place, but hereafter we ſhal ſpeak ſomwhat of them. But in the firſt place, we ſhal treat of thoſe things which moſt Phyſitians have hitherto uſed, and which long experience hath now confirmed to be alexipharmaca of this diſeaſe, by the uſe of which it hath been a long time obſerved, that not only the vitious humors have been emptied, and the ſymptomes deſtroyed; but the very roots of the diſeaſe have been pulled up, that it could no more returne. Of which ſort are your pock-wood, ſarſaparilla, China root, Saſſafras-wood, of which we wil now ſpeak.

Chap. *XIII.*

Of the Indian Wood, and Guajacum.

The Indian wood.

AND firſt of al we wil treat of the Indian wood, as being that which challengeth the cheife place amongſt the remedies of this diſeaſe. For whenas this diſeaſe is reported to be endemious in the *Indies*, the chiefe remedy is alſo fetcht from thence, which they cal the Indian wood; but this ſort of wood, as appeares by *Conſalvus Oviedus* a noble Spaniard, who writes of things in the *Indies*, is two fold; the one which is commonly known, called Guajacum, the other which is called the holy wood. For though by many theſe two woods are taken for one and the ſame, yet the forementioned Author, doth diſtinguiſh them both by their marks and places, concerning which ſee *Fallopius de morb. Gal. cap.* 39. yet whenas both woods have the ſame force to overcome the French diſeaſe, (though it be reported that the holy wood be of greater force againſt articular diſeaſes, and others, and the holy wood is now a days ſeldom brought over to us) we ſhal only ſpeak of Guajacum.

Two fold. Guajacum.

The holy wood.

A mongſt other new Iſlands found out in former Ages, there is one alſo, which the Spaniards the diſcoverers have called by the name of *Hiſpaniola*: whenas the Veneral diſeaſe was reported to be indemious there, and the decoction of a certain wood is eſteemed there the only remedy of that diſeaſe, which at this day is called guajacum, & by the inhabitants is pronounced with gaping Huajacum. The Spaniards infected with the ſame diſeaſe, having found the ſame decoction to be helpful, did afterwards diſcover it's vertue to others: the tree is reported to be leaved like aſh, the color of the wood within is blackiſh, the wood it ſelf is heavy and ponderous, it floares not in water, but ſinks; 'tis ful of rozin, and while it burnes, it ſends forth no ingrateful ſcent, its taſt is ſomewhat bitter, with a light accrimony, pricking the tongue.

The Choice of Guajacum.

There is ſome doubt amongſt phyſicians concerning the choice of it; ſome are of opinion, that which is whitiſh, is to be preferred before the reſt; whenas by how much the leſſer 'tis in years, by ſo much the whiter it is, but the older it is, by ſo much the blacker it is: but that which is older is dryer, and that which is yonger is more moiſt, and more abounding with juyce, and therefore more powerful. But indeed whenas there is a two fould humor in living things, the one primogenious, the ſubject of innate heate, or the implanted ſpirit, apt to take fire; the other alimentary, more watriſh, and leſs apt to be ſet on fire: the vertues of this wood, as alſo of other plants, are not to be judged from the alimentary and more watriſh humor, but from that implanted heat, and primogenious humidity; which whenas in 'its tender age, both in infants, and in plants, 'tis overwhelmed and obſcured by much moiſture, many actions in that age are infirm and weak, which afterwards that moiſture being ſomewhat waſted, and the heat become more vigorous, in progreſs of time they become more ſtrong, and this heat the cheif inſtrument of al actions is wont to conſiſt unchanged til it comes to its ful age, and heigth: and therefore though the ſame innate heat and radical moiſture be alwaies in Guajacum, on which its vertues do depend, yet becauſe in the yong and tender wood, that vertue is as it were over whelmed, and reſtrained by the abundance of moiſture, that wood which is the yonger is leſs efficacious, than that which is now of a ful confirmed growth: and therefore for the cure of this diſeaſe, we muſt not chuſe that wood which is yellowiſh, or that is of a box colour, or that which is cut of a tree not ful grown, or from the boughs, as being leſs efficacious; but rather that which is ſomewhat black, becauſe that is more rozmy, and abounds with that fat and balſomy ſubſtance, in which doth chiefly reſide that vertue oppoſite to veneral virulency. It is good therefore to know the age of this wood, that we may chooſe the moſt effectual. For that indeed which hath the inward part black, and is long waies divided with clefts as it were with certain lines of a duskiſh colour, gathered into blackiſh rounds, that is efficacious, but yet 'tis ſuch as is cut off either from the arms of trees, or certainly hath not yet attained its ful maturity, and therefore 'tis of leſs efficacy: for thoſe kind of Lines do therefore appeare becauſe that fatty ſubſtance, which doth chiefly reſide in the middle trunk of the tree, is not yet ſo plentiful, as to fil up al the internal parts of the wood: but that which is black al over the internal parts, the ſuperficies only being whitiſh, that if it be ſound, weighty, and odorous, and prick the tongue with a light acrimony, and either is not divided with any lines, or elſe with thoſe ful of rozin, and therefore while it burnes beſides the grateful ſmel it ſends forth, it alſo yeelds a blackiſh rozin that hath attained the higheſt degree of maturity, and is cut off from the body of the tree, and is therfore moſt effectual, but if it be divided with lines, and ful of holes, and neither weighty, nor odorous, nor acrimonious, and being lighted yeelds no rozin, it is a ſign that that is now old, and therefore its vertues are grown dul.

How the age of this wood is to be diſcerned

L. Septalius alſo doth admoniſh us here, that there is a certain ſort of Guajacum, which is never to be brought into uſe, which hath no true blackneſs in the middle of it, but is of a ſomewhat darke and greeniſh colour, which makes the decoction very thick, that it wil never be cleare, and by its exceeding acrimony, it cauſeth a heat both

both in the throat and jaws, and by reaſon of its thick and earthy parts, for the moſt part it cauſeth obſtructions in the ſpleen, ſometimes alſo in the liver, Empiricks cal it the wild holy wood: but whereas he finds no where in Authors this twofould difference of domeſtick, and wild; he rather thinks it acquires theſe qualities from the nature of the ſoil.

Alſo if the barke be thick, and cleave ſo to the wood, that it can ſcarce be pulled and parted from it, the wood is good: but if the Bark be eaſily ſeparated from the wood, either 'tis old, or periſht by ſalt water: alſo if the wood appear fatty whiles it is raſped, and that being maſticated doth bite, and leave a bitterneſs behind it; and whiles it is cut, it appeare ſolid with an even ſuperficies, not rough and ful of holes, the wood is good.

The bark of Guajacum.

The Bark of this wood is endewed with great acrimony and bitterneſs, and therefore dries, attenuates, and digeſts more powerfully than the wood; but becauſe that occult vertue which is oppoſite to this diſeaſe, is rather in that fatty and moiſt, and balſamical ſubſtance, the wood is alwaies preferred before the bark; and beſides the bark is not ſo conveniently given in hot and dry bodies.

The vertues of Guajacum.

As concerning the vertues of Guajacum, it is hot and dry, as may be perceived from its taſt, ſmel, and acrimony, and that in the ſecond degree, and 'tis alſo of thin parts, whence it hath power to attenuate craſs things, to cut and cleanſe clammy humors, to open obſtructions, to move ſweat and urine, and to diſſipate and waſt ſuperfluous cold humors: but this pockwood is not chiefly given for thoſe qualities (whenas there are found in *Europe* medicaments endewed with thoſe qualities, that there was no need to tranſport them out of the *Indies*) but principally for that peculiar and occult power. By which it is oppoſed to the Veneral virulency: and truly al phyſitians almoſt doe agree that pockwood doth deſerve the firſt place amongſt the alexipharmaca of the veneral diſeaſe: for though *Fernelius* would ſomewhat leſſen its vertue, becauſe al that are affected with this diſeaſe are not cured by the uſe of it, yet this is no ſufficient cauſe, ſince there is found no ſuch alexipharmacum, or other medicine which can cure diſeaſes paſt hope. But this wood is by an occult quality and propriety oppoſite to the Veneral virulency it ſelf, and is a friend to the radical moiſture, and natural baſtom, which doth moſt of al ſuffer by this virulency inimicous to the nutritive faculty; and doth ſo ſtrengthen it, that it hath been obſerved, that thoſe alſo, who had a liver, and whol habit of body hot and dry, and who have been almoſt conſumed with the veneral diſeaſe, as was ſaid before, by the uſe of the decoction of this wood, though by its heat and dryneſs adverſe to them have been reſtored, and become better habited and more corpulent. Some indeed have dared to write, that the decoction of this wood doth nouriſh as much as chicken broath: but theſe ſeem to me, to be exceſſive in the praiſe of this wood: for though it be a vegetable, and perhaps may leave ſome alimental juyce in the decoction, yet I think no body that is in his right mind wil eaſily deny, that a chicken hath not more convenient nouriſhment for a man, than Guajacum, but that ſome after this diſeaſe become more corpulent, is accidental; for whenas by reaſon of the Veneral virulency nutrition was hurt in the whol body, when that is diſcuſſed and extinguiſht, the body begins again to be nouriſht wel, and to be augmented: the like of which happens alſo in ſome other diſeaſes, eſpecially in feavers, before which whenas men were not wel fleſht by reaſon of evil nouriſhment, the vitious humors being waiſted by the diſeaſe afterwards they begin to be nouriſht wel, and become more corpulent.

Whether pock-wood do nouriſh.

Fr. Arcæus alſo *lib. de curand. vulner. rat.* gives the † Decoction of Guajacum for ulcers of the Lungs, and the priſick; and he writes, that bodies, though they be waſted, are not offended by it, but rather grow fat upon it: nay there are ſome, who attribute a nutritive power to Guajacum, and write that it is no leſs nouriſhing than chicken broath. The ſame vertues alſo others do attribute, * to Sarſaparilla, Saſſafras, and eſpecially to China root, but indeed though it be found by experience, that in the

† *Whether the decoction of Guajacum, Sarſaparilla, Saſſafras China root, do fatten.*

* *The decoction of Guajacum, Sarſa, Saſſafras, China root, nouriſh not but by accident.*

the ptisick, Veneral disease, scab and other diseases, bodies extenuated, have been restored again, and made fat by the use of these decoctions, yet this comes to pass not of it self, because these decoctions have a nutritive faculty, as other nourishments, but by accident, in as much as they take away the cause of leanness. In ptisick bodies the case is plain; for whenas that wasting of the body proceeds from an ulcer of the Lungs, the ulcer being dried up by the use of Guajacum, the body begins to be wel nourisht again: the same happens in other diseases, as the French, the Scab, and the like. For whenas that leanness, and consumption doth proceed from bad nourishment, but bad nourishment for the most part from acrid and salt humors, which do both consume the good blood, and hinder the agglutination of it to the body, those vitious humors being wasted by the decoctions, and discussed by sweats, the bodies begin to be nourisht wel again, nay grow fat.

But this wood hath not only an alterative power, and by its occult quality to extinguish that malignity of the Veneral virulency, imprinted both on the humors, and the solid parts, but also to evacuate, both sensibly by sweating, and insensibly by insensible transpiration: and therefore the way of curing the French disease by Guajacum, and medicines of affinity with that is most in use. For though by reason of the length of the cure, and the pains of sweating, and the slender dyet, it cause some trouble to them: yet it is far safer than that way, which is by quicksilver, where if there be an error, the patient is in no smal danger.

Medicines made out of Guajacum.

But there are prepared out of Guajacum divers medicaments, and those either in a liquid forme, or in a solid, and in substance: but those given in a liquid forme, are most effectual, whenas they are easily deduced into act and penetrate into the whol body, and do irritae the expulsive faculty of al parts to cast off what is hurtful: but in a solid forme, whenas that part in which the vertue of the medicine doth cheifly reside, is not yet separated from the earthy and thick part, 'tis not so easily deduced into act. The decoction therefore as most convenient is most in use: yet if any by reason of the continued use of this medicine be weary of it, and nevertheless do feare least there be some reliques of the evil humor remaining, or their course of life wil no longer admit of the use of the decoction as it ought to be taken, to such, medicines made out of this wood, may be given in another form. Amongst which extracts and spirits, as shal be said, are most efficacious, and far more excellent than pouders.

The manner of preparing a decoction of the wood.

But the manner of boyling this wood is various, both in respect of the liquor in which the decoction is made, and of the quality of the liquor: for some boyl the wood in water, some in Barly water, some in distilled waters, others in wine, others in Whey, and others in broth of Flesh. *L. Sepalius lib. 7. animadu. nu.* 204. reprehends those who deny, that the decoction of this wood may be made in wine only, when as nothing is more fit to extract the faculties of medicines, than wine, and the water of wine (he had spoke righter than the spirit of wine) and therefore he prepares his decoction with wine, which he useth when the disease is inveterate with an evil habit of body, and a cold matter predominant: after this manner eight ounces of the bark of the best holy wood grossely poudered being infused in forty two physical pints of the best white wine, for two days, the wine being first heated and alwaies kept hot those two days in a double vessel, or in the ashes; afterwards with a slow fire boyl it away in a double vessel, to the consumption of the third part, which let the sick make use of, both in the morning instead of a syrup, and for his drink at meales, let him take in the morning seven ounces, & an hour after move sweat: but at dinner, and supper let him not exceed fourteen ounces. But though we grant that wine is most commodious to extract the vertues of vegetables, yet this cannot be denied that by boyling the strength of wine doth vanish, and when the spirit is exhaled, there is left a nauseous phlegme less profitable than plain simple water. And therefore I am of that opinion that either the wood is to be boyled in water, and towards the end, the wine is to be added, or else the wood

Whether it ought to be boyled in Wine.

is

is only to be a long while infuſed in wine, or to be boyled in a double veſſel, that nothing be loſt, but by no means to the Conſumption of the third part.

Therefore moſt commonly and rightly the decoction is made in pure water, which doth both a little correct the Heat and drineſs of the Medicine, and further the diſtribution, and provocation of ſweat, yet if the body, and eſpecially the ſtomach be cold and weak, and the Patient accuſtomed to wine, Wine is not unprofitably mixt with it, as was ſaid even now, and ſhal be ſaid hereafter; for by the admiſtion of Wine the ſtomach is leſs hurt, and the vertue of the Medicine doth the eaſier penetrate to al the parts.

And a different proportion of the wood to the water is obſerved according to the age, conſtitution of the body, and ſeaſon of the year, and they take to twelve pound of water, from three ounces of the wood to twelve: for if the ſeaſon of the year and the body be hot, 'tis ſafeſt, to take a leſs quantity of the wood, and in a longer time to perfect the Cure, than by too ſtrong a Medicine to damnefie the patient, eſpecially at the beginning of the cure, and before the ſuperfluous Humors in the body be abated, and ſweat begin to flow eaſily and exquiſitly, and the patient be accuſtomed to the Decoction, afterwards by degrees you may take more of the Wood, which unleſs it be obſerved, the Patient is eaſily brought into danger. And *Euſtachius Rudius* writes, *Lib. 5. de Morb. occult. Cap.* 13. That he hath ſeen patients who by this error, *viz.* too great a quantity of the wood given on the firſt daies, have fallen into a Feaver, that afterwards they have been forced to abſtaine from the uſe of the decoction, to their great detriment: but where there is no ſuch thing to be feared, in thoſe of ripe years, we commonly add to one pound of the wood raſped or turned ſmal, twelve pound of water, in an earthen Veſſel glaſed, and let it infuſe twenty four hours in a warm place, afterwards the veſſel being wel covered boyle it with a gentle fire, til half, or the third part remain, and let the decoction cool in this veſſel ſtil covered, afterwards ſtrain it.

The proportion of wood to the water.

Fallopius Lib. de morb Galli. cap. 46. diſputes whether it be better to boyle it with an open fire, or in a double veſſel as was ſaid, or in Balneo Mariæ, and reprehends them who hold that the decoction made in Balneo is more dilute, or leſs powerful: and that the decoction made in Balneo, is more excellent than that which is made with an open fire, he endeavors to prove by the example of diſtilled waters, which by the balneum are made moſt excellent, when as there is no aduſtion in them, but the greater eliquation which is made in that hot and moiſt, doth render the decoction more excellent; but experience teacheth otherwiſe, which reaſon alſo doth confirme. For though out of ſome moiſter plants, as Roſes, Violets, Lilly of the vallies, and the like, being freſh, whoſe vertue conſiſts in the volatile part, as the Chymiſts ſpeak, the beſt waters are made in balneo without the affuſion of water: yet in hotter plants, eſpecially in Roots and woods, whoſe vertue conſiſts in the oyly part, their vertue can never be extracted by the too gentle heat of a Balneum, as happens alſo in many ſeeds, but they muſt be diſtilled by a † Veſica through which by the vehicle of the water, thoſe more fixed parts may be elevated: when as then the whol vertue of Guajacum doth conſiſt in that oyly and rozeny part, and there is need of ſtrong boyling that that may be extracted, the gentle heat of a Bolneum cannot do it, but it muſt be boyled in an open fire, which nevertheleſs cauſeth no aduſtion, if there be added a ſufficient quantity of water.

After what manner 'tis to be boyled.

A chymical Veſſel.

Some for the better guſt, and that the bitterneſs and acrimony may be abated, a little before 'tis boyled enough add of Raiſon and Liquoriſh, of each one ounce; and you may add Sugar, or ſome Julep to relliſh it, *Aurelius Minadous, de virulen. Vener. Cap.* 4. holds the Decoction ought chiefly to be Dulcorated with Honey;

Honey; for he thinks that a ſmal quantity of Honey, if it be boyled with it and Skimmed, wil rebate al the bitterneſs, and the Decoction acquire a greater power to cleanſe, attenuate, open, and make fuſil the Humors, and ſtrengthen the parts: which we grant may take place in phlegmatick bodies, and eſpecially in a cold ſtomach; ſo whenas honey doth eaſily turn to Choller, we think it cannot ſafely be uſed, in chollerick bodies, hot and dry, but more conveniently and ſafely Raiſons, Liquoriſh, or Sugar.

Some alſo in thoſe who have a hot and dry Liver, do add towards the end of the decoction a root or two of Succory, one or two handfuls of Endive, Sowthiſtle: but whenas ſuch decoctions are to be continued along while, we muſt have a care leaſt by the admiſtion of ſuch things they be made ingrateful, and provoke nauſeouſneſs in the Patient: beſides whenas for the moſt part there is boyled at one time Decoction enough for many daies, but the addition of ſuch Herbs doth cauſe, that the Decoction wil not laſt ſo long, to prevent this, ſuch herbs are to be added not to the whol decoction, but to about one pound of it.

Some not unprofitably, eſpecially to thoſe accuſtomed to it, and whoſe ſtomach is weak, do add towards the end of the decoction three pound of a ſweetiſh white wine; ſome prepare the whol decoction in wine, but not ſo rightly: for the beſt part of the wine doth evaporate in boyling, and there is left an ingrateful Flegm as was ſaid before.

Aurelius Minadous, alſo doth admoniſh, that the decoction of the wood is to be given with a vehicle, which may direct the vertue of the Medicine to the parts principally affected; and the Head moſt of al affected we muſt mix Cephalick things; the Reins affected, things Nephritical; the Liver, Hepatical; the Spleen, things Splenitick. Which as we do not wholly diſallow of, ſo we do not alwaies think it neceſſary, whenas the vertue of the decoction doth eaſily of it ſelf penetrate into the whol body: but we muſt chiefly have a care, leaſt by the admiſtion of ſuch Medicines, the decoction be rendered nauſeous and ingrateful to the Patient; which when he himſelf alſo conſiders, he admoniſheth rightly, that ſuch Medicines are more commodiouſly taken by themſelves reduced into a pouder, or Bolus, or ſome other forme, than mixt with the decoction; but we ſhal ſpeak hereafter of compound decoctions.

Diſtilled water from Guajaum. The Chymiſts whenas they fear leaſt by the long boyling, which is to the half, or a third part, the Spirituous and ſubtile parts ſhould exhale and be diſſipated, and ſo the vertue of the Medicine be diminiſhed, prepare this decoction another way, ſo that it loſeth nothing of its ſtrength, they take the pouder of Guajacum and put it into a retort, and pouring a ſufficient quantity of water, they place the retort in the aſhes, and apply the receiving veſſel, and making a fire under it, firſt they make a digeſtion, then diſtil it, to the Conſumption of one half of the water they give of the diſtilled water four ounces; yet it were moſt commodious if the diſtilled water were mixed with the reſt of the decoction in the retort being ſtrained; for ſo they would have al the vertue; to that decoction remaining in the retort may be poured more water, and let it digeſt twelve hours, afterwards diſtil it; and the liquor diſtilled may be given for common drink, and whenas it happens ſomtimes, that Infants are born infected with the Veneral diſeaſe, or are infected by their Nurſes, this diſtilled and ſweetned with Sugar may be given them inſtead of Juleps.

The ſecond decoction. Alſo after that the firſt decoction prepared the common way, is ſtrained, twelve or eighteen pound of water again is poured to the wood remaining after the firſt boyling according as the Patient is wont to drink more or leſs, and is boyled to the Conſumption of the third part; and being ſtrained is given for ordinary drink at dinner and ſupper, if they deſire a more pleaſant and ſweeter drink, you may add four ounces or more of Rayſons, or inſtead of Rayſons, one ounce or

two

two of Coriander ſeed prepared, and ſweeten the decoction with two or three ounces of Sugar.

But if any Herbs have been added to the firſt decoction, the decoction for drink at meals muſt not be made of the remainders of the firſt decoction becauſe it would be nauſeous, but you muſt prepare another freſh decoction, but more dilute, or a wine of Guajacum, which is made thus: Take four or five pound of the wood, four pound of white Sugar, ten pound of white Wine, and put the wood into a wooden Veſſel, and heat the Wine and powr it to it. *Wine of Guajacum.*

Some boyl the wood the third time, and uſe the decoction to boyl meat in, the ſame decoction alſo may be uſed to waſh the hands, to clenſe the Noſtrils, and mundifie Ulcers. *The third decoction.*

And ſome give this wood other waies, ſome in the form of a pouder, others make electuaries of it. Thus *Nicol. Maſſa. Lib. 2. de Morb. Gal. Cap. 6.* he takes of the Indian wood moſt finely prepared one pound, and with Syrup of Fumitory boyles it to the form of an Electuary, of which he gives half an ounce or an ounce; or take of the wood of Guajacum, Sarſaparilla, finely poudered, of each one ounce, of the ſpecies of the three ſaunders and Diarrhodon Abbatis, of each two drams; Conſerve of Succory, Roſes, of each ſix ounces; with Syrup of Succory make an Electuary. *An Electuary of Guajacum.*

Others with a convenient Syrup make pills of it.

But others not without cauſe do here admoniſh us, that ſuch Medicines are leſs effectual, and that many, who were newly infected, when as they hoped for health by the uſe of ſuch Medicaments, by that delay and lingring and weakneſs of the Medicine have fallen into a moſt grievous evil: for as was ſaid, ſuch Medicines do leſs penetrate into the body. Yet towards the latter end of the Cure, when the evil is almoſt overcome, and 'tis only feared, that there may remain ſome evil diſpoſition, and the long continued drinking of the decoction of the wood is nauſeous to the patient, ſuch Medicines may be uſed to conſume the reliques of the diſeaſe.

An extract of this wood is more commodiouſly prepared, and out of that pills, or rowles: but after the uſe of it there is need of taking ſome liquor, by whoſe vehicle the extract may be diſtributed and carried into the whol body: nay theſe extracts, according to the opinion of *Hercules Saxonia*, have ſcarce ſo great ſtrength as to overcome this diſeaſe if it be very great and ancient, but the decoction is deſervedly preferred before them. *An extract of Guajacum.*

Hercules Saxonia de lue Vener. cap. 27. writes that the oyl is ſtronger, and he thinks the whol Alexipharmacal power of the wood is placed in this Oyl, and he relates that he hath proved by experience, that by the benefit of this oyl; the greateſt and ancienteſt diſeaſe hath been overcome. But he gives it divers waies, in waſted bodies with milk, in others of a hotter temperament, with Conſerve of Roſes, or whey of Goats; in Melancholly with conſerve of Burrage or Bugloſs, in Flegmatick with Conſerve of Betony, in thoſe that have knobs with Turpentine, and two ſcruples for a doſe. But doubtleſs it was not oyl which *Saxonia* gave, but a liquid extract or Tincture as they cal it. For no oyl is diſtilled from this wood by an Alembick: but that which is diſtilled by a retort, or deſcent by an open fire, is found to be ſuch, that it cannot conveniently be given into the body, nay ſcarce with ſafety. *The oyl of Guajacum.*

I attribute more to the ſpirit of Guajacum, the preparation of which is not every bodies work, for it requires a longer and more diligent digeſtion and fermentation for the preparing of it. *The ſpirit of Guajacum.*

There are ſome alſo who think, the leaves and fruit of this tree being reduced into Conſerves and Electuaries are to be uſed, and they relate, that the Indians infected with this diſeaſe, do uſe them as Medicines; but though the leaves and fruit may do ſomwhat in a light diſeaſe, yet they are not ſufficient in that which is

great

great and inveterate, neither are they able to perform what the wood doth. But 'tis obſerved that the fruit of this Tree hath alſo a power vehemently to looſen the Belly; and whenas a freſh and light diſeaſe is ſomtimes cured only with purges, 'tis no wonder that the Indians may be cured by theſe purging fruits; eſpecial ſince that al Alexipharmacal vertue againſt this diſeaſe cannot be denyed them.

CHAP. XIV.

Of Sarſaparilla.

Sarſaparilla.

NExt to Guajacum, that Root challengeth the firſt place in curing the Veneral diſeaſe, which ſome call Spartam Parillam, ſome Salſam Parillam; the Spaniards Sarſam Parillam, by reaſon of the ſimilitude which it hath with the plant called rough bindweed. By reaſon of its thornes 'tis called Sarſa, (for Sarſa in Spaniſh ſignifies Bryers or Brambles) but by reaſon of its leaves, and boughs, Parilla, that is to ſay the thorny vine. Nay *Fallopius de Morb. Galli. Cap.* 63. is of that opinion, that it is truly the rough bindweed, which grows every where in *Italy*, and he writes that by the uſe of it, he hath with happy ſucceſs freed many from the French Pox. *Dioſcorides* alſo *Lib.* 4. *Cap.* 139. writes thus of the rough bindweed, its leaves and fruit being drank before, and after, are antidotes againſt deadly poyſons; and beſides 'tis delivered that if ſomwhat of them poudered be given to a new born infant to drink, no poyſon ſhal afterwards hurt it. But grant it be ſo, that the Italian rough bindweed can do ſomwhat againſt this diſeaſe, as alſo againſt other poyſons, yet he himſelf grants, that there is no light difference betwixt this and the Indian.

The native place of ſarſaparilla.

But Sarſaparilla grows in *Peru*, in the hedges, as rough bindweed, the white and black Bryony, and hops do in Europe. The Root creeps far up and down by the Earth, that 'tis oftentimes above ſix cubits long, which gathered into bundles is brought over to us. The good and freſh is white, ſolid, but that which is reddiſh, and poudery when 'tis broke, is leſs effectual.

The vertue of it.

Its vertue as I have ſaid is very great alſo in curing this diſeaſe, and 'tis found by experience, that many have been cured by the uſe of it, without Guajacum, and becauſe 'tis more Temperate; and moderatly hot, and without any acrimony, bitterneſs, or aſtriction, or ſmel, but hath a certain obſcure ſweetneſs, it may ſafely be given to al conſtitutions of body, and al Ages; beſides 'tis of thin parts, provokes ſweat, dries eminently, reſiſts putrefaction, waſts ſuperfluous humidity, ſomwhat looſneth the body, and therefore is wont in ſome ſort to weaken the ſtomach; but though Guajacum be more powerful and efficacious, yet Sarſa in this exceeds that wood, that it hath an eminent power to allay the French pains, though never ſo accute and ſtubborn, by reaſon of its exceeding tenuity, penetrating and laxative vertue: and *Jul. Palmarius* writes, that no pain can happen ſo contumacious and ſo continual, which at length it doth not lay aſleep and overcome, if any one uſe the decoction of it for a long time and conſtantly. Nay al knotty French Tumors ſo they be not bony, in what part ſoever they are, are Rooted out by the uſe of it, their matter being melted and caſt forth by ſweats, or at the leaſt waſted and emptyed by inſenſible perſpiration: and *Fallopius* writes in the alleaged place, that if after the diſeaſe is overcome there remain Ulcers, Clefts about the Arſehole, that Sarſaparilla will heal them ſooner by half than the Indian wood, and in a ſhort time alſo the moſt hard knobs are diſcuſſed by it. Yet ſome admoniſh here, that by Guajacum indeed this diſeaſe may be perfectly cured, and that al things are found in Guajacum, which are neceſſary for the cure of this diſeaſe, but that ſarſa doth not alone, but mixt with

Guajacum,

Guajacum, China Root, and Saſſafras wood cure this diſeaſe, and for this reaſon, becauſe it looſneſs the ſtomach, heats leſs, is void of al acrimony, and therefore is not ſo abſterſive, and being inodorous, hath not the power to refreſh the ſpirits. But theſe accuſations fetcht from the manifeſt qualities, ſeem not to be ſufficient; truly that Guajacum doth challenge the firſt place in this diſeaſe, is not to be denied, in the interim it hath been obſerved alſo by many, that ſomtimes this diſeaſe hath been cured by the uſe of this Root only; and if perhaps it do to much lax the ſtomach, that may eaſily be prevented.

The manner of giving it.

But this alſo is given divers waies, for the moſt part as Guajacum in the decoction concerning which we muſt note, they that wil not ſpare for coſt and deſire the decoction ſhould be more effectual, they ought to take only the bark, as which is the more effectual part of the Root, and to caſt away the inner piths as that which is leſs effectual, nay as 'tis delivered by ſome 'tis more cold, and hath a certain aſtrictive faculty.

The decoction.

But the Root of Sarſaparilla is taken being ſliced thin and to one ounce of it is poured two pound of water, or to two ounces and an half of the Root four pound of Water; ſome pour to four ounces of the Root ſeven pound of Water, others to three ounces; ten pound of water. Neither can the quantity of the water to the Root be ſo ſtrictly preſcribed, but it may be varied according to the Nature of the diſeaſe, and the condition of the ſick, and the ſeaſon of the year. For in an inveterate diſeaſe there is need of a ſtronger decoction, in a new, of a weaker. But it is ſteeped firſt of al fifteen hours or twenty, and afterwards boyled to the Conſumption of one half; and reaſons, liquoriſh and other things are added to the decoction, as need requires as in the decoction of Guajacum; and becauſe the decoction of Sarſa doth ſomwhat lax the ſtomach, for the moſt part mint, Betony, or ſomwhat elſe that ſtrengthens the ſtomach is to be added, or what ſeems more commodious, Guajacum, or leaſt the mixture of divers things may breed nauſeouſneſs after the taking of the decoction of Sarſaparilla, they muſt take ſomwhat that ſtrengthens the ſtomach.

The ſecond decoction.

After the firſt decoction is prepared, fifteen pound of water are poured again to the remainders, and are boyled til a third is waſted, and the decoction is uſed at dinner and Supper; ſome alſo add towards the end of the decoction three pound of Wine; yet this muſt be done then only as *Fallopius* thinks, either when the ſick body goes abroad, to preſerve his ſtrength, or when the ſtomach is weak.

Yet there may alſo be prepared out of this Root, pouders, Electuaries, extracts, as are from Guajacum.

CHAP. *XV.*

Of China Root.

China root.

THe Portugal Merchants brought over in the former Age, from the Country of China, a certain Root for the cure of this diſeaſe, which they called China Root; for when as the Venereal diſeaſe had invaded that Country alſo, as the Americans ſhewed the uſe of Guajacum for the deſtroying of this diſeaſe, ſo the people of China uſed this Root to cure the ſame diſeaſe, and taught others the uſe of it. But the Root is a handbreadth long, ſomtimes pretty thick, ſomtimes thinner, knobbed, ſomwhat reddiſh, pretty weighty, which being newly digged up they report is ſo tender, that it may be eaten raw, and boyled, as turnep and rape Roots are with us; the which ſeems not to be very credible, whenas our Turneps, Rape Roots dryed never attain to ſo great a hardneſs: they are brought to us divided.

As concerning its vertues, 'tis neither ſtrong in ſmel, nor taſt, and therefore there is no exceſs of it in heat and cold, but 'tis rather temperate, or if there be any exceſs in it, 'tis rather in cold; yet 'tis dry in the ſecond, of thin ſubſtance, yet with a certain aſtrictive power, and a kind of ſubſtantifical moiſture, ſo that by the uſe of it men do grow Fat. Whence alſo the decoction of it doth eaſily ſowr. When it was firſt brought over by the Portugals into France and the neighbouring provinces, it was wonderfully cryed up by the Merchants, as being of thin parts, and having power to digeſt, to more urine and ſweat, to conſum Excrements of al ſorts, to cleanſe the Bowels, free from obſtructions, clear the blood from corruption, to take away pains in the Joynts, to be good for the Venereal diſeaſe, and becauſe 'tis temperate, it may ſafely be given to any age, ſex; any time of the year, and to thoſe that are feaveriſh; al which faculties whenas they are not in Guajacum, by ſome of that time it was made uſe of not only for the cure of other diſeaſes, but alſo for the cure of the pox it was preferred before Guajacum. Which very thing cauſed that *Charles* the fifth Emperour, being ſick of a moſt grievous Gout, was the firſt almoſt that would make tryal of the uſe of this Root, upon the advice of ſome Phyſitians. But experience afterwards leſſened that fame; and *Jul. Palmarius* writes of this buſineſs *de lue Vener. Cap.* 14. that many to their great detriment have preferred this root before Guajacum, and that he hath found by experience, that alſo in a very ſtrict diet it hath been uneffectual againſt this diſeaſe, oftentimes alſo the ſtomach is ſeen to become ſo moiſt with the uſe of its decoction, and the Native heat oppreſt, that a great Lientery, and crudity hath often followed in thoſe who had but weak Fuell for their implanted heat. Beſides theſe diſcommodities and faults, he writes alſo that it doth oftentimes cauſe ſwelling of the Spleen and hardneſs, in thoſe that uſe it long; neither doth he grant it to have extraordinary vertue againſt this diſeaſe either by its whol ſubſtance or occult quality, when as after the uſe of it, they who thought themſelves wel, do dayly fal into a relapſe of the ſame Diſeaſe. The ſame alſo is confirmed by *Gabriel Fallopius Lib. de Morb. Galli. Cap.* 60. who writes that he hath uſed this Root again and again, for the Cure of this Diſeaſe, but could do nothing with it, in the interim he writes that he hath uſed it with happy ſucceſs for the dropſie, to moderate the mobility of the Humors in hot bleared Eyes, and in a hot diſtemper of the ſtomach and Liver. And other Phyſitians alſo agree in this, that this Root for the Cure of the French Pox is far in feriour to Guajacum and Sarſaparilla, although it be profitable to preſerve and ſtrengthen the heat of our body, and therefore for other diſeaſes. And if by chance any one, who could not be cured neither by the decoction of Guajacum nor by the unction of Quick-ſilver, hath recovered health by the Decoction of China *Jul. Palmarius* thinks this is the Cauſe of it, becauſe Nature rejoycing in the Variety of Remedies and weary of the ſtronger, at length is eaſied by thoſe that are leſs effectual. Yet *Garzias ab Horto*, relates of the Root being freſh, that it doth ſo exceedingly heat, that if any one uſe the pure Decoction of it, or drink it hot, by reaſon of the too great heat of the Medicine he wil fal into exceeding heats of the liver, Eryſipilaes, and Phlegmons, and other moſt grievous Symptoms. But when as 'tis brought over to us inſipid and ſomtimes duſty, there is no cauſe to fear any ſuch thing. Neither doth this only happen in this plant, but alſo in many others, that the Alimental juyce hath far other vertues, then the dryed Plants: and therefore though perhaps this Root being freſh in China may have great vertue to Cure the Venereal Diſeaſe, yet it is not neceſſary, that it retain the ſame with us.

The decoction of China. But divers prepare the decoction of this root diverſly, *Jul. Palmarius* writes that the common way of preparing it is this, that to two ounces of the root, cut into rounds, and put in an earthen pot, there is poured four pound of water and let them ſteep twelve houres, afterwards boyl with a gentle fire to the conſumption of the

the one half. *Fallopius* boyles two ounces of the root in twelve pound of water, to the conſumption of half, but according to the nature of the diſeaſe the proportion of the root and water may be varied: and the root may be boylled from one to three in twelve pound of water. Yet *Septalius* adviſeth us here, that this decoction is moſt commodiouſly prepared, if one ounce of the root freſh and not rotten be boyled in ten pound of water, & two ounces in twelve pound of water. For he writes, though many phyſitians, to ſave charges, whenas many cannot take al that decoction in one day, and they feare if they ſhould keep it another day it would grow ſowre, do boyl half the portion of China in half the quantity of water, and boyl away the half, or two thirds, thinking that ſo they have both ſaved their purſe, and prepared the decoction as ſtrong, yet they are very much deceived, and if they have not loſt their taſte, they ſhal eaſily know, that that firſt decoction is much more powerful, than the ſecond, and the reaſon is ready, becauſe 'tis not enough to give a proportion of the root to the water, but the time of boyling is cheifly to be conſidered, and the action of the heat of the fire, and the reaction of the water. For whenas, foure houres ſpace, imagine, ought to be allowed, to extract the vertue out of a moſt hard roor, and communicate it to the water: how much time wil be ſpent in boyling away ſix ot eight pints of water, if taking but the half quantity, viz. half an ounce of China with ſix pints of water, we ſuffer the half to waſt or two thirds, which wil be conſumed in leſs than two houres ſpace, the water being leſs able to reſiſt the action of the fire? not let any one dare to ſay that we may prevent this inconveniency, by making a leſs quantity of fire, and if it he boyled by a ſlower fire for to extract this vertue out of a more ſolid ſubſtance, there ought alſo to concur a due quantity of fire.

Out of the remainders another drink is prepared by ſome for dinner and ſupper, as out of Guajacum. Yet *Palmarius* thinks that al the vertue of that root is tranſfuſed in the liquor at the firſt boyling, and therefore for ordinary drink he boyles three ounces more of the root in eight pound of water til two pints are conſumed and he ads raiſons and liquariſh, nay ſome alſo drink the firſt decoction, at dinner and ſupper, whenas it is not unpleaſant to the taſt. *The Second decoction.*

Some alſo do admoniſh us, that we provide no more of the decoction at once than may be ſpent in one day, whenas it quickly growes ſour when 'tis cold, therefore they command alſo that it be kept on warm aſhes: but expetience hath taught us that it wil laſt four dayes. Yet becauſe it growes ſour, that very thing tels us that this root hath in it, ſomewhat ſpirituous and alimental, which is the cauſe of fermentation, and hence of acidity.

Conſult concerning this with *Amatus Luſitanus centur.* 1. *curat.* 98. and eſpecially *centur.* 2. *curat.* 31.

CHAP. *XVI.*

Of Saſſafras wood.

THey uſe alſo for the cure of the Veneral diſeaſe that wood which is connonly called ſaſſafras, which is imported form the Iſland called *Florida*: it is of an aromatical taſte like fennel: 'tis hot and dry in the ſecond degree, of a thin ſubſtance and endewed with an opening, diſcuſſive, and attenuating faculty; and therefore is commended by them who have ſailed to the Indies, againſt long tertian feavers, evil habit of the body, and dropſie, and to ſtrengthen the ſtomach, and againſt nephritical paines, it is comended alſo for the gout, to move the courſes, and many other diſeaſes, to treat of which is not proper to this place; 'tis uſed alſo for the cure of the French pox, yet moſt phyſitians agree that 'tis leſs effectual than Guajacum and ſarſaparilla, and the decoction of it is prepared almoſt as that of Sarſaparilla. *Saſſafras-Wood.* *Its vertues.*

Chap. XVII.

Of Sope-wort,

Soapwort. Laſt of al ſopewort is commended by ſome phyſitians for the cure of this diſeaſe which is bitter, acrid, and endewed with an abſterſive and opening faculty, and is praiſed for the French pox and contumacious paines, which cannot be overcome by other remedies. 'Tis reported to be the invention of *Zapata* a ſpanniſh Empirick: tis uſed both in the decoction, and in ſubſtance, the decoction is prepared after this manner.

Its decoction. Take *of green ſopewort two handfuls, infuſe them al night in eight pound of water, than boyl it til the ſopewort is boyled enough, then ſtrain one pound of it with half a pound of water and the herbs now boyled; and ſqueez them, and reſerve it for a mornings draught to provoke ſweat; taking ſeven or eight ounces. But that which remains ſweeten with raiſons or ſugar for drink at meales, in ſummer and Cholerick bodies you may add one handful of Sowthiſtle or baſterd Navelwort.*

But tis a remedy unpleaſing to the taſt, *Euſtachius Rudius* takes of ſoap-wort ſix pugils or more, and infuſeth it in twelve pound of water, and boyles it to the conſumption of half. But as *Septallius* hath obſerved, tis too great a quantity of water to ſo ſmal a portion of ſoap-wort.

The pouder. But the Root Cheifly is uſed in ſubſtance, and *Rudius* doth very much commend it in ancient french pains, and out of it he prepares this pouder.

Take *of ground pine two ounces; of white dittander one ounce and half; of Zedoary ſix drams: of the root of ſoapwort three drams: of pearl prepared half a dram.*

Make a pouder for 9. doſes, but who can take for one doſe almoſt four drams of pouder? and the other medicines do far exceed the ſoapwort, which notwithſtanding ought to be the baſis.

CHAP. XVIII.

Of Compound Alexipharmaca.

Compouond Alexiphbrmaca in the Veneral diſeaſe. But though al the medicines hitherto reckoned up, are good to deſtroy this diſeaſe, yet ſome are more effectual then others, and beſides ſome have other qualities, for the which they are uſeful ſometimes for this, ſometimes for that end, as was ſaid of the ſimples: and therefore ſeldom one of theſe medicines is uſed, but for the moſt part, many of them together. Indeed if the diſeaſe be ſimple, and none of the bowels be affected, nor there is no eminent diſtemper in any part, which may hinder the uſe of Guajacum, that wood is the moſt excellent of al, becauſe it reſiſts this diſeaſe both by its occult and manifeſt qualities: but if any diſeaſe be joyned with it, tis oftentimes moſt proficable to add ſarſaparilla and China and there are added by ſome manny altering medicines, of which whenas we ſpake before, in this place we ſhal ad nothing of them, but this, that we muſt have a care leaſt by the mixture of Succories and endives and cooling medicines which are added to moderate the heat of Guajacum which yet is not to much to be feared, they hinder ſweating which is only to be deſired, and which brings more benefit, then a little heating can do dammage: next of al leaſt by the admixtion of other things the drink be made ungrateful and nauſeous, therefore paſſing by theſe that we may ſpeake ſomewhat of the mixture of alexipharmaca, if the nature of the patient be very hot and dry, and

the

the humors violently fal from the head on the lungs, breaſt or other parts, Guajacum wood is not commodiouſly given alone, whenas it doth farther heat and dry the parts, and by its heat make the humors run and move, but then ſarſaparilla is ſafer, and China more comodious, which doth at once moderate the heat, and hath an aſtrictive power, by which it ſtops defluxions: on the contrary if the ſtrength be feeble, and there be a weaknes of the ſight, ſarſa is not commodious, whenas it looſenſt the ſtomach, and duls the ſight, if there be a great conſumpcion (if ſo be it hath not its original from the Venereal diſeaſe, for then this diſeaſe being taken away as the cauſe, that waſting alſo ceaſeth, and the body begins to be nouriſht better) Guajacum and ſarſaparilla are not ſafe, But then china is far more profitable, as that which moiſtens ſubſtantifically, as they ſpeak. Yet *Ludiciptalus* commends Saſaparilla above al the reſt againſt a conſumption, *lib. 7. animadv. num.* 214. as ſhal be ſaid alſo hereafter in the laſt chapter. So if cruel paines moleſt the patient, or gummous tumors, or exceeding ulcers be joyned with them, Saſaparilla is moſt profitable, which doth diſcuſſe the french knobs, and eaſier appeaſe the pains, then Guajacum. Thus according to the conſtitution of the Patients, and the Nature of the Diſeaſes joyned with it, 'tis good ſomtimes to uſe Guajacum alone, ſomtimes Sarſaparilla, ſomtimes China Root, and ſomtimes to mix al of them, in a greater or leſſer quantity, and ſomtimes the bark of Guajacum is added, ſomtimes three or four ounces weight to one pound of the wood, and they are boyled in fifteen pound of water. For examples ſake.

Take *Of the wood of Guajacum half a pound; of the bark of the ſame, of ſarſaparilla each three ounces: of China root one ounce and half. Infuſe them twenty four houres in twelve pound of water, afterwards let them be boyled to the conſumption of half, for a ſweating drink. Poure on the remainder twelve pound of water, let them ſtand and infuſe eight houres, afterwards boyl them to a conſumption of a third part, for drink at meales.* Or.

Take *of the Wood of Guajacum one pound; the bark of the ſame, Sarſaparilla of each thre ounces. Boyl them in ſixteen pound of water, to the conſumption of half.* Or.

Take *of the wood of Guajacum, China root each one ounce an half; Sarſaparilla one ounce; infuſe them twenty four hours in ſix pound of water, afterwards boyl half away. Poure on the reſidue ten pound of water, boyl it to the conſumption of three pound: Strain it and give it for drink at meales.* Or,

Take *of wood of Guajacum eight ounces; of the bark of the ſame four ounces; ſarſaparilla, ſaſſafras wood each two ounces. Boyl them in twelve pound of water to the conſumption of two thirds that there remains four pound, towards the end ad four pound of wine. Poure to the remainder ſixteen pound of water: boyl it to the conſumption of half, & towards the end ad four pound of wine, make a drink for meales.*

Whether purgers ought to be mixt with the decoction.

In this place we muſt not omit a queſtion, concerning the uſe of purgers, whiles the decoction is drank to wit whether they ought to be mixt with the decoction or to be uſed at the ſame time with the decoction. For ſome do wholy reject them, and hold that purgers are neither to be mixed with the decoction, nor to be uſed apart, for this reaſon, becauſe the bodies are wont diligently to be purged before they come to the uſe of theſe decoctions; next of al becauſe purgers and ſweaters do cauſe contrary motions. Others on the contrary do mix purgers with theſe decoctions, that by benefit of them the blood may be purefied, and the belly conſtantly kept looſe: others do not mix purgers with theſe decoctions, but purge at certain intervals, every eighth or tenth day, or at a longer diſtance, as need requires. which laſt opinion ſeemes to me to be treweſt. For though the body be purged before the uſe of theſe decoctions, yet ſome may eaſily remain, and ever and anon be collected, and ſweating doth purge onely the thinner humors, but leaves the thick, neither after this manner are there cauſed contrary motions; for that day, that purging is ordered ſweaters are not adminiſtred; but if purgers were mixed with the ſweaters then there would be contrary motions. And beſides by the admiſtion of purgers, the decoction being to be uſed ſo many weeks it would become nauſeous and ingratful.

Hercules

Whether purgers may serve instead of sweaters.

Hercules Saxonia also holds *de lue Vener. Cap.* 38. That purging may be ordered every day, to wit in those, in whom sweat cannot, or ought not to be caused: he thinks sweat cannot be provoked in them, who either are of such a hard and thick Skin, that they can by no means sweat, or in those who fal into fainting and swouning fits, as soon as sweaters are administred: but he thinks they ought not to sweat, in whom the Veneral disease possesseth not the Joynts, nor the Skin, nor the superficies of the body, but hath rather taken up its seat about the bowels; but this opinion seems not to me to be agreeable to truth: for whereas he thinks, that some ought to have purgers administred because they cannot sweat by reason of the thickness of their Skin, or because they presently fal into swouning fits, is agreeable neither to reason, nor experience: for scarce any one hath so thick a Skin, that the pores wil no way open for sweat, and though on the first daies sweat doth not presently follow, yet after that the Humors are attenuated by the use of the decoctions, the passages and pores are opened, then sweat succeeds; especially if those Laconick Baths be applied as shal be said hereafter. And the Patient may so moderate his sweating, that he need not fal into fainting or swouning fits: and they that cannot endure sweating, wil not easily endure purging. Last of al purgers cannot performe the same, as those sweaters do. But that in some bodies sweaters are not to be administred, is fall: for though the disease may have its principal seat about the Liver and bowels, yet it cannot be, but also vitious Humors do abound in the whol body, whenas the Liver infected with this disease doth generate virulent blood, and distribute it to the whol Body.

Chap. XIX.

Of the manner of using these Medicines.

The manner of using these Medicines.

AS concerning the manner of using these Medicaments, first of al the decoction of Guajacum is administred, for the most part in the morning, and afternoon two hours before Supper. In the morning 'tis given from five ounces to eight or nine ounces before the evening, from three ounces to six ounces; the pouder is given to two drams, the extract to two scruples. Yet somtimes the evening drauht is omitted, especially at the begining, before the patient is accustomed to the Decoction. For what was said above of moderating the quality of the decoction, that also is to be observed concerning the quantity of the Decoction to be given, that the sick be not offended and overcharged which too much of it; which unless it be observed, it happens somtimes, that the sick fal into Feavers, contract Crudities, and there is caused a loosness, ill habit of body, and a Dropsie.

The dose of the decoction.

After the same manner we must give the Decoction of Sarsaparilla, China Root, and the compound decoctions. For though some do prescribe here divers doses, yet he shal not erre, that shal administer them in the aforesaid manner.

Sweat.

And indeed after the mornings drauht, we must endeavor that the Patient sweat; for experience teacheth, that they that sweat not upon the taking of these Medicaments, are scarce clearly freed from this Disease: but that sweat may flow the easier, let the Patient sleep one hour after he hath taken the Medicine, for so the Medicine is deduced into act. As for the time of sweating, first of al it is sufficient, if the patient sweat one hour, afterwards by degrees let him rise to more. But the manner of sweating is various; most do suffer their Patients to sweat in bed, which that they may do the easier bottles ful of warm water, or hot brick wrapt up in Cloaths, must be placed under the Arm-pits and sides of the Patient. Some provide a wooden Mantle such a one as *Andreas Tenzelius*, hath discribed and set forth in *Exeges. Chymiatre*: which manner of sweating is not a little troublesome. But not without cause most men do prefer before al kinds of sweating in this disease, that which is

The time of sweating.

in

in a bath or ſweating place as that which brings leſs trouble to the ſick, when as weak Patients ſweating in their bed, may uſe a Bath and a ſweating place, and the heat of the bath may be made more intenſe or remiſs at pleaſure, be made dry or moiſt as the condition of the ſick requires: yet a moiſt bath, and gently heated by the Vapor of hot water is moſt commodious; whenas that hot vapor of the Water, doth open and Lax the pores of the Skin, that the ſweat flows the eaſier, and without any trouble to the ſick: but dry baths are altogether laborious, and ought not to be uſed in dry and Melancholy bodies.

Baths two-fold.

But thoſe ſweating baths are twofold, firſt of al thoſe gaeat ones in which a body may walk, ſuch as are our baths ſo commonly called in which many at once may ſweat and be waſhed; ſuch though they be uſed for the cure of this diſeaſe by Barbers in Italy, yet they ought to be eſchewed, whenas if one that is lightly infected, receive that which exhales from another grievouſly infected, he may be infected more, and 'tis more commodious that every ſick body ſweat by himſelf. Then there are baths or ſmal ſweating places in which one alone cloſed up may ſweat: ſuch are made of bords of wood Joyned together, which again are twofold, ſome which can receive a man upright. Without bowing of his body, *Jul. Palmarius* diſcribes it *de lue Vener. Cap.* 17. of a Square figure, ſeven Foot high, and four foot long and broad, whoſe deſcription you may ſee there. With us others are in uſe made up of boards mutually receiving and received by one another, ſquare, but oblong. of that bredth, that a man may without any impediment ſet and extend his Arms, but two ſtories high, one where the Patient ſets, ſo high, that as he ſets he may put forth his Head, through a hole of the bords ſtrictly fitted for the neck, but the lower part is of that depth, that if the Patient ſetting ſtretch forth his Feet, he cannot reach the loweſt board: and it hath a little door, through which the ſick may go into it, and a window behind, which may be opened upon neceſſity: and it hath another little door towards the feet, through which an Iron or braſs Veſſel is put in ful of ſtones or refuſe Iron red hot; and a Pipe in the upper part of it over againſt the Veſſel, through which either plain hot water, or ſome convenient decoction is poured on the ſtones or droſs by degrees, as much as the Patient can endure, from whence the Vapor exhaling diffuſed al through the body doth provoke ſweat: and though after this manner the head be thruſt forth, yet that doth no hurt, neither is it unprofitable, even where the head is affected; for though it ſtands forth, yet that ſweats plentifully enough: in the interim the Patient doth not attract again by drawing in his breath thoſe filthy Vapors which do Evaporate from his body, but the free and pure ayre by which he is refreſht, that he doth more eaſily and happily endure ſweating. But in what bath ſoever ſweat is provoked, after the ſweating is over the bath ought to be opened, that thoſe filthy Vapors may be blown away and diſcuſſed by the free Air.

When we muſt ſweat.

The moſt convenient time for ſweating is the morning, yet ſomtimes we may ſweat after noone, in which caſe the ſtrength of the Patient is to be conſidered for there are ſome who wil eaſily endure ſweating twice a day, other who but once, others who are not able to endure ſweating once every day. But the Medicines which moue ſweat muſt be taken upon an empty ſtomach, and an hour or two after the taking of the Medicine ſweat muſt be urged.

How long.

But we muſt ſweat ſo long as the ſtrength of the Patient wil bear it, and if the patient ſweat in a bath, or ſweating place, and is not able to endure any longer the heat of the bath, he muſt be laid in his bed, in which afterwards ſweat wil flow of its own accord, and without any loſs of ſtrength; the ſweat muſt afterwards be wiped of, aud after ſweating the cold ayre muſt in no wiſe be admitted.

How often.

But how often we muſt ſweat, and how long the uſe of theſe Medicines is to be continued, cannot be defined in general. They commonly teach that theſe decoctions are to be continued for forty daies, yet ſomtimes twenty five daies or thirty do ſuffice: and ſomtimes in a more grievous Diſeaſe we muſt perſiſt in the uſe of theſe

these Medicines til sixty daies and more. For we must sweat so often and so long, til the Malignity of the Disease is overcome, and the vitious and virulent Humors are discussed by sweating, and al the Symptomes cease, especially the running of the Reins and Callous skars. For as long as these last. We must remain in the use of these Medicines. Nay though al the Symptomes do vanish, yet it is good so to continue the Medicines for some daies, that also the Maligne dispositions of the parts may be taken away, that there be no feat of a relapse.

But after noon, though sweat be not moved, yet the same decoction given then, may insensibly discusse the vitious Humors, and destroy the virulent disposition impress both on the parts and Humors.

CHAP. XX.

Of other common Alexipharmaca.

Common Alexipharmaca.

BUt some trust not to those Alexipharmaca alone, as Guajacum, Sarsaparilla, China Root, and Sassafras wood, but add also common Alexipharmaca. This was first done by *Fernelius*, who gave to those that were to drink the decoction, half a dram or one dram of this Opiate, or Alexipharmacal antidote, which is prepared thus.

Fernelius, his antidote. Take *of the Leaves of water Germander, half an ounce; Poley of the mount. Penny royal, white Hore-hound, Origanum, Calamint, St. Johns-wort, centory the less; French Lavender, ground pine, Germander, Spikenard, of each two drams; of the Seeds of Anise, Fennel, Parsly, wild carrot, Libistick, Rue, Basile, Clary, Cresses, of the Berries of Bay, Juniper, of the Seeds of Male Piony, of each half a dram; of the Roots of round Birth-wort, Gentian, Dittander, Valerian, Asarabaccha, of each one dram; of Nut-megs, Cloves, Pepper, Saffron, of each four scruples; of Cinamone, Myrrh, Castor, Styrax Calamite, of each three drams; of good Honey as much as is Sufficient, make an Opiate.*

Jul. Palmarius, *Fernelius* his Scholer followed him, who, as was said before in *Lib. 1. de lue Vener. Cap. 7.* writes, that *Fernelius*, was most averse from the use of Quick-silver, and first dared to promise the Cure of this Disease without the help of that, and did take care for the compounding of many Alexipharmaca at his House, which he administred against the Mischeif of this Disease, with Guajacum and also without it, two of the which, which he found to be most excellent and efficatious, he describes, the first was discribed even now, the other is this.

Take *of Divils-bit, Scabious, Burnet, flowers of Marigold, Mullein, Plantane, Balme, Rue, Broom, Origanum, Rosemary flowers, Red Roses, of each three drams; of the Seeds of Citron, Sorrel, Fennel, blessed Thistle, of the Roots of Dittander, Gilliflowers, Tormentil, round Birthwort, Gentian, Zedoary, Roman Woolfesbane, of each two drams; Hartshorn, Shavings of Ivory, Wood of Aloes, Yellow Saunders, Choice Cinamome, of each half an ounce; Saffron, Cloves, Nutmeg, of each two drams.*

And he relates that he called the first composition, the greater Opiate, the other the less, and that he gave for a dose half a dram of either with the like quantity of conserve of Bugloss and half a scruple of Mithridate, and somtime without Mithridate; bnt that he, after *Fernelius* departed this life, out of them both did compleat one, adding also certain other Medicines, which he found to be prevalent against poysons, and most fit to provoke sweat, the description of which is this.

Take

Take *of water germander half an ounce; of divels-bit, scabious, burnet, Poly Mount, peneroyal, calamint, white sweet smelling Horehound, origanum, mint, St. Johns-wort, centory the leſs, French Lavender, Germander, Ground Pine, Plantane, Balme, rue, Time, Elder, each two drams; of Hyſſop, the leſſer Sage, Oake Ferne, vervin, both speedwels each two drams; Flowers of Betony, Marigould, Mullen, Broome, Roſemary, Jaſmin, Sage, Red Roſes, St. Johns wort, Bugloſs, Burrage, Violets, Water Lilies of each three drams; Seeds of Anis, both Parſleys, wild Carot, Scarlet Grains, St Johns Wort, Libiſtick, Rue, Lovage, Baſil, Berries of Bay, Juniper, ſeeds of both Pionies, Hartwort of each on dram and half; Seeds of citron, Sorel, Bleſſed Thiſtle, Fennel, of each three drams; of the roots of male Piony, Round Birthwort, Gentian, Sweet cane, Flowerdeluce of Florence, Sweet Cyprus, each one dram; of Angelico, Dittander, Gilliflowers, tormentil, Zedoary, Romane Woolfesbane, of each three drams and an half; of choice perle three drams and hal; of Harts horn, Shavings of Ivory each one ounce; wood of aloes, yellow ſaunders, bone of the heart of a hart, both currals each half an ounce; choice cinamon one dram and half; Balſome wood, if it may be had one ounce; of al pretious ſtones, each half a dram; of Nutmeg, mace, loves, myrrh, ſtyrax, Calamite, Benjamin, Saffron, Caſtor, each half a dram; juice of liquoriſh one ounce; oyl of the ſeeds of Fennel, Aniſe, of Sage, mint, juniper, Nutmeg, Cloves, red opobalſamum brought out of America if it be to be had of each one dram.* Palmarius his antidote.

Let al the the herbs, flowers, and rootes be gathered at that time they are of greateſt ſtrength, let them be dryed, and kept in paper caſes, then al of them being reduced into a moſt fine pouder, let them be mixt with wine and honey, and be boyled into an electuary, til it comes to the thickneſs of wel prepared mithridate: yet the flowers may be candied and kept with ſugar, that they may be mixt with the other things towards the end of their boyling, to one pound of honey mix two ounces of the pouder. Let it be kept in a moſt large earthen veſſel, whoſe third part may be empty, leaſt it ſwel up, and grow hot, neither let it come to that uſe we ſhal by and by ſpeake of, before it be three years old. He adds there alſo a cordial water, and an alexipharmacal pouder, their diſcription are theſe; the Cordial water.

Take *Of the leaves of ſage, mint, marioram, rue, hyſop, origanum, the tops of betony each one handful. Bruiſe them al and put them in a great earthen veſſel in a warm place and cover them with the water of bleſſed thiſtle, that they be under it, every day ſtir them with a ſtick, and before they ſoure, (which wil be the fourth or fifth day after) Strein out the liquor and keep it, caſting away the Faces. Again.* Galmarius his Cordiol water.

Take *of plantane leaves, marigold, balme, mullein, St. Johnswort centory the leſs, burnet, each two handfuls. After they have been ſteeped four dayes and ſtreined caſt them away, and take again of water germander, Bivels-bit, fennel, parſly, bugloſs, burage, angelico of each one handful. Which alſo being ſteeped, ſo many dayes ſtreined and then caſt away.*

Take *of the roots of angelico, dittander, tormentil, betony, Zedoary, each half an ounce; of galangal, three drams; Nutmegs, Cloves, each one dram; ſeeds of Fenel, Citron, Sorrel, Bleſſed thiſtle, Juniper berries each two drams; Shavings of Ivory, harts horn, wood of aloes, Yellow Saunders, cinamon each one dram; Safforn half a dram; make a pouder of it and mixe it with the Liquor ſtreined, then weigh out of the amulet againſt this diſeaſe, and of choice mithridate each one pound and half; of old treacle foure drams; and being mixt with the ſaid liquor and pouder, and put up in a glaſs alembich, or an earthen one glazed, expoſe them ſix or eight dayes to the heat of June, til they grow hot, and be perfectly fermented, and at length diſtil them in a double veſſel with a moſt gentle fire. If the ſame ſimples be put into a new pot with the water of baſtard ſaffron and be heated fifteen dayes in warm horſe-dung, there wil be extracted a more excellent Water.*

Take of the aforesaid water three ounces; Syrup of Lemmons and Violets, of each six drams; Make a dose.

A Description of the Pouder.

Palmarius his Alexipharmacal Pouder.

Take of the shavings of Ivory, the younger Harts-horn, Choice Pearles of each half a dram; wood of Aloes, Yellow Saunders, the bone of the heart of a Hart, of each one scruple; Seeds of Fennel, Coriander prepared, of each one dram; the Leaves of Mint, Plantane, Vervain, Burnet, of each two scruples; the Roots of Tormentil, Betony, Zedoary, of each half a dram; the dryed flowers of Betony, Marigold, Broom, of each half a dram; Sugar of Roses three times as much. Make a fine Pouder.

The dose is one spoonful beforemeat, and before a drauft of the sweating drink, if the Patient refuse the use of the Opiate.

And in *cap.* 13. *Lib. de lue Vener.* where he disputes, whether this Disease may be perfectly cured by the use of Guajacum alone, or whether there be need of the assistance of other Medicines joyned with it, at last he concludes with a distinction, that the vertue of Guajacum is neither so great, that that alone can wholly extirpate the Roots and whol malice of the Venereal poyson, nor so weak, that it can perform nothing without the help of others; that by the use of that only, the Humors be wasted, al Symptomes wil at length be allaied, and wholly lie hid, but yet the taint of the disease, which hath already taken possession of the solid parts, cannot in most bodies be wholly overcome, and extinguisht by that remedy.

Rondeletius his Treacle Water.

Rondeletius, doubtless followed these men also, who *de morb. Itali.* commend his Treacle water, which provokes sweat in the inveterate Italian Disease, and takes away the pains, the description of which is this.

Take of Treacle, one pound; of Sorrel, three handfuls; of the flowers of Chamomel, Penyroyal, Pomegranates, blessed Thistle, of each two ounces. Mix them, drain them in white wine and distil them.

Of which waters give three ounces to drink with three ounces of Sorrel and Bugloss water, when the Patient goes into his bed or hot house.

Platerus also thinks that it is confirmed by experience, that the decoctions of other plants, besides Guajacum, Sarsaparilla, China, Sassafras; can performe the same in this disease as they do, and therefore sals into this opinion, but evilly. That the last mentioned Medicines which are accounted alexipharmaca of this disease, do work rather in the cure of this disease, by moving sweat, then by an occult quality, and therefore he thinks that not only a decoction of box wood, Juniper, Cedar, Cypress, and Savin, Agallochus, Rose-wood, but also the decoction, and Treacle water, which are given in Pestilent Feavers, are profitable also here.

Whether treacle be good in the Venereal disease.

Aurelius Minadoes de lue Vener. cap. 53. when he had spoken many things in the praise of Treacle at length concludes, that Treacle also may be used against the venereal virulency, as a most excellent Alexiterum, not as if it were to be numbered amongst them, which of themselves are said to expel this virulency, but amongst them, which expel it by accident, in as much as it doth strengthen the spirits, by a Confortable proportion to them, so that they being now made strong, are able as the principal agents, together with the Treacle as their instrument to overcome the malignity of the venereal virulency.

Trochisks Cypheos.

The same Author *cap.* 14. commends Trochisks Cypheos in this Disease, as being such, which do principally strengthen the Liver, which in this Disease is chiefly affected, and free it from Excrementitious Humors, which are collected in this Disease, being powerful to concoct, cleanse, and dry up the Excrement whatsoever. So *Galen* thought this Composition was to be preferred before al other Medicines written by *Asclepias*, *Andromachus*, and other most Famous Physicians for the affects of the Liver, so he thinks the same is to be used and Magnified beyond al others in this Disease.

But

But as I wil not diſſwade any one from the uſe of ſuch common Alexipharmica in the cure of this Diſeaſe, whereas in other caſes it is a cuſtome, when any one hath drank poyſon, or any waies taken it, and knows not what it is, to give treacle and common Alexipharmaca: ſo I wil counſel no body that he confide only in theſe Medicines, and neglect thoſe proper ones. And I ſee it done by very few Phyſitians, as being taught by experience, that this Diſeaſe cannot wholly be extirpated without Guajacum, Sarſaparilla and the like, neither doth it follow, that therefore, becauſe ſome ſick of an incurable French Pox, could not be cured by Guajacum wood, that we muſt place more hope in theſe Medicaments. For they that could not be cured by thoſe proper Alexipharmaca, wil much leſs be cured by theſe common ones.

CHAP. XXI.

Of the Cure by Quick-ſilver.

Of the cure by Quick-ſilver.

AND this is the chief kind of Medicine for the cure of the Venereal diſeaſe, and this is the chief manner of curing it. For there is alſo another way of curing the ſame Diſeaſe by quick-ſilver, which was firſt brought into uſe by Chyrurgions and barbers, afterwards alſo was applyed by learned Phyſitians. For whereas, as was ſaid before by *Fracaſtorius*, certain Barbars had found out amongſt the Medicines of our anceſtors for the filthy ſcab joyned with the pains of the joynts, unguents compounded of Mercury and Sulphur, other Medicines profiting little, they began to uſe them. The uſe of which being not altogether unſucceſsful, afterwards quick-ſilver was uſed in the cure of this Diſeaſe by many learned Phyſitians.

But though it be not my purpoſe in this place to treat of quick-ſilver, which the Chymiſts cal Mercury, but rather of the uſe of it in curing this diſeaſe, yet I ſhal admoniſh you of a few things in general. Quick-ſilver is reckoned amongſt the mettals, and 'tis called Silver from its color in which it reſembles ſilver, but quick becauſe 'tis alwaies moveable: and its Nature is altogether wonderful, which many learned men admire, and which hath tortered the wits of many Chymiſts, and deluded their pains. For though it be mortified, fixed, or what way ſoever it oftentimes ſeems to be changed, yet it is eaſily reduced to its former quick Nature. And though it be reduced into the ſmalleſt bodies, and tranſmitted through leather, or be otherwiſe reduced into atomes, and a ſtrang form, yet it retaines in them its whol Nature and eſſence, and returns to its former quick body.

Quick ſilver whence ſo called.
Its wonderful Nature.

Naturaliſts and Phyſitians differ concerning its temperament, whiles ſome hold it to be cold others hot. *Matthias Ungerus*, hath collected the arguments of both in *Anatom. Spagyr. Mercu.* to alleage al which at large in this place, is not our intent, for you may conſult with him on that buſineſs in the alleaged place; yet by and by we ſhal make mention of ſome of them: but *Ungerus* himſelf, *cap.* 12. goes the middle way, and holds, that ſome natural things have oftentimes in them diverſe, and wholly contrary vertues and faculties, and ſome of them are maniſeſt, others occult, and that theſe depend on the ſpecifick form, thoſe on the firſt qualities of the Elements, which he proves by the examples of Wormwood, Rhubarb, Vineger, and others: and he thinks Mercury is to be reckoned in the number of theſe which may be conſidered both as crude, and as prepared: the crude he thinks hath mixt qualities, and is partly hot, partly cold, and that diverſity is to be attributed to the divers parts of the matter of which it conſiſts, ſome of which are very thin, Subtile, pure, and Spirituous, but ſome are thick, earthy and feculent: but he thinks that Mercury prepared hath no longer any

Whether Quick ſilver be hot or cold.
Matthias Ungerus his opinion.

cold quality, but they are wholly taken away by the outward help of fire, or by the Application of ele menstrua, and therefore that it is very hot.

Hercules Saxonia. *Hercules Saxonia*, holds the same *de lue Vener. Cap.* 39. Whiles he teacheth, that this Medicine doth exulcerate, and cause heat and inflamation; on the other side it causeth numnes, Palsies, and other cold affects, and that it proceeds from the inequality of its temperament, and because 'tis an imperfect mixt body, and if it be prepared by calcination, that the cold substance doth fly away, and that which is left, is fire.

The authors opinion. But these authors erre very much, indeed it cannot be denied, that there are many Medicines, which have Heterogeneous parts, by vertue of which, they produce divers effects, which parts also may be separated by the help of art: But that Quick-silver hath such parts, is false, neither was there yet ever found any Chymist, who could show the diverse parts in it, and separate them by art: for the whol is Homogeneous, if there be any thing so in Nature, and either it al flies away, or al remaines, and what way soever it is prepared, at last it al revives wholly Homogeneous: and whatsoever Chymist can show any Heterogeneous parts in Quick-silver, as in Rhubarb, shal be in my esteem a great Apollo. Neither is precipitate of another Nature then that which is crude, neither doth Quick-silver loose any thing by its preparation, and that prepared does differ from the crude only in external form which is caused by the admistion of other things, which sometimes are Salt parts as happens in Mercury Sublimate and Precipitate, sometimes only watry as when Mercury is reduced into water by a recort without the admistion of any other thing, as the same *Unzerus* teacheth *Lib. 1. de Anatom. Mercu. cap.* 2. *n.* 4. for this water is nothing else but the Quick-silver resolved into the smalest bodies or Atomes by the strength of the fire, and mixt with watry Vapors, or the moist Air. Yet in that there appeare no effects of cold, but rather of heat, and that very water, as other mercurial waters, wil dissolve gold in like manner, *Saxonia* is mistaken, for Quick-silver is no imperfect mixt body, but a body that hath the most perfect mistion, and cannot be destroied, by any art of the Chymists, but every where retaines its form, neither whiles it is calcined (or rather exposed to the fire, for Quick-silver cannot properly be said to be Calcined) do the cold parts fly away, and the fiery stay behind, but if those parts which are raised up be received, they are of the same Nature with those that remaine, as is wel known to the Chymist.

Quick silver is Homogeneous.

Quick silver is hot. Therefore whenas this Reconcilation is of no force, let us see who is in the righter whether those who hold Quick-silver to be hot, or those that say 'tis cold. But I think that they are altogether of the righter judgment, who think it to be hot; for that appears by its great penetrating and corroding vertue, so that it penetrates and Eats into Metals, and the flesh, nay the very bones are corroded by Mercury precipitate and sublimate. And *Libavius* writes in *tract. de igne natuu cap.* 30. that he knew by the relation of a most learned Physician, that a certain Chyrurgion dying by the too frequent use of Mercurial Medicines, had his bones plainly bricle or frangible.

The answer of the reasons against it.

1. But whenas they object first of al, that whiles 'tis quick and whol it doth not corrode: the cause of that is, because it cannot insinuate it self into the body, and worke upon it, whenas al its parts are most closely knit together, nor cannot be mixed with other bodies; but the Medicines prepared out of it as Mercury sublimate, Precipitate, Oyl of Mercury, and if there be any more of this kind, have a great power to burn and corrode not only by the reason of Salts commixt, which is very little, but because 'tis resolved into the smalest bodies, and being mixt with the Salts it can adhere to the body, and by the benefit of things admixt, most intimately insinuate it self into it.

2. Secondly, whereas Quick-silver appears cold to the touch, that is common to it with steel, Brass, Lead, Wine, things of their own Nature hot, which by accident feel to be cold.

Thirdly,

Thirdly, whereas ſome alſo from the effects would collect quick-ſilver to be cold, in that they are very much deceived; and they attribute thoſe effects to cold, which have their dependance elſwhere. Truly, they that drink the waters infected with quick-ſilver on the Alps, are ſick of divers fluxes, and are taken with a bronchocele. Goldſmiths, and others, who often deal with quick-ſilver, are ſeldom healthful and long lived, but are obnoxious to numneſſes, tremblings, palſies, convulſions, lethargies, ſuffocating, cararrhs, and appoplexies. Thus *Fernelius* relates of a certain Goldſmith that imprudently admitting the vapour of quick-ſilver only, preſently became ſtupid, drowzy, and wholly ſpeechleſs. *Ferdinandus Ponretus* relates that the ſame happend to another, *lib.* 1. *de vene. cap.* 3. And *Foreſtus*, *lib.* 8. *obſer.* 5. writes, That a certain yong man learning the Smiths art upon the atching of a Cup with quick-ſilver, had all the hair of his head fell off, and that his face became extraordinary pale, and all his body tremulous: and many others have obſerved the ſame. And *Jacobus Oethæus*, *in his obſervat.* reports, That a certain yong Noble man troubled with Crab-lice in his Privities, uſed Mercurial Oyntment to drive them away; upon which his Yard grew cold and ſluggiſh, and unfit for Venery. But here is a fallacy of the cauſe, for quick-ſilver doth not do theſe things by cooling, but becauſe it hath a peculiar and occult quality, that is an enemy to the Nerves and Brain, as appears in many other ſtupifying poyſons. 3.

Fourthly, That which is Objected, is eaſily Anſwered; to wit, That the damage brought upon mans body by quick-ſilver, is cured by the uſe of hot things; as Sage, Hyſſope, Origanum, Clary, Rue, Caſtor, and the like: For thoſe Medicaments are not therefore applied to the preternatural affects cauſed by quick-ſilver only, becauſe they are hot, but becauſe they are friends to the Brain and Nerves: and furthermore, as they themſelves grant, by a ſpecifick property are enemies to the Mercurial virulency; and that ſuch things are not therefore applied becauſe they are hot, but becauſe by a peculiar vertue they are friends to the Nerves, it appears by this, becauſe other hot things, as Ginger, Pepper, and the like, which have no ſpecifick property freindly to the Nerves, do not perform the ſame. 4.

But concerning the Occult Vertue and Propriety of Quick-ſilver, we chiefly meet with two doubts; Firſt of all, Whether it be poyſonous: next of all, Whether it be rightly applied for the Cure of the Venereal Diſeaſe.

Concerning the former Queſtion, Whether Quick-ſilver be Poyſonous, we have already treated before, in *tract. de Chym. & Ariſtot. conſenſ. & diſſenſ. cap.* 19. where we ſpeak of Mercury, and we ſaid there, That *Matthias Unzerus de anatom. ſpagyr. Mercu.* did endeavour to prove at large, That Mercury is not poyſonous, with whom others alſo agree; eſpecially thoſe who urge Experience and the Authority of learned Phyſitians. *Avicen*, *lib.* 4. *Fen.* 6, *tract.* 1. *ſum.* 1. *cap.* 2. writes, That Quick-ſilver doth not hurt many that drink it; for that with its qualities goes forth by the ſtool. *Haly Abbas lib.* 1. *pract. cap.* 35. *Rhaſes in no. ad Manſor. de potu argen. vi.* do affirm the ſame. *Braſſavolus* alſo doth teſtifie in *lib. de ſtirp. exami.* That he hath given Quick-ſilver to Infants to expel Worms. And *Fallopius de Metallis cap.* 37. holds, That Mercury may be taken into the body without the fear of any hurt; and he relates that Beaſts do ſwallow quick-ſilver without any harm: For when they abound with Worms, which your Leeches know by their breath, if they ſwallow four ſeveral times half a Filbert ſhell full of Quick-ſilver caſt into their mouths, they are cured, no worſe Diſeaſe ſucceeding it. And he witneſſeth that he hath given to Children in extream danger, whom other means have availed nothing, the quantity of two or three grains of Millet with evident ſucceſs. The ſame Author, *de Morb. Gallic. cap.* 76. writes, That he ſaw a Woman which drank a pound of Mercury to cauſe an Abortion, yet without any hurt. *Matthiolus* alſo reports in *lib.* 1. *dioſcorid. cap.* 170. (which alſo *Euſtachius Rudius* relates, That he hath often obſerved, when he practiſed Phyſick there) That in the Town *Gorritienſis* the Nurſes do give Quick-ſilver to little Children to drink in the quantity

Whether Quick-ſilver be Poyſonous.

'Tis denied.

quantity of two grains of Millet for the Worms in the Belly, without any trouble at all. And the Midwives when great bellied Women lie long in labor, do preſently give to drink a ſcruple weight of Mercury without any inconvenience: and *Georgius Agricola* relates, that a certain Woman did often times fraudulently give Quick-ſilver to her Husband that ſhe might kill him, and nevertheleſs he continued healthful nay it hath been obſerved that ſome thirſty in the night, have in the dark taken up Veſſels ful of Quick-ſilver inſtead of drinking Cups, and with a wide Throat have taken of the Quick-ſilver in a great quantity, yet have caſt it forth again by the ſtool without any hurt. And *Euſtachius Rudius*, *add Lib. 5. de Morb. occult. cap.* 15 that he hath ſeen this, and that others have obſerved it, that ſome bodies have been diſſected, in which no ſmal quantity of Quick-ſilver hath been collected in the Cavities of the bones, from the unction in the French Pox, who notwithſtanding have lived many years after the unction. Which ſeems not poſſible to be done, if it were poyſon by Nature.

'Tis affirmed.

But *Galen*, *Aetius*, the reconciler, *Cardan*, *Fernelius*, *Ferdinandus Ponzettus*, *Jul. Palmarius*, whom I alleaged in the quoted place *cap.* 19. *de conſens. et diſſens. Chymic. cum. Ariſtotele.* do differ from theſe. And experience it ſelf hath brought moſt eminent men into that opinion, by which it is evident, that quickſilver doth no leſs cauſe numneſſes, convulſions, tremblings, palſeys, epilepſies, apoplexies, ſyncopes, than other poyſons, nay ſomtimes death it ſelf. And ſome do report, that they are ſeldom long lived, who digg up the veins of quickſilver; and though they be very ſtrong bodied, and of the beſt temperament, that they can ſcarce hold out in that work to the fifth yeare, but by drawing in the venenate vapors they are taken with a trembling of all their parts.

The Authors opinion.

And the opinion of theſe we think altogether more conſonant to truth as being that which is confirmed by experience it ſelfe: but as concerning the experience of thoſe, who write that quickſilver hath often been drank and given without any hurt, that doth not excuſe quickſilver from its venenoſity. For to the compleating of an action, there is required a right application of the agent to the patient, and ſome ſtay, which whenas it was wanting in the alleaged examples, the quickſilver could do no hurt for quickſilver is given either alive or prepared, if it be taken alive tis 'leſs hurtful, for whenas quickſilver is a body moſt exactly mixt, and the leaſt parts of it do moſt pertinaceouſly cohere to one another, from whence alſo 'tis continually moveable, whiles it is whol and alive it brings little or no dammage to our body, but preſently is caſt forth by the ſtool. For in like manner as a leaden, or other mettallick bullet, if it be ſwallowed whol is preſently caſt forth of the body, and brings no hurt, but if it be reſolved into the leaſt parts, and contract ruſt, may do very much miſchief, as that hiſtory concerning lead doth ſufficiently teach us, which *Fernelius* recites *de lue Vener. cap.* 7. So alſo if quickſilver be taken whol, moveable, and coherent to it ſelfe, and by reaſon of its mobility be preſently again caſt forth of the body, it brings no dammage; but if it be reſolved into the malleſt particles, and eſpecially with the admiſtion of ſalts, and by their help be as it were fixt to the body, and penetrate into it, both inwardly and outwardly applyed, it cauſeth moſt grievous evils, as ſublimate and precipate do ſufficiently teach us, neither is there any reaſon for any one to aſcribe that corroding faculty to the ſalts mixed; for there is no ſalt in the fume which exhales when Silver is gilding over, and yet that very fume is highly hurtful, neither can ſo little ſalt as is mixt with ſublimate or precipitate, cauſe ſo great hurt, whenas ſalt though it be given in a great quantity, doth no ſuch thing.

Mercury prepared.

But as concerning prepared mercury, I know indeed, with how great prayſes ſome do extol mercurial medicines. Some cal precipitate the angelical pouder, and otherwiſe prepared mercury of life. Some commend the flowers of mercury of which we ſpake in *conſens. et diſſens. Chym. p.* 365. others mercurius dulcis, and ſo highly, they write if it be rightly prepared and given 'tis as gentle as manna, tamarindi, caſſia, and therefore they uſe it in the ſlighteſt diſeaſes, which might eaſily

ſily be taken away by more benigne medicines. But theſe commendations are too much, neither is their raſhneſs commendable, who give quickſilver in any diſeaſe, whenas we have every where examples of them, who by the uſe of the medicatments, have not only been caſt into danger of their lives, but have plainly periſht by them. Whereupon *Guiſh. Fabricius* in *Epiſt. ad D. Doringium lib. 3. obſervat. annexa.* thinks that that called mercurius vitæ may ſometimes be called mercurius mortis, and mercury of life eternal. And how much mercurius dulcis, which is counted the gentleſt of al, may ſometimes prejudice, was ſaid in the alledged place; but that quickſilver may ſometimes be given without any dammage coms to paſs, either becauſe 'tis crude, or retaines the nature of that alive: and therefore as was ſaid even now, can work little on our body, of which ſort is mercurius dulcis, and the flowers of ſilver mercury, or becauſe it is in its kind fixt. For as whol mettals though they be taken into the body, they do not affect it unleſs they be reſolved, ſo ſo alſo whenas fixt mercury doth as it were put on the nature of fixt mettals, ſo it doth not hurt, as that which is ſtil volatil, and can eaſily inſinuate it ſelf into the body.

In what diſeaſe prepared Mercury is to be given.

Yet prepared Mercury ought not raſhly to be uſed and be given in every diſeaſe or body eſpecially at the begining, but in thoſe only in whom there is great ſtore of vitious humors, which that may empty, and where the body is ſtrong, for as Mercury ſublimate and precipitate outwardly applied in ſordid ulcers, doth mundefie them, and toucheth not the ſound fleſh as long as there is any filth, but if it be layd on the ſound fleſh it eats that: ſo alſo if quick-ſilver taken into the body do find corrupt humors on which it may work, it doth not eaſily damnefie the more inward parts, but it workes upon the humors, and cauſeth that they be emptied; but if there be no ſuch humors there, it alſo aſſailet the ſound parts. But whenas Quick-ſilver given inwardly is not uſed onely for the Venereal diſeaſe, but to drive away many other diſeaſes, we will ſpeak no more of that here; but let us now inquire concerning it, whether it can, and how it may do good in the Venereal diſeaſe.

Whether quick-ſilver be to be given in the cure of the venereal diſeaſe.

As concerning one of them therefore, to wit whether quick-ſilver ought to be given in the French pox, and whether it may be ſafely, and by what vertue it acts, Phyſitians do very much differ. *Epiphanius Ferdinandus* indeed, *Hiſto.* 17. thinks that amongſt ninety Authors that have writ of the Venereal diſeaſe, that there are onely foure, who have diſallowed of the uſe of Quickſilver in this diſeaſe, viz. Caſparus Torellus, Montanus, Minadous, and Fracaſtorius, but there are many more, which *Johannes Baptiſta Silvaticus* doth recon up *Contr.* 34. which *Silvaticus* himſelf is in the number of thoſe, who denny Quick-ſilver to be an enemy to the eſſence of the french pox. For *Ulericus ab hutten*, a German knight and Phyſitian *Cap.* 4. *in lib. de morb Gall*: writes that in his time ſcarce one in a hundred that was anoynted with Quickſilver did eſcape a relapſe, the benefit of it laſting but for a few dayes. *Sebaſtianus Aquillanus lib. de morb. Galli. Cap.* 4. Cals the cure of this diſeaſe performed by quickſilver, ſophiſtical, and writes that al anointed with it in his age ſuffered a relapſe. *Gaſpar Torelus* biſhop of *St. Juſta*, in his declammation againſt unction with Quickſilver, cals it a pernicious medicine and thinks it is to be ſhunned as the plague. *Joh. Baptiſta Montanus*, tract. de morb. *Gal.* writes that quick-ſilver doth indeed repreſs the diſeaſe for a certain time but does induce an evil quality in the part, and in no wiſe remove it, wherefore in proceſs of time, al things become worſe then they were before. *John Fernelius lib. 2. de abdit. morb. cauſ. cap.* 14. writes that he beleves nothing leſs, then that a medicine made of Quick-ſilver can cure the Venereal diſeaſe, ſince that in his judgment it only takes away the ſimptoms, leaving the root behind. *Victor Favintinus cap.* 7. *de morb. Gal.* thinks the cure of the diſeaſe with Quick-ſilver is falſe, deceitful and daingerous. Neither does *Fallopius* magnefie this cure, as appeares by his book *de morb. Gall. Cap.* 76. *Bernardus Tamiranus* alſo hath openly condemned this cure *lib.* 2. *de morb. Gall. cap.* 13. as alſo ſome others: to whoſe opinion

The negative opinion

as

as I ſaid *John Baptiſta Silvaticus* joynes himſelf, and writes that he doth not beleeve, that quick-ſilver can wholy cure this diſeaſe, and that tis an antidote diametrically repugnant to the Venereal evil: he doth not deny indeed that this medicine may allay ſome evil and vehement accidents of the diſeaſe, but that tis diametrically adverſe to the eſſence of the french pox, which is an occult property, inimicous to the liver, and that it can overcome that, he doth not beleeve. But though at the firſt rife of this diſeaſe, Carpus the Chyrurgion firſt made uſe of this medicine (whome perhaps that biſhop followed, whom *Fracaſtorius* makes Mention of) being moved by this reaſon, becauſe he had obſerved that the ancient Arabian Phyſitians did make uſe of Quick-ſilver againſt the contumacious ſcab, and many other rebellious diſeaſes of the skin; yet experience hath no way confirmed this remedy as the beſt, and therefore it hath been rejected by many phyſitians: for if Quick-ſilver were one of the antidotes of this diſeaſe it would have alwaies and every where anſwered the expectation, and there had bin no need that more effectual remedies ſhould have been ſought for from the remoteſt Countries beyond the Seas, which have hitherto been uſed with moſt happy ſucceſs, that no man doth any farther doubt of their efficacy in this Diſeaſe; and though Quick-ſilver doth heal French Ulcers, yet it doth not follow, that 'tis an Antidote againſt the Virulency of it as neither thoſe Medicines, which heal Buboes, or Carbuncles in the plague, can for that reaſon be accounted for Antidotes. *Aurelius Minadous* agrees with theſe, *Lib. de Virul. Vener. cap.* 39. Who wholy rejects the uſe of Quick-ſilver in this Diſeaſe, moved thereunto by three reaſons; the firſt is, becauſe he never ſaw any reſtored to health by the uſe of it; on the Contrary he hath rather obſerved many that by the uſe of Quick-ſilver have ſuffered worſe Symptomes in ſo much that they have affirmed, they have received greater dammage from the ſuppoſed Remedy, then from the Diſeaſe: the ſecond is, that Quick-ſilver is hurtful by Reaſon of its exceſſive coldneſs: the third is becauſe no body can explain, after what manner Quick-ſilver doth good in this Diſeaſe. To which ſome add a fourth Reaſon, that of it ſelf it is poyſon; and a fifth that many have died by the uſe of it.

The affirmative opinion.

On the contrary many other Phyſitians do very much commend the uſe of Quick-ſilver in this Diſeaſe: and that I may now paſs by others, *Epiphanius Ferdinandus, Hiſtor.* 17. writes that he can make good by Oath, that he hath perfectly cured, leaving no evil Symptomes, a hundred and fifty people Frenchified of al Ages; Sexes, and of diverſe Temperaments, and at divers ſeaſons of the year; and he names ano her moſt experienced Phyſician, *Joban. Laurentius Protopapa*, who hath affirmed to him by Oath that he hath cured above a thouſand men Frenchified with the Mercurial Unguent with moſt happy ſucceſs, and he writes that we ought to give God thanks, that he would make known to wonderful a remedy for ſo great a diſeaſe.

The Authors Opinion.

That we may quit our ſelves of this difficult controverſie, Firſt of al we think the uſe of Quick-ſilver is not wholly to be rejected in the Cure of this Diſeaſe, neither do the reaſons alleaged before by *Minadous*, or others evince it: for firſt of al as concerning experience, here one experience may be oppoſed againſt another, and there are many Phyſitians who taught by experience it ſelf do with wonderful praiſes extol Quick-ſilver in this Diſeaſe. The Second reaſon, that Quick-ſilver is to be rejected becauſe it is cold, is falſe, for the effects of Quick-ſilver as was ſaid before, do teach us that it is rather hot then cold. Thirdly, concerning the manner how it works, and cures this Diſeaſe, we ſhal ſee hereafter. And though that manner could not be found out, yet the experience muſt not therefore be denied; for there are many Medicines that work by occult qualities, whoſe manner of acting cannot be perfectly explained. Fourthly, though Quick-ſilver be poyſonous yet 'tis not therefore wholly to be rejected in this diſeaſe, whenas other venenate things come into Phyſical uſe, as opium, Cantharides, Oyl of Scorpions and others. But Fiftly whereas ſome could not be cured by mercurial Medicaments, this is not to be

aſcribed

aſcribed to the quick-ſilver, but rather to the ignorance of the Phyſitian, who did not rightly apply this Medicine, or to the negligence or diſobedience of the patient, or to the vehemency of the Diſeaſe, which could be overcome by no Medicine, though the beſt that is.

When quick ſilver is to be uſed in the Venereal Diſeaſe.

But as quick-ſilver is not wholly to be rejected, ſo we think it is not unwarily and raſhly to be uſed, but only upon urgent neceſſity, to wit then when this diſeaſe could not be cured with Guajacum wood or Sarſaparilla. For we muſt come to the uſe of quick-ſilver for two cauſes eſpecially, the firſt is when the Diſeaſe is ſo ſtubborn, that it wil not yeild to thoſe uſual Medicines: Secondly when there is ſomething preſent, which doth not admit of the uſe of the Decoction of the wood and Sarſaparilla, eſpecially the heat and inflamation of the Kidneys and Liver. And *Euſtachius Rudius* writes *Lib.* 5. *Cap.* 15. that he hath cured ſome, who if they had uſed never ſo little of Guajacum, though corrected with cold things, were preſently taken ſo with a heat of Urin, that an Inflamation of thoſe parts ariſing, they have hardly eſcaped death; and therefore in ſuch caſes ſomtimes, wil we or nil we, we are compelled to make uſe of quick-ſilver, as the ſame *Rudius* ſpeaketh; and that oftentimes may be done ſafe enough, ſo that he writes he hath anointed with quick-ſilver even infants infected by their Nurſes at ſuck, and hath cured them.

Things prohibiting unction with Quick-ſilver.

Yet we muſt not come raſhly and inconſiderately to this unction, but firſt of al we muſt conſider, whether there be any thing preſent that doth prohibit it: for firſt of al unction with quick-ſilver is not admitted, when the ſtrength is but feeble, and therefore in old men it ſeldom takes place. Secondly, if the body do ſtil abound with many vitious Humors, for then the quick-ſilver doth not eaſily penetrate: and by a commotion of the Humors it cauſeth grievous Diſeaſes and Symptomes, therefore the body muſt firſt of al be emptied. Thirdly, if the Air be too hot, and if it be dog daies. Fourthly, if the body be extenuated, if there be a Feaver, Ulcers of the mouth, and inclination to a quinſie; this kind of Medicine alſo is not convenient for them who before the French Pox, ſuffered numneſs, tremblings, Palſie, and pains in their joynts.

Whether Quick-ſilver be an Alexipharmacum of the Venereal Diſeaſe.

But that quick ſilver may rightly be made uſe of, we muſt firſt of al enquire after what manner it is to be given, and what it can performe, and do in this diſeaſe, on which buſineſs the hinge of this controverſie turnes. Where firſt of al we are not of their opinion, who think quick-ſilver to be an Alexipharmacum of this Diſeaſe. *Quercetan* indeed affirmes it in *Conſil. de lue Vener.* where he writes that Mercury is the only true and ſole Alexipharmacum of this Diſeaſe, eſpecially if it be inveterate. From whom *Felix Platerus* doth not much diſſent, who writes that Mercury by its occult qualities and propriety contrary to this diſeaſe, doth quel the Venenate quality of that diſeaſe, but this cannot ſimply be admitted, for when as there are three things in this Diſeaſe, firſt of al that Malignant quality imprinted on the parts dedicated to nutrition, and eſpecially on the Liver, or an occult Diſeaſe; Secondly, vitious Humors, generated in the Liver evilly affected, and polluted by this Malignity: Thirdly, Diſeaſes and Symptomes which are raiſed every where in the body by thoſe vitious Humors, we do not deny indeed that Quick-ſilver may conduce ſomwhat to the Evacuating of the vitious humors, as ſhal be ſaid here after, and hence alſo to the taking away of the Diſeaſes and Symptomes which do ariſe from them; but that it doth overcome the malignant and virulent diſpoſition it ſelf, which is the property of an Alexipharmacum, is that which we deny. For firſt of al experience doth not confirm it, neither hath that Alexipharmacal vertue of Mercury been hitherto proved by any one, by any ſolid argument; but whatſoever it performes, it doth by ſalivation and violent purging, which is not the property of an Alexipharmacum, for otherwiſe al Medicines purging vitious Humors ſhould be called Alexipharmaca. This rather is manifeſt, that ſome cured by mercurial Medicines, after a long interval of time

have relapſed into this Diſeaſe, that occult and Malignant diſpoſition being left in the body. Secondly, that quick-ſilver is no Alexipharmacum, appears alſo by this, becauſe 'tis no way friendly to our body, but rather hurts the brain, Heart, and other Members, and cauſeth moſt grievous Diſeaſes and Symptomes in the jawes, which *Platerus* endeavors in vain to remove from Mercury, and to aſcribe them to the virulency of the ſpittle. For thirdly, Quick-ſilver cauſeth ſalivation, not only in the French pox, but alſo in other bodies, which are not Sick of the French Diſeaſe, and beſides hurts in the mouth, inflamation, Exulceration, Stinks, injuries of the Teeth, which is obvious for every one to experience and obſerve, but that is more conſonant to truth, that quick-ſilver is to be numbered amongſt Evacuating Medicines, whenas 'tis evident by experience, that by benefit of that, many thick, tough and virulent Humors are emptyed by the mouth, ſomtimes alſo by ſweat, or other waies, and that it doth not much good in this Diſeaſe, unleſs ſalivation enſue: therefore when it is applied, it can be uſed only for this end, to evacuate virulent Humors, which being emptied, whenas the Symptomes cauſed by them do vaniſh, 'tis concluded by many, that it may be adminiſtred for the Mitigation of the ſymptoms, when as yet it doth only mitigate or take away the Symptomes by accident, the virulent Humors, on which they depend, being taken away. Which cure notwithſtanding, as *Fernelius* is of opinion, is the cruelleſt of al, and ſo hard, that many would rather periſh of the Diſeaſe, than be cured with ſo great danger, ſo bitter hazard: but that quick-ſilver may be applied to external and contumacious Ulcers, is known to every body.

How many ways quick-ſilver doth Evacuate.

But to evacuate vitious Humors it may be uſed three manner of waies; either to move by ſtool and vomit; or to cauſe ſweat; or to cauſe Salivation and ſpitting. Concerning the giving of quick-ſilver to move by ſtool or vomit is already ſpoken before, and the Chymiſts are large in the praiſe of it; and do extol it with wonderful commendations: and *Crollius* calls Mercury the Balſome of Nature, in which there is both a vertue incarnative, and regenerative, which doth wonderfully renew, and purge from al impurities, and therefore cals it a divine Medicine: to whom *Beguinus* aſſents, who in *Lib.* 2. *Tyrocin. Chym. cap.* 3. writes that Mercury is the chiefeſt Alexipharmacum againſt al corruption and putrefaction: from whom though *Platerus* do not wholly diſſent, while he teacheth, that this Diſeaſe may eaſily be cured by purging with Mercury, and truly in no long time, but very ſpeedily, being ſcarce drank twice or thrice, from whence is raiſed a plentiful flux of the belly, and alſo vomiting, ſomtimes alſo ſweat and Urin is provoked: yet he cannot deny, that it doth perform this by a violent irritation of Nature, and not without danger.

By ſtool and vomit.

But I would have a Phyſitian rather timorous, than bold and raſh in the uſe of this Medicine, for that which *Pliny* ſaid was the poyſon of al things, *Lib.* 37. *cap.* 6. that wil not ſpare mans body, but offends the ſtomach, Liver, Guts, and al the bowels, and is eſpeciallly an enemy to the Nerves and brain: but though the Chymiſts affirme that being prepared it may grow more mild, and that it may not hurt, they precipitate it, ſublime it, and prepare flowers of it, *Aquilam, Aurum vitæ*, and other things; yet though you expel Nature with a fork, ſhe wil ſtil returne: for as it was ſaid even now out of *Platerus*, it purges violently and not without danger; and as *Fernelius Lib. de lue Vener. cap.* 17. writes of this buſineſs, upon the giving of prepared Mercury, (doubtleſs he meant precipitate) preſently from the compaſs of the whol body, Humors of al ſorts break forth upwards and downwards, with ſo great force, and ſo violent, that the ſpirits being exhauſted, and the ſtrength waſted, the ſick do either die preſently, or lie ſome daies without ſtrength like unto dead men: ſomtimes al the mouth is inflamed, and contracts a Gangreen, putrid Ulcers and very ſtinking, and ſomtimes the jaws ſwel, that the Patient for ſome daies is not able to ſwallow at al: although ſomtimes it work more gently, yet it purges violently enough.

'Tis to be given warily.

Bu

But if it do work more mildely, either it retaines the nature of that which is crude, or being fixt it doth almost put on the nature of a fixt mettal: of the first sort is mercurius dulcis, of which *Angelus Sala* saith in the riper aged it works little, unless it be given in a great dose, to wit thirty five grains, and then it easily raiseth salivation; and that this is true a certain Physitian wel known to me, learnt to his cost and found it so by experience, as we have said *de consens. et dissen. cap.* 18. but if it be more fixt, it doth not move the belly; therefore it must needs be that it have a middle nature, if it ought to purge, that it may stimulate nature, where yet alwaies to hold that medium is very difficult. Yet amongst those medicines, we have nominated of prepared mercury, that which is called mercurius vitæ doth easily challeng the first place, so that I think it would be needless to make mention here of more medicines prepared out of mercury; but we must note this concerning mercurious vitæ, that it is no pure mercurial medicine, but there is conteined in it some part of antimony as appears by the vitrum and Regulus, which may be made out of the mercurius vitæ, but can by no art be prepared out of mercury alone, but that they may be made of antimony is wel known.

When it is to be given in the Venereal diseases.

Yet when we are minded to administer mercurius vitæ, and other mercurial medicines, we must diligently consider *Mesues* rule, that it is a grane of wisdom, not to come to strong medicines, but where weak ones wil not satisfy. If therefore this evil be new and gentle which may be cured by gentler purgers, and by the decoction of Guajacum or Sarsaparilla, we must not rashly come to the use of quicksilver. But if the evil be stubborn and inveterate, and there be many virulent humors in the body, mercurial medicines may be given without danger: for then 'tis not easily to be feared, that it should assail mans body, when it hath vicious humors enough to work upon. And oftentimes necessity compels us to come to the use of quicksilver, and some do hope in vain, to affect the same business by weak medicines often repeated as by stronger taken plentifully at once. For experience hath long since taught us, that we do oftentimes spend our time in vain in such medicines given against pertinaceous diseases. On the contrary that strong medicines, and amongst them quicksilver, after once or more times taking, have happily overcome pertinacious diseases, whose cause was about the stomach, the cavety of the liver, the spleen, pancreas, the cal, and from thence was communicated to other parts.

Sweating medicines made of quicksilver.

Secondly out of quicksilver are prepared sweating medicines, to wit the white spirit of mercury, or the white or red oyl of mercury, one drop of which or two, are given to drink in treacle water and spirits of Guajacum, or some such like decoction to move sweat, as also other preparations and fixt medicaments of quicksilver: and in case that quicksilver performe that, for which end it is given, and move sweat, and discuss the vitious humors by it, 'tis not so dangerous a medicine.

Salivation by quicksilver.

The third way is by Salivation, and many indeed do place al their hopes of the cure of this disease in Salivation, so that *Platerus* writeth, unless that in the cure by quicksilver Salivation be raised by the use of it. And at last be supervenient, the cure doth not succeed, neither is it fitting so much to condemne the use of it and wholly to reject it for the faults which happen in the mouth in this cure, or for other accidents, amongst which convulsions are cheifly to be feared, which are wont sometimes to happen, if there be any great error committed in the use of it, whenas afterwards in the cure the faults of the mouth are easily corrected again. On the contrary *Fernelius de lue Vener. cap.* 6. doth exactly set forth this manner of cure and describes its inconveniences: so great saith he is the cruelty and harshness of this unguent, that the patient presently begins to languish the second or third day; for by its extraordinary tenuity it doth melt and dissolve, whatsoever is in the superficies and whole compass of the body, and at length by its extream cooling faculty with which it is endued, it drives them to the inward parts, from thence into the stomach and breast, from which afterwards it drives them upwards by a continuity of parts to the throat and mouth, with so great and so violent an injury, that the teeth, to which as also to the brain 'tis peculiarly an en-

emy, do inal preſently, grow looſe, and in ſome become blackiſh and al drop out. Some things it diſcuſſes out of the body by ſweat, ſome by its purgative faculty it caſts forth by ſtool, with a great deal of torture. And breifly to comprehend al, al certainly who are thus cured have their jaws exulcerated, their tongue and pallate ſwollen, their gums and teeth looſe, and ſpittle runs through their mouthes without any intermiſſion, ſmelling worſe then any ſtink, with ſo great contagion, that the lipps by touching of that contract ulcers, and the cheeks are ulcerated within: the ſtomach being cooled and diſturbed with the ſtink, the ſick are deſtitute of any appetite to meat, and being tormented with intolerable thirſt, yet they are ſcarce able to drink, their whol mouth being but one ulcer. Beſides their tongue ſtammers, their eares grow deaf, in ſome incurably. Al the houſe about ſtinks.

When unction with quickſilver is to be uſed.

And indeed that manner of cure is bitter enough, that one ought not eaſily to admit of it, and therefore 'tis not be uſed when the evil is new and light, but when 'tis inveterate and contumacious, and when other remedies as the decoction of Guajacum, Sarſaparilla, and the like, have firſt of al been tryed in vain; neither muſt we come to the uſe of that unleſs the body before be diligently purged, leaſt too great a quantity of virulent humors be turned ruſhing to the mouth and jaws; neither is this cure convenient for old men, nor for weak bodies, nor thoſe that are waſted, and are ſick of a weakneſs of the nerves, and have weak heads, and ſubject to diſtillations, leaſt by the quickſilver, it being hurtful for them, theſe parts be more debilitated.

Therefore as *Hercules Saxonia de lue. Vener. cap.* 39. writes of this ſubject, they are neither to be approved of who uſe mercurial unctions without any difference, neither muſt we hold with them, who wholy reject the uſe of them. For ſomtimes this diſeaſe is ſo contumacious, that 'tis not cured with the decoction of Guajacum taken fifty dayes, and twice or thrice a day, but grows worſe; whenas therefore the patients are weary of taking any more decoctions, and alſo of ſweating, and hungring, that they may not be left without al help, 'tis better to adminiſter a dangerous remedy then none at al.

How quickſilver doth raiſe a flux.

But what way quickſilver doth raiſe ſalivation, Authors do differ, *Euſtachius Rudius lib.* 5. *de morb. occult. cap.* 15. diſputes at large of this buſineſs, and firſt of al he worthily derides them who hold that quickſilver by its moſt intenſe coldneſs, or repreſſing faculty doth repel the humors from the external parts into the innermoſt parts of the body; for repelling thinges are of thick and dry parts but quickſilver is of moſt thin parts: neither do other repelling medicines, nay not the moſt cold ayre, or coldeſt water, performe any ſuch thing; neither can here be given any reaſon, why the repulſion ſhould be to the mouth, and not to other parts that are neerer. This therefore muſt be inquired, why quickſilver is moved to the head, and is cheifly purged through the mouth. Many are of opinion, neither doth that diſpleaſe *Platerus*, that quickſilver doth cauſe ſpitting by a peculiar vertue: but he explains not the manner; neither doth this pleaſe *Rudius*. For ſaith he if quickſilver be moved to the head by vertue of its whol ſubſtance, and by a peculiar property, it doth that either by a ſimilitude or contrariety of ſubſtance; it cannot be by a ſimilitude of ſubſtance, becauſe quickſilver doth rather hurt, then befreind the brain and nerves: and therefore as cantharides do invade and offend the bladder, the Sea hare the lungs, ſo alſo in this manner quickſilver ſeems to aſſault the brain. But *Rudius* overthrows that opinion two waies, firſt of al, becauſe he hath proved before mercury, to be no poyſon, ſecondly becauſe he thinks he is able to render a reaſon from the manifeſt qualities, why quickſilver doth aſſault the head; where firſt of al, he ſuppoſeth this that mercury as opium hath heterogeneous parts and that 'tis made up of parts of a different nature, yet ſo, that the hot parts do predominate; and that 'tis compounded of an aery and earthy ſubſtance but very much attenuated with heat, which like unto ſmoak ſcarce enduring the heat, flyes away in fume and is diſperſed. Therfore amongſt al other medicines of this faculty it doth moſt powerfully extenuate the humors, diſcuſs, and convert them to motion,

and

and therefore doth purge by ſweat, by ſtool, by the mouth, and ſo partly by its purgative vertue, partly by the heat of its thin parts doth draw the humors along with it, and that it happens ſo, that the thinner going to the skin are emptied by ſweat; but the thick and unfit to be emptied by ſweat, being extenuated together with the quickſilver turnd into vapor are drawn up into the head and then cauſing diſtillations do fal down again; and at length he concludes, whenas quick ſilver outwardly anointed doth not remain in the ſtomach, as other purging medicines do, but aſſails the head; 'tis no wonder if it principally purge by the mouth.

But indeed he doth not this way ſatisfie the doubt, and this is a great peice of ignorance both in things phyloſophycal and Chymical. For firſt of al that Quick ſilver cannot be cleared from venenoſety, was ſaid before, and proved, and the reaſons for the contrary anſwered. And *Rudius* himſelf in the chapter even now alledged, reckons up ſo many and ſo greate evils, which mercury doth cauſe, that they cannot al be reduced to manifeſt qualities: which that I may compendiouſly reduce, Quick ſilver hath a corroding faculty, cauſeth a trembling and weakneſs of the heart, hurts the animal faculty, weakens the ſubſtance of the nerves and their proper unity, whence are raiſed incurable tremblings and greivous torments, and many uſing of mercurial medicines, have ſuffered cunvulſions, falling ſickneſs, and apoplexy. Nay the ſame *Rudius* reports that ſome after unction have fallen into raving and madneſs: but whereas he endeavors to reduce that operation of mercury by which it cauſeth ſalivation, to the manifeſt qualities in that he laboures in vain, for firſt of al there are no ſuch heterogeneous parts in mercury as he phanſieth, as was ſaid before, neither could any Chymiſt ever yet ſhow them, and whether Quickſilver be burnt, or whether it be reduced to water, or what other external forme ſoever it puts on, it retaines its whole eſſence, and with a litle labour may be reduced to its ancient forme. Beſides *Rudius* renders no reaſon, why Mercury outwardly anoynted on the body, is rather moved to the head then to the ſtomach, and carries the humors thither with it: for whereas he thinks, that it is reſolved into vapour and carried up into the head, tis falſ, whenas it may be collected whol both in the mouth, and in other parts.

The hurtfl of Quick ſilver.

'Tis more agreeable therefore to trueth, that quickſilver is offenfive to the nerves and brain, as the tremblings which it cauſeth do ſufficiently de monſtrate, and therefore that it creepes up by the nerves to the brain, and carries the vitious humors thither with it, which together with the vitious humors whenas nature and the expulſive faculty of the brain doth expel, and caſt down to the jawes, hence follows ſalivation: and quickſilver whether outwardly applied, or inwardly taken, ſtil creeps up to the head, and cauſeth much ſpitting.

Quick ſilver an Enemy to the nerves

But there are divers wayes of uſing Quick-ſilver to raiſe a flux, to wit either 'tis outwardly applied to the body by unguents, plaiſters, epithems and lavatories ſo called, by a girdle, by bracelets and Rings, by ſuffumigations; or tis taken inwardly, by al which ways not withſtanding there is nothing elſe done, but that the Quick-ſilver may be reduced into the ſmalleſt parts that it may the eaſier penetrate into the body yet what way ſoever tis broke into peices, it keeps its nature, and the leaſt parts are eaſily again united to one another and returne to their ancient corpulency, that it hath bin obſerved, that ſometimes a great quantity of it hath bin collected in the veins, and cavities of the bones.

The wayes of uſing quick ſilver

Yet the moſt common way of applying Quick-ſilver is by unction; but that unction may be performed rightly, ſometimes are to be obſerved before unction, ſome in the anoynting, and ſome after unction, before unction the body, if need require, muſt be emptied either with purging medicines or bleeding; for if very many vitious humors abound in the body, tis to be feared, that by the uſe of theſe unctions they ruſh together in a heap to the jawes and ſuffocate the patient, or being rapt up to the brain do cauſe an apoplexy, or palſie, and therefore firſt of al part of them ought to be emptyed. Alſo if their be plenty of blood, leaſt the patient may ſuffer

How the unction with quick-ſilver is to be ordered.

ſuffer an inflamation of his jawes or a feaver, tis good to take away a little blood. *Falopius* alſo, that part of the matter may be conſumed, the bowels ſtrengthened, and not be offended by the Quickſilver, gives the decoction of Guajacum eight or ten dayes before unction.

As concerning the unction it ſelf, the baſis of theſe unguents is Quick-ſilver, which muſt be choſen pure, or vivified by cinnabar, and it muſt be mixed with hogs-greaſe hens-fat, butter, oyl, turpentine that it appeare no longer quick to the ſight, which is commonly called mortifiying of it. Some alſo ad to ſix ounces of Quickſilver, four ounces of red ſugar. Some do mix divers other things to correct the malice of Quick-ſilver, and indeed this or that according to the different conſtitution of the diſeaſe, which notwithſtanding profit little. For thoſe oyly and unctuous things, or other things, do ſtick on the skin and ſuperficies of the body, and cannot follow the Quickſilver into the innermoſt parts of the body, nor correct its malignity. But thoſe things which are neceſſarily mixed, are mixt, to that end, that the quickſilver may be reduced into the ſmalleſt bodies and ſo may the eaſier inſinuate it ſelf into the body. Some alſo in the compoſition of this unguent, think we ought to have reſpect to divers things: and therefore *Hercules Saxonia*, if there be hard knobs, ads thoſe things which do mollifie, as the fat and greaſe of geeſe, ducks, the Marrow of oxe bones, butter, oyle of ſweet almons; if there be ulcers he bids us ad drying pouders, Franckincenſe, Myrrh, aloe, Litharge, white lead, which if they be ill conditioned, he ads Cinabar precipitated. Beſides he commands us to mix medicines, which ſtrengthen, the parts: more over he bids us ad thoſe things, which do reſpect the principal parts, and thoſe that are moſt hurt, and therefore if the joynts be affected he bids us ad ground pine; if the liver, hepatick means; if the ſtomach, things ſtomachical, But beſides the reſt he doth aprove of oyle of Guajacum added to the ointment; all which as we do not wholy diſallow of, ſo they ought to be explained. Firſt of al, if the unction be ordered cheifly for tumors or ulcers, medicines may commodiouſly be mixed with it, but if ſalivation and emptying by ſpittle be cheifly intended there is no need of that laborious compoſition. Secondly Quick-ſilver it ſelf if it be reduced into ſmalleſt parts, doth eaſily penetrate, neither hath it any need of helpers, and there is nothing that can penetrate eaſier then that. Thirdly I can ſcarce be perſwaded, that medicines outwardly anointed, can penetrate to the ſtomach and liver, and ſtrengthen them; this likes me beſt, that he thinks oyl of Guajacum ought to be added to thoſe unguents.

How Quick ſilver is to be prepared.

The Quantity of Quick-ſilver that is uſed, is ſometimes more, ſometimes leſs, according to the vehemency of the diſeaſe, and the patients ſtrength. Yet we muſt not exceed ſeven ounces which is ſufficient for ſtrong bodies, in weak bodies 'tis ſufficient to uſe three foure or five ounces; but every time uſe two or three ounces; of the unguent, or for every doſe take two ſcruples; in tender children for every place ſo much oyntment as is the bulk of a lentil is ſufficient. Such oyntments therefore may be made thus.

The quantity.

Formes of Mercurial Unguents.

Take *of mercury ſix ounces; of hogs-greaſe without ſalt one pound; Kil the Mercury with the greaſe and mix it exactly, then ad of the marrow of an ox leg half an ounce; of Turpentine three ounces; of the oyl of it one ounce, of the oyl of Guajacum two ounces; mix them.*

Or Take *of venice Turpintine one pound, of Quick-ſilver ſeven ounces; mix them diligently, then ad of hogs-greaſe eight ounces; oyl of ſweet and bitter almonds of each two ounces, pouder of cinamon two drams; Muſk ſix granes mix it and make an ointment.*

Euſtachius Rudius commends this form, which he uſed with moſt happy ſucceſs for many yeares at Utine, in the great hoſpital of that City, with ſo much ſafety, that not one of them periſht which he had in cure.

Take *ake of Quick-ſilver one ounce and half; Freſh Sows greaſe three ounces; pouder*

pouder of maſtick one ounce; oyl of maſtick one ounce and half; Saffron half a dram; two Sweet apples of a middle ſize. Firſt of al let the ſows greaſe be moſt exactly mixed with the mercury, then ad the maſtick finely poudered together with the oyl of maſtick and Safforn, and afterwards the aples through ripe cleanſed from the parings and core.

Or, Take *of mercury killed with ſpitle three ounces; old oyl four ounces; of Frankincenſe prepared as common maſtick two ounces, maſtick one ounce; hogs-greeſe two ounces and half; oyl of bayes one ounce and half; virgins wax two ounces; ointment of diachæa one ounce and half; ſagapen one ounce; of wax as much as is ſufficient. Make an Ointment.*

Or Take *of mercury two ounces; of hogsgreaſe three ounces; turpentine one ounce; pouder of orice frankincenſe, maſtick each two drams; oyl of chamemel, white lillies, bayes of each two aunces; Stirax half an ounce; mix them.*

Or Take *of hens, hogs, and beares greace each one ounce; oyl of white lillies, bayes each two ounces; mercury ſix ounces; mix the greaſes in a morter, afterwards ad the mercury, and ſtir them an houre in the morter, then ad of frankincenſe maſtick, myrrh, amoniacum, ſtirax, pouder of Arabick, lavinder each half a dram make an ungnent.*

The Places which are anointed are the joynts and the ſpaces between, and the leſs fleſhy parts in the hands, elbows, feet, knees, ſometimes in ſtrong bodies the emunctories of the liver are anointed, and the backbone. *Fallopius* expects the hands, and firſt of al anoints the feet tranſverſly about the begining of the feet, afterwards the ſpaces between the joynts of the leg, then the midle of the thighs, the middle of the Elbow bones, and the midle of the Armes, afterwards the whol back.

The time for anointing.

The moſt commodious time for anointing, is the ſpring and autum, the winter and ſummer are leſs convenient and the unction is to be performed in the morning, upon an empty ſtomach, in a cloſe and warm place, beginning at the lower parts, and ſo paſſing to the upper unction is ſeldom ordered twice on the ſameday.

The patient anointed muſt either be ropped up in linnen, or the parts anointed be covered with couſe flax or hemp and ſo the patient be placed in his bed.

How long unction is to be continued.

But the unction is to be continued ſo long, til ſalivation or a looſneſs, or ſome other evaccuation ſucceed; and the ſymptomes be leſſened and ceaſe; and truely if a looſneſs follow, it is not ſuddenly to be ſuppreſt, yet we muſt have a care leaſt the guts ſuffer any hurt, caſting in by Clyſter chaly beat milk, or the juyce of ptiſan with milk, or the decoction of barley and afterwards if need require, come to aſtringent meanes.

Some think that ſweat alſo ought to be moved; but if nature tend to ſalivation, tis not convenient to move ſweat, leaſt there be contrary motions cauſed; but if nature of her own accord tend to ſweat, tis not to be hindered, yet unction is ſcarce to be continued above three dayes at one time; ſometimes alſo there preſently follow greivous ſymptomes as great ulcers of the mouth, ſwellings and inflamation of the tongue and jawes, the ſwallowing is hurt, the teeth looſened, an extraordinary flux of virulent humors from the mouth, a diarrhy or dicentery, and then we muſt preſently forbear anointing, yet ſometimes it hapens but very ſildom, that no ſuch greivous ſymptom followes. But only ſweats, and puſtles are multeplied al over the body.

What is to be done after unction.

When unction is now perfected, and the ſpitle runs wel, let the parts anointed be waſht with wine, in which ſage, Arabick, lavender, flowers, roſmary, grownd pine, bayleaves, calamint origanum have bin boyled, afterwards lay upon them ſome plaiſter for the nerves.

At laſt when the unction is paſt, we muſt uſe our endeavor, that the mercury be not left in the body, and that no evil be contracted neither in the mouth nor other parts; and therefore we muſt move ſweat in a Laconick bath keep gold money in the mouth, ſhaveings of gold muſt be dranke, or bullets or pils made up of leafe gold muſt be ſwallowed: for the mercury is imbibed by the gold, and with it is emptied out of the body, and ſo al evil that might happen is prevented.

To

To aſſwage pain, the mouth and jawes muſt be waſhed with warme milk or the Decoction of Barley: to hinder inflamation let the patient uſe the decoction of plantaine or plantaine water, or of Vine leaves, with the ſyrup of Mulberries and dry roſes, the teeth muſt be waſhed with the decoction of ſage, or with Sage, columbine water, or auſtere wine; after unction we muſt not preſently deſiſt from the cure, but the decoction of Guajacum as being the alexipharmacum of this diſeaſe, muſt be drank ſtil for certain days, which if it be intermitted, a relapſe is wont eaſily to follow upon it.

Mercurial plaiſters. Secondly, emplaſters made of mercury are wont to be applyed in this diſeaſe, which though they cauſe leſs trouble, yet they are leſs effectual to empty by ſpitting. They are prepared of the ſame matter of which the ointments are, to which alſo we may ad cinnabar: but quickſilver either is mixt with uſual plaiſters, as diachylum Ireatum, melilot, or new ones are compounded. The plaiſter called de ranis with mercury, is alſo in uſe. Theſe plaiſters are ſpred upon linnen cloth, leather, and are applyed to the ſame places as the ointments, eſpecially to the hands and feet, alſo to the emunctories, and ſomtimes to the back bone, and they are worne continually night and day, and every third or fourth day are renewed: this cure is leſs troubleſome, and upon faire daies the patient may go abroad, yet the cure is not ſo perfect, and therefore muſt be continued longer.

Lavatoris of mercury. Thirdly, Linnen clothes wet in mercury water, are applyed to the ſame places in the forme of an epitheme, and becauſe ſublimate is moſt commodiouſly diſſolved in water, the ſame places which are wont to be anointed, are beſmeared with mercury diſſolved in this manner, which medicines are commonly called lavatories, which are prepared of mercurius ſublimate one ounce, which is diſolved in two pound of ſome liquor.

For Examples ſake.

Take *of Mercury ſublimate one ounce; of Scabious, Roſe, Fumitory water, each eight ounces; Sage water four ounces. Let them boyl and be mixed.*

The uſe of it is this, with a cloth wet in this liquor, let the knees and feet be beſmeared, and the armes from the elbow towards the hands, and that muſt be done in the morning and towards the evening, in a warme place and continued for ten days, til ſpitting follow.

Mercurial girdles and bracelets. Fourthly, Girdles and bracelets are made of Mercury killed with ſpittle and mixt with the white of an egg, which mixture is ſpred upon cotton, and that is ſowed into leather or cloath, and of that girdles or bracelets are made.

Suffumigations of mercury. Fifthly, Alſo this diſeaſe is cured by ſuffumigations made of quickſilver, but this way of cure is more dangerous than that by unction, nay it hath been deadly to ſome, and therefore is not to be made uſe of, unleſs al other meanes have been tried in vain, and only on very ſtrong bodies; for this way of cure is very violent, whenas the patients that do admit of it, every day are wont to voide ten pints of virulent ſpittle; but it takes not place in thoſe that are weak, waſted, endewed with a hot and dry diſtemper, not in thoſe, which are troubled with a difficulty of breathing, or are ſubject to diſtillations from the head on the breaſt, or who ſpit blood, or are taken with a lientery, or dyſentery: but phyſitians do cheifly uſe thoſe ſuffumigations in a contumacious French ophthalmy, and upon an imminent ſhedding of the haire, which cannot be hindred by other medicines; for this ſuffumigation doth faſten the haire. Yet then a particular ſuffumigation may be appointed.

Their difference. For we muſt note here, that there is a difference of ſuffumigations in this diſeaſe; for ſome are univerſal which are received by the whol body, and therefore alſo do empty the whol body; others partitular, which are applyed only to certain parts: again ſome ſuffumigations are prepared of benigne medicines, as frankincenſe, myrrh, oyl, Cinamon, Styrax calamite, ſpikenard, Amber, Ammoniacum, benjamin, wood of aloes, Amber greeſe, Musk, Gallia moſchata, and the like, which though they may be fitted for the uſe of certaine parts, yet they do not deſtroy the venereal diſeaſe.

Thoſe

Thoſe therefore which are proper to this diſeaſe, are chiefly prepared of mercury and of thoſe things made of Mercury, cinnabar, Mercury precipitate, ſublimate.

As concerning thoſe univerſal ones, their baſis as was ſaid even now, is mercury any way prepared; ſome ad the Greeks Sandarach, and yellow arſnick, but whenas they are moſt pernicious poyſons, they are not late enough applyed, neither do they cure this diſeaſe in particular that we may give you ſome formes.

Formes.

Take *Of Factitious Cinnabar three ounces; Myrrh, Frankincenſe, Maſtich, each one ounce; Liver colored aloe, Styrax calamite, Benjamin, each half an ounce: make a pouder.*

Or Take *of Cinnabar three ounces; Myrrh, Frankintence, wood of aloe, Laudanum, Ammoniacum, each one ounce; mix them with turpentine, make pills.*

Or Take, *of Cinnabar three ounces, Mercury precipitate three drams; Frankincenſe, Aloe, Maſtick, Myrrh, Benjamin; Styrax Calamite, each half an ounce: make a pouder. Epiphanius Ferdinandus* reports the following forme is much in uſe at *Naples* in the Hoſpital for thoſe that are incurable.

Take, *of Litharge five ounces; of antimony, Cinnabar, each one ounce; of Pontick Rhubarb ſix ounces; Polipody of the oake three ounces. Sweet cane, Cinamon, Laudanum, Roſes, Mace, Nutmegs, Alum, Verdegrece, Aloe, each three drams; Red lead, the Greeks Sandarache, each one ounce. Gumme caranna, two drams; Water of Roſes and Citron Flowers, as much as is ſufficient, mix them according to art.*

But it ſeemes to me to be a forme made up without al reaſon which containes many things unprofitable, and alſo hurtful.

That is ſafer which *Ferdinandus* himſelf propoſeth.

Take *of Cinnabar, Mercury ſublimate each one ounce; Gumme of the Olive tree Laudanum each half an ounce; Nutmegs, Bay and Juniper berries, each three drams; Marjoram, Coppras one dram and an half; Turpentine as much as is ſufficient to incorporate it, make a maſs.*

The manner of preparing theſe ſuffumigations.

But thoſe medicines whether they be reduced into pouders, or pills or trochisks, are uſed after this manner; firſt of al the patient that he may be able to undergoe this cure (fit ſauce for him, and they are deſervedly thus handled who defile themſelves with luſt) you muſt give him two reare eggs, a morſel of bred dipt in ſtrong wine, and a draught of wine, and a ſpoonful of conſerve of roſes; then let him reſt quiet for a quarter of an houre; in the interim let that Venereal bed, or rather priſon, viz the ſweating place be heated, and in that hot houſe or dry bath prepare a tent, or a pavilion of thick linnen cloath, under which the patient may ſit naked in a low ſeat; under the ſame pavilion place a pot or veſſel ful of burning coales, on which by degrees caſt either the pouder, or the pills, or trochisks, that the fume from thence may be diſperſed through his whol body, and be received by the naked body of the patient; when the ſmoak abates, ſtrow freſh water on the coals, and continue ſo doing for a third or fourth part of an houre, for half or a whol houre, as the ſtrength of the patient can indure it. For we muſt carefully obſerve, that the patient faint not, which doth often happen; if it be collected by his ſtammering ſpeech, he muſt preſently be taken forth and be refreſht with fitting medicines. But that faintings may be prevented, the patient may be permitted to draw the cold ayre by intervals through a reed, and put forth his noſe without the pavilion.

But theſe ſuffumigations are applied either once or twice a day and indeed for three, ſix, or nine or more daies, according as the purgation doth ſooner or later ſucceed, for when this comes, or a looſneſs, we muſt preſently ceaſe from the ſuffumigation. After the patient hath ſweat ſufficiently under his tent. Being wrapt up in linnen he muſt be laid in his bed, that he may there continue his ſweat for an houre or two.

Particular ſuffumigations.

But particular ſuffumigations are not applyed to the whol body, but only to parts

parts exulcerated or affected with pain; but then Salivation is not moved, neither is that the intent, but it is used only to take away diseases and symptomes in the external parts, viz. for the falling of the haire suffumigatons are applyed to head; to the hands and Feet for their paines, and when they suffer Chaps and Clefts.

Internal Medicines causing Salivation. Last of al also a flux may be raised by taking Quick-silver inwards which though it was not known to *Fernelius*, yet it hath been taken notice of by the more modern, and Quick-silver is used to this end by *Rondeletius*, *Platerus*, and others. Such are those Pills called Barbarossa which have Quick-silver in them; but Physitians give Pills made of Mercury so, that at one dose there is given six or seven grains of Mercury, and they give them almost every day, and so long, til a flux followeth, and this cure they continue for thirty daies. Yet *Platerus* admonisheth that this kind of cure is not easily to be admitted, and not unless the Disease be inveterate, when other Medicines premised availe nothing. He also thinks that it is commodious, if it be presently cast forth by stool either by its own weight, or by the admission of other things; but if that be done, doubtless it will not cause Salivation; therefore 'tis better that Mercury what way soever prepared, be given in a less dose, than can cause purging either by vomit, or stool: viz. that the half, or third, or fourth part only of that dose be given, which otherwise is wont to be given to purge. For example sake, precipitate or Turbith Mineral is wont to be given at other times to vomit or purge to the weight of six grains, but if only three, or two, or one be given, by the continued use of it a flux is raised: and therefore he that would use such Medicines, shal do very right, if first of al he give the ful dose of the Mercurial Medicine to purge, the second day half so much, the third day a third part, the fourth day a fourth part, and continue so, til the spittle run, yet he need not so precisely observe it: and tis altogether safer in this disease to give those Mercurial Medicines, which do not move the belly with great violence, nor so great danger, yet by their continued use do provoke spitting.

CHAP. XXII.

Of the Diet to be observed in the Cure of the Venereal Disease.

Diet. The Air. A Diet in the cure of this Disease is strictly to be observed; first of al let the Aire in which the Patient is conversant, be hot, that insensible transpiration may be free, and sweating be not hindred, but rather promoted, yet not so hot, as to make faint. Therefore if need require let the patient keep himself in a warm chamber the whol time of his cure, and let not him expose himself to the free Ayre, unless it be somwhat hot by reason of the season of the year, and then not before noon. Yet they whose course of life wil not allow them to keep at home, let them guard themselves with Cloaths against external cold, and as much as they can shun the cold Air.

The Meat. Whether a slender diet be convenient in the Venereal disease. As concerning their Meat, there is much discourse indeed every where in this Disease concerning a slender Diet: but whenas a slender Diet is that which doth in some sort impair the strength, or which doth little preserve the enfeebled strength, such diet is only convenient in acute diseases, which whenas they last not long, the strength also somwhat debilitated is able to hold out to the end of them: but whenas the French pox is a Chronical disease, and the Cure is extended for many weeks, if the strength be dejected by a slender diet, it cannot hold out til the end of the disease. But that Physicians do chiefly feed their Patients with bread and raisons, I think this is the cause, because they would give the most simple food, and that of good juyce: for whenas variety of meats doth easily supply vitious humors, and flesh, and fish, and the like meats are more easily corrupted, then bread and raisons they

they prohibit the ſick variety of meats and fleſh, and would have them contented only with bread and raiſons: therefore that courſe and form of diet is to be obſerved which may ſuffice for the conſervation of ſtrength, though not to encreaſe it, but muſt no way oppreſs Nature. The meat alſo muſt be of good juyce, and ſimple, and which no waies affords matter for the generation of excrements, nor may call away Nature from reſiſting the Diſeaſe to the concoction of that. And therefore the patient muſt not be allowed above two diſhes, and meat muſt be given but twice aday; therefore when the ſick is prepared for the uſe of Medicines, let his diet be ſuch which may not impair his ſtrength, but rather preſerve it, nay, in ſome ſort encreaſe it, that the patient may afterwards be able to undergo the evacuations that ſhal be ordered, and a more ſlender diet: but when Sweaters or Quick-ſilver is adminiſtred, if the ſtrength wil bear it, we muſt uſe a more ſpare diet, leſt the vertue of the Medicines be hindered by plenteous nouriſhment, and let the ſuperfluous humors in the body be rather waſted, than heaped up, and let the paſſages by which they ought to be expelled, be al kept free and open: but let not the diet be too ſlender, leſt the ſtrength fail, but be able to hold out til the perfect cure of the diſeaſe, which is wont to be long firſt; and though ſomwhat is to be bated of the accuſtomary diet in the cure of this diſeaſe, yet that is not to be done preſently at the beginning, nor that change is not ſuddenly to be made; but the firſt eight daies by little and little, ſomwhat muſt be ſubſtracted from the accuſtomary diet; as alſo the laſt eight daies of the Cure, by degrees he muſt return to the former courſe of diet; yet we muſt alwaies have reſpect unto the ſtrength, and diligently conſider what that is able to endure, and we muſt have a greater care of that, than of the diſeaſe, as without which the Cure cannot be perfected.

But how much concerns the quantity of the meat, we muſt alſo reſpect the ſtrength, and the diſeaſe; for by how much the ſtrength is ſtronger, by ſo much 'tis able to ſuffer the leſs quantity of meat; but the ſtrength is demonſtrated by the habit of the body, the temperament, cuſtom, the age, ſeaſon of the year, the Country, and condition of the ſick; of which we have ſpoke in its proper place. In brief, as much as poſſible may be, ſomwhat muſt be bated of the accuſtomary food, which alſo the people of *India*, from whom the manner of curing this diſeaſe was derived to us, are reported to do; yet ſo, that alwaies reſpect be had unto the ſtrength: For if the patient be ſtrong, his Body of a cold conſtitution, that he can eaſily endure hunger; fleſh is not to be given any more after eight daies, but the patient muſt be content with bread and raiſons: but if the ſtrength be weak, the body ſlender, cholerick, ſome fleſh alſo may be granted, viz. the fleſh of Chickens, Hens, Partridges, Veal, Kid, and tender weather, as alſo Hens Eggs: but Hogs fleſh which is hard of digeſtion and diſtribution, and doth encreaſe the morbifick matter, is chiefly to be eſchewed; as alſo corruptible Fruits, and ſoft fiſhes: and truly the moſt commodious Food in this diſeaſe, is raiſons, and to be preferr'd before al other meats: beſides, they do not eaſily putrefie, and they afford good juyce and nouriſhment, and correct the malignity of the vitious Humors; whence ſome are of Opinion, That Raiſons in this Diſeaſe are not only meat, but medicine too; and eſpecially thoſe greater ones called *Cybebæ*, are moſt proficable, in which there is greater plenty of nouriſhment, and a more abſterſive and ſtrengthening faculty.

What kind of bread is to be given.

Concerning bread here is ſome doubt; many commend Biſket, nay admit of that only, which as we do not diſallow of in ſtrong bodies, which are moiſt and abound with flegm and excrements, being inclined rather to putrefaction, then aduſt, and in thoſe who have ſtrong teeth, and are accuſtomed to it: ſo alſo Bread once wel baked, and not too moiſt, may ſafely be permitted, as a nouriſhment moſt familiar to al Natures, Sexes, Ages and any ſeaſon of the year: neither muſt we cauſe any trouble to the patient, by forbidding common bread, if he deſire that rather then Biſket: nay Biſket ſeems to have its diſcommodities; for it ſtaies longer in the ſtomach, and is not ſo eaſily diſgeſted, and for the right diſgeſting of it there is need of a greater ſtrength of the ſtomach, which notwithſtanding for the moſt part in

thoſe that are ſick of the French Pox is very languid: beſides whenas in thoſe ſick of the Venereal Diſeaſe for the moſt part aduſt Humors do abound, by Bisket they are increaſed, on the contrary by common bread as being more moiſt they are made temperate, and at length more nouriſhment and good blood is afforded from it, as being beſt tempered, and in meats that which is beſt tempered, is to be preferred before that which is intemperate.

Many alſo do weigh out the quantity of the meat, and write that at one meale, four ounces of bread, and two or three ounces of fleſh wil ſuffice; but this cannot be ſo accurately obſerved in al men, but here there is no ſmal regard to be had to Natures and cuſtome.

Their drink. As concerning their drink, Authors alſo do not fully agree concerning that, ſome think nothing is to be given for drink but the decoction of Guajacum and Sarſaparilla, and wholly forbid wine, and think tis as much to be denied in this Diſeaſe, as in a pleuriſie, and are of opinion that wine is not ſo much as to be taſted of, the whol courſe of the cure; and *Fernelius* writes that wine is ſo averſe to Guajacum, as tis to Hemlock, *de lue Vener. cap.* 13, But for this cauſe chiefly they forbid Wine, becauſe the body and Humors which before were aduſt, and which grow hot by the uſe of Guajacum, by the uſe of wine are inflamed. But indeed this reaſon ſeems not ſufficient; for that Second decoction may heat as much, as wine, if it be thin and dilute and moderately drank: therefore the ſtrength is here to be conſidered, and whenas wine hath a notable agreement with our body, and doth ſtrengthen the heart and al parts, and eſpecially the ſtomach, is moſt eaſily diſtributed into the whol body, doth moſt ſpeedily nouriſh, and ſo fortifie Nature, that it may the better be able to oppoſe the Diſeaſe; the uſe of it is not ſimply to be rejected, eſpeciallly in thoſe who are leſs hot, and have a flegmatick body ſtuft up with crude Humors; yet the uſe of wine is ſo to be moderated, that it do no way inflame the body; but thoſe that can abſtaine from wine without any hurt, let them drink that ſecond decoction made of Guajacum and that plentifully at meals, and other times, when they are thirſty, yet they to, may ſomtimes take a drauft of wine to ſtrengthen the ſtomach. After the ſame manner if the Cure be ordered by Quick-ſilver, at that time when Evacuation is not yet made by the mouth and ſpitting, and the patient can chaw meat, he muſt be nouriſht with the beſt bread and good fleſh, and dilute wine muſt be given him: but when Salivation begins, and the Patient can chaw no longer, by reaſon of the louſneſs of his teeth, he muſt be nouriſht with ſuppings, and Barly Ptiſſan, and fleſh broaths with bread in it, and whenas an Inflamation of the jaws is feared, he muſt abſtain from wine. But after the cure is finiſht, though the Patient may reurne to his accuſtomary Diet, yet tis moſt convenient that he be nouriſhed with meats of good juyce, from which the beſt blood may be generated; for whenas the body is extenuated, and the veins emptied, we muſt wholly take care, that the body or Veſſels be not filled with vitious blood, but tis commodious that they be reſtored and filled with good. Neither muſt it be granted, that upon recovery he preſently ariſe from a ſmal quantity of meat, to a great, whenas al change to extreames is dangerous. And when it may be feared, that the Liver be heated by the uſe, of hot and dry Medicines, conſerve of Roſes, Violets, the pouders of the three ſaunders, Diarrhodon Abbat. muſt be given for ſome weeks; and let the courſes of diet, eſpecially in Summer time, be cooler, provided chiefly of Barley, the Whey of Goats Milk alſo is good. But if there be any fear, that ſome reliques ſtil and Malignant diſpoſition of this diſeaſe be remaining in the body,

Wine of Guajacum. give a Phyſick wine made with Guajacum and Sarſaparilla which is moſt commodiouſly prepared at vintage time, if to every Gallon of wine one pound of Guajacum, and three ounces of Sarſaparilla be added, and let cool with the new wine after the accuſtomed manner; but out of vintage time thoſe Medicines may only be ſteeped in Wine.

Sleep. Sleep is not only convenient in the night, but alſo a day times, when the Patients ſweat, it may be granted.

Al

Al violent exerciſe is hurtful; for whenas the ſtrength is impared by it and there is a greater tranſpiration and diſſolution of the body, thence it comes to paſs, that the patient cannot be content with that ſmaller portion of nouriſhment, which is wont to be uſed, in this Diſeaſe. But he muſt wholly abſtaine from Venery, as the greateſt enemy to this Diſeaſe: let ſweating in his Chamber be inſtead of exercile, and frictions which may be done with the ſame labor when the ſweat is wiped of: let the affection of his mind be compoſed to mirth. *Exerciſe.*

We muſt uſe our endeavor that the belly be kept looſe, and whenas by reaſon of the ſmal quantity of meat it is wont eaſily to be bound, it muſt be looſned with Clyſters, and Raiſons with leaves of Seny; nay by intervals to give ſome purgers is not only profitable, but alſo neceſſary: for though thoſe Laxatives do empty the firſt paſſages, yet becauſe they reach not to the more diſtant places, and by ſweaters only the thinner parts are Evacuated, but the thick are left behind, tis good after ſeven or ten daies, or after a longer ſpace, or need requires, to give a purging Medicine agreeable to the body of the Patient. *Excrements*

CHAP. XXIII.

Of the Cure of the Diſeaſes and Symptomes, which are wont to be joyned with the Venereal Diſeaſe.

WHenas divers Diſeaſes and Symptomes are wont to be joyned with the Venereal Diſeaſe, ſome are very large in explaining, what way thoſe Diſeaſes and Symptomes ought to be removed: but whenas thoſe Diſeaſes are for the moſt part manifeſt, and we have treated of their cure in former Books, I think it not worth my pains to treat at large of them in this place: and therefore I ſhal only alleage certain few things, and thoſe principally which are proper to this Diſeaſe, let the reſt be fetcht from their proper places.

Ulcers.

As concerning the Ulcers of the Yard eſpecially, which are very common in this Diſeaſe, we have ſpoke of them in general *Lib.* 3. *Pract. Part.* 9. *Cap.* 11. that we may add a little, the Root of the Yard being guarded with a defenſive Oyntment, the Ulcer muſt be waſht with the Decoction of Scabious, Horehound, and eſpecially Soape-wort, and Guajacum: afterwards let the Ulcer be anointed with ſome convenient unguent; thoſe Oyntments are chiefly profitable, which have Mercury in them, either a live, or ſublimate, or precipitate, or Cinnabar. And in Ulcers of the Yard, and rottenneſs of the Nut, as they ſpeak *Hercules Saxonia* writes there is no Medicine yet found out more profitable then precipitate: yet it ought not to be applied, but where there is a thick filth, but in clean Ulcers tis not to be uſed *Euſtachius Rudius Lib.* 5. *de Morb. occult. Cap.* 19. commends two Oyntments eſpecially. The firſt is: *The Cure of Venereal Ulcers in the Yard.*

Take *of Oyl of Roſes, ſweet Almonds, of each half an ounce; Oyntment of Rozin (which is made of pure oyl, Rozin of the Pine, Turpentine, and Yellow Wax) ſix drams; Mercury Precipitate, one dram; a little Wax. Mix al over the fire, except the Mercury precipitate, and taking them of the fire ſtir them carefully, til they are cool, then add the precipitate; yet according to the Nature of of the Ulcer, and the part affected with it, you may add more or leſs of the Mercury precipitate.* *The Mercurial Unguent.*

The

The other is this.

Take *of* Oyl *of ſweet* Almonds, Oyntment *of Roſes, of each three ounces: new wax, one ounce: Mercury precipitate half an ounce. Mix them.*

And thoſe Oyntments are good not only for the Ulcers of the Yard, but for French Ulcers of other parts, for the Diſeaſe called Ficus, ſwellings in the Fundaments, and Cruſts.

The Balſame of Mercury alſo is good, which is thus prepared.

Take *of Quick ſilver diſſolved in ſpirit of Nitre, to one pound of this diſſolution, pour of* Oyl *of Olives, three ounces. Let them ſtand and digeſt eight daies, afterwards ſeparate the oyl and keep it for your uſe.*

Or, Take *the Yelk of one Egg boyled hard, Honey one ounce. Mix them over a gentle fire, let them boyl, and add of Mercury Sublimate, half a dram.*

After mundification this Oyntment alſo may be uſed.

Take *of the beſt aloe, half an ounce; Crocus Martis, two drams; Frankincenſe, red Lead, of each one dram; Honey, half an ounce; Turpentine, two drams; the Yelk of an Egg. Mix them.*

Hidden Ulcers. But occult and hidden ulcers are wont to lie hid either bound up under the fore-skin, or elſe are in the internal paſſage of the Yard; if the Ulcer be under the fore-skin contracted, either a convenient medicine is to be injected by a ſyringe, and afterwards a tent dipt in oyntment is with a probe to be applied to the part affected or the fore-skin muſt be cut long waies, and neceſſary Medicines be layed to it.

Ulcers in the paſſage of the Yard. But if the ulcers be in the very paſſage of a mans Yard, they are hard to be cured, and have caruncles joyned with them, or fleſhy excreſſences, which hinder the emiſſion of the urine, therefore in a ſlight ulcer, we muſt inject Plantane water, in which Alum, litharge, and white Lead have been boyled, but in more grieous ulcers uſe this Liniment.

Take *of Mercury precipitate, one ounce; Mercury ſublimate, one dram; burnt lead, two drams. Grind them on a Marble ſtone, waſh them often with Roſe-water, and let them dry in the ſhade. Afterwards take of Hogs Fat, ſix ounces; White Wax, two drams. Let them be diſſolved over the fire, and add the pouder, and two ſcruples of* Camphire. *Make a Liniment, which muſt be beſmeared over a Candle made of five ounces of White Wax, and one ounce of Turpentine, and let the Candle be put up into the Urinary paſſage: or let ſome convenient plaiſter wrapt over a ſmal probe, be thruſt in: the Caruncle being taken away a drying and conſolidating oyntment muſt be caſt in.*

In the womb But if there be an ulcer in the womb, and that ſordid and creeping, the evil is incurable: but the ſlighter are cured by injections of Alum waters, in which Guajacum and Sarſaparilla is boyled, or with peſſaries of the juyce of Plantane, with pouder of Aloes, Bole Armenick, white Lead and the like. In a very ſordid ulcer the Oyntment Ægyptiacum may be added, or ſome Mercurial unguent: and at laſt a drying and conſolidating Oyntment may be uſed, as that of Tutty, or the like.

In more grieous ulcers ſuffumigations of the Womb are moſt profitable, but whenas the Pipes are overheated by the coals, theſe candels of *Hercules Saxonia* are good for a fume.

Take *of Styrax, Calamite, Beniamin, of each ſix drams; wood of Aloes, ſeven ſcruples; white Frankincenſe, one ounce; Ladanum, one dram and an half; Orrice, Cloves, of each two drams; Damask Roſes. ſix drams; Cinnabar, two drams; coales of Willow, half a pound; Aqua Vitæ as much as is ſufficient. Make Candels.*

By the ſame Medicines the ulcers of the Guts are Cured.

Ulcer of the Jaws. But to the ulcers of the jaws whenas ſuch Medicines cannot be applied make a Gargariſme of the Decoction of Sarſaparilla, the bark of Guajacum, the Leaves

of

of plantane, ſcabious, mirtle, red roſes, pomegranate pil, ſumach, to which ad a little alume the decoction may be made in water, and towards the end ad a little auſtere wine; after they are waſht, the ulcers muſt be cleanſed with oyl of ſulphur, adding a convenient liquor, or the compound water of alum, which is thus prepared.

Take of mercury ſublimate, roch allum, each one ounce; Grind them on marble ſtone, then ad to them juyce of Lemons three ounces, plantane water one pound and an half; roſe water nine ounces; Boyl them in a glaſs to the conſumption of the fifth part. *The compound water of alum.*

But you muſt have a care, that no part of ſuch medicines be ſwallowed down; butter of antimony ſo called is very efficacious, if the ulcer be gently touched with a piece of cotton moiſtned with the butter; but there is need of the ſame caution here: but whenas it cannot alwaies be prevented, but ſomewhat will ſlide into the ſtomach, and ſo ſuch medicines cannot be given ſafely enough; but on the contrary, other more gentle medicines are of little efficacy, theſe ulcers are hard to be cured, nay oftentimes are incurable; the ſolution of gold is more ſafely applied to theſe ulcers, prepared after this manner.

Take fifteen leaves of Gold, roch alume, nitere, Salt, each one ounce; grind them on marble, and poure to it ſome drops of ſpirit of vitriol; afterwards poure on it ſpirits of wine two fingers breadth above it, and let them ſtand in warm aſhes, laſt of al boyl, that the leaves of the gold may be diſſolved, and the ſpirits of wine grow yellow. Seperate the Spirits of wine by diſtillation, then poure more on again and digeſt it, and do this ſo often, til the ſpirits of wine diſſolve the gold, and the ſalts be left at the bottom; at laſt ſeperate the ſpirits of wine by diſtillation till it be dry, and pour on ſpirits of turpintine and digeſt it eight dayes in a warm place, till the gold be diſſolved, with this ſolution waſh the part affected twice every day.

Ulcers of the noſe are cured by errhines, or infuſions, by powders ſtrewed on it, by ſuffumigations made of Guajacum and cinnabar. *Of the noſe.*

Clefts of the hands and feet.

If there be chaps and clefts in the palmes of the hands and ſoles of the feet, let them be waſht with the decoction of Guajacum, ies barke, ſcabious water, germander, cinquefoile; and if there be hardneſs with it, take alſo marſh mallowes, or the root of wild cowcumber, afterwards uſe an ointment of butter, gooſe-greaſe or hens, ammoniacum, bdellium, apples, to which ad a little of unſlaked loome, or precipitate, or the oyntment propoſed before. *Clefts of the hands and feet.*

Or *Take of hogs-greaſe as much as you pleaſe, and put as much oyl of tartar to it, that by it the oyntment may be made ſharpe.*

If the evil yeeld not to theſe, apply a particular ſuffumigation of cinnabar; *Hercules Saxonia de lue vener. Cap.* 30. writes that he hath obſerved a certain woman who for eight years together had clefts in her hands, and had uſed the help of al the Venetian and Padua doctors to no purpoſe, was in a ſhort time eaſily cured with the juce of an herb, which ſome cal mugwort, others tanſie, being carefully dropt with a feather into al the clefts, and forbearing to waſh her hands at al, and that he hath found the ſame juyce profitable in ringworms and Crufty Ulcers.

Buboes.

Concerning buboes which are wont often to break forth in the groines in the Venereal diſeaſe, we muſt hold faſt this in general, that we do our endeavor, to help the expulſion of that matter, which nature aſſayes and indeavors to thruſt forth to the more ignoble parts; whenas ſometimes by this evacuation nature is wont to free *The cure of buboes.*

her

her self from al that disease; therefore if a buboe break not forth enough, and increaseth but tendeth not to suppuration, we must use our endeavor to draw it forth and suppurate it. Therefore the thigh of the same side must be rubbed, and scarified about the lower part, or else a vein must be opened above that place; but on the bubo it self there must be layd strong drawing medicines. As,

Take *of sagapen, Ammoniacum each three drams; opoponax, Bdellium, each two drams; mustard, pepper, Pellitory of Spain of each one dram; blacke sope half one ounce; mix them and with wax and pitch, make an emplaster.*

Yet if nature be oppresst with the plenty of virulent matter, that it cannot expel it self, then 'tis good to give a purge, that part of the burthen being taken off, nature may the easier expel the rest.

When the tumor hath broke forth enough, we must take care it be speedily opened, and be kept open a long while; that it may suppurate we must lay on it those maturatives, which are wont to be applied in inflamations, of the mucilage of mallows, marsh-mallows, wheat and flax seed, figs, hogs-grease, goose-grease, and the like; or the simples diachyled, or that compound with gums; when 'tis mattered, we must not expect that the bubo should open of it self, but it must be opened betimes, least the virulent humor detained there do hurt other parts; the tumor being opened the forementioned digestives and abstersives must be layd on, to which there will be need sometimes to add a little of mercury precipitate, and the ulcer must be kept open a long time.

Yet in cold buboes there is no such feare, that the matter should ascend to other parts, but if purgers and sweaters, and proper alexipharmaca be applied, sometimes the bubo doth wholly vanish without any danger.

Gummosities and Nodes.

Truely Such tumors and nodes, which do rise in places void of flesh, as the forehead, the skul, and the outward part of the legs, do oftentimes vanish, if the disease be perfectly cured; especially after the use of sarsaparilla, which is most effectual in discussing of these diseases; and after the use of mercurial unctions, which are applied to such tumors yet if after the cure is inded such tumors and nodes remain, things emmollient, attenuating, and digesting must be laid udon them, and that are strong, as the roots of wild cowcumber, bdellium, sagapen, opoponax, and cheifly ammoniacum, or diachylon with gums, or a mercurial cerote; this is good and proved by experience.

Take *Of the plaister diachylum with gums one ounce; simple diachylum half an ounce; mercury killed with spittle one ounce, oyl of guajacum as much as is sufficient make a plaster.*

Or, Take *of Ammoniacum, Opoponax, Gume of ivy dissolved in aqua vitæ, bens and goose grease each one ounce and half; the marow of a calfs leg one ounce ladanum, styrax, calamite, and liquid each two drams; the pouder of hermodactil roots orrice, each three drams; cinnabar one dram; quick silver mix with turpintine six drams; oyl of lillies and wax as much as is sufficient, make a cerote.*

Also the lavatories made of mercury, mentioned before, are good in these tumors.

If these things do not satisfie, the tumors must be opened with caustick, especially if they be not in the joynts, nerves, tendons, and the place must be kept open, and the bone underneath, which for the most part is hurt, must be scraped.

Smal-

Smal Bunchings and puſtles.

Bunchings alſo and ſmal puſtles, thymi, verrucæ, favi, as in other parts of the body, ſo especially they are wont to riſe in the head, about the arſehole, yard and privities in the french pox: which though ſometimes after a univerſal cure they vaniſh of their own accord, yet ſometimes alſo they require a peculiar cure. *Bunchings and puſtles.*

This ſort of bunchings which are in the head, muſt be waſhed often with the decoction of guajacum, and cheifly of the barke of it and ſarſaparilla; ſome uſe oyl of ſcorpions and vipers: to which if they yeeld not, they muſt be anointed with ſome mercurial unguent, or the compound water of allum, prepared of roch allum and mercury ſublimate, which ſome alſo prepare thus.

Take *Of roch allum, Mercury ſublimate each two drams: grind them, ad of plantane and roſe water each one pound: Boyl them in a glaſs to the conſumption of half, afterwards let them ſtand fifteen dayes that the allum and mercury may ſink to the bottom, and let the cleare water be poured off, and kept for your uſe.*

If the puſtles be in the mouth, uſe waſhing of the mouth with the decoction of guajacum, or if there be an inflamation, with chalybeate whey, to which may be added rotes and plantane; and if the puſtles be foule, ad ſcabious and ten graines of alum to every pint of the whey or decoction. The compound alum water even now deſcribed is moſt profitable; yet in puſtles of the mouth, tis not ſafe to uſe that alone, but it muſt be diluted with a treble or quadruple quantity of roſe and plentane water. But the puſtles of the arſehole and yard, muſt every day be often fomented with a linnen cloth wet in the decoction of guajacum and ſarſaparila; for the ſame the alum water even now deſcribed is very good: or if the evil be ſtubborn, ſome ointment muſt be laid upon them, with pouder of precipitate, ſuch as were propoſed before, or precipitate mixt with foure times as much of the white of an eg; wch layed upon ſuch excreſcenſes of the arſehole, in 24. houres ſpace extracts and roots them out: afterwards drying and cooling things muſt be layed on. Some cut off the french warts with Sciſſers, and afterwards take out the root with the medicines even now propoſed: alſo if the extream part of the wart be toucht with oyl of vitriol, it dries up and falls off.

Falling of the Hair.

The falling of the haire wich is joyned with this diſeaſe, doth happen rather from the knawing off, of the roots of the hair, than from other cauſes, both in the head and beard which that it may be cured, generals being premized firſt the hair muſt be ſhaved off, if the patient wil allow it: for al do not admit of it, eſpecially religious men, whoſe diſeales muſt be kept private as *Herculeſ Saxonia* writes *de lue Vener. Cap.* 38. then aſtringent things muſt not be uſed, by the uſe of which the evil is made worſe, and ulcers and paines of the head do follow upon it the matter being retained: but thoſe things rather are to be uſed, which do diſcuſs and cleanſe away that vitious matter which eates of the haires: as a lye in which have bin boyled Guajacum and its bark, ſarſaparilla, leaves of fumitory, betony, ſcabious, ſouthernwood, wormwood penyroyal, aſarabaca, agrick: and if the skin be dry, mallowsmarſhmallowes, pellitory of the wal muſt be added: then the other medicines muſt be applied, which are propounded *lib.* 5. *pract. par.* 3. *ſect.* 2. *cap.* 3. *and* 4. al which if they ſatisfie not, particular ſuffumigation for the head and face, muſt be prepared of quick-ſilver and cinnabar, by which remedy in the ſpace of ſix or nine dayes, the falling of the haire is ſtayed. But for the moſt part, if univerſal purgers, and emptiers be applied, and the matterknawing the haires be taken away and proper lotions be uſed, afterwards haire doth ſucced of its owne accord in the place of that that fel away, ſee more in the place alledged *de Alope. et Capil. defue.* *Falling of the hair.*

Pains.

The Cure of pains. Alſo moſt grievous pains do often afflict thoſe who are ſick of the Venereal Diſeaſe; but they are moſt commodiouſly taken away by medicines proper to this diſeaſe: but Sarſaparilla is chiefly good to take them away; therefore if the pains be very urgent, on the firſt daies you muſt take a greater quantity of Sarſaparilla, and a leſs of Guajacum: and though the matter being diſſolved and melted, the pains be encreaſed til the ſecond week, becauſe Sarſa hath an extraordinary attenuating faculty, without any aſtriction of the bowels; yet we muſt not deſiſt from the uſe of it, but the patient muſt be told of it: afterwards when the pain is ceaſed, we may encreaſe the quantity of Guajacum, and China Root may be added alſo to mitigate thoſe pains: but by intervals, almoſt every week, give proper purging medicines; but to the places pained apply fomentations of Guajacum, Leaves of Penyroyal, Sage, Roſemary, Chamomel flowers: Oyl of white Lillies alſo, of Rue, Scorpions, Vipers, Guajacum, are good: if the pain be very urgent, we may give alſo Laudanum Opiate. Upon the uſe of al which, if the pain depart not, thoſe mercurial Unguents, which we propounded before in the univerſal Cure, muſt be anointed on the places pained; or by the addition of wax make Cerotes of them, and lay them on the parts pained, or ſome other plaiſters above propounded; to which alſo may be added, Caſtor, Hermodactil Roots, Orice, and other Arthritical Medicines; eſpecially *Vigo*'s Cerote of Frogs is of good uſe to lay aſleep thoſe pains: and this Cerot of *Platerus* is good too.

Take *of Quick-ſilver three ounces; ſtir it with one ounce of Turpentine waſht with Aqua vitæ; adding Bears greaſe, the marrow of a Calves Legg, of each an ounce and half: Oyl of white Lillies, Chamomel, Dill, bayes, worms, or Foxes, of each half an ounce: Spike or Turpentine two drams: Euphorbium, Frankincenſe, of each half an ounce: Liquid Styrax ſix drams: Hermodactils two drams: Caſtor one dram: Wax as much as is ſufficient. Make a Cerote.*

Alſo the aforeſaid Lavatories prepared of Mercury, formerly propounded, applied to the parts pained, eſpecially the Legs, do allay the pains.

The Running of the Reins.

The Cure of the Running of the Reins. The Running of the Reins, which alſo is frequent in this Diſeaſe, is not to be ſtopt at the beginning, nor raſhly: whenas Nature doth endeavor to purge the virulent matter through that place, which if it be ſuppreſt flies up to the Head, nay infects the whol Body: but if it do not ſtop when the decoction hath been uſed til the third week, let the Region of the Loyns, and Perinæum, be anointed with aſtringent Oyls, made of Maſtich, Mint, Roſes, Mirtle.

But let Medicines be given of the ſeed of the Chaſt-tree, Lettice, Hemp, to which add a double quantity of the pouder of Sarſaparilla: and thoſe Medicines may be given either in the form of a pouder, or with Syrup of Water of Lillies, be reduced into the form of an Electuary. 'Tis good alſo if every day there be given two or three drams of Water-lillies, with one or two ſcruples of Turpentine: Some alſo do give for this Running of the Reins, green Mercury precipitate, or the Rozin of Guajacum and Turpentine, which is waſht with Violet Water, and adding the Yolk of an Egg, and the Decoction of Sarſaparilla, 'tis reduced into the form of a Potion.

A Conſumption.

A Conſumption. At laſt it often happens, that either by the violence of the Diſeaſe, or the Cure not rightly ordered, the ſick come into a deep Conſumption: For the Cure of which, the common Medicines for a Conſumption wil not ſuffice, but there is need of

of Specificks. Which kind of Remedy *Audovicus Septalius animadverſ. Lib, 7. n. 214.* doth propound, and writes that by it, he hath wholly freed very many from this diſeaſe, and from ſuch a Conſumption. But 'tis prepared thus.

Take *of choice Sarſaparilla cut ſmal, ſix ounces; infuſe it twenty four hours in fifteen pound of warm water, in a warm place, in a veſſel ſhut: afterwards boyl it with a gentle fire till five pound be waſted: then with a ſpoon perforated take out the Sarſaparilla, and bruiſe it in a marble morter: then caſt it into the ſame water again, adding two pound of lean Veal, Coriander ſeed prepared one ounce, or inſtead of it, ſo much of the ſhavings of Guajacum, or three drams of yellow Sanders ſliced, according to the condition of the Patients body and humors: and the veſſel being covered, let it boyl again with a gentle fire, till there remain five pound; and towards the end aromatize it with three drams of choice Cinnamon: then ſtrain it, ſqueezing it hard, and keep it for your uſe in a glaſs or glazed veſſel.*

Of which let the patient take in a morning four hours before meat, ſix or ſeven ounces; but in the evening three hours before ſupper, four or five ounces: And if it be Summer, or a Hectick Feaver is joyned with it, he adds of Barley excoriated or husked, four ounces: and he continues the uſe of this Medicine many dayes, ſometimes to the hundreth day.

Let the reſt be ſought for out of the Cure of the particular Diſeaſes, and out of *Fallopius de morb. Gal.* who hath writ at large concerning the Diſeaſes and Symptomes which are joyned with this Diſeaſe.

FINIS.

Mris. *Culpepers* Information, Vindication, and Teſtimony, concerning her Husbands Books to be Publiſhed after his Death.

SO great are the Afflictions wherewith our Heavenly Father hath been pleaſed to exerciſe me his poor Handmaid, that I have not only lived to ſee my dear Husband, (the Stay and Solace of my Life) taken from me: but it hath been my hard hap alſo to ſee his Reputation, and Memory (which wil be dear to al Poſterity, for the Works he hath written for the Common Good of this Nation) blemiſhed, and Eclipſed, by the covetous and unjuſt Forgeries of one, who, though he calls himſelf Nathaniel, is far from being an Iſraelite in whom there is no guile; who was not content to publiſh a Hodgpodg of undigeſted Collections, and Obſervations of my deer Husband deceaſed, under the Title of Culpeper's laſt Legacy; but to make the Deceit more taking, he ſteeled his Forehead ſo far, and braſed it ſo hard, as not to be aſhamed to forge two Epiſtles, one in mine, and the other in my Husbands Name; of the penning of which, he nor I, never ſo much as dreamed: And yet he impudently affirmeth in my Name, that my Husband laid a ſevere Injunction on me to publiſh them for the general good, after his deceaſe; and that they are his laſt Experiences in Phyſick and Chyrurgery. And in the Title of his Book, he ſaid, They are the choyceſt, and moſt profitable ſecrets, reſolved never to be publiſhed til after his Death. Al which Expreſſions in the Title and Epiſtles, are as falſ as the Father of Lyes; and every word in them, forged and feigned. And he knew wel enough, that no diſcreet, honeſt man, that was a friend to my Husband, or me, would ever have agreed to ſuch infamous and diſhoneſt practices; and therefore I deſire all Courteous Readers of the Writings of my Husband, to take notice of this Deceit, and to aſſure themſelvs that it never entred into his head, to publiſh ſuch an undigeſted Gallimoffery, under the promiſing and ſolemn Name of his Laſt Legacy, and that whereby he gained his Reputation in the World, as the Impoſter makes him ſpeak in his forged Epiſtle. And I deſire any in different Reader, that hath obſerved my Husbands loſty, and Maſculine manner of expreſſing himſelf in his Prefaces, and Epiſtles Dedicatory, whether in caſe he had been minded or diſpoſed to take ſo ſolemn a farewel of the world, as the Forger makes him to do; whether, I ſay, he would have done it in ſuch a whining faſhion, and ſo in the Stile of a Balade-maker, as to ſay, And now, if it pleaſe Heaven to put a period to my Life, and Studies, that I muſt bid al things under the Sun farewel: Farewel to my dear Wife and Child, farewel Arts and Sciences, farewel al worldly Glories, adiew Readers. Certainly my Husband would have been far more ſerious, and materi-al, in ſuch a caſe, as any diſcreet man wil Judg. Neither can it be thought, that in ſuch a ſolemn Valediction, he could poſſibly forget his wonted reſpects to the Colledg of Doctors, to whom he did ſo frequently addreſs himſelf, in divers of his writings.

Courteous Reader, I ſhal ſay no more touching the abuſe of the Book-ſeller, only to prevent (as much as concerns me) thy being abuſed for the future, know, That my Husband left ſeventy-nine Books of his own making, or Tranſlating, in my hand, and I have depoſited them into the hands of his, and my much honored Friend, Mr. Peter Cole, Book-ſeller, at the Printing-Preſs, neer the Royal Exchange (for the good of my Child) from whom thou mayeſt expect to receive in print, ſuch of them as ſhal be thought fit to ſerve thee in due ſeaſon, without any Diſguiſes or Forgeries, unto which I do hereby give my atteſtation. Alſo my Husband left ſeventeen Books compleatly perfected, in the hands of the ſaid Mr. Cole, for which he paid my Husband in his life-time: And Mr. Cole is ready and willing (on any good occaſion) to ſhew any of the ſaid ſeventy-nine Books, or the ſeventeen, to ſuch as doubt thereof.

And if any Perſon ſhal queſtion the Truth of any part of this Vindication, or Epiſtle; if they wil take pains to come to me, I wil face to face, juſtifie the truth of every word thereof, as I have ſubſcribed my Hand thereunto in the preſence of many witneſſes.

I proteſt in the preſence of the great God, the ſearcher of al hearts, before whom Mr. Brooks and I muſt one day give an account of al our Actions: That I have not publiſhed this Epiſtle or Vindication, out of any diſ-reſpect to Mr. Brooks (for I much reſpect the man, and would be glad to ſerve him to my power) but only to cleer my Husband from the folly and weakneſs caſt upon him by the means above expreſſed. And out of tenderneſs to Mr. Brooks, I firſt tried other means of keeping, and afterwards of repairing my Husbands Credit, and then ſtayed long to ſee if he would repair (in any meaſure) the wrong done to my Husband, and my ſelf. I deſire to be:

From my Houſe, next door to the Red Lyon in Spitale-fields, *October*, 18. 1655.

Your Servant (in, and for the Truth)

Alice Culpeper.

Mris. *Culpeper* did the 18. of *October*, ſubſcribe this Epiſtle in Vindication of her Husband's Reputation, before Ten Witneſſes, as ſhe had done another Epiſtle on the ninth of *October*, almoſt in the ſame words with this, except neer the Concluſion.

8 58 NOV

A

PHYSICAL DICTIONARY,

Expounding ſuch words, as being terms of Art, or otherwiſe derived from the Greek and Latin, are dark to the Engliſh Reader.

This Dictionary is of uſe in the reading of all other Books of this Nature, in the Engliſh Tongue.



LONDON:

Printed by *Peter Cole* in Leaden-Hall, and are to be ſold at his Shop, at the ſign of the Printing-preſs in Cornhil. 1655.



A

Phyſical Dictionary.

A

A Pophlegmatiſms, Medicines drawing flegm out of the Head.

Agarick trochiſcated, See the *London Diſpenſatory* in Engliſh.

Apozeme, A Medicine made of the Broth of divers Herbs, and other Ingredients; unto which ſomtimes certain Syrups are added.

Animal Faculties, The Powers of Hearing, Seeing, Smelling, Taſting, Feeling; of Imagination, Underſtanding, Memory, Will, Going, Standing, and all Voluntary Motion.

Aranea Tunica: The Cobweb-Coat, or Tunicle

Abdomen: The Belly, or Paunch

Apoplectick Water: Good for the Apoplexy

Autumn: Harveſt, the Fall of the Leaf

Actual Heat: is Heat that may be felt by the hand, ſuch as is in Fire, and all things heated thereby; or in the Body of one in a Feaver: It is oppoſed to *Potential Heat*, viz. That cannot be felt by the Hand, as the Heat in Pepper, in Muſtard ſeed, in a Flint, in unſlaked Lime: and the contrary of *Actual Cold*.

Affected: Troubled, Diſeaſed: An Affect, a Diſeaſe, Trouble, Diſorder.

Aquæ Acidulæ: The Spaw Waters, like thoſe of *Epſam*, *Barnet*, and *Tunbridg*, with us.

Abſurdities: Unreaſonable things

Acrimony: Sharpneſs, ſuch as in Muſtard, Pepper, and in divers Humors of the Body which cauſe ſickneſs.

Aſcent: Going up.

Apply: lay on.

Actually Cold: ſee *Actual Heat*.

Augment: Encreaſe.

Accidentally: By hap, by chance, upon occaſion.

Adventitious: not Natural, but ſpringing from external cauſes.

Attracting: drawing together, or cauſing.

Attracts: draws to.

Accident: ſomthing that happens upon a Diſeaſe; *vide* Symptome.

Adſtriction: binding together, ſhutting up.

Antecedent Cauſe: foregoing Cauſe, is oppoſed to the Conjunct Cauſe. Abundance of Flegm in the Body is the Antecedent Cauſe of the Optick Nerves being ſtopped by flegm; but the Flegm in the ſaid Nerves, is the Conjunct Cauſe &c. of other Diſeaſes.

Articulate Voyce: A diſtinct Voyce, ſuch as that of Man-kind, termed Speech.

Abſtergent: Cleanſing away filth.

Acceſs: Addition, joyning to, help, or company.

Afflux: flowing to.

Aſtringents: Medicines that bind together, and ſtraiten the Pores and Paſſages of the Body.

Aſtriction: binding, knitting together.

Anodines: Medicines which aſſwage pain.

Anaſtomoſis: an opening of the Mouths of Veins, by which means Blood iſſues.

Aſtringe: bind, faſten, cloſe.

Acute: ſharp, violent: a Diſeaſe is termed Acute, when it quickly changeth to health or death.

Aduſtion: burning: *Aduſt*, burned. Blood is ſaid to be aduſt, when by reaſon of extraordinary heat, the thinner parts are evaporated, and the thicker remain dreggy and black, as if they were burnt.

Aſthmatical: troubled with ſhortneſs of breath.

Atteſt: witneſs, declare.

Aneuriſm: a Swelling cauſed by a dilatation of the Arteries external Coat, the internal being broken.

Axungia: Greaſe.

Atrophy: want of Nouriſhment, when the Body pines away.

Attenuating Medicaments: are ſuch as make thick Humors thin.

Axiom, or *Theoreme*: an acknowledged, undoubted Truth.

Adjacent: lying neer, bordering upon.

Aromatized: Spiced, perfumed.

Anus, the Fundament.

Aſtringe, to bind.

Atomes: ſmal Moats hardly viſible, and that cannot admit of any diviſion.

Adverſe: contrary to, of a contrary Nature.

Augment, is the time of a Diſeaſe, while it grows ſtill more vehement, until it comes to its height, which is called the ſtate of the Diſeaſe, and then the Augment ceaſes, becauſe the Diſeaſe is now at a ſtand, and encreaſeth no more.

Alteratives, are ſuch Medicines as only change

the qualities of the Body and its Humors, by heating, cooling, moistening, drying, &c. they are opposed to such as do cause Vomiting, Purging, Sweating, Transpiration, &c.

Adjuncts of a Disease, are qualities, dispositions, and Symptomes annexed thereunto.

Aliments, are what ever is taken into the Body to nourish the same; as all kinds of Meat and Drink.

Adjuvant Causes, are such as serve and assist the principal Cause; so is the Taylors Boy an adjuvant Cause assistant to his Master, the principal Cause of a Garment. So in Diseases, whatever assists the Primary Cause, is termed an Adjuvant Cause.

Alexipharmical things, are such as resist Plague, Poyson, and all venemous Diseases.

B

Balneum Mariæ; the manner of stilling or digesting, when the Glass containing the Ingredient, stands in a Vessel of Water, with Fire made under it.

Bolus: A Morsel; a Medicine to be taken from a Knifes point.

Bellilucanæ Thermæ: Hot Baths in *France*, so called from the place where they are.

Breathing of a Vein; Blood-letting, properly if but little Blood be taken away.

Bronchia; the hollow gristly Pipes that spread themselves through the Body of the Lungs, being Branches of the Wezand or Wind-pipe.

C

Caruncle; a little bit of Flesh that grows and sticks out on any part of the Body.

Catarrh; a Defluxion or Distillation of Humors from the Brain, into any part of the Body, especially the Lungs, causing Coughs.

Condense, to make thick.

Contention; Digestion in the Stomach, &c.

Cataphora; a deep sleep.

Cupping-glass, is that which Physitians use to draw out Blood with Scarrifying of the Skin, Glasses fastened with lighted Tow or Flax.

Catalepsis; Congelation, or stifness of the Body.

Causticks, are Medicines which burn the Skin and Flesh to make Issues, &c.

Coronal Suture; the Seam which runs through the Crown of the Head, where the two sides of the Skul close.

Crude; Raw, undigested: So Meat not well boyled or rosted, is Crude; and Blood and other Humors not well digested by the Stomach, Liver, &c. are called Crude.

Conjunctiva; a Coat of the Eye, so called because it sticks fast unto the Eye, and keeps it in its place.

Actual *Cautery*, is burning with a red hot Iron.

Congelation, freezing together, stifness with Cold.

Constipation, stopping up.

Chollick, pain and griping of the Gut *Colon*; and because the pain proceeding from the Stone, is very like thereunto, it is called the Stone-Collick.

Cerates, Medicines made of Wax, and other Materials, stiffer than an Oyntment, and softer than a Plaister, to be applied to divers parts.

Cephalick, or *Capital Opiate*, Head Electuary.

Cephalick Pills, Head-pils.

Cephalick Plaister, Head-Plaister.

Collyrium, an Eye-salve.

Convulsion, a drawing together, a shrinking together.

Contracted, drawn together.

Cornea, a Coat of the Eye like the Horn of a Lanthorn. See *Vestingus* in English.

Chyrurgeon, Surgeon.

Circumvolution, turning round like a wheel or whirl-wind.

Compression, thrusting or squeezing together.

Contusion, Bruising, a Bruise.

Cold seeds, See the English Dispensatory.

Compress, thrust together, squeeze.

Condense, thicken, condensing, thickening; a Condensation, a thickening.

Coarctation, a straitening, thrusting together.

Contraction, drawing together, shrinking up, &c.

Contracted, drawn together.

Confirmed, A Disease is said to be confirmed, when it is perfect, setled, and hath taken root.

Couched with a Needle, that is, taken away with a Needle, or pressed down with a Needle.

Centre, is properly the middle point within a Circle, from whence all Lines drawn to the Circumference, are equal; it is taken figuratively for the middle of any thing.

Continuity, the oneness, the joyning together without interruption.

Compact, firmly united, wel thrust and crowded together. So Gold, Lead, and other Mettals, are said to be compact, compared to Cork, Spunge, and light Wood which are not compact, but hollow and pory.

Concocted: An Humor is said to be concocted when it is either turned into good Blood, as sweet Flegm is wont to be; or when it is separated from the Mass of blood, and made fit for expulsion.

Concoction; a boyling, or boyling together: when the meat in the Stomach is changed into a substance like Almond Cream; that change is called Concoction.

Cataplasm; a Pultis.

Cavity; hollowness.

Crisis; by bleeding at the Nose, or by vomit, page 57. that is, a breaking away of the Disease by Natures Conquest of the Cause, which

which she drives forth by the Nose or Mouth.

Crystalline Humor; a part of the Eye which resembles a little Cake of Crystal; if you open a Calves Eye carefully, you may take it out whol.

Conus, is a Geometrical Figure, representing a Sugar-Loaf, or an Extinguisher; which Physiosophers make use of when they teach how the Eye perceives its Object.

Connatural; which is bred with a Man; as he that is born with one Eye, or but two Fingers: such a Disease is termed Connatural.

Convex; bunching out like the back-side of a Buckler or Platter.

Conjunct Cause of a Disease, is the immediate Cause; so Flegm stopping the Optick Nerves is the Conjunct Cause of Blindness; whereas taking of cold, swimming in cold water, eating flegmatick meats, sleeping after Dinner, were the remote, or far distant Causes, &c.

Constriction, a drawing together, a straitening.

Congestion; a gathering together or heaping up.

Cumulation; the same with Congestion. These words are opposed to defluxion. When a a part is diseased by an Humor sent from another part, it is termed Defluxion; when the Humor is first gathered in the part it self, by reason of its own proper weakness, it is termed Congestion or Cumulation.

Conjoyned Matter; see *Conjunct cause*.

Corroding; biting, gnawing, eating.

Consolidation; closing up of a Sore or Wound, &c.

Carus; foulness, rottenness, corruption of a Bone.

Cicatrize; to bring to a Scar, to close up a wound or sore.

Commissura; the Mold of the Head, where the parts of the Skul are united.

Cavous; hollow.

Critical Evacuations by bleeding, stool, &c. are such as Nature procures to drive out her vanquisht Enemy; and are means and tokens of Recovery. Symptomatical Evacuations are such as proceed from the vehemency of the Disease, before Nature hath mastered the offending Humor, and they prove bad tokens.

Calcine; to burn to Ashes in a Crucible, &c.

Corrode; eat, fret; Corroding, eating, fretting.

Cronical; long lasting.

Cacochymical; abounding with evil Humors.

Critical day; See Day of Judgment.

Corrosion; a fretting, eating asunder.

Conjugation; a pair of Nerves is so called.

Cardialgia; Heart-burning.

Crudities; Rawness, indigestion.

Chylus; a Liquor like a Posset, into which all Meats are changed in the Stomach, if the Digestion be good.

Cydoniatum; Conserve of Quinces, or Marmalade.

Cardiogmos; Heart-burning.

Carminating Medicines; are such as do break Wind.

Constringe; draw together.

Carminative; expelling Wind.

Chalibeat Vinegar, and *Chalibeate Water*, are such as have steel quenched in them.

Carabe; Amber.

Cronical Diseases; such as usually last very long, as Quartan Agues, Stone, Dropsies, &c.

Crystal of Tartar; Cream of Tartar.

Consistence; Body, or Substance.

Catheter; an hollow Silver Instrument to thrust into the Bladder when the Urine is stopt by a stone, to thrust back the stone, and let out the Urine.

Complication of Diseases; when divers Diseases are in the Body at the same time, especially if they depend one upon another.

Coalition; healing up, growing together of a Wound or Ulcer; or any Part that ought to be open, as of the Privity in some Girls.

Coincide; is to happen together at one and the same time.

Cachectical Persons, are such as have their whol Bodies blown up with a soft and moist swelling, with the color of the Face white, or lead-colored. Also their Legs especially swell, and their Face is bloated.

Coindicants, are divers things in a Disease or Patient, which plead for one and the same Remedies. So in a putrid Feaver, the person being full bodied, and the season warm also, the person lusty and yong: The Feaver, the fulness of Blood in the Patient, his Age and strength, and Season of the Year, are Coindicants that he must be let Blood.

Contra-indicants, are divers considerations that dissuade a Remedy: As when in a putrid Feaver, old Age, Winter Season, Weakness, are Contra-indicants, that dissuade from Blood-letting; which the Feaver simply considered, doth indicate, or perswade and hint out.

Coction of Humors, is their being separated from the Mass of good Blood, and fitted for expulsion: As when thin Humors are moderately thickened, and tough clammy Humors are cut and divided. This Coction of Humors is known by the Urine, when it hath a light, even, and smooth setling, &c.

Causa sine qua non; The Cause without which a thing cannot be, though it be not the principal Cause thereof: So a Taylors Shop-boord is a Cause *sine qua non*, without which a Garment cannot be made, though himself and the stuff, the shape and the end be principal Causes.

Commemorative; bringing to remembrance what is past.

Cicatrize; is to bring unto a Scar, which is done when Wounds and Ulcers are healed up.
Contumacy; ſtubbornneſs, rebellion.

D

*Diuretick*s; Provokers of Urine.
Diagnoſis; the knowledg of a Diſeaſe.
Diſtillation; a flowing down of thin Humors from the Brain into ſeveral parts.
Decoction; the Liquor wherein things are boyled, the Broth of Herbs, and other Medicaments.
Diagnoſticks; the Signs to know what Diſeaſe a Patient hath.
Defluxion; the ſame with Diſtillation: alſo a running together of Humors into any part, cauſing pain or ſwelling, &c.
Delirium; Dotage, raving, talking idlely, in time of ſickneſs eſpecially.
Diarrhœa; a ſimple Looſneſs, without Inflamation of the Guts, any extream pain, or voiding of Blood.
Diaphœnicon; ſee the *London Diſpenſatory* in Engliſh.
Diacatholicon, Diacarthamum; ſee the Diſpenſatory.
Diet; this ſignifies in many places a Diet drink.
Diminiſhed; Leſſened.
Diminution; a leſſening.
Diſcuſs; diſpel inviſibly: as a Plaiſter that makes a ſwelling go away without breaking, is ſaid to diſcuſs the ſame: becauſe the Matter of the ſwelling is not ſeen to come away; but is turned into ſteems and vapors, and partly drinks up the ſubſtance of the Plaiſter, and ſo vaniſheth inviſibly.
Declination of a Diſeaſe; is the breaking of the Diſeaſe, when it begins to tend to health, which is known by the Symptomes growing more gentle.
Diverting Medicines; which turn aſide the Humor cauſing the diſeaſe, ſo that it flow not into the part offended.
Diſlocation; putting out of its place.
Derived; turned away from.
Diffuſe; ſpread abroad.
Diſſipated; ſcattered abroad.
Demonſtrated; cleerly proved from undeniable Arguments.
Depravations; marrings, ſpoilings, hurtings.
Depreſſed; made flat or hollow, dented in.
Diſtemper; any exceſs of the four firſt qualities, Heat, Cold, Moiſture, Dryneſs. There are reckoned four ſimple or ſingle diſtempers, viz. a Hot, a Cold, a Moiſt, a Dry: and four compound, viz. Hot and Moiſt, Hot and Dry, Cold and Moiſt, Cold and Dry.
Dilated; widened.
Dilatation; widening.
Debility; weakneſs.
Diſtortion; writhing, wreſting, crooking.
Diſſipating: ſpread abroad, driving away.
Derivations: drawing an offenſive Humor from the part diſeaſed, to ſome other part neer it.
Digeſtives: Medicines which prepare evil Humors for to be driven out by Nature.
Diſſolved: melted, conſumed away. It is uſed of ſwellings that are brought down by Oyntments or Plaiſters; and in other caſes when the Humor cauſing the Diſeaſe, is inviſibly driven away.
The *Drum* mentioned in page 96. is a pretty little hollow bone in the Ear, covered with a thin Skin like a Drum, which being beaten upon by another little bone like a mallet, doth cauſe ſounds to be heard in the Ear. See *Veſlingus* his Anatomy in Engliſh.
Diapedeſis; is an iſſuing of the blood through the Pores of the Veins.
The *Day of Judgment*, or *Critical day*: is that day in feavers eſpecially wherein it appears, on which ſide ſentence is given, whether on the Plantifs, viz. the Diſeaſes; or on Natures, the Defendant; ſo that by ſome Evacuation, or ſwelling, or other great mutation to the better or worſe, it appears whether the Patient is like to recover or not.
Diſtention: ſtretching.
Depraved: marred, ſpoiled.
Dilatation: widening, opening.
Diaphragma: the Midrif.
Dyſpnœa: ſhortneſs of breath.
Dyſentery: a Bloody-flux.
Diagrydiates: Medicines that have Scammony or Diagrydium in them.
Diſſolution of Natural Heat: a decay of Natural Heat.
Diaphoretick Sweats: which are cauſed by Nature, oppreſſed with a malignant Humor, and forcibly driving the ſame out by Sweat.
Dung-gate; the Arſe-hole.
Diſtillations by deſcent: are when the Liquor which comes from the Materials ſtilled, doth not riſe up above the ſaid Materials, as in ordinary diſtillation; but falls down under the Materials ſtilled, which are therefore laid upon a Grate, that the bottom of the Veſſel may be empty, and free to receive the diſtilled Liquor.

E

Excrement: the Dregs of Digeſtion in the Body, voided by Dung, Urine, and Sweat.
Evacuation: an emptying or voiding forth, purging.
Epiſpaſtick: a Plaiſter to draw a Bliſter, called alſo a Veſicatory, or any ſtrong drawing Plaiſter.
Errhines: Medicinal Liquors to be ſnuft up the Noſtrils to purge the Brain.

Empyema:

Empyema: Empyems a corrupt matter between the breaſt and the lungs following a Pleuriſie.

Eryſipelas Oedematoſum: a tertian ſwelling ariſing from choller and flegm.

Eliphantiaſis: a leprous diſeaſe, which makes the Patients skin like the Hide of an Elephant.

Electuary: See the *London Diſpenſatory*.

Expulſion: driving forth; as of Excrements, Dung, Urine, Sweat, &c.

Expel: to drive forth.

Eruption: breaking forth.

Extinguiſhed: quenched, put out.

Emunctuaries or *Emunctoryes*; certain waies and paſſages that Nature finds to drive ill Humors into, from the Principal Parts; as certain Kernels behind the Ears; and in the Groins, under the Arm-pits, &c. where riſings happened in time of Peſtilence &c.

Eſſentially ſpringing P. 11. that is primarily and principally, not accidentally or occaſionally.

Ebullition: boiling and working of the blood in the Veins, like New-wine in a Cask.

Extenſion: ſtretching out.

Extenuation: Leanneſs, Conſumption of fleſh. Extenuating making thin.

Expulſive faculty: the power of our body which drives forth Dung, Urine, Sweat, Vapors &c. every part partakes of this Ability, or Faculty.

Eminent: neer at hand approaching.

Eryſipelas: a ſwelling cauſed by choller. *Eryſipelas Phlegmonodes*, or *Phlegmon Eryſipelatodes*. Is a ſwelling cauſed by Inflamation of Choller and Blood.

Emulſions: Almond milkes; and milkes made of cool Seeds, &c.

Electuaries. Medicines made up of Conſerves of Flowers or Herbs; to which is added ſome ſweet Spicy pouder for the moſt part, and ſo with Syrup it is made up in the form of Mithridate or Treacle.

Epithemes: are Medicines applyed in Bags, commonly upon the Heart or Stomach, Liver or Spleen &c. Certain convenient pouders being put in a Bag, or between two cloths, and ſo wet in Wine, or other convenient Liquor, are laid upon the Stomach, Heart, &c.

Eſſential to the Diſeaſe: that is of the very being or ſubſtance, ſo that without that, the diſeaſe could not be. So Heat is Eſſential to a Feaver.

Excrements: dregs and refuſe of our meat and drink after Concoction, voided by dung, Urine, Sweat, aud inviſibly through the Pores.

Excrementitious: of or belonging to Excrements, impure, preternatural humors are ſo called.

Extenuate: make thin.

Expreſſed: Squeezed out.

Epidemical: common to a whol Nation. So the Plague, ſmall Pocks, Looſneſs, Sweating-ſickneſs, &c. when they are riſe all over a Nation, or Country at one time, they are called Epidemical diſeaſes.

Elixir Proprietatis. A Medicine invented by *Paracelſus*. Take of the beſt Aloes, Myrrh & Saffron, of each half an ounce: Pouder them and put them into a Glaſs. Then take Muſcadine made tart with Oyl of Sulphur, and pour upon the pouder, til the liquor ſtand four fingers above the pouder: Let them ſtand and digeſt in a warm place. Then pour off the Liquor and put on more, till all the Colour and vertue be drawn out from the pouder. At laſt ſtill the ſettlings with a gentle fire, and pour that which comes away, to the former Liquor, and let all ſtand and digeſt a Month in a warm place, cloſe ſtopped. The name ſignifies ſuch a Quinteſſence, as hath a ſpecial propriety of agreement with Mans nature, whereby it comforts and reſtores the ſame, in al kind of weakneſs.

Emollient: Medicines that ſoften.

Eroded: eaten a ſunder, eaten up.

Extraction: pulling out.

Exquiſite: perfect, in an high degree.

Eſcharoticks: ſee Cauſticks potential.

Embrochated: moiſtened, bedewed, bathed.

Eroſion: fretting, eating.

Eclegma. See Lambitive.

Extream parts: the Armes and Legs.

Emplaſtick diet: conſiſts of ſuch meats as are of a clammy ſubſtance, viz. Calves Head and Feet, Sheeps-trotters; all Feet of Beaſts, Tripes, Gellys, &c.

Excreta and *Retenta*: things voided out of the Body, things retained, or kept in.

Eradicate, pluck up by the Roots.

Exaſperated: pained, vexed, moleſted.

Equivocal: Signs of a Diſeaſe, are ſuch as are common to it and other Diſeaſes.

The Efficient Cauſe: is the working or making Cauſe, ſo a Tailor is the Efficient of a Garment; The Material Cauſe is the ſtuff, a thing is made of which the Efficient works upon; So the Cloth or Silk is the Material Cauſe of the Garment. The formal Cauſe, the ſhape that makes it a Coat, or Cloak, or Doublet; the Final Cauſe, is the end why it was made, viz. to hide nakedneſs, keep off Sun and Cold, and to adorn the body.

Emulgent Veins: which bring the Wheyiſh Excrement of the blood unto the Kidneyes where it becomes Urine, and is paſſed by the Ureters into the Piſs-bladder.

Evaporation: a ſteeming out of Vapors.

Egreſs: coming forth.

Evaporated: ſteemed away, as Water that ſpends away in boiling.

Evacuators: Medicines which empty out evil Humors, either by vomit, Purge, &c.

Exhalations: Vapors drawn up by the Sun, out of the Earth and Waters.

Eventilated: Fanned, purged as Corn by fanning. So Exerciſe is ſaid to eventilate or fan the Body; becauſe the motion opens the Pores, and drives many vapors out.

Eneorema: that which hangs like a cloud in Urines, eſpecially when the Diſeaſe is breaking away.

Emollient Decoction: a ſoftening moiſtening Decoction, made for Clyſters to ſoften and moiſten the hardened Excrements of the Guts.

An *Eſchara*, or *Eſchar*; is the Core that falls off from a part that hath had a Cauſtick applied thereto.

F

Fumigations: Perfumes and others things, burnt to qualifie the Air in a ſick mans chamber.

Fracture: breaking, as fracture of the Skul or Arm, &c.

Fomentation: when linnen Cloaths or Spunges are dipped in ſome Liquor, and applied to the diſeaſed part, and after renewed.

Functions of the Brain: the Abilities of the Brain, to Hear, See, Imagine, Underſtand, Remember, &c.

Frictions: Rubbings.

Furor Uterinus: Womb-Madneſs; when Women are mad by reaſon of a diſorder in the Womb. See the Chapter of that Diſeaſe.

A *Flux of Humors*: flowing of Humors.

Febris Catarrhalis: a Feaver cauſed by Rheum falling from the Head.

Fabrick: Frame, making up, compoſition.

Frontal Vein: Fore-head Vein.

Fortified: ſtrengthened.

Fiſtula: an hollow, deep, but narrow Ulcer that will not be cloſed up.

A pair of *Forceps*, a inal Inſtrument like a pair of Tongs, to draw forth any thing out of the Ears, &c.

Fluid: apt to run and flow like Water, and other Liquors.

Filtration: ſtraining through a brown Paper, or by means of a piece of cloth hanging out of one Veſſel into another.

Filter: to ſtrain as aforeſaid.

Fermentation: the working of Humors, as new drink works in the Barrel.

A *Feaver Symptomatical*, is a Feaver cauſed by ſome other foregoing Diſeaſe; in reſpect of which Diſeaſe, the Feaver is but a Symptom or Accident.

A *Flatulent* and *Pituitous Chollick*, is a Chollick cauſed by wind and flegm.

Formicans Pulſus; a weak, feeble, quick Pulſe, that feels under the Fingers like creeping Pilmires, from whence it is named.

Form: See Efficient Cauſe.

Fluxive: apt to flow and run like Water and other Liquors.

Friable: is crumbly, ſhort, like coſtly Cake-bread, Pie-cruſt, Puf-paſt, &c. So Fiſhes that have a ſhort crumbly ſubſtance, not clammy or ſlimy, ſuch as Soals, Smelts, Trours, are ſaid to be friable in compariſon of Eels, Carps, Tenches, &c.

G

Gum Animi: Indian Amber.

Gargariſms: that is, Medicines to Gargle in the Throat to waſh ſore Throats,

de Gutteta: a Pouder uſed in Falling-ſickneſs and Convulſion of Children by the French. It is deſcribed page 33. at the bottom.

Going about: by fits.

Generating: breeding, begetting.

Glandules: Kernels, ſuch as are about the Throat, aad are called the Almonds of the Ears, and ſuch as the Sweet-bread, &c.

Gate-Vein: Vena Porta. See *Veſlingus* Anatomy in Engliſh.

Generous Wine: ſtrong Wine, as rich Canary, Muskadine, &c.

Glutinations: Clammineſs like Gum about the corners of the Eyes.

Glutinators: things which glue and cloſe up broken Veins, &c.

Glutinous: clammy like Glue.

A *Gangrene*: is a corruption of a part tending to the utter deading thereof.

H

Hypochondria: the parts beneath the Ribs.

Hemiplegia: the Palſey poſſeſſing one ſide.

Hydreleum: a Bath and Oyntment; that is, of Water and Oyl beaten together.

Hippocras Bag: a Bag of Wool ſhaped like an Extinguiſher, through which Hippocras and divers Medicines are ſtrained.

Hereditary: from Father or Mother, to Son or Daughter.

Hydromel: Honey and Water, Mead, Methegelin.

Hemorrhoids: Veins of the Fundament, to which Leeches are applied.

Head-Herbs: Roſemary, Betony, Sage, Lavender, ſweet Marjoram, Hyſop, Balm, Cowſlips, Roſes, Violets, Lettice, Borrage, Buglos, &c.

Habit of Body: is the whol bulk and ſubſtance thereof.

Humidity: Moiſture.

Holy Fire: a red Inflamation, St. Anthonies fire, the Rote.

Hemorrhagies:

Hemorrhagies: breaking forth of Blood from any part of the Body.

Hyſterical Fits: Fits of the Mother, Womb-ſickneſs.

Hermetical Phyſitians, and *Hermets*: Chymiſts, ſuch as trade with Furnaces, Pots, and Glaſſes, to draw Spirits, Oyls, Waters; to make Salts, Quinteſſences, &c. called ſo from *Hermes Triſmegiſtus*, an old Egyptian Phyloſopher, who is thought to have been a Chymiſt.

Horrors: Shiverings.

I

INfuſe: that is, ſteep.

Inflamation: great Heat.

Indication: is an hinting to the Phyſitian what he is to do. So extream heat is ſaid to give indication of cooling; extream fulneſs of blood gives indication of blood-letting; want of a womans Courſes gives indication of blood-letting, &c.

Jugular Veins: that is, the Throat Veins. See *Veſlingus* Anatomy in Engliſh.

Inſenſible Paſſages: which cannot be ſeen, nor felt, by reaſon of their ſmalneſs.

Influence: flowing in.

Inherent: ſticking faſt within, ſeated and abiding within.

Inordinate: diſorderly, unnatural, and unfitting.

Internal and External Sences: The Internal are, Common Sence, Imagination, Underſtanding, Memory: The External are, Seeing, Hearing, Smelling, Taſting, Feeling.

Intercepted: ſtopped in the middle way.

Internally and Externally: inwardly and outwardly.

Juleps: pleaſant Drinks made of diſtilled Waters, or the broth of Barley, and other convenient things, and ſweetened with Syrups or Sugar; given chiefly in Feavers to cool and quench Thirſt.

Infuſion: a ſtrained Liquor wherein Medicaments have been ſteeped, either hot or cold.

Incraſſate: thicken.

Incraſſating: thickening.

Inſenſible: not to be perceived by the outward Sences, of Seeing, Hearing, Smelling, &c.

Illumination: enlightening.

Influx: flowing into.

Inverſion; turning the inſide out.

Intermiſſion: ceaſing, leaving off.

Inveterate: old, of long continuance, rooted.

Inclination: that is, by holding the veſſel on the one ſide, and ſo powring the cleer from the ſetlings: this is called to clarifie by Inclination, in oppoſition to clarifying with the white of an Eg by boyling, or any other way.

The *Iris*: a party-color'd round Circle in the ſight of the Eye like a Rainbow, from whence it hath its name.

Incarnate: to breed fleſh.

Irritation: provocation, ſtirring up.

Involuntary Tears: which are not ſhed by force of ſorrow working upon the mind, but by force of a bodily Diſeaſe.

The day of *Indication*: is that day in a Feaver on which may be collected what will beride upon the following Critical day. So the fourth day doth hint what is like to happen on the ſeventh; and the eleventh hints what is like to happen upon the fourteenth; and the ſeventeenth what will happen upon the twenty one, and the twenty four what will beride upon the twenty eight. Therefore the fourth, eleventh, ſeventeenth, twenty four, are called daies of Indication, or telling and declaring.

Judged, ſee *Day of Judgment*.

Infirm: weak.

Inſipid: Taſtleſs.

Inciſing Medicaments; are ſuch as cut and divide tough flegm, and other clammy humors, whereby they become fit for expulſion; ſuch is Oxymel, &c.

Inteſtines: the Guts.

Intenſion and Remiſſion: Increaſe and decreaſe, growing ſtronger or weaker.

Injection: is a Medicinal Liquor caſt with a fitting Inſtrument into the Womb, Bladder, or Fundament, when there is ſoreneſs of hemorroids, &c.

Inſerted: faſtened or planted into.

Inſpiſſate Juyce: is Juyce of ſome Herb boyled till it be thick, as Honey.

Illuſtrated: made cleer and manifeſt.

Invaſions of the Gout: fits of the Gout, or of Agues, may be called Invaſions of the ſaid Diſeaſes.

Intenſe: vehement, ſtrong.

Indicate: declare, point out.

Impatted: wedged in, thruſt far in.

Irrigations: moiſtenings, ſprinklings, waterings.

Intervention: coming between, happening together with.

Intermediate: coming between.

Intermitting Pulſe: is that which holds up a while, and then beats again; and then ſtops, and then beats again, which is a ſign of great weakneſs.

Incoctibility: an unaptneſs to be concocted or digeſted, or an impoſſibility thereof.

L

LEnitive: a gentle, refreſhing, cordial Medicine.

Ligatures: or ſtrings wherewith the Joynts of Bones and the Griſtles are compact and bound together.

Lozenges: the ſame with Tablets, being the

form of a Medicine made up.

Luxation: is when one Joynt is looſned from another.

Liniment: Oyntment.

Ligatures: bindings of ſeveral parts to draw the blood and Humors from the part diſeaſed, to the parts bound, by reaſon of the pain of binding which muſt be very hard and ſtraight.

Looſneß of Continuitie: ſeparating and dividing of things cloſed and united. So a wound is termed a looſening of Continuitie; becauſe, it ſeparates theſe parts of the skin and fleſh which were formerly united together.

Laxe: looſe, ſlack, as an unbended Bowſtring.

Livid: black and blew.

A *Lambative* or *Lohoch*: is a medicine to be lickt from a Liquoris ſtick, and to be ſwallowed ſoftly down, being chiefly ordained for the Lungs.

Iron-water: Water wherein Iron hath been quenched. Smiths forge-water.

Laxative: which makes the belly looſe.

Livid: black and blew, Lead-coloured.

M

Meninges: or films of the Brain, coats that cover the brain.

Maſticatories: that is Medicines to be chewed to bring away Rheum.

Meſeraick Veins: little Veins that are thought to carry chyle from the ſtomach to the Liver. See *Veſlingus Anat.* in Engliſh.

Malignity: venemous or poyſonful quality of certain humors and Diſeaſes which make them very dangerous, and for the moſt part deadly.

Matter, or *Quittor*: a ſhotty kind of filth which comes out of Impoſthumes when they break, and out of Ulcers when they are in a good way of cure.

Magiſtral Syrup: is ſuch an one as is invented by a Phyſitian for his Patient, in oppoſition to thoſe Syrups commonly kept in ſhops.

Matrix: Womb.

Membrana: skin or coat of the Arteries, Veins, &c. Membranes, skins or coats.

Mortification: a deading of any part of the body.

Malign: venemous, poyſonful. See Malignity.

Mother: the Womb in Women is ſo called.

Mitigation: abatement, leſſening, growing mild.

The Medium: is that through which we ſee, as principally the Air, which we look thorough upon objects; alſo the Water and Glais, Horn, or what ever is cleer, and may be ſeen thorough, may be termed a medium of ſight.

Mammilarie paſſages, or *productions*: certain little knobby bunchings out of the Nerves, which ſerve for ſmelling, reſembling Teates, called therefore Teat-like productions. See the Engliſh *Anatomy*.

Malax: ſoften. To Malax a lump of Pil-ſtuff, is to ſoften it, that it may work up into Pills the better.

Mercurial Purges: Purges made of Quickſilver, Chymically prepared, ſuch as *Mercurius dulcis*, ſome kind of Precipitate, *Mercurius vitæ*, &c.

Macerate: ſteep.

Meſenterie: the skin which knits the Guts together, and runs all along among them, emboſſed with Fat. See *Veſlingus* his *Anatomy* in Engliſh.

Membranous: of the Nature of Skin or Parchment.

Morbifical, or *Morbifick matter*; is that which is the principal cauſe of any Diſeaſe.

Minorative purgation: is gentle purgation, ſuch as takes away only a part of the matter of a diſeaſe: it is oppoſed to Eradicative purgation, which is ſtrong, and pulls the whol matter offending up by the Roots; as it were.

N

Nutrition: Nouriſhment.

Narcotick medicines: ſtupefying medicines: that dull the ſence of feeling, and cauſe profound ſleep.

Nitre: ſalt Peter, as ſome hold; but *Matthiolus* conceives the true Nitre is rarely found in theſe daies.

Natural functions: actions of the ſtomach, Liver, Spleen, Gal, Kidneyes, in concocting the meat, making blood, and ſeparating and expelling the excrements.

Nauſeouſneß: ſickneſs of the ſtomach enclining to vomit.

Nidorous: ſmelling of burnt fat, or ſcortched Roaſt-meat, or fryed Oyl.

Noxious: hurtful.

Nauſioſis of the Veins: is when the Veins are ſick of bad blood, and doth as it were ſpew it out into the habit of the body: from whence comes ſcurvy-ſpots, morphew, ſcabs, &c.

Neotericks: are late writers in phyſick, or any other Art, ſo called in oppoſition to the Antient Authors.

O

Organs: peculiar parts of the body fitted for ſome notable ſervice of the Spirit, ſuch as the Eye to ſee, the Ear to hear, the Noſe to ſmell, the Skin to feel, the Lungs to breath, Stomach to digeſt.

Os Sacrum: the great bone whereon the Ridg bone reſteth.

Opiſthotones: a Convulſion ſo named, when the body

Body is drawn backward.

Oval forme: that is the shape of an Eg.

Original: beginning, foundation.

Oedema: a swelling caused by flegm, which is soft and whiteish, and has little heat or pain with it.

Obstruction stopping.

Opiate signifies an Electuary: properly it is put for Venice Treacle, Mithridate, Diascordium, &c. which have Opium in them: from whence the name is derived. But secondarily, it signifies any Electuary or Antidote made up in such a body as Treacle, &c. though it have no Opiate in it.

Orifice: the whol which is made by a Surgeon when he lets blood. Also the mouth or passage into the Womb, or Stomach, &c.

Opticks: a Part of Natural Philosophy (though falsly reckoned for a branch of the Mathematicks) opening all the Mysteries of sight, and the reasons of the Deceptions, or mistakes thereof, and teaching to make augmenting Glasses, mutiplying Glasses, Perspective Glasses, burning Glasses, &c.

Oblique: slantling, athwart, crooked,

Obnoxious: liable, or subject unto.

Ophthalmy: an Inflamation of the Eyes, causing soreness and redness.

Os cribosum: the bony Sieve. A bone full of small holes, like a Sieve or colendar, placed above the Nose, through which Snot and Snivil, is drained from the brain.

Occult: hidden, unknown.

Oxycrate: Vineger and water mingled together.

Organical Disease. See *similar diseases*.

The *Systole*, or *diastole* of the Pulse: are the double motion thereof. For when the Artery is extended by the blood, Issuing out of the Heart, and smites the Finger of him that feels the Pulse; that motion is called Diastole, or a widening and stretching of the Arterie: but when the Arterie falls, contracts it self, and sinks from under a Mans Finger, that motion is called *Systole*, a contraction.

Oxyrrhodine: Vinegar of Roses, and Medicines made principally thereof.

P

Prognosis: the foreknowledg of Diseases.

Plethora; a too great fulness of good blood in the body.

Paralysis: the Palsie.

Paraplegia: Parisis, Palsie.

Peripneumonia: an Inflamation of the Lungs, or Lights.

Pericranium: the skins which compasseth the Scul.

A Pugil of Herbs viz. as much as is taken up between the Thumb and the three fore-Fingers.

Physical Regiment; is the right ordering of a Patient, having taken a Purge, or other strong Medicament. As to keep the Patient warm, to give posset or thin-broath after every stool; not suffer him to read, or her to Sow or hold down the head, or to be sad, or to sleep; especially after a vomit, &c.

Phrensie: rageing, Madness joyned with a Feaver. See Chap. 11. Book 1.

Prognostick: foretelling. A Prognostick sign is a sign foretelling what will become of the Disease, and patient.

Privation: loss.

Plethorick: full of blood, too full of blood.

Pores: little holes in the skin, through which vapors and sweat come out. Sometimes they are visible upon the Arm or Leg, being swelled and closed with cold; resembling a Goose skin for roughness.

Preternaturally: otherwise then the Course of Nature requires.

Perspicuous: cleer, that may be seen through, as Glass, fair-water, &c.

Peritonæum: the inner coat of the Belly, which covers the Guts: See the English *Anatomy*.

Poplar Oyntment: in the shops called *Populeon*. See the English *Dispensatory*.

Potential coldness: that is coldness in operation, though not to the feeling. So a draught of Whey in which cooling Herbs hath been boiled, being drunk down warm from the fire; is said to be actually hot, because it is so to the hand and palate; but Potentially cold, because it afterward cools the stomach, Liver, &c.

Pulsation: beating of the Arteries, in any part of the Body.

Precede: go before.

Preparing of humors: is the qualifying of them, so as that they may be fit for expression which preparation consists in separating them from the mals of good blood: in making them thick, if they be too thin and sharp: in cutting them and making them thin, if they be too thick and clammy.

Phlebotomy: blood-letting.

Preternatural: beside the intent or custom of Nature, vide Preternaturally.

Propriety: a pain by propriety, is when the cause of the Pain is in the part pained, so when the Head-ach comes from the Humors in the Head, it is called a pain by propriety; when it comes from Humors in the Stomach, or any other part that sends up vapors; it is called Head-ach by Content. And the like may be said of other Symptoms or accidents.

A *Pyramis*: is a Geometrical figure, broad and angular at the bottom, and growing less and less towards the top, till it come to a point. The Sepulchers of the Egyptian Kings were made in this form, and therefore called *Pyramides*. Naturalists do make use of this Figure to shew

how

how the Eye receives the representations of visible objects.

Pupil of the Eye: is the midlemost round circle, which we commonly call, *the sight of the Eye*, and which in Cats, is seen to widen and contract it self.

Pulse: Beans, Pease, Hastivers, French-pease, &c. called so, because they are gathered by pulling, and not by mowing down, as corn.

Probable: likely, possible.

Profound: deep.

Producing: breeding, causing.

Peccant Humor: the Humor offending, causing the Disease.

A *Phlegmon*: is an Inflamation or swelling caused by blood. If no other Humor be adjoyned, it is a true Phlegmon. If choller be joyned, it is called a *Phlegmon erisipelous*; if flegm, *ædematous*; if melancholly, *Scirrhous*.

Paroxysme: the fit of an Ague, of the Mother, or any Disease that comes by fits.

Perforated: bored through.

Putrid: rotten, filthy, stinking.

Pustula: a pustle, push, or whelk.

Ponderous: weighty.

Peristaltick motion of the Guts: is whereby the Guts do contract and purse themselves together above the excrements, and so squeez them out.

Pomum curtipendulum: an Apple so called.

Pubes: the hairy Hillock above the privities in men and women. The word signifies ripeness, because that hair being grown out, testifies the parties to be fit to engender.

Perineum: the space which runs like a ridge between the privities and fundament in men and women.

Præposterous: unnaturall, undue, unfitting.

Perturbation of the Eyes: a troubled, drousie, frighted look of the Eyes.

Procatarctick Causes: primarie, first working and occasional Causes. So in a Feaver, the next immediate Cause, is putrefied choller &c. but the first working & occasional causes, were the patients taking cold, by swimming in the cold water; whereby the pores became shut, and the Matter of the Disease was retained in the Body. So the Procatarctick Cause of worms in Children, is their greedy eating of Fruit; but the immediate Cause, is putrid humors occasioned by those Fruits; out of which humors the worms breed.

Precipitated: thrown head-long, forcibly cast down.

Palliative Cure: is when a Disease is not taken away, but only mitigated and made more mild, so that the patient may have as much ease as possible. Or if the Disease deform the Body, a palliative Cure, does hide as much as may be that deformity. So an Eye being thrust out, cannot be properly cured; but it may admit of a palliative cure, in asswaging the pain, and other Symptoms, and by putting into the place thereof a Glass or other Artificial Eye.

Potent: powerful.

Perspirable: the Body is said to be Perspirable, when the invisible Pores or holes in the skin, are kept open, so that the vapors arising from evil Humors may freely breath out. See Transpiration.

Pernicious; deadly, causing death, & destruction.

Protraction: is a lengthening out of a Disease and making the same to last long.

Pharmaceutick Remedies: whatsoever kind of Medicines are made by the Apothecary.

Præposterous: disorderly, undue, unfit, the Cart before the Horse.

Quitter.: See Matter.

R

Repletion. over much fulness of blood, or Humors.

Resolution, weakening or dissolving the strength of a part, as when it is palsyed &c.

Revulsion: drawing back of blood or Humors from the part affected.

Repelling: Medicines which draw back the humor from the part affected, Repellers, the same.

Relaxing: Slacking as the string of a bow when the bow is unbent, is said to be relaxed or slackned.

To *Revel*: to draw back Humors from the part diseased.

Remitted: lessened, abated.

Restriction: exception, limitation.

Ruption: breaking, or tearing asunder.

Reliques remainders of an Humor after Solemn purging, bleeding &c.

Retraction: drawing back.

Radical moisture: the fundamental juice of the Fundamental juice of the body, which nourishes and preserves the natural heat, as the oile in a lampe preserves and feeds the flame.

Revelled: drawen back, Revulsives, remedies to draw back the Humor from the Diseased part.

Repelled: driven away.

Retentive: faculty, the power in our body and its parts to hold fast its nutriment and what ever is agreeable thereunto.

Rough Arterie or *Aspera Arteria*, is the wind-pipe or Weasand, which is rough on the out side with circles and gristly rings.

Reduced brought back again.

Refractions: breaking of the Representations of visible objects. a terme used by the Writers of Opticks, or the Art of seeing.

Recruited: repaired, restored, made up, a military

litary term.

Resolving medicaments : are such as loosen and scatter evil humors which are gathered and combined together in some diseased part of the Body.

Repercussives : medicines which drive back the Humors from a diseased part.

Relaxation : loosenes.

Refrigerating : cooling.

Respiration : breathing.

Reflux : flowing back again.

Recipient part, is that part which receives the Humor offending.

S

Suppository : that which is put into the Fundament to cause solubleness.

Sudorofick : that is causing sweat.

Subeth a deep sleep.

Scarefication : is a cutting of the Skin that it may bleed into a Cupping-glass.

Superficies : the outside of any thing.

Stuphes : Stoves or Hot-Houses to sweat in.

Spiritus acousticos : is that portion of the spirit which in the Eares discerneth sounds.

Strangulation : choaking.

Sternon : the breast bone, See Vesslingus Anatomie in English.

Sphinchter : is the Muscle of the Arse.

Stupor : dulness.

Spasmus : cramp or Convulsion.

A Scruple is twenty graines or the weight of so many barley cornes.

Sternutatories : medicines to snuf into the nose to provoke sneezing.

Stupefying : taking away the sence of feeling ; benumming.

Stupid : that is benummed, besotted, hath no feelling or sense, blockish.

Symptomes : evil dispositions of the Body which depend upon and accompany a disease ; as Heat, thirst, Headach, want of sleep, stomach-sickness, faintings, swoonings &c.

Sympathy : fellow-feeling, a disease is said to come by sympathy, when the principal cause is in some other part, with which the part offended hath a fellow-feeling. So paines of the Head caused by evil Humors in the stomach, are said to come by sympathy. And sickness of stomach caused by stone in the kidneys is a disease of the stomach by sympathy.

Nerves Sinnewes, certaine strings carrying the faculties of Motion and sence from the Braine into all parts of the Body see *Vesslingus* Anatomie in English.

Scorbut : the Scurvie.

Steeled in which steel hath bin quenched or infused.

Scorbutick persons, that are troubled with the scurvy.

Spinal : of or belonging to the Back-bone.

Serous matter ; wheyish, like whey.

Sutures : seams of the Head, where the parts of the skull are joined together.

Species of the Objects : representations of things seen. For the visible things themselves do not enter into the eyes, but certain images, and figures of them.

Scituation place or posture.

Species retained in the Mind : the shapes and patterns of things seen or heard &c.

State of the disease : is when it is at the highest and does neither encrease nor decrease.

Saphena : A vein of the foot which is usually opened in woemen ; see Vesslingus Anatomie in English.

Sal-prunelle : salt-peter purified with Brimstone Clean white salt Peter is as good for use, only the Chymists love to mend *Magnificat* and many times take great pains to little purpose.

Sphacelus : deadnes of any part, when the flesh and bone are dead ; sphacelation signifies the same.

Superfluous : over much, unnecessary &c.

Speculum Oris : an Instrument wherewith the Mouth and throat is kept open, that the parts diseased may be seen and dealt with.

Scirrhus : an hard swelling without pain.

Suppurated : an impostume is said to be suppurated, when it gathers matter & enclines to break.

Suppuration : a collection of matter in an impostume.

Suppression : stoppage.

Solution of continuitie : a dividing of such parts as were naturally united ; so every wound and Sore, is called a solution of continuity &c.

Stupes : tow or Cotton-wooll.

Sealed Earth : Terra Sigillata, it is a kind of Medicinal Earth brought out of the straights & sealed in little flatt cakes, to avoid Imposture the Seal is wont to be the great Turks badg viz. the half moon.

Sparadrap : a cerecloath.

Sediment : the settlings and dregs of Urine or any other liquor.

Suppression : stoppage.

Sincere excrements ; are such as are pure and unmixed, as choller alone &c.

Sudorofick : medicines causing Swear.

Suffocating, choaking, Suffocation a choaking.

Subject ; a logical term, it signifies any thing that hath somwhat adjoined and annexed to it. So the Bodie is the subject of Sicknes & Health, of Beautie and deformity. The Head is the subject of paines, and other parts are the subject of other accidents. The Soul is the subject of vertues and Vices, of Happines and Misery &c.

Suffusion : a shedding abroad of Humors ; as when an Humor is shed abroad in the Eye and hinders the sight, it is called a suffusion.

A Seton is an Hole made in the skin and a skein

of Silke, or yarn, or such like drawn thorough, and kept in, in which being removed dayly causes the matter and humor to come away.

Sulphurus and *Bituminous bathes*: that is hot bathes like those of *Bath* in Summerset-shire, whose Heat and virtue springs from a tincture of Brimstone and Bitumen which they bring out of the Earth.

Suppuration: is when a swelling comes to gather Head, breed matter and is ready to break.

Specifick quality: a peculiar hidden propertie, not springing from the first qualities.

Similar Diseases: are such as befall the substance of the Body, not considered as formed into any organ or limb or part; and they are all kind of Distempers. Organick diseases are such as are proper to the organs and Instruments of the Body as such, viz. what ever mar their Fabrick. Common diseases are such as are liable both to the Similary and Organick parts viz. Solution: of Unitie.

T

Tablets: are the same with Lozenges: they are Medicines made up in flat four squar'd Cakes with acuted angles.

Torpor: numbnes.

Transpiration: the passage of the vapours through the pores of the skin of the whol body invisibly, onely causing a smell according to the humors, in some more in some less, in some offensive in others not so.

Tumor: swelling.

Tincture: the virtue or strength of any thing drawn forth by steeping the same in spirit of wine, vinegar, or any percing liquor, the said Liquor containing the virtue and oftentimes the Colour of that which was steeped in it is called the tincture thereof.

Tile tree: a Linden tree there grow two on Newington green they bear sweet blossomes.

Trepan: an Instrument made to bore an hole in the skull.

Turgent: swelling, working, moving too and fro spoken of the Humors of the Body when they are in a Combustion, and full of motion.

Tacamahaca: A sweet Gumm. See the London *Dispensatory* in English.

Translation: carrying of an humor from one part to another.

Tunicles: little coats or skins of which the eye is partly made up. See the English Anatomy

Terminated: ended.

Topical Medicines: such as are outwardly apphed to the part affected, or the part which sends the Humor &c.

Transparentnes: such a clearnes as is in Glass, Horn, the Ayr, Fair water, or any other thing which we can see through.

Troches or *Trochisci*, medicines made up in the form of little flat Bouls, whence they have their name.

Tunica retiformis: the net-like Coat or tunicle

Thorax: the Chest.

Trebble Quantity: thrice so much.

Tartarous matter: congealed hard matter like the hardned Lees of wine which are called Tarrar.

Transpire: breath through.

V

Vertigo: a swimming in the Head.

Vesitatoryes: a Medicine applied to the skin to cause a Blyster.

Vertebræ: the turning bones of the whol back.

Ventricles of the Brain: certain hollownesses of the Brain.

Venenosity: poysonfulnes.

Vapors: Steams ascending into the Head, like the Steams we see mounting from a mess of hot Broth, or Meat, &c.

Vital function: faculty of the Heart causing Life, Pulse-beating, and Breathing.

Visive Nerve: the seeing Nerve. The Sinnew wherewith the Objects of sight are carried into the Brain, to the Imagination or Commonsence. See *Vesslingus* Anatomy.

Vaporous Matter: steeming, reaking matter. See Vapors.

Ulcerated: having an Ulcer or running sore.

Visor, or *Visive* Spirits: the Spirit wherewith we see.

Universal evacuation: is a general purging of the whol body, all at once.

Vitrous Humor: a moisture like to molten-Glass. which goes into the making up of the Eye. See *Vesslingus* Anatomy in English; and cut up an Eye of a Calf, Sheep, &c.

Uvea tunica: a coat of the Eye, resembling the skin of a Grape, from whence it is named. See *Vesslingus* Anatomy in English.

Voluntary faculty: that power of our Body which works according as we please; as the power of going, running, speaking, &c. whereas the powers of beating in the Pulse, of digesting in the Stomach, and Liver, of making blood, flesh, fat, &c. do not work according to our wills. The former we can exercise, or suspend, and moderate them as we please, but the latter not: which are therefore termed involuntary.

Uvula or *Columella*: the Pallate of the mouth.

A Vehicle: that which serves to carry.

Vermicular: Worm-like. The Pulse is so called, when it is weak, and lifts it self unequally, sometimes more, sometimes less; like the creeping of a Catterpillar.

Ureters: certain long pipes or passages, which bring the Urine from the Kidney to the Bladder. See *Vesslingus* Anatomy in English.

Viscous

Viscous, cleaving and roaping, like Birdlime.
Vicissitude, the following of one thing upon the neck of another.
Venery: Letchery, the immoderate exercise or dooting upon such Acts as tend to Generation.

W

Wild-Poppies. Red-Poppies which grow among Corn, called likewise Corn-Rose.
Watry Humor: a certain liquor like water, which goes into the Composition of the Eye. See *Vesling*'s Anatomy in English.
Water-Gate: the Privities in Women.

Z

Zacutus Lusitanus: a famous Physitian; A Jew that practiced at *Amsterdam* in *Holland*. He has wrote divers excellent Treatises of Physick, suitable to the Principles of *Hippocrates* and *Galen*.

FINIS.

The Vertues, Uſe, and variety of Operations of the True and Phyloſophical AURUM POTABILE, *Attained by the Studies of Doctor* Freeman, *and Dr.* Culpeper, *and left with his Widdow, and adminiſtred by a Phyſitian in her Houſe neer* London, *on the Eaſt ſide of Spittle-fields, next door to the red Lyon.*

The Vertues are as follow:

IT Cures all Agues, whether Quotidian, Tertian, or Quartan: as alſo it cured divers people of that moſt horrid putrid Feaver, which ſo violently ſeized on mens Bodies (both before and after *Michaelmas* 1653.) to the great admiration of many; and when the parties Diſeaſed have ben both ſenceleſs and ſpeechleſs, for that neither that, nor any other Medicine or *Panacæa*, though never ſo gentle, could ſafely be adminiſtred into the Body, it hath beyond all hopes, by external application on the ſtomack revived them. It cures the Gout of all ſorts perfectly being adminiſtred as the Phyſitian ſhal adviſe. It cauſeth Women ſubject to Abortion, or Miſcarriage, to goe their time: and yet being given when the time comes it cauſeth a ſpeedy and eaſie delivery. It is an infallible cure for the French Pox and doth it with ſuch eaſe, ſpeed, and Secretneſs, that none of the neareſt relation ſhal take notice thereof. It cures the Green-ſickneſs and all ſorts of Jaundice, It provokes the Terms. It is good for Aches and all afflictions coming of cold. It helps the Rickets. But to what purpoſe do I nominate diſeaſes in particular, when it is an univerſall Remedy for all diſeaſes being adminiſtred as the Phyſitian ſhal adviſe? For its chief aim is exhilarating the vital ſpirits and heart. It both binds and ſtops Fluxes, yet Purges; it both Vomits, and ſtays Vomiting; it cauſes Sweat, yet cures preternatural Sweatings, and performs all its operations as Nature it ſelf would, have it, becauſe it only fortifies her in her Centre.

To conclude, *It* is an Univerſal Fortification for all Complexions and ages, againſt all ſorts and degrees of Peſtilential and contagious Infection, both preventing before their poſſeſſion, and extirpating of them after it.

READer, By reaſon of the miſtakes in the printing of this Book in Latin, there are two words miſ-tranſlated: And by reaſon of the foulneſs of the Engliſh Copy, there are ſome other miſtakes in printing. All which are thus to be amended.

PAge 24. line 46. for violent ſpringing *read* violent Convulſion ſpringing *p. 32. for* Ephor. *read* Eſcar *p. 51. l. 39 for* to *r.* do *p. 53. l. 7. for* procede *r.* preceed *p. 59 l. 14 r.* four ounces *p. 116 l. 39 for* pure *r.* impure *p. 148 l. 28. for* neverthelefs get *r.* neverthelefs the Lungs get *p. 160 l. 12 for* can endure *r.* cannot endure *l. 23 for* ſets more *r.* feels more *p. 167 l. 33 for* blood *r.* blood-letting *p. 184 l. 40 for* Acorns *r.* Alkermes *l. 45 for* Acorns *r.* Alkermes *p. 256 l. 47 for* Gloves *r.* Cloves *p. 259 l. 16 for* primary, *r.* external *p. 290 l. 34 for* be thirſt *r.* be no thirſt *p. 329 l. 7 for* can paſs *r.* cannot paſs *l. 10 for* Wine *r.* Wind *p. 332 l. 4 for* Turnep Water *r.* Orange-flower Water *p. 342 l. 44 for* after dinner *r.* before dinner *p. 367 l. 9 for* ſcattering *r.* ſcalding *p. 373 l. 40 for* bred *r.* cured *p. 378 l. 17 for* warm *r.* worn *p. 386 l. 51 for* ſpring Water four ounces *r.* ſpring Water four pound *p. 428 l. 32 for* Turnep Water *r.* Orange-flower Water *p. 432 l. 29 for* ſuppreſſion *r.* ſuppuration *p 499 l. 18 for* decreaſe *r.* encreaſe *p. 501 l. 11 for* contained *r.* continued *p. 542 l. 52 and* 33 *theſe words* [the Moon] *at the end of the* 53 *line, muſt be taken from that line, and read at the end of the* 52 *line p. 567 for* great *r.* grate *p. 580 l. 42 for* but *r.* both *p. 590 l. 40 for* be *r.* being *p. 612 l. 10 for* puortfied *r.* putrefied *p. 615 l. 18 for* in *r.* no *p. 622 l. 11 for* terror *r.* Feaver *for* whereas *r.* whenas *p. 624 l. 15 for* Urine *r.* things *p. 630 l. 50 for* Italy *r.* India *p. 633 l. 11 for* care *r.* cure *and for* cure *r.* care *and l. 46. for* repelling no *r* no repelling *and l. 57. for* after aforeſaid *r* aforeſaid after *p. 639 l. 26. for* Hair *r.* Heart

